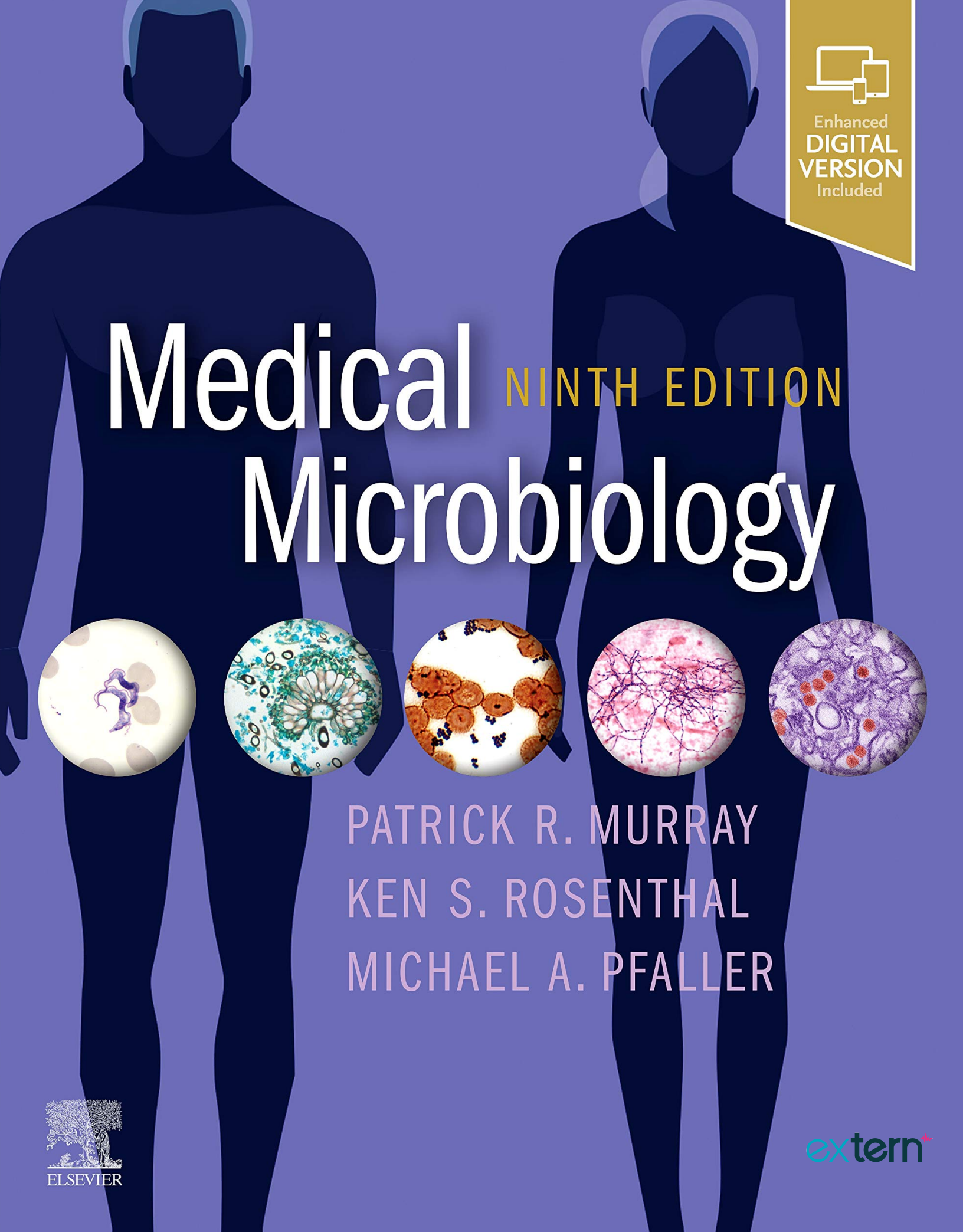
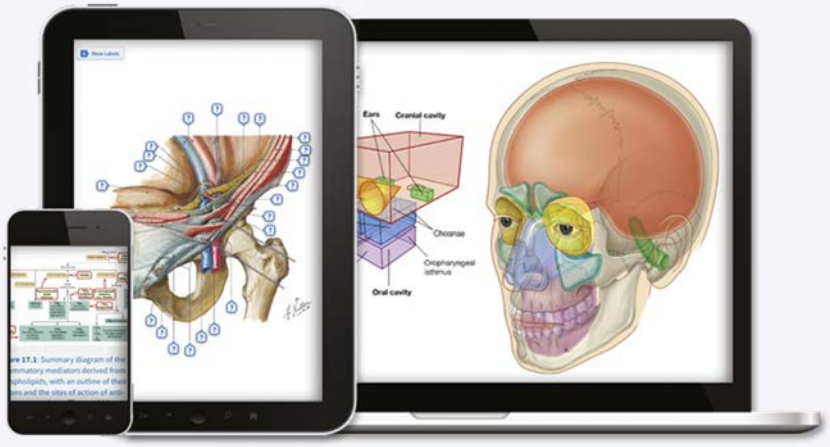

Enhanced
DIGITAL
VERSION
Included
Medical Microbiology
NINTH EDITION
PATRICK R. MURRAY
KEN S. ROSENTHAL
MICHAEL A. PFALLER
ELSEVIER
extern

Student CONSULT Built with inkling | E books

Any screen. Any time. Anywhere.



Activate the eBook version
of this title at no additional charge.

Student Consult eBooks give you the power to browse and find content, view enhanced images, share notes and highlights—both online and offline.

Unlock your eBook today.

1. Visit **studentconsult.inkling.com/redeem**
2. Scratch off your code
3. Type code into "Enter Code" box
4. Click "Redeem"
5. Log in or Sign up
6. Go to "My Library"

It's that easy!

Scan this QR code to redeem your eBook through your mobile device:

Place Peel Off Sticker Here

For technical assistance:
email studentconsult.help@elsevier.com
call 1-800-401-9962 (inside the US)
call +1-314-447-8200 (outside the US)

ELSEVIER

2015v1.0

MEDICAL MICROBIOLOGY

NOTE TO INSTRUCTORS:
Contact your Elsevier Sales Representative for teaching resources, including slides and image banks, for *Medical Microbiology,* 9e, or request these supporting materials at: http://evolve.elsevier.com/Murray/microbiology/

This page intentionally left blank

Medical Microbiology

NINTH EDITION

Patrick R. Murray, PhD, F(AAM), F(IDSA)
Vice-President, Microbiology
Sparks, Maryland;
Adjunct Professor, Department of Pathology
University of Maryland School of Medicine
Baltimore, Maryland

Ken S. Rosenthal, PhD
Professor of Immunology
Augusta University/University of Georgia Medical Partnership
Athens, Georgia;
Emeritus Professor,
Northeastern Ohio Medical University
Rootstown, Ohio

Michael A. Pfaller, MD, F(CAP), F(AAM), F(IDSA)
Consultant
JMI Laboratories
North Liberty, Iowa
Professor Emeritus
University of Iowa College of Medicine
Iowa City, Iowa

ELSEVIER

Edinburgh London New York Oxford Philadelphia St Louis Sydney 2021

First edition 1990
Second edition 1994
Third edition 1998
Fourth edition 2002
Fifth edition 2005
Sixth edition 2009
Seventh edition 2013
Eight edition 2016

Notices

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds or experiments described herein. Because of rapid advances in the medical sciences, in particular, independent verification of diagnoses and drug dosages should be made. To the fullest extent of the law, no responsibility is assumed by Elsevier, authors, editors or contributors for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

ISBN: 978-0-323-67322-8
E-ISBN: 978-0-323-67450-8

Content Strategist: Jeremy Bowes
Content Development Specialist: Joanne Scott
Project Manager: Andrew Riley
Design: Brian Salisbury
Illustration Manager: Paula Catalano
Marketing Manager: Michele Milano

Printed in the USA

Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Preface

Our knowledge about microbiology and immunology is constantly growing, and by building a good foundation of understanding in the beginning, it will be much easier to understand the advances of the future.

Medical microbiology can be a bewildering field for the novice. We are faced with many questions when learning microbiology: How do I learn all the names? Which infectious agents cause which diseases? Why? When? Who is at risk? Is there a treatment? However, all these concerns can be reduced to one essential question: **What information do I need to know that will help me understand how to diagnose and treat an infected patient?**

Certainly, there are a number of theories about what a student needs to know and how to teach it, which supposedly validates the plethora of microbiology textbooks that have flooded the bookstores in recent years. Although we do not claim to have the one right approach to teaching medical microbiology (there is truly no one perfect approach to medical education), we have founded the revisions of this textbook on our experience gained through years of teaching medical students, residents, and infectious disease fellows, as well as on the work devoted to the eight previous editions.

We have tried to present the basic concepts of medical microbiology clearly and succinctly in a manner that addresses different types of learners. The text is written in a straightforward manner with, it is hoped, uncomplicated explanations of difficult concepts. In this edition, we challenged ourselves to improve the learning experience even more. We are using the new technology on StudentConsult.com (e-version) to enhance access to the material. In the previous edition, we added **chapter summaries** and learning aids in the beginning of each of the microbe chapters, and on the e-version these are keyed to the appropriate sections in the chapter. In the e-version of the ninth edition, we added an **infectious disease chapter that lists the microbes by organ system and disease with hyperlinks to the appropriate chapter in the text.** This will facilitate access to the microbes for those in organ-system or disease/case-based curricula.

As in previous editions, there are new and enhanced **figures** to assist learning. **Details** are summarized in tabular format rather than in lengthy text, and there are colorful illustrations for the visual learner. **Clinical Cases** provide the relevance that puts reality into the basic science. **Important points** are emphasized in **boxes** to aid students, especially in their review, and the **study questions,** including Clinical Cases, address relevant aspects of each chapter. Each section (bacteria, viruses, fungi, parasites) begins with a chapter that summarizes microbial diseases, and this also provides **review material.**

Our understanding of microbiology and immunology is rapidly expanding, with new and exciting discoveries in all areas. We used our experience as authors and teachers to choose the most important information and explanations for inclusion in this textbook. Each chapter has been carefully updated and expanded to include new, medically relevant discoveries. In each of these chapters, we have attempted to present the material that we believe will help the student gain an interest in as well as a clear understanding of the significance of the individual microbes and their diseases.

With each edition of *Medical Microbiology* we refine and update our presentation. There are many changes to the ninth edition, both in the print and e-versions of the book. The book starts with a general introduction to microbiology and chapters on the human microbiome and epidemiology of infectious diseases. The human microbiome (that is, the normal population of organisms that populate our bodies) can now be considered as another organ system with 10 times as many cells as human cells. This microbiota educates the immune response, helps digest our food, and protects us against more harmful microbes. Additional chapters in the introductory section introduce the techniques used by microbiologists and immunologists and are followed by chapters on the functional immune system. Recent developments in rapid microbial identification are highlighted. The immune cells and tissues are introduced, followed by an enhanced chapter on innate immunity and updated chapters on antigen-specific immunity, antimicrobial immunity, and vaccines. Each of the sections on bacteria, viruses, fungi, and parasites is introduced by the relevant basic science chapters and then a summary chapter that highlights the specific microbial diseases before proceeding into descriptions of the individual microbes, "the bug parade."

Each chapter on the specific microbes begins with a summary (including trigger words), which is keyed to the appropriate part of the chapter in the e-version. As in previous editions, there are many summary boxes, tables, clinical photographs, and original clinical cases. **Clinical Cases** are included because we believe students will find them particularly interesting and instructive, and they are a very efficient way to present this complex subject. Each chapter in the "bug parade" is introduced by relevant questions to excite students and orient them as they explore the chapter. Finally, students are provided with access to the new Student Consult website, which provides links to additional reference materials, clinical photographs, animations, and answers to the introductory and summary questions of each chapter. Many of the figures are presented in step-by-step manner to facilitate learning. A very important feature on the website is access to more than 200 **practice exam questions** that will help students assess their mastery of the subject matter and prepare for their course and licensure exams. In essence, this edition provides an understandable text, details, questions, examples, and a review book all in one.

To Our Future Colleagues: The Students

On first impression, success in medical microbiology would appear to depend on memorization. Microbiology may seem to consist of only innumerable facts, but there is also a logic to microbiology and immunology. Like a medical detective, the first step is to know your villain. Microbes establish a niche in our bodies; some are beneficial and help us to digest our food and educate our immune system, while others may cause disease. Their ability to cause disease, and the disease that may result, depend on how the microbe interacts with the host and the innate and immune protective responses that ensue.

There are many ways to approach learning microbiology and immunology, but ultimately the more you interact with the material using multiple senses, the better you will build memory and learn. A **fun** and **effective** approach to learning is to **think like a physician and treat each microbe and its diseases as if it were an infection in your patient. Create a patient for each microbial infection and compare and contrast the different patients.** Perform role-playing and ask the seven basic questions as you approach this material: Who? Where? When? Why? Which? What? and How? For example: Who is at risk for disease? Where does this organism cause infections (both body site and geographic area)? When is isolation of this organism important? Why is this organism able to cause disease? Which species and genera are medically important? What diagnostic tests should be performed? How is this infection managed? Each organism that is encountered can be systematically examined.

Use the following acronym to create a clinical case and learn the essential information for each microbe: **DIVIRDEPTS.**

- How does the microbial ***d***isease present in the patient and the differential diagnosis?
- How would you confirm the diagnosis and ***i***dentify the microbial cause of disease?
- What are the ***v***irulence properties of the organism that cause the disease?
- What are the helpful and harmful aspects of the ***i***nnate and ***i***mmune response to the infection?
- What are the specific conditions or mechanisms for ***r***eplicating the microbe?
- What are all the ***d***isease characteristics and consequences?
- What is the ***e***pidemiology of infection?
- How can you ***p***revent its disease?
- What is its ***t***reatment?
- What social issues are caused by the microbial infection?

Answering the DIVIRDEPTS questions will require that you jump around in the chapter to find the information, but this will help you learn the material.

Get familiar with the textbook and its bonus materials and you will not only learn the material but also have a review book to work from in the future. For each of the microbes, learn three to five words or phrases that are associated with the microbe—words that will stimulate your memory (**trigger words,** provided in the chapter summary) and organize the diverse facts into a logical picture. Develop **alternative associations.** For example, this textbook presents organisms in the systematic taxonomic structure (frequently called a "bug parade," which the authors think is the easiest way to introduce the organisms). Take a given virulence property (e.g., toxin production) or type of disease (e.g., meningitis) and list the organisms that share this property. Pretend that an imaginary patient is infected with a specific agent and create the case history. Explain the diagnosis to your imaginary patient and also to your future professional colleagues. In other words, do not simply attempt to memorize page after page of facts; rather, use techniques that stimulate your mind and challenge your understanding of the facts presented throughout the text and **it will be more fun.** Use the summary chapter at the beginning of each organism section to **review** and help refine your "differential diagnosis" and classify organisms into logical "boxes."

No textbook of this magnitude would be successful without the contributions of numerous individuals. We are grateful for the valuable professional help and support provided by the staff at Elsevier, particularly Jeremy Bowes, Joanne Scott and Andrew Riley. We also want to thank the many students and professional colleagues who have offered their advice and constructive criticism throughout the development of this ninth edition of *Medical Microbiology*.

Patrick R. Murray, PhD, F(AAM), F(IDSA)

Ken S. Rosenthal, PhD

Michael A. Pfaller, MD, F(CAP), F(AAM), F(IDSA)

Acknowledgments

We would like to acknowledge all the editors and staff who helped in the development and production of this text.

This page intentionally left blank

To all who use this textbook, that they may benefit from its use as we did in its preparation

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 1

Introduction

SECTION OUTLINE

1 Introduction to Medical Microbiology

Historical Perspective

Imagine the excitement felt by the Dutch biologist Anton van Leeuwenhoek in 1674 as he peered through his carefully ground microscopic lenses at a drop of water and discovered a world of millions of tiny "animalcules." Almost 100 years later, the Danish biologist Otto Müller extended van Leeuwenhoek's studies and organized bacteria into genera and species according to the classification methods of Carolus Linnaeus. This was the beginning of the taxonomic classification of microbes. In 1840, the German pathologist Friedrich Henle proposed criteria for proving that microorganisms were responsible for causing human disease (the "germ theory" of disease). Robert Koch and Louis Pasteur confirmed this theory in the 1870s and 1880s with a series of elegant experiments proving that microorganisms were responsible for causing anthrax, rabies, plague, cholera, and tuberculosis. Other brilliant scientists went on to prove that a diverse collection of microbes was responsible for causing human disease. The era of chemotherapy began in 1910, when the German chemist Paul Ehrlich discovered the first antibacterial agent, which was a compound effective against the spirochete that causes syphilis. This was followed by Alexander Fleming's discovery of penicillin in 1928, Gerhard Domagk's discovery of sulfanilamide in 1935, and Selman Waksman's discovery of streptomycin in 1943. In 1946, the American microbiologist John Enders was the first to cultivate viruses in cell cultures, leading the way to the large-scale production of virus cultures for vaccine development. Thousands of scientists have followed these pioneers, each building on the foundation established by his or her predecessors, and each adding an observation that expanded our understanding of microbes and their role in disease.

Our knowledge and practice of microbiology is undergoing a remarkable transformation founded in the rapid technologic advances in genome analysis. Molecular diagnostic tests have been simplified and are sufficiently inexpensive to allow rapid detection and identification of organisms. Previously unappreciated insights about pathogenic properties of organisms, taxonomic relationships, and functional attributes of the endogenous flora are being revealed. The complexity of the medical microbiology we know today rivals the limits of the imagination. We now know that there are thousands of different types of microbes that live in, on, and around us, hundreds of which cause serious human diseases. To understand this information and organize it in a useful manner, it is important to understand some of the basic aspects of medical microbiology. To start, microbes can be subdivided into the following five general groups: viruses, bacteria, archaebacteria, fungi, and parasites, with each having its own level of complexity. Archaebacteria do not seem to cause disease but arthropods may have a disease-causing relationship with man, and they are discussed in this book.

Viruses

Viruses are the smallest infectious particles, ranging in diameter from 18 to 600 nm (most viruses are <200 nm and cannot be seen with a light microscope). The genome of human viruses consists of either deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA). The viral nucleic acids required for replication are enclosed in a protein shell with or without a lipid membrane envelope. Viruses are true parasites, requiring host cells for replication. The cells they infect and the host response to the infection dictate the nature of the clinical manifestation. More than 2000 species of viruses have been described, with approximately 650 infecting humans and animals. Infection can lead either to rapid replication and destruction of the cell or to a long-term chronic relationship with possible integration of the viral genetic information into the host genome. The factors that determine which of these takes place are only partially understood.

Viral disease can range from the benign common cold to life-threatening Ebola, with acute, chronic, and even cancer-promoting presentations. The immune response provides both protection and pathology and may be the primary cause of illness. Often initiated with nonspecific flulike symptoms caused by host responses to the virus in the blood, viral disease is characterized by the target tissue(s) infected by the virus. Classic symptomatology guides diagnosis with confirmation by isolation in cell culture, detection of viral components, or antiviral immune responses with a prominent role for genetic detection and sequencing. Treatment has advanced so that there is now a tolerable cure for hepatitis C virus and lifelong maintenance of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infections. New vaccines have reduced the risk for several viruses, and vaccines for human papillomavirus and hepatitis B virus are also preventing cancers.

Bacteria

Bacteria are deceptively simple in structure. They are **prokaryotic** organisms, which are simple unicellular organisms with no nuclear membrane, mitochondria, Golgi bodies, or endoplasmic reticulum, that reproduce by asexual division. Most bacteria have either a gram-positive cell wall with a thick peptidoglycan layer, or a gram-negative cell wall with a thin peptidoglycan layer and an overlying outer membrane. Bacteria, such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* have more complex cell walls and others lack this cell wall structure and compensate by surviving only inside host cells or in a hypertonic environment. The size (1 to 20 μm or larger), shape (spheres, rods, and spirals), and spatial arrangement (single cells, chains, and clusters) of the cells are used for the preliminary classification of bacteria,

and the phenotypic and genotypic properties of the bacteria form the basis for the definitive classification.

We live in a microbial world with microbes in the air we breathe, the water we drink, and the food we eat, many of which are relatively avirulent but some of which are capable of producing life-threatening disease. The human body is inhabited by thousands of different bacterial species, with some living transiently and others living in a permanent parasitic relationship. This population of microbes residing in our intestines and on our skin and other mucoepithelial surfaces (called the "human microbiome") act almost as an organ of the body. Each of us harbor a unique microbiome, which, similar to a fingerprint, has similarities but individual differences. Although influenced by our genetics and policed by our immune system, the microbiome is sensitive to the environment, our diet, and the antibiotics and other drugs we take. As genetic analysis methods become faster and cheaper, the influences of specific types of microbes within the microbiome on our immune system, metabolism, drug metabolism, behavior, and general health are uncovered. The near future will see increased use of therapeutic manipulation of the intestinal microbiome with fecal transplants beyond the current treatment of recurrent *Clostridium difficile* colitis to correct inflammatory bowel disease, type 2 diabetes-associated metabolic syndrome, and other diseases.

Bacterial disease can result from the toxic effects of bacterial products (e.g., toxins) or when bacteria invade normally sterile body tissues and fluids. Some bacteria are always pathogenic, expressing virulence factors that cause tissue damage, whereas others cause disease by stimulating inflammation, and many do both. Proper identification of the infecting bacteria allows for prediction of the disease course and appropriate antimicrobial therapy. Unfortunately, inappropriate use of antimicrobials and other factors have led to the selection of multiply antimicrobial-resistant bacteria that cannot be treated.

Fungi

In contrast to bacteria, the cellular structure of fungi is more complex. These are **eukaryotic** organisms that contain a well-defined nucleus, mitochondria, Golgi bodies, and endoplasmic reticulum. Fungi can exist either in a unicellular form **(yeast),** which can replicate asexually, or in a filamentous form **(mold),** which can replicate asexually and sexually. Some fungi have a mold form in the environment and a spherical form in the body at 37° C. These are known as **dimorphic** fungi and include such organisms as *Histoplasma, Blastomyces,* and *Coccidiodes.*

Fungal infections range from benign skin infections to life-threatening pneumonias, sepsis, and disfiguring diseases. Most fungi are effectively controlled by host immunity and can reside within an individual for a lifetime, but these same fungi can cause serious disease in the immunocompromised host. Antimicrobial therapy addresses unique metabolic pathways and structures of the fungi but may be toxic and requires lengthy treatments. As with bacteria, extensive use of antifungal agents in the hospital setting has resulted in the emergence of yeasts and molds that express intrinsic and acquired resistance to several different classes of antifungal agents.

Parasites

Parasites are the most complex microbes. Although all parasites are classified as eukaryotic, some are unicellular and others are multicellular. They range in size from tiny protozoa as small as 4 to 5 μm in diameter (the size of some bacteria) to tapeworms that can measure up to 10 m in length and arthropods (bugs). Indeed, considering the size of some of these parasites, it is hard to imagine how these organisms came to be classified as microbes. Their life cycles are equally complex, with some parasites establishing a permanent relationship with humans and others going through a series of developmental stages in a progression of animal hosts. Parasitic disease is diagnosed by symptoms, a good patient history, and detection of the microbe. Helpful hints are obtained from the travel and dietary history of the patient, because many parasites are unique to different global regions. Therapies exist for some but not all parasites, and the development of resistance to antiparasitic agents complicates the prevention and treatment of many infections involving parasites.

Immunology

It is difficult to discuss human microbiology without also discussing the innate and immune responses to the microbes. Our innate and immune responses evolved to maintain our normal flora microbiome and protect us from infection by pathogens. Physical barriers prevent invasion by the microbe; innate responses recognize molecular patterns on the microbial components and activate local defenses; and specific adapted immune responses target invading microbes for eliminationand block their toxins. Unfortunately, the immune response is often too late or too slow to prevent or limit the spread of the infection. The ensuing war between the host protections and microbial invaders escalates and, even when successful, the inflammatory response that results often contributes to or may be the cause of the symptoms of the disease. To improve the human body's ability to prevent infection, the immune system can be augmented either through the passive transfer of antibodies present in immunoglobulin preparations or through active immunization with components of the microbes (vaccines). Ultimately, the innate and immune responses are the best prevention and cure for microbial disease.

Diagnostic Microbiology

The clinical microbiology laboratory plays an important role in the diagnosis and control of infectious diseases. Newer molecular, proteomic, and immunologic technologies are being used to enhance the information that the laboratory can provide.

Many of the diagnostic tests require viable samples, and the quality of the results depends on the quality of the specimen collected from the patient, the means by which it is transported from the patient to the laboratory, and the techniques used to demonstrate the microbe in the sample. In addition, the collected specimen must be representative

BOX 1.1 Four Questions Regarding an Infectious Disease Patient

1. Is it an infection?
2. Where is the infection?
3. Which microbe is causing the infection, and how is it causing the disease?
4. Should it be treated and if so, what is the best treatment?

of the site of infection and not contaminated during collection with other organisms that colonize skin and mucosal surfaces. Antimicrobial susceptibility determinations require viable and representative microbes purified from the clinical sample. Knowing the minimal inhibitory or biocidal concentrations for specific drugs is important for prescribing the best treatment.

The procedures for genome and antigen analysis have become less expensive and available for more pathogens. These procedures may not require viable samples. These assays are very sensitive and specific and can speed up the analysis.

TABLE 1.1 Indications of an Infection

• Fever
• High neutrophil count
• Pneumonia
• Diarrhea
• Rash
• Abscess
• Flulike symptoms
• Chills
• Lymphadenopathy
• Enlarged liver or spleen
• Unexplained weight loss
• Sore throat
• "itises"
• Sepsis
• "Hot joint"

Microbiology and Immunology in the Clinic

Relatively few organisms are classified as always pathogenic (e.g., rabies virus, *Bacillus anthracis*, *Shigella*, *Sporothrix schenckii*), whereas some establish disease only under well-defined circumstances or under certain conditions (e.g., opportunistic infections of immunocompromised individuals). Some diseases arise when a person is exposed to organisms from external sources, which is called an **exogenous infection** (e.g., influenza virus, *C. tetani, Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Coccidioides immitis,* and *Entamoeba histolytica),* but most human diseases are produced by organisms from the person's own microbial flora that spread to normally sterile body sites (e.g., blood, brain, lungs, peritoneal cavity) in which disease can ensue **(endogenous infections).** Some infections cause a single well-defined disease, which is oftentimes caused by the action of a virulence factor, such as a toxin (e.g., *C. tetani* [tetanus]), whereas others can cause several manifestations of disease (e.g., *Staphylococcus aureus* causes endocarditis, pneumonia, wound infections, food poisoning). The same disease can also be caused by different microbes (e.g., meningitis can be caused by viruses, bacteria, fungi, and parasites).

By understanding the characteristics of the microbe and the host's response to infection, a Sherlock Holmes–like approach can be applied to the microbial villain to solve the clinical infectious disease case. In addition, proper precautions can be taken to protect oneself and others from infection, and a sensible approach to prescribing appropriate therapy can be designed. When approaching a patient with an infectious disease, there are four questions that must be answered (Box 1.1).

Question 1 and the first step in treating an infectious disease is to recognize and distinguish an infection from other maladies. Infections are often accompanied by fever, inflammation, swollen lymph nodes, and other symptoms (Table 1.1). Many of these disease presentations are caused by the inflammatory response to the infection. These same presentations can be induced by other disease syndromes.

The next question is, where is the infection? Knowing the site of infection can provide clues as to the possible microbes causing the infection and is important in picking an antimicrobial that can reach the infected tissue or site.

The answers to Question 3 are the main subjects of this book: Which microbe is causing the infection and how is it causing the disease? Although the distinction of bacterial, viral, fungal, and parasitic infections can oftentimes be made from the history and physical presentations of the patient, certain laboratory tests can help focus the diagnosis. For example, bacterial infections are often accompanied by increases in serum levels of C-reactive protein and procalcitonin, which are components of an inflammatory response. Once a differential diagnosis (a list of most probable villains) is obtained, then confirmatory tests can identify the disease-causing microbe. Chapters 4 to 6 introduce the different types of tests and their application to each of the microbes to be discussed. In addition to knowing the most appropriate test for a microbe or microbial syndrome, it is also important to know the limitations, sensitivity, and specificity of the tests.

More and more individuals are living with immunodeficiencies caused by treatments for cancer, autoimmune diseases, or infections (e.g., AIDS). These individuals become susceptible to infections caused by less virulent or nonvirulent microbes that do not affect other individuals. The importance of the deficient immune response becomes very apparent for protections against these microbes.

Bacterial disease is usually determined by the microbe's virulence factors. For some, it is a one–one correspondence, such as for toxin-producing *Corynebacterium diphtheriae, Vibrio cholera,* and *C. botulinum*. For others, the disease may result from colonization, toxic by-products, or the immune and inflammatory responses to the microbe. Immune and inflammatory responses are triggered by structures of the microbe. Repetitive microbial structures provide

pathogen-associated molecular patterns that induce innate responses, whereas specific structures are recognized by the immune response. In addition, extracellular bacterial and fungal structures usually trigger the activation of a cascade of soluble proteins of the complement system, which recruits macrophages and neutrophils to the infection site, initiates inflammation, activates antibody production, and generates a molecular membrane pore in the microbe. Intracellular infections, including viruses, bacteria, fungi, and parasites, require a different immune response, and the consequences are also different. Human cells respond to an intracellular microbial infection by shutting down cellular processes and by activating cytolytic cellular responses (natural killer [NK] cell, T cell, and macrophage responses) that kill or wall off the infected cells. Antibody is generated to inactivate toxins, to prevent binding of the microbe, and to facilitate its uptake and clearance by macrophages and neutrophils. The nature of the disease and susceptibility of an individual to a pathogen is determined by how soon the protective response can act on the infection, the efficacy of the response, and the immunopathologic consequences of that response. Inflammation accompanies most immune responses and sometimes it is just as important to treat the inflammation as it is to treat the infection to reduce the severity of the disease.

The fourth question should take considerable thought: Should the microbe be treated and, if so, what is the best treatment? Designing appropriate therapy is necessary for those infections that do not resolve on their own. Although safe, antibiotic treatment can disrupt the normal flora which may allow more pathogenic bacteria or fungi to take their place. Proper therapy requires getting enough of the right antimicrobial drug to a sensitive target within the microbe at the site of infection in the body. The antimicrobial potency and spectrum of activity and the pharmacologic properties of the drug are determined by the structure and mode of action of the drug. Microbes may be naturally resistant, mutate, or acquire genetic information to make them resistant and those that are resistant to antibiotics will be selected and will endure. Initial antimicrobial choices may attempt to cover all possible pathogens, but on identification of the microbe and its antimicrobial susceptibilities, antibiotics that are more specific, less expensive, easier to administer, and with fewer side effects should be prescribed. Proper **antimicrobial stewardship** will reduce cost, side effects, and potential development of resistant strains. Antimicrobial drugs are discussed in Chapters 17, 40, 61, and 71.

In addition to the four questions relating to the patient, the care provider must also know how to protect themselves and others from infection. Key questions include: Is there a vaccine? What safety precautions should be taken? How can hands, objects and contaminated surfaces be disinfected? The best means to protect an individual from infection is to prevent exposure or contact, and the second best means is to be immunized against the microbe, by prior infection, or vaccine. Proper sanitation and disinfection techniques are discussed in Chapter 3, and vaccines are discussed in Chapter 11. Restricting access to infected individuals or areas by **quarantine** helped prevent the spread of the smallpox virus and with an effective vaccine and worldwide vaccination program, it led to the elimination of the virus.

Knowing the epidemiologic characteristics of the microbe helps determine the potential for exposure and identify who is at risk to infection. This includes the means of spread, the vector, if utilized, geographical distribution, and seasonal presence of the microbe, as well as the influence of personal health, genetics, habits, and lifestyle, which increases risk of infection and disease. Asking a patient whether they have traveled recently has become a key question in obtaining a diagnosis and is an indication of the globalization of disease.

Summary

It is important to realize that our knowledge of the microbial world is evolving continually. Just as the early microbiologists built their discoveries on the foundations established by their predecessors, present and future generations will continue to discover new microbes, new diseases, and new therapies. The following chapters are intended as a foundation of knowledge that can be used to build your understanding of microbes and their diseases.

2 Human Microbiome in Health and Disease

Up until the time of birth, the human fetus lives in a remarkably protected and for the most part sterile environment; however, this rapidly changes as the infant is exposed to bacteria, archaea, fungi, and viruses from the mother, other close contacts, and the environment. Over the next few years, communities of organisms (**microbiota** or **normal flora** [Table 2.1]) form on the surfaces of the skin, nares, oral cavity, intestines, and genitourinary tract. The focus of this chapter is to gain an understanding of the role these communities play in the metabolic and immunologic functions of healthy individuals, factors regulating the composition of these communities, and how disruption of these communities can result in disease states.

Human Microbiome Project

Our current knowledge of the **microbiome** is rooted in the successful completion of the Human Genome Project, which was a 13-year international effort initiated in 1990 that determined the sequences of the approximately 3 billion nucleotides that make up the 23,000 protein-encoding genes in human deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Much like efforts to send a man to the moon, the greatest legacy of this work was the development of technologies that allow the generation and analysis of tremendous amounts of DNA and ribonucleic acid (RNA) sequencing data.

The Human Genome Project was followed by the Human Microbiome Project, which was a 5-year multinational study to analyze the genetic composition of the microbial populations that live in and on healthy adults **(microbiome)**. To put the complexity of this program into perspective, it is estimated that bacterial cells outnumber human cells in the host by 10:1, and the bacterial population contributes at least 300-fold more unique protein genes.

The Human Microbiome Project was launched in 2007 with a collection of samples from the nose, mouth, skin, gut, and vagina from healthy adult volunteers. The microbes were identified by sequencing targeted regions of the 16S ribosomal RNA gene, and information about the gene content of the entire population was determined by sequencing the entire genome of a subset of specimens. These analyses showed that there is substantial variation in the species and gene composition for individuals and at different body sites. For example, bacteria colonizing the gut are different from those in the mouth, skin, and other body sites. The body site with the greatest taxonomic and genetic diversity was the intestine, and the vagina was the least complex. Microenvironments such as different regions of the mouth, gut, skin surface, and vagina also had their own unique microbiome (Fig. 2.1).

Core Microbiome

Most individuals share a **core microbiome,** arbitrarily defined as the species that are present at a specific site in 95% or more of individuals. The greatest numbers of shared

Table 2.1 Glossary of Terms

Term	Definition
Microbiota	Community of microbes that live in and on an individual; can vary substantially between environmental sites and host niches in health and disease
Normal flora	Microbiota
Microbiome	Aggregate collection of microbial genomes in the microbiota
Core microbiome	Commonly shared microbial species among individuals at specific body sites; although typically represented by a limited number of species, these comprise the largest proportion of the microbial population
Secondary microbiome	Microbial species that contribute to the unique diversity of individuals at specific body sites; typically present in proportionately small numbers
Functional redundancy	Required functions (e.g., metabolism of nutrients, regulation of the immune response) that are provided by the diverse members of the microbiota
Taxonomic diversity	Diverse number of species that comprise the microbiota
Proteomics	Study of the protein products of the microbiome population
Metabolomics	Study of metabolic activity of the microbiome population
Prebiotic	Food ingredient that supports the growth of one or more members of the microbiota
Probiotic	Live organism that, when ingested, is believed to provide benefit to the host

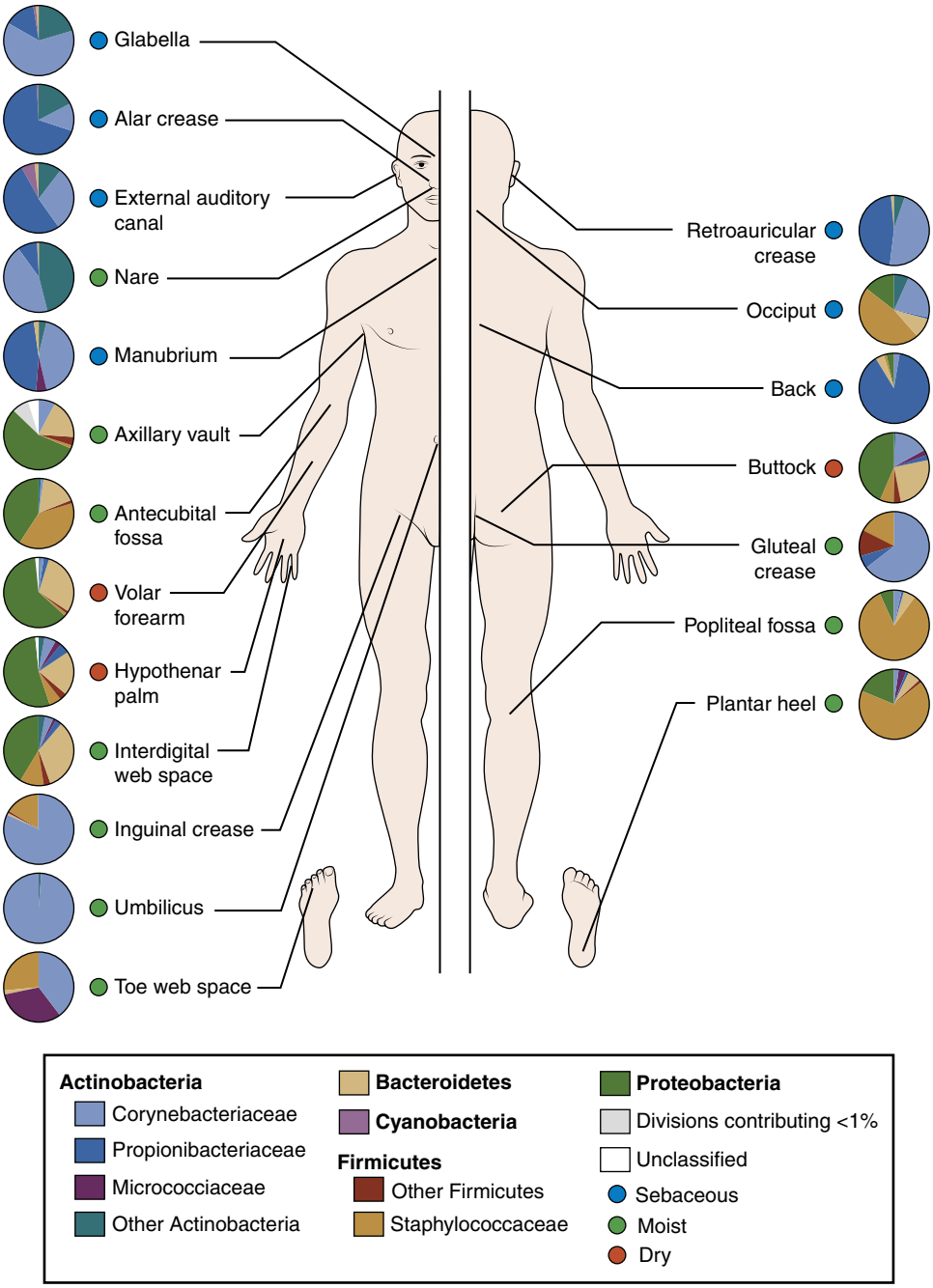


Fig. 2.1 Topographical distribution of bacteria on skin sites. As at other body sites, the distribution of the skin microbiome is dependent on the microenvironment of the sampled site, such as sebaceous or oily *(blue circles);* moist *(green circles);* and dry, flat surfaces *(red circles).* (From Grice, E., Segre, J. 2011. The skin microbiome. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 9, 244–253.)

species are present in the mouth, followed by the nose, intestine, and skin, and the fewest shared species are found in the vagina. Additionally, the small numbers of species that comprise the core microbiome are the most numerous, representing the majority of the total population, whereas the remaining portion of the population **(secondary microbiome)** consists of small numbers of many species that may not be widely shared by individuals. This would imply that the members of the core microbiome are critically important, providing essential functions that must be retained for normal metabolic and immunologic activities, and the functions provided by the secondary microbiome are also critically important but can be provided by a variety of organisms. In other words, although there is tremendous variation of species among individuals, there is less variation in the genetic composition at each site. The **taxonomic diversity** of a population is great, but the functional properties are highly conserved **(functional redundancy)** in microbiomes associated with health. This is not surprising if we consider that the microbiome is a community that exists in a symbiotic relationship with its host, providing needed metabolic functions, stimulating innate immunity, and preventing colonization with unwanted pathogens. Thus interpersonal variations of the microbiome can exist in healthy individuals as long as the needed functions are satisfied.

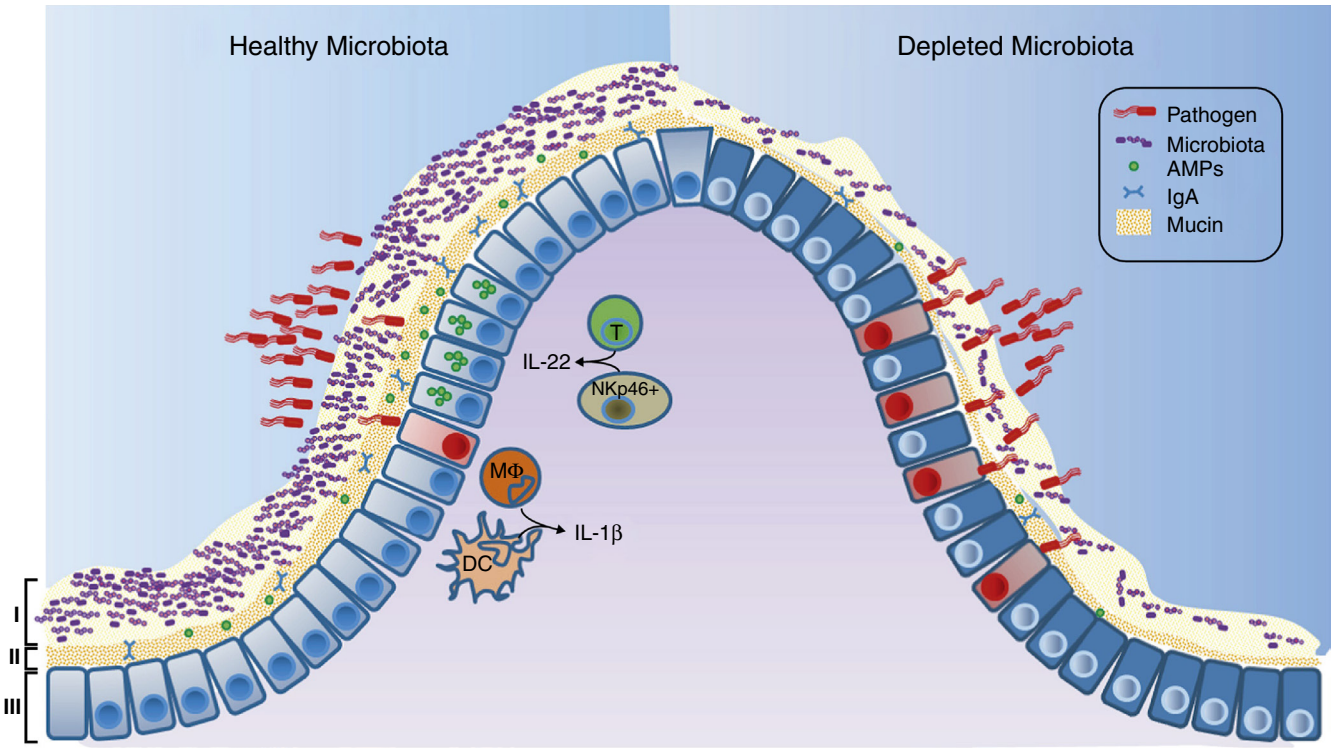


Fig. 2.2 Intestinal microbiota protection against enteric infections. (I) Saturation of colonization sites and consumption of nutrients limit pathogen access to host tissues; (II) the microbiota prime innate immunity by stimulating mucin production, immunoglobulin *(Ig)*A, and antimicrobial peptides *(AMPs);* and (III) the microbiota stimulate interleukin *(IL)*-22 expression, which increases epithelial resistance, and IL-1β production, which promotes recruitment of inflammatory cells. (From Khosravi, A., Mazmanian, S. 2013. Disruption of the gut microbiome as a risk factor for microbial infections. Curr. Opin. Microbiol. 16, 221–227.)

Evolution of the Microbiome and Normal Flora

The **normal flora** of a particular site of the body consists of a unique community of core and secondary microbiota that evolved through a symbiotic relationship with the host and a competitive relationship with other species. The host provides a place to colonize, nutrients, and some protection from unwanted species (innate immune responses). The microbes provide needed metabolic functions, stimulate innate and regulatory immunity, and prevent colonization with unwanted pathogens (Fig. 2.2). The ability to tolerate the amount of oxygen or lack thereof (redox state) and the pH and salt concentration, as well as to scavenge essential minerals and harvest and metabolize the available nutrients, determines the numbers and nature of the species that populate a site of the body. Anaerobic or facultative anaerobic bacteria colonize most of the sites of the body because of the lack of oxygen in sites such as the mouth, intestine, and genitourinary tract.

The composition of the microbiota is influenced by personal hygiene (e.g., use of soap, deodorants, mouthwash, skin peels, enemas, vaginal douches), diet, water source, medicines (especially antibiotics), and exposure to environmental toxins. Drinking well water versus chlorinated city water or a diet consisting of more or less fiber, sugar, or fats can select for different intestinal bacteria based on their ability to use the essential minerals (e.g., iron) and nutrients. Alteration of the environment with foods or medicines can also alter the microbiota (Fig. 2.3). These changes can be acceptable if the core microbiome and critical functional properties of the microbiome are maintained but can result in disease if these functions are lost. Historically, the greatest concern with the use of broad-spectrum antibiotics was the selection of resistant bacteria; however, a greater concern should be the disruption of the microbiome and loss of essential functions.

Of the approximately 200 unique species of bacteria that colonize the gut, most are members of Actinobacteria (e.g., *Bifidobacterium*), Bacteroidetes (e.g., *Bacteroides*), and Firmicutes (e.g., *Eubacterium, Ruminococcus, Faecalibacterium, Blautia*). Interestingly, the importance of many of these bacteria was not appreciated before gene sequencing was used to identify and quantitate the gut microbiota. Within the colon, some bacteria wage interspecies warfare to establish their niche with bacteriocins (e.g., colicins produced by *Escherichia coli*), other antibacterial proteins, and metabolites that deter other species from growing. These molecules also benefit the host by eliminating invading bacteria including *Salmonella, Shigella, Clostridium difficile, Bacillus cereus,* and other pathogens. The bacteria must also resist antimicrobial peptides and immunoglobulin (Ig) A produced by the host and released into the bowel.

Metabolism of nutrients plays a major role in the symbiotic relationship between the human host and microbe. Bacteria in the human gut are responsible for metabolizing complex carbohydrates (including cellulose) to provide small-chain fatty acids such as acetate, propionate, and butyrate that can be readily transported and used by the cells of our body. These acids also limit the growth of

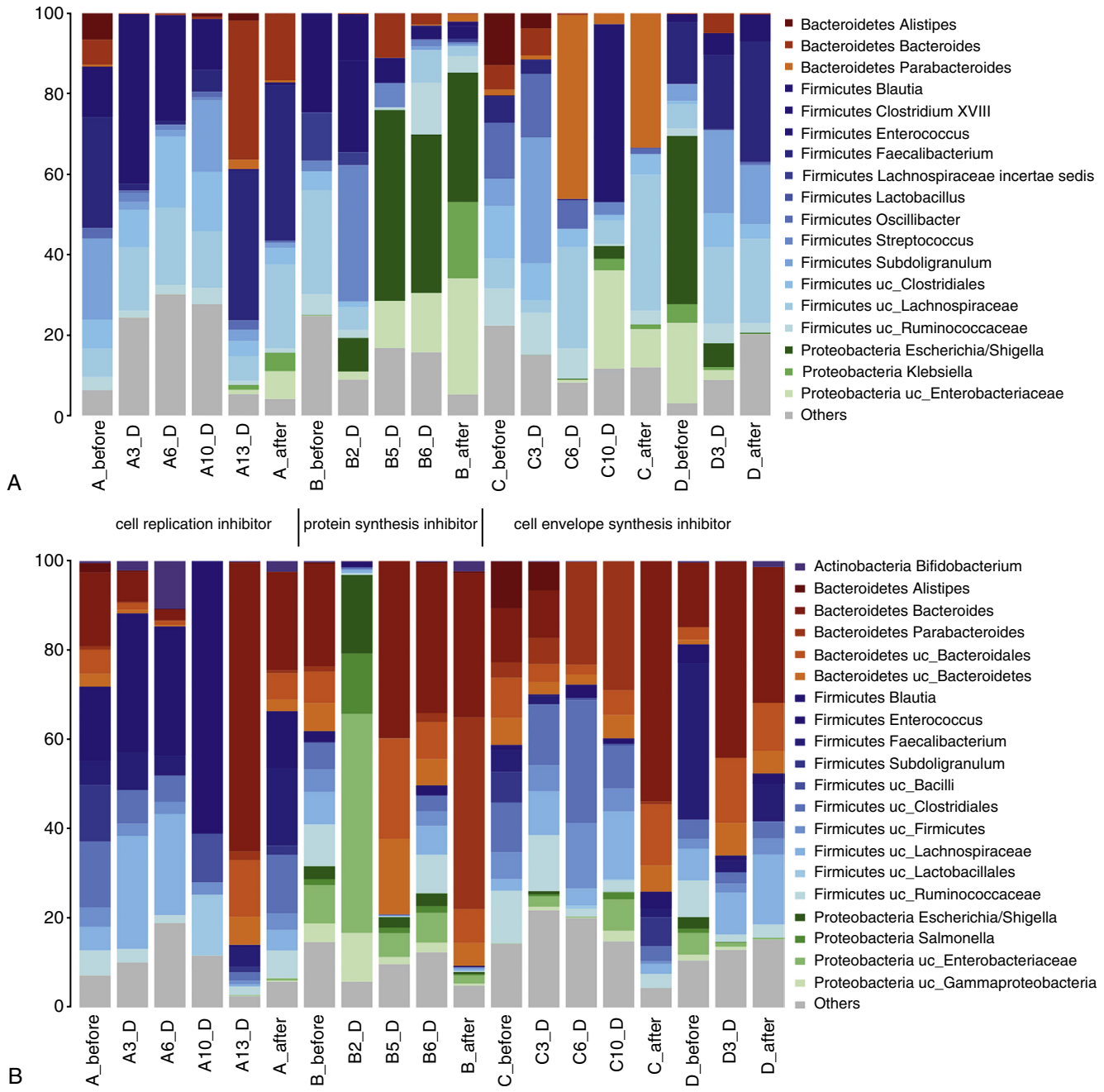


Fig. 2.3 Effect of antibiotics on the gut microbiota. Fecal samples were collected from four patients treated with antibiotics: patient A, moxifloxacin; patient B, penicillin + clindamycin; patient C, cefazolin followed by ampicillin/sulbactam; and patient D, amoxicillin. Fecal samples collected before, during (e.g., 3_D is day 3 of therapy), and after therapy were used to assess the total microbiota. Changes are noted both during therapy and after therapy is discontinued. **A,** Total microbiota (16S rRNA gene). **B,** Metabolically active microbiota (16S rRNA transcripts). (From Perez-Cobas, A. E., Artacho, A., Knecht, H., et al., 2013. Differential effects of antibiotic therapy on the structure and function of human gut microbiota. PLoS One 8, e80201.)

undesirable bacteria. Other bacteria graze on the carbohydrates, the mucins that line the epithelium, or the oils released in our sweat. Bacteroidetes and Firmicutes are more efficient than others at breaking down complex carbohydrates, including plant cell wall compounds (cellulose, pectin, and xylan) and host-derived carbohydrates, including those attached to the mucins or chondroitin sulfates of the protective mucous layer of the intestine. Increases in the ratio of these bacteria in the gut microbiome can lead to a higher efficiency in storage of the metabolic by-products. This can be a benefit for malnourished populations or patients with debilitating diseases such as cancer, or can lead to obesity in well-nourished populations.

Role of the Microbiome in Disease

If the normal microbiome characterizes health, then alterations in the microbiome can signify disease; this is a relationship we are only beginning to understand.

In 1884 Robert Koch and Friedrich Loeffler defined the relationship between an organism and infection. The **Koch postulates** were based on the concept of one organism:one disease. Microbiome research has introduced a new concept of disease caused by a community of organisms rather than a single species of bacteria, and the influence extends beyond traditional "infectious" diseases to include immunologic and metabolic disorders such as inflammatory bowel disease, obesity, type 2 diabetes, and celiac disease. We are now at the forefront of a new era of redefining the concept of infectious diseases.

Disruption of the normal microflora (commonly referred to as **dysbiosis**) can lead to disease by the elimination of needed organisms or allowing the growth of inappropriate bacteria. For example, following exposure to antibiotics and suppression of the intestinal normal flora, *C. difficile* is able to proliferate and express enterotoxins, leading to inflammation of the colon **(antibiotic-associated colitis).** Another disease of the colon, **ulcerative colitis,** is associated with an increased level of bacteria producing mucin-degrading sulfatases, leading to degradation of the protective mucosal lining of the intestinal wall and stimulation of inflammatory immune responses. Individuals with an intestinal microbiota that is more efficient at breaking down complex carbohydrates internalize rather than void these nutrients; therefore they are susceptible to **obesity** and a predisposition to metabolic syndromes such as **type 2 diabetes.** Not all patients genetically predisposed to **celiac disease,** which is an immune-mediated enteropathy precipitated by exposure to gluten proteins, are symptomatic. The intestinal microbiota of most individuals is composed of bacteria capable of digesting glutens, which may be sufficient to protect these genetically predisposed individuals. In the absence of these bacteria, disease may occur. Shifts in the skin microbiome are associated with progression to **chronic wound infections** and episodic exacerbations of **atopic dermatitis.** Alteration in the vaginal microbiome from relatively few predominant organisms to a heterogeneous mixed population is associated with the progression to **vaginitis.**

Diagnostics and Therapeutics

An understanding of the influence of dysbiosis on disease pathology can lead to both advanced diagnostic tests and paths for therapeutic intervention. Just as the presence of *Salmonella* or *Shigella* signifies disease, changes in the diversity and composition of the fecal microflora can also indicate susceptibility to or onset of disease. The most obvious example is *C. difficile* disease, which is a clinical disease preceded by a depletion of the normal flora because of antibiotic use. Interestingly, patients with chronic relapsing *C. difficile* infections are treated successfully by repopulating (some say **"repoopulating"**) the intestines with stool transplants from a healthy spouse or close relative, or with artificially created stool specimens consisting of a complex mixture of aerobic and anaerobic fecal organisms.

More subtle alterations in the gut microbiome may predict development of diseases such as **necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC),** inflammatory bowel disease, and a predilection for obesity. NEC is a devastating intestinal disease that afflicts preterm infants. Prospectively collected stool samples from infants younger than 29 weeks' gestational age who develop NEC demonstrate a distinct dysbiosis prior to the development of disease. Infants with early-onset disease have a dominance of Firmicutes (predominantly *Staphylococcus*), whereas infants with late-onset NEC have a dominance of Enterobacteriaceae.

The effects of microbiome alterations have also been described for the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease and colorectal cancer. Proliferation of bacteria such as *Akkermansia muciniphila* that produce mucin-degrading sulfatases is responsible for degradation of the intestinal wall lining. Additionally, an increase in members of the anaerobic family Prevotellaceae leads to upregulation of chemokine-mediated inflammation. Enterotoxigenic *Bacteroides fragilis* can also induce T helper cell–mediated inflammatory responses that are associated with colitis and are a precursor to colonic hyperplasia and colorectal tumors. Finally, *Methanobrevibacter smithii,* a minor member of the gut microbiome, enhances digestion of dietary glycans by *B. thetaiotaomicron* and other core intestinal bacteria, leading to accumulation of fat.

Alterations of the microbiome leading to disease may not be characterized by the presence or absence of a specific microbe because more than one organism may provide the needed function. It is likely that future diagnostics will measure for the presence or absence of a specific gene product **(proteomics)** or metabolic function **(metabolomics)**.

Probiotics

Probiotics are mixtures of bacteria or yeast that when ingested colonize and proliferate, even temporarily, the intestine. Consumers of probiotics believe they act by rebalancing the microbiome and its functions, such as enhancing digestion of food and modulating the individual's innate and immune response. The most common reason people use over-the-counter probiotics is to promote and maintain regular bowel function and improve tolerance to lactose. Probiotics are commonly gram-positive bacteria (e.g., *Bifidobacterium, Lactobacillus*) and yeasts (e.g., *Saccharomyces*). Many of these microbes are found in ingestible capsules and as food supplements (e.g., yogurt, kefir). Probiotics have been used to treat *C. difficile*–associated diarrhea and inflammatory bowel disease, to provide protection from *Salmonella* and *Helicobacter pylori* disease, as therapy for pediatric atopic dermatitis and autoimmune diseases, and even for reduction in dental caries, although the value of probiotics for many of these conditions is unproven. Although probiotics are generally safe dietary supplements, many probiotics are ineffective. The species, mixture of species, and dose and viability of the probiotic organisms within a probiotic formulation influence its potency, efficacy, and therapeutic potential. What is clear is that much like the use of complex artificial mixtures of organisms to treat recurrent *C. difficile* disease, carefully designed "smart probiotics" will likely be an important adjunct to medical therapy in the future.

Perspective

In the near future, with faster and cheaper DNA sequencing procedures, analysis of a person's microbiome may become a routine diagnostic test for predicting and treating a wide range of diseases. However, a number of questions remain to be resolved: Can we predict disease in an individual by monitoring changes in the microbiome? Which changes are most important, taxonomic or genetic function? Can we prevent disease or treat disease by reestablishing a healthy microbiome? Can this be done by prescribing specific replacement microbes (e.g., fecal transplant) or with a universal mixture (probiotic)? Can the use of metabolic supplements **(prebiotics)** promote a healthy microbiota? Will use of antibiotics be replaced by use of "smart microbiome" therapies? Other questions include: What is the role of the host genome, environmental factors, and our hygienic practices in shaping the microbiome? What will be the informatic requirements for guiding diagnostics or therapeutics? Regardless of the answers to these and other questions, it is certain that we are witnessing the beginning of a new era of microbiology that can radically change our approach to prediction, diagnosis, and treatment of disease.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Blum, H., 2017. The human microbiome. Adv. Med. Sci. 62, 414–420.

Cho, I., Blaser, M.J., 2012. The human microbiome: at the interface of health and disease. Nat. Rev. Genet. 13, 260–270.

Damman, C.J., Miller, S.I., Surawicz, C.M., et al., 2012. The microbiome and inflammatory bowel disease: is there a therapeutic role for fecal microbiota transplantation? Am. J. Gastroenterol. 107, 1452–1459.

David, L.A., Maurice, C.F., Carmody, R.N., et al., 2014. Diet rapidly and reproducibly alters the human gut microbiome. Nature 505, 559–563.

Faith, J.J., Guruge, J.L., Charbonneau, M., et al., 2013. The long-term stability of the human gut microbiota. Science 341, 1237439.

Gevers, D., Knight, R., Petrosino, J.F., et al., 2012. The Human Microbiome Project: a community resource for the healthy human microbiome. PLoS Biol. 10, e1001377.

Grice, E., Segre, J., 2011. The skin microbiome. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 9, 244–253.

Human Microbiome Project Consortium, 2012. A framework for human microbiome research. Nature 486, 215–221.

Human Microbiome Project Consortium, 2012. Structure, function and diversity of the healthy human microbiome. Nature 486, 207–214.

Li, K., Bihan, M., Methé, B.A., 2013. Analyses of the stability and core taxonomic memberships of the human microbiome. PLoS ONE 8, e63139.

McDermott, A.J., Huffnagle, G.B., 2014. The microbiome and regulation of mucosal immunity. Immunology 142, 24–31.

Morgan, X.C., Segata, N., Huttenhower, C., 2013. Biodiversity and functional genomics in the human microbiome. Trends Genet. 29, 51–58.

Murray, P., 2013. The Human Microbiome Project: the beginning and future status. Ann. Clin. Microbiol. 16, 162–167.

Perez-Cobas, A.E., Artacho, A., Knecht, H., et al., 2013. Differential effects of antibiotic therapy on the structure and function of human gut microbiota. PLoS ONE 8, e80201.

Petrof, E.O., Claud, E.C., Gloor, G.B., et al., 2013. Microbial ecosystems therapeutics: a new paradigm in medicine? Benef. Microbes 4, 53–65.

Petschow, B., Dore, J., Hibberd, P., et al., 2013. Probiotics, prebiotics, and the host microbiome: the science of translation. Ann. N Y Acad. Sci. 1306, 1–17.

Shaffer, M., Armstrong, A., Phelan, V., et al., 2017. Microbiome and metabolome data integration provides insights into health and disease. Transl. Res. 189, 51–64.

Venter, J.C., Adams, M.D., Myers, E.W., et al., 2001. The sequence of the human genome. Science 291, 1304–1351.

Zmora, N., Zilberman-Schapira, G., Mor, U., et al., 2018. Personalize gut mucosal colonization resistant to empiric probiotics is associated with unique host and microbiome features. Cell 174, 1388–1405.

Questions

1. What is the relationship between the human genome and microbiome genetic material?
2. Explain the concepts of taxonomic diversity and genetic diversity.
3. Explain the concept of the core microbiome.
4. Give three examples of alterations of the microbiome (dysbiosis) that are associated with specific diseases.

3 Sterilization, Disinfection, and Antisepsis

An important aspect of the control of infections is an understanding of the principles of sterilization, disinfection, and antisepsis (Box 3.1).

Sterilization

Sterilization is the total destruction of all microbes, including the more resilient forms such as bacterial spores, mycobacteria, nonenveloped (nonlipid) viruses, and fungi. This can be accomplished using physical, gas vapor, or chemical sterilants (Table 3.1).

Saturated steam under pressure is a widely used, inexpensive, nontoxic, and reliable method of sterilization. Three parameters are critical: the time of exposure to steam, temperature, and amount of moisture. The most commonly used sterilization cycle is use of saturated steam heated at 121° C for 15 minutes. Maintaining the proper temperature is critical because a drop of 1.7° C increases the needed exposure time by 48%. If no moisture is present, then the temperature must reach 160° C. Dry heat sterilization requires prolonged exposure times and damages many instruments, so it is not currently recommended.

Ethylene oxide gas is used to sterilize temperature- or pressure-sensitive items. Treatment is generally for 4 hours, and sterilized items must be aerated for an additional 12 hours to eliminate the toxic gas before the items are used. Although ethylene oxide is highly efficient, strict regulations limit its use because it is flammable, explosive, and carcinogenic to laboratory animals. For these reasons, ethylene oxide sterilization is avoided if acceptable alternatives are available.

Hydrogen peroxide vapors are effective sterilants because of the oxidizing nature of the gas. This sterilant is used for the sterilization of instruments. A variation is **plasma gas sterilization,** in which hydrogen peroxide is vaporized, and then reactive free radicals are produced with either microwave-frequency or radiofrequency energy. Because this is an efficient sterilizing method that does not produce toxic by-products, plasma gas sterilization has replaced many of the applications for ethylene oxide. However, it cannot be used with materials that absorb hydrogen peroxide or react with it.

Two **chemical sterilants** have also been used: **peracetic acid** and **glutaraldehyde.** Peracetic acid, an oxidizing agent, has excellent activity, and its end products (i.e., acetic acid and oxygen) are nontoxic. In contrast, safety is a concern with glutaraldehyde, and care must be used when handling this chemical.

Disinfection

Microbes are also destroyed by disinfection procedures, although more resilient organisms can survive. Unfortunately, the terms *disinfection* and *sterilization* are casually interchanged and can result in some confusion. This occurs because disinfection processes have been categorized as high level, intermediate level, and low level. High-level disinfection can generally approach sterilization in effectiveness, whereas spore forms can survive intermediate-level disinfection, and many microbes can remain viable when exposed to low-level disinfection.

Even the classification of disinfectants (Table 3.2) by their level of activity is misleading. The effectiveness of these procedures is influenced by the nature of the item to be disinfected, number and resilience of the contaminating organisms, amount of organic material present (which can inactivate the disinfectant), type and concentration of disinfectant, and duration and temperature of exposure.

High-level disinfectants are used for items involved with invasive procedures that cannot withstand sterilization procedures (e.g., certain types of endoscopes and surgical instruments with plastic or other components that cannot be autoclaved). Disinfection of these and other items is most effective if cleaning the surface to remove organic matter precedes treatment. Examples of high-level disinfectants include treatment with moist heat and use of liquids such as glutaraldehyde, hydrogen peroxide, peracetic acid, and chlorine compounds.

BOX 3.1 Definitions

Antisepsis: Use of chemical agents on skin or other living tissue to inhibit or eliminate microbes; no sporicidal action is implied

Disinfection: Use of physical procedures or chemical agents to destroy most microbial forms; bacterial spores and other relatively resistant organisms (e.g., mycobacteria, viruses, fungi) may remain viable; disinfectants are subdivided into high-, intermediate-, and low-level agents

Germicide: Chemical agent capable of killing microbes; includes virucide, bactericide, sporicide, tuberculocide, and fungicide

High-level disinfectant: A germicide that kills all microbial pathogens except large numbers of bacterial spores

Intermediate-level disinfectant: A germicide that kills all microbial pathogens except bacterial endospores

Low-level disinfectant: A germicide that kills most vegetative bacteria and lipid-enveloped and medium-size viruses

Sterilization: Use of physical procedures or chemical agents to destroy all microbial forms, including bacterial spores

Table 3.1 Methods of Sterilization

Method	Concentration or Level
PHYSICAL STERILANTS	
Steam under pressure	121° C or 132° C for various time intervals
Filtration	0.22- to 0.45-μm pore size; HEPA filters
Ultraviolet radiation	Variable exposure to 254-nm wavelength
Ionizing radiation	Variable exposure to microwave or gamma radiation
GAS VAPOR STERILANTS	
Ethylene oxide	450-1200 mg/L at 29° C to 65° C for 2-5 hr
Hydrogen peroxide vapor	30% at 55° C to 60° C
Plasma gas	Highly ionized hydrogen peroxide gas
CHEMICAL STERILANTS	
Peracetic acid	0.2%
Glutaraldehyde	2%

HEPA, High-efficiency particulate air.

Table 3.2 Methods of Disinfection

Method	Concentration (Level of Activity)
HEAT	
Moist heat	75° C to 100° C for 30 min (high)
LIQUID	
Glutaraldehyde	2%-3.2% (high)
Hydrogen peroxide	3%-25% (high)
Chlorine compounds	100-1000 ppm of free chlorine (high)
Alcohol (ethyl, isopropyl)	70%-95% (intermediate)
Phenolic compounds	0.4%-5.0% (intermediate/low)
Iodophor compounds	30-50 ppm of free iodine per liter (intermediate)
Quaternary ammonium compounds	0.4%-1.6% (low)

ppm, Parts per million.

Intermediate-level disinfectants (i.e., alcohols, iodophor compounds, phenolic compounds) are used to clean surfaces or instruments on which contamination with bacterial spores and other highly resilient organisms is unlikely. These have been referred to as semicritical instruments and devices and include flexible fiberoptic endoscopes, laryngoscopes, vaginal specula, anesthesia breathing circuits, and other items.

Low-level disinfectants (i.e., quaternary ammonium compounds) are used to treat noncritical instruments and devices, such as blood pressure cuffs, electrocardiogram electrodes, and stethoscopes. Although these items come into contact with patients, they do not penetrate through mucosal surfaces or into sterile tissues.

The level of disinfectants used for environmental surfaces is determined by the relative risk these surfaces pose as a reservoir for pathogenic organisms. For example, a higher level of disinfectant should be used to clean the surface of instruments contaminated with blood than that used to clean surfaces that are "dirty," such as floors, sinks, and countertops. The exception to this rule is if a particular surface has been implicated in a nosocomial infection, such as a bathroom contaminated with *Clostridium difficile* (spore-forming anaerobic bacterium) or a sink contaminated with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. In these cases, a disinfectant with appropriate activity against the implicated pathogen should be selected.

Table 3.3 Antiseptic Agents

Antiseptic Agent	Concentration
Alcohol (ethyl, isopropyl)	70%-90%
Iodophors	1-2 mg of free iodine per liter; 1%-2% available iodine
Chlorhexidine	0.5%-4.0%
Parachlorometaxylenol	0.50%-3.75%
Triclosan	0.3%-2.0%

Antisepsis

Antiseptic agents (Table 3.3) are used to reduce the number of microbes on skin surfaces. These compounds are selected for their safety and efficacy. A summary of their germicidal properties is presented in Table 3.4. **Alcohols** have excellent activity against all groups of organisms except spores and are nontoxic, although they tend to dry the skin surface because they remove lipids. They also do not have residual activity and are inactivated by organic matter. Thus the surface of the skin should be cleaned before alcohol is applied. **Iodophors** are also excellent skin antiseptic agents, having a range of activity similar to that of alcohols. They are slightly more toxic to the skin than is alcohol, have limited residual activity, and are inactivated by organic matter. Iodophors and iodine preparations are frequently used with alcohols for disinfecting the skin surface. **Chlorhexidine** has broad antimicrobial activity, although it kills organisms at a much slower rate than alcohol. Its activity persists, although organic material and high pH levels decrease its effectiveness. The activity of **parachlorometaxylenol (PCMX)** is limited primarily to gram-positive bacteria. Because it is nontoxic and has residual activity, it has been used in handwashing products. **Triclosan** is active against bacteria but not against many other organisms. It is a common antiseptic agent in deodorant soaps and some toothpaste products.

Mechanisms of Action

The following section briefly reviews the mechanisms by which the most common sterilants, disinfectants, and antiseptics work.

MOIST HEAT

Attempts to sterilize items using boiling water are inefficient because only a relatively low temperature (100° C) can be

TABLE 3.4 Germicidal Properties of Disinfectants and Antiseptic Agents

Agents	Bacteria	Mycobacteria	Bacterial Spores	Fungi	Viruses
DISINFECTANTS					
Alcohol	+	+	–	+	+/–
Hydrogen peroxide	+	+	+/–	+	+
Phenolics	+	+	–	+	+/–
Chlorine	+	+	+/–	+	+
Iodophors	+	+/–	–	+	+
Glutaraldehyde	+	+	+	+	+
Quaternary ammonium compounds	+/–	–	–	+/–	+/–
ANTISEPTIC AGENTS					
Alcohol	+	+	–	+	+
Iodophors	+	+	–	+	+
Chlorhexidine	+	+	–	+	+
Parachlorometaxylenol	+/–	+/–	–	+	+/–
Triclosan	+	+/–	–	+/–	+

maintained. Indeed, spore formation by a bacterium is commonly demonstrated by boiling a solution of organisms and then subculturing the solution. Boiling vegetative organisms kills them, but the spores remain viable. In contrast, steam under pressure in an autoclave is a very effective form of sterilization; the higher temperature causes denaturation of microbial proteins. The rate of killing organisms during the autoclave process is rapid but is influenced by the temperature and duration of autoclaving, size of the autoclave, flow rate of the steam, density and size of the load, and placement of the load in the chamber. Care must be taken to avoid creating air pockets, which inhibit penetration of the steam into the load. In general, most autoclaves are operated at 121° C to 132° C for 15 minutes or longer. Including commercial preparations of *Bacillus stearothermophilus,* spores can help monitor the effectiveness of sterilization. An ampule of these spores is placed in the center of the load, removed at the end of the autoclave process, and incubated at 37° C. If the sterilization process is successful, the spores are killed and the organisms fail to grow.

ETHYLENE OXIDE

Ethylene oxide is a colorless gas (soluble in water and common organic solvents) that is used to sterilize heat-sensitive items. The sterilization process is relatively slow and is influenced by the concentration of gas, relative humidity and moisture content of the item to be sterilized, exposure time, and temperature. The exposure time is reduced by 50% for each doubling of ethylene oxide concentration. Likewise, the activity of ethylene oxide approximately doubles with each temperature increase of 10° C. Sterilization with ethylene oxide is optimal in a relative humidity of approximately 30%, with decreased activity at higher or lower humidity. This is particularly problematic if the contaminated organisms are dried onto a surface or lyophilized. Ethylene oxide exerts its sporicidal activity through the alkylation of terminal hydroxyl, carboxyl, amino, and sulfhydryl groups. This process blocks the reactive groups required for many essential metabolic processes. Examples of other strong alkylating gases used as sterilants are formaldehyde and β-propiolactone. Because ethylene oxide can damage viable tissues, the gas must be dissipated before the item can be used. This aeration period is generally 16 hours or longer. The effectiveness of sterilization is monitored with the *B. subtilis* spore test.

ALDEHYDES

As with ethylene oxide, aldehydes exert their effect through alkylation. The two best known aldehydes are **formaldehyde** and **glutaraldehyde,** both of which can be used as sterilants or high-level disinfectants. Formaldehyde gas can be dissolved in water, creating a solution called formalin. Low concentrations of formalin are bacteriostatic (i.e., they inhibit but do not kill organisms), whereas higher concentrations (e.g., 20%) can kill all organisms. Combining formaldehyde with alcohol can enhance this microbicidal activity. Exposure of skin or mucous membranes to formaldehyde can be toxic, and vapors may be carcinogenic. For these reasons, formaldehyde is now rarely used in health care settings. Glutaraldehyde is less toxic for viable tissues, but it can still cause burns on the skin or mucous membranes. Glutaraldehyde is more active at alkaline pH levels ("activated" by sodium hydroxide) but is less stable. Glutaraldehyde is also inactivated by organic material, so items to be treated must first be cleaned.

OXIDIZING AGENTS

Examples of oxidants include ozone, peracetic acid, and hydrogen peroxide, and the latter is the most common. **Hydrogen peroxide** effectively kills most bacteria at a concentration of 3% to 6% and kills all organisms, including spores, at higher concentrations (10% to 25%). The active oxidant form is not hydrogen peroxide; it is the free hydroxyl radical formed by the decomposition of hydrogen peroxide. Hydrogen peroxide is used to disinfect plastic implants, contact lenses, and surgical prostheses.

HALOGENS

Halogens, such as compounds containing iodine or chlorine, are used extensively as disinfectants. **Iodine compounds** are the most effective halogens available for disinfection. Iodine is a highly reactive element that precipitates proteins and oxidizes essential enzymes. It is microbicidal against virtually all organisms, including spore-forming bacteria and mycobacteria. Neither the concentration nor the pH of the iodine solution affects the microbicidal activity, although the efficiency of iodine solutions is increased in acid solutions because more free iodine is liberated. Iodine acts more rapidly than do other halogen compounds or quaternary ammonium compounds. However, the activity of iodine can be reduced in the presence of some organic and inorganic compounds, including serum, feces, ascitic fluid, sputum, urine, sodium thiosulfate, and ammonia. Elemental iodine can be dissolved in aqueous potassium iodide or alcohol, or it can be complexed with a carrier. The latter compound is referred to as an *iodophor* (*iodo* means iodine, and *phor* means carrier). Povidone-iodine (iodine complexed with polyvinylpyrrolidone) is used most often and is relatively stable and nontoxic to tissues and metal surfaces, but it is expensive compared with other iodine solutions.

Chlorine compounds are also used extensively as disinfectants. Aqueous solutions of chlorine are rapidly bactericidal, although their mechanisms of action are not defined. Three forms of chlorine may be present in water: elemental chlorine (Cl_2), which is a very strong oxidizing agent; hypochlorous acid (HOCl); and hypochlorite ion (OCl_2). Chlorine also combines with ammonia and other nitrogenous compounds to form chloramines, or *N*-chloro compounds. Chlorine can exert its effect by the irreversible oxidation of sulfhydryl (SH) groups of essential enzymes. Hypochlorites are believed to interact with cytoplasmic components to form toxic *N*-chloro compounds, which interfere with cellular metabolism. The efficacy of chlorine is inversely proportional to the pH, with greater activity observed at acid pH levels. This is consistent with greater activity associated with HOCl rather than with OCl_2 concentration. The activity of chlorine compounds also increases with concentration (e.g., a twofold increase in concentration results in a 30% decrease in time required for killing) and temperature (e.g., a 50% to 65% reduction in killing time with a 10° C increase in temperature). Organic matter and alkaline detergents can reduce the effectiveness of chlorine compounds. These compounds demonstrate good germicidal activity, although spore-forming organisms are 10- to 1000-fold more resistant to chlorine than are vegetative bacteria.

PHENOLIC COMPOUNDS

Phenolic compounds (germicides) are rarely used as disinfectants. However, they are of historical interest because they were used as a comparative standard for assessing the activity of other germicidal compounds. The ratio of germicidal activity by a test compound to that by a specified concentration of phenol yielded the phenol coefficient. A value of 1 indicated equivalent activity, greater than 1 indicated activity less than phenol, and less than 1 indicated activity greater than phenol. These tests are limited because phenol is not sporicidal at room temperature (but is sporicidal at temperatures approaching 100° C), and it has poor activity against non–lipid-containing viruses. This is understandable because phenol is believed to act by disrupting lipid-containing membranes, resulting in leakage of cellular contents. Phenolic compounds are active against the normally resilient mycobacteria because the cell wall of these organisms has a very high concentration of lipids. Exposure of phenolics to alkaline compounds significantly reduces their activity, whereas halogenation of the phenolics enhances their activity. The introduction of aliphatic or aromatic groups into the nucleus of halogen phenols also increases their activity. Bisphenols are two phenol compounds linked together. The activity of these compounds can also be potentiated by halogenation. One example of a halogenated bisphenol is **hexachlorophene,** which is an antiseptic with activity against gram-positive bacteria.

QUATERNARY AMMONIUM COMPOUNDS

Quaternary ammonium compounds consist of four organic groups covalently linked to nitrogen. The germicidal activity of these cationic compounds is determined by the nature of the organic groups, with the greatest activity observed with compounds having 8- to 18-carbon-long groups. Examples of quaternary ammonium compounds include **benzalkonium chloride** and **cetylpyridinium chloride.** These compounds act by denaturing cell membranes to release the intracellular components. Quaternary ammonium compounds are bacteriostatic at low concentrations and bactericidal at high concentrations; however, organisms such as *Pseudomonas, Mycobacterium,* and the fungus *Trichophyton* are resistant to these compounds. Indeed, some *Pseudomonas* strains can grow in quaternary ammonium solutions. Many viruses and all bacterial spores are also resistant. Ionic detergents, organic matter, and dilution neutralize quaternary ammonium compounds.

ALCOHOLS

The germicidal activity of alcohols increases with increasing chain length (maximum of five to eight carbons). The two most commonly used alcohols are **ethanol** and **isopropanol.** These alcohols are rapidly bactericidal against vegetative bacteria, mycobacteria, some fungi, and lipid-containing viruses. Unfortunately, alcohols have no activity against bacterial spores and have poor activity against some fungi and non–lipid-containing viruses. Activity is greater in the presence of water. Thus 70% alcohol is more active than 95% alcohol. Alcohol is a common disinfectant for skin surfaces and, when followed by treatment with an iodophor, is extremely effective for this purpose. Alcohols are also used to disinfect items such as thermometers.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Block, S.S., 1977. Disinfection, Sterilization, and Preservation, second ed. Lea & Febiger, Philadelphia.

Brody, T.M., Larner, J., Minneman, K.P., 1998. Human Pharmacology: Molecular to Clinical, third ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Widmer, A., Frei, R., 2011. Decontamination, disinfection, and sterilization. In: Versalovic, J., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, tenth ed. American Society for Microbiology, Washington, DC.

Questions

1. Define the following terms and give three examples of each: sterilization, disinfection, and antisepsis.

2. Define the three levels of disinfection and give examples of each. When would each type of disinfectant be used?

3. What factors influence the effectiveness of sterilization with moist heat, dry heat, and ethylene oxide?

4. Give examples of each of the following disinfectants and their mode of action: iodine compounds, chlorine compounds, phenolic compounds, and quaternary ammonium compounds.

SECTION 2

General Principles of Laboratory Diagnosis

SECTION OUTLINE

4 Microscopy and In Vitro Culture

The foundation of microbiology was established in 1676 when Anton van Leeuwenhoek, using one of his early microscopes, observed bacteria in water. It was not until almost 200 years later that Pasteur was able to grow bacteria in the laboratory in a culture medium consisting of yeast extract, sugar, and ammonium salts. In 1881, Hesse used agar from his wife's kitchen to solidify the medium in the dishes that Petri made, which then permitted the growth of macroscopic colonies of bacteria. Over the years, microbiologists have returned to the kitchen to create hundreds of culture media that are now routinely used in all clinical microbiology laboratories. Although tests that rapidly detect microbial antigens and nucleic acid–based molecular assays have replaced microscopy and culture methods for the detection of many organisms, the ability to observe microbes by microscopy and grow microbes in the laboratory remains an important procedure in clinical laboratories. For many diseases, these techniques remain the definitive methods to identify the cause of an infection. This chapter will provide an overview of the most commonly used techniques for microscopy and culture, and more specific details will be presented in the chapters devoted to laboratory diagnosis in the individual organism sections.

Microscopy

In general, microscopy is used in microbiology for two basic purposes: the initial detection of microbes and the preliminary or definitive identification of microbes. The microscopic examination of clinical specimens is used to detect bacterial cells, fungal elements, parasites (eggs, larvae, or adult forms), and clumps of viruses (viral inclusions) present in infected cells. Characteristic morphologic properties can be used for the preliminary identification of most bacteria and are used for the definitive identification of many fungi and parasites. The microscopic detection of organisms stained with antibodies labeled with fluorescent dyes or other markers has proved to be very useful for the specific identification of many organisms. Five general microscopic methods are used (Box 4.1).

MICROSCOPIC METHODS

Brightfield (Light) Microscopy

The basic components of light microscopes consist of a light source used to illuminate the specimen positioned on a stage, a condenser used to focus the light on the specimen, and two lens systems **(objective** and **ocular)** used to magnify the image of the specimen. In brightfield microscopy the specimen is visualized by transillumination, with light passing up through the condenser to the specimen. The image is then magnified, first by the objective lens and then by the ocular lens. The total magnification of the image is the product of the magnifications of the objective and ocular lenses. Three different objective lenses are commonly used: low power (10-fold magnification), which can be used to scan a specimen; high dry (40-fold), which is used to look for large microbes such as parasites and filamentous fungi; and oil immersion (100-fold), which is used to observe bacteria, yeasts (single-cell stage of fungi), and the morphologic details of larger organisms and cells. Ocular lenses further magnify the image (generally 10- to 15-fold). Thus using an oil immersion lens (100-fold) with a 10-fold ocular lens provides a total magnification of 1000-fold that is generally necessary to see bacteria in a specimen.

The limitation of brightfield microscopy is the resolution of the image (i.e., the ability to distinguish that two objects are separate and not one). The **resolving power** of a microscope is determined by the wavelength of light used to illuminate the subject and the angle of light entering the objective lens (referred to as the **numerical aperture**). The resolving power is greatest when oil is placed between the objective lens (typically the 100× lens) and the specimen because oil reduces the dispersion of light. The best brightfield microscopes have a resolving power of approximately 0.2 μm, which allows most bacteria, but not viruses, to be visualized. Although most bacteria and larger microorganisms can be seen with brightfield microscopy, the **refractive indices** of the organisms and background are similar. Thus organisms must be stained with a dye so they can be observed, or an alternative microscopic method must be used.

Darkfield Microscopy

The same objective and ocular lenses used in brightfield microscopes are used in darkfield microscopes; however, a special **condenser** is used that prevents transmitted light from directly illuminating the specimen. Only oblique scattered light reaches the specimen and passes into the lens systems, which causes the specimen to be brightly illuminated against a black background. The advantage of this method is that the resolving power of darkfield microscopy is significantly improved compared with that of brightfield microscopy (i.e., 0.02 μm versus 0.2 μm), which makes it possible to detect extremely thin bacteria such as *Treponema*

BOX 4.1 Microscopic Methods

Brightfield (light) microscopy
Darkfield microscopy
Phase-contrast microscopy
Fluorescent microscopy
Electron microscopy

pallidum (etiologic agent of syphilis) and *Leptospira* spp. (leptospirosis). The disadvantage of this method is that light passes around rather than through organisms, making it difficult to study their internal structure.

Phase-Contrast Microscopy

Phase-contrast microscopy enables the internal details of microbes to be examined. In this form of microscopy, as parallel beams of light are passed through objects of different densities, the wavelength of one beam moves out of "phase" relative to the other beam of light (i.e., the beam moving through the more dense material is retarded more than the other beam). Through the use of **annular rings** in the condenser and the objective lens, the differences in phase are amplified so that in-phase light appears brighter than out-of-phase light. This creates a three-dimensional image of the organism or specimen and permits more detailed analysis of the internal structures.

Fluorescent Microscopy

Some compounds called **fluorochromes** can absorb short-wavelength ultraviolet or ultrablue light and emit energy at a higher visible wavelength. Although some microorganisms show natural fluorescence **(autofluorescence),** fluorescent microscopy typically involves staining organisms with fluorescent dyes and then examining them with a specially designed fluorescent microscope. The microscope uses a high-pressure mercury, halogen, or xenon vapor lamp that emits a shorter wavelength of light than that emitted by traditional bright-field microscopes. A series of filters are used to block the heat generated from the lamp, eliminate infrared light, and select the appropriate wavelength for exciting the fluorochrome. The light emitted from the fluorochrome is then magnified through traditional objective and ocular lenses. Organisms and specimens stained with fluorochromes appear brightly illuminated against a dark background, although the colors vary depending on the fluorochrome selected. The contrast between the organism and background is great enough that the specimen can be screened rapidly under low magnification, and then the material is examined under higher magnification once fluorescence is detected.

Electron Microscopy

Unlike other forms of microscopy, **magnetic coils** (rather than lenses) are used in electron microscopes to direct a beam of electrons from a tungsten filament through a specimen and onto a screen. Because a much shorter wavelength of light is used, magnification and resolution are improved dramatically. Individual viral particles (as opposed to viral inclusion bodies) can be seen with electron microscopy. Samples are usually stained or coated with metal ions to create contrast. There are two types of electron microscopes: **transmission electron microscopes,** in which electrons such as light pass directly through the specimen, and **scanning electron microscopes,** in which electrons bounce off the surface of the specimen at an angle and a three-dimensional picture is produced. Today, electron microscopy is used more as a research tool than a diagnostic aid, and highly sensitive and specific nucleic acid amplification assays are the primary diagnostic test in current use.

EXAMINATION METHODS

Clinical specimens or suspensions of microorganisms can be placed on a glass slide and examined under the microscope (i.e., direct examination of a wet mount). Although large organisms (e.g., fungal elements, parasites) and cellular material can be seen using this method, analysis of the internal detail is often difficult. Phase-contrast microscopy can overcome some of these problems; alternatively, the specimen or organism can be stained by a variety of methods (Table 4.1).

Direct Examination

Direct examination methods are the simplest for preparing samples for microscopic examination. The sample can be suspended in water or saline **(wet mount),** mixed with alkali to dissolve background material **(potassium hydroxide [KOH] method),** or mixed with a combination of alkali and a contrasting dye (e.g., **lactophenol cotton blue, iodine**). The dyes nonspecifically stain the cellular material, increasing the contrast with the background, and permit examination of the detailed structures. A variation is the **India ink method,** in which the ink darkens the background rather than the cell. This method is used to detect capsules surrounding organisms, such as the yeast *Cryptococcus* (the dye is excluded by the capsule, creating a clear halo around the yeast cell) and encapsulated *Bacillus anthracis*.

Differential Stains

A variety of differential stains are used to stain specific organisms or components of cellular material. The **Gram stain** is the best known and most widely used stain and forms the basis for the phenotypic classification of bacteria; yeasts can also be stained with this method (yeasts are gram-positive). The **iron hematoxylin** and **trichrome** stains are invaluable for identifying protozoan parasites, and the **Wright-Giemsa** stain is used to identify blood parasites and other selected organisms. Stains such as methenamine silver and toluidine blue O have largely been replaced by more sensitive or technically easier differential or fluorescent stains.

Acid-Fast Stains

At least three different acid-fast stains are used, each exploiting the fact that some organisms retain a primary stain even when exposed to strong decolorizing agents such as mixtures of acids and alcohols. The **Ziehl-Neelsen** is the oldest method used but requires heating the specimen during the staining procedure. Many laboratories have replaced this method with either the cold acid-fast stain **(Kinyoun method)** or the fluorochrome stain **(auramine-rhodamine method).** The fluorochrome method is the stain of choice because a large area of the specimen can be examined rapidly by simply searching for fluorescing organisms against a black background. Some organisms are "partially acid-fast," retaining the primary stain only when they are decolorized with a weakly acidic solution. This property is characteristic of only a few organisms (see Table 4.1), making it quite valuable for their preliminary identification.

Table 4.1 Microscopic Preparations and Stains Used in the Clinical Microbiology Laboratory

Staining Method	Principle and Applications
DIRECT EXAMINATION	
Wet mount	Unstained preparation is examined by brightfield, darkfield, or phase-contrast microscopy
10% KOH	KOH is used to dissolve proteinaceous material and facilitate detection of fungal elements that are not affected by strong alkali solution; dyes such as lactophenol cotton blue can be added to increase contrast between fungal elements and background
India ink	Modification of KOH procedure in which ink is added as contrast material; dye primarily used to detect *Cryptococcus* spp. in cerebrospinal fluid and other body fluids; polysaccharide capsule of *Cryptococcus* spp. excludes ink, creating a halo around the yeast cell
Lugol iodine	Iodine is added to wet preparations of parasitology specimens to enhance contrast of internal structures; this facilitates differentiation of amoebae and host white blood cells
DIFFERENTIAL STAINS	
Gram stain	Most commonly used stain in microbiology laboratory, forming the basis for separating major groups of bacteria (e.g., gram-positive, gram-negative); after fixation of specimen to glass slide (by heating or alcohol treatment), specimen is exposed to crystal violet and then iodine is added to form a complex with primary dye; during decolorization with alcohol or acetone, the complex is retained in gram-positive bacteria but lost in gram-negative organisms; counterstain safranin is retained by gram-negative organisms (hence their red color); the degree to which organism retains stain is function of organism, culture conditions, and staining skills of the microscopist
Iron hematoxylin stain	Used for detection and identification of fecal protozoa; helminth eggs and larvae retain too much stain and are more easily identified with wet-mount preparation
Methenamine silver	In general, performed in histology laboratories rather than in microbiology laboratories; used primarily for stain detection of fungal elements in tissue, although other organisms (e.g., bacteria) can be detected; silver staining requires skill because nonspecific staining can render slides incapable of being interpreted
Toluidine blue O stain	Used primarily for detection of *Pneumocystis* organisms in respiratory specimens; cysts stain reddish-blue to dark purple on light blue background; background staining is removed by sulfation reagent; yeast cells stain and are difficult to distinguish from *Pneumocystis* cells; trophozoites do not stain; many laboratories have replaced this stain with specific fluorescent stains
Trichrome stain	Alternative to iron hematoxylin for staining protozoa; protozoa have bluish-green to purple cytoplasms with red or purplish-red nuclei and inclusion bodies; specimen background is green
Wright-Giemsa stain	Used to detect blood parasites, viral and chlamydial inclusion bodies, and *Borrelia, Toxoplasma, Pneumocystis,* and *Rickettsia* spp.; this is a polychromatic stain that contains a mixture of methylene blue, azure B, and eosin Y; Giemsa stain combines methylene blue and eosin; eosin ions are negatively charged and stain basic components of cells orange to pink, whereas other dyes stain acidic cell structures various shades of blue to purple; protozoan trophozoites have a red nucleus and grayish-blue cytoplasm; intracellular yeasts and inclusion bodies typically stain blue; rickettsiae, chlamydiae, and *Pneumocystis* spp. stain purple
ACID-FAST STAINS	
Ziehl-Neelsen stain	Used to stain mycobacteria and other acid-fast organisms; organisms are stained with basic carbolfuchsin and resist decolorization with acid-alkali solutions; background is counterstained with methylene blue; organisms appear red against light blue background; uptake of carbolfuchsin requires heating specimen (hot acid-fast stain).
Kinyoun stain	Cold acid-fast stain (does not require heating); same principle as Ziehl-Neelsen stain
Auramine-rhodamine	Same principle as other acid-fast stains, except that fluorescent dyes (auramine and rhodamine) are used for primary stain, and potassium permanganate (strong oxidizing agent) is the counterstain and inactivates unbound fluorochrome dyes; organisms fluoresce yellowish-green against a black background
Modified acid-fast stain	Weak decolorizing agent is used with any of three acid-fast stains listed; whereas mycobacteria are strongly acid-fast, other organisms stain weaker (e.g., *Nocardia, Rhodococcus, Tsukamurella, Gordonia, Cryptosporidium, Isospora, Sarcocystis, Cyclospora*); these organisms can be stained more efficiently by using a weak decolorizing agent; organisms that retain this stain are referred to as partially acid-fast
FLUORESCENT STAINS	
Acridine orange stain	Used for detection of bacteria and fungi in clinical specimens; dye intercalates into nucleic acid (native and denatured); at neutral pH, bacteria, fungi, and cellular material stain reddish-orange; at acid pH (4.0), bacteria and fungi remain reddish-orange, but background material stains greenish-yellow
Auramine-rhodamine stain	Same as acid-fast stains
Calcofluor white stain	Used to detect fungal elements and *Pneumocystis* spp.; stain binds to cellulose and chitin in cell walls; microscopist can mix dye with KOH (many laboratories have replaced traditional KOH stain with this stain)
Direct fluorescent antibody stain	Antibodies (monoclonal or polyclonal) are complexed with fluorescent molecules; specific binding to an organism is detected by the presence of microbial fluorescence; technique has proved useful for detecting or identifying many organisms (e.g., *Streptococcus pyogenes, Bordetella, Francisella, Legionella, Chlamydia, Pneumocystis, Cryptosporidium, Giardia*, influenza virus, herpes simplex virus); sensitivity and specificity of test are determined by the number of organisms present in the test sample and quality of antibodies used in reagents.

KOH, Potassium hydroxide.

Fluorescent Stains

The auramine-rhodamine acid-fast stain is a specific example of a fluorescent stain. Numerous other fluorescent dyes have also been used to stain specimens. For example, the **acridine orange stain** can be used to stain bacteria and fungi, and **calcofluor white** stains the chitin in fungal cell walls. Although the acridine orange stain is rather limited in its applications, the calcofluor white stain has replaced the KOH stains. Another procedure is the examination of specimens with specific antibodies labeled with fluorescent dyes **(fluorescent antibody stains).** The presence of fluorescing organisms is a rapid method for both detection and identification of the organism.

In Vitro Culture

The success of culture methods is defined by the biology of the organism, the site of the infection, the patient's immune response to the infection, and the quality of the culture media. The bacterium *Legionella* is an important respiratory pathogen; however, it was never grown in culture until it was recognized that recovery of the organism required using media supplemented with iron and L-cysteine. *Campylobacter,* an important enteric pathogen, was not recovered in stool specimens until highly selective media were incubated at 42° C in a microaerophilic atmosphere. *Chlamydia,* an important bacterium responsible for sexually transmitted diseases, is an obligate intracellular pathogen that must be grown in living cells. *Staphylococcus aureus,* the cause of staphylococcal toxic shock syndrome, produces disease by release of a toxin into the circulatory system. Culture of blood will almost always be negative, but culture of the site in which the organism is growing will detect the organism. In many infections (e.g., gastroenteritis, pharyngitis, urethritis), the organism responsible for the infection will be present among many other organisms that are part of the normal microbial population at the site of infection. Many media have been developed that suppress the normally present microbes and allow easier detection of clinically important organisms. The patient's innate and adaptive immunity may suppress the pathogen, so highly sensitive culture techniques are frequently required. Likewise, some infections are characterized by the presence of relatively few organisms. For example, most septic patients have less than one organism per milliliter of blood, so recovery of these organisms in a traditional blood culture requires inoculation of a large volume of blood into enrichment broths. Finally, the quality of media must be carefully monitored to demonstrate that they will perform as designed.

Relatively few laboratories prepare their own media today. Most media are produced by large commercial companies with expertise in media production. Although this has obvious advantages, it also means that media are not "freshly produced." This is generally not a problem, although it can affect the recovery of some fastidious organisms (e.g., *Bordetella pertussis*). Thus laboratories that perform sophisticated testing frequently have the ability to make a limited amount of specialized media. Dehydrated formulations of most media are available, so this can be accomplished with minimal difficulty. Please refer to the references in the Bibliography for additional information about the preparation and quality control of media.

TYPES OF CULTURE MEDIA

Culture media can be subdivided into four general categories: (1) enriched nonselective media, (2) selective media, (3) differential media, and (4) specialized media (Table 4.2). Some examples of these media are summarized in the following.

Enriched Nonselective Media

These media are designed to support the growth of most organisms without fastidious growth requirements. The following are some of the more commonly used media:

Blood agar. Many types of blood agar media are used in clinical laboratories. These media contain two primary components: a basal medium (e.g., tryptic soy, brain heart infusion, *Brucella* base) and blood (e.g., sheep, horse, rabbit). Various other supplements can also be added to extend the range of organisms that can grow on the media.

Chocolate agar. This is a modified blood agar medium. When blood or hemoglobin is added to the heated basal media, it turns brown (hence the name). This medium supports the growth of most bacteria, including some that do not grow on blood agar (i.e., *Haemophilus,* some pathogenic *Neisseria* strains).

Mueller-Hinton agar. This is the recommended medium for routine antibiotic susceptibility testing of bacteria. It has a well-defined composition of beef and casein extracts, salts, divalent cations, and soluble starch that is necessary for reproducible test results.

Thioglycolate broth. This is one of a variety of enrichment broths used to recover low numbers of aerobic and anaerobic bacteria. Various formulations are used, but most formulations include casein digest, glucose, yeast extract, cysteine, and sodium thioglycolate. Supplementation with hemin and vitamin K will enhance the recovery of anaerobic bacteria.

Sabouraud dextrose agar. This is an enriched medium consisting of digests of casein and animal tissue supplemented with glucose that is used for the isolation of fungi. A variety of formulations have been developed, but most mycologists use the formulation with a low concentration of glucose and neutral pH. By reducing the pH and adding antibiotics to inhibit bacteria, this medium can be made selective for fungi.

Selective Media and Differential Media

Selective media are designed for the recovery of specific organisms that may be present in a mixture of other organisms (e.g., an enteric pathogen in stool). The media are supplemented with inhibitors that suppress the growth of unwanted organisms. These media can be made differential by adding specific ingredients that allow identification of an organism in a mixture (e.g., addition of lactose and a pH indicator to detect lactose-fermenting organisms). The following are some examples of selective and differential media:

MacConkey agar. This is a selective agar for gram-negative bacteria and differential for differentiation of lactose-fermenting and lactose-nonfermenting bacteria.

Table 4.2 Types of Culture Media

Type	Media (Examples)	Purpose
Nonselective	Blood agar	Recovery of bacteria and fungi
	Chocolate agar	Recovery of bacteria including *Haemophilus* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
	Mueller-Hinton agar	Bacterial susceptibility test medium
	Thioglycolate broth	Enrichment broth for anaerobic bacteria
	Sabouraud dextrose agar	Recovery of fungi
Selective, differential	MacConkey agar	Selective for gram-negative bacteria; differential for lactose-fermenting species
	Mannitol salt agar	Selective for staphylococci; differential for *Staphylococcus aureus*
	Xylose-lysine deoxycholate agar	Selective, differential agar for *Salmonella* and *Shigella* in enteric cultures
	Lowenstein-Jensen medium	Selective for mycobacteria
	Middlebrook agar	Selective for mycobacteria
	CHROMagar	Selective, differential for selected bacteria and yeasts
	Inhibitory mold agar	Selective for molds
Specialized	BCYE agar	Recovery of *Legionella* and *Nocardia*
	Cystine-tellurite agar	Recovery of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*
	Lim broth	Recovery of *Streptococcus agalactiae*
	MacConkey sorbitol agar	Recovery of *Escherichia coli* O157
	Regan-Lowe agar	Recovery of *Bordetella pertussis*
	TCBS agar	Recovery of *Vibrio* species

BYCE, Buffered charcoal yeast extract; *TCBS,* thiosulfate citrate bile salts sucrose.

The medium consists of digests of peptones, bile salts, lactose, neutral red, and crystal violet. The bile salts and crystal violet inhibit gram-positive bacteria. Bacteria that ferment lactose produce acid that precipitates the bile salts and causes a red color in the neutral red indicator.

Mannitol salt agar. This is a selective medium used for the isolation of staphylococci. The medium consists of digests of casein and animal tissue, beef extract, mannitol, salts, and phenol red. Staphylococci can grow in the presence of a high salt concentration, and *S. aureus* can ferment mannitol, producing yellow-colored colonies on this agar.

Xylose-lysine deoxycholate (XLD) agar. This is a selective agar used for the detection of *Salmonella* and *Shigella* in enteric cultures. This is an example of a very clever approach to detecting important bacteria in a complex mixture of insignificant bacteria. The medium consists of yeast extract with xylose, lysine, lactose, sucrose, sodium deoxycholate, sodium thiosulfate, ferric ammonium citrate, and phenol red. Sodium deoxycholate inhibits the growth of the majority of nonpathogenic bacteria. Those that do grow typically ferment lactose, sucrose, or xylose, producing yellow colonies. *Shigella* does not ferment these carbohydrates, so the colonies appear red. *Salmonella* ferments xylose but also decarboxylates lysine, producing the alkaline diamine product cadaverine. This neutralizes the acid fermentation products; thus the colonies appear red. Because most *Salmonella* produce hydrogen sulfide from sodium thiosulfate, the colonies will turn black in the presence of ferric ammonium citrate, thus differentiating *Salmonella* from *Shigella.*

Lowenstein-Jensen (LJ) medium. This medium, used for the isolation of mycobacteria, contains glycerol, potato flour, salts, and coagulated whole eggs (to solidify the medium). Malachite green is added to inhibit gram-positive bacteria.

Middlebrook agar. This agar medium is also used for the isolation of mycobacteria. It contains nutrients required for the growth of mycobacteria (i.e., salts, vitamins, oleic acid, albumin, catalase, glycerol, glucose) and malachite green for the inhibition of gram-positive bacteria. In contrast with LJ medium, it is solidified with agar.

CHROMagar. These selective differential agars are used for the isolation and identification of a variety of bacteria (e.g., *S. aureus,* enteric bacteria) and yeasts. An example of the design of these media is the one developed for *Candida* species. This medium has chloramphenicol to inhibit bacteria and a mixture of proprietary chromogenic substrates. The different species of *Candida* have enzymes that can use one or more of the substrates, releasing the color compound and producing colored colonies; thus *Candida albicans* forms green colonies, *C. tropicalis* forms purple colonies, and *C. krusei* forms pink colonies.

Inhibitory mold agar. This medium is an enriched selective formulation used for the isolation of pathogenic fungi other than dermatophytes. Chloramphenicol is added to suppress the growth of contaminating bacteria.

Specialized Media

A large variety of specialized media have been created for the detection of specific organisms that may be fastidious or typically present in large mixtures of organisms. The more commonly used media are described in the specific organism chapters in this textbook.

CELL CULTURE

Some bacteria and all viruses are **strict intracellular microbes;** that is, they can only grow in living cells. In 1949, John Franklin Enders described a technique for cultivating mammalian cells for the isolation of poliovirus. This technique has been expanded for the growth of most strict intracellular organisms. The cell cultures can either be cells that grow and divide on a surface (i.e., **cell monolayer**) or grow suspended in broth. Some cell cultures are well established and can be maintained indefinitely. These cultures are commonly commercially available. Other cell cultures must be prepared immediately before they are infected with the bacteria or viruses and cannot be maintained in the laboratory for more than a few cycles of division **(primary cell cultures).** Entry into cells is frequently regulated by the presence of specific receptors, so the differential ability to infect specific cell lines can be used to predict the identity of the bacterium or virus. Additional information about the use of cell cultures is described in the following chapters.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Chapin, K., 2007. Principles of stains and media. In: Murray, P., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, ninth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Murray, P., Shea, Y., 2004. ASM Pocket Guide to Clinical Microbiology, third ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Snyder, J., Atlas, R., 2006. Handbook of Media for Clinical Microbiology, second ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla.

Wiedbrauk, D., 2011. Microscopy. In: Versalovic, J., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, tenth ed. American Society for Microbiology, Washington, DC.

Zimbro, M., Power, D., 2003. Difco and BBL Manual: Manual of Microbiological Culture Media. Becton Dickinson and Company, Sparks, Md.

Questions

1. Explain the principles underlying brightfield, darkfield, phase-contrast, fluorescent, and electron microscopy. Give one example in which each method would be used.
2. List examples of direct microscopic examinations, differential stains, acid-fast stains, and fluorescent stains.
3. Name three factors that affect the success of a culture.
4. Give three examples of enriched nonselective media.
5. Give three examples of selective differential media.

5 Molecular Diagnosis

Like the evidence left at the scene of a crime, the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), ribonucleic acid (RNA), or proteins of an infectious agent in a clinical sample can be used to help identify the agent. In many cases, the agent can be detected and identified even if it cannot be isolated in culture or detected by immunologic means. Additionally, molecular techniques such as nucleic acid sequencing and protein analysis by mass spectrometry are rapidly replacing traditional methods such as biochemical tests for identification of bacteria and fungi isolated in culture.

The subject matter in this chapter is presented commonly in comprehensive books, so this chapter is only a broad overview of the methods and applications of molecular diagnostics. The methods encompass techniques for detecting microbial nucleic acids and proteins, and the applications are for the detection, identification, or characterization of the microbes. Detection of microbes (viruses, bacteria, fungi, and parasites) primarily is performed directly with clinical specimens, whereas identification and characterization can be from clinical specimens or with organisms isolated in culture. Examples of the use of molecular diagnostic tests are summarized in Table 5.1.

Nonamplified Nucleic Acid Probes

DNA or RNA oligonucleotides (generally less than 50 nucleotides in length) labeled with reporter signal molecules bind to specific complementary microbial nucleic acid sequences for the detection of the organism in a clinical specimen or for the identification of the organism isolated in culture. Large numbers of the target sequence must be present for these probes to be useful. Generally these are not used for the direct detection of organisms in clinical specimens because the test sensitivity is too low (i.e., too few organisms are present for reliable detection). However, they can be used to identify organisms isolated in culture such as mycobacteria, dimorphic fungi, and viruses because large numbers of organisms will be present. Another use of molecular probes is to detect specific sequences amplified by the methods listed next.

TABLE 5.1 Examples of Applications of Molecular Diagnostic Tests

Test	Molecular Assay	Alternative Diagnostic
HAI tests	MSSA, MRSA	Culture more sensitive but slower
	Clostridium difficile	Immunoassay offered but insensitive; molecular test of choice
	Carbapenem-resistant gram-negative bacteria	Culture is more sensitive but slower
Reproductive health tests	*Chlamydia trachomatis*	Tissue culture or serology; molecular test of choice
	Neisseria gonorrhoeae	Culture; molecular test of choice
	Trichomonas vaginalis	Culture or microscopy; molecular test of choice
	Group B *Streptococcus*	Culture; molecular test of choice
	Bacterial vaginosis	Microscopy; molecular test of choice
Molecular multiplex panels	Respiratory infections (bacteria, viruses)	Culture or immunoassay for selected viruses and bacteria; molecular test of choice for most agents
	Enteric infections (bacteria, viruses, parasites)	Culture or immunoassays for selected bacteria; immunoassays for selected viruses; molecular test of choice for most agents
	Positive blood culture (bacteria, yeasts)	Rapid ID by MALDI; molecular tests complement culture (not replacement)
	Meningitis (bacteria, viruses)	No alternative for viruses; complements culture for bacteria (not replacement)
Blood-based viral tests	HIV	Immunoassay; molecular test of choice
	Hepatitis viruses (A, B, C)	Immunoassay; molecular test of choice
	HPV	Cytology; molecular test of choice
	Miscellaneous viruses	Molecular test of choice
Miscellaneous tests	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*	Culture and/or microscopy
	Group A *Streptococcus*	Replaces immunoassays or culture

HAI, Hospital-acquired infection; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HPV,* human papilloma virus; *MALDI,* matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization; *MSSA,* methicillin-susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus; MRSA,* methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus.*

NUCLEIC ACID AMPLIFICATION METHODS

Nucleic acid amplification (NAA) methods are now widely used in clinical laboratories for the direct detection of pathogens in clinical specimens. A variety of NAA methods have been developed, but only four commonly used methods are described here: polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and modifications of PCR, transcription-mediated amplification (TMA), strand displacement amplification (SDA), and loop-mediated amplification (LAMP).

Polymerase Chain Reaction

DNA polymerase is used to synthesize a specific sequence of microbial DNA (target sequence). Two oligonucleotide primers flank the double-stranded DNA to be sequenced by binding to the complementary strands of DNA. Amplification occurs by heating the DNA to separate the double strands, cooling the reaction to allow the primers to bind to the two DNA strands, and then extending the sequences from the primers with DNA polymerase. This cycle of heating, cooling, and polymerization proceeds through a number of cycles, each time exponentially increasing the number of copies of the target DNA (Fig. 5.1). PCR is the most common NAA technique used in clinical laboratories for the detection of pathogens in clinical specimens. There also are a number of PCR variations. **Reverse transcriptase-PCR** (RT-PCR) was developed to amplify RNA targets. **Nested PCR** increases the sensitivity of PCR by performing two sequential amplification reactions using two pairs of primers and PCR reactions. The first pair of primers is used for a traditional PCR amplification. The second pair of primers amplifies an internal sequence of the first reaction product.

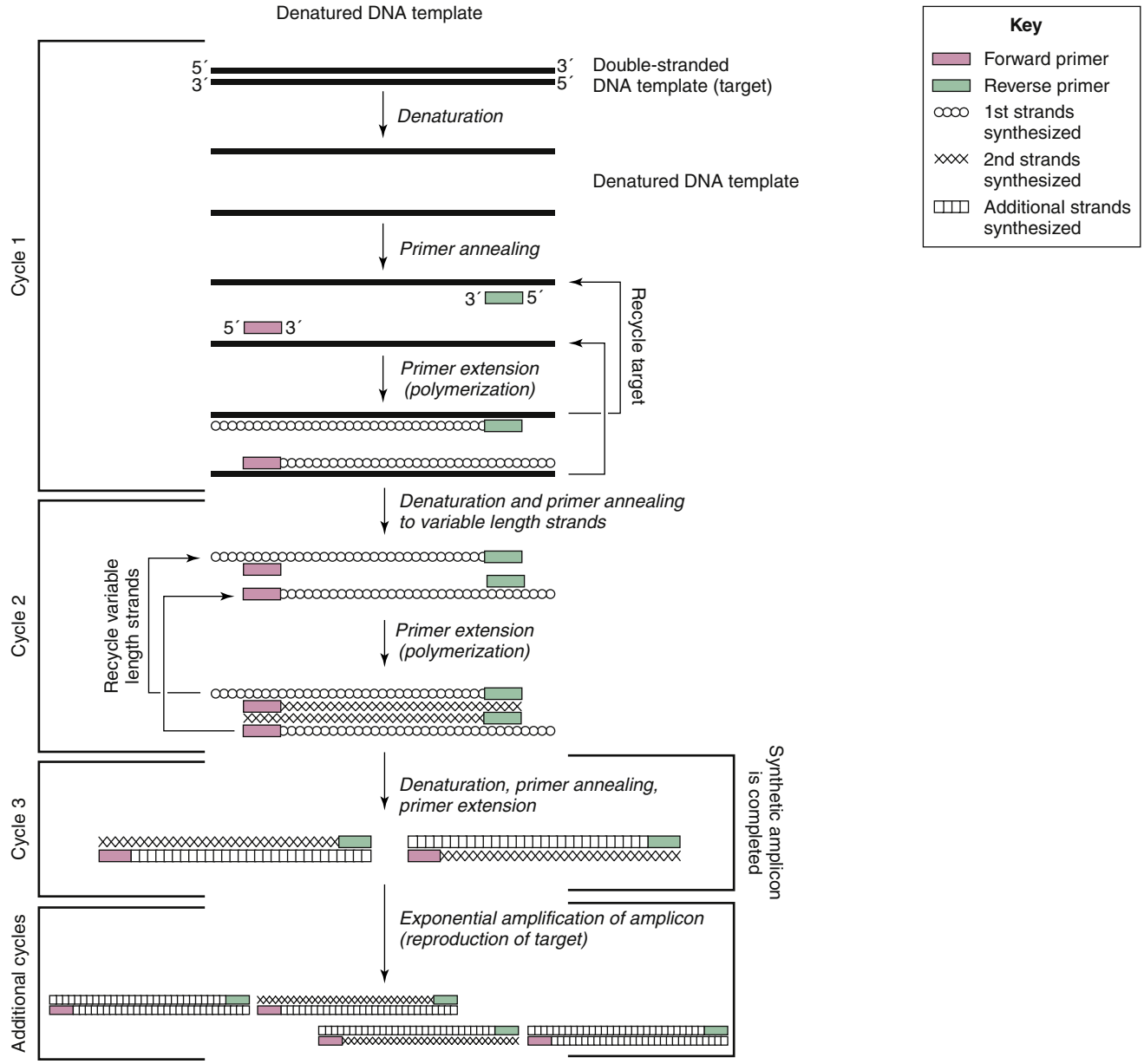


Fig. 5.1 Polymerase chain reaction target amplification. (From Wolk, D., Mitchell, S., Patel, R., 2001. Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. Infect. Dis. Clin. North Am.15 (4) [Fig. 1].)

This process increases both the sensitivity and specificity of the PCR amplification. **Multiplex PCR** uses multiple pairs of primers to amplify multiple gene targets simultaneously. **Real-time PCR** allows both amplification of the target nucleic acid sequence and simultaneous detection of the amplification product, decreasing the time to detect a positive reaction.

Transcription-Mediated Amplification

TMA is an isothermal (performed at a constant temperature) RNA amplification method. The RNA target is transcribed into complementary DNA (cDNA) and then RNA copies are transcribed using RNA polymerase (Fig. 5.2). The advantages of TMA include rapid kinetics, elimination of the need for heating and cooling with a thermocycler, and the single-stranded RNA product does not need to be denatured before detection. A disadvantage of this technique is the relatively poor performance with DNA targets.

Strand Displacement Amplification

SDA is an isothermal amplification method for detection of specific RNA and DNA sequences (Fig. 5.3). The double-strand DNA target (or DNA-RNA hybrid) is denatured and then hybridized to two pairs of primers. The amplification primer pair hybridizes at the 5′ end of the target sequence and contains a restriction endonuclease sequence. The second primer pair binds just outside the 3′ end of the target sequence. The complementary strands are simultaneously extended, creating double-strand copies of the target sequence. Amplification of the target occurs when endonuclease creates a nick at the 5′ end and then DNA polymerase binds to the nick site and synthesizes a new strand while

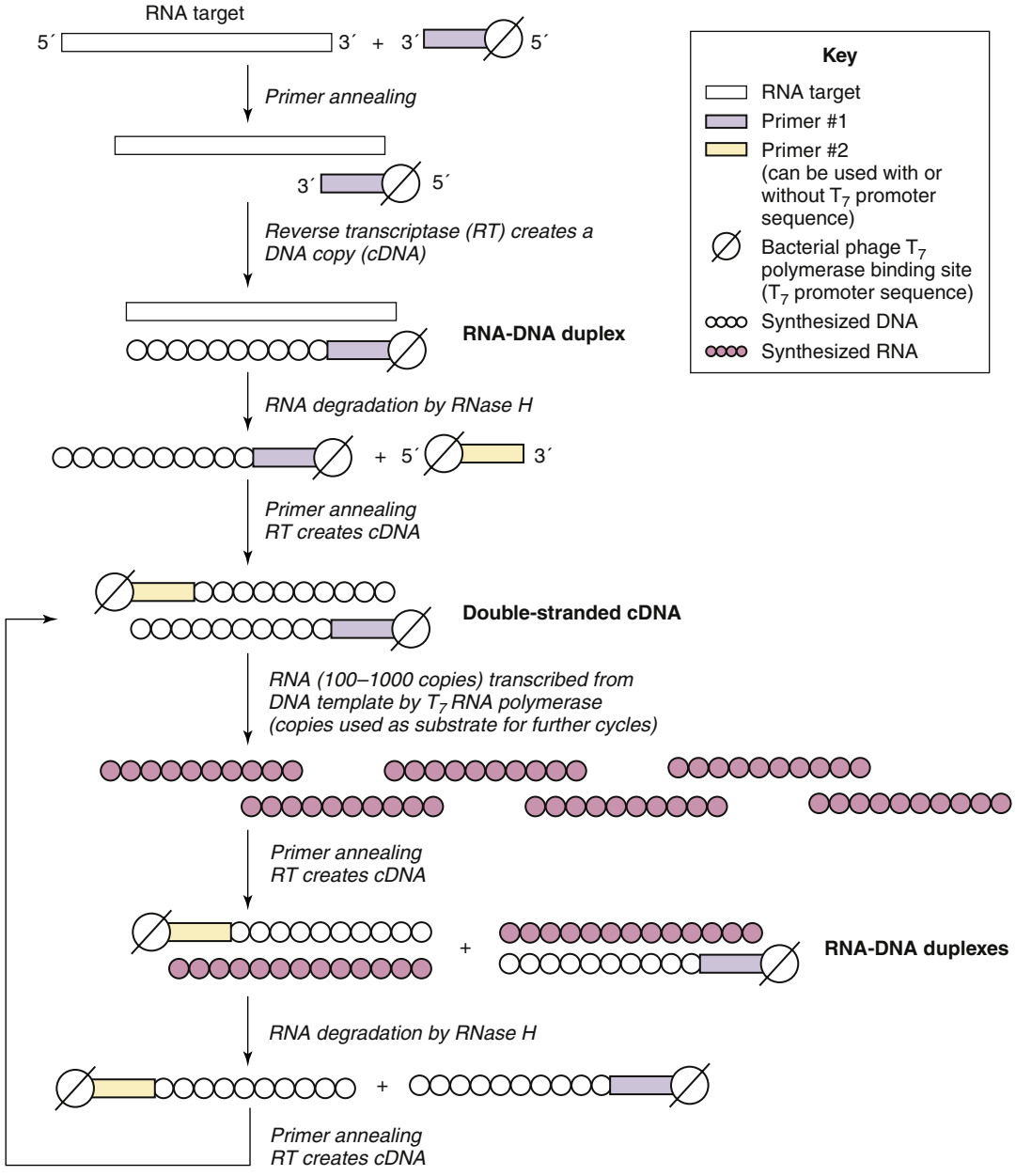


Fig. 5.2 Transcription based target amplification. (From Wolk, D., Mitchell, S., Patel, R., 2001. Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. Infect. Dis. Clin. North Am. 15 (4) [Fig. 6].)

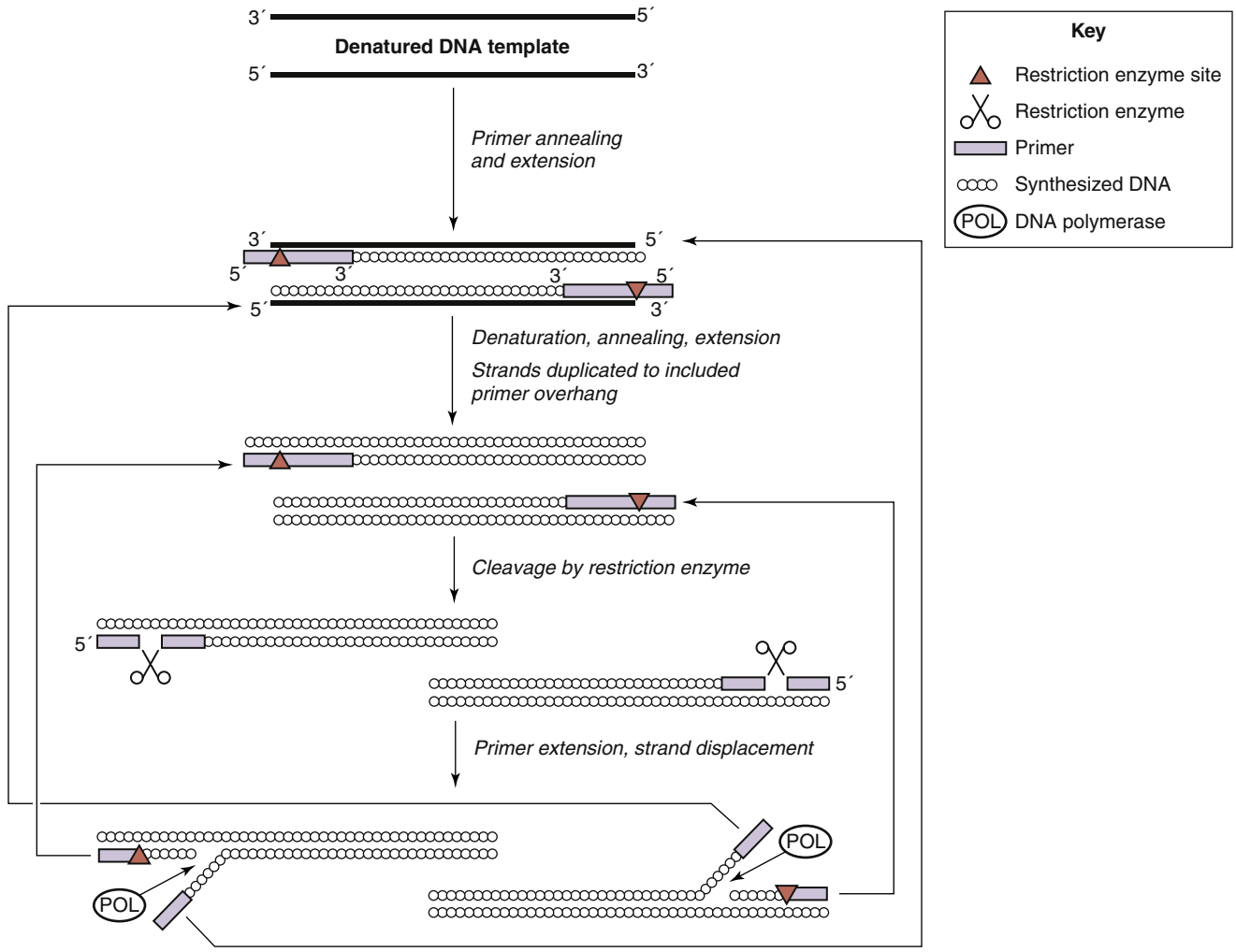


Fig. 5.3 Strand displacement target amplification. (From Wolk, D., Mitchell, S., Patel, R., 2001. Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. Infect. Dis. Clin. North. Am. 15 (4) [Fig. 7].)

displacing the downstream strand. This process repeats creating exponential amplification of the target sequence. This isothermal amplification has very high sensitivity, but nonspecific primer hybridization can occur in complex mixtures of organisms.

Loop-Mediated Amplification

LAMP is an isothermal variation of SDA using four to six primer pairs to amplify the target DNA or RNA sequence. The amplified products are monitored in real time by measuring the turbidity of the magnesium pyrophosphate precipitate produced during the amplification reaction. This amplification method is particularly attractive because it is rapid and does not require expensive instrumentation.

Nucleic Acid Analysis

Much like letters, words, sentences, and paragraphs in a book, the sequences of nucleic acids in DNA and RNA tell a story about the genetic capabilities of an isolated organism. At the highest level, a sequence of DNA or RNA can be selected that is used to identify an organism at the genus or species level, or characterize a gene encoding a virulence marker or antibiotic resistance. At a deeper level, the sequences of DNA can be used to subtype an organism for epidemiologic purposes. In this section, the most commonly used techniques for identification and epidemiologic subtyping organisms are discussed.

NUCLEIC ACID SEQUENCING

Sequencing can be subdivided into targeted sequencing in which a specific region of DNA or RNA is sequenced, and whole genome sequencing (WGS), in which the entire microbial genome is sequenced. Targeted sequencing is used primarily to identify an organism or detect a virulence gene or antibiotic resistance gene, whereas WGS is used for subtyping or genotyping organisms. Sequencing the ribosomal RNA genes is a common procedure for the definitive identification of bacteria and fungi because portions of these genes are highly conserved and useful for identification at the genus level, whereas other sequences of the ribosomal RNA genes are species specific. Likewise, comparison of the genome sequences of individual bacteria is a common method for assessing their degree of relatedness. With each replication, one or more mutations is introduced in the genomes of the bacterial progeny. Thus the

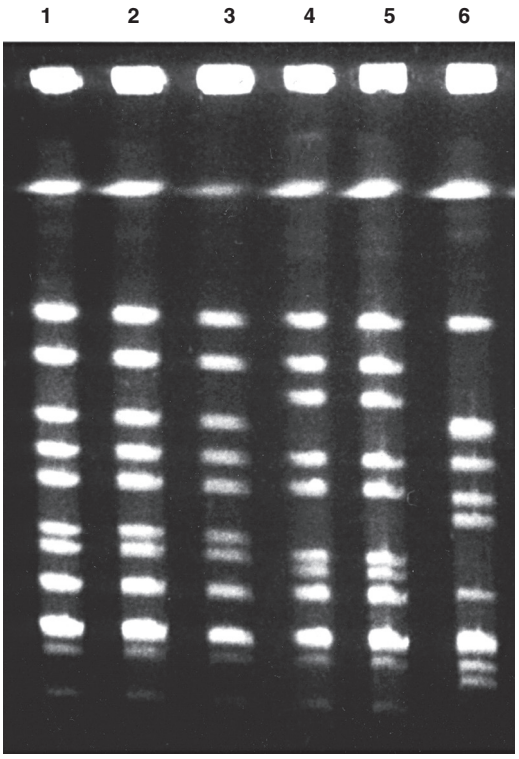


Fig. 5.4 Restriction fragment length polymorphism distinction of DNA from bacterial strains separated by pulsed-field gel electrophoresis. Lanes 1 to 3 show Sma 1 restriction endonuclease-digested DNA from bacteria from two family members with necrotizing fasciitis and from their physician (pharyngitis). Lanes 4 to 6 are from unrelated *Streptococcus pyogenes* strains. (Courtesy Dr. Joe DiPersio, Akron, Ohio.)

more mutations (single nucleotide polymorphisms [SNPs]) that are present in the genomes, the more distantly related are the two organisms. This procedure has become the gold standard for investigations of infectious outbreaks. However, even though the process of WGS, including sequencing long nucleic acid fragments and then assembly into complete genomes, has become relatively simple and inexpensive in recent years, most laboratories still do not have the technical expertise to use these tools. Thus a variety of other methods are used for epidemiologic classification, with the most commonly used method described here.

RESTRICTION FRAGMENT LENGTH POLYMORPHISM

Specific strains of microorganisms (primarily bacteria and viruses) can be distinguished on the basis of DNA fragments produced when the genomic DNA is cleaved by specific restriction endonucleases **(restriction enzymes)** that recognize specific DNA sequences. The cleavage of DNA samples from different strains with a restriction endonuclease can yield fragments of many different lengths. This pattern of DNA fragments (restriction fragment length polymorphism [RFLP]) is used to determine the relatedness of different strains (Fig. 5.4). DNA fragments of different sizes or structures can be distinguished by their electrophoretic mobility in an agarose or polyacrylamide gel. The DNA fragment moves through the mazelike structure of an agarose gel at different speeds, allowing their separation. The DNA can be visualized by staining with ethidium bromide. Smaller fragments (<20,000 base pairs), such as those from bacterial plasmids or viruses, can be separated and distinguished by normal electrophoretic methods. Larger fragments, such as those from whole bacteria, can be separated by using a special electrophoretic technique called **pulsed-field gel electrophoresis.** The procedure for this technique is similar to standard gel electrophoresis except the current that moves the DNA fragments through the gel is alternated periodically. By doing this, very large fragments of DNA can move through the gel and be separated by size. RFLP is a labor-intensive procedure that does not have the resolving power of WGS and SNP analysis; thus it is likely that this procedure will be discontinued in the next decade as sequencing techniques become more widely adopted in clinical microbiology laboratories.

Protein Analysis

WESTERN BLOT

Western blot or protein immunoblot is a technique to detect specific microbial proteins or patient antibodies to the proteins. This technique is a variation of Southern blot developed by Edwin Southern to detect DNA, and Northern blot developed for the detection of RNA. Although this technique has been replaced by other infectious diagnostic tests for most organisms, it is still used for diseases such as Lyme disease, prion-mediated Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease and HIV. In the case of Lyme disease, the Western blot test is used to confirm an initial positive immunoassay result. Microbial proteins (either purified or whole cell proteins) are denatured with a strong reducing agent and then separated by size on a polyacrylamide gel by electrophoresis. The proteins are then transferred to a nitrocellulose sheet by "blotting" (blocked with milk proteins to prevent nonspecific reactions) and then overlaid with the patient's serum. After binding with the patient's antibodies, the nitrocellulose is washed and stained to detect antibody binding to specific microbial proteins. The pattern of binding can differentiate specific reactivity or nonspecific (or negative) reactions.

MATRIX-ASSISTED LASER DESORPTION/ IONIZATION–TIME OF FLIGHT

It is rare that a technology can fundamentally alter well-established diagnostic testing methods, but that is precisely what the use of matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization–time of flight (MALDI-TOF) mass spectrometry has done. This technology is now widely used for the identification of bacteria, mycobacteria, yeasts, and molds, replacing biochemical and morphologic tests that were the cornerstone of diagnostic microbiology for more than 100 years. The reason for this transformation is that the technology is highly accurate, technically simple to perform, rapid, and inexpensive. Bacterial and yeast colonies are removed from the agar culture plates, transferred to a target plate, dissolved with a strong organic acid (e.g., formic acid), mixed with an excess of ultraviolet (UV)-absorbing matrix, and dried on the target plates (Fig. 5.5). The dried preparations are exposed to laser pulses, resulting in energy transfer from the matrix to the nonvolatile protein molecules, with

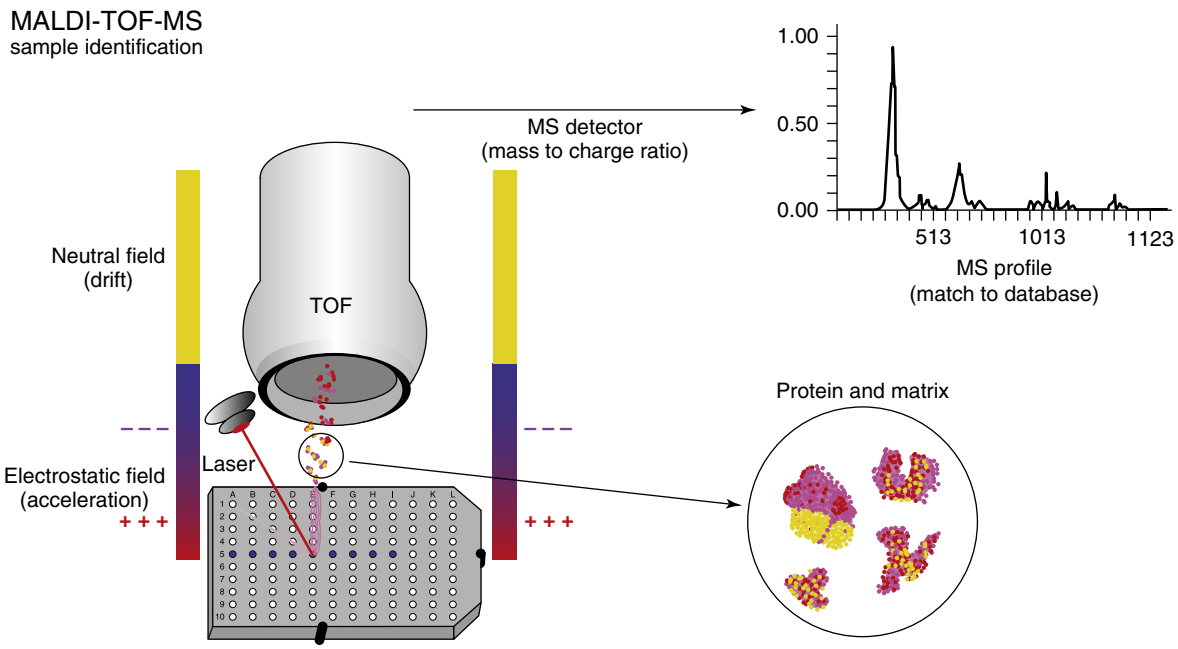


Fig. 5.5 Microorganism identification by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization–time of flight (MALDI-TOF) mass spectrometry. (From Wolk, D.M., Clark, A.E. MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry. Clin. Lab. Med. 38, 471–486.)

the desorption (removal) of the proteins into the gas phase. The ionized molecules are accelerated by electric potentials through a flight tube to the mass spectrometer, with separation of the proteins determined by the mass/charge ratio (m/z; z typically is 1), with smaller proteins moving more rapidly than larger proteins. The profile of proteins is compared with profiles of well-characterized organisms permitting the identification of most organisms at the species or subspecies level. Using MALDI-TOF for identification of mycobacteria and molds is only slightly more complex, resulting in highly accurate identifications is less than 1 hour. Selection of the matrix influences the specific biomarkers that are detected (e.g., proteins phospholipids, cyclic lipopeptides) with α–cyano-4-hydroxy-cinnamic acid used preferentially for detection of protein biomarkers. The entire process takes minutes and is equivalent to identifying organisms by sequencing hundreds of genes because a single amino acid change will shift the protein profile. Applications of MALDI-TOF has recently been expanded for the detection of protein markers for antibiotic resistance and virulence, as well as the direct identification of some organisms in clinical specimens.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Angeletti, S., 2017. MALDI-TOF MS in clinical microbiology. J. Microbiol. Meth. 138, 20–29.
Clark, A., Kaleta, E., Arora, A., Wolk, D., 2013. MALDI-TOF MS: a fundamental shift in the routine practice of clinical microbiology. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 26, 547–603.
Jorgensen, J., Pfaller, M., Carroll, K., et al., 2015. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Murray, P.R., 2012. What is new in clinical microbiology – microbial identification by MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry. J Mol Diagn. 14, 419–423.
Notomi, T., Okayama, H., Masubuchi, H., et al., 2000. Loop-medicated isothermal amplification of DNA. Nucleic Acids Res. 28, e63.
Persing, D.H., Tenover, F.C., Hayden, R., et al., 2016. Molecular Microbiology, Diagnostic Principles and Practice, third ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Tang, Y., Sussman, M., Liu, D., et al., 2015. Restriction Fragment Length Polymorphism. Molecular Medical Microbiology, second ed. Elsevier Press, London, UK.
Wolk, D., Clark, A., 2018. MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry. Clin Lab Med. 38, 471–486.
Wolk, D., Mitchell, S., Patel, R., 2001. Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. Infect. Dis. Clin. N. Am. 15, 1157–1203.

Questions

Which procedure(s) can be used for the following analyses and why would that procedure be used?

1. Comparison of the major bacterial species present in the normal flora of a thin and an obese individual.

2. Comparison of the normal bacterial flora associated with chronic oral abscesses.

3. A 37-year-old man has flulike symptoms. A viral infection is suspected. The agent needs to be identified from a nasal wash sample.

4. The efficacy of antiretroviral therapy in an HIV-infected individual can be evaluated by quantitating the number of viral genomes in her blood.

5. A Pap smear is suspected to contain human papillomavirus (HPV) infection. How can HPV be detected in the sample?

6. A baby is born with microcephaly, and cytomegalovirus (CMV) is suspected. Urine contains cells with a characteristic CMV-infected morphology. How can CMV infection be verified?

7. Antiviral resistance and disease severity are analyzed for hepatitis C virus isolates from intravenous drug users.

6 Serologic Diagnosis

Immunologic techniques are used to detect, identify, and quantitate antigen in clinical samples, as well as to evaluate the antibody response to infection and a person's history of exposure to infectious agents. The specificity of the antibody-antigen interaction and the sensitivity of many of the immunologic techniques make them powerful laboratory tools (Table 6.1). *In most cases, the same technique can be adapted to evaluate antigen and antibody*. Because many serologic assays are designed to give a positive or negative result, quantitation of the antibody strength is obtained as a titer. The **titer** of an antibody is defined as the greatest dilution of the sample that retains a detectable activity.

Antibodies

Antibodies can be used as sensitive and specific tools to detect, identify, and quantitate soluble antigens and antigens in a cell from a virus, bacterium, fungus, or parasite. Specific antibodies may be obtained from convalescent patients (e.g., antiviral antibodies) or prepared in animals. These antibodies are **polyclonal;** that is, they are heterogeneous antibody preparations that can recognize many epitopes on a single antigen. **Monoclonal** antibodies recognize individual epitopes on an antigen. Monoclonal antibodies for many antigens are commercially available, especially for lymphocyte cell surface proteins.

The development of monoclonal antibody technology revolutionized the science of immunology. For example, because of the specificity of these antibodies, lymphocyte subsets (e.g., CD4 and CD8 T cells) and lymphocyte cell surface antigens were identified. Monoclonal antibodies are usually produced from hybrid cells generated by the fusion and cloning of a B cell and a myeloma cell, which produces a hybridoma. The myeloma provides immortalization to the antibody-producing B cells. *Each hybridoma clone is a factory for one antibody molecule, yielding a monoclonal antibody that recognizes only one epitope*. Monoclonal antibodies can also be prepared and manipulated through genetic engineering and "humanized" for therapeutic usage.

The advantages of monoclonal antibodies are that (1) their specificity can be confined to a single epitope on an antigen and (2) they can be prepared in "industrial-sized" tissue culture preparations. A major disadvantage of monoclonal antibodies is that they are often too specific, such that a monoclonal antibody specific for one epitope on a viral antigen of one strain may not be able to detect that molecule from different strains of the same virus.

Methods of Detection

Antibody-antigen complexes can be detected directly, by precipitation techniques, or by labeling the antibody with a radioactive, fluorescent, or enzyme probe, or they can be detected indirectly through measurement of an antibody-directed reaction, such as complement fixation.

PRECIPITATION AND IMMUNODIFFUSION TECHNIQUES

Specific antigen-antibody complexes and cross-reactivity can be distinguished by immunoprecipitation techniques. Within a limited concentration range for both antigen and antibody, termed the **equivalence zone,** the antibody cross-links the antigen into a complex that is too large to stay in solution and therefore precipitates. This technique is based on the multivalent nature of antibody molecules (e.g., immunoglobulin [Ig]G has two antigen-binding domains). The antigen-antibody complexes are soluble at concentration ratios of antigen to antibody that are above and below the equivalence concentration.

Various immunodiffusion techniques make use of the equivalence concept to determine the identity of an antigen or the presence of antibody (Fig. 6.1). **Single radial immunodiffusion** can be used to detect and quantify an antigen. In this technique, antigen is placed into a well and allowed to diffuse into antibody-containing agar. The higher the concentration of antigen, the farther it diffuses before it reaches equivalence with the antibody in the agar and precipitates as a ring around the well.

The **Ouchterlony immuno–double-diffusion** technique is used to determine the relatedness of different antigens, as shown in Fig. 6.1. In this technique, solutions of antibody and antigen are placed in separate wells cut into agar, and the antigen and antibody are allowed to diffuse toward each other to establish rings of concentration gradients of each substance. A visible precipitin line occurs where the concentrations of antigen and antibody reach equivalence. On the basis of the pattern of the precipitin lines, this technique can also be used to determine whether samples are identical, share some but not all epitopes (partial identity), or are distinct. This technique is used to detect antibody and fungal antigens (e.g., *Histoplasma* species, *Blastomyces* species, and coccidioidomycoses).

In other immunodiffusion techniques, the antigen may be separated by electrophoresis in agar and then reacted with antibody (immunoelectrophoresis); it may be pushed into agar that contains antibody by means of electrophoresis (rocket electrophoresis), or antigen and antibody may be placed in separate wells and allowed to move electrophoretically toward each other (countercurrent immunoelectrophoresis).

TABLE 6.1 Selected Immunologic Techniques

Technique	Purpose	Clinical Examples
Ouchterlony immuno–double-diffusion	Detect and compare antigen and antibody	Fungal antigen and antibody
Immunofluorescence	Detection and localization of antigen	Viral antigen in biopsy (e.g., rabies, herpes simplex virus)
EIA	Same as immunofluorescence	Same as immunofluorescence
Immunofluorescence flow cytometry	Population analysis of antigen-positive cells	Immunophenotyping
ELISA	Quantitation of antigen or antibody	Viral antigen (rotavirus); viral antibody (anti-HIV)
Western blot	Detection of antigen-specific antibody or antigen	Confirmation of anti-HIV seropositivity (antibody)
RIA	Same as ELISA	Same as for ELISA
Complement fixation	Quantitate specific antibody titer	Fungal, viral antibody
Hemagglutination inhibition	Antiviral antibody titer; serotype of virus strain	Seroconversion to current influenza strain; identification of influenza
Latex agglutination	Quantitation and detection of antigen and antibody	Rheumatoid factor; fungal antigens; streptococcal antigens

EIA, Enzyme immunoassay; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *RIA,* radioimmunoassay.

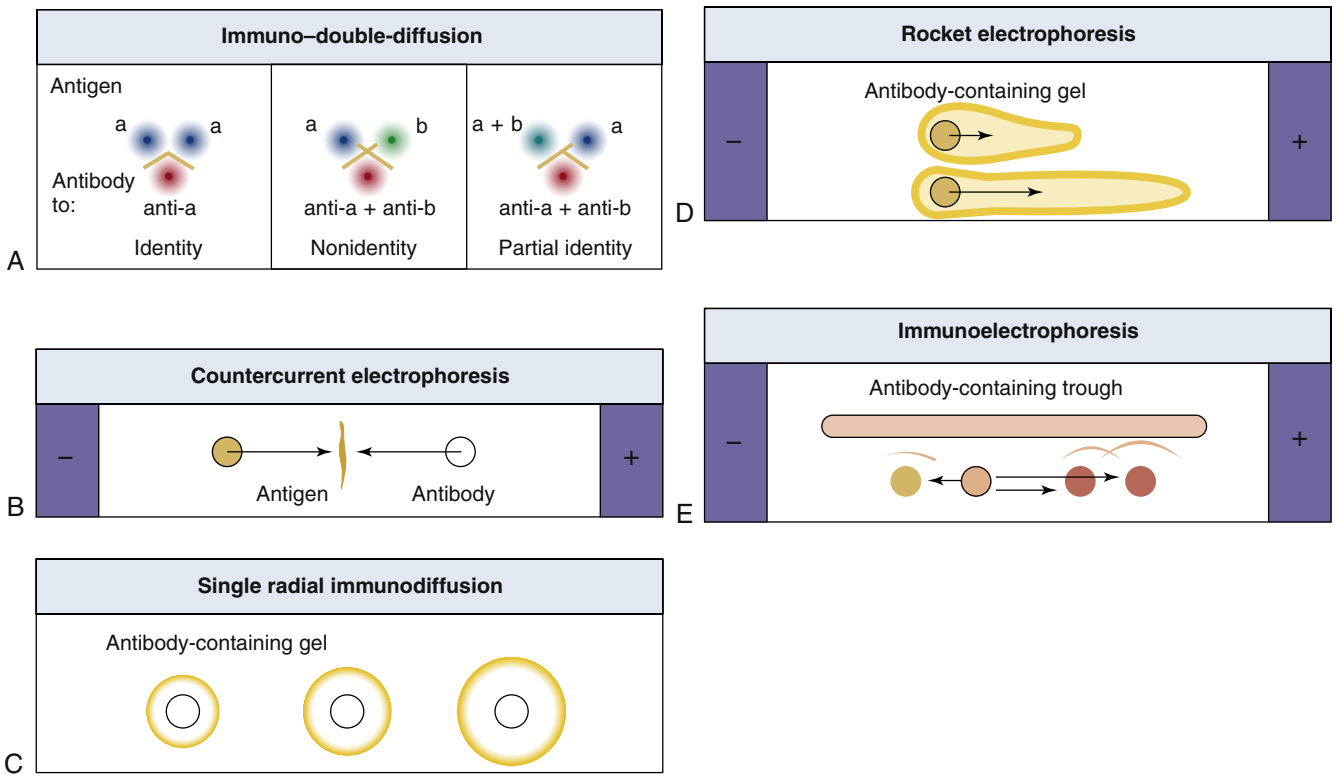


Fig. 6.1 Analysis of antigens and antibodies by immunoprecipitation. The precipitation of protein occurs at the equivalence point, at which multivalent antibody forms large complexes with antigen. (A) Ouchterlony immuno–double-diffusion. Antigen and antibody diffuse from wells, meet, and form a precipitin line. If identical antigens are placed in adjacent wells, then the concentration of antigen between them is doubled, and precipitation does not occur in this region. If different antigens are used, two different precipitin lines are produced. If one sample shares antigen but is not identical, then a single spur results for the complete antigen. (B) Countercurrent electrophoresis. This technique is similar to the Ouchterlony method, but antigen movement is facilitated by electrophoresis. (C) Single radial immunodiffusion. This technique involves the diffusion of antigen into an antibody-containing gel. Precipitin rings indicate an immune reaction, and the area of the ring is proportional to the concentration of antigen. (D) Rocket electrophoresis. Antigens are separated by electrophoresis into an agar gel that contains antibody. The length of the "rocket" indicates concentration of antigen. (E) Immunoelectrophoresis. Antigen is placed in a well and separated by electrophoresis. Antibody is then placed in the trough, and precipitin lines form as antigen and antibody diffuse toward each other.

Immunoassays for Cell-Associated Antigen (Immunohistology)

Antigens on the cell surface or within the cell can be detected by **immunofluorescence** and **enzyme immunoassay (EIA).** In **direct immunofluorescence,** a fluorescent molecule is covalently attached to the antibody (e.g., fluorescein-isothiocyanate [FITC]-labeled rabbit antiviral antibody). In **indirect immunofluorescence,** a second fluorescent antibody specific for the primary antibody (e.g., FITC-labeled goat anti-rabbit antibody) is used to detect the primary antiviral antibody and locate the antigen (Figs. 6.2 and 6.3). In EIA, an enzyme such as horseradish peroxidase or alkaline

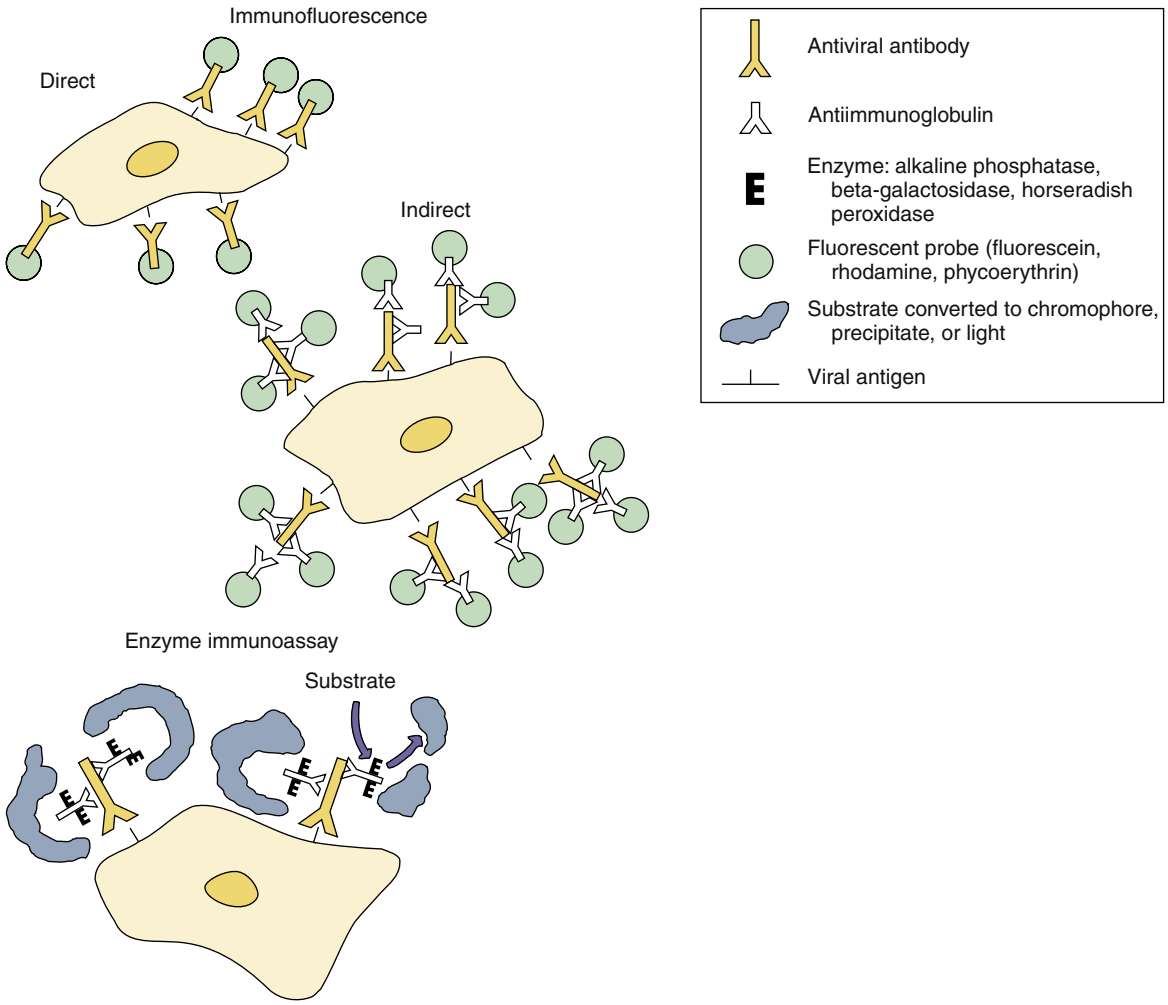


Fig. 6.2 Immunofluorescence and enzyme immunoassays for antigen localization in cells. Antigen can be detected by *direct* assay with antiviral antibody modified covalently with a fluorescent or enzyme probe, or by *indirect* assay using antiviral antibody and chemically modified antiimmunoglobulin. The enzyme converts substrate to a precipitate, chromophore, or light.

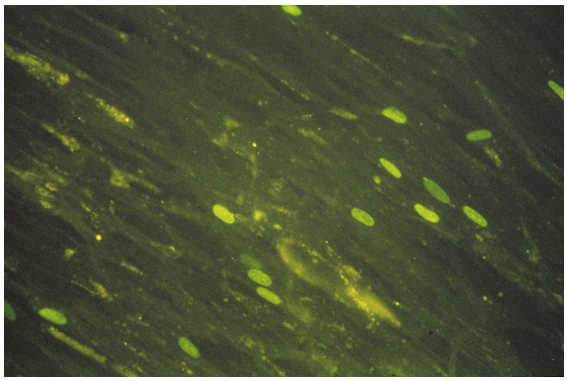


Fig. 6.3 Immunofluorescence localization of herpes simplex virus–infected nerve cells in a brain section from a patient with herpes encephalitis. (Modified from Male, D., Cooke, A., Owen, M., et al., 1996. Advanced Immunology, third ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

phosphatase is conjugated to the antibody and converts a substrate into a chromophore to mark the antigen. Alternatively, an antibody modified by the attachment of a **biotin** (the vitamin) molecule can be localized by the very high-affinity binding of avidin or streptavidin molecules. A fluorescent molecule or an enzyme attached to the avidin and streptavidin allows detection. These techniques are useful for the analysis of tissue biopsy specimens, blood cells, and tissue culture cells.

The **flow cytometer** can be used to analyze the immunofluorescence of cells in suspension and is especially useful for identifying and quantitating lymphocytes (immunophenotyping) (Fig. 6.4). A laser is used in the flow cytometer to excite the fluorescent antibody attached to the cell and to determine the size and the granularity of the cell by means of light-scattering measurements. Use of antibodies labeled with different fluorescent dyes allows simultaneous analysis of multiple molecules with instruments that can analyze up to 12 different fluorescent colors and parameters. The cells flow past the laser at rates of more than 5000 cells per second, and analysis is performed electronically. The **fluorescence-activated cell sorter (FACS)** is a flow cytometer that can also isolate specific subpopulations of cells for tissue culture growth on the basis of their size and immunofluorescence. Variations on this approach use instruments that image and analyze every cell as they flow or on a slide.

The data obtained from a flow cytometer are usually presented in the form of a histogram, with the fluorescence intensity on the *x*-axis and the number of cells on the *y*-axis, or in the form of a dot plot, in which more than one parameter is compared for each cell. The flow

cytometer can perform a differential analysis of white blood cells. As shown in Fig. 6.4, all cells expressing a specific parameter (e.g., size, granularity and the CD3 T-cell marker) can be electronically identified by marking their graphic region and then chosen **(gated)** for further analysis (e.g., expression of CD4 and CD8) in subsequent graphs. Flow cytometry is also useful for analyzing cell growth after the fluorescent labeling of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and other fluorescent applications.

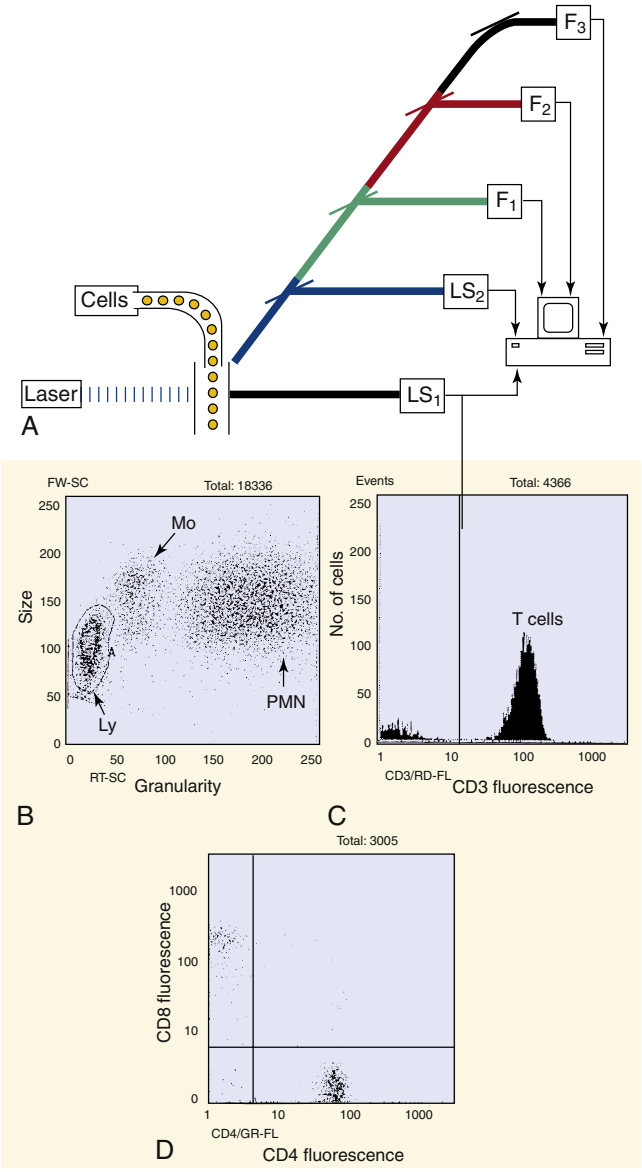


Fig. 6.4 Flow cytometry. (A) The flow cytometer evaluates individual cell parameters as the cells flow past a laser beam at rates of more than 5000 per second. Cell size and granularity are determined by light scattering *(LS)*, and antigen expression is evaluated by immunofluorescence *(F)*, using antibodies labeled with different fluorescent probes. Graphs B to D depict T-cell analysis of a normal patient. (B) Light-scatter analysis was used to define the lymphocytes *(Ly)*, monocytes *(Mo)*, and polymorphonuclear (neutrophil) leukocytes *(PMN)*. The Ly were "gated" for further analysis. (C) The T lymphocytes were identified by CD3 expression (presented in a histogram) and then analyzed for D, CD4, and CD8 T cells. Each dot represents one or a multiple of cells. (Data courtesy Dr. Tom Alexander, Akron, Ohio.)

Immunoassays for Antibody and Soluble Antigen

The **enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)** uses antigen immobilized on a plastic surface, bead, or filter to capture and separate the specific antibody from other antibodies in a patient's serum (Fig. 6.5). An antihuman

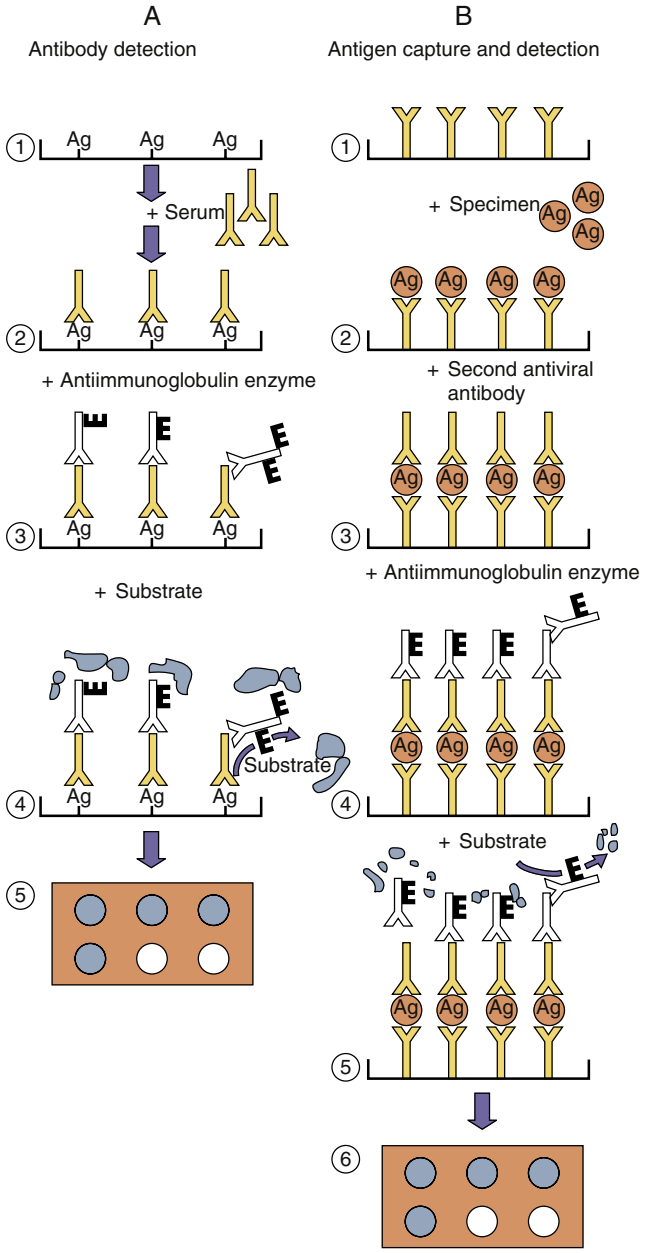


Fig. 6.5 Enzyme immunoassays for quantitation of antibody or antigen. (A) Antibody detection. *1,* Viral antigen *(Ag)* obtained from infected cells, virions, or genetic engineering is affixed to a surface. *2,* Patient serum is added and allowed to bind to the antigen. Unbound antibody is washed away. *3,* Enzyme-conjugated antihuman antibody *(E)* is added, and unbound antibody is washed away. *4,* Substrate is added and converted *(5)* into chromophore, precipitate, or light. (B) Antigen capture and detection. *1,* Antiviral antibody is affixed to a surface. *2,* A specimen that contains antigen is added, and unbound antigen is washed away. *3,* A second antiviral antibody is added to detect the captured antigen. *4,* Enzyme-conjugated anti-antibody is added, washed, and followed by substrate *(5)*, which is converted *(6)* into a chromophore, precipitate, or light.

antibody with a covalently linked enzyme (e.g., horseradish peroxidase, alkaline phosphatase, β-galactosidase) then detects the affixed patient antibody. It is quantitated spectrophotometrically according to the optical density of the color produced in response to the enzyme conversion of an appropriate substrate. The actual concentration of a specific antibody can be determined by comparison with the reactivity of standard human antibody solutions.

ELISAs can also be used to quantitate the soluble antigen in a patient's sample. In these assays, soluble antigen is captured and concentrated by an immobilized antibody and then detected with a different antibody labeled with the enzyme. The many variations of ELISAs differ in the way in which they capture or detect antibody or antigen.

Western blot analysis is a variation of ELISA. In this technique, viral proteins separated by electrophoresis according to their molecular weight or charge are transferred (blotted) onto a filter paper (e.g., nitrocellulose, nylon). When exposed to a patient's serum, the immobilized proteins capture virus-specific antibody and are visualized with an enzyme-conjugated antihuman antibody. This technique shows the proteins recognized by the patient's serum. Western blot analysis has been used to confirm ELISA results in patients suspected to be infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV; Fig. 6.6; also see Fig. 39.7).

Rapid tests for home usage, such as the home pregnancy test for the human chorionic gonadotropin hormone, use a **lateral flow visual assay**. A dipstick is placed into urine or other fluid and the antigen-containing fluid wicks through a section containing enzyme-labeled antibodies and then continues to another section that captures and concentrates the complex and has substrate for the enzyme to give a display.

In **radioimmunoassay (RIA),** radiolabeled (e.g., with iodine-125) antibody or antigen is used to quantitate antigen-antibody complexes. Antibody in a patient's serum can be quantitated by its ability to compete with and replace a laboratory-prepared radiolabeled antibody in precipitated antigen-antibody complexes. The radioallergosorbent assay (RAST) is a variation of an RIA assay in which patient antibody competes with radiolabeled anti-IgE in binding to immobilized allergen, but this assay has been replaced with ELISA tests.

Complement fixation is a standard but technically difficult serologic test (Box 6.1). In this test, the patient's serum sample is reacted with laboratory-derived antigen and extra complement. Antibody-antigen complexes bind, activate, and fix (use up) the complement. The residual complement is then assayed through the lysis of red blood cells coated with antibody. A variation of this test can also be used to identify genetic deficiencies in complement components.

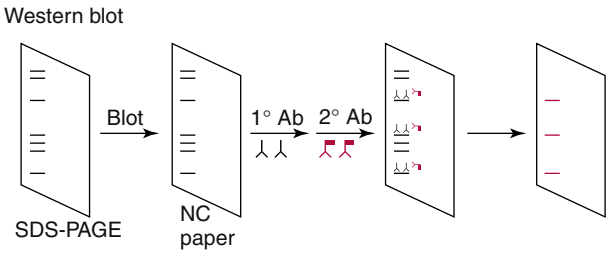


Fig. 6.6 Western blot analysis. Proteins are separated by sodium dodecyl sulfate–polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis *(SDS-PAGE),* electroblotted onto nitrocellulose *(NC)* paper, and incubated with antigen-specific antisera or the patient's antisera *(1 Ab)* and then enzyme-conjugated antihuman serum *(2 Ab).* Enzyme conversion of substrate identifies the antigen.

Antibody inhibition assays make use of the specificity of an antibody to prevent infection **(neutralization)** or other activity **(hemagglutination inhibition)** to identify the strain of the infecting agent, usually a virus, or to quantitate antibody responses to a specific strain of virus. For example, hemagglutination inhibition is used to distinguish different strains of influenza A and the potency of antibody developed by new vaccines for influenza. These tests are discussed further in Chapter 49.

Latex agglutination is a rapid, technically simple assay for detecting antibody or soluble antigen. Virus-specific antibody causes latex particles coated with viral antigens to clump. Conversely, antibody-coated latex particles are used to detect soluble viral antigen. In **passive hemagglutination**, antigen-modified erythrocytes are used as indicators instead of latex particles.

Serology

The humoral immune response provides a history of a patient's infections. Serology can be used to identify the infecting agent, evaluate the course of an infection, or determine the nature of the infection, such as whether it is a primary infection or a reinfection, and whether it is acute or chronic. The antibody type and titer and the identity of the antigenic targets provide serologic data about an infection. Serologic testing is used to identify viruses and other agents that are difficult to isolate and grow in the laboratory or that cause diseases that progress slowly (Box 6.2).

The relative antibody concentration is reported as a titer. A **titer** is the inverse of the greatest dilution (lowest concentration [e.g., dilution of 1:64 = titer of 64]) of a patient's serum that retains activity in one of the immunoassays just described.

Box 6.1 Serologic Assays

Complement fixation
Hemagglutination inhibition[a]
Neutralization[a]
Immunofluorescence (direct and indirect)
Latex agglutination
In situ enzyme immunoassay
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
Radioimmunoassay

[a]For detection of antibody or serotyping of virus.

Box 6.2 Viruses Diagnosed by Serology[a]

Epstein-Barr virus
Rubella virus
Hepatitis A, B, C, D, and E viruses
Human immunodeficiency virus
Human T-cell leukemia virus
Arboviruses (encephalitis viruses)

[a]Serologic testing is also used to determine a person's immune status with regard to other viruses.

The amount of IgM, IgG, IgA, or IgE reactive with antigen can also be evaluated through the use of a labeled second antihuman antibody that is specific for the antibody isotype.

Serology is used to determine the time course of an infection. **Seroconversion** occurs when antibody is produced in response to a primary infection. *Specific IgM antibody found during the first 2 to 3 weeks of a primary infection is a good indicator of a recent primary infection.* Reinfection or recurrence later in life causes an **anamnestic** (secondary or booster) response. Antibody titers may remain high in patients whose disease recurs frequently (e.g., herpesviruses). Seroconversion or reinfection is indicated by the finding *of at least a fourfold increase in the antibody titer between serum obtained during the acute phase of disease and that obtained at least 2 to 3 weeks later during the convalescent phase.* For example, a twofold serial dilution will not distinguish between samples with 512 and 1023 units of antibody, both of which would give a reaction on a 512-fold dilution but not on a 1024-fold dilution, and both results would be reported as titers of 512. On the other hand, samples with 1020 and 1030 units are not significantly different but would be reported as titers of 512 and 1024, respectively.

Serology can also be used to determine the stage of a slower or chronic infection (e.g., hepatitis B or infectious mononucleosis caused by Epstein-Barr virus) based on the presence of antibody to specific microbial antigens. The first antibodies to be detected are those directed against antigens most available to the immune system (e.g., on the surface of the virion, on infected cells, or secreted). Later in the infection, when cells have been lysed by the infecting virus or the cellular immune response, antibodies directed against the intracellular proteins and enzymes are detected.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Jorgensen, J.H., Pfaller, M.A., Carroll, K.C., et al., 2015. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Loeffelholz, M.J., Hodinka, R.L., Young, S.A., 2016. Clinical Virology Manual, fifth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Murray, P.R., 2004. ASM Pocket Guide to Clinical Microbiology, third ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Rosenthal, K.S., Wilkinson, J.G., 2007. Flow cytometry and immunospeak. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 15, 183–191.

Tile, P.M., 2014. Bailey and Scott's Diagnostic Microbiology, thirteenth ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Questions

Describe the diagnostic procedure or procedures (molecular or immunologic) that would be appropriate for each of the following applications:

1. Determination of the apparent molecular weights of the HIV proteins
2. Detection of human papillomavirus 16 (a nonreplicating virus) in a Papanicolaou (Pap) smear
3. Detection of herpes simplex virus (HSV) (a replicating virus) in a Pap smear
4. Presence of *Histoplasma* fungal antigens in a patient's serum
5. CD4 and CD8 T-cell concentrations in blood from a patient infected with HIV
6. The presence of antibody and the titer of anti-HIV antibody
7. Genetic differences between two HSVs (DNA virus)
8. Genetic differences between two parainfluenza viruses (ribonucleic acid virus)
9. Amount of rotavirus antigen in stool
10. Detection of group A streptococci and their distinction from other streptococci

SECTION 3

Basic Concepts in the Immune Response

SECTION OUTLINE

7 Elements of Host Protective Responses

We live in a microbial world, and a microbial world lives on and within us as normal flora. Our bodies are constantly being exposed to bacteria, fungi, parasites, and viruses (Box 7.1) and must restrict the normal flora from entering into sterile tissue sites, discriminate between friend and foe, and defend against invading microbes. Our bodies' defenses are similar to a sanitation department and military defense. Most of the time they are protecting the borders of the body and cleaning up cellular and molecular trash. The initial defense mechanisms are **barriers** such as the skin, acid and bile of the gastrointestinal tract, and mucus that inactivate and prevent entry of the foreign agents. If these barriers are compromised or the agent gains entry in another way, then the local militia of **innate responses** must quickly rally to the challenge and prevent expansion of the invasion. Initially, toxic molecules (defensins and other peptides, and complement) are thrown at the microbe whereas other molecules make them sticky (complement, lectins, and antibodies), facilitating the ingestion and destruction of the microbial trash by neutrophils and macrophages. Once activated, these responses also send an alarm (complement, cytokines, and chemokines) to other cells and open the vasculature (complement and cytokines) to provide access to the site. The innate responses then activate a major campaign specifically directed against the invader by **antigen-specific immune responses** (B cells, antibody, and T cells) at whatever cost (energy and immunopathogenesis). Finally, the infected tissue must be repaired and the system returned to the status quo and a normal regulated balance. Knowledge of the characteristics of the enemy (antigens) through prior exposure or vaccination enables the body to mount a faster, more effective response (activation of memory B and T cells) on rechallenge.

The different elements of the immune system interact and communicate using soluble molecules and by direct cell-to-cell interaction. These interactions provide the mechanisms for activation and control of the protective responses. Unfortunately, the protective responses to some infectious agents are insufficient or too slow; in other cases, the response to the challenge is excessive and causes peripheral damage. In either case, disease occurs.

Soluble Activators and Stimulators of Innate and Immune Functions

Innate and immune cells communicate by cell–cell interactions and with soluble molecules, including complement cleavage products, cytokines, interferons (IFNs), and chemokines. **Cytokines** are hormone-like proteins that act on cells to activate and regulate the innate and immune response (Table 7.1 and Box 7.2). **IFNs** are also cytokines that are produced in response to viral and other infections (IFN-α and IFN-β) or on activation of the immune response (IFN-γ); they promote antiviral and antitumor responses and stimulate immune responses (see Chapter 8). **Chemokines** are small proteins (≈8000 Da) that attract specific cells to sites of inflammation and other immunologically important sites. Neutrophils, basophils, natural killer (NK) cells, monocytes, and T cells express receptors and can be activated by specific chemokines. The chemokines and other proteins (e.g., the C3a and C5a products of the complement cascade) are chemotactic factors that establish a chemical path to attract white blood cells to the site of infection. The triggers that stimulate the production of these soluble molecules and the consequences of the interactions with their receptors on specific cells determine the nature of the innate and immune response. *For each of the cytokines know **STAT** (**s**ource [cell], **t**rigger, **a**ction, **t**arget [receptor and cell]), and for the response, **TICTOC** (**t**rigger, **i**nducer, **c**ells [producer and responder], **t**ime course, **o**utcome, **c**ytokines).*

Cells of the Immune Response

Immune responses are mediated by specific cells with defined functions. Characteristics of these cells, their appearances, and numbers are presented in Fig. 7.1 and in Tables 7.2 and 7.3. *For each of the cells know **CARP**: **c**ell-surface markers (e.g., CD4, TCR, etc.), **a**ctions (kill, suppress, activate, etc.), **r**ole (type of response), and **p**roducts (cytokines, antibody, etc.).* The white blood cells can be distinguished on the basis of (1) morphology, (2) histologic staining, (3) immunologic functions, and (4) intracellular and cell-surface markers. B and T lymphocytes can be distinguished by expression of antigen receptors on their surfaces, immunoglobulin for B cells, and T-cell receptors (TCRs) for T cells. Other cell-surface proteins distinguish subsets of these and other types of cells. These marker proteins are identified with monoclonal antibodies. They are defined within **clusters of differentiation** (as determined by all of the monoclonal antibodies that recognize the same molecule [e.g., CD4]) or group of molecules (e.g., CD3) and the markers indicated by **"CD"** (cluster of differentiation) numbers (Table 7.4). In addition, **all nucleated cells express class I major histocompatibility complex (MHC I) antigens** (human: HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C).

A special class of cells that are **antigen-presenting cells (APCs) express class II MHC antigens** (HLA-DR, HLA-DP, HLA-DQ). Cells that present antigenic peptides to T cells include dendritic cells (DCs), macrophage family cells, B lymphocytes, and a limited number of other cell types.

BOX 7.1 Overview of the Immune Response

- There is a natural balance in the body between repair and debris removal and inflammation and attack; this balance is regulated by components of the innate and antigen-specific immune responses.
- The immune system is trained to ignore its own proteins and tolerate normal flora that stays in its normal habitat.
- Tissue damage and infection trigger host responses, each of which provides molecules (DAMP and PAMP) recognized by host receptors on immune and other cells that activate innate and inflammatory responses.
- Soluble effectors are released or activated in response to tissue damage or infection before phagocytes or immune cells become involved (soluble before cellular).
- The host response progresses from innate to antigen specific.
- The immune response facilitates, enhances, and regulates the innate responses.

DAMP, Damage-associated molecular patterns; *PAMP,* pathogen-associated molecular patterns.

HEMATOPOIETIC CELL DIFFERENTIATION

Differentiation of a common progenitor cell, termed the **pluripotent stem cell,** gives rise to all blood cells. Differentiation of these cells begins during development of the fetus and continues throughout life. The pluripotent stem cell differentiates into stem cells (sometimes referred to as *colony-forming units*) for different lineages of blood cells, including the lymphoid (T and B cells), myeloid, erythrocytic, and megakaryoblastic (source of platelets) lineages (see Fig. 7.1). The stem cells reside primarily in the bone marrow but can be isolated from the fetal blood in umbilical cords and as rare cells in adult blood. Differentiation of stem cells into the functional blood cells is triggered by specific cell-surface interactions with the stromal cells of the marrow and specific cytokines produced by these and other cells.

The bone marrow and thymus are considered **primary lymphoid organs** (Fig. 7.2 and Box 7.3). These sites of initial lymphocyte differentiation are essential to the development of the immune system. The thymus is essential at birth for T-cell development but shrinks with aging, and other tissues adopt its function later in life. **Secondary lymphoid organs** include the **lymph nodes, spleen, skin**, and **mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT);** the latter also includes gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT) (e.g., Peyer patches) and bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (BALT) (e.g., lung). These sites are where DCs, innate lymphoid cells (ILCs), B and T lymphocytes, and other cells reside and respond to antigenic challenges. The primary and secondary lymphoid organs produce chemokines and express cell-surface adhesion molecules **(addressins)** that interact with homing receptors **(cell adhesion molecules)** to attract and retain these cells.

The spleen and lymph nodes are encapsulated organs with designated areas for B and T cells. These locations facilitate interactions that promote immune responses to antigen (Fig. 7.3). Proliferation of the lymphocytes in response to infectious challenge causes these tissues to swell (i.e., "swollen glands").

The **lymph nodes** are kidney-shaped organs, 2 to 10 mm in diameter, that filter the fluid that passes from intercellular spaces into the lymphatic system, almost like a sewage processing plant. The lymph node is constructed to optimize the meeting of the innate (DCs and macrophages) and the immune response (B and T) cells to initiate and expand specific immune responses. A lymph node consists of three layers:

1. The cortex: The outer layer contains mainly B cells, some T cells, follicular DCs, and macrophages arranged in structures called *follicles* and, if activated, in germinal centers.
2. The paracortex: Contains T cells and DCs and the DCs present antigens to the T cells to initiate immune responses.
3. The medulla: Contains B and T cells and antibody-producing plasma cells, as well as channels for the lymph fluid.

The **spleen** is a large organ that acts like a lymph node and also filters antigens, encapsulated bacteria, and viruses from blood and removes aged blood cells and platelets (Fig. 7.4). The spleen consists of two types of tissue, the white pulp and the red pulp. The white pulp consists of arterioles surrounded by lymphoid cells (periarteriolar lymphoid sheath) in which the **T cells** surround the central arteriole. **B cells** are organized into primary unstimulated or secondary stimulated follicles that have a germinal center. The germinal center contains memory cells, macrophages, and follicular DCs. The red pulp is a storage site for blood cells and the site of turnover of aged platelets and erythrocytes. *A hint for remembering this: There is no T in follicle or germinal center but there are Ts in paracortex and periarteriolar lymphoid sheet.*

The **epidermis of skin** contains keratinocytes and Langerhans cells, and the **dermis** contains DCs, B and T lymphocytes, macrophages, and mast cells. Large numbers of memory T cells continuously circulate into these layers of the skin. Keratinocytes in the epidermis are part of the innate antimicrobial defense system.

MALT contains less structured aggregates of lymphoid cells (Fig. 7.5). For example, the **Peyer patches** along the intestinal wall have special cells in the epithelium (M cells) that deliver antigens from the lumen into this mini lymph node–like structure containing DCs and lymphocytes in defined regions (T [interfollicular] and B [germinal]). DCs, T cells, and B cells also reside in the lamina propria layer just under the epithelium. Once thought to be expendable, the **tonsils** are an important part of the MALT. These lymphoepithelial organs sample the microbes in the oral and nasal area. The tonsils contain a large number of mature and memory B cells (50% to 90% of the lymphocytes) that use their antibodies to sense specific pathogens and, with DCs and T cells, can initiate immune responses. Swelling of the tonsils may be caused by infection or a response to infection.

POLYMORPHONUCLEAR LEUKOCYTES

Polymorphonuclear leukocytes (neutrophils) are short-lived cells that constitute 50% to 70% of circulating white blood cells (see Fig. 7.1) and are a primary **phagocytic defense** against bacterial and fungal infection and a major component of the **inflammatory response. Neutrophils**

TABLE 7.1 Cytokines and Chemokines

Factor	Major Sources	Major Target	Function
INNATE AND ACUTE-PHASE RESPONSES			
IFN-α, IFN-β	Leukocytes, DCs, fibroblasts, and other cells	Virally infected cells, tumor cells, NK cells	Induction of antiviral state; activation of NK cells, enhancement of cell-mediated immunity
IL-1α, IL-1β	Macrophages, DCs, fibroblasts, epithelial cells, endothelial cells	T cells, B cells, PMNs, tissue, central nervous system, liver, and so forth	Many actions: promotion of inflammatory and acute-phase responses, fever, activation of T cells and macrophages
TNF-α (cachectin)	Similar to IL-1	Macrophages, T cells, NK cells, epithelial and many other cells	Similar to IL-1, and also antitumor, wasting (cachexia, weight loss) functions, sepsis, endothelial activation
IL-6	DCs, macrophages, T and B cells, fibroblasts, epithelial cells, endothelial cells	T and B cells, hepatocytes	Stimulation of acute-phase and inflammatory responses, T- and B-cell growth and development
IL-12, IL-23	DCs, macrophage	NK cells, CD4 TH1, TH17 cells	Activation of T-cell–mediated and inflammatory responses, promotes IFN-γ or IL-17 production
GROWTH AND DIFFERENTIATION			
Colony-stimulating factors (e.g., GM-CSF)	T cells, stromal cells	Stem cells	Growth and differentiation of specific cell types, hematopoiesis
IL-3	CD4 T cells, keratinocytes	Stem cells	Hematopoiesis
IL-7	Bone marrow, stroma	Precursor cells and stem cells	Growth of pre–B cell, thymocyte, T cell, and cytotoxic lymphocyte
TH1 AND TH17 RESPONSES			
IL-2	CD4 T cells (TH0, TH1)	T cells, B cells, NK cells	T- and B-cell growth, NK activation
IFN-γ	CD4 TH1 cells, NK cells, ILC1	Macrophages,[a] DCs, T cells, B cells	Activation of macrophage, inflammation and TH1 and promotion of IgG class switch but inhibition of TH2 responses
TNF-β	CD4 TH1 cells	PMN, tumors	Lymphotoxin: tumor killing, activation of PMN, endothelial activation
IL-17	CD4 TH17 cells, ILC3	Epithelial, endothelial, and fibroblast cells; neutrophils	Activate tissue to promote inflammation even in the presence of TGF-β.
IL-22	CD4 TH17 cells, ILC3	Epithelial cells	Growth and repair of epithelial cells; antibacterial peptide production with IL-17
TH2 RESPONSES			
IL-4	CD4 T cells (TH0, TH2), ILC2	B and T cells	T- and B-cell growth; IgG, IgA, and IgE production; TH2 responses
IL-5	CD4 TH2 cells, ILC2	B cells, eosinophils	B-cell growth and differentiation; IgG, IgA, and IgE production; eosinophil production; allergic responses
IL-10	CD4 TH2, ILCreg, Tr1 and Treg cells	B cells, CD4 TH1 cells	B-cell growth, inhibition of TH1 response
REGULATORY RESPONSE			
TGF-β (also IL-10)	CD4 Treg, Tr1 cells, ILCreg	B cells, T cells, macrophages	Immunosuppression of B, T, and NK cells and macrophages; promotion of oral tolerance, wound healing, IgA production
CHEMOKINES			
α-Chemokines: CXC chemokines, two cysteines separated by one amino acid (IL-8; IP-10; GRO-α, GRO-β, GRO-γ)	Many cells	Neutrophils, T cells, macrophages	Chemotaxis, activation
β-Chemokines: CC chemokines, two adjacent cysteines (MCP-1; MIP-α; MIP-β; RANTES)	Many cells	T cells, macrophages, basophils	Chemotaxis, activation

[a]Applies to one or more cell types of the monocyte-macrophage lineage.

CD, Cluster of differentiation; *DCs*, dendritic cells; *GM-CSF,* granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *GRO-γ,* growth-related oncogene-γ; *IFN-α, -β, -γ,* interferon-α, -β, -γ; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *IL,* interleukin; *ILC,* innate lymphoid cells; *ILCreg,* regulatory innate lymphoid cell; *IP,* interferon-α protein; *MCP,* monocyte chemoattractant protein; *MIP,* macrophage inflammatory protein; *NK,* natural killer cells; *PMN,* polymorphonuclear leukocyte; *RANTES,* regulated on activation, normal T expressed and secreted; *TGF-β,* transforming growth factor-β; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α; *Treg,* regulatory T cell; *Tr1*, Type 1 regulatory cell.

are 9 to 14 μm in diameter, lack mitochondria, have a granulated cytoplasm in which granules stain with both acidic and basic stains, and have a multilobed nucleus. Neutrophils leave the blood and concentrate at the site of infection in response to chemotactic factors. During infection, the neutrophils are recruited from the bone marrow to increase the numbers in blood and these will include precursor forms. These precursors are termed **band forms,** which is in contrast to the terminally differentiated and **segmented neutrophils (segs).** The finding of such an increase and change in neutrophils by a blood count is sometimes termed *a left shift with an increase in bands versus segs*. Neutrophils ingest bacteria by phagocytosis and expose the bacteria to antibacterial substances and enzymes contained in **primary (azurophilic)** and **secondary (specific) granules.** Primary granules are reservoirs for enzymes such as myeloperoxidase, β-glucuronidase, elastase, and cathepsin G. Specific granules serve as reservoirs for lysozyme and lactoferrin. Dead neutrophils release a sticky antimicrobial net of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and other fibers, termed **neutrophil extracellular trap (NET)**, and dead neutrophils are the major component of **pus.**

Eosinophils are heavily granulated cells (11 to 15 μm in diameter) with a bilobed nucleus that stains with the acid dye eosin Y. They are also phagocytic, motile, and granulated. The granules contain acid phosphatase, peroxidase, and eosinophilic basic proteins. Eosinophils play a role in the defense against **parasitic infections.** The eosinophilic basic proteins are toxic to many parasites. **Mast cells** and

BOX 7.2 Major Cytokine-Producing Cells

Innate (Acute-Phase Responses)

Dendritic cells, macrophages, other: IL-1, TNF-α, IL-6, IL-12, IL-18, IL-23, GM-CSF, chemokines, IFN-α, IFN-β

Immune: T Cells (CD4 and CD8)

TH1 cells: IL-2, IFN-γ, TNF-α, TNF-β, IL-3, GM-CSF
TH2 cells: IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-10, IL-3, IL-9, IL-13, GM-CSF, TNF-α
TH17 cells: IL17, IL21, IL22, GM-CSF, TNF-α
Treg cells: TGF-β and IL-10

CD, Cluster differentiation; *GM-CSF,* granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *IFN-α, -β, -γ,* interferon-α, -β, -γ; *IL,* interleukin; *TGF-β,* transforming growth factor-β; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α; *Treg,* T regulator.

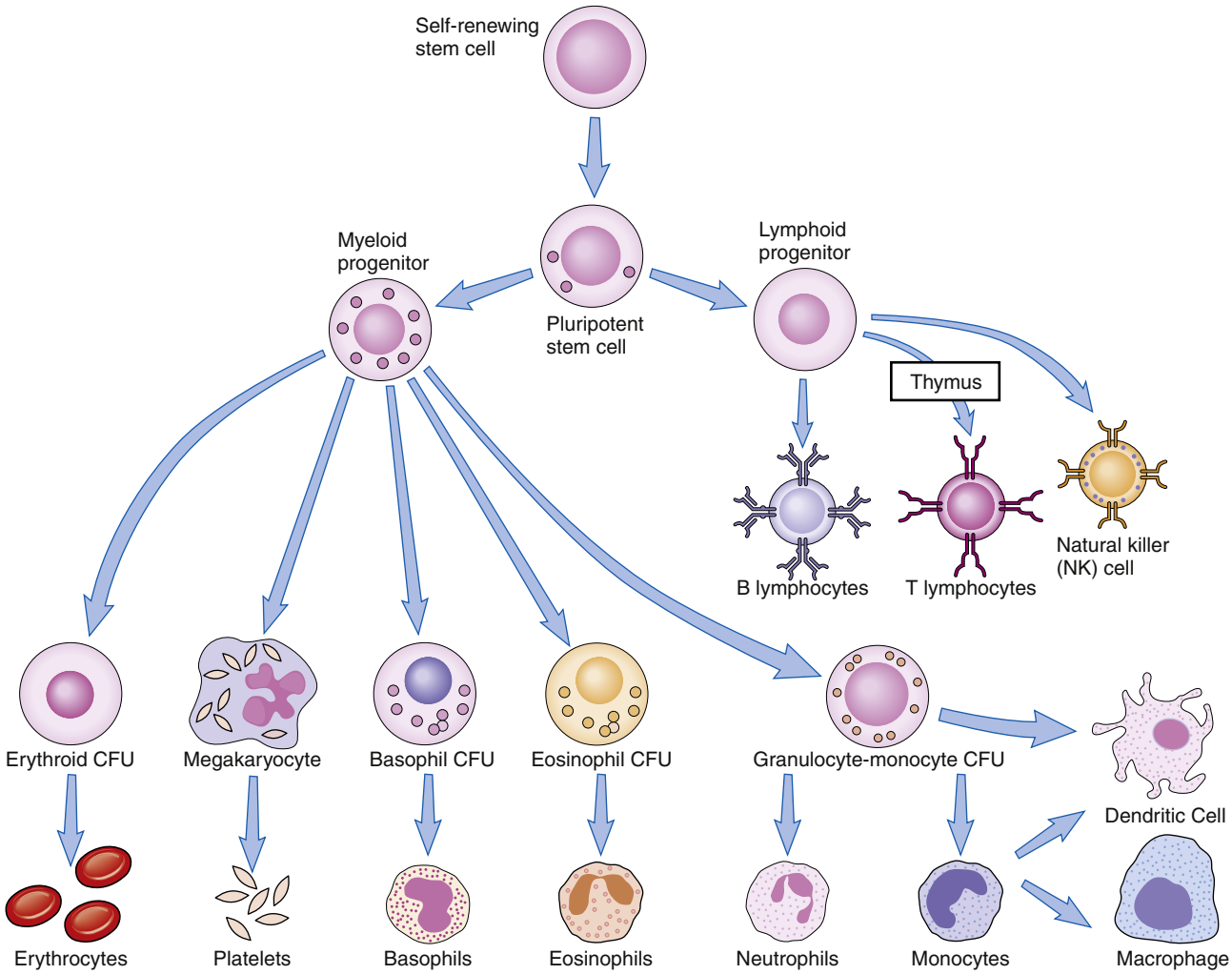


Fig. 7.1 Morphology and lineage of cells involved in the immune response. Pluripotent stem cells and colony-forming units *(CFUs)* are long-lived cells capable of replenishing the more differentiated functional and terminally differentiated cells. (Modified from Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2015. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

TABLE 7.2 Cells of the Immune Response

Cells	Characteristics and Functions
ILCs	Produce cytokines in response to microbial and other triggers
NK cells (ILC1)	Large, granular lymphocytes Markers: Fc receptors for antibody, KIR **Kill antibody-decorated cells and virus-infected or tumor cell** (no MHC restriction)
PHAGOCYTIC CELLS	
Neutrophils	Granulocytes with short life span, multilobed nucleus and granules, segmented band forms (more immature) **Phagocytose** and **kill bacteria** (polymorphonuclear leukocytes)
Eosinophils	Bilobed nucleus, heavily granulated cytoplasm, stains with eosin Involved in parasite defense and allergic response
APCs	Marker: class II MHC-expressing cells Process and present antigen to CD4 T cells
Monocytes[a]	Horseshoe-shaped nucleus, lysosomes, granules *Precursors to macrophage-lineage and dendritic cells*, cytokine release
Immature dendritic cells	Blood and tissue Cytokine response to infection, process antigen
Dendritic cells[a]	Lymph nodes, tissue Most potent APC; initiates and determines nature of T-cell response
Langerhans cells[a]	**Present in skin** **Same as immature dendritic cell**
Macrophages[a]	Possible residence in tissue, spleen, lymph nodes, and other organs; activated by IFN-γ and TNF Markers: large, granular cells; Fc and C3b receptors (M2) Remove debris, maintain normal tissue function, and facilitate repair, APC (M1) Activated cells initiate inflammatory and acute-phase response; **activated cells are antibacterial, APC**
ANTIGEN-RESPONSIVE T CELLS	
T cells (all)	Mature in thymus; large nucleus, small cytoplasm Markers: CD2, CD3, TCR
α/β TCR CD4 T cells	Helper cells; **activation** by APCs through **class II MHC antigen presentation** Produce cytokines; activate APCs; stimulate T- and B-cell growth; promote B-cell differentiation (class switching, antibody production) **TH1 subtype** (IL-2, IFN-γ, LT production): activate macrophages and local and systemic cell-mediated defenses (including DTH, CD8 T killer cells) and antibody production **TH2 subtype** (IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-10 production): promote humoral (antibody) responses (systemic) **TH17 subtype** (IL-17, TNF-α, IL-21, IL-22): stimulate epithelial cells and neutrophils and inflammation **Treg, Tr1 cells** (TGF-β, IL-10): control activation of CD4 and CD8 T cells and other cells; important for immunotolerance
α/β NKT cells	Markers: NK cell receptors, α/β TCR for glycolipids on CD1 Rapid response to infection, cytokine release
α/β MAIT cells	Markers: α/β TCR for vitamin B2 from bacteria bound to MR-1 Rapid response to infection, cytokine release
γ/δ TCR T cells	Markers: CD2, CD3, γ/δ TCR Early sensor of some bacterial infections and cell stress, cytokine release
α/β CD8 T cells	Recognition of antigen presented by **class I MHC antigens** on all cells Kill viral, tumor and nonself-transplanted cells; secrete cytokines
ANTIBODY-PRODUCING CELLS	
B cells	Mature in bone marrow, Peyer patches Large nucleus, small cytoplasm; activation by antigens and T-cell factors Markers: surface antibody, **class II MHC antigens** Produce antibody and present antigen
Plasma cells	Small nucleus, large cytoplasm Terminally differentiated, antibody factories
OTHER CELLS	
Basophils/mast cells	Granulocytic Marker: Fc receptors for IgE Release histamine, provide allergic response, are antiparasitic
Platelets	Release clotting factors, antimicrobial peptides, chemokines and cytokines on activation

[a]Monocyte/macrophage lineage.

APC, Antigen-presenting phagocytic cells; *DTH,* delayed-type hypersensitivity; *Fc,* fragment crystallizable region of immunoglobulin; *IFN-γ,* interferon-γ; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *IL,* interleukin; *ILC,* innate lymphoid cells; *KIR,* killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors; *LT,* lymphotoxin; *MAIT,* mucosal-associated invariant T-cell; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex; *MR-1,* MHC-related protein 1; *NK,* natural killer; *NKT,* natural killer T cell; *TCR,* T-cell receptor; *TGF-β,* transforming growth factor-β; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α; *Treg,* T regulator; *Tr1,* Type 1 regulatory cell.

TABLE 7.3 Normal Blood Cell Counts

Cell Type	Mean Number per Microliter	Normal Range
White blood cells (leukocytes)	7400	4500–11,000
Neutrophils	4400	1800–7700
Eosinophils	200	0–450
Basophils	40	0–200
Lymphocytes	2500	1000–4800
Monocytes	300	0–800

Modified from Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2015. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.

basophils are nonphagocytic granulocytes that release the contents of their granules in response to inflammatory triggers and during allergic responses (type 1 hypersensitivity).

MONONUCLEAR PHAGOCYTE SYSTEM

The **mononuclear phagocyte system** has myeloid cells and consists of monocytes (see Fig. 7.1) in the blood, **macrophages**, and **DCs. Monocytes** are 10 to 18 μm in diameter, with a single-lobed, kidney bean–shaped nucleus. They represent 3% to 8% of peripheral blood leukocytes. Monocytes follow neutrophils into tissue as an early cellular component of inflammation. Monocytes can differentiate into macrophages and DCs.

TABLE 7.4 Selected Cluster Differentiation Markers of Importance

CD Markers	Identity and Function	Cell
CD1 (a–d)	MHC I–like, glycolipid antigen presentation	DC, macrophage
CD2 (LFA-3R)	Erythrocyte receptor, adhesion	T cells
CD3	TCR subunit (γ, δ, ε, ζ, η); activation	T cells
CD4	Class II MHC receptor	T-cell subset, monocytes, some DCs
CD8	Class I MHC receptor	T-cell subset
CD11b (CR3)	C3b complement receptor 3 (α chain)	NK, myeloid cells
CD14	LPS-binding protein receptor	Myeloid cells (monocytes, macrophages)
CD16 (Fc-γ RIII)	Phagocytosis and ADCC	NK-cell marker, macrophages, neutrophils
CD21 (CR2)	C3d complement receptor, EBV receptor, B-cell activation	B cells
CD25	IL-2 receptor (α chain), early activation marker, marker for regulatory cells	Activated T and B cells, regulatory T cells
CD28	Receptor for B7 co-stimulation: activation	T cells
CD40	Stimulation of B cell, DC, and macrophage	B cell, macrophage
CD40 L	Ligand for CD40	T cell
CD45RO	Isoform (on memory cells)	T cell, B cell
CD56 (NKH1)	Adhesion molecule	NK cell
CD69	Marker of cell activation	Activated T, B, and NK cells and macrophages
CD80 (B7-1)	Co-stimulation of T cells	DC, macrophages, B cell
CD86 (B7-2)	Co-stimulation of T cells	DC, macrophages, B cell
CD95 (Fas)	Apoptosis inducer	Many cells
CD152 (CTLA-4)	Receptor for B7; tolerance	T cell
CD178 (FasL)	Fas ligand: apoptosis inducer	Killer T and NK cells
ADHESION MOLECULES		
CD11a	LFA-1 (α chain)	—
CD29	VLA (β chain)	—
VLA-1, VLA-2, VLA-3	α Integrins	T cells
VLA-4	α_4-Integrin homing receptor	T cell, B cell, monocyte
CD50	ICAM-3	Lymphocytes and leukocytes
CD54	ICAM-1	—
CD58	LFA-3	—

Modified from Male, D., Cooke, A., Owen, M., et al., 1996. Advanced Immunology, third ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

ADCC, Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity; *CD,* cluster of differentiation; *CTLA-4,* cytotoxic T-lymphocyte–associated protein-4; *DC,* dendritic cell; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *ICAM-1, -3,* intercellular adhesion molecule-1, -3; *IL,* interleukin; *LFA-1, -3R,* leukocyte function–associated antigen-1, -3R; *LPS,* lipopolysaccharide; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex; *NK,* natural killer cell; *TCR,* T-cell antigen receptor; *VLA,* very late activation (antigen).

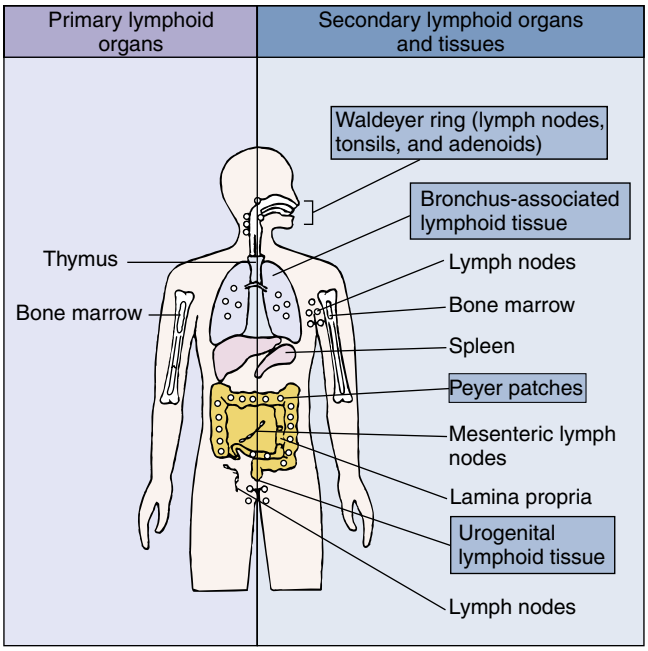


Fig. 7.2 Organs of the immune system. Thymus and bone marrow are primary lymphoid organs. They are sites of maturation for T and B cells, respectively. Cellular and humoral immune responses develop in the secondary (peripheral) lymphoid organs and tissues; effector and memory cells are generated in these organs. The spleen responds predominantly to blood-borne antigens. Lymph nodes mount immune responses to antigens in intercellular fluid and in the lymph, absorbed either through the skin (superficial nodes) or from internal viscera (deep nodes). Tonsils, Peyer patches, and other mucosa-associated lymphoid tissues *(blue boxes)* respond to antigens that have penetrated the surface of mucosal barriers. (From Male, D., Brostoff, J., Roth, D.B., et al., 2013. Immunology, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

BOX 7.3 Immune Organs

Thymus

Required at birth for T-cell development
Site of T-cell maturation and development of central tolerance

Bone Marrow

Source of stem cells
B-cell maturation and development of central tolerance

Lymph Node

Follicle: B-cell zone
  Germinal center: site of B-cell proliferation and plasma and memory cell development
Paracortex: T-cell zone

Spleen

White pulp
  Follicles: B-cell zone
  PALS; T-cell zone
Red pulp
  Macrophage-rich region for filtering blood, removal of damaged cells and microbes

Mucosa-Associated Lymphoid Tissue

Skin

PALS, Periarteriolar lymphoid sheath.

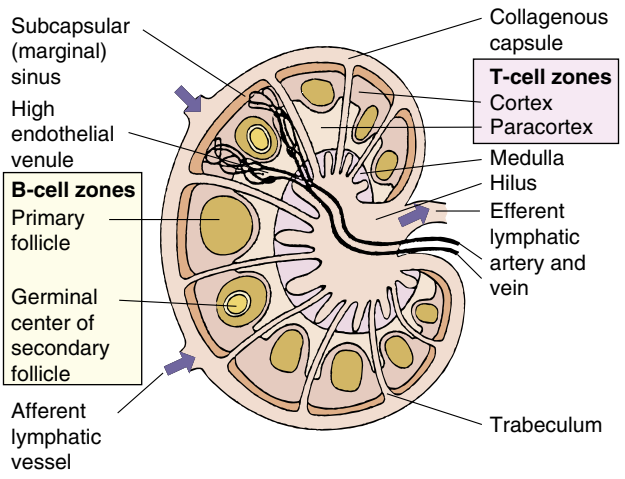


Fig. 7.3 Organization of the lymph node. Beneath the collagenous capsule is the subcapsular sinus, which is lined with phagocytic cells. Lymphocytes and antigens from surrounding tissue spaces or adjacent nodes pass into the sinus via the afferent lymphatic system. The cortex contains B cells grouped in primary follicles and stimulated B cells in secondary follicles (germinal centers). The paracortex contains mainly T cells and dendritic cells (antigen-presenting cells). Each lymph node has its own arterial and venous supplies. Lymphocytes enter the node from the circulation through the specialized high endothelial venules in the paracortex. The medulla contains both T and B cells and most of the lymph node plasma cells organized into cords of lymphoid tissue. Lymphocytes can leave the node only through the efferent lymphatic vessel. (From Male, D., Brostoff, J., Roth, D.B., et al., 2013. Immunology, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

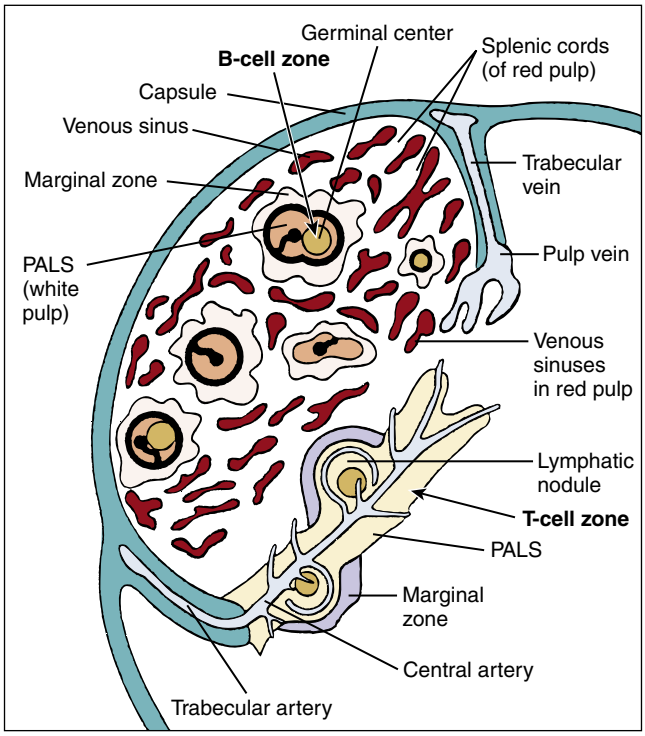


Fig. 7.4 Organization of lymphoid tissue in the spleen. The white pulp contains germinal centers and is surrounded by the marginal zone, which contains numerous macrophages, antigen-presenting cells, slowly recirculating B cells, and natural killer cells. The T cells reside in the periarteriolar lymphoid sheath *(PALS).* The red pulp contains venous sinuses separated by splenic cords. Blood enters the tissues via the trabecular arteries, which give rise to the many branched central arteries. Some arteries end in the white pulp, supplying the germinal centers and mantle zones, but most empty into or near the marginal zones. (From Male, D., Brostoff, J., Roth, D.B., et al., 2013. Immunology, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

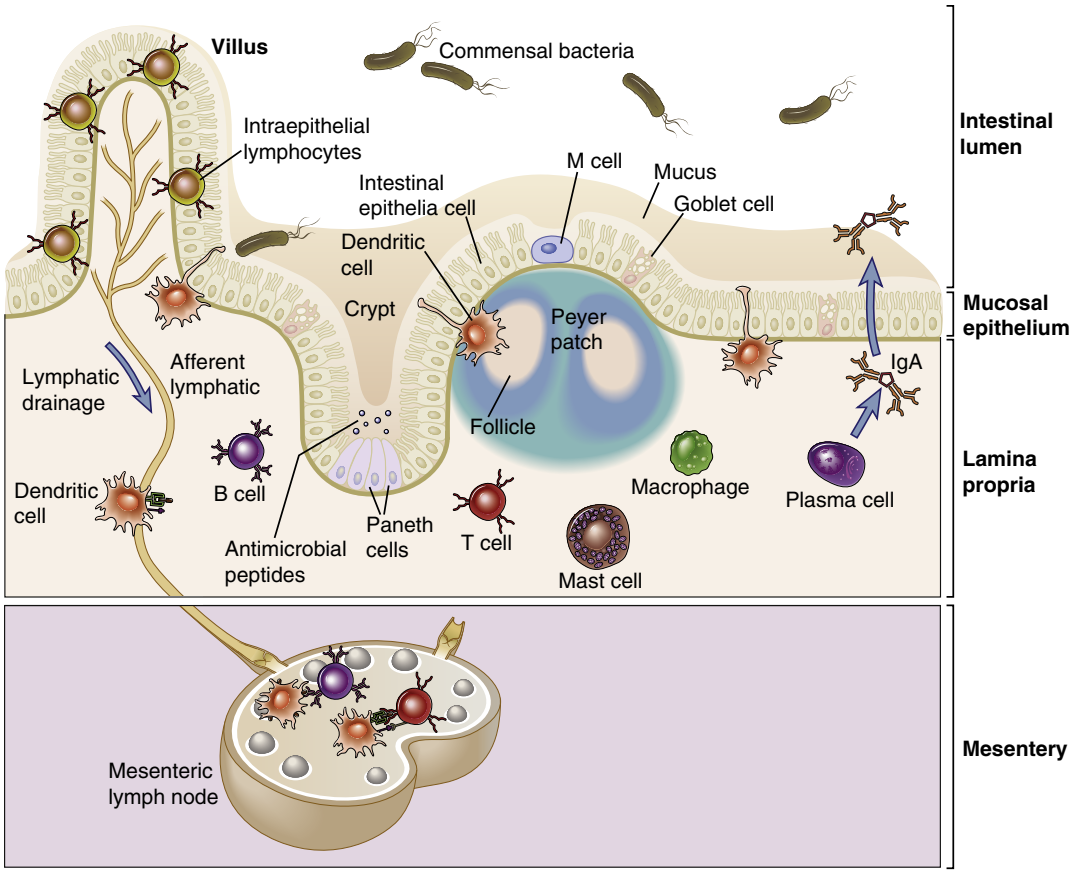


Fig. 7.5 Lymphoid cells stimulated with antigen in Peyer patches (or lungs or another mucosal site) migrate via the regional lymph nodes and thoracic duct into the bloodstream and then to the lamina propria of the gut and probably other mucosal surfaces. Thus lymphocytes stimulated at one mucosal surface may become distributed throughout the mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue system. *IgA,* Immunoglobulin A. (Modified from Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2015. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

Macrophages are long-lived cells that may be resident in tissues and derived from the embryonic yolk sack or derived from monocytes that are recruited to the tissue and are bone marrow derived. They are phagocytic, contain lysosomes, and, unlike neutrophils, have mitochondria. Macrophages have the following basic functions: (1) phagocytosis and degradation of debris and microbes, (2) antigen presentation (APC) to T cells to expand specific immune responses, and (3) secretion of cytokines to either maintain normal tissue function and repair **(M2 macrophages)** or be antimicrobial and promote inflammation (**M1 macrophages**) (Fig. 7.6; see Fig. 8.3). Macrophages express cell-surface receptors for the Fc portion of immunoglobulin (Ig) G **(Fc-γ RI, Fc-γ RII, Fc-γ RIII)** and for the C3b product of the complement cascade **(CR1, CR3).** These receptors facilitate the phagocytosis and clearance of antigen, dead cells, bacteria, or viruses coated with these proteins. **Toll-like and other pattern-recognition receptors** recognize pathogen-associated molecular patterns and activate protective responses. Macrophages also express the **class II MHC antigen,** which allows these cells to present antigen to CD4 helper T cells to expand the immune response. Macrophages secrete **interleukin (IL)-1, IL-6, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, IL-12, IL-23,** and other molecules on sensing bacteria, which stimulates immune and inflammatory responses, including fever.

Tissue resident macrophages include alveolar macrophages in the lungs, Kupffer cells in the liver, intraglomerular mesangial cells in the kidney, histiocytes in connective tissue, osteoclasts, synovial cells, and microglial cells in the brain. These macrophages are descended from cells of the yolk sac and are primarily involved in tissue maintenance, angiogenesis, and repair functions **(M2 macrophages)**. The mature forms of these cells have different morphologies corresponding to their ultimate tissue location and function and may express a subset of macrophage activities or cell-surface markers.

Recruited monocytes and macrophages activated by a T-cell–derived cytokine, **IFN-γ,** generate **M1 macrophages.** These macrophages have enhanced phagocytic, killing, and antigen-presenting capabilities and produce cytokines that promote inflammation.

DENDRITIC CELLS

DCs have octopus-like tendrils and a large surface area to interact with lymphocytes. There are three functional types of DCs: follicular, myeloid, and plasmacytoid.

Follicular DCs localize to B-cell regions of lymph nodes and spleen, are *not* hematopoietic in origin, and *do not process antigen* but have tendrils (dendrites) and a "sticky" surface to concentrate and *display antigens to B cells.*

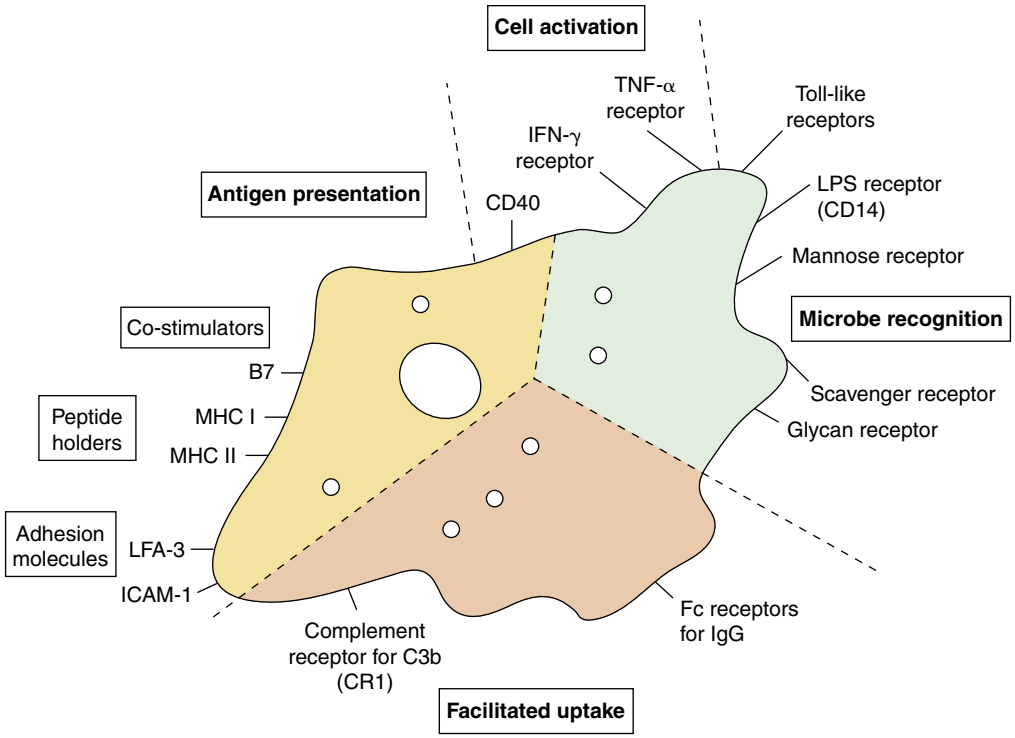


Fig. 7.6 Macrophage surface structures mediate cell function. Receptors for bacterial components, antibody, and complement (for opsonization) promote activation and phagocytosis of antigen; other receptors promote antigen presentation and activation of T cells. The dendritic cell shares many of these characteristics. *ICAM-1,* Intercellular adhesion molecule-1; *IFN-γ,* interferon-γ; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *LFA-3,* leukocyte function–associated antigen-3; *LPS,* lipopolysaccharide; *MHC,* major histocompatibility antigen I or II; *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α.

Plasmacytoid DCs have a plasma cell–like appearance, are present in blood, and produce large amounts of IFN-α and cytokines in response to viral and other infections and can also present antigen to T cells.

Myeloid-derived DCs are professional **APCs for T cells** that can also produce cytokines. Different types of immature and mature DCs are found in tissue and blood, and they include **Langerhans cells** in the skin; **dermal interstitial cells; splenic marginal DCs**; and DCs in the **liver, thymus, germinal centers of the lymph nodes,** and **blood.** DCs may be derived from myeloid stem cells or monocytes. **Immature DCs** capture and phagocytose antigen efficiently and release cytokines to activate and steer the subsequent immune response. On maturation, DCs move to lymph node regions rich in T cells to present antigen on class I and class II MHC antigens. *DCs are the only APCs that can initiate an immune response with a naive T lymphocyte and they direct (D for director) the nature of the subsequent T-cell response* (TH1, TH2, TH17, Treg).

LYMPHOCYTES

Lymphocytes are 6 to 10 μm in diameter, making them smaller than leukocytes. There are three classes of lymphocytes: **T cells, B cells, and ILCs.** These cells have a large nucleus and smaller, agranular cytoplasm. Although their morphologic features are similar, they can be distinguished on the basis of function and surface markers (Table 7.5).

T cells acquired their name because they develop in the *thymus*. T cells have the following two major functions in response to foreign antigen:

1. Regulate, suppress (when necessary), and activate immune and inflammatory responses with cell-to-cell interactions and by releasing cytokines
2. Directly kill virally infected cells, foreign cells (e.g., tissue grafts), and tumors by promoting apoptosis

T cells make up 60% to 80% of peripheral blood lymphocytes. T cells were initially distinguished from B cells on the basis of their ability to bind and surround themselves (forming rosettes) with sheep erythrocytes through the CD2 molecule. All T cells express an antigen-binding **TCR,** which resembles but differs from antibody, and **CD2-** and **CD3-associated** proteins on their cell surface (Fig. 7.7). T cells are divided into major groups on the basis of the type of TCR and by the cell-surface expression of two proteins, CD4 and CD8. Most T cells express the α/β **TCR. CD4-expressing T cells are T helper cells** and primarily cytokine-producing cells that help initiate, direct, and regulate innate and immune responses. The CD4 T cells can be further divided into TH0, TH1, TH2, TH17, Treg, Tr1, and other subgroups according to the spectrum of cytokines they secrete and the type of immune response they promote. TH1 cells promote local antibody and cellular inflammatory responses, whereas TH2 cells promote antibody production. TH17 cells activate epithelial cell and neutrophil-driven inflammation and other responses, and Treg and inducible Tr1 cells regulate the immune response to maintain balance and tolerance of self. The **CD8 T cells** also release cytokines but are better known for their ability to recognize and kill (through apoptosis) virally infected cells, foreign tissue transplants (nonself-grafts), and tumor cells as **cytotoxic T cells**. T cells also produce **memory cells** that express CD45RO. Other α/β TCR T cells include the mucosal-associated invariant T cell (**MAIT**) and NK T cell (**NKT**) and the **γ/δ T cells**, which express the γ/δ TCR but not CD4 or CD8. These cells generally reside in skin and mucosa and are important cytokine-producing cells that help initiate and maintain immune responses.

TABLE 7.5 Comparison of B and T Cells

Property	T Cells	B Cells
Origin	Bone marrow	Bone marrow
Maturation	Thymus	Bone marrow, Peyer patches
Functions	Varied (see section Subsets)	**Antibody production** Antigen presentation to T cells
Protective response	Enhance and control innate and immune responses; resolution of intracellular and fungal infections	Antibody protects against rechallenge; blocks spread of agent in blood, opsonize, etc.
Products[a]	Cytokines, growth factors, cytolytic substances (perforin, granzymes)	IgM, IgD, IgG, IgA, or IgE
Distinguishing surface markers	CD2 (sheep red blood cell receptor), TCR, CD3	Surface antibody, complement receptors, class II MHC antigens
Subsets	**CD4 TH0:** helper precursor **CD4 TH1:** activates B-, T-, and NK-cell growth; activates macrophages, CTLs, DTH responses, and IgG production **CD4 TH2:** activates B- and T-cell growth; promotes IgG, IgE, and IgA production **CD4 TH17:** antibacterial, inflammation **CD4 Treg, Tr1:** suppression and regulation **CD8:** cytotoxic T cells (CTL), cytokine production **NKT, MAIT, γδT;** rapid response to infection **Memory cells:** long-lived, anamnestic response	**B cells (IgM, IgD):** antibody, antigen presentation **B cells (IgG or IgE or IgA):** antibody, antigen presentation **B-1, Marginal zone B cells:** natural antibody production **Plasma cell:** terminally differentiated antibody factories **Memory cells:** long-lived, anamnestic response

[a]Depending on subset.

CD, Cluster of differentiation; *CTL,* cytotoxic lymphocyte; *DTH,* delayed-type hypersensitivity; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *MAIT,* Mucosal associated invariant T cells; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex; *NKT,* natural killer T (cell); *TCR,* T-cell receptor; *TH,* T helper (cell); *Treg,* regulatory T cell; *Tr1,* Type 1 regulatory cell.

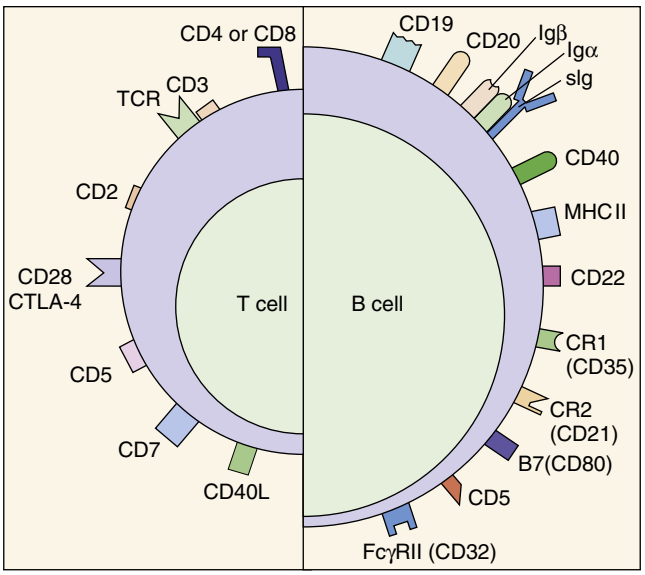


Fig. 7.7 Surface markers of human B and T cells.

The primary function of **B cells** is to **make antibody,** and most B cells also internalize antigen, process the antigen, and present the antigen to T cells to request T cell help and expand the immune response. These B cells can be identified by the presence of immunoglobulins, class II MHC molecules, and receptors for the C3b and C3d products of the complement cascade (CR1, CR2) on their cell surfaces (see Fig. 7.7). The B-cell name is derived from its site of differentiation, the *b*ursa of Fabricius in birds, and the *b*one marrow of mammals. Activated B cells either apoptose; develop into **memory cells,** which express the CD45RO cell-surface marker and circulate until activated by specific antigen; or terminally differentiate into plasma cells. **Plasma cells** have small nuclei and a large cytoplasm. Plasma cells are factories for production of antibody. More primitive B cells include **B-1 cells** and **marginal zone B cells. B-1 cells** are derived from fetal liver and constantly produce antibody but of low affinity against bacterial polysaccharides, ABO blood groups, and even self-antigens. **Marginal zone B cells** are found in the spleen. B-1 cells and marginal zone B cells are especially important for generating antibody against the capsular polysaccharides of bacteria and fungi.

ILCs are non-B, non-T lymphocytes that resemble T cells in some characteristics and include the **NK cells.** These cells are distinguished as ILC1, ILC2 or ILC3 by the cytokines that they produce and can initiate, maintain, and regulate host responses. In the gut, these cells produce cytokines that regulate the epithelial cell and lymphocyte response to the intestinal flora and facilitate antiparasitic worm protection. **NK cells** (ILC1s) are **large, granular lymphocytes** that resemble CD8 T cells in cytolytic function toward virally infected and tumor cells, but they differ in the mechanism for identifying the target cell. NK cells are also capable of antibody-dependent killing; hence they are also called **antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC or K) cells.** The cytoplasmic granules contain cytolytic proteins to mediate the killing.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2018. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

DeFranco, A.L., Locksley, R.M., Robertson, M., 2007. Immunity: The Immune Response in Infectious and Inflammatory Disease. Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, Mass.

Eberl, G., I Santo, J.P., Vivieer, E., 2015. The brave new world of innate lymphoid cells. Nat. Immunol. 16, 1–5.

Goering, R., Dockrell, H., Zuckerman, M., Chiodini, P.L., 2019. Mims' Medical Microbiology and Immunology, sixth ed. Elsevier, London.
Kumar, V., Abbas, A.K., Aster, J.C., 2015. Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.
Murphy, K., Weaver, C., 2016. Janeway's Immunobiology, ninth ed. Garland Science, New York.
Punt, J., Stranford, S.A., Jones, P.P., Owen, J.A., 2019. Kuby Immunology, eigth ed. WH Freeman, New York.
Rich, R.R., et al., 2019. Clinical Immunology Principles and Practice, fifth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.
Rosenthal, K.S., 2005. Are microbial symptoms "self-inflicted"? The consequences of immunopathology. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 13, 306–310.
Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Vaccines make good immune theater: immunization as described in a three-act play. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 14, 35–45.
Rosenthal, K.S., 2017. Dealing with garbage is the immune system's main job. MOJ Immunol. 5 (6), 00174. https://doi.org/10.15406/moji.2017.05.00174. http://medcraveonline.com/MOJI/MOJI-05-00174.pdf.
Rosenthal, K.S., 2018. Immune monitoring of the body's borders. AIMS Allergy and Immunol. 2 (3), 148–164. https://doi.org/10.3934/Allergy.2018.3.148. http://www.aimspress.com/article/10.3934/Allergy.2018.3.148.
Rosenthal, K.S., Wilkinson, J.G., 2007. Flow cytometry and immunospeak. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 15, 183–191.
Trends Immunol: Issues contain understandable reviews on current topics in immunology.

Questions

A professor was teaching an introductory course and described the different immune cells with the following nicknames. Explain why the nicknames are appropriate or why they are not.

1. Macrophage: Pac-Man (a computer game character who normally eats dots but eats bad guys when activated)
2. Lymph node: police department or sewage processing plant
3. CD4 T cell: desk sergeant/dispatch officer
4. CD8 T cell: "cop on the beat"/patrol officer
5. B cell: product design and building company
6. Plasma cell: factory
7. Mast cell: activatable chemical warfare unit
8. Neutrophil: trash collector and disinfector
9. Dendritic cell: billboard display

8 Innate Host Responses

Animations for this chapter are available on StudentConsult.com.

Innate host responses are continuously working to keep the normal flora in their appropriate places and rapidly react to invading and inappropriate microbes and cells. The body protects itself from microbial invasion in ways that are similar to those used to protect a country from invasion. Barriers such as skin, mucosal surfaces, and the acid of the stomach restrict bacteria to the outer surfaces and the lumen of the gastrointestinal tract and prevent invasion by most microbes. The microbes are bombarded with soluble antimicrobial molecules such as defensins; scavenger molecules of essential elements, such as iron; complement components; and lectins. If invasion occurs, a local militia of cells of the innate response, including immature dendritic cells (iDCs), Langerhans cells, dendritic cells (DCs), innate lymphoid cells (ILCs), and innate T cells (natural killer T cell [NKT], mucosal-associated invariant T cell [MAIT], and γδ T cells) are alerted by microbial structures, metabolites, and stress molecules, and then neutrophils and monocytes are attracted to the site by chemokines. Monocytes mature to macrophages, and neutrophils and macrophages ingest and kill the invaders. All of these cells produce cytokines and chemokines to instruct, activate, and call in additional forces. Often these innate responses are sufficient to control the infection. Later, more sophisticated antigen-specific responses support, enhance, and control the cell-mediated innate responses (Box 8.1).

Innate protections are activated by direct contact with repetitive structures of the microbial surface or their genome termed *pathogen-associated molecular patterns* (PAMPs) and by molecules released on stress or cell damage from microbes or human cells termed *damage-associated molecular patterns* (DAMPS). In contrast, the antigen-specific responses sense and are activated by unique small structures termed *epitopes* on larger molecules.

Barriers to Infection

The **skin** and **mucous membranes** serve as barriers to most infectious agents (Fig. 8.1), with few exceptions (e.g., papillomavirus, dermatophytes ["skin-loving" fungi]). Free fatty acids produced in sebaceous glands and by organisms on the skin surface, lactic acid in perspiration, and the low pH and relatively dry environment of the skin all form unfavorable conditions for the survival of most organisms.

The mucosal epithelium covering the orifices of the body is protected by mucus secretions and cilia. In the upper respiratory tract, large airborne particles get caught in the mucus, which is continuously transported toward the mouth by an escalator of ciliated epithelial cells and then swallowed to be inactivated in the stomach. Small particles (0.05 to 3 μm, the size of viruses or bacteria) that reach the alveoli are phagocytosed by macrophages and transported out of the airspaces. Some bacteria and viruses (e.g., *Bordetella pertussis*, influenza virus), cigarette smoke, or other pollutants can interfere with this clearance mechanism by damaging the ciliated epithelial cells, rendering the patient susceptible to secondary bacterial pneumonia. Antimicrobial substances (cationic peptides **[defensins],** lysozyme, and lactoferrin) found in secretions at mucosal surfaces (e.g., tears, mucus, saliva) also provide protection. Lysozyme induces lysis of bacteria by cleaving the polysaccharide backbone of the peptidoglycan of gram-positive bacteria. Lactoferrin, an iron-binding protein, deprives microbes of the free iron they need for growth (Table 8.1).

The **acidic environment** of the stomach, bladder, and kidneys and the **bile** of the intestines inactivate many viruses and bacteria. **Urinary flow** also limits the establishment of infection.

Body temperature, especially **fever,** limits or prevents the growth of many microbes, especially viruses. In addition, the immune response is more efficient at elevated temperatures.

Soluble Components of Innate Responses

ANTIMICROBIAL PEPTIDES AND CHELATORS

Defensins, bactericidal/permeability-increasing peptides (BPIs), and cathelicidins are peptides produced by neutrophils, epithelial cells, and other cells that disrupt microbial membranes and are toxic to bacteria and fungi. Defensins are small (≈30 amino acids) cationic peptides; cathelicidins and BPIs are larger and cleaved to produce microbiocidal peptides. When secreted by Paneth and other cells in the bowel, they limit and regulate the bacteria living in the lumen. Production of these antimicrobial peptides may be constitutive or stimulated by microbial products or cytokines, including interleukin (IL)-17 and IL-22.

Metal ion–binding proteins that bind iron (e.g., lactoferrin, transferrin, ferritin, siderocalin) or bind zinc and manganese (e.g., calprotectin) sequester these essential ions to prevent growth of bacteria and yeast. Unfortunately, many pathogens have developed alternate means for acquiring these ions.

COMPLEMENT

The complement system is an alarm and a weapon against infection and is especially important against bacterial

BOX 8.1 Innate Host Responses

Constitutive

Barriers: skin, stomach acid, bile, mucus
Body temperature
Antimicrobial peptides: defensins, cathelicidins
Enzymes: lysozyme
Metal ion scavengers: lactoferrin, transferrin, hepcidin
Complement
Epithelial cell responses

Recruitment

Complement C3a, C5a
Chemokines from epithelium and macrophages

Pathogen-Responsive Innate Cells

Granulocytes/neutrophils
Macrophages
Langerhans/dendritic cells
Innate lymphoid cells (NK cells)
γ/δ T cells, MAIT, NKT cells
B1 B cells

Acute-Phase/Inflammatory Cytokines

IL-1: fever, diapedesis, inflammation
TNF-α: fever, diapedesis, inflammation, vascular permeability, tissue remodeling, metabolism, maintenance of macrophage activation, cachexia
IL-6: acute-phase protein synthesis by liver, lymphocyte activation

Other Cytokines and Activators

IL-12: promotes TH1 response and activates NK cells
IL-23: promotes TH17 response from memory cells
Type 1 IFNs: antiviral effect, fever, promotes CD8 T-cell response
IFN-γ: activation of macrophages, dendritic cells, T and B cells
Lipid mediators (prostaglandins and leukotrienes): acts on many cells

Acute-Phase Proteins from the Liver

C-reactive protein, mannose-binding protein, fibrinogen, complement

IFN, Interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *NK,* natural killer; *MAIT,* mucosal-associated invariant T cells; *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor; *TH,* T helper (cell).

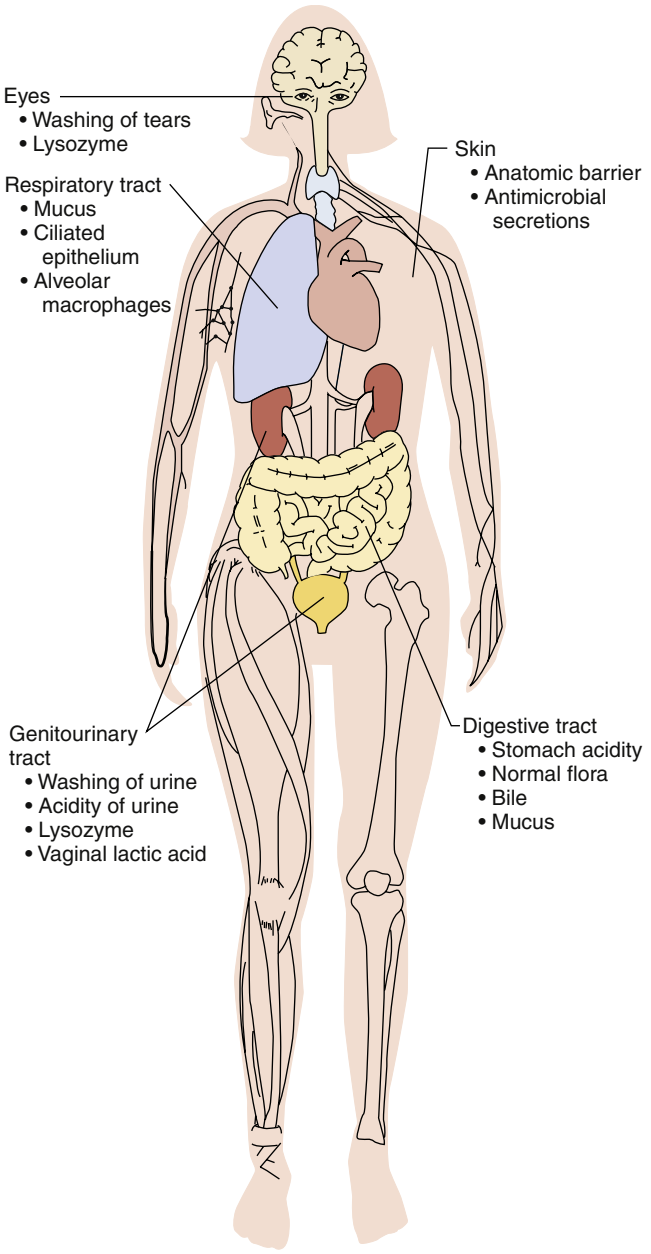


Fig. 8.1 Barrier defenses of the human body.

infections. The complement system is activated directly by fungal and bacterial surfaces and bacterial products **(alternate or properdin pathway),** by lectin binding to sugars on the bacterial or fungal cell surface **(mannose-binding protein),** or by complexes of antibody and antigen **(classical pathway)** (Fig. 8.2; Animation 1). The three activation pathways of complement coalesce at a common junction point, which is the activation of the C3 component. Activation by either pathway initiates a cascade of proteolytic events that cleave the proteins into **"a," "b,"** and other subunits. *The **a** subunits (C3a and C5a) **a**ttract (chemotactic factors) phagocytic and inflammatory cells to the site, **a**llow **a**ccess to soluble molecules and cells by increasing vascular permeability (**a**naphylactic C3a, C4a, and C5a), and **a**ctivate responses. The **b** subunits are **b**igger and **b**ind to the agent to promote their phagocytosis **(opsonization)** and elimination, and they **b**uild a molecular drill that can directly kill the infecting agent.*

Alternate Pathway

The alternate pathway can be activated before the establishment of an immune response to the infecting bacteria because it does not depend on antibody and does not involve the early complement components (C1, C2, and C4). C3 is spontaneously cleaved in serum and can covalently bind to bacterial surfaces. *Properdin factor B* binds to the C3b and *properdin factor D* splits *factor B* in the complex to yield the *Bb active fragment* that remains linked to *C3b (activation unit)*. The complement cascade then continues in a manner analogous to the classical pathway.

Lectin Pathway

The lectin pathway is a bacterial and fungal defense mechanism independent of antibody. The **mannose-binding protein** is a large serum protein that binds to nonreduced mannose, fucose, and glucosamine on bacterial, fungal, and other cell surfaces. Mannose-binding protein resembles and replaces the C1q component of the classical pathway and, on binding to microbial surfaces, activates the

TABLE 8.1 Soluble Innate Defense Mediators

Factor	Function	Source
Lysozyme	Catalyzes hydrolysis of bacterial peptidoglycan	Tears, saliva, nasal secretions, body fluids, lysosomal granules
Lactoferrin, transferrin, hepcidin, calprotectin	Bind iron, manganese, or zinc to sequester from microorganisms	Tears, saliva, nasal secretions, body fluids, specific granules of PMNs
Lactoperoxidase	Generates bleachlike antimicrobials	Tears, saliva, nasal secretions, body fluids
β-lysine	Is effective mainly against gram-positive bacteria	Thrombocytes, normal serum
Chemotactic factors	Induce directed migration of PMNs, monocytes, and other cells	Complement and chemokines
Properdin	Promotes complement activation in the absence of antibody-antigen complex	Normal plasma
Lectins	Bind to carbohydrates to promote microbial phagocytosis	Normal plasma
Cationic peptides (defensins, etc.)	Antimicrobials to disrupt membranes, block cell transport activities	Polymorphonuclear granules, epithelial cells, and so forth

PMNs, Polymorphonuclear neutrophils (leukocytes).

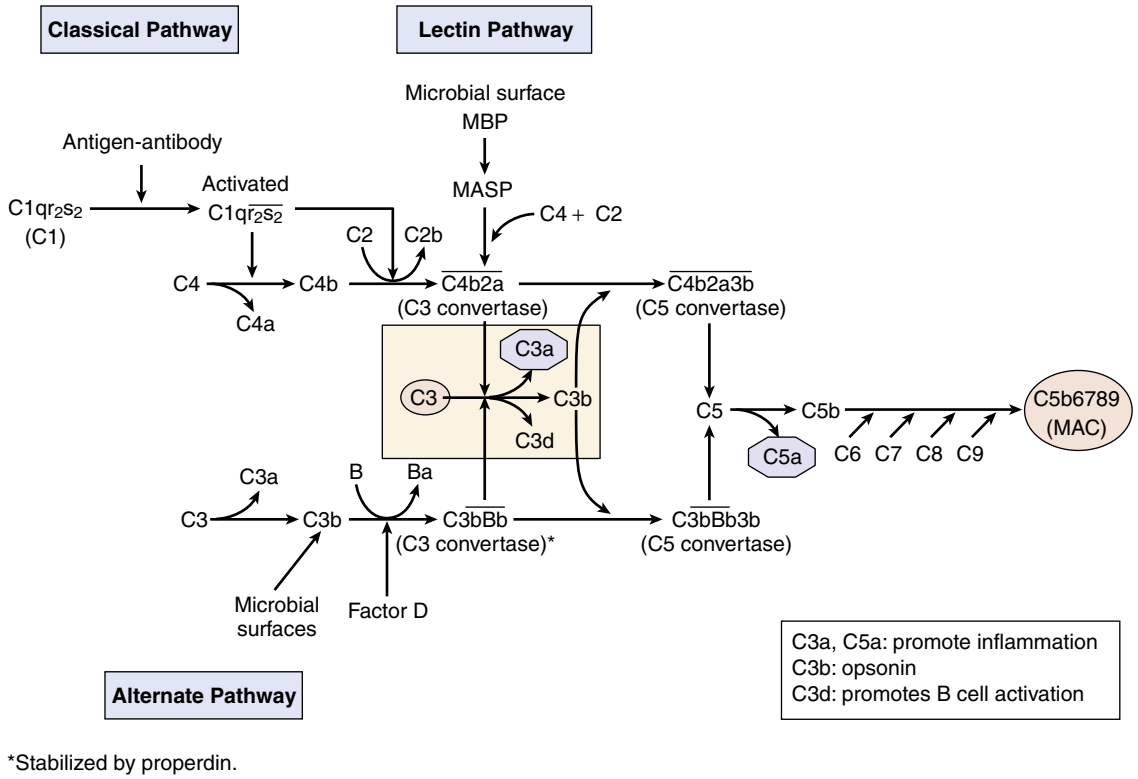


Fig. 8.2 Classical, lectin, and alternate complement pathways. Despite different activators, all three pathways converge toward the cleavage of C3 and C5 to provide chemoattractants and anaphylatoxins *(C3a, C5a),* an opsonin *(C3b)* that adheres to membranes, and a B-cell activator *(C3d)* and to initiate the membrane attack complex *(MAC)* to kill cells. C9 resembles perforin (natural killer cells and cytotoxic T cells) to promote apoptosis in the target cell. *MASP,* MBP-associated serine protease; *MBP,* mannose-binding protein. (Redrawn from Rosenthal, K.S., Tan, M. 2010. Rapid Review Microbiology and Immunology, third ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

cleavage of the mannose-binding protein–associated serine protease. Mannose-binding protein–associated serine protease cleaves the C4 and C2 components to produce the C3 convertase, which is the junction point of the complement cascade.

Classical Pathway

The classical complement cascade is initiated by the binding of the first component, C1, to the Fc portion of antibody **(immunoglobulin [Ig]G or IgM, not IgA or IgE),** when it is bound to cell-surface antigens or to an immune complex with soluble antigens. C1 consists of a complex of three separate proteins designated C1q, C1r, and C1s (see Fig. 8.2). C1q binds to the Fc portion, leading to activation of the proteolytic activities of C1r and C1s. C1s then cleaves C4 to C4a and C4b, and C2 to C2a and C2b. The union of C4b and C2a produces **C4b2a,** which is known as **C3 convertase.** This complex binds to the cell membrane and cleaves C3 into C3a and C3b fragments. The C3b protein has a unique thioester bond that will covalently attach

C3b to a cell surface or be hydrolyzed. The C3 convertase amplifies the response by splitting many C3 molecules. The interaction of C3b with C4b2a bound to the cell membrane produces **C4b3b2a,** which is termed **C5 convertase.** This activation unit splits C5 into C5a and C5b fragments and represents yet another amplification step.

Biological Activities of Complement Components

The products of cleavage of the C3 and C5 components are essential for antibacterial responses, enhance clearance of the infectious agent, and promote inflammation. Complement fragments **C3a, C4a,** and **C5a** serve as powerful **anaphylatoxins** that stimulate mast cells to release histamine and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, which enhances vascular permeability and smooth muscle contraction and promotes inflammation. **C3a** and **C5a** also act as attractants **(chemotactic factors)** for neutrophils and macrophages, facilitating their exit from the capillary near the infection. These proteins are powerful promoters of inflammatory reactions. C3b is an **opsonin** that promotes clearance of microbes by binding directly to the cell to make the cell more recognizable to phagocytic cells, such as neutrophils and macrophages, which have receptors for C3b. C3b can be cleaved further to generate C3d, which is an activator of B lymphocytes. For gram-positive and most other bacterial infections, these responses provide the major antimicrobial function of the complement system.

The complement system also interacts with the clotting cascade. Activated coagulation factors can cleave C5a, and a protease of the lectin pathway can cleave prothrombin to result in production of fibrin and activation of the clotting cascade.

Membrane Attack Complex

The terminal stage of the classical pathway involves creation of the **membrane attack complex (MAC),** which is also called the **lytic unit** (see Fig. 8.2). The five terminal complement proteins (C5 through C9) assemble into a MAC on target cell membranes to mediate injury. Initiation of the MAC assembly begins with C5 cleavage into C5a and C5b fragments. A $(C5b,6,7,8)_1(C9)_n$ complex forms and drills a hole in the membrane, leading to apoptosis or the hypotonic lysis of cells. The C9 component is similar to perforin, which is produced by cytolytic T cells and NK cells.

Neisseria bacteria are very sensitive to this manner of killing, whereas gram-positive bacteria are relatively insensitive. The peptidoglycan of gram-positive bacteria limits access of the complement components to the plasma membrane target unless disrupted by lysozyme. Unlike other gram-negative bacteria, the outer membrane of *Neisseria* bacteria contains lipooligosaccharide (LOS), which lacks O-antigenic side chains, and similar to stubble, it allows access of complement to the membrane surface.

Regulation of Complement Activation

Humans have several mechanisms for preventing generation of the C3 convertase to protect against inappropriate complement activation including C1 inhibitor, C4 binding protein, factor H, factor I, and the cell-surface proteins decay-accelerating factor (DAF) and membrane cofactor protein. In addition, CD59 (protectin) prevents formation of the MAC. Most infectious agents lack these protective mechanisms and remain susceptible to complement. A genetic deficiency in these protection systems can result in disease.

INTERFERONS

Interferons (IFNs) are small, cytokine-like proteins that can interfere with virus replication, and they have systemic effects (*described in more detail in Chapter 10*). The major type I IFNs are α and β. The type I IFNs are primarily a very early antiviral response triggered by the double-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA) intermediates of virus replication and other structures that bind to Toll-like receptors (TLRs), retinoic acid–inducible gene 1 (RIG-1), and other PAMP receptors (PAMPRs). Plasmacytoid DCs produce large amounts of IFN-α in response to viral infection, especially during viremia, but other cells can also make IFN-α. IFN-β is made primarily by fibroblasts. The type I IFNs promote transcription of antiviral proteins in cells that become activated by viral infection. They also activate systemic responses, including fever, and enhance T-cell activation. Type I IFNs will be discussed further with respect to the response to viral infections.

Type 3 interferons λ act like Type 1 interferons and are also important for virus infections but act locally to inhibit virus replication and promote healing rather than activating systemic and inflammatory responses.

IFN-γ is a type II IFN and differs in biochemical and biological properties from type I IFNs. IFN-γ is primarily a cytokine produced by natural killer (NK) and T cells as part of TH1 immune responses and activates macrophages and myeloid cells. IFN-γ will be discussed further with respect to T-cell responses.

Cellular Components of Innate Responses

NEUTROPHILS

Neutrophils play a major role in antibacterial and antifungal protections and a lesser role in antiviral protections. The neutrophil surface is decorated with receptors that directly bind microbes, such as lectins and scavenger receptors, and **opsonin receptors.** Different opsonin receptors bind the Fc portion of immunoglobulin, C3b, or other opsonins, which are bound to specific structures on a molecule or microbial surface. These receptors promote phagocytosis of the microbe and their subsequent killing, as described later. Neutrophils have many granules that contain antimicrobial proteins and substances and can produce reactive oxygen molecules. These cells are terminally differentiated, spend less than 3 days in the blood, and on death during infection release a sticky deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) net and **become pus**.

MAST CELLS, BASOPHILS, AND EOSINOPHILS

Mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils have cytoplasmic granules containing antimicrobial substances and mediators of inflammation. Mast cells are present in skin, mucoepithelial tissue, and the lining of small blood vessels and nerves. Basophils are like mast cells but circulate in the blood, and their granules stain with basic dyes. Mast cells and basophils bind IgE, complement, and microbial products

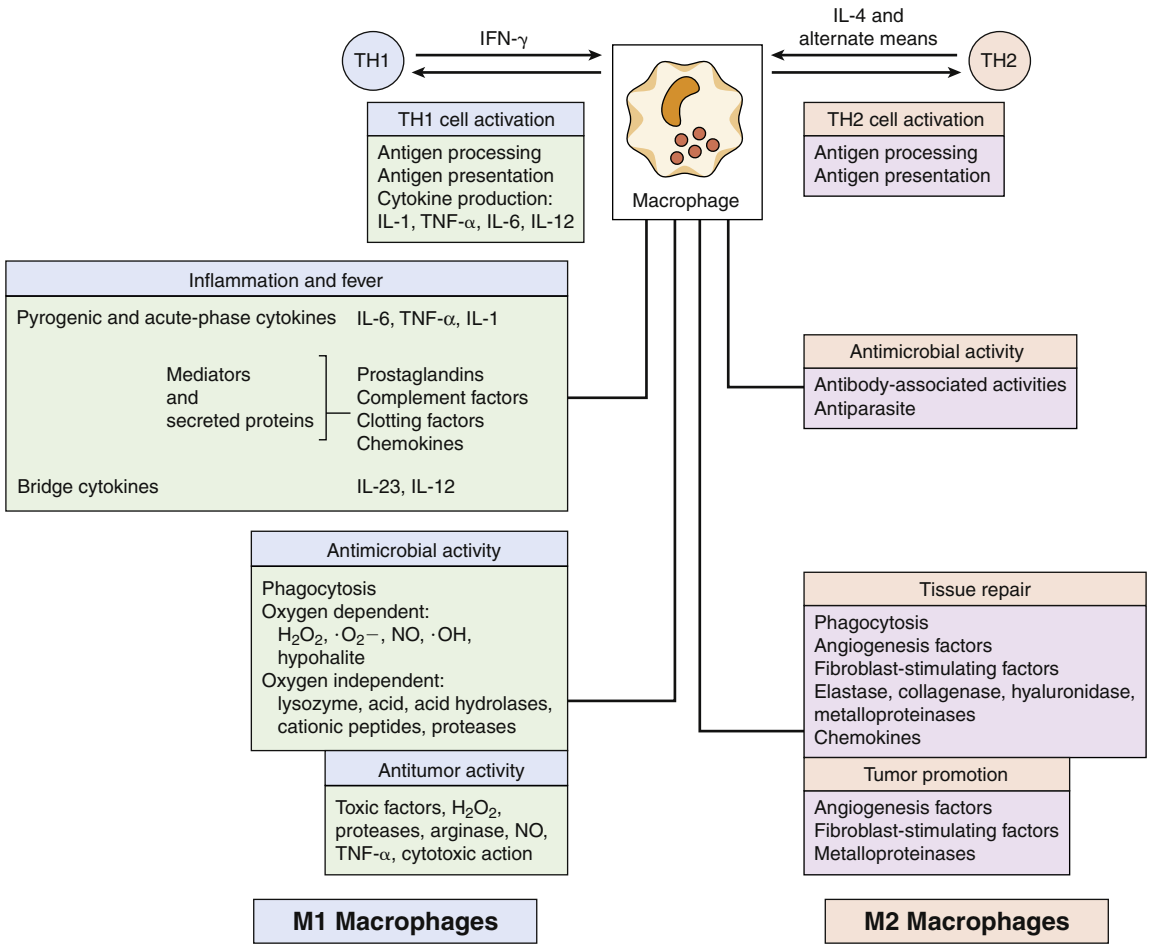


Fig. 8.3 The many functions of macrophages and members of the macrophage family. M2 macrophages maintain the status quo and facilitate wound healing by removal of debris and promoting angiogenesis and tissue repair. M1 macrophages promote antimicrobial killing and inflammation. *H_2O_2,* Hydrogen peroxide; *IFN-γ,* interferon-γ; *IL,* interleukin; *NO,* nitric oxide; *·O^-,* oxygen radical; *·OH,* hydroxyl radical; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α.

and release histamine and cytokines as part of allergic and inflammatory responses. Eosinophils circulate in the blood, their granules stain with acidic dyes (e.g., eosin), and they are important in antiparasitic responses.

CELLS OF THE MONOCYTE-MACROPHAGE LINEAGE

Monocytes originate in the bone marrow and circulate in the blood. During infection or injury, chemokines attract them into the tissue where they differentiate into inflammatory macrophages (M1) or DCs.

Macrophages may originate from bone marrow–derived monocytes or from embryonic yolk sac. The latter reside in tissue, such as the Kupffer cells in the liver. Similar to neutrophils, macrophages are phagocytes, but unlike neutrophils, they are long lived, can divide, present antigenic peptides to CD4 T cells on major histocompatibility complex (MHC) II molecules, and must be activated to efficiently kill the phagocytosed bacteria.

The primary role of tissue macrophages is to remove debris and promote tissue repair and remodeling **(M2 macrophages).** Sometimes called alternatively activated macrophages, these cells can be further activated by the TH2-related cytokines, IL-4 and IL-13, to support antiparasitic responses. M2 macrophages are also present in tumors and reinforce the growth of tumor cells and promote angiogenesis (Fig. 8.3).

To promote inflammatory responses and be able to kill phagocytosed bacteria, macrophages are activated to become **M1 macrophages** by lipopolysaccharide, TNF-α, IFN-γ, and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF). The cytokines are produced by ILC1 cells and CD4 and CD8 T cells as part of the TH1 response**.** Activated M1 macrophages produce reactive oxygen species (ROS) and nitric oxide (NO), enzymes, and other molecules to promote antimicrobial function (Box 8.2) and reinforce local inflammatory reactions by producing chemokines to attract neutrophils, iDCs, NK cells, and activated T cells, and acute-phase cytokines (IL-1, TNF-α, IL-6) to promote the response. Macrophages get help by presenting antigen to CD4 TH1 cells, which produce IFN-γ as long as the antigen is present. In the absence of IFN-γ, the M1 macrophages may transition to M2 to facilitate healing and resolution of the infection and its damage.

In the case of an unresolved mycobacterial infection, continuous (chronic) stimulation of macrophages by T cells promotes fusion of the macrophages into **multinucleated giant cells** and large macrophages called **epithelioid cells**, surround the infection and form a **granuloma.**

BOX 8.2 The Many Functions of Macrophages

Status Quo (Peacetime): M2 Macrophages

Phagocytosis and degradation of debris
Production of enzymes and factors for tissue growth and repair
Production of angiogenesis factors

During Infection and Inflammation (At War): M1 Macrophages (Activated by PAMPs, TNF-α, GM-CSF, and IFN-γ)

Phagocytosis and oxygen-dependent and -independent antimicrobials
Acute-phase cytokines: IL-6, TNF-α, and IL-1 (endogenous pyrogens)
Other cytokines: IL-12, GM-CSF, G-CSF, M-CSF, IFN-α
Arachidonic acid metabolites
Prostaglandin, thromboxane, leukotrienes
Enzymes, complement components, coagulation factors

G-CSF, Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor; *GM-CSF,* granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *IFN-α,* interferon-α; *IL,* interleukin; *M-CSF,* macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *PAMP,* pathogen-associated molecular pattern; *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α.

BOX 8.3 Dendritic Cells

Myeloid and Plasmacytoid (for T cells)

Morphology: octopus-like with tendrils
Activities
- Immature DCs
- In blood and tissue
- Danger sensors, phagocytosis, cytokine production, antigen processing
- Mature DCs
- T-cell areas of lymph node and spleen
- Only cell that can initiate a new T-cell response
- Process antigenic proteins into peptides
- Increased expression of molecules for antigen presentation
  - MHC I-peptide: CD8 T cells
  - CD1-glycolipids: CD8 T cells
  - MHC II-peptide: CD4 T cells
  - B7-1 and B7-2 and other coreceptors
- Produce cytokines to initiate and direct T-cell response

Follicular DCs (for B cells)

In B-cell areas of lymphoid tissues
Express sticky receptors to display antigen to B cells (Fc and CR1, CR2, and CR3 complement receptors, lack MHC II)

CD, Cluster differentiation; *DC,* dendritic cell; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex.

MYELOID AND PLASMACYTOID DENDRITIC CELLS

DCs provide the bridge between the innate and the immune responses. The cytokines they produce determine the nature of the T-cell response *(**D**endritic cells **d**irect the **T** cells as to what to **t**ell other cells to do)*. Monocytes and precursor myeloid DCs circulate in the blood and then differentiate into immature DCs (iDCs) in tissue and lymphoid organs. The **iDCs** have many dendritic arms, are phagocytic, and on activation by danger signals, they release an early cytokine-mediated warning and then mature into DCs. The iDCs express different combinations of danger sensors (DAMP receptors [DAMPRs]) that can detect tissue trauma (adenosine triphosphate [ATP], adenosine, ROS, heat shock proteins) and infection (PAMPRs), including **TLRs** and other receptors (see later). **Mature DCs** are the ultimate antigen-presenting cells; they are the only antigen-presenting cells that can initiate an antigen-specific T-cell response (Box 8.3). **Langerhans cells** are a type of iDC that remains in the epidermis of the skin until activated and then becomes a mature DC. **Plasmacytoid DCs** are in the blood and generate large amounts of type 1 IFN and cytokines in response to viral and other infections and can present antigen to T cells.

The **follicular DC** cannot process nor present antigen to T cells, but it acquires its name by its presence in the B-cell–rich follicles of lymph nodes and spleen and its multiarmed appearance. Antigens stick to its surface and are displayed to B cells.

INNATE LYMPHOID CELLS, NATURAL KILLER CELLS, γ/δ T CELLS, MUCOSAL-ASSOCIATED INVARIANT T CELLS, AND NATURAL KILLER T CELLS

ILCs resemble and produce cytokines similar to CD4T cells instead of responding through a T-cell antigen receptor (TCR), they respond to PAMPR and DAMPR stimulation. They are distinguished by the expression of T-cell–like transcriptional regulators and cytokines. ILC1 cells express the T-bet transcription factor and produce IFN-γ and TNF-α, similar to CD4 Th1 cells; ILC2 cells express GATA-3 and produce IL-4, IL-5, IL-9, and IL-13, similar to CD4 Th2 cells and are important for initiating the response to intestinal parasites; ILC3 cells express RORγt and produce IL-17 and IL-22, similar to Th17 cells; and ILCreg cells are similar to CD4 Treg-ulator (Treg) cells and produce TGF-β and IL-10. ILCs are present throughout the body, especially near mucosal epithelial cells in which their cytokines help regulate responses to normal flora but provide rapid responses to pathogenic infection.

NK cells are **ILC1s** that provide an early cellular response to a viral infection, have antitumor activity, and amplify inflammatory reactions after bacterial infection. NK cells are also responsible for **antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC),** in which they bind and kill antibody-coated cells. NK cells are large granular lymphocytes (LGLs) that share many characteristics with T cells, except the mechanism for target cell recognition. NK cells do not express a TCR or CD3 and cannot make IL-2. They neither recognize a specific antigen nor require presentation of antigen by MHC molecules. The NK system does not involve memory or require sensitization and cannot be enhanced by specific immunization.

NK cells are activated by (1) type 1 IFNs (produced early in response to viral and other infections); (2) TNF-α; (3) IL-12, IL-15, and IL-18 (produced by DCs and activated macrophages); and (4) IL-2 (produced by CD4 TH1 cells). The functional receptors include the **FasL [Fas ligand]**), the **Fc receptor for IgG** (CD16) and complement receptors for ADCC, and NK-specific inhibitory receptors, and activating receptors (including NK immunoglobulin-like receptors **[KIRs]**). Activated NK cells produce IFN-γ, IL-1, and GM-CSF. The granules in an NK cell contain **perforin,** which is a pore-forming protein, and **granzymes** (esterases), which

are also present in the granules of a CD8 cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL). These molecules promote the **apoptotic** death of the target cell.

The NK cell sees every cell as a potential victim, especially those that appear in distress, and will kill unless it receives an inhibitory signal from the target cell. NK cells bind to carbohydrates and surface proteins on a distressed cell. Interaction of sufficient numbers of class I MHC molecules with KIR **inhibitory receptors** acts as a secret password, indicating that all is normal, to activate an inhibitory signal to prevent NK killing of the target cell. Virus-infected cells and tumor cells express "stress-related molecules" and are often deficient in MHC I molecules and become NK-cell targets. Binding of the NK cell to antibody-coated target cells (ADCCs) also initiates killing, but this is not controlled by an inhibitory signal. The **killing mechanisms** are similar to those of CD8 cytotoxic T cells. A synapse (pocket) is formed between the NK and target cell, and **perforin and granzymes** are released to disrupt the target cell and induce apoptosis. In addition, the interaction of the **FasL** on the NK cell with **Fas** protein on the target cell can also induce **apoptosis.**

NKT cells, MAIT, and γ/δ **T cells** reside primarily in tissue and differ from other T cells because they have a limited repertoire of TCRs. Unlike other T cells, NKT, MAIT, and γ/δ T cells can sense nonpeptide antigens, including glycolipids, vitamin B derivatives, phosphorylated amine metabolites and stress molecules produced by some microbes, and even human cells. NKT cells also express KIR receptors (Table 8.2). Similar to the ILCs, these T cells produce cytokines to regulate and activate host protective responses by other cells.

Activation of Innate Cellular Responses

The cells of the innate response are activated by cytokines, chemokines, stress molecules, and direct interaction with microbes and microbial components. These cells express different combinations of danger (PAMPRs) and damage (DAMPRs) sensors for microbes and cell trauma, including the **TLR** family of proteins and other receptors. The TLRs include at least 10 different cell-surface and intracellular proteins that bind repetitive structures that form **PAMPs** (Fig. 8.4 and Table 8.3). These patterns are present within the endotoxin component of lipopolysaccharides (LPS) and in lipoteichoic acid (LTA), flagella, fungal glycans, unmethylated cytosine-guanosine units of DNA (CpG oligodeoxynucleotides [ODNs]) commonly found in bacteria, double-stranded RNA produced during the replication of some viruses, and other molecules. In addition to the TLRs, other cell-surface PAMPRs include C-type lectins for microbial carbohydrates and glucans, and scavenger receptors. Cytoplasmic sensors of bacterial peptidoglycan include nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain protein 1 (NOD1), NOD2, and cryopyrin and, for nucleic acids, RIG-1, melanoma differentiation–associated gene 5 (MDA5), and others. Binding of PAMPs to TLRs and other PAMPRs activate adaptor proteins that trigger cascades of protein kinases and other responses that result in the

TABLE 8.2 Ligands Recognized by Innate T cells

T Cell	Receptor	Ligand
NKT cells	CD1	Glycolipids
MAIT cells	MR1	Riboflavin (vitamin B) analogues and metabolites
γ/δ T cells	—	Cellular stress molecules Alkylamines Bisphosphonates Organic phosphoantigens (e.g., hydroxy-methyl-butyl-pyrophosphate)
	Other receptors	Butyrate Vitamin A and retinoic acid Vitamin D AhR ligands (tryptophan metabolites: indole-3-lactic acid)

MAIT, Mucosal-associated invariant T cell; *NKT,* natural killer T cell.

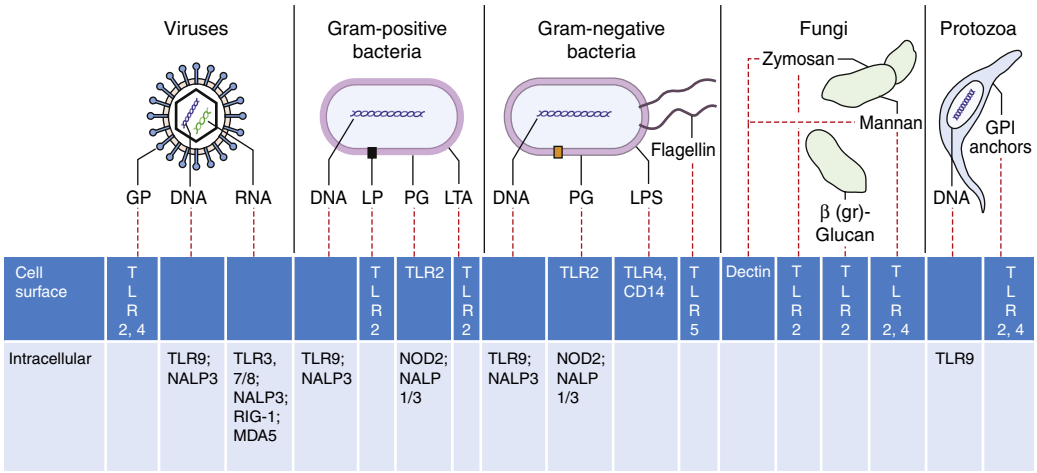


Fig. 8.4 Recognition of pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs). Microbial structures, RNA, and DNA bind to specific PAMP receptors on the cell surface, in vesicles, or in the cytoplasm to activate innate responses. *GP,* Glycoproteins; *GPI,* phosphatidylinositol glycan–anchored proteins; *LP,* lipoproteins; *LPS,* lipopolysaccharide; *LTA,* lipoteichoic acid; *MDA5,* melanoma differentiation–associated gene 5; *NALP3,* Nacht, leucine-rich repeat, and pyrin domain–containing protein 3; *NOD2,* nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain protein 2; *PG,* peptidoglycan; *RIG-1,* retinoic acid–inducible gene-1; *TLR9,* Toll-like receptor 9. (Modified from Mogensen, T.H. 2009. Pathogen recognition and inflammatory signaling in innate immune defenses. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 22, 240–273.)

TABLE 8.3 Pathogen Pattern Receptors

Receptor[a]	Microbial Activators	Ligand
CELL SURFACE		
TLR1	Bacteria, mycobacteria *Neisseria meningitidis*	Lipopeptides Soluble factors
TLR2	Bacteria Fungi Cells	LTA, LPS, PG, and so forth Zymosan Necrotic cells
TLR4	Bacteria, parasites, host proteins Viruses, parasites, host proteins	**LPS,** fungal mannans, viral glycoproteins, parasitic phospholipids, host heat shock proteins, LDL
TLR5	Bacteria	Flagellin
TLR6	Bacteria Fungi	LTA, lipopeptides, zymosan
Lectins	Bacteria, fungi, viruses	Specific surface carbohydrates (e.g., mannose)
N-Formyl methionine receptor	Bacteria	Bacterial proteins
ENDOSOME		
TLR3	Viruses	dsRNA
TLR7	Viruses	Single-stranded RNA Imidazoquinolines
TLR8	Viruses	Single-stranded RNA Imidazoquinolines
TLR9	Bacteria Viruses	Unmethylated DNA (CpG)
CYTOPLASM		
NOD1, NOD2, NALP3	Bacteria	Peptidoglycan
Cryopyrin	Bacteria	Peptidoglycan
RIG-1	Viruses	RNA
MDA5	Viruses	RNA
DAI	Viruses, cytoplasmic DNA	DNA

[a]Information about Toll-like receptors from Takeda, A., Kaisho, T., Akira, S. 2003. Toll-like receptors. Annu. Rev. Immunol. 21, 335–376; Akira, S., Takeda, K. 2003. Toll-like receptor signalling. Nat. Rev. Immunol. 4, 499–511.

Activators: *DAI,* DNA-dependent activator of interferon regulatory factors; *dsRNA,* double-stranded RNA; *LDL,* minimally modified low-density lipoprotein; *LPS,* lipopolysaccharide; *LTA,* lipoteichoic acid; *MDA5,* melanoma differentiation–associated gene 5; *NALP3,* Nacht, leucine-rich repeat and pyrin domain–containing protein 3; *NOD,* nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain; *PG,* peptidoglycan; *RIG-1,* retinoic acid–inducible gene 1; *TLR,* Toll-like receptor.

activation of the cell and production of specific cytokines and chemokines, which can include proinflammatory cytokines (IL-1, TNF-α, and IL-6) and type 1 IFNs (IFN-α and IFN-β).

In response to PAMPs and other stimuli, epithelial cells, DCs, macrophages, and other cells can assemble an **inflammasome** (Fig. 8.5). This multiprotein complex is activated by assembly of several of the adaptor proteins induced in response to PAMPs, tissue damage, or on proteolysis of some of its components. Proteases released on uric acid crystal (gout) or asbestos puncture of phagosomes and lysosomes can also activate inflammasome formation. The inflammasome activates the caspase 1 protease, which then cleaves, activates, and promotes the release of IL-1β and IL-18. These activated cytokines promote local inflammation. The activated inflammasome can also initiate pyroptosis, which is an inflammatory apoptosis-like cell death for cells bearing intracellular bacterial infections.

CHEMOTAXIS AND LEUKOCYTE MIGRATION

Chemotactic factors produced in response to infection and inflammatory responses, such as complement components (C3a and C5a), bacterial products (e.g., formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine [f-met-leu-phe]), and chemokines, are powerful chemoattractants for neutrophils, monocytes, and macrophages, and later in the response, lymphocytes. **Chemokines** are small cytokine-like proteins that direct the migration of white blood cells to the site of infection or inflammation or to different tissue locations. Most chemokines are either CC (adjacent cysteines) or CXC (cysteines separated by one amino acid) chemokines and bind to specific G-protein–coupled receptors. The chemokines establish a chemically lighted "runway" to guide these cells to the site of an infection and also activate them. Combined with TNF-α, the chemokines cause the endothelial cells lining the capillaries (near the inflammation) and the leukocytes passing by to express complementary adhesion

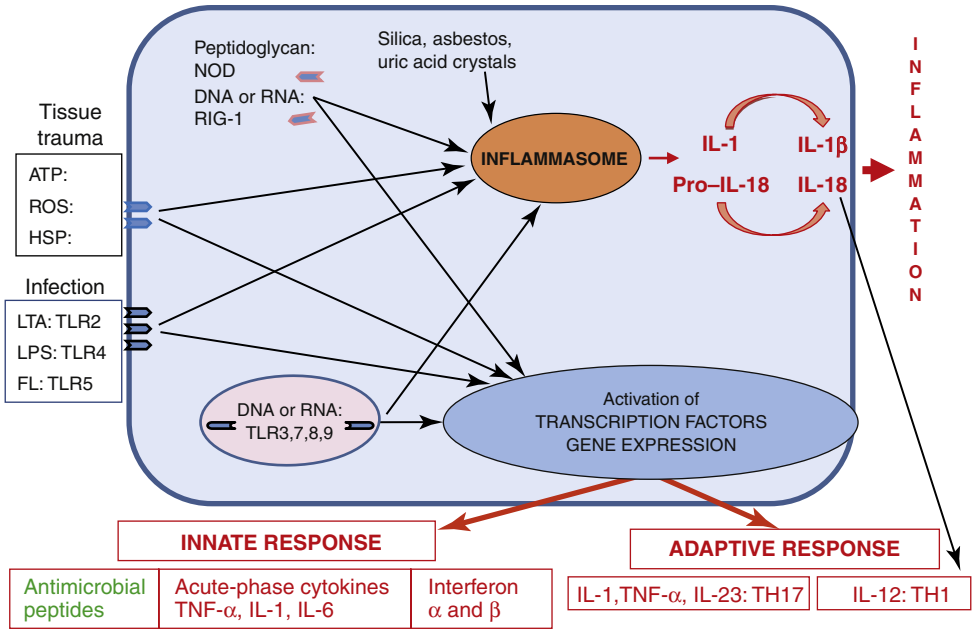


Fig. 8.5 Induction of inflammatory responses. Receptors for pathogen-associated molecular patterns and damage-associated molecular pattern receptors at the cell surface, in vesicles, and in the cytoplasm (1) activate signal cascades that (2) produce adaptor proteins that (3) activate local inflammatory responses. The adaptor proteins trigger the transcription of cytokines and initiate the assembly of the inflammasome. Cytokines activate innate and promote antigen-specific responses. The assembled inflammasome is a protease that cleaves and activates IL-1 and pro–IL-18 and these cytokines promote inflammation. Asbestos and other materials also activate the inflammasome after lysing lysosomes and releasing proteases that cleave precursors to initiate its assembly and activation. *ATP,* Adenosine triphosphate; *FL,* flagellin; *HSP,* heat shock protein; *IL,* interleukin; *LPS,* lipopolysaccharide; *LTA,* lipoteichoic acid; *NOD,* nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain protein; *RIG-1,* retinoic acid–inducible gene 1; *ROS,* reactive oxygen species; *TLR,* Toll-like receptor; *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α.

molecules (molecular "Velcro"). The leukocytes slow, roll, attach to the lining, and then extravasate across (i.e., pass through) the capillary wall to the site of inflammation (a process called *diapedesis*) (Fig. 8.6). TNF-α and histamine released by mast cells lining the vessel also make the walls leaky.

PHAGOCYTIC RESPONSES

Polymorphonuclear neutrophils (PMNs) are the first cells to arrive at the site in response to infection; they are followed later by monocytes and macrophages. **Neutrophils** provide the major antibacterial and antifungal response and contribute to inflammation. An increased number of neutrophils in the blood, body fluids (e.g., cerebrospinal fluid), or tissue usually indicates a bacterial infection. The infection recruits the release of immature **band forms** from the bone marrow described as a "left shift" (*left* refers to the beginning of a chart of neutrophil development).

Phagocytosis of bacteria or a fungus by macrophages and neutrophils involves three steps: attachment, internalization, and digestion (Fig. 8.7). **Attachment** to the microbe or molecule is mediated by receptors for cell-surface carbohydrates (**lectins** [specific sugar-binding proteins]); fibronectin receptors (especially for *Staphylococcus aureus*); and **receptors for opsonins,** including complement (C3b), mannose-binding protein, and the Fc portion of antibody. After attachment, a section of plasma membrane surrounds the particle to form a **phagocytic vacuole** around the microbe. This vacuole fuses with the **primary lysosomes** (macrophages) or **granules** (PMNs) to allow inactivation and digestion of the vacuole contents.

Phagocytic killing may be oxygen independent or oxygen dependent (Box 8.4). *Neutrophils do not need special activation to kill internalized microbes,* but their response is reinforced by IL-17 and TNF-α. *Activation of macrophages is required for efficient killing of internalized microbes.* Activation is promoted by IFN-γ (best), which is produced early in the infection by ILC1 cells and NKT cells and later by CD4 and CD8 T cells, and sustained by TNF-α and lymphotoxin (TNF-β).

Oxygen-dependent killing is mediated by reactive oxygen species (ROS), hypochlorous ions, and NO (see Box 8.4). **NADPH oxidase** is used to produce superoxides and convert water into hydrogen peroxide. **Myeloperoxidase** transforms chloride ions and hydrogen peroxide into hypochlorous ions (chlorine bleach). **NO** has antimicrobial activity and is also a major second messenger molecule that enhances the inflammatory and other responses.

The **neutrophil** also can mediate **oxygen-independent killing** on fusion of the phagosome with azurophilic granules containing cationic proteins (e.g., cathepsin G) and other granules containing lysozyme and lactoferrin. These proteins kill gram-negative bacteria by disrupting their cell membrane integrity, but they are far less effective against gram-positive bacteria and fungi, which are killed principally through the oxygen-dependent mechanism.

The neutrophils also promote inflammation. Prostaglandins and leukotrienes, which increase vascular permeability, are released, causing swelling (edema) and stimulating pain receptors. In addition, during phagocytosis, the granules may leak their contents to cause tissue damage. The neutrophils have short lives; on death at the site of infection, they release their DNA and granule contents to form a sticky net to catch and kill microbes **(neutrophil extracellular traps [NETs])** and dead neutrophils become **pus.**

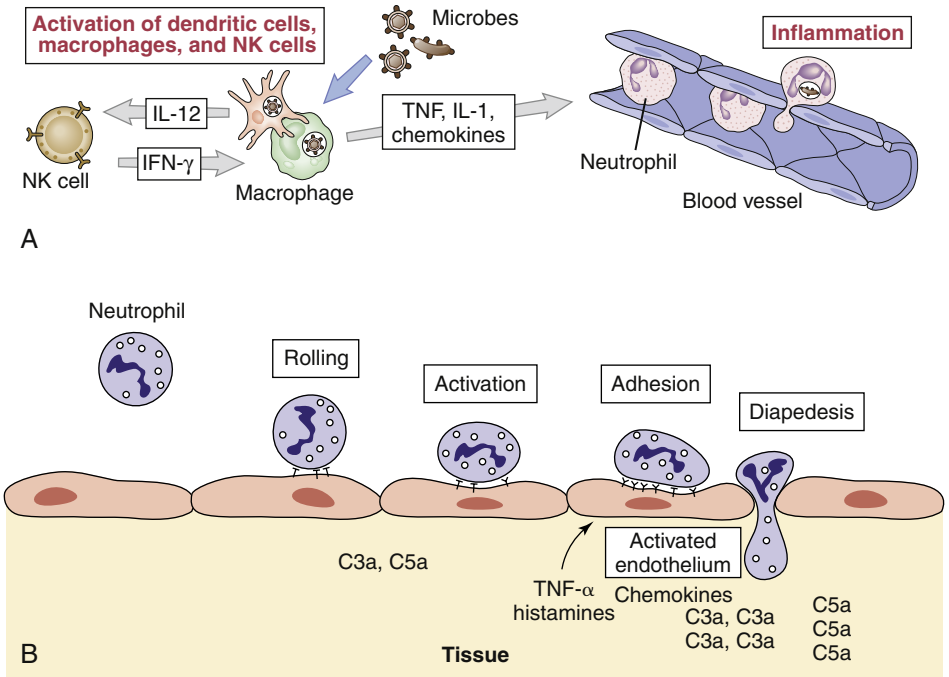


Fig. 8.6 (A and B) Neutrophil diapedesis in response to inflammatory signals. Tumor necrosis factor *(TNF)*-α and chemokines activate the expression of selectins and intercellular adhesion molecules on the endothelium near the inflammation and their ligands on the neutrophil: integrins, L-selectin, and leukocyte function–associated antigen-1 (LFA-1). The neutrophil binds progressively tighter to the endothelium until it finds its way through the endothelium. Epithelial cells, Langerhans cells, and macrophages activated by microbes and interferon *(IFN)*-γ make TNF-α and other cytokines and chemokines to enhance diapedesis. *IL,* Interleukin; *NK,* natural killer. (A, From Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H. 2012. Basic Immunology: Functions and Disorders of the Immune System, fourth ed. WB Saunders, Philadelphia, PA.)

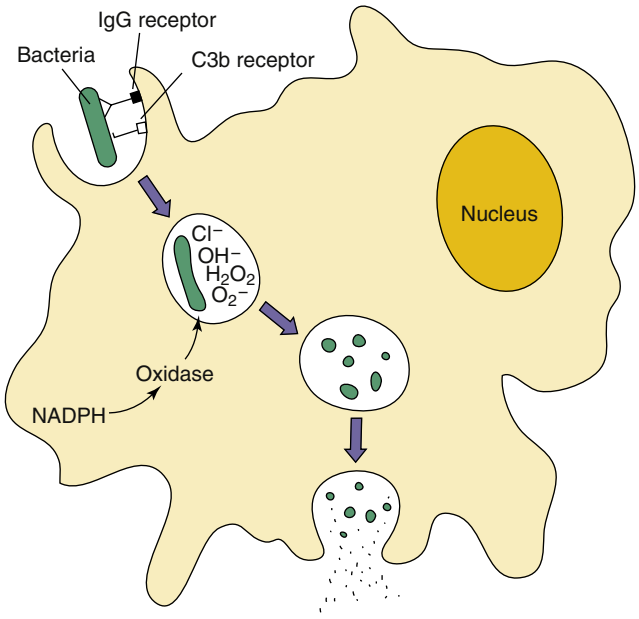


Fig. 8.7 Phagocytosis and killing of bacteria. Bacteria are bound directly or are opsonized by mannose-binding protein, immunoglobulin *(Ig)*G, and/or C3b receptors, promoting their adherence and uptake by phagocytes. Within the phagosome, oxygen-dependent and oxygen-independent mechanisms kill and degrade the bacteria. *NADPH,* Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate reduced.

Resting and tissue **macrophages** (M2 macrophages) are phagocytic and will internalize microbes, but unlike neutrophils, they do not have the preformed granules of antimicrobial molecules to kill them. Intracellular infection can occur upon infection of a resting macrophage or

BOX 8.4 Antibacterial Compounds of the Phagolysosome

Oxygen-Dependent Compounds
- Hydrogen peroxide, superoxide, hydroxyl radicals (·OH^-): NADPH oxidase and NADH oxidase
- Activated halides (Cl^-, I^-, Br^-): myeloperoxidase (neutrophil)
- Nitric oxide: nitric oxide synthase

Oxygen-Independent Compounds
- Acids
- Lysozyme (degrades bacterial peptidoglycan)
- Lactoferrin (chelates iron)
- Defensins and other cationic proteins (damage membranes)

Proteases: Elastase, cathepsin G, and so forth

NADH, Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide reduced; *NADPH,* nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate reduced.

if the microbe can counteract the antimicrobial activities of an activated macrophage. **Activation of the macrophage by IFN-γ (M1 macrophages),** making the macrophages "angry," promotes production of inducible NO synthase (iNOS) and NO, other ROSs, and antimicrobial enzymes to kill internalized microbes. Activated macrophages also make acute-phase cytokines (IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-α) and possibly IL-23 or IL-12. Macrophages have a long life, and with T-cell help they can maintain the inflammatory response.

Splenic macrophages are important for clearing bacteria, especially encapsulated bacteria, from blood. Asplenic (congenitally or surgically) individuals are highly susceptible to pneumonia, meningitis, and other manifestations of *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Neisseria meningitidis,* and other encapsulated bacteria and yeast.

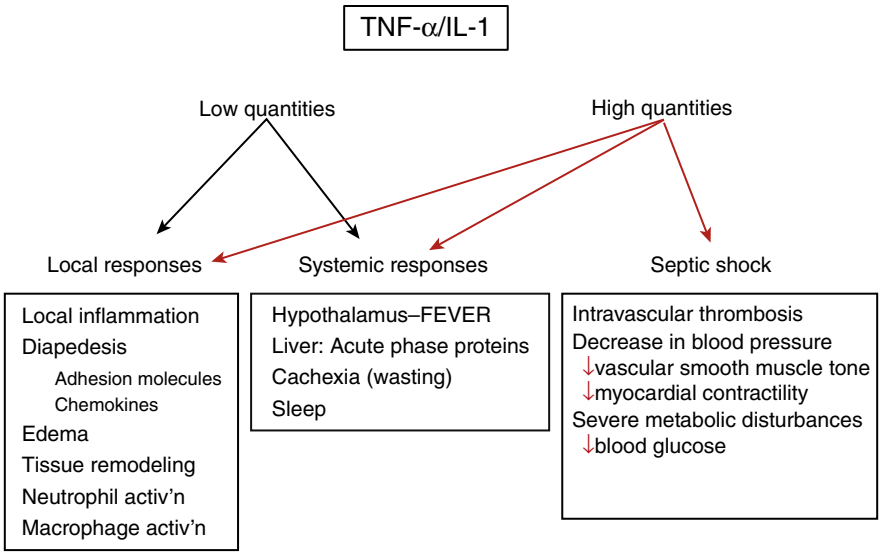


Fig. 8.8 Good, bad, and ugly effects of tumor necrosis factor *(TNF)*-α and interleukin *(IL)*-1. Low concentrations activate local inflammation (promote movement of fluid, proteins, and cells from the blood to the site of infection) and supportive responses. High concentrations activate systemic inflammation and shock.

Normal Flora–Associated Responses

The skin and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) of the nares, oral region, and urogenital and gastrointestinal tracts are constantly monitoring and being stimulated by the adjacent normal flora (see Fig. 7.5). DCs continuously probe the intestine and sense the LPS, LTA, flagella, and other components of the bacteria within the lumen. M2 macrophages, DCs, ILCs, and T cells regulate the response to the flora by instructing the epithelial cells to produce mucus and appropriate antimicrobial peptides and by preventing excess inflammation. An equilibrium is maintained between inflammatory and immune regulatory responses to the microbial stimuli. Disruption of the equilibrium can result in gastroenteritis, inflammatory bowel disease, or autoimmune diseases.

Inflammation

PROINFLAMMATORY CYTOKINES

The proinflammatory cytokines, sometimes referred to as *acute-phase cytokines,* are IL-1, TNF-α, and IL-6 (Fig. 8.8 and Table 8.4). These cytokines are produced by activated macrophages and other cells. IL-1 and TNF-α share properties. Both of these cytokines are **endogenous pyrogens** capable of stimulating fever, promoting local inflammatory reactions and synthesis of acute-phase proteins.

TNF-α is the ultimate mediator of inflammation and the systemic effects of infection. TNF-α stimulates endothelial cells to express adhesion molecules and chemokines to attract leukocytes to the site of infection, loosens the epithelial tight junctions to allow diapedesis, activates mast cells lining the vasculature to release histamine to promote seepage of fluid, activates neutrophils and macrophages, and promotes apoptosis of certain cell types. Systemically, TNF acts on the hypothalamus to induce fever; causes systemic metabolic changes, weight loss (cachexia), and loss of appetite; enhances production of IL-1, IL-6, and chemokines; and promotes acute-phase protein synthesis by the liver. At high concentrations, TNF-α elicits all of the functions leading to septic shock.

There are two types of **IL-1, IL-1α and IL-1β.** IL-1 is produced mainly by activated macrophages but also by neutrophils, epithelial cells, and endothelial cells. IL-1β must be cleaved by the inflammasome to become activated. IL-1 shares many of the activities of TNF-α to promote local and systemic inflammatory responses. Unlike TNF-α, IL-1 is a growth factor, cannot induce apoptosis, and will enhance but is not sufficient to cause septic shock.

IL-6 is produced by many cell types. It promotes the synthesis of acute-phase proteins in the liver, production of neutrophils in bone marrow, and activation of T and B lymphocytes.

IL-23 and **IL-12** *are cytokines that bridge the innate and immune responses.* Both cytokines have a p40 subunit, but IL-12 has a p35 subunit and IL-23 has a p19 subunit. IL-23 promotes TH17 responses from memory T cells, which enhance neutrophil action. IL-12 promotes NK-cell function and is required to promote a TH1 immune response, which enhances macrophages and other myeloid cell functions. These cytokines will be discussed in Chapter 9 regarding their actions on T cells. **IL-18** must be cleaved by the inflammasome to an active form, and it promotes NK- and T-cell function.

ACUTE INFLAMMATION

Acute local inflammation is an early defense mechanism to contain the infection, prevent its spread from the initial focus, and activate subsequent immune responses. Initially, inflammation can be triggered by the response to danger signals resulting from infection and tissue damage. Mast cells respond by releasing histamines, TNF-α, and prostaglandins, which can trigger

TABLE 8.4 Cytokines of Innate Immunity (STAT)[a,b]

Cytokine	Source	Trigger	Action	Target
TNF-α	Macrophages, T cells	PAMP, inflammation	Acute-phase responses, promotes inflammation, fever, symptoms of sepsis, cachexia, vascular permeability, altered muscle tone, apoptosis (some cells)	Endothelial cells, neutrophils, macrophages, hypothalamus, liver, muscle, mast cells, other cells
IL-1 (α, β [cleaved])	Macrophages, keratinocytes, endothelial and some epithelial cells	PAMP, inflammation	Acute-phase responses, promotes inflammation, fever, supports symptoms of sepsis, synthesis of acute-phase proteins	Endothelial cells, hypothalamus, liver, and other cells
IL-6	Macrophages, endothelial cells, T cells	PAMP, inflammation	Acute-phase responses, reinforces acute-phase responses, stimulation of T and B cells	Macrophages, endothelial cells, T cells
Type 1 IFNs (α,β)	Most cells, plasmacytoid dendritic cells	Viral infection (especially RNA viruses)	Inhibit virus replication, activate NK cells, enhance immune response	Virus-infected cells, NK cells, T cells
Chemokines	Macrophages, dendritic cells, many other cells	PAMP, inflammation, C5a, TNF-α	Chemotaxis, targeting of cells to infection/inflammation	Leukocytes, lymphocytes, endothelial cells, and other cells
IL-12	Dendritic cells, macrophages	PAMP	Promotes TH1 immune response, activates NK cell	NK cells, T cells
IL-23	Dendritic cells, macrophages	PAMP	Promotes TH17 response	T cells
IL-18 (cleaved)	Macrophages, epithelial and other cells	PAMP, inflammation	Promotes IFN-γ production and T-cell activation	NK cells, T cells
Type II IFN (γ)	NK cells, T cells	IL-18, IL-12 (TH1 responses)	Activates antimicrobial activity, production of inducible nitric oxide synthetase, other	Macrophages, dendritic cells, T and B cells, and so forth

[a]STAT: acronym for essential information for each cytokine: *s*ource, *t*rigger, *a*ction, *t*arget.
[b]Table is not all inclusive for cell sources, stimuli, activities, or targets.
IFN, Interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *NK,* natural killer; *PAMP,* pathogen-associated molecular pattern; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor.

increases in permeability of capillaries. With chemokines, IL-1, and complement, these agents can promote acute inflammation.

The three major events in local acute inflammation are (1) expansion of capillaries to increase blood flow (causing redness or a rash and releasing heat); (2) increase in permeability of the microvasculature structure to allow escape of fluid, plasma proteins, and leukocytes from the circulation (swelling or edema); and (3) recruitment of neutrophils and their accumulation and response to infection at the site of injury. Inflammatory responses are beneficial but are associated with pain, redness, heat, and swelling and can cause tissue damage. The mediators of inflammation are listed in Table 8.5.

Tissue damage is caused to some extent by complement and macrophages but mostly by neutrophils and their products. Dead neutrophils are a major component of **pus.** Kinins and clotting factors induced by tissue damage (e.g., factor XII [Hageman factor], bradykinin, fibrinopeptides) are also involved in inflammation. These factors increase vascular permeability and are chemotactic for leukocytes. **Prostaglandins** and **leukotrienes** can mediate essentially every aspect of acute inflammation. These molecules are generated by cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) and 5-lipooxygenase, respectively, from arachidonic acid, The course of inflammation can be followed by rapid increases in acute-phase proteins, especially C-reactive protein (which can increase 1000-fold within 24 to 48 hours) and serum amyloid A.

TABLE 8.5 Mediators of Acute and Chronic Inflammation

Action	Mediators
ACUTE INFLAMMATION	
Increased vascular permeability	Histamine, bradykinin, C3a, C5a, leukotrienes, PAF, substance P, TNF-α
Vasodilation	Histamine, prostaglandins, PAF, NO
Pain	Bradykinin, prostaglandins
Leukocyte adhesion	Leukotriene B4, IL-1, TNF-α, C5a
Leukocyte chemotaxis	C5a, C3a, IL-8, chemokines, PAF, leukotriene B4
Acute-phase response	IL-1, IL-6, TNF-α
Tissue damage	Proteases, free radicals, NO, neutrophil granule contents
Fever	IL-1, TNF, IFN-α, IFN-β, prostaglandins
CHRONIC INFLAMMATION	
Activation of T cells and macrophages, and acute-phase processes	From T cells (TNF, IL-17, IFN-γ); from macrophages (IL-1, TNF-α, IL-23, IL-12)

IFN-γ, Interferon-γ; *IL,* interleukin; *NO,* nitric oxide; *PAF,* platelet-activating factor; *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor.
From Novak, R. 2006. Crash Course Immunology. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.

BOX 8.5 Inflammatory Diseases of the Skin

Acne, atopic dermatitis, and eczema are initiated and maintained by innate keratinocyte and epithelial cell responses after entry of normal flora of the skin surface. Acne is the result of responses to *Propionibacterium acnes,* whereas staphylococci can drive atopic dermatitis and eczema. *P. acnes* grows in the anaerobic environment of the hair follicles and can promote keratinocyte growth and sebum production. It also activates TLR2 and TLR4 to initiate inflammatory cytokine (IL-1, IL-6, TNF-α) and chemokine responses from keratinocytes and Langerhans cells to recruit neutrophils and produce squalene, which is a lipid that is often used in vaccine adjuvants that increases IL-1α levels and activates the 5-lipoxygenase enzyme to produce LTB4. *P. acnes* also activate local ILCs and T cells to promote inflammation. These and other actions can stimulate whitehead and blackhead production, inflammation, and scarring.

Atopic dermatitis can result when the epidermal barrier function of the skin is continuously compromised to allow penetration of *Staphylococcus aureus* or other skin flora into the epidermis and dermis in which keratinocytes respond with IL-1, IL-8, IL-18, and chemokines; mast cells get activated and produce histamine; and macrophages are activated to trigger inflammation. Later, antigen-specific CD4 Th2 cells establish residence in the dermis, produce IL-4, and activate mast cells and inflammation. During the chronic phase of disease, CD4 Th17 and Th1 cells will arrive and activate neutrophils and macrophages, respectively, to exacerbate the inflammation.

CD, Cluster differentiation; *IL,* interleukin; *ILC,* innate lymphoid cell; *LTB4,* leukotriene B4; *TLR,* Toll-like receptor; *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor.

Innate inflammatory responses to bacteria are the primary cause of acne and atopic dermatitis (Box 8.5). *Propionibacterium acne* and the response to the bacteria lead to excess keratinocyte growth, sebum production, and inflammation to cause acne. A compromised skin barrier allows *S. aureus* entry into the epidermis and dermis in which inflammatory responses and a predilection toward allergies can cause chronic atopic dermatitis.

ACUTE-PHASE RESPONSE

The **acute-phase response** is triggered by infection, tissue injury, prostaglandin E_2, IFNs associated with viral infection, acute-phase cytokines (IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-α), and inflammation (Box 8.6). The acute-phase response promotes changes that support host defenses and include fever, anorexia, sleepiness, metabolic changes, and production of proteins. Acute-phase proteins that are produced and released into the serum include C-reactive protein, complement components, coagulation proteins, LPS-binding proteins, transport proteins, protease inhibitors, and adherence proteins. **C-reactive protein** binds to the polysaccharides of numerous bacteria and fungi and activates the complement pathway, facilitating removal of these organisms from the body by enhancing phagocytosis. **Hepcidin** inhibits iron uptake by the gut and macrophages, and this reduces availability to microbes. The acute-phase proteins reinforce the innate defenses against infection, but their excessive production during sepsis (induced by endotoxin or bacteremia) can cause serious problems such as shock.

BOX 8.6 Acute-Phase Proteins

α_1-Antitrypsin
α_1-Glycoprotein
Amyloids A and P
Antithrombin III
C-reactive protein
C1 esterase inhibitor
Complement C2, C3, C4, C5, C9
Ceruloplasmin
Fibrinogen
Haptoglobin
Orosomucoid
Plasminogen
Transferrin
Lipopolysaccharide-binding protein
Mannose-binding protein

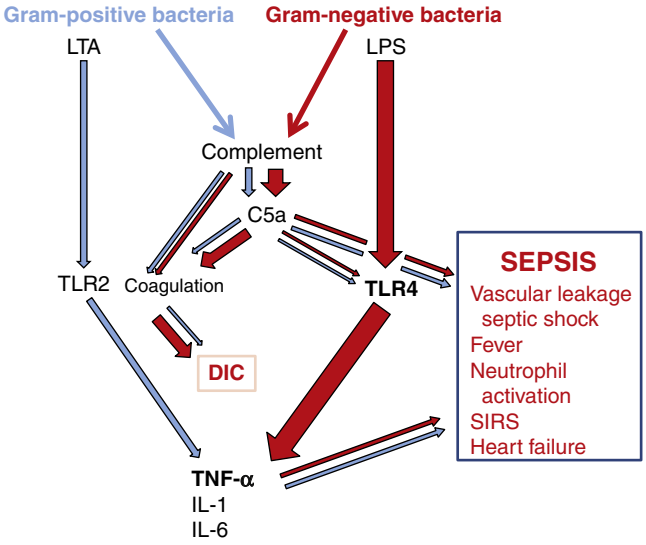


Fig. 8.9 Gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria induce sepsis by shared and separate pathways. Lipopolysaccharides *(LPSs)* activate complement, producing C5a, which promotes inflammation and activates coagulation. LPS, lipoteichoic acid *(LTA),* and other pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) interact with Toll-like receptors *(TLRs)* and other PAMP receptors to activate inflammation and proinflammatory cytokine production. These can add up to cause sepsis. The thickness of the arrow indicates the strength of the response. Red is for gram-negative bacteria and blue is for gram-positive bacteria. *DIC,* Disseminated intravascular coagulation; *IL,* interleukin; *SIRS,* systemic inflammatory response syndrome; *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α. (Modified from Rittirsch, D., Flierl, M.A., Ward, P.A. 2008. Harmful molecular mechanisms in sepsis. Nat. Rev. Immunol. 8, 776–787.)

SEPSIS AND CYTOKINE STORMS

Cytokine storms are generated by an overwhelming release of cytokines in response to bacterial cell wall components, toxic shock toxins, and certain viral infections. Strong innate responses are triggered by the presence of microbes in the blood during bacteremia and viremia. During bacteremia, large amounts of complement C5a and cytokines are produced and distributed throughout the body (Fig. 8.9). C5a and TNF-α promote vascular leakage, neutrophil activation, and activation of the coagulation pathway. **Endotoxin** from LPS or LOS is an especially potent activator of cells and

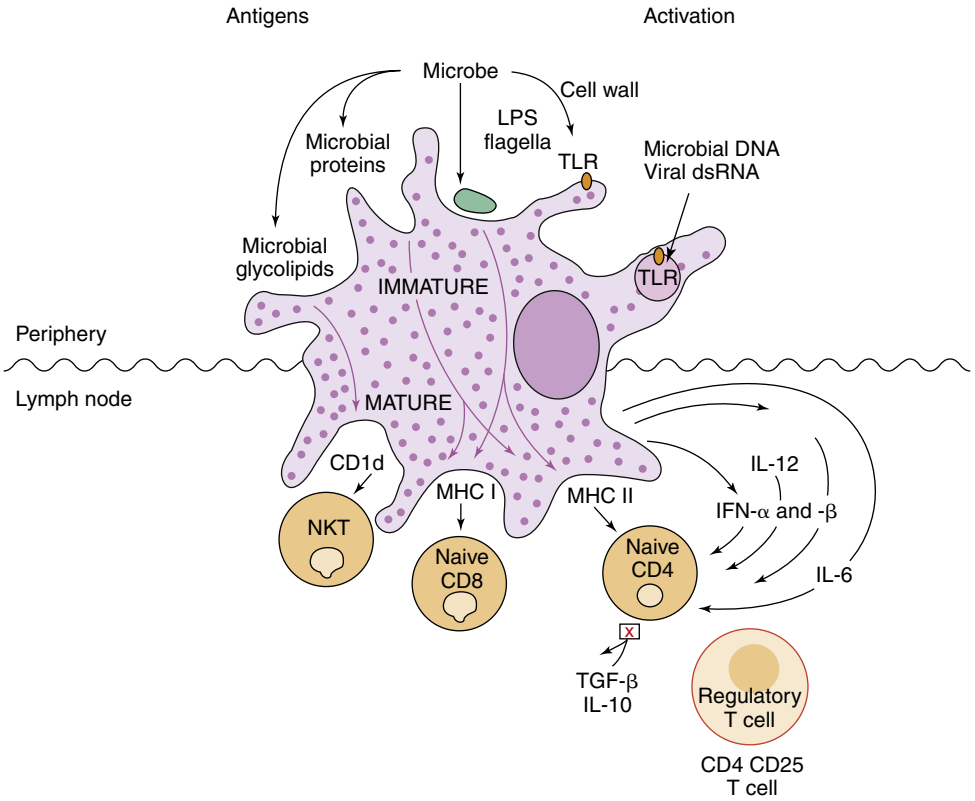


Fig. 8.10 Dendritic cells (DCs) initiate and direct immune responses. Immature DCs constantly internalize and process proteins, debris, and microbes. Binding of microbial components to Toll-like receptors *(TLRs)* activates the maturation of the DC so that it ceases to internalize any new material; moves to the lymph node and upregulates major histocompatibility complex *(MHC)* II for antigen presentation; coreceptors B7 and B7-1 and cytokines to activate T cells. The cell-surface interactions and cytokines activate the T cells and direct the nature of the subsequent response. *IFN,* Interferon; *LPS,* lipopolysaccharide.

inducer of cytokine production and sepsis (see Fig. 14.4). During viremia, large amounts of IFN-α and other cytokines are produced by plasmacytoid DCs and T cells. Plasmacytoid DCs respond to viral and bacterial PAMPs, especially DNA and RNA.

Cytokine storms can also occur following the abnormal stimulation of T cells and antigen-presenting cells (DCs, macrophages, and B cells) by superantigens produced by *S. aureus* or *S. pyogenes* (see Fig. 14.3).

Although beneficial on a limited and local basis, excess cytokines in the blood induce life-threatening inflammatory trauma throughout the entire body. Most significantly, increases in vascular permeability can result in leakage of fluids from the bloodstream into tissue and cause shock. **Septic shock** is a consequence of a cytokine storm and can be attributed to the systemic action of large quantities of C5a and TNF-α.

Bridge to Antigen-Specific Immune Responses

The innate response is often sufficient to control an infection, but it also initiates antigen-specific immunity. DCs (and Langerhans cells if in the skin) provide the bridge between the innate and immune responses. They become activated at the site of infection, deliver and process antigenic proteins to the T cells in the draining lymph node, and make appropriate cytokines to elicit the necessary T-cell response (Fig. 8.10; Animation 4).

DCs and Langerhans cells in the skin are constantly acquiring antigenic material by macropinocytosis, pinocytosis, or phagocytosis of apoptotic cells; debris; and proteins in normal tissue and at the site of infection or tumor. On activation by a combination of damage and pathogen-associated signals, acute-phase cytokines (IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-α) are released and the DC matures and its role changes. The DC loses its ability to phagocytize, preventing it from acquiring irrelevant antigenic material other than the ingested microbial debris, and it progresses to the lymph node. *By analogy, the DC is like a clam, constantly surveying its environment by filter feeding the cellular and microbial debris (if present), but when triggered by a PAMPR signal, indicating that microbes are present, it releases a local cytokine alarm, closes its shell, and moves to the lymph node to trigger a response to the challenge. Having experienced the challenge, the DC directs the appropriate response in the T cells.* The mature DC moves to T-cell areas of lymph nodes and upregulates its cell-surface molecules for optimal antigen presentation (class II MHC and B7-1 and B7-2 [co-stimulatory] molecules). Microbe-activated mature DCs release cytokines (e.g., IL-12, IL-23), which activate responses to reinforce local host defenses (TH1, TH17 responses). DCs present antigenic material attached to MHC class I and CD1 molecules to CD8 T cells and NKT cells, and on MHC class II molecules to CD4 T cells. DCs are so effective at presenting antigen that 10 DCs loaded

with antigen are sufficient to initiate protective immunity to a lethal bacterial challenge in a mouse. The subsequent T-cell responses will be described in the next chapter.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2018. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Akira, S., Takeda, K., 2004. Toll-like receptor signaling. Nat. Rev. Immunol. 4, 499–511.

Andreakos, E., Zanoni, I., Galani, I.E., 2019. Lambda interferons come to light: dual function cytokines mediating antiviral immunity and damage control. Current Opinion in Immunology,56:67–75. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.coi.2018.10.007.

DeFranco, A.L., Locksley, R.M., Robertson, M., 2007. Immunity: The Immune Response in Infectious and Inflammatory Disease. Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, Mass.

Goering, R., Dockrell, H., Zuckerman, M., Chiodini, P.L., 2019. Mims' Medical Microbiology and Immunology, sixth ed. Elsevier, London.

Kumar, V., Abbas, A.K., Aster, J.C., 2015. Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Lamkanfi, M., 2011. Emerging inflammasome effector mechanisms. Nat. Rev. Immunol. 11, 213–220.

Murphy, K., Weaver, C., 2016. Janeway's Immunobiology, ninth ed. Garland Science, New York.

Netea, M.G., van der Meer, J.W., 2011. Immunodeficiency and genetic defects of pattern-recognition receptors. N. Engl. J. Med. 364, 60–70.

Punt, J., Stranford, S.A., Jones, P.P., Owen, J.A., 2019. Kuby Immunology, eighth ed. WH Freeman, New York.

Rich, R.R., et al., 2019. Clinical Immunology Principles and Practice, fifth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Rittirsch, D., Flierl, M.A., Ward, P.A., 2008. Harmful molecular mechanisms in sepsis. Nat. Rev. Immunol. 8, 776–787.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2005. Are microbial symptoms "self-inflicted"? The consequences of immunopathology. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 13, 306–310.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Vaccines make good immune theater: immunization as described in a three-act play. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 14, 35–45.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2017. Dealing with garbage is the immune system's main job. MOJ Immunol. 5 (6), 00174. https://doi.org/10.15406/moji.2017.05.00174. http://medcraveonline.com/MOJI/MOJI-05-00174.pdf.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2018. Immune monitoring of the body's borders. AIMS Allergy Immunol. 2 (3), 148–164. https://doi.org/10.3934/Allergy.2018.3.148. http://www.aimspress.com/article/10.3934/Allergy.2018.3.148.

Takeda, K., Kaisho, T., Akira, S., 2003. Toll-like receptors. Annu. Rev. Immunol. 21, 335–376.

Trends Immunol: Issues contain understandable reviews on current topics in immunology.

Questions

1. What are the innate soluble factors that act on microbial infections, and what are their functions?

2. What are the contributions of neutrophils, M1 and M2 macrophages, Langerhans cells, and DCs to antimicrobial responses?

3. A 65-year-old woman has fever and chills. A gram-negative, oxidase-negative bacillus is isolated from her blood. What triggered her symptoms, and what is causing her symptoms?

4. A 45-year-old man has a boil on his hand. A gram-positive, catalase-positive, and coagulase-positive coccus was isolated from the pus of the lesion. What innate responses are active in this infection?

Animation 1 Pathways of complement activation.

Animation 4 Capture and presentation of protein antigens by dendritic cells.

9 Antigen-Specific Immune Responses

Animations for this chapter are available on StudentConsult.com.

Antigen-specific immune responses provided by T and B cells and antibody expand the host protections provided by innate responses. The antigen-specific immune system is a randomly generated, coordinately regulated, inducible, and activatable system that ignores self-proteins and cells but specifically responds to and protects against infection. When not working properly, the immune response can be unregulated, overstimulated, uncontrolled, reactive to self-proteins, unresponsive or poorly responsive to infections, and become the cause of pathogenesis and disease. Once specifically activated by exposure to a new antigen, the immune response rapidly expands in strength, cell number, and specificity. For proteins, immune memory develops to allow more rapid recall on rechallenge.

Antibody, surface antibody and the antibody-like **T-cell receptor (TCR)** molecules recognize antigens and act as receptors to activate the growth and functions of those cells that can elicit the antigen-specific response. The soluble forms of antibody in the blood, body fluids, or secreted across membranes protect the body by inactivating and promoting the elimination of toxins and microbes, especially when they are in the blood (bacteremia, viremia). T cells are important for activating and regulating innate and immune responses and for direct killing of cells expressing inappropriate intracellular proteins (e.g., virus infections).

Although some molecules elicit only a limited antibody response (carbohydrates and lipids), proteins and protein-conjugated molecules (including carbohydrates) elicit a more complete immune response that includes T cells. Activation of a complete immune response must be closely regulated because it uses a large amount of energy and, once initiated, it develops memory and remains for most of a lifetime.

Development of an antigen-specific immune response progresses from the innate responses through ***d***endritic cells (DCs), which ***d***irect the ***T*** cells to ***t***ell other T cells, B cells, and other cells to grow and perform the necessary responses. Cell-receptor and cytokine-receptor interactions provide the necessary signals to activate cell growth and respond to the challenge. ***T*** cells ***t***ell the B cell which type of antibody to produce (immunoglobulin [Ig]G, IgE, IgA) and promote memory cell development. T cells continuously regulate the entire system, maintaining a balance that normally minimizes inflammation but still allows protection from normal and pathogenic microbes.

Immunogens, Antigens, and Epitopes

Almost all proteins and carbohydrates associated with an infectious agent, whether a bacterium, fungus, virus, or parasite, are considered foreign to the human host and have the potential to induce an immune response. A protein or carbohydrate that is recognized and sufficient to initiate an immune response is called an **immunogen** (Box 9.1). Immunogens may contain more than one antigen (e.g., bacteria). An **antigen** is a molecule that is recognized by specific antibodies or the TCR on T cells. An **epitope (antigenic determinant)** is the actual molecular structure that interacts with a single antibody molecule or TCR. Within a protein, an epitope may be formed by a specific sequence **(linear epitope)** or a three-dimensional structure **(conformational epitope).** *The TCR can recognize only linear peptide epitopes*. Antigens and immunogens usually contain several epitopes, each capable of binding to a different antibody molecule or TCR. As described later in this chapter, a **monoclonal antibody** recognizes a single epitope.

Not all molecules are immunogens. In general, *proteins are the best immunogens, carbohydrates are weaker immunogens, and lipids and nucleic acids are poor immunogens*. **Haptens (incomplete immunogens)** can be small molecules and too small to immunize (i.e., initiate a response) an individual but can be recognized by antibody. Haptens can be made immunogenic by attachment to a **carrier molecule,** such as a protein. For example, conjugation of penicillin to serum albumin converts it to an immunogen.

During artificial immunization (e.g., vaccines), an adjuvant is often used to enhance the response to an antigen. **Adjuvants** usually prolong the presence of antigen in the tissue; promote uptake of the immunogen; or activate DCs, macrophages, and lymphocytes. Some adjuvants mimic the activators of innate responses (e.g., microbial ligands for Toll-like receptors) present in a natural immunization.

Some molecules may not elicit an immune response in an individual. The body develops **central immune tolerance** toward self-antigens and any foreign antigens that may be introduced to the fetus or neonate, before maturation of the immune system (Animation 2). Later in life, **peripheral tolerance** develops to other proteins to prevent uncontrolled or autoimmune responses. For example, our immune response is tolerant of our normal flora and the food we eat; alternatively, eating steak would induce an antimuscle reponse.

The type of immune response initiated by an immunogen depends on its molecular structure. A primitive but rapid

BOX 9.1 Definitions

Adjuvant: substance that promotes immune response to immunogen
Antigen: substance recognized by immune response
Carrier: protein modified by hapten to elicit response
Epitope: minimal molecular structure recognized by immune response
Hapten: incomplete immunogen that cannot initiate response but can be recognized by antibody
Immunogen: substance capable of eliciting an immune response
T-dependent antigens: antigens that must be presented to T and B cells for antibody production
T-independent antigens: antigens with large, repetitive structures (e.g., bacteria, flagellin, lipopolysaccharide, polysaccharide)

antibody response can be initiated toward *bacterial polysaccharides (capsule), peptidoglycan, or flagellin*. Termed **T-independent antigens,** these molecules have a large repetitive structure that is sufficient to bind many surface antibody molecules and activate B cells directly without the participation of T-cell help. In these cases, the response is limited to production of **IgM** antibody and plasma cells but memory cells are not generated and **anamnestic (booster) responses** cannot occur. The transition from an IgM response to an IgG, IgE, or IgA response results from a big change in the B cell and is equivalent to differentiation of the cell. This requires help provided by T-cell interactions and cytokines. Portions of the antigen (likely to be different) must be recognized by both the T and B cells. **T-dependent antigens** are proteins; they generate all five classes of immunoglobulins and can elicit memory and an anamnestic response.

The structure of the antigen, the amount of antigens, the route of administration, and other factors influence the type of immune response, including the types of antibody produced. For example, oral or nasal administration of a vaccine across mucosal membranes promotes production of a secretory form of **IgA** (sIgA), which would not be produced on intramuscular administration.

T Cells

The thymus is essential for T-cell production. Bone marrow cells mature into T cells and are selected in the thymus. T cells are distinguished by their surface proteins, which include (1) the **TCR;** (2) the CD4 and CD8 coreceptors; (3) CD3 and accessory proteins that promote recognition, regulation, and activation; (4) cytokine receptors; and (5) adhesion proteins. T cells can be distinguished by the type of T-cell antigen receptor, either consisting of **γ** and **δ** chains or **α** and **β** chains, and for most **α/β** T cells, the presence of CD4 or CD8 coreceptors. T cells can be further distinguished by their functions, expression of characteristic transcription factors, and the cytokines that they produce (Box 9.2).

CD4 T cells are considered helper cells because their primary role is to activate and control immune and inflammatory responses by specific cell-to-cell interactions and by releasing cytokines. Helper T cells interact with peptide antigens presented on class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules expressed on antigen-presenting cells (APCs) (DCs, macrophages, and B cells). The transcription factor and repertoire of cytokines secreted by a specific CD4 T cell in response to antigenic challenge defines the type of CD4 T cell. CD4 T cells also can kill target cells with their Fas ligand surface protein.

BOX 9.2 T Cells

γ/δ T Cells

γ/δ TCR reactive to microbial metabolites
Local responses: resident in blood and tissue
Quicker responses than **α/β** T cells
Provide early cytokine support to *anti**microbial*** responses

α/β T Cells

CD4: α/β TCR reactive with peptides on MHC II on antigen-presenting cell
Cytokines activate and direct immune response (TH1, TH2, TH17, etc.)
Also, cytotoxic through Fas–Fas ligand interactions
CD4 CD25 Treg and TR1 cells: control and limit expansion of immune response; promote tolerance and memory cell development
CD8: α/β TCR reactive with peptides presented on MHC I
Cytotoxic through perforin and granzymes and Fas–Fas ligand induction of apoptosis
Also, produce similar cytokines as CD4 cells
NKT cells: α/β TCR binds glycolipids (mycobacteria) on CD1d molecules
Kill tumor and viral-infected cells, similar to NK cells
Provide early cytokine support to antimicrobial responses
MAITcells: α/β TCR binds vitamin B_2 derivatives from bacteria on MR-1 molecules
Provides rapid response to normal flora and infection
Provide early cytokine support to antimicrobial responses

MHC, Major histocompatibility complex; *NKT,* natural killer T cell; *TCR,* T-cell receptor; *TH,* T helper (cell).

CD8 T cells are categorized as cytolytic T cells but can make cytokines similar to CD4 T cells. Activated CD8 T cells "patrol" the body for virus-infected or tumor cells, which are identified by antigenic peptides presented by class I MHC molecules. Class I MHC molecules are found on all nucleated cells.

Natural killer T cells (NKT), mucosal-associated invariant T cells (MAIT) and **γδ** T cells are part of the innate response (see Chapters 8 and 10).

Cell-Surface Receptors of T Cells

The **TCR complex** is a combination of the antigen recognition structure (TCR) and cell-activation machinery **(CD3)** (Fig. 9.1). T cells expressing the **γ/δ TCR** are present primarily in mucosal epithelium; other tissue locations and blood and are important for stimulating innate and mucosal immunity. These cells make up 5% of circulating lymphocytes but expand to between 20% and 60% of T cells during certain bacterial and other types of infections. The **γ/δ** TCR senses unusual microbial metabolites and initiates cytokine-mediated immune responses.

The **α/β TCR** is expressed on most T cells, and these cells are primarily responsible for antigen-activated immune responses. NKT cells and MAIT cells also express **α/β** TCRs but their TCRs have very defined specificities. Classical T cells with the **α/β** TCR are distinguished further by expression of either a CD4 or a CD8 molecule.

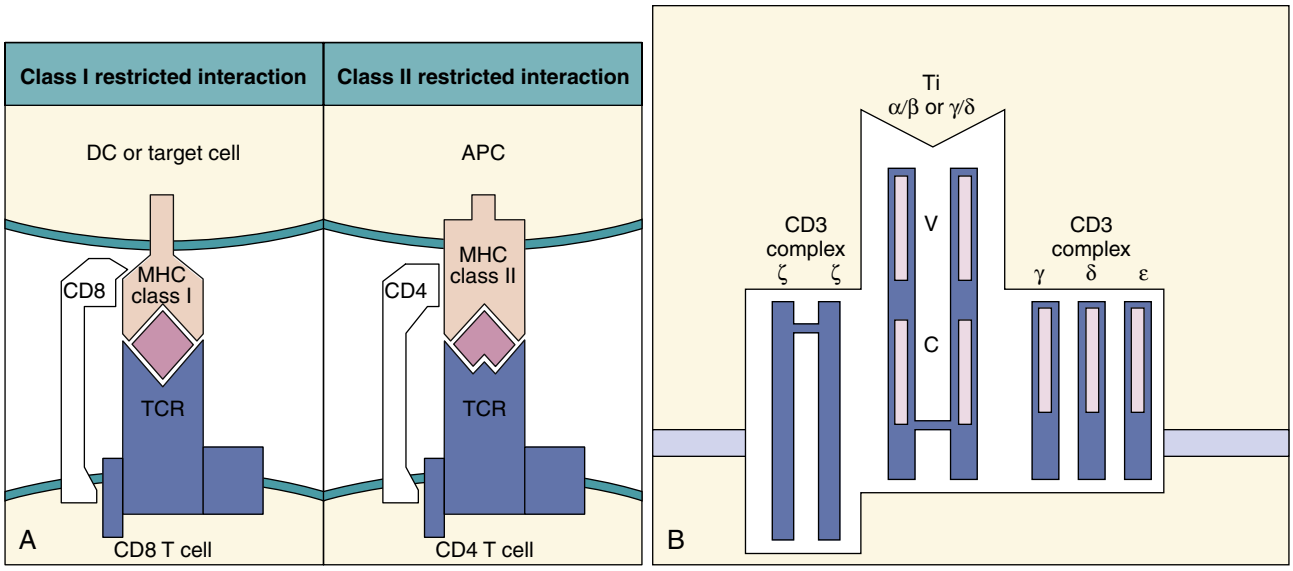


Fig. 9.1 Major histocompatibility complex *(MHC)* restriction and antigen presentation to T cells. (A) *Left*, Antigenic peptides bound to class I MHC molecules are presented to the T-cell receptor *(TCR)* on CD8 T-killer/suppressor cells. *Right*, Antigenic peptides bound to class II MHC molecules on the antigen-presenting cell *(APC)* (B cell, dendritic cell *[DC]*, or macrophage) are presented to CD4 T-helper cells. (B), T-cell receptor. The TCR consists of different subunits. Antigen recognition occurs through the **α/β** or **γ/δ** subunits. The CD3 complex of **γ**, **δ**, **ε**, and **ζ** subunits promotes T-cell activation. *C*, Constant region; *V*, variable region.

The specificity of the TCR determines the antigenic response of the T cell. Each TCR molecule is made up of two different polypeptide chains. As with antibody, each TCR chain has a constant region and a variable region. The repertoire of TCRs is very large and can identify an enormous number of antigenic specificities (estimated to be able to recognize 10^{15} separate epitopes). The genetic mechanisms for the development of this diversity are similar to those for antibody (Fig. 9.2). The TCR gene is made up of multiple V ($V_1V_2V_3 \ldots V_n$), D, and J segments. In the early stages of T-cell development, a particular V segment genetically recombines with one or more D segments, deleting intervening V and D segments, and then recombines with a J segment to form a unique TCR gene. Similar to antibody, random insertion of nucleotides at the recombination junctions increases the potential for diversity and the possibility of producing inactive TCRs. Unlike antibody, somatic mutation does not occur for TCR genes. Only cells with functional TCRs will survive their passage through the thymus. Each T cell and its progeny express a unique TCR.

Unlike antibody molecules, most TCRs can only recognize a linear peptide epitope held within a cleft on the surface of either the MHC I or MHC II molecules (see Fig. 9.1). Presentation of the antigenic peptide requires specialized proteolytic processing of the protein (see later) and presentation on MHC II molecules by an APC or on MHC I molecules by all nucleated cells.

The **CD3 complex** is found on all T cells and consists of the **γ**-, **δ**-, **ε**-, and **ζ**-polypeptide chains. The CD3 complex is the **signal transduction unit** for the TCR. **Tyrosine protein kinases** (ZAP-70, Lck) associate with the CD3 complex when antigen is bound to the TCR complex, promote a cascade of protein phosphorylations, activation of phospholipase C (PLC), and other events. The products of cleavage of inositol triphosphate by PLC cause the release of calcium and activate protein kinase C and **calcineurin,** which is a protein phosphatase. Calcineurin is a target for the immunosuppressive drugs cyclosporine and tacrolimus. Activation of membrane G-proteins, such as Ras, and the consequences of the previously described cascades result in the activation of specific transcription factors in the nucleus, activation of the T cell, and production of interleukin (IL)-2 and its receptor, IL-2R. These steps are depicted in Fig. 9.3.

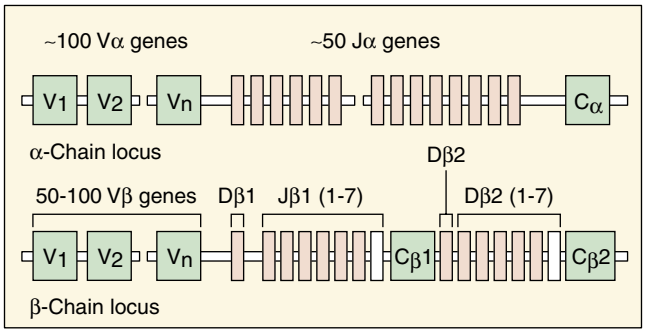


Fig. 9.2 Structure of the embryonic T-cell receptor gene. Note the similarity in structure to the immunoglobulin genes. Recombination of these segments also generates a diverse recognition repertoire. *C*, Connecting sequences; *J* and *D*, segments; *V*, variable segments.

The **CD4 and CD8 proteins** are coreceptors for the TCR (see Fig. 9.1) because they facilitate the interaction of the TCR with the antigen-presenting MHC molecule and can enhance the activation response. CD4 binds to class II MHC molecules on the surface of APCs. CD8 binds to class I MHC molecules on the surface of nucleated cells, including APCs (see more on MHC later in this chapter). The cytoplasmic tails of CD4 and CD8 associate with a protein tyrosine kinase (Lck), which enhances the TCR-induced activation of the cell on binding to the APC or target cell. CD4 or CD8 is found on **α/β** T cells but not on **γ/δ** T cells.

Accessory molecules expressed on the T-cell surface include several protein receptors that interact with their protein ligands on APCs and target cells leading to activation of the T cell, promotion of tighter interactions between

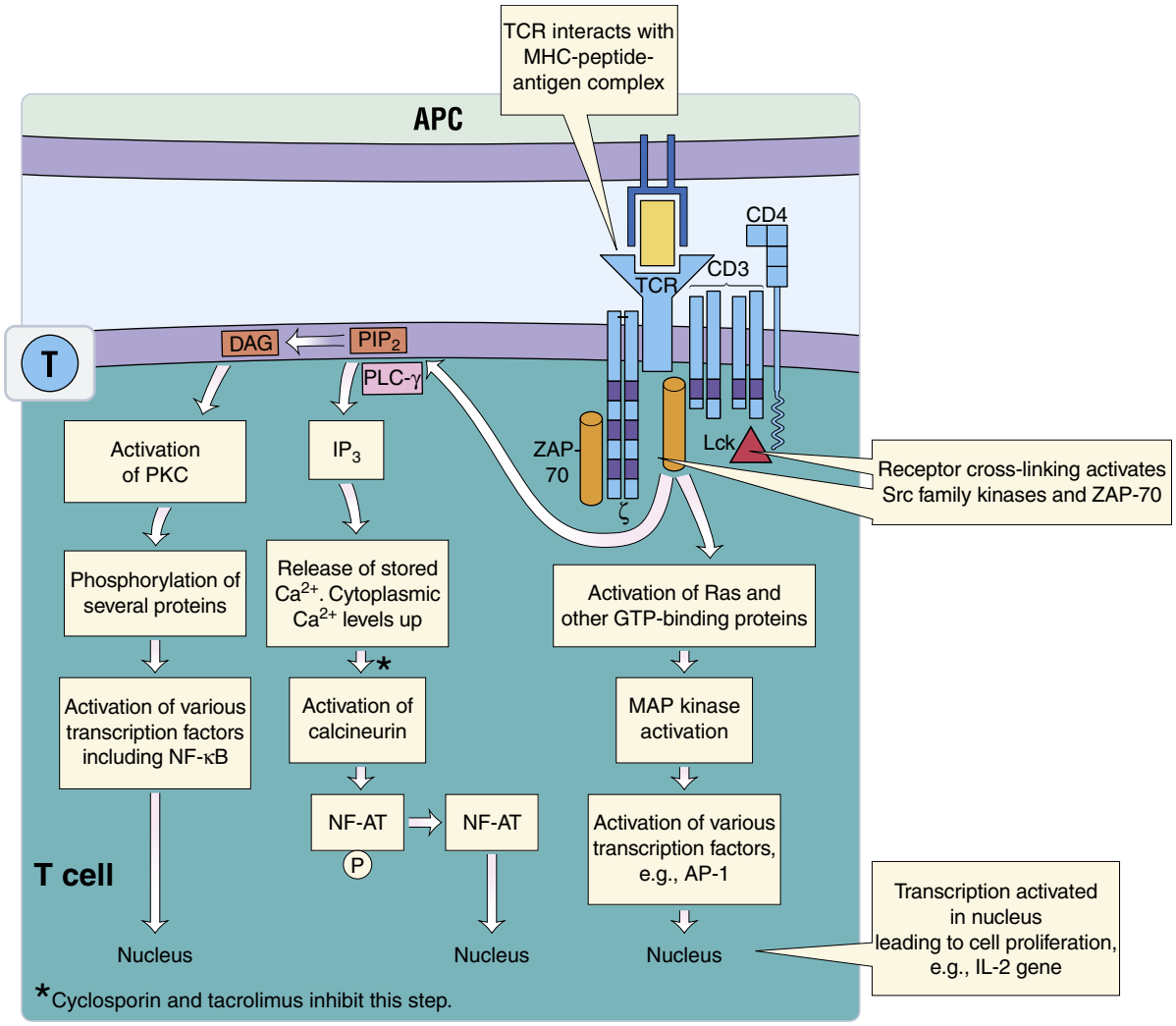


Fig. 9.3 Activation pathways for T cells. Binding of major histocompatibility complex *(MHC)* II-peptide to CD4 and the T-cell receptor *(TCR)* activate kinase cascades and phospholipase C to activate the nuclear factor of activated T cells *(NF-AT),* nuclear factor-kappa B *(NF-κβ),* activation protein 1 *(AP-1),* and other transcription factors. *APC,* Antigen-presenting cell; *DAG,* diacylglycerol; *GTP,* guanosine triphosphate; *IL-2,* interleukin-2; *IP_3,* inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate; *Lck,* lymphocyte-specific tyrosine protein kinase; *MAP kinase,* mitogen-activated protein kinase; *PIP_2,* phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate; *PKC,* protein kinase C; *PLC-γ,* phospholipase C-γ; *ZAP,* ζ-associated protein. (Modified from Helbert, M. 2017. Immunology for Medical Students, third ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

the cells, or facilitation of the killing of the target cell. These accessory molecules are as follows:

1. **CD45RA (native T cells)** or **CD45RO (memory T cells):** a transmembrane protein tyrosine phosphatase (PTP).
2. **CD28:** cytotoxic T-lymphocyte–associated protein 4 **(CTLA-4), PD-1, and ICOS-1** (inducible T-cell co-stimulator) bind to proteins of the **B7** (B7-1, B7-2, PD-L1, PD-L2, L-ICOS) **check point regulator** family of proteins to deliver a co-stimulation or inhibitory signal to the T cell.
3. **CD154 (CD40L):** this is present on activated T cells and binds to CD40 on DCs, macrophages, and B cells to promote their activation.
4. **FasL:** this initiates apoptosis in a target cell that expresses **Fas** on its cell surface.

Adhesion molecules tighten the interaction of the T cell with the APC or target cell and also may promote activation. Adhesion molecules include **leukocyte function–associated antigen-1 (LFA-1),** which interacts with the **intercellular adhesion molecules (ICAM-1, ICAM-2, and ICAM-3)** on the target cell. **CD2** was originally identified by its ability to bind to sheep red blood cells and promote sheep red blood cell rosettes around T cells. CD2 binds to LFA-3 on the target cell and promotes cell-to-cell adhesion and T-cell activation. **Very late antigens (VLA-4 and VLA-5)** are expressed on activated cells later in the response and bind to fibronectin on target cells to enhance the interaction.

T cells express receptors for many cytokines that activate and regulate T-cell function (Table 9.1). Binding of the cytokine to the **cytokine receptor** activates protein kinase and other activation cascades that deliver their signal to the nucleus. **IL-2R** is composed of three subunits. The **β/γ** subunits are on most T cells (also natural killer [NK] cells) and have intermediate affinity for IL-2. The **α** subunit **(CD25)** is induced by cell activation to form a high-affinity **α/β/γ** IL-2R. Binding of IL-2 to the IL-2R initiates a growth-stimulating

TABLE 9.1 Inducers and Cytokines of T-Cell Responses

Type of Response	Acute Phase[a]	TH1	TH17	TH2	Treg/Sup
Inducers	PAMPs	IL-12	IL-6 + TGF-β	IL-6	??
	—	—	IL-23[b]	—	—
Mediators	IL-1 TNF-α IL-6	IL-2 LT (TNF-β) IFN-γ	IL-17 TNF-α IL-22	IL-4 IL-5 IL-10	IL-10 TGF-β —
	IFN-α, IFN-β	—	—	—	—
	IL-12, IL-23	—	—	—	—

[a]Acute-phase responses influence but are not T-cell responses.
[b]IL-23 activates memory TH17 responses.
IFN, Interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *LT,* lymphotoxin; *PAMPs,* pathogen-associated molecular patterns; *TGF-β,* transforming growth factor-β; *TH,* T helper (cell).

signal to the T cell, which also promotes the production of more IL-2 and IL-2R. CD25 is expressed on activated, growing cells, including the T regulator cells (Treg) subset of CD4 T cells ($CD4^+CD25^+$). **Chemokine receptors** distinguish the different T cells and guide the cell to where it will reside in the body.

Development of T Cells

T-cell precursors are continuously developing into T cells in the thymus (Fig. 9.4; Animation 3). Contact with the thymic epithelium and hormones such as thymosin, thymulin, and thymopoietin II in the thymus promote extensive proliferation and differentiation of the individual's T-cell population during fetal development. Individuals who congenitally lack a thymus (DiGeorge syndrome) lack T cells. While in the thymus, each T cell precursor, undergoes recombination of sequences within its TCR genes to generate a TCR unique to that cell. The thymic medullary epithelial cells express the autoimmune regulator (AIRE) transcription factor, which gives them the unique capacity to express most of the body's proteins. These proteins are processed and presented on MHC molecules to the TCR on the T cells. Strong binding promotes either apoptosis or the expression of the transcription factor FoxP3 and development of **Tregs**. T cells without TCRs, bearing nonfunctional TCRs, or those with TCRs that cannot, or interact poorly with MHC molecules, are forced into committing suicide (apoptosis). Only the cells that bind just right (Goldilocks levels) will differentiate into the CD4 or CD8 subpopulations of T cells. These T cells then enter the blood and travel to lymph nodes, spleen, and other sites.

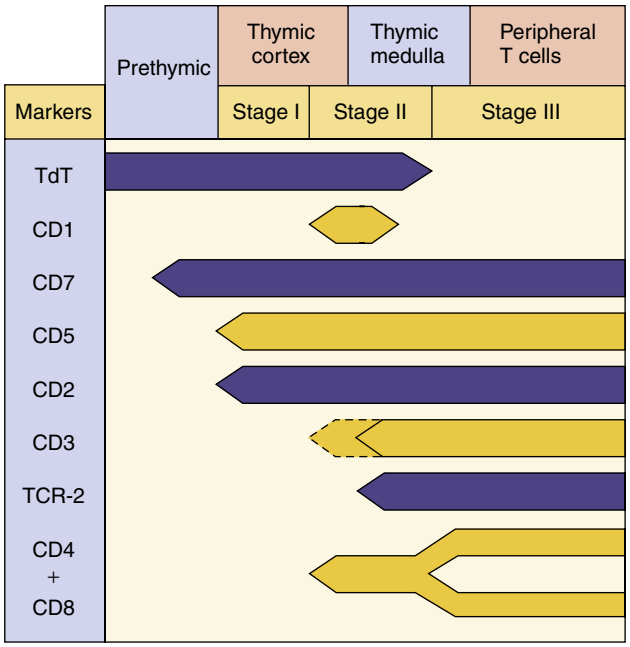


Fig. 9.4 Human T-cell development. T-cell markers are useful for the identification of the differentiation stages of the T cell and for characterizing T-cell leukemias and lymphomas. *TCR,* T-cell receptor; *TdT,* cytoplasmic terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase.

BOX 9.3 Activation of T-Cell Responses

Only a DC can initiate a response from a naive CD4 or CD8 T cell.

CD4

Antigen-presenting cells present 11 to 13 amino acid peptides on MHC II.
Coreceptor (B7.1 or B7.2) interacts with CD28 to activate or CTLA4 to suppress response.
Cytokines activate and determine the nature of the response.
CD40L expression and binding to CD40 on APC is necessary for APC activation.
Activation of cell changes chemokine receptors and adhesion proteins, and it enters blood and cycles through skin, tissue, and B-cell zones of lymph node.

CD8

DC activates CD8 T cell with help from CD4 T cell.
CD8 T cell enters blood and cycles through skin and tissue.
Target cell presents 8 to 9 amino acid peptides on MHC I.
Adhesion proteins create immune synapse.
Perforin and granzyme are secreted into immune synapse.
Target cell commits apoptosis.

APC, Antigen-presenting cell; *CTLA4,* cytotoxic T-lymphocyte–associated protein 4; *DC,* dendritic cell; *MHC,* major histocompatability complex.

Initiation of T-Cell Responses

ANTIGEN PRESENTATION TO T CELLS

Activation of an antigen-specific T-cell response requires a combination of cytokine and cell-to-cell receptor interactions (Box 9.3) initiated by the interaction of the **α/β** TCR with MHC-bearing antigenic peptides. **Class I** and **II MHC** molecules provide a molecular cradle for the peptide. As such, these T cells only respond to protein epitopes. The **CD8** molecule on T cells binds to and promotes the interaction with class I MHC molecules on target cells (see Fig. 9.1A). The **CD4** molecule on T cells binds to and promotes interactions with class II MHC molecules on APCs. The MHC molecules are encoded within the MHC gene locus (Fig. 9.5). The MHC contains a cluster of genes important to the immune response.

Class I MHC molecules are found on all nucleated cells and are the major determinant of "self." The class I

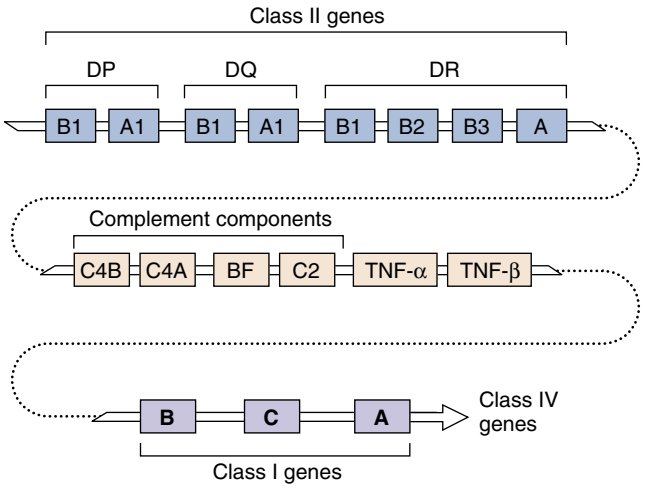


Fig. 9.5 Genetic map of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC). Genes for class I and class II molecules, as well as complement components and tumor necrosis factor *(TNF),* are within the MHC gene complex.

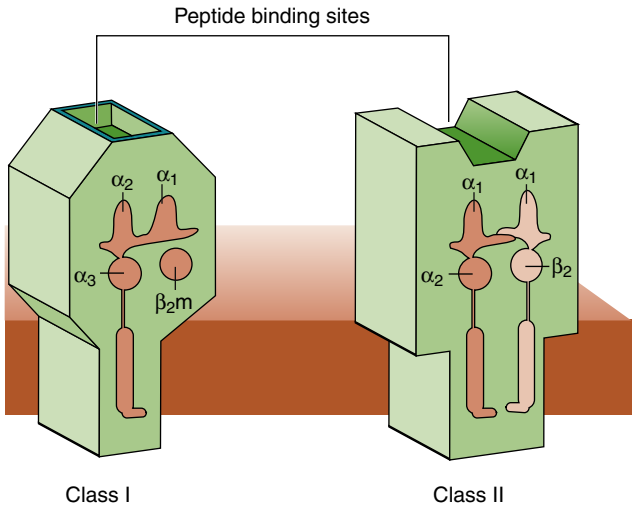


Fig. 9.6 Structure of class I and class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. The class I MHC molecules consist of two subunits, the heavy chain, and β_2-microglobulin. The binding pocket is closed at each end and can only hold peptides of 8 to 9 amino acids. Class II MHC molecules consist of two subunits, **α** and **β**, are open at the ends, and hold peptides of 11 or more amino acids.

MHC molecule, also known as **HLA** for human and H-2 for mouse, consists of two chains, a **variable heavy chain** and a **light chain (β_2-microglobulin)** (Fig. 9.6). Differences in the heavy chain of the HLA molecule between individuals *(allotypic differences)* are responsible for the T-cell response that prevents graft (tissue) transplantation. There are three major HLA genes **(HLA-A, HLA-B,** and **HLA-C)** and other minor HLA genes. Each cell expresses a pair of different HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C proteins, one from each parent, providing six different clefts to capture a repertoire of antigenic peptides. *The heavy chain of the class I MHC molecule forms a closed-ended cleft, similar to a pita bread pocket, which holds a peptide of eight to nine amino acids.* The class I MHC molecule presents antigenic peptides, most of which are from within the cell **(endogenous)**, to CD8-expressing T cells. Upregulation of class I MHC molecules makes the cell a better target for T-cell action. Some cells (brain) and some virus infections (herpes simplex virus, cytomegalovirus) downregulate the expression of MHC I molecules to reduce their potential as targets for T cells.

Class II MHC molecules are normally expressed on APCs, which are the cells that interact with CD4 T cells (e.g., macrophages, DCs, B cells). The class II MHC molecules are encoded by the **DP, DQ**, and **DR** loci and, similar to MHC I, also are co-dominantly expressed to produce six different molecules. The class II MHC molecules are a dimer of **α and β subunits** (see Fig. 9.6). *The chains of the class II MHC molecule form an open-ended peptide-binding cleft that resembles a hotdog bun and holds a peptide of 11 to 12 amino acids.* The class II MHC molecule presents ingested **(exogenous)** antigenic peptides to CD4-expressing T cells.

CD1 molecules resemble MHC I molecules and have a heavy chain and a light chain (β_2-microglobulin) but bind glycolipids instead of peptides. CD1 molecules are primarily expressed on DCs and present antigen to a specialized invariant TCR on NKT ($CD4^-CD8^-$) cells. CD1 molecules are especially important for defense against mycobacterial infections.

MR1 molecules also resemble MHC I molecules and have a heavy chain and a light chain (β_2-microglobulin) and bind vitamin B metabolites produced by bacteria. Specialized invariant TCRs for MR1 are present on MAIT cells. MAIT cells are important for regulating the normal flora of the intestines and provide an early response to infections.

PEPTIDE PRESENTATION BY CLASS I AND CLASS II MAJOR HISTOCOMPATABILITY COMPLEX MOLECULES

Unlike antibodies that also can recognize conformational epitopes, T-cell antigenic peptides must be linear epitopes. A T-cell antigen must be a peptide of 8 to 12 amino acids with a hydrophobic backbone that binds to the base of the molecular cleft of the class I or class II MHC molecule and displays a T-cell epitope on the other side to the TCR. Because of these constraints, there may be only one T-cell antigenic peptide in a protein. All nucleated cells proteolytically process intracellular proteins and display selected peptides to CD8 T cells **(endogenous route of antigen presentation)** to distinguish self, "nonself," inappropriate protein expression (tumor cell), or the presence of intracellular infections (virus), whereas APCs process and present peptides from ingested proteins to CD4 T cells **(exogenous route of antigen presentation)** (see Fig. 9.7; Animation 4). DCs can cross these routes **(cross-presentation)** to present exogenous antigen to CD8 T cells to initiate antiviral and antitumor responses.

Class I MHC molecules bind and present peptides that are degraded from cellular proteins by the **proteasome** (a protease machine) in the cytoplasm. These peptides are shuttled into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) through the **transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP).** Most of these peptides come from misfolded or excess proteins (trash) marked for proteolysis by attachment of the **ubiquitin** protein. The antigenic peptide binds to the groove in the heavy chain of the class I MHC molecule. Then the MHC heavy chain can assemble properly with β_2-microglobulin, exit the ER, and proceed to the cell membrane.

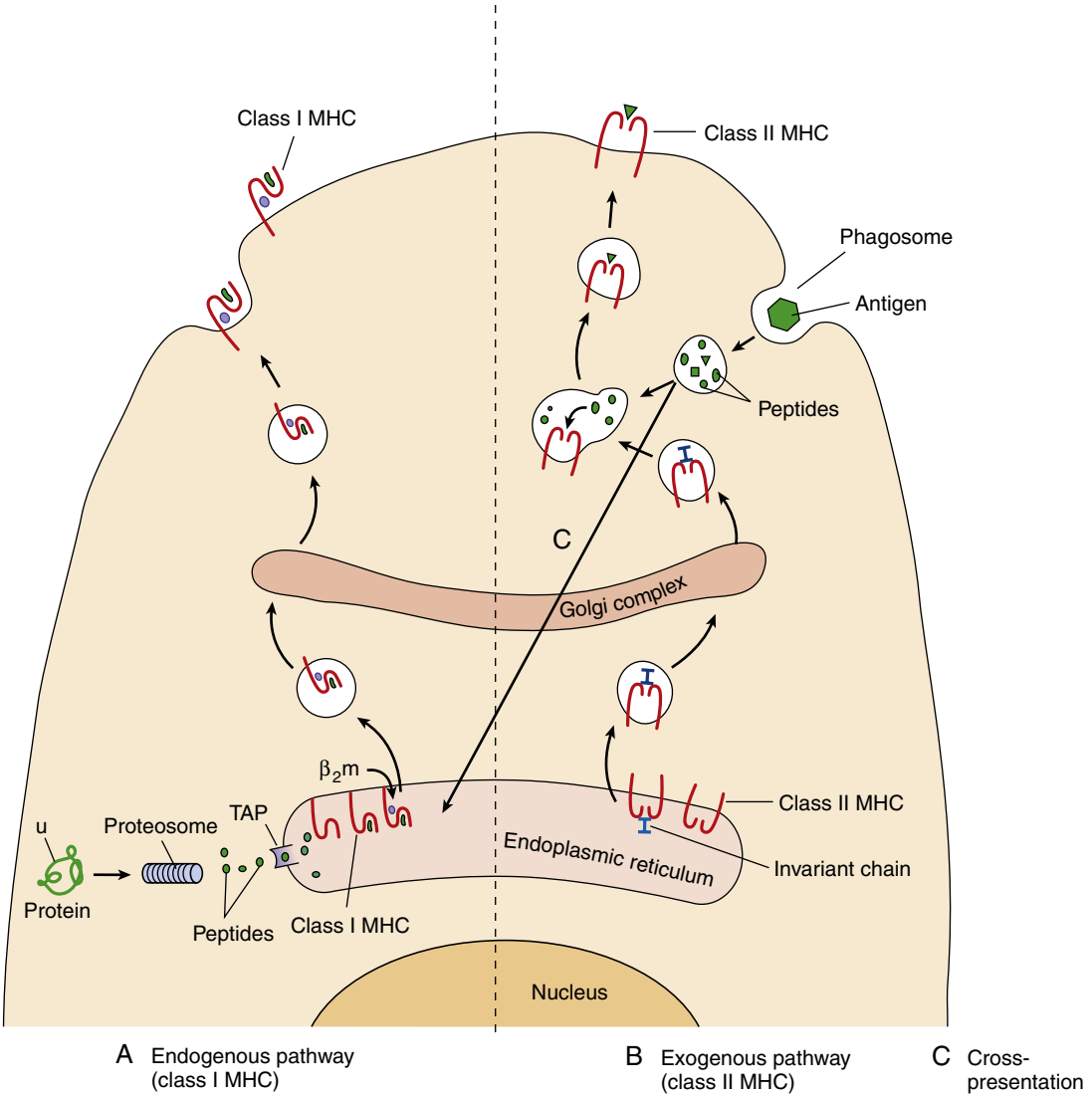


Fig. 9.7 Antigen presentation. (A) **Endogenous:** Endogenous antigen (produced by the cell and analogous to cell trash) is targeted by attachment of ubiquitin *(u)* for digestion in the proteasome. Peptides of eight to nine amino acids are transported through the transporter associated with antigen processing *(TAP)* into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER). The peptide binds to a groove in the heavy chain of the class I major histocompatibility complex *(MHC)* molecule, and the β_2-microglobulin *(β_2m)* binds to the heavy chain. The complex is processed through the Golgi apparatus and delivered to the cell surface for presentation to CD8 T cells. (B) **Exogenous:** Class II MHC molecules assemble in the ER with an invariant chain protein to prevent acquisition of a peptide in the ER. They are transported in a vesicle through the Golgi apparatus. Exogenous antigen (phagocytosed) is degraded in lysosomes, which then fuse with a vesicle containing the class II MHC molecules. The invariant chain is degraded and displaced by peptides of 11 to 13 amino acids, which bind to the class II MHC molecule. The complex is then delivered to the cell surface for presentation to CD4 T cells. (C) **Cross-presentation:** Exogenous antigenic peptides transit from the phagosome to the ER of dendritic cells and is presented on MHC I molecules to CD8 T cells.

During a **viral infection,** large quantities of viral proteins are produced and degraded into peptides and become the predominant source of peptides occupying the class I MHC molecules to be presented to CD8 T cells. **Transplanted cells (grafts)** express peptides on their MHC molecules, which differ from those of the host and therefore may be recognized as foreign. **Tumor cells** often express peptides derived from abnormal or embryonic proteins, which may elicit responses in the adult because the adult was not tolerized to these proteins. *Expression of these "foreign" peptides on MHC I at the cell surface allows the T cell to "see" what is going on within the cell.*

Class II MHC molecules present peptides from exogenous proteins that were acquired by macropinocytosis, pinocytosis, or phagocytosis and then degraded in lysosomes by APCs. The class II MHC protein also is synthesized in the ER, but unlike MHC I, the invariant chain associates with MHC II to block the peptide-binding cleft and prevent acquisition of a peptide. MHC II acquires its antigenic peptide as a result of a merging of the vesicular transport pathway (carrying newly synthesized class II MHC molecules) and the lysosomal degradation pathway (carrying phagocytosed and proteolyzed proteins). The invariant chain is cleaved and antigenic peptides displace it and associate with the cleft formed in the class II MHC protein; the complex is then delivered to the cell surface.

Cross-presentation of antigen is used mostly by DCs to present antigen to naive CD8 T cells to initiate the response to viruses and tumor cells. After picking up antigen (including debris from apoptotic cells) in the periphery, the protein is degraded in lysosomes, and its peptides enter

the cytoplasm and are then shuttled through the TAP into the ER to bind to MHC I molecules.

The following analogy might aid in the understanding of antigen presentation: All cells degrade their protein "trash" and then display it on the cell surface on class I MHC trash cans. CD8 T cells "policing" the neighborhood are not alarmed by the normal, everyday peptide trash. A viral intruder would produce large amounts of viral peptide trash (e.g., beer cans, pizza boxes) displayed on class I MHC molecular garbage cans, which would alert specific CD8 T cells that were previously activated by DCs. APCs (DCs, macrophages, and B cells) are similar to garbage collectors or sewage workers; they gobble up the neighborhood trash or lymphatic sewage, degrade it, display it on class II MHC molecules, and then move to a lymph node to present the antigenic peptides to the CD4 T cells in the "police station." Foreign antigens would alert the CD4 T cells to release cytokines and activate an immune response.

Activation of CD4 T Cells and Their Response to Antigen

Activation of naive T-cell responses is initiated by DCs and then expanded by other APCs (Animation 5). Activated DCs have octopus-like arms with large surface area (dendrites), produce cytokines, and have an MHC-rich cell surface to present antigen to T cells. Macrophages and B cells can present antigen to T cells but cannot activate a naive T cell to initiate a new immune response. CD4 helper T cells require at least two signals to become activated. The first signal is provided by interaction of the TCR with antigenic peptide presented by class II MHC molecules on the APC (Fig. 9.8A). The interaction is strengthened by the binding of CD4 to the class II MHC molecule and the linkage of adhesion proteins on the T cell and the APC. The second signal, a **co-stimulatory or checkpoint signal,** is mediated by binding of B7 molecules on the macrophage, DC, or B-cell APC to **CD28** molecules on the T cell and is a fail-safe mechanism to ensure legitimate activation. B7 also interacts with **CTLA4**, which delivers an inhibitory signal. Activated APCs express sufficient B7 to fill up all the CTLA4 and then bind to the CD28 to provide the "go" signal. Cytokine signals (e.g., IL-1, IL-2, IL-6) also are required to initiate growth and overcome regulatory suppression of the cell. Proper activation of the helper T cell promotes production of IL-2 and increases expression of IL-2Rs on the cell surface, enhancing the cell's own ability to bind and maintain activation by IL-2 (Fig. 9.9). Once activated, the IL-2 sustains the growth of the cell, and other cytokines influence the subsequent helper T-cell response (see the following section). Effector and **memory T cells** are generated as the T cells divide (see Fig. 9.9B).

Partial activation of a CD4 T cell occurs when the TCR interacts with the peptide:MHC complex without co-stimulation from CD28 and leads to **anergy** (unresponsiveness) or apoptotic death (cell suicide). This is also a mechanism for (1) eliminating self-reactive T cells in the thymus and (2) promoting the development of **tolerance** to self-proteins.

The activated, growing CD4 T cells express different adhesion proteins and new chemokine receptors, exit the T-cell sites of the lymph node, and enter the blood or move to B-cell zones of the lymph nodes and spleen. Many of the activated T cells cycle through the skin and mucoepithelium. APCs that present antigen recognized by the TCR initiate close interactions between the T cell that allow the CD28 molecules on the T cell to bind B7 molecules on the APC. These interactions then stimulate the expression of CD40L on the T cell, which interacts with the CD40 molecule on the APC, resulting in mutual activation of the T cell and the APC (see Fig. 9.8B). This interaction and the cytokines produced by the T cell will activate and determine the function of the macrophages and DCs and which immunoglobulin the B cell will produce.

CD4 T-HELPER CELL FUNCTIONS

The CD4 T cells promote expansion of the immune response with cell growth–promoting cytokines and define the nature of the immune response with other cytokines. The different types of T-helper cells are defined by characteristic transcription factors and the cytokines they produce and thus the responses they induce (Fig. 9.10 and Box 9.4; also see Table 9.1).

TH0 cells are uncommitted to a specific response and their activation initiates a generic response by producing cytokines that promote lymphocyte growth and activate DCs, including IL-2, interferon (IFN)-**γ**, and IL-4. **IL-2** promotes T, B, and innate lymphoid (including NK cells) cell growth to expand the immune response.

Initial antibacterial and antifungal responses are mediated by the **TH17** cells. These are CD4 T-helper cells stimulated by IL-6 plus transforming growth factor (TGF)-**β** or, for memory T cells, IL23. IL-23 is in the IL-12 family of cytokines. IL-23 and IL-12 both have a p40 subunit, but IL-12 has a p35, whereas IL-23 has a p19 subunit. TH17 cells express the RORγt transcription factor and make cytokines (e.g., **IL-17**, **IL-22**, IL-6, tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-**α**) and proinflammatory chemokines, which activate epithelial cells and neutrophils and promote inflammatory responses. TH17 responses provide protection in immunoprivileged sites such as the eye, in which there is an abundance of TGF-**β**. TH17 responses are associated with the keratinocyte growth in psoriasis and cell-mediated autoimmune inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis.

The **TH1 response** activates both cellular and antibody responses (Animation 6). Activation of **TH1** responses requires **IL-12** produced by DCs and macrophages. TH1 cells are characterized by expression of the T-bet transcription factor and secretion of **IL-2, IFN-γ,** and **TNF-β (lymphotoxin [LT])**. **IFN-γ,** also known as **macrophage activation factor,** reinforces TH1 responses by promoting more IL-12 production by macrophages and DCs, creating a self-sustaining cycle. IFN-**γ** also promotes production of IgG and inhibits TH2 responses. **TNF-β** can activate neutrophils. TH1 cells are inhibited by IL-4 and IL-10, which is produced by TH2 cells. Activated TH1 cells express the **FasL** ligand, which can interact with the **Fas** protein on target cells to promote apoptosis (killing) of the target cell, and the **CCR5 chemokine receptor** that promotes relocation to sites of infection. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) uses the CCR5 chemokine receptor as a coreceptor with CD4 to initiate infection of an individual.

The TH1 responses amplify local inflammatory reactions and delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) reactions by

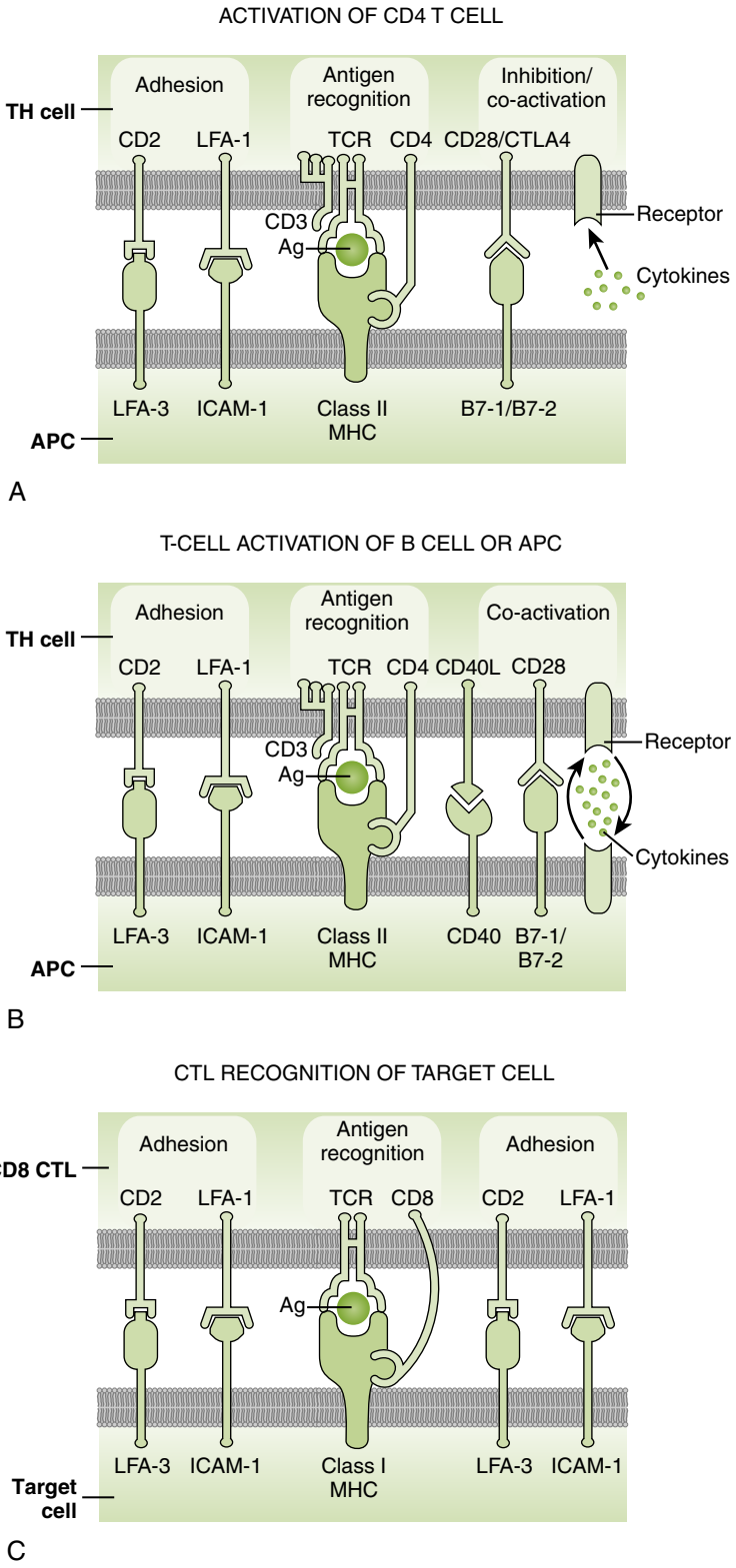


Fig. 9.8 Molecules involved in the interaction between T cells and antigen-presenting cells *(APCs).* (A) Initiation of a T-cell response. CD4 T cells interact with major histocompatibility complex *(MHC)* II and its peptide and co-stimulatory/inhibitory ligands on dendritic cells (DCs). Initiation of a CD8 T-cell response is similar, but CD8 and the T-cell receptor *(TCR)* interact with peptide MHC I and the peptide it holds. (B) CD4 T-cell helper activation of a B cell, DC, or macrophage. CD40L–CD40 interaction activates the APC. (C) CD8 T-cell binding to target cell creates an immunosynapse into which perforin and granzymes are secreted. Cell-surface receptor-ligand interactions and cytokines are indicated with the direction of their action. *Ag,* Antigen; *APC,* antigen-presenting cell; *CTLA4,* cytotoxic T lymphocyte A4; *ICAM-1,* intercellular adhesion molecule-1; *LFA-1,* leukocyte function–associated antigen-1 TH, T helper. (From Rosenthal, K.S., Tan, M., 2010. Rapid Reviews in Microbiology and Immunology, third ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

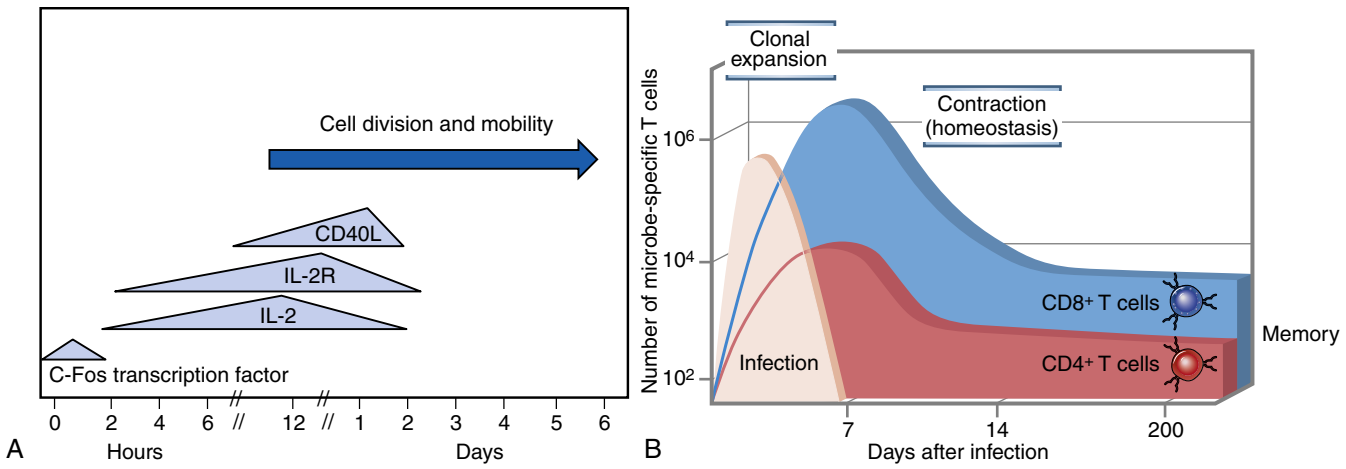


Fig. 9.9 Progression of naive T-cell activation and response. (A) Interaction with antigen and coreceptors from the antigen-presenting cell (APC) activates expression of new transcription factors *(c-Fos)*, interleukin *(IL)*-2, and the IL-2R to promote growth and CD40L to activate the APC. (B) CD4 or CD8 T-cell numbers rise rapidly in response to infection, after which the activated effector T cells will apoptose, leaving memory T cells. Subsequent activation of memory T-cell responses is quicker. (B, Modified from Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2015. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

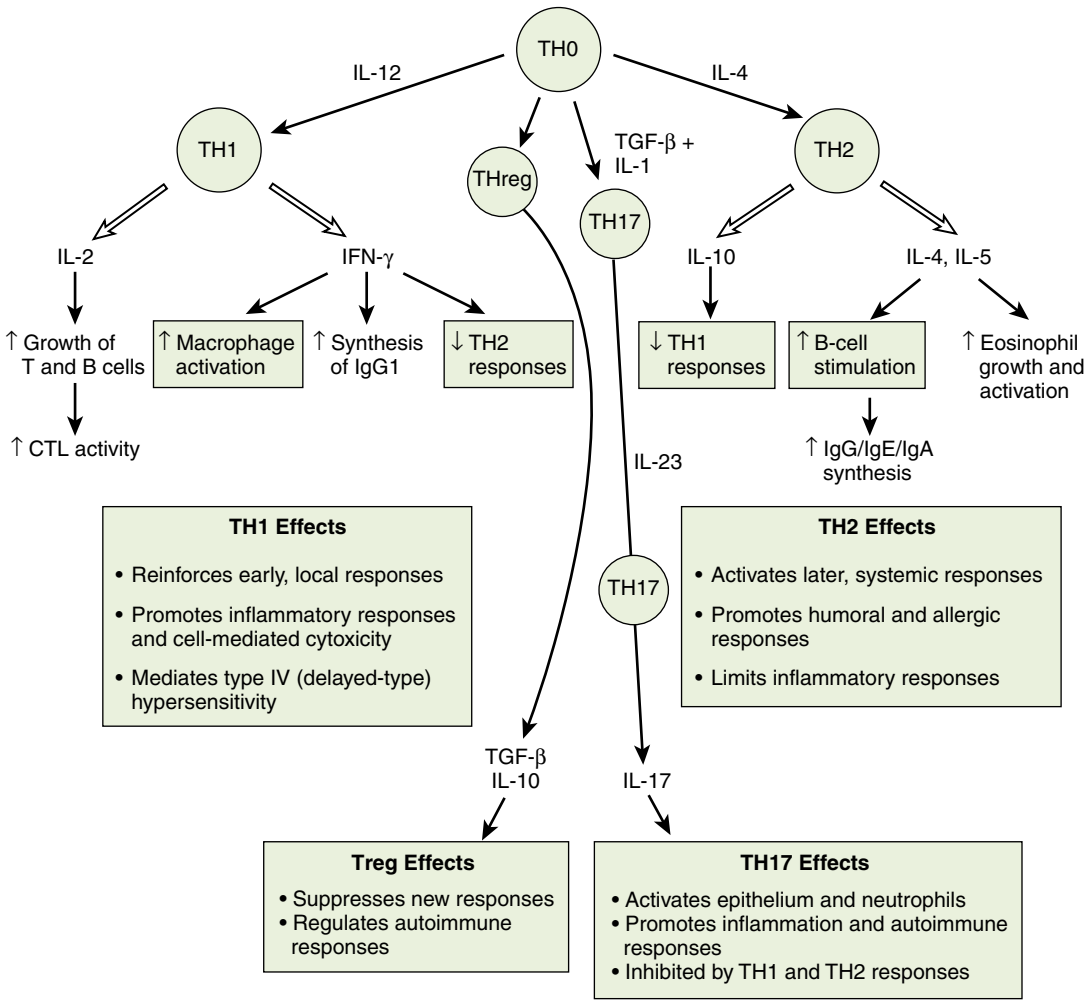


Fig. 9.10 T-cell responses are determined by cytokines. Dendritic cells initiate and determine the type of CD4 T-cell responses by the cytokines they produce. Similarly, T cells use other cytokines to tell other cells what to do. The response-defining cytokines are indicated. ↑, Increase; ↓, decrease; *CTL,* cytotoxic T lymphocyte; *IFN-γ,* interferon-γ; *IgG/IgE/IgA,* immunoglobulin G/E/A; *IL,* interleukin; *TGF-β,* transforming growth factor-β; *TH,* T helper (cell); Treg, T regulator cells. (From Rosenthal, K.S., Tan, M., 2010. Rapid Reviews in Microbiology and Immunology, third ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

BOX 9.4 T-Helper Responses and Their Cytokines

Activated TH cells express CD40L to activate B cells, macrophages, and DCs.
TH cells produce growth-stimulating and response-defining cytokines.
Growth-stimulating cytokines: GM-CSF, IL-3
TH1: requires induction with IL-12, T-bet transcription factor
- *IFN-γ:* activates CD8 T cells, M1 (inflammatory) macrophages; promotes B-cell production of IgG; inhibits TH2
- *IL-2:* promotes T-, B-, and NK-cell growth
- *TNF-α and TNF-β:* promote inflammation and cytotoxicity

TH2: induced by IL-4, GATA-3 transcription factor
- *IL-4:* T-cell growth factor, stimulates immunoglobulin class switch (IgG, IgE), activation of mast cells, M2 (alternative) macrophage
- *IL-5:* B-cell and eosinophil growth factor, stimulates immunoglobulin class switch (IgG, IgA)
- *IL-10:* B-cell growth factor and inhibitor of TH1 and inflammatory responses

TH17: induced by TGF-β + IL-6; memory T cells by IL-23, ROR-γt transcription factor
- *IL-17:* activates neutrophils, monocytes
- *IL-22:* stimulates epithelium to grow and produce antimicrobial peptides

TFH: influenced by TH1 or TH2 cytokines
- *IL-21:* germinal center development, plasma cell and memory B-cell development
- *IFN-γ or IL-4:* see previous mention

Treg: requires IL-2, FoxP3 transcription factor
- *TGF-β:* inhibits naïve T-cell and other T-cell activation, inhibits inflammation
- *IL-10:* see previous mention

DCs, Dendritic cells; *GM-CSF,* granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *IFN,* interferon; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *IL,* interleukin; *TFH,* follicular helper T cell; *TGF,* transforming growth factor; *TH,* T helper; *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor; *Treg,* T regulator cell.

activating macrophages, NK cells, and CD8 cytotoxic T cells and expanding the immune response by stimulating growth of B and T cells with IL-2. These responses are important for eliminating intracellular infections (e.g., viruses, bacteria, parasites) and fungi and for antitumor responses; they also are associated with cell-mediated autoimmune inflammatory diseases (e.g., multiple sclerosis, Crohn disease).

The **TH2 response** is the default T-helper cell response. It occurs later in response to infection and acts systemically through antibody-mediated responses. The TH2 response promotes antibody production to antigenic debris presented on MHC II in the lymphatic system, which occurs in the absence of an IL-12/IFN-γ signal from innate responses. TH2 cells express the GATA-3 transcription factor and release **IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL10, and IL-13** cytokines that promote humoral (systemic) responses. These cytokines stimulate the B cell to undergo recombination events within the immunoglobulin gene to switch from production of IgM and IgD to production of specific types and subtypes of IgG, IgE, or IgA. TH2 responses are associated with production of IgE and activation of mast cells, which are useful for antihelminthic responses but mediates allergies. TH2 responses can exacerbate an intracellular infection (e.g., *Mycobacterium leprae, Leishmania*) by prematurely shutting off protective TH1 responses. TH2 cell development is inhibited by IFN-γ.

Follicular helper T cells (TFH) reside in the follicles of the lymph node, which are the B-cell zones of the lymph node. They relay the cytokine responses, whether TH1 or TH2, to the B cells to promote production of the appropriate antibody. They also promote development of germinal centers, which are foci of specific memory cell, plasma cell, and antibody production.

Regulatory T cells include Treg and Tr1 cells, which are antigen-specific suppressor cells. **Treg cells** express the FoxP3 transcription factor and the **CD25** IL2 receptor and are generated in the thymus. **Tr1 cells** are regulatory cells that are generated by and produce suppressive cytokines in the tissue. These cells prevent development of autoimmune and overzealous responses by producing **TGF-β and IL-10.** They help to keep T-cell responses under control and promote memory cell development. Regulatory T cells are especially important to regulate responses to normal flora on the skin and in the gastrointestinal tract. Tr1 cells can be derived from Th17 cells in the tissue and revert back to reinforce the necessary immune response. Other TH responses (e.g., TH9 and TH22) have been described, and their names refer to the primary cytokine they produce or the functions promoted by the cytokine.

CD8 T Cells

CD8 T cells include cytotoxic T lymphocytes **(CTLs),** but they also can produce cytokines and influence immune responses. CTLs are part of the TH1 response and are important for eliminating virally infected cells and tumor cells. They kill by releasing proteins that convince the target cell to commit apoptosis.

The CTL response is initiated when naive CD8 T cells in the lymph node are activated by antigen-presenting DCs and cytokines produced by TH1 CD4 T cells, including IL-2 and IFN-γ. The DC may have acquired the antigen as a result of a viral infection or by cross-presentation of antigens of internalized cells, viruses or proteins. The activated CD8 T cells divide and differentiate into mature CTLs, which disseminate through the blood. During a viral challenge, the numbers of specific CTLs will increase up to 100,000 times. When the activated CTL finds a target cell, it binds tightly through interactions of the TCR with antigen-bearing class I MHC proteins and adhesion molecules on both cells (similar to the closing of a zipper) (see Fig. 9.8C). **Granules** containing toxic molecules, **granzymes (esterases),** and a pore-forming protein **(perforin)** move to the site of interaction and release their contents into the pocket **(immune synapse)** formed between the T cell and target cell. **Perforin** generates holes in the target cell membrane to allow the granule contents to enter and induce **apoptosis (programmed cell death)** in the target cell. CD8 T cells also can initiate apoptosis in target cells through the interaction of the **FasL on the T cell with the Fas protein on the target cell surface.** FasL is a member of the TNF family of proteins, and Fas is a member of the TNF receptor family of proteins. Apoptosis is characterized by degradation of the target cell deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) into discrete fragments of approximately 200 base pairs and disruption of internal membranes. The cells shrink into apoptotic bodies, which are readily phagocytosed by macrophages and DCs. Apoptosis is a clean method of cell death and can promote

tolerance, whereas necrosis signals neutrophil action and further tissue damage. TH1 CD4 T cells and NK cells also express FasL and can initiate apoptosis in target cells.

Suppressor T cells provide antigen-specific regulation of helper T-cell function through inhibitory cytokines and other means. Similar to CTLs, suppressor T cells interact with class I MHC molecules.

INNATE T Cells

NKT cells are like a hybrid between NK cells and T cells. They express NK cell markers such as NK1.1 (an NK immunoglobulin-like receptor [KIR]), and an **α/β** TCR. Unlike other T cells, the TCR repertoire is very limited. They may express CD4, but most lack CD4 and CD8 molecules ($CD4^-CD8^-$). The TCR of most NKT cells reacts with CD1 molecules, which present microbial and host glycolipids and glycopeptides. On activation, NKT cells release large amounts of IL-4 and IFN-**γ**. NKT cells help in the initial responses to infection and are very important for defense against mycobacterial infections.

MAIT cells express an invariant **αβ** TCR that recognizes the MR1 receptor for vitamin B derivatives produced by most bacteria. They are present in the lungs, liver, joints, blood, and mucosal tissues. On activation, these MAIT cells produce TNF-**α**, IFN-**γ**, and IL-17 to enhance neutrophil and macrophage action. They also produce perforin and granzyme for direct cytotoxicity toward bacteria and other cells.

γβ T cells comprise at least 35% of the T cells in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. These cells express the invariant **γδ** TCR instead of one of many different **αβ** TCRs. The **γδ** T cells are activated by small molecules, including cellular stress molecules, from a wide array of bacteria, parasites, and even stressed human cells including alkylamines, bisphosphonates, and organic phosphoantigens, such as hydroxy-methyl-butyl-pyrophosphate, which is a microbial metabolite from the isoprenoid pathway. The **γδ** T cells can generate different cytokine or even cytotoxic responses depending on the nature of the stimuli. These cells rapidly respond to infections and produce cytokines, including IL17, IFN-**γ** and TNF-**α**, and chemokines. **γδ** T cells also can promote regulatory functions to maintain the status quo within the intestine.

B Cells and Humoral Immunity

The primary molecular component of the humoral immune response is antibody produced by B cells and plasma cells. Antibodies provide protection from rechallenge by an infectious agent, block spread of the agent in the blood, neutralize virulence factors, and facilitate elimination of the infectious agent. To accomplish these tasks, an incredibly large repertoire of antibody molecules must be available to recognize the tremendous number of infectious agents and molecules that challenge our bodies. In addition to interacting specifically with foreign structures, the antibody molecules also must interact with host systems and cells (e.g., complement, macrophages) to promote clearance of antigen and activation of subsequent immune responses (Box 9.5). Antibody molecules also serve as the cell-surface receptors that stimulate the appropriate B-cell antibody factories to grow and produce more antibody in response to antigenic challenge.

BOX 9.5 Antimicrobial Actions of Antibodies

Opsonize: promote ingestion and killing by phagocytic cells (IgG)
Neutralize: block attachment of bacteria bacteria, toxins, and viruses
Agglutinate bacteria: aids in clearing
Render motile organisms nonmotile
Combine with antigens on the microbial surface and activate the complement cascade, thus inducing an inflammatory response, bringing fresh phagocytes and serum antibodies into the site
Combine with antigens on the microbial surface, activate the complement cascade, and anchor the membrane attack complex

Ig, Immunoglobulin.

B cells

Most B cells are derived from and mature in the bone marrow. These cells have the potential to produce any of the immunoglobulin classes with T-cell help and can mature into memory cells or plasma cells. **B-1 cells** are a more primitive B lymphocyte derived from fetal liver and continuously produce natural antibody (IgM or IgA of low affinity) against bacterial polysaccharides, ABO blood groups, and even self-antigens without T-cell help. These cells are stimulated by pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) to divide and produce more antibody. **Marginal zone B cells** produce IgM and are found in the spleen. B-1 cells and marginal zone B cells are especially important for generating antibody against the capsular polysaccharides of bacteria and fungi.

Immunoglobulin Types and Structures

Immunoglobulins are composed of at least two heavy chains and two light chains, which is a dimer of dimers. They are subdivided into classes and subclasses based on the structure and antigenic distinction of their heavy chains. IgG, IgM, and IgA are the major antibody forms, whereas IgD and IgE make up less than 1% of the total immunoglobulins. The IgA and IgG classes of immunoglobulin are divided further into subclasses based on differences in the Fc portion. There are four subclasses of IgG, designated as IgG1 through IgG4, and two IgA subclasses (IgA1 and IgA2) (Fig. 9.11).

Antibody molecules are Y-shaped molecules with two major structural regions that mediate the two major functions of the molecule (Table 9.2; also see Fig. 9.11). The **variable-region/antigen-combining site** must be able to identify and specifically interact with an epitope on an antigen. A large number of different antibody molecules, each with a different variable region, are produced in every individual to recognize the seemingly infinite number of different antigens in nature. The **Fc portion** (stem of the antibody Y) interacts with host systems and cells to promote clearance of

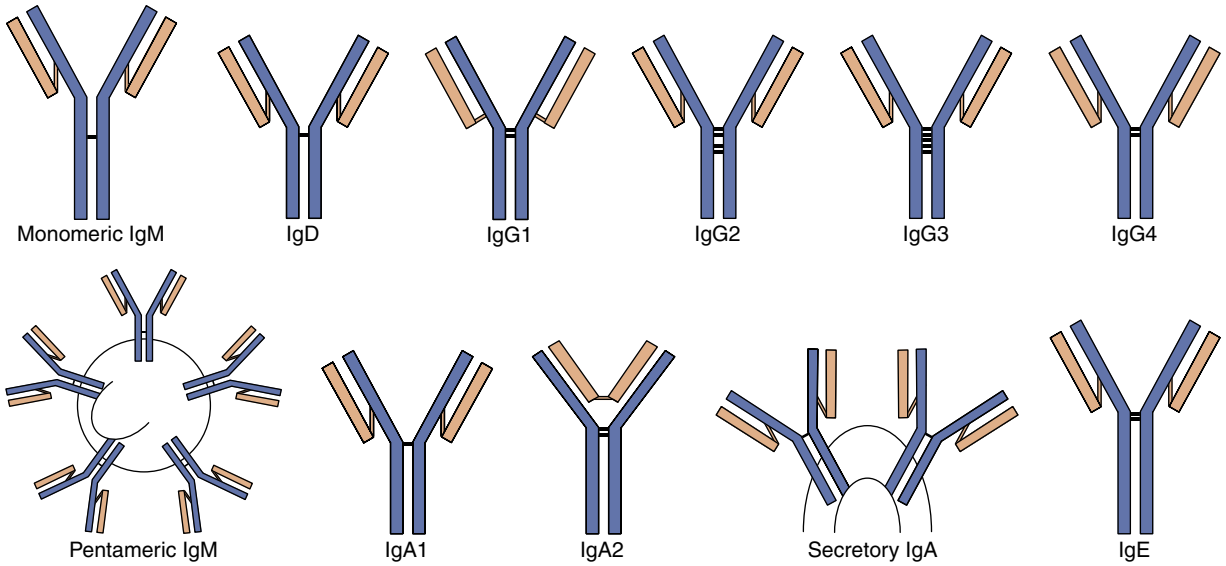


Fig. 9.11 Comparative structures of the immunoglobulin *(Ig)* classes and subclasses in humans. IgA and IgM are held together in multimers by the J chain. IgA can acquire the secretory component for the traversal of epithelial cells.

TABLE 9.2 Properties and Functions of Immunoglobulins

Properties and Functions	IgM	IgD	IgG	IgE	IgA
Heavy-chain gene	μ	δ	γ	ε	α
Subclasses	—	—	$\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3, \gamma_4$		α_1, α_2
Molecular weight (kDa)	900	185	154	190	160
% Serum immunoglobulin	5-10	<1	75-85	<1	5-15
Half-life (days)	5	2-3	23	2-3	6
T-cell requirement	Independent	Independent	Dependent	Dependent	Dependent
Time/memory	Early, primary	Early, primary	Later, memory	Later, memory	Later, memory
B-cell receptor	++	++	++	++	++
Binds complement	++	–	++	–	–
Opsonizes	[a]	–	++	–	–
ADCC	++	–	++	–	–
Crosses placenta	–	–	++	–	–
Protects mucosa	+	–	+[b]	–	+++
Activates mast cell	–	–	–	+++	–

[a]Opsonizes by fixing complement.
[b]Transported by neonatal Fc receptor.
ADCC, Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *kDa,* kilodalton.

antigen and activation of subsequent immune responses. The Fc portion is responsible for fixation of complement and binding of the molecule to cell-surface immunoglobulin receptors **(FcR)** on macrophages, NK cells, T cells, and other cells. For IgG and IgA, the Fc portion interacts with other proteins to promote transfer across the placenta and the mucosa, respectively (Table 9.3). In addition, each of the different types of antibody can be synthesized with a **membrane-spanning portion** to make it a B-cell surface antigen receptor.

IgG and IgA have a flexible **hinge region** rich in proline and susceptible to cleavage by proteolytic enzymes. Digestion of IgG molecules with **papain** yields two **Fab** fragments and one **Fc** fragment (Fig. 9.12). Each Fab fragment has one antigen-binding site. **Pepsin** cleaves the molecule, producing an **$F(ab')_2$** fragment with two antigen-binding sites and a **pFc′** fragment.

The different types and parts of immunoglobulin also can be distinguished using antibodies directed against different portions of the molecule. **Isotypes (IgM, IgD, IgG, IgA, and IgE)** are determined by antibodies directed against the Fc portion of the molecule (*iso-*, meaning the same for all people.) **Allotypic** differences occur for antibody molecules with the same isotype but contain protein sequences that differ from one person to another (in addition to the antigen-binding region). *(All ["allo"] of us have differences.)* The **idiotype** refers to the protein sequences in the variable region that comprise the large number of antigen-binding regions. *(There are many different idiots in the world.)*

On a molecular basis, each antibody molecule is made up of heavy and light chains encoded by separate genes. The basic immunoglobulin unit consists of **two heavy (H)** and **two light (L) chains.** IgM and IgA consist of multimers of this basic structure. The heavy and light chains of immunoglobulin are fastened together by **interchain disulfide bonds.** Two types of light chains, **κ** and **λ,** are present in all five immunoglobulin classes, although only one type is present in an individual molecule. There are **five types of heavy chains,** one for each isotype of antibody **(IgM, μ; IgG, γ; IgD, δ; IgA, α; and IgE, ε)**. **Intrachain disulfide bonds** define molecular domains within each chain. Light chains have a variable and a constant domain. The heavy chains have a variable and three (IgG, IgA) or four (IgM, IgE) constant domains (see Fig. 9.12). The heavy chain of the different antibody molecules also can be synthesized with a membrane-spanning region to make the antibody an antigen-specific cell-surface receptor for the B cell.

TABLE 9.3 Fc Interactions with Immune Components

Immune Component	Interaction	Function
Fc receptor	Macrophages	Opsonization
	Polymorphonuclear neutrophils	Opsonization
	T cells	Check point regulation
	Natural killer cells (antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity)	Killing
	Mast cells for IgE	Allergic reactions, antiparasitic
	Neonatal IgG receptor	Transport across capillary membranes
Complement	Complement system	Opsonization, killing (especially bacteria), activation of inflammation

Ig, Immunoglobulin.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN D

IgD, which has a molecular mass of 185 kDa, accounts for 0.25% of serum immunoglobulins. IgD exists primarily as membrane IgD, which serves with IgM as an antigen receptor on early B-cell membranes to help initiate antibody responses by activating B-cell growth. IgD and IgM are the only isotypes that can be expressed together by the same cell.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN M

IgM is the first antibody produced in response to antigenic challenge and can be produced in a T-cell–independent manner. Monomeric IgM is found with IgD on the B-cell surface, in which it serves as the receptor for antigen. IgM makes up 5% to 10% of the total serum immunoglobulins in adults and has a half-life of 5 days. It is a **pentameric molecule** with five immunoglobulin units joined by the **J chain,** with a total molecular mass of 900 kDa. Theoretically, this immunoglobulin has 10 antigen-binding sites. IgM is the most efficient immunoglobulin for fixing (binding) complement. A single IgM pentamer can activate the classical complement pathway. Because IgM is relatively large, it remains in the blood and spreads inefficiently from the blood into tissue. IgM is particularly important for immunity against polysaccharide antigens on the exterior of pathogenic microorganisms. It also promotes phagocytosis and promotes bacteriolysis by activating complement through its Fc portion. IgM is also a major component of rheumatoid factors (autoantibodies).

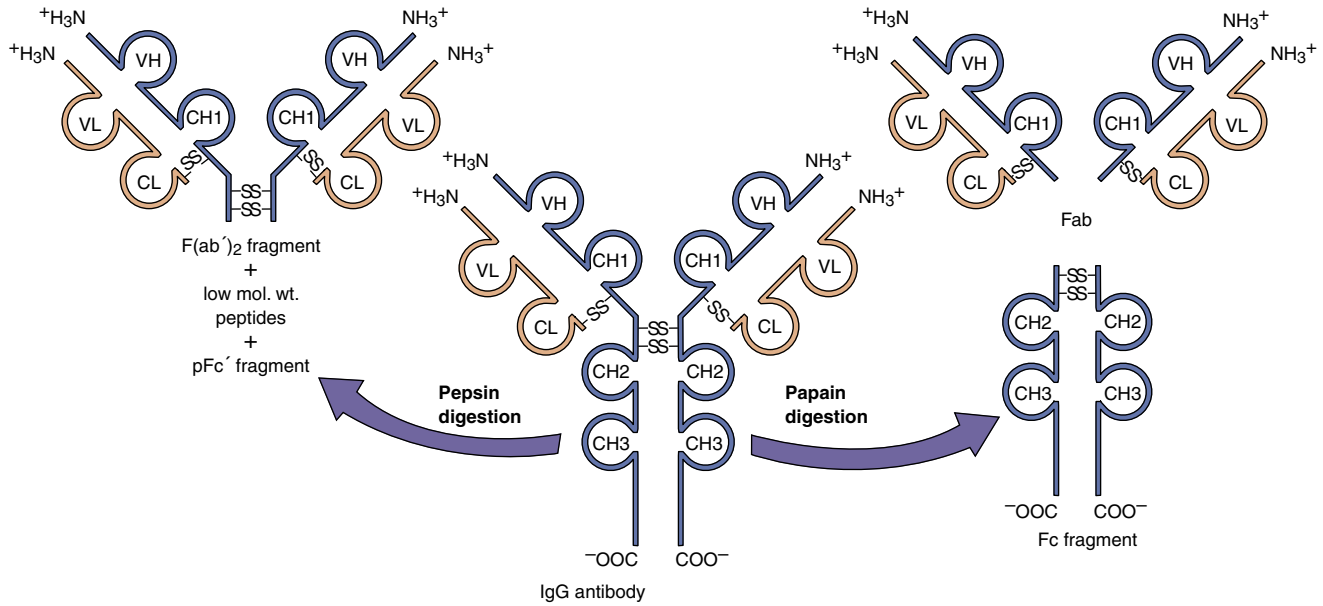


Fig. 9.12 Proteolytic digestion of immunoglobulin *(Ig)*G. Pepsin treatment produces a dimeric $F(ab')_2$ fragment. Papain treatment produces monovalent Fab fragments and an Fc fragment. The $F(ab')_2$ and the Fab fragments bind antigen but lack a functional Fc region. The heavy chain is depicted in *blue;* the light chain in *orange. mol. wt.,* Molecular weight.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN G

IgG comprises approximately 85% of the immunoglobulins in adults. It has a molecular mass of 154 kDa, based on two L chains of 22,000 Da each and two H chains of 55,000 Da each. The four subclasses of IgG differ in structure (see Fig. 9.11), relative concentration, and function. Production of IgG requires T-cell help. IgG, as a class of antibody molecules, has the longest half-life (23 days) of the five immunoglobulin classes, binds the neonatal Fc receptor and is transported across the placenta and certain other membranes, and is the principal antibody in the **anamnestic (booster) response.** IgG shows high avidity (binding capacity) for antigens, fixes complement, stimulates chemotaxis, and acts as an opsonin to facilitate phagocytosis.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN A

IgA comprises 5% to 15% of the serum immunoglobulins and has a half-life of 6 days. It has a molecular mass of 160 kDa. It can occur as monomers, dimers, trimers, and multimers combined by the J chain (similar to IgM). In addition to serum IgA, a **secretory IgA** is released by mucosal epithelial cells. IgA production requires specialized T-cell help and mucosal stimulation. The J chain of IgA binds to a **poly-Ig receptor** on epithelial cells for transport across the cell. The poly-Ig receptor remains bound to IgA and is then cleaved to become the **secretory component** when secretory IgA is secreted from the cell. An adult secretes approximately 2 g of IgA per day. Secretory IgA appears in colostrum, intestinal and respiratory secretions, saliva, tears, stool, and other secretions. IgA deficiency is relatively common (0.1% to 1% of the population) and these individuals have an increased incidence of respiratory tract infections.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN E

IgE accounts for less than 1% of the total immunoglobulins and has a half-life of approximately 2.5 days. Most IgE is bound to Fc receptors on **mast cells,** on which it serves as a receptor for activating the cell to allergens and parasite antigens. When sufficient antigen binds to the IgE on the mast cell, the mast cell releases histamine, prostaglandin, platelet-activating factor, and cytokines. IgE is important for protection against parasitic infection and is responsible for **anaphylactic hypersensitivity** (type 1) (rapid allergic reactions).

Immunogenetics

The antibody response can recognize at least 10^8 structures but can still specifically amplify and focus a response directed to a specific challenge. The mechanisms for generating this antibody repertoire and the different immunoglobulin subclasses are tied to random genetic events that accompany the development (differentiation) of the B cell (Fig. 9.13).

Production of the antibody gene in the pre–B cell occurs in the bone marrow. Human chromosomes 2, 22, and 14 contain immunoglobulin genes for **κ**, **λ**, and H chains, respectively. Genetic recombination at the DNA level and posttranscriptional processing at the ribonucleic acid (RNA) level assemble the immunoglobulin gene and produce the functional messenger RNA (mRNA) (see Fig. 9.13). The **germline** forms of these genes consist of different and separate sets of genetic building blocks for the light **(V and J gene segments)** and heavy chains **(V, D, and J gene segments),** which are genetically recombined to produce the immunoglobulin variable regions. These variable regions are then connected to the constant-region C gene segments. For the **κ** light chain, there are ~35 V gene segments, 5 J gene segments, and only one C gene segment. For the **λ** gene there are ~30 V and one J segment but 4 C gene segments. For the heavy chain, there are ~45 V genes, 23 D genes, and 6 (heavy chain) J genes with 9 C genes (one for each class and subclass of antibody **[μ; δ; γ_3, γ_1, γ_2, and γ_4; ε; α_1 and α_2]**). In addition, gene segments for membrane-spanning peptides can be attached to the heavy-chain genes to allow the antibody molecule to insert into the B-cell membrane as an antigen-activation receptor.

Each of the V, D, and J segments is surrounded by DNA sequences that promote **directional recombination and loss of the intervening DNA sequences.** The enzyme produced by the **RAG gene** is essential for recombination of these segments. Randomly inserted nucleotides at the junction sites connect the two strands, which can enhance the diversity of sequences or inactivate the gene if it disrupts the reading frame for the subsequent mRNA. The light-chain gene segment is produced by the juxtaposition of randomly chosen **κ** or **λ** V and J gene segments, and the variable region of the heavy-chain segment is produced by the juxtaposition of a V, D, and J gene.

The complete heavy-chain gene is produced by attachment of the variable-region sequences (VDJ) to the μ; **δ**; **γ**, γ_1, γ_2, or γ_4; **ε**; or α_1 or α_2 sequences of the constant region (C) gene segments. Pre–B and B cells co-express IgM and IgD and mRNAs are produced that contain the variable-region gene segments connected to the contiguous μ and **δ** C gene sequences. Processing of the mRNA removes either the μ or **δ**, as if it were an intron, to produce the final immunoglobulin mRNA. The pre–B cell expresses cytoplasmic IgM, whereas the B cell expresses cytoplasmic and cell-surface IgM and cell-surface IgD. IgM and IgD are the only pair of isotypes that can be expressed on the same cell.

Class switching (IgM to IgG, IgE, or IgA) occurs in mature B cells in response to different cytokines produced by TH1 or TH2 CD4 helper T cells (Fig. 9.14). Each of the C gene segments, except **δ**, is preceded by a DNA sequence called the **switch site.** After the appropriate cytokine signal, the switch in front of the μ sequence recombines with the switch in front of the γ_3, γ_1, γ_2, or γ_4; **ε**; or α_1 or α_2 sequences, creating a DNA loop containing the intervening constant region gene that is subsequently removed. Processing of the RNA transcript yields the final mRNA for the immunoglobulin heavy-chain protein. For example, IgG1 production would result from excision of DNA containing the C gene segments C_μ, C**δ**, and Cγ_3 to attach the

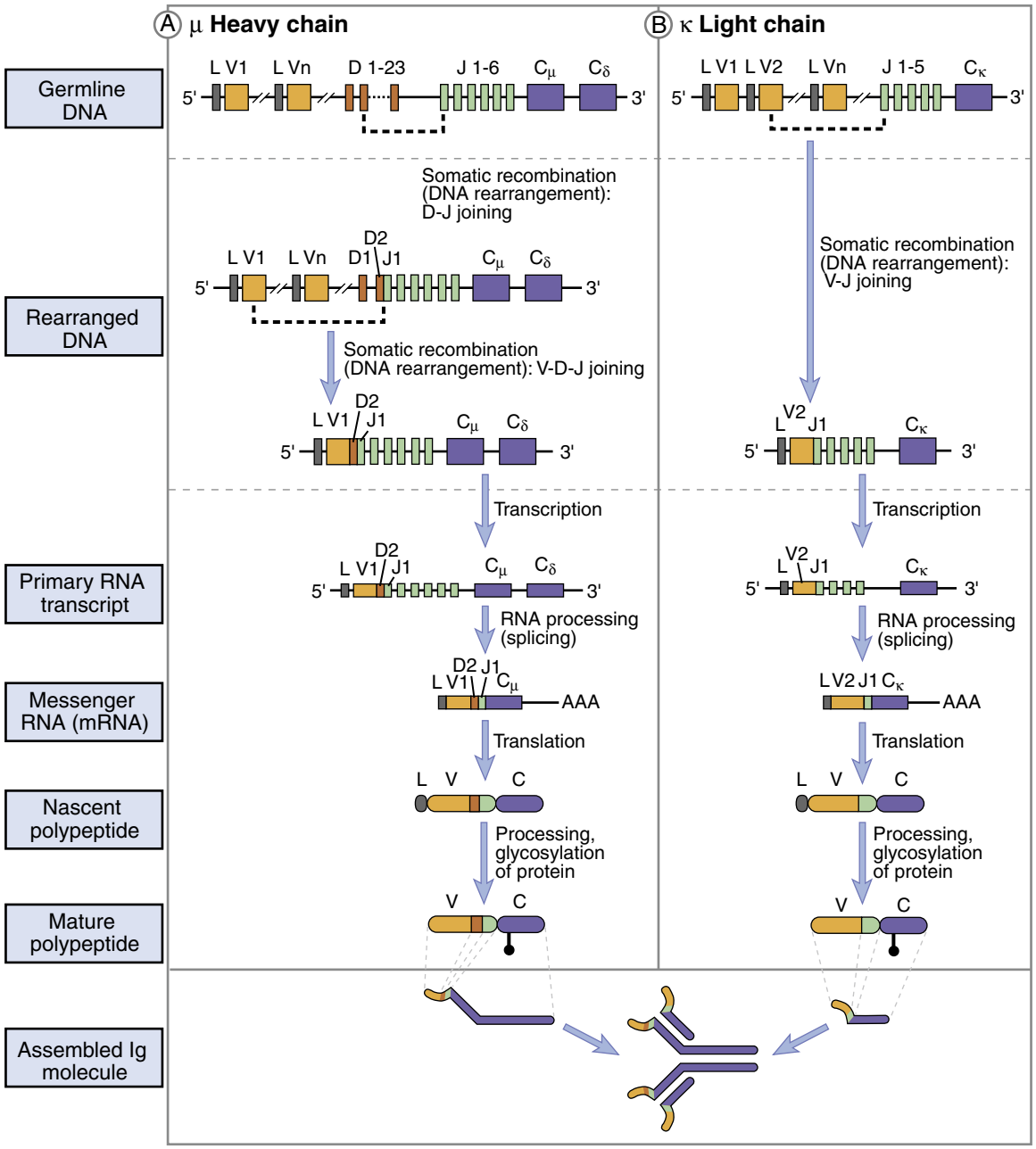


Fig. 9.13 Immunoglobulin *(Ig)* gene rearrangement to produce IgM and IgD (A) heavy-chain sequences and (B) light-chain sequences. The germline immunoglobulin gene contains multiple V, D, and J genes that recombine and delete intervening sequences and juxtaposes the new variable region sequences to the μ-δ heavy-chain sequences during the development of the B cell in the bone marrow. This produces a messenger RNA (mRNA) that can be processed into mRNA for either IgM or IgD. Protein synthesis and assembly of the subsequent heavy- and light-chain proteins produces the immunoglobulins.

variable region to the γ_1 C gene segment. **Class switching changes the function of the antibody molecule (Fc region) but does not change its specificity (variable region).**

The final steps in B-cell differentiation to memory cells or plasma cells do not change the antibody gene. **Memory cells** are long-lived, antigen-responsive B cells expressing the CD45RO surface marker. Memory cells can be activated in response to antigen later in life to divide and then produce its specific antibody. **Plasma cells** are terminally differentiated B cells with a small nucleus but a large cytoplasm filled with ER. Plasma cells are antibody factories with a long but finite lifetime.

Antibody Response

T-independent antigens, such as flagellin and capsular polysaccharide, have repetitive structures that can cross-link sufficient numbers of surface antibody to stimulate growth of the antigen-specific B-1 lymphocytes

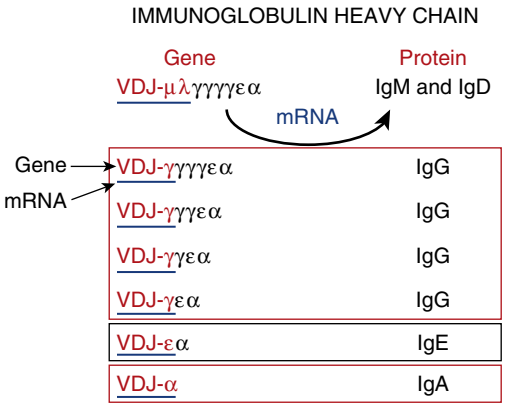


Fig. 9.14 Immunoglobulin class switching. T-cell help induces differentiation of the B cell and promotes genetic recombination, somatic mutation, and immunoglobulin class switching. Switch regions in front of the constant-region genes (including IgG and IgA subclasses) allow attachment of the preformed VDJ region to other heavy-chain constant-region genes, genetically removing the μ, δ, and other intervening genes. This produces an immunoglobulin gene with the same VDJ region (except for somatic mutation) and the desired antigen specificity but with different Fc-determined functions.

and IgM- and IgD-producing B cells by cross-linking surface immunoglobulin. The B cells use membrane bound antibody as an antigen receptor to trigger activation of the B cell through its immunoglobulin-associated signal transduction receptors, Ig-**α** (CD79a) and Ig-**β** (CD79b). The surface antibody has the same antigen specificity as the secreted antibody of that cell. A cascade of protein tyrosine kinases, PLC, and calcium fluxes activate transcription and cell growth to mediate the activation signal. Other surface molecules, including the CR2 (CD21) complement (C3d) receptor, amplify the activation signal.

T-dependent antibodies are generated with the help provided by CD4 T cells (Fig. 9.15). Antigen bound to surface immunoglobulin on the B cell is internalized and processed into peptides, and these peptides are then presented on MHC II molecules to those CD4 T cells that have the appropriate TCR. This activates the T cell to produce cytokines and express CD40L, which then binds to CD40 on the B cell. The combination of these signals stimulates the activation and growth of the B cell (Animation 8).

The B cells that best recognize the different epitopes of the antigen are selected to increase in number by **somatic mutation, affinity maturation,** and **clonal expansion.** These processes, isotype switching, and memory and plasma cell generation occur primarily within the germinal centers of the lymph nodes (Fig. 9.16). Germinal centers develop several days after an antigen challenge. Activated B cells enter the dark zone of the germinal center and while they proliferate they express enzymes that promote isotype switching and mutation within the immunoglobulin gene that cause somatic mutations. Mutations trigger mechanisms within most cells that promote apoptosis. The B cells proceed to the light zone of the germinal center in which they encounter **follicular DCs and Tfh.** The follicular DCs act like bulletin boards to display multiple units of the antigen to the surface antibody, and those B cells that bind efficiently to the displayed antigen receive a survival signal from the Tfh, whereas the other B cells die by apoptosis (Animation 7). The surviving B cells may recycle through the dark zone to repeat the cycle or receive signals for differentiation into memory cells or plasma cells and leave the lymph node.

With an increase in the number of plasma cell antibody factories making the relevant antibody, the strength and specificity of the antibody response is thus increased. During an immune response, antibodies are made against different epitopes of the foreign object, protein, or infectious agent. *Specific antibody is a mixture of many different immunoglobulin molecules made by many different B cells* **(polyclonal antibody),** with each immunoglobulin molecule differing in the epitope it recognizes and the strength of the interaction. Antibody molecules that recognize the same antigen may bind with different strengths (**affinity,** monovalent binding to an epitope; **avidity,** multivalent binding of antibody to antigen).

Monoclonal antibodies are identical antibodies produced by a single clone of cells or by myelomas (cancers of plasma cells) or hybridomas. Hybridomas are cloned, laboratory-derived cells obtained by the fusion of antibody-producing cells and a myeloma cell. In 1975, Kohler and Millstein developed the technique for producing monoclonal antibodies from B-cell hybridomas. The hybridoma is immortal and produces a single (monoclonal) antibody. This technique has revolutionized the study of immunology because it allows selection (cloning) of individual antibody-producing cells and their development into cellular factories for production of large quantities of that antibody. Genetic approaches also are used to generate monoclonal antibodies. Monoclonal antibodies are produced commercially as diagnostic reagents and for therapeutic purposes.

TIME COURSE OF THE ANTIBODY RESPONSE

The primary antibody response is characterized by the initial production of IgM. IgM antibodies appear in the blood within 3 days to 2 weeks after exposure to a novel immunogen. This is the only type of antibody elicited toward carbohydrates (bacterial capsule). Production of IgG, IgA, or IgE to protein containing antigens requires development of a sufficient helper T-cell response to promote the class switch and requires approximately 8 days. The predominant serum antibody will be IgG (Fig. 9.17). The first antibodies produced react with residual antigen and therefore are rapidly cleared. After the initial lag phase, however, the antibody titer increases logarithmically to reach a plateau. IgG has a half-life in blood of 23 days, and long-lived plasma cells may continue to produce the antibody for years, depending on the strength and nature of the challenge.

Reexposure to an immunogen, which is a **secondary response,** induces a heightened antibody response (also termed **anamnestic response**). Activation of preformed memory cells yields a much more rapid production of antibody, which lasts longer and reaches a higher titer. The antibodies in a secondary response are principally of the IgG class.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

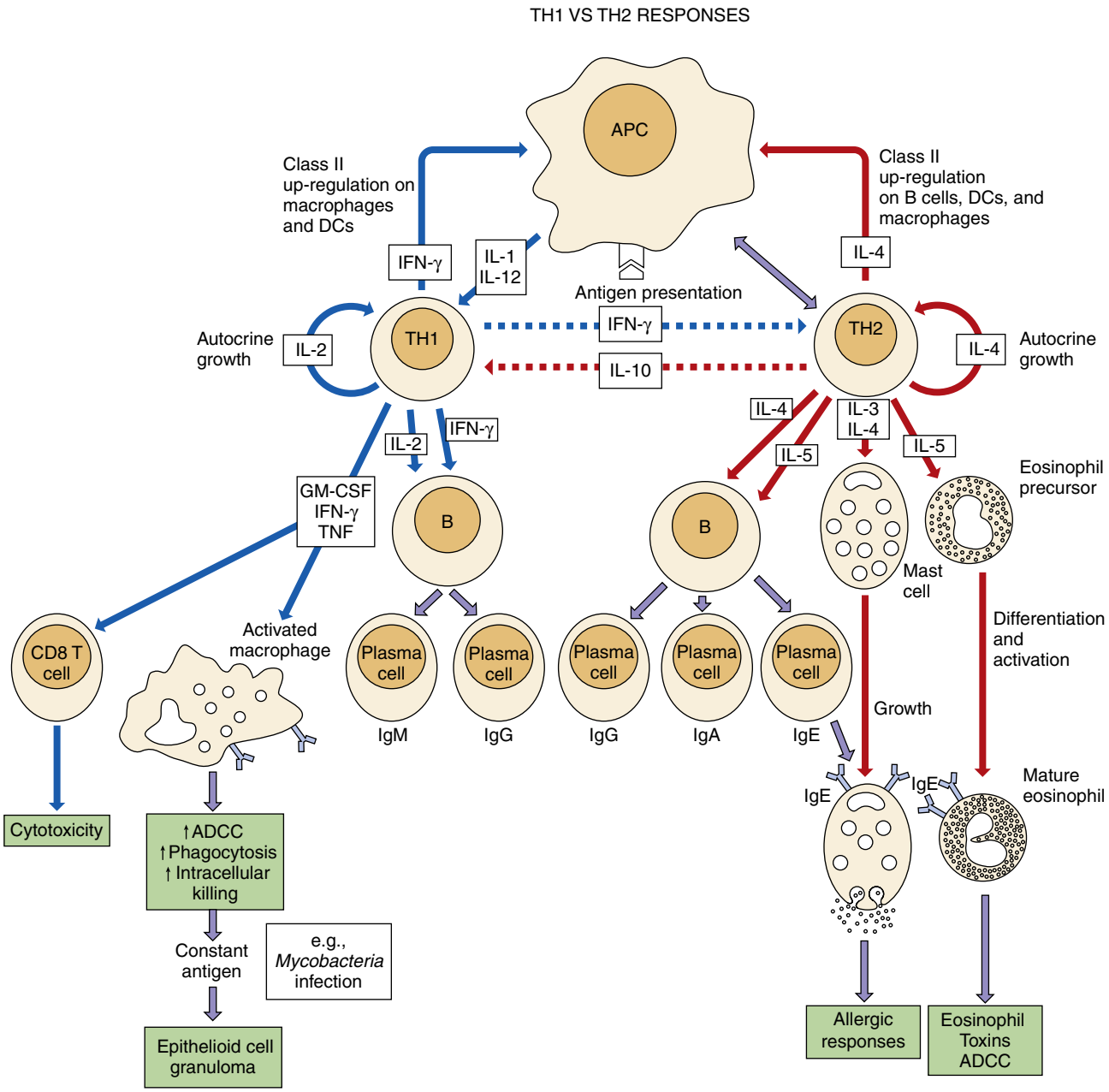


Fig. 9.15 T-cell help determines the nature of the immune response. Receptor-ligand interactions between T cells and B cells and cytokines associated with TH1 or TH2 determine the subsequent response. TH1 responses are initiated by interleukin *(IL)*-12 and delivered by interferon-γ *(IFN-γ)* and IL-2 to promote cell-mediated and immunoglobulin *(Ig)*G production *(solid blue lines)* and inhibit TH2 responses *(dotted blue lines)*. IL-4 and IL-5 from TH2 cells promote humoral responses *(solid red lines)*, and IL-4 and IL-10 inhibit TH1 responses *(dotted red lines)*. Mucosal epithelium promotes secretory IgA production. Colored boxes denote end results. ↑, Increase; ↓, decrease; *ADCC*, antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity; *APC*, antigen-presenting cell; *CTL*, cytotoxic T lymphocyte; *DCs*, dendritic cells; *DTH*, delayed type hypersensitivity; *GM-CSF*, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *TNF*, tumor necrosis factor.

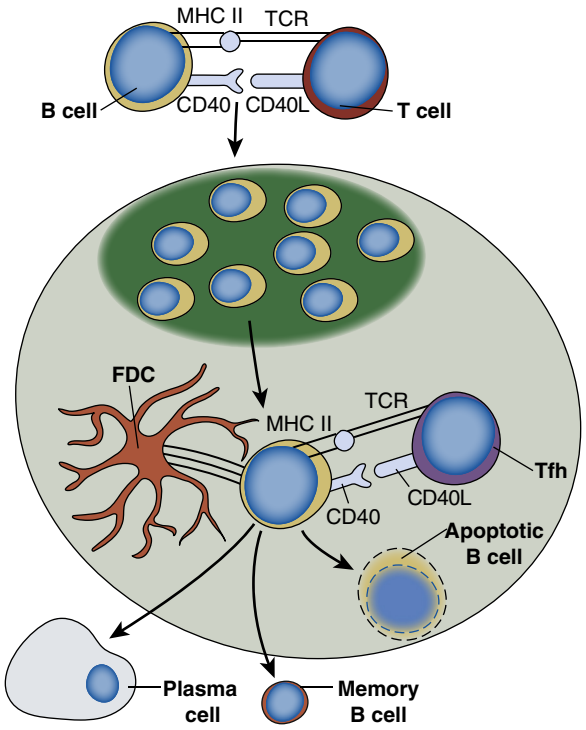


Fig. 9.16 Somatic mutation and clonal selection in the germinal centers of lymph nodes. B cells activated by CD4 T cells enter the dark zone of the germinal center, proliferate, and undergo mutation of the immunoglobulin genes and isotope switching. The mutations trigger apoptosis. The B cells proceed to the light zone of the germinal center in which follicular dendritic cells *(FDC)* act like bulletin boards to display multiple units of the antigen to surface antibody on B cells. B cells with surface immunoglobulin that bind tightly to antigen and present peptides recognized by follicular helper cells *(Tfh)* receive a survival signal from the Tfh while the other B cells die by apoptosis. The surviving B cells may recycle through the dark zone to repeat the cycle or receive signals for differentiation into memory cells or plasma cells and leave the lymph node. *MHC,* Major histocompatibility complex; *TCR,* T-cell receptor.

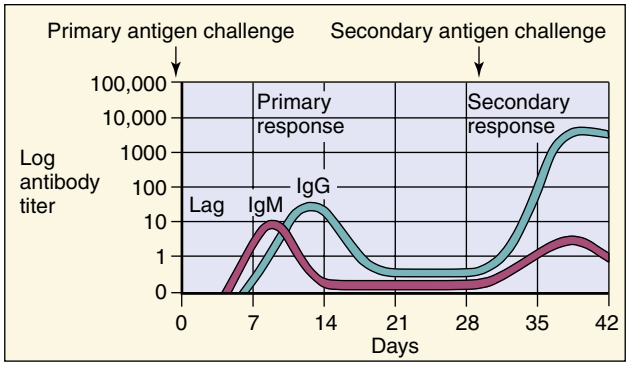


Fig. 9.17 Time course of immune responses. The primary response occurs after a lag period. The immunoglobulin *(Ig)*M response is the earliest response. The secondary immune response (anamnestic response) progresses faster, reaches a higher titer, lasts longer, and consists predominantly of IgG.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2018. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Goering, R., Dockrell, H., Zuckerman, M., Chiodini, P.L., 2019. Mims' Medical Microbiology and Immunology, sixth ed. Elsevier, London.

Kumar, V., Abbas, A.K., Aster, J.C., 2015. Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Murphy, K., Weaver, C., 2016. Janeway's Immunobiology, ninth ed. Garland Science, New York.

Punt, J., Stranford, S.A., Jones, P.P., Owen, J.A., 2019. Kuby Immunology, eight ed. WH Freeman, New York.

Rich, R.R., et al., 2019. Clinical Immunology Principles and Practice, fifth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2005. Are microbial symptoms "self-inflicted"? The consequences of immunopathology. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 13, 306–310.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Vaccines make good immune theater: immunization as described in a three-act play. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract 14, 35–45.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2017. Dealing with garbage is the immune system's main job. MOJ Immunol. 5(6), 00174. https://doi.org/10.15406/moji.2017.05.00174. http://medcraveonline.com/MOJI/MOJI-05-00174.pdf.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2018. Immune monitoring of the body's borders. AIMS Allergy and Immunol. 2(3), 148–164. https://doi.org/10.3934/Allergy.2018.3.148. http://www.aimspress.com/article/10.3934/Allergy.2018.3.148.

Questions

What is wrong with each of the following statements, and why?

1. The laboratory tested a baby for IgM maternal antibodies.

2. An investigator attempted to use fluorescent-labeled $F(ab')_2$ fragments to locate class II MHC molecules on the cell surface of APCs but did not want to activate the cells or promote the "capping" that would occur with cross-linking (binding two molecules together) of these cell-surface molecules.

3. A patient is diagnosed as having been infected with a new and specific strain of influenza A (A/Bangkok/1/79/H3N2) on the basis of the presence of antiinfluenza IgG in serum taken from the patient at the initial visit (within 2 days of symptoms).

4. A patient was considered to be at higher risk of bacterial infection because of the inability to activate the complement system because of a T-cell deficiency that precluded the ability to promote class switching of B cells.

5. Analysis of immunoglobulin genes from B cells taken from the patient described in question 4 did not contain recombined VDJ variable-region gene sequences.

6. A patient was considered to have a B-cell deficiency because serum levels of IgE and IgD were undetectable despite proper concentrations of IgG and IgM.

Animation 2 Induction of tolerance
Animation 3 Steps in maturation of lymphocytes
Animation 4 Capture and presentation of protein antigens by DCs
Animation 5 Induction and effector phases of CMI
Animation 6 Mediated immune reactions
Animation 7 Clonal selection
Animation 8 Sequence of events in T-cell dependent antibody responses

10 Immune Responses to Infectious Agents

Animations for this chapter are available on Student Consult.com.

The previous chapters in this section introduced the different immunologic actors and their characteristics. This chapter describes the different roles they play in host protection from infection, their interactions, and the immunopathogenic consequences that may arise as a result of the response (Box 10.1).

Most infections are controlled by innate responses before immune responses can be initiated, but immune responses are necessary to resolve the more troublesome infections. Innate and immune responses are also important for regulating the constituents and restricting normal flora to their niche in the body and restricting virulent species. The importance of each of the components of the host response differs for different types of infectious agents (Table 10.1), and their importance becomes obvious when it is genetically deficient or diminished by chemotherapy, disease, or infection (e.g., acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]).

Human beings have four basic lines of protection against inappropriate microbial infection:

1. **Natural barriers** such as skin, mucus, ciliated epithelium, gastric acid, and bile restrict entry of the agent.
2. **Competition** with normal flora.
3. **Innate antigen-nonspecific immune defenses** such as fever, antimicrobial peptides, interferon, complement, neutrophils, macrophages, dendritic cells (DCs), innate lymphoid cells (including natural killer [NK] cells), and innate T cells (mucosal-associated invariant T cell [MAIT], NK T cell [NKT], **γδ** T cells) and B-1 B cells provide continuous or rapid local responses at body surfaces and at the infection site to restrict the growth and spread of the agent.
4. **Adaptive antigen-specific immune responses** such as antibody and T cells reinforce the innate protections; specifically they target, attack, and eliminate the invaders that succeed in passing the first two defenses, as well as the infected cells; and they remember the pathogen for future challenges.

Symptoms and disease occur when barrier functions and innate responses are insufficient to keep normal flora within its niche or control other infections. Infections can grow, spread, and cause damage during the time period required to initiate a new antigen-specific immune response. *The extent of the disease is determined by a combination of the microbial and immunopathogenesis initiated by the infection.* The more extensive and established the infection, the more immunopathogenesis will occur. Immune memory elicited by prior infection or vaccination can be activated quickly enough to control most infections before symptoms occur.

Antibacterial Responses

Fig. 10.1 illustrates the progression of protective responses to a bacterial challenge. Protection is initiated by activation of local innate and inflammatory responses and progresses to system-wide acute-phase and antigen-specific responses. *The most important antibacterial host responses are the barrier functions, antimicrobial peptides, phagocytic killing by neutrophils and macrophages, and antitoxin and opsonizing antibodies.* Complement and antibody facilitate the uptake of microbes (opsonization) by phagocytes, and TH17 and TH1 CD4 T-cell responses enhance their function. A summary of antibacterial responses is presented in Box 10.2.

INITIATION OF THE RESPONSE

Many different responses act together during the early stages of a bacterial infection triggered by the surface structures and metabolites of the bacteria and the stress and damage occurring to the tissue. During infection of skin or mucous membranes, the epithelial cells, Langerhans cells (skin), or immature DCs (iDCs) and tissue macrophages respond to the small molecules (e.g., adenosine triphosphate [ATP], nuclear proteins, cytosolic proteins) released by cell damage with **damage-associated molecular pattern (DAMP) receptors**. Bacterial cell wall molecules (teichoic acid, lipoteichoic acid, and peptidoglycan fragments of gram-positive bacteria and lipid A of lipopolysaccharide [LPS] of gram-negative bacteria) bind and activate **pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP) receptors** (see Table 8.2 and Fig. 8.4). **Lipid A (endotoxin)** binds to TLR4 and other PAMP receptors and is a very strong activator of DCs, macrophages, B cells, and selected other cells (e.g., epithelial and endothelial cells). Innate lymphoid cells and natural T cells (NKT cells, MAIT and **γ δ** T cells) residing in tissue also respond, produce cytokines, and reinforce antimicrobial peptide production and cellular responses by producing interleukin (IL)-17, IL-22, and interferon (IFN)-**γ**. **γ δ T cells** in tissue sense phosphorylated amine metabolites from most bacteria. **NKT** cells respond to bacterial glycolipids presented on CD1 molecules by DCs, and **MAIT** cells respond to vitamin B derivatives produced by many bacteria. The natural T cells also respond to PAMPs.

B-1 B cells are also activated by the binding of the repetitive surface structures of bacteria to PAMP receptors and to their surface immunoglobulin. The cells proliferate and produce immunoglobulin (Ig)M. This response is especially important for capsular polysaccharides.

Antimicrobial peptides, including defensins, are released by activated epithelial cells, neutrophils, and other cells to protect skin and mucoepithelial surfaces. Their release is reinforced by IL-17 and IL-22 produced by natural T cells

BOX 10.1 Summary of the Immune Response

The innate and adaptive immune systems foster maintenance and repair; provide garbage collection, border protection, and policing; and have military-like responses to microbial invasion of the human body. The immunologic personnel can be distinguished by their outer structures, their uniforms, and tool belts, which also define their roles in the immune response. The borders of the body, especially the GI tract, are maintained and defended by teams of epithelial cells, neutrophils, monocyte-macrophage lineage cells, iDCs, and DCs; ILCs (including NK cells); natural T (NKT, MAIT, and γδ T) and B-1 lymphocytes; the T and B lymphocytes of the antigen-specific response; and other cells. These cells rebuild and provide surveillance and policing of the barriers. They communicate with each other with cytokines and by direct contact to promote the health of the epithelial barrier, and with production of antimicrobial peptides to control the adjacent microbial population while preventing unnecessary inflammatory responses. Tissue resident macrophages provide garbage service by eating up, degrading, and recycling dead cells, degraded proteins, and other materials. They also produce cytokines that support growth, angiogenesis, and healing, when needed. ILCs, NKT, MAIT, γδ T and B-1 cells, and iDCs are sentries within the tissue using PAMPR sensors to become activated by microbial infections and then release early warning system cytokines (e.g., IL-1, TNF-α, IL-6) and chemokines to maintain protections or initiate rapid responses. Soluble sensors of the complement system become activated by microbial surfaces and immune complexes to release the "a" fragments (C3a, C4a, and C5a) to attract more neutrophils and monocytes to the site of infection. Monocytes mature into M1-activated macrophages in response to the IFN-γ produced by ILCs and T cells. Neutrophils and the activated M1 macrophages act directly to kill bacteria and fungi. In response to viruses, most cells, and especially pDCs, release a type I interferon warning system that limits virus replication, activates NK cells, and facilitates the development of subsequent T-cell responses.

After tasting the local environment by pinocytosis and phagocytosis and on activation, iDCs mature and progress to the lymph node to recruit antigen-specific military assistance. The DC is the only APC that can command a naive T cell to initiate a new immune response. The mature DCs display stimulatory receptors and antigenic peptides from the microbe on MHC molecules on its surface and releases cytokines to initiate the appropriate T-cell response. A regiment of TH17 or TH1 cells may be generated to mobilize and reinforce local-site inflammatory responses or TH2 helper/support may be activated to promote systemic humoral responses. The T-cell responses are defined by the cytokines that they produce. Regulation and control is provided by Treg and Tr1 cells. Macrophages, DCs, and B cells refine and strengthen the direction of the response as APCs. The antibody produced by B cells and plasma cells block pathogenic microbial functions and facilitate their clearance. B cells are also powerful specialists in presentation of the epitopes from a single antigen to reinforce antigen-specific CD4 T cell commands. These targeted weapons are necessary for microbes that evade or overpower the innate protections but oftentimes cause peripheral damage and disruption termed disease.

As the response matures, T cells and B cells increase in number and terminally differentiate into effector and plasma cells to deliver antigen-specific cellular and antibody immune responses or maintain a low profile and become memory cells. Memory cells can mobilize a response more quickly and efficiently to a future challenge. Once the challenge has been controlled, the excess troops of B and T cells die off and the status quo is renewed.

APC, Antigen-presenting cell; *DC,* dendritic cell; *GI,* gastrointestinal; *iDC,* immature dendritic cells; *IFN,* interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *ILC,* innate lymphoid cells; *MAIT,* mucosal-associated invariant T cell; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex; *NK,* natural killer (cell); *NKT,* natural killer T (cell); *PAMPR,* pathogen-associated molecular pattern receptor; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor; *Treg,* regulatory T cells.

TABLE 10.1 Importance of Antimicrobial Defenses for Infectious Agents

Host Defense	Bacteria	Intracellular Bacteria	Viruses	Fungi	Parasites
Complement	+++	–	–	–	+
Interferon-α/β, δ	–	+	++++	–	–
Neutrophils	++++	–	+	+++	++
Macrophages	+++	+++[a]	++	++	+
Natural killer cells	–	–	+++	–	–
CD4 TH1	+	++	+++	++	+
CD4 TH17	++	++	++	++++	+
CD8 cytotoxic T lymphocytes	–	++	++++	–	–
Antibody	+++	+	++	++	++ (IgE)[b]

[a]Activated M1 macrophages.
[b]Immunoglobulin E (IgE) and mast cells are especially important for worm infections.
TH, T helper (cell).

and TH17 responses. Antimicrobial peptides are very important for regulating the species of bacteria in the gastrointestinal tract. In addition, chelating peptides are released as part of the inflammatory response to sequester essential metal ions, such as iron and zinc, to limit microbial growth.

In addition, the bacterial cell surfaces activate the alternative or lectin pathways of complement that are present in interstitial fluids and serum. The **complement system** (see Chapter 8; Animation 1) is a very early and important antibacterial defense. The **alternative complement pathway (properdin)** is activated by cleavage and binding of C3 to bacterial surfaces. Binding of the **mannose-binding protein** to polysaccharides activates the **lectin complement pathway.** Later, when IgM or IgG is present, the **classical**

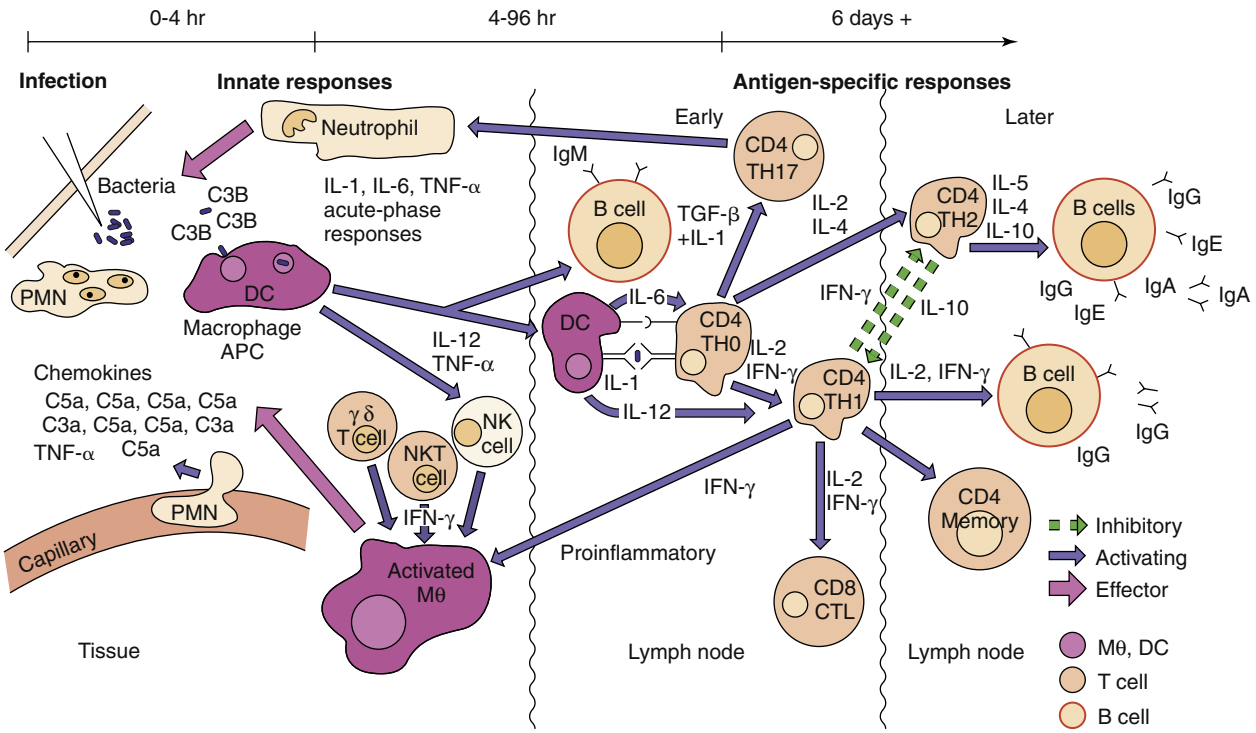


Fig. 10.1 Antibacterial responses to a splinter. The time course proceeds from local *(left)* to lymph node *(right)* and then returns as indicated at the top of the figure. First, innate antigen-nonspecific responses attract and promote polymorphonuclear neutrophil *(PMN)* and macrophage *(Mθ)* responses. Epithelial cells and other cells produce antimicrobial peptides (not shown). Dendritic cells *(DCs)* mature taking antigen to the lymph node to activate early immune responses *(TH17, TH1, IgM,* and *IgG)*. TH1 and TH17 cells mobilize to the site of infection to provide cytokine help. Later, when antigen reaches the lymph node through lymphatics, TH2 systemic antibody responses are developed. *APC,* Antigen-presenting cell; *CTL,* cytotoxic T lymphocyte; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *IFN-γ,* interferon-γ; *IL,* interleukin; *TGF-β,* transforming growth factor-β; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α.

complement pathway is activated. All three pathways converge to cleave C3 into C3a, C3b, and C3d and generate the C5 convertase to produce C5a. The membrane attack complex (MAC) can directly kill gram-negative bacteria and, to a much lesser extent, gram-positive bacteria (the thick peptidoglycan of gram-positive bacteria shields them from the components). *Neisseria* are especially sensitive to complement lysis because of the truncated structure of lipooligosaccharide in the outer membrane. Complement facilitates elimination of all bacteria by producing:

1. **Chemotactic factors (C3a and C5a)** to attract neutrophils and macrophages to the site of infection;
2. **Anaphylatoxins (C5a, C3a, and to a lesser extent, C4a)** to stimulate mast cell release of histamine, increasing vascular permeability and allowing access to the infection site;
3. **Opsonins (C3b),** which bind to bacteria and promote their phagocytosis; and
4. **B-cell activator (C3d)** to enhance antibody production.

Binding of PAMPs to their receptors leads to activation of the inflammasome in epithelial and other cells to promote cytokine production (including the **acute-phase cytokines IL-1, IL-6, and tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-α**), protective responses, and maturation of DCs. The inflammasome promotes the cleavage and activation of precursors of IL-1β and IL-18 to initiate local inflammation (see Fig. 8.5).

IL-1 and TNF-α elicit a local inflammatory response by stimulating changes in the tissue, activating mast cells to produce histamine, and promoting fluid leakage by facilitating the attraction and diapedesis of neutrophils and macrophages to the site, activating these cells, and also activating systemic responses.

IL-1 and TNF-α are endogenous pyrogens, which induce fever and the **acute-phase response.** The acute-phase response can also be triggered by inflammation, tissue injury, prostaglandin E_2, and interferons generated during infection. The acute-phase response promotes changes that support host defenses and include fever, anorexia, sleepiness, metabolic changes, and production of proteins. Acute-phase proteins that are produced and released into the serum include C-reactive protein, complement components, coagulation proteins, LPS-binding proteins, transport proteins, protease inhibitors, and adherence proteins. The **C-reactive protein** complexes with phosphocholine on the surface of numerous bacteria and fungi and activates the complement pathway, facilitating removal of these organisms from the body through greater phagocytosis. The acute-phase proteins reinforce the innate defenses against infection.

These actions initiate **local acute inflammation**. Expansion of capillaries and increased blood flow brings more antimicrobial agents to the site. Increase in permeability and alteration of surface molecules of the microvasculature structure attracts and facilitates leukocyte entry and provides access for fluid and plasma proteins into the site of infection. Kinins and clotting factors induced by tissue damage (e.g., factor XII [Hageman factor], bradykinin, fibrinopeptides) also are involved in inflammation. These factors increase vascular permeability and are chemotactic for leukocytes. Products of arachidonic acid metabolism

BOX 10.2 Summary of Antibacterial Responses

Antimicrobial Peptides and Proteins

Defensins and other peptides disrupt membranes
Transferrin, lactoferrin, and other proteins sequester iron and other essential ions

Complement

Production of chemotactic and anaphylatoxin proteins (C3a, C5a)
Opsonization of bacteria (C3b)
Promotion of killing of gram-negative bacteria
Activation of B cells (C3d)

Neutrophils

Important antibacterial phagocytic cells
Killing by oxygen-dependent and oxygen-independent mechanisms

Activated Macrophages (M1)

Important antibacterial phagocytic cells
Killing by oxygen-dependent and oxygen-independent mechanisms
Production of TNF-α, IL-1, IL-6, IL-23, IL-12
Activation of acute-phase and inflammatory responses
Presentation of antigen to CD4 T cell

Dendritic Cells

Production of acute phase cytokines (TNF-α, IL-6, IL-1); IL-23; IL-12; IFN-α
Presentation of antigen to CD4 and CD8 T cells
Initiation of immune responses in naive T cells

T Cells

γ/δ T-cell and MAIT cell response to bacterial metabolites
NKT cell response to CD1 presentation of mycobacterial glycolipids
TH17 CD4 response activates neutrophils and epithelial cells
TH1 CD4 responses important for bacterial, especially intracellular, infections
TH2 CD4 response important for antibody protections

Antibody

Binding to surface structures of bacteria (fimbriae, lipoteichoic acid, capsule)
Blocking of attachment
Opsonization of bacteria for phagocytosis
Promotion of complement action
Promotion of clearance of bacteria
Neutralization of toxins and toxic enzymes

IFN-α, Interferon-α; *IL,* interleukin; *MAIT,* mucosal-associated invariant T cell; *NKT,* natural killer T (cell); *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α.

also affect inflammation. Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) and 5-lipooxygenase convert arachidonic acid to **prostaglandins and leukotrienes,** respectively, which can mediate essentially every aspect of acute inflammation. The course of inflammation can be followed by rapid increases in serum levels of acute-phase proteins, especially C-reactive protein (which can increase 1000-fold within 24 to 48 hours) and serum amyloid A. Although these processes are beneficial, inflammation also causes **pain, redness, heat, and swelling and promotes tissue damage.** Inflammatory damage is caused to some extent by complement and macrophages but mostly by neutrophils.

The iDCs, macrophages, and other cells of the macrophage lineage also respond to PAMPs by producing acute-phase cytokines, IL-23 and IL-12. IL-23 and IL-12 provide the bridge to antigen-specific T-cell responses and activate memory TH17 cells and TH1 responses, respectively.

PHAGOCYTIC RESPONSES

C3a, C5a, bacterial products (e.g., formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine [f-met-leu-phe]), and chemokines produced by epithelial cells, Langerhans cells, and other cells in skin and mucous epithelium are powerful chemoattractants for neutrophils, macrophages, and later in the response, lymphocytes. The chemokines and **TNF-α** cause the endothelial cells lining the capillaries (near the inflammation) and the leukocytes passing by to express complementary adhesion molecules (molecular "Velcro") to promote diapedesis (see Fig. 8.6; Animation 9). Polymorphonuclear neutrophils (PMNs) are the first cells to arrive at the site in response to infection; they are followed later by monocytes and macrophages. High demand causes recruitment of immature band forms of neutrophils from the bone marrow during infection. This is indicated by a "left shift" in the complete blood cell count. Neutrophils are recruited and activated by ILC3 cells and the TH17 response and macrophages, and DCs are activated by IFN-γ produced by ILC1 and NKT cells and the TH1 response.

Bacteria bind directly to the neutrophils and macrophages through receptors for bacterial carbohydrates (**lectins** [specific sugar-binding proteins]); fibronectin receptors (especially for *Staphylococcus aureus*); and via **receptors for opsonins** such as complement (C3b), C-reactive protein, mannose-binding protein, and the Fc portion of antibody (Animation 9). The microbes are internalized in a **phagocytic vacuole** that fuses with **primary lysosomes** (macrophages) or **granules** (PMNs) to allow inactivation and digestion of the vacuole contents (see Fig. 8.7 and Box 8.4).

The neutrophil kills the phagocytosed microbes by **oxygen-dependent killing** with hydrogen peroxide, superoxide ion, and hypochlorous ions and with **oxygen-independent killing** on fusion of the phagosome with azurophilic granules containing cationic proteins (e.g., cathepsin G) and specific granules containing lysozyme and lactoferrin. These proteins kill gram-negative bacteria by disrupting their cell membrane integrity, but they are far less effective against gram-positive bacteria, which are killed principally through the oxygen-dependent mechanism. **Nitric oxide** produced by neutrophils and activated macrophages has antimicrobial activity and is also a major second messenger molecule that enhances the inflammatory and other responses.

Neutrophils contribute to the inflammation in several ways. Prostaglandins and leukotrienes are released and increase vascular permeability, cause swelling (edema), and stimulate pain receptors. During phagocytosis, the granules may leak their contents to cause tissue damage. The neutrophils have short lives, and on death, neutrophils release a sticky deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) **neutrophil extracellular trap (NET**) and become **pus.**

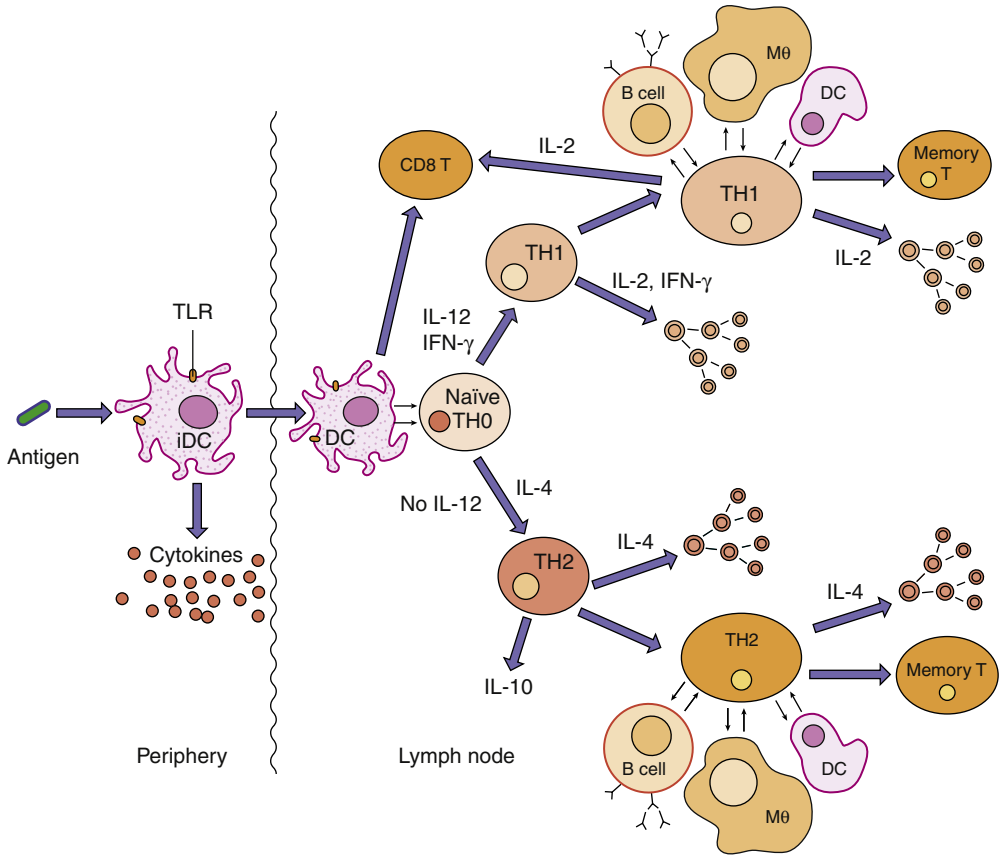


Fig. 10.2 Initiation and expansion of specific immune responses. Immature dendritic cells *(iDCs)* at the site of infection acquire microbial debris and become activated by Toll-like receptors *(TLRs)* and other pathogen pattern receptors binding their ligands. DCs produce cytokines, mature, and move to the lymph node. DCs present peptide antigen to naive T cells to initiate the antigen-specific and cytokine-directed response. During a secondary or memory response, B cells, macrophages, and DCs can present antigen to initiate the response. *IFN-γ,* Interferon-γ; *IL,* interleukin; *Mθ,* macrophage; *TH,* T helper (cell).

In contrast to neutrophils, macrophages have long lives, but the cells must be activated (*made angry*) and converted into M1 macrophages with IFN-**γ** to kill phagocytized microbes. Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), TNF-**α**, and lymphotoxin (TNF-**β**) maintain the antimicrobial action (*keep them aggravated*). **Splenic macrophages** are important for clearing bacteria, especially encapsulated bacteria, from blood. Asplenic (congenitally or surgically) individuals are highly susceptible to pneumonia, meningitis, and other manifestations of *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Neisseria meningitidis,* and other encapsulated bacteria and yeast.

ANTIGEN-SPECIFIC RESPONSE TO BACTERIAL CHALLENGE

On ingestion of bacteria and after stimulation of Toll-like receptors (TLRs) by bacterial components, Langerhans cells and iDCs become mature, cease to phagocytize, and move to the lymph nodes to process and deliver their internalized antigen for presentation to T cells (Fig. 10.2). Movement of the DC to the lymph node may take 1 to 3 days. DCs also insert dendrites into the lumen of the intestine to "check" the normal flora. Antigenic peptides (with >11 amino acids) produced from phagocytosed proteins (exogenous route) are bound to class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules and are presented by these antigen-presenting cells (APCs) to naive **CD4 TH0 T cells.** TH0 provides the first stage, which is a generic expansion of the immune cells needed to respond to the infection. The CD4 T cells are activated by a combination of (1) antigenic peptide in the cleft of the MHC II molecule with the T-cell antigen receptor (TCR) and with CD4, (2) co-stimulatory signals provided by sufficient numbers of interactions of B7 molecules on the DC with CD28 molecules on the T cells to override inhibitory CTLA4 signals, and (3) IL-6 and other cytokines produced by the DCs. The TH0 cells produce IL-2, IFN-**γ**, and IL-4. Simultaneously, bacterial molecules with repetitive structures (e.g., capsular polysaccharide) interact with B cells expressing surface IgM and IgD specific for the antigen and activate the cell to grow and produce IgM. LPS and also the C3d component of complement activate B cells and promote the specific IgM antibody responses. Swollen lymph nodes are an indication of lymphocyte growth in response to antigenic challenge.

The conversion of TH0 cells to TH17 and TH1 cells initiates expansion of the host response. IL-6 together with the omnipresent transforming growth factor (TGF)-**β** promote the development of **CD4 TH17 T cells** (see Animation 5). *The IL-6, an acute phase cytokine, provides a cry for help despite the calming influence of TGF-β to elicit a quick inflammatory cytokine yell by the CD4 TH17 T*

cells to the epithelial cells and neutrophils to activate inflammatory responses. IL23 activates memory TH17 cells and maintains the response. TH17 cells produce IL-17, IL22 and TNF-**α** to activate epithelial cells and neutrophils and also promote production of antimicrobial peptides. *TH17 responses are especially important for early antibacterial responses and antimycobacterial responses.* A balance of TH17 and regulatory T cells (Treg) responses are also important to regulate the populations of intestinal flora.

DCs producing IL-12 promote TH1 responses. **CD4 TH1 T cells** (1) promote and reinforce inflammatory responses (e.g., IFN-**γ** activation of macrophage) and growth of T and B cells (IL-2) to expand the immune response and (2) promote B cells to produce complement-binding antibodies (IgM and then IgG on class switching) and mature into plasma cells and memory cells. These responses are important for the early phases of an antibacterial defense. TH1 responses are also essential for combating intracellular bacterial infections, including mycobacteria, which are hidden from antibody. During intracellular bacterial or fungal infections, macrophages will continuously present antigen to CD4 TH1 T cells, which will produce IFN-**γ** and TNF-**α** and cause transformation of other macrophages into epithelioid cells and giant cells, which surround the infection and produce a **granuloma**. Granulomas wall off intracellular infections arising either because the microbe can evade antimicrobial responses (e.g., *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*), the macrophages are not activated and cannot kill them (normal alveolar macrophages), or a genetic defect prevents generation of antimicrobial reactive oxygen substances, as in chronic granulomatous disease. *CD8 T cells facilitate clearance of intracellular infections by producing cytokines but are not essential for antibacterial immunity*.

CD4 TH2 T-cell responses are the default T-cell response to antigen. These responses are also initiated by DCs and are sustained by the B-cell presentation of antigen. TH2 responses can occur at the same time as TH17 and TH1 responses when antigen is delivered in lymph fluid to lymph nodes other than the draining lymph node. The DCs act as sewage inspectors who promote a response to clear out excess and damaged protein. This is the same type of response that occurs to injection of a bolus of antigen for an inactivated vaccine. Binding of antigen to the cell-surface antibody on B cells activates the B cells and also promotes uptake, processing of the antigen, and presentation of antigenic peptides on class II MHC molecules to the CD4 TH2 cell. The TH2 cell produces IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-10, and IL-13, which enhance IgG production and, depending on other factors, the production of IgE or IgA. **CD4TFH** cells are a conduit for the TH1 or TH2 responses to promote somatic mutation, class switching, memory cell production, and terminal differentiation of B cells to plasma cell antibody factories in germinal centers.

$CD4^+CD25^+$ Tregs are generated in the thymus and prevent spurious activation of naive T cells, curtail both TH1 and TH2 responses, and promote development of some of the antigen-specific cells into memory T cells. Only DCs can override the Treg block to activate naive T cells. **Tr1 regulatory cells** are generated in the tissue, especially at mucosal surfaces, to control excessive and inflammatory local responses.

Antibodies are the primary protection against extracellular bacteria and toxins and promote the clearance and prevent the spread of bacteria in the blood (bacteremia). Antibody promotes complement activation, opsonizes bacteria for phagocytosis, blocks bacterial adhesion, and neutralizes (inactivates) exotoxins (e.g., tetanospasmin, botulinum toxin) and other cytotoxic proteins produced by bacteria (e.g., degradative enzymes). Vaccine immunization with inactivated exotoxins (toxoids) is the primary means of protection against the potentially lethal effects of exotoxins.

IgM antibodies are produced early in the antibacterial response. IgM bound to bacteria activates the classical complement cascade, promoting both the direct killing of gram-negative bacteria and the inflammatory responses. IgM is usually the only antibody produced against capsular polysaccharides and promotes opsonization of the bacteria with complement. Splenic macrophages depend on IgM bound to capsular polysaccharides to activate complement and opsonize the encapsulated bacteria so they can be recognized, phagocytized, and eliminated. The large size and limited transport mechanisms for IgM limits its ability to spread into tissue. IgM produced in response to polysaccharide vaccines (as for *S. pneumoniae*) can prevent bacteremia but not infection of the interstitium of the lung.

Approximately a week after IgM production is initiated, T-cell help promotes differentiation of the B cell and immunoglobulin class switching to produce IgG. **IgG** antibodies are the predominant serum antibody, especially on rechallenge. IgG antibodies fix complement and promote phagocytic uptake of the bacteria through Fc receptors on macrophages. **IgA** is the primary secretory antibody and is important for protecting mucosal membranes. Large amounts of secretory IgA are released to regulate the normal flora population, prevent adhesion of bacteria, and neutralize toxins at epithelial cell surfaces.

A primary antigen-specific response to bacterial infection takes at least 5 to 7 days, which allows considerable progression of a bacterial infection. On rechallenge to infection, long-lived plasma cells may still be producing antibody. Memory T cells can respond quickly to antigen presentation by DCs, macrophages, or B cells, not just DCs; memory B cells are present to respond quickly to antigen, and the secondary antibody response occurs within 2 to 3 days.

SKIN, INTESTINAL, AND MUCOSAL IMMUNITY

The skin, intestine, and mucous membranes are populated with bacteria on traversing the birth canal and soon thereafter. The immune response matures, and a balance develops between regulatory and inflammatory cells in response to this normal flora.

The intestinal flora is constantly interacting with and being regulated by the innate and immune systems of the gut-associated lymphoid tissue (see Fig. 7.5). Similarly, the immune response is shaped by its interaction with intestinal flora because regulatory cells limit the development of autoimmune responses and inflammation. A resident squad of immune cells works together within and adjacent to the epithelium of the intestine and in organized structures of the lymphoid follicles and Peyer patches. DCs, innate lymphoid cells, Treg, TH17, TH1, and other T and B cells work

together with the epithelial cells to monitor and control the bacteria within the gut. These cells produce antimicrobial peptides, and plasma cells secrete IgA into the gut to maintain a healthy mixture of bacteria. At the same time, Treg and Tr1 regulatory cells prevent the development of detrimental or excessive immune responses to the contents of the gut. Alterations in the microbial flora and its interaction with the innate and immune cells can disrupt the system and result in inflammatory bowel diseases. For example, absence or a mutation in the IL-23 receptor or NOD2 receptor for peptidoglycan enhances chances for certain types of Crohn disease.

In the skin, Langerhans cells are sentinel iDCs responsive to trauma and infection. Memory CD4 and CD8 T cells constantly cycle into the skin from the blood. In the respiratory tract, mucus traps, and cilia move the mucus and bacteria out of the lungs and antimicrobial peptides and secreted IgA control bacteria. Inflammatory responses are controlled by alveolar macrophages (M2 macrophages) to prevent tissue damage to normal flora. Similar to the gastrointestinal tract, DCs monitor the epithelium for normal and abnormal microbes.

BACTERIAL IMMUNOPATHOGENESIS

Activation of the inflammatory and acute-phase responses can initiate significant tissue and systemic damage and symptoms. Activation of macrophages and DCs in the liver, spleen, and blood by endotoxin can promote release of acute-phase cytokines into the blood, causing many of the symptoms of **sepsis,** including hemodynamic failure, shock, and death (see Cytokine Storm section in this chapter). Although IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-**α** promote protective responses to a local infection, these same responses can be life-threatening when activated by bloodstream or systemic infection. Increased blood flow and fluid leakage can lead to shock when it occurs throughout the body. Antibodies produced against bacterial antigens that share determinants with human proteins can initiate autoimmune tissue destruction (e.g., antibodies produced in poststreptococcal rheumatic fever). Nonspecific activation of CD4 T cells by **superantigens** (e.g., toxic shock syndrome toxin of *S. aureus*) promotes production of large amounts of cytokines and, eventually, the death of large numbers of T cells. The sudden massive release of cytokines ("cytokine storm") can cause shock and severe tissue damage (e.g., toxic shock syndrome) (see Cytokine Storm section in this chapter and Chapter 14).

BACTERIAL EVASION OF PROTECTIVE RESPONSES

The mechanisms used by bacteria to evade host-protective responses are discussed in Chapter 14 as virulence factors. These mechanisms include (1) inhibition of phagocytosis and intracellular killing in the phagocyte, (2) inactivation of complement function, (3) binding of the Fc portion of IgG and cleavage of IgA, (4) intracellular growth (avoidance of antibody), and (5) change in bacterial antigenic appearance. Some microorganisms, including but not limited to mycobacteria (also *Listeria* and *Brucella* species), survive and multiply within macrophages and use the macrophages as a protective reservoir or transport system to help spread the organisms throughout the body. However, cytokine-activated M1 macrophages can often kill the intracellular pathogens.

Antiviral Responses

HOST DEFENSES AGAINST VIRAL INFECTION

The immune response is the best and, in most cases, the only means of controlling a viral infection (Fig. 10.3 and Box 10.3). Unfortunately, it is also the source of pathogenesis for many viral diseases. Both humoral and cellular immune responses are important for antiviral immunity. **The ultimate goal of the immune response in a viral infection is to eliminate both the virus and the host cells harboring or replicating the virus.** Failure to resolve the infection may lead to persistent or chronic infection or death.

The course of the immune response and the nature of the immunopathogenesis of bacterial and viral infections are different. For bacteria, complement and the recruitment of neutrophils and macrophages are the initial response, and they rapidly drive the disease-associated inflammation. Antibody can control extracellular bacteria and their toxins. Interferons, NK cells, CD4 TH1 responses, and CD8 cytotoxic killer T cells are more important for viral infections than for bacterial infections. Complement and neutrophils have limited roles in antiviral defense.

For viruses, type I interferons and other cytokines initiate the response and cause **prodrome symptoms** followed by antigen-specific immunity, tissue-specific disease, and resolution. As a result, the time course and nature of bacterial and viral disease are very different.

INNATE DEFENSES

The innate defenses are oftentimes sufficient to control a viral infection, preventing the occurrence of symptoms. Body temperature, fever, interferons, other cytokines, the mononuclear phagocyte system, and NK cells provide a local rapid response to viral infection and also activate the specific immune defenses.

Body temperature and fever can limit replication or destabilize some viruses. Many viruses are less stable (e.g., herpes simplex virus) or cannot replicate (rhinoviruses) at 37° C or higher. The live influenza vaccine (LAIV) is attenuated because it cannot replicate above 25° C.

Viral infection can induce the release of cytokines (e.g., TNF, IL-1) and type 1 and 3 interferon from infected cells, macrophages, and especially plasmacytoid DCs (pDCs). Viral ribonucleic acid (RNA) (especially double-stranded [ds] RNA), DNA, and some viral glycoproteins are potent activators of TLRs and other pathogen pattern receptors to initiate these interferon and cytokine responses. Interferons and other cytokines trigger early local and systemic responses. Induction of fever and stimulation of the immune system are two of these systemic effects.

Cells of the **dendritic and mononuclear phagocyte system** phagocytose the viral and cell debris from virally infected cells. Macrophages in the liver (Kupffer cells) and

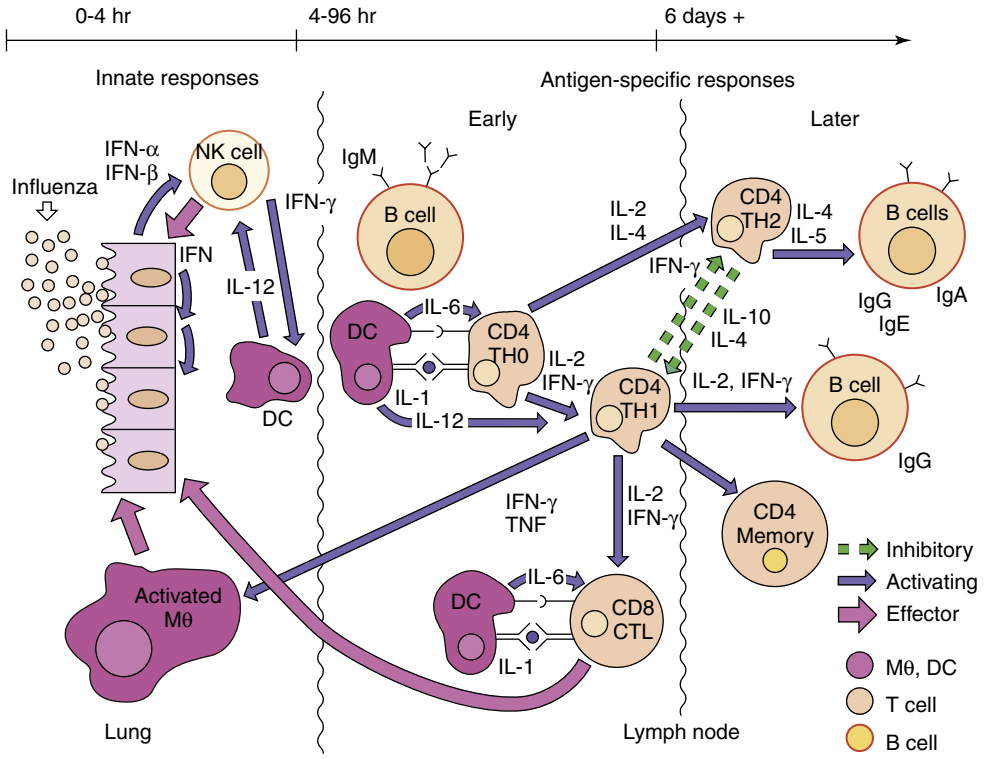


Fig. 10.3 Antiviral responses. The time course proceeds from local *(left)* to lymph node *(right)* and then returns to the infected site. The response to a virus (e.g., influenza virus) initiates with type 1 interferon production and action and natural killer *(NK)* cells. Dendritic cell *(DC)* initiation of CD4 and CD8 T cells is followed by activation of antigen-specific immunity similar to the antibacterial response, except that CD8 cytotoxic T lymphocytes *(CTLs)* are important antiviral responses. *IFN,* Interferon; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *IL,* interleukin; *Mθ,* macrophage; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor.

spleen rapidly filter many viruses from the blood. Antibody and complement bound to a virus facilitate its uptake and clearance by macrophages (opsonization). DCs and macrophages also present antigen to T cells and release IL-1, IL-12, and IFN-**α** to expand the innate and initiate the antigen-specific immune responses. The pDCs in the blood produce large amounts of IFN-**α** and other cytokines in response to a viremia.

NK cells are activated by IFN-**α**, IFN-**β**, and IL-12 to kill virally infected cells. Viral infection may reduce the expression of MHC antigens to remove inhibitory signals or may alter the carbohydrates on cell-surface proteins to provide cytolytic signals to the NK cell.

INTERFERON

Interferon was first described by Isaacs and Lindemann as a very potent factor that "interferes with" the replication of many different viruses. Interferon is the body's first active defense against a viral infection and acts like an "early warning system." In addition to activating a target cell antiviral defense to block viral replication, interferons activate the immune response and enhance T-cell recognition of the infected cell. Interferon is a very important defense against infection, but it also triggers systemic symptoms associated with many viral infections, such as malaise, myalgia, chills, and fever (nonspecific flulike symptoms), especially during viremia. Type I interferon is also a factor in causing systemic lupus erythematosus.

Interferons comprise a family of proteins that can be subdivided according to several properties, including size, stability, cell of origin, and mode of action (Table 10.2). **IFN-α** and **IFN-β** are type I interferons that share many properties, including structural homology and mode of action. B cells, epithelial cells, monocytes, macrophages, and iDCs make **IFN-α.** The pDCs in blood produce large amounts in response to viremia. Fibroblasts and other cells make **IFN-β** in response to viral infection and other stimuli. **IFN-λ** is a type III interferon with activity similar to **IFN-α** and is especially important for antiinfluenza responses. IFN-lambda (gr) is produced at epithelial and endothelial Barriers and promotes antiviral action and healing. **IFN-γ** is a type II interferon, which is a cytokine produced by activated T and ILC1 cells that occurs later in the infection. Although IFN-**γ** inhibits viral replication, its structure and mode of action differ from those of the other interferons. IFN-**γ** is also known as the **macrophage activation factor** and is the defining component of the TH1 response.

*The best inducer of IFN-**α** and IFN-**β** production is* **dsRNA,** *produced as the replicative intermediates of RNA viruses* or from the interaction of sense/antisense messenger RNAs (mRNAs) for some DNA viruses (Box 10.4). One dsRNA molecule per cell is sufficient to induce production of interferon. IFN-**α**, IFN-**β**, and IFN-**λ** can be induced and released within hours of infection (Fig. 10.4). Interaction of some enveloped viruses (e.g., herpes simplex virus and human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]) with pDCs can promote production of IFN-**α**. Alternatively, inhibition of protein synthesis in a virally infected cell can decrease production of a repressor protein of the interferon gene, allowing production of interferon. Nonviral interferon inducers include:

1. Intracellular microorganisms (e.g., mycobacteria, fungi, protozoa)

BOX 10.3 Summary of Antiviral Responses

Interferon

Induced by double-stranded RNA, inhibition of cellular protein synthesis, or enveloped virus
Initiates the antiviral state in surrounding cells
Antiviral state blocks viral replication on infection
Activates NK cells and systemic antiviral responses

NK Cells

Activated by IFN-α and IL-12
Produce IFN-γ, which activates macrophages and DCs
Target and kill virus-infected cells (especially enveloped viruses)

Macrophages and DCs

Macrophages filter viral particles from blood
Macrophages inactivate opsonized virus particles
Immature and plasmacytoid DCs produce IFN-α and other cytokines
DCs initiate and determine the nature of the CD4 and CD8 T-cell response
DCs and macrophages present antigen to CD4 and CD8 T cells

T Cells

Essential for controlling enveloped and noncytolytic viral infections
Recognize viral peptides presented by MHC molecules on cell surfaces
Antigenic viral peptides (linear epitopes) can come from any viral protein (e.g., glycoproteins, nucleoproteins)
CD4 T cells promote and regulate antiviral responses
CD8 cytotoxic T cells respond to viral peptide: class I MHC protein complexes on the infected cell surface

Antibody

Neutralizes extracellular virus:
  It blocks viral attachment proteins (e.g., glycoproteins, capsid proteins)
  It destabilizes viral structure
Opsonizes virus for phagocytosis
Promotes killing of target cell by the complement cascade and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity
Resolves lytic viral infections
Blocks viremic spread to target tissue
IgM is an indicator of recent or current infection
IgG is a more effective antiviral than IgM
Secretory IgA is important for protecting mucosal surfaces
Resolution requires elimination of free virus (antibody) and the virus-producing cell (viral or immune cell–mediated lysis)

DC, Dendritic cell; *IFN,* interferon; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *IL,* interleukin; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex; *NK,* natural killer; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid.

TABLE 10.2 Basic Properties of Human Interferons

Property	IFN-α	IFN-β	IFN-γ
Previous designations	Leukocyte IFN type I	Fibroblast IFN type I	Immune IFN type II
Genes	>20	1	1
Molecular mass (Da)[a]	16,000-23,000	23,000	20,000-25,000
Acid stability	Stable[b]	Stable	Labile
Primary activator	Viruses	Viruses	Immune response
Principal source	Epithelium, leukocytes	Fibroblast	NK or T cell
Homology with human IFN-α	100%	30%-50%	<10%

[a]Molecular mass of monomeric form.
[b]Most subtypes but not all.
Da, Dalton; *IFN,* interferon; *NK,* natural killer (cell).
Data from White, D.O., 1984. Antiviral Chemotherapy, Interferons and Vaccines. Karger, Basel; Samuel, C.E., 1991. Antiviral actions of interferon. Interferon-regulated cellular proteins and their surprisingly selective antiviral activities. Virology 183, 1–11.

BOX 10.4 Type I Interferons

Induction

Double-stranded ribonucleic acid (during virus replication)
Viral inhibition of cellular protein synthesis
Enveloped virus interaction with plasmacytoid dendritic cell

Mechanism of Action

1. Initial infected cell or plasmacytoid dendritic cell releases interferon
2. Interferon binds to a specific cell-surface receptor on another cell
3. Interferon induces the "antiviral state":
   Synthesis of protein kinase R, 2′,5′-oligoadenylate synthetase, and ribonuclease L
4. Viral infection of the cell activates these enzymes
5. Protein synthesis is inhibited to block viral replication
   Degradation of mRNA (2′,5′-oligoadenylate synthase and RNAase L)
   Inhibition of ribosome assembly (protein kinase R)
6. Activation of innate and immune antiviral responses

Induction of flulike symptoms

2. Activators of certain TLRs or mitogens (e.g., endotoxins, phytohemagglutinin)
3. Double-stranded polynucleotides (e.g., poly I:C, poly dA:dT)
4. Synthetic polyanion polymers (e.g., polysulfates, polyphosphates, pyran)
5. Antibiotics (e.g., kanamycin, cycloheximide)
6. Low-molecular-weight synthetic compounds (e.g., tilorone, acridine dyes)

The interferon binds to specific receptors on the neighboring cells and induces the production of antiviral proteins and **the antiviral state.** However, these antiviral proteins are not activated until they bind dsRNA. The major antiviral effects of interferon are produced by two enzymes, **2′,5′-oligoadenylate synthetase** (an unusual polymerase) and **protein kinase R (PKR)** (Fig. 10.5), and for influenza, the **mx protein** is also important. Viral infection of the cell and production of dsRNA activate these enzymes and trigger a cascade of biochemical events that leads to (1) the inhibition of protein synthesis by PKR phosphorylation of an important ribosomal initiation factor (elongation initiation factor 2-α [eIF-2α]) and (2) the degradation of mRNA (preferentially, viral mRNA) by ribonuclease L, activated by 2′,5′-oligoadenosine. PKR and ribonuclease L become activated by multimerizing after binding to dsRNA or 2′,5′-oligoadenosine,

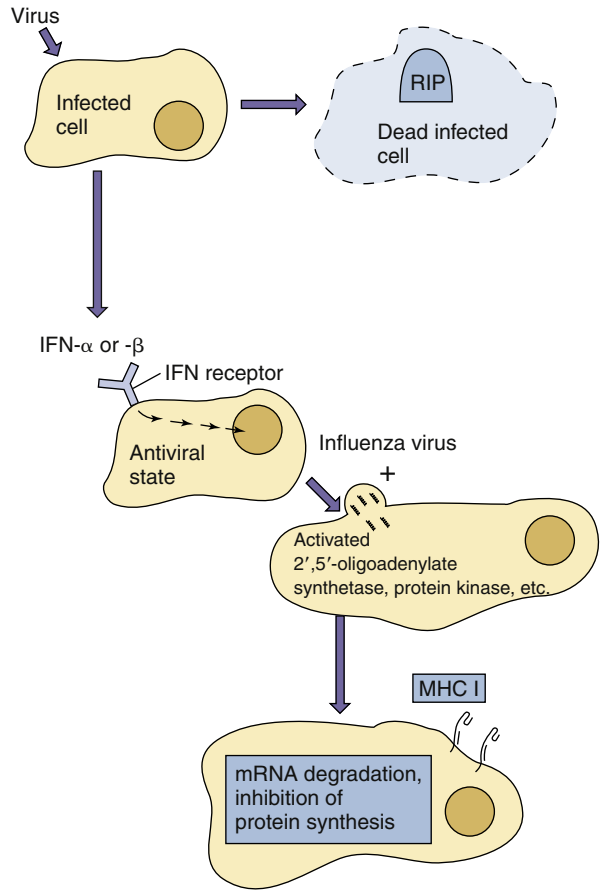


Fig. 10.4 Induction of the antiviral state by interferon *(IFN)*-**α** or IFN-**β**. Interferon is produced in response to viral infection but does not protect the initially infected cell. The interferon binds to a cell-surface receptor on other cells and induces production of antiviral enzymes (antiviral state). Viral infection and production of double-stranded RNA activates the antiviral activity, which results in protein synthesis inhibition. *MHC I,* Major histocompatibility antigen type I.

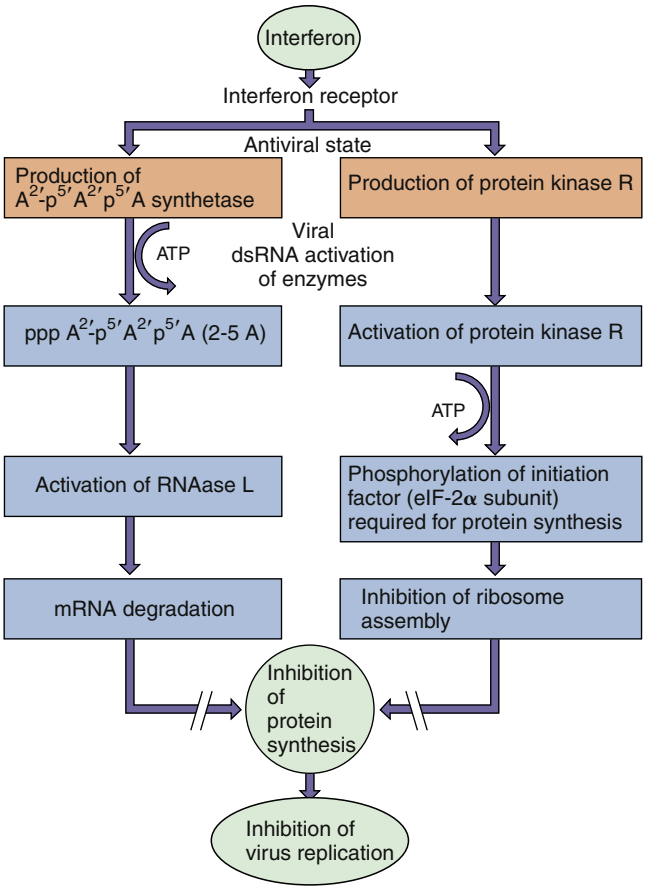


Fig. 10.5 Two major routes for interferon inhibition of viral protein synthesis. One mechanism involves induction of an unusual polymerase (2′,5′-oligoadenylate synthetase [2-5 A]) that is activated by double-stranded RNA *(dsRNA)*. The activated enzyme synthesizes an unusual adenine chain with a 2′,5′-phosphodiester linkage. The oligomer activates RNAase L, which degrades messenger RNA *(mRNA)*. The other mechanism involves induction of protein kinase R (PKR), which prevents assembly of the ribosome by phosphorylation of the elongation initiation factor *(eIF-2α)* to prevent initiation of protein synthesis from capped mRNAs. *ATP,* Adenosine triphosphate.

respectively, like beads on a string. *This process essentially puts the cellular protein synthesis factory "on strike" and prevents viral replication.* It must be stressed that interferon does not directly block viral replication. The antiviral state lasts for 2 to 3 days, which may be sufficient for the cell to degrade and eliminate the virus without being killed. Many viruses have mechanisms to evade or inhibit the interferon response.

Interferons stimulate cell-mediated immunity by activating effector cells and enhancing recognition of the virally infected target cell. Type I interferons activate NK cells and assist in activation of CD8 T cells. *IFN and activated NK cells provide an early, local, natural defense against viral infection.* IFN-**α** and IFN-**β** increase the expression of class I MHC antigens, enhancing the cell's ability to present antigen and making the cell a better target for cytotoxic T cells (CTLs).

Activation of macrophages by IFN-**γ** promotes production of more IFN-**α** and IFN-**β**, secretion of other biologic response modifiers, phagocytosis, production of reactive oxygen and nitrogen species, recruitment, and inflammatory responses. IFN-**γ** increases expression of class II MHC antigens on the macrophage to help promote antigen presentation to T cells.

Interferon also has widespread regulatory effects on cell growth, protein synthesis, and the immune response. All three interferon types block cell proliferation at appropriate doses.

Genetically engineered recombinant interferon is being used as an antiviral therapy for some viral infections (e.g., human papilloma and hepatitis C viruses). Effective treatment requires the use of the correct interferon subtype(s) and its prompt delivery at the appropriate concentration. IFN-**β** is used for treatment of multiple sclerosis. Interferons have also been used in clinical trials for the treatment of certain cancers. However, *interferon treatment causes flulike side effects such as chills, fever, and fatigue.*

ANTIGEN-SPECIFIC IMMUNITY

The goal of antigen-specific immunity is to eliminate free virus and virus-producing cells, but sometimes it can only control a chronic infection. Humoral immunity and cell-mediated immunity play different roles in resolving viral infections (i.e., eliminating the virus from the body). Humoral immunity (antibody) acts mainly on extracellular

virions, whereas cell-mediated immunity (T cells) is directed at the virus-producing cell.

HUMORAL IMMUNITY

Practically all viral proteins are foreign to the host and are immunogenic (i.e., capable of eliciting an antibody response). However, not all immunogens elicit protective immunity.

Antibody blocks the progression of disease through the **neutralization and opsonization** of cell-free virus. Protective antibody responses are generated toward the viral capsid proteins of naked viruses and the glycoproteins of enveloped viruses that interact with cell-surface receptors (viral attachment proteins). These antibodies can neutralize the virus by preventing viral interaction with target cells or by destabilizing the virus, initiating its degradation. Binding of antibody to these proteins also opsonizes the virus, promoting its uptake and clearance by macrophages. Antibody recognition of infected cells can also promote antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) by NK cells. Antibodies to other viral antigens may be useful for serologic analysis of the viral infection.

The major antiviral role of antibody is to prevent the spread of extracellular virus to other cells. Antibody is especially important in limiting the spread of the virus by **viremia,** preventing the virus from reaching the target tissue for disease production. *Antibody is most effective at resolving cytolytic infections.* For cytolytic infections, resolution occurs because the virus kills the cell factory and the antibody eliminates the extracellular virus.

T-CELL IMMUNITY

T-cell–mediated immunity promotes antibody and inflammatory responses (CD4 helper T cells) and kills infected cells (CTLs [primarily CD8 T cells]). The **CD4 TH1** response is generally more important than TH2 responses for controlling a viral infection, especially noncytolytic and enveloped viruses. **CD8** killer T cells promote apoptosis in infected cells after their TCR binds to a viral peptide presented by a class I MHC protein. The peptides expressed on class I MHC antigens are obtained from viral proteins synthesized within the infected cell (endogenous route). *The viral protein from which these peptides are derived may not elicit protective antibody* (e.g., intracellular or internal virion proteins, nuclear proteins, improperly folded or processed proteins [cell trash]). For example, the matrix and nucleoproteins (cytoplasmic) of the influenza virus and the infected cell protein 4 (ICP4) (nuclear) of herpes simplex virus are targets for CTLs but do not elicit protective antibody. An **immune synapse** formed by interactions of the TCR and MHC I and adhesion molecules creates a space into which **perforin,** a complement-like membrane pore former, and granzymes (degradative enzymes) are released to induce apoptosis in the target cell. Interaction of the Fas ligand protein on CD4 or CD8 T cells with the Fas protein on the target cell can also promote apoptosis. *CTLs kill infected cells and, as a result, eliminate the source of new virus.*

The CD8 T-cell response probably evolved as a defense against viral infection. Cell-mediated immunity is especially important for resolving infections by syncytia-forming viruses (e.g., measles, herpes simplex virus, varicella-zoster virus, HIV), which can spread from cell to cell without exposure to antibody, and by noncytolytic viruses (e.g., hepatitis A and measles viruses). CD8 T cells also interact with neurons to control, without killing, the recurrence of latent viruses (herpes simplex virus, varicella-zoster virus, and JC papillomaviruses).

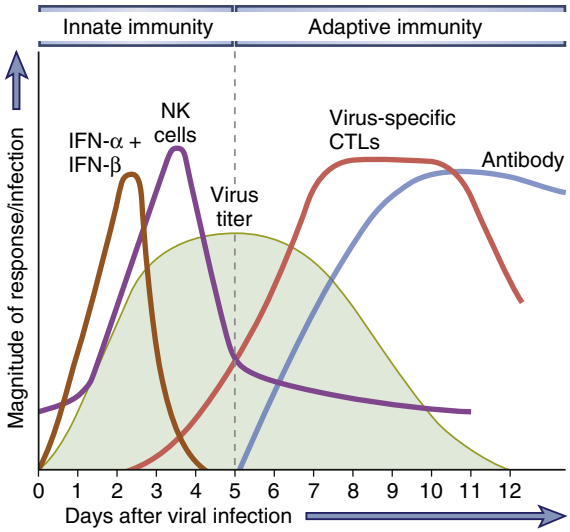


Fig. 10.6 Time course of antiviral immune responses. *CTL,* Cytotoxic T lymphocyte; *IFN-γ,* interferon-**γ.** (Modified from Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2015. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

IMMUNE RESPONSE TO VIRAL CHALLENGE

Primary Viral Challenge

The innate host responses are the earliest responses to viral challenge and are often sufficient to limit viral spread (Fig. 10.6; also see Fig. 10.3). The **type I interferons** produced in response to most viral infections initiate the protection of adjacent cells, enhance antigen presentation by increasing the expression of MHC antigens, and initiate the clearance of infected cells by activating NK cells and antigen-specific responses. Virus and viral components released from the infected cells are phagocytosed by and activate **iDCs** to produce cytokines, mature, and then move to the lymph nodes. Macrophages in the liver and spleen are especially important for clearing virus from the bloodstream (filters). These phagocytic cells degrade and process the viral antigens. DCs present the appropriate peptide fragments bound to class II MHC antigens to CD4 T cells and can also cross-present these antigens on MHC I molecules to CD8 T cells to initiate the response. The APCs also release IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-**α** and, with IL-12, promote activation of helper T cells and specific cytokine production (TH1 response). The type I interferons and these cytokines induce the prodromal flulike symptoms of many viral infections. The activated T cells move to the site of infection and also B-cell areas of the lymph node, in which macrophages and B cells present antigen and become stimulated by the T cells.

Antiviral immune responses require up to 8 days to develop after the virus has had time to spread. **IgM** is produced first, and its production indicates a primary infection. Activated **CD4** and **CD8** T cells are present 7 to 10

days after infection, which is approximately the same time as serum IgG. During infection, the number of CD8 T cells specific for antigen may increase 100,000-fold. The antigen-specific CD8 T cells move to the site of infection and kill virally infected cells. Recognition and binding to class I MHC viral-peptide complexes promotes apoptotic killing of the target cells, either through the release of perforin and granzymes (to disrupt the cell membrane) or through the binding of the Fas ligand with Fas on the target cell. **IgG** and **IgA** are produced after 7 to 10 days. Secretory IgA is made in response to a viral challenge of mucosal surfaces at the natural openings of the body (i.e., eyes, mouth, and respiratory and gastrointestinal systems). Resolution of the infection occurs later, when sufficient antibody is available to neutralize all virus progeny or when cellular immunity has been able to reach and eliminate the infected cells. *For the resolution of most enveloped and noncytolytic viral infections, TH1-mediated responses are required to kill the viral factory in addition to antibody neutralization of free virus.*

Viral infections of the brain and the eye can cause serious damage because these tissues cannot repair tissue damage and are **immunologically privileged sites** of the body. TH1 responses are normally suppressed to prevent the serious tissue destruction that accompanies extended inflammation. TH17 responses and special neutrophils are initiated against herpes simplex virus and other virus infections of the eye.

For many viral infections, the virus infection expands, spreads through the body, and infects the target tissue (e.g., brain, encephalitis; liver, hepatitis) before T-cell and antibody responses are generated. As a result, resolution of the expanded infection requires a larger and more intense immune response, which often includes the immunopathogenesis and tissue damage that cause disease symptoms.

Secondary Viral Challenge

In any war, it is easier to eliminate an enemy if its identity and origin are known and if establishment of its foothold can be prevented. Similarly in the human body, prior immunity established by prior infection or vaccination allows rapid, specific mobilization of defenses to prevent disease symptoms, promote rapid clearance of the virus, and block viremic spread from the primary site of infection to the target tissue to prevent disease. As a result, a viral challenge of an immunized individual is usually asymptomatic. Antibody and memory B and T cells are present in an immune host to generate a more rapid and extensive anamnestic (booster) response to the virus. Secretory antiviral IgA is produced quickly to provide an important defense to reinfection through the natural openings of the body, but it is produced only transiently.

Host, viral, and other factors determine the outcome of the immune response to a viral infection. Host factors include genetic background, immune status, age, and the general health of the individual. Viral factors include viral strain, infectious dose, and route of entry. The time required to initiate immune protection, the extent of the response, the level of control of the infection, and the potential for immunopathology (see Chapter 37) resulting from the infection differ after a primary infection and a rechallenge.

VIRAL MECHANISMS FOR ESCAPING THE HOST PROTECTIVE RESPONSES

A major factor in the virulence of a virus is its ability to escape immune resolution. Viruses may escape immune resolution by evading detection, preventing activation, or blocking delivery of the immune response. Specific examples are presented in Table 10.3. Many viruses encode special proteins that suppress innate and immune responses.

VIRAL IMMUNOPATHOGENESIS

The symptoms of many viral diseases are the consequence of cytokine action or overzealous immune responses. The flulike symptoms of influenza and any virus that establishes a viremia (e.g., arboviruses) occurring during the disease prodrome are a result of the interferon and other cytokine responses induced by the virus. Antibody interactions with large amounts of viral antigen in blood, such as occurs with hepatitis B virus infection, can lead to immune complex diseases. The measles rash, the extensive tissue damage to the brain associated with herpes simplex virus encephalitis (*-itis* means "inflammation"), and the tissue damage and symptoms of hepatitis are a result of cell-mediated immune and inflammatory responses. The more aggressive NK-cell and T-cell responses of adults exacerbate some diseases that are benign in children, such as varicella zoster virus, Epstein-Barr virus infectious mononucleosis, and hepatitis B infection. Yet, the lack of such a response in children makes them prone to chronic hepatitis B infection because the response is insufficient to kill the infected cells and resolve the infection.

Viral infections may provide the initial activation trigger that allows the immune system to respond to self-antigens and or express proteins that mimic host proteins to cause autoimmune diseases. A cytokine storm produced in response to an influenza or other virus infection may override peripheral tolerance mediated by Treg cells and allow initiation of an antiself CD4 T cell, antibody, or CD8 T-cell response in a person who is genetically predisposed to an autoimmune disease (MHC type).

Specific Immune Responses to Fungi

The primary protective responses to fungal infection are initiated by fungal cell wall carbohydrates binding to TLRs and the dectin-1 lectin and are provided by **neutrophils, macrophages, and antimicrobial peptides** (Box 10.5). CD4 T-cell **TH17 and TH1 responses** stimulate the neutrophil and macrophage responses. Patients deficient in neutrophils or these CD4 T-cell–mediated responses (e.g., patients with AIDS) are most susceptible to fungal (opportunistic) infections. Fungal infections can be held in check, undetectable for decades, by effective T-cell–induced immune

TABLE 10.3 Examples of Viral Evasion of Immune Responses

Mechanism	Viral Examples	Action
HUMORAL RESPONSE		
Hidden from antibody	Herpesviruses, retroviruses Herpes simplex virus, varicella zoster virus, paramyxoviruses, HIV	Latent infection Cell-to-cell infection (syncytia formation)
Antigenic variation	Lentiviruses (HIV) Influenza virus	Genetic change after infection Annual genetic changes (drift) Pandemic changes (shift)
Secretion of blocking antigen	Hepatitis B virus	Hepatitis B surface antigen
INTERFERON		
Block production	Hepatitis B virus Epstein-Barr virus	Inhibition of IFN transcription IL-10 analog (BCRF-1) blocks IFN-γ production
Block action	Adenovirus Herpes simplex virus	Inhibits upregulation of MHC expression; VA1 blocks double-stranded RNA activation of interferon-induced PKR Inactivates PKR and activates phosphatase (PP1) to reverse inactivation of initiation factor for protein synthesis
IMMUNE CELL FUNCTION		
Impairment of DC function	Measles, hepatitis C	Induction of IFN-β, which limits DC function
Impairment of lymphocyte function	Herpes simplex virus HIV Measles virus	Prevention of CD8 T-cell killing Kills CD4 T cells and alters macrophages Suppression of NK, T, and B cells
Immunosuppressive factors	Epstein-Barr virus	BCRF-1 (similar to IL-10) suppression of CD4 TH1 helper T-cell responses
DECREASED ANTIGEN PRESENTATION		
Reduced class I MHC expression	Adenovirus 12 Cytomegalovirus Herpes simplex virus	Inhibition of class I MHC transcription; 19-kDa protein (E3 gene) binds class I MHC heavy chain, blocking translocation to surface H301 protein blocks surface expression of β_2-microglobulin and class I MHC molecules ICP47 blocks TAP, preventing peptide entry into ER and binding to class I MHC molecules
INHIBITION OF INFLAMMATION		
	Poxvirus, adenovirus	Blocking of action of IL-1 or tumor necrosis factor

DC, Dendritic cell; *ER,* endoplasmic reticulum; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *ICP47,* infected cell protein 47; *IFN,* interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *kDa,* kilodalton; *MHC I,* major histocompatibility complex, antigen type 1; *NK,* natural killer; *PKR,* protein kinase R; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid; *TAP,* transporter associated with antigen production; *TH,* T helper (cell).

and neutrophil responses, only to awaken on neutrophil or T-cell deficiency and become lethal. Defensins and other cationic peptides may be important for some fungal infections (e.g., mucormycosis, aspergillosis), and nitric oxide may be important against *Cryptococcus* and other fungi. Respiratory infection with *Histoplasma* causes intracellular infection of macrophages eliciting granulomatous immune responses similar to *M. tuberculosis.* Antibody, as an opsonin, may facilitate clearance of the fungi but may also elicit disease-causing hypersensitivity reactions. Fungi and fungal spores are a common allergen and inducer of asthma and allergic alveolitis.

Specific Immune Responses to Parasites

It is difficult to generalize about the mechanisms of antiparasitic immunity because there are many different parasites that have different forms and reside in different tissue locations during their life cycles (Box 10.6 and Table 10.4). Stimulation of CD4 TH1, TH17, CD8 T-cell, and macrophage responses are important for intracellular infections, and neutrophils, macrophages, and TH2 antibody responses are important for extracellular parasites in blood and fluids. **IgE, eosinophil,** and **mast cell** action are triggered by and are especially important for eliminating worm (cestode and nematode) infections. The efficiency of control of the infection may depend on which response is initiated in the host. Dominance of a TH2 response against *Leishmania* infections results in the inhibition of TH1 activation of macrophages, inability to clear intracellular parasites, and a poor outcome. This observation provided the basis for the discovery that TH1 and TH2 responses are separate and antagonistic. Parasites have developed sophisticated mechanisms for avoiding immune clearance and often establish chronic infections.

BOX 10.5 Summary of Antifungal Responses

Antimicrobial peptides produced by epithelial cells, neutrophils, macrophages, and other cells are a primary defense.
Neutrophils are very important. They release reactive oxygen species and antifungal compounds and phagocytize fungi.
Macrophages are also important.
TH17 responses reinforce antifungal neutrophil and epithelial cell function and antimicrobial peptide production but promote inflammation.
TH1 responses reinforce macrophage functions but promote inflammation. Granuloma formation is important for intracellular infections *(Histoplasma)*.
TH2 responses, through IgG and IgA, can block attachment of fungi and toxin action, but IgE can promote allergy and asthma.

Ig, Immunoglobulin; *TH,* T helper (cell).

BOX 10.6 Summary of Antiparasitic Responses

Different immune responses are necessary depending on the nature of the parasite and the replicative stage.
Many parasites have multiple tricks to evade immune responses.
TH2 responses, through IgG and IgA, are important for preventing parasite binding to tissue, to block binding and entry into cells, to activate complement, and as an opsonin.
IgE bound to mast cells and eosinophils binds parasite and parasite antigen, and releases histamine and toxic substances to promote expulsion.
TH2 responses activate mucus secretion into colon to promote expulsion.
TH1 responses are especially important for intracellular infections *(Leishmania)* but promote inflammation.
Granuloma formation is important for intracellular infections *(Schistosoma)*.
TH17 responses reinforce epithelial and neutrophil action for extracellular parasites.

Ig, Immunoglobulin; *TH,* T helper (cell).

Extracellular parasites such as *Trypanosoma cruzi, Toxoplasma gondii,* and *Leishmania* species are phagocytosed by **macrophage. Antibody** may facilitate the uptake of (opsonize) the parasites. The parasites may replicate in the macrophage and hide from subsequent immune detection unless the macrophage is activated by TH1 responses. Killing of the parasites follows activation of the macrophage by IFN-γ or TNF-α and the induction of **oxygen-dependent killing mechanisms** (peroxide, superoxide, and nitric oxide).

TH1 production of IFN-γ and activation of macrophages are also essential for defense against intracellular protozoa and for the development of **granulomas** around *Schistosoma mansoni* eggs and worms in the liver. The granuloma protects the liver from toxins produced by the eggs. However, the granuloma also causes fibrosis that can interrupt the venous blood supply to portions of the liver, leading to hypertension and cirrhosis.

Neutrophils phagocytize and kill extracellular parasites through both oxygen-dependent and oxygen-independent mechanisms. **Eosinophils** localize near parasites, bind to IgG or IgE on the surface of larvae or worms (e.g., helminths, *S. mansoni,* and *Trichinella spiralis*), degranulate by fusing their intracellular granules with the plasma membrane, and release the **major basic protein** into the intercellular space. The major basic protein is toxic to the parasite.

For parasitic worm infections, IL-4 and other cytokines produced by epithelial cells, ILC2, and CD4 TH2 T cells are very important for stimulating production of IgE and activating mast cells (Fig. 10.7). IgE bound to Fc receptors on mast cells targets the cells to antigens of the infecting parasite. In the lumen of the intestine, antigen binding and cross-linking of the IgE on the mast cell surface stimulate the release of histamine and substances toxic to the parasite. TH2 responses also promote mucus secretion to coat and promote expulsion of the worm.

IgG antibody also plays an important role in antiparasitic immunity as an opsonin and by activating complement on the surface of the parasite.

TABLE 10.4 Examples of Antiparasitic Immune Responses

Parasite	Habitat	Main Host Effector Mechanism[a]	Method of Avoidance
Trypanosoma brucei	Bloodstream	Antibody + complement	Antigenic variation
Plasmodium species	Hepatocyte, erythrocyte	Antibody, cytokines, TH1 for hepatocyte	Intracellular growth, erythrocyte infection, antigenic variation
Toxoplasma gondii	Macrophage	O_2 metabolites, NO, lysosomal enzymes (TH1)	Inhibition of fusion with lysosomes
T. cruzi	Many cells	O_2 metabolites, NO, lysosomal enzymes (TH1)	Escape into cytoplasm, thus avoiding digestion in lysosome
Leishmania species	Macrophage	O_2 metabolites, NO, lysosomal enzymes, TH1 not TH2 response	Impairment of O_2 burst and scavenging of products; avoidance of digestion
Trichinella spiralis	Gut, blood, muscle	Myeloid cells, antibody + complement (TH2)	Encystment in muscle
Schistosoma mansoni	Skin, blood, lungs, portal vein	Myeloid cells, antibody + complement (TH2)	Acquisition of host antigens as camouflage: soluble antigens and immune complexes; antioxidants
Wuchereria bancrofti	Lymphatic system	Myeloid cells, antibody + complement (TH2)	Thick, extracellular cuticle; antioxidants
Helminths	Gut	IgE	Extracellular cuticle

[a]Antibody is most important for extracellular pathogens. Cell-mediated immunity (TH1 response) is most important for intracellular pathogens.
IgE, Immunoglobulin E; *NO,* nitric oxide; *TH,* T helper (cell).
Adapted from Roitt, I., Brostoff, J., Male, D., et al., 1996. Immunology, fourth ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

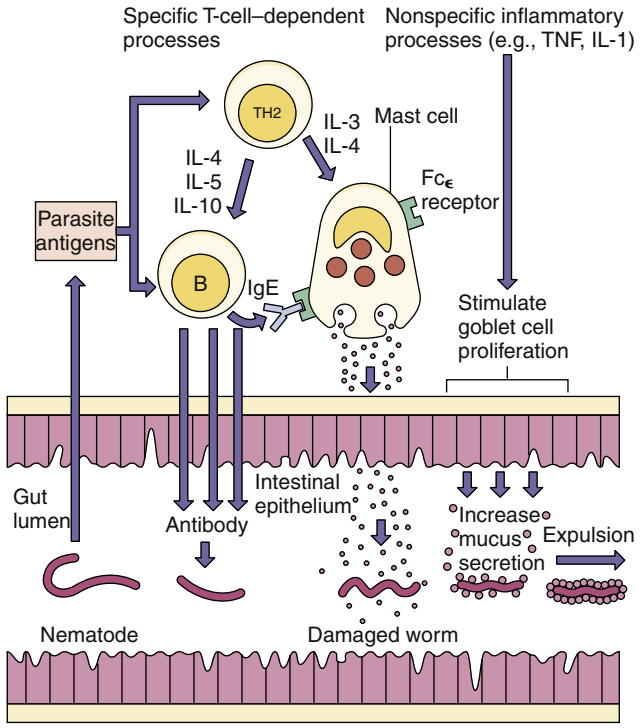


Fig. 10.7 Elimination of nematodes from the gut. TH2 responses are important for stimulating the production of antibody. Antibody can damage the worm. Antigen binding to immunoglobulin E *(IgE)* bound to mast cells triggers release of histamine and toxic substances. Increased mucus secretion also promotes expulsion. *IL,* Interleukin; *TH,* T helper (cell); *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor. (From Roitt, I., Brostoff, J., Male, D., et al., 1996. Immunology, fourth ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

Malaria poses an interesting challenge for the immune response. Protective antibodies are made toward attachment and other surface proteins, but these differ for each of the stages of the parasite's development. TH1 responses and CTLs may be important during liver phases of infection. While in the erythrocyte, the parasite is hidden from antibody, unrecognizable by CTLs, but it can stimulate NK- and NKT-cell responses. Cytokines, especially TNF-α, produced by these cells promote protection but also immunopathogenesis. Immune complexes containing malarial components and cell debris released on erythrocyte lysis can clog small capillaries and activate type II hypersensitivity reactions (see later) and promote inflammatory tissue damage.

EVASION OF IMMUNE MECHANISMS BY PARASITES

Animal parasites have developed remarkable mechanisms for establishing chronic infections in the vertebrate host (see Table 10.4). These mechanisms include intracellular growth, inactivation of phagocytic killing, release of blocking antigen (e.g., *T. brucei, Plasmodium falciparum*), changing of antigenic appearance and development of cysts (e.g., protozoa, *Entamoeba histolytica;* helminths, *T. spiralis*) to limit access by the immune response. The African trypanosomes can reengineer the genes for their surface antigen (variable surface glycoprotein), which changes their antigenic appearance. Schistosomes can coat themselves with host antigens, including MHC molecules.

Other Immune Responses

Antitumor responses and **rejection of tissue transplants** are primarily mediated by the TH1 immune response (Animation 10). CD8 cytolytic T cells recognize and kill tumors expressing peptides from embryologic proteins, mutated proteins, or other proteins on class I MHC molecules (endogenous route of peptide presentation). These proteins may be expressed inappropriately by the tumor cell, and the host immune response may not be tolerized to them. Antitumor responses are suppressed by overexpression of checkpoint inhibitory molecules on the tumor cell, such as PD-L1 and PD-L2 that bind to PD-1, which prevent killing by cytolytic T cells. Wound healing immunosuppressive responses (tissue remodeling and angiogenesis) from M2 macrophages are also stimulated by tumors.

T-cell rejection of **allografts** used for tissue transplants is triggered by recognition of graft protein peptides and the graft MHC I antigen. Antibody to foreign antigens can also cause rejection by activating complement and ADCC killing of the graft. In addition to host rejection of the transplanted tissue, cells from the donor of a blood transfusion or a tissue transplant can initiate a response or react against the new host in a **graft-versus-host (GVH) response.** An in vitro test of T-cell activation and growth in a GVH-like response is the **mixed lymphocyte reaction.**

Immunopathogenesis

HYPERSENSITIVITY RESPONSES

Once activated, the immune response is sometimes difficult to control and causes tissue damage. Hypersensitivity reactions are responsible for many of the symptoms associated with microbial infections. Hypersensitivity reactions occur to people with an established immunity to the antigen. *The mediator and the time course* primarily distinguish the four types of hypersensitivity responses (Table 10.5). Types I to III are antibody driven and type IV is cell-mediated responses.

Type I hypersensitivity is caused by **IgE** and is associated with **allergic, atopic,** and **anaphylactic reactions** (Fig. 10.8; Animation 11). IgE allergic reactions are rapid-onset reactions. IgE binds to Fc receptors on mast cells and becomes the cell-surface receptor for antigens **(allergens).** Cross-linking of several cell-surface IgE molecules by an allergen (e.g., pollen) triggers degranulation, releasing **chemoattractants** (chemokines, leukotrienes) to attract eosinophils, neutrophils, and mononuclear cells; **activators** (histamine, platelet-activating factor, tryptase, kininogenase, and cytokines) to promote vasodilation and edema; and **spasmogens** (histamine, prostaglandin D_2, and leukotrienes) to directly affect bronchial smooth muscle and promote mucus secretion. After 8 to 12 hours, a late-phase reaction develops because of the infiltration of eosinophils and CD4 T cells and cytokine reinforcement of inflammation. Desensitization (allergy shots) produces IgG to bind the allergen and prevent allergen binding to IgE.

Type II hypersensitivity is caused by **antibody binding to cell-surface molecules.** The antibody may

TABLE 10.5 Hypersensitivity Reactions

Reaction Type	Onset Time	Key Features	Beneficial Effects	Pathologic Effects
Type I	<30 min	Soluble antigen-triggered, IgE-dependent release of vasoactive mediators followed by late-phase reaction	Antiparasitic responses and toxin neutralization	Localized allergies (e.g., hay fever, asthma) Systemic anaphylaxis
Type II	<8 hr	Cell-bound antibody promoting C′-mediated cytotoxicity; antibody binding and modulation of receptor function	Direct lysis and phagocytosis of extracellular bacteria and other susceptible microbes	Destruction of red blood cells (e.g., transfusion reactions, Rh disease) Organ-specific tissue damage in some autoimmune diseases (e.g., Goodpasture syndrome)
Type III	<8 hr	Soluble antigen-antibody complexes activate C′	Acute inflammatory reaction at site of extracellular microbes and their clearance	Arthus reaction (localized) Serum sickness and drug reactions (generalized) Systemic autoimmune diseases
Type IV	24-72 hr (acute); >1 week (chronic)	Phagocytized protein antigen presented to CD4 T cells activates macrophages and inflammation	Protection against infection by fungi, intracellular bacteria, and viruses	Acute: contact dermatitis, tuberculosis skin test Chronic: granuloma formation

Ig, Immunoglobulin.

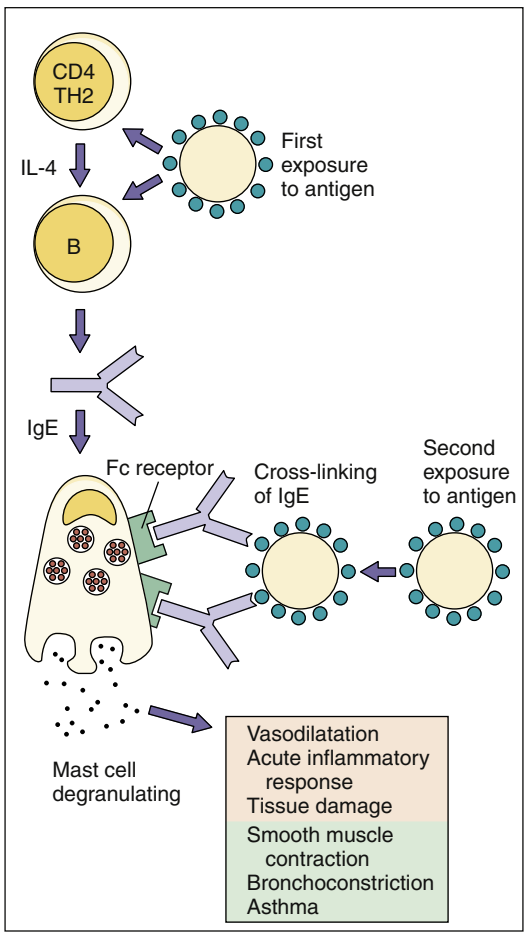


Fig. 10.8 Type I hypersensitivity: immunoglobulin E *(IgE)*–mediated atopic and anaphylactic reactions. IgE produced in response to the initial challenge binds to Fc receptors on mast cells and basophils. Allergen binding and cross-linking of the cell-surface IgE promotes release of histamine and prostaglandins from granules to produce symptoms. Examples are hay fever, asthma, penicillin allergy, and reaction to bee stings. *IL,* Interleukin; *TH,* T helper (cell).

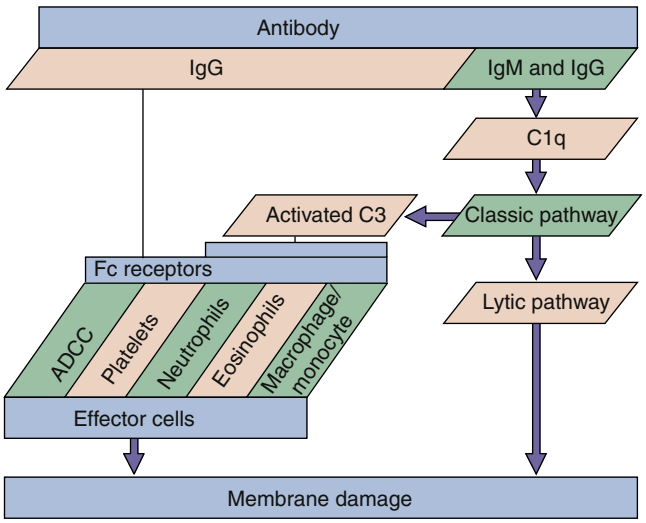


Fig. 10.9 Type II hypersensitivity: mediated by cell-bound antibody and complement. Complement activation promotes direct cell damage through the complement cascade and by the activation of effector cells. Examples are Goodpasture syndrome, the response to Rh factor in newborns, and autoimmune endocrinopathies. *ADCC,* Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity; *Ig,* immunoglobulin.

promote cytolytic responses by the **classic complement cascade** or ADCC (Fig. 10.9). These reactions occur as early as 8 hours after a tissue or blood transplant or as part of a chronic disease. Examples of these reactions are autoimmune hemolytic anemia and Goodpasture syndrome (lung and kidney basement membrane damage). Another example is hemolytic disease of newborns (blue babies), which results when maternal IgG antibody, generated during the first pregnancy to an incompatible Rh protein factor on fetal erythrocytes, crosses the placenta and harms a second baby (Rh incompatibility).

Antireceptor antibody activation or inhibition of effector functions is also considered a type II response. Myasthenia gravis is caused by antibodies to acetylcholine receptors on

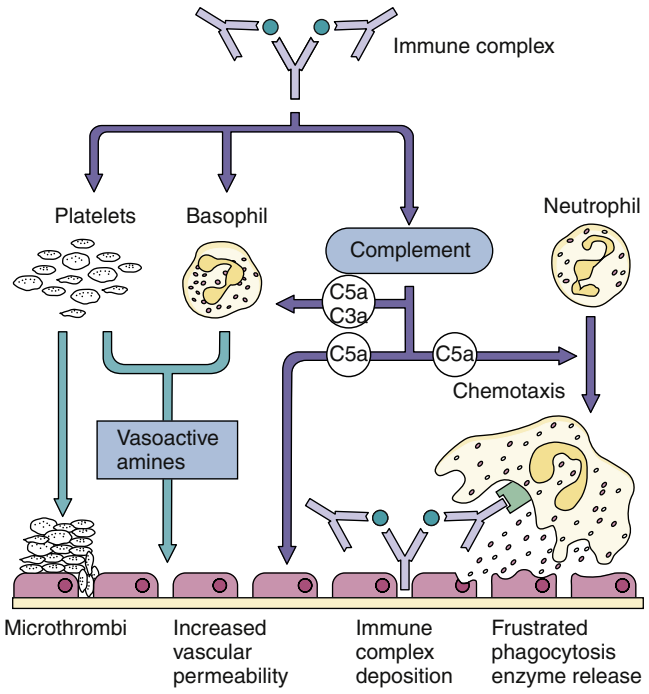


Fig. 10.10 Type III hypersensitivity: immune complex mediated. Immune complexes can be trapped in the kidney and elsewhere in the body and can activate complement to promote inflammation. Examples are serum sickness, nephritis associated with chronic hepatitis B infection, and Arthus reaction.

neurons, Graves disease results from antibody stimulation of the thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) receptor, and some forms of diabetes can result from antibodies blocking the insulin receptor.

Type III hypersensitivity responses result from activation of **complement** by **immune complexes** (Fig. 10.10). In the presence of an abundance of soluble antigen in the bloodstream, large antigen-antibody complexes form, become trapped in capillaries (especially in the kidney), and then initiate the classical complement cascade. Activation of the complement cascade initiates inflammatory reactions. Immune complex disease may be caused by infections (e.g., hepatitis B, malaria, staphylococcal infective endocarditis, group A streptococcal–associated glomerulonephritis, viral antigen (e.g., hepatitis B surface antigen induced polyarteritis nodosa), autoimmunity (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus), or persistent inhalation of antigen (e.g., mold, plant, or animal antigens). For example, farmer's lung, a pneumonitis, is caused by preformed IgG binding to mold spores within the alveolae that were inhaled from hay. Type III hypersensitivity reactions can be induced in presensitized people by the intradermal injection of antigen to cause an **Arthus reaction,** which is a skin reaction characterized by redness and swelling. Annual booster immunizations to influenza often elicits an Arthus reaction at the site of the immunization because of the presence of antibody from the previous year's immunization. Serum sickness, extrinsic allergic alveolitis (a reaction to inhaled fungal antigen), and glomerulonephritis result from type III hypersensitivity reactions. Serum sickness can result after receiving animal immunoglobulin (e.g., antisnake venom) on multiple occasions.

Type IV hypersensitivity responses **(delayed-type hypersensitivity [DTH] reactions)** are **T-cell–mediated** inflammatory responses (Fig. 10.11 and Table 10.6). It usually takes 24 to 48 hours for antigen to be presented to **circulating T cells,** for them to move to the site, and then for them to **activate neutrophils and macrophages** to induce inflammation. DTH is responsible for **contact dermatitis** (e.g., cosmetics, nickel) and the response to poison ivy. Intradermal injection of **tuberculin antigen** (purified protein derivative) elicits firm swelling that is maximal 48 to 72 hours after injection and indicative of prior exposure to *M. tuberculosis* (Fig. 10.12). Granulomatous hypersensitivity occurs with tuberculosis, leprosy, schistosomiasis, sarcoidosis, and Crohn disease. **Granulomas** form in response to continued stimulation by the intracellular growth of *M. tuberculosis*. These structures consist of epithelioid cells created from chronically activated macrophages, fused epithelioid cells (multinucleated giant cells) surrounded by lymphocytes, and fibrosis caused by the deposition of collagen from fibroblasts. The granulomas restrict the spread of *M. tuberculosis* as long as CD4 T cells can provide IFN-γ.

CYTOKINE STORM

Sepsis, toxin-mediated shock syndrome (e.g., induced by *Staphylococcus* toxic shock syndrome toxin), some viral infections (e.g., severe acute respiratory syndrome [SARS]) and influenza, and GVH disease induce an overwhelming stimulation of innate and/or immune responses, producing excessive amounts of cytokines that disrupt the physiology of the body. The consequences are multisystem dysregulation, rash, fever, and shock. **Superantigens** clamp together TCRs with the MHC II molecules on APCs to activate up to 20% of CD4 T cells. This triggers uncontrolled release of excess T-cell–produced and macrophage-produced cytokines until the T cell dies of apoptosis. Bacteria, endotoxin, or viruses in blood can promote production of large amounts of acute-phase cytokines and type I interferons by pDCs, and certain viruses are very potent activators of interferon and cytokine production. Large amounts of TNF-α are produced during cytokine storms. TNF-α can promote inflammatory processes such as enhanced vascular leakage and activation of neutrophils that can be beneficial on a local level, but on a systemic level they will lead to fever, chills, aches, stimulation of coagulation pathways, elevated liver enzymes, loss of appetite, enhanced metabolism, weight loss, increased vascular permeability, and potentially shock.

Autoimmune Responses

Normally a person is tolerized to self-antigens during the development of T cells and B cells and by Treg cells. Autoimmunity can be induced by any or all of the following: overriding Treg-induced tolerance by excessive cytokine production (e.g., cytokine storm, systemic lupus erythematosus), cross-reactivity with microbial antigens (e.g.,

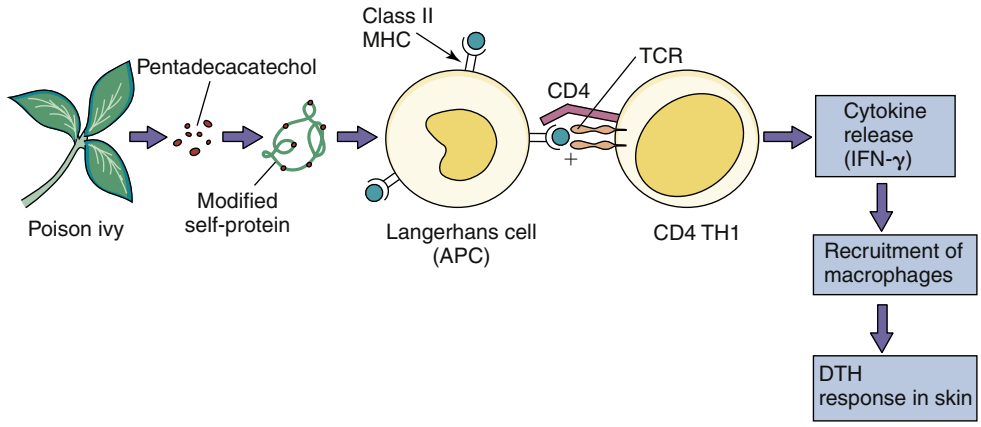


Fig. 10.11 Type IV hypersensitivity: delayed-type hypersensitivity *(DTH)* mediated by CD4 T cells *(TH1)*. In this case, chemically modified self-proteins are processed, and peptides are presented on antigen-presenting cells *(APCs)* to CD4 memory T cells cycling through the skin, which become activated and release cytokines (including interferon-γ *[IFN-γ]*) that promote inflammation. Other examples of DTH are the tuberculin response (purified protein derivative test) and reaction to metals such as nickel. *TCR,* T-cell receptor; *TH,* T helper (cell).

TABLE 10.6 Important Characteristics of Four Types of Delayed-Type Hypersensitivity Reactions

Type	Reaction Time	Clinical Appearance	Histologic Appearance	Antigen
Jones-Mote	24-48 hr	Skin swelling	Basophils, lymphocytes, mononuclear cells	Intradermal antigen: reaction to PPD or other protein antigen
Tuberculin	48 hr	Local induration and swelling with or without fever	Mononuclear cells, lymphocytes and monocytes, reduced macrophages	Dermal: tuberculin (PPD), mycobacterial, leishmanial
Contact	48 hr	Eczema	Mononuclear cells, edema, raised epidermis	Epidermal: nickel, rubber, poison ivy
Granulomatous	4 wk	Skin induration	Epithelioid cell granuloma, giant cells, macrophages, fibrosis with or without necrosis	Persistent antigen or antigen-antibody complexes in macrophages or "nonimmunologic" (e.g., talcum powder)

PPD, Purified protein derivative.

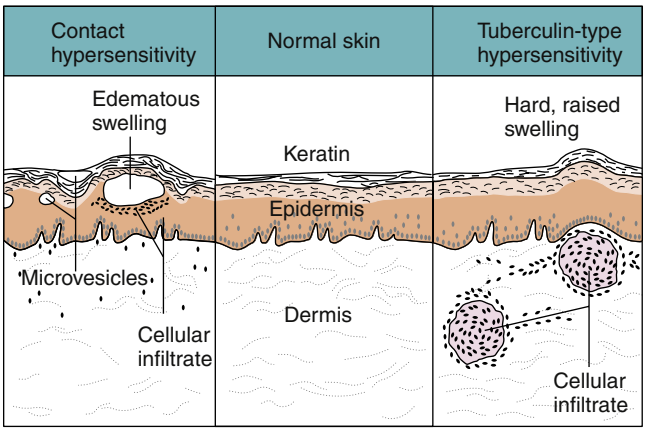


Fig. 10.12 Contact and tuberculin hypersensitivity responses. These type IV responses are cell mediated but differ in the site of cell infiltration and in the symptoms. Contact hypersensitivity occurs in the epidermis and leads to the formation of blisters; tuberculin-type hypersensitivity occurs in the dermis and is characterized by swelling.

group A streptococcal infection, rheumatic fever), polyclonal activation of lymphocytes induced by tumors or infection (e.g., malaria, Epstein-Barr virus infection), a genetic predisposition toward presentation of self-antigenic peptides on MHC molecules, or lack of tolerization to specific antigens.

Autoimmune diseases result from the hypersensitivity reactions initiated by autoantibodies and self-reactive T cells. People with certain MHC antigens are at higher risk for autoimmune responses (e.g., HLA-B27: juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis) because of its ability to bind and present self-peptides. Once initiated, a cycle is established between APCs, especially B cells, and T cells, which produce cytokines to promote inflammation and tissue damage and more self-antigen. TH17 and TH1 responses are responsible for rheumatoid arthritis and other diseases.

Immunodeficiency

Immunodeficiency may result from genetic deficiencies, starvation, drug-induced immunosuppression (e.g., steroid treatment, cancer chemotherapy, chemotherapeutic suppression of tissue graft rejection), cancer (especially of immune cells), or disease (e.g., AIDS) and naturally occurs in neonates and pregnant women. Deficiencies in specific protective responses put a patient at high risk for serious disease caused by infectious agents that should be controlled by that response (Table 10.7). These "natural experiments" illustrate the importance of specific responses in controlling specific infections.

TABLE 10.7 Infections Associated with Defects in Immune Responses

Defect	Pathogen
Induction by physical means (e.g., burns, trauma)	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* *Staphylococcus aureus* *S. epidermidis* *Streptococcus pyogenes* *Aspergillus* species *Candida* species
Splenectomy	Encapsulated bacteria and fungi
Granulocyte and monocyte defects in movement, phagocytosis, or killing or decreased number of cells (neutropenia)	*S. aureus* *S. pyogenes* *S. pneumoniae* *Haemophilus influenzae* *Escherichia coli* *Klebsiella* species *P. aeruginosa* *Nocardia* species *Aspergillus* species *Candida* species
Individual components of complement system	*S. aureus* *S. pneumoniae* *Pseudomonas* species *Proteus* species *Neisseria* species
T cells	Herpes viruses (HSV, EBV, CMV, HHV6, HHV7, HHV8) Polyoma viruses (JC, BK) *Listeria monocytogenes* *Mycobacterium* species *Nocardia* species *Aspergillus* species *Candida* species *Cryptococcus neoformans* *Histoplasma capsulatum* *Pneumocystis jiroveci* *Toxoplasma* *Strongyloides stercoralis*
B cells	Enteroviruses *S. aureus* *Streptococcus* species *H. influenzae* *Neisseria meningitidis* *E. coli* *Giardia lamblia* *P. jiroveci*
Combined immunodeficiency	See pathogens listed for T cells and B cells

CMV, Cytomegalovirus; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *HHV,* human herpesvirus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus.

IMMUNOSUPPRESSION

Immunosuppressive therapy is important for reducing excessive inflammatory or immune responses or for preventing the rejection of tissue transplants by T cells. Aspirin and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) target the cyclooxygenases that generate inflammatory prostaglandins (e.g., PGD_2) and pain. Other antiinflammatory treatments target the production and action of cytokines. Corticosteroids prevent their production by macrophages and may be toxic to T cells. Soluble forms of the TNF-**α** receptor and antibody to TNF-**α** can be used to block the binding of TNF-**α** and prevent its action. Antibodies to IL-12, IL-23, IL-1, and other cytokines and adhesion proteins on T cells or APCs, can block T-cell activation of inflammatory and other responses.

Immunosuppressive therapy for transplantation generally inhibits the action or causes the lysis of T cells. Cyclosporine, tacrolimus (FK-506), and rapamycin prevent the activation of T cells (see Fig. 9.3). Anti-CD40 ligand and anti–IL-2 prevent activation of T cells, whereas anti-CD3 promotes complement lysis of T cells to suppress T-cell responses. Anti–TNF-**α** and other ablative therapies increase risk of *M. tuberculosis* disease and anti-**α**4 integrin cell adhesion molecule increases the risk of JC virus reactivation disease (progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy).

HEREDITARY COMPLEMENT DEFICIENCIES AND MICROBIAL INFECTION

Inherited **deficiencies of C1q, C1r, C1s, C4,** and **C2** components are associated with defects in activation of the classic complement pathway that lead to greater susceptibility to pyogenic (pus-producing) staphylococcal and streptococcal infections (Fig. 10.13). A **deficiency of C3** leads to a defect in activation of all pathways, which also results in a higher incidence of pyogenic infections. **Defects of the properdin factors** impair activation of the alternative pathway, which also results in an increased susceptibility to pyogenic infections. Finally, **deficiencies of C5 through C9** are associated with defective cell killing, which raises the susceptibility to disseminated infections by *Neisseria* species.

DEFECTS IN PHAGOCYTE ACTION

People with defective phagocytes are more susceptible to bacterial infections but not to viral or protozoal infections (Fig. 10.14). The clinical relevance of oxygen-dependent killing is illustrated by **chronic granulomatous disease** in children who lack the enzymes (e.g., nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate [NADPH] oxidase) to produce superoxide anions. Although phagocytosis is normal, these children have an impaired ability to oxidize NADPH and destroy bacteria or fungi through the oxidative pathway. In patients with **Chédiak-Higashi syndrome,** the neutrophil granules fuse when the cells are immature in the bone marrow. Thus neutrophils from these patients can phagocytose bacteria but have greatly diminished ability to kill them. Granulomas are formed around the infected phagocyte to control the infection. **Asplenic individuals** are at risk for infection with encapsulated organisms because such people lack the filtration mechanism of spleen macrophages. Other deficiencies are shown in Fig. 10.14.

DEFICIENCIES IN ANTIGEN-SPECIFIC IMMUNE RESPONSES

People deficient in **T-cell function** are susceptible to **opportunistic infections** by (1) viruses, especially enveloped and noncytolytic viruses and recurrences of viruses that establish latent infections; (2) intracellular bacteria; (3) fungi; and (4) some parasites. T-cell deficiencies can also prevent the maturation of B-cell antibody responses. T-cell deficiencies can arise from genetic disorders (e.g., X-linked immunodeficiency syndrome, Duncan disease, DiGeorge syndrome) (Table 10.8), infection (e.g., HIV and AIDS),

cancer chemotherapy, or immunosuppressive therapy for tissue transplantation.

The T-cell response of **neonates** is deficient but supplemented by maternal IgG. Insufficient TH1 responses and the resulting deficiency in IFN-γ puts them at high risk to infections by herpesviruses. Similarly, the less pronounced cell-mediated immune and inflammatory responses of **children** decrease the severity (compared with adults) of herpes (e.g., infectious mononucleosis, chickenpox) and hepatitis B infections but increase the potential for the establishment of a chronic hepatitis B virus infection because of incomplete resolution. Pregnancy also induces immunosuppressive measures to prevent rejection of the fetus (a foreign tissue).

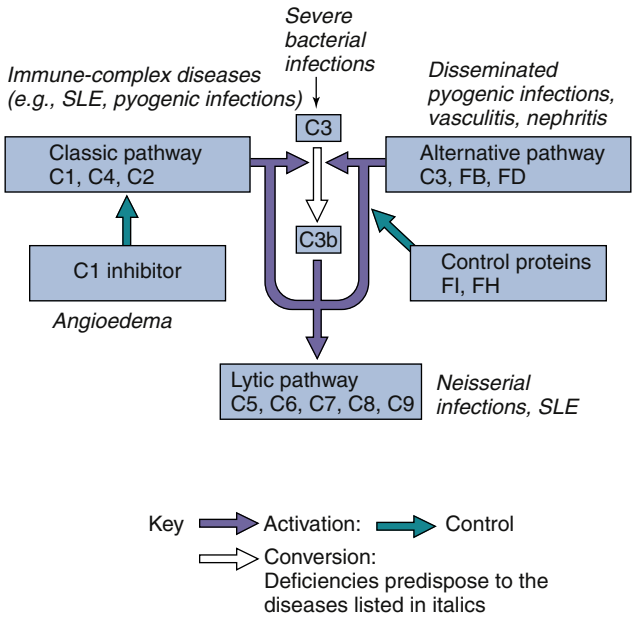


Fig. 10.13 Consequences of deficiencies in the complement pathways. A deficiency in the activation or control of complement can lead to disease. Inability to generate C3 or C5 fragments compromises recruitment of neutrophils and macrophages, opsonization and clearance of bacteria and proteins, and activation of B cells. Lack of inhibitors allows spurious activation and inflammation. *SLE,* Systemic lupus erythematosus.

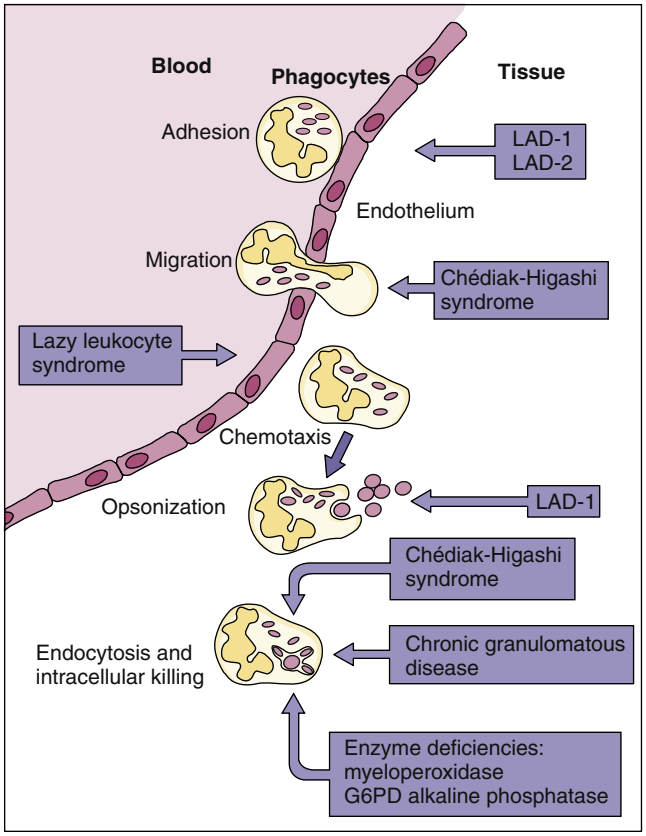


Fig. 10.14 Consequences of phagocyte dysfunction. Inability to sense or access an infection or to bind, internalize, or kill internalized bacteria increases susceptibility to serious bacterial and fungal disease. *G6PD,* Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase; *LAD-1,* leukocyte adhesion deficiency-1.

TABLE 10.8 Immunodeficiencies of Lymphocytes

Condition	T Cell No.	T-Cell Function	B Cell No.	Serum Antibodies	Incidence[a]
XLA, Bruton syndrome	✓	✓	⇊	↓	Rare
RAG1 or RAG2 deficiency	⇊	⇊	⇊	None	Rare
X-SCID	⇊	↓	✓	↓	Rare
XLP, Duncan syndrome	✓	↓	✓	✓ or ↓	Rare
X-hyper IgM (CD40 or CD40L mutation)	✓	↓	✓	IgM↑↑ No IgG, IgE, or IgA	Rare
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	✓	↓	✓	↓	Rare
SCID: ADA or PNP deficiency	⇊	⇊	↓	↓	Very rare
HLA deficiency	↓	↓	✓	Poor Ag response	Very rare
Ataxia telangiectasia	↓	↓	✓	IgE↓, IgA↓, IgG2↓	Uncommon
DiGeorge syndrome	⇊	↓	✓	IgG↓, IgE↓, IgA↓	Very rare
IgA deficiency	✓	✓	✓	IgA↓	Common

[a]Approximate incidence: very rare = $<10^{-6}$; rare = 10^{-5} to 10^{-6}; common = 10^{-2} to 10^{-3}.

✓, Normal; ↑, increased; ↓, decreased or defective; *ADA,* adenosine deaminase; *Ag,* antigen; *HLA,* human leukocyte antigen; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *PNP,* purine nucleoside phosphorylase; *RAG,* recombination-activating gene; *XLA,* X-linked agammaglobulinemia; *XLP,* X-linked lymphoproliferative (syndrome); *X-SCID,* X-linked severe, combined immunodeficiency disease.

Modified from Brostoff, J., Male, D.K., 1994. Clinical Immunology: An Illustrated Outline. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

B-cell deficiencies may result in a complete lack of antibody production (hypogammaglobulinemia), inability to undergo class switching, or inability to produce specific subclasses of antibody. People deficient in antibody production are very susceptible to **bacterial infection. IgA deficiency,** which occurs in 1 of 700 whites, results in a greater susceptibility to respiratory infections.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Abbas, A.K., Lichtman, A.H., Pillai, S., et al., 2018. Cellular and Molecular Immunology, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Alcami, A., Koszinowski, U.H., 2000. Viral mechanisms of immune evasion. Trends Microbiol. 8, 410–418.

Andreakos, E., Zanoni, I., Galani, I.E., 2019. Lambda interferons come to light: dual function cytokines mediating antiviral immunity and damage control. Current Opinion in Immunology. 56,67–75. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.coi.2018.10.007.

DeFranco, A.L., Locksley, R.M., Robertson, M., 2007. Immunity: The Immune Response in Infectious and Inflammatory Disease. Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, Mass.

Goering, R., Dockrell, H., Zuckerman, M., Chiodini, P.L., 2019. Mims' Medical Microbiology and Immunology, sixth ed. Elsevier, London.

Murphy, K., Weaver, C., 2016. Janeway's Immunobiology, ninth ed. Garland Science, New York.

Punt, J., Stranford, S.A., Jones, P.P., Owen, J.A., 2019. Kuby Immunology, eighth ed. WH Freeman, New York.

Rich, R.R., et al., 2019. Clinical Immunology Principles and Practice, fifth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2005. Are microbial symptoms "self-inflicted"? The consequences of immunopathology. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 13, 306–310.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Vaccines make good immune theater: immunization as described in a three-act play. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 14, 35–45.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2017. Dealing with garbage is the immune system's main job. MOJ Immunol. 5 (6), 00174. https://doi.org/10.15406/moji.2017.05.00174. http://medcraveonline.com/MOJI/MOJI-05-00174.pdf.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2018. Immune monitoring of the body's borders. AIMS Allergy and Immunology. 2 (3), 148–164. https://doi.org/10.3934/Allergy.2018.3.148. http://www.aimspress.com/article/10.3934/Allergy.2018.3.148.

Rosenthal, K.S., Wilkinson, J.G., 2007. Flow cytometry and immunospeak. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 15, 183–191.

Teng, T.S., Ji, A.L., ji, X.Y., Li, Y.Z., 2017. "Neutrophils and immunity: from bactericidal action to being conquered," J. Immunol. Res. vol. 2017, Article ID 9671604, 14. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/9671604.

Trends Immunol: Issues contain understandable reviews on current topics in immunology.

Wells, A.I., Coyne, C.B., 2018. Type III interferons in antiviral defenses at barrier surfaces. Trends. Immunol. 39,848–858.

Questions

1. Describe the types of immune responses that would be generated to the following different types of vaccines. Consider the route of processing and presentation of the antigens and the cells and cytokines involved in generating each response.
   a. Tetanus toxoid: intramuscular injection of a bolus of formalin-fixed, heat-inactivated tetanus toxin protein
   b. *S. pneumoniae* 23 valent capsular vaccine: intramuscular injection of 23 types of capsular polysaccharide (no protein)
   c. Live, attenuated measles vaccine: intramuscular injection of virus that replicates in cells and expresses antigen in cells and on cell surfaces

2. Fill in the appropriate columns:

IMMUNODEFICIENCY DISEASE	IMMUNE DEFECT	SUSCEPTIBILITY TO SPECIFIC INFECTIONS
Chédiak-Higashi syndrome		
Chronic granulomatous disease		
Complement C5 deficiency		
Complement C3 deficiency		
Complement C1 deficiency		
Complement C6, C7, C8, or C9 deficiency		
IgA deficiency		
X-linked agammaglobulinemia		
X-linked T-cell deficiency		
AIDS		
DiGeorge syndrome		

11 Antimicrobial Vaccines

Immunity, whether generated in reaction to infection or immunization or administered as therapy, can prevent or lessen the serious symptoms of disease. The memory immune responses activated on challenge of an immunized individual are faster and stronger than for an unimmunized individual. The immunization of a population, such as personal immunity, stops the spread of the infectious agent by reducing the number of susceptible hosts **(herd immunity).** Protection of newborns and infants who are too young for vaccination depend on herd immunity. Immunization programs on national and international levels have achieved the following goals:

1. Protection of population groups from the symptoms of pertussis, diphtheria, tetanus, and rabies
2. Protection and control of the spread of measles, mumps, rubella, varicella zoster virus, influenza, rotavirus, and *Haemophilus influenzae* type B (Hib)
3. Elimination of wild-type poliomyelitis in most of the world and smallpox worldwide
4. Reduction in cancer risk caused by high-risk human papillomavirus (HPV) or chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infections

In conjunction with immunization programs, measures can be taken to prevent disease by limiting the exposure of healthy people to infected people **(quarantine)** and by eliminating the source (e.g., water purification) or means of spread (e.g., mosquito eradication) of the infectious agent. As of 1977, natural smallpox was eliminated through a successful World Health Organization (WHO) program that combined vaccination and quarantine. Polio and measles have also been targeted for elimination.

Vaccine-preventable diseases still occur, however, where immunization is unavailable or too expensive (developing countries) or misinformation, personal beliefs, or complacency deter use. For example, measles outbreaks, which cause 2 million deaths annually worldwide, have increased in Europe and the United States for all of these reasons. Further discussion of each of the vaccines is presented in later chapters with the disease they prevent.

Types of Immunizations

The injection of purified antibody, antibody-containing serum, or immune cells to provide rapid temporary protection or treatment of a person is termed **passive immunization.** Newborns receive natural passive immunity from maternal immunoglobulin that crosses the placenta or is present in the mother's milk. Therapeutic antibodies that block autoimmune responses and personalized T-cell or dendritic cell (DC) antitumor therapy are also forms of passive immunity.

Active immunization occurs when an immune response is stimulated because of challenge with an immunogen, such as exposure to an infectious agent **(natural immunization)** or through exposure to microbes or their antigens in **vaccines.** On subsequent challenge with the virulent agent, a secondary immune response is activated that is faster and more effective at protecting the individual, or antibody is present to block the spread or virulence of the agent.

PASSIVE IMMUNIZATION

Passive immunization may be used

1. To prevent disease after a known exposure (e.g., needlestick injury with blood that is contaminated with HBV),
2. To ameliorate the symptoms of an ongoing disease,
3. To protect immunodeficient individuals, and
4. To block the action of bacterial toxins or venoms and prevent the diseases they cause (i.e., as therapy).

Immune serum globulin preparations derived from seropositive humans or animals (e.g., horses) are available as prophylaxis for several bacterial and viral diseases (Table 11.1). Human serum globulin is prepared from pooled plasma and contains the normal repertoire of antibodies for an adult. Special high-titer immune globulin preparations are available for HBV (HBIg), varicella zoster virus (VZIg), rabies (RIg), and tetanus (TIg). Human immunoglobulin is preferable to animal immunoglobulin because there is little risk of a hypersensitivity reaction (serum sickness).

Monoclonal antibody preparations are being developed for protection against various agents and diseases. Many of these antibodies are genetically engineered from human immunoglobulin genes or "humanized" to minimize rejection reactions. In addition to infectious diseases, monoclonal antibodies are being used as therapy to block the overzealous cytokine and cellular responses in autoimmune diseases, to initiate antitumor responses, and for other therapies.

ACTIVE IMMUNIZATION

The term *vaccine* is derived from vaccinia virus, which is a less virulent member of the poxvirus family that is used to immunize people against smallpox. Classical vaccines can be subdivided into two groups on the basis of whether they elicit an immune response on infection (**live vaccines** such as vaccinia) or not **(inactivated–subunit-killed vaccines)** (Fig. 11.1). Newer approaches simulate infection by injecting **deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA) vaccines,** which elicit immune responses to an encoded microbial or other protein (described later).

TABLE 11.1 Immune Globulins for Passive Immunity[a]

Disease	Source
Hepatitis A	Human
Hepatitis B	Human
Measles	Human
Rabies	Human[b]
Chickenpox, varicella zoster	Human[b]
Cytomegalovirus	Human
Tetanus	Human[b], equine
Botulism	Equine
Diphtheria	Equine
Respiratory syncytial virus	Monoclonal

[a]Immunoglobulins to other agents may also be available.
[b]Specific high-titer antibody is available and is the preferred therapy.

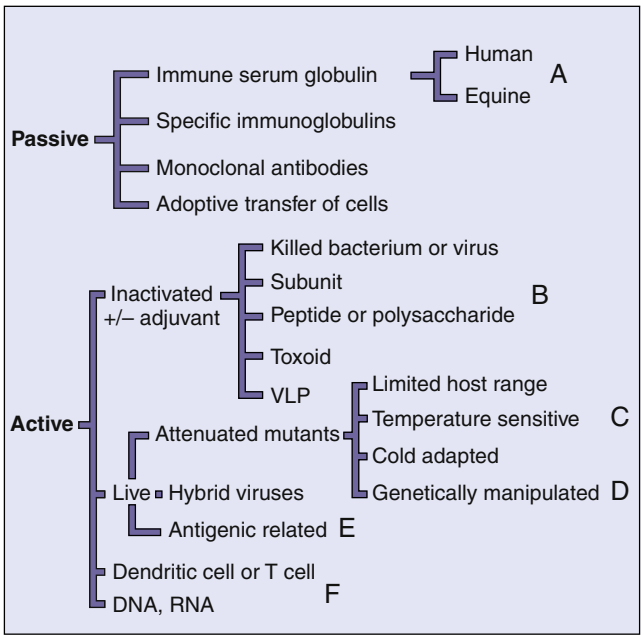


Fig. 11.1 Types of immunizations. Antibodies (passive immunization) can be provided to block the action of an infectious agent, or an immune response can be elicited (active immunization) by natural infection or vaccination. The different forms of passive and active immunization are indicated. (A) Equine antibodies can be used if human or genetically engineered antibody is not available. (B) Vaccine can consist of components purified from the infectious agent or can be developed through genetic engineering (virus-like particle *[VLP]*). (C) Vaccine selected by passage at low or high temperature in animals, embryonated eggs, or tissue culture cells. (D) Deletion, insertion, reassortment, and other laboratory-derived mutants. (E) Vaccine composed of a virus from a different species that has a common antigen with the human virus. (F) Newer and experimental vaccine approaches. *RNA,* Ribonucleic acid.

Inactivated Vaccines

Inactivated vaccines use a large amount of antigen to produce a protective antibody response but without the risk of infection by the agent. Inactivated vaccines can be produced by chemical (e.g., formalin), irradiation, or heat inactivation of bacteria, bacterial toxins, or viruses, or by purification or synthesis of the components or subunits of the infectious agents. Inactivated vaccines usually generate antibody (TH2 responses) instead of cell-mediated immune responses.

TABLE 11.2 Advantages and Disadvantages of Live versus Inactivated Vaccines

Property	Live	Inactivated
Route of administration	Natural[a] or injection	Injection
Dose of antigen	Low	High
Number of doses, amount	Single,[b] low	Multiple, high
Need for adjuvant	No	Yes
Duration of immunity	Long term	Short term
Antibody response	IgG, IgA[c]	IgM, IgG
Cell-mediated immune response	Good	Poor
Potential lability	Yes	More stable
Side effects	Occasional mild symptoms	Occasional sore arm
Reversion to virulence	Rarely	None

[a]Oral or respiratory, in certain cases.
[b]Boosters may be required (yellow fever, measles, rubella) after 6 to 10 years.
[c]IgA if delivered via the oral or respiratory route.
Ig, Immunoglobulin.
Adapted from White, D.O., Fenner, F.J., 1986. Medical Virology, third ed. Academic, New York.

These vaccines are usually administered with an **adjuvant** that boosts their immunogenicity by enhancing uptake by or stimulating DCs and macrophages. Aluminum hydroxide or aluminum phosphate **(alum)** is the most common and approved adjuvant. Many protein vaccines are precipitated onto alum to form particles large enough to promote their uptake by DCs and macrophages. Other adjuvants may stimulate Toll-like receptors or activate the inflammasome in these antigen-presenting cells to elicit responses that more closely resemble natural immunization. Experimental adjuvants include emulsions, virus-like particles (VLPs), liposomes (defined lipid complexes), bacterial cell wall components, molecular cages for antigen, polymeric surfactants, and attenuated forms of cholera toxin and *Escherichia coli* lymphotoxin. These latter molecules are potent adjuvants for secretory antibody (immunoglobulin [Ig]A) after intranasal or oral immunization. MF59 (squalene microfluidized in an oil and water emulsion) is used in the Fluad influenza vaccine and $AS01_b$, monophosphoryl lipid A (MPL) mixed with saponin in a liposome, is used for the Shingrix zoster vaccine. Use of the adjuvant promotes cell-mediated responses and allows reduction in the amount of antigen required to elicit protective immunity.

Inactivated, rather than live, vaccines are used to confer protection against toxins, most bacteria, and viruses that cannot be attenuated; they may cause recurrent infection, or have oncogenic potential. Inactivated vaccines are generally safe except in people who have allergic reactions to vaccine components. The disadvantages of inactivated vaccines are listed next and compared with live vaccines in Table 11.2:

1. Immunity is not usually lifelong.
2. Immunity may be only humoral (TH2) and not cell mediated.

TABLE 11.3 Bacterial Vaccines[a,b]

Bacteria (Disease)	Vaccine Components	Who Should Receive Vaccinations
Corynebacterium diphtheriae (diphtheria)	Toxoid	Children and adults
Clostridium tetani (tetanus)	Toxoid	Children and adults
Bordetella pertussis (pertussis)	Acellular	Children and teens
Haemophilus influenzae B (Hib)	Capsule polysaccharide-protein conjugate	Children
Neisseria meningitidis A, C, Y, W135 (meningococcal disease) *N. meningitidis* B	Capsule polysaccharide-protein conjugate, capsule polysaccharide Outer membrane proteins	People at high risk (e.g., those with asplenia), travelers to epidemic areas (e.g., military personnel), children
Streptococcus pneumoniae (pneumococcal disease; meningitis)	Capsule polysaccharides; capsule polysaccharide-protein conjugate	Children, people at high risk (e.g., those with asplenia), the elderly
Vibrio cholerae (cholera)	Killed cell	Travelers at risk to exposure
Salmonella typhi (typhoid)	Killed cell; polysaccharide	Travelers at risk to exposure, household contacts, sewage workers
Bacillus anthracis (anthrax)	Killed cell	Handlers of imported fur, military personnel
Yersinia pestis (plague)	Killed cell	Veterinarians, animal handlers
Francisella tularensis (tularemia)	Live attenuated	Animal handlers in endemic areas
Coxiella burnetii (Q fever)	Inactivated	Sheep handlers, laboratory personnel working with *C. burnetii*
Mycobacterium tuberculosis (tuberculosis)	Live attenuated bacillus Calmette-Guérin *M. bovis*	Not recommended in United States

[a]Listed in order of frequency of use.
[b]A more complete list can be found at www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/Vaccines/ApprovedProducts/ucm093833.htm (accessed September 18, 2019).

3. The vaccine does not elicit a local IgA response.
4. Booster shots are required.
5. Larger doses must be used.

There are three major types of inactivated bacterial vaccines: **toxoid** (inactivated toxins), **inactivated (killed)** bacteria, and surface components of the bacteria, such as **capsule or protein subunits.** The bacterial vaccines currently available are listed in Table 11.3. Most antibacterial vaccines protect against the pathogenic action of toxins.

Inactivated viral vaccines are available for **polio, hepatitis A, influenza, and rabies,** among other viruses. The Salk polio vaccine **(inactivated poliomyelitis vaccine [IPV])** is prepared through formaldehyde inactivation of virions. A rabies vaccine is prepared through the chemical inactivation of virions grown in human diploid tissue culture cells. Because of the slow course of rabies, the vaccine can be administered immediately after a person is exposed to the virus and still elicit a protective antibody response.

A **subunit vaccine** consists of the bacterial or viral components that elicit a protective immune response. Surface structures of bacteria and the viral attachment proteins (capsid or glycoproteins) elicit protective antibodies. T-cell antigens may also be included in a subunit vaccine. The immunogenic component can be isolated from the bacterium, virus, or virally infected cells by biochemical means, or the vaccine can be prepared through genetic engineering by the expression of cloned viral genes in bacteria or eukaryotic cells. For example, the HBV subunit vaccine was initially prepared from surface antigen obtained from human sera of chronic carriers of the virus. Today HBV vaccine is obtained from yeast bearing the HBsAg gene. The antigen is purified, chemically treated, and absorbed onto alum to be used as a vaccine. The subunit proteins used in the HBV and the HPV vaccines form **VLPs,** which are more immunogenic than individual proteins. Similarly, a vaccine to prevent recurrence of varicella zoster virus (VZV) (shingles) consists of the $AS101_b$ adjuvanted liposome formulation of VZV glycoprotein E.

Most of the inactivated annual influenza vaccines consist of a mixture of the hemagglutinin and neuraminidase proteins purified from embryonated eggs or tissue culture cells infected with different strains of influenza A and B or from genetically engineered protein. The vaccine mixture is formulated annually to elicit protection from the virus strains predicted to threaten the population in the coming year.

Vaccines against *H. influenzae* B, *Neisseria meningitidis* types, *Salmonella typhi,* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (23 strains) are prepared from capsular polysaccharides. Unfortunately, polysaccharides are generally poor immunogens (T-independent antigens). The meningococcal vaccine contains the polysaccharides of four major serotypes (A, C, Y, and W-135 but not B). The pneumococcal vaccine contains polysaccharides from 23 serotypes. The immunogenicity of a polysaccharide can be enhanced by making it into a T-dependent antigen by chemical linkage to a protein carrier **(conjugate vaccine)** (e.g., diphtheria toxoid or *N. meningitidis* outer membrane protein) (Fig. 11.2). The Hib polysaccharide-diphtheria toxoid complex is approved for administration to infants and children. An *S. pneumoniae* "pneumococcal" conjugate vaccine has been developed in which polysaccharide from the 13 most prevalent strains in the United States is attached to a nontoxic form of the diphtheria toxoid. This vaccine is available for use in infants and young children. The other polysaccharide vaccines are

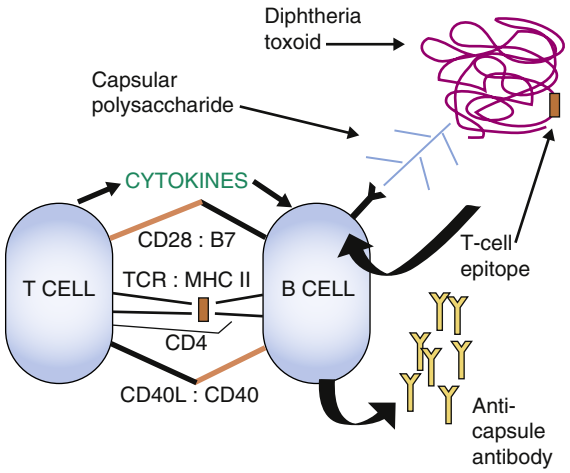


Fig. 11.2 Capsular polysaccharide conjugate vaccines. Capsular polysaccharides are poor immunogens, do not elicit T-cell help, and only elicit immunoglobulin (Ig)M without memory. Capsule polysaccharide conjugated to a protein (e.g., diphtheria toxoid) binds to surface anti-polysaccharide IgM on the B cell, the complex is internalized and processed, and then a peptide is presented on major histocompatibility complex II *(MHC II)* to CD4 T cells. The T cells become activated, produce cytokines, and promote immunoglobulin class switching for the polysaccharide-specific B cell. The B cell can become activated and make IgG, and memory cells will develop. *TCR,* T-cell receptor.

less immunogenic and are administered to individuals older than 2 years.

Live Vaccines

Live vaccines are prepared with microbes limited in their ability to cause disease (e.g., **avirulent** or **attenuated** microbes). Live vaccines are especially useful for protection against infections caused by enveloped viruses, which require T-cell immune responses for resolution of the infection. Immunization with a live vaccine resembles the natural infection in that the immune response progresses through the natural innate and antigen-specific immune responses so that humoral, cellular, and memory immune responses are developed. Immunity is generally long-lived and, depending on the route of administration, can mimic the normal immune response to the infecting agent. However, the following list includes three problems with live vaccines:

1. The vaccine virus may still be dangerous for immunosuppressed people or pregnant women who do not have the immunologic resources to resolve even a weakened virus infection.
2. The vaccine may revert to a virulent viral form.
3. The viability of the vaccine must be maintained.

Live bacterial vaccines are especially important for eliciting protection against intracellularly growing bacteria that require a combination of antibody and cell-mediated immune responses. These vaccines include the orally administered live, attenuated *S. typhi* strain (Ty2la) vaccine for typhoid; the bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine for tuberculosis, which consists of an attenuated strain of *Mycobacterium bovis;* and an attenuated tularemia vaccine. The BCG vaccine is not used in the United States because immunization is not always protective and people vaccinated with it show a false-positive skin reaction to the purified protein derivative (PPD) test, which is the screening test used to control tuberculosis in the United States.

Live virus vaccines consist of less virulent mutants **(attenuated)** of the wild-type virus, viruses from other species that share antigenic determinants (vaccinia for smallpox, bovine rotavirus), or genetically engineered viruses lacking virulence properties (see Fig. 11.1). Wild-type viruses are attenuated by growth in animals or embryonated eggs or tissue culture cells at nonphysiologic temperatures (25° C to 34° C) and away from the selective pressures of the host immune response. These conditions **select** for or allow the growth of viral strains (mutants) that (1) are less virulent because they grow poorly at 37° C (**temperature-sensitive strains** [e.g., measles vaccine] and cold-adapted strains [influenza vaccine]); (2) do not replicate well in any human cell **(host-range mutants);** (3) cannot escape immune control; or (4) can replicate at a benign site but do not disseminate, bind, or replicate in the target tissue characteristically affected by the disease (e.g., polio vaccine replicates in the gastrointestinal tract but does not reach or infect neurons). Table 11.4 lists examples of attenuated live virus vaccines currently in use.

The smallpox vaccine was conceived after Edward Jenner noted that cowpox (vaccinia), a virulent virus from another species that shares antigenic determinants with smallpox, caused benign infections in humans but conferred protective immunity against smallpox. Similarly, a mixture of genetic reassortant human and bovine rotaviruses are the basis for one of the current vaccines administered to protect infants against human rotavirus.

Albert Sabin developed the first live **oral polio vaccine (OPV)** in the 1950s. The attenuated virus vaccine was obtained by multiple passages of the three types of poliovirus through monkey kidney tissue culture cells. At least 57 mutations accumulated in the polio type 1 vaccine strain. When this vaccine is administered orally, IgA is secreted in the gut and IgG in the serum, providing protection along the normal route of infection by the wild-type virus. This vaccine is inexpensive, easy to administer, and relatively stable and can spread to contacts of the immunized individual. Effective immunization programs have led to the elimination of wild-type polio in most of the world. The IPV is now used in most of the world for routine well-baby immunizations because of the risk of vaccine-virus–induced polio disease by the OPV (see Table 11.2 and Fig. 46.10). Although the immune response elicited by the IPV can prevent spread of the virus to the central nervous system and muscles to protect the individual from disease, immunization does not prevent production of virus in the gastrointestinal tract and transmission to others in stool, as does the OPV.

The HBV and HPV vaccines are genetically engineered and grown in yeast cells. The viral attachment proteins from HBV (HBsAg) and high-risk HPV strains (L protein) form VLPs that are better immunogens than individual proteins. By limiting the spread of these viruses, these vaccines are also preventing their associated cancers (cervical carcinoma: HPV; primary hepatocellular carcinoma: HBV).

Live vaccines for measles, mumps, and rubella (administered together as the MMR vaccine), **varicella zoster,** and **influenza** elicit potent cellular immune responses and immune memory necessary for protection from these viruses. To elicit a mature T-cell response, the vaccine must

TABLE 11.4 Viral Vaccines[a,b]

Virus	Vaccine Components	Who Should Receive Vaccinations
Polio, inactivated	Trivalent (Salk vaccine)	Children
Attenuated polio	Live (oral polio vaccine, Sabin vaccine)	Children in epidemic areas
Measles	Attenuated	Children
Mumps	Attenuated	Children
Rubella	Attenuated	Children
Varicella zoster Zoster	Attenuated Larger dose Adjuvanted gpE	Children Adults (>60) years
Rotavirus	Human-bovine hybrids Attenuated	Infants
Human papillomavirus	VLP	Girls and boys ages 9-26 yr
Influenza	Inactivated or recombinant HA High dose or adjuvanted Attenuated (nasal spray)	Children, adults, especially medical personnel and the elderly Ages >65 Ages 2-50 yr
Hepatitis B	Subunit (VLP)	Newborns, health care workers, high-risk groups (e.g., sexually promiscuous, intravenous drug users)
Hepatitis A	Inactivated	Children, child care workers, travelers to endemic areas, Native Americans, and Alaskans
Adenovirus	Attenuated	Military personnel
Yellow fever	Attenuated	Travelers at risk to exposure, military personnel
Rabies	Inactivated	Anyone exposed to virus Preexposure: veterinarians, animal handlers
Smallpox	Live vaccinia virus	People seeking protection from bioterrorism, military
Japanese encephalitis	Inactivated	Travelers at risk to exposure

[a]Listed in order of frequency of use.
[b]A complete list can be found at www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/Vaccines/ApprovedProducts/ucm093833.htm.
gpE, Varicella zoster virus glycoprotein E; *VLP*, virus-like particle.

be administered after 1 year of age, when there will be no interference by maternal antibodies and cell-mediated immunity is sufficiently mature. A killed measles vaccine proved to be a failure because it conferred an incomplete immunity that induced more serious symptoms (atypical measles) on challenge with wild-type measles virus than the symptoms associated with the natural infection.

The initial live measles vaccine consisted of the Edmonston B strain, which was developed by Enders and colleagues. This virus underwent extensive passage at 35° C through primary human kidney cells, human amnion cells, and chicken embryo cells. The currently used Moraten (United States) and Schwarz (other countries) vaccine strains of measles were obtained by further passage of the Edmonston B strain in chick embryos at 32° C.

The mumps vaccine (Jeryl Lynn strain) and rubella vaccine (Wistar RA 27/3) viruses were also attenuated by extensive passage of the virus in cell culture. The varicella zoster vaccine uses the Oka strain, which is an attenuated virus. The varicella zoster vaccine is administered along with the MMR vaccine, or a stronger version is administered to adults to prevent zoster (shingles).

The live trivalent and tetravalent live attenuated influenza vaccines (LAIVs) are administered nasally within a mist or as drops and is cold adapted to 25° C. Unlike the inactivated vaccine, T- and B-cell responses and mucosal immunity are elicited by this vaccine. This vaccine can only be administered to individuals between ages 2 and 49 years.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS FOR VACCINATION

Molecular biology techniques are being used to develop new vaccines. New live vaccines can be created by genetic engineering mutations that inactivate or delete a virulence gene instead of through random attenuation of the virus by passage through tissue culture. Genes from infectious agents that cannot be properly attenuated can be inserted into safe viruses (e.g., vaccinia, canarypox, attenuated adenovirus) to form **hybrid virus vaccines.** This approach holds the promise of allowing the development of a polyvalent vaccine to many agents in a single, safe, inexpensive, and relatively stable vector. On infection, the hybrid virus vaccine need not complete a replication cycle; it simply promotes expression of the inserted gene to initiate an immune response to the antigens. A canarypox human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) vaccine followed by two booster immunizations with recombinant HIV gp120 protein showed modest but promising results. A vaccinia-based vaccine is used to immunize forest animals against rabies. Other viruses have also been considered as vectors.

Genetically engineered **subunit vaccines** are being developed through cloning of genes that encode immunogenic proteins into bacterial and eukaryotic vectors. The greatest difficulties in the development of such vaccines are (1) identifying the appropriate subunit or peptide immunogen that can elicit protective antibody and, ideally, T-cell responses, and (2) presenting the antigen in the correct conformation. Once identified, the gene can be isolated, cloned, and expressed in bacteria or yeast cells, and then large quantities of these proteins can be produced. The envelope protein gp120 of HIV, the hemagglutinin and neuraminidase of influenza, the G antigen of rabies, and the glycoprotein D of herpes simplex virus have been cloned, and their proteins have been generated in bacteria or eukaryotic cells for use (or potential use) as subunit vaccines.

Peptide subunit vaccines contain *specific epitopes* of microbial proteins that elicit neutralizing antibody or desired T-cell responses. To generate such a response, the peptide must contain sequences that bind to major histocompatibility (MHC) class I or MHC class II proteins on DCs for presentation and recognition by T cells to initiate an immune response. The immunogenicity of the peptide can be enhanced by its covalent attachment to a carrier protein (e.g., tetanus or diphtheria toxoid or keyhole limpet hemocyanin [KLH]), which is a ligand for a Toll-like receptor (e.g., flagellin) or an immunologic peptide that can specifically present the epitope to the appropriate immune response. Better vaccines are being developed as the mechanisms of antigen presentation and T-cell receptor–specific antigens are better understood.

Adjuvants in addition to alum are being developed to enhance the immunogenicity and direct the response of vaccines to a TH1-type or TH2-type response. These include activators of Toll-like receptors, such as oligodeoxynucleotides of CpG, derivatives of lipid A from lipopolysaccharide, cytokines, liposomes, nanoparticles, and others.

DNA and RNA vaccines offer great potential for immunization against infectious agents and for tumor immunotherapy that require T-cell responses. For these vaccines, the gene for a protein that elicits protective responses is cloned into a plasmid that allows the protein to be expressed in eukaryotic cells. For DNA vaccines, naked DNA is delivered into the muscle or skin of the vaccine recipient, in which the DNA is taken up by cells, the gene is expressed, and the protein is produced. It also is presented to and activates T-cell responses. DNA vaccines usually require a boost with antigenic protein to produce antibody. RNA vaccines resemble noninfectious RNA viruses in which the gene for the immunogen is combined with sequences that promote its expression or replication in the cell, and the RNA is expressed and purified and may be administered in a viral envelope-like liposome. The potency of these vaccines can be enhanced by including genes for immunoenhancing cytokines.

Autologous activated DCs loaded with tumor antigens and activated antitumor T cells can be prepared in the laboratory from the patient's own cells and injected back into the cancer patient as immunotherapy. These approaches also have potential for antiviral and other antimicrobial infections requiring cell-mediated immune control.

Reverse vaccinology was used to develop a vaccine for *N. meningitidis* B. Based on protein properties predicted from the gene sequence, thousands of proteins were tested for their ability to confer protection against infection to identify protein candidates. Similarly, antibody from survivors of infections with significant pathogens can be used to identify appropriate immunogens. With the advent of this and other new technology, it should be possible to develop vaccines against infectious agents such as *S. mutans* (to prevent tooth decay), the herpesviruses, HIV, and parasites such as *Plasmodium falciparum* (malaria) and *Leishmania*. In fact, it should be possible to produce a vaccine for almost any infectious agent once the appropriate protective immunogen is identified and its gene isolated.

Immunization Programs

An effective vaccine program can save millions of dollars in health care costs. Such a program not only protects each vaccinated person against infection and disease but also reduces the number of susceptible people in the population, preventing the spread of the infectious agent within the population. Although immunization may be the best means of protecting people against infection, vaccines cannot be developed for all infectious agents because it is very time-consuming and costly to develop vaccines. Box 11.1 lists the considerations that are weighed in the choice of a candidate for a vaccine program.

Natural smallpox was eliminated by means of an effective vaccine program because it was a good candidate for such a program; the virus existed in only one serotype, symptoms were always present in infected people, and the vaccine was relatively benign and stable. However, its elimination came about only as the result of a concerted cooperative effort on the part of the WHO and local health agencies worldwide. Rhinovirus is an example of a poor candidate for vaccine development because the viral disease is not serious and there are too many serotypes for vaccination to be successful. Practical aspects of and problems with vaccine development are listed in Box 11.2.

From the standpoint of the individual, the ideal vaccine should elicit dependable lifelong immunity to infection, without serious side effects. Factors that influence the success of an immunization program include not only the composition of the vaccine but also the timing, site, conditions of its administration, and the age and gender of the recipients.

Recommended schedules of vaccinations for children are given in Fig. 11.3. Tables of recommended schedules for vaccination of children, teens, adults, and special cases are

BOX 11.1 Properties of Ideal Candidate for Vaccine Development

Microbe causes significant illness
Microbe exists as only one serotype
Microbe only infects humans
Antibody blocks infection or systemic spread
Vaccine is heat stable so that it can be transported to endemic areas
Immunization protects recipient and population

BOX 11.2 Problems with Vaccines

Live vaccine can occasionally revert to virulent forms.
Vaccinating an immunocompromised person with a live vaccine can be life-threatening.
Side effects to vaccination can occur; these include hypersensitivity and allergic reactions to the antigen, to nonmicrobial material in the vaccine, and to contaminants (e.g., eggs).
Vaccine development is high risk and very expensive.
Misinformation about safety causes underutilization of important vaccines.
Microbes with many serotypes are difficult to control with vaccination.

provided annually by the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. **Booster immunizations** of inactivated vaccines and the live measles vaccine are required later in life. Men and women younger than age 26 should receive the HPV vaccine, and college students should receive the meningococcal vaccine or a booster. Adults should be immunized with vaccines for *S. pneumoniae* (pneumococcus), influenza, rabies, varicella zoster, HBV, and other diseases, depending on their age, jobs, the type of traveling they do, and other risk factors that may make them particularly susceptible to specific infectious agents.

Despite the incredible progress that has been made to protect the population from serious disease with vaccines, complacency and misinformation regarding safety issues with vaccines have deterred some individuals and their children from being vaccinated. This puts the individual at risk for disease and can prevent the establishment of herd immunity, which can result in outbreaks and put infants at increased risk for these diseases. For example, unless 95% of the population is immunized, measles will cause an outbreak. In 2018, an outbreak of measles reached epidemic proportions in Europe with over 60,000 cases and more than 50 deaths caused by poor vaccine compliance.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

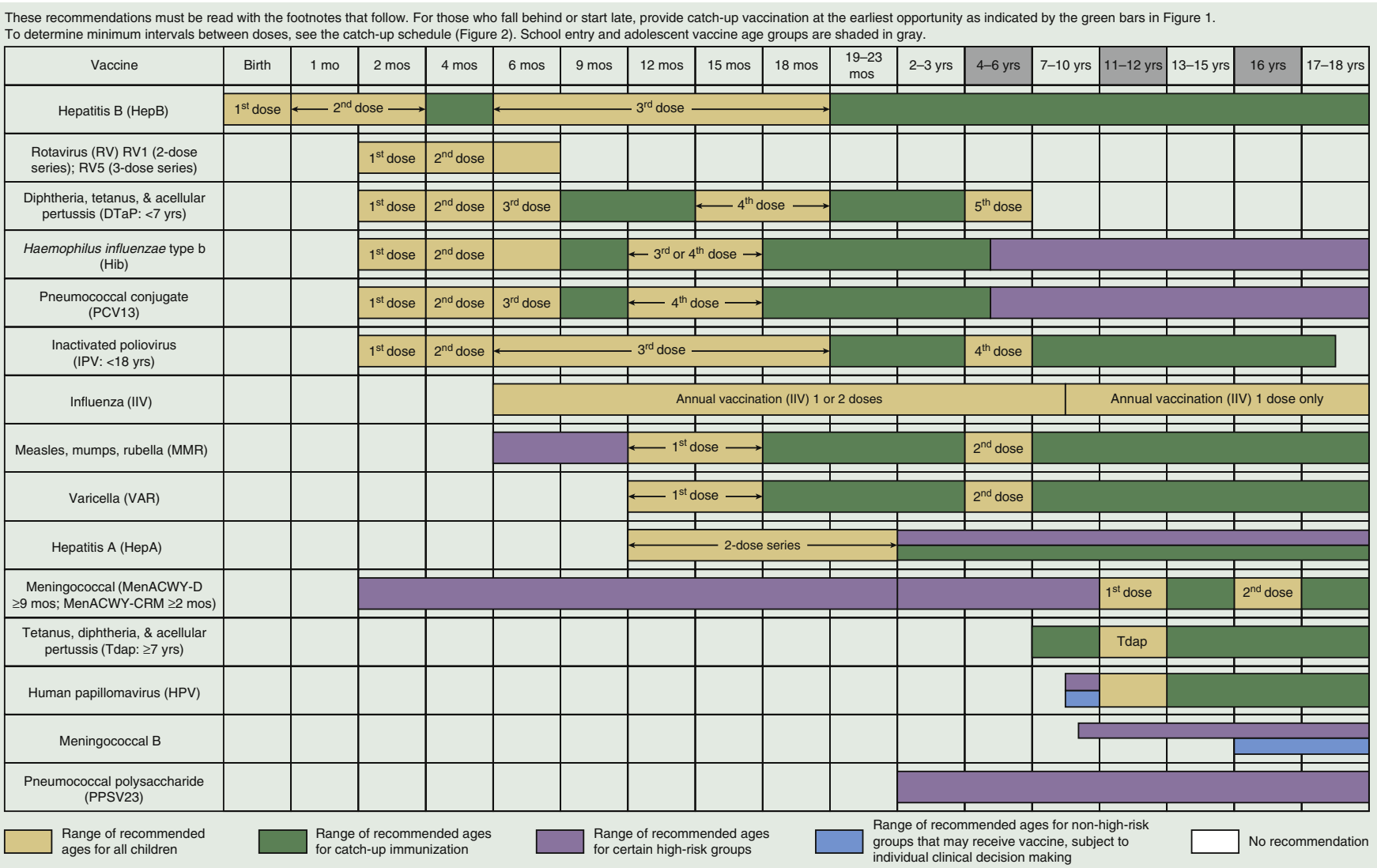


Fig. 11.3 Recommended childhood immunization schedule from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Vaccines are listed at the ages routinely recommended for their administration. Bars indicate the range of acceptable ages for vaccination. References to footnotes refers to the website indicated below. *DTaP,* Diphtheria, tetanus, and acellular pertussis; *HepA,* hepatitis A; *HepB,* hepatitis B; *Hib, Haemophilus influenzae* type B; *IPV,* inactivated poliovirus; *MCV4,* quadrivalent conjugated meningococcal; *MMR,* measles, mumps, rubella; *PCV,* pneumococcal conjugate; *PPV,* pneumococcal polysaccharide; *Rota,* rotavirus. (From the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, 2018. Recommended immunization schedule for persons aged 0 through 6 years—United States, 2019 [PDF]. https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/hcp/imz/child-adolescent.html#birth-15. Accessed September 18, 2019.

Questions

1. Why is an inactivated rather than a live vaccine used for the following immunizations: rabies, influenza, tetanus, HBV, Hib, diphtheria, polio, and pertussis?

2. Tetanus is treated with passive immunization and prevented by active immunization. Compare the nature and function of each of these therapies.

3. The inactivated polio vaccine is administered intramuscularly, whereas the live polio vaccine is administered as an oral vaccine. How do the course of the immune response and the immunoglobulins produced in response to each vaccine differ? What step in the poliovirus infection is blocked in a person vaccinated by each vaccine?

4. Why have large-scale vaccine programs not been developed for rhinovirus, herpes simplex virus, and respiratory syncytial virus?

5. Describe the public or personal health benefits that justify development of the following major vaccine programs: measles, mumps, rubella, polio, smallpox, tetanus, and pertussis.

6. Immunization with the capsular polysaccharide and the conjugated polysaccharide vaccines for *S. pneumoniae* elicit different types of immunity and are indicated for different people. Who are the recipients of these vaccines? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each?

Bibliography

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atkinson, W., Wolfe, S., Hamborsky, J. (Eds.), 2015. Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases (the Pink Book), thirteenth ed. Public Health Foundation, Washington, DC. https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/index.html.

Plotkin, S.A., Orenstein, W.A., Offitt, P.A., Edwards, K.M., 2018. Plotkin's Vaccines, seventh ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Vaccines make good immune theater: immunization as described in a three-act play. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 14, 35–45.

Rosenthal, K.S., Zimmerman, D.H., 2006. Vaccines: all things considered. Clin. Vaccine. Immunol. 13, 821–829.

Websites

Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices: Statements. https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/recs/index.html. Accessed December 12, 2018.

American Academy of Pediatrics, Status of recently submitted, licensed, and recommended vaccines & biologics. https://redbook.solutions.aap.org/book.aspx?bookid=2205. Accessed December 12, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Manual for the surveillance of vaccine-preventable diseases, fourth ed, 2008–2009; fifth ed, 2018 https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/surv-manual/index.html. Accessed December 12, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Vaccines & immunizations. www.cdc.gov/vaccines/default.htm. Accessed December 12, 2018.

Immunization Action Coalition, Vaccination information statements. www.immunize.org/vis. Accessed December 12, 2018.

Immunization Action Coalition, Vaccine information for the public and health professionals: vaccine-preventable disease photos. www.vaccineinformation.org/photos/index.asp. Accessed December 12, 2018.

National Foundation for Infectious Diseases, Fact sheets. http://www.nfid.org/about-vaccines. Accessed 12 December 2018.

World Health Organization, Immunization service delivery. https://www.who.int/immunization/en/. Accessed December 12, 2018.

SECTION 4

Bacteriology

SECTION OUTLINE

12 Bacterial Classification, Structure, and Replication

The structural differences between bacteria and eukaryotes trigger host protections in humans and provide the basis for much of the antimicrobial therapy. Designation of bacteria as gram-positive, gram-negative or acid-fast staining indicates the basis for differences in means of transmission, disease presentation, and antibiotic sensitivities. The outer structures of bacteria provide structure and transport functions, the means for interaction with each other and the host as virulence factors, and comprise pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMP) that trigger innate and immune responses.

The smallest bacteria *(Chlamydia* and *Rickettsia)* are just 0.1 to 0.2 μm in diameter, whereas larger bacteria may be many microns in length. A newly described species is hundreds of times larger than the average bacterial cell and is visible to the naked eye. Most species, however, are approximately 1 μm in diameter and are therefore visible with the use of the light microscope, which has a resolution of 0.2 μm. In comparison, animal and plant cells are much larger, ranging from 7 μm (the diameter of a red blood cell) to several feet (the length of certain nerve cells).

Differences between Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes

Cells from animals, plants, and fungi are **eukaryotes** (Greek for "true nucleus"), whereas bacteria, archae, and blue-green algae belong to the **prokaryotes** (Greek for "primitive nucleus"). The **archae** (archaebacteria) resemble bacteria in most ways but represent a domain unique from bacteria and eukaryotes.

Prokaryotes differ from eukaryotes in several ways (Table 12.1 and Fig. 12.1). Bacteria lack a nucleus and other organelles. The chromosome of a typical bacterium, such as *Escherichia coli,* is a single, double-stranded, circular molecule of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) containing approximately 5 million base pairs, with an approximate length of 1.3 mm (i.e., nearly 1000 times the diameter of the cell). The smallest bacterial chromosomes (from mycoplasmas) are approximately one-fourth of this size. In comparison, humans have two copies of 23 chromosomes, which represent 2.9×10^9 base pairs, 990 mm in length. Bacteria use a smaller ribosome, the 70S ribosome, and in most bacteria, a unique meshlike peptidoglycan cell wall surrounds the membranes to protect them against the environment. Bacteria can survive and, in some cases, grow in hostile environments in which the osmotic pressure outside the cell is so low that most eukaryotic cells would lyse, at temperature extremes (both hot and cold), with dryness, and with very dilute and diverse energy sources. Bacteria have evolved their structures and functions to adapt to these conditions. Several of these distinctions provide the basis for antimicrobial action.

Bacterial Classification

Bacteria can be classified by their macroscopic and microscopic appearance, by characteristic growth and metabolic properties, by their antigenicity, and finally by their genotype.

MACROSCOPIC AND MICROSCOPIC DISTINCTION

The initial distinction between bacteria can be made by growth characteristics on different nutrient and selective media. Bacteria grow in colonies; each colony is like a city of as many as a million or more organisms. The sum of their characteristics provides the colony with distinguishing characteristics such as color, size, shape, and smell. The bacteria's ability to resist certain antibiotics, ferment specific sugars (e.g., lactose, to distinguish *E. coli* from *Salmonella*), to lyse erythrocytes (streptococcal hemolytic properties), or to hydrolyze lipids (e.g., clostridial lipase) can be determined using the appropriate growth media.

The microscopic appearance, including size, shape, and configuration of the organisms (cocci, rods, curved, or spiral), and their ability to retain the Gram stain (gram positive or gram negative) are the primary means for distinguishing bacteria (a library of images are available at http://studentconsult.inkling.com/). A spherical bacterium such as *Staphylococcus* is a coccus, a rod-shaped bacterium such as *E. coli* is a bacillus, and the snakelike treponeme is a spirillum. In addition, *Nocardia* and *Actinomyces* species have branched filamentous appearances similar to those of fungi. Some bacteria form aggregates, such as the grapelike clusters of *Staphylococcus aureus* or chains, like *Streptococcus pyogenes*, or diplococcus (two cells together) as for *S. pneumoniae and Neisseria* species.

Gram stain is a rapid, powerful, easy test that allows clinicians to distinguish between the two major classes of bacteria, develop an initial diagnosis, and initiate therapy based on inherent differences in the bacteria (Fig. 12.2). Bacteria are heat fixed or otherwise dried onto a slide; stained with **crystal violet** (Fig. 12.3), which is a stain that is precipitated with **iodine;** and then the unbound and excess stain is removed by washing with the acetone-based **decolorizer** and water. A red counterstain, **safranin,** is added to stain any decolorized cells. This process takes less than 10 minutes.

For **gram-positive bacteria,** which turn **purple,** the stain gets trapped in a thick, cross-linked, meshlike structure (the peptidoglycan layer), which surrounds the cell. **Gram-negative bacteria** have a thin peptidoglycan layer that does not retain the crystal violet stain, so the cells must be counterstained with safranin and turned red (Fig. 12.3). A mnemonic device that may help is **"P-PURPLE-POSITIVE."**

Gram staining loses dependability for bacteria that are starved (e.g., old or stationary-phase cultures) or treated

Table 12.1 Major Characteristics of Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes

Characteristic	Eukaryote	Prokaryote
Major groups	Algae, fungi, protozoa, plants, animals	Bacteria
Size (approximate)	>5 μm	0.5-3.0 μm
NUCLEAR STRUCTURES		
Nucleus	Classic membrane	No nuclear membrane
Chromosomes	Strands of DNA diploid genome	Single, circular DNA haploid genome
CYTOPLASMIC STRUCTURES		
Mitochondria	Present	Absent
Golgi bodies	Present	Absent
Endoplasmic reticulum	Present	Absent
Ribosomes (sedimentation coefficient)	80S (60S + 40S)	70S (50S + 30S)
Cytoplasmic membrane	Contains sterols	Does not contain sterols (except mycoplasma)
Cell wall	Present for fungi; otherwise absent	Complex structure containing protein and peptidoglycan. May contain polysaccharides, teichoic acid, lipopolysaccharide
Reproduction	Sexual and asexual	Asexual (binary fission)
Movement	Complex flagellum, if present	Simple flagellum, if present
Electron transport (ATP production)	Mitochondria	Cytoplasmic membrane

ATP, Adenosine triphosphate.

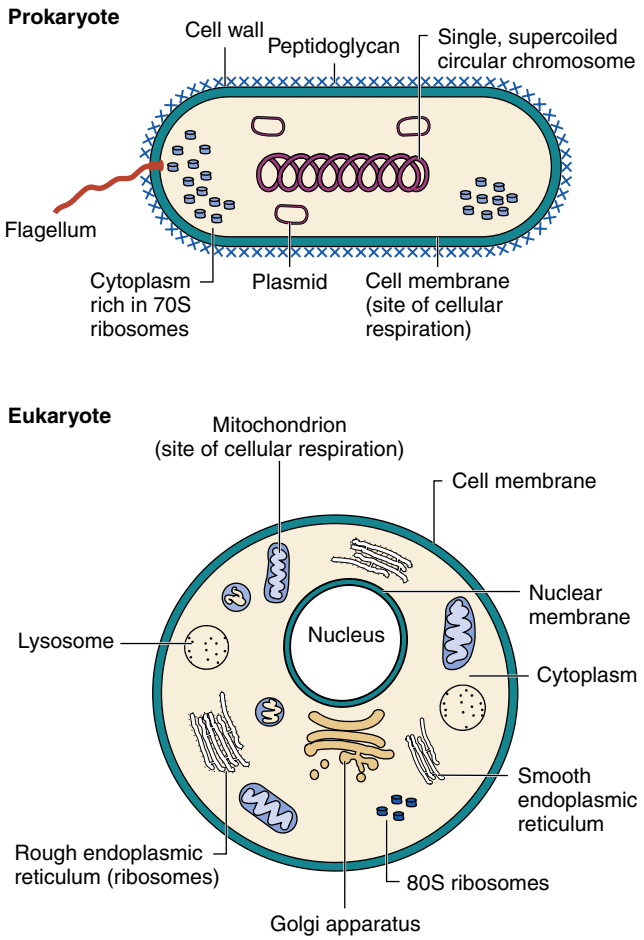


Fig. 12.1 Major features of prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

with antibiotics because of degradation of the peptidoglycan. Bacteria that cannot be classified by Gram staining include mycobacteria, which have a waxy outer shell and are distinguished with the acid-fast stain, and mycoplasmas, which have no peptidoglycan.

METABOLIC, ANTIGENIC, AND GENETIC DISTINCTION

The next level of classification is based on the structural and metabolic signature of the bacteria, including susceptibility to detergents (e.g., bile acids), requirement for anaerobic or aerobic environments, requirement for specific nutrients (e.g., ability to ferment specific carbohydrates or use different compounds as a source of carbon for growth), and production of characteristic metabolic products (acid, alcohols) and specific enzymes (e.g., staphylococcal catalase). Automated procedures for distinguishing enteric and other bacteria have been developed; they analyze the growth in different media and their microbial products and provide a numerical biotype for each of the bacteria.

A particular strain of bacteria can be distinguished using antibodies to detect characteristic antigens on the bacteria **(serotyping).** These serologic tests also can be used to identify organisms that are difficult (e.g., *Treponema pallidum,* the organism responsible for syphilis) or too dangerous (e.g., *Francisella,* the organism that causes tularemia), do not grow in the laboratory, are associated with specific disease syndromes (e.g., *E. coli* serotype O157:H7, responsible for hemorrhagic colitis), or need to be identified rapidly (e.g., *S. pyogenes,* responsible for streptococcal pharyngitis). Serotyping also is used to subdivide bacteria below the species level for epidemiologic purposes.

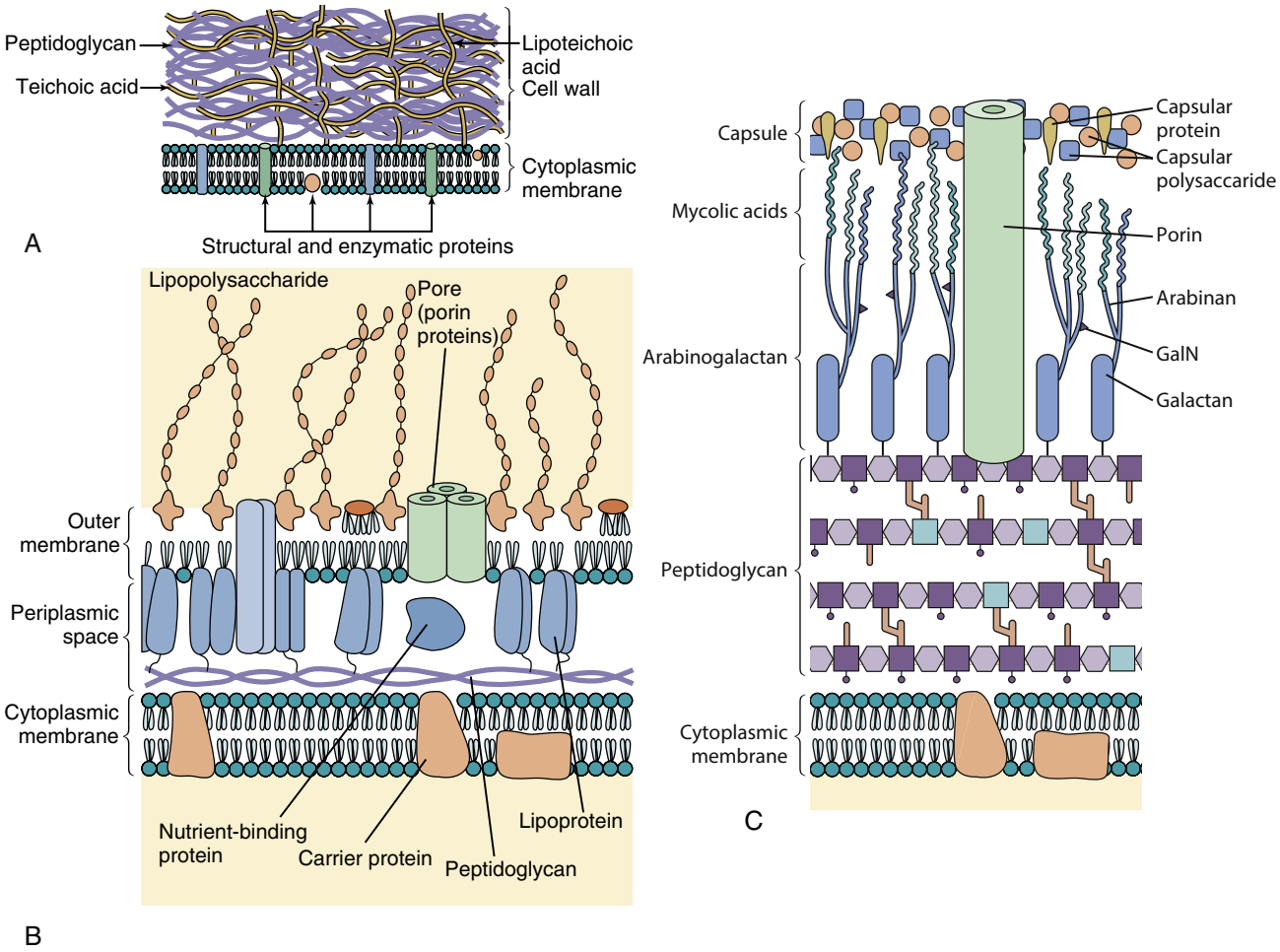


Fig. 12.2 Comparison of gram-positive, gram-negative, and mycobacterial cell walls. (A) A gram-positive bacterium has a thick peptidoglycan layer that contains teichoic and lipoteichoic acids. (B) A gram-negative bacterium has a thin peptidoglycan layer and an outer membrane that contains lipopolysaccharide, phospholipids, and proteins. The periplasmic space between the cytoplasmic and outer membranes contains transport, degradative, and cell wall synthetic proteins. The outer membrane is joined to the cytoplasmic membrane at adhesion points and is attached to the peptidoglycan by lipoprotein links. (C) Mycobacterial cell walls confer acid-fast staining to the bacteria. They have a complex structure with a lipid rich waxy outer layer of mycolic acids with porins that permeate that layer.

The most precise method for classifying bacteria is by analysis of their genetic material or proteins. Specific characteristic DNA sequences can be detected by **DNA hybridization, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification, DNA sequencing,** and related techniques described in Chapter 5. Characteristic protein profiles of bacteria also can be rapidly analyzed by mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF). These techniques do not require living or growing bacteria and can be used for rapid detection and identification of slow-growing organisms (e.g., mycobacteria, fungi) or analysis of pathology samples of even very virulent bacteria. Ribosomal DNA sequences can be determined to identify a family or genus and distinguish a species or subspecies. In recent years the technical aspects of these methods have been simplified and have become sufficiently cost effective so that most clinical laboratories use variations of these methods in their day-to-day practice.

Bacterial Structure

The cytoplasm of bacteria is encased by a cytoplasmic membrane, which is surrounded by a cell wall consisting of peptidoglycan that is thick for gram-positive and thin for gram-negative bacteria. A periplasmic space and an outer membrane surround the peptidoglycan of gram-negative bacteria. For some bacteria, a capsule surrounds the entire bacteria.

CYTOPLASMIC STRUCTURES

The cytoplasm of the bacterial cell contains the DNA chromosome, messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA), ribosomes, proteins, and metabolites (Fig. 12.4). Unlike eukaryotes, most **bacterial chromosomes** are a single, double-stranded circle that is contained not in a nucleus but in a discrete area known as the **nucleoid.** Some bacteria may have two or three circular chromosomes or even a single linear chromosome. Histones are not present to maintain the conformation of the DNA, and the DNA does not form nucleosomes. **Plasmids,** which are smaller, circular, extrachromosomal DNAs, also may be present. Plasmids, although not usually essential for cellular survival, often provide a selective advantage; many of them confer resistance to one or more antibiotics.

The lack of a nuclear membrane simplifies the requirements and control mechanisms for the synthesis of proteins.

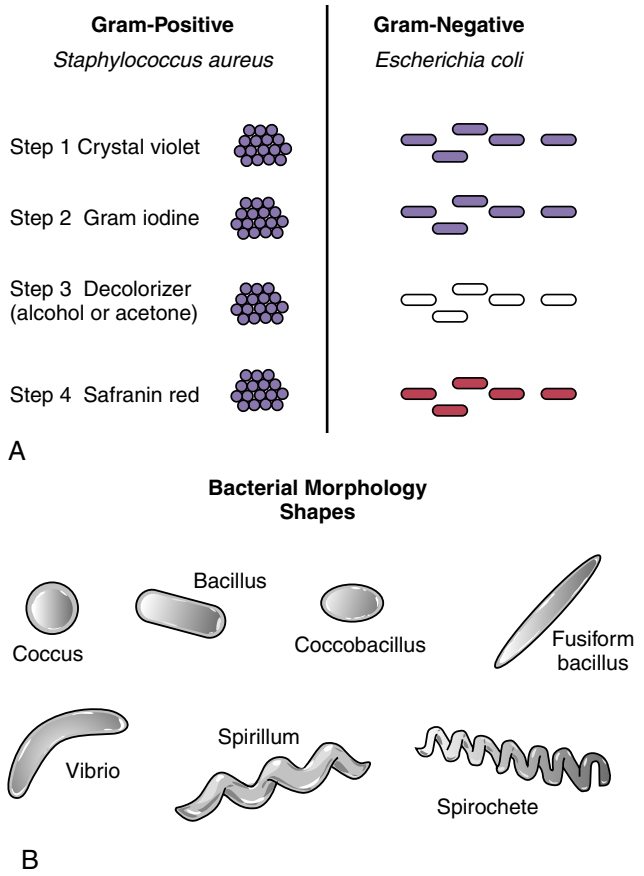


Fig. 12.3 Gram-stain morphology of bacteria. (A) The crystal violet of the Gram stain is precipitated by Gram iodine and is trapped in the thick peptidoglycan layer in gram-positive bacteria. The decolorizer disperses the gram-negative outer membrane and washes the crystal violet from the thin layer of peptidoglycan. Gram-negative bacteria are visualized by the red counterstain. (B) Bacterial morphologies.

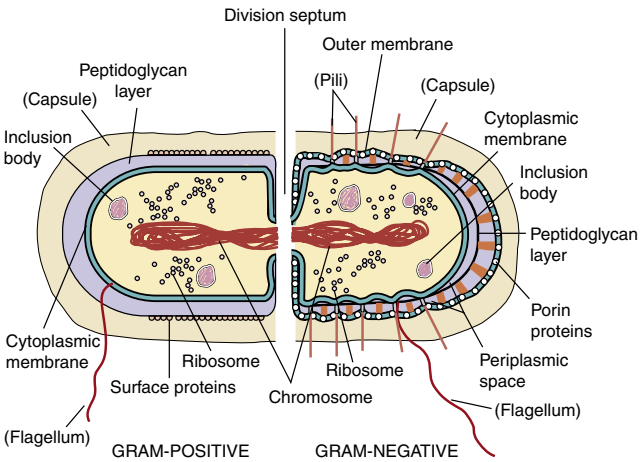


Fig. 12.4 Gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. A gram-positive bacterium has a thick layer of peptidoglycan (filling the purple space) *(left)*. A gram-negative bacterium has a thin peptidoglycan layer *(single black line)* and an outer membrane *(right)*. Structures in parentheses are not found in all bacteria. On cell division, the membrane and peptidoglycan grow toward each other to form a division septum to separate the daughter cells.

Without a nuclear membrane, transcription and translation are coupled; in other words, ribosomes can bind to the mRNA, and protein can be made as the mRNA is being synthesized and still attached to the DNA.

The **bacterial ribosome** consists of 30S + 50S subunits, forming a **70S ribosome**. This is unlike the eukaryotic 80S (40S + 60S) ribosome. The proteins and RNA of the bacterial ribosome are significantly different from those of eukaryotic ribosomes and are major targets for antibacterial drugs.

The **cytoplasmic membrane** has a lipid bilayer structure similar to the structure of the eukaryotic membranes, but it contains no steroids (e.g., cholesterol); mycoplasmas are the exception to this rule. The cytoplasmic membrane is responsible for many of the functions attributable to organelles in eukaryotes. These tasks include electron transport and energy production, which are normally achieved in the mitochondria. In addition, the membrane contains transport proteins that allow uptake of metabolites and release of other substances, ion pumps to maintain a membrane potential, and enzymes. The inside of the membrane is lined with actin-like protein filaments that help determine the shape of the bacteria and the site of septum formation for cell division. These filaments determine the spiral shape of treponemes.

CELL WALL

The structure (Table 12.2), components, and functions (Table 12.3) of the cell wall distinguish gram-positive from gram-negative bacteria. Cell wall components also are unique to bacteria, and their repetitive structures bind to pathogen pattern receptors on human cells to elicit innate protective responses. The important differences in cell wall for gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria are outlined in Table 12.4.

Rigid **peptidoglycan (murein)** layers surround the cytoplasmic membranes of most prokaryotes. The exceptions are *Archaea* organisms (which contain pseudoglycans or pseudomureins related to peptidoglycan) and mycoplasmas (which have no peptidoglycan). Because the peptidoglycan provides rigidity, it also helps determine the shape of the particular bacterial cell. Proteins and other molecules may be attached to the peptidoglycan.

GRAM-POSITIVE BACTERIA

A gram-positive bacterium has a *thick, multilayered cell wall consisting mainly of peptidoglycan* (150 to 500 Å) surrounding the cytoplasmic membrane (Fig. 12.2 and 12.4). The peptidoglycan is a meshlike exoskeleton similar in function to the exoskeleton of an insect. Unlike the exoskeleton of the insect, however, the peptidoglycan of the cell is sufficiently porous to allow diffusion of metabolites to the plasma membrane. The glycan chains extend out from the plasma membrane like bristles that are cross-linked with short peptide chains. The **peptidoglycan is essential** for structure, replication, and survival in the normally hostile conditions in which bacteria grow.

The peptidoglycan can be degraded by **lysozyme.** Lysozyme is an enzyme in human tears and mucus, but it also is produced by bacteria and other organisms. Lysozyme cleaves the glycan backbone of the peptidoglycan. Without the peptidoglycan, the bacteria succumb to the large

Table 12.2 Bacterial Membrane Structures

Structure	Chemical Constituents	Functions
Plasma membrane	Phospholipids, proteins, and enzymes	Containment, generation of energy, membrane potential, and transport
CELL WALL		
Gram-Positive Bacteria		
Peptidoglycan	Multiple layers of glycan chains of GlcNAc and MurNAc cross-linked by peptide bridge	Cell shape and structure; protection from environment and complement killing
Teichoic acid	Polyribitol phosphate or glycerol phosphate cross-linked to peptidoglycan	Strengthens cell wall; calcium ion sequestration
Lipoteichoic acid	Lipid-linked teichoic acid	Activator of innate host protections
Proteins	Bound to peptidoglycan or teichoic acid	Immune evasion, adhesion, etc.
Gram-Negative Bacteria		
Peptidoglycan	Thinner version of that found in gram-positive bacteria	Cell shape and structure
Periplasmic space	transport proteins, enzymes	Enzymes involved in transport, degradation, and synthesis
Outer membrane	Phospholipids, LPS, proteins, enzymes	Cell structure; protection from host environment
Proteins	Porin channel	Permeation of small hydrophilic molecules; restricts some antibiotics
	Secretory devices (types I–V)	Penetrates and delivers proteins across membranes, including virulence factors
	Lipoprotein	Outer membrane link to peptidoglycan
LPS	Lipid A, core polysaccharide, O antigen	Outer membrane structure; barrier protection, potent activator of innate host responses
Phospholipids	With saturated fatty acids	Structure
OTHER STRUCTURES		
Capsule	Polysaccharides or polypeptides (anthrax)	Antiphagocytic
Biofilm	Polysaccharides	Protection of colony from environment, antimicrobials, and host response
Pili	Pilin, adhesins	Adherence, sex pili
Flagellum	Motor proteins, flagellin	Movement, chemotaxis
Proteins	M protein of streptococci (for example)	Immune evasion, adhesion, enzymes, etc.

GlcNAc, N-Acetylglucosamine; *LPS,* lipopolysaccharide; *MurNAc, N*-acetylmuramic acid.

osmotic pressure differences across the cytoplasmic membrane and lyse. Removal of the cell wall produces a **protoplast** that lyses unless it is osmotically stabilized.

The gram-positive cell wall also may include other components such as proteins, teichoic and lipoteichoic acids, and complex polysaccharides (usually called **C polysaccharides**). Virulence proteins, such as the M protein of streptococci and protein A of *S. aureus,* are covalently bound to the peptidoglycan as are proteins that promote adherence to human cells. **Teichoic acids** are water-soluble anionic polymers of polyol phosphates that are covalently linked to the peptidoglycan and essential to cell viability. **Lipoteichoic acids** have a fatty acid and are anchored in the cytoplasmic membrane. These molecules are common surface antigens that distinguish bacterial serotypes and promote attachment to other bacteria and to specific receptors on mammalian cell surfaces (adherence). Teichoic acids are important factors in virulence. Lipoteichoic acids are shed into the media and the host and, although weaker, they bind to pathogen pattern receptors and initiate innate protective host responses similar to endotoxin.

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA

Gram-negative cell walls are more complex than gram-positive cell walls, both structurally and chemically (see Fig. 12.2 and 12. 4). Immediately external to the cytoplasmic membrane is a *thin peptidoglycan layer* that accounts for only 5% to 10% of the gram-negative cell wall by weight. There are *no teichoic or lipoteichoic acids* in the gram-negative cell wall. External to the peptidoglycan layer is the **outer membrane,** which is unique to gram-negative bacteria. The area between the external surface of the cytoplasmic membrane and the internal surface of the outer membrane is referred to as the **periplasmic space.** This space is actually a compartment containing components of transport systems for iron, proteins, sugars and other metabolites, and a variety of hydrolytic enzymes that are important to the cell for the breakdown of large macromolecules for metabolism. These enzymes typically include proteases, phosphatases, lipases, nucleases, and carbohydrate-degrading enzymes. In the case of pathogenic gram-negative species, many of the virulence factors, such as

Table 12.3 Functions of the Bacterial Envelope

Function	Component
STRUCTURE	
Rigidity	All
Packaging of internal contents	All
BACTERIAL FUNCTIONS	
Permeability barrier	Outer membrane and plasma membrane
Metabolite uptake	Membranes and periplasmic transport proteins, porins, permeases
Energy production	Plasma membrane
Motility	Flagella
Mating	Pili
HOST INTERACTION	
Adhesion to host cells	Pili, proteins, teichoic acid
Immune recognition by host	All outer structures and peptidoglycan
Escape from host immune protections	
Antibody	Protein A, capsule
Phagocytosis	Capsule, M protein
Complement	Gram-positive peptidoglycan
MEDICAL RELEVANCE	
Antibiotic targets	Peptidoglycan synthesis
Antibiotic resistance	Outer membrane barrier

Table 12.4 Comparison of Gram-Positive and Gram-Negative Bacteria

Characteristic	Gram-Positive	Gram-Negative
Outer membrane	–	+
Peptidoglycan	Thick	Thin
Lipopolysaccharide	–	+
Endotoxin	–	+
Teichoic acid	Often present	–
Sporulation	Some bacteria	–
Capsule	Sometimes present	Sometimes present
Lysozyme	Sensitive	Resistant
Antibacterial activity of penicillin	More susceptible	More resistant
Susceptibility to drying and physical disruption	less	more
Exotoxin production	Some strains	Some strains

collagenases, hyaluronidases, proteases, and β-lactamase, are in the periplasmic space.

The gram-negative cell wall also is traversed by different transport systems that provide mechanisms for the uptake and release of different metabolites and other compounds. The membranes also are transversed by **type I to V secretion devices.** Production of the secretion devices may be induced during infection and contribute to the virulence of the microbe by transporting molecules that facilitate bacterial adhesion or intracellular growth. **The type III secretion device** is a major virulence factor for some bacteria, with a complex structure that traverses both the inner and outer membranes and looks and acts like a syringe to inject proteins into other cells, bacterial and human (see Fig. 14-2).

As mentioned previously, outer membranes (see Fig. 12.2) are unique to gram-negative bacteria. The outer membrane is like a stiff canvas sack around the bacteria. *The outer membrane maintains the bacterial structure and is a permeability barrier to large molecules* (e.g., proteins such as lysozyme) *and hydrophobic molecules* (e.g., some antimicrobials). It also provides protection from adverse environmental conditions, such as the digestive system of the host (important for Enterobacteriaceae organisms). The outer membrane has an asymmetric bilayer structure that differs from any other biologic membrane. The inner leaflet contains phospholipids normally found in bacterial membranes; however, the outer leaflet is composed primarily of **lipopolysaccharide (LPS).** Except for those LPS molecules in the process of synthesis, the outer leaflet of the outer membrane is the only location in which LPS molecules are found.

LPS also is called **endotoxin,** which is a powerful stimulator of innate and immune responses. LPS is shed from the bacteria into the host. LPS binds to pathogen pattern receptors and activates B cells and induces macrophage, dendritic, and other cells to release interleukin (IL)-1, IL-6, tumor necrosis factor (TNF), and other factors. LPS can induce fever and shock. The **Shwartzman reaction** (disseminated intravascular coagulation) follows the release of large amounts of endotoxin into the bloodstream. *Neisseria* bacteria shed large amounts of a related truncated molecule **(lipooligosaccharide [LOS]),** resulting in fever and severe symptoms.

The variety of proteins found in gram-negative outer membranes is limited, but several of the proteins are present in high concentration, resulting in a higher total protein content than that of the cytoplasmic membrane. Many of the proteins traverse the entire lipid bilayer and are thus transmembrane proteins. A group of these proteins is known as **porins** because they form pores **that allow diffusion of hydrophilic molecules less than 700 Da in mass through the membrane.** *The porin channel restricts entry of large and hydrophobic molecules including many antimicrobials.* The outer membrane also contains structural proteins, receptor molecules for bacteriophages, and other ligands and components of transport and secretory systems.

The outer membrane is connected to the cytoplasmic membrane at adhesion sites and is tied to the peptidoglycan by **lipoprotein.** The lipoprotein is covalently attached to the peptidoglycan and is anchored in the outer membrane. The adhesion sites provide a membranous route for the delivery of newly synthesized outer membrane components to the outer membrane.

The outer membrane is held together by divalent cation (Mg^{2+} and Ca^{2+}) linkages between phosphates on LPS molecules and hydrophobic interactions between the LPS and proteins. These interactions produce a stiff, strong membrane that can be disrupted by antibiotics (e.g., polymyxin) or by the removal of Mg and Ca ions (chelation with ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid [EDTA] or tetracycline). Disruption of the outer membrane weakens the bacteria and allows the permeability of large or hydrophobic molecules.

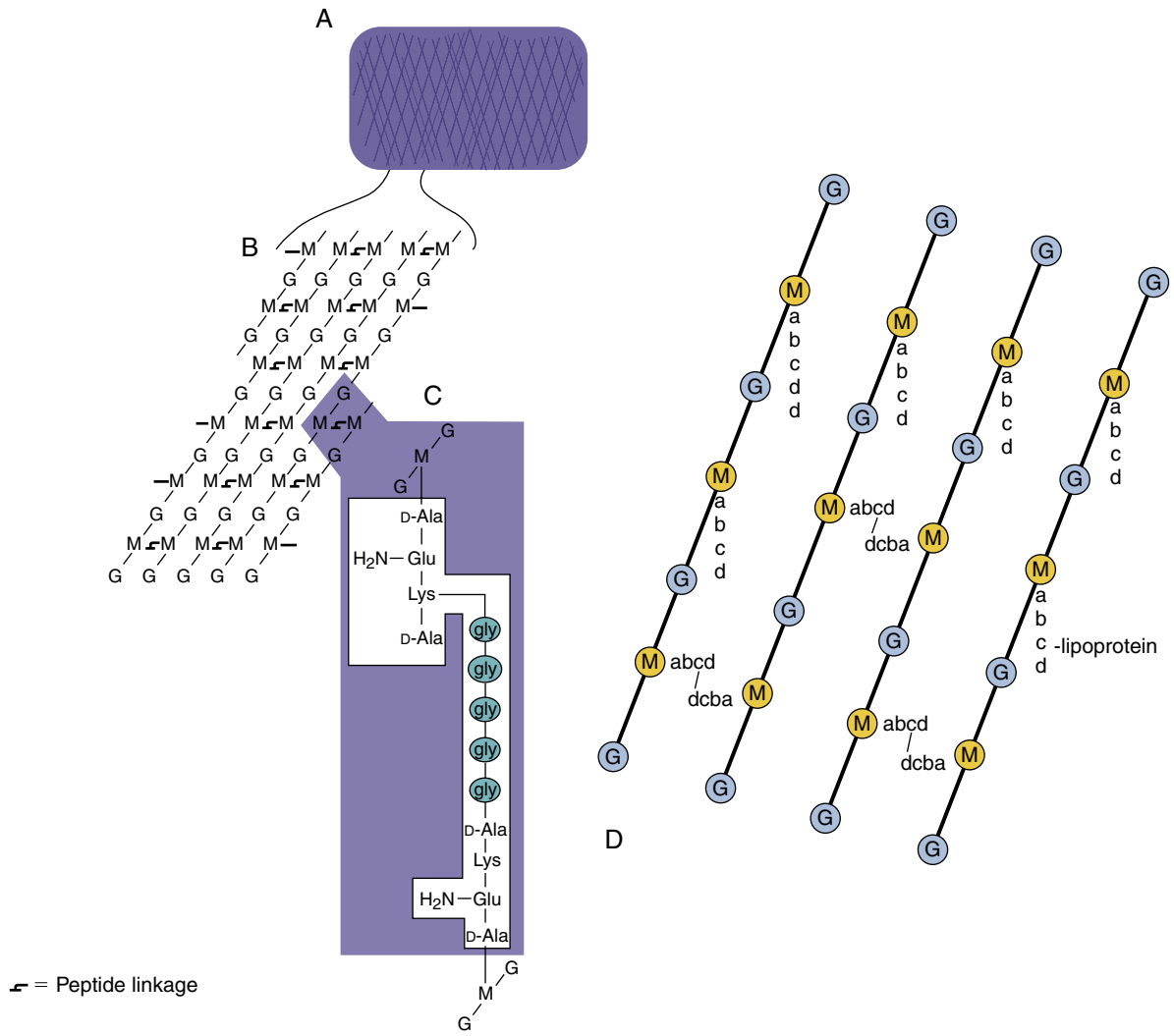


Fig. 12.5 General structure of the peptidoglycan component of the cell wall. (A) The peptidoglycan forms a meshlike layer around the cell. (B) The peptidoglycan mesh consists of a polysaccharide polymer that is cross-linked by peptide bonds. (C) Peptides are cross-linked through a peptide bond between the terminal D-alanine *(D-Ala)* from one chain and a lysine *(Lys)* (or another diamino amino acid) from the other chain. A pentaglycine bridge (gly_5) expands the cross-link in *Staphylococcus aureus* (as shown). (D) Representation of the *Escherichia coli* peptidoglycan structure. Diaminopimelic acid, the diamino amino acid in the third position of the peptide, is *directly linked* to the terminal alanine of another chain to cross-link the peptidoglycan. Lipoprotein anchors the outer membrane to the peptidoglycan. *G, N*-Acetylglucosamine; *Glu,* D-glutamic acid; *gly,* glycine; *M, N*-acetylmuramic acid. (A to C, Modified from Talaro, K., Talaro, A., 1996. Foundations in Microbiology, second ed. William C. Brown, Dubuque, IA. D, Modified from Joklik, W.K., Willett, H.P., Amos, D.B., et al., 1988. Zinsser Microbiology. Appleton & Lange, Norwalk, CT.)

Disruption of the outer membrane can provide entry of lysozyme to produce **spheroplasts,** which, like protoplasts, are osmotically sensitive.

EXTERNAL STRUCTURES

Some bacteria (gram-positive or gram-negative) are closely surrounded by loose polysaccharide or protein layers called **capsules** that are sometimes referred to as a **slime layer** or a **glycocalyx.** *Bacillus anthracis,* the exception to this rule, produces a polypeptide capsule. The capsule is hard to see in a microscope, but its space can be visualized by the exclusion of India ink particles.

Capsules are unnecessary for the growth of bacteria, but they are very important for survival in the host. *The capsule is poorly antigenic and antiphagocytic and is a major virulence factor* (e.g., *S. pneumoniae*). The capsule also can act as a barrier to toxic hydrophobic molecules, such as detergents, and can promote **adherence** to other bacteria or host tissue surfaces. Bacterial strains lacking a capsule may arise during growth under laboratory conditions, away from the selective pressures of the host; therefore they are less virulent. Some bacteria (e.g., *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, S. aureus*) will produce a polysaccharide **biofilm** when sufficient numbers (quorum) are present and under conditions that support growth. The biofilm contains and protects the bacterial community from antibiotics and host defenses. For *S. mutans*, the dextran and levan biofilm promotes adhesion to the tooth enamel and forms tooth plaque.

Flagella are ropelike propellers composed of helically coiled protein subunits **(flagellin)** that are anchored in the bacterial membranes through hook and basal body structures and are driven by membrane potential. Bacterial species may have one or several flagella on their surfaces, and they may be anchored at different parts of the cell. The membrane potential powers the protein motor,

which spins the whiplike propeller. Flagella provide motility for bacteria, allowing the cell to swim **(chemotaxis)** toward food and away from poisons. Bacteria approach food by swimming straight and then tumbling in a new direction. The swimming period becomes longer as the concentration of chemoattractant increases. The direction of flagellar spinning determines whether the bacteria swim or tumble. Flagella express antigenic and strain determinants and are a ligand for a pathogen pattern receptor to activate innate host protections.

Fimbriae (pili) (Latin for "fringe") are hairlike structures on the outside of bacteria, and they are composed of protein subunits **(pilin).** Fimbriae can be morphologically distinguished from flagella because they are smaller in diameter (3 to 8 nm versus 15 to 20 nm) and usually are not coiled in structure. In general, several hundred fimbriae are arranged peritrichously (uniformly) over the entire surface of the bacterial cell. They may be as long as 15 to 20 μm or many times the length of the cell.

Fimbriae promote adherence to other bacteria or to the host (alternative names are *adhesins, lectins, evasins,* and *aggressins*). The tips of the fimbriae may contain proteins (**lectins**) that bind to specific sugars (e.g., mannose). As an adherence factor **(adhesin),** fimbriae are an important virulence factor for colonization and infection of the urinary tract by *E. coli, Neisseria gonorrhoeae,* and other bacteria. **F pili (sex pili)** bind to other bacteria and are a tube for transfer of large segments of bacterial chromosomes between bacteria. These pili are encoded by a plasmid (F).

BACTERIA WITH ALTERNATIVE CELL WALL STRUCTURES

Mycobacteria have a peptidoglycan layer (slightly different structure) that is intertwined with and covalently attached to an arabinogalactan polymer and surrounded by a **waxlike lipid coat** of mycolic acid (large α-branched β-hydroxy fatty acids), cord factor (glycolipid of trehalose and two mycolic acids), wax D (glycolipid of 15 to 20 mycolic acids and sugar), and sulfolipids (see Fig. 12.2C). These bacteria are described as **staining acid-fast.** The coat is responsible for virulence and is antiphagocytic. *Corynebacterium* and *Nocardia* organisms also produce mycolic acid lipids. **Mycoplasmas** have no peptidoglycan cell wall and incorporate steroids from the host into their membranes.

Structure and Biosynthesis of the Major Components of the Bacterial Cell Wall

The cell wall components are large structures made up of polymers of subunits. This type of structure facilitates their synthesis. Like astronauts building a space station, bacteria face problems assembling their cell walls. Synthesis of the peptidoglycan, LPS, teichoic acid, and capsule occurs on the outside of the bacteria, away from the synthetic machinery and energy sources of the cytoplasm and in an inhospitable environment. For both the space station and the bacteria, prefabricated precursors and subunits of the final structure are assembled in a factory-like setting on the inside, attached to a structure similar to a conveyor belt, brought to the surface, and then attached to the preexisting structure. The prefabricated precursors must also be activated with high-energy bonds (e.g., phosphates) or other means to power the attachment reactions occurring outside the cell.

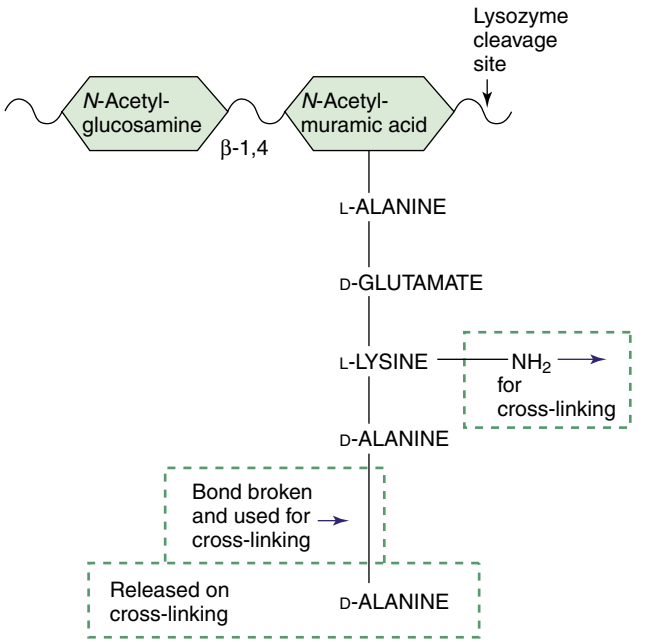


Fig. 12.6 Precursor of peptidoglycan. The peptidoglycan is built from prefabricated units that contain a pentapeptide attached to the *N*-acetylmuramic acid. The pentapeptide contains a terminal D-alanine-D-alanine unit. This dipeptide is required for cross-linking the peptidoglycan and is the basis for the action of β-lactam and vancomycin antibiotics. The β-1,4 disaccharide link cleaved by lysozyme is indicated.

PEPTIDOGLYCAN (MUCOPEPTIDE, MUREIN)

The peptidoglycan is a rigid mesh made up of fencepost-like linear polysaccharide chains cross-linked by peptides. The polysaccharide is made up of repeating disaccharides of ***N*-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc, NAG, G)** and ***N*-acetylmuramic acid (MurNAc, NAM, M)** (Fig. 12.6; see Fig. 12.5).

A tetrapeptide is attached to the MurNAc. The peptide is unusual because it contains both D and L amino acids (D amino acids are not normally used in nature) and the peptide is produced enzymatically rather than by a ribosome. The first two amino acids attached to the MurNAc may vary for different organisms.

The diamino amino acids in the third position are essential for the cross-linking of the peptidoglycan chain. Examples of diamino amino acids include lysine and diaminopimelic and diaminobutyric acids. The peptide cross-link is formed between the free amine of the diamino amino acid and the D-alanine in the fourth position of another chain. *S. aureus* and other gram-positive bacteria use an amino acid bridge (e.g., a $glycine_5$ peptide) between these amino acids to lengthen the cross-link. The precursor form of the peptide has an extra D-alanine, which is released during the cross-linking step.

The peptidoglycan in gram-positive bacteria forms multiple layers and is often cross-linked in three dimensions,

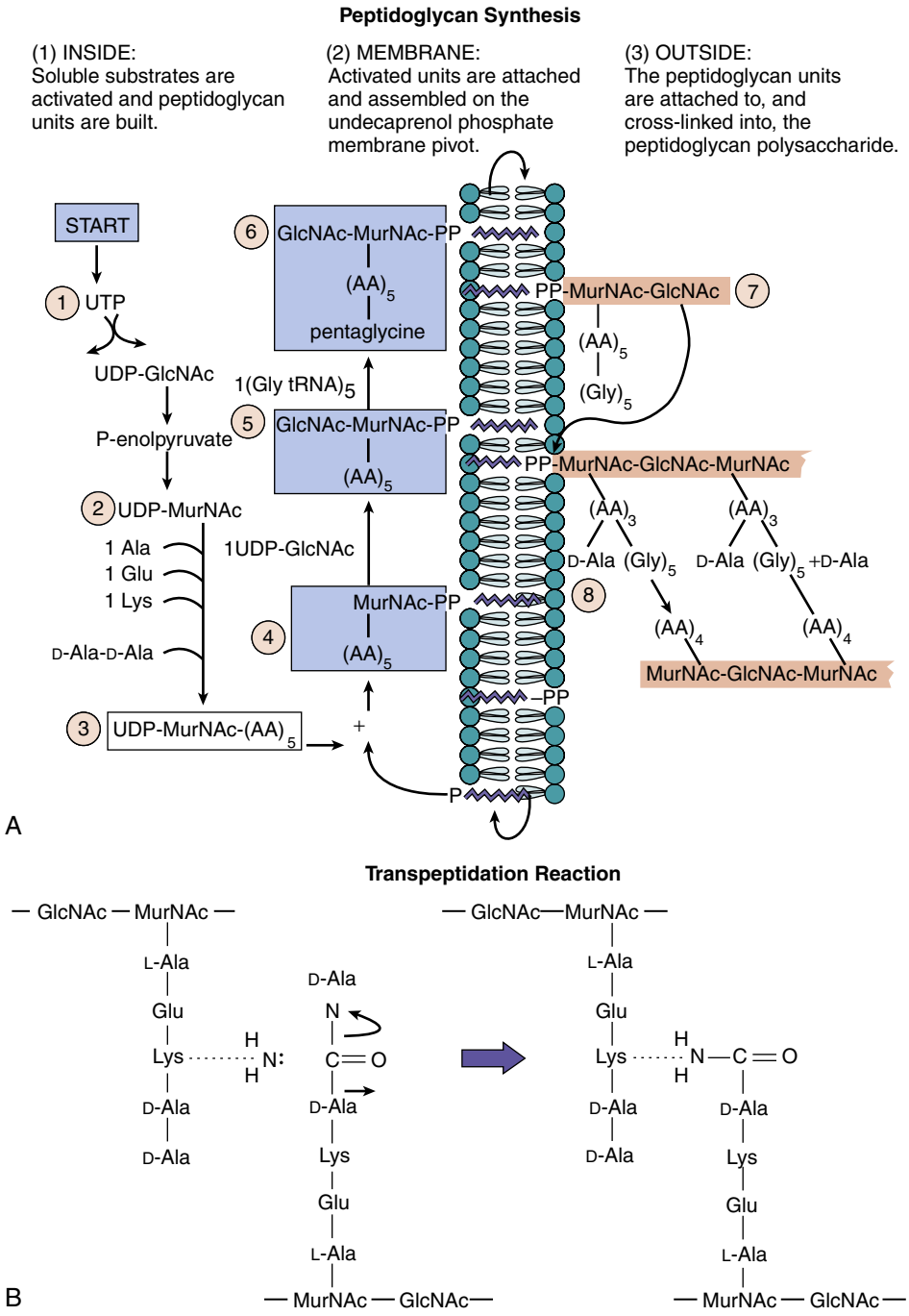


Fig. 12.7 Peptidoglycan synthesis. (A) Peptidoglycan synthesis occurs in the following four phases: (1) Peptidoglycan is synthesized from prefabricated units constructed and activated for assembly and transport inside the cell. (2) At the membrane the units are assembled onto the undecaprenol phosphate conveyor belt, and fabrication is completed. (3) The unit is translocated to the outside of the cell and (4) the unit is attached to the polysaccharide chain, and the peptide is cross-linked to finish the construction. *Staphylococcus aureus* uses a pentaglycine bridge in the cross-link. Such a construction can be compared with the assembly of a space station of prefabricated units. (B) The cross-linking reaction is a transpeptidation. *Escherichia coli* uses a direct cross-link between D-alanine and lysine. One peptide bond (produced inside the cell) is traded for another (outside the cell) with the release of D-alanine. The enzymes that catalyze these reactions are called *D-alanine, D-alanine transpeptidase, or carboxypeptidases*. These enzymes are the targets of β-lactam antibiotics and are called penicillin-binding proteins. *AA_3,* Tripeptide; *AA_4,* tetrapeptide with terminal D-alanine; *AA_5,* pentapeptide with D-alanine-D-alanine; *Glu,* glutamate; *Gly_5,* glycine pentapeptide; *Lys,* lysine; *MurNAc-PP, N*-acetylmuramic acid diphosphate; *tRNA,* transfer ribonucleic acid; *UDP-GlcNAc,* uridine diphosphate *N*-acetylglucosamine; *UDP-MurNAc,* uridine diphosphate-*N*-acetylmuramic acid; *UTP,* uridine triphosphate.

providing a very strong, rigid cell wall. In contrast, the peptidoglycan in gram-negative cell walls is usually only one molecule (layer) thick. The number of cross-links and the length of the cross-link determine the rigidity of the peptidoglycan mesh. **Lysozyme** disperses the peptidoglycan by cleaving the glycan, as shown in Fig. 12.6.

PEPTIDOGLYCAN SYNTHESIS

Peptidoglycan synthesis occurs in four phases (Fig. 12.7). First, the precursors are synthesized and activated inside the cell. Glucosamine is enzymatically converted into MurNAc and then energetically activated by a reaction with uridine

triphosphate (UTP) to produce uridine diphosphate-*N*-acetylmuramic acid (UDP-MurNAc). Next, the UDP-MurNAc-pentapeptide precursor is assembled in a series of enzymatic steps.

In the second phase, the UDP-MurNAc pentapeptide is attached to a molecular conveyor belt–like structure called **bactoprenol (undecaprenol [C_{55} isoprenoid])** in the cytoplasmic membrane through a pyrophosphate link, with the release of uridine monophosphate (UMP). GlcNAc is added to make the disaccharide building block of the peptidoglycan. Some bacteria (e.g., *S. aureus*) add a pentaglycine or another chain to the diamino amino acid at the third position of the peptide chain to lengthen the cross-link.

In the third phase, the bactoprenol molecule with its disaccharide:peptide precursor is translocated to the outside surface of the membrane by a flippase enzyme.

In the last phase, the peptidoglycan is extended at the outside surface of the plasma membrane. The GlcNAc-MurNAc disaccharide is attached to a peptidoglycan chain, using the pyrophosphate link between itself and the bactoprenol as energy to drive the reaction by enzymes called **transglycosylases.** The pyrophosphobactoprenol is converted back to a phosphobactoprenol and recycled. **Bacitracin** blocks the recycling. The peptide chains from adjacent glycan chains are cross-linked to each other by a peptide bond exchange **(transpeptidation)** between the free amine of the amino acid in the third position of the pentapeptide (e.g., lysine), or the N-terminus of the attached pentaglycine chain, and the D-alanine at the fourth position of the other peptide chain, releasing the terminal D-alanine of the precursor. This step requires no additional energy because peptide bonds are "traded."

The cross-linking reaction is catalyzed by membrane-bound **transpeptidases.** Related enzymes called **D-carboxypeptidases** remove unreacted terminal D-alanines to limit the extent of cross-linking. The transpeptidases and carboxypeptidases are called **penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs)** because they are targets for penicillin and other β-lactam antibiotics. *Penicillin* and related **β-lactam antibiotics** resemble the "transition state" conformation of the D-Ala-D-Ala substrate when bound to these enzymes. **Vancomycin** binds like a clamp to the D-Ala-D-Ala structure to block these reactions. Different PBPs are used for extending the peptidoglycan, creating a septum for cell division, and for curving the peptidoglycan mesh (cell shape). Peptidoglycan extension and cross-linking are necessary for cell growth and division.

The peptidoglycan is constantly being synthesized and degraded in a coordinated manner. **Autolysins,** such as lysozyme, are important for determining bacterial shape. Inhibition of synthesis or the cross-linking of the peptidoglycan does not stop the autolysins, and their continued action weakens the mesh and leads to cell lysis and death. New peptidoglycan synthesis does not occur during starvation, which leads to a weakening of the peptidoglycan and a loss in the dependability of the Gram stain.

An understanding of the biosynthesis of peptidoglycan is essential in medicine because these reactions are unique to bacterial cells; hence they can be inhibited with little or no adverse effect on host (human) cells. As indicated earlier, a number of antibacterials target one or more steps in this pathway (see Chapter 17).

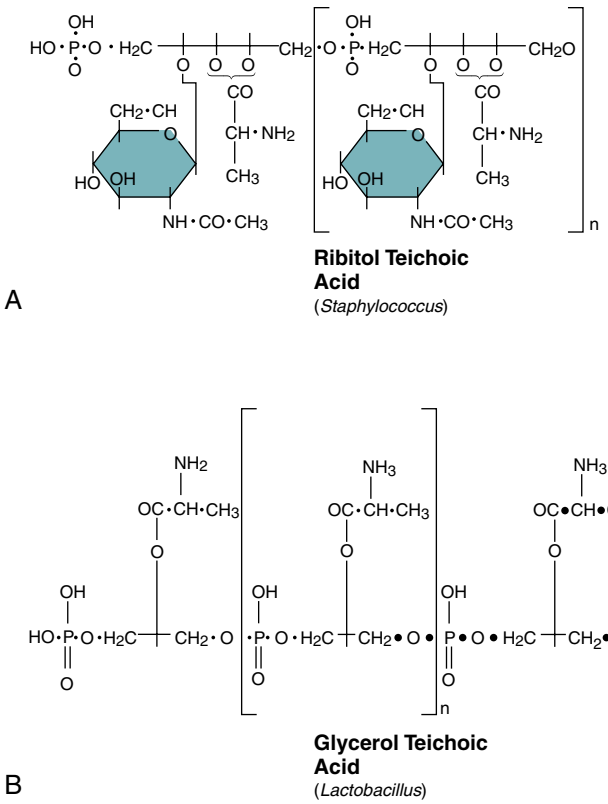


Fig. 12.8 Teichoic acid. Teichoic acid is a polymer of chemically modified ribitol (A) or glycerol phosphate (B). The nature of the modification (e.g., sugars, amino acids) can define the serotype of the bacteria. Teichoic acid is covalently attached to the peptidoglycan. Lipoteichoic acid is anchored in the cytoplasmic membrane by a covalently attached fatty acid.

TEICHOIC ACID

Teichoic and **lipoteichoic acids** are polymers of chemically modified ribose or glycerol connected by phosphates (Fig. 12.8). Sugars, choline, or D-alanine may be attached to the hydroxyls of the ribose or glycerol, providing antigenic determinants. These can be distinguished by antibodies and may determine the bacterial serotype. Lipoteichoic acid has a fatty acid and is anchored in the membrane. Lipoteichoic and teichoic acids are assembled from activated building blocks on the bactoprenol and then translocated to the outer surface in a manner similar to that of peptidoglycan. Teichoic acid is enzymatically attached to the N-terminus of the peptide of peptidoglycan and secreted from the cells.

LIPOPOLYSACCHARIDE

LPS consists of three structural sections: lipid A, core polysaccharide (rough core), and O antigen (Fig. 12.9). Lipid A is a basic component of LPS and is essential for bacterial viability. **Lipid A is responsible for the endotoxin activity of LPS**. It has a phosphorylated glucosamine disaccharide backbone with fatty acids attached to anchor the structure in the outer membrane. The phosphates connect LPS units into aggregates. One carbohydrate chain is attached to each disaccharide backbone and extends away from the bacteria. The core polysaccharide is a branched polysaccharide of 9 to 12 sugars. Most of the core region also is essential for LPS

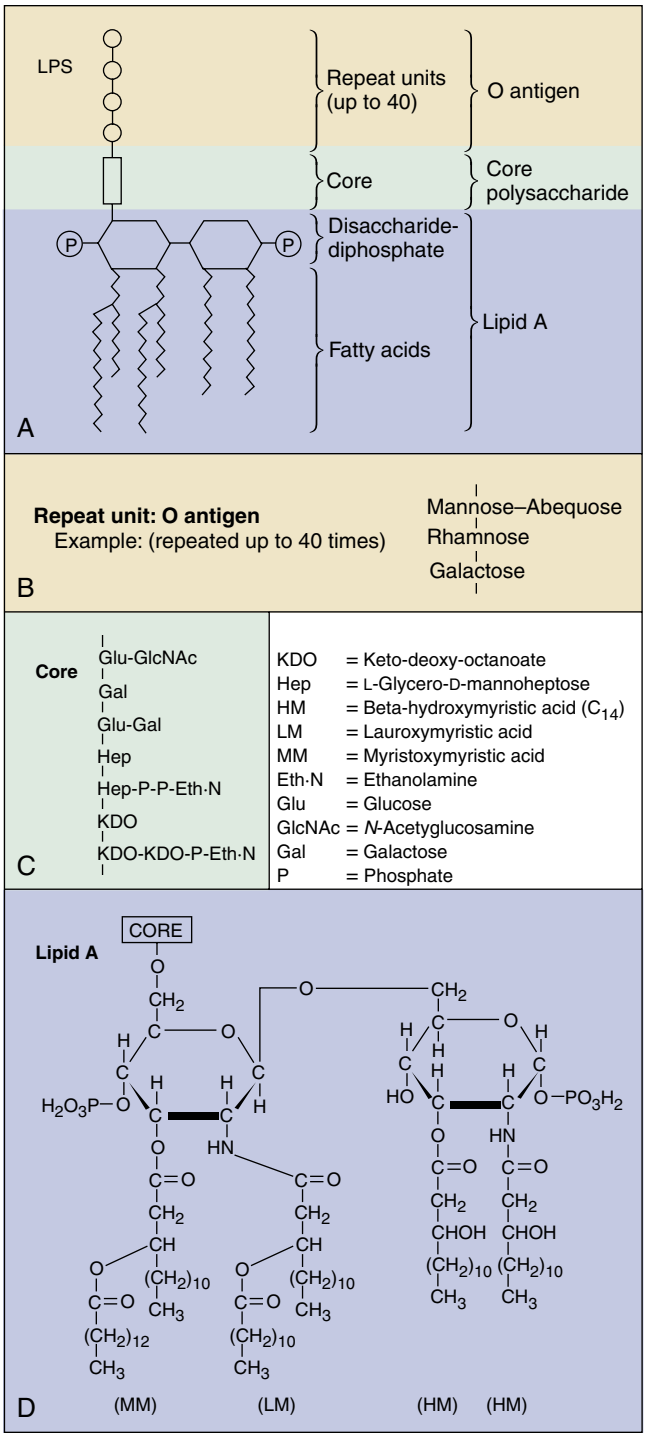


Fig. 12.9 Lipopolysaccharide *(LPS)* of the gram-negative cell envelope. (A) Segment of the molecule showing the arrangements of the major constituents. Each LPS molecule has one lipid A and one polysaccharide core unit but many repeats of the O antigen. (B) Typical O-antigen repeat unit *(Salmonella typhimurium).* (C) Polysaccharide core. (D) Structure of lipid A of *S. typhimurium.* (Modified from Brooks, G.F., Butel, J.S., Ornston, L.N., 1991. Jawetz, Melnick, and Aldenberg's Medical Microbiology, nineteenth ed. Appleton & Lange, Norwalk, CT.)

structure and bacterial viability. The core region contains an unusual sugar called 2-keto-3-deoxy-octanoate (KDO) and is phosphorylated. *Divalent cations link the phosphates within the core of the LPS to strengthen the outer membrane.* The O antigen is attached to the core and extends away from the bacteria. It is a long, linear polysaccharide consisting of 50 to 100 repeating saccharide units of 4 to 7 sugars per unit. **LOS,** which is present in *Neisseria* species, lacks the O-antigen portion of LPS. The shorter O antigen allows LOS aggregates to be shed and diminishes protection of the membrane, which makes *Neisseria* more susceptible to host-mediated complement lysis.

LPS structure is used to classify bacteria. The basic structure of lipid A is identical for related bacteria and is similar for all gram-negative Enterobacteriaceae. The core region is the same for a species of bacteria. The O antigen distinguishes serotypes (strains) of a bacterial species. For example, the O157:H7 (O antigen:flagellin) serotype identifies the *E. coli* agent of hemolytic-uremic syndrome.

The lipid A and core portions are enzymatically synthesized in a sequential manner on the inside surface of the cytoplasmic membrane and then translocated across the membrane. The units of the O antigen are attached to a bactoprenol molecule, translocated to the outside of the cytoplasmic membrane, and 50 to 100 of these units are sequentially attached to the growing O-antigen chain. The finished O-antigen chain is then transferred to the core lipid A structure. The entire LPS molecule is then translocated by a group of proteins that form a bucket-brigade–like escalator from the cytoplasmic membrane through the peptidoglycan, periplasmic space and outer membrane to its outer surface.

Cell Division

Replication of the bacterial chromosome also triggers initiation of cell division (Fig. 12.10). The production of two daughter bacteria requires growth and extension of the cell wall components, followed by production of a septum (cross wall) to divide the daughter bacteria into two cells. The septum consists of two membranes separated by two layers of peptidoglycan. Septum formation is initiated at midcell, at a site defined by protein complexes affixed to a protein filament ring that lines the inside of the cytoplasmic membrane. The septum grows from opposite sides toward the center of the cell, causing cleavage of the daughter cells. This process requires special transpeptidases (PBPs) and other enzymes. For streptococci, the growth zone is located 180 degrees from each other. In contrast, the growth zone of staphylococci is at 90 degrees. Incomplete cleavage of the septum can cause the bacteria to remain linked, forming chains (e.g., streptococci) or clusters (e.g., staphylococci).

Spores

Some gram-positive, but never gram-negative, bacteria, such as members of the genera *Bacillus* (e.g., *B. anthracis*) and *Clostridium* (e.g., *C. tetani* or *botulinum*) (soil bacteria), are spore formers. Under harsh environmental conditions, such as loss of a nutritional requirement, these bacteria can convert from a **vegetative state** to a **dormant state,** or **spore.** The location of the spore within a cell is a characteristic of the bacteria and can assist in identification of the bacterium.

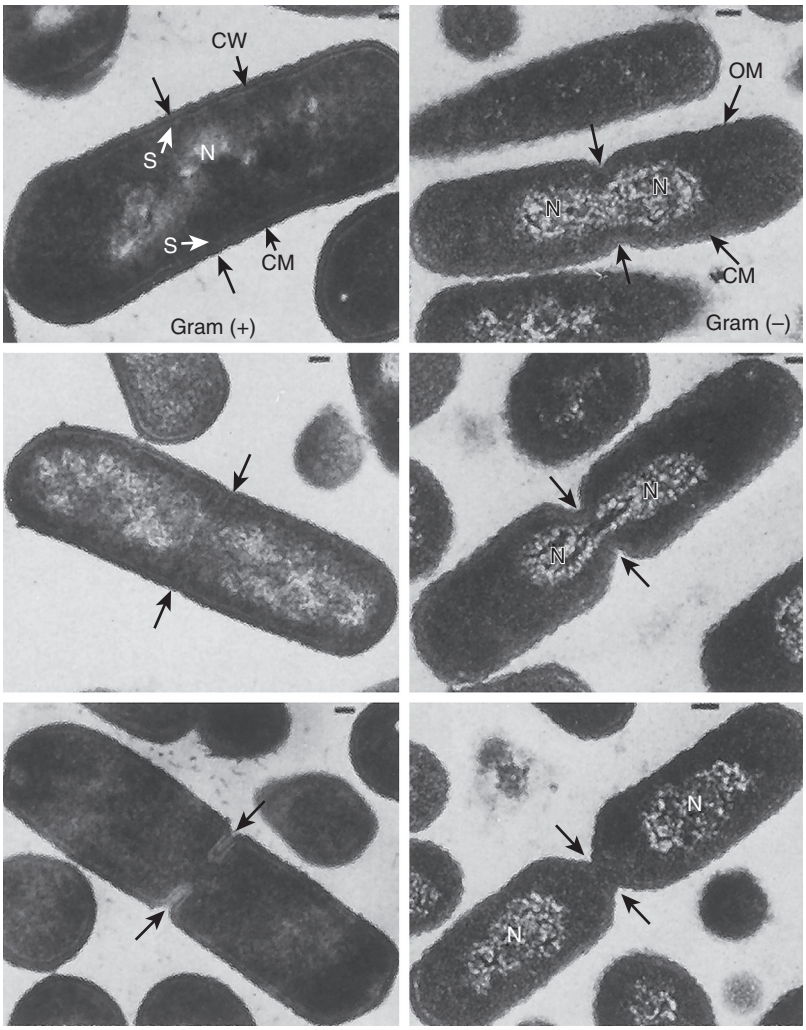


Fig. 12.10 Electron photomicrographs of gram-positive *(Bacillus subtilis)* cell division *(left)* and gram-negative *(Escherichia coli)* cell division *(right)*. Progression in cell division from top to bottom. *CM,* Cytoplasmic membrane; *CW,* cell wall; *N,* nucleoid; *OM,* outer membrane; *S,* septum. Bar = 0.2 μm. (From Slots, J., Taubman, M.A., 1992. Contemporary Oral Biology and Immunology. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

The spore is a dehydrated multishelled structure that protects and allows the bacteria to exist in "suspended animation" (Fig. 12.11). It contains a complete copy of the chromosome, the bare minimum concentrations of essential proteins and ribosomes, and a high concentration of **calcium bound to dipicolinic acid.** The spore has an inner membrane, two peptidoglycan layers, and an outer keratin–like protein coat. The spore looks refractile (bright) in the microscope. The structure of the spore protects the genomic DNA from intense heat, radiation, and attack by most enzymes and chemical agents. In fact, bacterial spores are so resistant to environmental factors that they can exist for centuries as viable spores. Spores also are difficult to decontaminate with standard disinfectants or autoclaving conditions.

Depletion of specific nutrients (e.g., alanine) from the growth medium triggers a cascade of genetic events (comparable to differentiation) leading to the production of a spore. Spore mRNAs are transcribed, and other mRNAs are turned off. Dipicolinic acid is produced, and antibiotics and toxins are often excreted. After duplication of the chromosome, one copy of the DNA and cytoplasmic contents **(core)** are surrounded by the cytoplasmic membrane, the peptidoglycan, and the membrane of the septum. This wraps the DNA in the two layers of membrane and peptidoglycan that would normally divide the cell. These two layers are surrounded by the **cortex,** which is made up of a thin inner layer of tightly cross-linked peptidoglycan surrounding a membrane (which used to be the cytoplasmic membrane) and a loose outer peptidoglycan layer. The cortex is surrounded by the tough **keratin-like protein coat** that protects the spore. The process requires 6 to 8 hours for completion.

Germination of spores into the vegetative state is stimulated by disruption of the outer coat by mechanical stress, pH, heat, or another stressor and requires water and a triggering nutrient (e.g., alanine). The process takes approximately 90 minutes. After the germination process begins, the spore will take up water, swell, shed its coats, and produce one new vegetative cell identical to the original vegetative cell, completing the entire cycle. Once germination has begun and the spore coat has been compromised, the spore is weakened and vulnerable, and can be inactivated like other bacteria.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

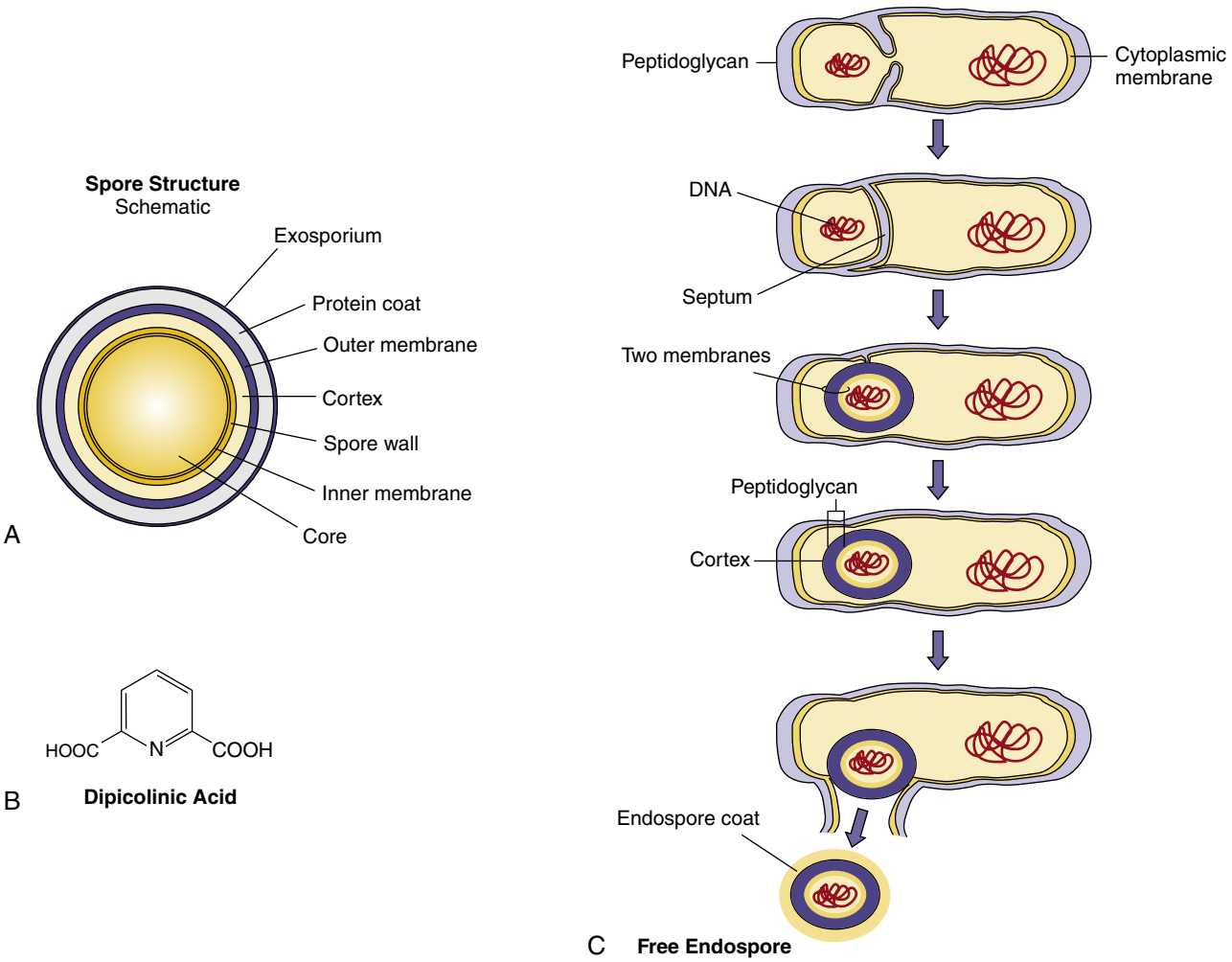


Fig. 12.11 (A) Structure of a spore. (B) High concentrations of dipicolinic acid in the spore bind calcium and stabilize the contents. (C) Sporogenesis, the process of endospore formation.

Bibliography

Bower, S., Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Bacterial cell walls: the armor, artillery and Achilles heel. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 14, 309–317.

Daniel, R.A., Errington, J., 2003. Control of cell morphogenesis in bacteria: two distinct ways to make a rod-shaped cell. Cell 113, 767–776.

Lutkenhaus, J., 1998. The regulation of bacterial cell division: a time and place for it. Curr. Opin. Microbiol. 1, 210–215.

Meroueh, S.O., Bencze, K.Z., Hesek, D., et al., 2006. Three-dimensional structure of the bacterial cell wall peptidoglycan. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U S A 103, 4404–4409.

Nanninga, N., 1998. Morphogenesis of Escherichia coli. Microbiol. Mol. Biol. Rev. 62, 110–129.

Sherman, D.J., Xie, R., Taylor, R.J., et al., 2018. Lipopolysaccharide is transported to the cell surface by a membrane-to-membrane protein bridge. Science 359, 798–801. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aar1886.

Staley, J.T., Gunsalus, R.P., Lory, S., et al., 2007. Microbial Life, second ed. Sinauer, Sunderland, MA.

Talaro, K., 2008. Foundations in Microbiology, sixth ed. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Willey, J., Sherwood, L., Woolverton, C., 2007. Prescott/Harley/Klein's Microbiology, seventh ed. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Zhao, H., Patel, V., Helmann, J.D., 2017. Don't let sleeping dogmas lie: new views of peptidoglycan synthesis and its regulation. Molecular Microbiology 106, 847–860.

Questions

1. How do the differences between prokaryotes and eukaryotes (see Table 12.1) influence bacterial infection and treatment?

2. How do the differences between gram-positive and gram-negative cell walls (see Table 12.4) influence cells' clinical behavior, detection, and treatment?

3. List the cell wall components that contribute to virulence by protecting the bacteria from immune responses. List those that contribute to virulence by eliciting toxic responses in the human host.

4. When peptidoglycan synthesis is inhibited, what processes kill the bacteria? List the precursors that would build up within the bacteria if recycling of bactoprenol were inhibited by penicillin, vancomycin, or bacitracin.

5. Why are spores more resistant to environmental stresses?

6. The laboratory would like to selectively eliminate gram-positive bacteria from a mixture of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. Which of the following procedures would be more appropriate and why or why not?
   a. Treatment with EDTA (a divalent cation chelator)
   b. Treatment with mild detergent
   c. Treatment with lysozyme
   d. Treatment with transpeptidase
   e. Treatment with ampicillin (a hydrophilic β-lactam antibiotic)

13 Bacterial Metabolism and Genetics

Bacterial Metabolism

Bacteria have developed different approaches to obtain and use the raw materials necessary for growth and survival in the human body. The differences in metabolic requirements and their processes and products allow the distinction of bacteria, define their habitats within our bodies, and provide targets for antimicrobial drugs. Bacteria have developed sophisticated means to regulate their growth and to control protein and enzyme expression in response to their environment. These include mechanisms for expressing appropriate virulence factors within specific parts of the human body. They have also developed the means to share deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) to acquire new selective advantages in challenging environments, including the presence of antibiotics.

METABOLIC REQUIREMENTS

Bacterial growth requires a source of energy and the raw materials to build the proteins, structures, and membranes that make up and power the cell. Bacteria must obtain or synthesize the amino acids, carbohydrates, and lipids used as building blocks of the cell.

The minimum requirements for growth are a source of carbon and nitrogen, an energy source, water, and various ions. The essential elements include the components of proteins, lipids, and nucleic acids (C, O, H, N, S, P), important ions (K, Na, Mg, Ca, Cl), and components of enzymes (Fe, Zn, Mn, Mo, Se, Co, Cu, Ni). **Iron** is so important that many bacteria secrete special proteins (siderophores) to concentrate iron from dilute solutions, and our bodies will sequester iron to reduce its availability as a means of protection.

Oxygen (O_2 gas), although essential for the human host, is actually a poison for many bacteria. Some organisms (e.g., *Clostridium perfringens*, which causes gas gangrene) cannot grow in the presence of oxygen. Such bacteria are referred to as **obligate anaerobes.** Other organisms (e.g., *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, which causes tuberculosis) require the presence of molecular oxygen for metabolism and growth and are therefore referred to as **obligate aerobes.** Most bacteria, however, grow in either the presence or the absence of oxygen. These bacteria are referred to as **facultative anaerobes.** Aerobic bacteria produce superoxide dismutase and catalase enzymes, which can detoxify hydrogen peroxide and superoxide radicals that are the toxic by-products of aerobic metabolism and produced by neutrophils and macrophages to kill bacteria.

Growth requirements and metabolic by-products may be used as a convenient means of classifying different bacteria. Some bacteria, such as certain strains of *Escherichia coli* (a member of the intestinal flora), can synthesize all the amino acids, nucleotides, lipids, and carbohydrates necessary for growth and division, whereas the growth requirements of the causative agent of syphilis, *Treponema pallidum,* are so complex that a defined laboratory medium capable of supporting its growth has yet to be developed. Bacteria that can rely entirely on inorganic chemicals for their energy and source of carbon (carbon dioxide [CO_2]) are referred to as autotrophs (lithotrophs), whereas many bacteria and animal cells that require organic carbon sources are known as heterotrophs (organotrophs). Clinical microbiology laboratories distinguish bacteria by their ability to grow on specific carbon sources (e.g., lactose) and generation of the end products of metabolism (e.g., ethanol, lactic acid, succinic acid).

The metabolism of normal flora bacteria is optimized for the pH, ion concentration, and types of food present in their environment within the body. As in the rumen of a cow, the bacteria of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract break down complex carbohydrates into simpler compounds and produce short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs; e.g., butyrate, propionate, lactate, acetate) as by-products of **fermentation.** The lactic acid and SCFAs that are produced can decrease luminal pH, are absorbed and metabolized more readily, and modulate the immune response. Changes in diet, water, or health, antibiotics, and certain drugs can change the environment and influence the metabolism and composition of microbes in the GI tract. Bacteria, like lactobacillus species, that can improve the function of the normal GI flora are included in probiotic therapies (Box 13.1).

METABOLISM, ENERGY, AND BIOSYNTHESIS

All cells require a constant supply of energy to survive. This energy is derived from the controlled breakdown of various organic substrates (carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins). This process of substrate breakdown and conversion into usable energy is known as **catabolism.** The energy produced may then be used in the synthesis of cellular constituents (cell walls, proteins, fatty acids, nucleic acids), which is a process known as **anabolism.** Together, these two processes, which are interrelated and tightly integrated, are referred to as **intermediary metabolism.**

The metabolic process generally begins with hydrolysis of large macromolecules in the external cellular environment by specific enzymes (Fig. 13.1). The smaller molecules that are produced (e.g., monosaccharides, short peptides, fatty acids) are transported across the cell membranes into the cytoplasm by active or passive transport mechanisms specific for the metabolite. These mechanisms may use specific carrier or membrane transport proteins to help concentrate metabolites from the medium. The metabolites are converted via one or more pathways to one common universal intermediate, **pyruvic acid.** From pyruvic acid, the carbons may be channeled toward energy production or the synthesis of new carbohydrates, amino acids, lipids, and nucleic acids.

BOX 13.1 Metabolism of Probiotic and Gastrointestinal Microbes

Probiotic microbes are primarily gram-positive bacteria and include *Lactobacillus* spp., *Bifidobacterium* spp., and the yeast *Saccharomyces boulardii* (Stone, S., Edmonds, R., Rosenthal, K.S., 2013. Probiotics: helping out the normal flora. Infectious Diseases in Clinical Practice 21, 305–311; Saad, N., Delattre, C., Urdaci, M., et al., 2013. An overview of the last advances in probiotic and prebiotic field. Food Science Technology 50, 1–16). *Bifidobacterium infantis* is one of the bacteria acquired by newborns and then selected by the complex carbohydrates in mother's milk. Probiotics consist of microbes that can be ingested, facilitate the development and maintenance of a healthy gut flora, and influence the cells of the immune system. Many of these probiotic bacteria are present in yogurt and are capable of metabolizing complex carbohydrates, including those in milk. These bacteria break down complex carbohydrates into simpler compounds and produce short-chain fatty acids (e.g., butyrate, propionate, lactate, acetate) as by-products of **fermentation.** The lactic acid and short-chain fatty acids produced can decrease luminal pH and are absorbed and metabolized more readily. Acidification of the colon can select for and promote the growth of beneficial lactate-producing endogenous bacteria. Short-chain fatty acids are taken up by the bowel and metabolized more efficiently by the body, enhance cell growth, and improve barrier function of the epithelial cells lining the gastrointestinal tract, as well as support the growth of T-regulator cells to limit inflammatory and autoimmune responses (Smith, P.M., Howitt, M.R., Panikov, N., et al., 2013. The microbial metabolites, short-chain fatty acids, regulate colonic Treg cell homeostasis. Science 341, 569–573).

Some normal flora bacteria, such as *Bacteroidetes* and *Firmicutes,* are more efficient than others at breaking down complex carbohydrates, including plant cell wall compounds (cellulose, pectin, xylan) and mucins or chondroitin sulfates of the protective mucous layer of the intestine. Increases in the ratio of these bacteria in the gut microbiome can lead to obesity (Vijay-Kumar, M., Aitken, J.D., Carvalho, F.A., et al., 2010. Metabolic syndrome and altered gut microbiota in mice lacking Toll-like receptor 5. Science 328, 228–231.)

Instead of releasing all of glucose's energy as heat (as for burning), bacteria break down glucose in discrete steps and capture the energy in usable chemical and electrochemical forms. Chemical energy is typically in the form of a high-energy phosphate bond in **adenosine triphosphate (ATP)** or guanosine triphosphate (GTP), whereas electrochemical energy is stored by reduction (adding electrons to) of **nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) to nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide hydride (NADH)** or flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD) to $FADH_2$. **The NADH** can be converted by a series of oxidation-reduction reactions into chemical (pH) and **electrical potential gradients (Eh)** across the cytoplasmic membrane. The electrochemical energy can be used by **ATP synthase** to drive the phosphorylation of adenosine diphosphate (ADP) to ATP and to drive the spinning of flagella and the transport of molecules across the membrane.

Bacteria can produce energy from glucose by (in order of increasing efficiency) fermentation, anaerobic respiration (both of which occur in the absence of oxygen), or aerobic respiration. Aerobic respiration can completely convert the six carbons of glucose to CO_2 and water (H_2O) plus energy, whereas two- and three-carbon compounds are the end products of fermentation. For a more complete discussion of metabolism, please refer to a textbook on biochemistry.

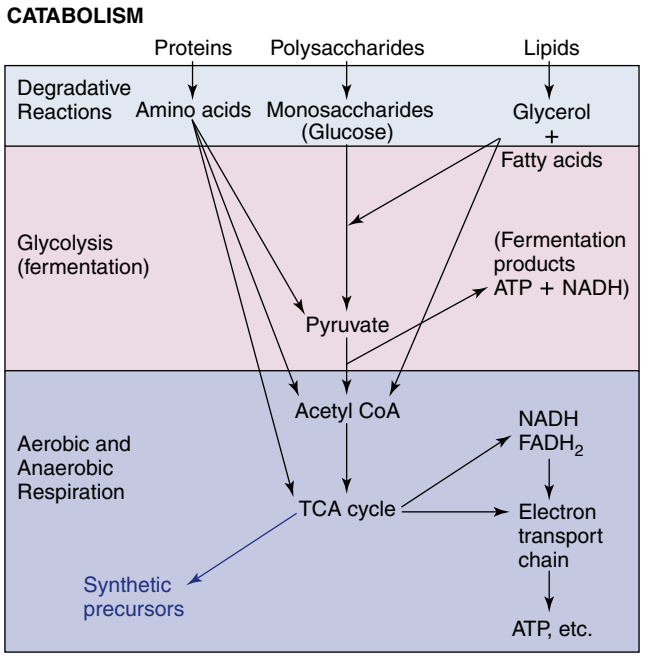


Fig. 13.1 Catabolism of proteins, polysaccharides, and lipids produces glucose, pyruvate, or intermediates of the tricarboxylic acid *(TCA)* cycle and, ultimately, energy in the form of adenosine triphosphate *(ATP)* or the reduced form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide *(NADH). CoA,* Coenzyme A.

Glycolysis and Fermentation

The most common glycolytic pathway, the Embden-Meyerhof-Parnas (EMP) pathway, occurs under both aerobic and anaerobic conditions. This pathway yields two ATP molecules per molecule of glucose, two molecules of reduced NADH and two pyruvate molecules.

Fermentation occurs without oxygen, and the pyruvic acid produced from glycolysis is converted to various end products, depending on the bacterial species. *Many bacteria are identified on the basis of their fermentative end products* (Fig. 13.2). These organic molecules, rather than oxygen, are used as electron acceptors to recycle the NADH to NAD. In yeast, fermentative metabolism results in the conversion of pyruvate to ethanol plus CO_2. Alcoholic fermentation is uncommon in bacteria, which most commonly uses the one-step conversion of pyruvic acid to lactic acid. This process is responsible for making milk into yogurt and cabbage into sauerkraut. Other bacteria use more complex fermentative pathways, producing various acids, alcohols, and often gases (many of which have vile odors). These products lend flavors to various cheeses and wines and odors to wound and other infections.

Aerobic Respiration

In the presence of oxygen, the pyruvic acid produced from glycolysis and from the metabolism of other substrates may be completely oxidized (controlled burning) to H_2O and CO_2 using the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle, which results in production of additional energy. The process begins with production of acetyl coenzyme A (acetyl CoA) and release of CO_2. It also produces two NADH molecules from pyruvate.

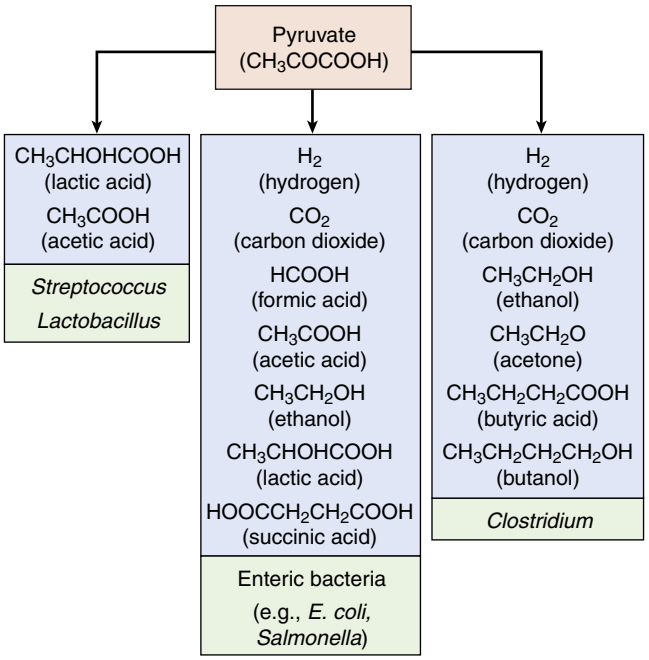


Fig. 13.2 Fermentation of pyruvate by different microorganisms results in different end products. The clinical laboratory uses these pathways and end products as a means of distinguishing different bacteria.

The two remaining carbons derived from pyruvate in the acetyl CoA then enter the TCA by attachment to oxaloacetate to form the six-carbon citrate molecule. In a stepwise series of oxidative reactions, the citrate is converted back to oxaloacetate (the cycle). The theoretical yield from each pyruvate is 2 moles of CO_2, 3 moles of NADH, 1 mole of $FADH_2$, and 1 mole of GTP.

The TCA cycle allows the organism to generate substantially more energy per mole of glucose than is possible from glycolysis alone. In addition to GTP (an ATP equivalent) produced by substrate-level phosphorylation, conversion of the NADH and $FADH_2$ back to NAD and FAD contributes electrons to the electron transport chain to produce ATP. In this chain the electrons are passed in a stepwise fashion through a series of donor-acceptor pairs (e.g., cytochromes) and ultimately to oxygen **(aerobic respiration)** to produce three ATP molecules for each NADH molecule and two ATP for each $FADH_2$. *Whereas fermentation produces only two ATP molecules per glucose, aerobic metabolism with electron transport and a complete TCA cycle can generate as much as 19 times more energy (38 ATP molecules) from the same starting material (and it is much less smelly).*

In addition to efficient generation of ATP from glucose (and other carbohydrates), the TCA cycle provides a means by which carbons derived from **lipids** (in the form of acetyl CoA) may be shunted toward either energy production or the generation of biosynthetic precursors. Similarly, the cycle includes several points at which **deaminated amino acids** may enter. For example, deamination of glutamic acid yields α-ketoglutarate, whereas deamination of aspartic acid yields oxaloacetate, both of which are TCA cycle intermediates. The TCA cycle therefore serves the following functions:

1. It is the most efficient mechanism for the generation of ATP.
2. It serves as the final common pathway for the complete oxidation of amino acids, fatty acids, and carbohydrates.
3. It supplies key intermediates (i.e., α-ketoglutarate, pyruvate, oxaloacetate) for the ultimate synthesis of amino acids, lipids, purines, and pyrimidines.

The last two functions make the TCA cycle a so-called **amphibolic cycle** (i.e., it may function to break down and synthesize molecules).

The electron transport chain resides in the plasma membrane of bacteria and consists of cytochromes, quinones, and iron-sulfur proteins. It uses electrons obtained from NADH and $FADH_2$ to produce a transmembrane proton electrochemical gradient that drives the ATP synthase and powers transport and flagella.

Anaerobic Respiration

During anaerobic respiration, other terminal electron acceptors are used instead of oxygen. Nitrate may be converted to NH_4, sulfate or molecular sulfur to H_2S, CO_2 to methane, ferric ion to ferrous ion, and fumarate to succinate. Less ATP is produced for each NADH than during aerobic respiration because the reduction-oxidation potential is less for these reactions. These reactions are used by facultative anaerobic bacteria in the GI tract and other anaerobic environments.

Pentose Phosphate Pathway

The final pathway of glucose metabolism considered here is known as the **pentose phosphate pathway,** or the **hexose monophosphate shunt.** The function of this pathway is to provide nucleic acid precursors and reducing power in the form of **NADPH** (reduced form) for use in biosynthesis.

Human Bacterial Metabolism

The normal flora of the body obtains its nutrients from our bodies, processes them, and then releases their products into or onto the body. In the gut, bacteria obtain much of their nutrients from our food, but they can also obtain proteins and carbohydrates from the mucus lining. They process complex carbohydrates and release SCFAs as products of fermentation. These molecules are easily absorbed and, in excess, are converted into fat. Some mixtures of intestinal flora are more efficient at this process than others and, can promote obesity. SCFAs also modulate the immune response and inflammation. The bacteria also metabolize bile and facilitate its reabsorption. Other metabolites have widespread influences on the brain, body, and drug metabolism and action. Skin bacteria catabolize the keratin, oils, and dead cells in the stratum corneum outer layer. Similarly, normal flora of other sites graze on the metabolites that are available.

Bacterial Genes and Expression

The bacterial genome is the total collection of genes carried by a bacterium, both on its chromosome and on its extrachromosomal genetic elements, if any. Bacteria usually have only one copy of their chromosomes (they are therefore **haploid**), whereas eukaryotes usually have two

distinct copies of each chromosome (they are therefore diploid). With only one chromosome, alteration of a bacterial gene (mutation) will have a more obvious effect on the cell. In addition, the structure of the bacterial chromosome is maintained by polyamines, such as spermine and spermidine, rather than by histones.

In addition to protein-structural genes (**cistrons,** which are coding genes), the bacterial chromosome contains genes for ribosomal and transfer ribonucleic acid (tRNA). Bacterial genes are often grouped into **operons** or islands (e.g., **pathogenicity islands**) that share function or coordinate their control. Operons with many structural genes are **polycistronic**.

Bacteria also may contain **extrachromosomal genetic elements** such as **plasmids** or **bacteriophages** (bacterial viruses). These elements are independent of the bacterial chromosome and in most cases can be transmitted from one cell to another.

TRANSCRIPTION

The information carried in the genetic memory of the DNA is transcribed (from one form of nucleic acid to another form) into a **messenger RNA (mRNA)** for subsequent translation (to a different substance) into protein. RNA synthesis is performed by a **DNA-dependent RNA polymerase.** The process begins when the **sigma factor** recognizes a particular sequence of nucleotides in the DNA (the **promoter**) and binds tightly to this site. **Promoter sequences** occur just before the start of the DNA that actually encodes a protein. **Sigma factors** bind to these promoters to provide a docking site for the RNA polymerase. Some bacteria encode several sigma factors to coordinate transcription of a group of genes under special conditions such as heat shock, starvation, special nitrogen metabolism, or sporulation.

Once the polymerase has bound to the appropriate site on the DNA, RNA synthesis proceeds with the sequential addition of ribonucleotides complementary to the sequence in the DNA. Once an entire gene or group of genes (operon) has been transcribed, the RNA polymerase dissociates from the DNA, which is a process mediated by signals within the DNA. The bacterial DNA-dependent RNA polymerase is inhibited by rifampin, which is an antibiotic often used in the treatment of tuberculosis.

TRANSLATION

Translation is the process by which the language of the **genetic code,** in the form of mRNA, is converted (translated) into a sequence of amino acids, which is the protein product. Each amino acid word and the punctuation of the genetic code is written as sets of three nucleotides known as **codons.** There are 64 different codon combinations encoding the 20 amino acids, plus start and termination codons. Some of the amino acids are encoded by more than one triplet codon. This feature is known as the *degeneracy of the genetic code* and may function in protecting the cell from the effects of minor mutations in the DNA or mRNA. Each tRNA molecule contains a three-nucleotide sequence complementary to one of the codon sequences. This tRNA sequence is known as the **anticodon;** it allows base pairing and binds to the codon sequence on the mRNA. Attached

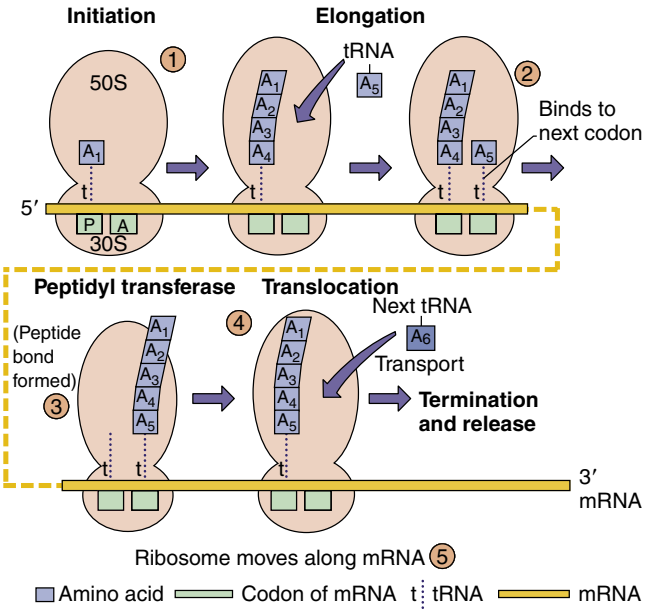


Fig. 13.3 Bacterial protein synthesis. *1,* Binding of the 30S subunit to the messenger RNA *(mRNA)* with the formyl methionine transfer RNA (fMet-tRNA) at the AUG start codon allows assembly of the 70S ribosome. The fMet-tRNA binds to the peptidyl site *(P). 2,* The next *tRNA* binds to its codon at the *A* site and "accepts" the growing peptide chain. *3* and *4,* Before translocation to the peptidyl site. *5,* The process is repeated until a stop codon and the protein are released.

to the opposite end of the tRNA is the amino acid that corresponds to the particular codon-anticodon pair.

Bacterial protein synthesis (Fig. 13.3) begins with the binding of the 30S ribosomal subunit and a special initiator tRNA for formyl methionine (fMet) at the methionine codon (AUG) start codon to form the **initiation complex.** The 50S ribosomal subunit binds to the complex to initiate mRNA synthesis. The ribosome contains two tRNA binding sites, the **A (aminoacyl) site** and the **P (peptidyl) site,** each of which allows base pairing between the bound tRNA and the codon sequence in the mRNA. The tRNA corresponding to the second codon occupies the A site. The amino group of the amino acid attached to the A site forms a peptide bond with the carboxyl group of the amino acid in the P site in a reaction known as **transpeptidation,** and the empty tRNA in the P site (uncharged tRNA) is released from the ribosome. The ribosome then moves down the mRNA exactly three nucleotides, transferring the tRNA with attached nascent peptide to the P site and bringing the next codon into the A site. The appropriate charged tRNA is brought into the A site, and the process is then repeated. Translation continues until the new codon in the A site is one of the three termination codons, for which there is no corresponding tRNA. At that point, the new protein is released to the cytoplasm and the translation complex may be disassembled, or the ribosome shuffles to the next start codon and initiates a new protein. The ability to shuffle along the mRNA to start a new protein is a characteristic of the 70S bacterial but not of the 80S eukaryotic ribosome. The eukaryotic constraint has implications for the synthesis of proteins for some viruses.

The process of protein synthesis by the 70S ribosome represents an important target of antimicrobial action. The

aminoglycosides (e.g., streptomycin and gentamicin) and the tetracyclines act by binding to the small ribosomal subunit and inhibiting normal ribosomal function. Similarly, the macrolide (e.g., erythromycin) and lincosamide (e.g., clindamycin) groups of antibiotics act by binding to the large ribosomal subunit. Also, fMet peptides (e.g., fMet-Leu-Phe) are unique to bacteria, are chemotactic, and attract neutrophils to the site of an infection.

CONTROL OF GENE EXPRESSION

Bacteria have developed mechanisms to adapt quickly and efficiently to changes and triggers from the environment. This allows them to coordinate and regulate the expression of genes for multicomponent structures or the enzymes of one or more metabolic pathways. For example, temperature change could signify entry into the human host and indicate the need for a global change in metabolism and upregulation of genes important for parasitism or virulence. Many bacterial genes are controlled at multiple levels and by multiple methods.

Promoters and operators are DNA sequences at the beginning of a gene or operon that are recognized by sigma factors, which are activator and repressor proteins that control expression of a gene or an operon. Thus all the genes coding for the enzymes of a particular pathway can be coordinately regulated.

Coordination of a large number of processes on a global level can also be mediated by small molecular activators, such as cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). Increased cAMP levels indicate low glucose levels and the need to use alternative metabolic pathways. Similarly, in a process called **quorum sensing,** each bacterium produces a specific small molecule, and when a sufficient number of bacteria are present, the concentration of the molecule will be sufficient to coordinate the expression of genes to support the colony rather than the individual bacterium. The trigger for biofilm production by *Pseudomonas* spp. is triggered by a critical concentration of *N*-acyl homoserine lactone (AHL) produced when sufficient numbers of bacteria (quorum) are present. Activation of biofilm, toxin production, and more virulent behavior by *Staphylococcus aureus* accompanies the increase in concentration of a cyclic peptide.

The genes for some virulence mechanisms are organized into a **pathogenicity island** under the control of a single promoter to coordinate their expression and ensure that all the proteins necessary for a structure or process are produced when needed. The many components of the type III secretion devices of *E. coli, Salmonella,* or *Yersinia* are grouped together within pathogenicity islands.

Transcription also can be regulated by the translation process. Unlike eukaryotes, the absence of a nuclear membrane in prokaryotes allows the ribosome to bind to the mRNA as it is being transcribed from the DNA. The position and speed of ribosomal movement along the mRNA can determine whether loops form in the mRNA, influencing the ability of the polymerase to continue transcription of new mRNA. This allows control of gene expression at both the transcriptional and translational levels.

Initiation of transcription may be under positive or negative control. Genes under **negative control** are expressed unless they are switched off by a **repressor protein.** This repressor protein prevents gene expression by binding to a specific DNA sequence within the operator, blocking the RNA polymerase from initiating transcription at the promoter sequence. Conversely, genes whose expression is under **positive control** are not transcribed unless an active regulator protein, called an **apoinducer,** is present. The apoinducer binds to a specific DNA sequence and assists the RNA polymerase in the initiation steps by an unknown mechanism.

Operons can be **inducible or repressible.** Introduction of a substrate **(inducer)** into the growth medium may induce an operon to increase the expression of the enzymes necessary for its metabolism. An abundance of the end products **(co-repressors)** of a pathway may signal that a pathway should be shut down or repressed by reducing the synthesis of its enzymes.

The *E. coli lac* operon includes all the genes necessary for lactose metabolism, as well as the control mechanisms for turning off (in the presence of glucose) or turning on (in the presence of galactose or an inducer) these genes only when they are needed. The *lac* operon includes a repressor sequence, a promoter sequence, and structural genes for the β-galactosidase enzyme, a permease, and an acetylase (Fig. 13.4). Normally the bacteria use glucose, not lactose. In the absence of lactose, the operon is repressed by the binding of the repressor protein to the operator sequence, impeding the RNA polymerase function. In the absence of glucose, however, the addition of lactose reverses this repression. Full expression of the *lac* operon also requires a protein-mediated positive-control mechanism. In *E. coli,* when glucose decreases in the cell, cAMP increases to promote usage of other sugars for metabolism. Binding of cAMP to a protein called the **catabolite gene-activator protein (CAP)** allows it to bind to a specific DNA sequence present in the promoter. The CAP-cAMP complex enhances binding of the RNA polymerase to the promoter, allowing an increase in the frequency of transcription initiation.

The tryptophan operon **(*trp* operon)** contains the structural genes necessary for tryptophan biosynthesis and is under dual transcriptional control mechanisms (Fig. 13.5). Although tryptophan is essential for protein synthesis, too much tryptophan in the cell can be toxic; therefore its synthesis must be regulated. At the DNA level, the repressor protein is activated by an increased intracellular concentration of tryptophan to prevent transcription. At the protein synthesis level, rapid translation of a "test peptide" situated at the beginning of the mRNA in the presence of tryptophan allows formation of a double-stranded loop in the RNA, which terminates transcription. The same loop is formed if no protein synthesis is occurring, a situation in which tryptophan synthesis would similarly not be required. This regulates tryptophan synthesis at the mRNA level in a process termed **attenuation,** in which mRNA synthesis is prematurely terminated.

Expression of the components of virulence mechanisms also are coordinately regulated from an operon. Simple triggers (e.g., temperature, osmolarity, pH, nutrient availability) or the concentration of specific small molecules (e.g., oxygen, iron) can turn on or turn off the transcription of a single gene or a group of genes.

Salmonella invasion genes within a pathogenicity island are turned on by high osmolarity and low oxygen, which are conditions present in the GI tract or an endosomal

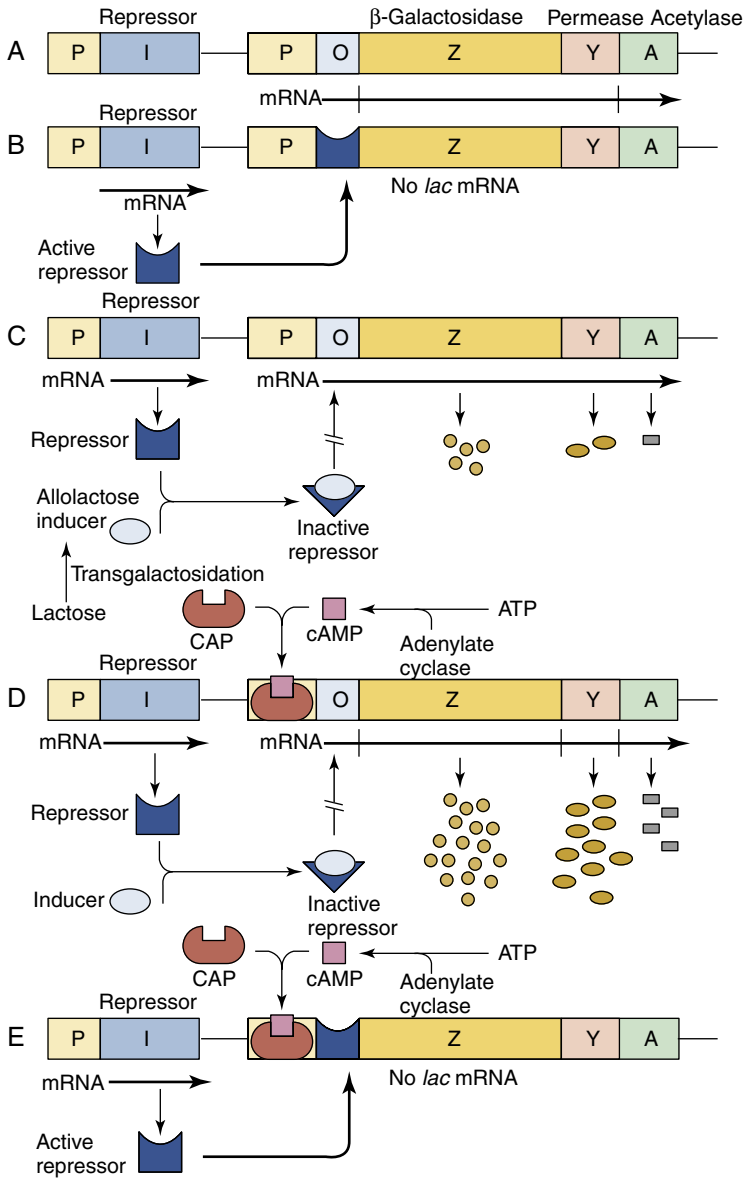


Fig. 13.4 (A) The lactose *(lac)* operon is transcribed as a polycistronic messenger RNA *(mRNA)* from the promoter *(P)* and translated into three proteins: β-galactosidase *(Z),* permease *(Y),* and acetylase *(A).* The *(I)* gene encodes the repressor protein. (B) The lactose operon is not transcribed in the absence of an allolactose inducer because the repressor competes with the RNA polymerase at the operator site *(O).* (C) The repressor, complexed with the inducer, does not recognize the operator because of a conformation change in the repressor. The *lac* operon is thus transcribed at a low level. (D) *Escherichia coli* is grown in a poor medium in the presence of lactose as the carbon source. Both the inducer and the CAP-cAMP complex are bound to the promoter, which is fully "turned on," and a high level of *lac* mRNA is transcribed and translated. (E) Growth of *E. coli* in a poor medium without lactose results in the binding of the CAP-cAMP complex to the promoter region and binding of the active repressor to the operator sequence because no inducer is available. The result will be that the *lac* operon will not be transcribed. *ATP,* Adenosine triphosphate; *cAMP,* cyclic adenosine monophosphate; *CAP,* catabolite gene-activator protein.

vesicle within a macrophage. *E. coli* senses its exit from the gut of a host by a drop in temperature and inactivates its adherence genes. Low iron levels can activate expression of hemolysin in *E. coli* or diphtheria toxin from *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* potentially to kill cells and provide iron. Iron binds to and is a co-repressor for the diphtheria toxin and operons encoding iron sequestering proteins.

Quorum sensing as a means for regulating expression of virulence factors and biofilm production by *S. aureus* and *Pseudomonas* spp. were discussed earlier. An example of coordinated control of virulence genes for *S. aureus* based on the growth rate, availability of metabolites, and the presence of a quorum is presented in Fig. 13.6.

REPLICATION OF DNA

Replication of the bacterial genome is triggered by a cascade of events linked to the growth rate of the cell. Replication of bacterial DNA is initiated at a specific sequence in the chromosome called *oriC*. The replication process requires many enzymes, including an enzyme **(helicase)** to unwind the DNA at the origin to expose the DNA, an enzyme **(primase)** to synthesize primers to start the process, and the enzyme or enzymes **(DNA-dependent DNA polymerases)** that synthesize a copy of the DNA, but only if there is a **primer sequence** to add onto and only in the **5′ to 3′ direction.**

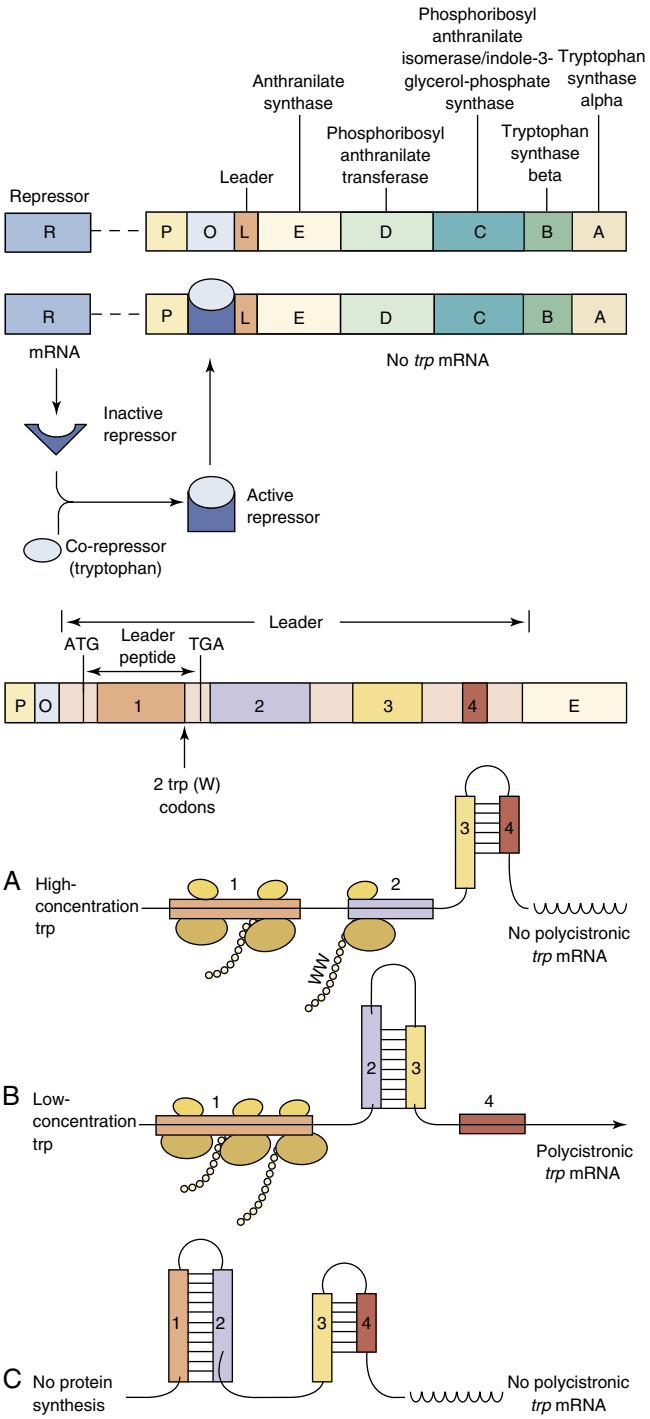


Fig. 13.5 Regulation of the tryptophan *(trp)* operon. (A) The *trp* operon encodes the five enzymes necessary for tryptophan biosynthesis. This *trp* operon is under dual control. (B) The conformation of the inactive repressor protein is changed after its binding by the co-repressor tryptophan. The resulting active repressor *(R)* binds to the operator *(O),* blocking any transcription of the *trp* mRNA by the RNA polymerase. (C) The *trp* operon also is under the control of an attenuation-antitermination mechanism. Upstream of the structural genes are the promoter *(P),* the operator, and a leader *(L),* which can be transcribed into a short peptide containing two tryptophans *(W),* near its distal end. The leader mRNA possesses four repeats (1, 2, 3, and 4), which can pair differently according to the tryptophan availability, leading to an early termination of transcription of the *trp* operon or its full transcription. In the presence of a high concentration of tryptophan, regions 3 and 4 of the leader mRNA can pair, forming a terminator hairpin, and no transcription of the *trp* operon occurs. However, in the presence of little or no tryptophan the ribosomes stall in region 1 when translating the leader peptide because of the tandem of tryptophan codons. Then regions 2 and 3 can pair, forming the antiterminator hairpin and leading to transcription of the *trp* genes. Finally, the regions 1:2 and 3:4 of the free leader mRNA can pair, also leading to cessation of transcription before the first structural gene *trpE*. *A,* Adenine; *G,* guanine; *T,* thymidine.

New DNA is synthesized **semiconservatively,** using both strands of the parental DNA as templates. New DNA synthesis occurs at **growing forks** and proceeds **bidirectionally.** One strand (the leading strand) is copied continuously in the 5′ to 3′ direction, whereas the other strand (the lagging strand) must be synthesized as many pieces of DNA using RNA primers (Okazaki fragments). The lagging-strand DNA must be extended in the 5′ to 3′ direction as its template becomes available. Then the pieces are ligated together by the enzyme DNA ligase (Fig. 13.7). To maintain the high degree of accuracy required for replication, the DNA polymerases possess "proofreading" functions that allow the enzyme to confirm that the appropriate nucleotide was inserted and to correct any errors that were made. During log-phase growth in a rich medium, many initiations of chromosomal replication may occur before cell division. This process produces a series of nested bubbles of new daughter chromosomes, each with its pair of growth forks of new DNA synthesis. The polymerase moves down the DNA strand, incorporating the appropriate (complementary) nucleotide at each position. Replication is complete when the two replication forks meet 180 degrees from the origin. The process of DNA replication puts great torsional strain on the chromosomal circle of DNA; this strain is relieved by **topoisomerases** (e.g., gyrase), which supercoil the DNA. Topoisomerases are essential to the bacteria and are targets for the fluoroquinolone antibiotics.

BACTERIAL GROWTH

Bacterial replication is a coordinated process in which two equivalent daughter cells are produced. For growth to occur, there must be sufficient metabolites to support synthesis of the bacterial components and especially the nucleotides for DNA synthesis. A cascade of regulatory events (synthesis of key proteins and RNA), much like a countdown at the Kennedy Space Center, must occur on schedule to initiate a replication cycle. *However, once it is initiated, DNA synthesis must run to completion, even if all nutrients have been removed from the medium.*

Chromosome replication is initiated at the membrane, and each daughter chromosome is anchored to a different portion of membrane. *Bacterial membrane, peptidoglycan synthesis, and cell division are linked together such that inhibition of peptidoglycan synthesis also will inhibit cell division.* As the bacterial membrane grows, the daughter chromosomes are pulled apart. Commencement of chromosome replication also initiates the process of cell division, which can be visualized by the start of septum formation between the two daughter cells (Fig. 13.8; see also Chapter 12). New initiation events may occur even before completion of chromosome replication and cell division.

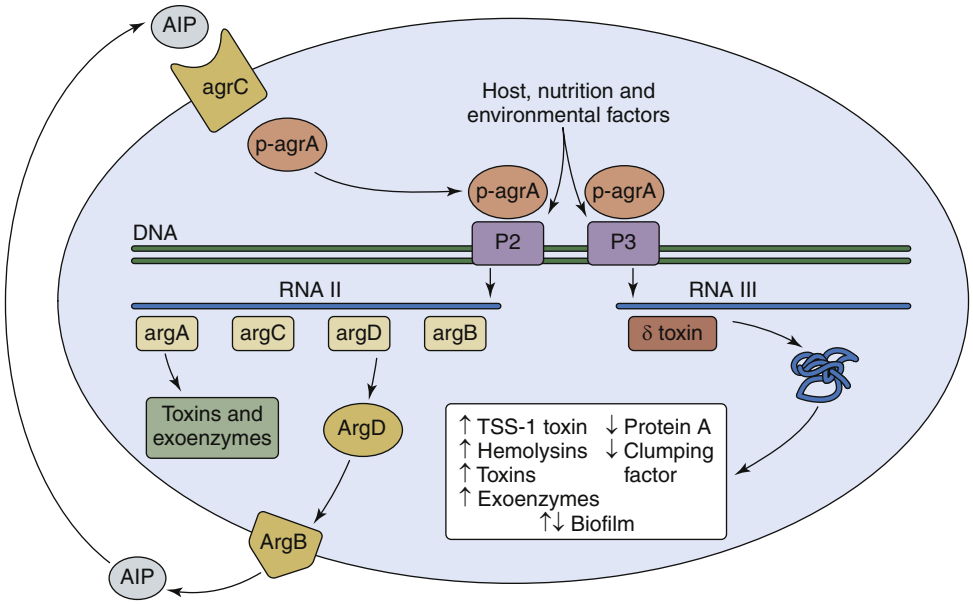


Fig. 13.6 Control of virulence genes in *Staphylococcus aureus*. *S. aureus* coordinates the expression of virulence factors to suit an individual bacterium or one within a colony, as influenced by its environment. The presence of a colony is indicated by a quorum sensing system encoded by the **agr** (accessory gene regulator) operon. The autoinducing peptide **(AIP)** binds to the **AgrC** receptor, which phosphorylates **AgrA**. The pAgrA binds to **promoters P2 on the agr operon and P3**. RNA II encodes the agr proteins. **AgrD** is processed by **AgrB** into the AIP, which then recapitulates the cycle. The RNAIII encodes the δ **toxin** and the RNAIII and AgrA coordinately regulates expression of many virulence factors. Transcription of RNA II and RNA III also are influenced by other factors (growth rate, nutrients, and reactive oxygen species) relevant to colonization and spread in the host.

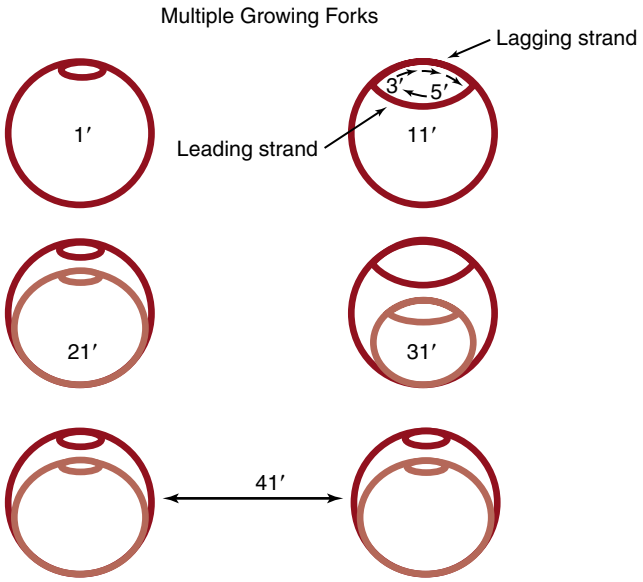


Fig. 13.7 Bacterial DNA replication. New DNA synthesis occurs at growing forks and proceeds bidirectionally. DNA synthesis progresses in the 5′ to 3′ direction continuously (leading strand) or in pieces (lagging strand). Assuming it takes 40 minutes to complete one round of replication, and assuming new initiation every 20 minutes, initiation of DNA synthesis precedes cell division. Multiple growing forks may be initiated in a cell before complete septum formation and cell division. The daughter cells are "born pregnant."

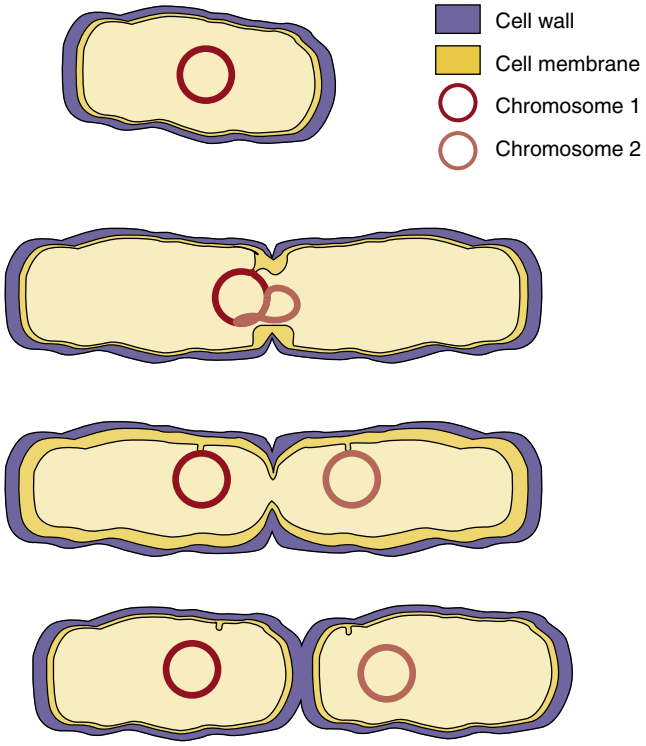


Fig. 13.8 Bacterial cell division. Replication requires extension of the cell wall and replication of the chromosome and septum formation. Membrane attachment of the DNA pulls each daughter strand into a new cell.

Depletion of metabolites (starvation) or a buildup of toxic by-products (e.g., ethanol) triggers production of chemical **alarmones,** which cause protein and other synthesis to stop, but degradative processes continue. DNA synthesis continues until all initiated chromosomes are completed, despite the detrimental effect on the cell. Ribosomes are cannibalized for deoxyribonucleotide precursors, peptidoglycan and proteins are degraded for metabolites, and the cell shrinks. Septum formation may be initiated, but cell division may not occur. Many cells die. Similar signals may initiate **sporulation** in species capable of this process (see

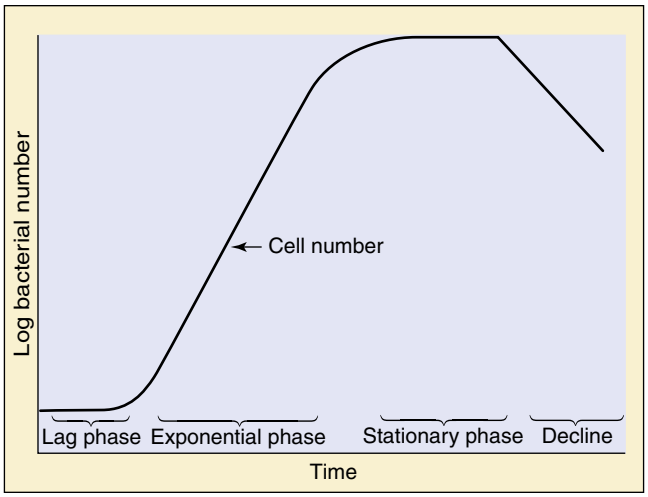


Fig. 13.9 Phases of bacterial growth, starting with an inoculum of stationary-phase cells.

Chapter 12). For some bacterial species, starvation promotes uptake of foreign DNA (transformation) that may encode the means to survive the challenge.

Population Dynamics

When bacteria are added to a new medium, they require time to adapt to the new environment before they begin dividing (Fig. 13.9). This hiatus is known as the **lag phase** of growth. During the **logarithmic (log) or exponential phase,** the bacteria will grow and divide with a **doubling time** characteristic of the strain, and determined by the conditions. The number of bacteria will increase to 2^n, in which n is the number of generations (doublings). The culture eventually runs out of metabolites, or a toxic substance builds up in the medium; the bacteria then stop growing and enter the **stationary phase,** followed by the **death phase.** During the death phase, some bacteria stop dividing but remain viable and are often insensitive to antibiotics.

Bacterial Genetics

MUTATION, REPAIR, AND RECOMBINATION

Accurate replication of DNA is important to the survival of the bacteria, but mistakes and accidental damage to the DNA occur. The bacteria have efficient DNA repair systems, but mutations and alterations to the DNA still occur. Most of these mutations have little effect on the bacteria or are detrimental, but some mutations may provide a selective advantage for survival of the bacteria when challenged by the environment, the host, or antibiotic therapy.

Mutations and Their Consequences

A mutation is any change in the base sequence of the DNA. A single base change can result in a **transition** in which one purine is replaced by another purine or in which a pyrimidine is replaced by another pyrimidine. A **transversion** in which, for example, a purine is replaced by a pyrimidine and vice versa may also result. A **silent mutation** is a change at the DNA level that does not result in any change of amino acid in the encoded protein. This type of mutation occurs because more than one codon may encode an amino acid. A **missense mutation** results in a different amino acid being inserted in the protein, but this may be a **conservative mutation** if the new amino acid has similar properties (e.g., valine replacing alanine). A **nonsense mutation** changes a codon encoding an amino acid to a stop codon (e.g., thymidine-adenine-guanine [TAG]), which will cause the ribosome to fall off the mRNA and end the protein prematurely. **Conditional mutations,** such as **temperature-sensitive mutations,** may result from a conservative mutation that changes the structure or function of an important protein at elevated temperatures.

More drastic changes can occur when numerous bases are involved. A small deletion or insertion that *is not in multiples of three* produces a **frameshift mutation.** This results in a change in the reading frame, usually leading to a useless peptide and premature truncation of the protein. **Null mutations,** which completely destroy gene function, arise when there is an extensive insertion, deletion, or gross rearrangement of the chromosome structure. Insertion of long sequences of DNA (many thousands of base pairs) by recombination, by transposition, or during genetic engineering can produce null mutations by separating the parts of a gene and inactivating the gene.

Many mutations occur spontaneously in nature (e.g., by polymerase mistakes); however, physical or chemical agents can also induce mutations. Among the physical agents used to induce mutations in bacteria are heat, which results in deamination of nucleotides; ultraviolet light, which causes pyrimidine dimer formation; and ionizing radiation, such as x-rays, which produce very reactive hydroxyl radicals that may be responsible for opening a ring of a base or causing single- or double-stranded breaks in the DNA.

Chemical mutagens can be grouped into three classes. **Nucleotide-base analogs** lead to mispairing and frequent DNA replication mistakes. For example, incorporation of 5-bromouracil into DNA instead of thymidine allows base pairing with guanine instead of adenine, changing a T-A base pair to a G-C base pair. **Frameshift mutagens,** such as polycyclic flat molecules like ethidium bromide or acridine derivatives, insert (or intercalate) between the bases as they stack with each other in the double helix. The increase in spacing of successive base pairs causes addition or deletion of a single base and leads to frequent mistakes during DNA replication. **DNA-reactive chemicals** act directly on the DNA to change the chemical structure of the base. These include nitrous acid (HNO_2) and alkylating agents, including nitrosoguanidine and ethyl methane sulfonate, which are known to add methyl or ethyl groups to the rings of the DNA bases. The modified bases may pair abnormally or not at all. The damage may also cause removal of the base from the DNA backbone.

Repair Mechanisms of DNA

A number of repair mechanisms have evolved in bacteria. Their goal is to reconnect broken DNA strands, but it may be error prone. These repair mechanisms can be divided into the following five groups:

1. **Direct DNA repair** is the enzymatic removal of damage, such as pyrimidine dimers and alkylated bases.

2. **Excision repair** is the removal of a DNA segment containing the damage, followed by synthesis of a new DNA strand. Two types of excision-repair mechanisms, generalized and specialized, exist.
3. **Recombinational** or **postreplication repair** replaces a missing or damaged section of DNA with the same or similar sequences that may be present during replication or on extrachromosomal DNA.
4. The **SOS response** is the induction of many genes (≈15) after DNA damage or interruption of DNA replication to promote recombination or error-prone repair.
5. **Error-prone repair** is the last resort of a bacterial cell before it dies. It is used to fill in gaps with a random sequence when a DNA template is not available for directing an accurate repair.

Clustered Regularly Interspaced Short Palindromic Repeats/CRISPR associated proteins (CRISPR/Cas) and similar systems are used to protect the bacterial chromosome against integration of bacteriophages and foreign plasmids. The CRISPR system provides sequences that hybridize to like sequences in the foreign DNA and then the Cas cleaves that DNA. This mechanism has been harnessed to provide sequence-targeted gene editing for gene replacement and modification therapy.

GENE EXCHANGE IN PROKARYOTIC CELLS

Many bacteria, especially many pathogenic bacterial species, are promiscuous with their DNA. The exchange of DNA between cells allows for the exchange of genes and characteristics between cells, producing new strains of bacteria. This exchange may be advantageous for the recipient, especially if the exchanged DNA encodes antibiotic resistance. The transferred DNA can be integrated into the recipient chromosome or stably maintained as an extrachromosomal element **(plasmid)** or a bacterial virus **(bacteriophage)** and passed on to daughter bacteria as an autonomously replicating unit.

Plasmids are small genetic elements that replicate independently of the bacterial chromosome. Most plasmids are circular double-stranded DNA molecules varying from 1500 to 400,000 base pairs. However, *Borrelia burgdorferi,* the causative agent of Lyme disease, and the related *B. hermsii* are unique among all eubacteria because they possess linear genomes and plasmids. Like the bacterial chromosomal DNA, plasmids can autonomously replicate and as such are referred to as **replicons.** Some plasmids, such as the *E. coli* F plasmid, are **episomes,** which means they can integrate into the host chromosome.

Plasmids carry genetic information that may not be essential but can provide a selective advantage to the bacteria. For example, plasmids may encode the production of antibiotic resistance mechanisms, bacteriocins, toxins, virulence determinants, and other genes that may provide the bacteria with a unique growth advantage over other microbes or within the host (Fig. 13.10). The number of copies of plasmid produced by a cell is determined by the particular plasmid. The **copy number** is the ratio of copies of the plasmid to the number of copies of the chromosome. This may be as few as one in the case of large plasmids or as many as 50 in smaller plasmids.

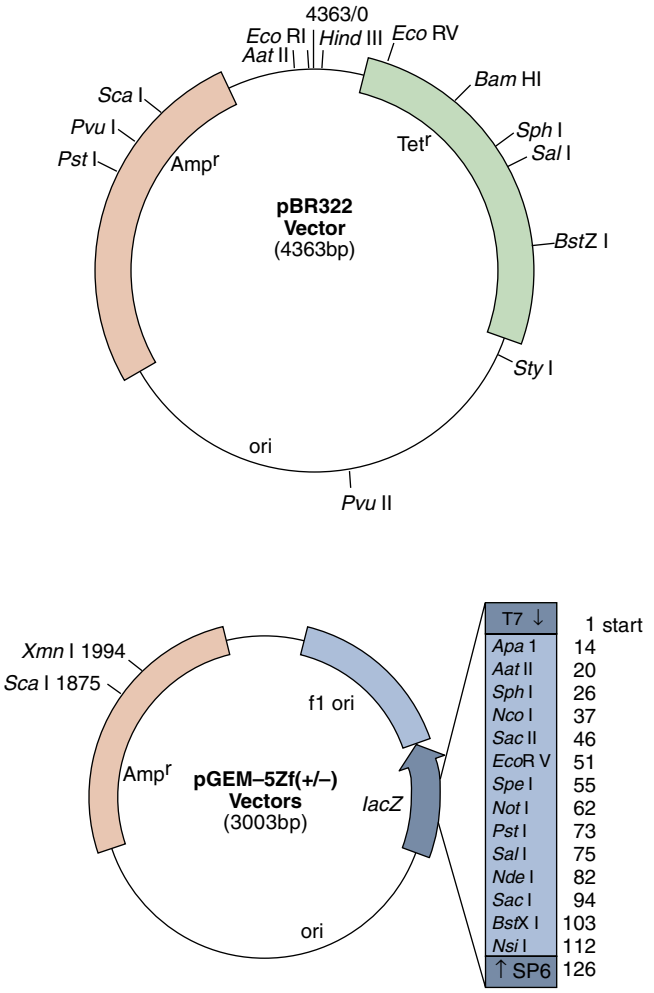


Fig. 13.10 Plasmids. The pBR322 plasmid is one of the plasmids used for cloning DNA. This plasmid encodes resistance to ampicillin *(Amp)* and tetracycline *(Tet)* and an origin of replication *(ori)*. The multiple cloning site in the pGEM-5Zf(+/–) plasmid provides different restriction enzyme cleavage sites for insertion of DNA within the β-galactosidase gene *(lacZ)*. The insert is flanked by bacteriophage promoters to allow directional messenger RNA expression of the cloned sequence.

Large plasmids (20 to 120 kb), such as the **fertility factor F** found in *E. coli* or the resistance transfer factor (80 kb), can often mediate their own transfer from one cell to another by a process called **conjugation** (see the section Conjugation later in this chapter). These conjugative plasmids encode all the necessary factors for their transfer including the pilus. Other plasmids can be transferred into a bacterial cell by means other than conjugation, such as transformation or transduction. These terms also are discussed later in the chapter.

Bacteriophages are bacterial viruses with a DNA or RNA genome usually protected by a membrane or protein shell. These extrachromosomal genetic elements can survive outside of a host cell and be transmitted from one cell to another. Bacteriophages infect bacterial cells and either replicate to large numbers and cause the cell to lyse **(lytic infection)** or, in some cases, **integrate** into the host genome without killing the host (the **lysogenic state**), such as the *E. coli* bacteriophage lambda. Some lysogenic bacteriophages carry toxin genes (e.g., corynephage beta carries the gene for the diphtheria toxin). Bacteriophage

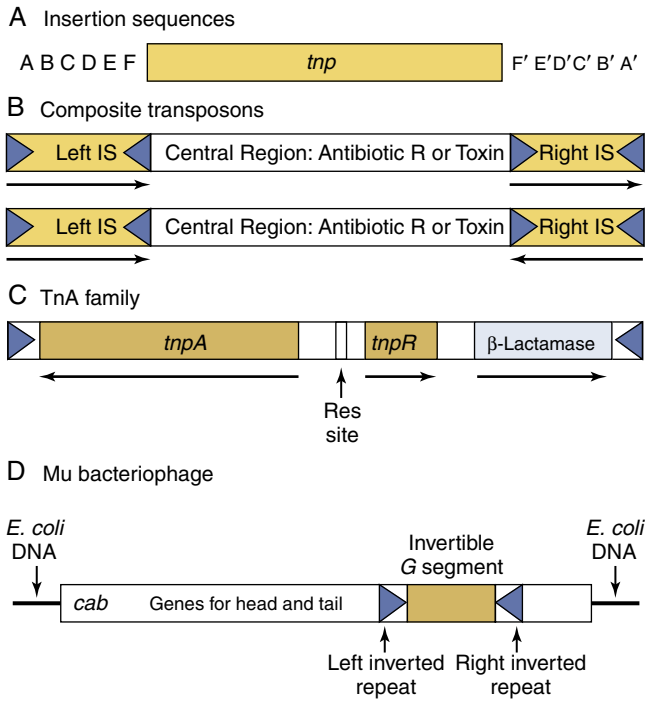


Fig. 13.11 Transposons. (A) The insertion sequences code only for a transposase *(tnp)* and possess inverted repeats (15 to 40 base pairs) at each end. (B) The composite transposons contain a central region coding for antibiotic resistances or toxins flanked by two insertion sequences *(IS),* which can be either directly repeated or reversed. (C) Tn*3,* which is a member of the Tn*A* transposon family. The central region encodes three genes, a transposase *(tnpA),* a resolvase *(tnpR),* and a β-lactamase, conferring resistance to ampicillin. A resolution site *(Res site)* is used during the replicative transposition process. This central region is flanked on both ends by direct repeats of 38 base pairs. (D) Phage-associated transposon is exemplified by the bacteriophage mu.

lambda remains lysogenic as long as a repressor protein is synthesized and prevents the phage genome from being excised to replicate and exit the cell. Damage to the host cell DNA by radiation or by another means, or inability to produce the repressor protein is a signal that the host cell is unhealthy and is no longer a good place for "freeloading."

Transposons (jumping genes) are mobile genetic elements (Fig. 13.11) that can transfer DNA within a cell, from one position to another in the genome, or between different molecules of DNA (e.g., plasmid to plasmid or plasmid to chromosome). Transposons are present in prokaryotes and eukaryotes. The simplest transposons are called *insertion sequences* and range in length from 150 to 1500 base pairs, with inverted repeats of 15 to 40 base pairs at their ends and the minimal genetic information necessary for their own transfer (i.e., the gene coding for the transposase). Complex transposons carry other genes, such as genes that provide resistance against antibiotics. Transposons sometimes insert into genes and inactivate those genes. If insertion and inactivation occur in a gene that encodes an essential protein, the cell dies.

Some pathogenic bacteria use a transposon-like mechanism to coordinate expression of a system of virulence factors. The genes for the activity may be grouped together in a **pathogenicity or virulence island** surrounded by transposon-like mobile elements, allowing them to move within the chromosome and to other bacteria. The entire genetic unit can be triggered by an environmental stimulus (e.g., pH, heat, contact with the host cell surface) as a way of coordinating the expression of a complex process. For example, the SPI-1 island of *Salmonella* is activated by environmental signals (e.g., pH) to express the 25 genes for a type III secretion device that allows the bacteria to enter nonphagocytic cells.

MECHANISMS OF GENETIC TRANSFER BETWEEN CELLS

The exchange of genetic material between bacterial cells may occur by one of three mechanisms (Fig. 13.12): (1) **transformation,** which is an active uptake and incorporation of exogenous or foreign DNA; (2) **conjugation,** which is the mating or quasi-sexual exchange of genetic information from one bacterium (the donor) to another bacterium (the recipient); or (3) **transduction,** which is the transfer of genetic information from one bacterium to another by a bacteriophage. Once inside a cell, a **transposon** can jump between different DNA molecules (e.g., plasmid to plasmid or plasmid to chromosome). Several of these mechanisms contributed to the generation of vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (Fig. 13.13 and Box 13.2).

Transformation

Transformation is the process by which bacteria take up fragments of naked DNA and incorporate them into their genomes. Transformation was the first mechanism of genetic transfer to be discovered in bacteria. In 1928, Griffith observed that pneumococcal virulence was related to the presence of a polysaccharide capsule and that extracts of encapsulated bacteria producing smooth colonies could transmit this trait to nonencapsulated bacteria, normally appearing as rough colonies. Griffith's studies led to Avery, MacLeod, and McCarty's identification of DNA as the transforming principle some 15 years later.

Certain species are naturally capable of taking up exogenous DNA (such species are then said to be competent), including *Haemophilus influenzae, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Bacillus* spp., and *Neisseria* spp. Competence develops toward the end of logarithmic growth. *E. coli* and most other bacteria lack the natural ability for DNA uptake, and competence must be induced by chemical methods or electroporation (use of high-voltage pulses) to facilitate uptake of plasmid and other DNA.

Conjugation

Conjugation results in one-way transfer of DNA from a donor (or male) cell to a recipient (or female) cell through the **sex pilus.** Conjugation occurs with most, if not all, eubacteria and usually between members of the same or related species, but it also has been demonstrated to occur between prokaryotes and cells from plants, animals, and fungi.

The mating type (sex) of the cell depends on the presence (male) or absence (female) of a conjugative plasmid, such as the **F plasmid** of *E. coli*. The F plasmid is defined as conjugative because it carries all the genes necessary for its own transfer, including the ability to make sex pili and to initiate DNA synthesis at the transfer origin *(oriT)* of the plasmid. The sex pilus is a specialized type IV secretion device.

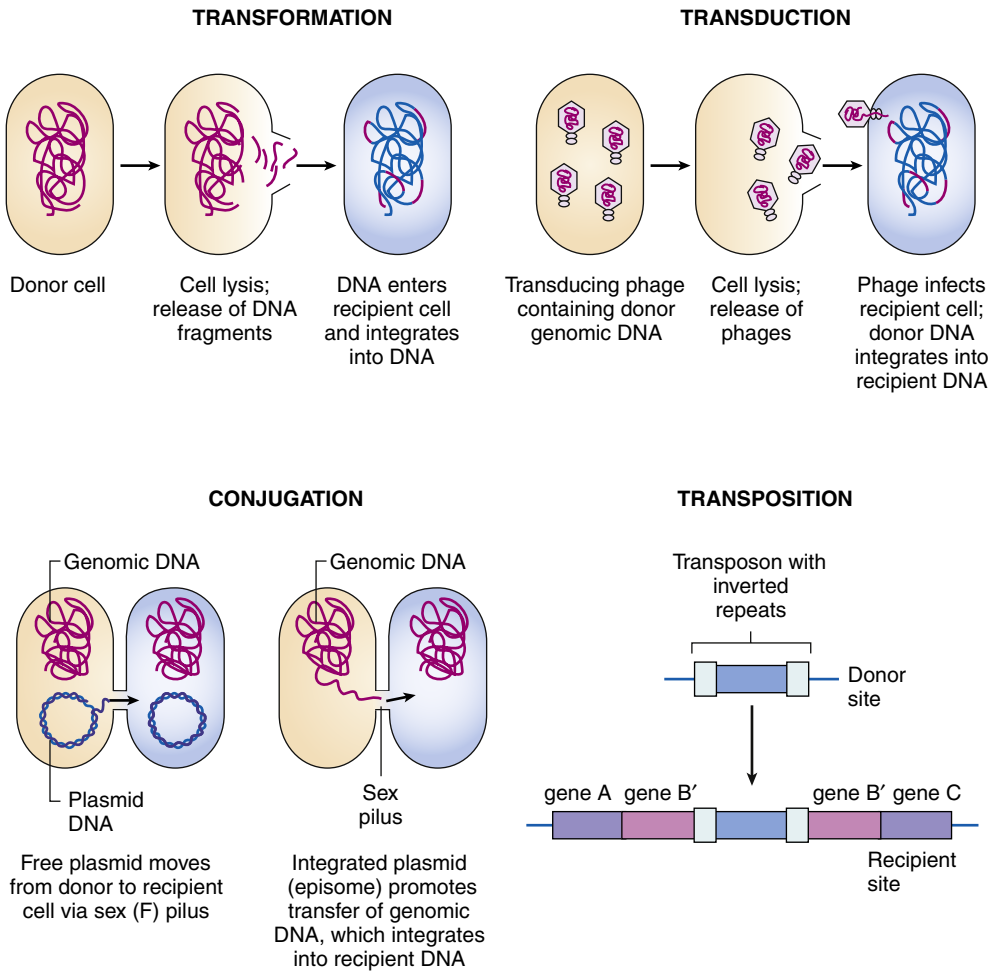


Fig. 13.12 Mechanisms of bacterial gene transfer. (From Rosenthal, K.S., Tan, J., 2002. Rapid Reviews Microbiology and Immunology. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

On transfer of the F plasmid, the recipients become F^+ male cells. If a fragment of chromosomal DNA has been incorporated into the plasmid, it is designated an F prime (F′) plasmid. When it transfers into the recipient cell, it carries that fragment with it and converts it into an F′ male. If the F plasmid sequence is integrated into the bacterial chromosome, then the cell is designated as an Hfr (high-frequency recombination) cell.

The DNA that is transferred by conjugation is not a double helix; rather, it is a single-stranded molecule. Mobilization begins when a plasmid-encoded protein makes a single-stranded site-specific cleavage at the oriT. The nick initiates rolling circle replication, and the displaced linear strand is directed to the recipient cell. The transferred single-stranded DNA is recircularized and its complementary strand synthesized. Conjugation results in transfer of a part of the plasmid sequence and some portion of the bacterial chromosomal DNA. Because of the fragile connection between the mating pairs, the transfer is usually aborted before being completed, such that only the chromosomal sequences adjacent to the integrated F are transferred. Artificial interruption of a mating between an Hfr and an F^- pair has been helpful in constructing a consistent map of the *E. coli* chromosomal DNA. In such maps, the position of each gene is given in minutes (based on 100 minutes for complete transfer at 37° C), according to its time of entry into a recipient cell in relation to a fixed origin.

Transduction

Genetic transfer by transduction is mediated by bacterial viruses (bacteriophages) that pick up fragments of DNA and package them into bacteriophage particles. The DNA is delivered to infected cells and becomes incorporated into the bacterial genomes. Transduction can be classified as **specialized** if the phages in question transfer particular genes (usually those adjacent to their integration sites in the genome) or **generalized** if incorporation of DNA sequences is random because of accidental packaging of host DNA into the phage capsid. For example, a nuclease from the P1 phage degrades the host *E. coli* chromosomal DNA, and some of the DNA fragments are packaged into phage particles. The encapsulated DNA, instead of phage DNA, is injected into a new host cell, in which it can recombine with the homologous host DNA. Generalized transducing particles are valuable in the **genetic mapping** of bacterial chromosomes. The closer two genes are within the bacterial chromosome, the more likely it is that they will be co-transduced in the same fragment of DNA.

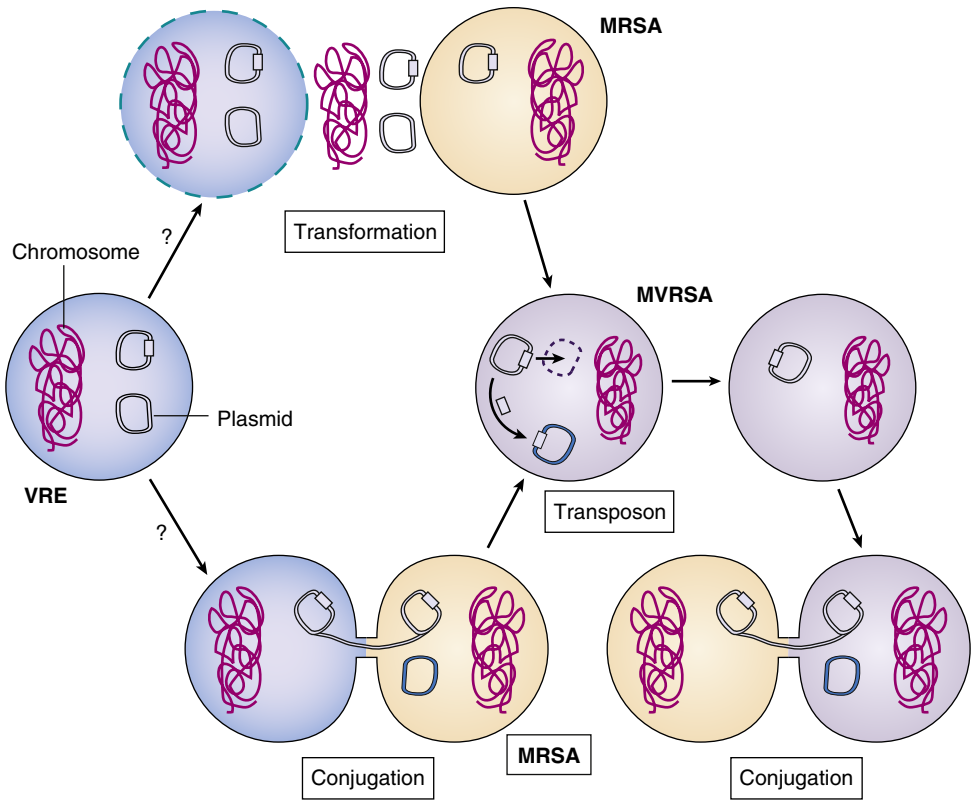


Fig. 13.13 Genetic mechanisms of evolution of methicillin- and vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA* and *MVRSA).* Vancomycin-resistant enterococcus *(VRE) (in blue)* contains plasmids with multiple antibiotic resistance and virulence factors. During co-infection, a MRSA *(in pink)* may have acquired the enterococcal resistance plasmid (e-plasmid) *(in purple)* by transformation (after lysis of the enterococcal cell and release of its DNA) or, more likely, by conjugation. A transposon in the e-plasmid containing the vancomycin resistance gene (white box within plasmid circle) jumped out and inserted into the multiple antibiotic resistance plasmid of the MRSA. The new plasmid is readily spread to other *S. aureus* bacteria by conjugation.

BOX 13.2 Generation of Vancomycin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* by Multiple Genetic Manipulations

Until recently, vancomycin was the last-resort drug for *Staphylococcus aureus* strains resistant to β-lactam (penicillin-related) antibiotics (e.g., methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* [MRSA]). Isolates of *S. aureus* acquired the vancomycin resistance gene during a mixed infection with *Enterococcus faecalis* (see Fig. 13.13). The gene for vancomycin resistance was contained within a **transposon** (Tn1546on) a multiresistance conjugative plasmid. The plasmid was probably transferred by **conjugation** between *E. faecalis* and *S. aureus*. Alternatively, after lysis of the *E. faecalis, S. aureus* acquired the DNA by **transduction** and became **transformed** by the new DNA. The transposon then jumped from the *E. faecalis* plasmid, **recombined,** and **integrated** into the *S. aureus* multiresistance plasmid, and the *E. faecalis* DNA was degraded. The resulting *S. aureus* plasmid encodes resistance to β-lactams, vancomycin, trimethoprim, and gentamycin/kanamycin/tobramycin antibiotics and to quaternary ammonium disinfectants and can transfer to other *S. aureus* strains by **conjugation.** (For more information, refer to Weigel in the Bibliography of this chapter.)

RECOMBINATION

Incorporation of extrachromosomal (foreign) DNA into the chromosome occurs by recombination. There are two types of recombination: homologous and nonhomologous. **Homologous (legitimate) recombination** occurs between closely related DNA sequences and generally substitutes one sequence for another. The process requires a set of enzymes produced (in *E. coli*) by the *rec* genes. **Nonhomologous (illegitimate) recombination** occurs between dissimilar DNA sequences and generally produces insertions, or deletions, or both. This process usually requires specialized (sometimes site-specific) recombination enzymes, such as those produtced by many transposons and lysogenic bacteriophages.

Genetic Engineering

Genetic engineering, also known as recombinant DNA technology, uses the techniques and tools developed by the bacterial geneticists to purify, amplify, modify, and express specific gene sequences. The use of genetic engineering and "cloning" has revolutionized biology and medicine. The basic components of genetic engineering are (1) **cloning and expression vectors,** which can be used to deliver the DNA sequences into receptive bacteria and amplify the desired sequence; (2) the **DNA sequence** to be amplified and expressed; (3) **enzymes,** such as **restriction enzymes,** which are used to cleave DNA reproducibly at defined sequences (Table 13.1); and (4) **DNA ligase,** the enzyme that links the fragment to the cloning vector.

Cloning and expression vectors must allow foreign DNA to be inserted into them but must still be able to replicate normally in a bacterial or eukaryotic host. Many types of vectors are currently used. Plasmid vectors, such as pUC, pBR322, and pGEM (Fig. 13.14), are used for DNA

TABLE 13.1 Common Restriction Enzymes Used in Molecular Biology

Microorganism	Enzyme	Recognition Site
Acinetobacter calcoaceticus	*Acc* I	fx1
Bacillus amyloliquefaciens H	*Bam* HI	fx2
Escherichia coli RY13	*Eco* RI	fx3
Haemophilus influenzae Rd	*Hind* III	fx4
H. influenzae serotype c, 1160	*Hinc* II	fx5
Providencia stuartii 164	*Pst* I	fx6
Serratia marcescens	*Sma* I	fx7
Staphylococcus aureus 3A	*Sau* 3AI	fx8
Xanthomonas malvacearum	*Xma* I	fx9

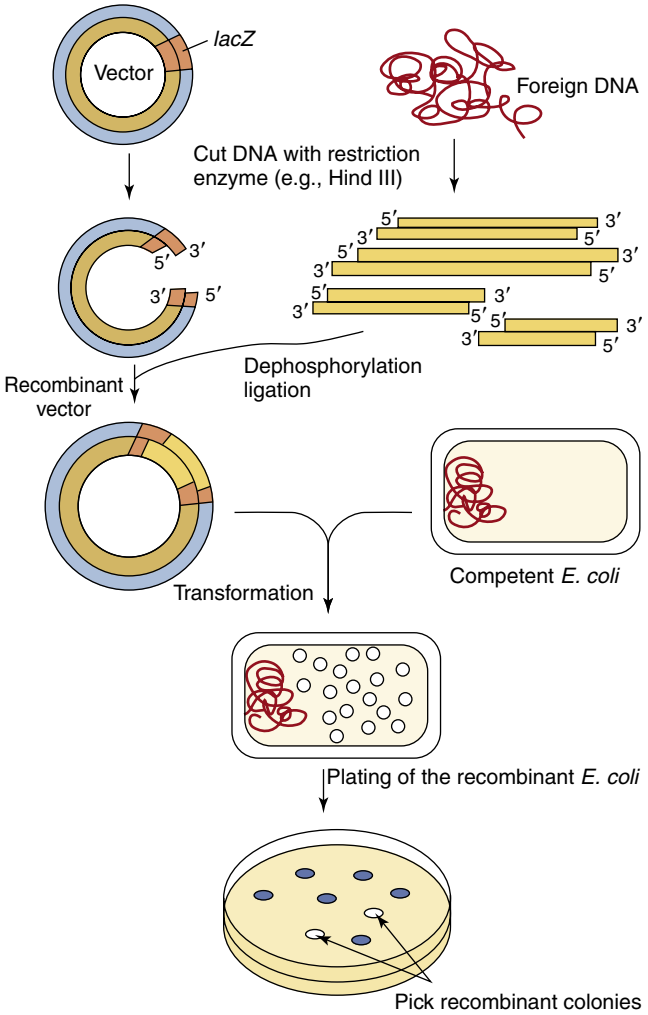


Fig. 13.14 Cloning of foreign DNA in vectors. The vector and the foreign DNA are first digested by a restriction enzyme. Insertion of foreign DNA into the *lacZ* gene inactivates the β-galactosidase gene, allowing subsequent selection. The vector is then ligated to the foreign DNA, using bacteriophage T4 DNA ligase. The recombinant vectors are transformed into competent *Escherichia coli* cells. The recombinant *E. coli* cells are plated onto agar containing antibiotic, an inducer of the *lac* operon, and a chromophoric substrate that turns blue in cells with a plasmid but not an insert; those cells with a plasmid containing the insert remain white.

fragments up to 20 kb. Bacteriophages, such as lambda, are used for larger fragments up to 25 kb, and **cosmid** vectors have combined some of the advantages of plasmids and phages for fragments up to 45 kb.

Most **cloning vectors** have been "engineered" to have a site for insertion of foreign DNA, a means of selection of the bacteria that have incorporated any plasmid (e.g., antibiotic resistance), and a means of distinguishing the bacteria that have incorporated those plasmids that contain inserted DNA. **Expression vectors** have DNA sequences to facilitate their replication in bacteria and eukaryotic cells and the transcription of the gene into mRNA.

The DNA to be cloned can be obtained by purification of chromosomal DNA from cells, viruses, or other plasmids or by selective amplification of DNA sequences by a technique known as *polymerase chain reaction* (PCR) (PCR is explained further in Chapter 5). Both the vector and the foreign DNA are cleaved with restriction enzymes (see Fig. 13.14). Restriction enzymes recognize a specific palindromic sequence and make a staggered cut that generates sticky ends or a blunt cut that generates blunt ends (see Table 13.1). Most cloning vectors have a sequence called the **multiple cloning site,** which can be cleaved by many restriction enzymes. Ligation of the vector with the DNA fragments generates a molecule called **recombinant DNA,** which is capable of replicating the inserted sequence. The total number of recombinant vectors obtained when cloning all the fragments that result from the cleavage of chromosomal DNA is known as a **genomic library** because there should be at least one representative of each gene in the library. An alternative approach to cloning the gene for a protein is to use a retrovirus enzyme called *reverse transcriptase* (RNA-dependent DNA polymerase) to convert the mRNA in the cell into a complementary DNA (cDNA). A **cDNA library** represents the genes that are expressed as mRNA in a particular cell.

The recombinant DNA is then transformed into a bacterial host, usually *E. coli,* and the plasmid-containing bacteria are selected for acquisition of antibiotic resistance (e.g., ampicillin resistance). The library can then be screened to find an *E. coli* clone possessing the desired DNA fragment. Various screening techniques can be used to identify the bacteria containing the appropriate recombinant DNA. The multiple cloning site used for inserting the foreign DNA is often part of the *lacZ* gene of the *lac* operon. Insertion of the foreign DNA into the *lacZ* gene inactivates the gene (acting almost like a transposon) and prevents the plasmid-directed synthesis of β-galactosidase in the recipient cell, which results in white bacterial colonies instead of blue colonies if β-galactosidase was produced and was able to cleave an appropriate chromophore.

Genetic engineering has been used to isolate and express the genes for useful proteins such as insulin, interferon, growth hormones, and interleukin in bacteria, yeast, or even insect cells. Similarly, large amounts of pure immunogen for a vaccine can be prepared without the need to work with the intact disease organisms.

The vaccine against hepatitis B virus represents the first successful use of recombinant DNA technology to make a vaccine approved for human use by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. The hepatitis B surface antigen is produced by the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.

Alternatively, the plasmid DNA capable of promoting expression of the desired immunogen (DNA vaccine) can be injected into an individual to let the host cells express the immunogen and generate an immune response. Recombinant DNA technology has also become essential to laboratory diagnosis, forensic science, agriculture, and many other disciplines.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Cotter, P.A., Miller, J.F., 1998. In vivo and ex vivo regulation of bacterial virulence gene expression. Curr. Opin. Microbiol. 1(1), 17–26.

Kavanaugh, J.S., Horswill, A.R., 2016. Impact of environmental cues on staphylococcal quorum sensing and biofilm development. J. Biol. Chem. 291, 12556–12564.

Lewin, B., 2007. Genes IX, Sudbury. Mass. Jones and Bartlett.

Lodish, H., Berk, A., Kaiser, C.A., et al., 2007. Molecular Cell Biology, sixth ed. WH Freeman, New York.

Nelson, D.L., Cox, M., 2017. Lehninger Principles of Biochemistry, seventh ed. Worth, New York.

Novick, R.P., Geisinger, E., 2008. Quorum sensing in staphylococci. Ann. Rev. Genet. 42, 541–546.

Patel, S.S., Rosenthal, K.S., 2007. Microbial adaptation: putting the best team on the field. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 15, 330–334.

Rutherford, S.T., Bassler, B.L., 2012. Bacterial quorum sensing: its role in virulence and possibilities for its control. Cold Spring. Harb. Perspect. Med. 2, a012427.

Weigel, L.M., Clewell, D.B., Gill, S.R., et al., 2003. Genetic analysis of a high-level vancomycin-resistant isolate of *Staphylococcus aureus*. Science 302, 1569–1571.

Yarwood, J.M., Schlievert, P.M., 2003. J.Clin. Invest. 112, 1620–1625.

Saad, N., Delattre, C., Urdaci, M., et al., 2013. An overview of the last advances in probiotic and prebiotic field. Food. Sci. Technol. 50, 1–16.

Smith, P.M., Howitt, M.R., Panikov, N., et al., 2013. The microbial metabolites, short-chain fatty acids, regulate colonic Treg cell homeostasis. Science 341, 569–573.

Articles on Probiotics

Stone, S., Edmonds, R., Rosenthal, K.S., 2013. Probiotics: helping out the normal flora. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 21, 305–311.

Vijay-Kumar, M., Aitken, J.D., Carvalho, F.A., et al., 2010. Metabolic syndrome and altered gut microbiota in mice lacking Toll-like receptor 5. Science 328, 228–231.

Questions

1. How many moles of ATP are generated per mole of glucose in glycolysis, the TCA cycle, and electron transport? Which of these occur in anaerobic conditions and in aerobic conditions? Which is most efficient?

2. What products of anaerobic fermentation would be detrimental to host (human) tissue (e.g., *C. perfringens*)?

3. If the number of bacteria during log phase growth can be calculated by the following equation: $N_t = N_0 \times 2^{\frac{t}{d}}$ in which N_t is the number of bacteria after time (t), t/d is the amount of time divided by the doubling time, and N_0 is the initial number of bacteria, how many bacteria will be in the culture after 4 hours if the doubling time is 20 minutes and the initial bacterial inoculum contained 1000 bacteria?

4. What are the principal properties of a plasmid?

5. Give two mechanisms of regulation of bacterial gene expression. Use specific examples.

6. What types of mutations affect DNA, and what agents are responsible for such mutations?

7. Which mechanisms may be used by a bacterial cell for the exchange of genetic material? Briefly explain each mechanism.

8. Discuss the applications of molecular biotechnology to medicine, including contributions and uses in diagnoses.

14 Mechanisms of Bacterial Pathogenesis

To a bacterium, the human body is a collection of environmental niches that provides the warmth, moisture, and food necessary for growth. Bacteria have traits that enable them to enter (invade) the environment, remain in a niche (adhere or colonize), gain access to food sources (degradative enzymes), sequester metal ions (e.g., iron), and escape clearance by host immune and nonimmune protective responses (e.g., **capsule**). When sufficient numbers of bacteria are present **(quorum),** they turn on functions to support the colony, including production of a biofilm. Unfortunately, many of the mechanisms bacteria use to maintain their niche and the by-products of bacterial growth and colonization (e.g., acids, gas) can cause damage and problems for the human host. Many of these traits are **virulence factors** that enhance the ability of bacteria to remain in and harm the body to cause disease (Box 14.1). Although many bacteria cause disease by directly destroying tissue, some release toxins, which can disseminate in the blood to cause system-wide pathogenesis.

Not all bacteria or bacterial infections cause disease. The human body is colonized with numerous microbes **(normal flora, microbiota),** many of which serve important functions for their hosts. Normal flora bacteria aid in the digestion of food, produce vitamins (e.g., vitamin K), protect the host from colonization with pathogenic microbes, and activate appropriate host innate and immune responses. These endogenous bacteria normally reside in locations such as the gastrointestinal (GI) tract, mouth, skin, and upper respiratory tract, which can be considered to be outside the body (Fig. 14.1). Each individual has a characteristic microbiota that is selected and maintained by host factors and also regulates its own bacterial composition. The host innate and immune response reacts to certain metabolites and surface structures of bacteria to help maintain a healthy microbiota and eliminate pathogenic or inappropriate microbes. Excessive responses to bacteria cause immunopathogenesis and may be the major cause of the disease (e.g., sepsis). Even the normal flora can be problematic with most bacterial infections resulting from normal flora bacteria entering normally sterile sites of the body.

Some bacteria always cause disease because of expression of their virulence factors, whereas the bacterial strain and inoculum size of other types of bacteria may determine whether disease occurs. Some strains may be benign and others not (e.g., *Escherichia coli* O157/H7 produces a toxin and can cause hemolytic uremic syndrome). The threshold for disease production is different for different bacteria (e.g., <200 *Shigella* are required for shigellosis, but 10^8 *Vibrio cholerae* or *Campylobacter* organisms are required for disease of the GI tract). Host factors also can play a role. For example, although a million or more *Salmonella* organisms are necessary for gastroenteritis to become established in a healthy person, only a few thousand organisms are necessary in a person whose gastric pH has been neutralized with antacids or other means. Congenital defects, immunodeficiency states (see Chapter 10), and other disease-related conditions might also increase a person's susceptibility to infection.

Many bacteria only express their virulence factors under special conditions and genetically coordinate their expression (for *Staphylococcus aureus*, see Fig. 13.6). For example, production of type III secretion devices (described later) by *Shigella flexneri* and *Salmonella typhimurium* are triggered by oxygen tension and pH, respectively, to ensure proximity to appropriate host membranes. Also, the biofilm produced by *Pseudomonas* is triggered when there are sufficient bacteria (a quorum) producing sufficient amounts of *N*-acyl homoserine lactone (AHL) to trigger expression of the genes for polysaccharide production. The components for complex structures and systems are often encoded together in a pathogenicity island. **Pathogenicity islands** are large genetic regions in the chromosome or on plasmids that contain sets of genes encoding numerous virulence factors that may require coordinated expression. These genes may be turned on by a single stimulus (e.g., temperature of the gut, pH of a lysosome). A pathogenicity island is usually within a transposon and can be transferred as a unit to different sites within a chromosome or to other bacteria. For example, the SPI-2 pathogenicity island of *Salmonella* is activated by the acidic pH of a phagocytic vesicle within a macrophage. This promotes expression of approximately 25 proteins that assemble into a syringe-like molecular device (type III secretion device) (Fig. 14.2) that injects proteins into the host cell to facilitate the bacteria's intracellular survival and growth.

The host innate and immune systems are constantly protecting the body's borders and internal regions of the body. Bacteria have evolved the means to escape many of these protections to establish their niche (normal flora) or invade and cause tissue infections (pathogens). *The longer a bacterium remains in the body, the greater its numbers, its ability*

Box 14.1 Bacterial Virulence Mechanisms

Capsule and Biofilm
Adherence
Invasion
By-products of growth (gas, acid)
Toxins
Degradative enzymes
Cytotoxic proteins
Endotoxin
Superantigen
Induction of excess inflammation
Evasion of phagocytic and immune clearance
Resistance to antibiotics
Intracellular growth

to spread, its potential to cause tissue damage and disease, the larger the host immune and inflammatory response necessary to resolve the infection and the greater the immunopathogenesis and severity of the disease.

Selection pressures, such as treatment with antibiotics and other drugs, diet, and stress, can lead to changes in the composition of the microbiota, which can allow the outgrowth of inappropriate bacteria (e.g., *Clostridium difficile*, which can cause pseudomembranous colitis) and the onset of inappropriate immune responses (e.g., inflammatory bowel diseases).

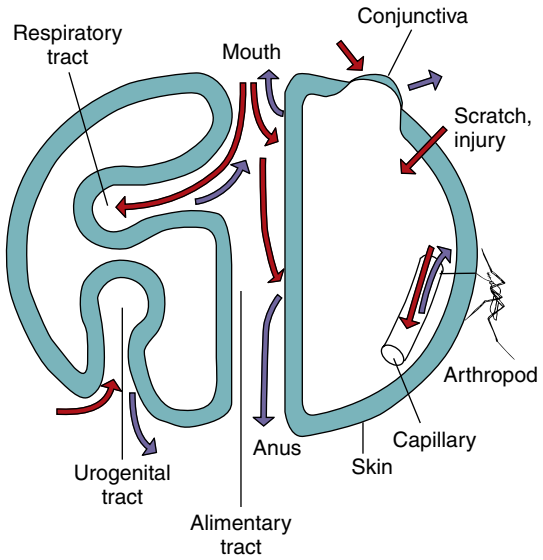


Fig. 14.1 Body surfaces as sites of microbial infection and shedding. *Red arrows* indicate infection; *purple arrows* indicate shedding. (Modified from Goering, R.V., Dockrell, H.M., Zuckerman, M., et al., 2019. Mims' Medical Microbiology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

Certain **virulent bacteria** always cause disease because they produce toxins or have mechanisms that promote their growth in the host at the expense of the host's tissue or organ function (secreted degradative enzymes). **Opportunistic bacteria** take advantage of preexisting conditions, such as immunosuppression, to grow and cause serious disease. For example, burn victims and the lungs of patients with cystic fibrosis are at higher risk of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection, and patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) are very susceptible to infection by intracellularly growing bacteria, such as the mycobacteria.

Disease results from the combination of damage or loss of tissue or organ function caused by the bacteria combined with the consequences of the innate and immune (inflammation) responses to the infection (Box 14.2). The **signs and symptoms of a disease** are determined by the change to the affected tissue. **Systemic responses** are produced by toxins and the cytokines produced in response to the infection. The **seriousness** of the disease depends on the importance of the affected organ and the extent of the damage caused by the infection. Infections of the central nervous system are especially serious.

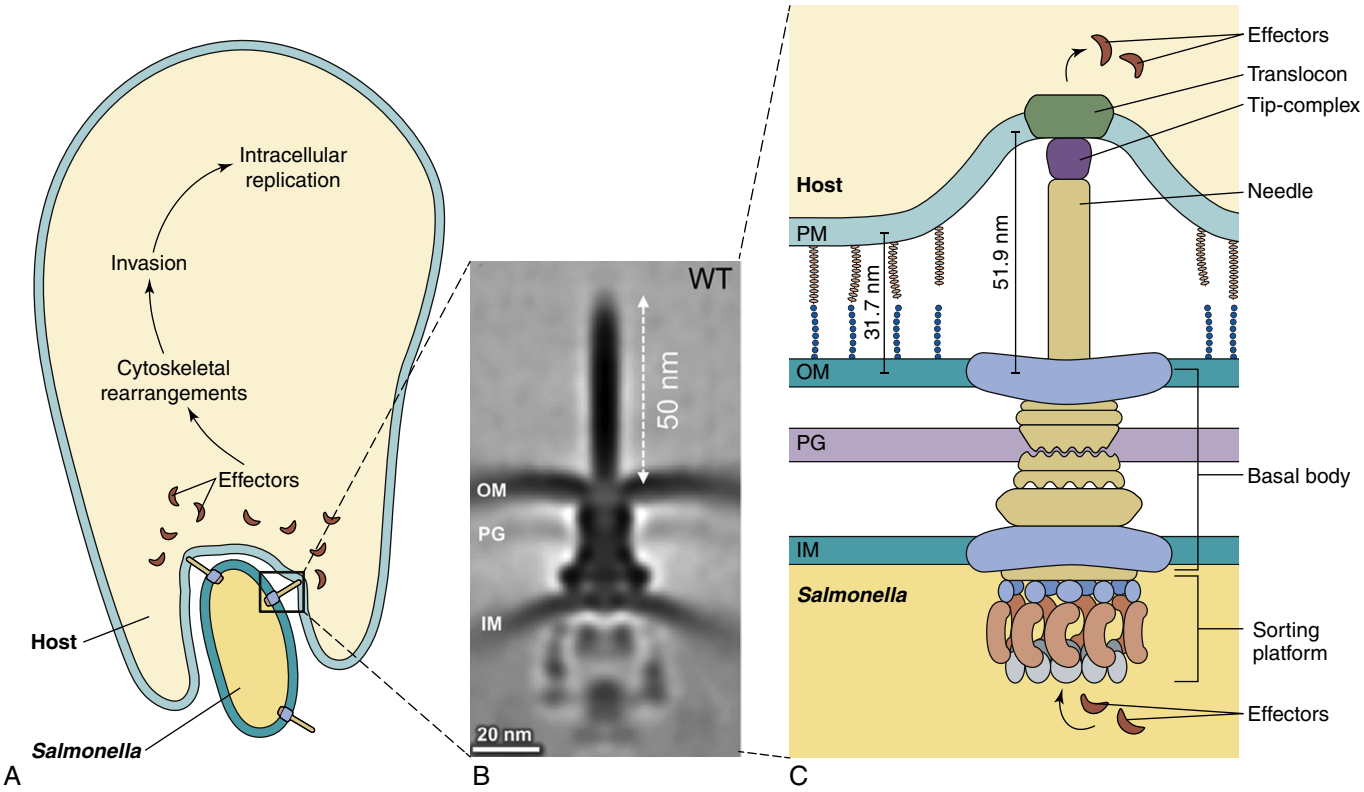


Fig. 14.2 Model of the type III secretion device (injectisome) from *Salmonella typhimurium* caught in the act of injecting into the host cell. (A) Model of the *S. typhimurium* injectisome interacting into the host cell based on (B) cryo-electron microscope tomography. (C) Model of the injectisome at the *Salmonella*-host cell interface. (From Park, D., Lara-Tejero, M., Waxham, M.N., Li, W., Hu, B., Galán JE, Liu J., 2018. Visualization of the type III secretion mediated Salmonella–host cell interface using cryo-electron tomography. eLife 7, e39514. Copyright Park et al. This article is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License, which permits unrestricted use and redistribution provided that the original author and source are credited.)

Entry into the Human Body

For infection to become established, bacteria must first gain entry into the body (Table 14.1; see Fig. 14.1). Natural defense mechanisms include barriers (e.g., skin, mucus, ciliated epithelium) and secretions containing antibacterial substances (e.g., lysozyme, defensins, immunoglobulin [Ig] A) that hinder bacterial entry into the body. However, these barriers are sometimes broken (e.g., a tear in the skin, a tumor or ulcer in the bowel), providing a portal of entry for the bacteria, or the bacteria may have the means to compromise the barrier and invade the body. On invasion, the bacteria can travel in the bloodstream to other sites in the body.

The **skin** has a thick, horny layer of dead cells that protects the body from infection. However, cuts in the skin, produced accidentally or surgically or kept open with catheters or other surgical appliances, provide a means for the bacteria to gain access to the susceptible tissue underneath. For example, *S. aureus* and *S. epidermidis,* which are a part of the normal flora on skin, can enter the body through breaks in the skin and pose a major problem for people with indwelling catheters and intravenous lines.

The mouth, nose, ears, eyes, anus, and respiratory, GI, and urogenital tracts are natural openings in the skin through which bacteria can enter the body. They are protected by natural defenses such as the mucus and ciliated epithelium that line the upper respiratory tract, the lysozyme and other antibacterial secretions in tears and mucus, and the acid and bile in the GI tract, as well as secretory IgA. However, many bacteria are unaffected or have the means to evade these defenses. For example, the outer membrane of the gram-negative bacteria makes these bacteria more resistant to lysozyme, acid, and bile. The enterobacteria are thus enabled to colonize the GI tract. Entry of these endogenous bacteria to normally sterile sites of the body, such as the peritoneum and the bloodstream, often indicates a break in the normal barrier. An example of this is the patient whose colon tumor was diagnosed after detection of a bacteremia (blood-borne infection) or endocarditis caused by enteric bacteria.

Box 14.2 Bacterial Disease Production

1. Disease is caused by damage produced by the bacteria plus the consequences of innate and immune responses to the infection.
2. The signs and symptoms of a disease are determined by the function and importance of the affected tissue.
3. The length of the incubation period is the time required for the bacteria and/or the host response to cause sufficient damage to initiate discomfort or interfere with essential functions.

TABLE 14.1 Bacterial Port of Entry

Route	Examples
Ingestion	*Salmonella* spp., *Shigella* spp., *Yersinia enterocolitica,* enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli, Vibrio* spp., *Campylobacter* spp., *Clostridium botulinum, Bacillus cereus, Listeria* spp., *Brucella* spp.
Inhalation	*Mycobacterium* spp., *Nocardia* spp., *Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Legionella* spp., *Bordetella, Chlamydophila psittaci, C. pneumoniae, Streptococcus* spp.
Trauma	*Clostridium tetani, Staphylococcus aureus*
Needlestick	*S. aureus, Pseudomonas* spp.
Arthropod bite	*Rickettsia, Ehrlichia, Coxiella, Francisella, Borrelia* spp., *Y. pestis*
Sexual transmission	*Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia trachomatis, Treponema pallidum*

Colonization, Adhesion, and Invasion

Different bacteria colonize different parts of the body. This may be closest to the point of entry or caused by the presence of optimal growth conditions at the site. For example, *Legionella* is inhaled and grows in the lungs but does not readily spread because it cannot tolerate high temperatures (e.g., 35° C). Colonization of sites that are normally sterile implies the existence of a defect in a natural defense mechanism or a new portal of entry. Patients with cystic fibrosis have such defects because of the reduction in their ciliary mucoepithelial function and altered mucosal secretions; as a result, their lungs are colonized by *S. aureus* and *P. aeruginosa*.

In some cases, colonization requires special bacterial structures and functions to remain at the site, survive, and obtain food. Bacteria may use specific mechanisms to **adhere** to and colonize different body surfaces (Table 14.2). If the bacteria can adhere to epithelial or endothelial cell linings of the bladder, intestine, and blood vessels, then they cannot be washed away, and this adherence allows them to colonize the tissue. For example, natural bladder function eliminates any bacteria not affixed to the bladder wall. *E. coli* and other bacteria have **adhesins** that bind to specific receptors on the tissue surface and keep the organisms from being washed away. Many of these adhesin proteins are present at the tips of **fimbriae (pili)** and bind tightly to specific sugars on the target tissue; this sugar-binding activity defines these proteins as **lectins.** For example, most *E. coli* strains that cause pyelonephritis produce a fimbrial adhesin termed the *P fimbriae.* This adhesin can bind to α-D-galactosyl-β-D-galactoside (Gal-Gal), which is part of the P blood group antigen structure on human erythrocytes and uroepithelial cells. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* pili are also important virulence factors; they bind to oligosaccharide receptors on epithelial cells. *Yersinia* organisms, *Bordetella pertussis,* and *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* express adhesin proteins that are not on fimbriae. *Streptococci, S. aureus, and other bacteria secrete proteins that bind components of the extracellular matrix of epithelial cells such as fibronectin, collagen, or laminin, termed* **MSCRAMMs** *(microbial surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules)*.

A special bacterial adaptation that facilitates colonization, especially of surgical appliances such as artificial valves or indwelling catheters, is a **biofilm.** Bacteria in biofilms are bound within a sticky web of polysaccharide that binds the cells together and to the surface. Production of a biofilm requires sufficient numbers of bacteria (quorum). When *P. aeruginosa* determine that the colony size is large enough

TABLE 14.2 Examples of Bacterial Adherence Mechanisms

Microbe	Adhesin	Receptor
Staphylococcus aureus	Clumping factor A	Fibrinogen
Staphylococcus spp.	MSCRAMM	Extracellular matrix components (fibronectin, laminin, collagen, etc.)
Streptococcus, group A	LTA–M protein complex F protein, MSCRAMM	Extracellular matrix components (fibronectin, laminin, collagen, etc.)
Streptococcus pneumoniae	Adhesins and other proteins	*N*-acetylhexosamine-galactose
Escherichia coli	Type 1 fimbriae Colonization factor antigen fimbriae P fimbriae	D-Mannose GM ganglioside 1 P blood group glycolipid
Neisseria gonorrhoeae	Fimbriae	GD_1 ganglioside
Treponema pallidum	P_1, P_2, P_3	Fibronectin
Chlamydia trachomatis	Cell-surface lectin	*N*-acetylglucosamine
Mycoplasma pneumoniae	Protein P1	Sialic acid
Vibrio cholerae	Type 4 pili	Fucose and mannose

LTA, Lipoteichoic acid; *MSCRAMM,* microbial surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules.

(quorum sensing) they produce a biofilm. Dental plaque is another example of a biofilm. The biofilm matrix can also protect the bacteria from host defenses and antibiotics.

Although bacteria do not have mechanisms that enable them to cross intact skin, several bacteria can cross mucosal membranes and other tissue barriers to enter normally sterile sites and more susceptible tissue. The bacteria use their flagella to swim through and proteases to digest the mucous layer to approach the epithelial lining. The **invasive bacteria** either destroy the membrane barrier, induce inflammation to permeabilize the barrier, or penetrate into the cells of the barrier. *Salmonella* and *Yersinia* organisms are enteric bacteria that use fimbriae to bind to M (microfold) cells of the colon and then inject proteins into the M cell that stimulate the cell membrane to surround and take in the bacteria. These bacteria produce a **type III secretion device** to inject pore-forming factors and effector molecules into the host cells. The effector proteins can facilitate uptake and invasion and promote intracellular survival and replication of the bacteria or the apoptotic death of the host cell. Enteropathogenic *E. coli* secretes proteins into the host cell that create a portable docking system for itself, and *Salmonella* uses the device to promote its uptake into a vesicle and live intracellularly within the macrophage. (Excellent videos of these processes can be seen at https://www.biointeractive.org/classroom-resources/how-pathogenic-e-coli-infection-begins and https://www.biointeractive.org/classroom-resources/how-salmonella-infection-begins.) Many of the proteins injected into these cells by the type III secretion device promote actin polymerization. For *Salmonella,* this promotes phagocytic uptake; for *Shigella* and *Listeria monocytogenes,* it promotes movement within the cell and to other cells. *Salmonella* and other bacteria promote invasion of the GI tract by weakening the tight junctions between mucoepithelial cells with bacterial proteins or by inducing inflammation, whereas *N. meningitidis* sequesters protein components to destabilize tight junctions of endothelial cells of the blood-brain barrier to gain access to the cerebral spinal fluid to progress from the bloodstream into the meninges.

Pathogenic Actions of Bacteria

TISSUE DESTRUCTION

By-products of bacterial growth, especially fermentation, include acids, gas, and other substances that are toxic to tissue. In addition, *many bacteria release degradative enzymes* to break down tissue, providing food for the organisms' growth and also promoting bacterial spread. For example, *C. perfringens* organisms are part of the normal flora of the GI tract but are also opportunistic pathogens that can establish infection in oxygen-depleted tissues and cause gas gangrene. These anaerobic bacteria produce enzymes (e.g., phospholipase C, collagenase, proteases, hyaluronidase), several toxins, and acid and gas from bacterial metabolism, which destroy the tissue. Staphylococci produce many different enzymes that modify the tissue environment. These enzymes include hyaluronidase, fibrinolysin, and lipases. Streptococci also produce enzymes, including streptolysins S and O, hyaluronidase, DNases, and streptokinases.

TOXINS

Toxins are bacterial products that directly harm tissue or trigger destructive biological activities. Toxins and toxin-like activities include degradative enzymes that cause lysis of cells or specific receptor-binding proteins that initiate toxic reactions in a specific target tissue. In addition, superantigen toxins and endotoxin (lipid A portion of lipopolysaccharide [LPS]) promote excessive or inappropriate stimulation of innate or immune responses.

In many cases, the toxin is completely responsible for causing the characteristic symptoms of the disease. For

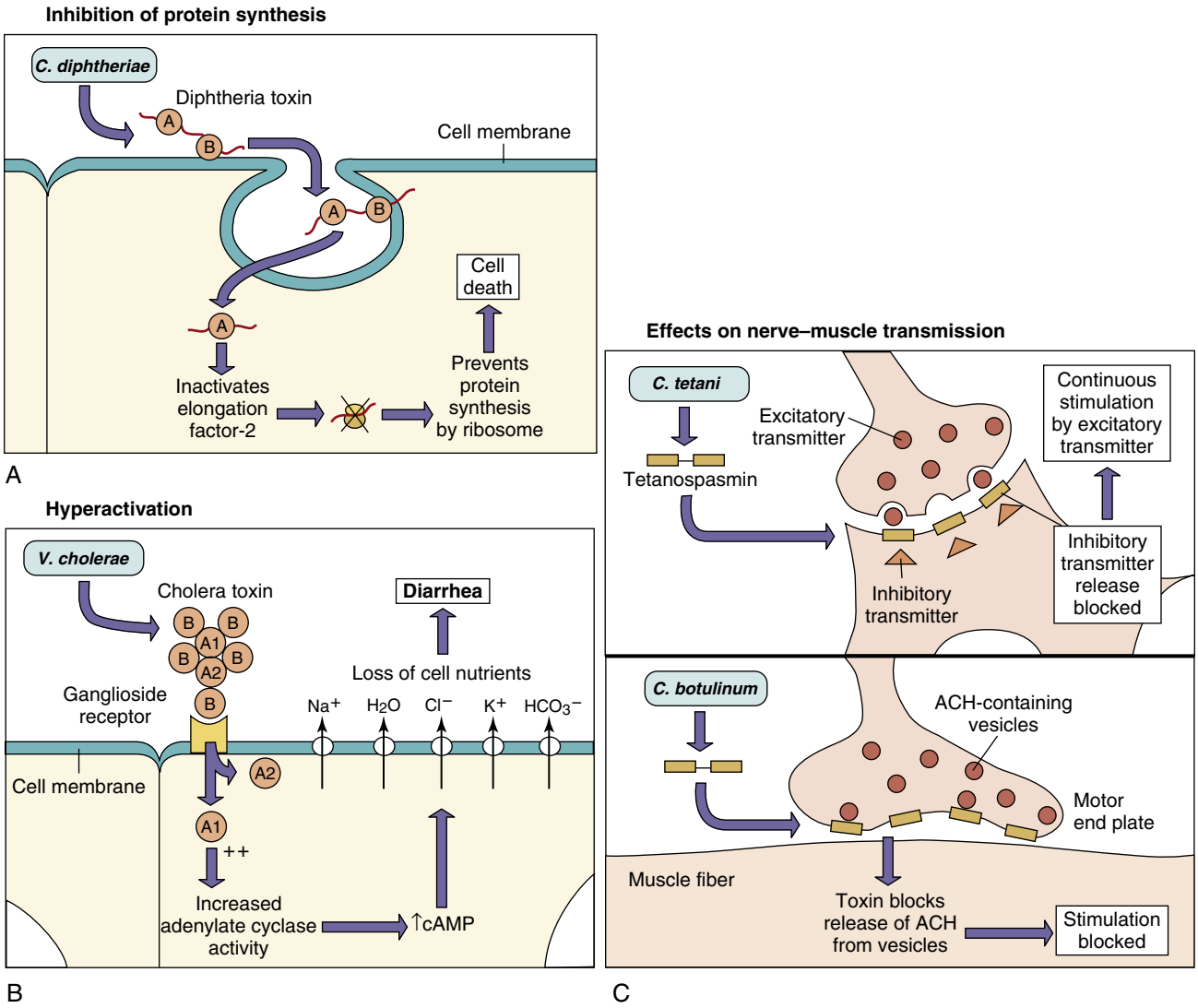


Fig. 14.3 (A–C) The mode of action of dimeric A-B exotoxins. The bacterial A-B toxins often consist of a two-chain molecule. The B chain binds and promotes entry of the A chain into cells, and the A chain has inhibitory activity against some vital function. *ACH,* Acetylcholine; *cAMP,* cyclic adenosine monophosphate; *C. botulinum, Clostridium botulinum; C. diphtheriae, Corynebacterium diphtheriae; C. tetani, Clostridium tetani; V. cholerae, Vibrio cholerae.* (Modified from Goering, R.V., Dockrell, H.M., Zuckerman, M., et al., 2019. Mims' Medical Microbiology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

example, the **preformed toxin** present in food mediates the food poisoning caused by *S. aureus* and *B. cereus* and the botulism caused by *C. botulinum*. The symptoms caused by preformed toxin occur much sooner than for other forms of gastroenteritis because the effect is like eating a poison and the bacteria do not need to grow for the symptoms to occur. Because a toxin can be spread systemically through the bloodstream, symptoms may arise at a site distant from the site of infection, such as occurs in tetanus, which is caused by *C. tetani*.

EXOTOXINS

Exotoxins are proteins that can be produced by gram-positive or gram-negative bacteria and include cytolytic enzymes and receptor-binding proteins that alter a function or kill the cell. In many cases, the toxin gene is encoded on a plasmid (tetanus toxin of *C. tetani,* heat-labile [LT] and heat-stabile [ST] toxins of enterotoxigenic *E. coli*) or a lysogenic phage (*Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and *C. botulinum*). *For many bacteria, the effects of the toxin determines the disease* (e.g., *C. diphtheriae*, *C. tetani*).

Cytolytic toxins include membrane-disrupting enzymes such as the α-toxin (phospholipase C) produced by *C. perfringens,* which breaks down sphingomyelin and other membrane phospholipids. Hemolysins insert into and disrupt erythrocyte and other cell membranes. Pore-forming toxins, including streptolysin O, can promote leakage of ions and water from the cell and disrupt cellular functions or cause cell lysis.

Many toxins are dimeric, with A and B subunits **(A-B toxins).** The **B** portion of the A-B toxins binds to a specific cell-surface receptor, and then the A subunit is transferred into the interior of the cell, in which it acts to promote cell injury *(B for binding, A for action).* The tissues targeted by these toxins are very defined and limited (Fig. 14.3 and Table 14.3). The biochemical targets of A-B toxins include ribosomes, transport mechanisms, and intracellular signaling (cyclic adenosine monophosphate [cAMP] production, G-protein function), with effects ranging from diarrhea to

TABLE 14.3 Properties of A-B–Type Bacterial Toxins

Toxin	Organism	Gene Location	Subunit Structure	Target Cell Receptor	Biological Effects
Anthrax toxin	*Bacillus anthracis*	Plasmid	Three separate proteins (EF, LF, PA)	TEM-8; CMG2	EF + PA: increase in target cell cAMP level, localized edema; LF + PA: death of target cells and experimental animals
Botulinum toxin	*Clostridium botulinum*	Phage	A-B	Polysialogangliosides plus synaptotagmin (coreceptors)	Decrease in peripheral presynaptic acetylcholine release, flaccid paralysis
Cholera toxin	*Vibrio cholerae*	Chromosomal	$A\text{-}B_5$	Ganglioside (GM_1)	Alteration of G-protein to activate adenylate cyclase, increase in cAMP level, secretory diarrhea
Diphtheria toxin	*Corynebacterium diphtheriae*	Phage	A-B	Growth factor receptor precursor	Inhibition of protein synthesis, cell death
Heat-labile enterotoxins	*Escherichia coli*	Plasmid	Similar or identical to cholera toxin	See cholera	See cholera
Pertussis toxin	*Bordetella pertussis*	Chromosomal	$A\text{-}B_5$	Surface glycoproteins with terminal sialic acid residues	Activation of adenylate cyclase by incapacitating inhibitory G-protein; increase in cAMP level, modified cell function, or cell death
Pseudomonas exotoxin A	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*	Chromosomal	A-B	α_2-MR	Similar or identical to diphtheria toxin
Shiga toxin	*Shigella dysenteriae*	Chromosomal	$A\text{-}B_5$	Gb3	Inhibition of protein synthesis, cell death
Tetanus toxin	*Clostridium tetani*	Plasmid	A-B	Polysialogangliosides plus 15-kDa glycoprotein (coreceptors)	Decrease in neurotransmitter release from inhibitory neurons, spastic paralysis

α_2-MR, α_2-Macroglobulin receptor; *cAMP,* cyclic adenosine monophosphate; *CMG2,* capillary morphogenesis protein 2; *EF,* edema factor; *Gb3,* globotriaosylceramide; *LF,* lethal factor; *PA,* protective antigen, *PEM-8,* tumor endothelial marker-8.
Modified from Mandell, G., Douglas, G., Bennett, J., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Disease, eighth ed. Saunders, New York.

loss of neuronal function to death. The functional properties of cytolytic and other exotoxins are discussed in greater detail in the chapters dealing with the specific diseases involved.

Superantigens are a special group of toxins (Fig. 14.4). These molecules activate T cells by binding simultaneously to a T-cell receptor and a major histocompatibility complex class II (MHC II) molecule on an antigen-presenting cell without requiring antigen. *Superantigens activate large numbers of T cells to release large amounts (cytokine storm) of interleukins (IL) (including IL-1, IL-2, and IL-6),* tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), interferon (IFN)-γ, and various chemokines, causing *life-threatening fever, shock, rash, and autoimmune-like responses.* This superantigen stimulation of T cells can also lead to death of the activated T cells, resulting in the loss of specific T-cell clones and loss of their immune responses. Superantigens include the toxic shock syndrome toxin of *S. aureus,* staphylococcal enterotoxins, and the erythrogenic toxin A or C of *S. pyogenes.*

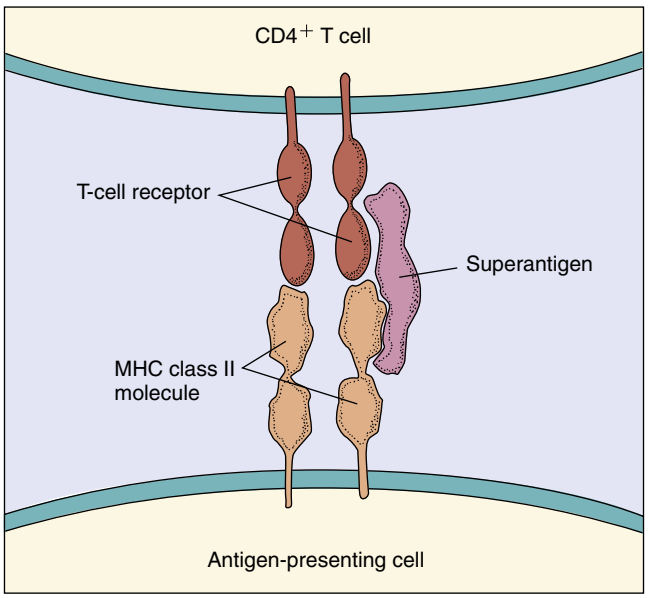


Fig. 14.4 Superantigen binding to the external regions of the T-cell receptor and the major histocompatibility complex *(MHC)* class II molecules.

PATHOGEN-ASSOCIATED MOLECULAR PATTERNS

The presence of bacterial cell wall components acts as a signal of infection that provides a powerful multialarm warning to the body to activate the host's protective systems. The molecular patterns in these structures **(pathogen-associated molecular patterns [PAMPs])** bind to Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and other molecules and stimulate the production of cytokines (see Chapters 8 and 10). In some cases, the host response is excessive and may even be life-threatening. The **lipid A portion of LPS** and **lipooligosaccharide (LOS)** produced by gram-negative bacteria is a powerful activator of acute-phase

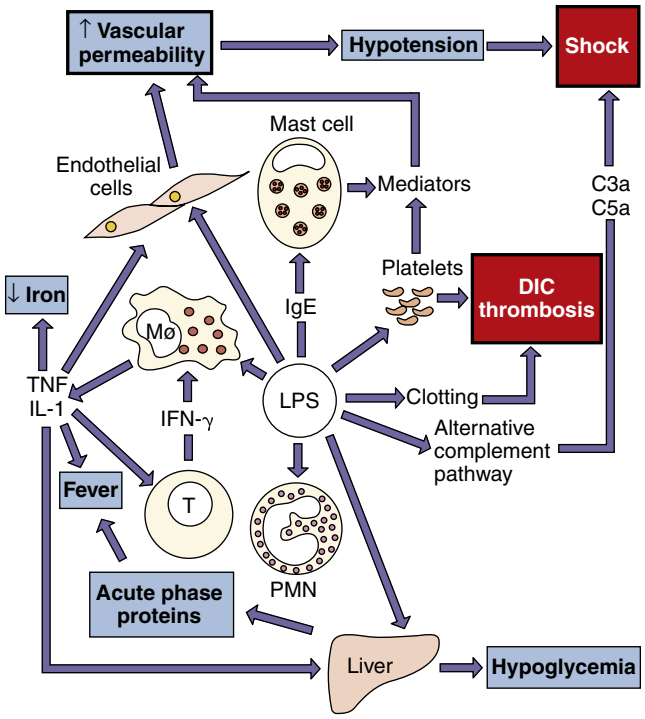


Fig. 14.5 Many activities of lipopolysaccharide *(LPS).* This bacterial endotoxin activates almost every immune mechanism, as well as the clotting pathway, which together make LPS one of the most powerful immune stimuli known. *DIC,* Disseminated intravascular coagulation; *IFN-γ,* interferon-γ; *IgE,* immunoglobulin E; *IL-1,* interleukin-1; *PMN,* polymorphonuclear (neutrophil) leukocytes; *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor. (Modified from Goering, R.V., Dockrell, H.M., Zuckerman, M., et al., 2019. Mims' Medical Microbiology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

and inflammatory reactions and is termed **endotoxin.** It is important to appreciate that endotoxin is not the same as exotoxin and that *only gram-negative bacteria make endotoxin.* Weaker, endotoxin-like responses may result from gram-positive bacterial structures, including **lipoteichoic acids.**

Gram-negative bacteria release LPS or LOS during infection. Its endotoxin binds to specific receptors (CD14 and TLR4) on macrophages, B cells, and other cells and stimulates production and release of **acute-phase cytokines,** such as IL-1, TNF-α, IL-6, and prostaglandins (Fig. 14.5). Endotoxin also stimulates the growth (mitogenic) of B cells.

At low concentrations, endotoxin stimulates the development of protective responses such as fever, vasodilation, and activation of immune and inflammatory responses (Box 14.3). However, the endotoxin levels in the blood of patients with **gram-negative bacteremia** (bacteria in the blood) can be very high, and the systemic response to these can be overpowering, resulting in sepsis, shock, and possibly death. High concentrations of endotoxin can also activate the alternative pathway of complement and production of anaphylatoxins (C3a, C5a), contributing to systemic vasodilation and capillary leakage. In combination with TNF-α and IL-1, this can lead to **hypotension** and **shock. Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)** can also result from the activation of blood coagulation pathways. The high fever, petechiae (skin lesions resulting from capillary leakage), and potential symptoms of shock (resulting from increased vascular permeability) associated with *N. meningitidis* infection can be related to the large amounts of LOS and its endotoxin released during infection.

Box 14.3 Endotoxin-Mediated Toxicity

Fever
Leukopenia followed by leukocytosis
Activation of complement
Thrombocytopenia
Disseminated intravascular coagulation
Decreased peripheral circulation and perfusion to major organs
Shock
Death

Immunopathogenesis

In many cases, the symptoms of a bacterial infection are produced by excessive innate, immune, and inflammatory responses triggered by the infection. When limited and controlled, the acute-phase response to cell wall components is a protective antibacterial response. However, these responses also cause fever and malaise, and when systemic and out of control, the acute-phase response and inflammation can cause life-threatening symptoms associated with sepsis and meningitis (see Fig. 14.5). Activated neutrophils, macrophages, and complement can cause tissue damage at the site of the infection. Activation of complement can also cause release of anaphylatoxins that initiate vascular permeability and capillary breakage. Fluid buildup, dead cells, and **pus**, formed by dead neutrophils, limit access of immune and antibiotic treatments to the infection. Granuloma formation induced by CD4 T cells and macrophages in response to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* can also lead to disruption of tissue and organ structure and function. Systemic effects, such as cytokine storms, can be generated by superantigens and endotoxin and can cause shock and disruption of body function. Autoimmune responses can be triggered by some bacterial proteins, such as the M protein of *S. pyogenes,* which antigenically mimics heart tissue. The anti-M protein antibodies cross-react with and can initiate damage to the heart to cause rheumatic fever. Immune complexes deposited in the glomeruli of the kidney cause poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis. For *Chlamydia, Treponema* (syphilis), *Borrelia* (Lyme disease), and other bacteria, the host immune response is the principal cause of disease symptoms in patients.

Mechanisms for Escaping Host Defenses

Bacteria are parasites, and evasion of host protective responses is a selective advantage. Logically, the longer a bacterial infection remains in a host, the more time the bacteria have to grow and cause damage. Therefore bacteria that can evade or incapacitate the host defenses have a greater potential for causing disease. Bacteria evade recognition and killing by phagocytic cells, inactivate or evade the complement system and antibody, and even grow inside cells to hide from host responses (Box 14.4).

Box 14.4 Microbial Defenses against Host Immunologic Clearance

Encapsulation and Biofilms
Antigenic mimicry
Antigenic masking
Antigenic shift
Production of antiimmunoglobulin proteases
Destruction of phagocyte
Inhibition of chemotaxis
Inhibition of phagocytosis
Inhibition of phagolysosome fusion
Resistance to lysosomal enzymes
Intracellular replication

Box 14.5 Examples of Encapsulated Microorganisms

Staphylococcus aureus
Streptococcus pneumoniae
S. pyogenes (group A)
S. agalactiae (group B)
Bacillus anthracis
B. subtilis
Neisseria gonorrhoeae
N. meningitidis
Haemophilus influenzae
Escherichia coli
Klebsiella pneumoniae
Salmonella spp.
Yersinia pestis
Campylobacter fetus
Pseudomonas aeruginosa
Bacteroides fragilis
Cryptococcus neoformans (yeast)

The capsule is one of the most important virulence factors (Box 14.5). These slime layers function by shielding the bacteria from immune and phagocytic responses. Capsules are typically made of polysaccharides, which are poor immunogens. The *S. pyogenes* capsule, for example, is made of hyaluronic acid, which mimics human connective tissue, masking the bacteria and keeping them from being recognized by the immune system. The capsule also acts like a slimy football jersey because it is hard to grasp and tears away when grabbed by a phagocyte. The capsule also protects a bacterium from destruction within the phagolysosome of a macrophage or leukocyte. All of these properties can extend the time bacteria spend in blood (bacteremia) before being eliminated by host responses. Mutants of normally encapsulated bacteria that lose the ability to make a capsule also lose their virulence; examples of such bacteria are *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *N. meningitidis.* A **biofilm,** which is made from capsular material, protects a colony of bacteria and can prevent antibody, complement, phagocytic cells, and antimicrobial therapy from getting to the bacteria.

Bacteria can evade antibody responses by **antigenic variation,** by **inactivation of antibody,** or **by intracellular growth.** *N. gonorrhoeae* can vary the structure of surface antigens to evade antibody responses and also produces a protease that degrades IgA. *S. aureus* expresses on its surface and releases IgG-binding proteins, protein A and protein G, which binds to the Fc portion of antibody to prevent antibody from activating complement or being an opsonin and masks the bacteria from detection. Bacteria that grow intracellularly include mycobacteria, francisellae, brucellae, chlamydiae, and rickettsiae (Box 14.6). Unlike most bacteria, control of these infections requires T-helper cell immune responses to activate macrophages to kill or create a wall (granuloma) around the infected cells (as for *M. tuberculosis*).

Box 14.6 Examples of Intracellular Pathogens

Mycobacterium spp.
Brucella spp.
Francisella spp.
Rickettsia spp.
Chlamydia spp.
Listeria monocytogenes
Salmonella typhi
Shigella dysenteriae
Yersinia pestis
Legionella pneumophila

Bacteria evade complement action by preventing access of the components to the membrane, masking themselves, and inhibiting activation of the cascade. The thick peptidoglycan of gram-positive bacteria and the long O antigen of LPS of most gram-negative bacteria (not *Neisseria* spp.) limit access to complement and protect the bacterial membrane from being damaged. By degrading the C5a component of complement, *S. pyogenes* can limit the chemotaxis of leukocytes to the site of infection.

Phagocytes (neutrophils, macrophages) are the most important antibacterial defense, but many bacteria can circumvent phagocytic killing in various ways or kill the phagocyte. They can produce enzymes capable of lysing phagocytic cells (e.g., the streptolysin produced by *S. pyogenes* or the α-toxin produced by *C. perfringens*), inhibit uptake by phagocytosis (e.g., the effects of the **capsule** and the **M protein** produced by *S. pyogenes*), or block intracellular killing. Bacterial mechanisms for protection from intracellular killing include blocking fusion of the lysosome with the phagosome to prevent contact with its bactericidal contents (*Mycobacterium* spp.); having a protective capsule or lipid-rich waxy cell wall (mycobacteria and nocardia); produce catalase, like staphylococci, to break down the hydrogen peroxide produced by the myeloperoxidase system; or other means to resist the bactericidal lysosomal enzymes or substances. *Listeria monocytogenes* lyse the phagosome with a toxin and enter the cell's cytoplasm before being exposed to lysosomal enzymes (Fig. 14.6 and Table 14.4). Many of the bacteria that are internalized but survive phagocytosis can use the cell as a place to grow and hide from immune responses and as a means of being disseminated throughout the body.

S. aureus can also escape host defenses by walling off the site of infection. *S. aureus* can produce coagulase, which is an enzyme that promotes the conversion of fibrin to fibrinogen to produce a clotlike barrier; this feature distinguishes *S. aureus* from *S. epidermidis. S. aureus* and *S. pyogenes* and other bacteria are pyogenic (pus formers),

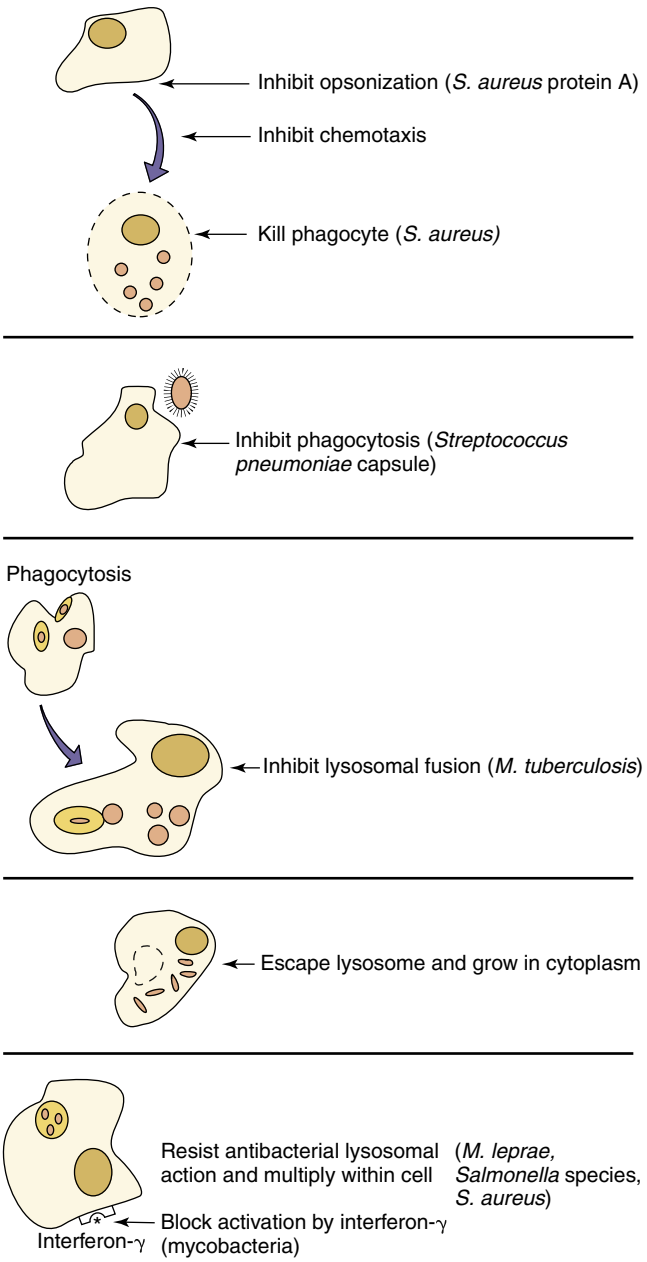


Fig. 14.6 Bacterial mechanisms for escaping phagocytic clearance. Selected examples of bacteria that use the indicated antiphagocytic mechanisms are given. *M. leprae, Mycobacterium leprae; M. tuberculosis, Mycobacterium tuberculosis; S. aureus, Staphylococcus aureus.*

TABLE 14.4 Methods That Circumvent Phagocytic Killing

Method	Example
Inhibition of phagolysosome fusion	*Legionella* spp., *Mycobacterium tuberculosis, Chlamydia* spp.
Resistance to lysosomal enzymes	*Salmonella typhimurium, Coxiella* spp., *Ehrlichia* spp., *M. leprae, Leishmania* spp.
Adaptation to cytoplasmic replication	*Listeria, Francisella,* and *Rickettsia* spp.

and pus formation on the death of neutrophils limits antibody or antibiotic access to the bacteria. *M. tuberculosis* is able to survive in a host by promoting the development of a granuloma, within which viable bacteria may reside for the life of the infected person. The bacteria may resume growth if there is a decline in the immune status of the person.

Summary

The primary virulence factors of bacteria are the capsule, adhesins, invasins, degradative enzymes, toxins, and mechanisms for escaping elimination by host defenses. Bacteria may only have one virulence mechanism. For example, *C. diphtheriae* has only one virulence mechanism, which is diphtheria toxin. Other bacteria express many virulence factors. *S. aureus* is an example of such a bacterium; it expresses adhesins, degradative enzymes, toxins, catalase, and coagulase, which are responsible for producing a spectrum of diseases. In addition, different strains within a bacterial species may express different virulence mechanisms. For example, the symptoms and sequelae of gastroenteritis (diarrhea) caused by *E. coli* may include invasion and bloody stools, cholera-like watery stools, and even severe hemorrhagic disease, depending on the specific infecting strain.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Bisno, A.L., Brito, M.O., Collins, C.M., 2003. Molecular basis of group a streptococcal virulence. Lancet Infect. Dis. 3, 191–200.
Bower, S., Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Bacterial cell walls: the armor, artillery and Achilles heel. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 14, 309–317.
Brodell, L.A., Rosenthal, K.S., 2008. Skin structure and function: the body's primary defense against infection. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 16, 113–117.
Chagnot, C., Listrat, A., Astruc, T., et al., 2012. Bacterial adhesion to animal tissues: protein determinants for recognition of extracellular matrix components. Cell Microbiol. 14, 1687–1696.
Cohen, J., Powderly, W.C., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, London.
Desvaux, M., Hebraud, M., Henderson, I.R., et al., 2006. Type III secretion: what's in a name? Trends Microbiol. 14, 157–160.
Finlay, B.B., 1997. Falkow S: Common themes in microbial pathogenicity revisited. Microbiol. Mol. Biol. Rev. 61, 136–169.
Groisman, E.A., Ochman, H., 1997. How Salmonella became a pathogen. Trends Microbiol. 5, 343–349.
Gupta, P., Sarkar, S., Das, B., et al., 2016. Biofilm, pathogenesis and prevention—a journey to break the wall: a review. Arch. Microbiol. 198, 1. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00203-015-1148-6.
Kumar, V., Abul, K., Abbas, A.K., Aster, J.C., 2015. Robbins & Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease, ninth ed. Elsevier.
Lee, C.A., 1996. Pathogenicity islands and the evolution of bacterial pathogens. Infect. Agents Dis. 5 (1–7).
Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., Blaser, M.J. (Eds.), 2015. Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.
McClane, B.A., Mietzner, T.A., 1999. Microbial Pathogenesis: A Principles-Oriented Approach. Fence Creek, Madison, Conn.
Papageorgiou, A.C., Acharya, K.R., 2000. Microbial superantigens: from structure to function. Trends Microbiol. 8, 369–375.
Papenfort, K., Bassler, B.L., 2016. Quorum sensing signal–response systems in Gram-negative bacteria. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 14, 576–588.

Park, D., Lara-Tejero, M., Waxham, M.N., Li, W., Hu, B., Gala´n, J.E., Liu, J., 2018. Visualization of the type III secretion mediated Salmonella–host cell interface using cryo-electron tomography. eLife. 7, e39514. https://doi.org/10.7554/eLife.39514. https://doi.org/10.7554/eLife.39514.012.

Reading, N., Sperandio, V., 2006. Quorum sensing: the many languages of bacteria. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. 254, 1–11.

Ribet, D., Cossart, P., 2015. How bacterial pathogens colonize their hosts and invade deeper tissues. Microbes Infect. 17, 173–183. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.micinf.2015.01.004.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2005. Are microbial symptoms "self-inflicted"? The consequences of immunopathology. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 13, 306–310.

Excellent videos, prepared by the Howard Hughes Medical Institute, of the action of *E. coli* and *Salmonella* type III secretion devices promoting adhesion and intracellular growth can be seen at https://www.biointeractive.org/classroom-resources/how-pathogenic-e-coli-infection-begins and https://www.biointeractive.org/classroom-resources/how-salmonella-infection-begins. A video of *Salmonella* virulence mechanisms: www.youtube.com/watch?v=j5GvvQJVD_Y.

Questions

1. Name three routes by which exogenous pathogens can infect a person. List five examples of organisms that use each route.

2. How are microbes able to resist immunologic clearance? Give at least one specific example of each mechanism.

3. What are the two general types of exotoxins? List examples of each type.

4. Most antibacterial vaccines elicit antibodies that prevent infection, spread, or the virulence factors of a bacteria. Design a vaccine for *S. aureus* that would prevent infection and virulence factors and facilitate uptake by phagocytes (opsonization).

15 Role of Bacteria in Disease

This chapter summarizes material presented in Chapters 18 to 35, which focus on individual organisms and the diseases they cause. We believe this is an important process in understanding how individual organisms produce disease; however, when a patient develops an infection, a physician approaches diagnosis by assessing the clinical presentation and constructing a list of organisms that are most likely to cause the disease. The etiology of some diseases can be attributed to a single organism (e.g., tetanus, *Clostridium tetani*). More commonly, however, multiple organisms can produce a similar clinical picture (e.g., sepsis, pneumonia, gastroenteritis, meningitis). The clinical management of infections is predicated on the ability to develop an accurate differential diagnosis; that is, it is critical to know which organisms are most commonly associated with a particular infectious process.

The development of an infection depends on the complex interactions of (1) the host's susceptibility to infection, (2) the organism's virulence potential, and (3) the opportunity for interaction between host and organism. It is impossible to summarize in a single chapter the complex interactions that lead to the development of disease in each organ system; that is the domain of comprehensive texts in infectious disease. Instead, this chapter is intended to serve as a very broad overview of the bacteria commonly associated with infections at specific body sites and with specific clinical manifestations (Tables 15.1 to 15.5). Because many factors influence the relative frequency with which specific organisms cause disease (e.g., age, underlying disease, epidemiologic factors, host immunity), no attempt is made to define all the factors associated with disease caused by specific organisms. That material is provided, in part, in the chapters that follow and in infectious disease texts. Furthermore, the roles of fungi, viruses, and parasites are not considered in this chapter; instead, they are considered in the later sections of this book.

Tables 15.1 and 15.2 illustrate the complexity of summarizing the role of bacteria in infectious diseases. Simply stated, Table 15.1 is a list of bacteria and the diseases they cause and Table 15.2 is a list of diseases and the bacteria associated with the diseases. Unfortunately, neither list is comprehensive; more diseases are associated with many of the bacteria, and the list of bacteria responsible for most of the diseases is not complete. These two tables represent different approaches to understanding the role of bacteria in infectious disease. The overall approach taken in this book is to study the organisms, learning their biology in the context of their ability to cause disease. We have taken this traditional approach because we feel this provides a foundation for the student to understand the disease process. However, we recognize that the patient presents with a disease syndrome, and the student must remember which organisms can be responsible. For this reason, Table 15.2 is presented. In this textbook, we use a summary chapter of pathogens and diseases to introduce each major class of organisms (i.e., bacteria, viruses, fungi, parasites). In clinical practice, a particular disease can be caused by different classes of organisms; thus the student should consider using all four chapters to gain an appreciation of the complexity of developing a differential diagnosis. We hope that using these chapters as an introduction may provide students with a useful framework for cataloging the variety of organisms responsible for similar diseases.

TABLE 15.1 Overview of Selected Bacterial Pathogens

Organism	Clinical Features	Epidemiologic Features	Treatment
AEROBIC AND FACULTATIVELY ANAEROBIC GRAM-POSITIVE COCCI			
Enterococcus faecalis and *E. faecium*	Urinary tract infections, peritonitis, bacteremia, endocarditis	Elderly patients and patients who have been hospitalized for extended periods receiving broad-spectrum antibiotics	Penicillin/ampicillin or vancomycin; combined with gentamicin for endocarditis or severe infections; linezolid, daptomycin, tigecycline
Staphylococcus aureus	Suppurative infections: impetigo, folliculitis, furuncles, carbuncles, wounds Disseminated infections: bacteremia, endocarditis, pneumonia, empyema, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis Toxin-mediated infections: toxic shock syndrome, scalded skin syndrome, food poisoning	Colonize human skin and mucosal surfaces; survive on environmental surfaces; able to grow at temperature extremes and in high salt concentrations	Localized infections: trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline, clindamycin or linezolid Systemic infections: oxacillin (if susceptible) or vancomycin; daptomycin, tigecycline, or linezolid
Staphylococcus, coagulase-negative	Wound infections, urinary tract infections, catheter and shunt infections, prosthetic device infections	Colonize human skin and mucosal surfaces; survive on environmental surfaces; able to grow at temperature extremes	As with *S. aureus*

Continued

TABLE 15.1 Overview of Selected Bacterial Pathogens—cont'd

Organism	Clinical Features	Epidemiologic Features	Treatment
Streptococcus pyogenes (group A)	Suppurative infections: pharyngitis, scarlet fever, sinusitis, skin and soft-tissue infection (impetigo, erysipelas, cellulitis, necrotizing fasciitis), toxic shock–like syndrome; bacteremia Nonsuppurative infections: rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis	Diverse populations	Penicillin V, amoxicillin; macrolides, cephalosporins, clindamycin, vancomycin; surgical debridement for necrotizing fasciitis
S. agalactiae (group B)	Neonatal disease (early onset, late onset): bacteremia, pneumonia, meningitis; postpartum endometritis, wound infection, skin and soft-tissue infection, urinary tract infections	Neonates; pregnant women; patients with diabetes, cancer, or alcoholism	Penicillin; cephalosporins or vancomycin
Viridans streptococci	Abscess formation; septicemia in neutropenic patients; subacute endocarditis; odontogenic infections; dental caries	Patients with abnormal heart valves; neutropenic patients	Penicillin; penicillin plus aminoglycoside; broad-spectrum cephalosporin, vancomycin
S. pneumoniae	Pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis media, meningitis, bacteremia, endocarditis, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, septic arthritis	Diverse: neonates, children, adults with chronic diseases, elderly	Penicillin; levofloxacin, cephalosporins, clindamycin; broad-spectrum cephalosporins, vancomycin
AEROBIC OR FACULTATIVELY ANAEROBIC GRAM-POSITIVE RODS			
Bacillus anthracis	Anthrax: cutaneous, GI, inhalation	Animal workers; microbiological accidents; bioterrorism	Cutaneous anthrax: amoxicillin Inhalation anthrax: ciprofloxacin or doxycycline plus rifampin, vancomycin, penicillin, imipenem, clindamycin, or clarithromycin
B. cereus	Food poisoning; ocular infections; bacteremia; pneumonia	Contaminated food; traumatic eye injury with introduction of contaminated soil; injection drug use	Food poisoning: symptomatic treatment Other infections: fluoroquinolones or vancomycin, clindamycin, gentamicin
Corynebacterium diphtheriae	Diphtheria: respiratory, cutaneous	Spread by respiratory droplets to unimmunized individuals	Penicillin or erythromycin to eliminate organism and terminate toxin production; immunize with diphtheria toxoid
C. jeikeium	Opportunistic infections; bacteremia	Immunocompromised patients at increased risk	Vancomycin
C. urealyticum	Urinary tract infections, including pyelonephritis with calculi; bacteremia	Risk factors include immunosuppression, underlying genitourinary disorders, antecedent urologic procedures, prior antibiotic therapy	Vancomycin
Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae	Erysipeloid (localized skin lesion); generalized cutaneous infection; septicemia	Occupational disease of butchers, meat processors, farmers, poultry workers, fish handlers, and veterinarians	Localized infection: penicillin, ciprofloxacin, clindamycin Disseminated infection: ceftriaxone, imipenem
Listeria monocytogenes	Early-onset neonatal disease: granulomatosis infantiseptica Late-onset neonatal disease: meningitis with septicemia; flulike illness in adults; bacteremia or disseminated disease in pregnant women or patients with cell-mediated immune defect; meningitis	Immunocompromised hosts, elderly persons, neonates, pregnant women; ingestion of contaminated food	Gentamicin plus penicillin or ampicillin
ACID-FAST BACTERIA			
Mycobacterium avium complex	Localized pulmonary disease; disseminated disease with multiorgan involvement	Localized disease in patients with chronic pulmonary disease; disseminated disease in AIDS and other immunocompromised patients	Clarithromycin or azithromycin combined with rifabutin or ethambutol
M. leprae	Leprosy: range from tuberculoid form to lepromatous form	Close contact with infected individuals most likely responsible for spread	Dapsone and rifampicin for tuberculoid form; add clofazimine for lepromatous form
M. tuberculosis complex	Tuberculosis: pulmonary, extrapulmonary	All ages with HIV-infected patients at greatest risk for active disease	Multidrug therapy with INH, rifampin, ethambutol, and pyrazinamide, followed by INH plus rifampin; multidrug-resistant strains

TABLE 15.1 Overview of Selected Bacterial Pathogens—cont'd

Organism	Clinical Features	Epidemiologic Features	Treatment
Nocardia	Bronchopulmonary disease; brain abscess Primary or secondary cutaneous infections: mycetoma, lymphocutaneous infections, cellulitis, subcutaneous abscess	Opportunistic pathogen in immunocompetent patients with chronic pulmonary disease or immunocompromised patients with T-cell deficiencies	Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole for cutaneous infections in immunocompetent patients; add amikacin, imipenem, or broad-spectrum cephalosporin for disseminated infection or infection in immunocompromised patient
Rhodococcus equi	Bronchopulmonary disease; opportunistic infections in immunocompetent patients	Pathogen most commonly found in immunocompromised patients (e.g., AIDS patients, transplant recipients)	Combination therapy with vancomycin, carbapenems, aminoglycosides, ciprofloxacin, rifampin
AEROBIC GRAM-NEGATIVE COCCI			
Neisseria gonorrhoeae	Gonorrhea, septic arthritis; pelvic inflammatory disease; perihepatitis; septicemia	Sexual transmission, asymptomatic carriage	Ceftriaxone plus azithromycin or doxycycline
N. meningitidis	Meningitis, septicemia (meningococcemia); pneumonia, arthritis, urethritis	Carrier state, aerosol transmission, most common in children and young adults	Ceftriaxone or cefotaxime
AEROBIC AND FACULTATIVELY ANAEROBIC GRAM-NEGATIVE RODS			
Acinetobacter	Opportunistic infections: pneumonia, septicemia, urinary tract infections, wound infections	Nosocomial infections	Imipenem or ceftazidime combined with aminoglycosides for serious infections; multidrug resistance increasingly common
Aeromonas	Wound infections, gastroenteritis	Healthy and immunocompromised patients	Ciprofloxacin; trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, gentamicin, or amikacin as alternative therapy
Bartonella bacilliformis	Carrión disease (Oroya fever) + "Peruvian wart"	Bite of infected sandfly	Chloramphenicol + penicillin
B. henselae	BA, subacute endocarditis, CSD	Healthy (endocarditis, CSD) and immunocompromised patients (BA)	Azithromycin; erythromycin or doxycycline
B. quintana	TF, BA, subacute endocarditis	Healthy (TF, endocarditis) or immunocompromised patients (BA)	Azithromycin; erythromycin or doxycycline
Bordetella pertussis, B. parapertussis	Pertussis (whooping cough)	Aerosol transmission; severe diseases in infants, milder in adults	Supportive therapy, erythromycin (or other macrolide) to decrease infectivity; azithromycin for contact prophylaxis
Brucella	Brucellosis	Exposure to infected goats, sheep, cattle, or other animals; bioterrorism	Doxycycline plus rifampin; trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole
Burkholderia cepacia complex	Pulmonary infections, opportunistic infections	Compromised individuals, especially cystic fibrosis and chronic granulomatous disease patients	Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole; piperacillin, ceftazidime, or ciprofloxacin as alternative therapy if trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole resistant
B. pseudomallei	Melioidosis (asymptomatic to severe pulmonary disease)	Opportunistic pathogen	Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole + ceftazidime
Campylobacter jejuni, C. coli, C. upsaliensis	Gastroenteritis	Zoonotic infection following ingestion of contaminated food, milk, or water	Self-limited; severe infections treated with azithromycin; tetracycline or fluoroquinolones used as alternative therapy
C. fetus	Septicemia, meningitis, gastroenteritis, spontaneous abortion	Infects elderly, immunocompromised patients	Aminoglycosides, carbapenems, chloramphenicol
Cardiobacterium hominis	Subacute endocarditis	Opportunistic pathogen in patients with previously damaged heart valve	Penicillin or ampicillin
Eikenella corrodens	Subacute endocarditis, wound infections	Human bite wounds; opportunistic pathogen in patients with previously damaged heart valve	Penicillin, cephalosporins, tetracycline, or fluoroquinolones
Escherichia coli: enteropathogenic (EPEC)	Watery diarrhea and vomiting	Infants in developing countries	Unknown

Continued

TABLE 15.1 Overview of Selected Bacterial Pathogens—cont'd

Organism	Clinical Features	Epidemiologic Features	Treatment
E. coli: Shiga toxin–producing (STEC)	Watery diarrhea, hemorrhagic colitis, hemolytic uremic syndrome	Foodborne, waterborne outbreaks in developed countries	Antibiotics contraindicated
E. coli: enterotoxigenic (ETEC)	Watery diarrhea	Childhood diarrhea in developing countries; travelers' diarrhea	Ciprofloxacin shortens course (high level of resistance)
E. coli: enteroaggregative (EAEC)	Diarrhea with mucus	Childhood diarrhea	Fluoroquinolones used in AIDS patients
E. coli: enteroinvasive (EIEC)	Watery diarrhea, hemorrhagic colitis	Childhood diarrhea in developing countries	Antibiotics reduce duration of disease and infectivity
E. coli: uropathogenic	Cystitis, pyelonephritis	Sexually active women	Trimethoprim/sulfametho xazole, fluoroquinolones
E. coli: meningitis associated	Acute meningitis	Neonates	Extended-spectrum cephalosporins
Francisella tularensis	Tularemia: ulceroglandular, oculoglandular, pneumonic	Tick bites, exposure to infected rabbits, bioterrorism	Doxycycline or ciprofloxacin for mild infections; add gentamicin for serious infections
Haemophilus influenzae	Encapsulated type b strains: meningitis, septicemia, cellulitis, epiglottitis Unencapsulated strains: otitis media, sinusitis, bronchitis, pneumonia	Aerosol transmission in young unimmunized children; spread from upper respiratory tract in elderly patients with chronic respiratory disease	Broad-spectrum cephalosporin, azithromycin, or fluoroquinolone; many strains resistant to ampicillin
Helicobacter pylori	Gastritis, peptic and duodenal ulcers; gastric adenocarcinoma	Infections particularly common among people in low socioeconomic class or in developing countries	Multidrug therapy: omeprazole + amoxicillin + clarithromycin
Kingella kingae	Subacute endocarditis	Opportunistic pathogen in patients with previously damaged heart valve	β-Lactam with β-lactamase inhibitor, cephalosporins, macrolides, tetracycline, fluoroquinolone
Klebsiella pneumoniae	Pneumonia, urinary tract infections	Nosocomial infection; alcoholism	Cephalosporins, carbapenems, fluoroquinolones; multidrug-resistant strains increasingly common
Legionella pneumophila	Legionnaires' disease (pneumonia), Pontiac fever (flulike illness)	Waterborne; elderly and immunocompromised patients	Macrolides (erythromycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin); fluoroquinolones as alternative therapy
Moraxella catarrhalis	Bronchopneumonia, ear or eye infections	Children, patients with compromised pulmonary system	Cephalosporins, amoxicillin/clavulanic acid
Proteus mirabilis	Urinary tract infections, wound infections	Structural abnormality in urinary tract	Amoxicillin, trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Pulmonary; primary skin and soft-tissue infection: burn wounds, folliculitis, osteochondritis; urinary tract infections; ear or eye infections; bacteremia; endocarditis	Nosocomial infections	Combination therapy generally required (e.g., aminoglycoside with extended-spectrum cephalosporins, piperacillin-tazobactam, or carbapenem); multidrug-resistant strains increasingly common
Salmonella enterica	Diarrhea; enteric fever (serovar Typhi)	Contaminated food; immunocompromised patients at higher risk for bacteremia	May prolong carrier state in simple diarrhea treatment; fluoroquinolones for enteric fever
Serratia, Enterobacter	Pneumonia, urinary tract infections, wound infections	Nosocomial infections	Carbapenems, piperacillin-tazobactam
Shigella	Bacillary dysentery	Contaminated food or water; person-to-person spread	Ampicillin, trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, fluoroquinolones
Stenotrophomonas maltophilia	Wide variety of local and systemic infections	Nosocomial infections	Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole; doxycycline or ceftazidime as alternative
Streptobacillus moniliformis	Rat-bite fever; Haverhill fever	Bite of rat or other small rodent; ingestion of contaminated food or water	Penicillin, tetracycline
Vibrio cholerae	Severe watery diarrhea, septicemia	Children and adults in developing countries	Rehydration; azithromycin, doxycycline, or ciprofloxacin as alternative
V. parahaemolyticus	Water diarrhea, wound infection	Seafood-borne outbreaks	Rehydration for diarrhea; doxycycline + ceftriaxone for wound infection
V. vulnificus	Wound infections, primary septicemia	Compromised individuals with preexisting hepatic or chronic diseases	Minocycline or doxycycline + ceftriaxone or cefotaxime

TABLE 15.1 Overview of Selected Bacterial Pathogens—cont'd

Organism	Clinical Features	Epidemiologic Features	Treatment
ANAEROBES			
Actinomyces	Actinomycosis: cervicofacial, thoracic, abdominal, pelvic, central nervous system	Colonizes human mucosal surface (oropharynx, intestine, vagina)	Surgical debridement; penicillin; carbapenems, macrolides, or clindamycin as alternative drugs
Bacteroides fragilis	Polymicrobial infections of abdomen, female genital tract, cutaneous and soft tissues	Normal inhabitant of the GI tract	Metronidazole; carbapenems; piperacillin/tazobactam
Clostridium botulinum	Botulism: foodborne, infant, wound	Found in environment (e.g., soil, water, sewage) and GI tract of animals and humans	Ventilatory support + metronidazole or penicillin + trivalent botulinum antitoxin
C. difficile	Antibiotic-associated diarrhea; pseudomembranous colitis	Colonized human GI tract and female genital tract; contaminates hospital environment; prior antibiotic use	Discontinue implicated antibiotics; metronidazole or vancomycin
C. perfringens	Soft-tissue infections: cellulitis, myositis, myonecrosis; food poisoning; enteritis necroticans; septicemia	Found in environment (e.g., soil, water, sewage) and GI tract of animals and humans	Surgical debridement + penicillin
C. tetani	Tetanus: generalized, localized, neonatal	Found in environment (e.g., soil, water, sewage) and GI tract of animals and humans	Wound debridement + penicillin or metronidazole + vaccination with tetanus toxoid + passive immunization
Propionibacterium acnes	Acne; opportunistic infections (e.g., of catheters, shunts, and other prosthetic devices)	Colonizes human skin and mucosal surfaces	Acne treated with benzoyl peroxide + clindamycin or erythromycin
Anaplasma, Ehrlichia, Rickettsia, Coxiella, Chlamydia			
Anaplasma phagocytophilum	Anaplasmosis (granulocytic ehrlichiosis)	Transmission by tick bite (*Ixodes*)	Doxycycline; rifampin as alternative therapy
Chlamydia trachomatis	Trachoma; neonatal conjunctivitis and pneumonia; urethritis; cervicitis; proctitis; salpingitis; lymphogranuloma venereum	Trachoma in developing countries; exposure to infected secretions during birth or sexual contact	Doxycycline, erythromycin, or azithromycin; fluoroquinolones
C. pneumoniae	Pneumonia; cardiovascular disease (?)	Children, young adults	Macrolides; doxycycline, levofloxacin
C. psittaci	Pneumonia	Exposure to birds and their secretions	Doxycycline or macrolides
Coxiella burnetii	Q fever: acute (fever, headache, chills, myalgias, granulomatous hepatitis) or chronic (endocarditis, hepatic dysfunction)	Persons exposed to infected livestock; primarily acquired by inhalation; relatively uncommon in United States	Acute disease: doxycycline Chronic disease: doxycycline + hydroxychloroquine; fluoroquinolones used as alternative to doxycycline
Ehrlichia chaffeensis	Monocytic ehrlichiosis	Transmission by tick bite (*Amblyomma*)	Doxycycline; rifampin used as alternative therapy
Mycoplasma genitalium	Urethritis, cervicitis, pelvic inflammatory disease	Transmission during sexual activity	Azithromycin, fluoroquinolones
M. pneumoniae	Tracheobronchitis; pharyngitis; atypical pneumonia	Symptomatic disease more common in children than adults; severe disease in patients with hypogammaglobulinemia	Erythromycin, doxycycline, fluoroquinolones
Rickettsia rickettsii	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	Most prevalent in hikers and other individuals who spend a lot of time outdoors; transmission by tick bite (*Dermacentor* in United States)	Doxycycline; fluoroquinolones used as alternative therapy
SPIROCHETES			
Borrelia burgdorferi, B. garinii, B. afzelii	Lyme disease: erythema migrans; cardiac, neurologic, or rheumatologic abnormalities	Transmission by ticks (*Ixodes*)	Early: amoxicillin, doxycycline, cefuroxime; late: ceftriaxone, cefotaxime, or penicillin G
B. recurrentis	Epidemic relapsing fever	Transmission by human body louse; no animal host	Tetracyclines; penicillins
Borrelia species	Endemic relapsing fever	Transmission by tick bite (*Ornithodoros*); rodent and small mammal reservoir	Tetracyclines; penicillins
Leptospira interrogans	Leptospirosis: mild, viral-like illness to severe multiorgan illness (Weil disease)	Transmission by exposure to infected urine or tissues of rodents, dogs, farm animals, wild animals	Penicillin; doxycycline
Treponema pallidum	Syphilis: primary, secondary, tertiary, congenital	Transmission congenitally or through sexual contact	Penicillins; doxycycline or azithromycin as alternative therapy

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *BA,* bacillary angiomatosis; *CSD,* cat-scratch disease; *EAEC,* enteroaggregative *E. coli; EIEC,* enteroinvasive *E. coli; EPEC,* enteropathogenic *E. coli; ETEC,* enterotoxigenic *E. coli; GI,* gastrointestinal; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *INH:* isoniazid; *STEC,* Shiga toxin–producing *E. coli*; *TF,* trench fever.

TABLE 15.2 Summary of Bacterial Diseases

System Affected	Pathogens
UPPER RESPIRATORY INFECTIONS	
Pharyngitis	***Streptococcus pyogenes,*** *Neisseria gonorrhoeae,* group C *Streptococcus, Arcanobacterium haemolyticum, Chlamydia pneumoniae, Corynebacterium diphtheriae, C. ulcerans, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Francisella tularensis*
Sinusitis	***Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, Moraxella catarrhalis,*** **mixed anaerobes and aerobes,** *Staphylococcus aureus,* group A *Streptococcus, Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and other gram-negative rods
Epiglottitis	*Haemophilus influenzae, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Staphylococcus aureus*
EAR INFECTIONS	
Otitis externa	***Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Staphylococcus aureus,*** group A *Streptococcus*
Otitis media	***Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, Moraxella catarrhalis,*** *Staphylococcus aureus,* group A *Streptococcus,* mixed anaerobes and aerobes
EYE INFECTIONS	
Conjunctivitis	***Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus aegyptius,*** *Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Francisella tularensis, Chlamydia trachomatis*
Keratitis	***Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Pseudomonas aeruginosa,*** group A *Streptococcus, Proteus mirabilis* and other Enterobacteriaceae, *Bacillus* species, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
Endophthalmitis	***Bacillus cereus, Staphylococcus aureus, Pseudomonas aeruginosa,*** coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus, Propionibacterium* species, *Corynebacterium* species
PLEUROPULMONARY AND BRONCHIAL INFECTIONS	
Bronchitis	***Moraxella catarrhalis, Haemophilus influenzae, Streptococcus pneumoniae,*** *Bordetella pertussis, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Chlamydia pneumoniae*
Empyema	***Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pneumoniae,*** **group A *Streptococcus,*** *Bacteroides fragilis, Klebsiella pneumoniae* and other Enterobacteriaceae, *Actinomyces* species, *Nocardia* species, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other species
Pneumonia	***Streptococcus pneumoniae, Staphylococcus aureus, Klebsiella pneumoniae*****, other Enterobacteriaceae,** *Moraxella catarrhalis, Haemophilus influenzae, Neisseria meningitidis, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Chlamydia trachomatis, C. pneumoniae, C. psittaci, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Burkholderia* species, *Legionella* species, *Francisella tularensis, Bacteroides fragilis, Nocardia* species, *Rhodococcus equi, Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other species, *Coxiella burnetii, Rickettsia rickettsii,* many other bacteria
URINARY TRACT INFECTIONS	
Cystitis and pyelonephritis	***Escherichia coli, Proteus mirabilis,*** **other Enterobacteriaceae,** *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Staphylococcus saprophyticus, S. aureus, S. epidermidis,* group B *Streptococcus, Enterococcus* species, *Aerococcus urinae, Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
Renal calculi	***Proteus mirabilis,*** *Morganella morganii, Klebsiella pneumoniae, Corynebacterium urealyticum, Staphylococcus saprophyticus, Ureaplasma urealyticum*
Renal abscess	***Staphylococcus aureus,*** mixed anaerobes and aerobes, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
Prostatitis	***Escherichia coli,*** *Klebsiella pneumoniae,* other Enterobacteriaceae, *Enterococcus* species, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other species
INTRAABDOMINAL INFECTIONS	
Peritonitis	***Escherichia coli, Bacteroides fragilis*** and other species, ***Enterococcus*** **species,** *Klebsiella pneumoniae,* other Enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Staphylococcus aureus, Fusobacterium* species, *Clostridium* species, *Peptostreptococcus* species, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia trachomatis, Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
Dialysis-associated peritonitis	**Coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus,*** *Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus* species, *Corynebacterium* species, *Propionibacterium* species, *Escherichia coli* and other Enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Acinetobacter* species
CARDIOVASCULAR INFECTIONS	
Endocarditis	**Viridans *Streptococcus,*** **coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus,*** *Staphylococcus aureus, Aggregatibacter* species, *Cardiobacter hominis, Eikenella corrodens, Kingella kingae, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Abiotrophia* species, *Rothia mucilaginosa, Enterococcus* species, *Bartonella* species, *Coxiella burnetii, Brucella* species, *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae,* Enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Corynebacterium* species, *Propionibacterium* species
Myocarditis	***Staphylococcus aureus,*** *Corynebacterium diphtheriae, Clostridium perfringens,* group A *Streptococcus, Borrelia burgdorferi, Neisseria meningitidis, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Chlamydia pneumoniae, C. psittaci, Rickettsia rickettsii, Orientia tsutsugamushi*
Pericarditis	***Staphylococcus aureus,*** *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Neisseria gonorrhoeae, N. meningitidis, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, M. tuberculosis* and other species
SEPSIS	
General sepsis	***Staphylococcus aureus,*** **coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus, Escherichia coli, Klebsiella*** **species**, *Enterobacter* species, *Proteus mirabilis,* other Enterobacteriaceae, *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and other species, *Enterococcus* species, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* many other bacteria

TABLE 15.2 Summary of Bacterial Diseases—cont'd

System Affected	Pathogens
Transfusion-associated sepsis	**Coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus,*** *Staphylococcus aureus, Yersinia enterocolitica, Pseudomonas fluorescens* group, *Salmonella* species, other Enterobacteriaceae, *Campylobacter jejuni* and other species, *Bacillus cereus* and other species
Septic thrombophlebitis	***Staphylococcus aureus, Bacteroides fragilis,*** *Klebsiella* species, *Enterobacter* species, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Fusobacterium* species, *Campylobacter fetus*
CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM INFECTIONS	
Meningitis	**Group B *Streptococcus, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Neisseria meningitidis, Listeria monocytogenes, Haemophilus influenzae, Escherichia coli,*** other Enterobacteriaceae, *Staphylococcus aureus,* coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus, Propionibacterium* species, *Nocardia* species, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other species, *Borrelia burgdorferi, Leptospira* species, *Treponema pallidum, Brucella* species
Encephalitis	*Listeria monocytogenes, Treponema pallidum, Leptospira* species, *Actinomyces* species, *Nocardia* species, *Borrelia* species, *Rickettsia rickettsii, Coxiella burnetii, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other species
Brain abscess	***Staphylococcus aureus, Fusobacterium* species, *Peptostreptococcus* species, other anaerobic cocci,** Enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* viridans *Streptococcus, Bacteroides* species, *Prevotella* species, *Porphyromonas* species, *Actinomyces* species, *Clostridium perfringens, Listeria monocytogenes, Nocardia* species, *Rhodococcus equi, Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other species
Subdural empyema	***Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus pneumoniae,*** group B *Streptococcus, Neisseria meningitidis,* mixed anaerobes and aerobes
SKIN AND SOFT-TISSUE INFECTIONS	
Impetigo	**Group A *Streptococcus, Staphylococcus aureus***
Folliculitis	***Staphylococcus aureus, Pseudomonas aeruginosa***
Furuncles and carbuncles	***Staphylococcus aureus***
Paronychia	***Staphylococcus aureus,* group A *Streptococcus,*** *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
Erysipelas	**Group A *Streptococcus***
Cellulitis	**Group A *Streptococcus, Staphylococcus aureus,*** *Haemophilus influenzae,* many other bacteria
Necrotizing cellulitis and fasciitis	**Group A *Streptococcus, Clostridium perfringens*** and other species, *Bacteroides fragilis,* other anaerobes, Enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
Bacillary angiomatosis	***Bartonella henselae, Bartonella quintana***
Infections of burns	***Pseudomonas aeruginosa,*** *Enterobacter* species, *Enterococcus* species, *Staphylococcus aureus,* group A *Streptococcus,* many other bacteria
Bite wounds	***Eikenella corrodens, Pasteurella multocida,*** *P. canis, Capnocytophaga canis*, *Staphylococcus aureus,* group A *Streptococcus,* mixed anaerobes and aerobes, many gram-negative rods
Surgical wounds	***Staphylococcus aureus,*** coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus,* groups A and B streptococci, *Clostridium perfringens, Corynebacterium* species, many other bacteria
Traumatic wounds	***Bacillus* species, *Staphylococcus aureus,*** group A *Streptococcus,* many gram-negative rods, rapidly growing mycobacteria
GASTROINTESTINAL INFECTIONS	
Antibiotic-associated diarrhea	***Clostridium difficile,*** *Staphylococcus aureus*
Gastritis	***Helicobacter pylori***
Gastroenteritis	***Salmonella* species, *Shigella* species, *Campylobacter jejuni* and *coli, Escherichia coli* (STEC, EIEC, ETEC, EPEC, EAEC), *Vibrio cholerae, V. parahaemolyticus, Bacillus cereus,*** *Yersinia enterocolitica, Edwardsiella tarda, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Aeromonas* species, *Plesiomonas shigelloides, Bacteroides fragilis, Clostridium botulinum, C. perfringens*
Food intoxication	***Staphylococcus aureus, Bacillus cereus,*** *Clostridium botulinum, C. perfringens*
Proctitis	***Neisseria gonorrhoeae,*** *Chlamydia trachomatis, Treponema pallidum*
BONE AND JOINT INFECTIONS	
Osteomyelitis	***Staphylococcus aureus,*** *Salmonella* species, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other species, β-hemolytic *Streptococcus, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Escherichia coli,* and other Enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* many less common bacteria
Arthritis	***Staphylococcus aureus, Neisseria gonorrhoeae,*** *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Salmonella* species, *Pasteurella multocida, Mycobacterium* species

Continued

TABLE 15.2 Summary of Bacterial Diseases—cont'd

System Affected	Pathogens
Prosthetic-associated infections	***Staphylococcus aureus,* coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus,*** group A *Streptococcus,* viridans *Streptococcus, Corynebacterium* species, *Propionibacterium* species, *Peptostreptococcus* species, other anaerobic cocci
GENITAL INFECTIONS	
Genital ulcers	***Treponema pallidum, Haemophilus ducreyi,*** *Chlamydia trachomatis, Francisella tularensis, Klebsiella granulomatis, Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
Urethritis	***Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia trachomatis, Mycoplasma genitalium,*** *Ureaplasma urealyticum*
Vaginitis	***Mycoplasma hominis, Mobiluncus* species, other anaerobic species,** *Gardnerella vaginalis*
Cervicitis	***Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia trachomatis, Mycoplasma genitalium,*** *N. meningitidis,* group B *Streptococcus, Mycobacterium tuberculosis, Actinomyces* species
GRANULOMATOUS INFECTIONS	
General	***Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and other species, *Nocardia* species, *Treponema pallidum,*** *Brucella* species, *Francisella tularensis, Listeria monocytogenes, Burkholderia pseudomallei, Actinomyces* species, *Bartonella henselae, Tropheryma whipplei, Chlamydia trachomatis, Coxiella burnetii*

Note: Organisms in boldface are the most common pathogens.
EAEC, Enteroaggregative *E. coli; EIEC,* enteroinvasive *E. coli; EPEC,* enteropathogenic *E. coli; ETEC,* enterotoxigenic *E. coli; STEC,* Shiga toxin–producing (enterohemorrhagic) *E. coli*.

TABLE 15.3 Selected Bacteria Associated with Foodborne Diseases

Organism	Implicated Food(s)
Aeromonas species	Meats, produce, dairy products
Bacillus cereus	Fried rice, meats, vegetables
Brucella species	Unpasteurized dairy products, meat
Campylobacter species	Poultry, unpasteurized dairy products
Clostridium botulinum	Vegetables, fruits, fish, honey
C. perfringens	Beef, poultry, pork, gravy
Escherichia coli	Beef, unpasteurized milk, fruits and juices, vegetables, lettuce
Francisella tularensis	Rabbit meat
Listeria monocytogenes	Unpasteurized dairy products, coleslaw, poultry, cold-cut meats
Plesiomonas shigelloides	Seafood
***Salmonella* species**	Poultry, unpasteurized dairy products
Shigella species	Eggs, lettuce
Staphylococcus aureus	Ham, poultry, egg dishes, pastries
Streptococcus, group A	Egg dishes
***Vibrio* species**	Shellfish
Yersinia enterocolitica	Unpasteurized dairy products, pork

Note: Organisms in boldface are the most common foodborne pathogens.

TABLE 15.4 Selected Bacteria Associated with Waterborne Diseases

Organism	Disease
Aeromonas species	Gastroenteritis, wound infections, septicemia
Campylobacter species	Gastroenteritis
Escherichia coli	Gastroenteritis
Francisella tularensis	Tularemia
***Legionella* species**	Respiratory disease
***Leptospira* species**	Systemic disease
Mycobacterium marinum	Cutaneous infection
Plesiomonas shigelloides	Gastroenteritis
***Pseudomonas* species**	Dermatitis
Salmonella species	Gastroenteritis
Shigella species	Gastroenteritis
***Vibrio* species**	Gastroenteritis, wound infection, septicemia
Yersinia enterocolitica	Gastroenteritis

Note: Organisms in boldface are the most common waterborne pathogens.

TABLE 15.5 Arthropod-Associated Disease

ARTHROPOD	Organism	Disease
Tick	*Anaplasma phagocytophilum*	Human anaplasmosis (formerly called human granulocytic ehrlichiosis)
	Borrelia afzelii	Lyme disease
	B. burgdorferi	Lyme disease
	B. garinii	Lyme disease
	Borrelia, other species	Endemic relapsing fever
	Coxiella burnetii	Q fever
	Ehrlichia chaffeensis	Human monocytic ehrlichiosis
	E. ewingii	Canine (human) granulocytic ehrlichiosis
	Francisella tularensis	Tularemia
	Rickettsia rickettsii	Rocky Mountain spotted fever
Flea	*R. prowazekii*	Sporadic typhus
	R. typhi	Murine typhus
	Yersinia pestis	Plague
Lice	*Bartonella quintana*	Trench fever
	Borrelia recurrentis	Epidemic relapsing fever
	R. prowazekii prowazekii	Epidemic typhus
Mite	*Orientia tsutsugamushi*	Scrub typhus
	Rickettsia akari	Rickettsialpox
Sand-fly	*Bartonella bacilliformis*	Bartonellosis (Carrión disease)

Bibliography

Borriello, P., Murray, P., Funke, G., 2005. Topley & Wilson's Microbiology and Microbial Infections: Bacteriology, tenth ed. Hodder, London.

Jameson, J.L., Fauci, A.S., Kasper, D.L., et al., 2018. Harrison's principles of internal medicine, twentieth ed. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Jorgensen, J., Pfaller, M., 2019. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, twelth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Bennett J.E., Dolin, R., Blazer M. 2019. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, Ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia PA.

Miller, J.M., Binnicker, M., Campbell, S., et al., 2018. A guide to utilization of the microbiology laboratory for the diagnosis of infectious diseases: 2018 update by IDSA and ASM. Clin. Infect. Dis. 67, e1–e94.

Murray, P., Shea, Y., 2004. Pocket Guide to Clinical Microbiology, third ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

16 Laboratory Diagnosis of Bacterial Diseases

The laboratory diagnosis of bacterial diseases requires that the appropriate specimen is collected, delivered expeditiously to the laboratory in the appropriate transport system, and processed in a manner that will maximize detection of the most likely pathogens. Collection of the proper specimen and its rapid delivery to the clinical laboratory are primarily the responsibility of the patient's physician, whereas the clinical microbiologist selects the appropriate transport systems and detection method (e.g., microscopy, culture, antigen or antibody detection, nucleic acid–based tests). These responsibilities are not mutually exclusive. The microbiologist should be prepared to instruct the physician about what specimens should be collected if a particular diagnosis is suspected, and the physician must provide the microbiologist with information about the clinical diagnosis so that the right tests are selected. This chapter provides an overview of specimen collection and transport, as well as the methods used in the microbiology laboratory for the detection and identification of bacteria. Because it is beyond the scope of this chapter to cover this subject exhaustively, the student is referred to the citations in the Bibliography and the individual chapters that follow for more detailed information.

Specimen Collection, Transport, and Processing

Guidelines for proper collection and transport of specimens are summarized in the following text and Table 16.1.

BLOOD

The culture of blood is one of the most important procedures performed in the clinical microbiology laboratory. The success of this test is directly related to the methods used to collect the blood sample. The most important factor that determines the success of a blood culture is the volume of blood processed. For example, 40% more cultures are positive for organisms if 20 ml rather than 10 ml of blood are cultured because more than half of all septic patients have less than one organism per milliliter of blood. Approximately 20 ml of blood should be collected from an adult for each blood culture, and proportionally smaller volumes should be collected from children and neonates. Because many hospitalized patients are susceptible to infections with organisms colonizing their skin, careful disinfection of the patient's skin is important.

Bacteremia and **fungemia** are defined as the presence of bacteria and fungi, respectively, in the blood, and these infections are referred to collectively as **septicemia.** Clinical studies have shown that septicemia can be continuous or intermittent. **Continuous septicemia** occurs primarily in patients with intravascular infections (e.g., endocarditis, septic thrombophlebitis, infections associated with intravascular catheter) or with overwhelming sepsis (e.g., septic shock). **Intermittent septicemia** occurs in patients with localized infections (e.g., lungs, urinary tract, soft tissues). Intermittent septicemia may be a misnomer because it is likely the number of organisms in the blood fluctuates rather than being completely absent. The timing of blood collection does not appear to be important, although the collection should be performed when the patient is not receiving antibiotics if this is feasible. It is recommended for optimum success that two to three blood samples should be collected.

Most blood samples are inoculated directly into bottles filled with enriched nutrient broths. To ensure the maximal recovery of important organisms, two bottles of media should be inoculated for each culture (10 ml of blood per bottle). When these inoculated bottles are received in the laboratory, they are incubated at 37°C and inspected at regular intervals for evidence of microbial growth. In most laboratories this is accomplished using automated blood culture instruments. When growth is detected, the broths are subcultured to isolate the organism for identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Most clinically significant isolates are detected within the first 1 to 2 days of incubation; however, all cultures should be incubated for a minimum of 5 to 7 days. More prolonged incubation is generally unnecessary. Because few organisms are typically present in the blood of a septic patient, it is not worthwhile to perform a Gram stain of the blood.

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

Bacterial meningitis is a serious disease associated with high morbidity and mortality if the etiologic diagnosis is delayed. Because some common pathogens are labile (e.g., *Neisseria meningitidis, Streptococcus pneumoniae*), specimens of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) should be processed immediately after they are collected. Under no circumstance should the specimen be refrigerated or placed directly into an incubator. The patient's skin is disinfected before lumbar puncture, and the CSF is collected into sterile screw-capped tubes. When the specimen is received in the microbiology laboratory, it is concentrated by centrifugation, and the sediment is used to inoculate bacteriologic media and prepare a Gram stain. The laboratory technologist should notify the physician immediately if organisms are observed microscopically or in culture. Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) are now commonly performed to detect bacteria, viruses, and fungi in CSF; thus the specimen should be transported to the laboratory in the appropriate container.

A variety of other normally sterile fluids may be collected for bacteriologic culture, including abdominal (peritoneal), chest (pleural), synovial, and pericardial fluids. If a large volume of fluid can be collected by aspiration

TABLE 16.1 Bacteriology Specimen Collection for Bacterial Pathogens

Specimen	Transport System	Specimen Volume	Other Considerations
Blood: routine bacterial culture	Blood culture bottle with nutrient media	Adults: 20 ml/culture Children: 5-10 ml/culture Neonates: 1 ml/culture	Skin should be disinfected with 70% alcohol followed by 0.5%-2% chlorhexidine; 2-3 cultures collected for each septic event; blood is divided equally into two bottles of nutrient media
Blood: intracellular bacteria (e.g., *Brucella, Francisella, Neisseria* spp.)	Same as that for routine blood cultures; lysis-centrifugation system	Same as that for routine blood cultures	Considerations are the same as those for routine blood cultures; release of intracellular bacteria may improve the organism's recovery; *Neisseria* spp. are inhibited by the anticoagulant (sodium polyanetholesulfonate)
Blood: *Leptospira* sp.	Sterile heparinized tube	1-5 ml	The specimen is useful only during the first week of illness; afterward, urine should be cultured
Cerebrospinal fluid	Sterile screw-capped tube	Bacterial culture: 1-5 ml Mycobacterial culture: as large a volume as possible	The specimen must be collected aseptically and delivered immediately to the laboratory; it should not be exposed to heat or refrigeration
Other normally sterile fluids (e.g., abdominal, chest, synovial, pericardial)	Small volume: sterile screw-capped tube Large volume: blood culture bottle with nutrient medium	As large a volume as possible	Specimens are collected with a needle and syringe; a swab is not recommended because the quantity of collected specimen is inadequate; air should not be injected into culture bottle because it will inhibit growth of anaerobes
Catheter	Sterile screw-capped tube or specimen cup	N/A	The entry site should be disinfected with alcohol; the catheter should be aseptically removed on receipt of the specimen in the laboratory; the catheter is rolled across a blood agar plate and then discarded
Respiratory: throat	Swab immersed in transport medium	N/A	The area of inflammation is swabbed; exudate is collected if present; contact with saliva should be avoided because it can inhibit recovery of group A streptococci
Respiratory: epiglottis	Collection of blood for culture	Same as for blood culture	Swabbing the epiglottis can precipitate complete airway closure; blood cultures should be collected for specific diagnosis.
Respiratory: sinuses	Sterile anaerobic tube or vial	1-5 ml	Specimens must be collected with a needle and syringe; culture of nasopharynx or oropharynx has no value; the specimen should be cultured for aerobic and anaerobic bacteria
Respiratory: lower airways	Sterile screw-capped bottle; anaerobic tube or vial only for specimens collected by avoiding upper tract flora	1-2 ml	Expectorated sputum: if possible, the patient rinses mouth with water before collection of the specimen; the patient should cough deeply and expectorate lower airway secretions directly into a sterile cup; the collector should avoid contamination with saliva Bronchoscopy specimen: anesthetics can inhibit growth of bacteria, so specimens should be processed immediately; if a "protected" bronchoscope is used, anaerobic cultures can be performed Direct lung aspirate: specimens can be processed for aerobic and anaerobic bacteria
Ear	Capped needleless syringe; sterile screw-capped tube	Whatever volume is collected	The specimen should be aspirated with a needle and syringe; culture of the external ear has no predictive value for otitis media
Eye	Inoculate plates at bedside (seal and transport to laboratory immediately)	Whatever volume is collected	For infections on surface of eye, specimens are collected with a swab or by corneal scrapings; for deep-seated infections, aspiration of aqueous or vitreous fluid is performed; all specimens should be inoculated onto appropriate media at collection; delays will result in significant loss of organisms
Exudates (transudates, drainage, ulcers)	Swab immersed in transport medium; aspirate in sterile screw-capped tube	Bacteria: 1-5 ml Mycobacteria: 3-5 ml	Contamination with surface material should be avoided; specimens are generally unsuitable for anaerobic culture
Wounds (abscess, pus)	Aspirate in sterile screw-capped tube or sterile anaerobic tube or vial	1-5 ml of pus	Specimens should be collected with a sterile needle and syringe; a curette is used to collect specimen at base of wound
Tissues	Sterile screw-capped tube; sterile anaerobic tube or vial	Representative sample from center and border of lesion	The specimen should be aseptically placed into the appropriate sterile container; an adequate quantity of specimen must be collected to recover small numbers of organisms

TABLE 16.1 Bacteriology Specimen Collection for Bacterial Pathogens—cont'd

Specimen	Transport System	Specimen Volume	Other Considerations
Urine: midstream	Sterile urine container	Bacteria: 1 ml Mycobacteria: ≥10 ml	Contamination of the specimen with bacteria from the urethra or vagina should be avoided; the first portion of the voided specimen is discarded; organisms can grow rapidly in urine, so specimens must be transported immediately to the laboratory, held in bacteriostatic preservative, or refrigerated
Urine: catheterized	Sterile urine container	Bacteria: 1 ml Mycobacteria: ≥10 ml	Catheterization is not recommended for routine cultures (risk of inducing infection); the first portion of collected specimen is contaminated with urethral bacteria, so it should be discarded (similar to midstream voided specimen); the specimen must be transported rapidly to the laboratory
Urine: suprapubic aspirate	Sterile anaerobic tube or vial	Bacteria: 1 ml Mycobacteria: ≥10 ml	This is an invasive specimen, so urethral bacteria are avoided; it is the only valid method available for collecting specimens for anaerobic culture; it is also useful for collection of specimens from children or adults unable to void uncontaminated specimens
Genitals	Specially designed swabs for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia* probes	N/A	The area of inflammation or exudate should be sampled; the endocervix (not vagina) and urethra should be cultured for optimal detection; the first voided urine specimen can be used for diagnosis of urethritis
Feces (stool)	Sterile screw-capped container	N/A	Rapid transport to the laboratory is necessary to prevent production of acid (bactericidal for some enteric pathogens) by normal fecal bacteria; it is unsuitable for anaerobic culture; because a large number of different media will be inoculated, a swab should not be used for specimen collection

N/A, Not applicable.

(e.g., abdominal or chest fluids), it should be inoculated into blood culture bottles containing nutrient media. A small portion also should be sent to the laboratory in a sterile tube so that appropriate stains (e.g., Gram, acid-fast) can be prepared. Many organisms are associated with infections at these sites, including polymicrobial mixtures of aerobic and anaerobic organisms. For this reason, biological staining is useful for identifying the organisms responsible for the infection. Because relatively few organisms may be in the sample (because of the dilution of organisms or microbial elimination by the host immune response), it is important to culture as large a volume of fluid as possible. However, if only small quantities of fluid are collected, then the specimen can be inoculated directly onto agar media and a tube of enriched broth media. Because anaerobes may also be present in the sample (particularly samples obtained from patients with intraabdominal or pulmonary infections), the specimen should not be exposed to oxygen and should be processed for anaerobes.

UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT SPECIMENS

Most bacterial infections of the pharynx are caused by group A *Streptococcus*. Other bacteria that may cause pharyngitis include *Corynebacterium diphtheriae, Bordetella pertussis, N. gonorrhoeae, Chlamydia pneumoniae,* and *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*. However, special techniques are generally required to recover these organisms. Other potentially pathogenic bacteria, such as *Staphylococcus aureus, S. pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae,* Enterobacteriaceae, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* may be present in the oropharynx but rarely cause pharyngitis.

A Dacron or calcium alginate swab should be used to collect pharyngeal specimens. The tonsillar areas, posterior pharynx, and any exudate or ulcerative area should be sampled. Contamination of the specimen with saliva should be avoided because bacteria in saliva can overgrow or inhibit the growth of group A streptococci. If a pseudomembrane is present (e.g., as with *C. diphtheriae* infections), a portion should be dislodged and submitted for culture. Group A streptococci and *C. diphtheriae* are very resistant to drying, so special precautions are not required for transport of the specimen to the laboratory. In contrast, specimens collected for the recovery of *B. pertussis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* should be inoculated onto culture media immediately after they are collected and before they are sent to the laboratory. Specimens obtained for the isolation of *C. pneumoniae* and *M. pneumoniae* should be transported in a special transport medium.

Group A streptococci can be detected directly in the clinical specimen through the use of immunoassays for the group-specific antigen. These tests are very specific and the current immunoassays using digital reading devices as very sensitive. NAAT are also available for detection of group A streptococci.

Other upper respiratory tract infections can involve the epiglottis and sinuses. Complete airway obstruction can be precipitated by attempts to culture the epiglottis (particularly in children); thus these cultures should never be performed. The specific diagnosis of a sinus infection requires

(1) direct aspiration of the sinus, (2) appropriate anaerobic transport of the specimen to the laboratory (using a system that avoids exposing anaerobes to oxygen and drying), and (3) prompt processing. In practice, these specimens are rarely collected and most infections are treated empirically. Culture of the nasopharynx or oropharynx is not useful and should not be performed. *S. pneumoniae, H. influenzae, Moraxella catarrhalis, S. aureus,* and anaerobes are the most common pathogens that cause sinusitis.

LOWER RESPIRATORY TRACT SPECIMENS

A variety of techniques can be used to collect lower respiratory tract specimens including expectoration, induction with saline, bronchoscopy, and direct aspiration through the chest wall. Because upper airway bacteria may contaminate expectorated sputa, specimens should be inspected microscopically to assess the magnitude of oral contamination. Specimens containing many squamous epithelial cells and no predominant bacteria in association with inflammatory cells should not be processed for culture. The presence of squamous epithelial cells indicates that the specimen has been contaminated with saliva. Such contamination can be avoided by obtaining the specimen using specially designed bronchoscopes or direct lung aspiration. If an anaerobic lung infection is suspected, these invasive procedures must be used because contamination of the specimen with upper airway microbes would render the specimen worthless. Most lower respiratory tract pathogens grow rapidly (within 2 to 3 days); however, some slow-growing bacteria, such as mycobacteria or nocardiae, will require extended incubation.

EAR AND EYE

Tympanocentesis (i.e., aspiration of fluid from the middle ear) is required to make the specific diagnosis of a middle ear infection. This is unnecessary in most patients because the most common pathogens that cause these infections (*S. pneumoniae, H. influenzae,* and *M. catarrhalis*) can be treated empirically. Outer ear infections are typically caused by *P. aeruginosa* ("swimmer's ear") or *S. aureus*. The proper specimen to be obtained for culture is a scraping of the involved area of the ear.

Collection of specimens for the diagnosis of ocular infections is difficult because the sample obtained is generally very small and relatively few organisms may be present. Samples of the eye surface should be collected by a swab before topical anesthetics are applied, followed by corneal scrapings when necessary. Intraocular specimens are collected by directly aspirating the eye. The culture media should be inoculated when the specimens are collected and before they are sent to the laboratory. Although most common ocular pathogens grow rapidly (e.g., *S. aureus, S. pneumoniae, H. influenzae, P. aeruginosa, Bacillus cereus*), some may require prolonged incubation (e.g., coagulase-negative staphylococci) or use of specialized culture media *(N. gonorrhoeae*), or tissue culture cells *(C. trachomatis).*

WOUNDS, ABSCESSES, AND TISSUES

Open, draining wounds can often be contaminated with potentially pathogenic organisms unrelated to the specific infectious process. Therefore it is important to collect samples from deep in the wound after the surface has been cleaned. Whenever possible, a swab should be avoided because it is difficult to obtain a representative sample without contamination with organisms colonizing the surface. Likewise, aspirates from a closed abscess should be collected from both the center and the wall of the abscess. Simply collecting pus from an abscess is generally nonproductive because most organisms actively replicate at the base of the abscess rather than in the center. Drainage from soft-tissue infections can be collected by aspiration. If drainage material is not obtained, then a small quantity of saline can be infused into the tissue and then withdrawn for culture. Saline containing a bactericidal preservative should not be used.

Tissues should be obtained from representative portions of the infectious process, with multiple samples collected whenever possible. The tissue specimen should be transported in a sterile screw-capped container, and sterile saline should be added to prevent drying if a small sample (e.g., biopsy specimen) is collected. A sample of tissue should also be submitted for histologic examination. Because collection of tissue specimens requires invasive procedures, every effort should be made to collect the proper specimen and ensure that it is cultured for all clinically significant organisms that may be responsible for the infection. This requires close communication between the physician and microbiologist.

URINE

Urine is one of the most frequently submitted specimens for culture. Because a variety of bacteria colonize the urethra, the first portion of urine collected by voiding or catheterization should be discarded. Urinary tract pathogens can also grow in urine, so there should be no delay in transport of specimens to the laboratory. If the specimen cannot be cultured immediately, it should be refrigerated or placed into a bacteriostatic **urine preservative.** Once the specimen is received in the laboratory, 1 to 10 μl is inoculated onto each culture medium (generally one nonselective agar medium and one selective medium). This is done so that the number of organisms in the urine can be quantitated, which is useful for assessing the significance of an isolate, although small numbers of organisms in a patient with pyuria can be clinically significant. Numerous urine-screening procedures (e.g., biochemical tests, microscopy stains) have been developed and are used widely; however, the current procedures cannot be recommended because they are invariably insensitive in detecting clinically significant, low-grade bacteriuria.

GENITAL SPECIMENS

Despite the variety of bacteria associated with sexually transmitted diseases, most laboratories concentrate on detecting *N. gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis*. Traditionally this was done by inoculating the specimen into a culture system selective for these organisms; however, this is a slow process, taking 2 or more days for a positive culture to be obtained and even more time for isolates to be identified. Culture was also found to be insensitive because the

organisms are extremely labile and die rapidly if transported under less than optimal conditions. For these reasons, a variety of nonculture methods are now used. The most popular methods are nucleic acid amplification procedures (e.g., amplification of species-specific deoxyribonucleic acid [DNA] sequences by the polymerase chain reaction or other methods) for both organisms. Detection of these amplified sequences is both sensitive and specific. Urine can be used for these tests but, in contrast with specimens collected for the diagnosis of cystitis, the first voided portion of urine should be tested for the diagnosis of urethritis.

The other major bacterium that causes sexually transmitted disease is *Treponema pallidum,* the etiologic agent of syphilis. This organism cannot be cultured in the clinical laboratory, so the diagnosis is made using microscopy or serology. Material from lesions must be examined using darkfield microscopy because the organism is too thin to be detected using brightfield microscopy. In addition, the organism dies rapidly when exposed to air and drying conditions, so the microscopic examination must be performed at the time the specimen is collected.

FECAL SPECIMENS

A large variety of bacteria can cause gastrointestinal infections. For these bacteria to be recovered in culture, an adequate stool sample must be collected (generally not a problem in a patient with diarrhea), transported to the laboratory in a manner that ensures viability of the infecting organism, and inoculated onto the appropriate selective media. Rectal swabs should not be submitted for culture because multiple selective media must be inoculated for the various possible pathogens to be recovered. The quantity of feces collected on a swab would be inadequate.

Stool specimens should be collected in a clean pan and then transferred into a tightly sealed waterproof container. The specimens should be transported promptly to the laboratory to prevent acidic changes in the stool (caused by bacterial metabolism), which are toxic for some organisms (e.g., *Shigella*). If a delay is anticipated, then the feces should be mixed with a preservative, such as phosphate buffer mixed with glycerol or Cary-Blair transport medium. In general, however, rapid transport of the specimen to the laboratory is always superior to the use of any transport medium.

It is important to notify the laboratory if a particular enteric pathogen is suspected; this will help the laboratory select the appropriate specialized culture medium. For example, although *Vibrio* species can grow on the common media used for the culture of stool specimens, use of media selective for *Vibrio* facilitates rapid detection and identification of this organism. In addition, some organisms are not isolated routinely by the laboratory procedures (e.g., enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli* can grow on routine culture media but would not be readily distinguished from nonpathogenic *E. coli*). Likewise, other organisms would not be expected to be in a stool sample because their disease is caused by toxin produced in food, not by growth of the organism in the gastrointestinal tract (e.g., *S. aureus, B. cereus*). The microbiologist should be able to select the appropriate test (e.g., culture, toxin assay) if the specific pathogen is indicated. *Clostridium difficile* is a significant cause of antibiotic-associated gastrointestinal disease. Although the organism can be cultured from stool specimens if the specimens are delivered promptly to the laboratory, the most specific way to diagnose the infection is by detecting in fecal extracts the *C. difficile* toxins responsible for the disease or the genes that code for these toxins. The most sensitive and specific tests for diagnosing *C. difficile* disease is detection of the toxin genes by NAAT.

Because many bacteria, both pathogenic and nonpathogenic, are present in fecal specimens, it often takes at least 3 days for the enteric pathogen to be isolated and identified. For this reason, stool cultures are used to confirm the clinical diagnosis, and therapy, if indicated, should not be delayed pending culture results. An alternative to culture or immunoassays is the use of high multiplex NAAT, which can detect the most common bacterial, viral, and parasitic enteric pathogens in 1 to 3 hours directly from fecal swabs. These tests are rapidly becoming the test of choice because they are more sensitive than culture, able to detect common pathogens that are not readily distinguished from normal enteric bacteria (e.g., pathogenic *E. coli* versus normal enteric *E. coli*), and provide results in hours rather than days.

Bacterial Detection and Identification

Detection of bacteria in clinical specimens is accomplished by five general procedures: (1) microscopy, (2) detection of bacterial antigens, (3) culture, (4) detection of specific bacterial nucleic acids, and (5) detection of an antibody response to the bacteria (serology). The specific techniques used for these procedures were presented in the preceding chapters and will not be repeated in this chapter. However, Table 16.2 summarizes the relative value of each procedure for the detection of organisms discussed in Chapters 18 to 35.

Although many organisms can be specifically identified by a variety of techniques, the most common procedure used in diagnostic laboratories is to identify an organism isolated in culture by biochemical tests. In large teaching hospital laboratories and reference laboratories, many biochemical test procedures have been replaced recently with sequencing bacterial-specific genes (e.g., 16S rRNA gene) or using proteomic tools such as matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI) mass spectrometry. We believe most students using this textbook are not interested in these details of microbial identification, but those who are interested should refer to textbooks such as the *ASM Manual of Clinical Microbiology*.

It is important for all students to appreciate that empirical antimicrobial therapy can be refined based on preliminary identification of an organism using microscopic and macroscopic morphology and selected rapid biochemical tests. Refer to Table 16.3 for specific examples.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility Tests

The results of in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility testing are valuable for selecting chemotherapeutic agents active against the infecting organism. Extensive work has been performed in an effort to standardize testing methods and improve the clinical predictive value of the results. Despite

TABLE 16.2 Detection Methods for Bacteria

Organism	DETECTION METHODS				
	Microscopy	Antigen Detection	NAAT	Culture	Antibody Detection
GRAM-POSITIVE COCCI					
Staphylococcus aureus	A	D	B	A	D
Streptococcus pyogenes	B	A	A	A	B
S. agalactiae	B	B	A	A	D
S. pneumoniae	A	B	A	A	D
Enterococcus spp.	A	D	B	A	D
GRAM-POSITIVE RODS					
Bacillus anthracis	B	D	B	A	D
B. cereus	B	D	D	A	D
Listeria monocytogenes	A	D	D	A	D
Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae	A	D	D	A	D
Corynebacterium diphtheriae	B	D	C	A	D
Corynebacterium, other spp.	A	D	D	A	D
Tropheryma whipplei	B	D	A	D	D
ACID-FAST AND PARTIALLY ACID-FAST RODS					
Nocardia spp.	A	D	D	A	D
Rhodococcus equi	A	D	D	A	D
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	A	B	A	A	C
M. leprae	A	D	D	D	B
Mycobacterium, other spp.	A	D	D	A	D
GRAM-NEGATIVE COCCI					
Neisseria gonorrhoeae	A	D	A	A	D
N. meningitidis	A	B	D	A	D
Moraxella catarrhalis	A	D	D	A	D
GRAM-NEGATIVE RODS					
Escherichia coli	A	B	B	A	D
Salmonella spp.	B	D	A	A	B
Shigella spp.	B	D	A	A	D
Yersinia pestis	B	C	A	A	C
Y. enterocolitica	B	D	A	A	B
Enterobacteriaceae, other genera	A	D	D	A	D
Vibrio cholerae	B	D	A	A	D
Vibrio, other spp.	B	D	A	A	D
Aeromonas spp.	B	D	A	A	D
Campylobacter spp.	B	A	A	A	D
Helicobacter pylori	B	A	B	B	A
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	A	D	D	A	D
Burkholderia spp.	A	D	D	A	D
Acinetobacter spp.	A	D	D	A	D
Haemophilus influenzae	A	B	B	A	D
H. ducreyi	B	D	C	A	D
Bordetella pertussis	B	C	A	B	A
Brucella spp.	B	C	D	A	B

TABLE 16.2 Detection Methods for Bacteria—cont'd

	DETECTION METHODS				
Organism	**Microscopy**	**Antigen Detection**	**NAAT**	**Culture**	**Antibody Detection**
Francisella tularensis	B	C	D	A	B
Legionella spp.	B	A	A	A	B
Bartonella spp.	C	D	B	A	A
ANAEROBES					
Clostridium perfringens	A	D	D	A	D
C. tetani	B	D	D	A	D
C. botulinum	B	A	D	B	D
C. difficile	C	A	A	B	D
Anaerobic gram-positive cocci	A	D	D	A	D
Anaerobic gram-positive rods	A	D	D	A	D
Anaerobic gram-negative rods	A	D	D	A	D
SPIRAL-SHAPED BACTERIA					
Treponema pallidum	B	D	D	D	A
Borrelia burgdorferi	C	A	A	B	A
Borrelia, other spp.	A	D	D	D	D
Leptospira spp.	B	D	B	B	A
MYCOPLASMA AND OBLIGATE INTRACELLULAR BACTERIA					
Mycoplasma pneumoniae	D	C	A	B	A
M. genitalium	D	D	A	B	D
Rickettsia spp.	B	D	B	D	A
Orientia spp.	B	C	B	C	A
Ehrlichia spp.	B	C	B	C	A
Anaplasma spp.	B	C	B	C	A
Coxiella burnetii	C	C	B	C	A
Chlamydia trachomatis	B	B	A	B	D
C. pneumoniae	D	D	A	D	B
C. psittaci	D	D	A	D	A

A, Test generally useful for diagnosis; *B,* test useful under certain circumstances or for the diagnosis of specific forms of disease; *C,* test generally not used in diagnostic laboratories or used only in specialty reference laboratories; *D,* test generally not useful; *NAAT,* nucleic acid amplification test.

these efforts, in vitro tests are simply a measurement of the effect of the antibiotic against the organism under specific conditions. Selection of an antibiotic and the patient's outcome are influenced by a variety of interrelated factors including the pharmacokinetic properties of the antibiotic, drug toxicity, the clinical disease, and the patient's general medical status. Thus some organisms that are "susceptible" to an antibiotic will persist in an infection and some organisms that are "resistant" to an antibiotic will be eliminated. For example, because oxygen is required for aminoglycosides to enter a bacterial cell, these antibiotics are ineffective in an anaerobic abscess. Likewise, very high concentrations of antibiotics can be achieved in urine, so resistant bacteria responsible for urinary tract infections can be eliminated by the high urine concentrations of some antibiotics.

Two general forms of antimicrobial susceptibility tests are performed in the clinical laboratory: **broth dilution tests** and **agar diffusion tests.** For broth dilution tests, a series of dilutions of an antibiotic are prepared in a nutrient medium and then inoculated with a standardized concentration of the test bacterium. After overnight incubation, the lowest concentration of antibiotic able to inhibit the growth of the bacteria is referred to as the **minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC).** For agar diffusion tests, a standardized concentration of bacteria is spread over the surface of an agar medium, and then paper disks or strips impregnated with antibiotics are placed on the agar surface. After overnight incubation, an area of inhibited growth is observed surrounding the paper disks or strips. The size of the area of inhibition corresponds to the activity of the antibiotic; the more susceptible the organism is to the antibiotic, the larger the area of inhibited growth. By standardizing the test conditions for agar diffusion tests, the area of inhibition corresponds to the MIC value. Indeed, one commercial company has developed a test in which the MIC value is calculated directly from the zone of inhibited growth around a strip

TABLE 16.3 Preliminary Identification of Bacteria Isolated in Culture

Organism	Properties
Staphylococcus aureus	Gram-positive cocci in clusters; large, β-hemolytic colonies; catalase-positive, coagulase-positive
Streptococcus pyogenes	Gram-positive cocci in long chains; small colonies with large zone of β-hemolysis; catalase-negative, PYR-positive
S. pneumoniae	Gram-positive cocci in pairs and short chains; small, α-hemolytic colonies; catalase-negative, soluble in bile
Enterococcus spp.	Gram-positive cocci in pairs and short chains; large, α-hemolytic or nonhemolytic colonies; catalase-negative, PYR-positive
Listeria monocytogenes	Small, gram-positive rods; small, weakly β-hemolytic colonies; characteristic (tumbling) motility
Nocardia spp.	Weakly staining (Gram and modified acid-fast), thin, filamentous, branching rods; slow growth; fuzzy colonies (aerial hyphae)
Rhodococcus equi	Weakly staining (Gram and modified acid-fast); initially nonbranching rods, cocci in older cultures; slow growth; pink-red colonies
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	Strongly acid-fast rods; slow growth; nonpigmented colonies; identified using specific molecular probes
Enterobacteriaceae	Gram-negative rods with "bipolar" staining (more intense at ends); typically single cells; large colonies; growth on MacConkey agar (may/may not ferment lactose); oxidase-negative
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	Gram-negative rods with uniform staining; typically in pairs; large spreading, fluorescent green colonies, usually β-hemolytic, fruity smell (grapelike); growth on MacConkey agar (nonfermenter); oxidase-positive
Stenotrophomonas maltophilia	Gram-negative rods with uniform staining; typically in pairs; lavender-green color on blood agar; growth on MacConkey agar (nonfermenter); oxidase-negative
Acinetobacter spp.	Large, gram-negative coccobacilli arranged as single cells or pairs; will retain crystal violet and may resemble fat, gram-positive cocci in pairs; growth on blood agar and MacConkey agar (may oxidize lactose and resemble weakly purple); oxidase-negative
Campylobacter spp.	Thin, curved, gram-negative rods arranged in pairs (S-shaped pairs); growth on highly selective media for *Campylobacter*; no growth on routine media (blood, chocolate, or MacConkey agars)
Haemophilus spp.	Small, gram-negative coccobacilli arranged as single cells; growth on chocolate agar but not blood or MacConkey agars; oxidase-positive
Brucella spp.	Very small, gram-negative coccobacilli arranged as single cells; slow-growing; no growth on MacConkey agar; biohazard
Francisella spp.	Very small, gram-negative coccobacilli arranged as single cells; slow-growing; no growth on blood or MacConkey agars; biohazard
Legionella spp.	Weakly staining, thin, gram-negative rods; slow-growing; growth on specialized agar; no growth on blood, chocolate, or MacConkey agars
Clostridium perfringens	Large, rectangular rods with spores not observed; rapid growth of spreading colonies with "double zone" of hemolysis (large zone of α-hemolysis with inner zone of β-hemolysis); strict anaerobe
Bacteroides fragilis group	Weakly staining, pleomorphic (variable lengths), gram-negative rods; rapid growth stimulated by bile in media; strict anaerobe

PYR, L-Pyrrolidonyl arylamidase.

with a gradient of antibiotic concentrations from the top to the bottom of the strip.

Broth dilution tests were originally performed in test tubes and were very labor intensive. Commercially prepared systems are now available in which antibiotic dilutions are prepared in microtiter trays and inoculation of the trays and interpretation of MICs are automated. Disadvantages of these systems are that the range of different antibiotics is determined by the manufacturer, and the number of dilutions of an individual antibiotic is limited. Thus results may not be available for newly introduced antibiotics. Diffusion tests are labor intensive and interpretation of the size of the area of inhibition can be subjective; however, the advantage of these tests is that virtually any antibiotic can be tested. The ability of both susceptibility testing methods to predict clinical response to an antibiotic is equivalent, so test selection is determined by practical considerations.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Jorgensen, J., Pfaller, M., 2015. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Mandell, G., Bennett, J., Dolin, R., Blaser, M., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.

Tille, P., 2017. Bailey and Scott's Diagnostic Microbiology, fourteenth ed. Elsevier, St. Louis, MO.

Questions

1. What is the most important factor that influences recovery of microorganisms in blood collected from patients with sepsis?
2. Which organisms are important causes of bacterial pharyngitis?
3. What criteria should be used to assess the quality of a lower respiratory tract specimen?
4. What methods are used to detect the three most common bacteria that cause sexually transmitted diseases?

17 Antibacterial Agents

This chapter provides an overview of the mechanisms of action and spectrum of the most commonly used antibacterial antibiotics, as well as a description of the common mechanisms of bacterial resistance. The terminology appropriate for this discussion is summarized in Box 17.1, and the basic mechanisms and sites of antibiotic activity are summarized in Table 17.1 and Fig. 17.1, respectively.

The year 1935 was an important one for the chemotherapy of systemic bacterial infections. Although antiseptics had been applied topically to prevent the growth of microorganisms, the existing antiseptics were ineffective against systemic bacterial infections. In 1935, the dye protosil was shown to protect mice against systemic streptococcal infection and to be curative in patients suffering from such infections. It was soon found that protosil was cleaved in the body to release *p*-aminobenzene sulfonamide (sulfanilamide), which was shown to have antibacterial activity. This first "sulfa" drug ushered in a new era in medicine. Compounds produced by microorganisms (antibiotics) were eventually discovered to inhibit the growth of other microorganisms. For example, Alexander Fleming was the first to realize the mold *Penicillium* prevented the multiplication of staphylococci. A concentrate from a culture of this mold was prepared, and the remarkable antibacterial activity and lack of toxicity of the first antibiotic, penicillin, were demonstrated. Streptomycin and the tetracyclines were developed in the 1940s and 1950s, followed rapidly by the development of additional aminoglycosides, semisynthetic penicillins, cephalosporins, quinolones, and other antimicrobials. All these antibacterial agents greatly increased the range of infectious diseases that could be prevented or treated. Although the development of new antibacterial antibiotics has lagged in recent years, some new classes of agents have been introduced, including the ketolides (e.g., **telithromycin**), glycylcyclines **(tigecycline),** and lipopeptides **(daptomycin).**

Unfortunately, with the introduction of new chemotherapeutic agents, bacteria have shown a remarkable ability to develop resistance. The most common resistance mechanisms are summarized in Box 17.2. Thus antibiotic therapy will not be the magical cure for all infections, as predicted; rather, it is only one weapon, albeit an important one, against infectious diseases. It is also important to recognize that because resistance to antibiotics is often not predictable, physicians must rely on their clinical experience for the initial selection of **empirical therapy** and then refine their treatment by selecting antibiotics demonstrated to be active by in vitro susceptibility tests. Guidelines for the management of infections caused by specific organisms are discussed in the relevant chapters of this text.

Inhibition of Cell Wall Synthesis

The most common mechanism of antibiotic activity is interference with bacterial cell wall synthesis. Most of the cell wall–active antibiotics are classified as β-lactam antibiotics (e.g., penicillins, cephalosporins, cephamycins, carbapenems, monobactams, β-lactamase inhibitors). They are so named because they share a common β-lactam ring structure. Other antibiotics that interfere with construction of the bacterial cell wall include vancomycin, daptomycin, bacitracin, and the antimycobacterial agents isoniazid, ethambutol, cycloserine, and ethionamide.

β-LACTAM ANTIBIOTICS

The major structural component of most bacterial cell walls is the peptidoglycan layer. The basic structure is a chain of 10 to 65 disaccharide residues consisting of alternating molecules of *N*-acetylglucosamine and *N*-acetylmuramic acid. These chains are then cross-linked with peptide bridges that create a rigid mesh coating for the bacteria. The building of the chains and cross-links is catalyzed by specific enzymes (e.g., transpeptidases, transglycosylases, carboxypeptidases) that are members of a large family of **serine proteases.** These regulatory enzymes are also called **penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs)** because they are the targets of β-lactam antibiotics. When growing bacteria are exposed to these antibiotics, the antibiotic binds to specific PBPs in the bacterial cell wall and inhibits assembly of the peptidoglycan chains. This, in turn, activates autolysins that degrade the cell wall, resulting in bacterial cell death. Thus the β-lactam antibiotics generally act as bactericidal agents.

Bacteria can become resistant to β-lactam antibiotics by three general mechanisms: (1) decreased concentration of the antibiotic at the cell wall target site, (2) decreased binding of the antibiotic to the PBP, and (3) hydrolysis of the antibiotic by bacterial enzymes, **β-lactamases.** The first mechanism of resistance is seen only in gram-negative bacteria. Gram-negative bacteria have an outer membrane that overlies the peptidoglycan layer. Penetration of β-lactam antibiotics into gram-negative rods requires transit through pores in this outer membrane. Changes in the proteins **(porins)** that form the walls of the pores can alter the size of the pore opening or charge of these channels and result in exclusion of the antibiotic. Additionally, active efflux or pumping out of the antibiotic can decrease the antibiotic concentration in the cell.

Resistance can also be acquired by modification of the β-lactam antibiotic binding to the PBP. This can be mediated by (1) an overproduction of PBP (a rare occurrence), (2) acquisition of a new PBP (e.g., methicillin resistance in

BOX 17.1 Terminology

Antibacterial spectrum: Range of activity of an antimicrobial against bacteria. A **broad-spectrum** antibacterial drug can inhibit a variety of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, whereas a **narrow-spectrum** drug is active against a limited variety of bacteria.

Bacteriostatic antibiotic: Antibiotic that inhibits the growth of bacteria but does not kill.

Bactericidal antibiotic: Antibiotic that kills bacteria.

Minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC): Determined by exposing a standardized suspension of bacteria to a series of antimicrobial dilutions. The lowest antibiotic concentration that inhibits the growth of the bacteria is the MIC.

Minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC): Determined by exposing a standardized suspension of bacteria to a series of antimicrobial dilutions. The lowest antibiotic concentration that kills 99.9% of the population is referred to as the MBC.

Antibiotic combinations: Combinations of antibiotics that may be used to (1) broaden the antibacterial spectrum for empirical therapy or the treatment of polymicrobial infections, (2) prevent the emergence of resistant organisms during therapy, and (3) achieve a synergistic killing effect.

Antibiotic synergism: Combinations of two antibiotics that have enhanced bactericidal activity when tested together compared with the activity of each antibiotic.

Antibiotic antagonism: Combination of antibiotics in which the activity of one antibiotic interferes with the activity of the other (e.g., the sum of the activity is less than the activity of the most active individual drug).

β-Lactamase: An enzyme that hydrolyzes the β-lactam ring in the β-lactam class of antibiotics, inactivating the antibiotic. The enzymes specific for penicillins, cephalosporins, and carbapenems are the **penicillinases, cephalosporinases,** and **carbapenemases,** respectively.

TABLE 17.1 Basic Mechanisms of Antibiotic Action

Antibiotic	Action
DISRUPTION OF CELL WALL	
Penicillins Cephalosporins Cephamycins Carbapenems Monobactams	Bind PBPs and enzymes responsible for peptidoglycan synthesis
β-Lactam/β-lactamase inhibitors	Bind β-lactamases and prevent enzymatic inactivation of β-lactam
Vancomycin	Inhibits cross-linkage of peptidoglycan layers
Daptomycin	Causes depolarization of cytoplasmic membrane, resulting in disruption of ionic concentration gradients
Bacitracin	Inhibits bacterial cytoplasmic membrane and movement of peptidoglycan precursors
Polymyxins	Inhibit bacterial membranes
Isoniazid Ethionamide	Inhibit mycolic acid synthesis
Ethambutol	Inhibits arabinogalactan synthesis
Cycloserine	Inhibits cross-linkage of peptidoglycan layers
INHIBITION OF PROTEIN SYNTHESIS	
Aminoglycosides	Produce premature release of peptide chains from 30S ribosome
Tetracyclines	Prevent polypeptide elongation at 30S ribosome
Glycylcyclines	Bind to 30S ribosome and prevent initiation of protein synthesis
Oxazolidinone	Prevents initiation of protein synthesis at 50S ribosome
Macrolides Ketolides Clindamycin Streptogramins	Prevent polypeptide elongation at 50S ribosome
INHIBITION OF NUCLEIC ACID SYNTHESIS	
Quinolones	Bind α subunit of DNA gyrase
Rifampin Rifabutin	Prevent transcription by binding DNA-dependent RNA polymerase
Metronidazole	Disrupts bacteria DNA (is cytotoxic compound)
ANTIMETABOLITE	
Sulfonamides	Inhibit dihydropteroate synthase and disrupt folic acid synthesis
Dapsone	Inhibits dihydropteroate synthase
Trimethoprim	Inhibits dihydrofolate reductase and disrupts folic acid synthesis

DNA, Deoxyribonucleic acid; *PBPs,* penicillin-binding proteins; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid.

Staphylococcus aureus), or (3) modification of an existing PBP through recombination (e.g., penicillin resistance in *Streptococcus pneumoniae*) or a point mutation (penicillin resistance in *Enterococcus faecium*).

Finally, bacteria can produce **β-lactamases** that inactivate the β-lactam antibiotics. Interestingly, the β-lactamases are in the same family of serine proteases as the PBPs. More than 200 different β-lactamases have been described. Some are specific for penicillins (i.e., penicillinases), cephalosporins (i.e., cephalosporinases), or carbapenems (i.e., carbapenemases), whereas others have a broad range of activity, including some that are capable of inactivating most β-lactam antibiotics. An exhaustive discussion of β-lactamases is beyond the scope of this chapter; however, a brief discussion is germane for understanding the limitations of β-lactam antibiotics. By one classification scheme, β-lactamases have been separated into four classes (A to D). The most common class A β-lactamases are SHV-1 and TEM-1, which are penicillinases found in common gram-negative rods (e.g., *Escherichia, Klebsiella*), with minimal activity against cephalosporins. Unfortunately, simple point mutations in the genes encoding these enzymes have created β-lactamases with activity against all penicillins and cephalosporins. These β-lactamases are referred to as **extended-spectrum β-lactamases (ESBLs)** and are particularly troublesome because most are encoded on plasmids that can be transferred from organism to organism. The class B β-lactamases are zinc-dependent metalloenzymes that have a broad spectrum of activity against all β-lactam antibiotics, including the cephamycins and carbapenems. The **class C β-lactamases** are primarily cephalosporinases that are encoded on the bacterial chromosome. Expression of these enzymes is generally repressed, although this can

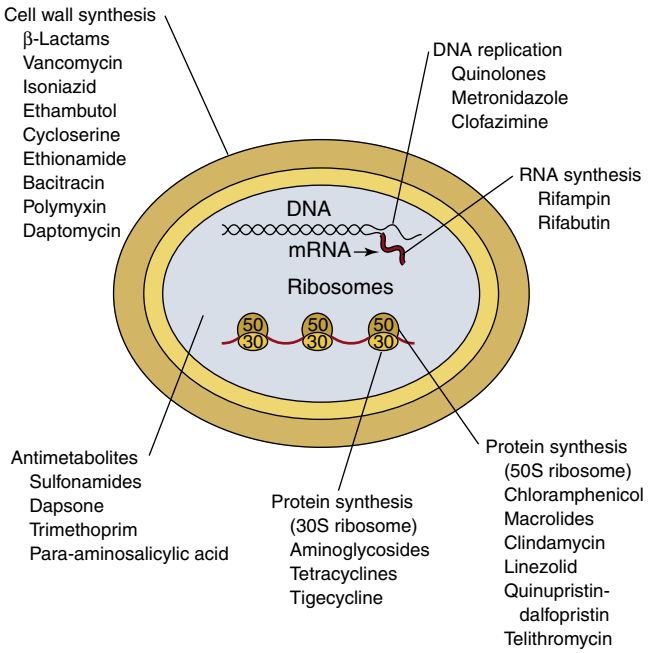


Fig. 17.1 Basic sites of antibiotic activity.

be altered by exposure to certain "inducing" β-lactam antibiotics or by mutations in the genes controlling expression of the enzymes. Expression of this class of β-lactamases is particularly troublesome because they are active against the most potent expanded-spectrum cephalosporins. The class D β-lactamases are penicillinases found primarily in gram-negative rods.

Penicillins

Penicillin antibiotics (Table 17.2) are highly effective antibiotics with an extremely low toxicity. The basic compound is an organic acid with a β-lactam ring obtained from culture of the mold *Penicillium chrysogenum.* If the mold is grown by a fermentation process, large amounts of 6-aminopenicillanic acid (the β-lactam ring is fused with a thiazolidine ring) are produced. Biochemical modification of this intermediate yields antibiotics that have increased resistance to stomach acids, increased absorption in the gastrointestinal tract, resistance to destruction by penicillinase, or a broader spectrum of activity that includes gram-negative bacteria.

Penicillin G is inactivated by gastric acid; thus it is used mainly as an intravenous drug for the treatment of infections caused by a limited number of susceptible organisms. Penicillin V is more resistant to acid and is the preferred oral form for the treatment of susceptible bacteria. **Penicillinase-resistant penicillins** such as methicillin and oxacillin are used to treat infections caused by susceptible staphylococci. Unfortunately, resistance to this group of antibiotics has become commonplace in both hospital-acquired and community-acquired staphylococcal infections. Ampicillin was the first **broad-spectrum penicillin,** although the spectrum of activity against gram-negative rods was limited primarily to *Escherichia, Proteus,* and *Haemophilus* species. Selected penicillins have been combined with **β-lactamase inhibitors.** The β-lactamase inhibitors (e.g., clavulanic acid, sulbactam, tazobactam, avibactam) are relatively inactive by themselves, but when combined with some penicillins (i.e., ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, piperacillin) or cephalosporins (e.g., ceftazidime) they are effective in treating some infections caused by β-lactamase–producing bacteria. The inhibitors irreversibly bind and inactivate susceptible bacterial β-lactamases (although not all are bound by these inhibitors), permitting the companion drug to disrupt bacterial cell wall synthesis.

BOX 17.2 Mechanisms of Antibiotic Resistance

Inactivation of the antibiotic by bacterial enzymes
Barriers prevent antibiotic access to the target
Bacteria pump antibiotic out of cell before bacterial growth is inhibited
Antibiotic target is altered so it is not recognized by the antibiotic
Antibiotic target is produced in excess so bacterial growth is not affected by the antibiotic
Antibiotic target is no longer needed for bacterial survival
Bacteria enter stage of dormancy in the presence of the antibiotic

TABLE 17.2 Penicillins

Antibiotics	Spectrum of Activity
Natural penicillins: benzylpenicillin (penicillin G), phenoxymethylpenicillin (penicillin V)	Active against all β-hemolytic streptococci and most other species; limited activity against staphylococci; active against meningococci and most gram-positive anaerobes; poor activity against aerobic and anaerobic gram-negative rods
Penicillinase-resistant penicillins: methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin	Similar to the natural penicillins, except enhanced activity against staphylococci
Broad-spectrum penicillins: ampicillin, amoxicillin	Activity against gram-positive cocci equivalent to the natural penicillins; active against some gram-negative rods
β-Lactam with β-lactamase inhibitor (ampicillin-sulbactam, amoxicillin-clavulanate, ticarcillin-clavulanate, piperacillin-tazobactam, ceftazidime-avibactam)	Activity similar to natural β-lactams, plus improved activity against β-lactamase–producing staphylococci and selected gram-negative rods; not all β-lactamases are inhibited; piperacillin/tazobactam and ceftazidime-avibactam are the most active

Cephalosporins and Cephamycins

The cephalosporins (Table 17.3) are β-lactam antibiotics derived from 7-aminocephalosporanic acid (the β-lactam ring is fused with a dihydrothiazine ring) that was originally isolated from the mold *Cephalosporium.* The cephamycins are closely related to the cephalosporins, except that they contain oxygen in place of sulfur in the dihydrothiazine ring, rendering them more stable to β-lactamase hydrolysis. The cephalosporins and cephamycins have the same mechanism of action as the penicillins; however, they have a wider antibacterial spectrum, are resistant to many β-lactamases, and have improved pharmacokinetic properties (e.g., longer half-life).

TABLE 17.3 Selected Examples of Cephalosporins and Cephamycins

Antibiotics	Spectrum of Activity
Narrow spectrum (cephalexin, cephalothin, cefazolin, cephapirin, cephradine)	Activity equivalent to oxacillin against gram-positive bacteria; some gram-negative activity (e.g., *Escherichia coli, Klebsiella, Proteus mirabilis*)
Expanded-spectrum cephalosporins (cefaclor, cefuroxime)	Activity equivalent to oxacillin against gram-positive bacteria; improved gram-negative activity to include *Enterobacter, Citrobacter,* and additional *Proteus* species
Expanded-spectrum cephamycins (cefotetan, cefoxitin)	Activity similar to expanded-spectrum cephalosporins but less susceptible to β-lactamases
Broad spectrum (cefixime, cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime)	Activity equivalent to oxacillin against gram-positive bacteria; improved gram-negative activity to include *Pseudomonas*
Extended spectrum (cefepime, cefpirome)	Activity equivalent to oxacillin against gram-positive bacteria; marginally improved gram-negative activity

Biochemical modifications in the basic antibiotic molecule resulted in the development of antibiotics with improved activity and pharmacokinetic properties. The cephalosporins have enhanced activity against gram-negative bacteria compared with the penicillins. This activity, in turn, varies among the different "generations" of cephalosporins. The activity of **narrow-spectrum,** first-generation antibiotics is primarily restricted to *Escherichia coli, Klebsiella* species, *Proteus mirabilis,* and oxacillin-susceptible gram-positive cocci. Many of the **expanded-spectrum,** second-generation antibiotics have additional activity against *Haemophilus influenzae, Enterobacter, Citrobacter,* and *Serratia* species, and some anaerobes, such as *Bacteroides fragilis.* The **broad-spectrum,** third-generation antibiotics and **extended-spectrum,** fourth-generation antibiotics are active against most Enterobacteriaceae and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa.* Extended-spectrum antibiotics offer the advantage of increased stability to β-lactamases. Unfortunately, gram-negative bacteria have rapidly developed resistance to most cephalosporins and cephamycins (primarily as the result of β-lactamase production), which has significantly compromised the use of all these agents.

Carbapenems and Monobactams

Other classes of β-lactam antibiotics (Table 17.4) are the **carbapenems** (e.g., imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem, doripenem) and **monobactams** (e.g., aztreonam). The carbapenems are important, widely prescribed broad-spectrum antibiotics that are active against many groups of organisms. In contrast, the monobactams are narrow-spectrum antibiotics that are active only against aerobic, gram-negative bacteria. Anaerobic bacteria and gram-positive bacteria are resistant. The advantage of narrow-spectrum antibiotics is that they can be used to treat susceptible organisms without disruption of the patient's normal, protective bacterial population. Despite this advantage, monobactams are not widely used.

TABLE 17.4 Other β-Lactam Antibiotics

Antibiotics	Spectrum of Activity
Carbapenems (imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem, doripenem)	Broad-spectrum antibiotics active against most aerobic and anaerobic gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria except oxacillin-resistant staphylococci, most *Enterococcus faecium,* and selected gram-negative rods (e.g., some *Burkholderia, Stenotrophomonas,* some *Pseudomonas*)
Monobactam (aztreonam)	Active against selected aerobic gram-negative rods but inactive against anaerobes or gram-positive cocci

In recent years, resistance to carbapenems mediated by production of carbapenemases has become widespread. As mentioned earlier, the β-lactamases are separated into four classes, A to D. The class A carbapenemase has been found in a broad range of bacteria, including *Pseudomonas* and Enterobacteriaceae (the most common one is the *Klebsiella pneumoniae* carbapenemase **[KPC]**), renders organisms producing this carbapenemase resistant to all β-lactams, and is only reliably detected using molecular methods to detect the resistance genes. The class B carbapenemase is a metallo-β-lactamase (requires zinc for activity), is widely distributed in gram-negative bacteria, and also cannot be detected reliably by conventional susceptibility tests. Organisms producing class B carbapenemases (most common is **New Delhi metallo-β-lactamase [NDM],** named for its origin) are resistant to most β-lactam antibiotics. Finally, the class D carbapenemases are primarily found in *Acinetobacter* and encode resistance to all β-lactam antibiotics. This group of carbapenemases is important because *Acinetobacter* strains producing this carbapenemase are generally resistant to all antibiotics, with few exceptions.

GLYCOPEPTIDES

Vancomycin, originally obtained from *Streptomyces orientalis,* is a complex glycopeptide that disrupts cell wall peptidoglycan synthesis in growing gram-positive bacteria. Vancomycin interacts with the D-alanine-D-alanine termini of the pentapeptide side chains, which interferes sterically with formation of the bridges between peptidoglycan chains. Vancomycin is used for the management of infections caused by oxacillin-resistant staphylococci and other gram-positive bacteria resistant to β-lactam antibiotics. Vancomycin is inactive against gram-negative bacteria because the molecule is too large to pass through the outer membrane pores and reach the peptidoglycan target site. In addition, some organisms are intrinsically resistant to vancomycin (e.g., *Leuconostoc, Lactobacillus, Pediococcus,* and *Erysipelothrix*) because the pentapeptide terminates in D-alanine-D-lactate, which does not bind vancomycin. Intrinsic resistance is also found in some species of enterococci that contain a D-alanine-D-serine terminus (i.e., *E. gallinarum, E. casseliflavus*). Finally, some species of enterococci (particularly *E. faecium* and *E. faecalis*) have acquired resistance to vancomycin. The genes for this resistance (primarily *vanA* and *vanB*), which also mediate changes

in the pentapeptide terminus, can be carried on plasmids and have seriously compromised the usefulness of vancomycin for the treatment of enterococcal infections. More importantly, the gene for vancomycin resistance contained within a transposon on a multiresistance conjugative plasmid has been transferred in vivo from *E. faecalis* to a multiresistant *S. aureus.* The transposon then moved from the *E. faecalis* plasmid and recombined and integrated into the *S. aureus* resistance plasmid. This resulted in an *S. aureus* plasmid that encoded resistance to β-lactams, vancomycin, aminoglycosides, and other antibiotics (a plasmid that could be transferred to other staphylococci by conjugation). Interestingly, these resistant strains of *Staphylococcus* have primarily been restricted to Michigan; however, if this resistance becomes widespread, the medical implications are profound.

LIPOPEPTIDES

Daptomycin, a naturally occurring cyclic lipopeptide produced by *S. roseosporus,* binds irreversibly to the cytoplasmic membrane, resulting in membrane depolarization and disruption of the ionic gradients, leading to cell death. It has potent activity against gram-positive bacteria, but gram-negative bacteria are resistant to daptomycin because the drug cannot penetrate through the cell wall to the cytoplasmic membrane. Daptomycin has good activity against multidrug-resistant staphylococci, streptococci, and enterococci (including vancomycin-resistant strains).

POLYPEPTIDES

Bacitracin, which was isolated from *Bacillus licheniformis,* is a mixture of polypeptides used in topically applied products (e.g., creams, ointments, sprays) for the treatment of skin infections caused by gram-positive bacteria (particularly those caused by *Staphylococcus* and group A *Streptococcus*). Gram-negative bacteria are resistant to this agent. Bacitracin inhibits cell wall synthesis by interfering with dephosphorylation and recycling of the lipid carrier responsible for moving the peptidoglycan precursors through the cytoplasmic membrane to the cell wall. It may also damage the bacterial cytoplasmic membrane and inhibit ribonucleic acid (RNA) transcription. Resistance to the antibiotic is most likely caused by failure of the antibiotic to penetrate into the bacterial cell.

The **polymyxins** are a group of cyclic polypeptides derived from *B. polymyxa.* These antibiotics insert into bacterial membranes like detergents by interacting with lipopolysaccharides and the phospholipids in the outer membrane, producing increased cell permeability and eventual cell death. **Polymyxins B** and **E (colistin)** are capable of causing serious nephrotoxicity. Thus their use was limited historically to treatment of localized infections such as external otitis, eye infections, and skin infections caused by sensitive organisms. However, because some organisms such as carbapenemase-producing gram-negative bacteria are only susceptible to colistin, this antibiotic is now frequently used to treat some systemic infections. Unfortunately, resistance to colistin is also becoming widespread, rendering these organisms resistant to almost all antibiotics.

ISONIAZID, ETHIONAMIDE, ETHAMBUTOL, AND CYCLOSERINE

Isoniazid, ethionamide, ethambutol, and cycloserine are cell wall–active antibiotics used for the treatment of mycobacterial infections. **Isoniazid** (isonicotinic acid hydrazide [INH]) is bactericidal against actively replicating mycobacteria. Although the exact mechanism of action is unknown, the synthesis of mycolic acid is affected (desaturation of the long-chain fatty acids and elongation of fatty acids and hydroxy lipids are disrupted). **Ethionamide,** a derivative of INH, also blocks mycolic acid synthesis. **Ethambutol** interferes with the synthesis of arabinogalactan in the cell wall, and **cycloserine** inhibits two enzymes, D-alanine-D-alanine synthetase and alanine racemase, which catalyze cell wall synthesis. Resistance to these four antibiotics results primarily from reduced drug uptake into the bacterial cell or alteration of the target sites.

Inhibition of Protein Synthesis

The primary action of the agents in the second largest class of antibiotics is inhibition of protein synthesis (see Table 17.1).

AMINOGLYCOSIDES

The aminoglycoside antibiotics (Table 17.5) consist of amino sugars linked through glycosidic bonds to an aminocyclitol ring. Streptomycin, neomycin, kanamycin, and tobramycin were originally isolated from *Streptomyces* species, and gentamicin and sisomicin were isolated from *Micromonospora* species. Amikacin and netilmicin are synthetic derivatives of kanamycin and sisomicin, respectively. These antibiotics exert their effort by passing through the bacterial outer membrane (in gram-negative bacteria), cell wall, and cytoplasmic membrane to the cytoplasm, in which they inhibit bacterial protein synthesis by irreversibly binding to the 30S ribosomal proteins. This attachment to the ribosomes has two effects: production of aberrant proteins as the result of misreading of the messenger RNA (mRNA), and interruption of protein synthesis by causing premature release of the ribosome from mRNA.

The aminoglycosides are bactericidal because of their ability to bind irreversibly to ribosomes and are commonly used to treat serious infections caused by many gram-negative rods (e.g., Enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas, Acinetobacter*) and some gram-positive organisms. Penetration through the cytoplasmic membrane is an aerobic, energy-dependent process, so anaerobes are resistant to aminoglycosides, and susceptible organisms in an anaerobic environment (e.g., abscess) do not respond to treatment. Streptococci and enterococci are resistant to aminoglycosides because the aminoglycosides fail to penetrate through the cell wall of these bacteria. Treatment of these organisms requires coadministration of an aminoglycoside with an inhibitor of cell wall synthesis (e.g., penicillin, ampicillin, vancomycin) that facilitates uptake of the aminoglycoside.

The most commonly used antibiotics in this class are **amikacin, gentamicin,** and **tobramycin.** All three aminoglycosides are used to treat systemic infections caused

TABLE 17.5 Inhibitors of Protein Synthesis

Antibiotics	Spectrum of Activity
Aminoglycosides (streptomycin, kanamycin, gentamicin, tobramycin, amikacin)	Primarily used to treat infections with gram-negative rods; kanamycin with limited activity; tobramycin slightly more active than gentamicin versus *Pseudomonas;* amikacin most active; streptomycin and gentamicin combined with cell wall–active antibiotic to treat enterococcal infections; streptomycin active versus mycobacteria and selected gram-negative rods
Aminocyclitol (spectinomycin)	Active versus *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
Tetracyclines (tetracycline, doxycycline, minocycline)	Broad-spectrum antibiotics active against gram-positive and some gram-negative bacteria (*Neisseria,* some Enterobacteriaceae), mycoplasmas, chlamydiae, and rickettsiae
Glycylcyclines (tigecycline)	Spectrum similar to tetracyclines but more active against gram-negative bacteria and rapidly growing mycobacteria
Oxazolidinone (linezolid)	Active against *Staphylococcus* (including methicillin-resistant and vancomycin-intermediate strains), *Enterococcus, Streptococcus,* gram-positive rods, and *Clostridium* and anaerobic cocci; not active against gram-negative bacteria
Macrolides (erythromycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, roxithromycin)	Broad-spectrum antibiotics active against gram-positive and some gram-negative bacteria, *Neisseria, Legionella, Mycoplasma, Chlamydia, Chlamydophila, Treponema,* and *Rickettsia;* clarithromycin and azithromycin active against some mycobacteria
Ketolides (telithromycin)	Broad-spectrum antibiotic with activity similar to macrolides; active against some macrolide-resistant staphylococci and enterococci
Lincosamide (clindamycin)	Broad-spectrum activity against aerobic gram-positive cocci and anaerobes
Streptogramins (quinupristin-dalfopristin)	Primarily active against gram-positive bacteria; good activity against methicillin-susceptible and methicillin-resistant staphylococci, streptococci, vancomycin-susceptible and vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus faecium* (no activity against *E. faecalis*), *Haemophilus, Moraxella*, and anaerobes (including *Bacteroides fragilis*); not active against Enterobacteriaceae or other gram-negative rods

by susceptible gram-negative bacteria. **Amikacin** has the best activity and is frequently reserved for treatment of infections caused by gram-negative bacteria that are resistant to gentamicin and tobramycin. **Streptomycin** is not readily available, but it has been used for the treatment of tuberculosis, tularemia, and gentamicin-resistant streptococcal or enterococcal infections (in combination with a penicillin).

Resistance to the antibacterial action of aminoglycosides can develop in one of four ways: (1) mutation of the ribosomal binding site, (2) decreased uptake of the antibiotic into the bacterial cell, (3) increased expulsion of the antibiotic from the cell, or (4) enzymatic modification of the antibiotic. The most common mechanism of resistance is enzymatic modification of aminoglycosides. This is accomplished by the action of phosphotransferases (aminoglycoside phosphotransferases [APHs]), adenyltransferases (adenine nucleotide translocases [ANTs]), and acetyltransferases (acetyl-CoA carboxylases [AACs]) on the amino and hydroxyl groups of the antibiotic. The differences in antibacterial activity among the aminoglycosides are determined by their relative susceptibility to these enzymes. The other mechanisms by which bacteria develop resistance to aminoglycosides are relatively uncommon. Resistance caused by alteration of the bacterial ribosome requires systematic mutation of the multiple copies of the ribosomal genes that exist in the bacterial cell. Resistance caused by inhibited transport of the antibiotic into the bacterial cell is occasionally observed with *Pseudomonas,* but it is more commonly seen with anaerobic bacteria. This mechanism produces low-level cross-resistance to all aminoglycosides. Active efflux of aminoglycosides occurs only in gram-negative bacteria and is rarely observed.

TETRACYCLINES

The tetracyclines (see Table 17.5) are broad-spectrum, bacteriostatic antibiotics that inhibit protein synthesis in bacteria by binding reversibly to the 30S ribosomal subunits, blocking the binding of aminoacyl-transfer RNA (tRNA) to the 30S ribosome–mRNA complex. Tetracyclines (i.e., **tetracycline, doxycycline, minocycline**) are effective in the treatment of infections caused by *Chlamydia, Mycoplasma,* and *Rickettsia* species and other selected gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. All tetracyclines have a similar spectrum of activity, with the primary difference among the antibiotics being in their pharmacokinetic properties (doxycycline and minocycline are easily absorbed and have a long half-life). Resistance to the tetracyclines can stem from decreased penetration of the antibiotic into the bacterial cell, active efflux of the antibiotic out of the cell, alteration of the ribosomal target site, or enzymatic modification of the antibiotic. Mutations in the chromosomal gene encoding the outer membrane porin protein, OmpF, can lead to low-level resistance to the tetracyclines, as well as to other antibiotics (e.g., β-lactams, quinolones, chloramphenicol).

Researchers have identified a variety of genes in different bacteria that control active efflux of tetracyclines from the cell. This is the most common cause of resistance. Resistance to the tetracyclines can also result from production of proteins similar to elongation factors that protect the 30S ribosome. When this happens, the antibiotic can still bind to the ribosome, but protein synthesis is not disrupted.

GLYCYLCLINES

Tigecycline, the first representative of this new class of antibiotics, is a semisynthetic derivative of minocycline. It inhibits protein synthesis in the same manner as the

tetracyclines. Tigecycline has a higher binding affinity for the ribosome and is less affected by efflux or enzymatic modification. It has a broad spectrum of activity against gram-positive, gram-negative, and anaerobic bacteria, although *Proteus, Morganella, Providencia*, and *P. aeruginosa* are generally resistant.

OXAZOLIDINONES

The oxazolidinones are a narrow-spectrum class of antibiotics, with **linezolid** being the agent currently used. Linezolid blocks initiation of protein synthesis by interfering with formation of the initiation complex consisting of tRNA, mRNA, and the ribosome. The drug binds to the 50S ribosomal subunit, which distorts the binding site for tRNA, inhibiting formation of the 70S initiation complex. Because of this unique mechanism, cross-resistance with other protein inhibitors does not occur. Linezolid has activity against staphylococci, streptococci, and enterococci (including those strains resistant to penicillins, vancomycin, and the aminoglycosides). Because the multidrug-resistant enterococci are difficult to treat, the use of linezolid is generally reserved for these infections, although the development of resistance is recognized.

CHLORAMPHENICOL

Chloramphenicol has a broad antibacterial spectrum similar to that of tetracycline, but it is not commonly used in the United States. The reason for its limited use is that along with interfering with bacterial protein synthesis, it disrupts protein synthesis in human bone marrow cells and can produce blood dyscrasias, such as aplastic anemia. Chloramphenicol exerts its bacteriostatic effect by binding reversibly to the peptidyl transferase component of the 50S ribosomal subunit, blocking peptide elongation. Resistance to chloramphenicol is observed in bacteria producing plasmid-encoded chloramphenicol acetyltransferase, which catalyzes the acetylation of the 3-hydroxy group of chloramphenicol. The product is incapable of binding to the 50S subunit. Less commonly, chromosomal mutations alter the outer membrane porin proteins, causing gram-negative rods to be less permeable.

MACROLIDES

Erythromycin, derived from *S. erythreus,* is the model macrolide antibiotic (see Table 17.5). The basic structure of this class of antibiotics is a macrocyclic lactone ring bound to two sugars, desosamine and cladinose. Modification of the macrolide structure led to the development of **azithromycin, clarithromycin,** and **roxithromycin.** Macrolides exert their effect by their reversible binding to the 23S ribosomal RNA (rRNA) of the 50S ribosomal subunit, which blocks polypeptide elongation. Resistance to macrolides most commonly stems from methylation of the 23S rRNA, preventing binding by the antibiotic. Other mechanisms of resistance include inactivation of the macrolides by enzymes (e.g., esterases, phosphorylases, glycosidase) or mutations in the 23S rRNA and ribosomal proteins. Macrolides are bacteriostatic antibiotics with a broad spectrum of activity. They have been used to treat pulmonary infections caused by *Mycoplasma, Legionella,* and *Chlamydia* species, as well as to treat infections caused by *Campylobacter* species and gram-positive bacteria in patients allergic to penicillin. Most gram-negative bacteria are resistant to the macrolides. Azithromycin and clarithromycin have also been used to treat infections caused by mycobacteria (e.g., *Mycobacterium avium* complex).

KETOLIDES

Ketolides are semisynthetic derivatives of erythromycin, modified to increase stability in acid. **Telithromycin** is currently the only ketolide available for use in the United States. As with the macrolides, telithromycin binds to the 50S ribosomal subunit and blocks protein synthesis. Its use is currently restricted to treatment of community-acquired pneumonia. It is active against *S. pneumoniae, Legionella, Mycoplasma,* and *Chlamydia,* but use of the drug is limited by its associated toxicity.

CLINDAMYCIN

Clindamycin (in the family of lincosamide antibiotics) is a derivative of lincomycin, which was originally isolated from *S. lincolnensis.* Like chloramphenicol and the macrolides, clindamycin blocks protein elongation by binding to the 50S ribosome. It inhibits peptidyl transferase by interfering with the binding of the amino acid–acyl-tRNA complex. Clindamycin is active against staphylococci and anaerobic gram-negative rods, but it is generally inactive against aerobic gram-negative bacteria. Methylation of the 23S rRNA is the source of bacterial resistance. Because both erythromycin and clindamycin can induce this enzymatic resistance (also plasmid mediated), cross-resistance between these two classes of antibiotics is observed.

STREPTOGRAMINS

The streptogramins are a class of cyclic peptides produced by *Streptomyces* species. These antibiotics are administered as a combination of two components, group A and group B streptogramins, which act synergistically to inhibit protein synthesis. The antibiotic currently available in this class is **quinupristin-dalfopristin.** Dalfopristin binds to the 50S ribosomal subunit and induces a conformational change that facilitates binding of quinupristin. Dalfopristin prevents peptide chain elongation, and quinupristin initiates premature release of peptide chains from the ribosome. This combination drug is active against staphylococci, streptococci, and *E. faecium* (but not *E. faecalis*). Use of the antibiotic has been restricted primarily to treating vancomycin-resistant *E. faecium* infections.

Inhibition of Nucleic Acid Synthesis

QUINOLONES

The quinolones (Table 17.6) are one of the most widely used classes of antibiotics. These are synthetic chemotherapeutic agents that inhibit bacterial deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) topoisomerase type II (gyrase) or topoisomerase type IV,

TABLE 17.6 Quinolones

Antibiotics	Spectrum of Activity
Narrow spectrum (nalidixic acid)	Active against selected gram-negative rods; no useful gram-positive activity
Broad spectrum (ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin)	Broad-spectrum antibiotics with activity against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria
Extended spectrum (moxifloxacin)	Broad-spectrum antibiotics with enhanced activity against gram-positive bacteria (particularly streptococci and enterococci) compared with early quinolones; activity against gram-negative rods similar to that of ciprofloxacin and related quinolones

which are required for DNA replication, recombination, and repair. The DNA gyrase-A subunit is the primary quinolone target in gram-negative bacteria, whereas topoisomerase type IV is the primary target in gram-positive bacteria. The first quinolone used in clinical practice was **nalidixic acid.** This drug was used to treat urinary tract infections caused by a variety of gram-negative bacteria, but resistance to the drug developed rapidly, causing it to fall out of use. This drug has now been replaced by newer, more active quinolones, such as **ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin,** and **moxifloxacin.** Modifying the two-ring quinolone nucleus made these newer quinolones (referred to as *fluoroquinolones*). These antibiotics have excellent activity against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, although resistance can develop rapidly in *Pseudomonas,* oxacillin-resistant staphylococci, and enterococci. In particular, the newer extended-spectrum quinolones have significant activity against gram-positive bacteria.

Resistance to the quinolones is mediated by chromosomal mutations in the structural genes for DNA gyrase and topoisomerase type IV. Other mechanisms include decreased drug uptake caused by mutations in the membrane permeability regulatory genes, and overexpression of efflux pumps that actively eliminate the drug. Each of these mechanisms is primarily chromosomally mediated.

RIFAMPIN AND RIFABUTIN

Rifampin, a semisynthetic derivative of rifamycin B produced by *S. mediterranei,* binds to DNA-dependent RNA polymerase, and inhibits initiation of RNA synthesis. Rifampin is bactericidal for *M. tuberculosis* and is very active against aerobic gram-positive cocci, including staphylococci and streptococci.

Because resistance can develop rapidly, rifampin is usually combined with one or more other effective antibiotics. Rifampin resistance in gram-positive bacteria results from a mutation in the chromosomal gene that codes for the β subunit of RNA polymerase. Gram-negative bacteria are resistant intrinsically to rifampin because of decreased uptake of the hydrophobic antibiotic. **Rifabutin,** a derivative of rifamycin, has a similar mode and spectrum of activity. It is particularly active against *M. avium.*

METRONIDAZOLE

Metronidazole was originally introduced as an oral agent for the treatment of *Trichomonas* vaginitis. However, it was also found to be effective in the treatment of amebiasis, giardiasis, and serious anaerobic bacterial infections (including those caused by *B. fragilis*). Metronidazole has no significant activity against aerobic or facultatively anaerobic bacteria. The antimicrobial properties of metronidazole stem from the reduction of its nitro group by bacterial nitroreductase, producing cytotoxic compounds that disrupt the host DNA. Resistance results either from decreased uptake of the antibiotic or from elimination of the cytotoxic compounds before they can interact with host DNA.

ANTIMETABOLITES

The **sulfonamides** are antimetabolites that compete with *p*-aminobenzoic acid, preventing synthesis of the folic acid required by certain microorganisms. Because mammalian organisms do not synthesize folic acid (required as a vitamin), sulfonamides do not interfere with mammalian cell metabolism. **Trimethoprim** is another antimetabolite that interferes with folic acid metabolism by inhibiting dihydrofolate reductase, preventing the conversion of dihydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate. This inhibition blocks the formation of thymidine, some purines, methionine, and glycine. Trimethoprim is commonly combined with sulfamethoxazole to produce a synergistic combination active at two steps in the synthesis of folic acid. **Dapsone** and ***p*-aminosalicylic** acid are also antifolates that have proved to be useful for treating mycobacterial infections.

Sulfonamides are effective against a broad range of gram-positive and gram-negative organisms, such as *Nocardia, Chlamydia,* and some protozoa. Short-acting sulfonamides, such as sulfisoxazole, are among the drugs of choice for the treatment of acute urinary tract infections caused by susceptible bacteria, such as *E. coli.* Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is effective against a large variety of gram-positive and gram-negative microorganisms and is the drug of choice for the treatment of acute and chronic urinary tract infections. The combination is also effective in the treatment of infections caused by *Pneumocystis jirovecii,* bacterial infections of the lower respiratory tract, otitis media, and uncomplicated gonorrhea.

Resistance to these antibiotics can stem from a variety of mechanisms. Bacteria such as *Pseudomonas* are resistant as the result of permeability barriers. A decreased affinity of dihydrofolate reductase can be the source of trimethoprim resistance. In addition, bacteria that use exogenous thymidine (e.g., enterococci) are also intrinsically resistant.

Other Antibiotics

Clofazimine is a lipophilic antibiotic that binds to mycobacterial DNA. It is highly active against *M. tuberculosis,* is a first-line drug for the treatment of *M. leprae* infections, and has been recommended as a secondary antibiotic for the treatment of infections caused by other mycobacterial species.

Pyrazinamide (PZA) is active against *M. tuberculosis* at a low pH, such as that found in phagolysosomes. The active form of this antibiotic is pyrazinoic acid, which is produced when PZA is hydrolyzed in the liver. The mechanism by which PZA exerts its effect is unknown.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Bryskier, A., 2005. Antimicrobial Agents: Antibacterials and Antifungals. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Jorgensen, J., Pfaller, M., 2015. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Kucers, A., Bennett, N.M., 1989. The use of Antibiotics: A Comprehensive Review with Clinical Emphasis, fourth ed. Lippincott, Philadelphia.
Mandell, G.L., Bennett, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.

Questions

1. Describe the mode of action of the following antibiotics: penicillin, vancomycin, isoniazid, gentamicin, tetracycline, erythromycin, polymyxin, ciprofloxacin, and sulfamethoxazole.

2. Name the three mechanisms bacteria use to become resistant to β-lactam antibiotics. What is the mechanism responsible for oxacillin resistance in *Staphylococcus*? Imipenem resistance in *Pseudomonas*? Penicillin resistance in *S. pneumoniae*?

3. By what three mechanisms have organisms developed resistance to aminoglycosides?

4. What mechanism is responsible for resistance to the quinolones?

5. How do trimethoprim and the sulfonamides differ in their mode of action?

18 Staphylococcus *and Related Gram-Positive Cocci*

A 26-year-old marine recruit presents to the base medic with large, pus-filled lesions surrounded by erythema on both legs. Infection with Staphylococcus aureus is suspected.

1. What structural properties are unique to this species of *Staphylococcus?*
2. How do the cytotoxins produced by this organism produce the clinical manifestations seen in this patient?
3. Three additional distinct toxins are described in strains of *S. aureus.* What diseases are associated with these toxins?
4. Resistance to what major class of antibiotics is now common in community-acquired infections with *S. aureus?*

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

The gram-positive cocci are a heterogeneous collection of bacteria. Features they have in common are their spherical

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

STAPHYLOCOCCUS AUREUS

Trigger Words

Coagulase, cytotoxins, exfoliative toxins, enterotoxins, toxic shock syndrome toxin, MRSA

Biology and Virulence

- Catalase-positive, gram-positive cocci arranged in clusters
- Species characterized by the presence of coagulase and protein A
- Virulence factors include structural components that facilitate adherence to host tissues and avoid phagocytosis, and a variety of toxins and hydrolytic enzymes (refer to Table 18.3)
- Hospital- and community-acquired infections with MRSA are a significant worldwide problem

Epidemiology

- Normal flora on human skin and mucosal surfaces
- Organisms can survive on dry surfaces for long periods (because of thickened peptidoglycan layer and absence of outer membrane)
- Person-to-person spread through direct contact or exposure to contaminated fomites (e.g., bed linens, clothing)
- Risk factors include presence of a foreign body (e.g., splinter, suture, prosthesis, catheter), previous surgical procedure, and use of antibiotics that suppress the normal microbial flora
- Patients at risk for specific diseases include infants (scalded skin syndrome), young children with poor personal hygiene (impetigo and other cutaneous infections), patients with intravascular catheters (bacteremia and endocarditis) or shunts (meningitis), and patients with compromised pulmonary function or an antecedent viral respiratory infection (pneumonia)
- MRSA is now the most common cause of community-acquired skin and soft-tissue infections

Diseases

- Diseases include toxin-mediated diseases (food poisoning, toxic shock syndrome, and scalded skin syndrome), pyogenic diseases (impetigo, folliculitis, furuncles, carbuncles, and wound infections), and other systemic diseases

Diagnosis

- Microscopy useful for pyogenic infections but not blood infections or toxin-mediated infections
- Staphylococci grow rapidly when cultured on nonselective media
- Selective media (e.g., chromogenic agar, mannitol-salt agar) can be used to recover *Staphylococcus aureus* in contaminated specimens
- Nucleic acid amplification tests are useful for screening patients for carriage of methicillin-sensitive *S. aureus* (MSSA) and MRSA
- *S. aureus* is identified by biochemical tests (e.g., coagulase), molecular probes, or mass spectrometry

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Localized infections managed by incision and drainage; antibiotic therapy indicated for systemic infections
- Empirical therapy should include antibiotics active against MRSA strains
- Oral therapy can include trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, doxycycline or minocycline, clindamycin, or linezolid; vancomycin is drug of choice for intravenous therapy, with daptomycin, tigecycline, or linezolid acceptable alternatives
- Treatment is symptomatic for patients with food poisoning (although the source of infection should be identified so that appropriate preventive procedures can be enacted)
- Proper cleansing of wounds and use of disinfectant help prevent infections
- Thorough hand washing and covering of exposed skin helps medical personnel prevent infection or spread to other patients

COAGULASE-NEGATIVE STAPHYLOCOCCI

Trigger Words

Opportunistic, slime layer, subacute

Biology and Virulence

- Catalase-positive, coagulase-negative, gram-positive cocci arranged in clusters
- Relatively avirulent, although production of a "slime" layer can allow adherence to foreign bodies (e.g., catheters, grafts, prosthetic valves and joints, shunts) and protection from phagocytosis and antibiotics

Epidemiology

- Normal human flora on skin and mucosal surfaces
- Organisms can survive on dry surfaces for long periods
- Person-to-person spread through direct contact or exposure to contaminated fomites, although most infections are with the patient's own organisms
- Patients are at risk when a foreign body is present
- The organisms are ubiquitous, so there are no geographic or seasonal limitations

Diseases

- Infections include subacute endocarditis, infections of foreign bodies, and urinary tract infections

Diagnosis

- As with *S. aureus* infections

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- The antibiotics of choice are oxacillin (or other penicillinase-resistant penicillin) or vancomycin for oxacillin-resistant strains
- Removal of the foreign body is often required for successful treatment
- Prompt treatment for endocarditis or shunt infections is necessary to prevent further tissue damage or immune complex formation

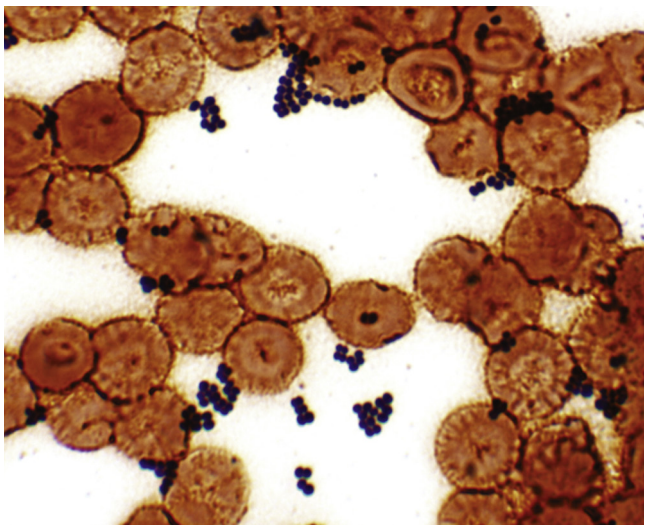


Fig. 18.1 Gram stain of *Staphylococcus* in a blood culture.

TABLE 18.1 Important Staphylococci

Organism	Historical Derivation
Staphylococcus	*staphylé*, bunch of grapes; coccus, grain or berry (grapelike cocci)
S. aureus	*aureus*, golden (golden or yellow)
S. epidermidis	*epidermidis*, outer skin (of the epidermis or outer skin)
S. lugdunensis	*Lugdunum*, Latin name for Lyon, France, where the organism was first isolated
S. saprophyticus	*sapros*, putrid; phyton, plant (saprophytic or growing on dead tissues)

TABLE 18.2 Common *Staphylococcus* Species and Their Diseases

Organism	Diseases
Staphylococcus aureus	Toxin mediated (food poisoning, scalded skin syndrome, and toxic shock syndrome), cutaneous (carbuncles, folliculitis, furuncles, impetigo, and wound infections), other (bacteremia, endocarditis, pneumonia, empyema, osteomyelitis, and septic arthritis)
S. epidermidis	Bacteremia; endocarditis; surgical wounds; opportunistic infections of catheters, shunts, and prosthetic devices
S. lugdunensis	Endocarditis
S. saprophyticus	Urinary tract infections

shape, their Gram-stain reaction, and an absence of endospores. The presence or absence of catalase, an enzyme that converts hydrogen peroxide into water and oxygen, is used to subdivide the various genera. The most important aerobic catalase-positive genus is *Staphylococcus* (discussed in this chapter), and the most important aerobic catalase-negative genera, *Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus*, are discussed in the next chapter.

Staphylococci are gram-positive cocci that grow in a characteristic pattern resembling a cluster of grapes (Fig. 18.1 and Table 18.1), although organisms in clinical specimens commonly appear as single cells, pairs, or short chains. Most staphylococci are large, 0.5 to 1.5 μm in diameter, and they are able to grow and potentially produce disease in a variety of conditions: aerobic and anaerobic atmosphere, in the presence of a high concentration of salt (e.g., 10% sodium chloride), and at temperatures ranging from 18° C to 40° C. The genus currently consists of more than 80 species and subspecies, many of which are found on the skin and mucous membranes of humans. Some species have very specific niches in which they are commonly found. For example, *S. aureus* colonizes the anterior nares, *S. capitis* is found where sebaceous glands are present (e.g., forehead), and *S. haemolyticus* and *S. hominis* are found in areas in which apocrine glands are present (e.g., axilla). Staphylococci are important pathogens in humans, causing opportunistic infections and a wide spectrum of life-threatening systemic diseases, including infections of the skin, soft tissues, bones, and urinary tract (Table 18.2). The species most commonly associated with human diseases are ***S. aureus*** (the most virulent and best known member of the genus), ***S. epidermidis, S. lugdunensis,*** and ***S. saprophyticus.*** **MRSA** is notorious for producing serious infections in hospitalized patients and outside the hospital in previously healthy children and adults. *S. aureus* colonies can have a yellow or gold color as the result of the carotenoid pigments that form during their growth, hence the species name. It is also the most common species in humans that produces the enzyme **coagulase;** therefore this property is a useful diagnostic test. When a colony of *S. aureus* is suspended in plasma, coagulase binds to a serum factor and this complex converts fibrinogen to fibrin, resulting in formation of a clot. Most other staphylococcal species do not produce coagulase and are referred to collectively as **coagulase-negative staphylococci.** This is a useful distinction because the coagulase-negative staphylococci are less virulent and primarily cause opportunistic infections.

Physiology and Structure

CAPSULE AND SLIME LAYER

The outermost layer of the cell wall of many staphylococci is covered with a **polysaccharide capsule.** A number of capsular serotypes have been identified in *S. aureus.* Serotypes 1 and 2 are associated with very thick capsules and mucoid-appearing colonies, but they are rarely associated with human disease. In contrast, serotypes 5 and 8 are associated with approximately 75% of infections in humans. The capsule protects the bacteria by inhibiting phagocytosis of the organisms by polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs). A loose-bound, water-soluble film **(slime layer** or **biofilm)** consisting of monosaccharides, proteins, and small peptides is produced by most staphylococci in varying amounts. This extracellular substance binds the bacteria to tissues

and foreign bodies such as catheters, grafts, prosthetic valves and joints, and shunts and is particularly important for survival of the relatively avirulent coagulase-negative staphylococci.

PEPTIDOGLYCAN AND ASSOCIATED ENZYMES

An understanding of the structure of the gram-positive bacterial cell wall is important because this is the target of many important antibiotics. Half of the cell wall by weight is **peptidoglycan,** consisting of layers of glycan chains built with 10 to 12 alternating subunits of *N*-acetylmuramic acid and *N*-acetylglucosamine. Oligopeptide side chains are attached to the *N*-acetylmuramic acid subunits and are then cross-linked with peptide bridges. Unlike gram-negative bacteria, the peptidoglycan layer in gram-positive organisms consists of **many cross-linked layers,** which makes the cell wall more rigid. The **enzymes** that catalyze construction of the peptidoglycan layer are called **penicillin-binding proteins** because these are the targets of penicillins and other β-lactam antibiotics. Bacterial resistance to methicillin and related penicillins and cephalosporins is mediated by acquisition of a gene (*mec*A and *mec*C) that codes for a novel penicillin-binding protein, PBP2a, which has a low affinity for methicillin and related penicillins and cephalosporins (refer to the section "Treatment, Prevention, and Control" for additional details). The ***mec*A gene** is located on the staphylococcal cassette chromosome mec (SCC*mec*), and multiple gene sequences of this cassette are described. This information is relevant because **MRSA** strains, previously restricted to hospital-acquired infections, are now present in the community and responsible for the majority of staphylococcal infections. Although the hospital and community strains were initially distinct, movement into and out of the hospital is common, so no MRSA strain is found exclusively in either setting.

The peptidoglycan has endotoxin-like activity, stimulating the production of endogenous pyrogens, activation of complement, production of interleukin (IL)-1 from monocytes, and aggregation of PMNs (a process responsible for abscess formation).

TEICHOIC ACIDS AND LIPOTEICHOIC ACIDS

Teichoic acids are the other major component of the cell wall. Teichoic acids are **species-specific**, phosphate-containing polymers that are bound either covalently to *N*-acetylmuramic acid residues of the peptidoglycan layer or to the lipids in the cytoplasmic membrane **(lipoteichoic acids).** Although the teichoic acids are poor immunogens, a specific antibody response is stimulated when they are bound to peptidoglycan. The production of antibodies was used initially as a marker of *S. aureus* infection, but this insensitive test has been abandoned in recent years.

SURFACE ADHESION PROTEINS

A large collection of surface proteins have been identified in *S. aureus* that are important virulence factors because they adhere to host matrix proteins bound to host tissues (e.g., fibronectin, fibrinogen, elastin, collagen). Most of these surface adhesion proteins are covalently bound to the cell wall peptidoglycan in staphylococci and have been designated ***m*icrobial *s*urface *c*omponents *r*ecognizing *a*dhesive *m*atrix *m*olecules (MSCRAMM) proteins.** The nomenclature for the individual proteins is confusing; for example, staphylococcal protein A *(spa)* binds to the Fc receptor of immunoglobulin (Ig)G1, IgG2, and IgG4; fibronectin-binding protein A binds fibronectin as the name indicates; and *S. aureus* surface protein A has an undetermined function. The best characterized MSCRAMM proteins are staphylococcal protein A, fibronectin-binding proteins A and B, and clumping factor proteins A and B. The clumping factor proteins (also called **coagulase**) bind fibrinogen and convert it to insoluble fibrin, causing the staphylococci to clump or aggregate. All this can be a bit confusing so it is important to remember two facts: (1) *S. aureus* has a number of proteins on the bacterial surface that allow the organisms to bind to host cells and establish infection, and (2) some of these proteins are unique for *S. aureus* and serve to identify the organism.

CYTOPLASMIC MEMBRANE

The **cytoplasmic membrane** is made up of a complex of proteins, lipids, and a small amount of carbohydrates. It serves as an osmotic barrier for the cell and provides an anchorage for the cellular biosynthetic and respiratory enzymes.

Pathogenesis and Immunity

The ability of staphylococci to cause disease depends on the ability of the bacteria to **evade** immune clearance, produce surface proteins that mediate **adherence** of the bacteria to host tissues during colonization, and produce disease through the elaboration of specific toxins and hydrolytic enzymes leading to **tissue destruction** (Table 18.3). These properties, immunologic evasion, adherence, tissue destruction, are common to most pathogenic organisms.

REGULATION OF VIRULENCE GENES

Expression of virulence factors and biofilm formation in staphylococci is under the complex control of the **accessory gene regulator (*agr*) operon.** This quorum-sensing (bacterial density) control system allows expression of adhesion adherence proteins and promotes tissue colonization and intracellular growth when the density of bacteria is low and tissue invasion and production of hydrolytic enzymes and toxins when the density is high. The operon encodes autoinducer peptides (AIP1 to 4) that bind to cell-surface receptors and regulate protein expression based on the population density. The innate immune regulation of bacterial virulence is mediated by apolipoprotein B, which is the major structural protein of very low density and low-density lipoproteins (VLDL, LDL), which bind to AIPs and suppresses *agr* signaling. Thus, under optimal conditions, the bacterial density is maintained at a low concentration, providing the benefits of immune stimulation by colonizing staphylococci without the consequences of tissue invasion and destruction.

TABLE 18.3 *Staphylococcus aureus* Virulence Factors

Virulence Factors	Biological Effects
STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS	
Capsule	Inhibits chemotaxis and phagocytosis; inhibits proliferation of mononuclear cells
Slime layer	Facilitates adherence to foreign bodies
Peptidoglycan	Provides osmotic stability; stimulates production of endogenous pyrogen (endotoxin-like activity); leukocyte chemoattractant (abscess formation); inhibits phagocytosis
Teichoic acid	Binds to fibronectin
Protein A	Inhibits antibody-mediated clearance by binding IgG1, IgG2, and IgG4 Fc receptors; leukocyte chemoattractant; anticomplementary
TOXINS	
Cytotoxins	Toxic for many cells, including erythrocytes, fibroblasts, leukocytes, macrophages, and platelets
Exfoliative toxins (ETA, ETB)	Serine proteases that split the intercellular bridges in the stratum granulosum epidermis
Enterotoxins	Superantigens (stimulate proliferation of T cells and release of cytokines); stimulate release of inflammatory mediators in mast cells, increasing intestinal peristalsis and fluid loss, as well as nausea and vomiting
Toxic shock syndrome toxin-1	Superantigen (stimulates proliferation of T cells and release of cytokines); produces leakage or cellular destruction of endothelial cells
ENZYMES	
Coagulase	Converts fibrinogen to fibrin
Hyaluronidase	Hydrolyzes hyaluronic acids in connective tissue, promoting spread of staphylococci in tissue
Fibrinolysin	Dissolves fibrin clots
Lipases	Hydrolyze lipids
Nucleases	Hydrolyze DNA

DNA, Deoxyribonucleic acid; *Ig,* immunoglobulin.

DEFENSES AGAINST INNATE IMMUNITY

Opsonins (i.e., IgG, complement factor C3) in serum bind to encapsulated staphylococci, but the **capsule** protects the bacteria by inhibiting phagocytosis of the organisms by PMNs. However, in the presence of specific antibodies directed against the staphylococci, increased C3 is bound to the bacteria and leads to phagocytosis. The extracellular **slime layer** also interferes with phagocytosis of bacteria. The ability of **protein A** to bind immunoglobulins effectively prevents antibody-mediated immune clearance of the *S. aureus*. Additionally, extracellular protein A can bind antibodies and form immune complexes, with the subsequent consumption of the complement.

STAPHYLOCOCCAL TOXINS

S. aureus produces many toxins, including five cytolytic or membrane-damaging toxins (alpha, beta, delta, gamma, and P-V leukocidin), two exfoliative toxins (A and B), numerous enterotoxins (A to E, G to X, plus multiple variants), and TSST-1. The cytolytic toxins are described as hemolysins, but this is a misnomer because the activities of the first four toxins are not restricted solely to red blood cells, and P-V leukocidin is unable to lyse erythrocytes. Cytotoxins can lyse neutrophils, resulting in the release of lysosomal enzymes that subsequently damage surrounding tissues. One cytotoxin, P-V leukocidin, is linked to severe pulmonary and cutaneous infections.

Exfoliative toxin A, the enterotoxins, and TSST-1 belong to a class of polypeptides known as **superantigens.** These toxins bind to class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC II) molecules on macrophages, which in turn interact with the ***v***ariable regions of the **β** subunit of specific **T-c**ell ***r***eceptors **(VβTCR).** This results in a massive release of cytokines by both macrophages (IL-1β and tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-α) and T cells (IL-2, interferon [IFN]-γ, and TNF-β). Release of IL-1β is associated with fever, and release of TNF-α and TNF-β is associated with hypotension and shock.

Cytotoxins

Alpha toxin, which is encoded on both the bacterial chromosome and a plasmid, is a 33,000-Da polypeptide produced by most strains of *S. aureus* that cause human disease. The toxin disrupts the smooth muscle in blood vessels and is toxic to many types of cells, including erythrocytes, leukocytes, hepatocytes, and platelets. Alpha toxin binds to the cell surface, aggregates into a heptamer (seven toxin molecules) forming a 1- to 2-nm pore, and allows the rapid efflux of K^+ and influx of Na^+, Ca^{2+}, and other small molecules, which leads to osmotic swelling and cell lysis. Alpha toxin is believed to be an important mediator of tissue damage in staphylococcal disease.

Beta toxin, also called **sphingomyelinase C,** is a 35,000-Da heat-labile protein produced by most strains of *S. aureus* responsible for disease in humans and animals. This enzyme has a specificity for sphingomyelin and lysophosphatidylcholine and is toxic to a variety of cells, including erythrocytes, fibroblasts, leukocytes, and macrophages. It catalyzes the hydrolysis of membrane phospholipids in susceptible cells, with lysis proportional to the concentration of sphingomyelin exposed on the cell surface. This is believed to be responsible for the differences in species susceptibility to the toxin. The effect on erythrocytes occurs primarily at low temperatures, so this toxin may be less efficient than other hemolysins.

Delta toxin is a 3000-Da polypeptide produced by almost all *S. aureus* strains and other staphylococci (e.g., *S. epidermidis, S. haemolyticus*). The toxin has a wide spectrum of cytolytic activity, affecting erythrocytes, many other mammalian cells, and intracellular membrane structures. This relatively nonspecific membrane toxicity is consistent with the belief that the toxin acts as a surfactant, disrupting cellular membranes by means of a detergent-like action.

Gamma toxin (made by almost all *S. aureus* strains) and **P-V leukocidin** are bicomponent toxins composed of two polypeptide chains: the S (slow-eluting proteins) component and F (fast-eluting proteins) component. Three unique S proteins (HlgA [hemolysin gamma A], HlgC, and LukS-PV) and two F proteins (HlgB and LukF-PV) have been identified. Bacteria capable of producing both toxins can encode all these proteins, with the potential for producing six

distinct toxins. All six toxins can lyse neutrophils and macrophages, whereas the greatest hemolytic activity is associated with HlgA/HlgB, HlgC/HlgB, and HlgA/LukF-PV. The PV leukocidin toxin (LukS-PV/LukF-PV) is leukotoxic but has no hemolytic activity. Cell lysis by the gamma and PV leukocidin toxins is mediated by pore formation, with subsequent increased permeability to cations and osmotic instability.

Exfoliative Toxins

SSSS, a spectrum of diseases characterized by exfoliative dermatitis, is mediated by exfoliative toxins. The prevalence of toxin production in *S. aureus* strains varies geographically but is generally less than 5%. Two distinct forms of exfoliative toxin (ETA and ETB) have been identified, and either can produce disease. ETA is heat stable and the gene is phage associated, whereas ETB is heat labile and located on a plasmid. The toxins are **serine proteases** that split desmoglein-1, which is a member of a family of cell adhesion structures (desmosomes) responsible for forming the intercellular bridges in the stratum granulosum epidermis. The toxins are not associated with cytolysis or inflammation, so neither staphylococci nor leukocytes are typically present in the involved layer of the epidermis (this is an important **diagnostic clue**). After exposure of the epidermis to the toxin, protective neutralizing antibodies develop, leading to resolution of the toxic process. SSSS is seen mostly in young children and only rarely in older children and adults.

Enterotoxins

Numerous distinct **staphylococcal enterotoxins** have been identified, with enterotoxin A most commonly associated with food poisoning. Enterotoxins C and D are found in contaminated milk products, and enterotoxin B causes staphylococcal pseudomembranous enterocolitis. Less is known about the prevalence or clinical importance of the other enterotoxins. The enterotoxins are designed perfectly for causing foodborne disease (stable to heating at 100° C for 30 minutes and resistant to hydrolysis by gastric and jejunal enzymes). Thus once a food product has been contaminated with enterotoxin-producing staphylococci and the toxins have been produced, neither mild reheating of the food nor exposure to gastric acids will be protective. These toxins are produced by 30% to 50% of all *S. aureus* strains. The precise mechanism of toxin activity is not understood. These toxins are **superantigens** capable of inducing nonspecific activation of T cells and massive cytokine release. Characteristic histologic changes in the stomach and jejunum include infiltration of neutrophils into the epithelium and underlying lamina propria, with loss of the brush border in the jejunum. Stimulation of release of inflammatory mediators from mast cells is believed to be responsible for the emesis that is characteristic of staphylococcal food poisoning.

Toxic Shock Syndrome Toxin-1

TSST-1 is a 22,000-Da heat- and proteolysis-resistant, chromosomally mediated exotoxin. It is estimated that 90% of *S. aureus* strains responsible for menstruation-associated TSS and half of the strains responsible for other forms of TSS produce TSST-1. Enterotoxin B and (rarely) enterotoxin C are responsible for approximately half the cases of nonmenstruation-associated TSS. Expression of TSST-1 in vitro requires an elevated oxygen concentration and neutral pH. This is likely the reason TSS is relatively uncommon compared with the incidence of *S. aureus* wound infections (a setting in which the environment of an abscess is relatively anaerobic and acidic). TSST-1 is a **superantigen** that stimulates release of cytokines, producing leakage of endothelial cells at low concentrations and a cytotoxic effect to the cells at high concentrations. The ability of TSST-1 to penetrate mucosal barriers, even though the infection remains localized in the vagina or at the site of a wound, is responsible for the systemic effects of TSS. Death in patients with TSS is caused by hypovolemic shock leading to multiorgan failure.

STAPHYLOCOCCAL ENZYMES

S. aureus strains possess two forms of **coagulase:** bound and free. Coagulase bound to the staphylococcal cell wall can directly convert fibrinogen to insoluble fibrin and cause the staphylococci to clump. The cell-free coagulase accomplishes the same result by reacting with a globulin plasma factor **(coagulase-reacting factor)** to form staphylothrombin, which is a thrombin-like factor. This factor catalyzes the conversion of fibrinogen to insoluble fibrin. The role of coagulase in the pathogenesis of disease is speculative, but coagulase may cause the formation of a fibrin layer around a staphylococcal abscess, localizing the infection and protecting the organisms from phagocytosis. Some other species of staphylococci produce coagulase, but these are primarily animal pathogens and uncommonly recovered in human infections.

Staphylococci produce a variety of other enzymes that hydrolyze host tissue components and aid in bacterial spread. **Hyaluronidase** hydrolyzes hyaluronic acids, which are present in the acellular matrix of connective tissue. **Fibrinolysin,** also called staphylokinase, can dissolve fibrin clots. All strains of *S. aureus* and more than 30% of the strains of coagulase-negative S*taphylococcus* produce several different **lipases** that hydrolyze lipids and ensure survival of staphylococci in the sebaceous areas of the body. *S. aureus* also produces a thermostable **nuclease** that can hydrolyze viscous deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).

Epidemiology

Staphylococci are **ubiquitous.** All persons have coagulase-negative staphylococci on their skin, and transient colonization of moist skinfolds with *S. aureus* is common. Colonization of the umbilical stump, skin, and perineal area of neonates with *S. aureus* is common. *S. aureus* and coagulase-negative staphylococci are also found in the nares, oropharynx, gastrointestinal tract, and urogenital tract. Short-term or persistent *S. aureus* carriage in older children and adults is more common in the anterior **nasopharynx** than in the oropharynx. Approximately 15% of normal healthy adults are persistent nasopharyngeal carriers of *S. aureus,* with a higher incidence reported for hospitalized patients, medical personnel, persons with

eczematous skin diseases, and those who regularly use needles, either illicitly (e.g., drug abusers) or for medical reasons (e.g., patients with insulin-dependent diabetes, patients receiving allergy injections, or those undergoing hemodialysis). Adherence of the organism to the mucosal epithelium is regulated by the staphylococcal cell-surface adhesins.

Because staphylococci are found on the skin and in the nasopharynx, shedding of the bacteria is common and is responsible for many hospital-acquired infections. Staphylococci are susceptible to high temperatures and disinfectants and antiseptic solutions; however, the organisms can survive on dry surfaces for long periods. The organisms can be transferred to a susceptible person either through direct contact or through contact with fomites (e.g., contaminated clothing, bed linens). Therefore medical personnel must use proper hand-washing techniques to prevent transfer of staphylococci from themselves to patients or among patients.

Beginning in the 1980s, strains of MRSA spread rapidly in susceptible hospitalized patients, dramatically changing the therapy available for preventing and treating staphylococcal infections. Although MRSA infections were relatively uncommon among healthy individuals in the community, a dramatic change was observed in 2003 when new strains of MRSA were reported to be responsible for outbreaks of community-acquired cutaneous infections and severe pneumonia. Interestingly, the strains were not related to strains circulating in hospitals, and strains isolated in each country were genetically unique. Unfortunately, the community strains have moved into hospitals in the last decade, complicating the control measures previously established. Hospitalized patients are now susceptible to infections caused by strains either acquired in the community or the hospital.

Clinical Diseases

STAPHYLOCOCCUS AUREUS

The clinical manifestations of some *S. aureus* diseases are almost exclusively the result of toxin activity (e.g., SSSS, staphylococcal food poisoning, and TSS), whereas other diseases result from proliferation of the organisms, leading to abscess formation and tissue destruction (e.g., cutaneous infections, endocarditis, pneumonia, empyema, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis) (Box 18.1 and Fig. 18.2). In the presence of a foreign body (e.g., splinter, catheter, shunt, prosthetic valve or joint), the introduction of small numbers of staphylococci can establish disease. Likewise, patients with congenital diseases associated with an impaired chemotactic or phagocytic response (e.g., Job syndrome, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, chronic granulomatous disease) are more susceptible to staphylococcal diseases.

Staphylococcal Scalded Skin Syndrome

In 1878, Gottfried Ritter von Rittershain described 297 infants younger than 1 month old who had bullous exfoliative dermatitis. The disease he described, now called **Ritter disease** or SSSS, is characterized by the abrupt onset of a localized perioral erythema (redness and inflammation around the mouth) that spreads over the entire body within 2 days. Slight pressure displaces the skin (a positive Nikolsky sign), and large bullae or **cutaneous blisters** form soon thereafter, followed by desquamation of the epithelium (Fig. 18.3). The blisters contain clear fluid but no organisms or leukocytes, which is a finding consistent with the fact that the disease is caused by the bacterial toxin. The epithelium becomes intact again within 7 to 10 days, when antibodies against the toxin appear. Scarring does not occur because only the top layer of epidermis is affected.

BOX 18.1 Staphylococcal Diseases: Clinical Summaries

Staphylococcus aureus

Toxin-Mediated Diseases

Scalded skin syndrome: Disseminated desquamation of epithelium in infants; blisters with no organisms or leukocytes
Food poisoning: After consumption of food contaminated with heat-stable enterotoxin, rapid onset of severe vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal cramping, with resolution within 24 hours
Toxic shock: multisystem intoxication characterized initially by fever, hypotension, and a diffuse, macular, erythematous rash; high mortality without prompt antibiotic therapy and elimination of the focus of infection

Suppurative Infections

Impetigo: localized cutaneous infection characterized by pus-filled vesicle on an erythematous base
Folliculitis: impetigo involving hair follicles
Furuncles or boils: large, painful, pus-filled cutaneous nodules
Carbuncles: Coalescence of furuncles with extension into subcutaneous tissues and evidence of systemic disease (fever, chills, bacteremia)
Bacteremia and endocarditis: Spread of bacteria into the blood from a focus of infection; endocarditis characterized by damage to the endothelial lining of the heart
Pneumonia and empyema: Consolidation and abscess formation in the lungs; seen in the very young and elderly and in patients with underlying or recent pulmonary disease; a severe form of necrotizing pneumonia with septic shock and high mortality is now recognized
Osteomyelitis: Destruction of bones, particularly the metaphyseal area of long bones
Septic arthritis: Painful erythematous joint with collection of purulent material in the joint space

Coagulase-Negative *Staphylococcus* Species

Wound infections: Characterized by erythema and pus at the site of a traumatic or surgical wound; infections with foreign bodies can be caused by *S. aureus* and coagulase-negative staphylococci
Urinary tract infections: Dysuria and pyuria in young sexually active women (*S. saprophyticus*), in patients with urinary catheters (other coagulase-negative staphylococci), or after seeding of the urinary tract by bacteremia (*S. aureus*)
Catheter and shunt infections: Chronic inflammatory response to bacteria coating a catheter or shunt (most commonly with coagulase-negative staphylococci)
Prosthetic device infections: Chronic infection of device characterized by localized pain and mechanical failure of the device (most commonly with coagulase-negative staphylococci)

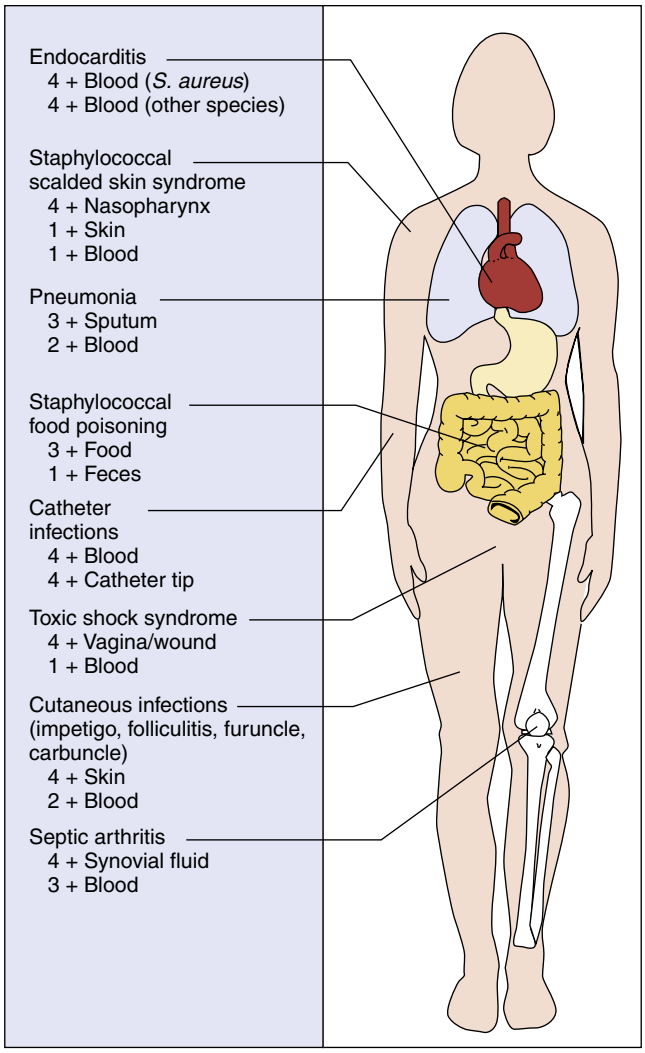


Fig. 18.2 Staphylococcal diseases. Isolation of staphylococci from sites of infection. *1+*, Less than 10% positive cultures; *2+*, 10% to 50% positive cultures; *3+*, 50% to 90% positive cultures; *4+*, more than 90% positive cultures.

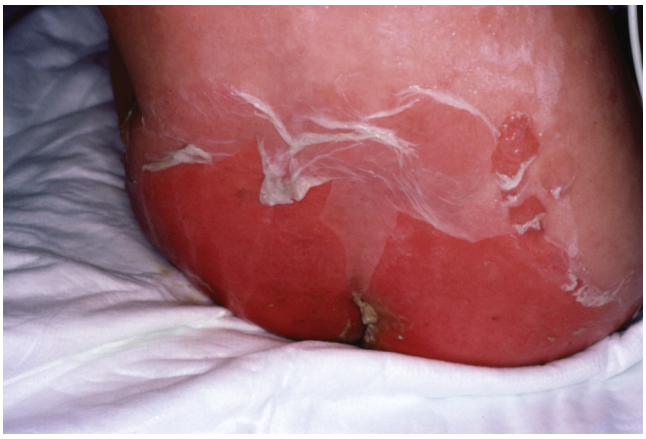


Fig. 18.3 Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome. (From Mandell, G., Bennett, J., Dolin, R., 2005. Principles and practice of infectious disease, sixth ed. Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia, PA.)

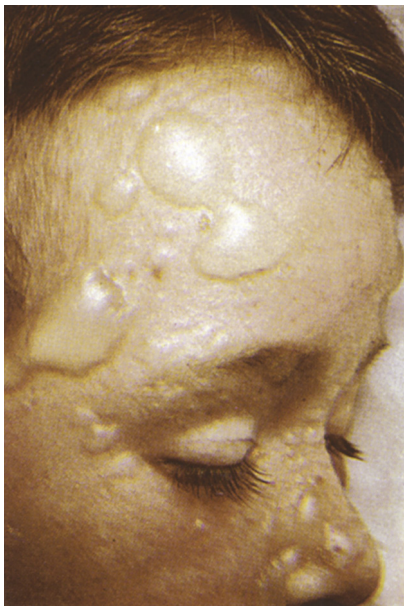


Fig. 18.4 Bullous impetigo, which is a localized form of staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome. (From Emond, R.T., Rowland, H.A.K., Welsby, P., 1995. Colour Atlas of Infectious Diseases, third ed. Wolfe, London.)

This is a disease primarily of neonates and young children, with the mortality rate less than 5%. When death does occur, it is a result of secondary bacterial infection of the denuded skin areas. Infections in adults usually occur in immunocompromised hosts or patients with renal disease and, in contrast with infants, mortality is as high as 60%.

Bullous impetigo is a localized form of SSSS. In this syndrome, specific strains of toxin-producing *S. aureus* (e.g., phage type 71) are associated with formation of superficial skin blisters (Fig. 18.4). Unlike patients with the disseminated manifestations of SSSS, *S. aureus* is present in the localized blisters of patients with bullous impetigo. The erythema does not extend beyond the borders of the blister and the Nikolsky sign is not present. The disease occurs primarily in infants and young children and is highly communicable.

Staphylococcal Food Poisoning

Staphylococcal food poisoning, one of the most common foodborne illnesses, is an **intoxication** rather than an infection (Clinical Case 18.1). Disease is caused by bacterial toxin present in food rather than from a direct effect of the organisms on the patient. The most commonly contaminated foods are **processed meats** such as ham and salted pork, **custard**-filled **pastries, potato salad,** and **ice cream.** Growth of *S. aureus* in salted meats is consistent with the ability of this organism to grow in the presence of high salt concentrations. Unlike many other forms of food poisoning in which an animal reservoir is important, staphylococcal food poisoning results from contamination of the food by a human carrier. Although contamination can be prevented by not allowing individuals with an obvious staphylococcal skin infection to prepare food, approximately half of the infections originate from carriers with asymptomatic nasopharyngeal colonization. After the staphylococci have been introduced into the food (through

a sneeze or contaminated hand), the food must remain at room temperature or warmer for the organisms to grow and release the toxin. The contaminated food will not appear or taste tainted. Subsequent heating of the food will kill the bacteria but not inactivate the **heat-stable toxin.**

After ingestion of contaminated food, the onset of disease is abrupt and rapid, with a mean incubation period of 4 hours, which again is consistent with a disease mediated by preformed toxin. Further toxin is not produced by ingested staphylococci so the disease has a rapid course, with symptoms generally lasting less than 24 hours. Severe vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain or nausea are characteristic of staphylococcal food poisoning. Sweating and headache may occur, but fever is not seen. The diarrhea is watery and nonbloody, and dehydration may result from the considerable fluid loss.

The toxin-producing organisms can be cultured from the contaminated food if the organisms are not killed during food preparation. The enterotoxins are heat-stable, so contaminated food can be tested for toxins at a public health facility; however, these tests are rarely performed, so diagnosis of staphylococcal food poisoning is primarily based on the clinical picture.

Treatment is for relief of abdominal cramping and diarrhea and for fluid replacement. Antibiotic therapy is not indicated because, as already noted, the disease is mediated by preformed toxin and not by replicating organisms. Neutralizing antibodies to the toxin can be protective and limited cross-protection occurs among the different enterotoxins. Short-lived immunity means that second episodes of staphylococcal food poisoning can occur, particularly with serologically distinct enterotoxins.

Clinical Case 18.1 **Staphylococcal Food Poisoning**

A report published in the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report* (*MMWR* 46:1189–1191, 1997) illustrated many important features of staphylococcal food poisoning. A total of 18 persons attending a retirement party became ill approximately 3 to 4 hours after eating. The most common symptoms were nausea (94%), vomiting (89%), and diarrhea (72%). Relatively few individuals had fever or headache (11%). The symptoms lasted a median of 24 hours. The illness was associated with eating ham at the party. A sample of the cooked ham was positive for staphylococcal enterotoxin type A. A food preparer had cooked the ham at home, transported it to her workplace and sliced it while it was still hot, and then refrigerated the ham in a large plastic container covered with foil. The ham was served cold the next day. Cooking the ham would kill any contaminating *S. aureus,* so it is likely the ham was contaminated after it was cooked. The delays involved in refrigerating the ham and the fact it was stored in a single container allowed the organism to proliferate and produce enterotoxin. Type A toxin is the most common toxin associated with human disease. The rapid onset and short duration of nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea is typical of this disease. Care must be used to avoid contamination of salted meats such as ham because reheating the food at a later time will not inactivate the heat-stable toxin.

Certain strains of *S. aureus* can also cause **enterocolitis,** which is manifested clinically by watery diarrhea, abdominal cramps, and fever. The majority of strains producing this disease produce both enterotoxin A and the bicomponent leukotoxin LukE/LukD. In contrast to staphylococcal food poisoning, staphylococcal enterocolitis is directly related to the growth of *S. aureus* in the colon. Enterocolitis occurs primarily in patients who have received broad-spectrum antibiotics that suppress the normal colonic flora and permit the growth of *S. aureus.* The diagnosis of staphylococcal enterocolitis is confirmed after more common causes of infection have been excluded (e.g., *Clostridium difficile* colitis) and abundant *S. aureus* is detected in the stool of affected patients. Fecal leukocytes and white plaques with ulceration are seen on the colonic mucosa.

Toxic Shock Syndrome

The first outbreak of this disease occurred in 1928 in Australia, in which the disease developed in 21 children, 12 of whom died after an injection with an *S. aureus*–contaminated vaccine (Clinical Case 18.2). Fifty years later, J.K. Todd observed what he called **toxic shock syndrome** in seven children with systemic disease and the first reports of TSS in menstruating women were published in the summer of 1980. These reports were followed by a dramatic increase in reports of TSS, particularly in women. Subsequently, it was discovered that TSST-1–producing strains of *S. aureus* could multiply rapidly in hyperabsorbent tampons and release toxin. After the recall of these tampons, the incidence of disease, particularly in menstruating women, decreased rapidly. At present, fewer than 100 cases of TSS are reported annually in the United States. Although it was originally reported that coagulase-negative staphylococci could cause TSS, it is now believed that this disease is restricted to *S. aureus.*

Clinical Case 18.2 **Staphylococcal Toxic Shock Syndrome**

Todd and associates (*Lancet* 2:1116–1118, 1978) were the first investigators to describe a pediatric disease they called "toxic shock syndrome" (TSS). This patient illustrates the clinical course of the disease. A 15-year-old girl was admitted to the hospital with a 2-day history of pharyngitis and vaginitis associated with vomiting and watery diarrhea. She was febrile and hypotensive on admission, with a diffuse erythematous rash over her entire body. Laboratory tests were consistent with acidosis, oliguria, and disseminated intravascular coagulation with severe thrombocytopenia. Her chest radiograph showed bilateral infiltrates suggestive of "shock lung." She was admitted to the hospital intensive care unit, in which she was stabilized and improved gradually over a 17-day period. On the third day, fine desquamation started on her face, trunk, and extremities and progressed to peeling of the palms and soles by the 14th day. All cultures were negative except from the throat and vagina, from which *Staphylococcus aureus* was isolated. This case illustrates the initial presentation of TSS, the multiorgan toxicity, and the protracted period of recovery.

The disease is initiated with the localized growth of toxin-producing strains of *S. aureus* in the vagina or a wound, followed by release of the toxin into blood. Toxin production requires an aerobic atmosphere and neutral pH. Clinical manifestations start abruptly and include fever; hypotension; and a diffuse, macular, erythematous rash. Multiple organ systems (e.g., central nervous, gastrointestinal, hematologic, hepatic, musculature, renal) are also involved, and the entire skin, including the palms and soles, desquamates (Fig. 18.5). A particularly virulent form of TSS is **purpura fulminans.** This disease is characterized by large purpuric skin lesion, fever, hypotension, and disseminated intravascular coagulation. More commonly, purpura fulminans is associated with overwhelming *Neisseria meningitidis* infections.

As the etiology and epidemiology of this disease have become better understood, the initial high fatality rate has been decreased to approximately 5%. However, the risk of recurrent disease is as high as 65% unless the patient is specifically treated with an effective antibiotic. Serologic studies have demonstrated that more than 90% of adults have antibodies to TSST-1; however, more than 50% of patients with TSS fail to develop protective antibodies after their disease resolves. These unprotected patients are at risk for **recurrent disease.**

Cutaneous Infections

The most common diseases caused by *S. aureus* are localized **pyogenic cutaneous infections** including impetigo, folliculitis, furuncles, and carbuncles. **Impetigo,** a superficial infection that mostly affects young children, occurs primarily on the face and limbs. Initially, a small macule (flattened red spot) is seen, and then a pus-filled vesicle **(pustule)** on an erythematous base develops. Crusting occurs after the pustule ruptures. Multiple vesicles at different stages of development are common because of the secondary spread of the infection to adjacent skin sites (Fig. 18.6). Impetigo is usually caused by *S. aureus,* although group A streptococci, either alone or with *S. aureus,* are responsible for 20% of cases.

Folliculitis is a pyogenic infection in the hair follicles. The base of the follicle is raised and reddened, and there is a small collection of pus beneath the epidermal surface. If this occurs at the base of the eyelid, it is called a **sty. Furuncles** (boils), an extension of folliculitis, are large, painful, raised nodules that have an underlying collection of dead and necrotic tissue. These can drain spontaneously or after surgical incision.

Carbuncles occur when furuncles coalesce and extend to the deeper subcutaneous tissue (Fig. 18.7). Multiple sinus tracts are usually present. Unlike patients with folliculitis and furuncles, patients with carbuncles have chills and fevers, indicating the systemic spread of staphylococci via bacteremia to other tissues.

Staphylococcal **wound infections** can also occur in patients after a surgical procedure or after trauma when organisms colonizing the skin or from an external source are introduced into the wound. The staphylococci are generally not able to establish an infection in an immunocompetent person unless a foreign body (e.g., stitches, a splinter, dirt) is present in the wound. Infections are characterized by edema, erythema, pain, and an accumulation of purulent material. The infection can be easily managed if the wound is reopened, the foreign matter removed, the purulence drained, and the surface cleaned with a disinfectant. If signs such as fever and malaise are observed or if the wound does not clear in response to localized management, then antibiotic therapy directed against *S. aureus* is indicated.

With the spread of **MRSA strains in the community,** these organisms are now the most common cause of skin and soft-tissue infections in patients presenting to U.S. hospital emergency departments.

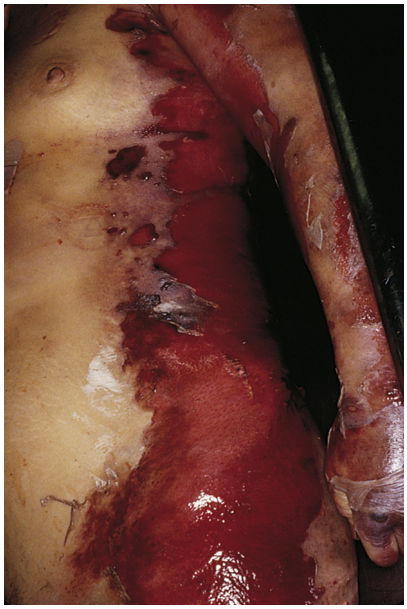


Fig. 18.5 Toxic shock syndrome. A case of fatal infection with cutaneous and soft-tissue involvement is shown.

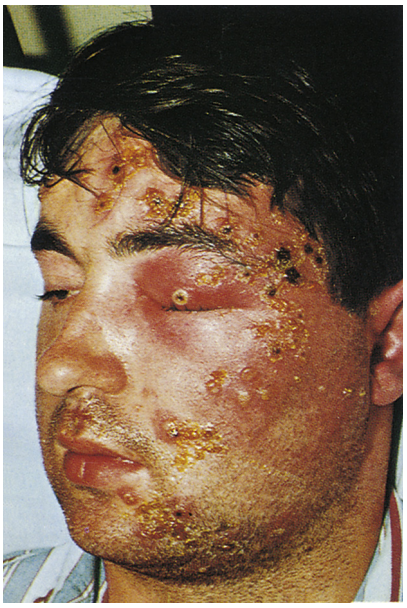


Fig. 18.6 Pustular impetigo. Note the vesicles at different stages of development, including pus-filled vesicles on an erythematous base and dry, crusted lesions. (From Emond, R.T., Rowland, H.A.K., Welsby, P., 1995. Colour Atlas of Infectious Diseases, third ed. Wolfe, London.)

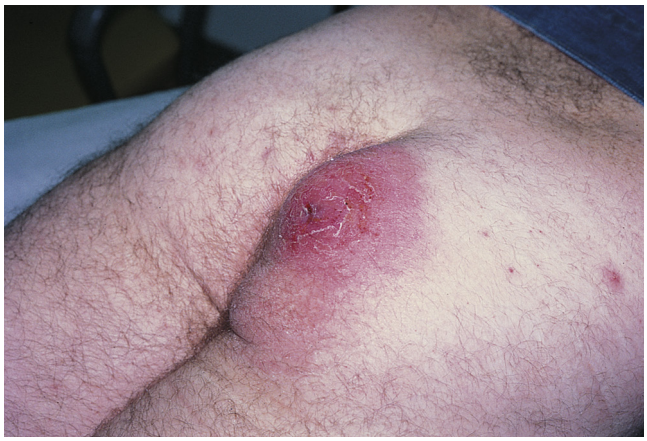


Fig. 18.7 *Staphylococcus aureus* carbuncle. This carbuncle developed on the buttock over a 7- to 10-day period and required surgical drainage plus antibiotic therapy. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.)

Clinical Case 18.3 *Staphylococcus aureus* Endocarditis

Chen and Li (*N Engl J Med* 355:e27, 2006) described a 21-year-old woman with a history of intravenous drug abuse, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and a CD4 count of 400 cells/mm^3 who developed endocarditis caused by *S. aureus*. The patient had a 1-week history of fever, chest pain, and hemoptysis. Physical exam revealed a 3/6 pansystolic murmur and rhonchi in both lung fields. Multiple bilateral cavitary lesions were observed by chest radiography, and cultures of blood and sputum were positive for methicillin-susceptible *S. aureus*. The patient was treated with oxacillin for 6 weeks, with resolution of the endocarditis and pulmonary abscesses. This case illustrated the acute onset of *S. aureus* endocarditis, risk factors of intravenous drug abuse, and the frequency of complications caused by septic emboli.

Bacteremia and Endocarditis

S. aureus is a common cause of **bacteremia** (Clinical Case 18.3). Although bacteremias caused by most other organisms originate from an identifiable focus of infection (e.g., infection of the lungs, urinary tract, gastrointestinal tract), the initial foci of infection in approximately a third of patients with *S. aureus* bacteremias are not known. Most likely, the infection spreads to the blood from an innocuous-appearing skin infection. More than 50% of the cases of *S. aureus* bacteremia are acquired in the hospital after a surgical procedure or from a contaminated intravascular catheter. *S. aureus* bacteremias, particularly prolonged episodes, are associated with dissemination to other body sites, including the heart.

Acute **endocarditis** caused by *S. aureus* is a serious disease, with a mortality rate approaching 50% unless promptly diagnosed. Although patients with *S. aureus* endocarditis may initially have nonspecific influenza-like symptoms, their condition can deteriorate rapidly and include disruption of cardiac output and peripheral evidence of septic embolization. The patient's prognosis is poor unless appropriate medical and surgical intervention is instituted immediately. An exception to this is *S. aureus* endocarditis in parenteral drug abusers, whose disease normally involves the right side of the heart (tricuspid valve) rather than the left. The initial symptoms may be mild but fever, chills, and pleuritic chest pain caused by pulmonary emboli are generally present. Clinical cure of the endocarditis is the rule, although it is common for complications to occur as the result of secondary spread of the infection to other organs.

Pneumonia and Empyema

S. aureus respiratory disease can develop after the aspiration of oral secretions or from the hematogenous spread of the organism from a distant site. Previous infections with *S. aureus* such as recurrent skin infections, nasal or skin colonization with *S. aureus*, or underlying pulmonary disease are risk factors for pneumonia. **Aspiration pneumonia** is seen primarily in the very young, the elderly, and patients with cystic fibrosis, influenza, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and bronchiectasis. The clinical and radiographic presentations of the pneumonia are not unique. Radiographic examination reveals the presence of patchy infiltrates with consolidation or abscesses, with the latter consistent with the organism's ability to secrete cytotoxic toxins and enzymes and to form localized abscesses. **Hematogenous pneumonia** is common for patients with bacteremia or endocarditis. Community-acquired MRSA is responsible for a severe form of **necrotizing pneumonia** with massive hemoptysis, septic shock, and a high mortality rate. Although this disease occurs most commonly in children and young adults, it is not restricted to these age groups.

Empyema occurs in 10% of patients with pneumonia, and *S. aureus* is responsible for a third of all cases. Drainage of the purulent material is sometimes difficult because the organism can become consolidated in loculated areas.

Osteomyelitis and Septic Arthritis

S. aureus **osteomyelitis** results from hematogenous dissemination to bone or it can be a secondary infection resulting from trauma or the extension of disease from an adjacent area. Hematogenous spread in children generally results from a cutaneous staphylococcal infection and usually involves the metaphyseal area of long bones, which is a highly vascularized area of bony growth. This infection is characterized by the sudden onset of localized pain over the involved bone and by high fever. Blood cultures are positive in approximately 50% of cases.

The hematogenous osteomyelitis seen in adults commonly occurs in the form of vertebral osteomyelitis and rarely in the form of an infection of the long bones. Intense back pain with fever is the initial symptom. Radiographic evidence of osteomyelitis in children and adults is not seen until 2 to 3 weeks after the initial symptoms appear. **Brodie abscess** is a sequestered focus of staphylococcal osteomyelitis that arises in the metaphyseal area of a long bone and occurs only in adults. Staphylococcal osteomyelitis that occurs after trauma or a surgical procedure is generally

accompanied by inflammation and purulent drainage from the wound or the sinus tract overlying the infected bone. Because the staphylococcal infection may be restricted to the wound, isolation of the organism from this site is not conclusive evidence of bony involvement. With appropriate antibiotic therapy and surgery, the cure rate for staphylococcal osteomyelitis is excellent.

S. aureus is the primary cause of **septic arthritis** in young children and in adults who are receiving intraarticular injections or who have mechanically abnormal joints. Secondary involvement of multiple joints is indicative of hematogenous spread from a localized focus. *S. aureus* is replaced by *N. gonorrhoeae* as the most common cause of septic arthritis in sexually active persons. Staphylococcal arthritis is characterized by a painful erythematous joint, with purulent material obtained on aspiration. Infection is usually demonstrated in the large joints (e.g., shoulder, knee, hip, elbow). The prognosis in children is excellent, but in adults it depends on the nature of the underlying disease and the occurrence of any secondary infectious complications.

STAPHYLOCOCCUS EPIDERMIDIS AND OTHER COAGULASE-NEGATIVE STAPHYLOCOCCI

Endocarditis

S. epidermidis, S. lugdunensis, and related coagulase-negative staphylococci can infect prosthetic and, less commonly, native heart valves (Clinical Case 18.4). Infections of native valves are believed to result from the inoculation of organisms onto a damaged heart valve (e.g., a congenital malformation, damage resulting from rheumatic heart disease). ***S. lugdunensis*** is the staphylococcal species most commonly associated with native valve endocarditis, although this disease is more commonly caused by streptococci. In contrast, staphylococci are a major cause of **endocarditis of artificial valves.** The organisms are introduced at the time of valve replacement, and the infection characteristically has an indolent course, with clinical signs and symptoms not developing for as long as 1 year after the procedure. Although the heart valve can be infected, more commonly the infection occurs at the site in which the valve is sewn to the heart tissue. Thus infection with abscess formation can lead to separation of the valve at the suture line and to mechanical heart failure. The prognosis is guarded for patients who have this infection, and prompt medical and surgical management is critical.

Catheter and Shunt Infections

More than 50% of all infections of catheters and shunts are caused by coagulase-negative staphylococci. These infections have become a major medical problem because long-dwelling catheters and shunts are common for the medical management of critically ill patients. The coagulase-negative staphylococci are particularly well adapted for causing these infections because they can produce a polysaccharide slime that bonds them to catheters and shunts and protects them from antibiotics and inflammatory cells. A persistent bacteremia is generally observed in patients with infections of shunts and catheters because the organisms have continual access to the blood. Immune complex–mediated glomerulonephritis occurs in patients with long-standing disease.

Clinical Case 18.4 ***Staphylococcus lugdunensis* Endocarditis**

Seenivasan and Yu (*Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 22:489–491, 2003) described a typical report of native valve endocarditis caused by *S. lugdunensis*, which is a coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus* with a predilection for causing endocarditis. The 36-year-old woman was an active cocaine user who presented with an acute onset of weakness in the right extremities. She reported fever with chills, malaise, and shortness of breath over the preceding 10 weeks. On admission to the hospital, she had tachycardia, hypotension, a temperature of 39° C, a pansystolic murmur, and right-sided hemiparesis. A computed tomography scan of the brain revealed a large infarct in the left basal ganglia. Four sets of blood cultures were positive with *S. lugdunensis*. The isolate was penicillin resistant and susceptible to all other tested antibiotics. Because the patient had a penicillin allergy, treatment was initiated with vancomycin and gentamicin. The patient became afebrile at 3 days, and subsequent blood cultures were negative. Gentamicin was discontinued after 1 week, and the patient received a total of 6 weeks of therapy with vancomycin. Over the next 7 months, the patient developed progressive mitral regurgitation that necessitated mitral valve replacement. *S. lugdunensis* is more virulent compared with other coagulase-negative staphylococci, causing disease most commonly in native heart valves and with secondary complications (e.g., a brain infarct caused by septic emboli) more frequently reported. Persistent bacteremia is characteristic of intravascular infections such as endocarditis.

Prosthetic Joint Infections

Infections of artificial joints, particularly the hip, can be caused by coagulase-negative staphylococci. The patient usually experiences only localized pain and mechanical failure of the joint. Systemic signs such as fever and leukocytosis are not prominent, and blood cultures are usually negative. Treatment consists of joint replacement and antimicrobial therapy. The risk of reinfection of the new joint is considerably increased in such patients.

Urinary Tract Infections

S. saprophyticus has a predilection for causing urinary tract infections in young, sexually active women and is rarely responsible for infections in other patients. It is also infrequently found as an asymptomatic colonizer of the urinary tract. Infected women usually have dysuria (pain on urination), pyuria (pus in urine), and numerous organisms in the urine. Typically, patients respond rapidly to antibiotics, and reinfection is uncommon.

Laboratory Diagnosis

MICROSCOPY

Staphylococci are **gram-positive cocci** that form **clusters** when grown on agar media but commonly appear as single cells or small groups of organisms in clinical specimens. Successful detection of organisms in a clinical specimen depends on the type of infection (e.g., abscess, bacteremia, impetigo) and the quality of the material submitted for analysis. If the clinician scrapes the base of the abscess with a swab or curette, then an abundance of organisms should be observed in the gram-stained specimen. Aspirated pus or superficial specimens collected with swabs consist primarily of necrotic material with relatively few organisms, so these specimens are not as useful. Relatively few organisms are generally present in the blood of bacteremic patients (an average of <1 organism per milliliter of blood), so blood specimens should be cultured, but blood examined by Gram stain is not useful. Staphylococci are seen in the nasopharynx of patients with SSSS and in the vagina of patients with TSS, but these staphylococci cannot be distinguished from the organisms that normally colonize these sites. Diagnosis of these diseases is made by the clinical presentation of the patient, with isolation of *S. aureus* in culture confirmatory. Staphylococci are implicated in food poisoning by the clinical presentation of the patient (e.g., rapid onset of vomiting and abdominal cramps) and a history of specific food ingestion (e.g., salted ham). Gram stains of the food or patient stool specimens are generally not useful.

NUCLEIC ACID–BASED TESTS

Commercial nucleic acid amplification tests are available for the direct detection and identification of *S. aureus* in clinical specimens. However, these tests are primarily used to detect nasal carriage of methicillin-sensitive *S. aureus* (MSSA) and MRSA, identifying patients at increased risk of developing staphylococcal disease (e.g., bacteremia, surgical wound infections) during hospitalization.

CULTURE

Clinical specimens should be inoculated onto nutritionally enriched agar media supplemented with sheep blood. Staphylococci grow rapidly on nonselective media incubated aerobically or anaerobically, with large, smooth colonies seen within 24 hours (Fig. 18.8). As noted earlier, *S. aureus* colonies will gradually turn **yellow,** particularly when the cultures are incubated at room temperature for a few days; however, this is rarely done in clinical labs today. Almost all isolates of *S. aureus* and some strains of coagulase-negative staphylococci produce hemolysis on sheep blood agar. The hemolysis is caused by cytotoxins, particularly alpha toxin. If there is a mixture of organisms in the specimen (e.g., wound or respiratory specimen), *S. aureus* can be isolated selectively on a variety of special media including **chromogenic agar** (where *S. aureus* colonies are a characteristic color) or **mannitol-salt agar,** which is supplemented with mannitol (fermented by *S. aureus* but not by most other staphylococci) and 7.5% sodium chloride (inhibits the growth of most other organisms).

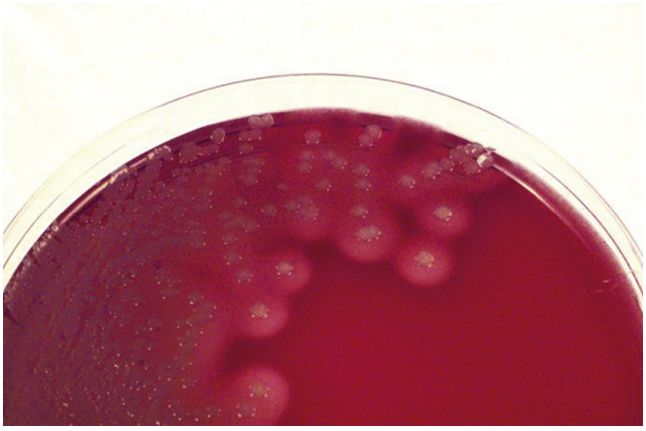


Fig. 18.8 *Staphylococcus aureus* grown on a sheep blood agar plate. Note the colonies are large and β-hemolytic.

IDENTIFICATION

Relatively simple biochemical tests (e.g., positive reactions for **coagulase,** protein A, heat-stable nuclease, mannitol fermentation) can be used to identify *S. aureus*. Colonies resembling *S. aureus* are identified in most laboratories by mixing a suspension of organisms with a drop of plasma and observing clumping of the organisms (positive coagulase test). Alternatively, plasma placed in a test tube can be inoculated with the organism and examined at 4 and 24 hours for formation of a clot (positive tube coagulase test). Identification of the coagulase-negative staphylococci is more complex, traditionally requiring the use of commercial identification systems. More recently mass spectrometry has been used to identify the staphylococci, as well as many other species of organisms, with a high level of accuracy and rapid time to results (generally identified in minutes). Historically, the analysis of genomic DNA by pulsed-field gel electrophoresis or similar technique was the most commonly used method for characterizing isolates at the subspecies levels; however, whole genome sequencing is rapidly becoming the preferred tool for subtyping organisms for epidemiologic studies.

ANTIBODY DETECTION

Antibodies to cell wall teichoic acids are present in many patients with long-standing *S. aureus* infections. However, this test has been discontinued in most hospitals because it is less sensitive than culture and nucleic acid–based tests.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Staphylococci quickly developed drug resistance after penicillin was introduced, and today less than 10% of the strains are susceptible to this antibiotic. This resistance is mediated by **penicillinase** (β-lactamase specific for penicillins), which hydrolyzes the β-lactam ring of penicillin. Because of the problems with penicillin-resistant staphylococci, **semisynthetic penicillins** resistant to β-lactamase hydrolysis (e.g., methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, dicloxacillin) were developed. Unfortunately, staphylococci developed resistance to

these antibiotics as well. Currently, the majority of *S. aureus* responsible for hospital- and community-acquired infections are resistant to these semisynthetic penicillins, and these MRSA strains are resistant to all β-lactam antibiotics (i.e., penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems). Not all bacteria in a resistant population may express their resistance in traditional susceptibility tests **(heterogeneous resistance);** therefore the definitive method for identifying a resistant isolate is detection of the *mecA* or *mecC* genes that code for the penicillin-binding proteins that confer resistance.

Patients with localized skin and soft-tissue infections can generally be managed by incision and drainage of the abscesses. If the infection involves a larger area or systemic signs are present, then antibiotic therapy is indicated. Because MRSA strains are responsible for a significant proportion of hospital- and community-acquired infections, empirical therapy should include antibiotics active against MRSA strains. Oral therapy can include trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, a long-acting tetracycline such as doxycycline or minocycline, clindamycin, or linezolid. Resistance to clindamycin is common in some communities, and use of linezolid is limited by its cost and toxicity. Vancomycin is the drug of choice for intravenous therapy, with daptomycin, tigecycline, or linezolid acceptable alternatives.

Staphylococci have demonstrated the remarkable ability to develop resistance to most antibiotics. Until recently, the one antibiotic that remained uniformly active against staphylococci was vancomycin, which is the current antibiotic of choice for treating serious infections caused by staphylococci resistant to methicillin. Unfortunately, isolates of *S. aureus* have now been found with two forms of **resistance to vancomycin.** Low-level resistance is observed in *S. aureus* strains with a thicker, more disorganized cell wall. It is postulated that vancomycin is trapped in the cell wall matrix and is unable to reach the cytoplasmic membrane, where it can disrupt cell wall synthesis. High-level resistance is mediated by the *vanA* gene operon that was acquired from vancomycin-resistant enterococci. These bacteria have a modified peptidoglycan layer that does not bind vancomycin. Presently, this resistance is very uncommon; however, if these resistant staphylococci become widespread, then antibiotic treatment of these highly virulent bacteria would be difficult.

Staphylococci are ubiquitous organisms present on the skin and mucous membranes, and their introduction through breaks in the skin occurs often. However, the number of organisms required to establish an infection **(infectious dose)** is generally large unless a foreign body (e.g., dirt, a splinter, stitches) is present in the wound. Proper cleansing of the wound and application of an appropriate disinfectant (e.g., germicidal soap, iodine solution, hexachlorophene) will prevent most infections in healthy individuals.

The spread of staphylococci from person to person is more difficult to prevent. An example of this is surgical wound infections, which can be caused by relatively few organisms because foreign bodies and devitalized tissue may be present. Although it is unrealistic to sterilize operating room personnel and the environment, the risk of contamination during an operative procedure can be minimized through proper handwashing and the covering of exposed skin surfaces. The spread of methicillin-resistant organisms can also be difficult to control because asymptomatic nasopharyngeal carriage is the most common source of these organisms.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Aliberti, S., Reyes, L., Faverio, P., et al., 2016. Global initiative for methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus pneumonia (GLIMP): an international, observational cohort study. Lancet Infect. 16, 1364–1376.

Bukowski, M., Wladyka, B., Dubin, G., 2010. Exfoliative toxins of *Staphylococcus aureus*. Toxins 2, 1148–1165.

Das, S., Lindemann, C., Young, B., et al., 2016. Natural mutations in a Staphylococcus aureus virulence regulator attenuate cytotoxicity but permit bacteremia and abscess formation. PNAS E3101–E3110.

Fournier, B., Philpott, D., 2005. Recognition of *Staphylococcus aureus* by the innate immune system. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 18, 521–540.

Hall, P.R., Elmore, B.O., Spang, C.H., et al., 2013. Nox2 modification of LDL is essential for optimal apolipoprotein B-mediated control of *agr* Type III *Staphylococcus aureus* quorum-sensing. PLoS Pathog. 9, e1003166.

Ippolito, G., Leone, S., Lauria, F.N., et al., 2010. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: the superbug. Int. J. Infect. Dis. 14 (Suppl. 4), S7–S11.

James, E., Edwards, A., Wigneshweraraj, S., 2013. Transcriptional down-regulation of *agr* expression in *Staphylococcus aureus* during growth in human serum can be overcome by constitutively active mutant forms of the sensor kinase AgrC. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. 349, 153–162.

Krakauer, T., Stiles, B., 2013. The staphylococcal enterotoxin (SE) family. Virulence 4, 759–773.

Kurlenda, J., Grinholc, M., 2010. Current diagnostic tools for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infections. Mol. Diagn. Ther. 14, 73–80.

Limbago, B.M., Kallen, A.J., Zhu, W., et al., 2014. Report of the 13th vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolate from the United States. J. Clin. Microbiol. 52, 998–1002.

Los, F.C., Randis, T.M., Aroian, R.V., et al., 2013. Role of pore-forming toxins in bacterial infectious diseases. Microbiol. Mol. Biol. Rev. 2, 173–207.

Otto, M., 2010. Basis of virulence in community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Annu. Rev. Microbiol. 64, 143–162.

Pannaraj, P.S., Hulten, K.G., Gonzalez, B.E., et al., 2006. Infective pyomyositis and myositis in children in the era of community-acquired, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. Clin. Infect. Dis. 43, 953–960.

Seybold, U., Kourbatova, E.V., Johnson, J.G., et al., 2006. Emergence of community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* USA300 genotype as a major cause of health care associated blood stream infections. Clin. Infect. Dis. 42, 647–656.

Silversides, J., Lappin, E., Ferguson, A., 2010. Staphylococcal toxic shock syndrome: mechanisms and management. Curr. Infect. Dis. Rep. 12, 392–400.

Singer, A., Talan, D., 2014. Management of skin abscesses in the era of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. N. Engl. J. Med. 370, 1039–1047.

Stanley, J., Amagai, M., 2006. Pemphigus, bullous impetigo, and the staphylococcal scalded-skin syndrome. N. Engl. J. Med. 355, 1800–1810.

Tan, L., Li, S.R., Jiang, B., et al., 2018. Therapeutic targeting of the *Staphylococcus aureus* accessory gene regulator (agr) system. Frontier Microbiol 9, 1–11.

Tang, Y., Stratton, C., 2010. *Staphylococcus aureus*: an old pathogen with new weapons. Clin. Lab. Med. 30, 179–208.

Uhlemann, A.C., Otto, M., Lowy, F.D., et al., 2014. Evolution of community- and healthcare-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Infect. Genet. Evol. 21, 563–574.

Vandenesch, F., Lina, G., Henry, T., 2012. *Staphylococcus aureus* hemolysins, bi-component leukocidins, and cytolytic peptides: a redundant arsenal of membrane-damaging virulence factors? Front. Cell. Infect. Microbiol. 2 (12).

Zhu, W., Murray, P.R., Huskins, W.C., et al., 2010. Dissemination of an *Enterococcus* Inc18-Like vanA plasmid associated with vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Antimicrob. Agents Chemother. 54, 4314–4320.

Case Study and Questions

An 18-year-old man fell on his knee while playing basketball. The knee was painful, but the overlying skin was unbroken. The knee was swollen and remained painful the next day, so he was taken to the local emergency department. Clear fluid was aspirated from the knee, and the physician prescribed symptomatic treatment. Two days later, the swelling returned, the pain increased, and erythema developed over the knee. Because the patient also felt systemically ill and had an oral temperature of 38.8° C, he returned to the emergency department. Aspiration of the knee yielded cloudy fluid, and cultures of the fluid and blood were positive for *S. aureus.*

1. Name two possible sources of this organism.
2. Staphylococci cause a variety of diseases, including cutaneous infections, endocarditis, food poisoning, SSSS, and TSS. How do the clinical symptoms of these diseases differ from the infection in this patient? Which of these diseases are intoxications?
3. What toxins have been implicated in staphylococcal diseases? Which staphylococcal enzymes have been proposed as virulence factors?
4. Which structures in the staphylococcal cell and which toxins protect the bacterium from phagocytosis?
5. What is the antibiotic of choice for treating staphylococcal infections? (Give two examples.)

19 Streptococcus *and* Enterococcus

An 8-year-old boy presented to his pediatrician with a low-grade fever and a diffuse erythematous rash over his chest, which developed 2 days after he complained of a painful sore throat. An exudate was present over the tonsillar area of the throat and covered his tongue. The clinical diagnosis of scarlet fever was confirmed by positive antigen test for group A Streptococcus from a throat specimen. The genera Streptococcus and Enterococcus include a large number of species capable of causing a wide spectrum of diseases.

1. What sites of the human body are normally colonized with *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *S. agalactiae*, and *S. pneumoniae*? How does this relate to infections caused by these bacteria?
2. The viridans streptococci (i.e., α-hemolytic and nonhemolytic streptococci) are subdivided into five groups. What are the groups and the specific diseases associated with each group?
3. Enterococci, like many other bacteria, can cause urinary tract infections but primarily in hospitalized patients. What characteristics of this bacterium are responsible for the predilection for disease in this population?
4. What biochemical properties are used to separate enterococci from the staphylococci and streptococci?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

Streptococcus pyogenes (Group A)

Trigger Words

Group A, pharyngitis, pyoderma, rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis

Biology and Virulence

- Rapidly growing gram-positive cocci arranged in chains; group-specific carbohydrate (A antigen) and type-specific proteins (M protein) in cell wall
- Virulence determined by ability to avoid phagocytosis (mediated primarily by capsule, M and M-like proteins, and C5a peptidase), adhere to and invade host cells (M protein, lipoteichoic acid, and F protein), and produce toxins (streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxins, streptolysin S, streptolysin O, streptokinase, and DNases)

Epidemiology

- Transient colonization in upper respiratory tract and skin surface, with disease caused by recently acquired strains (before protective antibodies are produced)
- Pharyngitis and soft-tissue infections typically caused by strains with different M proteins
- Person-to-person spread by respiratory droplets (pharyngitis) or through breaks in skin after direct contact with infected person, fomite, or arthropod vector
- Individuals at higher risk for disease include children 5 to 15 years old (pharyngitis); children 2 to 5 years old with poor personal hygiene (pyoderma); patients with soft-tissue infection (streptococcal toxic shock syndrome); patients with prior streptococcal pharyngitis (rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis) or soft-tissue infection (glomerulonephritis)

Diseases

- Responsible for suppurative diseases (pharyngitis, soft-tissue infections, streptococcal toxic shock) and nonsuppurative diseases (rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis)

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is useful in soft-tissue infections but not pharyngitis or nonsuppurative complications
- Direct tests for the group A antigen are useful for the diagnosis of streptococcal pharyngitis
- Isolates identified by catalase (negative), positive L-pyrrolidonyl arylamidase (PYR) reaction, susceptibility to bacitracin, and presence of group-specific antigen (group A antigen)
- Antistreptolysin O test is useful for confirming rheumatic fever or glomerulonephritis associated with streptococcal pharyngitis; anti-DNase B test should be performed for glomerulonephritis associated with pharyngitis or soft-tissue infections

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Penicillin V or amoxicillin used to treat pharyngitis; oral cephalosporin or macrolide for penicillin-allergic patients; intravenous penicillin plus clindamycin used for systemic infections
- Oropharyngeal carriage occurring after treatment can be re-treated; treatment is not indicated for prolonged asymptomatic carriage because antibiotics disrupt normal protective flora
- Starting antibiotic therapy within 10 days in patients with pharyngitis prevents rheumatic fever
- For glomerulonephritis, no specific antibiotic treatment or prophylaxis is indicated
- For patients with a history of rheumatic fever, antibiotic prophylaxis is required before procedures (e.g., dental) that can induce bacteremias leading to endocarditis

Streptococcus agalactiae (Group B)

Trigger Words

Group B, neonatal disease, screening pregnant women

Biology and Virulence

- Rapidly growing gram-positive cocci arranged in chains; group-specific carbohydrate (B antigen) and type-specific capsular carbohydrates (Ia, Ib, and II-VIII)
- Virulence determined primarily by ability to avoid phagocytosis (mediated by capsule)

Epidemiology

- Asymptomatic colonization of the upper respiratory tract and genitourinary tract
- Early-onset disease acquired by neonates from mother during pregnancy or at time of birth
- Neonates are at higher risk for infection if (1) there is premature rupture of membranes, prolonged labor, preterm birth, or disseminated maternal group B streptococcal disease, and (2) mother is without type-specific antibodies and has low complement levels
- Women with genital colonization are at risk for postpartum disease
- Men and nonpregnant women with diabetes mellitus, cancer, or alcoholism are at increased risk for disease
- No seasonal incidence

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

Diseases

- Responsible for neonatal disease (early-onset and late-onset disease with meningitis, pneumonia, and bacteremia), infections in pregnant women (endometritis, wound infections, and urinary tract infections), and other adults (bacteremia, pneumonia, bone and joint infections, and skin and soft-tissue infections)

Diagnosis

- Microscopy useful for meningitis (cerebrospinal fluid), pneumonia (lower respiratory secretions), and wound infections (exudates)
- Antigen tests are less sensitive than microscopy and should not be used
- Culture most sensitive test; a selective broth (i.e., LIM) is needed for optimal detection of vaginal carriage
- Polymerase chain reaction–based assays to detect vaginal carriage in pregnant women are commercially available; currently require use of enrichment broth for optimum sensitivity
- Isolates identified by demonstration of group-specific cell wall carbohydrate or positive nucleic acid amplification test

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Penicillin G is the drug of choice; empirical therapy with broad-spectrum antibiotics (broad-spectrum cephalosporin + aminoglycoside) used until specific pathogen identified; combination of penicillin and aminoglycoside is used in patients with serious infections; a cephalosporin or vancomycin is used for patients allergic to penicillin
- For high-risk babies, penicillin is given at least 4 hours before delivery
- No vaccine is currently available

STREPTOCOCCUS PNEUMONIAE

Trigger Words

Diplococci, capsule, pneumonia, meningitis, vaccine

Biology and Virulence

- Elongated gram-positive cocci arranged in pairs (diplococci) and short chains; cell wall includes teichoic acid rich in phosphorylcholine (C polysaccharide), which is required for the activity of an autolytic enzyme, amidase
- Virulence determined by ability to colonize oropharynx (surface protein adhesions), spread into normally sterile tissues (pneumolysin, immunoglobulin [Ig]A protease), stimulate local inflammatory response (teichoic acid, peptidoglycan fragments, pneumolysin), and evade phagocytic killing (polysaccharide capsule)
- Responsible for pneumonia, sinusitis and otitis media, meningitis, and bacteremia

Epidemiology

- Most infections are caused by endogenous spread from the colonized nasopharynx or oropharynx to distal site (e.g., lungs, sinuses, ears, blood, meninges); person-to-person spread through infectious droplets is rare
- Colonization is highest in young children and their contacts
- Individuals with antecedent viral respiratory tract disease or other conditions that interfere with bacterial clearance from respiratory tract are at increased risk for pulmonary disease
- Children and the elderly are at greatest risk for meningitis
- People with hematologic disorder (e.g., malignancy, sickle cell disease) or functional asplenia are at risk for fulminant sepsis
- Although the organism is ubiquitous, disease is more common in cool months

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is highly sensitive, as is culture, unless the patient has been treated with antibiotics
- Antigen tests for pneumococcal C polysaccharide are sensitive with cerebrospinal fluid (meningitis) but not with urine (meningitis, pneumonia, other infections)
- Nucleic acid–based tests are the tests of choice for the diagnosis of meningitis, particularly in patients who have been treated with an antibiotic
- Culture requires use of enriched-nutrient media (e.g., sheep blood agar); organism susceptible to many antibiotics, so culture can be negative in partially treated patients
- Isolates identified by catalase (negative), susceptibility to optochin, and solubility in bile

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Penicillin is the drug of choice for susceptible strains, although resistance is increasingly common
- Vancomycin combined with ceftriaxone is used for empirical therapy; monotherapy with a cephalosporin, fluoroquinolone, or vancomycin can be used in patients with susceptible isolates
- Immunization with 13-valent conjugated vaccine is recommended for all children younger than 2 years; a 23-valent polysaccharide vaccine is recommended for adults at risk for disease

ENTEROCOCCUS

Trigger Words

Diplococci, gastrointestinal carriage, drug resistant, urinary tract infections, peritonitis

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-positive cocci arranged in pairs and short chains (morphologically similar to *S. pneumoniae*)
- Cell wall with group-specific antigen (group D glycerol teichoic acid)
- Virulence mediated by ability to adhere to host surfaces and form biofilms and by antibiotic resistance

Epidemiology

- Colonizes the gastrointestinal tracts of humans and animals; spreads to other mucosal surfaces if broad-spectrum antibiotics eliminate the normal bacterial population
- Cell wall structure typical of gram-positive bacteria, which allows survival on environmental surfaces for prolonged periods
- Most infections endogenous (from patient's bacterial flora); some caused by patient-to-patient spread
- Patients at increased risk include those hospitalized for prolonged periods and treated with broad-spectrum antibiotics (particularly cephalosporins, to which enterococci are naturally resistant)

Diseases

- Diseases include urinary tract infections, peritonitis (usually polymicrobic), wound infections, and bacteremia with or without endocarditis

Diagnosis

- Grows readily on common nonselective media; differentiated from related organisms by simple tests (catalase negative, PYR positive, resistant to bile and optochin)

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Therapy for serious infections requires combination of an aminoglycoside with a cell wall–active antibiotic (penicillin, ampicillin, or vancomycin); newer agents used for antibiotic-resistant bacteria include linezolid, daptomycin, tigecycline, and quinupristin/dalfopristin
- Antibiotic resistance to each of these drugs is becoming increasingly common, and infections with many isolates (particularly *Enterococcus faecium*) are not treatable with any antibiotics
- Prevention and control of infections require careful restriction of antibiotic use and implementation of appropriate infection-control practices

TABLE 19.1 Important Streptococci and Enterococci

Organism	Historical Derivation
Streptococcus	*streptus*, pliant; *coccus*, grain or berry (a pliant berry or coccus; refers to the appearance of long, flexible chains of cocci)
S. agalactiae	*agalactia*, want of milk (original isolate [called *S. mastitidis*] was responsible for bovine mastitis)
S. anginosus	*anginosus*, pertaining to angina
S. constellatus	*constellatus*, studded with stars (original isolate embedded in agar with smaller colonies surrounding the large colony; satellite formation does not occur around colonies on the surface of an agar plate)
S. dysgalactiae	*dys*, ill, hard; *galactia*, pertaining to milk (loss of milk secretion; isolates associated with bovine mastitis)
S. gallolyticus	*gallatum*, gallate; *lyticus*, to loosen (able to digest or hydrolyze methyl gallate)
S. intermedius	*intermedius*, intermediate (initial confusion about whether this was an aerobic or an anaerobic bacterium)
S. mitis	*mitis*, mild (incorrectly thought to cause mild infections)
S. mutans	*mutans*, changing (cocci that may appear rodlike, particularly when initially isolated in culture)
S. pneumoniae	*pneumon*, the lungs (causes pneumonia)
S. pyogenes	*pyus*, pus; *gennaio*, beget or producing (pus producing; typically associated with formation of pus in wounds)
S. salivarius	*salivarius*, salivary (found in the mouth in saliva)
Enterococcus	*enteron*, intestine; coccus, berry (intestinal coccus)
E. faecalis	*faecalis*, relating to feces
E. faecium	*faecium*, of feces
E. gallinarum	*gallinarum*, of hens (original source was intestines of domestic fowl)
E. casseliflavus	*casseli*, Kassel's; *flavus*, yellow (Kassel's yellow)

TABLE 19.2 Catalase-Negative, Gram-Positive Cocci and Their Diseases

Organism	Diseases
Abiotrophia	Bacteremia, endocarditis (native and prosthetic valves), nosocomial brain abscesses and meningitis, eye infections
Aerococcus	Bacteremia, endocarditis, urinary tract infections
Enterococcus	Bacteremia, endocarditis, urinary tract infections, peritonitis, wound infections
Granulicatella	Bacteremia, endocarditis (native and prosthetic valves), eye infections
Lactococcus	Bacteremia in immunocompromised patients, endocarditis (native and prosthetic valves), urinary tract infections, osteomyelitis
Leuconostoc	Opportunistic infections, including bacteremia, wound infections, central nervous system infections, and peritonitis
Pediococcus	Opportunistic infections, including bacteremia in severely immunocompromised patients
Streptococcus	Refer to Tables 19.3 and 19.4

The genera *Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus* are a diverse collection of gram-positive cocci typically arranged in pairs or chains (in contrast to the clusters formed by *Staphylococcus*) (Table 19.1). Most species are facultative anaerobes, and some grow only in an atmosphere enhanced with carbon dioxide (capnophilic growth). Their nutritional requirements are complex, necessitating the use of blood- or serum-enriched media for isolation. Carbohydrates are fermented, resulting in the production of lactic acid and, unlike *Staphylococcus* species, streptococci and enterococci are catalase negative. The number of genera of catalase negative, gram-positive cocci that are recognized as human pathogens continues to increase; however, *Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus* are the genera most frequently isolated and most commonly responsible for human disease. The other genera are relatively uncommon and are listed in Table 19.2, but they are not discussed further.

The classification of more than 100 species within the genus *Streptococcus* is complicated because three different overlapping schemes are used: (1) serologic properties: **Lancefield groupings** (originally A to W); (2) **hemolytic patterns:** complete (beta [β]) hemolysis, incomplete (alpha [α]) hemolysis, and no (gamma [γ]) hemolysis; and (3) **biochemical (physiologic) properties.** Although this is an oversimplification, it is practical to think that the streptococci are divided into two groups: (1) the β-hemolytic streptococci, which are classified by Lancefield grouping, and (2) the α-hemolytic and γ-hemolytic streptococci, which are classified by biochemical testing. The latter group is referred to collectively as **viridans streptococci,** which a name derived from *viridis* (Latin for green), referring to the green pigment formed by the partial hemolysis of blood agar.

Rebecca Lancefield developed the serologic classification scheme in 1933. β-Hemolytic strains possess group-specific cell wall antigens, most of which are carbohydrates. These antigens can be readily detected by immunologic assays and have been useful for the rapid identification of some important streptococcal pathogens. For example, one disease caused by *Streptococcus pyogenes* (classified as group A *Streptococcus* in the Lancefield typing scheme) is streptococcal pharyngitis ("strep throat"). The group antigen for this organism can be detected directly from throat swab specimens by a variety of rapid point-of-care immunoassays, which are commonly used diagnostic tests in physician office laboratories. The Lancefield typing scheme is used today primarily for only a few species of streptococci (e.g., primarily in groups A and B, with groups C, F, and G also important; Table 19.3).

The enterococci ("enteric cocci") were originally classified as **group D streptococci** because they share the **group D cell wall antigen,** which is a glycerol teichoic acid, with other streptococci. In 1984, the enterococci were reclassified into the genus *Enterococcus,* and there are currently 58 species in this genus; however, relatively few species are important human pathogens. The most commonly isolated and clinically important species are ***Enterococcus faecalis*** and ***E. faecium. E. gallinarum*** and ***E. casseliflavus*** are also common colonizers of the human intestinal tract and are important because these species are inherently resistant to vancomycin.

TABLE 19.3 Classification of Common β-Hemolytic Streptococci

Group	Representative Species	Diseases
A	*S. pyogenes*	Pharyngitis, skin and soft-tissue infections, bacteremia, rheumatic fever, acute glomerulonephritis
	S. anginosus group	Abscesses
B	*S. agalactiae*	Neonatal disease, endometritis, wound infections, urinary tract infections, bacteremia, pneumonia, skin and soft-tissue infections
C	*S. dysgalactiae*	Pharyngitis, acute glomerulonephritis
F, G	*S. anginosus* group	Abscesses
	S. dysgalactiae	Pharyngitis, acute glomerulonephritis

TABLE 19.4 Classification of Viridans Group of *Streptococcus*

Group	Representative Species	Diseases
Anginosus	*S. anginosus, S. constellatus, S. intermedius*	Abscesses in brain, oropharynx, or peritoneal cavity
Mitis	*S. mitis, S. pneumoniae, S. oralis*	Subacute endocarditis; sepsis in neutropenic patients; pneumonia; meningitis
Mutans	*S. mutans, S. sobrinus*	Dental caries; bacteremia
Salivarius	*S. salivarius*	Bacteremia; endocarditis
Bovis	*S. gallolyticus* subsp. *gallolyticus,* subsp. *pasteurianus*	Bacteremia associated with gastrointestinal cancer (subsp. *gallolyticus*); meningitis (subsp. *pasteurianus*)
Ungrouped	*S. suis*	Meningitis; bacteremia; streptococcal toxic shock syndrome

The viridans streptococci are subdivided into five clinically distinct groups (Table 19.4). Some species of the viridans streptococci can be β-hemolytic, as well as α-hemolytic and nonhemolytic, which unfortunately has resulted in classifying these bacteria by both their Lancefield grouping and as viridans streptococci. Although the classification of the streptococci is somewhat confusing, clinical disease is well defined for individual species, which will be the emphasis for the remainder of this chapter.

Streptococcus pyogenes

S. pyogenes causes a variety of suppurative (characterized by pus formation) and nonsuppurative diseases (Box 19.1). Although this organism is the most common cause of bacterial pharyngitis, the notoriety of *S. pyogenes,* popularly called "flesh-eating" bacteria, results from life-threatening myonecrosis caused by this organism.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Isolates of *S. pyogenes* are spherical cocci, 1 to 2 μm in diameter, arranged in short chains in clinical specimens and longer chains when grown in liquid media (Fig. 19.1). Growth is optimal on enriched-blood agar media, but it is inhibited if the medium contains a high concentration of glucose. After 24 hours of incubation, small 1- to 2-mm white colonies with large zones of β-hemolysis are observed (Fig. 19.2).

The antigenic structure of *S. pyogenes* has been extensively studied. The basic structural framework of the cell wall is the peptidoglycan layer, which is similar in composition to that found in other gram-positive bacteria. Within the cell wall are group-specific and type-specific antigens. The **group-specific carbohydrate** that constitutes approximately 10% of the dry weight of the cell **(Lancefield group A antigen)** is a dimer of *N*-acetylglucosamine and rhamnose. This antigen is used to classify group A streptococci and distinguish them from other streptococcal groups. **M protein** is the major type-specific protein associated with virulent strains. It consists of two polypeptide chains complexed in an alpha helix. The protein is anchored in the cytoplasmic membrane, extends through the cell wall, and protrudes above the cell surface. The carboxyl terminus, which is anchored in the cytoplasmic membrane, and the portion of the molecule in the cell wall are highly conserved (by amino acid sequence) among all group A streptococci. The amino terminus, which extends above the cell surface, is responsible for the antigenic differences observed among the unique serotypes of M proteins. M proteins are subdivided into class I and class II molecules. The class I M proteins share exposed antigens, whereas the class II M proteins do not have exposed shared antigens. Although strains with both classes of antigens can cause suppurative infections and glomerulonephritis, only bacteria with class I (exposed shared antigen) M proteins cause rheumatic fever. The epidemiologic classification of *S. pyogenes* is based on sequence analysis of the *emm* gene that encodes the M proteins. Other important components in the cell wall of *S. pyogenes* include **M-like surface proteins, lipoteichoic acid,** and **F protein.** A complex of more than 20 genes that comprise the *emm* gene superfamily encode the M-like proteins, as well as the M proteins and immunoglobulin-binding proteins. Lipoteichoic acid and F protein facilitate binding of host cells by complexing with fibronectin, which is present on the host cell surface.

Some strains of *S. pyogenes* have an outer hyaluronic acid **capsule** that is antigenically indistinguishable from hyaluronic acid in mammalian connective tissues. Because the capsule can protect the bacteria from phagocytic clearance, encapsulated strains are more likely to be responsible for severe systemic infections.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The virulence of group A streptococci is determined by the ability of the bacteria to avoid opsonization and phagocytosis, adhere to and invade host cells, and produce a variety of toxins and enzymes.

BOX 19.1 Streptococcal and Enterococcal Diseases: Clinical Summaries

***Streptococcus pyogenes* (Group A)**

Suppurative Infections

Pharyngitis: reddened pharynx with exudates generally present; cervical lymphadenopathy can be prominent
Scarlet fever: diffuse erythematous rash beginning on the chest and spreading to the extremities; complication of streptococcal pharyngitis
Pyoderma: localized skin infection with vesicles progressing to pustules; no evidence of systemic disease
Erysipelas: localized skin infection with pain, inflammation, lymph node enlargement, and systemic symptoms
Cellulitis: infection of the skin that involves the subcutaneous tissues
Necrotizing fasciitis: deep infection of skin that involves destruction of muscle and fat layers
Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome: multiorgan systemic infection resembling staphylococcal toxic shock syndrome; however, most patients are bacteremic and with evidence of fasciitis
Other suppurative diseases: variety of other infections recognized including puerperal sepsis, lymphangitis, and pneumonia

Nonsuppurative Infections

Rheumatic fever: characterized by inflammatory changes of the heart (pancarditis), joints (arthralgias to arthritis), blood vessels, and subcutaneous tissues
Acute glomerulonephritis: acute inflammation of the renal glomeruli with edema, hypertension, hematuria, and proteinuria

Streptococcus agalactiae *(Group B)*

Early-onset neonatal disease: within 7 days of birth, infected newborns develop signs and symptoms of pneumonia, meningitis, and sepsis
Late-onset neonatal disease: more than 1 week after birth, neonates develop signs and symptoms of bacteremia with meningitis
Infections in pregnant women: most often present as postpartum endometritis, wound infections, and urinary tract infections; bacteremia and disseminated complications may occur
Infections in other adult patients: most common diseases include bacteremia, pneumonia, bone and joint infections, and skin and soft-tissue infections

Other β-Hemolytic Streptococci

Abscess formation in deep tissues: associated with *S. anginosus* group
Pharyngitis: associated with *S. dysgalactiae;* disease resembles that caused by *S. pyogenes;* can be complicated with acute glomerulonephritis

Viridans Streptococci

Abscess formation in deep tissues: associated with *S. anginosus* group
Septicemia in neutropenic patients: associated with *S. mitis* group
Subacute endocarditis: associated with *S. mitis* and *S. salivarius* groups
Dental caries: associated with *S. mutans* group
Malignancies of gastrointestinal tract: associated with *S. bovis* group (*S. gallolyticus* subsp. *gallolyticus*)
Meningitis: associated with *S. gallolyticus* subsp. *pasteurianus, S. suis,* and *S. mitis* group

Streptococcus pneumoniae

Pneumonia: acute onset with severe chills and sustained fever; productive cough with blood-tinged sputum; lobar consolidation
Meningitis: severe infection involving the meninges, with headache, fever, and sepsis; high mortality and severe neurologic deficits in survivors
Bacteremia: more common in patients with meningitis than with pneumonia, otitis, media, or sinusitis; overwhelming sepsis in asplenic patients

Enterococcus faecalis *and* Enterococcus faecium

Urinary tract infection: dysuria and pyuria, most commonly in hospitalized patients with an indwelling urinary catheter and receiving broad-spectrum cephalosporin antibiotics
Peritonitis: abdominal swelling and tenderness after abdominal trauma or surgery; patients typically are acutely ill and febrile and have positive blood cultures; typically a polymicrobic infection
Bacteremia: associated with either a localized infection or endocarditis
Endocarditis: infection of the heart endothelium or valves; associated with persistent bacteremia; can present acutely or chronically

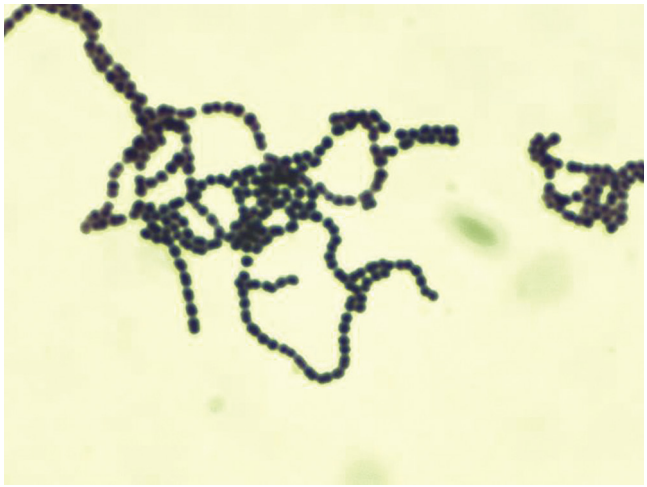


Fig. 19.1 Gram stain of *Streptococcus pyogenes*.

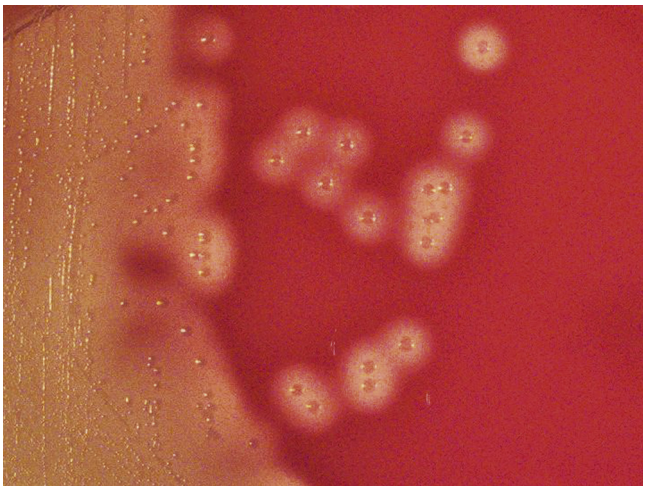


Fig. 19.2 *Streptococcus pyogenes* (group A) typically appears as small colonies with a large zone of hemolysis.

Initial Host–Parasite Interactions

S. pyogenes has multiple mechanisms for **avoiding opsonization and phagocytosis.** The **hyaluronic acid capsule** is a poor immunogen and interferes with phagocytosis. The **M proteins** also interfere with phagocytosis by blocking the binding of the complement component C3b, which is an important mediator of phagocytosis. C3b may also be degraded by factor H, which binds to the cell surface of the M protein. M-like proteins resemble M proteins in structure and are under the same regulatory control. These proteins interfere with phagocytosis by binding either the Fc fragment of antibodies or fibronectin, which blocks activation of complement by the alternate pathway and reduces the amount of bound C3b. Finally, *S. pyogenes* has **C5a peptidase** on the surface. This serine protease inactivates C5a, which is a chemoattractant of neutrophils and mononuclear phagocytes, and protects the bacteria from early clearance from infected tissues.

Many different bacterial antigens have been demonstrated to mediate **adherence to host cells,** and lipoteichoic acid, M proteins, and F protein are the most important. The initial adherence is a weak interaction between **lipoteichoic acid** and fatty acid binding sites on fibronectin and epithelial cells. Subsequent adherence involves **M protein, F protein,** and other adhesins that interact with specific host cell receptors.

S. pyogenes can **invade epithelial cells,** which is a process mediated by **M protein** and **F protein** and other bacterial antigens. This internalization is believed to be important for maintenance of persistent infections (e.g., recurrent streptococcal pharyngitis) and invasion into deep tissues.

Toxins and Enzymes

The **streptococcal pyrogenic exotoxins (Spe),** originally called *erythrogenic toxins,* are produced by lysogenic strains of streptococci and are similar to the toxin produced in *Corynebacterium diphtheriae.* Four immunologically distinct heat-labile toxins (SpeA, SpeB, SpeC, and SpeF) have been described in *S. pyogenes* and in rare strains of groups C and G streptococci. The toxins act as superantigens, interacting with both macrophages and helper T cells, with the enhanced release of proinflammatory cytokines. This family of exotoxins is believed to be responsible for many of the clinical manifestations of severe streptococcal diseases, including necrotizing fasciitis and streptococcal toxic shock syndrome, as well as the rash observed in patients with scarlet fever. It is unclear whether the rash results from the direct effect of the toxin on the capillary bed or, more likely, is secondary to a hypersensitivity reaction.

Streptolysin S is an oxygen-stable, nonimmunogenic, cell-bound hemolysin that can lyse erythrocytes, leukocytes, and platelets. It can also stimulate the release of lysosomal contents after engulfment, with subsequent death of the phagocytic cell. Streptolysin S is produced in the presence of serum (the S indicates serum stable) and is responsible for the characteristic β-hemolysis seen on blood agar media.

Streptolysin O is an oxygen-labile hemolysin capable of lysing erythrocytes, leukocytes, platelets, and cultured cells. This hemolysin is antigenically related to oxygen-labile toxins produced by *S. pneumoniae, Clostridium tetani, C. perfringens, Bacillus cereus,* and *Listeria monocytogenes.* Antibodies are readily formed against streptolysin O **(antistreptolysin O [ASO] antibodies)** (this feature differentiates it from streptolysin S), and they are useful for documenting recent group A streptococcal infection **(ASO test)**. Streptolysin O is irreversibly **inhibited by cholesterol** in skin lipids, so patients with cutaneous infections do not develop ASO antibodies.

At least two forms of **streptokinase (A and B)** have been described. These enzymes mediate the cleavage of plasminogen, releasing the protease plasmin that, in turn, cleaves fibrin and fibrinogen. Thus these enzymes can lyse blood clots and fibrin deposits and facilitate the rapid spread of *S. pyogenes* in infected tissues. Antibodies directed against these enzymes **(antistreptokinase antibodies)** are useful markers for infection.

Four immunologically distinct deoxyribonucleases **(DNases A to D)** have been identified. These enzymes are not cytolytic but can depolymerize free deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) present in pus. This process reduces the viscosity of the abscess material and facilitates spread of the organisms. Antibodies developed against DNase B **(anti-DNase B test)** are an important marker for patients with cutaneous infections who fail to make antibodies against streptolysin O (see preceding text).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has estimated that at least 10 million cases of noninvasive disease occur annually, with pharyngitis and pyoderma the most common infections, or about 15% of all patients with pharyngitis have an infection with *S. pyogenes* (almost all other infections are caused by viruses). Approximately 20% to 30% of patients with pyoderma (impetigo) have an infection with *S. pyogenes,* whereas the remainder are infected with *Staphylococcus aureus*.

Group A streptococci can colonize the oropharynx of healthy children and young adults in the absence of clinical disease; however, isolation of *S. pyogenes* in a patient with pharyngitis is generally considered significant. Asymptomatic colonization with *S. pyogenes* is transient, regulated by the person's ability to mount specific immunity to the M protein of the colonizing strain and the presence of competitive organisms in the oropharynx. Untreated patients produce antibodies against the specific bacterial M protein that can result in long-lived immunity; however, this antibody response is diminished in treated patients.

In general, *S. pyogenes* disease is caused by recently acquired strains that can establish an infection of the pharynx or skin before specific antibodies are produced or competitive organisms are able to proliferate. Pharyngitis caused by *S. pyogenes* is primarily a disease of children between the ages of 5 and 15 years, but infants and adults are also susceptible. The pathogen is spread from person to person through respiratory droplets. Crowding, such as in classrooms and day-care facilities, increases the opportunity for the organism to spread, particularly during the winter months. Soft-tissue infections (i.e., pyoderma, erysipelas, cellulitis, fasciitis) are typically preceded by initial skin colonization with group A streptococci, after which the

organisms are introduced into the superficial or deep tissues through a break in the skin.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Suppurative Streptococcal Disease

Pharyngitis

Pharyngitis generally develops 2 to 4 days after exposure to the pathogen, with an abrupt onset of sore throat, fever, malaise, and headache. The posterior pharynx can appear erythematous with an exudate, and cervical lymphadenopathy can be prominent. Despite these clinical signs and symptoms, differentiating streptococcal pharyngitis from viral pharyngitis is difficult. An accurate diagnosis can be made only with specific laboratory tests.

Scarlet fever is a complication of streptococcal pharyngitis that occurs when the infecting strain is infected with a bacteriophage that mediates production of a pyrogenic exotoxin. Within 1 to 2 days after the initial clinical symptoms of pharyngitis develop, a diffuse erythematous rash initially appears on the upper chest and then spreads to the extremities. The area around the mouth is generally spared **(circumoral pallor),** as are the palms and soles. A yellowish-white coating initially covers the tongue and is later shed, revealing a red, raw surface beneath **("strawberry tongue").** The rash, which blanches when pressed, is best seen on the abdomen and in skinfolds **(Pastia lines).** The rash disappears over the next 5 to 7 days and is followed by desquamation (shedding) of the superficial skin layer. Suppurative complications of streptococcal pharyngitis (e.g., abscess formation around the tonsils and back of the throat) are rare since the advent of antimicrobial therapy.

Pyoderma

Pyoderma (impetigo) is a confined, purulent *(pyo)* infection of the skin *(derma)* that primarily affects exposed areas (i.e., face, arms, legs). Infection begins when the skin is colonized with *S. pyogenes* after direct contact with an infected person or fomites (e.g., contaminated clothing, linens, or surfaces). The organism is introduced into the subcutaneous tissues through a break in the skin (e.g., scratch, insect bite). Vesicles develop, progressing to pustules (pus-filled vesicles), and then rupture and crust over. The regional lymph nodes can become enlarged, but systemic signs of infection (e.g., fever, sepsis, involvement of other organs) are uncommon. Secondary dermal spread of the infection caused by scratching is typical.

Pyoderma is seen primarily during the warm, moist months in young children with poor personal hygiene. Although *S. pyogenes* is responsible for most streptococcal skin infections, groups C and G streptococci have also been implicated. *S. aureus* is also commonly present in the lesions. The strains of streptococci that cause skin infections differ from those that cause pharyngitis, although pyoderma serotypes can colonize the pharynx and establish a persistent carriage state.

Erysipelas

Erysipelas (*erythros,* red; *pella,* skin) is an acute infection of the skin. Patients experience localized pain, inflammation (erythema, warmth), lymph node enlargement, and systemic signs (chills, fever, leukocytosis). The involved skin area is typically raised and distinctly differentiated from the uninvolved skin (Fig. 19.3). Erysipelas occurs most commonly in young children or older adults, historically on the face but now more commonly on the legs, and usually is preceded by infections of the respiratory tract or skin with *S. pyogenes* (less commonly with group C or G streptococci).

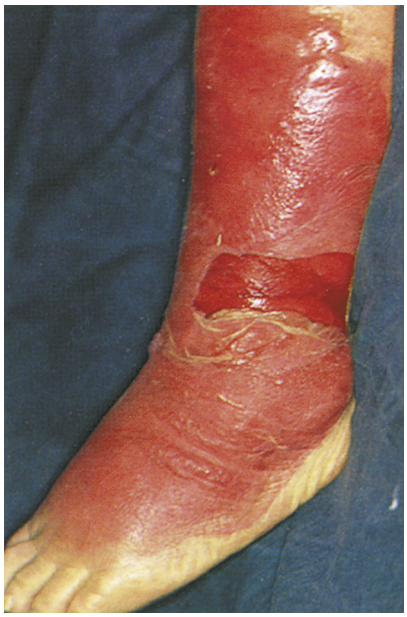


Fig. 19.3 Acute stage of erysipelas of the leg. Note the erythema in the involved area and bullae formation. (From Emond, R.T., Rowland, H.A.K., Welsby, P. 1995. Colour Atlas of Infectious Diseases, third ed. Wolfe, London.)

Cellulitis

Unlike erysipelas, **cellulitis** typically involves both the skin and deeper subcutaneous tissues, and the distinction between infected and noninfected areas of skin is not as clear. As in erysipelas, local inflammation and systemic signs are observed. Precise identification of the offending organism is necessary because many different organisms can cause cellulitis.

Necrotizing Fasciitis

Necrotizing fasciitis (also called *streptococcal gangrene*) is an infection that occurs deep in the subcutaneous tissue, spreads along the fascial planes, and is characterized by an extensive destruction of muscle and fat (Fig. 19.4). The organism (referred to in news media as flesh-eating bacteria) is introduced into the tissue through a break in the skin (e.g., minor cut or trauma, vesicular viral infection, burn, surgery). Initially, there is evidence of cellulitis, after which bullae form and gangrene (tissue necrosis associated with obstructed blood flow) and systemic symptoms develop. Toxicity, multiorgan failure, and death are the hallmarks of this disease; thus prompt medical intervention is necessary to save the patient. Unlike cellulitis, which can be treated with antibiotic therapy, fasciitis must also be treated aggressively with surgical debridement of infected tissue.

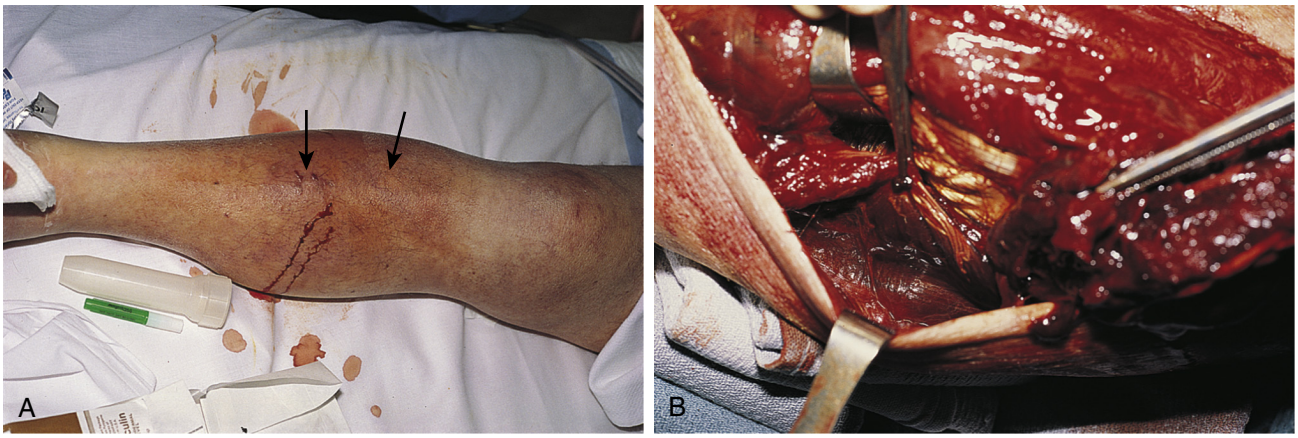


Fig. 19.4 Necrotizing fasciitis caused by *Streptococcus pyogenes*. The patient presented with a 3-day history of malaise, diffuse myalgia, and low-grade fever. Over 3 hours, the pain became excruciating and was localized to the calf. (A) Note the two small, purple bullae over the calf *(arrows)*. (B) Extensive necrotizing fasciitis was present on surgical exploration. The patient died despite aggressive surgical and medical management. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M. 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.)

Streptococcal Toxic Shock Syndrome

Although the incidence of severe *S. pyogenes* disease declined steadily after the advent of antibiotics, this trend changed dramatically in the late 1980s, when infections characterized by multisystem toxicity were reported (Clinical Case 19.1). Patients with this syndrome initially experience soft-tissue inflammation at the site of the infection, pain, and nonspecific symptoms such as fever, chills, malaise, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. The pain intensifies as the disease progresses to shock and organ failure (e.g., kidney, lungs, liver, heart); these features are similar to those of staphylococcal toxic shock syndrome. However, in contrast with staphylococcal disease, most patients with streptococcal disease are bacteremic and many have necrotizing fasciitis.

Although people of all age groups are susceptible to **streptococcal toxic shock syndrome,** increased risk for disease is observed for patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, cancer, diabetes mellitus, heart or pulmonary disease, and varicella zoster virus infection, as well as for intravenous drug abusers and those who abuse alcohol. The strains of *S. pyogenes* responsible for this syndrome differ from the strains causing pharyngitis because most of the former are M serotypes 1 or 3 and many have prominent mucopolysaccharide hyaluronic acid capsules (mucoid strains). The production of pyrogenic exotoxins, particularly SpeA and SpeC, is also a prominent feature of these organisms.

Clinical Case 19.1 Streptococcal Toxic Shock Syndrome

Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome is a frightening, deadly infection. This is illustrated by a patient reported by Cone and associates in 1987 (*N Engl J Med* 317:146–149, 1987). The patient was a 46-year-old man who was scratched on his forearm by his German shepherd dog and then reopened the wound while at work the next day. The following evening, he developed a low-grade fever, chills, backache, and myalgia. When he presented to the local emergency department, minimal erythema and a thin serous discharge were noted at the wound site. Cultures of the wound and blood were collected, and intravenous antibiotics were started. Within 10 hours, the patient became confused and hypotensive. He was transferred to the intensive care unit. Because the erythema over the wound had spread and multiple bullae formed on the wound surface, the patient was taken to surgery, during which yellowish fluid in the muscle tissues was drained. Cultures from the surgical site, as well as the original wound cultures, grew *Streptococcus pyogenes*. After surgical debridement, the patient continued to decline, with the development of abnormal liver function, renal failure, pulmonary distress, and cardiac abnormalities. The patient developed persistent hypotension and died 3 days after admission to the hospital. The fulminant progression of this disease and multiorgan failure underlines the need for aggressive medical intervention.

Other Suppurative Diseases

S. pyogenes has been associated with a variety of other suppurative infections, including puerperal sepsis, lymphangitis, and pneumonia. Although these infections are still seen, they became less common after the introduction of antibiotic therapy.

Bacteremia

S. pyogenes is one of the most common β-hemolytic streptococci isolated in blood cultures. Patients with localized infections (e.g., pharyngitis, pyoderma, erysipelas) rarely are bacteremic, but blood cultures are positive in most patients with necrotizing fasciitis or toxic shock syndrome (in contrast with staphylococcal toxic shock syndrome). The mortality in this population of patients approaches 40% in countries with a sophisticated medical infrastructure and is much higher in resource-limited countries.

Nonsuppurative Streptococcal Disease

Rheumatic Fever

Rheumatic fever is a nonsuppurative complication of *S. pyogenes* pharyngitis. It is characterized by inflammatory changes involving the heart, joints, blood vessels, and subcutaneous tissues. Involvement of the heart manifests as

a pancarditis (endocarditis, pericarditis, myocarditis) and is often associated with subcutaneous nodules. Chronic progressive damage to the heart valves may occur. Joint manifestations can range from arthralgias to frank arthritis, with multiple joints involved in a migratory pattern (i.e., involvement shifts from one joint to another).

The incidence of rheumatic fever in the United States has decreased from a peak of more than 10,000 cases per year reported in 1961 to 112 cases reported in 1994 (the last year of mandatory reporting). In contrast, disease in developing countries is much more common, with an estimated 100 cases per 100,000 children per year. Specific class I M protein types (e.g., types 1, 3, 5, 6, and 18) with an exposed shared antigenic site are responsible for rheumatic fever. In addition, rheumatic fever is associated with streptococcal pharyngitis but not cutaneous streptococcal infections. As would be expected, the epidemiologic characteristics of the disease mimic those of streptococcal pharyngitis. It is most common in young school-age children, with no male or female predilection, and occurs primarily during the cooler months of the year. The disease occurs most commonly in patients with severe streptococcal pharyngitis; however, as many as one-third of patients have asymptomatic or mild infection. Rheumatogenic strains induce a vigorous antibody response in all patients with pharyngitis. Rheumatic fever can recur with a subsequent streptococcal infection if antibiotic prophylaxis is not used. The risk for recurrence decreases with time.

Because no specific diagnostic test can identify patients with rheumatic fever, the diagnosis is made on the basis of clinical findings and documented evidence of a recent *S. pyogenes* infection, such as (1) positive throat culture or specific nucleic acid–based test; (2) detection of the group A antigen in a throat swab; or (3) an elevation of ASO, anti-DNase B, or anti-hyaluronidase antibodies. The absence of an elevated or rising antibody titer would be strong evidence against rheumatic fever.

Acute Glomerulonephritis

The second nonsuppurative complication of streptococcal disease is **glomerulonephritis,** which is characterized by acute inflammation of the renal glomeruli with edema, hypertension, hematuria, and proteinuria. Specific nephritogenic strains of group A streptococci are associated with this disease. In contrast to rheumatic fever, acute glomerulonephritis is a sequela of both pharyngeal and pyodermal streptococcal infections; however, the nephrogenic M serotypes differ for the two primary diseases. The epidemiologic characteristics of the disease are similar to those of the initial streptococcal infection. Diagnosis is determined on the basis of the clinical presentation and the finding of evidence of a recent *S. pyogenes* infection. Young patients generally have an uneventful recovery, but the long-term prognosis for adults is unclear. Progressive irreversible loss of renal function has been observed in adults.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Gram stains of affected tissue can be used to make a rapid preliminary diagnosis of *S. pyogenes* soft-tissue infections or pyoderma. The finding of gram-positive cocci in pairs and chains in association with leukocytes is important because streptococci are not observed in Gram stains of uninfected skin. In contrast, many species of streptococci are part of the normal population of the oropharynx, so observation of streptococci in a respiratory specimen from a patient with pharyngitis has no diagnostic significance.

Antigen Detection

A variety of immunologic tests using antibodies that react with the group-specific carbohydrate in the bacterial cell wall can be used to detect group A streptococci directly in throat swabs. These tests are rapid, inexpensive, and specific. Antigen tests are not used for cutaneous or nonsuppurative diseases.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Commercial nucleic acid probe assay and nucleic acid amplification assays are available for the detection of *S. pyogenes* in pharyngeal specimens. Probe assays are less sensitive than culture, but amplification assays are as sensitive as culture and are the test of choice where available.

Culture

Despite the difficulty of collecting throat swab specimens from children, specimens must be obtained from the posterior oropharynx (e.g., tonsils). Fewer bacteria are present in the anterior areas of the mouth, and because the mouth (particularly saliva) is colonized with bacteria that inhibit the growth of *S. pyogenes,* contamination of even a properly collected specimen may obscure or suppress the growth of *S. pyogenes*. The recovery of *S. pyogenes* from patients with impetigo is not a problem. The crusted top of the lesion is raised, and the purulent material and base of the lesion are cultured. Culture specimens should not be obtained from open draining skin pustules because they might be superinfected with staphylococci. Organisms are readily recovered in the tissues and blood cultures obtained from patients with necrotizing fasciitis; however, relatively few organisms may be present in the skin of patients with erysipelas or cellulitis. As mentioned previously, streptococci have fastidious growth requirements and growth on the plates may be delayed, so prolonged incubation (2 to 3 days) should be used before a culture is considered negative.

Identification

Group A streptococci are identified definitively through the demonstration of the **group-specific carbohydrate,** typically performed with a rapid immunoassay or nucleic acid amplification test. This is generally sufficient for the diagnosis of *S. pyogenes* infection; however, differentiation of *S. pyogenes* from other species of streptococci with the group-specific A antigen can be determined by their susceptibility to **bacitracin** (an overnight test) or detection of the presence of the enzyme **L-pyrrolidonyl arylamidase (PYR)** (a 5-minute test). *S. pyogenes* is the only streptococcal species that is positive with these tests.

Antibody Detection

Patients with *S. pyogenes* disease produce antibodies to specific streptococcal enzymes. Although antibodies against the M protein are produced and are important for maintaining

immunity, these type-specific antibodies appear late in the clinical course of the disease and are not useful for diagnosis. In contrast, the measurement of antibodies against streptolysin O **(ASO test)** is useful for confirming rheumatic fever or acute glomerulonephritis resulting from a recent streptococcal pharyngeal infection. These antibodies appear 3 to 4 weeks after the initial exposure to the organism and then persist. An elevated ASO titer is not observed in patients who develop acute glomerulonephritis after streptococcal pyoderma (see previous discussion); thus the **anti-DNase B test** should be performed if streptococcal glomerulonephritis is suspected.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

S. pyogenes is very sensitive to penicillin, so oral penicillin V or amoxicillin can be used to treat streptococcal pharyngitis. For penicillin-allergic patients, an oral cephalosporin or macrolide may be used. The combined use of intravenous penicillin with a protein synthesis–inhibiting antibiotic (e.g., clindamycin) is recommended for severe systemic infections. Resistance or poor clinical response has limited the usefulness of the tetracyclines and sulfonamides, and resistance to erythromycin and the newer macrolides (e.g., azithromycin, clarithromycin) is increasing in frequency. Drainage and aggressive surgical debridement must be promptly initiated in patients with serious soft-tissue infections.

Persistent oropharyngeal carriage of *S. pyogenes* can occur after a complete course of therapy. This state may stem from poor compliance with the prescribed course of therapy, reinfection with a new strain, or persistent carriage in a sequestered focus. Because penicillin resistance has not been observed in patients with oropharyngeal carriage, penicillin can be given for an additional course of treatment. If carriage persists, retreatment is not indicated because prolonged antibiotic therapy can disrupt the normal bacterial flora. Antibiotic therapy in patients with pharyngitis speeds the relief of symptoms and, if initiated within 10 days of the initial clinical disease, prevents rheumatic fever. Antibiotic therapy does not appear to influence the progression to acute glomerulonephritis.

Patients with a history of rheumatic fever require long-term **antibiotic prophylaxis** to prevent recurrence of the disease. Because damage to the heart valve predisposes these patients to endocarditis, they also require antibiotic prophylaxis before they undergo procedures that can induce transient bacteremias (e.g., dental procedures). Specific antibiotic therapy does not alter the course of acute glomerulonephritis, and prophylactic therapy is not indicated because recurrent disease is not observed in these patients.

Streptococcus agalactiae

S. agalactiae is the only species that has the group B antigen. This organism was first recognized as a cause of puerperal sepsis. Although this disease is now relatively uncommon, *S. agalactiae* has become better known as an important cause of septicemia, pneumonia, and meningitis in newborn children, as well as a cause of serious disease in adults (see Box 19.1).

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Group B streptococci are gram-positive cocci (0.6 to 1.2 μm) that form short chains in clinical specimens and longer chains in culture, which are features that make them indistinguishable on Gram stain from *S. pyogenes.* They grow well on nutritionally enriched media and, in contrast to the colonies of *S. pyogenes,* the colonies of *S. agalactiae* are large with a narrow zone of β-hemolysis. Some strains (1% to 2%) are nonhemolytic, although their prevalence may be underestimated because nonhemolytic strains are not commonly screened for the group B antigen.

Strains of *S. agalactiae* can be characterized on the basis of three serologic markers: (1) the **group-specific cell wall polysaccharide B antigen** (Lancefield grouping antigen), (2) nine **type-specific capsular polysaccharides** (Ia, Ib, and II to VIII), and (3) **surface proteins** (the most common is the **c antigen**). The type-specific polysaccharides are important epidemiologic markers, with serotypes Ia, III, and V most commonly associated with colonization and disease. Knowledge of the specific serotypes associated with disease and of shifting patterns of serotype prevalence is important for vaccine development.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The most important virulence factor of *S. agalactiae* is the **polysaccharide capsule** that interferes with phagocytosis until the patient develops type-specific antibodies. Antibodies against the type-specific capsular antigens are protective, which is a factor that partly explains the predilection of this organism for neonates. In the absence of maternal antibodies, the neonate is at risk for disease. In addition, genital colonization with group B streptococci has been associated with increased risk of premature delivery, and premature infants are at greater risk of disease. Functional classical and alternative complement pathways are required for killing group B streptococci, particularly types Ia, III, and V. As a result, there is a greater likelihood of systemic spread of the organism in colonized premature infants with physiologically **low complement levels** or for infants in whom the receptors for complement, or for the Fc fragment of immunoglobulin (Ig)G antibodies, are not exposed on neutrophils. It also has been found that the type-specific capsular polysaccharides of types Ia, Ib, and II streptococci have a terminal residue of sialic acid. **Sialic acid** can inhibit activation of the alternative complement pathway, interfering with the phagocytosis of these strains of group B streptococci.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Group B streptococci colonize the lower gastrointestinal tract and the genitourinary tract. Transient vaginal carriage has been observed in 10% to 30% of pregnant women, although the observed incidence depends on the time during the gestation period when the sampling is done and the culture techniques used.

Approximately 60% of infants born to colonized mothers become colonized when they pass through the vaginal canal with their mothers' organisms. This is more likely when the

mother is colonized with large numbers of bacteria. Other associations for neonatal colonization are premature delivery, prolonged rupture of the amniotic sac (membrane), and intrapartum fever. Disease in infants younger than 7 days of age is called **early-onset disease;** disease appearing between 1 week and 3 months of life is considered **late-onset disease.** The serotypes most commonly associated with early-onset disease are Ia (35% to 40%), III (30%), and V (15%). Serotype III is responsible for most late-onset disease. Serotypes Ia and V are the most common in adult disease.

Colonization with subsequent development of disease in the neonate can occur in utero, at birth, or during the first few months of life. *S. agalactiae* is the most common cause of bacterial septicemia and meningitis in newborns. The use of intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis is responsible for a dramatic decline in neonatal disease from approximately 1.7 infections per live birth in 1993 to 0.22 infections in 2016.

The risk of invasive disease in adults is greater in pregnant women than in men and nonpregnant women. Urinary tract infections, amnionitis, endometritis, and wound infections are the most common manifestations in pregnant women. Infections in men and nonpregnant women are primarily skin and soft-tissue infections, bacteremia, urosepsis (urinary tract infection with bacteremia), and pneumonia. Conditions that predispose to the development of disease in nonpregnant adults include diabetes mellitus, chronic liver or renal disease, cancer, and HIV infection.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Early-Onset Neonatal Disease

Clinical symptoms of group B streptococcal disease acquired in utero or at birth develop during the first week of life. Early-onset disease, characterized by **bacteremia, pneumonia,** or **meningitis,** is indistinguishable from sepsis caused by other organisms. Because pulmonary involvement is observed in most infants and meningeal involvement may be initially inapparent, examination of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is required for all infected children. The mortality rate has decreased to less than 5% because of rapid diagnosis and better supportive care; however, 15% to 30% of infants who survive meningitis have severe neurologic sequelae, including blindness, deafness, and mental retardation.

Late-Onset Neonatal Disease

Late-onset disease is acquired from an exogenous source (e.g., mother, another infant) and develops between 1 week and 3 months of age (Clinical Case 19.2). The predominant manifestation is **bacteremia with meningitis,** which resembles disease caused by other bacteria. Although the mortality rate is low (e.g., 3%), neurologic complications are common in children with meningitis (e.g., 25% to 50%).

Infections in Pregnant Women

Postpartum endometritis, wound infection, and **urinary tract infections** occur in women during and immediately after pregnancy. Because childbearing women are generally in good health, the prognosis is excellent for those who receive appropriate therapy. Secondary complications of bacteremia such as endocarditis, meningitis, and osteomyelitis are rare.

Clinical Case 19.2 Group B Streptococcal Disease in a Neonate

The following is a description of late-onset group B streptococcal disease in a neonate (Hammersen et al: *Eur J Pediatr* 126:189–197, 1977). An infant male weighing 3400 g was delivered spontaneously at term. Physical examinations of the infant were normal during the first week of life; however, the child started feeding irregularly during the second week. On day 13, the baby was admitted to the hospital with generalized seizures. A small amount of cloudy CSF was collected by lumbar puncture, and *Streptococcus agalactiae* serotype III was isolated from culture. Despite prompt initiation of therapy, the baby developed hydrocephalus, necessitating implantation of an atrioventricular shunt. The infant was discharged at age 3.5 months with retardation of psychomotor development. This patient illustrates neonatal meningitis caused by the most commonly implicated serotype of group B streptococci in late-onset disease and the complications associated with this infection.

Infections in Men and Nonpregnant Women

Compared with pregnant women who acquire group B streptococcal infection, men and nonpregnant women with group B streptococcal infections are generally older and have debilitating underlying conditions. The most common presentations are **bacteremia, pneumonia, bone and joint infections,** and **skin and soft-tissue infections.** Because these patients often have compromised immunity, mortality is higher in this population.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Antigen Detection

Tests for the direct detection of group B streptococci in urogenital specimens are available but are too insensitive to be used to screen mothers and predict which newborns are at increased risk for acquiring neonatal disease. Likewise, the antigen tests are too insensitive (<30%) to be used with CSF. A Gram stain of CSF has much better sensitivity and should be used.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)–based nucleic acid amplification assays are approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for rectal/vaginal swabs from pregnant women. Testing is generally performed immediately before delivery to guide use of prophylactic therapy to protect the infants of colonized women.

Culture

Group B streptococci readily grow on a nutritionally enriched medium, producing large colonies after 24 hours of incubation; however, β-hemolysis may be difficult to detect or absent, posing a problem in the detection of the organism when other organisms are present in the culture (e.g., vaginal culture). Thus use of a selective enrichment broth medium with antibiotics added to suppress the growth of other organisms (e.g., LIM broth with colistin and nalidixic acid) followed by subculture to nonselective media

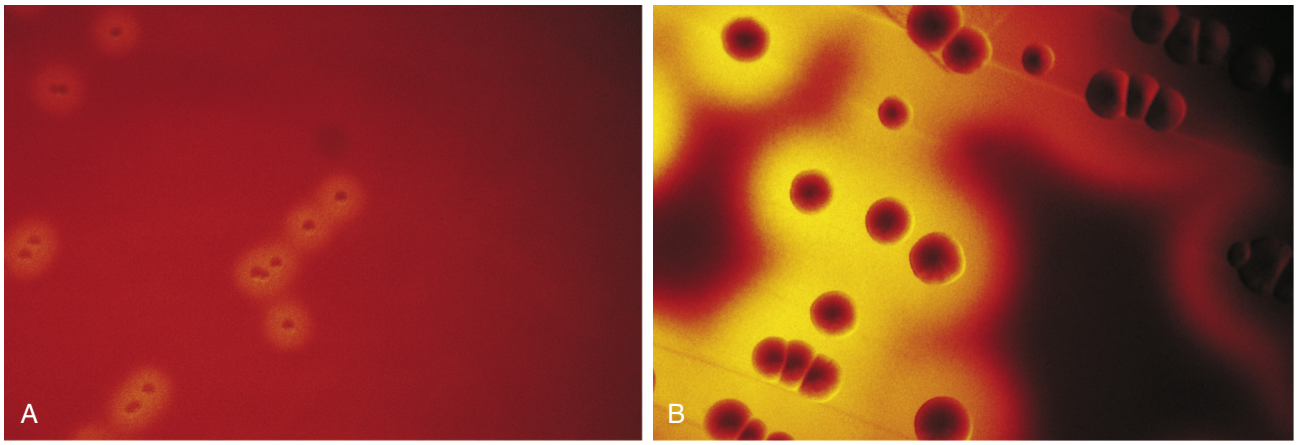


Fig. 19.5 Group C *Streptococcus.* (A) *S. anginosus,* small-colony species. (B) *S. dysgalactiae,* large-colony species.

such as a blood agar plate is currently recommended by the CDC for the detection of group B streptococci in women between weeks 35 and 37 of pregnancy.

Identification

Because *S. agalactiae* is the only member of the group B streptococci, isolates are identified definitively by the demonstration of the group-specific cell wall carbohydrate.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Group B streptococci are susceptible to **penicillin,** which is the drug of choice. Because other bacteria can be responsible for neonatal disease (e.g., *S. pneumoniae, Listeria,* gram-negative rods), broad-spectrum therapy should be selected for empirical therapy. A cephalosporin or vancomycin can be used in penicillin-allergic patients. Resistance to macrolides, clindamycin, and tetracyclines is common, so these drugs should not be selected unless demonstrated to be active in vitro.

In an effort to prevent neonatal disease, it is recommended that all pregnant women should be **screened for colonization** with group B streptococci at 35 to 37 weeks' gestation (refer to the following CDC document for additional information: www.cdc.gov/groupbstrep/guidelines/index.html). **Chemoprophylaxis** should be used for all women who are either colonized or at high risk. A pregnant woman is considered to be at high risk to give birth to a baby with invasive group B disease if she has previously given birth to an infant with the disease or risk factors for the disease are present at birth. These risk factors are (1) intrapartum temperature of at least 38° C, (2) membrane rupture at least 18 hours before delivery, and (3) vaginal or rectal culture positive for organisms at 35 to 37 weeks' gestation. Intravenous penicillin G or ampicillin administered at least 4 hours before delivery is recommended; cefazolin is used for penicillin-allergic women or clindamycin (if susceptible) or vancomycin for mothers at high risk for anaphylaxis. This approach ensures high protective antibiotic levels in the infant's circulatory system at the time of birth.

Because newborn disease is associated with decreased circulating antibodies in the mother, efforts have been directed at developing a polyvalent vaccine against serotypes Ia, Ib, II, III, and V. The capsular polysaccharides are poor immunogens; however, complexing them with a protein such as tetanus toxoid has improved the immunogenicity of the vaccine. Trials with this polyvalent vaccine demonstrated that protective levels of antibodies are induced in animal models; however, no licensed vaccine is currently available.

Other β-Hemolytic Streptococci

Among the other β-hemolytic streptococci, groups C, F, and G are most commonly associated with human disease. Organisms of particular importance are the *S. anginosus* group (includes *S. anginosus, S. constellatus,* and *S. intermedius*) and *S. dysgalactiae*. To illustrate the complexity of identifying streptococci, β-hemolytic members of the *S. anginosus* group can possess the group A, C, F, or G polysaccharide antigen (or not have any group-specific antigen), and *S. dysgalactiae* can have either the group C or G antigen. It should be noted that an individual isolate possesses only one group antigen. Isolates of the *S. anginosus* group grow as small colonies (requiring 2 days of incubation) with a narrow zone of β-hemolysis (Fig. 19.5A). These species are primarily associated with abscess formation and not pharyngitis, in contrast to the other group A *Streptococcus, S. pyogenes*. *S. dysgalactiae* produces large colonies with a large zone of β-hemolysis on blood agar media (see Fig. 19.5B), resembling *S. pyogenes.* Additionally, *S. dysgalactiae* causes pharyngitis, which is sometimes complicated by acute glomerulonephritis but never rheumatic fever.

Viridans Streptococci

The viridans group of streptococci is a heterogeneous collection of α-hemolytic and nonhemolytic streptococci (Fig. 19.6). Many species and subspecies have been identified, and most are classified into five subgroups. This classification scheme is clinically important because many of the species in the five subgroups are responsible for specific diseases (see Table 19.4). Some members of the viridans streptococci (e.g., *S. anginosus* group) can have β-hemolytic strains with the group-specific cell wall polysaccharides (thus contributing to the confusing taxonomy of this genus). In addition, *S.*

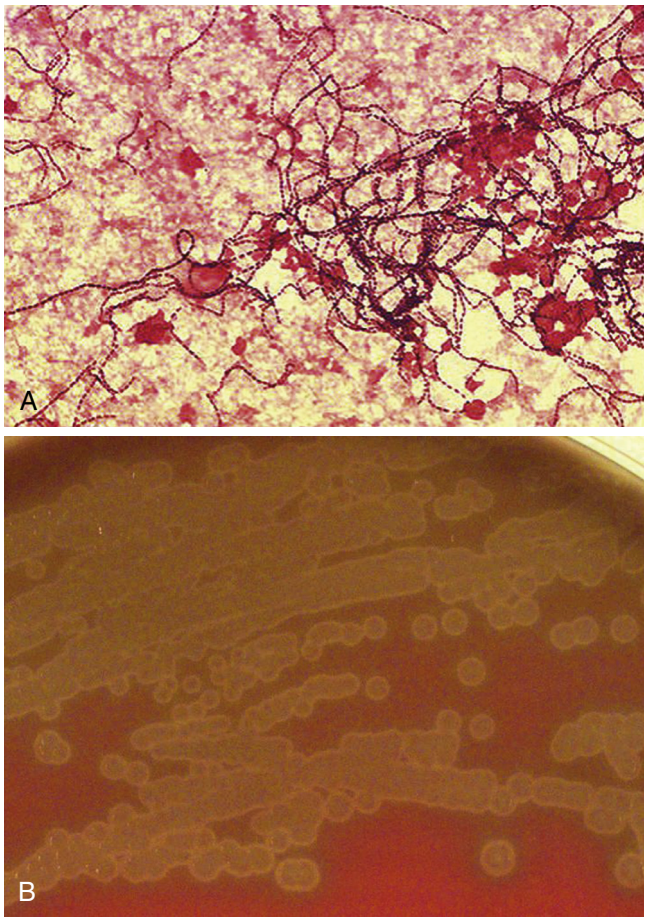


Fig. 19.6 *Streptococcus mitis.* (A) Gram stain from blood culture. (B) α-Hemolytic colonies.

pneumoniae is a member of the *S. mitis* subgroup, although most physicians and microbiologists do not think of *S. pneumoniae* as viridans streptococci; it will be discussed separately in this chapter.

The viridans streptococci colonize the oropharynx, gastrointestinal tract, and genitourinary tract. Similar to most other streptococci, viridans species are nutritionally fastidious, requiring complex media supplemented with blood products and, frequently, an incubation atmosphere with 5% to 10% carbon dioxide.

Although most viridans streptococci are highly susceptible to penicillin, with minimum inhibitory concentrations (MICs) of less than 0.1 μg/ml, moderately resistant (penicillin MIC of 0.2 to 2 μg/ml) and highly resistant (MIC > 2 μg/ml) streptococci have become common in the *S. mitis* group. Infections with isolates that are moderately resistant can generally be treated with a combination of penicillin and an aminoglycoside; however, alternative antibiotics such as a broad-spectrum cephalosporin or vancomycin must be used to treat serious infections.

Streptococcus pneumoniae

S. pneumoniae was isolated independently by Pasteur and Steinberg more than 100 years ago. Since that time, research with this organism has led to a greater understanding of molecular genetics, antibiotic resistance, and vaccine-related immunoprophylaxis. Unfortunately, pneumococcal disease is still a leading cause of morbidity and mortality.

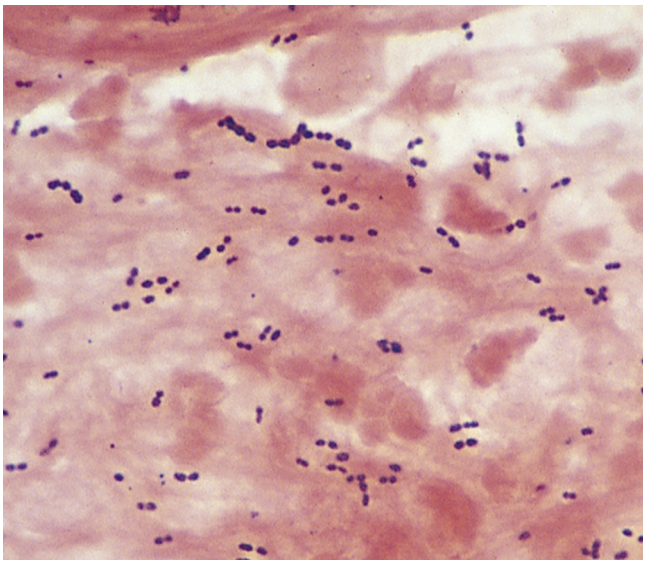


Fig. 19.7 Gram stain of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The pneumococcus is an **encapsulated** gram-positive coccus. The cells are 0.5 to 1.2 μm in diameter, oval, and arranged in pairs (commonly referred to as **diplococci**) or short chains (Fig. 19.7). Older cells decolorize readily and can stain gram-negative. Colonial morphology varies, with colonies of encapsulated strains generally large (1 to 3 mm in diameter on blood agar; smaller on chocolatized or heated blood agar), round, and mucoid, and colonies of nonencapsulated strains smaller and flat. All colonies undergo autolysis with aging; that is, the central portion of the colony dissolves, leaving a dimpled appearance. Colonies appear α-hemolytic on blood agar if incubated aerobically and may be β-hemolytic if grown anaerobically. The α-hemolytic appearance results from production of **pneumolysin,** which is an enzyme that degrades hemoglobin and produces a green product.

The organism has fastidious nutritional requirements and can grow only on enriched media supplemented with blood products. *S. pneumoniae* can ferment carbohydrates, producing lactic acid as the primary metabolic by-product. *S. pneumoniae* grows poorly in media with high glucose concentrations because lactic acid rapidly reaches toxic levels in such preparations. Similar to all streptococci, the organism lacks catalase. Unless an exogenous source of catalase is provided (e.g., from blood), the accumulation of hydrogen peroxide inhibits the growth of *S. pneumoniae,* as observed on chocolatized blood agar.

Virulent strains of *S. pneumoniae* are covered with a complex **polysaccharide capsule.** The capsular polysaccharides have been used for the serologic classification of strains; currently, more than 90 serotypes are recognized. Purified capsular polysaccharides from the most commonly isolated serotypes are used in a **polyvalent vaccine.**

Individual strains of *S. pneumoniae* can switch capsular serotypes through genomic recombination and point mutations in the capsular genes. Recombination is also associated with acquisition of genes encoding penicillin resistance, so use of vaccines or antibiotic therapy can facilitate the selection and dissemination of new capsular serotypes.

The peptidoglycan layer of the cell wall of the pneumococcus is typical of gram-positive cocci. Attached to alternating subunits of *N*-acetylglucosamine and *N*-acetylmuramic acid are oligopeptide chains, which, in turn, are cross-linked by pentaglycine bridges. The other major component of the cell wall is teichoic acid. Two forms of teichoic acid exist in the pneumococcal cell wall, one exposed on the cell surface and a similar structure covalently bound to the plasma membrane lipids. The exposed teichoic acid is linked to the peptidoglycan layer and extends through the overlying capsule. This species-specific structure, called the **C polysaccharide,** is unrelated to the group-specific carbohydrate observed by Lancefield in β-hemolytic streptococci. The C polysaccharide precipitates a serum globulin fraction **(C-reactive protein [CRP])** in the presence of calcium. CRP is present in low concentrations in healthy people but in elevated concentrations in patients with acute inflammatory diseases (hence, monitoring the levels of CRP is used to predict inflammation). The teichoic acid bound to lipids in the bacterial cytoplasmic membrane is called the **F antigen** because it can cross-react with the Forssman surface antigens on mammalian cells. Both forms of teichoic acid are associated with phosphorylcholine residues. **Phosphorylcholine** is unique to the cell wall of *S. pneumoniae* and plays an important regulatory role in cell wall hydrolysis. Phosphorylcholine must be present for activity of the pneumococcal autolysin, **amidase,** during cell division.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Although *S. pneumoniae* has been extensively studied, much remains to be learned about the pathogenesis of pneumococcal disease. The disease manifestations are caused primarily by the host response to infection rather than the production of organism-specific toxic factors. However, an understanding of how *S. pneumoniae* colonizes the oropharynx, spreads into normally sterile tissues, stimulates a localized inflammatory response, and evades being killed by phagocytic cells is crucial.

Colonization and Migration

S. pneumoniae is a human pathogen that colonizes the oropharynx and then, in specific situations, is able to spread to the lungs, paranasal sinuses, or middle ear. It can also be transported in the blood to distal sites such as the brain. The initial colonization of the oropharynx is mediated by the binding of the bacteria to epithelial cells by means of **surface protein adhesins.** Subsequent migration of the organism to the lower respiratory tract can be prevented if the bacteria are enveloped in mucus and removed from the airways by the action of ciliated epithelial cells. The bacteria counteract this envelopment by producing **secretory IgA protease** and **pneumolysin.** Secretory IgA traps bacteria in mucus by binding the bacteria to mucin with the Fc region of the antibody. The bacterial IgA protease prevents this interaction. **Pneumolysin,** a cytotoxin similar to the streptolysin O in *S. pyogenes,* binds cholesterol in the host cell membrane and creates pores. This activity can destroy the ciliated epithelial cells and phagocytic cells.

Tissue Destruction

A characteristic of pneumococcal infections is the mobilization of inflammatory cells to the focus of infection. Pneumococcal teichoic acid, peptidoglycan fragments, and pneumolysin mediate the process. **Teichoic acid** and the **peptidoglycan fragments** activate the alternative complement pathway, producing C5a, which mediates the inflammatory process. This activity is augmented by the bacterial enzyme **amidase,** which enhances release of the cell wall components. **Pneumolysin** activates the classic complement pathway, resulting in the production of C3a and C5a. In turn, cytokines such as interleukin (IL)-1 and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α are produced by the activated leukocytes, leading to the further migration of inflammatory cells to the site of infection and fever, tissue damage, and other signs characteristic of pneumococcal infection. The production of **hydrogen peroxide** by *S. pneumoniae* can also lead to tissue damage caused by reactive oxygen intermediates.

Finally, **phosphorylcholine** present in the bacterial cell wall can bind to receptors for platelet-activating factor that are expressed on the surface of endothelial cells, leukocytes, platelets, and tissue cells, such as those in the lungs and meninges. By binding these receptors, the bacteria can enter the cells, in which they are protected from opsonization and phagocytosis, and pass into sequestered areas, such as blood and the central nervous system. This activity facilitates the spread of disease.

Phagocytic Survival

S. pneumoniae survives phagocytosis because of the antiphagocytic protection afforded by its **capsule** and the pneumolysin-mediated suppression of the phagocytic cell oxidative burst, which is required for intracellular killing. The virulence of *S. pneumoniae* is a direct result of this capsule. Encapsulated (smooth) strains can cause disease in humans and experimental animals, whereas nonencapsulated (rough) strains are avirulent. Antibodies directed against the type-specific capsular polysaccharides protect against disease caused by immunologically related strains, so capsular switching allows a strain to avoid immune clearance. The capsular polysaccharides are soluble and have been called **specific soluble substances.** Free polysaccharides can protect viable organisms from phagocytosis by binding with opsonic antibodies.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

S. pneumoniae is a common inhabitant of the throat and nasopharynx in healthy people, with colonization more common in children than in adults and more common in adults living in a household with children. Colonization initially occurs at approximately 6 months of age. Subsequently, the child is transiently colonized with other serotypes of the organism. The duration of carriage decreases with each successive serotype carried, in part because of the development of serotype-specific immunity. Although new serotypes are acquired throughout the year, the incidence

of carriage and associated disease is highest during the cool months. The strains of pneumococci that cause the disease are the same as those associated with carriage.

Pneumococcal disease occurs when organisms colonizing the nasopharynx and oropharynx spread to the lungs (pneumonia), paranasal sinuses (sinusitis), ears (otitis media), or meninges (meningitis). Spread of *S. pneumoniae* in blood to other body sites can occur with all of these diseases. It is recognized that some serotypes have a higher predilection for invasive pneumococcal disease.

Although the introduction of vaccines for pediatric and adult populations has reduced the incidence of disease caused by *S. pneumoniae,* the organism is still a common cause of bacterial pneumonia acquired outside the hospital, meningitis, otitis media and sinusitis, and bacteremia. Disease is most common in children and the elderly with low levels of protective antibodies directed against the pneumococcal capsular polysaccharides. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimated that more than 750,000 children younger than age 5 years die each year of pneumococcal pneumonia or meningitis.

Pneumonia occurs when the endogenous oral organisms are aspirated into the lower airways. Although strains can spread on airborne droplets from one person to another in a closed population, epidemics are rare. Disease occurs when the natural defense mechanisms (e.g., epiglottal reflex, trapping of bacteria by the mucus-producing cells lining the bronchus, removal of organisms by the ciliated respiratory epithelium, and cough reflex) are circumvented, permitting organisms colonizing the oropharynx to gain access to the lungs. Pneumococcal disease is most commonly associated with an antecedent viral respiratory disease, such as influenza, or with other conditions that interfere with bacterial clearance, such as chronic pulmonary disease, alcoholism, congestive heart failure, diabetes mellitus, chronic renal disease, and splenic dysfunction or splenectomy.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Pneumonia

Pneumococcal **pneumonia** develops when the bacteria multiply in the alveolar spaces (Clinical Case 19.3). After aspiration, the bacteria grow rapidly in the nutrient-rich edema fluid. Erythrocytes leaking from congested capillaries accumulate in the alveoli, followed by the neutrophils, and then the alveolar macrophages. Resolution occurs when specific anticapsular antibodies develop, facilitating phagocytosis of the organism and microbial killing.

The onset of the clinical manifestations of pneumococcal pneumonia is abrupt, consisting of a severe shaking chill and sustained fever of 39° C to 41° C. The patient often has symptoms of a viral respiratory tract infection 1 to 3 days before the onset. Most patients have a productive cough with blood-tinged sputum, and they commonly have chest pain **(pleurisy)**. Because the disease is associated with aspiration, it is generally localized in the lower lobes of the lungs (hence the name **lobar pneumonia**; Fig. 19.8). However, children and the elderly can have a more generalized bronchopneumonia. Patients usually recover rapidly after the initiation of appropriate antimicrobial therapy, with complete radiologic resolution in 2 to 3 weeks.

Clinical Case 19.3 ***Streptococcus pneumoniae* Pneumonia**

Costa and associates (*Am J Hematol* 77:277–281, 2004) described a 68-year-old woman who was in good health until 3 days before hospitalization. She developed fever, chills, increased weakness, and a productive cough with pleuritic chest pain. On admission, she was febrile, had an elevated pulse and respiration rate, and was in moderate respiratory distress. Initial laboratory values showed leucopenia, anemia, and acute renal failure. Chest radiograph demonstrated infiltrates in the right and left lower lobes, with pleural effusions. Therapy with a fluoroquinolone was initiated, and blood and respiratory cultures were positive for *S. pneumoniae.* Additional tests (serum and urine protein electrophoresis) revealed the patient had multiple myeloma. The patient's infection resolved with a 14-day course of antibiotics. This patient illustrates the typical picture of pneumococcal lobar pneumonia and the increased susceptibility to infection in patients with defects in their ability to clear encapsulated organisms.

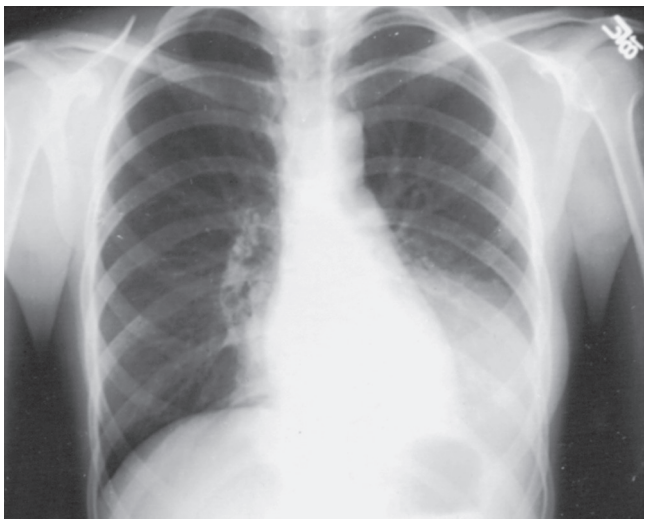


Fig. 19.8 Dense consolidation of left lower lobe in patient with pneumonia caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae.* (From Mandell, G., Bennett, J., Dolin, R. 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

The overall mortality rate is 5%, although the likelihood of death is influenced by the serotype of the organism and the age and underlying disease of the patient. The mortality rate is considerably higher in patients with disease caused by *S. pneumoniae* type 3, as well as in elderly patients and patients with documented bacteremia. Patients with splenic dysfunction or splenectomy can also have severe pneumococcal disease because of decreased bacterial clearance from the blood and the defective production of early antibodies. In these patients, disease can be associated with a fulminant course and high mortality rate.

Abscesses do not commonly form in patients with pneumococcal pneumonia, except in those infected with specific serotypes (e.g., serotype 3). Pleural effusions are seen in approximately 25% of patients with pneumococcal pneumonia, and empyema (purulent effusion) is a rare complication.

Sinusitis and Otitis Media

S. pneumoniae is a common cause of acute infections of the paranasal sinuses and ear. The disease is usually preceded by a viral infection of the upper respiratory tract, after which polymorphonuclear neutrophils (leukocytes; PMNs) infiltrate and obstruct the sinuses and ear canal. Middle ear infection **(otitis media)** is primarily seen in young children, but bacterial **sinusitis** can occur in patients of all ages.

Meningitis

S. pneumoniae can spread into the central nervous system after bacteremia, infections of the ear or sinuses, or head trauma that causes a communication between the subarachnoid space and the nasopharynx. Although **pneumococcal meningitis** is relatively uncommon in neonates, *S. pneumoniae* is now a leading cause of disease in children and adults. Mortality and severe neurologic deficits are 4 to 20 times more common in patients with meningitis caused by *S. pneumoniae* than in those with meningitis resulting from other organisms.

Bacteremia

Bacteremia occurs in 25% to 30% of patients with pneumococcal pneumonia and in more than 80% of patients with meningitis. In contrast, bacteria are generally not present in the blood of patients with sinusitis or otitis media. Endocarditis can occur in patients with both normal or previously damaged heart valves. Destruction of valve tissue is common.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Gram stain of sputum specimens is a rapid way to diagnose pneumococcal pneumonia and meningitis. The organisms characteristically appear as elongated pairs of gram-positive cocci surrounded by a clear area consisting of the unstained capsule; however, they may also appear to be gram-negative because they tend not to stain well (particularly in older cultures). In addition, their morphology may be distorted in a patient receiving antibiotic therapy. A Gram stain consistent with *S. pneumoniae* can be confirmed with the **quellung** (German for "swelling") reaction, which is a test primarily of historical interest (i.e. a rarely performed test that is only remembered by professors preparing exam questions). In this test, polyvalent anticapsular antibodies are mixed with the bacteria, and then the mixture is examined microscopically. A greater refractiveness around the bacteria is a positive reaction for *S. pneumoniae*. An alternative test is to mix a drop of bile with a suspension of bacteria. Bile will dissolve *S. pneumoniae* and no organisms will be seen in the Gram stain (a rapid test that is significantly more useful).

Antigen Detection

Pneumococcal C polysaccharide is excreted in urine and can be detected using a commercially prepared immunoassay. Maximum sensitivity requires that the urine is concentrated by ultrafiltration before it is assayed. Sensitivity has been reported to be 70% in patients with bacteremic pneumococcal pneumonia; however, specificity can be low, particularly in pediatric patients. For this reason, the test is not recommended for children with suspected infections. The test has a sensitivity approaching 100% for patients with pneumococcal meningitis if CSF is tested; however, the test has poor sensitivity and specificity if urine is tested in these patients.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

PCR assays have been developed for identification of *S. pneumoniae* isolates in clinical specimens such as CSF. Commercial multiplex tests for the diagnosis of bacterial and viral meningitis have gained widespread use in recent years and may represent the most accurate, rapid diagnostic test.

Culture

Sputum specimens should be inoculated onto an enriched nutrient medium supplemented with blood. *S. pneumoniae* is recovered in the sputum cultures from only half of the patients who have pneumonia because the organism has fastidious nutritional requirements and is rapidly overgrown by contaminating oral bacteria. Selective media have been used with some success to isolate the organism from sputum specimens, but it takes some technical skill to distinguish *S. pneumoniae* from the other α-hemolytic streptococci that are often present in the specimen. An aspirate must be obtained from the sinus or middle ear for the organism responsible for sinusitis or otitis to be diagnosed definitively. Specimens taken from the nasopharynx or outer ear should not be cultured. It is not difficult to isolate *S. pneumoniae* from specimens of CSF if antibiotic therapy has not been initiated before the specimen is collected; however, as many as half of infected patients who have received even a single dose of antibiotics will have negative cultures. This is the reason the nucleic acid amplification tests are now recognized as the test of choice for diagnosis of meningitis.

Identification

Isolates of *S. pneumoniae* are lysed rapidly when the autolysins are activated after exposure to bile **(bile solubility test).** Thus the organism can be identified by placing a drop of bile on an isolated colony. Most colonies of *S. pneumoniae* are dissolved within a few minutes, whereas other α-hemolytic streptococci remain unchanged. *S. pneumoniae* can also be identified by its susceptibility to **optochin** (ethylhydrocupreine dihydrochloride). The isolate is streaked onto a blood agar plate, and a disk saturated with optochin is placed in the middle of the inoculum. A zone of inhibited bacterial growth is seen around the disk after overnight incubation. Additional biochemical, serologic, or molecular diagnostic tests can be performed for a definitive identification.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Historically **penicillin** was the treatment of choice for pneumococcal disease; however, in 1977, researchers in South Africa reported isolates of *S. pneumoniae* that were resistant to multiple antibiotics, including penicillin. Although high-level resistance to penicillin (MIC of at least 2 μg/ml) was relatively uncommon, this situation changed dramatically beginning in 1990. Now resistance to penicillin is observed for as many as half of the strains isolated in the United States

and in other countries. Resistance to penicillins is associated with a decreased affinity of the antibiotic for the penicillin-binding proteins present in the bacterial cell wall, and patients infected with resistant bacteria have an increased risk of an adverse outcome. Resistance to macrolides (e.g., erythromycin), tetracyclines, and to a lesser extent cephalosporins (e.g., ceftriaxone) has also become commonplace. Thus for serious pneumococcal infections, treatment with a combination of antibiotics is recommended until in vitro susceptibility results are available. **Vancomycin** combined with **ceftriaxone** is used commonly for empirical treatment, followed by monotherapy with an effective cephalosporin, fluoroquinolone, or vancomycin.

Efforts to prevent or control the disease have focused on the development of effective anticapsular vaccines. Two forms of vaccines are used: multivalent polysaccharide vaccines and multivalent conjugated vaccines. Polysaccharides are T-independent antigens, stimulating mature B lymphocytes but not T lymphocytes. Very young children respond poorly to T-independent antigens, so these polysaccharide vaccines are ineffective for this population. In contrast, conjugation of polysaccharides to proteins stimulates a T helper cell response, resulting in a strong primary response among infants and the elderly and effective booster response when reimmunized. This approach of using conjugated vaccines for pediatric immunizations has also been used for other neonatal pathogens, such as *Haemophilus influenzae.* A series of primary and booster vaccinations with the pneumococcal conjugated vaccine is recommended for children less than 2 years of age, whereas use of the pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine as a booster vaccine is recommended for older children and adults. Refer to the CDC website for specific guidance. The effectiveness of these vaccines is determined by the prevalent serotypes of *S. pneumoniae* responsible for invasive disease in the population. Although these vaccines are generally effective in the United States and European populations, they are less effective in developing countries because the prevalent serotypes are not represented in the vaccines. Additionally, although the 23-valent vaccine is immunogenic in normal adults and immunity is long lived, the vaccine is less effective in some patients at high risk for pneumococcal disease including: (1) patients with asplenia, sickle cell disease, hematologic malignancy, and HIV infection; (2) patients who have undergone renal transplant; and (3) the elderly.

Enterococcus

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The enterococci are gram-positive cocci, typically arranged in **pairs and short chains** (Fig. 19.9). The microscopic morphology of these isolates cannot be differentiated reliably from that of *S. pneumoniae.* The cocci grow both aerobically and anaerobically in a broad temperature range (10° C to 45° C), in a wide pH range (4.6 to 9.9), and in the presence of high concentrations of sodium chloride **(NaCl)** and **bile salts.** Thus there are very few clinical conditions that inhibit the growth of enterococci. Glucose is fermented with L-lactic acid as the predominant end product (enterococci are commonly referred to as *lactic acid bacteria*). After 24 hours of incubation, colonies on enriched sheep blood agar

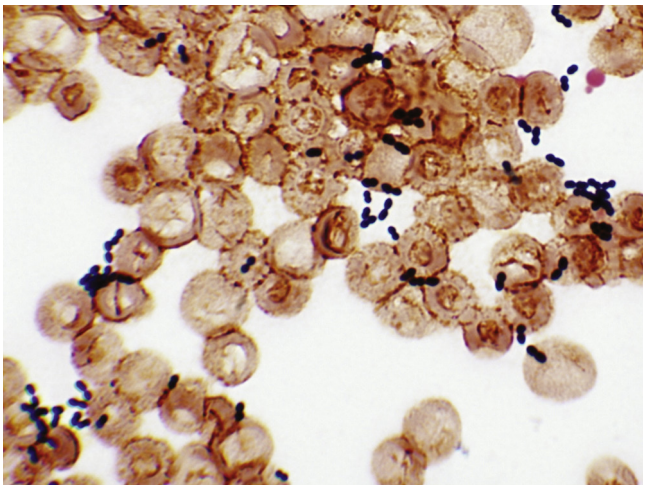


Fig. 19.9 Gram stain of blood culture with *Enterococcus faecalis.*

are large and can appear nonhemolytic, α-hemolytic, or, rarely, β-hemolytic.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Although enterococci do not possess the broad range of virulence factors found in staphylococci or streptococci, life-threatening disease with antibiotic-resistant strains has become a serious problem in hospitalized patients. Virulence is mediated by two general properties: (1) the ability to adhere to tissues and form biofilms, and (2) antibiotic resistance. A number of factors have been described that mediate adherence and biofilm formation, including surface proteins, membrane glycolipids, gelatinase, and pili. In addition, the enterococci either are **inherently resistant to many commonly used antibiotics** (e.g., oxacillin, cephalosporins) or have acquired resistance genes (e.g., to aminoglycosides, vancomycin). Clearance of enterococci from blood and tissues is mediated by the rapid influx of neutrophils and opsonization of the bacteria, so patients who are immunocompromised are particularly susceptible to enterococcal infections.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

As their name implies, enterococci are enteric bacteria that are commonly recovered in feces collected from humans and from a variety of animals. *E. faecalis* is found in the large intestine in high concentrations (e.g., 10^5 to 10^7 organisms per gram of feces) and in the genitourinary tract. The distribution of *E. faecium* is similar to that of *E. faecalis,* but it is found in lower concentrations. Significant risk factors for enterococcal infections include the use of urinary or intravascular catheters, prolonged hospitalization, and the use of **broad-spectrum antibiotics,** particularly antibiotics that are inherently inactive against enterococci.

The prevalence of the many other enterococcal species is unknown, although they are believed to colonize the intestines in small numbers. Two species that are commonly recovered in the human intestines are *E. gallinarum* and *E. casseliflavus.* These relatively avirulent species are important because, although they are rarely associated with

human disease, they are inherently resistant to vancomycin and can be confused with the more important species, *E. faecalis* and *E. faecium.*

CLINICAL DISEASES

Enterococci are important pathogens, particularly in hospitalized patients; indeed, enterococci are one of the most common causes of infections acquired in the hospital **(nosocomial infection)** (see Box 19.1). The urinary tract is the most common site of enterococcal infections, and infections are frequently associated with urinary catheterization or instrumentation. These infections may be asymptomatic, uncomplicated cystitis, or cystitis associated with pyelonephritis. Peritoneal infections are typically polymicrobic (i.e., associated with other aerobic and anaerobic bacteria) and associated with leakage of intestinal bacteria either from trauma or because of disease that compromises the intestinal lining. Enterococci recovered in the blood may either be dissemination from a localized infection of the urinary tract, the peritoneum, or a wound, or it may represent primary infection of the endocardium (endocarditis). Endocarditis is a particularly serious infection because many enterococci are resistant to most commonly used antibiotics (Clinical Case 19.4).

Clinical Case 19.4 **Enterococcal Endocarditis**

Zimmer and associates (*Clin Infect Dis* 37:e29–e30, 2003) described the epidemiology of enterococcal infections and the difficulties in treating a patient with endocarditis. The patient was a 40-year-old man with hepatitis C, hypertension, and end-stage renal disease who developed fevers and chills during hemodialysis. In the 2 months before this episode, he was treated with ampicillin, levofloxacin, and gentamicin for group B streptococcal endocarditis. Cultures performed during the hemodialysis grew *Enterococcus faecalis* resistant to levofloxacin and gentamicin. Because the patient had an allergic reaction to ampicillin, he was treated with linezolid. Echocardiography showed vegetation on the mitral and tricuspid valves. Over a 3-week period, the patient's cardiac output deteriorated, so the patient was desensitized to ampicillin and therapy was switched to ampicillin and streptomycin. After 25 days of hospitalization, the patient's damaged heart valves were replaced, and therapy was extended for an additional 6 weeks. Thus use of broad-spectrum antibiotics predisposed this patient with previously damaged heart valves to endocarditis caused by *Enterococcus,* and treatment was complicated by resistance of the isolate to many commonly used antibiotics.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Enterococci grow readily on nonselective media such as blood agar and chocolate agar. Although enterococci may resemble *S. pneumoniae* on Gram-stained specimens, the organisms can be readily differentiated on the basis of simple biochemical reactions. For example, enterococci are resistant to optochin (*S. pneumoniae* is susceptible), do not dissolve when exposed to bile (*S. pneumoniae* is dissolved), and produce PYR (the only *Streptococcus* that is PYR positive is *S. pyogenes*). The **PYR test** is a commonly performed "5-minute spot" test. Catalase-negative, PYR-positive cocci arranged in pairs and short chains can be presumptively identified as enterococci. Phenotypic properties (e.g., pigment production, motility), biochemical tests, and nucleic acid sequencing are necessary to differentiate among *E. faecalis, E. faecium,* and the other *Enterococcus* species, but this topic is beyond the scope of this text.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Antimicrobial therapy for enterococcal infections is complicated because most antibiotics are not bactericidal at clinically relevant concentrations. Therapy for serious infections has traditionally consisted of the synergistic **combination of an aminoglycoside and a cell wall–active antibiotic** (e.g., ampicillin, vancomycin). However, some cell wall antibiotics have no activity against enterococci (e.g., nafcillin, oxacillin, cephalosporins), ampicillin and penicillin are generally ineffective against *E. faecium*, and vancomycin resistance (particularly in *E. faecium*) is commonplace. In addition, more than 25% of enterococci are resistant to the aminoglycosides, and resistance to aminoglycosides and vancomycin is particularly troublesome because it is mediated by plasmids and can be transferred to other bacteria.

Newer antibiotics have been developed that can treat enterococci resistant to ampicillin, vancomycin, or the aminoglycosides. These include linezolid, daptomycin, tigecycline, and quinupristin/dalfopristin. Unfortunately, resistance to linezolid is steadily increasing, and quinupristin/dalfopristin is not active against *E. faecalis* (the most commonly isolated enterococcal species). Enterococci susceptible to ampicillin and resistant to aminoglycosides can be treated with ampicillin plus daptomycin, imipenem, or linezolid. Enterococci resistant to ampicillin and susceptible to aminoglycosides can be treated with an aminoglycoside combined with vancomycin (if active), linezolid, or daptomycin. If the isolate is resistant to both ampicillin and aminoglycosides, then treatment can include daptomycin, linezolid, or vancomycin combined with another active agent.

It is difficult to prevent and control enterococcal infections. Careful restriction of antibiotic usage and the implementation of appropriate infection-control practices (e.g., isolation of infected patients, use of gowns and gloves by anyone in contact with patients) can reduce the risk of colonization with these bacteria, but the complete elimination of infections is unlikely. Additionally, it is extremely difficult to eradicate a vancomycin-resistant strain of *E. faecium* or *E. faecalis* once a patient is colonized.


For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Arias, C., Contreras, G., Murray, B., 2010. Management of multidrug-resistant enterococcal infections. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 16, 555–562.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2010. Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease. MMWR Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep. 59 (RR–10), 1–32.

Fisher, K., Phillips, C., 2009. The ecology, epidemiology and virulence of Enterococcus. Microbiol. 155, 1749–1757.

Hall, J., Adams, N., Bartlett, L., et al., 2017. Maternal disease with Group B Streptococcus and serotype distribution worldwide: systematic review and meta-analyses. Clin. Infect. Dis. 65, S112–S124.
Harboe, Z.B., Thomsen, R.W., Riis, A., et al., 2009. Pneumococcal serotypes and mortality following invasive pneumococcal disease: a population-based cohort study. PLoS Med. 6, e1000081.
Hegstad, K., Mikalsen, T., Coque, T.M., et al., 2010. Mobile genetic elements and their contribution to the emergence of antimicrobial resistant Enterococcus faecalis and Enterococcus faecium. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 16, 541–554.
Johansson, L., Thulin, P., Low, D.E., et al., 2010. Getting under the skin: the immunopathogenesis of Streptococcus pyogenes deep tissue infections. Clin. Infect. Dis. 51, 58–65.
Johnson, D.R., Kurlan, R., Leckman, J., et al., 2010. The human immune response to streptococcal extracellular antigens: clinical, diagnostic, and potential pathogenetic implications. Clin. Infect. Dis. 50, 481–490.
Kanjanabuch, T., Kittikowit, W., Eiam-Ong, S., 2009. An update on acute postinfectious glomerulonephritis worldwide. Nat. Rev. Nephrol. 5, 259–269.
Krzysciak, W., Pluskwa, K.K., Jurczak, A., et al., 2013. The pathogenicity of the Streptococcus genus. Eur. J. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. Dis. 32, 1361–1376.
Le Doare, K., Heath, P.T., 2013. An overview of global GBS epidemiology. Vaccine 31 (Suppl. 4), D7–D12.
Mitchell, A., Mitchell, T., 2010. Streptococcus pneumoniae: virulence factors and variation. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 16, 411–418.
Nelson, G., Pondo, T., Towes, K.A., et al., 2016. Epidemiology of invasive group A streptococcal infections in the United States, 2005-2012. Clin. Infect. Dis. 63, 478–486.
Sava, I.G., Heikens, E., Huebner, J., 2010. Pathogenesis and immunity in enterococcal infections. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 16, 533–540.
Walker, M.J., Barnett, T.C., McArthur, J.D., et al., 2014. Disease manifestations and pathogenic mechanisms of group A Streptococcus. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 27, 264–301.
Wessels, M., 2011. Streptococcal pharyngitis. N. Engl. J. Med. 364, 648–655.
Wyres, K.L., Lambertsen, L.M., Croucher, N.J., et al., 2013. Pneumococcal capsular switching: a historical perspective. J. Infect. Dis. 207, 439–449.

Case Study and Questions

A 62-year-old man with a history of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) came to the emergency department because of a fever of 40° C, chills, nausea, vomiting, and hypotension. The patient also produced tenacious yellowish sputum that had increased in quantity over the preceding 3 days. His respiratory rate was 18 breaths/min, and his blood pressure was 94/52 mm Hg. Chest radiographic examination showed extensive infiltrates in the left lower lung that involved both the lower lobe and the lingula. Multiple blood cultures and culture of the sputum yielded *S. pneumoniae.* The isolate was susceptible to cefazolin, vancomycin, and erythromycin but resistant to penicillin.

1. What predisposing condition made this patient more susceptible to pneumonia and bacteremia caused by *S. pneumoniae*? What other populations of patients are susceptible to these infections? What other infections does this organism cause, and what populations are most susceptible?
2. What is the mechanism most likely responsible for this isolate's resistance to penicillin?
3. What infections are caused by *S. pyogenes, S. agalactiae, S. anginosus, S. dysgalactiae,* and viridans streptococci?
4. What are the major virulence factors of *S. pneumoniae, S. pyogenes,* and *S. agalactiae*?
5. *S. pyogenes* can cause streptococcal toxic shock syndrome. How does this disease differ from the disease produced by staphylococci?
6. What two nonsuppurative diseases can develop after localized *S. pyogenes* disease?

20 *Bacillus*

Two hours after a dinner, a family of four developed acute abdominal cramps with nausea and vomiting. The illness lasted for less than a day.

1. *Bacillus cereus* is associated with two forms of food poisoning. Discuss the epidemiology and clinical presentation of each.
2. *B. cereus* is also associated with eye infections. Discuss the epidemiology and clinical presentation. What virulence factor is important in these infections?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

BACILLUS ANTHRACIS

Trigger Words

Spore former, capsule, edema toxin, lethal toxin, anthrax, bioterrorism

Biology and Virulence

- Spore-forming, nonmotile, nonhemolytic gram-positive rods
- Polypeptide capsule consisting of poly-D-glutamic acid observed in clinical specimens
- Virulent strains produce three exotoxins that combine to form edema toxin (combination of protective antigen and edema factor) and lethal toxin (protective antigen with lethal factor)
- The polypeptide capsule inhibits phagocytosis of bacteria

Epidemiology

- *B. anthracis* primarily infects herbivores, with humans as accidental hosts
- Rarely isolated in developed countries but is prevalent in impoverished areas in which vaccination of animals is not practiced
- The greatest danger of anthrax in industrial countries is the use of *B. anthracis* as an agent of bioterrorism

Diseases

- Three forms of anthrax are recognized: cutaneous (most common in humans), gastrointestinal (most common in herbivores), and inhalation (bioterrorism)

Diagnosis

- Organism is present in high concentrations in clinical specimens (microscopy typically positive) and grows readily in culture
- Preliminary identification is based on microscopic (gram-positive rods) and colonial (nonhemolytic, adherent colonies) morphology; confirmed by demonstrating capsule and either lysis with gamma phage, a positive direct fluorescent antibody test for the specific cell wall polysaccharide, or positive nucleic acid amplification assay

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Inhalation or gastrointestinal anthrax or bioterrorism-associated anthrax should be treated with ciprofloxacin or doxycycline, combined with one or two additional antibiotics (e.g., rifampin, vancomycin, penicillin, imipenem, clindamycin, clarithromycin)
- Naturally acquired cutaneous anthrax can be treated with amoxicillin
- Vaccination of animal herds and people in endemic areas can control disease, but spores are difficult to eliminate from contaminated soils
- Vaccination of animal herds and at-risk humans is effective, although the development of a less toxic vaccine is desired
- Alternative treatments interfering with the activity of anthrax toxins are under investigation

BACILLUS CEREUS

Trigger Words

Spore former, enterotoxin, gastroenteritis, eye infections

Biology and Virulence

- Spore-forming, motile, gram-positive rods
- Heat-stable and heat-labile enterotoxin
- Tissue destruction is mediated by cytotoxic enzymes, including cereolysin and phospholipase C

Epidemiology

- Ubiquitous in soils throughout the world
- People at risk include those who consume food contaminated with the bacterium (e.g., rice, meat, vegetables, sauces), those with penetrating injuries (e.g., to eye), those who receive intravenous injections, and immunocompromised patients exposed to *B. cereus*

Diseases

- Capable of causing gastrointestinal diseases (emetic and diarrheal forms), ocular infections, and an anthrax-like disease in immunocompetent patients

Diagnosis

- Isolation of the organism in implicated food product or nonfecal specimens (e.g., eye, wound)

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Gastrointestinal infections are treated symptomatically
- Ocular infectious or other invasive diseases require removal of foreign bodies and treatment with vancomycin, clindamycin, ciprofloxacin, or gentamicin
- Gastrointestinal disease is prevented by proper preparation of food (e.g., foods should be consumed immediately after preparation or refrigerated)

The family Bacillaceae consists of a diverse collection of more than 50 genera that share one common feature: the ability to form endospores (Fig. 20.1). For practical purposes, the students need to know only one clinically important genus, *Bacillus;* although there are almost 400 species and subspecies in this genus, only two will be the focus of this chapter: *B. anthracis* and *B. cereus* (Table 20.1). *B. anthracis,* the organism responsible for anthrax, is one of the most feared agents of biological warfare and, since the release of *B. anthracis* spores in the U.S. Postal Service in 2001, the potential danger associated with this organism is well known. *B. cereus,* the other clinically important species in this genus, is an organism responsible for gastroenteritis, traumatic eye infections, catheter-associated sepsis, and, rarely, severe pneumonia.

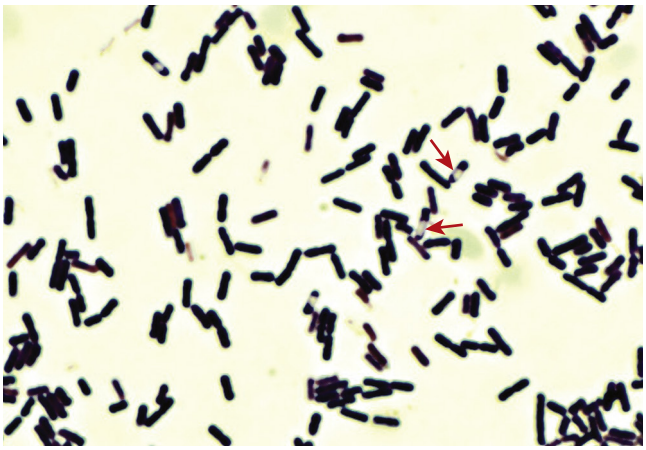


Fig. 20.1 *Bacillus cereus*. The clear areas in the gram-positive rods are unstained spores *(arrows).*

Bacillus anthracis

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

B. anthracis is a large (1 × 3 to 8 μm) organism arranged as single or paired rods (Fig. 20.2) or as long, serpentine chains. Although spores are readily observed in 2- to 3-day-old cultures, they are not seen in clinical specimens.

Because of the unique medical importance of *B. anthracis,* it is important to understand the functional details of this organism's toxins. Virulent *B. anthracis* carries genes for three toxin protein components on a large plasmid, pXO1. The individual proteins, **protective antigen (PA), edema factor (EF),** and **lethal factor (LF),** are nontoxic individually but form important toxins when structurally combined: PA plus EF forms **edema toxin,** and PA plus LF forms **lethal toxin.** PA is an 83-kDa protein that binds to one of two receptors on host cell surfaces that are present on many cells and tissues (e.g., brain, heart, intestine, lung, skeletal muscle, pancreas, macrophages). After PA binds to its receptor, host proteases cleave PA, releasing a small fragment and retaining the 63-kDa fragment (PA_{63}) on the cell surface. The PA_{63} fragments self-associate on the cell surface, forming a ring-shaped complex of seven fragments (pore precursor or "prepore"). This heptameric complex can then bind up to three molecules of LF and/or EF. Both factors recognize the same binding site of PA_{63}, so the binding is competitive. Formation of the complex stimulates endocytosis and movement to an acidic intracellular compartment. In this environment, the heptameric complex forms a transmembrane pore and releases LF and EF into the cell interior. **LF is a zinc-dependent protease** capable of cleaving mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase, leading to cell death. **EF is a calmodulin-dependent adenylate cyclase** that increases the intracellular cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) levels and results in edema. EF is related to the adenylate cyclases produced by *Bordetella pertussis* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa.*

The other important virulence factor carried by *B. anthracis* is a prominent polypeptide **capsule** (consisting of poly-D-glutamic acid). This protein capsule is unique because most bacterial capsules are composed of polysaccharides (e.g., such as those on *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, and *P. aeruginosa*). The capsule is observed in clinical specimens, but it is not produced in vitro unless special growth conditions are used. Three genes (*capA, capB,* and *capC*) are responsible for synthesis of this capsule and are carried on a second plasmid (pXO2). Only one serotype of capsule has been identified, presumably because the capsule is composed of only glutamic acid.

TABLE 20.1 Important *Bacillus* Species

Organism	Historical Derivation
Bacillus	*bacillum*, a small rod
B. anthracis	*anthrax*, charcoal, a carbuncle (refers to the black necrotic wound associated with cutaneous anthrax)
B. cereus	*cereus*, waxen, wax-colored (refers to colonies with a typical dull or frosted-glass surface)

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The major factors responsible for the virulence of *B. anthracis* are the capsule, edema toxin, and lethal toxin. The capsule inhibits phagocytosis of replicating cells. The adenylate cyclase activity of edema toxin is responsible for the fluid accumulation observed in anthrax. The zinc metalloprotease activity of lethal toxin stimulates macrophages to release tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, interleukin (IL)-1β, and other proinflammatory cytokines. Of the major proteins of *B. anthracis,* PA is the most immunogenic (hence the name, protective antigen). Both LF and EF inhibit the host's innate immune system.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Anthrax is primarily a disease of herbivores; humans are infected through exposure to contaminated animals or animal products. The disease is a serious problem in countries in which animal vaccination is not practiced or is impractical (e.g., disease is established in African wildlife). In contrast, natural infections with *B. anthracis* are rarely seen in the United States, with only four cases reported between 2003 and 2015. This statistic may now be meaningless, with the deliberate contamination of the U.S. Postal Service with *B. anthracis* spores

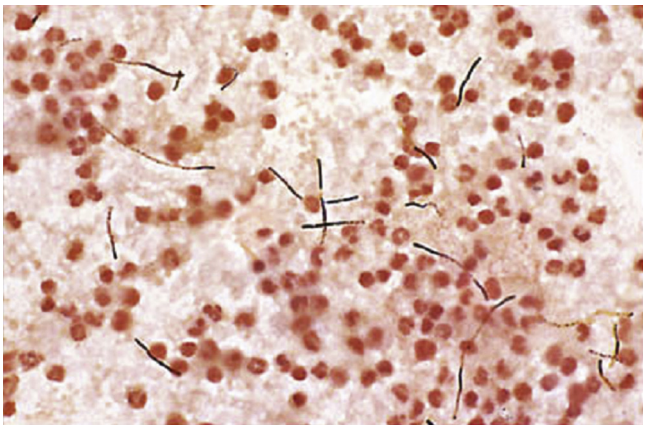


Fig. 20.2 *Bacillus anthracis* in the blood of a patient with inhalation anthrax.

in 2001. The risk of exposing a large population to the dangerous pathogen has increased dramatically in this era of bioterrorism. A number of nations and independent terrorist groups have biological warfare programs and have experimented with using *B. anthracis* as a weapon. Indeed, much of what we know about anthrax acquired via the inhalation route was learned from the accidental release in 1979 of spores in Sverdlovsk in the former Soviet Union (at least 79 cases of anthrax, with 68 deaths) and the terrorist contamination of employees of the U.S. Postal Service with letters containing *B. anthracis* (11 patients with inhalation anthrax and 11 patients with cutaneous anthrax).

Human *B. anthracis* disease (Box 20.1) is acquired by one of three routes: **inoculation, ingestion,** and **inhalation.** Approximately 95% of naturally acquired anthrax infections in humans result from inoculation of *Bacillus* spores through exposed skin from either contaminated soil or infected animal products, such as hides, goat hair, and wool.

Ingestion anthrax is very rare in humans, but ingestion is a common route of infection in herbivores. Because the organism can form resilient spores, contaminated soil or animal products can remain infectious for many years.

Inhalation anthrax was historically called **wool-sorters' disease** because most human infections resulted from inhalation of *B. anthracis* spores during the processing of goat hair. This is currently an uncommon source for human infections; however, inhalation is the most likely route of infection with biological weapons, and the infectious dose of the organism is believed to be low. Person-to-person transmission does not occur because bacterial replication occurs in the mediastinal lymph nodes rather than the bronchopulmonary tree.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Typically, **cutaneous anthrax** starts with the development of a painless papule at the site of inoculation that rapidly progresses to an ulcer surrounded by vesicles and then to a necrotic eschar (Fig. 20.3; Clinical Case 20.1). Systemic signs, painful lymphadenopathy, and massive edema may develop. The mortality rate in patients with untreated cutaneous anthrax is 20%.

Clinical symptoms of **gastrointestinal anthrax** are determined by the site of the infection. If organisms invade the upper intestinal tract, ulcers form in the mouth or esophagus, leading to regional lymphadenopathy, edema, and sepsis. If the organism invades the cecum or terminal ileum, the patient presents with nausea, vomiting, and malaise, which rapidly progress to systemic disease. The mortality associated with gastrointestinal anthrax is believed to approach 100%.

Unlike the other two forms of anthrax, **inhalation anthrax** can be associated with a prolonged latent period (2 months or more) in which spores can remain latent in the nasal passages. During this period the infected patient remains asymptomatic. In active disease the spores reach the lower airways, in which alveolar macrophages ingest the inhaled spores and transport them to the mediastinal lymph nodes. The initial clinical symptoms of disease are nonspecific including fever, myalgias, nonproductive cough, and malaise. The second stage of disease is more dramatic, with a rapidly worsening course of fever, edema, massive enlargement of the mediastinal lymph nodes (this is responsible for the widened mediastinum observed on chest radiography [Fig. 20.4]), respiratory failure, and sepsis. Although the route of infection is by inhalation, pneumonia rarely develops. Meningeal symptoms are seen in half of patients with inhalation anthrax. Almost all cases progress to shock and death within 3 days of initial symptoms unless anthrax is suspected and treatment is initiated immediately. Serologic evidence indicates that a subclinical or asymptomatic form of inhalation anthrax does not exist. Virtually all patients who develop disease progress to a fatal outcome unless there is immediate medical intervention.

BOX 20.1 *Bacillus* Diseases: Clinical Summaries

Bacillus anthracis

Cutaneous anthrax: painless papule progresses to ulceration with surrounding vesicles and then to eschar formation; painful lymphadenopathy, edema, and systemic signs may develop

Gastrointestinal anthrax: ulcers form at site of invasion (e.g., mouth, esophagus, intestine), leading to regional lymphadenopathy, edema, and sepsis

Inhalation anthrax: initial nonspecific signs followed by rapid onset of sepsis with fever, edema, and lymphadenopathy (mediastinal lymph nodes); meningeal symptoms in half the patients, and most patients with inhalation anthrax will die unless treatment is initiated immediately

Bacillus cereus

Gastroenteritis: emetic form characterized by rapid onset of vomiting and abdominal pain and a short duration; diarrheal form characterized by a longer onset and duration of diarrhea and abdominal cramps

Ocular infections: rapid, progressive destruction of the eye after traumatic introduction of the bacteria into the eye

Severe pulmonary disease: severe anthrax-like pulmonary disease in immunocompetent patients

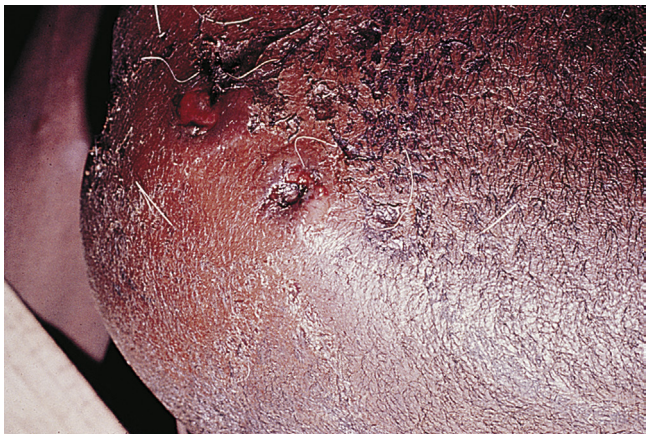


Fig. 20.3 Cutaneous anthrax demonstrating marked erythema, edema, and vesicle rupture. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

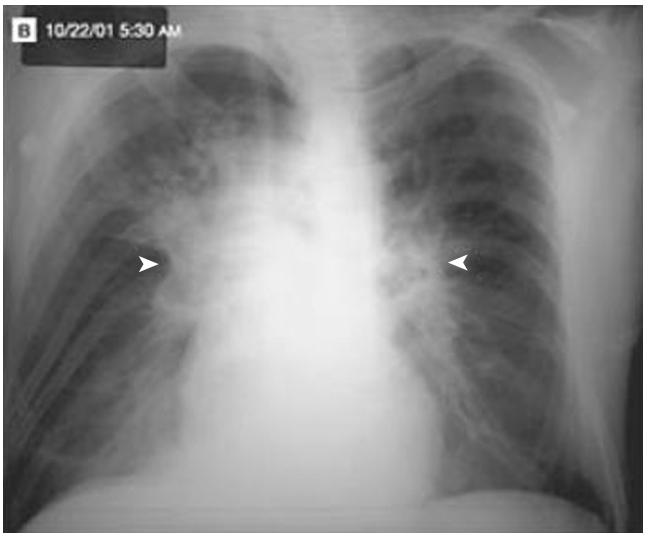


Fig. 20.4 Inhalation anthrax demonstrating enlarged mediastinal lymph nodes *(arrowheads)*.

Clinical Case 20.1 **Inhalation Anthrax**

Bush and associates (*N Engl J Med* 345:1607–1610, 2001) reported the first case of inhalation anthrax in the 2001 bioterrorism attack in the United States. The patient was a 63-year-old man living in Florida who had a 4-day history of fever, myalgias, and malaise without localizing symptoms. His wife brought him to the regional hospital because he awoke from sleep with fever, emesis, and confusion. On physical examination, he had a temperature of 39° C, blood pressure of 150/80 mm Hg, pulse of 110 beats/min, and respiration of 18 breaths/min. No respiratory distress was noted. Treatment was initiated for presumed bacterial meningitis. Basilar infiltrates and a widened mediastinum were noted on the initial chest radiograph. Gram stain of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) revealed many neutrophils and large gram-positive rods. Anthrax was suspected, and penicillin treatment was initiated. Within 24 hours of admission, CSF and blood cultures were positive for *Bacillus anthracis*. During the first day of hospitalization, the patient had a grand mal seizure and was intubated. On the second hospital day, hypotension and azotemia developed, with subsequent renal failure. On the third hospital day, refractory hypotension developed and the patient had a fatal cardiac arrest. This patient illustrates the rapidity with which patients with inhalation anthrax can deteriorate despite a rapid diagnosis and appropriate antimicrobial therapy. Although the route of exposure is via the respiratory tract, patients do not develop pneumonia; instead, the abnormal chest radiograph is caused by hemorrhagic mediastinitis.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Infections with *B. anthracis* are characterized by overwhelming numbers of organisms present in wounds, involved lymph nodes, and blood. Anthrax is one of the few bacterial diseases in which organisms can be seen when peripheral blood is Gram stained (see Fig. 20.2). Therefore the detection of organisms by microscopy and culture is not a problem. The diagnostic difficulty is distinguishing *B. anthracis* from other members of the taxonomically related *B. cereus* group. A preliminary identification of *B. anthracis* is based on microscopic and colonial morphology. The organisms appear as long, thin, gram-positive rods arranged singly or in long chains. Spores are not observed in clinical specimens; they are only seen in cultures incubated in a low CO_2 atmosphere and can be seen best with the use of a special spore stain (e.g., malachite green stain; Fig. 20.5). The **capsule** of *B. anthracis* is produced in vivo but is not typically observed in culture. The capsule can be observed in clinical specimens using a contrasting stain, such as India ink (the ink particles are excluded by the capsule so that the background, but not the area around bacteria, appears black), M'Fadyean methylene blue stain, or a direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) test developed against the capsular polypeptide. Colonies cultured on sheep blood agar are characteristically large and nonpigmented and have a dry "ground-glass" surface and irregular edges. The colonies are quite sticky and adherent to the agar and, if the edge is lifted with a bacteriologic loop, it will remain standing like beaten egg whites. Colonies are **not hemolytic,** in contrast with *B. cereus. B. anthracis* will appear **nonmotile** in motility tests such as the microscopic observation of individual rods in a suspended drop of culture medium. The definitive identification of nonmotile, nonhemolytic organisms resembling *B. anthracis* is made in a public health reference laboratory. This is accomplished by demonstrating capsule production (by microscopy or DFA) and either specific lysis of the bacteria with gamma phage or a positive DFA test for a specific *B. anthracis* cell wall polysaccharide. In addition, nucleic acid amplification tests (e.g., polymerase chain reaction [PCR]) have been developed and are performed in reference laboratories.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Although penicillin was the drug of choice for *B. anthracis,* resistance in naturally occurring strains has been observed, as well as resistance to sulfonamides and extended-spectrum cephalosporins. In addition, resistance to other antibiotics can be selected in laboratory-derived strains, so this must be considered for bioterrorism-associated anthrax. The current empirical treatment recommendation is use of

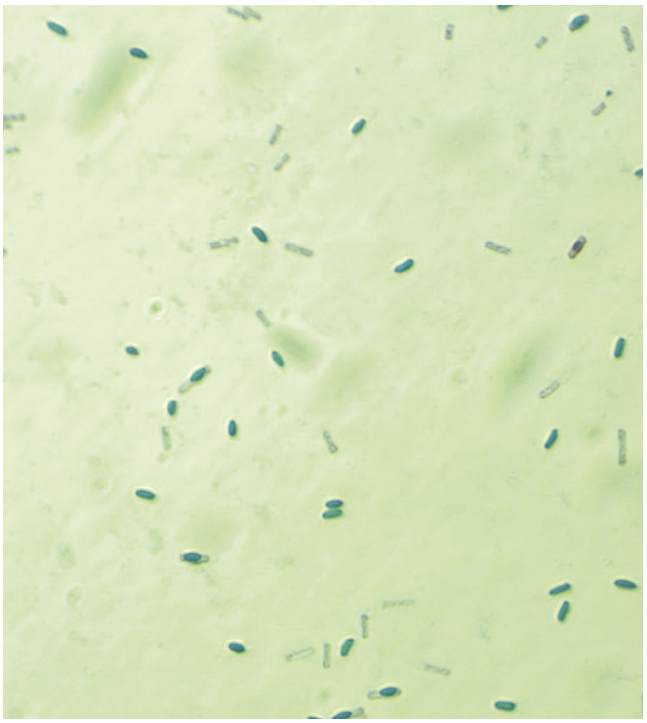


Fig. 20.5 *Bacillus cereus*. Spores retain the malachite green dye in this special spore stain, and the vegetative cells are gray or colorless.

ciprofloxacin or **doxycycline** combined with one or two additional antibiotics (e.g., rifampin, vancomycin, penicillin, imipenem, clindamycin, clarithromycin). Although penicillin resistance is observed for naturally acquired anthrax, oral penicillin **(amoxicillin)** is still recommended for naturally acquired cutaneous anthrax.

Control of naturally acquired human disease requires control of animal disease, which involves **vaccination of animal herds** in endemic regions and burning or burial of animals that die of anthrax. Complete eradication of anthrax is unlikely because the spores of the organism can exist for many years in soil and the threat of bioterrorist-related infections is a current reality.

Vaccination has also been used to protect (1) people who live in areas in which the disease is endemic, (2) people who work with animal products imported from countries with endemic anthrax, and (3) military personnel. Although the current vaccine appears to be effective, research to develop a less toxic vaccine is under way. Alternative approaches to inactivating anthrax toxins have focused on PA and its receptor target. Passive infusion of human monoclonal antibodies against *B. anthracis* PA prevented death in an animal model of inhalation anthrax and was well tolerated in human volunteers. Synthetic peptide complexes that target the cell surface receptors for PA also have been used to neutralize anthrax toxin in animal models. How these alternative approaches can be used to treat human disease remains to be demonstrated.

Bacillus cereus

Bacillus species other than *B. anthracis* are primarily opportunistic pathogens that have relatively low capacities for virulence. Although most of these species have been found to cause disease, *B. cereus* is clearly the most important pathogen, with gastroenteritis, ocular infections, and intravenous catheter-related sepsis being the diseases most commonly observed, as well as rare cases of severe pneumonia.

TABLE 20.2 *Bacillus cereus* Food Poisoning

Disease Features	Emetic Form	Diarrheal Form
Implicated food	Rice	Meat, vegetables
Incubation period (hours)	<6 (mean, 2)	>6 (mean, 9)
Symptoms	Vomiting, nausea, abdominal cramps	Diarrhea, nausea, abdominal cramps
Duration (hours)	8-10 (mean, 9)	20.36 (mean, 24)
Enterotoxin	Heat stable	Heat labile

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Gastroenteritis caused by *B. cereus* is mediated by one of **two enterotoxins** (Table 20.2). The **heat-stable,** proteolysis-resistant enterotoxin causes the **emetic form** of the disease, and the **heat-labile** enterotoxin causes the **diarrheal form** of the disease. The heat-labile enterotoxin is similar to the enterotoxins produced by *Escherichia coli* and *Vibrio cholerae;* each stimulates the adenylate cyclase–cAMP system in intestinal epithelial cells, leading to profuse watery diarrhea. The mechanism of action of the heat-stable enterotoxin is unknown.

The pathogenesis of *B. cereus* ocular infections is also incompletely defined. At least three toxins have been implicated: **necrotic toxin** (a heat-labile enterotoxin), **cereolysin** (a potent hemolysin named after the species), and **phospholipase C** (a potent lecithinase). It is likely that the rapid destruction of the eye that is characteristic of *B. cereus* infections results from the interaction of these toxins and other unidentified factors.

Bacillus species can colonize skin transiently and can be recovered as insignificant contaminants in blood cultures. In the presence of an intravascular foreign body, however, these organisms can be responsible for persistent bacteremia and signs of sepsis (i.e., fever, chills, hypotension, shock).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

B. cereus and other *Bacillus* species are ubiquitous organisms that are present in virtually all environments. Nearly all infections originate from an environmental source (e.g., contaminated soil). Isolation of bacteria from clinical specimens in the absence of characteristic disease usually represents insignificant contamination.

CLINICAL DISEASES

As mentioned previously, *B. cereus* is responsible for two forms of food poisoning: **vomiting disease (emetic form)** and **diarrheal disease (diarrheal form).** In most patients, the emetic form of disease results from consumption of **contaminated rice.** Most bacteria are killed

during the initial cooking of the rice, but the heat-resistant spores survive. If the cooked rice is not refrigerated, then the spores germinate and the bacteria can multiply rapidly. The heat-stable enterotoxin that is released is not destroyed when the rice is reheated. The emetic form of disease is an intoxication caused by ingestion of the enterotoxin, not the bacteria. Thus the incubation period after eating the contaminated rice is short (1 to 6 hours), and the duration of illness is also short (<24 hours). Symptoms consist of vomiting, nausea, and abdominal cramps. Fever and diarrhea are generally absent. Fulminant liver failure also has been associated with consumption of food contaminated with large amounts of emetic toxin, which impairs mitochondrial fatty acid metabolism. Fortunately, this is a rare complication.

The diarrheal form of *B. cereus* food poisoning is a true infection resulting from ingestion of the bacteria in contaminated meat, vegetables, or sauces. There is a longer incubation period during which the organism multiplies in the patient's intestinal tract, and the release of the heat-labile enterotoxin follows. This enterotoxin is responsible for the diarrhea, nausea, and abdominal cramps that develop. This form of disease generally lasts 1 day or longer.

B. cereus **ocular infections** usually occur after traumatic, penetrating injuries of the eye with a soil-contaminated object (Clinical Case 20.2). *Bacillus* panophthalmitis is a rapidly progressive disease that almost universally results in complete eye loss within 48 hours of the injury. Disseminated infections with ocular manifestations can also develop in intravenous drug abusers.

Other infections with *B. cereus* and other *Bacillus* species are intravenous catheter and central nervous system shunt infections and endocarditis (most common in drug abusers), as well as pneumonitis, bacteremia, and meningitis in severely immunosuppressed patients. It has also been reported that ingestion of **tea** by immunocompromised patients is associated with an increased risk for invasive *B. cereus* disease.

One rare disease of *B. cereus* that deserves special attention is **severe pneumonia mimicking anthrax in immunocompetent patients.** Four patients with this disease, all metal workers residing in Texas or Louisiana, have been described in the literature. Most interesting is that the strains contained the ***B. anthracis* pXO1 toxin genes** and all were **encapsulated,** although this was not the typical *B. anthracis* poly-γ-D-glutamic acid capsule. These strains demonstrate the potential danger and presumed ease of transferring *B. anthracis* virulence genes into the ubiquitous *B. cereus*.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Similar to *B. anthracis, B. cereus* and other species can be readily cultured from clinical specimens collected from patients with the emetic form of food poisoning. Because individuals can be transiently colonized with *B. cereus,* the implicated food (e.g., rice, meat, vegetables) must be cultured for confirmation of the existence of foodborne disease. In practice, neither cultures nor tests to detect the heat-stable or heat-labile enterotoxins are commonly performed, so most cases of *B. cereus* gastroenteritis are diagnosed by epidemiologic and clinical criteria.

Clinical Case 20.2 ***Bacillus cereus* Traumatic Endophthalmitis**

Endophthalmitis caused by the traumatic introduction of *Bacillus cereus* into the eye is unfortunately common. This is a typical presentation. A 44-year-old man suffered a traumatic eye injury while working in a vegetable garden, when a piece of metal was deflected into his left eye, damaging the cornea and anterior and posterior lens capsule. Over the next 12 hours, he developed increasing pain and purulence in his eye. He underwent surgery to relieve the ocular pressure, drain the purulence, and introduce intravitreal antibiotics (vancomycin, ceftazidime) and dexamethasone. Culture of the aspirated fluid was positive for *B. cereus*. Ciprofloxacin was added to his therapeutic regimen postoperatively. Despite the prompt surgical and medical intervention and subsequent intravitreal antibiotic injections, the intraocular inflammation persisted and evisceration was required. This patient illustrates the risks involved with penetrating eye injuries and the need to intervene aggressively if the eye is to be saved.

Bacillus organisms grow rapidly and are readily detected with the Gram stain and culture of specimens collected from infected eyes, intravenous culture sites, and other locations.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Because the course of *B. cereus* gastroenteritis is short and uncomplicated, symptomatic treatment is adequate. The treatment of other *Bacillus* infections is complicated because they have a rapid and progressive course and a high incidence of multidrug resistance (e.g., *B. cereus* carries genes for resistance to penicillins and cephalosporins). **Vancomycin, clindamycin, ciprofloxacin,** and **gentamicin** can be used to treat infections. Penicillins and cephalosporins are ineffective. Eye infections must be treated rapidly. Rapid consumption of foods after cooking and proper refrigeration of uneaten foods can prevent food poisoning.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Avashia, S.B., Riggins, W.S., Lindley, C., et al., 2007. Fatal pneumonia among metalworkers due to inhalation exposure to Bacillus cereus containing Bacillus anthracis toxin genes. Clin. Infect. Dis. 44, 414–416.

Baggett, H.C., Rhodes, J.C., Fridkin, S.K., et al., 2005. No evidence of a mild form of inhalational Bacillus anthracis infection during a bioterrorism-related inhalational anthrax outbreak in Washington, D.C., in 2001. Clin. Infect. Dis. 41, 991–997.

Basha, S., Rai, P., Poon, V., et al., 2006. Polyvalent inhibitors of anthrax toxin that target host receptors. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U S A. 103, 13509–13513.

Bottone, E., 2010. Bacillus cereus, a volatile human pathogen. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 23, 382–398.

Collier, R.J., Young, J.A.T., 2003. Anthrax toxin. Annu. Rev. Cell. Dev. Biol. 19, 45–70.

Doganay, M., Metan, G., Alp, E., 2010. A review of cutaneous anthrax and its outcome. J. Infect. Public Health 3, 98–105.

El Saleeby, C.M., Howard, S.C., Hayden, R.T., et al., 2004. Association between tea ingestion and invasive Bacillus cereus infection among children with cancer. Clin. Infect. Dis. 39, 1536–1539.

Hoffmaster, A.R., Hill, K.K., Gee, J.E., et al., 2006. Characterization of Bacillus cereus isolates associated with fatal pneumonias: strains are closely related to Bacillus anthracis and harbor B. anthracis virulence genes. J. Clin. Microbiol. 44, 3352–3360.

Krantz, B.A., Melnyk, R.A., Zhang, S., et al., 2005. A phenylalanine clamp catalyzes protein translocation through the anthrax toxin pore. Science 309, 777–781.

Mahtab, M., Leppla, S.H., 2004. The roles of anthrax toxin in pathogenesis. Curr. Opin. Microbiol. 7, 19–24.

Marston, C., Ibrahim, H., Lee, P., et al., 2016. Anthrax toxin expressing Bacillus cereus isolated from an anthrax-like eschar. PLoS ONE 11, e0156987. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0156987.

Melnyk, R.A., Hewitt, K.M., Lacy, D.B., et al., 2006. Structural determinants for the binding of anthrax lethal factor to oligomeric protective antigen. J. Biol. Chem. 281, 1630–1635.

Pickering, A.K., Merkel, T.J., 2004. Macrophages release tumor necrosis factor alpha and interleukin-12 in response to intracellular Bacillus anthracis spores. Infect. Immun. 72, 3069–3072.

Turnbull, P.C., 2002. Introduction: anthrax history, disease and ecology. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. 271, 1–19.

Case Study and Questions

A 56-year-old female postal worker sought medical care for fever, diarrhea, and vomiting. She was offered symptomatic treatment and discharged from the community hospital emergency department. Five days later, she returned to the hospital with complaints of chills, dry cough, and pleuritic chest pain. A chest radiograph showed a small right infiltrate and bilateral effusions but no evidence of a widened mediastinum. She was admitted to the hospital, and the next day her respiratory status and pleural effusions worsened. A computed tomography scan of her chest revealed enlarged mediastinal and cervical lymph nodes. Pleural fluid and blood were collected for culture, and these cultures were positive within 10 hours for gram-positive rods in long chains.

1. The clinical impression is that this woman has inhalation anthrax. What tests should be performed to confirm identification of the isolate?

2. What are the three primary virulence factors found in *B. anthracis*?

3. Describe the mechanisms of action of the toxins produced by *B. anthracis.*

4. Describe the two forms of *B. cereus* food poisoning. What toxin is responsible for each form? Why is the clinical presentation of these two diseases different?

5. *B. cereus* can cause eye infections. What are two risk factors for this disease?

21 Listeria *and Related Gram-Positive Bacteria*

Listeria monocytogenes, *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, and *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* are three medically important gram-positive rods that produce very dissimilar diseases.

1. What patient populations are most susceptible to infections caused by *Listeria* and *Erysipelothrix*, and how are these infections acquired?
2. Treatment of *Listeria* infections is most similar to what other gram-positive pathogen?
3. Why is the laboratory diagnosis of *Erysipelothrix* infections difficult to make?
4. Why is diphtheria not seen in the United States but still found in other countries?
5. Why is a Gram stain of a throat exudate or blood culture not useful for the diagnosis of diphtheria? How would the diagnosis be made if diphtheria is suspected?
6. What virulence factor is responsible for the clinical manifestations of diphtheria?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

LISTERIA MONOCYTOGENES

Trigger Words

Coccobacilli, β-hemolytic, meningitis, opportunistic, foodborne illness

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-positive coccobacilli, often arranged in pairs resembling *Streptococcus pneumoniae*
- Facultative intracellular pathogen that can avoid antibody-mediated clearance
- Ability to grow at 4° C, in a wide pH range, and in the presence of salt can lead to high concentrations of the bacteria in contaminated foods
- Virulent strains produce cell attachment factors (internalins), hemolysins (listeriolysin O, two phospholipase C enzymes), and a protein that mediates actin-directed intracellular motility (ActA)

Epidemiology

- Isolated in soil, water, and vegetation and from a variety of animals, including humans (low-level gastrointestinal carriage)
- Disease associated with consumption of contaminated food products (e.g., contaminated milk and cheese, processed meats, raw vegetables [especially cabbage]) or transplacental spread from mother to neonate; sporadic cases and epidemics occur throughout the year
- Neonates, elderly, pregnant women, and patients with defects in cellular immunity are at increased risk for disease

Diseases

- Neonatal disease can result in in utero death or multiorgan abscesses, meningitis, and septicemia
- Other diseases include influenza-like symptoms, self-limited gastroenteritis, and meningitis in patients with defects in cell-mediated immunity

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is insensitive; culture may require incubation for 2 to 3 days or enrichment at I am not sure how to make the symbol for 4 degree C as in the sentence below.
- Characteristic properties include motility at room temperature, weak this should be the Greek symbol for beta-hemolysis, and growth at 4° C and at high-salt concentrations

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- The treatment of choice for severe disease is penicillin or ampicillin, alone or in combination with gentamicin
- People at high risk should avoid eating raw or partially cooked foods of animal origin, soft cheese, and unwashed raw vegetables

ERYSIPELOTHRIX RHUSIOPATHIAE

Trigger Words

Pleomorphic rod, zoonotic, cutaneous infection, endocarditis

Biology and Virulence

- Slender, pleomorphic, gram-positive rods that form long (e.g., 60 µSlender, pleo)
- Production of neuraminidase believed to be important for attachment and penetration into epithelial cells, and polysaccharide-like capsule protects the bacteria from phagocytosis

Epidemiology

- Colonizes a variety of organisms, particularly swine and turkey
- Found in soil rich in organic matter or groundwater contaminated with wastes from colonized animals
- Uncommon pathogen in the United States
- Occupational disease of butchers, meat processors, farmers, poultry workers, fish handlers, and veterinarians

Diseases

- Disease in humans is most commonly (1) localized cutaneous infection, (2) generalized cutaneous disease, or (3) septicemia associated with subacute endocarditis involving previously undamaged heart valves

Diagnosis

- Long, filamentous, gram-positive rods seen on Gram stain of a biopsy collected at the advancing edge of the lesion
- Grows slowly on blood and chocolate agars incubated in 5% to 10% carbon dioxide

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Penicillin is drug of choice for both localized and systemic diseases; ciprofloxacin or clindamycin can be used for localized cutaneous infections for patients allergic to penicillin, and ceftriaxone or imipenem can be considered for disseminated infections
- Workers should cover exposed skin when handling animals and animal products
- Swineherds should be vaccinated

CORYNEBACTERIUM DIPHTHERIAE

Trigger Words

Diphtheria toxin, pharyngitis, vaccine

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-positive pleomorphic rods
- The major virulence factor is the diphtheria toxin, an A-B exotoxin; inhibits protein synthesis

Epidemiology

- Worldwide distribution maintained in asymptomatic carriers and infected patients
- Humans are the only known reservoir, with carriage in oropharynx or on skin surface
- Spread person to person by exposure to respiratory droplets or skin contact

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

- Disease observed in unvaccinated or partially immune children or adults traveling to countries with endemic disease
- Diphtheria is very uncommon in the United States and other countries with active vaccination programs

Diseases

- Etiologic agent of diphtheria: respiratory and cutaneous forms

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is nonspecific; metachromatic granules observed in *C. diphtheriae* and other corynebacteria
- Culture should be performed on nonselective (blood agar) and selective (cysteine-tellurite agar, Tinsdale medium, colistin-nalidixic agar) media
- Presumptive identification of *C. diphtheriae* can be based on the presence of cystinase and absence of pyrazinamidase; definitive identification by biochemical tests or species-specific gene sequencing
- Demonstration of exotoxin is performed by Elek test or polymerase chain reaction assay

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Infections treated with diphtheria antitoxin to neutralize exotoxin, penicillin or erythromycin to eliminate *C. diphtheriae* and terminate toxin production, and immunization of convalescing patients with diphtheria toxoid to stimulate protective antibodies
- Administration of diphtheria vaccine and booster shots to susceptible population

The aerobic, non–spore-forming, gram-positive rods are a heterogeneous group of bacteria. Some are well-recognized human pathogens (e.g., *Listeria monocytogenes, Corynebacterium diphtheriae*), others are primarily animal pathogens that can cause human disease (e.g., *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*), and some are opportunistic pathogens that typically infect hospitalized or immunocompromised patients (e.g., *Corynebacterium jeikeium*). Although the clinical presentation of the diseases can be characteristic, detection and identification of the organisms in the laboratory can be problematic. One technique that is useful for the preliminary identification of these bacteria involves their microscopic morphology. Gram-positive rods that are uniform in shape include *Listeria* and *Erysipelothrix;* irregularly shaped gram-positive rods typically are members of the genus *Corynebacterium* or closely related genera (Table 21.1). This chapter will focus on three species of gram-positive rods: *L. monocytogenes, E. rhusiopathiae,* and *C. diphtheriae*. The diseases caused by these and related bacteria are summarized in Table 21.2.

Listeria monocytogenes

The genus *Listeria* consists of 26 species and subspecies, and ***L. monocytogenes*** is the most significant human pathogen. *L. monocytogenes* is a short (0.4 to 0.5 × 0.5 to 2 μm), nonbranching, gram-positive, facultatively anaerobic rod capable of growth at a broad temperature range (1° C to 45° C) and in a high concentration of salt. The **short rods** appear singly, in pairs, or in short chains (Fig. 21.1) and can be mistaken for *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. This is important because both *S. pneumoniae* and *L. monocytogenes* can cause meningitis. The organisms are **motile** at room temperature but less so at 37° C, and they exhibit a characteristic end-over-end tumbling motion when a drop of broth is examined microscopically. *L. monocytogenes* exhibits **weak β-hemolysis** when grown on sheep blood agar plates. These differential characteristics (i.e., Gram-stain morphology, motility, β-hemolysis) are useful for the preliminary identification of *Listeria*. Although the bacteria are widely distributed in nature, human disease is uncommon and is restricted primarily to several well-defined populations: neonates, the elderly, pregnant women, and patients with defective cellular immunity.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

L. monocytogenes is a **facultative intracellular pathogen**. After ingestion of contaminated food, *L. monocytogenes* is able to survive exposure to proteolytic enzymes, stomach acid, and bile salts through the protective action of stress-response genes. These bacteria are then able to **adhere to host cells** via the interaction of proteins on the surface of the bacteria (i.e., internalin A [InlA]) with glycoprotein receptors on the host cell surface (e.g., epithelial cadherin [calcium-dependent adhesin]). Other internalins (e.g., InlB) can recognize receptors on a wider range of host cells. Studies with animal models have shown that infection is initiated in the enterocytes or M cells in Peyer patches. After penetration into the cells, the acid pH of the phagolysosome that surrounds the bacteria activates a bacterial pore-forming cytolysin **(listeriolysin O)** and two different **phospholipase C** enzymes, leading to release of the bacteria into the cell cytosol. The bacteria proceed to replicate and then move to the cell membrane. This movement is mediated by a bacterial protein, **ActA** (localized on the cell surface at one end of a bacterium), which coordinates **assembly of actin**. The distal ends of the actin tail remain fixed while assembly occurs adjacent to the end of the bacterium. Thus the bacterium is pushed to the cell membrane and a protrusion (filopod) is formed, pushing the bacterium into the adjacent cell. After the adjacent cell ingests the bacterium, the process of **phagolysosome lysis, bacterial replication**, and **directional movement** repeats. Entry into macrophages after passage through the intestinal lining carries the bacteria to the liver and spleen, leading to disseminated disease. The genes responsible for membrane lysis, intracellular replication, and directional movement are clustered together and regulated by a single gene, ***prfA*,** or the **"positive regulatory factor" gene.**

Humoral immunity is relatively unimportant for management of infections with *L. monocytogenes* because these bacteria can replicate in macrophages and move within cells, avoiding antibody-mediated clearance. For this reason, patients with defects in **cellular immunity,** but not in humoral immunity, are particularly susceptible to severe infections.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

L. monocytogenes is isolated from a variety of environmental sources and from the feces of mammals, birds, fish, and other animals. The primary source of infection with this organism is consumption of contaminated food; however, human-to-human transmission can occur primarily from mother to child in utero or at birth. Fecal carriage is estimated to occur in 1% to 5% of healthy people. Because the organism is ubiquitous, exposure and transient colonization are likely to occur in most individuals. Approximately

TABLE 21.1 *Listeria* and Related Bacteria

Organism	Historical Derivation
Listeria	*Listeria,* named after the English surgeon Lord Joseph Lister
L. monocytogenes	*monocytum,* a blood cell or monocyte; *gennaio,* produce (monocyte producing; membrane extracts stimulate monocyte production in rabbits, but this is not seen in human disease)
Erysipelothrix	*erythros,* red; *pella,* skin; *thrix,* hair (thin, hairlike organism that produces a red or inflammatory skin lesion)
E. rhusiopathiae	*rhusios,* red; *pathos,* disease (red disease)
Corynebacterium	*coryne,* a club; *bakterion*, a small rod (a small, club-shaped rod)
C. diphtheriae	*diphthera,* leather or skin (reference to the leathery membrane that forms initially on the pharynx)
C. jeikeium	*jeikeium* (species originally classified as group JK)
C. urealyticum	*urea*, urea; *lyticum*, lyse (capable of lysing urea; species rapidly hydrolyzes urea)
Arcanobacterium	*arcanus,* secretive; bacterium, rod (secretive bacterium; a slow-growing organism that can prove difficult to isolate)
Rothia mucilaginosa	Named after Roth, the bacteriologist who originally studied this group of organisms; *mucilaginosa,* slimy (slimy or mucoid organisms)
Tropheryma whipplei	*trophe,* nourishment; *eryma,* barrier; whipple, named after George Whipple who described it in 1907; it is a malabsorption disease; also called Whipple disease

TABLE 21.2 Human Disease Associated with *Listeria* and Related Bacteria

Organism	Diseases
Listeria monocytogenes	Neonatal disease (spontaneous abortion, disseminated abscesses and granulomas, meningitis, septicemia); influenza-like illness in healthy adults; bacteremia or disseminated disease with meningitis in pregnant women and patients with cell-mediated immune defects
Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae	Erysipeloid (painful, pruritic inflammatory skin lesion); generalized cutaneous disease; a diffuse cutaneous infection with fever and arthralgias; septicemia typically associated with endocarditis
Corynebacterium diphtheriae	Diphtheria (respiratory, cutaneous); pharyngitis and endocarditis (nontoxigenic strains)
C. jeikeium (group JK)	Septicemia, endocarditis, wound infections, foreign body (catheter, shunt, prosthesis) infections
C. urealyticum	Urinary tract infections (including pyelonephritis and alkaline-encrusted cystitis), septicemia, endocarditis, wound infections
Arcanobacterium	Pharyngitis, cellulitis, wound infections, abscess formation, septicemia, endocarditis
Rothia	Endocarditis, foreign-body infections
Tropheryma	Whipple disease

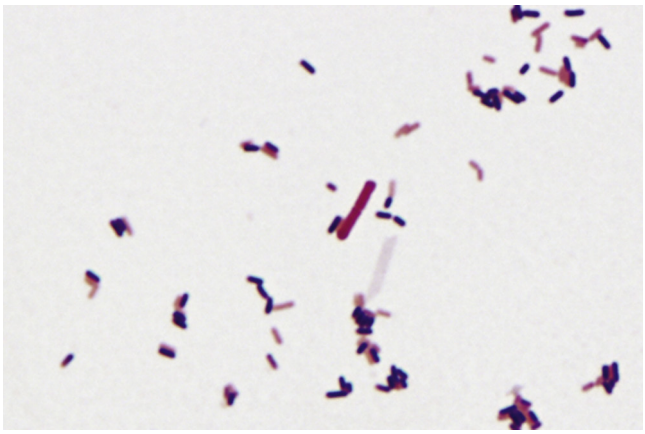


Fig. 21.1 Gram stain of *Listeria monocytogenes* in culture. *Listeria* appear as small gram-positive rods; some readily decolorize and appear gram-negative. The much larger gram-negative rod in the center of the photograph is *Escherichia coli*.

750 infections are reported annually in the United States; however, many mild infections are not reported. Large outbreaks associated with **contaminated food products** are well documented. For example, 30 million pounds of contaminated meat were recalled in one U.S. outbreak in 1999, and 16 million pounds of processed turkey and chicken meat were recalled in a second multistate outbreak in 2000. In 2018, the largest confirmed *Listeria* outbreak was reported in South Africa in which 982 confirmed cases and 189 deaths were associated with consumption of contaminated processed meat (bologna). The incidence of disease is also disproportionate in **high-risk populations,** such as neonates, the elderly, pregnant women, and patients with severe defects in cell-mediated immunity (e.g., transplants, lymphomas, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]).

Human listeriosis is a sporadic disease seen throughout the year, with focal epidemics and sporadic cases of listeriosis associated with consumption of undercooked processed meat (e.g., turkey franks, cold cuts); unpasteurized or contaminated milk or cheese; and unwashed raw vegetables, including cabbage. Although fresh produce is an uncommon cause of outbreaks, disease associated with consumption of contaminated cantaloupe was reported in 147 individuals in 2011 (86% were 60 years of age or older; 22% fatality rate). Because *Listeria* can grow in a wide pH range and at cold temperatures, foods with small numbers of organisms can become heavily contaminated during prolonged refrigeration. Disease can occur if the food is uncooked or inadequately cooked (e.g., microwaved beef and turkey franks) before consumption. Although *Listeria* infections are relatively uncommon, it is the leading cause of deaths attributed to foodborne illnesses in the United States.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Neonatal Disease

Two forms of neonatal disease have been described: (1) **early-onset disease,** acquired transplacentally in utero, and (2) **late-onset disease,** acquired at or soon after birth (see Table 21.2). Early-onset disease can result in

abortion, stillbirth, or premature birth. **Granulomatosis infantiseptica** is a severe form of early-onset listeriosis characterized by the formation of abscesses and granulomas in multiple organs and a high mortality rate unless treated promptly.

Late-onset disease occurs 2 to 3 weeks after birth in the form of meningitis or meningoencephalitis with septicemia. The clinical signs and symptoms are not unique; thus other causes of neonatal central nervous system disease, such as group B streptococcal disease, must be excluded.

Infections in Pregnant Women

Most infections in pregnant women occur during the third trimester when cellular immunity is most impaired. Infected women typically develop nonspecific influenza-like symptoms that may resolve without treatment. Unless blood cultures are collected in pregnant febrile women without another source of infection (e.g., urinary tract infection), *Listeria* bacteremia and the associated neonatal risk may be unappreciated.

Disease in Healthy Adults

Most *Listeria* infections in healthy adults are asymptomatic or occur in the form of a mild influenza-like illness. An acute self-limited gastroenteritis develops in some patients, characterized by a 1-day incubation period followed by 2 days of symptoms, including watery diarrhea, fever, nausea, headache, myalgias, and arthralgias. In contrast to these self-limited illnesses, listeriosis in elderly patients and those with compromised cellular immunity is more severe.

Meningitis in Adults

Meningitis is the most common form of disseminated *Listeria* infection in adults (Clinical Case 21.1). Although the clinical signs and symptoms of meningitis caused by this organism are not specific, *Listeria* should always be suspected in patients with organ transplants or cancer and in pregnant women in whom meningitis develops. Disease is associated with high mortality (20% to 50%) and significant neurologic sequelae among the survivors.

Primary Bacteremia

Patients with bacteremia may have an unremarkable history of chills and fever (commonly observed in pregnant women) or a more acute presentation with high-grade fever and hypotension. Only severely immunocompromised patients and the infants of pregnant women with sepsis appear to be at risk of death.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Gram-stain preparations of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) typically show no organisms because the bacteria are generally present in concentrations (e.g., 10^4 bacteria per milliliter CSF or less) below the limit of detection (10^5 bacteria per milliliter). This is in contrast with most other bacterial pathogens of the central nervous system, which are present in concentrations of 100-fold to 1000-fold higher. If the Gram stain shows organisms, they are intracellular and extracellular gram-positive coccobacilli. Care must be used to distinguish them from other bacteria such as *S. pneumoniae*.

Clinical Case 21.1 *Listeria* Meningitis in Immunocompromised Man

The following patient described by Bowie and associates (*Ann Pharmacother* 38:58–61, 2004) illustrates the clinical presentation of *Listeria* meningitis. A 73-year-old man with refractory rheumatoid arthritis was brought by his family to the local hospital because he had a decreased level of consciousness and a 3-day history of headache, nausea, and vomiting. His current medications were infliximab, methotrexate, and prednisone for his rheumatoid arthritis. On physical examination, the patient had a stiff neck and was febrile, had a pulse of 92 beats/min, and had a blood pressure of 179/72 mm Hg. Because meningitis was suspected, blood and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) were collected for culture. The Gram stain of the CSF was negative, but *Listeria* grew from both blood and CSF cultures. The patient was treated with vancomycin, the infliximab was discontinued, and he made an uneventful recovery despite using less-than-optimal antimicrobial therapy. Infliximab has been associated with a dose-dependent monocytopenia. Because monocytes are key effectors for clearance of *Listeria,* this immunocompromised patient was specifically at risk for infection with this organism. Failure to detect *Listeria* in CSF by Gram stain is typical of this disease because the bacteria fail to multiply to detectable levels.

Culture

Listeria grows on most conventional laboratory media, with small, round colonies observed on agar media after incubation for 1 to 2 days. It may be necessary to use selective media and **cold enrichment** (storage of the specimen in the refrigerator for a prolonged period) to detect listeriae in specimens contaminated with rapidly growing bacteria. β-Hemolysis on sheep blood agar media can serve to distinguish *Listeria* from morphologically similar bacteria; however, hemolysis is generally weak and may not be observed initially. The characteristic motility of the organism in a liquid medium or semisolid agar is helpful for the preliminary identification of listeriae. All gram-positive rods isolated from blood and CSF should be identified to distinguish between *Corynebacterium* (presumably a skin contaminant) and *Listeria*.

Identification

Selected biochemical tests have been used historically to identify *Listeria*. More recently matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI) mass spectrometry has replaced biochemical testing in many laboratories. Serologic and molecular typing methods are used for epidemiologic investigations. A total of 13 serotypes have been described; however, serotypes 1/2a, 1/2b, and 4b are responsible for most infections in neonates and adults, so serotyping is generally not useful in epidemiologic investigations. Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) and more recently whole genome sequence analysis are the most commonly used molecular methods for epidemiologic investigations of suspected outbreaks.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Because most antibiotics are only bacteriostatic with *L. monocytogenes,* the combination of **gentamicin with either penicillin or ampicillin** is the treatment of choice for serious infections. Listeriae are naturally resistant to cephalosporins, and resistance to macrolides, fluoroquinolones, and tetracyclines has been observed, which can limit the utility of these drugs. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is bactericidal to *L. monocytogenes* and has been used successfully. Other antibiotics, such as linezolid, daptomycin, and tigecycline, have good in vitro activity but have not been used extensively to treat patients.

Because listeriae are ubiquitous and most infections are sporadic, prevention and control are difficult. People at high risk of infection should avoid eating raw or partially cooked foods of animal origin, soft cheeses, and unwashed raw vegetables. A vaccine is not available, and prophylactic antibiotic therapy for high-risk patients has not been evaluated.

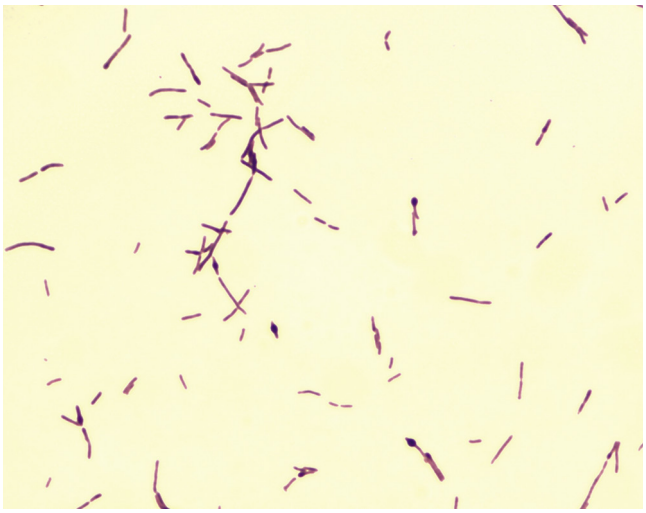


Fig. 21.2 Gram stain of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* in culture. Note the variable lengths of the rods and the "gram-negative" appearance.

Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

E. rhusiopathiae is a gram-positive, non–spore-forming rod that is distributed worldwide in wild and domestic animals. The rods are slender (0.2 to 0.5 × 0.8 to 2.5 μm) and sometimes pleomorphic, with a tendency to form "hairlike" filaments as long as 60 μm. They decolorize readily and may appear gram-negative (Fig. 21.2). The organisms are microaerophilic and grow best in an atmosphere of reduced oxygen and supplemented carbon dioxide (5% to 10% CO_2). A mixture of tiny, smooth colonies and larger, rough colonies are observed after 2 to 3 days of incubation. If the rough colonies are absent, then the small smooth colonies may be overlooked unless the culture plates are examined carefully.

PATHOGENESIS

Little is known about specific virulence factors in *Erysipelothrix*. Production of neuraminidase is believed to be important for attachment and penetration into epithelial cells, and a polysaccharide-like capsule protects the bacteria from phagocytosis.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Erysipelothrix is a ubiquitous organism that is distributed worldwide. It can be recovered on the tonsils or in the digestive tracts of many wild and domestic animals, including mammals, birds, and fish. Colonization is particularly high in **swine** and **turkeys.** Soil rich in organic matter or groundwater contaminated with animal wastes can facilitate spread in an animal population. These bacteria are resistant to drying and can survive in soil for months to years. In addition, *E. rhusiopathiae* is resistant to high concentrations of salt, pickling, and smoking. *Erysipelothrix* disease in humans is **zoonotic** (spread from animals to humans) and primarily occupational. Butchers, meat processors, farmers, poultry workers, fish handlers, and veterinarians are at greatest risk. Cutaneous infections typically develop after the organism is inoculated subcutaneously through an abrasion or puncture wound during the handling of contaminated animal products or soil. The incidence of human disease is unknown because *Erysipelothrix* infection is not a reportable disease.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Animal disease, particularly in swine, is widely recognized, but human disease is less common (see Table 21.2; Clinical Case 21.2). Three primary forms of human infection with *E. rhusiopathiae* have been described: (1) a localized skin infection, **erysipeloid** (not to be confused with streptococcal erysipelas), (2) generalized cutaneous disease, and (3) **septicemia.** Erysipeloid is an inflammatory skin lesion that develops at the site of trauma after 2 to 7 days of incubation. The lesion most commonly presents on the fingers or hands and appears violaceous with a raised edge. It slowly spreads peripherally as the discoloration in the central area fades. The painful lesion is pruritic, and the patient experiences a burning or throbbing sensation. Suppuration is uncommon and is a feature that distinguishes erysipeloid from streptococcal erysipelas. The resolution can be spontaneous but can be hastened with appropriate antibiotic therapy. The diffuse cutaneous infection is characterized by development of lesions either in the general area of the initial lesion or at other skin locations. The systemic signs of fever and arthralgias are common, but blood cultures are typically negative.

The septicemic form of *Erysipelothrix* infections is uncommon, but when present, it is frequently associated with endocarditis. *Erysipelothrix* endocarditis may have an acute onset but is usually subacute. Involvement of previously undamaged heart valves (particularly the aortic valve) is common. Other systemic complications (e.g., abscess formation, meningitis, osteomyelitis) are relatively uncommon.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The rods are located only in the deep tissue of the lesion. Thus full-thickness biopsy specimens or deep aspirates must

Clinical Case 21.2 *Erysipelothrix* Endocarditis

Endocarditis caused by *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* is an uncommon but well-recognized disease. The following case history reported by Artz and associates (*Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 20:587–588, 2001) is typical of this disease. A 46-year-old man who worked as a butcher and had a history of alcoholism was admitted to the hospital with an erythematous rash over his upper body and a complaint of arthralgias of both shoulders. Medical history revealed a 4-week history of night sweats and daily recurring chills, which the patient attributed to his drinking. Physical examination revealed hepatosplenomegaly, a systolic murmur detected on auscultation, and a calcified aortic valve with mild regurgitation but no vegetations on echocardiography. Five blood cultures were collected, and all were positive for *E. rhusiopathiae* after 2 days. The patient was transferred to surgery for valve replacement, and paravalvular abscesses were detected intraoperatively. After surgical repair, the patient was treated with clindamycin and penicillin and made a complete recovery. This case illustrates risk factors (i.e., butcher, alcoholism), a chronic course, and the value of surgery combined with treatment with effective antibiotics (i.e., penicillin, clindamycin).

be collected from the margin of the lesion. A Gram stain of the specimen is typically negative, although the presence of **thin, gram-positive rods** associated with a characteristic lesion and clinical history can be diagnostic. *E. rhusiopathiae* is not fastidious and grows on most conventional laboratory media incubated in the presence of 5% to 10% CO_2; however, growth is slow, and cultures must be incubated for 3 days or longer before being considered negative. The absence of both motility and catalase production distinguishes this organism from *Listeria*. The organism is weakly fermentative and produces hydrogen sulfide on triple-sugar iron agar. Serology is not useful for diagnosis because an antibody response is weak in human infections.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Erysipelothrix is susceptible to **penicillin,** which is the antibiotic of choice for both localized and systemic diseases. Cephalosporins, carbapenems, fluoroquinolones, and clindamycin are also active in vitro, but the organism has variable susceptibility to macrolides, sulfonamides, and aminoglycosides and is resistant to vancomycin. For patients allergic to penicillin, ciprofloxacin or clindamycin can be used for localized cutaneous infections, and ceftriaxone or imipenem can be considered for disseminated infections. Infections in people at a higher occupational risk are prevented by the use of gloves and other appropriate coverings on exposed skin. Vaccination is used to control disease in swine.

Corynebacterium diphtheriae

The genus *Corynebacterium* is a large, heterogeneous collection of almost 150 species and subspecies that have a cell wall with arabinose, galactose, *meso*-diaminopimelic acid (*meso*-DAP), and (in most species) **short-chain mycolic acids** (22 to 36 carbon atoms). Although organisms with medium- and long-chain mycolic acids stain with acid-fast stains (see Chapter 22), *Corynebacterium* organisms are not acid-fast. Gram stains of these bacteria reveal clumps and short chains of irregularly shaped ("club-shaped") rods (Fig. 21.3). Corynebacteria are aerobic or facultatively anaerobic, nonmotile, and catalase positive. Most (but not all) species ferment carbohydrates, producing lactic acid as a by-product. Many species grow well on common laboratory media; however, some species form small colonies because they require lipid supplemented media for good growth (**lipophilic** strains).

Corynebacteria are ubiquitous in plants and animals, and they normally colonize the skin, upper respiratory tract, gastrointestinal tract, and urogenital tract in humans. Although all species of corynebacteria can function as opportunistic pathogens, relatively few are associated with human disease (see Table 21.2). The most famous of these is *C. diphtheriae,* which is the etiologic agent of **diphtheria.** A number of other genera of coryneform bacteria have been characterized. Three genera associated with human disease (*Arcanobacterium, Rothia,* and *Tropheryma*) are listed in Table 21.2, but these will not be discussed further.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

C. diphtheriae is an irregularly staining, pleomorphic rod (0.3 to 0.8 × 1.0 to 8.0 μm). After overnight incubation, large 1- to 3-mm colonies are observed on blood agar medium. More selective, differential media can be used to recover this pathogen from specimens with other organisms present, such as pharyngeal specimens. This species is subdivided into four biotypes based on their colonial morphology and biochemical properties: *belfanti, gravis, intermedius,* and *mitis,* with most disease caused by **biotype *mitis*.**

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Diphtheria toxin is the major virulence factor of *C. diphtheriae*. The *tox* gene that codes for the exotoxin is introduced into strains of *C. diphtheriae* by a lysogenic bacteriophage, **β-phage.** Two processing steps are necessary for the active gene product to be secreted: (1) proteolytic cleavage of the leader sequence from the Tox protein during secretion from the bacterial cell and (2) cleavage of the toxin molecule into two polypeptides (A and B) that remain attached by a disulfide bond. This 58,300-Da protein is an example of the classic **A-B exotoxin.**

Three functional regions exist on the toxin molecule: a **catalytic region** on the A subunit and a **receptor-binding region** and a **translocation region** on the B subunit. The receptor for the toxin is **heparin-binding epidermal growth factor,** which is present on the surface of many eukaryotic cells, particularly heart and nerve cells; its presence explains the cardiac and neurologic symptoms observed in patients with severe diphtheria. After the toxin becomes attached to the host cell, the translocation region is inserted into the endosomal

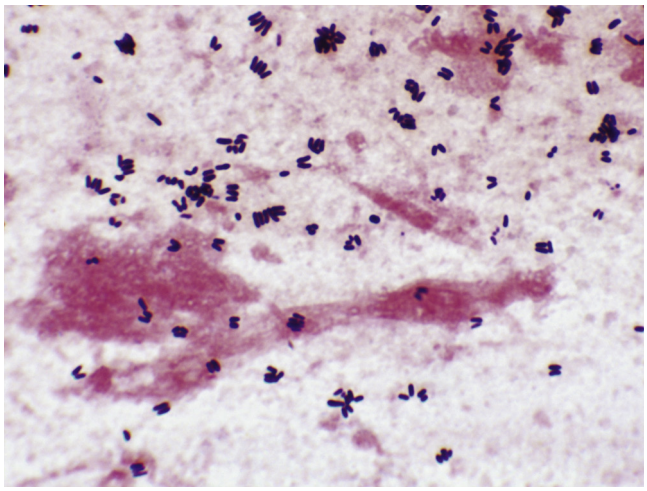


Fig. 21.3 Gram stain of *Corynebacterium* species in sputum specimen.

membrane, facilitating the movement of the catalytic region into the cell cytosol. The A subunit then terminates host cell protein synthesis by inactivating **elongation factor-2 (EF-2),** which is a factor required for the movement of nascent peptide chains on ribosomes. Because the turnover of EF-2 is very slow and approximately only one molecule per ribosome is present in a cell, it has been estimated that one exotoxin molecule can inactivate the entire EF-2 content in a cell, completely terminating host cell protein synthesis. Toxin synthesis is regulated by a chromosomally encoded element, **diphtheria toxin repressor (DTxR).** This protein, activated in the presence of high iron concentrations, can bind to the toxin gene operator and prevent toxin production.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Diphtheria is a disease found worldwide, particularly in poor urban areas in which there is crowding and the protective level of vaccine-induced immunity is low. The largest outbreak in the latter part of the 20th century occurred in the former Soviet Union, where in 1994 almost 48,000 cases were documented, with 1746 deaths. *C. diphtheriae* is maintained in the population by **asymptomatic carriage** in the oropharynx or on the skin of immune people. Respiratory droplets or skin contact transmits it from person to person. **Humans** are the **only known reservoir** for this organism.

Diphtheria has become uncommon in the United States because of an active immunization program, as shown by the fact that more than 200,000 cases were reported in 1921, but only 2 cases have been reported since 2003. An analysis of *C. diphtheriae* infections in the United Kingdom between 1986 and 2008 identified that the major risk factor for infection was travel of nonimmune individuals to countries with endemic disease (e.g., Indian subcontinent, Africa, Southeast Asia). Diphtheria is primarily a pediatric disease, but the highest incidence has shifted toward older age groups in areas in which there are active immunization programs for children. Skin infection with toxigenic *C. diphtheriae* (cutaneous diphtheria) also occurs, but it is not a reportable disease in the United States, so its incidence is unknown.

CLINICAL DISEASES

The clinical presentation of diphtheria is determined by the (1) site of infection, (2) immune status of the patient, and (3) virulence of the organism. Exposure to *C. diphtheriae* may result in asymptomatic colonization in fully immune people; mild respiratory disease in partially immune patients; or a fulminant, sometimes fatal, disease in nonimmune patients. Diphtheria toxin is produced at the site of the infection and then disseminates through the blood to produce the systemic signs of diphtheria. The organism does not need to enter the blood to produce disease.

Respiratory Diphtheria

The symptoms of diphtheria involving the respiratory tract develop after a 2- to 4-day incubation period (Clinical Case 21.3). Organisms multiply locally on epithelial cells in the pharynx or adjacent surfaces and initially cause localized damage as a result of exotoxin activity. The onset is sudden, with malaise, sore throat, **exudative pharyngitis,** and a low-grade fever. The exudate evolves into a thick **pseudomembrane** composed of bacteria, lymphocytes, plasma cells, fibrin, and dead cells that can cover the tonsils, uvula, and palate and can extend up into the nasopharynx or down into the larynx (Fig. 21.4). The pseudomembrane firmly adheres to the underlying tissue and is difficult to dislodge without making the tissue bleed (unique to diphtheria). As the patient recovers after the approximately 1-week course of the disease, the membrane dislodges and is expectorated. Systemic complications in patients with severe disease primarily involve the heart and nervous system. Evidence of **myocarditis** can be detected in the majority of patients with diphtheria, typically developing 1 to 2 weeks into the illness and at a time when the pharyngeal symptoms are improving. Symptoms can present acutely or gradually, progressing in severe disease to congestive heart failure, cardiac arrhythmias, and death. **Neurotoxicity** is proportional to the severity of the primary disease, which is influenced by the patient's immunity. The majority of patients with severe primary disease develop neuropathy, initially localized to the soft palate and pharynx, later involving oculomotor and ciliary paralysis, with progression to peripheral neuritis.

Cutaneous Diphtheria

Cutaneous diphtheria is acquired through skin contact with other infected persons. The organism colonizes the skin and gains entry into the subcutaneous tissue through breaks in the skin. A papule develops first and then evolves into a **chronic, nonhealing ulcer,** sometimes covered with a grayish membrane. *Staphylococcus aureus* or *S. pyogenes* is also frequently present in the wound.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The initial treatment of a patient with diphtheria is instituted on the basis of the clinical diagnosis, not laboratory results, because definitive results are not available for at least a week.

Clinical Case 21.3 **Respiratory Diphtheria**

Lurie and associates (*JAMA* 291:937–938, 2004) reported the last patient with respiratory diphtheria seen in the United States. An unvaccinated 63-year-old man developed a sore throat while on a week-long trip in rural Haiti. Two days after he returned home to Pennsylvania, he visited a local hospital with complaints of a sore throat and difficulties in swallowing. He was treated with oral antibiotics but returned 2 days later with chills, sweating, difficulty swallowing and breathing, nausea, and vomiting. He had diminished breath sounds in the left lung, and radiographs confirmed pulmonary infiltrates and enlargement of the epiglottis. Laryngoscopy revealed yellow exudates on the tonsils, posterior pharynx, and soft palate. He was admitted to the intensive care unit and treated with azithromycin, ceftriaxone, nafcillin, and steroids, but over the next 4 days he became hypotensive with a low-grade fever. Cultures were negative for *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*. By the eighth day of illness, a chest radiograph showed infiltrates in the right and left lung bases, and a white exudate consistent with *C. diphtheriae* pseudomembrane was observed over the supraglottic structures. Cultures at this time remained negative for *C. diphtheriae,* but polymerase chain reaction testing for the exotoxin gene was positive. Despite aggressive therapy, the patient continued to deteriorate, and on the 17th day of hospitalization he developed cardiac complications and died. This patient illustrates (1) the risk factor of an unimmunized patient traveling to an endemic area, (2) the classic presentation of severe respiratory diphtheria, (3) delays associated with diagnosis of an uncommon disease, and (4) the difficulties most laboratories would now have isolating the organism in culture.

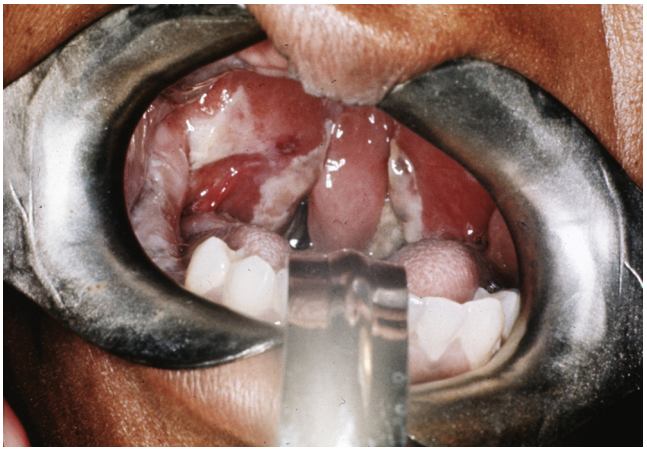


Fig. 21.4 Pharynx of a 39-year-old woman with bacteriologically confirmed diphtheria. The photograph was taken 4 days after the onset of fever, malaise, and sore throat. Hemorrhage caused by removal of the membrane by swabbing appears as a dark area on the left. (From Mandell, G., Bennett, J., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

Microscopy

The results of microscopic examination of clinical material are unreliable. Metachromatic granules in bacteria stained with methylene blue have been described, but this appearance is not specific to *C. diphtheriae*.

Culture

Specimens for the recovery of *C. diphtheriae* should be collected from both the nasopharynx and throat and should be inoculated onto a nonselective, enriched blood agar plate and a selective medium (e.g., cysteine-tellurite blood agar [CTBA], Tinsdale medium, colistin-nalidixic agar [CNA]). Tellurite inhibits the growth of most upper respiratory tract bacteria and gram-negative rods and is reduced by *C. diphtheriae,* producing a characteristic gray to black color on agar. Degradation of cysteine by *C. diphtheriae* cysteinase activity produces a brown halo around the colonies. CTBA has a long shelf life (practical for cultures that are infrequently performed) but inhibits some strains of *C. diphtheriae*. Tinsdale medium is the best medium for recovering *C. diphtheriae* in clinical specimens, but it has a short shelf life and requires the addition of horse serum. Because infections caused by *C. diphtheriae* are rarely seen or suspected in nonendemic areas, CTBA and Tinsdale medium are not commonly available in most laboratories. CNA is commonly used for the selective recovery of gram-positive bacteria; therefore this is a practical alternative medium. Regardless of the media used, all isolates resembling *C. diphtheriae* must be identified by biochemical testing and the presence of the diphtheria exotoxin confirmed because nontoxigenic strains occur.

Identification

The presumptive identification of *C. diphtheriae* can be based on the presence of cystinase and absence of pyrazinamidase (two enzyme reactions that can be rapidly determined). More extensive biochemical tests or nucleic acid sequencing of species-specific genes is required for identification at the species level.

Toxigenicity Testing

All isolates of *C. diphtheriae* should be tested for the production of exotoxin. The gold standard for detection of diphtheria toxin is an in vitro immunodiffusion assay **(Elek test).** An alternative method is detection of the exotoxin gene using a **polymerase chain reaction (PCR)–based nucleic acid amplification method.** This test can detect the *tox* gene in clinical isolates and directly in clinical specimens (e.g., swabs from the diphtheritic membrane or biopsy material). Although this test is rapid and specific, strains in which the *tox* gene is not expressed (presumably because the **DTxR** is expressed) can give a positive signal. Nontoxigenic strains of *C. diphtheriae* do not produce classic diphtheria; however, they should not be ignored because these strains have been associated with other significant diseases, including septicemia, endocarditis, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis, and abscess formation.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The most important aspect of the treatment for diphtheria is early administration of **diphtheria antitoxin** to specifically neutralize the exotoxin before it is bound by the host cell. Once the cell internalizes the toxin, cell death is inevitable. Unfortunately, because diphtheria may not be suspected initially, significant disease progression can occur before the antitoxin is administered. Antibiotic therapy

with **penicillin or erythromycin** is also used to eliminate *C. diphtheriae* and terminate toxin production. Bed rest, isolation to prevent secondary spread, and maintenance of an open airway in patients with respiratory diphtheria are all important. After the patient has recovered, **immunization with toxoid** is required because most patients fail to develop protective antibodies after a natural infection.

Symptomatic diphtheria can be prevented by actively immunizing people with diphtheria toxoid. The nontoxic, immunogenic toxoid is prepared by formalin treatment of the toxin. Initially, children are given five injections of this preparation with pertussis and tetanus antigens **(DPT vaccine)** at ages 2, 4, 6, 15 to 18 months, and 4 to 6 years. After that time, it is recommended that booster vaccinations with diphtheria toxoid combined with tetanus toxoid be given every 10 years. The effectiveness of immunization is well documented, with disease restricted to nonimmune or incompletely immunized individuals.

People in close contact with patients who have documented diphtheria are at risk for acquiring the disease. Nasopharyngeal specimens for culture should be collected from all close contacts and antimicrobial prophylaxis with erythromycin or penicillin started immediately. Any contact who has not completed the series of diphtheria immunizations or who has not received a booster dose within the previous 5 years should receive a booster dose of toxoid. People exposed to cutaneous diphtheria should be managed in the same manner because it is reported that they are more contagious than patients with respiratory diphtheria. If the respiratory or cutaneous infection is caused by a nontoxigenic strain, it is unnecessary to institute prophylaxis in contacts.

For a case study and questions please see Student Consult.com.

Bibliography

Allerberger, F., Wagner, M., 2010. Listeriosis: a resurgent foodborne infection. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 16, 16–23.

Fenollar, F., Puechal, X., Raoult, D., 2007. Whipple's disease. N. Engl. J. Med. 356, 55–66.

Freitag, N., Port, G., Miner, M., 2009. *Listeria monocytogenes*—from saprophyte to intracellular pathogen. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 7, 623–628.

Funke, G., von Graevenitz, A., Clarridge 3rd, J.E., et al., 1997. Clinical microbiology of coryneform bacteria. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 10, 125–159.

Gorby, G.L., Peacock Jr., J.E., 1988. *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* endocarditis: microbiologic, epidemiologic, and clinical features of an occupational disease. Rev. Infect. Dis. 10, 317–325.

Gray, M.J., Freitag, N.E., Boor, K.J., 2006. How the bacterial pathogen *Listeria monocytogenes* mediates the switch from environmental Dr. Jekyll to pathogenic Mr. Hyde. Infect. Immun. 74, 2505–2512.

McCollum, J.T., Cronquist, A.B., Silk, B.J., et al., 2013. Multistate outbreak of listeriosis associated with cantaloupe. N. Engl. J. Med 369, 944–953.

Pamer, E.G., 2004. Immune responses to *Listeria monocytogenes*. Nat. Rev. Immunol. 4, 812–823.

Popovic, T., Kombarova, S.Y., Reeves, M.W., et al., 1996. Molecular epidemiology of diphtheria in Russia, 1985-1994. J. Infect. Dis. 174, 1064–1072.

Wagner, K.S., White, J.M., Crowcroft, N.S., et al., 2010. Diphtheria in the United Kingdom, 1986-2008: the increasing role of *Corynebacterium ulcerans*. Epidemiol. Infect. 138, 1519–1530.

Wang, Q., Chang, B.J., Riley, T.V., 2010. Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae. Vet. Microbiol. 140, 405–417.

Wing, E., Gregory, S., 2002. *Listeria monocytogenes:* clinical and experimental update. J. Infect. Dis. 185 (Suppl. 1), S18–S24.

Case Study and Questions

A 35-year-old man was hospitalized because of headache, fever, and confusion. He had received a kidney transplant 7 months earlier, after which he had been given immunosuppressive drugs to prevent organ rejection. Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) was collected, which revealed a white blood cell count of 36 cells/mm^3, with 96% polymorphonuclear leukocytes, a glucose concentration of 40 mg/dl, and a protein concentration of 172 mg/dl. A Gram stain preparation of CSF was negative for organisms, but gram-positive coccobacilli grew in cultures of the blood and CSF.

1. What is the most likely cause of this patient's meningitis?
2. What are the potential sources of this organism?
3. What virulence factors are associated with this organism?
4. How would this disease be treated? Which antibiotics are effective in vitro? Which antibiotics are ineffective?

22 Mycobacterium *and* *Related Acid-Fast Bacteria*

A 47-year-old renal transplant recipient who had been receiving prednisone and azathioprine for 2 years was admitted to the university medical center. Two weeks earlier, the patient had noticed the development of a dry, persistent cough. Five days before admission, the cough became productive and pleuritic chest pain developed. On the day of admission, the patient was in mild respiratory distress, and chest radiographs revealed a patchy right upper lobe infiltrate. Sputum specimens were initially sent for bacterial culture, and the modified acid-fast stain was positive.

1. What genera of bacteria will stain with the modified acid-fast stain?
2. If this patient has no travel history outside the United States, what would be the most likely cause of the respiratory illness?
3. What are the most common diseases caused by the genera of acid-fast bacteria?
4. What characteristic morphologic properties and growth properties will help differentiate the most common acid-fast bacteria?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

MYCOBACTERIUM TUBERCULOSIS

Trigger Words

Acid-fast, lipid-rich cell wall, intracellular, purified protein derivative (PPD), drug-resistant

Biology and Virulence

- Weakly gram-positive, strongly acid-fast, aerobic rods
- Lipid-rich cell wall, making the organism resistant to traditional stains, disinfectants, detergents, common antibacterial antibiotics, and host immune response
- Capable of intracellular growth in alveolar macrophages
- Disease primarily from host response to infection

Epidemiology

- Worldwide; one-fourth of the world's population is infected with this organism
- A total of 10.4 million new cases each year and 1.6 million deaths
- Disease most common in India, Pakistan, sub-Saharan Africa, South Africa, China, and Eastern Europe
- 9272 new cases in the United States in 2016
- Populations at greatest risk for disease are foreign born or travelers to endemic countries, immunocompromised patients (particularly those with HIV infection), drug or alcohol abusers, homeless persons, and individuals exposed to diseased patients
- Humans are the only natural reservoir
- Person-to-person spread by infectious aerosols

Diseases

- Primary infection is pulmonary
- Dissemination to any body site occurs most commonly in immunocompromised patients

Diagnosis

- Tuberculin skin test and interferon (IFN)-γ release tests are sensitive markers for exposure to the organism
- Microscopy and culture are sensitive and specific
- Nucleic acid amplification tests are important where culture is not available and microscopy is inaccurate for detection of *M. tuberculosis* in clinical specimens
- Identification most commonly made using species-specific molecular probes, sequencing, or mass spectrometry

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Prolonged treatment with multiple drugs is required to prevent development of drug-resistant strains
- Isoniazid (INH), ethambutol, pyrazinamide, and rifampin for 2 months followed by 4-6 months of INH and rifampin or alternative combination drugs
- Prophylaxis for exposure to tuberculosis can include INH for 6-9 months or daily rifampin for 4 months; pyrazinamide and ethambutol or levofloxacin are used for 6-12 months after exposure to drug-resistant *M. tuberculosis*
- Immunoprophylaxis with bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) in endemic countries
- Control of disease through active surveillance, prophylactic and therapeutic intervention, and careful case monitoring

MYCOBACTERIUM LEPRAE

Trigger Words

Acid-fast, leprosy, nonculturable, skin test

Biology and Virulence

- Weakly gram-positive, strongly acid-fast rods
- Lipid-rich cell wall
- Unable to be cultured on artificial media
- Disease primarily from host response to infection

Epidemiology

- 200,000 new cases were reported in 2016, with most cases in India, Brazil, and Indonesia
- 178 new cases reported in the United States in 2015
- Lepromatous form of disease, but not the tuberculoid form, is highly infectious
- Person-to-person spread by prolonged exposure to respiratory secretions of an untreated, infected person

Diseases

- Tuberculoid (paucibacillary) and lepromatous (multibacillary) forms of leprosy

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is sensitive for the lepromatous form but not the tuberculoid form
- Skin testing is required to confirm tuberculoid leprosy
- Culture is not useful

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Tuberculoid form is treated with rifampicin and dapsone for 6 months; clofazimine is added to this regimen for treatment of the lepromatous form, and therapy is extended to a minimum of 12 months
- Disease is controlled through prompt recognition and treatment of infected people

MYCOBACTERIUM AVIUM COMPLEX

Trigger Words

Acid-fast, pulmonary infections, AIDS, prophylaxis

Biology and Virulence

- Weakly gram-positive, strongly acid-fast aerobic rods
- Lipid-rich cell wall
- Disease primarily from host response to infection

Epidemiology

- Worldwide distribution, but disease is seen most commonly in countries where tuberculosis is less common
- Acquired primarily through ingestion of contaminated water or food; inhalation of infectious aerosols is believed to play a minor role in transmission
- Patients at greatest risk for disease are those who are immunocompromised (particularly patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]) and those with long-standing pulmonary disease

Diseases

- Disease includes asymptomatic colonization, chronic localized pulmonary disease, solitary nodule, or disseminated disease, particularly in patients with AIDS

Diagnosis

- Microscopy and culture are sensitive and specific

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Infections treated for prolonged period with clarithromycin or azithromycin combined with ethambutol and rifabutin
- Prophylaxis in AIDS patients who have a low CD4 cell count consists of clarithromycin or azithromycin or rifabutin, and such treatment has greatly reduced the incidence of disease

NOCARDIA

Trigger Words

Modified acid-fast, filamentous, bronchopulmonary or cutaneous disease, opportunistic

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-positive, partially acid-fast, filamentous rods; cell wall with mycolic acid
- Strict aerobe capable of growth on most nonselective bacteria, fungal, and mycobacterial media; however, prolonged incubation (2 days or more) may be required
- Virulence associated with ability to avoid intracellular killing
- Catalase and superoxide dismutase inactivate toxic oxygen metabolites (e.g., hydrogen peroxide, superoxide)
- Cord factor prevents intracellular killing in phagocytes by interfering with fusion of phagosomes with lysosomes

Epidemiology

- Worldwide distribution in soil rich with organic matter
- Exogenous infections acquired by inhalation (pulmonary) or traumatic introduction (cutaneous)
- Opportunistic pathogen causing disease most commonly in immunocompromised patients with T-cell deficiencies (transplant recipients, patients with malignancies, patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus [HIV], patients receiving corticosteroids)

Diseases

- Primary disease most commonly bronchopulmonary (e.g., cavitary disease) or primary cutaneous infections (e.g., mycetoma, lymphocutaneous infection, cellulitis, subcutaneous abscesses)
- Dissemination most commonly to central nervous system (e.g., brain abscesses) or skin

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is sensitive and relatively specific when branching, partially acid-fast organisms are seen
- Culture is slow, requiring incubation for up to 1 week; selective media (e.g., buffered charcoal yeast extract agar) may be required for isolating *Nocardia* in mixed cultures
- Identification at the genus level can be made by the microscopic and macroscopic appearances (branching, weakly acid-fast rods forming colonies with aerial hyphae)
- Identification at the species level requires genomic analysis for most isolates or mass spectrometry

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Infections are treated with antibiotics and proper wound care
- Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) used as initial empirical therapy for cutaneous infections in immunocompetent patients; therapy for severe infections and cutaneous infections in immunocompromised patients should include TMP-SMX plus amikacin for pulmonary or cutaneous infections and TMP-SMX plus imipenem or a cephalosporin for central nervous system infections; prolonged treatment (up to 12 months) is recommended
- Exposure cannot be avoided because nocardiae are ubiquitous

The genera discussed in this chapter are nonmotile, non–spore-forming, aerobic gram-positive rods that stain **acid-fast** (i.e., resist decolorization with weak to strong acid solutions) because of the presence of medium to long chains of mycolic acids in their cell wall. This staining property is important because only five genera of acid-fast bacteria are medically important (Table 22.1). All acid-fast organisms are relatively slow-growing bacteria, requiring incubation for 2 to 7 days *(Nocardia, Rhodococcus, Gordonia,* and *Tsukamurella)* to as long as 1 month or more *(Mycobacteria)*. Currently, more than 450 species and subspecies of acid-fast bacteria have been described; however, the number associated commonly with human disease is relatively limited (Table 22.2). The spectrum of the infections associated with the acid-fast genera is extensive and includes insignificant colonization, cutaneous infections, pulmonary disease, systemic infections, and opportunistic infections. *Mycobacteria* and *Nocardia* will be the emphasis of this chapter because these are the most common acid-fast bacteria responsible for human disease.

• Physiology and Structure of Mycobacteria

Bacteria are included in the genus *Mycobacterium* on the basis of (1) their acid-fastness, (2) the presence of cell wall **mycolic acids** containing 70 to 90 carbons, and (3) a high (61% to 71% mol) guanine plus cytosine (G + C) content in their deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Mycobacteria possess a complex, **lipid-rich cell wall** that is responsible for many of the characteristic properties of the bacteria (e.g., acid-fastness; slow growth; resistance to detergents, common antibacterial antibiotics, and the host immune response; antigenicity). The proteins associated with the cell wall are biologically important antigens, stimulating the patient's cellular immune response. Extracted and partially purified preparations of these proteins **(purified protein derivatives [PPDs])** are used as specific diagnostic skin test reagents to measure exposure to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*

Growth properties and colonial morphology are used for the preliminary classification of mycobacteria. *M. tuberculosis* and closely related species in the *M. tuberculosis* complex are slow-growing bacteria. The colonies of these mycobacteria are either nonpigmented or a light tan color (Fig. 22.1). The other mycobacteria, referred to as *nontuberculous mycobacteria* (NTM), were classified originally by Runyon according to their rate of growth (see Table 22.2) and pigmentation. The pigmented mycobacteria produce intensely **yellow carotenoids,** which may be stimulated by exposure to light (photochromogenic organisms; Fig. 22.2) or are produced in the absence of light (scotochromogenic organisms). The **Runyon classification** scheme of NTM consists of four groups: slow-growing photochromogens (e.g., *M. kansasii, M. marinum*), slow-growing scotochromogens

Table 22.1 Important Acid-Fast Bacteria

Organism	Historical Derivation
Mycobacterium	*myces,* a fungus; *bakterion,* a small rod (fungus-like rod)
M. abscessus	*abscessus,* of abscesses (causes abscess formation)
M. avium	*avis,* of birds (causes tuberculosis-like illness in birds)
M. chelonae	*chelone,* a tortoise (initial source)
M. fortuitum	*fortuitum,* casual, accidental (refers to the fact that this is an opportunistic pathogen)
M. haemophilum	*haema,* blood; *philos,* loving (blood loving; refers to requirement for blood or hemin for in vitro growth)
M. intracellulare	*intra,* within; *cella,* small room (within cells; refers to the intracellular location of this and all mycobacteria)
M. kansasii	*kansasii,* of Kansas (where the organism was originally isolated)
M. leprae	*lepra,* of leprosy (the cause of leprosy)
M. marinum	*marinum,* of the sea (bacterium associated with contaminated freshwater and saltwater)
M. tuberculosis	*tuberculum,* a small swelling or tubercle; *osis* (characterized by tubercles; refers to the formation of tubercles in the lungs of infected patients)
Nocardia	Named after the French veterinarian Edmond Nocard
Rhodococcus	*rhodo,* rose or red colored; *coccus,* berry (red-colored coccus)
Gordonia	Named after the American microbiologist Ruth Gordon
Tsukamurella	Honoring the Japanese microbiologist Michio Tsukamura, who first described the original isolate of this genus

(e.g., *M. gordonae,* which is a commonly isolated nonpathogen), slow-growing nonpigmented mycobacteria (e.g., *M. avium, M. intracellulare*), and rapidly growing mycobacteria (e.g., *M. fortuitum, M. chelonae, M. abscessus, M. mucogenicum*). Currently used methods for rapid detection and identification of mycobacteria have made this scheme less important. Nonetheless, a pigmented or rapidly growing *Mycobacterium* should never be mistaken for *M. tuberculosis.*

• *Mycobacterium Tuberculosis*

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

M. tuberculosis is an intracellular pathogen that is able to establish lifelong infection. Maintenance of persistent infection without progression to disease involves a delicate balance between growth of the bacteria and immunologic regulation. At the time of exposure, *M. tuberculosis* enters the respiratory airways, and infectious particles penetrate to the alveoli in which they are phagocytized by alveolar macrophages. In contrast with most phagocytized bacteria, *M. tuberculosis* **prevents fusion of the phagosome with lysosomes** (by blocking the specific bridging molecule, early endosomal autoantigen 1 [EEA1]). At the same time, the phagosome is able to fuse with other intracellular vesicles, permitting access to nutrients and facilitating intracellular

Table 22.2 Classification of Selected Acid-Fast Bacteria Pathogenic for Humans

Organism	Pathogenicity	Frequency in United States
***MYCOBACTERIUM TUBERCULOSIS* COMPLEX**		
M. tuberculosis	Strictly pathogenic	Common
M. leprae	Strictly pathogenic	Uncommon
M. africanum	Strictly pathogenic	Rare
M. bovis	Strictly pathogenic	Rare
M. bovis BCG (bacillus Calmette-Guérin strain)	Sometimes pathogenic	Rare
SLOW-GROWING NONTUBERCULOUS MYCOBACTERIA		
M. avium complex	Usually pathogenic	Common
M. kansasii	Usually pathogenic	Common
M. marinum	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
M. simiae	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
M. szulgai	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
M. genavense	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
M. haemophilum	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
M. malmoense	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
M. ulcerans	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
M. scrofulaceum	Sometimes pathogenic	Uncommon
M. xenopi	Sometimes pathogenic	Uncommon
RAPIDLY GROWING NONTUBERCULOUS MYCOBACTERIA		
M. abscessus	Sometimes pathogenic	Common
M. chelonae	Sometimes pathogenic	Common
M. fortuitum	Sometimes pathogenic	Common
M. mucogenicum	Sometimes pathogenic	Common
NOCARDIA		
N. cyriacigeorgica	Usually pathogenic	Common
N. farcinica	Usually pathogenic	Common
N. abscessus	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
N. beijingensis	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
N. brasiliensis	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
N. nova	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
N. otitidiscaviarum	Usually pathogenic	Uncommon
Nocardia spp.	Sometimes pathogenic	Rare
Rhodococcus equi	Usually pathogenic	Common
Gordonia spp.	Sometimes pathogenic	Rare
Tsukamurella spp.	Sometimes pathogenic	Rare

replication. Phagocytized bacteria are also able to evade macrophage killing mediated by reactive nitrogen intermediates formed between nitric oxide and superoxide anions by catalytically catabolizing the oxidants that are formed. So in this state, the bacteria are able to evade the immune system and replicate. However, in response to infection with *M. tuberculosis,* macrophages secrete **interleukin (IL)-12** and **tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α.** These cytokines increase localized inflammation with the recruitment of T

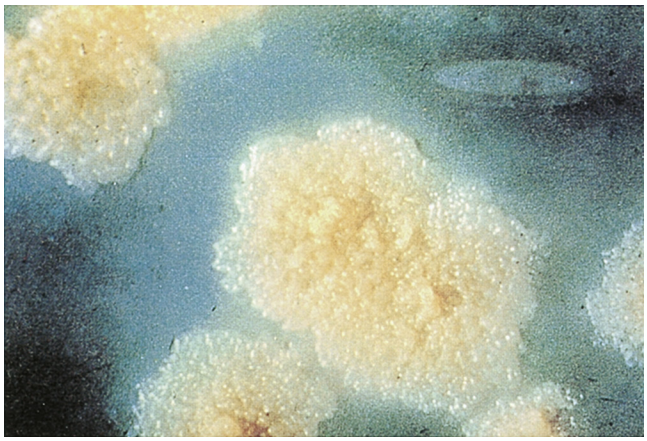


Fig. 22.1 *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* colonies on Löwenstein-Jensen agar after 8 weeks of incubation. (From Baron, E.J., Peterson, L.R., Finegold, S.M., 1994. Bailey and Scott's Diagnostic Microbiology, ninth ed. St Louis, MO: Mosby.)

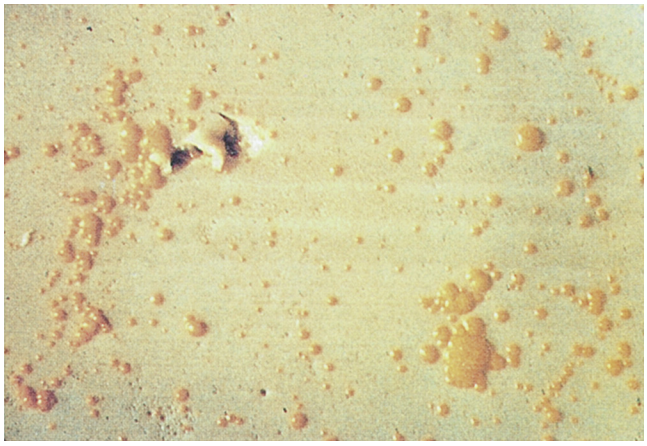


Fig. 22.2 *Mycobacterium kansasii* colonies on Middlebrook agar; yellow pigment develops after brief exposure to light.

cells and natural killer (NK) cells into the area of the infected macrophages, inducing T-cell differentiation into **TH1 cells (T-helper cells),** with subsequent secretion of **interferon (IFN)-γ.** In the presence of IFN-γ, the infected macrophages are activated, leading to increased phagosome-lysosome fusion and intracellular killing. In addition, TNF-α stimulates production of nitric oxide and related reactive nitrogen intermediates, leading to enhanced intracellular killing. Patients with decreased production of IFN-γ or TNF-α, or who have defects in the receptors for these cytokines, are at increased risk for severe progressive mycobacterial infections.

The effectiveness of bacterial elimination is in part related to the size of the focus of infection. Alveolar macrophages, epithelioid cells, and **Langhans giant cells** (fused epithelioid cells) with intracellular mycobacteria form the central core of a necrotic mass that is surrounded by a dense wall of macrophages and CD4, CD8, and NK T cells. This structure, a **granuloma,** prevents further spread of the bacteria. If a small antigenic burden is present at the time the macrophages are stimulated, the granuloma is small and the bacteria are destroyed with minimal tissue damage. However, if many bacteria are present, then the large necrotic or caseous granulomas become encapsulated with fibrin that effectively protects the bacteria from macrophage killing. The bacteria can remain dormant in this stage or can be reactivated years later when the patient's immunologic responsiveness wanes as the result of old age or immunosuppressive disease or therapy. This process is the reason that disease may not develop until late in life in patients exposed to *M. tuberculosis.*

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Although tuberculosis can be established in primates and laboratory animals, such as guinea pigs, **humans are the only natural reservoir.** The disease is spread by close person-to-person contact through the inhalation of infectious aerosols. Large particles are trapped on mucosal surfaces and removed by the ciliary action of the respiratory tree. However, small particles containing one to three tubercle bacilli can reach the alveolar spaces and establish infection.

The World Health Organization (WHO) estimated that one-fourth of the world's population is infected with *M. tuberculosis* and 460,000 developed disease with multidrug resistant strains. In 2016, there were 10.4 million new cases of tuberculosis and 1.6 million deaths. Despite the concerted effort to eliminate tuberculosis, it is the world's leading cause of death. Regions with the highest incidence of disease are India, Pakistan, sub-Saharan Africa, South Africa, Eastern Europe, and China. In the United States, the incidence of tuberculosis has decreased steadily since 1992 (Fig. 22.3). A total of 9272 cases were reported in 2016 (2.9 cases per 100,000 individuals), with almost 70% of the infections in foreign-born persons. Other populations at increased risk for *M. tuberculosis* disease are homeless persons, drug and alcohol abusers, prisoners, and people infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Because it is difficult to eradicate disease in these patients, spread of the infection to other populations, including health care workers, poses a significant public health problem. This is particularly true for drug-resistant *M. tuberculosis* because patients who receive inadequate treatment may remain infectious for a long time.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Although tuberculosis can involve any organ, most infections in immunocompetent patients are restricted to the lungs. The initial pulmonary focus is the middle or lower lung fields, in which the tubercle bacilli can multiply freely. The patient's cellular immunity is activated and mycobacterial replication ceases in most patients within 3 to 6 weeks after exposure to the organism. Approximately 5% of patients exposed to *M. tuberculosis* progress to having active disease within 2 years, and another 5% experience disease sometime later in life.

The likelihood that infection will progress to active disease is a function of both the infectious dose and the patient's immune competence. For example, active disease develops within 1 year of exposure in approximately 10% of patients who are infected with HIV and have a low CD4 T-cell count, usually appears before the onset of other opportunistic infections, is twice as likely to spread to extrapulmonary sites, and can progress rapidly to death (Clinical Case 22.1). Indeed, tuberculosis is the leading cause of death in HIV-infected patients. Because these patients have compromised immunity, they commonly present with asymptomatic, subclinical disease and negative chest radiography despite widespread dissemination of the bacteria.

The clinical signs and symptoms of tuberculosis reflect the site of infection, with primary disease usually restricted to the lower respiratory tract. The disease is insidious at

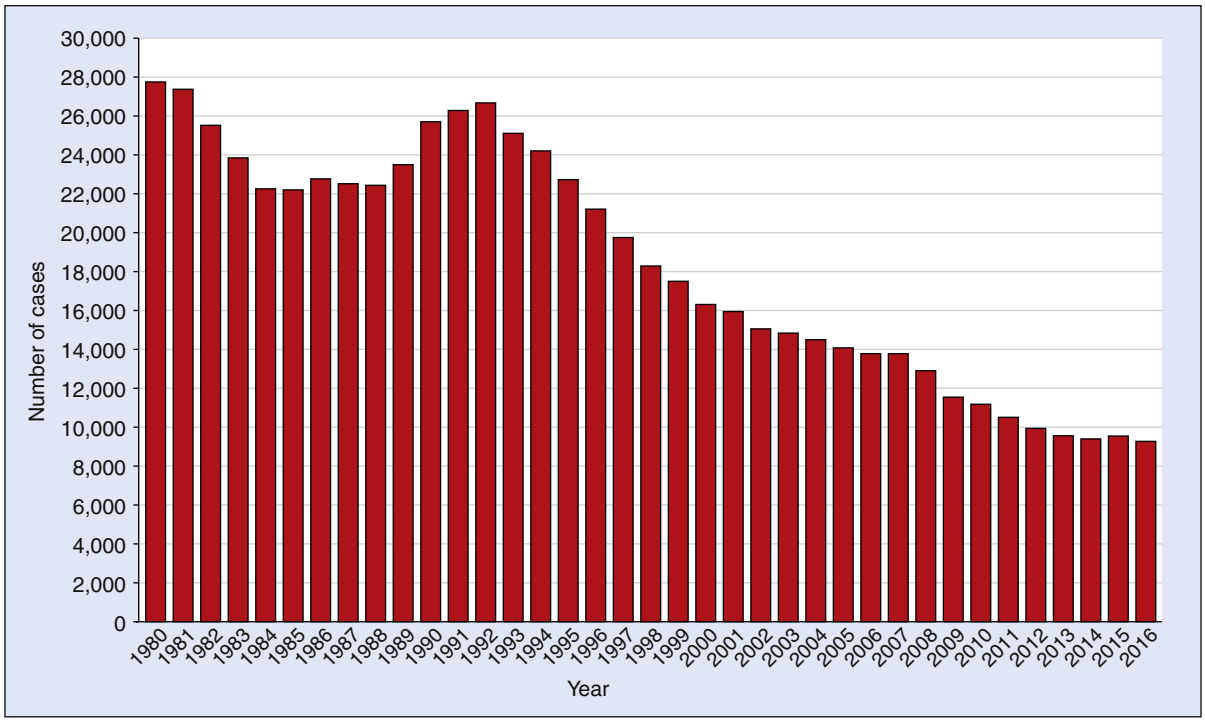


Fig. 22.3 Incidence of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infections in the United States from 1980 to 2016.

Clinical Case 22.1 **Drug-Resistant *Mycobacterium Tuberculosis***

The risk of active tuberculosis is significantly increased in HIV-infected individuals. Unfortunately, this problem is complicated by the development of drug-resistant *M. tuberculosis* strains in this population. This was illustrated by the report by Gandhi and associates (*Lancet* 368:1575–1580, 2006) who studied the prevalence of tuberculosis in South Africa from January 2005 to March 2006. They identified 475 patients with culture-confirmed tuberculosis, of whom 39% had MDR TB and 6% had XDR TB. All patients with XDR TB were coinfected with HIV, and 98% of these patients died. The high prevalence of MDR TB and the evolution of XDR TB pose a serious challenge for tuberculosis treatment programs and emphasize the need for rapid diagnostic tests.

HIV, Human immunodeficiency virus; *MDR TB,* multidrug-resistant tuberculosis; *XDR TB,* extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis.

onset. Patients typically have nonspecific complaints of malaise, weight loss, cough, and night sweats. Sputum may be scant or bloody and purulent. Blood-streaked sputum production (hemoptysis) is associated with tissue destruction (e.g., **cavitary disease**). The clinical diagnosis is supported by (1) radiographic evidence of pulmonary disease (Fig. 22.4); (2) positive skin test reactivity; and (3) the laboratory detection of mycobacteria, either with microscopy or in cultures. One or both upper lobes of the lungs are usually involved in patients with active disease that includes either pneumonitis or abscess formation and cavitation.

Extrapulmonary tuberculosis can occur as the result of the hematogenous spread of the bacilli during the initial phase of multiplication. There may be no evidence of pulmonary disease in patients with **disseminated tuberculosis.**

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Immunodiagnosis

The traditional test to assess the patient's response to exposure to *M. tuberculosis* is the **tuberculin skin test** (Box 22.1). Reactivity to an intradermal injection of mycobacterial antigens (PPD) can differentiate between infected and noninfected people, with a positive reaction usually developing 3 to 4 weeks after exposure to *M. tuberculosis*. The only evidence of infection with mycobacteria in most patients is a lifelong positive skin test reaction and radiographic evidence of calcification of granulomas in the lungs or other organs. In this test, a specific amount of the antigen (five tuberculin units of PPD) is inoculated into the intradermal layer of the patient's skin. Skin test reactivity (defined by the diameter of the area of induration) is measured 48 hours later. Patients infected with *M. tuberculosis* may not show a response to the tuberculin skin test if they are anergic (nonreactive to antigens; particularly true of HIV-infected patients); thus control antigens should always be used with tuberculin tests. Additionally, individuals from countries in which vaccination with attenuated *M. bovis* **(bacillus Calmette-Guérin [BCG])** is widespread will have a positive skin test reaction, so this test is not helpful.

In vitro IFN-γ release assays are as an alternative to the PPD skin test. The tests use immunoassays to measure IFN-γ produced by sensitized T cells stimulated by *M. tuberculosis* antigens. If an individual was previously infected with *M. tuberculosis*, exposure of sensitized T cells present in whole blood to *M. tuberculosis*–specific

antigens results in IFN-γ production. The initial assays that used PPD as the stimulating antigen have been replaced with second-generation assays that use more specific antigens (i.e., **early secreted antigenic target-6 [ESAT-6], culture filtrate protein-10 [CFP-10])** and can be used to discriminate between infections with *M. tuberculosis* and BCG vaccination. These tests are sensitive and highly specific.

Microscopy

Microscopic detection of acid-fast bacteria in clinical specimens is the most rapid way to confirm mycobacterial disease. The clinical specimen is stained with carbolfuchsin (**Ziehl-Neelsen** or **Kinyoun** methods) or fluorescent auramine-rhodamine dyes (**Truant fluorochrome** method), decolorized with an acid-alcohol solution, and then counterstained. The specimens are examined with a light microscope or, if fluorescent dyes are used, a fluorescent microscope (Fig. 22.5). The fluorochrome method is the most sensitive microscopic method because the specimen can be scanned rapidly under low magnification for fluorescent areas, and then the presence of acid-fast bacteria can be confirmed with higher magnification.

In approximately half of all culture-positive specimens, acid-fast bacteria are detected by microscopy, although this varies tremendously based on the skill of the microscopist. The sensitivity of this test is high for (1) respiratory specimens (particularly from patients with radiographic evidence of cavitation) and (2) specimens for which many mycobacteria are isolated in culture; thus a positive acid-fast stain reaction corresponds to higher infectivity. The specificity of the test is greater than 95% when it is performed carefully. Despite the excellent analytical performance of acid-fast microscopy, the test is challenging to perform and interpret in many resource-limited countries in which tuberculosis is widespread.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Commercial nucleic acid amplification tests (particularly polymerase chain reaction [PCR] tests) have gained broad acceptance as the diagnostic test of choice for tuberculosis. Despite the high test cost, nongovernment organizations heavily subsidize these tests to bring highly sensitive, rapid diagnostics to countries in greatest need in which microscopy is inaccurate and culture is impractical. Detection of resistance to rifampin and/or isoniazid is incorporated in some tests, so they provide both rapid detection of *M. tuberculosis* and guide antimicrobial therapy.

There is significant effort now to extend nucleic acid diagnostics to whole genome sequencing for the purpose of both rapid detection of *M. tuberculosis* in clinical specimens and a comprehensive detection of antimicrobial resistance genes. The goal of this work is to replace the need to grow *M. tuberculosis* in culture for performing antibiotic susceptibility tests. Currently, this approach is used to avoid treatment with drugs in which resistance is detected and to select a first-line treatment for which no resistance genes are found.

It should be recognized that mycobacterial disease caused by NTM will not be detected with these assays, so supplementary tests must be used in countries in which NTM infections are common (e.g., United States, Western Europe).

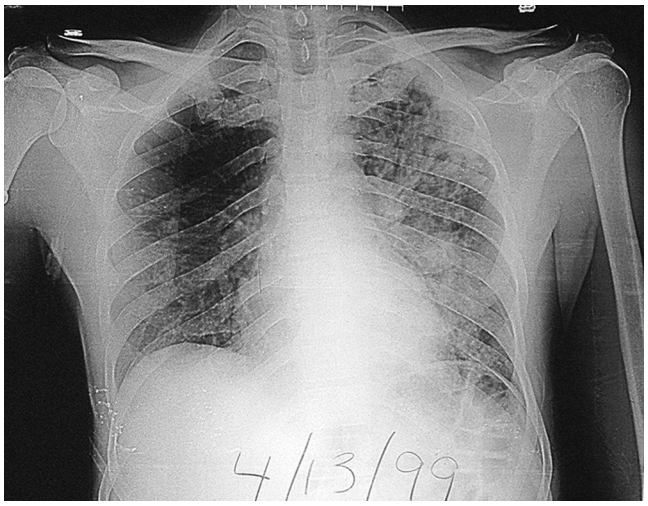


Fig. 22.4 Pulmonary tuberculosis.

BOX 22.1 Laboratory Diagnosis of Mycobacterial Disease

Immunodiagnosis

Tuberculin skin test
Interferon-γ release assays

Microscopy

Ziehl-Neelsen (hot acid-fast) stain
Kinyoun (cold acid-fast) stain
Truant fluorochrome acid-fast stain

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Nucleic acid amplification tests

Culture

Agar-based or egg-based media
Broth-based media

Identification

Morphologic properties
Biochemical reactions
Analysis of cell wall lipids
Nucleic acid probes
Nucleic acid sequencing Mass spectrometry

Culture

Mycobacteria that cause pulmonary disease, particularly in patients with evidence of cavitation, are abundant in the respiratory secretions (e.g., 10^8 bacilli per milliliter or more). Recovery of the organisms is virtually ensured in patients from whom early morning respiratory specimens are collected for 3 consecutive days; however, it is more difficult to isolate *M. tuberculosis* from other sites in patients with disseminated disease (e.g., genitourinary tract, tissues, cerebrospinal fluid). In such cases, additional specimens must be collected for cultures, and a large volume of fluid or tissue must be processed.

The in vitro growth of mycobacteria is complicated by the fact that most isolates grow slowly and can be obscured by the rapidly growing bacteria that normally colonize people;

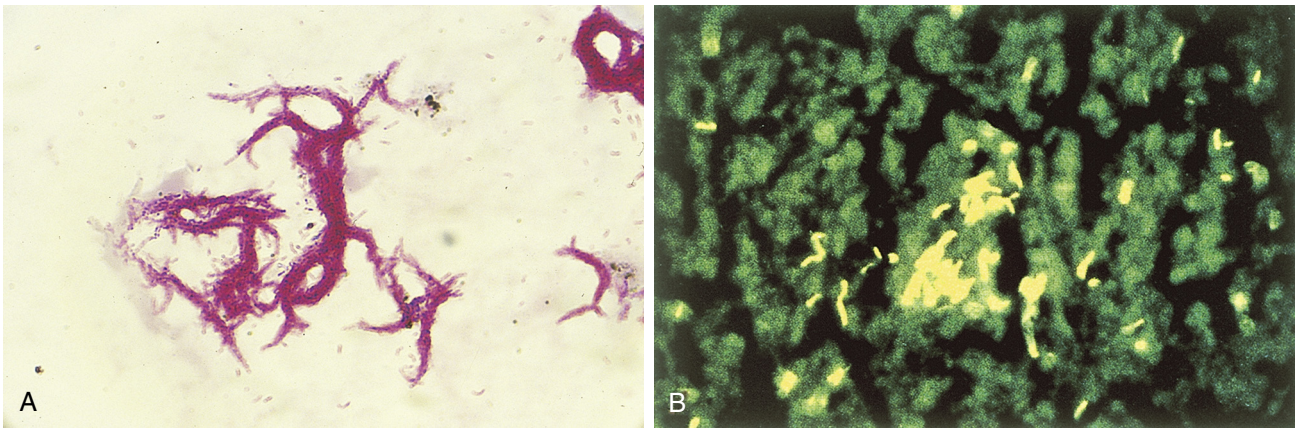


Fig. 22.5 Acid-fast stains of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.* (A) Stained with carbolfuchsin using the Kinyoun method. (B) Stained with the fluorescent dyes auramine and rhodamine using the Truant fluorochrome method.

thus specimens such as sputum are initially treated with a **decontaminating reagent** (e.g., 2% sodium hydroxide) to eliminate organisms that could confound results. Mycobacteria can tolerate brief alkali treatment that kills the rapidly growing bacteria and permits selective isolation of mycobacteria. Extended decontamination of the specimen kills mycobacteria, so the procedure is not performed when normally sterile specimens are being tested or when few mycobacteria are expected.

Specimens inoculated onto egg-based (e.g., **Löwenstein-Jensen**) and agar-based (e.g., **Middlebrook**) media generally take 4 or more weeks for *M. tuberculosis* to be detected. However, this time has been shortened approximately 2 weeks through the use of specially formulated **broth cultures** that support the rapid growth of most mycobacteria. The ability of *M. tuberculosis* to grow rapidly in broth cultures has also been used for performing rapid susceptibility tests.

Identification

Growth properties and colonial morphology can be used for the preliminary identification of the most common species of mycobacteria. The definitive identification of mycobacteria can be made using a variety of techniques. Biochemical tests were the standard method for identifying mycobacteria; however, the results are not available for at least 3 weeks or more, and many species cannot be differentiated by this approach. Species-specific molecular probes, amplification of species-specific target genes (e.g., *16S rRNA* gene, *SecA* gene), and mass spectrometry are used now for mycobacterial identification. It is likely that mass spectrometry will become the identification test of choice because of the rapid time to results (<1 hour), low cost, and ability to identify virtually all species of acid-fast organisms.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment

Treatment of *M. tuberculosis* infections, unlike those for most other bacterial infections, is complex. Slow-growing mycobacteria are resistant to most antibiotics used to treat other bacterial infections, and in general, patients must take multiple antibiotics for an extended period (e.g., minimum of 6 to 9 months) or else antibiotic-resistant strains will develop.

In 1990, the first outbreaks of **multidrug-resistant *M. tuberculosis* (MDR TB);** resistant to at least isoniazid and rifampin) were observed in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and in homeless persons in New York City and Miami. Although there has been a reduction in the United States of infections with these resistant strains, they are increasing dramatically in prevalence in resource-limited countries. In addition, strains of highly resistant *M. tuberculosis* called **extensively drug-resistant (XDR) TB** have emerged in most regions of the world. These strains, defined as MDR TB, which are resistant to fluoroquinolones and at least one of the second-line drugs (e.g., kanamycin, amikacin, capreomycin), are potentially untreatable.

The various treatment regimens that have been developed for drug-susceptible and drug-resistant tuberculosis are too complex to review here comprehensively (refer to the reference citations, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] website www.cdc.gov/tb/ and the WHO website https://www.who.int/tb/publications/2018/rapid_communications_MDR/en/). Most treatment regimens begin with 2 months of isoniazid (isonicotinyl hydrazine [INH]), ethambutol, pyrazinamide, and rifampin, followed by 4 to 6 months of INH and rifampin or alternative combination drugs. Modifications to this treatment scheme are dictated by the drug susceptibility of the isolate and the patient population.

Chemoprophylaxis

The American Thoracic Society and the CDC have examined a number of prophylactic regimens for use in patients (HIV positive and HIV negative) exposed to *M. tuberculosis.* The regimens that have been recommended include daily or twice weekly INH for 6 to 9 months, or daily rifampin for 4 months. Patients who have been exposed to drug-resistant *M. tuberculosis* should receive prophylaxis with pyrazinamide and either ethambutol or levofloxacin for 6 to 12 months.

Immunoprophylaxis

Vaccination with attenuated *M. bovis* **(BCG)** is commonly used in countries in which tuberculosis is endemic and is responsible for significant morbidity and mortality. This practice can lead to a significant reduction in the incidence

of tuberculosis if BCG is administered to people when they are young (it is less effective in adults). Unfortunately, BCG immunization cannot be used in immunocompromised patients (e.g., those with HIV infection); thus it is unlikely to be useful in countries with a high prevalence of HIV infections (e.g., Africa) or to control the spread of drug-resistant tuberculosis. An additional problem with BCG immunization is that positive skin test reactivity develops in all patients and may persist for a prolonged time. However, skin test reactivity is generally low, so a strongly reactive skin test (e.g., >20 mm of induration) is generally significant for recent exposure to *M. tuberculosis*. The second-generation IFN-γ release assays are not affected by BCG immunization, so they can be used for screening this population. BCG immunization is not widely used in the United States or in other countries in which the incidence of tuberculosis is low.

Control

Because one-fourth of the world's population is infected with *M. tuberculosis,* elimination of this disease is highly unlikely. Disease can be controlled, however, with a combination of active surveillance, prophylactic and therapeutic intervention, and careful case monitoring.

• Other Slow-Growing Mycobacteria

Leprosy (also called **Hansen disease**) is caused by ***Mycobacterium leprae.*** Leprosy was first described in 600 BC and was recognized in the ancient civilizations of China, Egypt, and India. The global **prevalence of leprosy has fallen dramatically** with widespread use of effective therapy. More than 5 million cases were documented in 1985 and 200,000 cases in 2016. Currently, the highest number of new diagnoses is in India, Brazil, and Indonesia. In the United States, leprosy is uncommon, with 178 new cases reported in 2015 primarily in immigrants from endemic countries. Interestingly, leprosy is endemic in **armadillos** found in Texas and Louisiana, producing a disease similar to the highly infectious lepromatous form of leprosy in humans. Thus these armadillos represent a potential endemic focus in this country.

Leprosy is spread by person-to-person contact; however, it is not considered highly contagious. Prolonged contact with an untreated, infected person is required. Although the most important route of infection is unknown, it is believed that *M. leprae* is spread either through the inhalation of infectious aerosols or through skin contact with respiratory secretions and wound exudates. Because the bacteria multiply very slowly, the incubation period is prolonged, with symptoms developing as long as 20 years after infection. The clinical presentation of leprosy ranges from the tuberculoid form to the lepromatous form (Table 22.3). Patients with **tuberculoid leprosy** (also called **paucibacillary Hansen disease**) have a strong cellular immune reaction to the bacteria, with the induction of cytokine production that mediates macrophage activation, phagocytosis, and bacillary clearance. The tuberculoid form (Fig. 22.6) is characterized by hypopigmented skin macules and diagnosed by reactive skins tests to mycobacterial antigen (lepromin); acid-fast stains are generally negative. *M. leprae* cannot grow in cell-free cultures. Patients with **lepromatous leprosy (multibacillary Hansen disease)** have a strong antibody response but a specific defect in the cellular response to *M. leprae* antigens. Thus an abundance of bacteria are typically observed in dermal macrophages and the Schwann cells of the peripheral nerves. As would be expected, this is the most infectious form of leprosy. The lepromatous form (Fig. 22.7) is associated with disfiguring skin lesions, nodules, plaques, thickened dermis, and involvement of the nasal mucosa.

In the last decade, treatment of leprosy has successfully reduced the overall incidence of disease. The treatment regimens advanced by the WHO (https://WHO.int/lep) have distinguished between patients with the tuberculoid (paucibacillary) form and the lepromatous (multibacillary) form. The paucibacillary form should be treated with rifampicin and dapsone for a minimum of 6 months, whereas the multibacillary form should have clofazimine added to the regimen, and treatment should be extended to 12 months. It should be noted that many investigators believe much longer therapy is required for optimum management of patients. Single-drug treatment should not be used for either form.

Members of the *Mycobacterium avium* complex (MAC) are among the most common pathogenic acid-fast species, particularly in immunocompromised patients. The taxonomy of these mycobacteria is in a state of flux with a number of subspecies identified. Although some subspecies do not cause human disease, representatives of the two most common MAC species, *M. avium* and *M. intracellulare*, are human pathogens.

Both species in the MAC produce disease in immunocompetent patients. Pulmonary disease in immunocompetent patients presents in one of three forms. Most commonly, disease is seen in middle-age or older men with a history of smoking and **underlying pulmonary disease.** These patients typically have a slowly evolving cavitary disease that resembles tuberculosis on chest radiography. The second form of MAC infection is observed in elderly female nonsmokers. These patients have lingular or middle lobe infiltrates with a patchy, nodular appearance on radiography and associated bronchiectasis (chronically dilated bronchi). This form of disease is indolent and has been associated with significant morbidity and mortality. It has been postulated that this disease is seen primarily in fastidious elderly women who chronically suppress their cough reflex, leading to nonspecific inflammatory changes in the lungs and predisposing them to superinfection with MAC. This specific disease has been called **Lady Windermere syndrome** after the name of the principle character in an Oscar Wilde play. The third form of MAC disease is the formation of a **solitary pulmonary nodule.** MAC is the most common mycobacterial species that causes solitary the pulmonary nodules.

A different spectrum of disease develops in **patients with AIDS.** In contrast to disease in other groups of patients, MAC infection in patients with AIDS is primarily caused by *M. avium* and is typically disseminated, with virtually no organ spared (Clinical Case 22.2). The magnitude of these infections is remarkable; the tissues of some patients are literally filled with the mycobacteria (Fig. 22.8), and there

Table 22.3 Clinical and Immunologic Manifestations of Leprosy

Features	Tuberculoid Leprosy	Lepromatous Leprosy
Skin lesions	Few erythematous or hypopigmented plaques with flat centers and raised, demarcated borders; peripheral nerve damage with complete sensory loss; visible enlargement of nerves	Many erythematous macules, papules, or nodules; extensive tissue destruction (e.g., nasal cartilage, bones, ears); diffuse nerve involvement with patchy sensory loss; lack of nerve enlargement
Histopathology	Infiltration of lymphocytes around center of epithelial cells; presence of Langhans cells; few or no acid-fast rods observed	Predominantly "foamy" macrophages with few lymphocytes; lack of Langhans cells; numerous acid-fast rods in skin lesions and internal organs
Infectivity	Low	High
Immune response	Delayed hypersensitivity reactivity to lepromin	Nonreactivity to lepromin
Immunoglobulin levels	Normal	Hypergammaglobulinemia
Erythema nodosum	Absent	Usually present

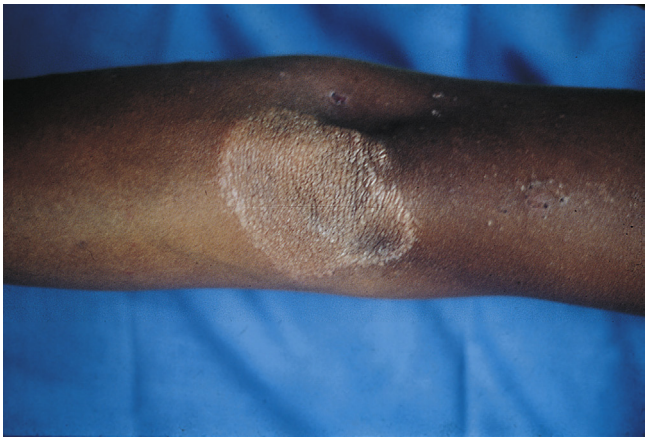


Fig. 22.6 Tuberculoid leprosy. Early tuberculoid lesions are characterized by anesthetic macules with hypopigmentation. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Philadelphia, PA: Mosby.)

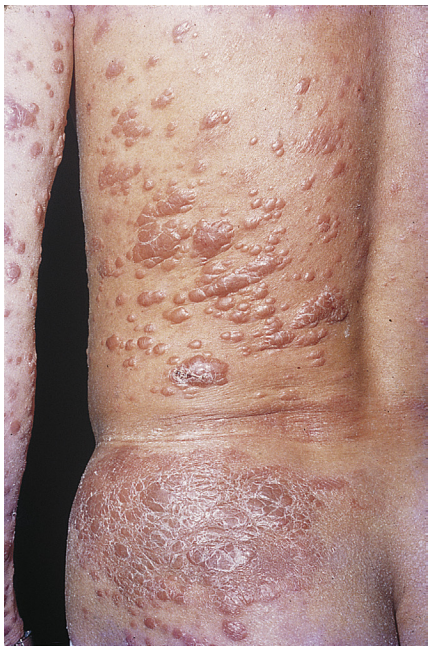


Fig. 22.7 Lepromatous leprosy. Diffuse infiltration of the skin by multiple nodules of varying size, each with many bacteria. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Philadelphia, PA: Mosby.)

are hundreds to thousands of bacteria per milliliter of blood. Overwhelming disseminated infections with *M. avium* are particularly common in patients who are in the terminal stages of their immune disorder, when their CD4 T-lymphocyte counts fall to less than 50 cells/ul. Fortunately, with more effective antiretroviral therapy and the routine use of prophylactic antibiotics, *M. avium* disease infection in HIV-infected patients has become much less common. Although some patients with AIDS develop *M. avium* disease after pulmonary exposure (e.g., infectious aerosols of contaminated water), most infections are believed to develop after ingestion of the bacteria. Person-to-person transmission has not been demonstrated. After exposure to the mycobacteria, replication is initiated in localized lymph nodes followed by systemic spread. The clinical manifestations of disease are not observed until the mass of replicating bacteria impairs normal organ function.

MAC and many other slow-growing mycobacteria are resistant to common antimycobacterial agents. One regimen recommended currently for MAC infections is clarithromycin or azithromycin, combined with ethambutol and rifampin. The duration of treatment and final selection of drugs for these species and other slow-growing mycobacteria are determined (1) by the response to therapy and (2) by interactions among these drugs and other drugs the patient is receiving (e.g., toxic and pharmacokinetic interactions of these drugs with protease inhibitors used to treat HIV infection). Refer to the publication by Griffith and associates cited in the bibliography for additional information about treating MAC and other NTM infections. Because MAC intracellular infections are common in patients with AIDS, chemoprophylaxis is recommended for patients whose CD4 T-cell counts fall to less than 50 cells/μl. Prophylaxis with clarithromycin or azithromycin is recommended. Combinations of these drugs with rifabutin have been used, but they are generally more toxic and no more effective than the single agent.

Many **other slow-growing mycobacteria** can cause human disease and new species continue to be reported as better diagnostic test methods are developed. The spectrum of diseases produced by these mycobacteria also continues to expand, in large part because diseases such as AIDS, malignancies, and organ transplantation

with concomitant use of immunosuppressive drugs have created a population of patients who are highly susceptible to organisms with relatively low virulence potential. Some mycobacteria produce disease identical to pulmonary tuberculosis (e.g., *M. bovis, M. kansasii*), other species commonly cause infections localized to lymphatic tissue *(M. scrofulaceum)*, and others that grow optimally at cool temperatures primarily produce cutaneous infections *(M. ulcerans, M. marinum,* and *M. haemophilum)*. However, disseminated disease can be observed in patients with AIDS who are infected with these same species, as well as with relatively uncommon mycobacteria (e.g., *M. genavense, M. simiae*). With the exception of *M. bovis* and other mycobacteria closely related to *M. tuberculosis,* person-to-person spread of these mycobacteria does not occur.

Clinical Case 22.2 *Mycobacterium avium* Infections

Woods and Goldsmith (*Chest* 95:1355–1357, 1989) described a patient with advanced AIDS who died of disseminated *M. avium* infection. The patient was a 27-year-old man who initially presented in October 1985 with a 2-week history of progressive dyspnea and a nonproductive cough. *Pneumocystis* was detected in a bronchoalveolar lavage, and serology confirmed the patient had an HIV infection. The patient was successfully treated with TMP-SMX and discharged. The patient remained stable until May 1987, when he presented with persistent fever and dyspnea. Over the next week, he developed severe substernal chest pain and a pericardial friction rub. Echocardiogram revealed a small effusion. The patient left the hospital against medical advice but returned 1 week later with a persistent cough, fever, and pain in the chest and left arm. A diagnostic pericardiocentesis was performed, and 220 ml of fluid was aspirated. Tuberculous pericarditis was suspected, and appropriate antimycobacterial therapy was initiated. However, over the next 3 weeks, the patient developed progressive cardiac failure and died. *M. avium* was recovered from the pericardial fluid, as well as autopsy cultures of the pericardium, spleen, liver, adrenal glands, kidneys, small intestine, lymph nodes, and pituitary gland. Although *M. avium* pericarditis was unusual, the extensive dissemination of the mycobacteria in patients with advanced AIDS was common before azithromycin prophylaxis became widely used.

• Rapidly Growing Mycobacteria

As discussed previously, NTM can be subdivided into slow-growing species and rapidly growing species (growth in <7 days). This distinction is important because the rapidly growing species have a relatively low virulence potential, stain irregularly with traditional mycobacterial stains, and are more susceptible to "conventional" antibacterial antibiotics than to drugs used to treat other mycobacterial infections. The most common species associated with disease are *M. fortuitum, M. chelonae, M. abscessus,* and *M. mucogenicum*.

The rapidly growing mycobacteria rarely cause disseminated infections; rather, they are most commonly associated with disease occurring after bacteria are introduced into the deep subcutaneous tissues by **trauma or iatrogenic infections** (e.g., infections associated with an intravenous catheter, contaminated wound dressing, prosthetic device such as a heart valve, peritoneal dialysis, or bronchoscopy). Unfortunately, the incidence of infections with these organisms is increasing as more invasive procedures are performed in hospitalized patients and advanced medical care lengthens the life expectancy of immunocompromised patients. Opportunistic infections in immunocompetent patients are also becoming commonplace (Clinical Case 22.3).

Unlike the slow-growing mycobacteria, the rapidly growing species are resistant to most commonly used antimycobacterial agents but are susceptible to antibiotics such as clarithromycin, imipenem, amikacin, cefoxitin, and the sulfonamides. The specific activity of these agents must be determined with in vitro tests. Removal of prosthetic devices are generally required for successful treatment of these infections.

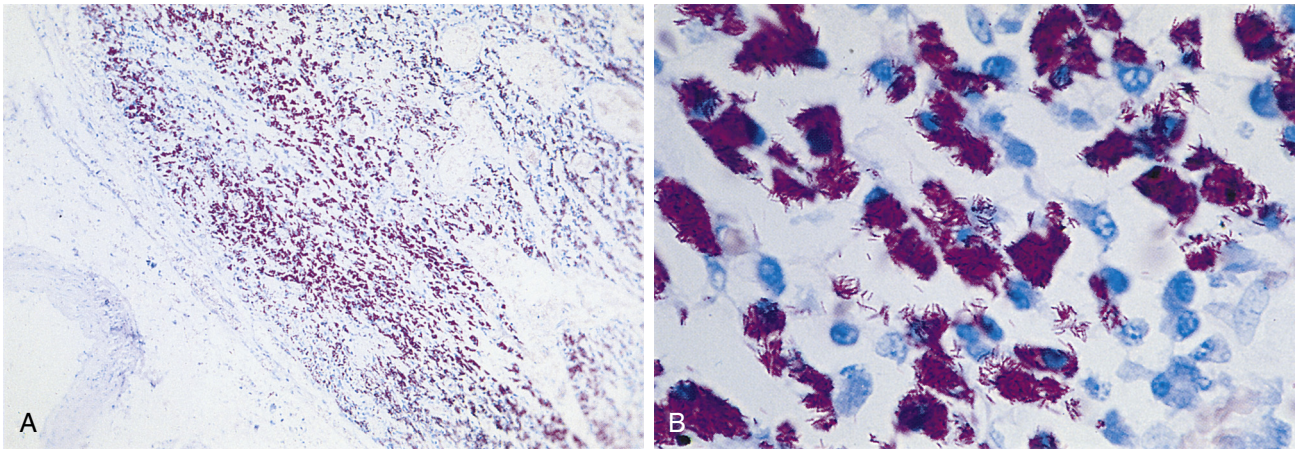


Fig. 22.8 Tissue from a patient with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome AIDS who is infected with *Mycobacterium avium* complex, photographed under (A) low and (B) high magnification.

• *Nocardia*

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Nocardiae are strict aerobic rods that form branched filaments in tissues and culture. These filaments resemble the hyphae formed by molds, and at one time *Nocardia* was thought to be a fungus; however, the organisms have a gram-positive cell wall and other cellular structures that are characteristic of bacteria. Most isolates stain poorly with the Gram stain and appear to be gram-negative, with intracellular gram-positive beads (Fig. 22.9). The reason for this staining property is that nocardiae have a cell wall structure with branched-chain fatty acids (e.g., **tuberculostearic acid,** *meso*-diaminopimelic acid [*meso*-DAP], mycolic acids). The length of the mycolic acids in nocardiae (50 to 62 carbon atoms) is shorter than in mycobacteria (70 to 90 carbon atoms). This difference may explain why even though both genera stain acid-fast, *Nocardia* is described as **"weakly acid-fast";** that is, a weak decolorizing solution of hydrochloric acid must be used to demonstrate the acid-fast property of nocardiae (Fig. 22.10). This acid-fastness is also a helpful characteristic for distinguishing *Nocardia* organisms from morphologically similar organisms, such as *Actinomyces*.

Nocardia species can grow on most nonselective laboratory media used for the isolation of bacteria, mycobacteria, and fungi. However, their growth is slow, requiring 3 to 5 days of incubation before colonies may be observed on the culture plates, so the laboratory should be notified that a *Nocardia* infection is suspected so the cultures can be incubated beyond the normal 1 to 2 days. The colonies initially appear white but can be quite variable (e.g., dry to waxy, white to orange; Fig. 22.11). Aerial hyphae (hyphae that protrude upward from the surface of a colony) are usually observed when the colonies are viewed with a dissecting microscope (Fig. 22.12). The combination of both **presence of aerial hyphae and acid-fastness is unique** to the genus *Nocardia* and can be used as a rapid test for identification of the genus.

The taxonomic classification of this genus is, simply stated, a mess, with most of the organisms described in the literature now recognized as incorrectly identified. Historically, these organisms were classified by their ability to use carbohydrates oxidatively and decompose a variety of substrates, as well as their antimicrobial susceptibility patterns. The true taxonomic relationships among the members of the genus were appreciated recently through the use of gene sequencing. Currently, more than 100 species have been identified, far more than what is identified by biochemical testing. Fortunately, most infections are caused by a relatively few species, and identification of this group of organisms at the genus level combined with in vitro susceptibility testing is sufficient for the management of most patients (Table 22.4).

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Although toxins and hemolysins have been described for nocardiae, the role these factors play in disease has not been defined. It would appear that the primary factor associated with virulence is the ability of pathogenic strains to **avoid phagocytic killing.** When phagocytes contact microbes, an oxidative burst occurs, with release of toxic oxygen metabolites (i.e., hydrogen peroxide, superoxide).

Clinical Case 22.3 Mycobacterial Infections Associated with Nail Salons

In September 2000 (Winthrop KL et al: *N Engl J Med* 346:1366–1371, 2002) a physician reported to the California Department of Health four female patients who developed lower extremity furunculosis. Each patient presented with small erythematous papules that became large, tender, fluctuant, violaceous boils over several weeks. Bacterial cultures of the lesions were negative, and the patients failed empirical antibacterial therapy. All of the patients had visited the same nail salon before the furuncles developed. As a result of the investigation of the nail salon, a total of 110 patients with furunculosis were identified. *Mycobacterium fortuitum* was cultured from the lesions from 32 patients, as well as from the footbaths used by the patients before their pedicures. Shaving the legs was identified as a risk factor for disease. Similar outbreaks have been reported in the literature, which illustrates the risks associated with contamination of waters with rapidly growing mycobacteria; the difficulties of confirming these infections by routine bacterial cultures, which are typically incubated for only 1 to 2 days; and the need for effective antibiotic therapy.

Pathogenic strains of nocardiae are protected from these metabolites by their secretion of **catalase** and **superoxide dismutase.** Surface-associated superoxide dismutase also protects the bacteria. Nocardiae are also able to survive and **replicate in macrophages** by (1) preventing fusion of the phagosome-lysosome (mediated by **cord factor**), (2) preventing acidification of the phagosome, and (3) avoiding acid phosphatase–mediated killing by metabolic utilization of the enzyme as a carbon source.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Nocardia infections are **exogenous** (i.e., caused by organisms not normally part of the normal human bacterial population). The ubiquitous presence of the organism in soil rich with organic matter and the increasing numbers of immunocompromised individuals have led to dramatic increases in disease caused by this organism. The increase is particularly noticeable in high-risk populations, such as ambulatory patients who are infected with HIV or have other T-cell deficiencies; patients receiving immunosuppressive therapy for bone marrow or solid organ transplants; and immunocompetent patients with pulmonary function compromised by bronchitis, emphysema, asthma, bronchiectasis, and alveolar proteinosis. Bronchopulmonary disease develops after the initial colonization of the upper respiratory tract by inhalation and then aspiration of oral secretions into the lower airways. Primary cutaneous nocardiosis develops after traumatic introduction of organisms into subcutaneous tissues, and secondary cutaneous involvement typically follows dissemination from a pulmonary site.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Bronchopulmonary disease caused by *Nocardia* species cannot be distinguished from infections caused by other pyogenic organisms, although *Nocardia* infections tend

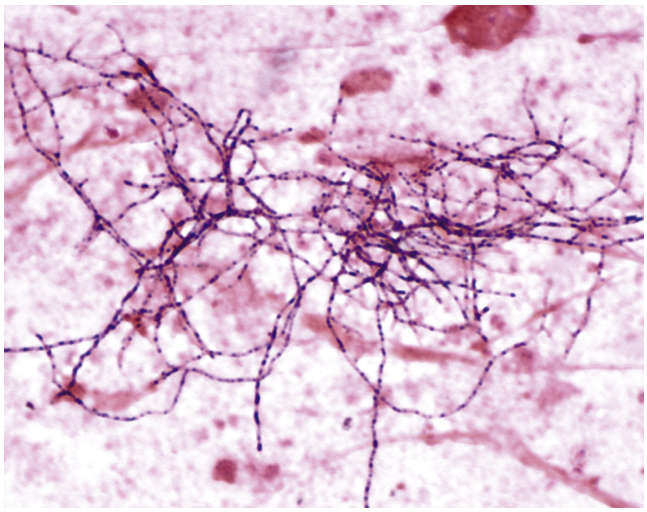


Fig. 22.9 Gram stain of *Nocardia* in expectorated sputum. Note the delicate beaded filaments.

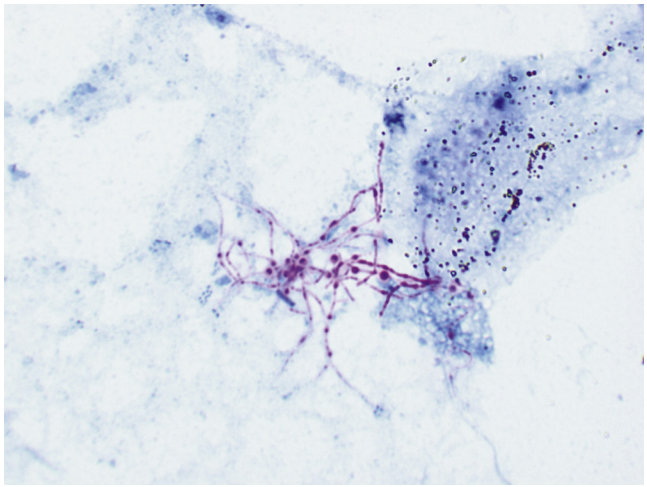


Fig. 22.10 Acid-fast stain of *Nocardia* species in expectorated sputum. In contrast with the mycobacteria, members of the genus *Nocardia* do not uniformly retain the stain ("partially acid-fast").

to develop more slowly, and primary pulmonary disease caused by *Nocardia* occurs almost always in immunocompromised patients (Box 22.2). Signs such as cough, dyspnea, and fever are usually present but are not diagnostic. Cavitation and spread into the pleura are common. Although the clinical picture is not specific for *Nocardia,* these organisms should be considered when immunocompromised patients experience pneumonia with cavitation, particularly if there is evidence of dissemination to the central nervous system (CNS) or subcutaneous tissues. If a pulmonary or disseminated *Nocardia* infection is diagnosed in an individual with no underlying disease, then a comprehensive immunologic workup is indicated.

Cutaneous infections may be primary infections (e.g., mycetoma, lymphocutaneous infections, cellulitis, subcutaneous abscesses) or from the result of the secondary spread of organisms from a primary pulmonary infection. **Mycetoma** is a painless, chronic infection primarily of the feet, characterized by localized subcutaneous swelling with involvement of the underlying tissues, muscle, and

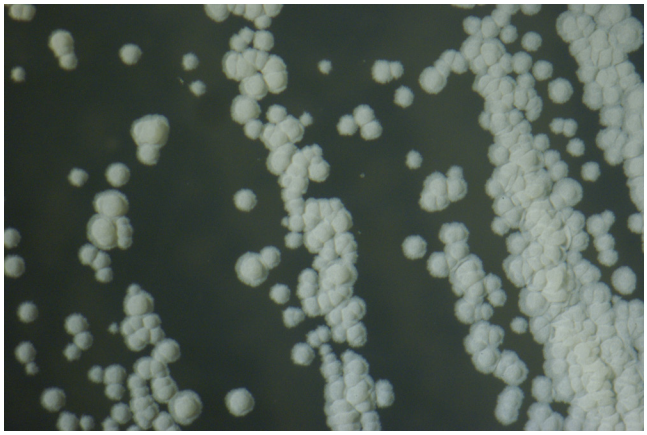


Fig. 22.11 Colonies of *Nocardia*.

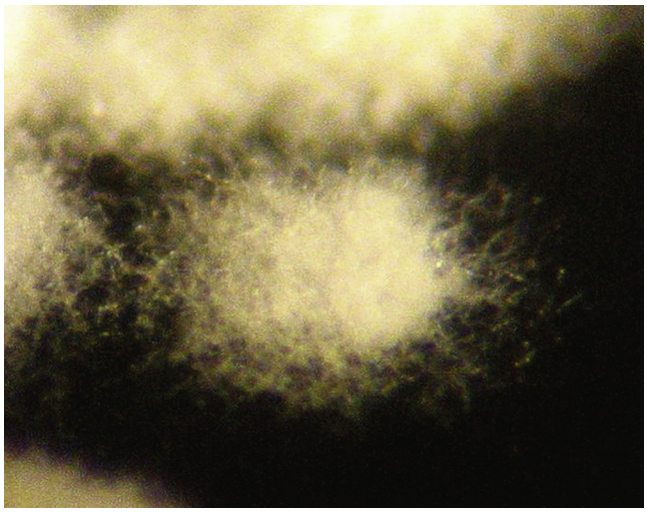


Fig. 22.12 Aerial hyphae of *Nocardia.*

bone; suppuration; and the formation of multiple sinus tracts (narrow path from the focus of infection to the skin surface). A variety of bacterial and fungal organisms can cause mycetoma, although *N. brasiliensis* is the most common cause in North America, Central America, and South America. **Lymphocutaneous infections** can manifest as cutaneous nodules and ulcerations along the lymphatics and regional lymph node involvement. These infections resemble cutaneous infections caused by some species of mycobacteria and by the fungus *Sporothrix schenckii. Nocardia* can also cause **chronic ulcerative lesions, subcutaneous abscesses,** and **cellulitis** (Fig. 22.13).

As many as one-third of all patients with *Nocardia* infections have dissemination to the brain, most commonly involving the formation of single or multiple **brain abscesses.** The disease can present initially as chronic meningitis (Clinical Case 22.4).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Multiple sputum specimens should be collected from patients with pulmonary disease. Because nocardiae are usually distributed throughout the tissue and abscess material, it is relatively easy to detect them by microscopy and to recover them in culture of specimens from patients

Table 22.4 Diseases of Selected Pathogenic Actinomycetes

Organism	Diseases	Frequency
Nocardia	Pulmonary diseases (bronchitis, pneumonia, lung abscesses); primary or secondary cutaneous infections (e.g., mycetoma, lymphocutaneous infections, cellulitis, subcutaneous abscesses); secondary central nervous system infections (e.g., meningitis, brain abscesses)	Common
Rhodococcus	Pulmonary diseases (pneumonia, lung abscesses); disseminated diseases (e.g., meningitis, pericarditis); opportunistic infections (e.g., wound infections, peritonitis, traumatic endophthalmitis)	Uncommon
Gordonia	Opportunistic infections	Rare
Tsukamurella	Opportunistic infections	Rare

Clinical Case 22.4 Disseminated Nocardiosis

Shin and associates (*Transplant Infect Dis* 8:222–225, 2006) described a 63-year-old man who received a liver transplant for liver cirrhosis caused by hepatitis C. The patient was treated with immunosuppressive drugs, including tacrolimus and prednisone for 4 months, at which time he returned to the hospital with fever and lower leg pain. Although the chest radiograph was normal, ultrasound revealed an abscess in the soleus muscle. Poorly staining gram-positive rods were observed in the Gram stain of the pus aspirated from the abscess, and *Nocardia* grew after 3 days of incubation. Treatment with imipenem was started; however, the patient developed convulsions 10 days later and partial left-sided paralysis. Brain imaging studies revealed three lesions. Treatment was switched to ceftriaxone and amikacin. The subcutaneous abscess and brain lesions gradually improved, and the patient was discharged after 55 days of hospitalization. This patient illustrates the propensity of *Nocardia* to infect immunocompromised patients and disseminate to the brain, the slow rate of growth of the organism in culture, and the related need for prolonged treatment.

BOX 22.2 Nocardiosis: Clinical Summaries

Bronchopulmonary disease: indolent pulmonary disease with necrosis and abscess formation; dissemination to central nervous system or skin is common

Mycetoma: chronic destructive progressive disease, generally of extremities, characterized by suppurative granulomas, progressive fibrosis and necrosis, and sinus tract formation

Lymphocutaneous disease: primary infection or secondary spread to cutaneous site, characterized by chronic granuloma formation and erythematous subcutaneous nodules, with eventual ulcer formation

Cellulitis and subcutaneous abscesses: granulomatous ulcer formation with surrounding erythema but minimal or no involvement of the draining lymph nodes

Brain abscess: chronic infection with fever, headache, and focal deficits related to the location of the slowly developing abscess(es)

with pulmonary, cutaneous, or CNS disease. The delicate hyphae of *Nocardia* in tissues cause them to resemble *Actinomyces* organisms (see Chapter 31); however, in contrast with *Actinomyces*, nocardiae are typically weakly acid-fast (see Fig. 22.10).

The organisms grow on most laboratory media incubated in an atmosphere of 5% to 10% carbon dioxide, but the presence of these slow-growing organisms may be obscured by more rapidly growing commensal bacteria. If a specimen is potentially contaminated with other bacteria (e.g., oral bacteria in sputum), selective media should be inoculated. Success has been achieved with the medium used for the isolation of *Legionella* species **(buffered charcoal yeast extract [BCYE] agar).** Indeed, this medium can be used to recover both *Nocardia* and *Legionella* from pulmonary specimens. *Nocardia* occasionally grows on media used for the isolation of mycobacteria and fungi; however, this method is less reliable than the use of special bacterial media. As mentioned previously, it is important to notify the laboratory if nocardiosis is suspected so the culture plates are held for additional days.

The preliminary identification of *Nocardia* is uncomplicated. Members of the genus can be classified initially on the basis of the presence of **filamentous, weakly acid-fast bacilli** and **aerial hyphae** on the colony surface. Definitive identification at the species level is more difficult because most species cannot be identified accurately by biochemical tests, although many laboratories continue to use these tests. Accurate identification of *Nocardia* requires molecular analysis of ribosomal ribonucleic acid (RNA) genes and "housekeeping" genes (e.g., heat shock protein gene) or use of mass spectrometry. Although mass spectrometry has only recently been introduced into diagnostic microbiology laboratories, this is rapidly becoming the method of choice for identification of these organisms.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Antibiotics with activity against *Nocardia* include trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX), amikacin, imipenem, and broad-spectrum cephalosporins (e.g., ceftriaxone, cefotaxime). Because antibiotic susceptibility can vary among individual isolates, antimicrobial susceptibility tests should be performed to guide specific therapy. TMP-SMX can be used as initial empirical therapy for cutaneous infections in immunocompetent patients. Antibiotic therapy for severe infections and cutaneous infections in immunocompromised patients should include two or three antibiotics, such as TMP-SMX plus amikacin for pulmonary or cutaneous infections and TMP-SMX plus imipenem or a cephalosporin for CNS infections. Because *Nocardia* grows slowly and is associated with therapeutic relapses, prolonged treatment (up to 12 months) is recommended. Whereas the clinical response is favorable in patients with localized

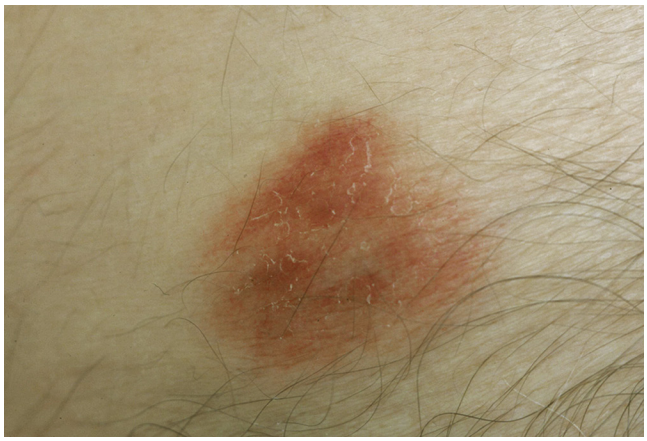


Fig. 22.13 Cutaneous lesion caused by *Nocardia.* (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Philadelphia, PA: Mosby.)

infections, the prognosis is poor for immunocompromised patients with disseminated disease.

Nocardiae are ubiquitous, so it is impossible to avoid exposure to them. However, bronchopulmonary disease caused by nocardiae is uncommon in immunocompetent persons, and primary cutaneous infections can be prevented with proper wound care. The complications associated with disseminated disease can be minimized if nocardiosis is considered in the differential diagnosis for immunocompromised patients with cavitary pulmonary disease and promptly treated.

• Other Weakly Acid-Fast Bacteria

The genus *Rhodococcus* consists of gram-positive acid-fast bacteria that initially appear rodlike and then revert to coccoid forms (Fig. 22.14). Rudimentary branching may be present, but the delicate, branching, filamentous forms commonly seen with nocardiae are not observed with rhodococci. Of the species currently recognized, ***Rhodococcus equi*** is the most important human pathogen. Originally, *R. equi* (formerly *Corynebacterium equi*) was considered a veterinary pathogen, particularly in herbivores, which occasionally caused occupational disease in farmers and veterinarians. However, this organism has become an increasingly more common **pathogen of immunocompromised patients** (e.g., patients infected with HIV, transplant recipients). Interestingly, most infected patients do not have a history of contact with grazing animals or of exposure to soil contaminated with herbivore manure. The rise in the incidence of human infection is most likely related to the increase in the number of patients with immunosuppressive diseases, particularly AIDS, and to the enhanced awareness of the organism. It is likely that many isolates were ignored previously or were misidentified as insignificant coryneform bacteria.

Similar to *Nocardia, R. equi* is a facultative, intracellular organism that survives in macrophages and causes granulomatous inflammation that leads to **abscess formation.** Although numerous putative virulence factors have been identified, the precise pathophysiology of the infection is incompletely understood. Individuals with depressed production of IFN-γ appear to be unable to clear bacteria from lung infections.

Immunocompromised patients most typically present with **invasive pulmonary disease** (e.g., pulmonary nodules, consolidation, lung abscesses), and evidence of dissemination in the blood to distal sites (lymph nodes, meninges, pericardium, and skin) is commonly observed. Rhodococci usually cause **opportunistic infections in immunocompetent patients** (e.g., posttraumatic cutaneous infections, peritonitis in patients undergoing long-term dialysis, traumatic endophthalmitis).

Rhodococci grow on nonselective media incubated aerobically, but the characteristic salmon-pink pigment may not be obvious for at least 4 days. Colonies are typically **mucoid,** although dry forms may also be seen. The organisms can be identified initially by their slow growth, macroscopic and microscopic morphology, and ability to weakly retain the **acid-fast** stain (acid-fastness observed primarily when organisms are grown on media for mycobacteria). Definitive identification at the species level is problematic; organisms are relatively inert, so biochemical tests are not useful. Similar to *Nocardia,* accurate identification at the species level requires either gene sequencing or protein profiling by mass spectrometry.

Rhodococcus infections are difficult to treat. Although in vitro tests and tests in animal models have identified specific combinations of effective drugs, only limited success has been realized in the treatment of human infections, particularly in immunocompromised patients with low CD4 cell counts (50% mortality) compared with immunocompetent patients (20% mortality). The current recommendation for treating localized infections in immunocompetent patients is to use either an extended-spectrum macrolide (e.g., azithromycin, clarithromycin) or fluoroquinolone (e.g., levofloxacin). Disseminated infections and infections in immunocompromised patients should be managed with combinations of two or more antibiotics, with at least one with excellent penetration into macrophages (e.g., vancomycin, imipenem, aminoglycosides, levofloxacin, rifampin, ciprofloxacin). Penicillins and cephalosporins should not be used because resistance to these agents is common in rhodococci, and the effectiveness of any antibiotic must be confirmed by in vitro testing.

Gordonia and ***Tsukamurella*** were previously classified with *Rhodococcus* because they are morphologically similar, contain mycolic acids, and are **partially acid-fast.** The organisms are present in soil and are rare opportunistic pathogens in humans. *Gordonia* has been associated with pulmonary and cutaneous infections, as well as nosocomial infections, such as those resulting from contaminated intravascular catheters. *Tsukamurella* has been associated with catheter infections. The significance of isolating either organism in clinical specimens must be evaluated carefully.

For a case study and question see StudentConsult.com.

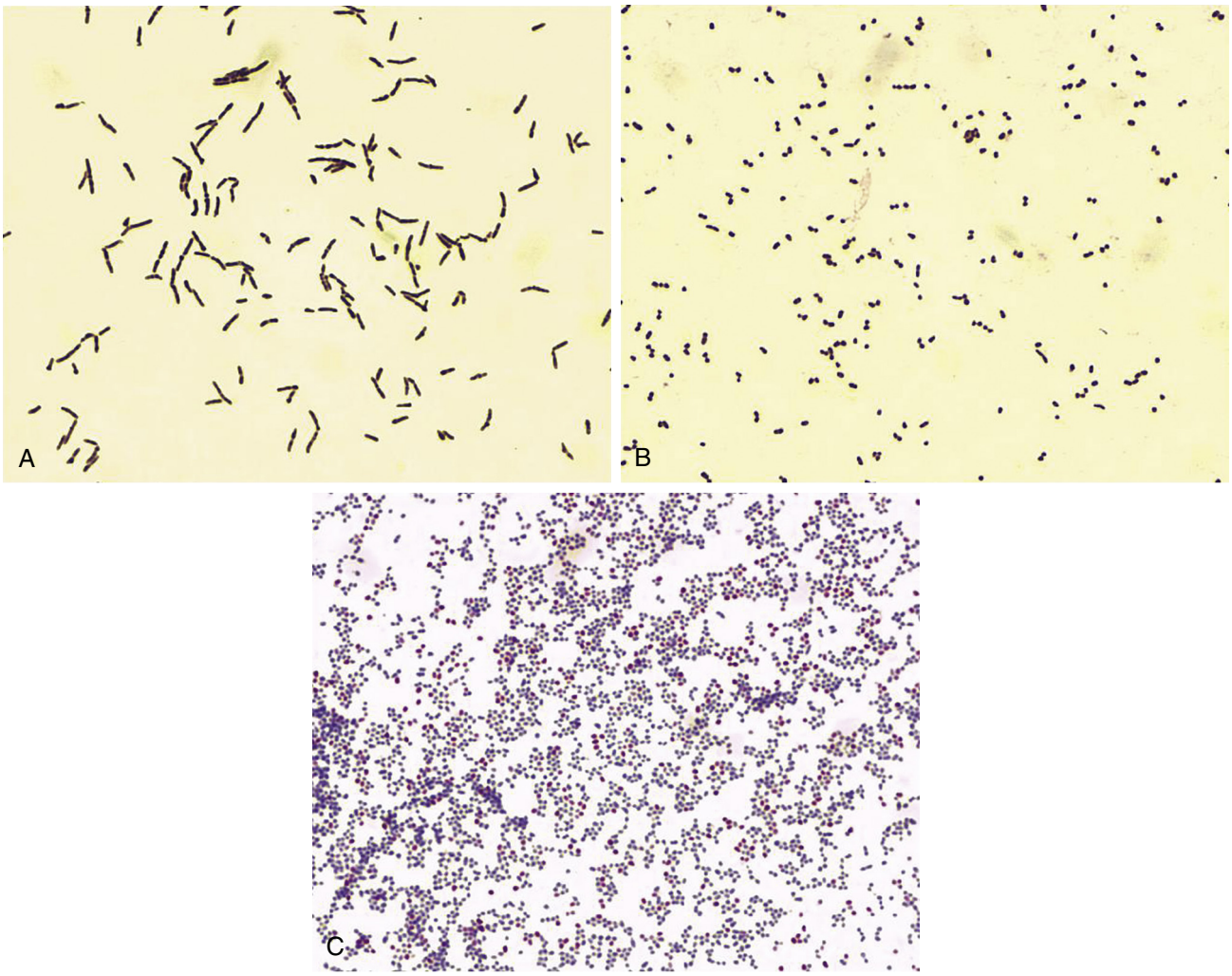


Fig. 22.14 *Rhodococcus.* (A) Gram stain after growth in nutrient broth for 4 hours. (B) Gram stain after growth in nutrient broth for 18 hours. (C) Acid-fast stain of organisms grown on mycobacterial Middlebrook agar for 2 days (note the paucity of red "acid-fast" cells).

Bibliography

Ambrosioni, J., Lew, D., Garbino, J., 2010. Nocardiosis: updated clinical review and experience at a tertiary center. Infection 38, 89–97.

Appelberg, R., 2006. Pathogenesis of *Mycobacterium avium* infection. Immunol. Res. 35, 179–190.

Conville, P., Brown-Elliott, B., Smith, T., Zelazny, A., 2018. The complexities of *Nocardia* taxonomy and identification. J. Clin. Microbiol. 56 e01419–17.

Cox, H., Mizrahi, V., 2018. The coming of age of drug-susceptibility testing for tuberculsosis. N. Engl. J. Med. 379, 1474–1475.

De Groote, M., Huitt, G., 2006. Infections due to rapidly growing mycobacteria. Clin. Infect. Dis. 42, 1756–1763.

Forbes, B., Hall, G., Miller, M., et al., 2018. Practice Guidelines for clinical microbiology laboratories: mycobacteria. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 31, 1–65.

Gegia, M., Winters, N., Benedetti, A., et al., 2017. Treatment of isoniazid-resistant tuberculosis with first-line drugs: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet. Infect. Dis. 17, 223–234.

Griffith, D.E, Aksamit, T., Brown-Elliott, B.A., et al., 2007. An official ATS/IDSA statement: diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of nontuberculous mycobacterial diseases. Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care. Med. 175, 367–416.

Ioerger, T.R., O'Malley, T., Liao, R., et al., 2013. Identification of new drug targets and resistance mechanisms in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. PLoS ONE 8, e75245.

Martinez, R., Reyes, S., Menendez, R., 2008. Pulmonary nocardiosis: risk factors, clinical features, diagnosis and prognosis. Curr. Opin. Pulm. Med. 14, 219–227.

Tiberi, S., du Plessis, N., Walzl, G., et al., 2018. Tuberculosis 1. Tuberculosis: progress and advances in development of new drugs, treatment regimens, and host-directed therapies. Lancet. Infect. Dis. 18, e183–e198.

Turenne, C.Y., Wallace Jr., R., Behr, M.A., 2007. *Mycobacterium avium* in the postgenomic era. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 20, 205–229.

Ulrichs, T., Kaufmann, S., 2006. New insights into the function of granulomas in human tuberculosis. J. Pathol 208, 261–269.

Walker M, Walker A, Peto T: Prediction of susceptibility to first-line tuberculosis drugs by DNA sequencing: the CRyPTIC Consortium and the 100,000 Genomes Project, N. Engl. J. Med. 379:1403–1415.

Walzi, G., McNerney, R., du Plessis, N., et al., 2018. Tuberculosis 2: advances and challenges in development of new diagnostics and biomarkers. Lancet. Infect. Dis. 18, e199–e210.

Zumla, A., Raviglione, M., Hafner, R., et al., 2013. Tuberculosis. N. Engl. J. Med. 368, 745–755.

Case Study and Questions

A 35-year-old man with a history of intravenous drug use entered the local health clinic with complaints of a dry persistent cough, fever, malaise, and anorexia. Over the preceding 4 weeks, he had lost 15 pounds and experienced chills and sweats. A chest radiograph revealed patchy infiltrates throughout the lung fields. Because the patient had a nonproductive cough, sputum was induced and submitted for bacterial, fungal, and mycobacterial cultures, as well as examination for *Pneumocystis* organisms. Blood cultures and serologic tests for HIV infection were performed. The patient was found to be HIV positive. The results of all cultures were negative after 2 days of incubation; however, sputum cultures were positive for *M. tuberculosis* after an additional week of incubation.

1. What is unique about the cell wall of mycobacteria, and what biological effects can be attributed to the cell wall structure?

2. Why is *M. tuberculosis* more virulent in patients with HIV infection than in non–HIV-infected patients?

3. What are the two clinical presentations of *M. leprae* infections? How do the diagnostic tests differ for these two presentations?

4. Why do mycobacterial infections have to be treated with multiple drugs for 6 months or more?

23 Neisseria *and Related Genera*

A 22-year-old woman was admitted to the hospital with a 1-day history of high fever, chills, headache, and an erythematous maculopapular rash over her chest, arms, and legs. She had an elevated leukocyte count and sedimentation rate. Blood cultures drawn at the time of admission were positive 10 hours later with gram-negative diplococci. This patient most likely has an infection with either *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* or *Neisseria meningitidis* because no other gram-negative bacteria in this clinical setting will look like this. Additional tests will be required to determine which bacterium is responsible for this infection.

1. *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* are the most important members of the genus *Neisseria.* How is this genus differentiated from other bacteria, and what growth properties distinguish these two species from other members of the genus?
2. What are the major virulence factors for each organism?
3. Why does a vaccine exist for *N. meningitidis* but not *N. gonorrhoeae?* What serogroup is not covered by the *N. meningitidis* vaccine, and why is this important?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

NEISSERIA GONORRHOEAE

Trigger Words

Diplococci, gonorrhea, arthritis, ophthalmia

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-negative diplococci with fastidious growth requirements
- Growth best at 35° C-37° C in a humid atmosphere supplemented with CO_2
- Oxidase and catalase positive; acid produced from glucose oxidatively
- Outer surface with multiple antigens: pili protein; Por proteins; Opa proteins; Rmp protein; protein receptors for transferrin, lactoferrin, and hemoglobin; lipooligosaccharide; immunoglobulin protease; β-lactamase
- Refer to Table 23.2 for summary of virulence factors

Epidemiology

- Humans are the only natural hosts
- Carriage can be asymptomatic in women
- Transmission is primarily by sexual contact
- Almost 555,608 cases reported in United States in 2017 (true incidence of disease believed to be at least twice that); estimated 78 million new cases worldwide
- Disease most common in blacks, people aged 15-24 years, residents of southeastern United States, people who have multiple sexual encounters
- Higher risk of disseminated disease in patients with deficiencies in late components of complement

Diseases

- Refer to Box 23.1 for summary of clinical diseases

Diagnosis

- Gram stain of urethral specimens is accurate for symptomatic males only
- Culture is sensitive and specific but has been replaced with nucleic acid tests in most laboratories

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Ceftriaxone with azithromycin is currently the treatment of choice, although high-level resistance to cephalosporins and azithromycin has been observed
- For neonates, prophylaxis with 1% silver nitrate; ophthalmia neonatorum is treated with ceftriaxone
- Prevention consists of patient education, use of condoms or spermicides with nonoxynol-9 (only partially effective), and aggressive follow-up of sexual partners of infected patients
- Effective vaccines are not available

NEISSERIA MENINGITIDIS

Trigger Words

Diplococci, meningitis, meningococcemia, pneumonia, vaccine

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-negative diplococci with fastidious growth requirements
- Grows best at 35° C-37° C in a humid atmosphere
- Oxidase and catalase positive; acid produced from carbohydrates oxidatively
- Outer surface antigens include polysaccharide capsule, pili, and lipooligosaccharides
- Capsule protects bacteria from antibody-mediated phagocytosis
- Specific receptors for meningococcal pili allow colonization of nasopharynx and replication; posttranslational modification of the pili enhances host cell penetration and person-to-person spread
- Bacteria can survive intracellular killing in the absence of humoral immunity
- Endotoxin mediates most clinical manifestations

Epidemiology

- Humans are the only natural hosts
- Person-to-person spread occurs via aerosolization of respiratory tract secretions
- Highest incidence of disease is in children younger than 1 year old, institutionalized people, and patients with late complement deficiencies
- Endemic and epidemic disease most commonly caused by serogroups A, B, C, W135, X, and Y; pneumonia most commonly caused by serogroups Y and W135; serogroups A and W135 associated with disease in underdeveloped countries
- Disease occurs worldwide, most commonly in the dry, cold months of the year

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

Diseases

- Refer to Box 23.1 for summary of clinical diseases

Diagnosis

- Gram stain of cerebrospinal fluid is sensitive and specific but is of limited value for blood specimens (too few organisms are generally present, except in overwhelming sepsis)
- Culture is definitive, but organism is fastidious and dies rapidly when exposed to cold or dry conditions
- Tests to detect meningococcal antigens are insensitive and nonspecific

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Breast-feeding infants have passive immunity (first 6 months)
- Empirical treatment of patients with suspected meningitis or bacteremia should be initiated with ceftriaxone; if the isolate is penicillin susceptible, treatment can be changed to penicillin G
- Chemoprophylaxis for contact with persons with the disease is with rifampin, ciprofloxacin, or ceftriaxone
- For immunoprophylaxis, vaccination is an adjunct to chemoprophylaxis; it is used only for serogroups A, C, Y, and W135; no effective vaccine is available for serogroup B; vaccination for serogroup A has been introduced in Africa

TABLE 23.1 Important Neisseriaceae

Organism	Historical Derivation
Neisseria	Named after the German physician Albert Neisser, who originally described the organism responsible for gonorrhea
N. gonorrhoeae	*gone,* seed; *rhoia,* a flow (a flow of seeds; reference to the disease gonorrhea)
N. meningitidis	*meningis,* the covering of the brain; *itis,* inflammation (inflammation of the meninges as in meningitis)
Eikenella	Named after M. Eiken, who first named the type species in this genus
E. corrodens	*corrodens,* gnawing or eating (reference to the observation that colonies of this species pit [eat into] the agar)
Kingella	Named after the American bacteriologist Elizabeth King

BOX 23.1 **Neisseriaceae: Clinical Summaries**

Neisseria gonorrhoeae

Gonorrhea: characterized by purulent discharge for involved site (e.g., urethra, cervix, epididymis, prostate, rectum) after a 2- to 5-day incubation period

Disseminated infections: spread of infection from genitourinary tract through blood to skin or joints; characterized by pustular rash with erythematous base and suppurative arthritis in involved joints

Ophthalmia neonatorum: purulent ocular infection acquired by neonate at birth

Neisseria meningitidis

Meningitis: purulent inflammation of meninges associated with headache, meningeal signs, and fever; high mortality rate unless promptly treated with effective antibiotics

Meningococcemia: disseminated infection characterized by thrombosis of small blood vessels and multiorgan involvement; small petechial skin lesions coalesce into larger hemorrhagic lesions

Pneumonia: milder form of meningococcal disease characterized by bronchopneumonia in patients with underlying pulmonary disease

Eikenella corrodens

Human bite wounds: infection associated with traumatic (e.g., bite, fistfight injury) introduction of oral organisms into deep tissue

Subacute endocarditis: infection of endocardium characterized by gradual onset of low-grade fevers, night sweats, and chills

Kingella kingae

Subacute endocarditis: as with *E. corrodens*

Three genera of medically important bacteria are in the family Neisseriaceae: ***Neisseria, Eikenella,*** and ***Kingella*** (Table 23.1). Other genera in the family are rarely associated with human disease and will not be discussed in this chapter. The genus *Neisseria* consists of 35 species and subspecies with two species, ***Neisseria gonorrhoeae*** and ***Neisseria meningitidis,*** strictly human pathogens. Additional species are commonly present on mucosal surfaces of the oropharynx and nasopharynx and occasionally colonize the anogenital mucosal membranes. Diseases caused by *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* are well known; the other *Neisseria* species have limited virulence and generally produce opportunistic infections (Box 23.1). ***Eikenella corrodens*** and ***Kingella kingae*** colonize the human oropharynx and are also opportunistic pathogens.

Neisseria gonorrhoeae and *Neisseria meningitidis*

Infections caused by *N. gonorrhoeae,* particularly the sexually transmitted disease gonorrhea, have been recognized for centuries. Despite effective antibiotic therapy, gonorrhea is still one of the most common sexually transmitted diseases in the United States. The presence of *N. gonorrhoeae* in a clinical specimen is always considered significant. In contrast, strains of *N. meningitidis* can colonize the nasopharynx of healthy people without producing disease or can cause community-acquired meningitis, overwhelming and rapidly fatal sepsis, or bronchopneumonia. The swift progression from good health to life-threatening disease produces fear and panic in communities, unlike the reaction to almost any other pathogen.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Neisseria species are aerobic **gram-negative** bacteria, typically coccoid shaped (0.6 to 1.0 μm in diameter) and arranged in pairs **(diplococci)** with adjacent sides flattened together (resembling coffee beans [Fig. 23.1]). All species are oxidase positive and most produce catalase, which are

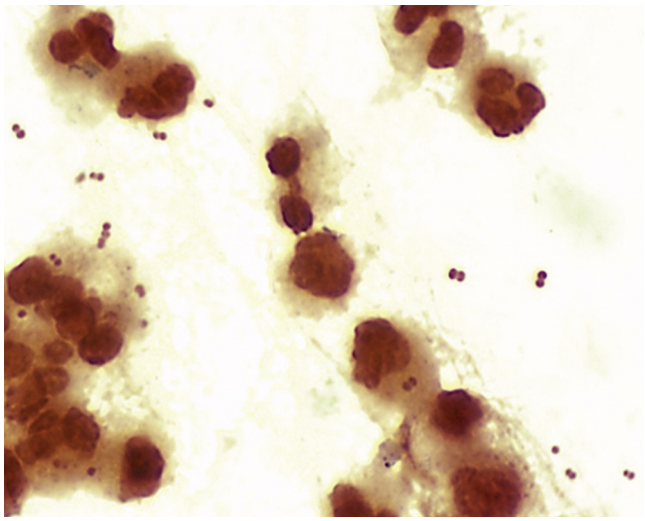


Fig. 23.1 *Neisseria meningitidis* in cerebrospinal fluid. Note the spatial arrangement of the pairs of cocci with sides pressed together, which is characteristic of this genus.

properties that combined with the Gram stain morphology allow a rapid, presumptive identification of a clinical isolate. Acid is produced by oxidation of carbohydrates (not by fermentation), a property that was historically used to differentiate *Neisseria* species. More rapid methods such as mass spectrometry are now used to identify these bacteria.

Pathogenic and nonpathogenic species of *Neisseria* can also be differentiated by their growth on blood agar and nutrient agar. Nonpathogenic strains grow on both media, *N. meningitidis* grows on blood agar and has variable growth on nutrient agar, and *N. gonorrhoeae* typically do not grow on either media. Strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* require cystine and an energy source (e.g., glucose, pyruvate, lactate) for growth, and many strains require supplementation of media with amino acids, purines, pyrimidines, and vitamins. Soluble starch is added to the media to neutralize the toxic effect of the fatty acids. Thus *N. gonorrhoeae* only grows on enriched **chocolate agar** and other supplemented media. The optimum growth temperature is **35° C to 37° C**, with poor survival of the organism at cooler temperatures. A humid atmosphere supplemented with **5% carbon dioxide** is either required or enhances growth of *N. gonorrhoeae.* These growth properties have practical importance: unless the specimen is processed on appropriate enriched media, *N. gonorrhoeae* will not be recovered. Although the fastidious nature of this organism makes recovery from clinical specimens difficult, it is nevertheless easy for the organism to be transmitted sexually from person to person.

The cell wall structure of *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* is typical of gram-negative bacteria, with the thin peptidoglycan layer sandwiched between the inner cytoplasmic membrane and the outer membrane. The major virulence factor for *N. meningitidis* is the polysaccharide capsule. Although the outer surface of *N. gonorrhoeae* is not covered with a true carbohydrate capsule, the cell surface of *N. gonorrhoeae* has a capsule-like negative charge. Antigenic differences in the **polysaccharide capsule** of *N. meningitidis* are the basis for serogrouping these bacteria in vitro and play a prominent role in determining whether an individual strain will cause disease. Thirteen serogroups are currently recognized, with six serogroups (A, B, C, W135, X, and Y) associated with endemic and epidemic disease.

Pathogenic and nonpathogenic strains of *Neisseria* have **pili** that extend from the cytoplasmic membrane through the outer membrane. Pili mediate a number of functions, including attachment to host cells, transfer of genetic material, and motility, and the presence of pili in *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* appears to be important for pathogenesis, in part because the pili mediate attachment to nonciliated epithelial cells and provide resistance to killing by neutrophils. The pili are composed of repeating protein subunits **(pilins)** that have a conserved region at one end and a highly variable region at the exposed carboxyl terminus. The lack of immunity to reinfection with *N. gonorrhoeae* results partially from the antigenic variation among the pilin proteins and partially from the phase variation in pilin expression, which are factors that complicate attempts to develop effective vaccines for gonorrhea.

Other prominent families of proteins are present in the outer membrane. The **porin proteins** are integral outer membrane proteins that form pores or channels for nutrients to pass into the cell and waste products to exit. *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* have two porin genes, *porA* and *porB.* The gene products, **PorA and PorB proteins,** are both expressed in *N. meningitidis,* but the *porA* gene is silent in *N. gonorrhoeae.* Thus not only is PorB the major outer membrane protein in *N. gonorrhoeae* (an estimated 60% of the gonococcal outer membrane proteins), but it must also be functionally active for *N. gonorrhoeae* to survive. This would seem to be a logical target for a vaccine; however, PorB is expressed as two distinct classes of antigens, PorB1A and PorB1B, with many distinct serologic variants. Thus, although the PorB protein is expressed in all gonococci, the large number of antigens and antigenic variation of this protein make it a poor target for vaccine development.

PorB is important for the virulence of *N. gonorrhoeae* because these proteins can interfere with degranulation of neutrophils (i.e., phagolysosome fusion that would lead to killing of intracellular bacteria) and presumably protect the bacteria from the host's inflammatory response. Additionally, PorB with other adhesins facilitates the bacterial invasion into epithelial cells. Finally, expression of some PorB antigens makes the bacteria resistant to complement-mediated serum killing.

Opa proteins (opacity proteins) are a family of membrane proteins that mediate intimate binding to epithelial and phagocytic cells and are important for cell-to-cell signaling. Multiple alleles of these proteins can be expressed by individual isolates. *N. gonorrhoeae* expressing the Opa proteins appear opaque when grown in culture (thus the source of the name). Opaque colonies are recovered most commonly in patients with localized disease (i.e., endocervicitis, urethritis, pharyngitis, proctitis), whereas transparent colonies are more commonly associated with pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and disseminated infections.

The third group of proteins in the outer membrane is the highly conserved **Rmp proteins** (reduction-modifiable proteins). These proteins stimulate antibodies that interfere with the serum bactericidal activity against pathogenic neisseriae.

Iron is essential for the growth and metabolism of *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis.* These pathogenic neisseriae are able to compete with their human hosts for iron by **binding host cell transferrin** to specific bacterial surface receptors. The specificity of this binding for human transferrin is likely the reason these bacteria are strict human pathogens. The presence of this receptor is fundamentally different from most bacteria that synthesize siderophores to scavenge iron. The gonococci also have a variety of additional surface receptors for other host iron complexes, such as lactoferrin and hemoglobin.

Another major antigen in the cell wall is **LOS.** This antigen is composed of lipid A and a core oligosaccharide but lacks the O-antigen polysaccharide found in lipopolysaccharide (LPS) in most gram-negative rods. The lipid A moiety possesses endotoxin activity. Both *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* spontaneously release **outer membrane blebs** during rapid cell growth. These blebs contain LOS and surface proteins and may act to both enhance endotoxin-mediated toxicity and protect replicating bacteria by binding protein-directed antibodies.

N. gonorrhoeae and *N. meningitidis* produce **immunoglobulin (Ig)A1 protease,** which cleaves the hinge region in IgA1. This action creates immunologically inactive Fc and Fab fragments. Some strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* also produce **β-lactamase** that can degrade penicillin.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Gonococci attach to mucosal cells, penetrate into the cells and multiply, and then pass through the cells into the subepithelial space in which infection is established (Table 23.2). Pili, PorB, and Opa proteins mediate attachment and penetration into host cells. The gonococcal LOS stimulates release of the proinflammatory cytokine **TNF-α,** which causes most of the symptoms associated with gonococcal disease.

TABLE 23.2 Virulence Factors in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*

Virulence Factor	Biological Effect
Pilin	Protein that mediates initial attachment to nonciliated human cells (e.g., epithelium of vagina, fallopian tube, and buccal cavity); interferes with neutrophil killing
Por protein	Porin protein: promotes intracellular survival by preventing phagolysosome fusion in neutrophils
Opa protein	Opacity protein: mediates firm attachment to eukaryotic cells
Rmp protein	Reduction-modifiable protein: protects other surface antigens (Por protein, lipooligosaccharide) from bactericidal antibodies
Transferrin-, lactoferrin-, and hemoglobin-binding proteins	Mediate acquisition of iron for bacterial metabolism
LOS	Lipooligosaccharide: has endotoxin activity
IgA1 protease	Destroys immunoglobulin A1 (role in virulence is unknown)
β-Lactamase	Hydrolyzes the β-lactam ring in penicillin

IgG3 is the predominant IgG antibody formed in response to gonococcal infection. Although the antibody response to PorB is minimal, serum antibodies to pilin, Opa protein, and LOS are readily detected. Antibodies to LOS can activate complement, releasing complement component C5a, which has a chemotactic effect on neutrophils; however, IgG and secretory IgA1 antibodies directed against Rmp protein can block this bactericidal antibody response.

Experiments with nasopharyngeal tissue organ cultures have shown that meningococci attach selectively to specific receptors on nonciliated columnar cells of the nasopharynx. Presence of the capsule interferes with epithelial cell attachment, so synthesis is downregulated before attachment. After attachment, meningococci are able to multiply, forming large aggregates of bacteria anchored to the host cells. Within a few hours of attachment, the pili undergo posttranslational modification, leading to destabilization of the aggregates. This results in the enhanced ability of the bacteria to both penetrate into the host cells and release into the airways, thus person-to-person spread is potentially increased.

Meningococcal disease occurs in patients who lack specific antibodies directed against the polysaccharide capsule and other expressed bacterial antigens. Infants are initially afforded protection by the passive transfer of maternal antibodies. When the infant has reached age 6 months, however, this protective immunity has waned, which is a finding consistent with the observation that the incidence of disease is greatest in children younger than 2 years. Immunity can be stimulated by colonization with *N. meningitidis* or other bacteria with cross-reactive antigens (e.g., colonization with nonencapsulated *Neisseria* species; exposure to *Escherichia coli* K1 antigen that cross-reacts with the group B capsular polysaccharide). Bactericidal activity also requires the existence of complement. Patients with **deficiencies in C5, C6, C7, or C8** of the complement system are estimated to be at a 6000-fold greater risk for meningococcal disease. Although immunity is mediated primarily by the humoral immune response, lymphocyte responsiveness to meningococcal antigens is markedly depressed in patients with acute disease.

Similar to *N. gonorrhoeae,* meningococci are internalized into phagocytic vacuoles and are able to avoid intracellular death, replicate, and then migrate to the subepithelial spaces. The polysaccharide capsule protects *N. meningitidis* from phagocytic destruction. The diffuse vascular damage associated with meningococcal infections (e.g., endothelial damage, inflammation of vessel walls, thrombosis, disseminated intravascular coagulation [DIC]) is largely attributed to the action of the **LOS endotoxin** present in the outer membrane.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Gonorrhea occurs naturally only in humans; it has no other known reservoir. It is second only to chlamydia as the most commonly reported sexually transmitted disease in the United States. Infection rates are the same in males and females, are disproportionately higher in blacks than in Hispanic Americans and whites, and are highest in the southeastern United States. The peak incidence of the disease is in the age group 15 to 24 years. The incidence of

disease generally declined after 1978, but the decrease slowed around 1996, and gonococcal infections have increased since 2010. In 2017, 555,608 new infections were reported in the United States, the highest number of infections in more than 25 years. However, even this large number is an underestimation of the true incidence of disease because diagnosis and reporting of infections are incomplete. Public health officials believe new infections may be twice the number reported. The American experience also pales in comparison with the WHO 2012 estimate of 78 million new cases of gonorrhea worldwide.

N. gonorrhoeae is transmitted primarily by sexual contact. Women have a 50% risk of acquiring the infection as the result of a single exposure to an infected man, whereas men have a risk of approximately 20% as the result of a single exposure to an infected woman. The risk of infection rises as the person has more sexual encounters with infected partners. Newborns are also at risk of developing infection when the mother is infected.

The major reservoir for gonococci is the asymptomatically infected person. Asymptomatic carriage is more common in women than in men. As many as half of all infected women have mild or asymptomatic infections, whereas most men are initially symptomatic. The symptoms generally clear within a few weeks in individuals with untreated disease, and asymptomatic carriage may then become established. The site of infection also determines whether carriage occurs, with rectal and pharyngeal infections more commonly asymptomatic than genital infections.

Endemic meningococcal disease occurs worldwide, and epidemics are common in developing countries. Epidemic spread of disease results from the introduction of a new virulent strain into an immunologically naive population. Endemic disease and pandemics have been uncommon in developed countries since World War II. For example, in the United States, rates of meningococcal disease have been declining since the late 1990s, with only about 370 cases reported in 2016. In contrast, outbreaks occur every 5 to 12 years in sub-Saharan Africa in which the attack rate can reach 1% of the population. Of the 13 serogroups, almost all infections are caused by serogroups A, B, C, W135, X, and Y. In Europe and the Americas, serogroups B, C, and Y predominate in meningitis or meningococcemia; serogroup A is responsible for 80% to 85% of disease in the 26 countries comprising the sub-Saharan African meningitis belt (stretching from Senegal to Ethiopia); and W135 is responsible for an ongoing outbreak of meningitis in Chile. Serogroups Y and W135 are most commonly associated with meningococcal pneumonia.

N. meningitidis is transmitted by respiratory droplets among people in prolonged close contact, such as family members living in the same household and soldiers living together in military barracks. Classmates in schools and hospital employees are not considered close contacts and are not at significantly higher risk of acquiring the disease unless they are in direct contact with the respiratory secretions of an infected person.

Humans are the only natural carriers for *N. meningitidis.* Studies of asymptomatic carriage of *N. meningitidis* have shown tremendous variation in its prevalence, from less than 1% to almost 40%. The oral and nasopharyngeal carriage rates are highest for school-age children and young adults; are higher in lower socioeconomic populations (caused by person-to-person spread in crowded areas); and do not vary with the seasons, even though disease is most common during the dry, cold months of the year. Carriage is typically transient, with clearance occurring after specific antibodies develop. Disease is most common in children younger than 1 year old with a second peak in adolescence. People who are immunocompromised, the elderly, or those who live in closed populations (e.g., military barracks, prisons) are prone to infection during epidemics.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Neisseria gonorrhoeae

Gonorrhea. Genital infection in men is primarily restricted to the **urethra** (see Box 23.1). A purulent urethral discharge (Fig. 23.2) and dysuria develop after a 2- to 5-day incubation period. Virtually all infected men have acute symptoms. Although complications are rare, epididymitis, prostatitis, and periurethral abscesses may occur. The primary site of infection in women is the cervix because the bacteria infect the endocervical columnar epithelial cells. The organism cannot infect the squamous epithelial cells that line the vagina of postpubescent women. Symptomatic patients commonly experience vaginal discharge, dysuria, and abdominal pain. Ascending genital infections, including salpingitis, tuboovarian abscesses, and PID, are observed in 10% to 20% of women. Although the initial infection in many women is asymptomatic, they are at increased risk of PID, ectopic pregnancies, infertility, destructive arthritis, and disseminated infections.

Gonococcemia. Disseminated infections with **septicemia** and **infection of skin and joints** occur in 1% to 3% of infected women and in a much lower percentage of infected men (Clinical Case 23.1). The greater proportion of disseminated infections in women is caused by the numerous untreated asymptomatic infections in this population. The clinical manifestations of disseminated disease include fever; migratory arthralgias; suppurative arthritis in the wrists, knees, and ankles; and a pustular rash on an erythematous base (Fig. 23.3) over the extremities but not

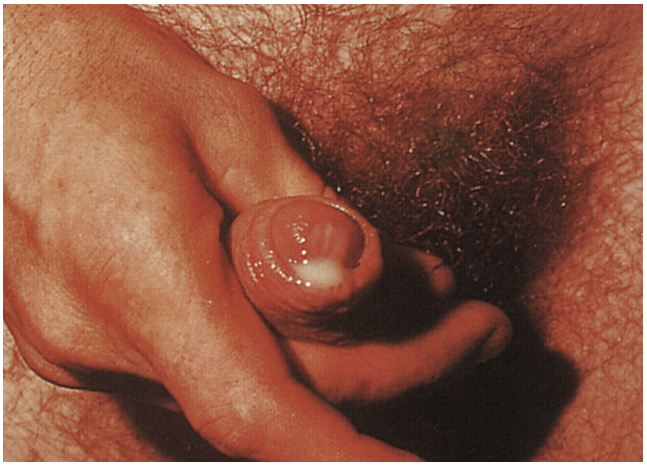


Fig. 23.2 Purulent urethral discharge in man with urethritis. (From Morse, S.A., Ballard, R.C., Holmes, K.K., et al., 2010. Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS, fourth ed. London, UK: Saunders.)

Clinical Case 23.1 **Gonococcal Arthritis**

Gonococcal arthritis is a common presentation of disseminated *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infection. Fam and associates (*Can Med Assoc J* 108:319–325, 1973) described six patients with this disease, including the following patient, who has a typical presentation. A 17-year-old girl was admitted to the hospital with a 4-day history of fever, chills, malaise, sore throat, skin rash, and polyarthralgia. She reported being sexually active and having a 5-week history of a profuse yellowish vaginal discharge that was untreated. On presentation, she had erythematous maculopapular skin lesions over her forearm, thigh, and ankle, and her metacarpophalangeal joint, wrist, knee, ankle, and midtarsal joints were acutely inflamed. She had an elevated leukocyte count and sedimentation rate. Cultures of her cervix were positive for *N. gonorrhoeae*, but blood specimens, exudates for the skin lesions, and synovial fluid were all sterile. The diagnosis of disseminated gonorrhea with polyarthritis was made, and she was successfully treated with penicillin G for 2 weeks. This case illustrates the limitations of culture in disseminated infections and the value of a careful history.

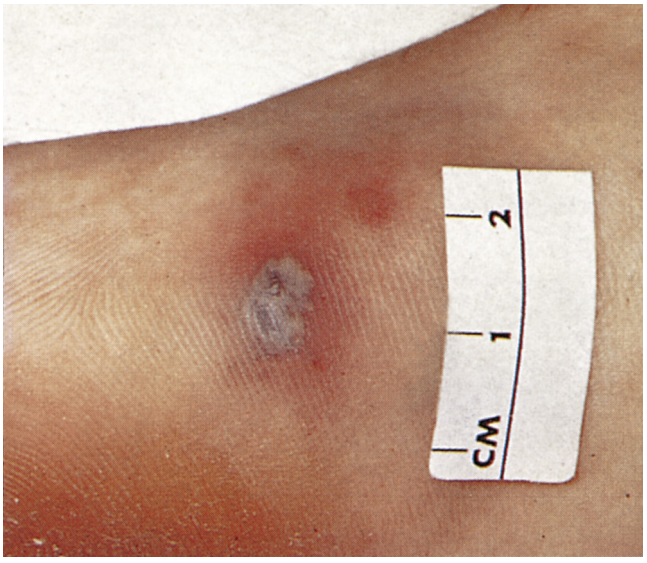


Fig. 23.3 Skin lesions of disseminated gonococcal infection. Classic large lesions with a necrotic, grayish central lesion on an erythematous base. (From Morse, S.A., Ballard, R.C., Holmes, K.K., et al., 2010. Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS, fourth ed. London, UK: Saunders.)

on the head and trunk. *N. gonorrhoeae* is a leading cause of **purulent arthritis** in adults.

Other *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* Syndromes. Other diseases associated with *N. gonorrhoeae* are perihepatitis **(Fitz-Hugh–Curtis syndrome);** purulent conjunctivitis (Fig. 23.4), particularly in newborns infected during vaginal delivery (ophthalmia neonatorum); anorectal gonorrhea in homosexual men; and pharyngitis.

Neisseria meningitidis

Meningitis. The disease usually begins abruptly with headache, meningeal signs, and fever; however, very young children may have only nonspecific signs such as fever and vomiting. Mortality approaches 100% in untreated patients but is less than 10% in patients in whom appropriate antibiotic therapy is instituted promptly. The incidence of neurologic sequelae is low, with hearing deficits, learning disabilities, and arthritis most common.

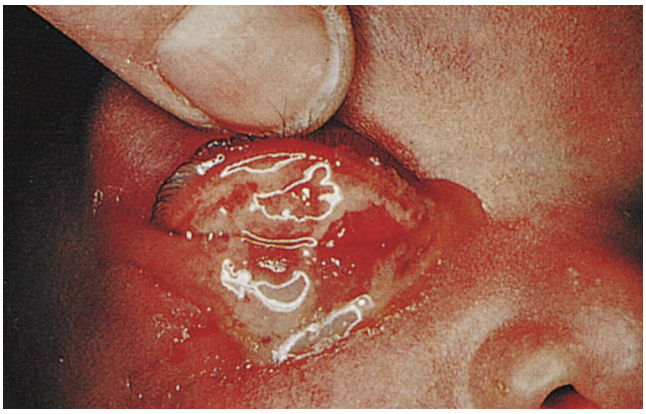


Fig. 23.4 Gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum. Lid edema, erythema, and marked purulent discharge are seen. A Gram-stained smear would reveal abundant organisms and inflammatory cells. (From Morse, S.A., Ballard, R.C., Holmes, K.K., et al., 2010. Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS, fourth ed. London, UK: Saunders.)

Meningococcemia. Septicemia (meningococcemia) with or without meningitis is a life-threatening disease (Clinical Case 23.2). Thrombosis of small blood vessels and multiorgan involvement are the characteristic clinical features. Small, petechial skin lesions on the trunk and lower extremities are common and may coalesce to form larger hemorrhagic lesions (Fig. 23.5). Overwhelming DIC with shock, together with bilateral destruction of the adrenal glands **(Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome),** may ensue. A milder, chronic septicemia has also been observed. Bacteremia can persist for days or weeks, and the only signs of infection are a low-grade fever, arthritis, and petechial skin lesions. The response to antibiotic therapy in patients with this form of the disease is generally excellent.

Other *Neisseria meningitidis* Syndromes. Additional infections caused by *N. meningitidis* are pneumonia, arthritis, and urethritis. Meningococcal pneumonia is usually preceded by a respiratory tract infection. Symptoms include cough, chest pain, rales, fever, and chills. Evidence of pharyngitis is observed in most affected patients. The prognosis in patients with meningococcal pneumonia is good.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Gram stain is very sensitive (>90%) and specific (98%) in detecting gonococcal infection in men with purulent urethritis. However, its sensitivity in detecting infection in asymptomatic men is 60% or less. The test is also relatively insensitive in detecting gonococcal cervicitis in both symptomatic and asymptomatic women, although a positive result is considered reliable when an experienced microscopist sees gram-negative diplococci within

Clinical Case 23.2 **Meningococcal Disease**

Gardner (*N Engl J Med* 355:1466–1473, 2006) described a previously healthy 18-year-old man who presented to a local emergency department with the acute onset of fever and headache. His temperature was elevated (40° C), and he was tachycardic (pulse of 140 beats/min) and hypotensive (blood pressure 70/40 mm Hg). Petechiae were noted over his chest. Although the result of a cerebrospinal fluid culture was not reported, *Neisseria meningitidis* was recovered in the patient's blood cultures. Despite prompt administration of antibiotics and other support measures, the patient's condition rapidly deteriorated, and he died 12 hours after arrival in the hospital. This patient illustrates the rapid progression of meningococcal disease, even in healthy young adults.

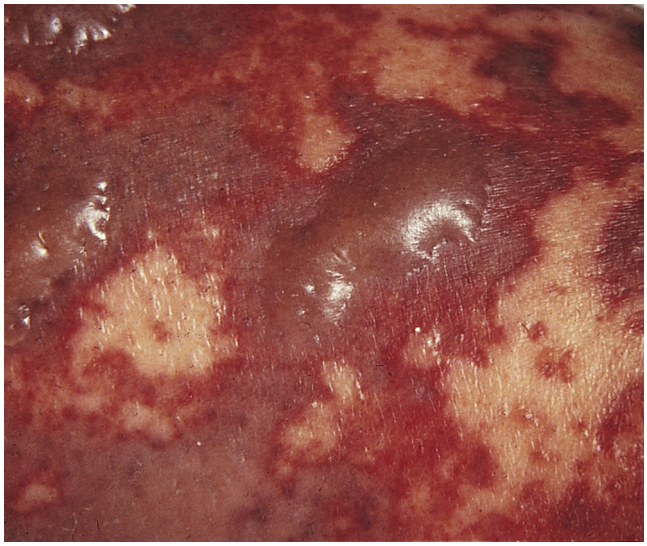


Fig. 23.5 Skin lesions in a patient with meningococcemia. Note that the petechial lesions have coalesced and formed hemorrhagic bullae.

polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Thus all negative Gram stain results in women and asymptomatic men must be confirmed.

The Gram stain is also useful for early diagnosis of purulent arthritis but is insensitive and nonspecific for detection of *N. gonorrhoeae* in patients with skin lesions, anorectal infections, or pharyngitis. Commensal *Neisseria* species in the oropharynx and morphologically similar bacteria in the gastrointestinal tract can be confused with *N. gonorrhoeae.*

N. meningitidis can be readily seen in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of patients with meningitis (see Fig. 23.1) unless the patient has received antimicrobial therapy before the clinical specimen is collected. Most patients with bacteremia caused by other organisms have so few organisms present in their blood that the Gram stain has no value; however, patients with overwhelming meningococcal disease commonly have large numbers of organisms in their blood, which can be seen when the peripheral blood leukocytes are Gram stained.

Antigen Detection

Antigen testing for the detection of *N. gonorrhoeae* is less sensitive than culture or nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) and is not recommended unless confirmatory tests are performed on negative specimens. Commercial tests to detect *N. meningitidis* capsular antigens in CSF, blood, and urine (where the antigens are excreted) were widely used in the past but have fallen into disfavor in recent years because the tests are less sensitive than the Gram stain and false-positive reactions, particularly with urine specimens, can occur.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

NAATs specific for *N. gonorrhoeae* were one of the first molecular tests introduced in clinical laboratories and currently represent the diagnostic gold standard. Combination NAATs for both *N. gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia* organisms are available and have replaced culture or other diagnostic tests in most laboratories. Tests using the current assays are rapid (results are available in 1 to 2 hours), sensitive, and generally specific. Very rapid (less than 10 minutes) point-of-care NAATs are currently in development and should be introduced within the next few years. When this happens, it will dramatically alter the diagnosis and treatment of sexually transmitted diseases. The primary problem with NAATs is that they cannot be used to monitor antibiotic resistance of the identified pathogens.

Culture

N. gonorrhoeae can be readily isolated from genital specimens if care is taken in collecting and processing the specimens (Fig. 23.6). Because other commensal organisms normally colonize mucosal surfaces, all genital, rectal, and pharyngeal specimens must be inoculated onto both **nonselective media** (e.g., chocolate blood agar) and **selective media** that suppress the growth of contaminating organisms (e.g., modified Thayer-Martin medium). A nonselective medium should be used because some gonococcal strains are inhibited by the vancomycin present in most selective media. The organisms are also inhibited by the fatty acids and trace metals present in the peptone hydrolysates and agar in other common laboratory media (e.g., blood agar, nutrient agar). Gonococci die rapidly if specimens are allowed to dry, so drying and cold temperatures should be avoided by directly inoculating the specimen onto prewarmed media at the time of collection.

The endocervix must be properly exposed to ensure that an adequate specimen is collected. Although bacteria can be recovered in endocervical exudate present in the vagina, a vaginal specimen is inadequate from asymptomatic women. Although the endocervix is the most common site of infection in women, rectal cultures may be the only positive specimens in women who have asymptomatic infections, as well as in homosexual and bisexual men. Blood culture results are generally positive for gonococci only during the first week of the infection in patients with disseminated disease. In addition, special handling of blood specimens is required to ensure adequate recovery of gonococci because supplements present in the blood culture media can be toxic to *Neisseria.* Cultures of specimens from

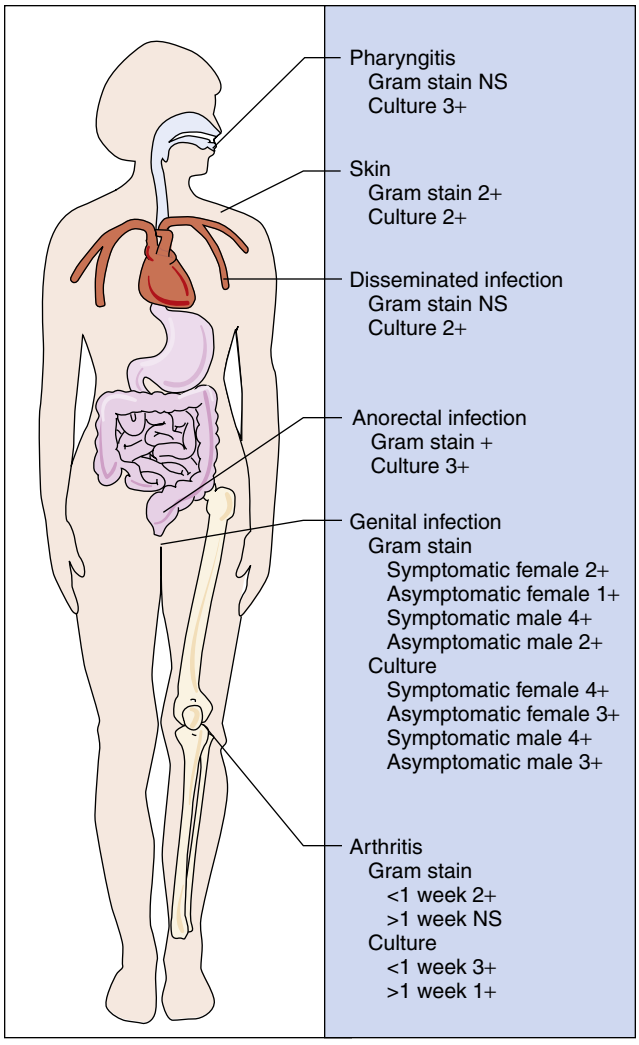


Fig. 23.6 Laboratory detection of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae. NS,* Not specific or sensitive.

infected joints are positive for the organism if the specimens are collected at the time the arthritis develops, but cultures of skin specimens are usually negative.

N. meningitidis is generally present in large numbers in CSF, blood, and sputum. Although the organism is inhibited by toxic factors in media and by the anticoagulant in blood cultures, this appears to be less of a problem than with *N. gonorrhoeae.* Care should be used in processing CSF and blood specimens because bacterial strains responsible for disseminated disease are more virulent and pose a safety risk for laboratory technologists.

Identification

Pathogenic *Neisseria* species are identified preliminarily on the basis of the isolation of oxidase-positive, gram-negative diplococci that grow on chocolate blood agar or on media that are selective for pathogenic *Neisseria* species. Definitive identification is guided by the pattern of oxidation of carbohydrates or other tests such as matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI) mass spectrometry.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Penicillin was historically the antibiotic of choice for treatment of gonorrhea; however, penicillin is not used today because the concentration of drug required to kill "susceptible" strains has steadily increased and frank resistance has become common. Resistance to tetracycline and ciprofloxacin has also become prevalent, and neither antibiotic is recommended for treatment. Currently the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends dual therapy with **ceftriaxone** and azithromycin. Resistance to each of these antibiotics is observed globally; however, the combination still remains effective, although it is unclear how long this will be the case.

Major efforts to stem the epidemic of gonorrhea encompass education, aggressive detection, and follow-up screening of sexual contacts. It is important to realize that gonorrhea is a significant disease. Chronic infections can lead to sterility, and asymptomatic infections perpetuate the reservoir of disease and lead to a higher incidence of disseminated infections. Chemoprophylaxis with 1% silver nitrate, 1% tetracycline, or 0.5% erythromycin eye ointment is routinely used to protect newborns against gonococcal eye infections (ophthalmia neonatorum); however, prophylactic use of antibiotics to prevent genital disease is ineffective and not recommended. Although there is interest in developing a vaccine against ***N. gonorrhoeae,*** an **effective vaccine is not yet available.** Immunity to infection with *N. gonorrhoeae* is poorly understood. Antibodies to pili antigens, Por proteins, and LOS can be detected; however, multiple infections are common in sexually promiscuous people. This lack of protective immunity is explained in part by the antigenic diversity of gonococcal strains. The variable region at the carboxyl terminus of the pilin proteins is the immunodominant portion of the molecule. Antibodies developed against this region protect against reinfection with a homologous strain, but cross-protection against heterologous strains is incomplete. This antigenic diversity also explains the ineffectiveness of vaccines developed against pilin proteins.

Cefotaxime or ceftriaxone should be used initially to treat *N. meningitidis* infections. If the organism is demonstrated to be penicillin susceptible, treatment can be changed to penicillin G. Chemoprophylaxis is recommended for contacts with significant exposure to patients with meningococcal disease (defined as individuals with direct exposure to respiratory secretions or >8 hours of close contact with the patient). Currently, rifampin, ciprofloxacin, or ceftriaxone is recommended for prophylaxis.

Antibiotic eradication of *N. meningitidis* in healthy carriers is ineffective, so disease prevention has focused on enhancement of immunity through the use of vaccines directed against the serogroups most commonly associated with disease. Two tetravalent vaccines effective against serogroups A, C, Y, and W135 are currently licensed in the United States: a polysaccharide vaccine and a polysaccharide-protein conjugate vaccine. The conjugate vaccine is recommended for all adolescents aged 11 or 12 years, with a booster dose given at age 16. Other adults at increased risk for meningococcal disease should be vaccinated with either tetravalent vaccine. Unfortunately, the group B polysaccharide is a weak immunogen and is antigenically related to a polysaccharide in human neurologic tissues. Efforts to develop group B protein

vaccines are ongoing. In December 2010, a new meningococcal A conjugate vaccine was introduced successfully in Africa, and a decreased incidence of meningitis was observed in the regions in which the vaccine was used. By 2016 the vaccine was introduced into 16 of the targeted 26 countries in the African meningitis belt, with the elimination of serogroup A meningococcal epidemics. Currently epidemics in these countries are primarily caused by serogroups C and W.

Other *Neisseria* Species

Neisseria species such as *N. sicca* and *N. mucosa* are commensal organisms in the oropharynx. These organisms have been implicated in isolated cases of meningitis, osteomyelitis, endocarditis, bronchopulmonary infections, acute otitis media, and acute sinusitis. The true incidence of respiratory tract infections caused by these organisms is not known because most specimens are contaminated with oral secretions. However, the observation of many gram-negative diplococci associated with inflammatory cells in a well-collected respiratory specimen would support the etiologic role of these organisms. Most isolates of *N. sicca* and *N. mucosa* are susceptible to penicillin, although low-level resistance caused by altered penicillin-binding protein (i.e., PBP2) has been observed.

EIKENELLA CORRODENS

In the early 1960s, a collection of small, fastidious, gram-negative rods were classified by workers at the CDC as members of the HB group (named after the patient infected with the original isolate). The organisms were subsequently subdivided into subgroup HB-1 (now known as *E. corrodens*), subgroup HB-2 (*Aggregatibacter [Haemophilus] aphrophilus*), and subgroups HB-3 and HB-4 (*A. [Actinobacillus] actinomycetemcomitans;* see Chapter 24). In addition to being morphologically similar, these organisms colonize the human oropharynx and, in the setting of preexisting heart disease, can cause subacute bacterial endocarditis.

E. corrodens is a moderate-sized (0.2 × 2.0 μm), nonmotile, non–spore-forming, facultatively anaerobic, gram-negative rod. The organism is named after Eiken, who characterized the bacterium and observed the ability of the organism to pit or "corrode" agar. *E. corrodens* is a normal inhabitant of the human upper respiratory tract, but because of its fastidious growth requirements it is difficult to detect unless specific selective culture media are used. It is an opportunistic pathogen that causes infections in patients who are immunocompromised or have diseases or trauma of the oral cavity. *E. corrodens* is most commonly isolated in the settings of a **human bite wound** or fistfight injury. Other infections are endocarditis, sinusitis, meningitis, brain abscesses, pneumonia, and lung abscesses. Because most infections originate from the oropharynx, polymicrobial mixtures of aerobic and anaerobic bacteria are often present in cultures.

A slow-growing, fastidious organism, *E. corrodens* requires 5% to 10% carbon dioxide to grow. Small (0.5- to 1.0-mm) colonies are observed after 48 hours of incubation on blood or chocolate agar, but the organism grows poorly or not at all on selective media for gram-negative rods. Pitting in agar is a useful differential characteristic, but fewer than half of all isolates exhibit pitting. The organism also produces a characteristic bleachlike odor. Thus if a slow-growing gram-negative rod is found to pit blood agar and produce a bleachlike odor, a preliminary identification of the organism can be made. *E. corrodens* is susceptible to penicillin (unusual for a gram-negative bacterium), ampicillin, extended-spectrum cephalosporins, tetracyclines, and fluoroquinolones, but it is resistant to oxacillin, first-generation cephalosporins, clindamycin, erythromycin, and the aminoglycosides. Thus *E. corrodens* is resistant to many antibiotics that are selected empirically to treat bite-wound infections.

KINGELLA KINGAE

Kingella species are small gram-negative coccobacilli that morphologically resemble *Neisseria* species and reside in the human oropharynx. The bacteria are facultatively anaerobic, ferment carbohydrates, and have fastidious growth requirements. *K. kingae,* the most commonly isolated species, has been primarily responsible for septic arthritis in children and endocarditis in patients of all ages. Because the organism grows slowly, it may take 3 or more days of incubation for the organism to be detected in clinical specimens. Most strains are susceptible to β-lactam antibiotics, including penicillin, tetracyclines, erythromycin, fluoroquinolones, and aminoglycosides.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Blank, S., Daskalakis, D., 2018. Neisseria gonorrhoeae—rising infection rates, dwindling treatment options. N. Engl. J. Med. 379, 1795–1797.

Cohn, A.C., MacNeil, J.R., Harrison, L.H., et al., 2010. Changes in *Neisseria meningitidis* disease epidemiology in the United States, 1998-2007: implications for prevention of meningococcal disease. Clin. Infect. Dis. 50, 184–191.

Gardner, P., 2006. Clinical practice: prevention of meningococcal disease. N. Engl. J. Med. 355, 1466–1473.

Harrison, L., 2010. Epidemiological profile of meningococcal disease in the United States. Clin. Infect. Dis. 50, S37–S44.

Milonovich, L., 2007. Meningococcemia: epidemiology, pathophysiology, and management. J. Pediatr. Health Care 21, 75–80.

Newman, L., Rowley, J., Hoom, S., et al., 2015. Global estimates of the prevalence and incidence of four curable sexually transmitted infections in 2012 based on systematic review and global reporting. PLoS ONE 10 (12), e0143304.

Quagliarella, V., 2011. Dissemination of *Neisseria meningitidis*. N. Engl. J. Med. 364, 1573–1575.

Schielke, S., Frosch, M., Kurzai, O., 2010. Virulence determinants involved in differential host niche adaptation of *Neisseria meningitidis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. Med. Microbiol. Immunol. 199, 185–196.

Stephens, D., 2007. Conquering the meningococcus. FEMS Microbiol. Rev. 31, 3–14.

Winstead, J.M., McKinsey, D.S., Tasker, S., et al., 2000. Meningococcal pneumonia: characterization and review of cases seen over the past 25 years. Clin. Infect. Dis. 30, 87–94.

Case Study and Questions

A 22-year-old female schoolteacher was brought to the emergency room after a 2-day history of headache and fever. On the day of admission, the patient had failed to come to school and could not be reached by telephone. When notified of this fact, the patient's mother went to her daughter's apartment, where she found her daughter in bed, confused and highly agitated. The patient was rushed to the local hospital, where she was comatose on arrival. Purpuric skin lesions were present on her trunk and arms. Analysis of her CSF revealed the presence of 380 cells/mm^3 (93% polymorphonuclear leukocytes), a protein concentration of 220 mg/dl, and a glucose concentration of 32 mg/dl. Gram staining of CSF showed many gram-negative diplococci, and the same organisms were isolated from blood and CSF. The patient died despite prompt initiation of therapy with penicillin.

1. What is the most likely organism responsible for this fulminant disease? What is the most likely source of this organism?

2. Chemoprophylaxis should be administered to which people? What are the criteria for administering chemoprophylaxis?

3. What other diseases does this organism cause?

4. What virulence factors have been associated with other bacterial species in this genus?

24 Haemophilus *and Related Bacteria*

A 10-year-old boy was catching and throwing a baseball with a friend. When he missed catching the ball, he ran into a neighbor's yard to retrieve the ball. His motion surprised a sleeping dog who then barked and bit the boy in the leg. The bite broke the skin but otherwise did not hurt the boy. He ran back to his friend and continued tossing the ball, not terribly concerned by the bite. Two days later the bite wound became erythematous and painful, and a serous discharge was present. His mother took the boy to the local emergency clinic, where cultures were performed and antibiotics started. The next day the laboratory reported that it had isolated a gram-negative rod that was subsequently identified as Pasteurella multocida. This organism is a member of the family Pasteurellaceae, which is a heterogeneous collection of small gram-negative rods.

1. What are the most common infections associated with *Haemophilus influenzae* type b, *Aggregatibacter*, and *Pasteurella?*
2. Why is disease with *H. influenzae* type b uncommon in the United States?
3. Why is detection of the capsular polysaccharide (i.e., polyribitol phosphate [PRP]) in *H. influenzae* of limited value?
4. What is the treatment of choice for *Pasteurella* infections?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

HAEMOPHILUS

Trigger Words

Coccobacilli, type b, PRP, meningitis, chancroid, vaccine

Biology and Virulence

- Small, pleomorphic, gram-negative rods or coccobacilli
- Facultative anaerobes, fermentative
- Most species require X and/or V factor for growth
- *Haemophilus influenzae* subdivided serologically (types a to f) and biochemically (biotypes I to VIII)
- *H. influenzae* type b is clinically most virulent (with PRP in capsule)
- *Haemophilus* adhere to host cells via pili and nonpilus structures

Epidemiology

- *Haemophilus* species commonly colonized in humans, although encapsulated *Haemophilus* species, particularly *H. influenzae* type b, are uncommon members of normal flora
- Disease caused by *H. influenzae* type b was primarily a pediatric problem; eliminated in immunized populations
- *H. ducreyi* disease is uncommon in the United States
- With the exception of *H. ducreyi,* which is spread by sexual contact, most *Haemophilus* infections are caused by the patient's oropharyngeal flora (endogenous infections)
- Patients at greatest risk for disease are those with inadequate levels of protective antibodies, those with depleted complement, and those who have undergone splenectomy

Diseases

- Refer to Table 24.2 for a summary of diseases

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is a sensitive test for detecting *H. influenzae* in cerebrospinal fluid, synovial fluid, and lower respiratory specimens but not from other sites
- Culture is performed using chocolate agar
- Antigen tests are specific for *H. influenzae* type b; therefore these tests are nonreactive for infections caused by other organisms

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- *Haemophilus* infections are treated with broad-spectrum cephalosporins, amoxicillin, azithromycin, doxycycline, or fluoroquinolones; susceptibility to amoxicillin should be documented
- Active immunization with conjugated PRP vaccines prevents most *H. influenzae* type b infections

PRP, Polyribitol phosphate.

The three most important genera in the family Pasteurellaceae are ***Haemophilus, Aggregatibacter,*** and ***Pasteurella*** (Table 24.1), and they are responsible for a broad spectrum of diseases (Box 24.1). The members of this family are small (0.2 to 0.3 × 1.0 to 2.0 μm), facultative anaerobic, gram-negative rods. Most have fastidious properties, requiring enriched media for isolation. Members of the genus *Haemophilus,* particularly *H. influenzae,* are the most common pathogens in this family and will be the main focus of this chapter (Table 24.2).

Haemophilus

Haemophilae are small, sometimes pleomorphic, gram-negative rods present on the mucous membranes of

humans (Fig. 24.1). ***H. influenzae*** is the species most commonly associated with disease, although introduction of the *H. influenzae* type b vaccine has dramatically reduced the incidence of disease, particularly in the pediatric population. ***H. aegyptius*** is an important cause of acute purulent conjunctivitis. ***H. ducreyi*** is recognized as the etiologic agent of the sexually transmitted disease **soft chancre** or **chancroid.** The other members of the genus are commonly isolated in clinical specimens (e.g., *H. parainfluenzae* is the most common species in the mouth) but are rarely pathogenic, and are responsible primarily for opportunistic infections.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The growth of most species of *Haemophilus* requires supplementation of media with one or both of the following growth-stimulating factors: (1) **hemin** (also called **X factor** for "unknown factor") and (2) **nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide** (**NAD;** also called **V factor** for "vitamin"). Although both factors are present in blood-enriched media, sheep blood agar must be gently heated to destroy the inhibitors of V factor. For this reason, heated blood ("chocolate") agar is used for the isolation of *Haemophilus* in culture.

The cell wall structure of *Haemophilus* is typical of other gram-negative rods. Lipopolysaccharide with endotoxin activity is present in the cell wall, and strain-specific and species-specific proteins are found in the outer membrane. Analysis of these strain-specific proteins is valuable in epidemiologic investigations. The surface of many, but not all, strains of *H. influenzae* are covered with a **polysaccharide capsule,** and six antigenic serotypes (a through f) have been identified. Before the introduction of the *H. influenzae* type b vaccine, ***H. influenzae* serotype** b was responsible for more than 95% of all invasive *Haemophilus* infections. After introduction of the vaccine, most disease caused by this serotype disappeared in vaccinated populations, and more than half of all invasive disease is now caused by nonencapsulated (nontypeable) strains. The incidence of *Haemophilus* serotype b disease has not increased since 2000, whereas disease caused by other serotypes or nontypeable strains has slowly increased in the United States.

In addition to the serologic differentiation of *H. influenzae,* the species is subdivided into eight **biotypes** (I through VIII) as determined by three biochemical reactions: indole production, urease activity, and ornithine decarboxylase activity. The separation of these biotypes is useful for epidemiologic purposes.

TABLE 24.1 Important Pasteurellaceae

Organism	Historical Derivation
Haemophilus	*haemo,* blood; *hilos,* lover ("blood lover"; requires blood for growth on agar media)
H. influenzae	Originally thought to be the cause of influenza
H. aegyptius	*aegyptius,* Egyptian (observed by Robert Koch in 1883 in exudates from Egyptians with conjunctivitis)
H. ducreyi	Named after the bacteriologist Ducrey, who first isolated this organism
Aggregatibacter	*aggregare,* to come together; *bacter,* bacterial rod; rod-shaped bacteria that aggregate or clump together
A. actinomycetemcomitans	*comitans,* accompanying ("accompanying an actinomycete"; isolates are frequently associated with *Actinomyces*)
A. aphrophilus	*aphros,* foam; *philos,* loving ("foam loving")
Pasteurella	Named after Louis Pasteur
P. multocida	*multus,* many; *cidus,* to kill ("many-killing"; pathogenic for many species of animals)
P. canis	*canis,* dogs (isolated from the mouths of dogs)

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Haemophilus species, particularly *H. parainfluenzae* and nonencapsulated *H. influenzae,* colonize the upper respiratory tract in virtually all people within the first few months of life. These organisms can spread locally and cause disease in the ears (otitis media), sinuses (sinusitis), and lower respiratory tract (bronchitis, pneumonia). Disseminated disease, however, is relatively uncommon. In contrast, encapsulated *H. influenzae* (particularly serotype b [biotype I]) is uncommon in the upper respiratory tract or is present in only very small numbers, but it is a common cause of disease in unvaccinated children (i.e., meningitis,

BOX 24.1 Pasteurellaceae: Clinical Summaries

Haemophilus influenzae

Meningitis: a disease primarily of unimmunized children characterized by fever, severe headache, and systemic signs

Epiglottitis: a disease primarily of unimmunized children characterized by initial pharyngitis, fever, and difficulty breathing, and progressing to cellulitis and swelling of the supraglottic tissues, with obstruction of the airways possible

Pneumonia: inflammation and consolidation of the lungs observed primarily in the elderly with underlying chronic pulmonary disease; typically caused by nontypeable strains

Haemophilus aegyptius

Conjunctivitis: an acute purulent conjunctivitis ("pink eye")

Haemophilus ducreyi

Chancroid: sexually transmitted disease characterized by a tender papule with an erythematous base that progresses to painful ulceration with associated lymphadenopathy

Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans

Endocarditis: responsible for subacute form of endocarditis in patients with underlying damage to the heart valve

Aggregatibacter aphrophilus

Endocarditis: as with *A. actinomycetemcomitans*

Pasteurella multocida

Bite wound: most common manifestation is infected cat or dog bite wound; particularly common with cat bites because the wounds are deep and difficult to disinfect

TABLE 24.2 *Haemophilus* Species Associated with Human Disease

Species	Primary Diseases	Frequency
Haemophilus influenzae	Pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis, meningitis, epiglottitis, cellulitis, bacteremia	Common worldwide; uncommon in United States
H. aegyptius	Conjunctivitis	Uncommon
H. ducreyi	Chancroid	Uncommon in United States
H. parainfluenzae	Bacteremia, endocarditis, opportunistic infections	Rare

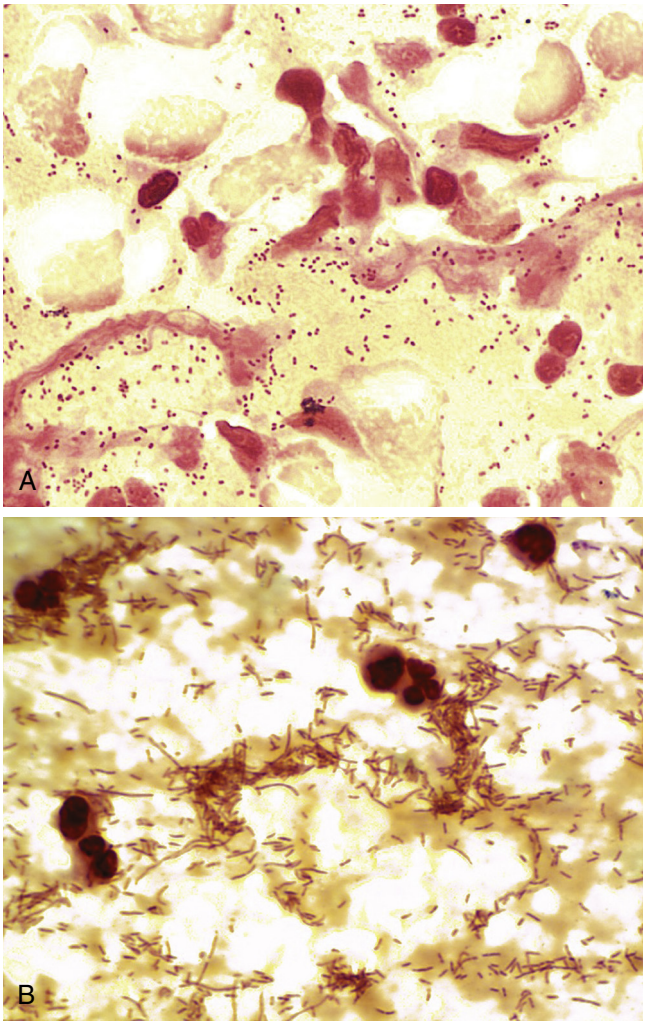


Fig. 24.1 Gram stains of *Haemophilus influenzae.* (A) Small coccobacilli forms seen in sputum from patient with pneumonia. (B) Thin pleomorphic forms seen in a 1-year-old unvaccinated child in Africa with overwhelming meningitis and exposed to initial dose of ampicillin.

epiglottitis [obstructive laryngitis], cellulitis). Pili and nonpilus adhesins mediate colonization of the oropharynx with *H. influenzae.* Cell wall components of the bacteria (e.g., lipopolysaccharide and a low-molecular-weight glycopeptide) impair ciliary function, leading to damage of the respiratory epithelium. The bacteria can then be translocated across both epithelial and endothelial cells and can enter the blood. In the absence of specific opsonic antibodies directed against the polysaccharide capsule, high-grade bacteremia can develop with dissemination to the meninges or other distal foci.

The major virulence factor in *H. influenzae* type b is the antiphagocytic polysaccharide capsule, which contains ribose, ribitol, and phosphate (commonly referred to as **polyribitol phosphate [PRP]**). Antibodies directed against the capsule greatly stimulate bacterial phagocytosis and complement-mediated bactericidal activity. These antibodies develop because of natural infection, vaccination with purified PRP, or the passive transfer of maternal antibodies. The severity of systemic disease is inversely related to the rate of clearance of bacteria from the blood. The risk of meningitis and epiglottitis is significantly greater in patients with no anti-PRP antibodies, those with depletion of complement, and those who have undergone splenectomy. The lipopolysaccharide **lipid A** component induces meningeal inflammation in an animal model and may be responsible for initiating this response in humans. Immunoglobulin **(Ig)A1 proteases** are produced by *H. influenzae* (both encapsulated and nonencapsulated strains) and may facilitate colonization of the organisms on mucosal surfaces by interfering with humoral immunity.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Haemophilus species are present in almost all individuals, primarily colonizing the mucosal membranes of the respiratory tract. *H. parainfluenzae* is the predominant *Haemophilus* species in the mouth. Nonencapsulated strains of *H. influenzae* are also commonly found in the upper respiratory tract; however, encapsulated strains are detectable only in small numbers and only when highly selective culture methods are used. Before the introduction of the *H. influenzae* vaccine, even though *H. influenzae* type b was the most common serotype that caused systemic disease, it was rarely isolated in healthy children (a fact that emphasizes the virulence of this bacterium).

The epidemiology of *Haemophilus* disease has changed dramatically. Before the introduction of **conjugated *H. influenzae* type b vaccines,** an estimated 20,000 cases of invasive *H. influenzae* type b disease occurred annually in children younger than age 5 years in the United States. The first polysaccharide vaccines for *H. influenzae* type b were not protective for children younger than 18 months (the population at greatest risk for disease) because there is a natural delay in the maturation of the immune response to polysaccharide antigens. When vaccines containing purified PRP antigens conjugated to protein carriers (i.e., diphtheria toxoid, tetanus toxoid, meningococcal outer membrane protein) were introduced in December 1987, a protective antibody response in infants aged 2 months and older was produced, and systemic disease in children younger than age 5 was virtually eliminated in the United States, with only 29 cases reported in

2015. Most of the *H. influenzae* type b infections now occur in children who are not immune (because of incomplete vaccination or a poor response to the vaccine) and in elderly adults with waning immunity. In addition, invasive *H. influenzae* disease caused by other serotypes of encapsulated bacteria and by nonencapsulated strains has now become proportionally more common than that resulting from serotype b. It should be noted that successful elimination of *H. influenzae* type b disease in the United States has not been seen in many developing countries in which vaccination programs have been difficult to implement. Thus *H. influenzae* type b remains the most significant pediatric pathogen in many countries of the world. It is estimated that 3 million cases of serious disease and up to 700,000 fatalities occur in children each year worldwide, which is a tragedy considering that vaccination could eliminate virtually all disease. The epidemiology of disease caused by nonencapsulated *H. influenzae* and other *Haemophilus* species is distinct. Ear and sinus infections caused by these organisms are primarily pediatric diseases but can occur in adults. Pulmonary disease most commonly affects elderly people, particularly those with a history of underlying chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) or conditions predisposing to aspiration (e.g., alcoholism, altered mental state).

H. ducreyi is an important cause of genital ulcers (chancroid) in Africa and Asia but is less common in Europe and North America. The incidence of disease in the United States is cyclic. A peak incidence of more than 5000 cases was reported in 1988, which decreased to 7 cases in 2016. Despite this favorable trend, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has documented that the disease is significantly unrecognized and underreported, making the true incidence unknown.

CLINICAL DISEASES

The clinical syndromes seen in patients with *H. influenzae* infections are represented in Fig. 24.2. The diseases caused by all *Haemophilus* species are described in the following sections (see Table 24.2).

Meningitis

H. influenzae type b was the most common cause of pediatric meningitis, but this situation changed rapidly when the conjugated vaccines became widely used. Disease in nonimmune patients results from bacteremic spread of the organisms from the nasopharynx and cannot be differentiated clinically from other causes of bacterial meningitis. The initial presentation is a 1- to 3-day history of mild upper respiratory disease, after which the typical signs and symptoms of meningitis appear. Mortality is less than 10% in patients who receive prompt therapy, and carefully designed studies have documented a low incidence of serious neurologic sequelae (in contrast with the 50% incidence of severe residual damage reported in nonimmune children seen in early studies). Person-to-person spread in a nonimmune population is well documented, so appropriate epidemiologic precautions must be used.

Epiglottitis

Epiglottitis, characterized by cellulitis and the swelling of the supraglottic tissues, represents a life-threatening emergency. Although epiglottitis is a pediatric disease, the peak incidence of this disease during the prevaccine era occurred in children 2 to 4 years of age; in contrast, the peak incidence of meningitis was seen in children 3 to 18 months of age. Children with epiglottitis have pharyngitis, fever, and difficulty breathing, which can progress rapidly to obstruction of the airway and death. Since the introduction of the vaccine, the incidence of this disease has also decreased dramatically in children and remains relatively rare in adults.

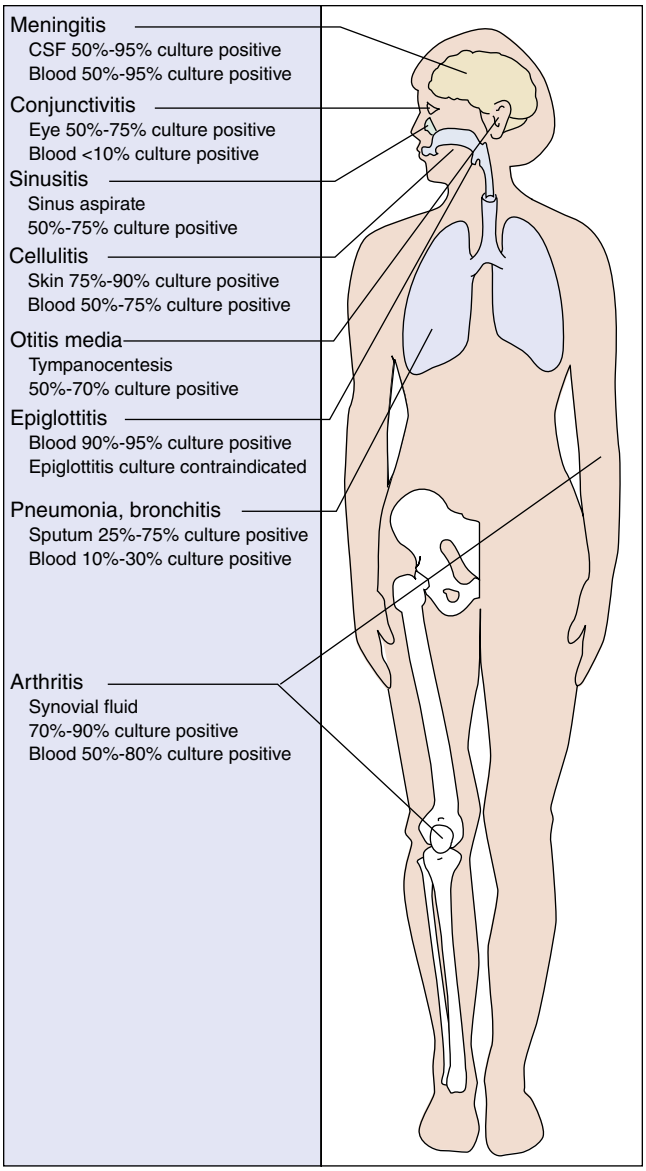


Fig. 24.2 Infections caused by *Haemophilus influenzae.* With the advent of the conjugated vaccine, most infections in adults involve areas contiguous with the oropharynx (i.e., lower respiratory tract, sinuses, ears). Serious systemic infections (e.g., meningitis, epiglottitis) can occur in nonimmune patients. *CSF,* Cerebrospinal fluid.

Cellulitis

Like meningitis and epiglottitis, cellulitis is a pediatric *H. influenzae* disease that has largely been eliminated by vaccination. When it is observed, patients have fever and cellulitis characterized by the development of reddish-blue patches on the cheeks or periorbital areas. The diagnosis is strongly suggested by the typical clinical presentation, cellulitis proximal to the oral mucosa, and lack of documented vaccination in the child.

Arthritis

Before the advent of conjugated vaccines, the most common form of arthritis in children younger than 2 years was an infection of a single, large joint secondary to bacteremic spread of *H. influenzae* type b. Disease does occur in older children and adults, but it is very uncommon and generally affects immunocompromised patients and patients with previously damaged joints.

Otitis, Sinusitis, and Lower Respiratory Tract Disease

Nonencapsulated strains of *H. influenzae* are opportunistic pathogens that can cause infections of the upper and lower airways. Most studies have shown that *H. influenzae* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* are the two most common causes of acute and chronic otitis and sinusitis. Primary pneumonia is uncommon in children and adults who have normal pulmonary function. These organisms commonly colonize patients who have chronic pulmonary disease (including cystic fibrosis), and are frequently associated with exacerbation of bronchitis and frank pneumonia (Clinical Case 24.1).

Conjunctivitis

H. aegyptius, also called the **Koch-Weeks bacillus,** causes an acute purulent conjunctivitis. This contagious organism is associated with epidemics, particularly during the warm months of the year.

Chancroid

Chancroid, caused by H. ducreyi, is a sexually transmitted disease that is most commonly diagnosed in men, presumably because women can have asymptomatic or inapparent disease. Approximately 5 to 7 days after exposure, a tender papule with an erythematous base develops on the genitalia or perianal area. Within 2 days the lesion ulcerates and becomes **painful,** and inguinal **lymphadenopathy** is commonly present. Other causes of genital ulcers, such as syphilis and herpes simplex disease, must be excluded to confirm the diagnosis of chancroid.

Other Infections

Other species of *Haemophilus* can cause opportunistic infections such as otitis media, conjunctivitis, sinusitis, endocarditis, meningitis, and dental abscesses.

Clinical Case 24.1 **Pneumonia Caused by *Haemophilus influenzae***

Holmes and Kozinn (*J Clin Microbiol* 18:730–732, 1983) described a 61-year-old woman with pneumonia caused by *Haemophilus influenzae* serotype d. The patient had a long history of smoking, chronic obstructive lung disease, diabetes mellitus, and congestive heart failure. She presented with left upper lobe pneumonia, producing purulent sputum with many gram-negative coccobacilli. Both sputum and blood cultures were positive for *H. influenzae* serotype d. The organism was susceptible to ampicillin, to which the patient responded. This case illustrates the susceptibility of patients with chronic underlying pulmonary disease to infections with non–serotype b strains of *H. influenzae*.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Specimen Collection and Transport

Because most *Haemophilus* infections in vaccinated individuals originate from the oropharynx and are restricted to the upper and lower respiratory tract, contamination of the specimen with oral secretions should be avoided. Direct needle aspiration should be used for the microbiological diagnosis of sinusitis or otitis, and sputum produced from the lower airways is used for the diagnosis of pneumonia. Culture of blood for patients with pneumonia may be useful but would be predictably negative in patients with upper respiratory infections. Both blood and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) should be collected from patients with the diagnosis of meningitis. Because there are approximately 10^7 bacteria per milliliter of CSF in patients with untreated meningitis, 1 to 2 ml of fluid is generally adequate for microscopy, culture, and antigen-detection tests. Microscopy and culture are less sensitive if the patient has been exposed to antibiotics before the CSF is collected. Blood cultures should also be collected for the diagnosis of epiglottitis, cellulitis, and arthritis. Specimens should not be collected from the posterior pharynx in patients with suspected epiglottitis because the procedure may stimulate coughing and obstruct the airway. Specimens for the detection of *H. ducreyi* should be collected with a moistened swab from the base or margin of the ulcer. Culture of pus collected by aspiration from an enlarged lymph node can be performed but is generally less sensitive than culture of the ulcer. The laboratory should be notified that *H. ducreyi* is suspected because special culture techniques must be used for recovery of the organism.

Microscopy

If microscopy is performed carefully, the detection of *Haemophilus* species in clinical specimens is both sensitive and specific. Gram-negative rods ranging in shape from coccobacilli to long, pleomorphic filaments can be detected in more than 80% of CSF specimens from patients with untreated *Haemophilus* meningitis (see Fig. 24.1). Microscopic examination of Gram-stained specimens is also useful for the rapid diagnosis of the organism in arthritis and lower respiratory tract disease.

Antigen Detection

The immunologic detection of *H. influenzae* antigen, specifically the PRP capsular antigen, is a rapid and sensitive way to diagnose *H. influenzae* type b disease. PRP can be detected with the particle agglutination test, which can detect less than 1 ng/ml of PRP in a clinical specimen. In this test, antibody-coated latex particles are mixed with the clinical specimen; agglutination occurs if PRP is present. Antigen can be detected in CSF and urine (in which the antigen is eliminated intact). However, this test has limited use because it can detect only *H. influenzae* type b, which is now uncommon in the United States and other countries with an established vaccine program. Other capsular serotypes and nonencapsulated strains do not give a positive reaction.

Culture

It is relatively easy to isolate *H. influenzae* from clinical specimens inoculated onto media supplemented with the appropriate growth factors. Chocolate agar is used in most

laboratories. However, if chocolate agar is overheated during preparation, V factor is destroyed, and *Haemophilus* species requiring this growth factor (e.g., *H. influenzae, H. aegyptius, H. parainfluenzae*) will not grow. The bacteria appear as 1- to 2-mm, smooth, opaque colonies after 24 hours of incubation. They can also be detected growing around colonies of *Staphylococcus aureus* on unheated blood agar (**satellite phenomenon** [Fig. 24.3]). The staphylococci provide the requisite growth factors by lysing the erythrocytes in the medium and releasing intracellular heme (X factor) and excreting NAD (V factor). The colonies of *H. influenzae* in these cultures are much smaller than they are on chocolate agar because the V factor inhibitors present in blood are not inactivated.

The growth of *Haemophilus* in blood cultures is generally delayed because most commercially prepared blood culture broths are not supplemented with optimum concentrations of X and V factors and inhibitors of V factor. Furthermore, the growth factors are released only when the blood cells lyse. Isolates of *H. influenzae* often grow better in anaerobically incubated blood cultures because, under these conditions, the organisms do not require X factor for growth.

H. aegyptius and *H. ducreyi* are fastidious and require specialized growth conditions. *H. aegyptius* grows best on chocolate agar supplemented with 1% IsoVitaleX (mixture of chemically defined supplements), with growth detected after incubation in a carbon dioxide atmosphere for 2 to 4 days. Culture for *H. ducreyi* is relatively insensitive (<85% of cultures yield organisms under optimal conditions) but reportedly is best on gonococcal (GC) agar supplemented with 1% to 2% hemoglobin, 5% fetal bovine serum, IsoVitaleX enrichment, and vancomycin (3 μg/ml). Cultures should be incubated at 33° C in 5% to 10% carbon dioxide for 7 days or more. Because the media and incubation conditions are not used for other bacterial cultures, success in recovering *H. ducreyi* requires that the microbiologist look specifically for this organism.

Identification

A presumptive identification of *H. influenzae* can be made by the Gram stain morphology and demonstration of a requirement for both X and V factors. Further subgrouping of *H. influenzae* can be done with biotyping, electrophoretic characterization of the membrane protein antigens, and analysis of the strain-specific nucleic acid sequences. Biochemical tests, nucleic acid analysis, or mass spectrometry is used to identify other species in this genus.

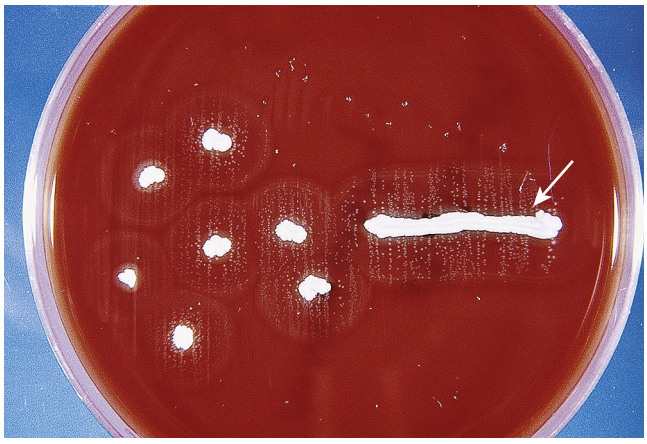


Fig. 24.3 Satellite phenomenon. *Staphylococcus aureus* excretes nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD, or V factor) into the medium, providing a growth factor required for *Haemophilus influenzae* (small colonies surrounding *S. aureus* colonies *[arrow]*).

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Patients with systemic *H. influenzae* infections require prompt antimicrobial therapy because the mortality rate in patients with untreated meningitis or epiglottitis approaches 100%. Serious infections are treated with **broad-spectrum cephalosporins.** Less severe infections, such as sinusitis and otitis, can be treated with amoxicillin (if susceptible; approximately 30% of strains are resistant), an active cephalosporin, azithromycin, doxycycline, or a fluoroquinolone. Most isolates of *H. ducreyi* are susceptible to **erythromycin,** which is the drug recommended for treatment.

The primary approach to preventing *H. influenzae* type b disease is through active immunization with purified capsular PRP. As discussed previously, the use of conjugated vaccines has been remarkably successful in reducing the incidences of *H. influenzae* type b disease and colonization. Currently, it is recommended that children receive two or three doses of vaccine against *H. influenzae* type b disease before the age of 6 months, followed by a booster dose at age 12 to 15 months.

Antibiotic chemoprophylaxis is used to eliminate the carriage of *H. influenzae* type b in children at high risk for disease (e.g., children <2 years in a family or day-care center in which systemic disease is documented). Rifampin prophylaxis has been used in these settings.

Aggregatibacter

Two members of this genus are important human pathogens: ***A. actinomycetemcomitans*** and ***A. aphrophilus*** (Table 24.3). Both species colonize the human mouth and can spread from the mouth into the blood and then stick to a previously damaged heart valve or artificial valve, leading to the development of endocarditis. **Endocarditis** caused by these bacteria is particularly difficult to diagnose because clinical signs and symptoms develop slowly **(subacute endocarditis)** and the bacteria grow slowly in blood cultures. (Clinical Case 24.2) Both species form adherent colonies that can be observed on the glass surface of blood culture bottles and on agar media. The treatment of choice for endocarditis caused by these organisms is a cephalosporin such as ceftriaxone.

Pasteurella

Pasteurella are small, facultatively anaerobic, fermentative coccobacilli (Fig. 24.4) commonly found as commensals in the oropharynx of healthy animals. Most human infections result from animal contact (e.g., animal bites, scratches, shared food). ***P. multocida*** (the most common isolate) and ***P. canis*** are human pathogens; the other *Pasteurella* species are rarely associated with human infections (Table 24.4). The following three general forms of disease are reported: (1) localized **cellulitis** and **lymphadenitis** that occur after an animal bite or scratch (*P. multocida* from contact with cats or dogs; *P. canis* from dogs); (2) an exacerbation of chronic **respiratory disease** in patients with underlying pulmonary dysfunction (presumably related to colonization of the patient's oropharynx followed by the aspiration of oral secretions); and (3) a **systemic infection in immunocompromised patients,** particularly those with underlying hepatic disease. Production of a polysaccharide capsule composed of hyaluronic acid is an important

TABLE 24.3 *Aggregatibacter* and *Pasteurella* Species Associated with Human Disease

Species	Primary Diseases	Frequency
Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans	Periodontitis, endocarditis, bite wound infections	Common
A. aphrophilus	Endocarditis, opportunistic infections	Uncommon
Pasteurella multocida	Bite wound infections, chronic pulmonary disease, bacteremia, meningitis	Common
P. canis	Bite wound infections	Uncommon

TABLE 24.4 *Pasteurella* Species Associated with Human Disease

Species	Primary Disease	Frequency
P. multocida	Bite wound infections, chronic pulmonary disease, bacteremia, meningitis	Common
P. canis	Bite wound infections	Uncommon
P. bettyae	Opportunistic infections (abscesses, bite wound infections, urogenital infections, bacteremia)	Rare
P. dagmatis	Bite wound infections	Rare
P. stomatis	Bite wound infections	Rare

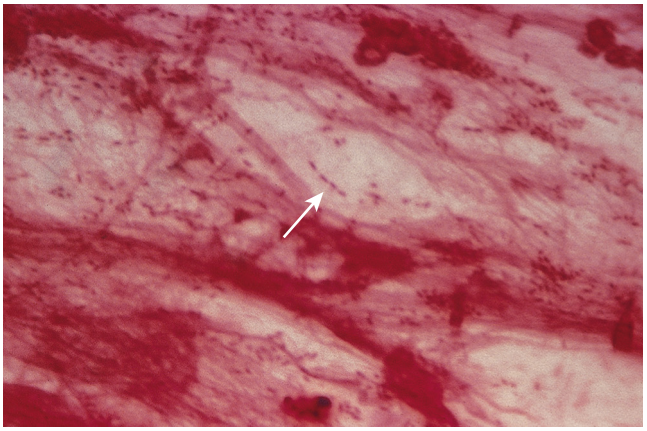


Fig. 24.4 *Pasteurella multocida* in respiratory specimen from patient with pneumonia *(arrow)*.

Clinical Case 24.2 **Endocarditis Caused by *Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans***

Steitz and associates (*Clin Infect Dis* 27:224–225, 1998) described a 54-year-old woman who was admitted to their hospital with a history of fever, night sweats, and fatigue. Physical examination revealed a tricuspid systolic murmur and splenomegaly, and echocardiography revealed vegetation on the tricuspid valve. Cultures of blood collected on admission were positive after 5 days of incubation for *Aggregatibacter (Actinobacillus) actinomycetemcomitans*. Her clinical history was incomplete because it was not known how chronic her course was; however, this case illustrates the slow growth of the organism in routine culture.

virulence factor in *Pasteurella* strains responsible for animal diseases and is likely to be important in human infections (Clinical Case 24.3).

P. multocida grows well on blood and chocolate agars but poorly on MacConkey agar and other media typically selective for gram-negative rods. After overnight incubation on blood agar, large buttery colonies (resulting from the polysaccharide capsule) with a characteristic musty odor caused by the production of indole are present. *P. multocida* is susceptible to a variety of antibiotics. **Penicillin** is the antibiotic of choice, and expanded-spectrum cephalosporins, macrolides, tetracyclines, or fluoroquinolones are acceptable alternatives. Semisynthetic penicillins (e.g., oxacillin), first-generation cephalosporins, and aminoglycosides have poor activity.

Clinical Case 24.3 **Fatal *Pasteurella multocida* Infection**

Chang and associates (*Scan J Infect Dis* 39:167–192, 2007) described a fatal case of *Pasteurella multocida* bacteremia and necrotizing fasciitis. The 58-year-old man had a history of chronic renal insufficiency, gouty arthritis, and Cushing syndrome treated with steroids. On admission to the hospital, his left hand was erythematous, warm, and tender with reddish to purplish macules over the surface. Over a 2-day period, bullae developed and extended rapidly to the left arm, left calf, and right foot, and the patient had systemic signs of shock and gastrointestinal bleeding. Blood cultures collected at the time of admission were positive for *P. multocida*. Despite aggressive antibiotic and surgical treatment, the lesions progressed rapidly and the patient eventually expired. A careful history at the time of admission revealed that the patient allowed his pet dog to lick his open wounds. This was the likely source of the bacteria, and the steroid treatments allowed the organism to invade the wound and rapidly spread in the tissues.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Briere, E.C., Rubin, L., Moro, P.L., et al., 2014. Prevention and control of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. MMWR Recomm. Rep. 63 (1–14).

Bruce, M.G., Zulz, T., DeByle, C., et al., 2013. *Haemophilus influenza* serotype A invasive disease, Alaska, USA, 1983–2011. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 19, 932–937.

Davis, S., Feikin, D., Johnson, H., 2013. The effect of *Haemophilus influenzae* type B and pneumococcal conjugate vaccines on childhood meningitis mortality: a systematic review. BMC Public Health 13, 3–21.

O'Loughlin, R.E., Edmond, K., Mangtani, P., et al., 2010. Methodology and measurement of the effectiveness of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b vaccine: systematic review. Vaccine 28, 6128–6136.

Peltola, H., 2000. Worldwide *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease at the beginning of the 21st century: global analysis of the disease burden 25 years after the use of the polysaccharide vaccine and a decade after the advent of conjugates. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 13, 302–317.

Soeters, H., Blain, A., Pondo, T., et al., 2018. Current epidemiology and trends in invasive Haemophilus influenza disease – United States, 2009-2015. Clin. Infect. Dis. 67, 881–889.

Wang, C.Y., Wang, H.C., Li, J.M., et al., 2010. Invasive infections of *Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans*. J. Microbiol. Immunol. Infect. 43, 491–497.

Case Study and Questions

A 78-year-old man confined to a nursing home awoke with a severe headache and stiff neck. Because he had a high fever and signs of meningitis, the nursing home staff took him to a local emergency department. The CSF specimen was cloudy. Analysis revealed 400 white blood cells/mm^3 (95% polymorphonuclear neutrophils), a protein concentration of 75 mg/dl, and a glucose concentration of 20 mg/dl. Small gram-negative rods were seen on Gram stain of the CSF, and cultures of CSF and blood were positive for *H. influenzae.*

1. Discuss the epidemiology of *H. influenzae* meningitis, and compare it with the epidemiology of meningitis caused by *S. pneumoniae* and *Neisseria* meningitidis.

2. Compare the biology of the *H. influenzae* strain that is likely to be the cause of this patient's disease with that of the strains that historically caused pediatric diseases (before vaccination).

3. What other diseases does this organism cause? What other *Haemophilus* species cause disease, and what are the diseases?

4. Why is chocolate agar needed for the isolation of *Haemophilus* organisms?

5. What diseases are caused by *Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans*? What is the source of this organism?

6. What diseases are caused by *P. multocida*? What is the source of this organism?

25 Enterobacteriaceae

This chapter covers the largest family of clinically important bacteria. This is a heterogeneous collection of organisms responsible for virtually all types of infections that would be seen in a clinical practice.

1. Many of the members of the Enterobacteriaceae family are part of the normal population of bacteria that colonize the human body. Give three examples of organisms that are normal flora in healthy individuals and an example of disease caused by each organism. What condition leads to disease with each?
2. Some Enterobacteriaceae are normally found in animals but cause disease when humans are exposed. Give three examples and the diseases they cause.
3. Some Enterobacteriaceae are strict human pathogens. Give two examples and the diseases they cause.

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

ESCHERICHIA COLI

Trigger Words

Gastroenteritis, EAEC, EIEC, EPEC, ETEC, STEC, neonatal meningitis, urinary tract infection

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-negative, facultative anaerobic rods
- Fermenter; oxidase negative
- Lipopolysaccharide consists of outer somatic O polysaccharide, core polysaccharide (common antigen), and lipid A (endotoxin)
- Virulence: refer to Box 25.2 and Table 25.2

Epidemiology

- Most common aerobic gram-negative rods in the gastrointestinal tract
- Most infections are endogenous (patient's microbial flora), although strains causing gastroenteritis are generally acquired exogenously

Diseases

- At least five different pathogenic groups cause gastroenteritis: EAEC, EIEC, EPEC, ETEC, and STEC
- Most cause diseases in developing countries, although STEC is an important cause of hemorrhagic colitis and hemolytic uremic syndrome in the United States
- Extraintestinal disease includes bacteremia, neonatal meningitis, urinary tract infections, and intraabdominal infections

Diagnosis

- Organisms grow rapidly on most culture media
- Enteric multiplex NAATs considered gold standard diagnostic

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Enteric pathogens are treated symptomatically unless disseminated disease occurs
- Antibiotic therapy is guided by in vitro susceptibility tests; increased resistance to penicillins and cephalosporins mediated by ESBLs
- Appropriate infection-control practices are used to reduce the risk of nosocomial infections (e.g., restricting use of antibiotics, avoiding unnecessary use of urinary tract catheters)
- Maintenance of high hygienic standards to reduce the risk of exposure to gastroenteritis strains
- Proper cooking of beef products to reduce risk of STEC infections

SALMONELLA

Trigger Words

Gastroenteritis, enteric fever, antibiotic treatment

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-negative, facultative anaerobic rods
- Fermenter; oxidase negative
- Lipopolysaccharide consists of outer somatic O polysaccharide, core polysaccharide (common antigen), and lipid A (endotoxin)
- More than 2500 O serotypes
- Virulence: refer to Box 25.2; tolerant of acids in phagocytic vesicles
- Can survive in macrophages and spread from the intestine to other body sites

Epidemiology

- Most infections are acquired by eating contaminated food products (poultry, eggs, and dairy products are the most common sources of infection)
- Direct fecal-oral spread in children
- *Salmonella* Typhi and *Salmonella* Paratyphi are strict human pathogens (no other reservoirs); these infections are passed person to person; asymptomatic long-term colonization occurs commonly
- Individuals at risk for infection include those who eat improperly cooked poultry or eggs, patients with reduced gastric acid levels, and immunocompromised patients
- Infections occur worldwide, particularly in the warm months of the year

Diseases

- Diseases: enteritis (fever, nausea, vomiting, bloody or nonbloody diarrhea, abdominal cramps); enteric fever (typhoid fever, paratyphoid fever); bacteremia (most commonly seen with *Salmonella* serotype Typhi, *Salmonella* serotype Paratyphi, *Salmonella* serotype Choleraesuis); asymptomatic colonization (primarily with *Salmonella* Typhi and *Salmonella* Paratyphi)

Diagnosis

- Isolation from stool specimens requires use of selective media
- Enteric multiplex NAATs considered gold standard diagnostic

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Antibiotic treatment not recommended for enteritis because this may prolong the duration of disease
- Infections with *Salmonella* Typhi and *Salmonella* Paratyphi or disseminated infections with other organisms should be treated with an effective antibiotic (selected by in vitro susceptibility tests); fluoroquinolones (e.g., ciprofloxacin), chloramphenicol, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, or a broad-spectrum cephalosporin may be used
- Most infections can be controlled by proper preparation of poultry and eggs (completely cooked) and avoidance of contamination of other foods with uncooked poultry products
- Carriers of *Salmonella* Typhi and *Salmonella* Paratyphi should be identified and treated
- Vaccination against *Salmonella* Typhi can reduce the risk of disease for travelers into endemic areas

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

SHIGELLA

Trigger Words

Gastroenteritis, dysentery, Shiga toxin

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-negative, facultatively anaerobic rods
- Fermenter; oxidase negative
- Lipopolysaccharide consists of somatic O polysaccharide, core polysaccharide (common antigen), and lipid A (endotoxin)
- Four species recognized: *S. sonnei* responsible for most infections in developed countries, *S. flexneri* for infections in developing countries, *S. dysenteriae* for the most severe infections, and *S. boydii* not commonly isolated
- Virulence: refer to Box 25.2; exotoxin (Shiga toxin) produced by *S. dysenteriae* disrupts protein synthesis and produces endothelial damage

Epidemiology

- Humans are the only reservoir for these bacteria
- Disease spread person to person by fecal-oral route
- Patients at highest risk for disease are young children in day-care centers, nurseries, and custodial institutions; siblings and parents of these children; male homosexuals
- Relatively few organisms can produce disease (highly infectious)
- Disease occurs worldwide with no seasonal incidence (consistent with person-to-person spread involving a low inoculum)

Diseases

- Disease: most common form of disease is gastroenteritis (shigellosis), an initial watery diarrhea progressing within 1 to 2 days to abdominal cramps and tenesmus (with or without bloody stools); severe form of disease is caused by *S. dysenteriae* (bacterial dysentery); asymptomatic carriage develops in a small number of patients (reservoir for future infections)

Diagnosis

- Isolation from stool specimens requires use of selective media
- Enteric multiplex NAATs considered gold standard diagnostic

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Antibiotic therapy shortens the course of symptomatic disease and fecal shedding
- Treatment should be guided by in vitro susceptibility tests
- Empirical therapy can be initiated with a fluoroquinolone or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
- Appropriate infection control measures should be instituted to prevent spread of the organism, including hand washing and proper disposal of soiled linens

YERSINIA

Trigger Words

Bubonic plague, pneumonic plague, gastroenteritis, transfusion sepsis

Biology and Virulence

- Gram-negative, facultatively anaerobic rods
- Fermenter; oxidase negative
- Lipopolysaccharide consists of somatic O polysaccharide, core polysaccharide (common antigen), and lipid A (endotoxin)
- *Y. pestis* is covered with a protein capsule
- Some species (e.g., *Y. enterocolitica*) can grow at cold temperatures (e.g., can grow to high numbers in contaminated refrigerated food or blood products)
- Virulence: refer to Box 25.2; capsule on *Y. pestis* is antiphagocytic; *Y. pestis* is resistant to serum killing; *Yersinia* with genes for adherence, cytotoxic activity, inhibition of phagocytic migration and engulfment, and inhibition of platelet aggregation

Epidemiology

- *Y. pestis* is a zoonotic infection, with humans the accidental host; natural reservoirs include rats, squirrels, rabbits, and domestic animals
- Disease is spread by flea bites or direct contact with infected tissues or person to person by inhalation of infectious aerosols from a patient with pulmonary disease
- Other *Yersinia* infections are spread through exposure to contaminated food products or blood products *(Y. enterocolitica)*
- Colonization with other *Yersinia* species can occur

Diseases

Y. pestis causes bubonic plague (most common) and pulmonary plague, both having a high mortality rate; other *Yersinia* species cause gastroenteritis (acute watery diarrhea or chronic diarrhea) and transfusion-related sepsis; enteric disease in children may manifest as enlarged mesenteric lymph nodes and mimic acute appendicitis

Diagnosis

- Organisms grow on most culture media; prolonged storage at 4° C can selectively enhance isolation

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- *Y. pestis* infections are treated with streptomycin; tetracyclines, chloramphenicol, or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole can be administered as alternative therapy
- Enteric infections with other *Yersinia* species are usually self-limited; if antibiotic therapy is indicated, most organisms are susceptible to broad-spectrum cephalosporins, aminoglycosides, chloramphenicol, tetracyclines, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
- Plague is controlled by reduction of the rodent population and vaccination of individuals at risk
- Other *Yersinia* infections are controlled by proper preparation of food products

EAEC, Enteroaggregative *E. coli*; *EIEC,* enteroinvasive *E. coli*; *EPEC,* enteropathogenic *E. coli*; ESBL, extended-spectrum β-lactamase; *ETEC,* enterotoxigenic *E. coli*; *NAAT,* nucleic acid amplification test; *STEC,* Shiga toxin–producing *E. coli*.

The family Enterobacteriaceae is the largest, most heterogeneous collection of medically important gram-negative rods. More than 50 genera and hundreds of species and subspecies have been described (Table 25.1). These genera have been classified based on biochemical properties, antigenic structure, and molecular analysis of their genomes by gene sequencing and protein composition by mass spectrometry. Despite the complexity of this family, most human infections are caused by relatively few genera and species (Box 25.1).

Enterobacteriaceae are **ubiquitous** organisms found worldwide in soil, water, and vegetation and are part of the normal intestinal flora of most animals, including humans. These bacteria cause a variety of human diseases, including one-quarter to one-third of all bacteremias, more than 70% of urinary tract infections (UTIs), and many intestinal infections. Some organisms (e.g., *Salmonella* serotype Typhi, *Shigella* species, *Yersinia pestis*) are **always associated with human disease** when present in clinical specimens, whereas others (e.g., *Escherichia coli, Klebsiella pneumoniae, Proteus mirabilis*) are members of the normal commensal flora that can cause **opportunistic infections.** A third group of Enterobacteriaceae exists: those normally commensal organisms that become pathogenic when they acquire virulence genes present on plasmids, bacteriophages, or pathogenicity

TABLE 25.1 Important Enterobacteriaceae

Organism	Historical Derivation
Escherichia coli	*escherichia,* named after Escherich; *coli,* of the colon
Salmonella enterica	*salmonella,* named after Salmon; *enteron*, gut; pertaining to the gut
Salmonella Typhi	*typhi,* of typhoid; disease is typhoid fever
Salmonella Paratyphi	*paratyphi,* of a typhoid-like infection
Salmonella Choleraesuis	*cholera,* cholera; *sus,* hog; cholera of a hog
Salmonella Typhimurium	*typhi,* of typhoid; *murium,* of mice; *typhimurium,* typhoid of mice
Salmonella Enteritidis	*enteris,* gut; *idis,* inflammation
Shigella dysenteriae	*shigella,* named after Shiga; *dysenteriae,* dysentery
S. flexneri	*flexneri,* named after Flexner
S. boydii	*boydii,* named after Boyd
S. sonnei	*sonnei,* named after Sonne
Yersinia pestis	*yersinia,* named after Yersin; *pestis,* plague
Y. enterocolitica	*enterocolitica,* pertaining to the intestine and colon
Y. pseudotuberculosis	*tuberculum,* a small swelling; *pseudotuberculosis,* false swelling
Klebsiella pneumoniae	*klebsiella,* named after Klebs; *pneumoniae,* inflammation of the lungs
K. oxytoca	*oxus,* acid; *tokos,* producing; acid producing (refers to biochemical properties)
Proteus mirabilis	*proteus,* a god able to change himself into different shapes; *mirabilis,* surprising; refers to pleomorphic colony forms
Citrobacter freundii	*citrus,* lemon; *bacter,* a rod; citrate-utilizing rod; *freundii,* named after Freund
Citrobacter koseri	*koseri,* named after Koser
E. Enterobacter cloacae	enteron, intestine; bacter, a small rod; *cloacae,* of a sewer; originally isolated in sewage
Serratia marcescens	*serratia,* named after Serrati; *marcescens,* becoming weak, fading away; originally believed not virulent

BOX 25.1 Common Medically Important Enterobacteriaceae

Citrobacter freundii, C. koseri
Enterobacter cloacae
Escherichia coli
Klebsiella pneumoniae, K. oxytoca
Morganella morganii
Proteus mirabilis
Salmonella serotype Typhi, Salmonella nontyphoidal serotypes
Serratia marcescens
Shigella sonnei, S. flexneri
Yersinia pestis, Y. enterocolitica, Y. pseudotuberculosis

islands (e.g., *E. coli*). Infections with the Enterobacteriaceae can originate from an animal reservoir (e.g., most *Salmonella* species, *Yersinia* species), from a human carrier (e.g., *Shigella* species, *Salmonella* Typhi), or through the endogenous spread of organisms (e.g., spread of *E. coli* from the intestine to the peritoneal cavity after perforation of the intestine).

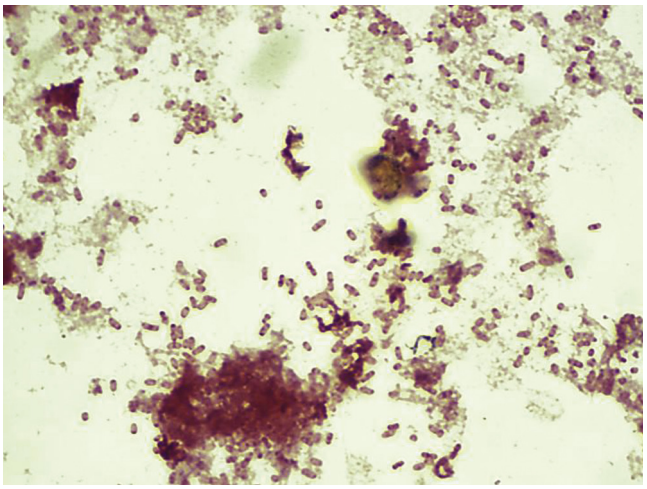


Fig. 25.1 Gram stain of *Salmonella* Typhi from a positive blood culture. Note the intense staining at the ends of the bacteria. This "bipolar staining" is characteristic of the Enterobacteriaceae.

General Properties

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Members of the family Enterobacteriaceae are moderate-sized (0.3 to 1.0 × 1.0 to 6.0 μm), non–spore-forming, gram-negative rods (Fig. 25.1) that share a common antigen **(enterobacterial common antigen).** All members can grow rapidly, aerobically and anaerobically **(facultative anaerobes),** on a variety of nonselective (e.g., blood agar) and selective (e.g., MacConkey agar) media. The Enterobacteriaceae have simple nutritional requirements, ferment glucose, reduce nitrate, and are catalase positive and oxidase negative. The absence of cytochrome oxidase activity is an important characteristic, because it can be measured rapidly with a simple test and is used to distinguish the Enterobacteriaceae from many other fermentative (e.g., *Vibrio*) and nonfermentative (e.g., *Pseudomonas*) gram-negative rods.

The appearance of the bacteria on culture media is used to differentiate common members of the Enterobacteriaceae. For example, **fermentation of lactose** (detected by color changes in lactose-containing media such as the commonly used MacConkey agar) is used to differentiate some enteric pathogens that do not ferment lactose or do so slowly (e.g., *Salmonella, Shigella,* and *Yersinia* spp., which are colorless colonies on MacConkey agar) from lactose-fermenting species (e.g., *Escherichia, Klebsiella, Enterobacter, Citrobacter,* and *Serratia,* which are pink-purple colonies on MacConkey agar). **Resistance to bile salts** in some selective media has also been used to separate enteric pathogens (e.g., *Shigella, Salmonella*) from commensal organisms that are inhibited by bile salts (e.g., gram-positive and some gram-negative bacteria present in the gastrointestinal [GI] tract). In this way, use of culture media that assess lactose fermentation and resistance to bile salts is a rapid screening test for enteric pathogens that would be otherwise difficult

to detect in diarrheal stool specimens, in which many different organisms may be present. Some Enterobacteriaceae such as *Klebsiella* are also characteristically mucoid (wet, heaped, viscous colonies with prominent **capsules,** whereas a loose-fitting, diffusible slime layer surrounds other strains.

The heat-stable **lipopolysaccharide (LPS)** is the major cell wall antigen and consists of three components: the outermost somatic **O polysaccharide,** a **core polysaccharide** common to all Enterobacteriaceae (enterobacterial common antigen mentioned earlier), and **lipid A** (Fig. 25.2). The core polysaccharide is important for classifying an organism as a member of the Enterobacteriaceae; the O polysaccharide is important for the epidemiologic classification of strains within a species; and the lipid A component of LPS is responsible for endotoxin activity, which is an important virulence factor.

The epidemiologic (serologic) classification of the Enterobacteriaceae is based on three major groups of antigens: **somatic O polysaccharides, K antigens** in the capsule (type-specific polysaccharides), and **H proteins** in the bacterial flagella. Strain-specific O antigens are present in each genus and species, although cross-reactions between closely related genera are common (e.g., *Salmonella* with *Citrobacter, Escherichia* with *Shigella*). The K antigens are not commonly used for strain typing, but they are important because they may interfere with detection of the O antigens. The H antigens are heat-labile flagellin proteins. Detection of these various antigens has important clinical significance beyond epidemiologic investigations: some pathogenic species of bacteria are associated with specific O and H serotypes (e.g., *E. coli* O157:H7 is associated with diarrhea and hemorrhagic colitis).

Most Enterobacteriaceae are motile, with the exception of some common genera (e.g., *Klebsiella, Shigella, Yersinia*). The motile strains are coated with **flagella** (peritrichous). Many Enterobacteriaceae also possess fimbriae (also referred to as *pili*), which have been subdivided into two general classes:

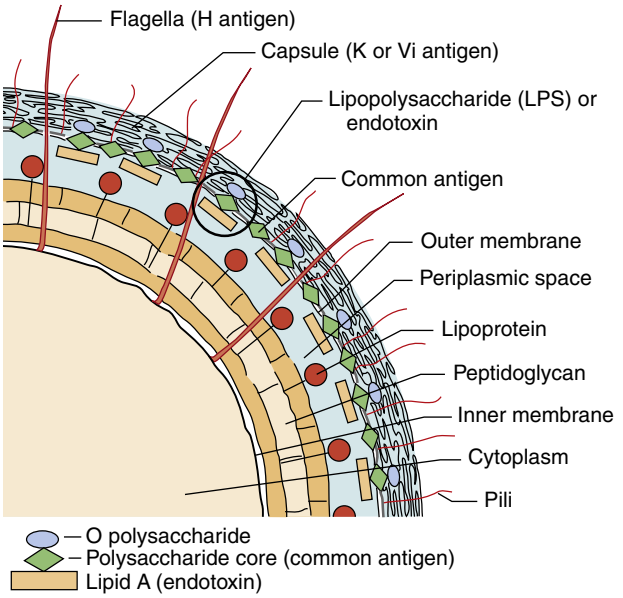


Fig. 25.2 Antigenic structure of Enterobacteriaceae cell wall.

chromosomally mediated common fimbriae and plasmid-encoded sex pili. The **common fimbriae** are important for the ability of bacteria to adhere to specific host cell receptors, whereas the **sex** or **conjugative pili** facilitate genetic transfer between bacteria.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Numerous virulence factors have been identified in the members of the family Enterobacteriaceae. Some are common to all genera (Box 25.2), and others are unique to specific virulent strains.

Endotoxin

Endotoxin is a virulence factor shared among aerobic and some anaerobic gram-negative bacteria. The activity of this toxin depends on the **lipid A** component of LPS, which is released at cell lysis. Many of the systemic manifestations of gram-negative bacterial infections are initiated by endotoxin: activation of complement, release of cytokines, leukocytosis, thrombocytopenia, disseminated intravascular coagulation, fever, decreased peripheral circulation, shock, and death.

Capsule

Encapsulated Enterobacteriaceae are protected from phagocytosis by the hydrophilic capsular antigens, which repel the hydrophobic phagocytic cell surface. These antigens interfere with the binding of antibodies to the bacteria and are poor immunogens or activators of complement. The protective role of the capsule is diminished, however, if the patient develops specific anticapsular antibodies.

Antigenic Phase Variation

The expression of the somatic O antigens, capsular K antigens, and flagellar H antigens is under the genetic control of the organism. Each of these antigens can be alternately expressed or not expressed (phase variation), which is a feature that protects the bacteria from antibody-mediated cell death.

Type III Secretion Systems

A variety of bacteria (e.g., *Yersinia, Salmonella, Shigella,* enteropathogenic *Escherichia, Pseudomonas, Chlamydia*) have a common effector system for delivering their virulence factors into targeted eukaryotic cells. Think of the **type III secretion system** as a molecular syringe consisting of approximately 20 proteins that facilitate transfer of bacterial virulence factors into the targeted host cells. Although

BOX 25.2 Common Virulence Factors Associated with Enterobacteriaceae

Endotoxin
Capsule
Antigenic phase variation
Type III secretion systems
Sequestration of growth factors
Resistance to serum killing
Antimicrobial resistance

the virulence factors and their effects differ among the various gram-negative rods, the general mechanism by which the virulence factors are introduced is the same. In the absence of the type III secretion system, the bacteria have diminished virulence.

Sequestration of Growth Factors

Nutrients are provided to the organisms in enriched culture media, but the bacteria must become nutritional scavengers when growing in vivo. Iron is an important growth factor required by bacteria, but it is bound in **heme proteins** (e.g., hemoglobin, myoglobin) or in **iron-chelating proteins** (e.g., transferrin, lactoferrin). The bacteria counteract the binding by producing their own competitive **siderophores** or iron-chelating compounds (e.g., **enterobactin, aerobactin**). Iron can also be released from host cells by hemolysins produced by the bacteria.

Resistance to Serum Killing

Whereas many bacteria can be rapidly cleared from blood, virulent organisms capable of producing systemic infections are often resistant to serum killing. The bacterial capsule can protect the organism from serum killing and other factors that prevent the binding of complement components to the bacteria and subsequent complement-mediated clearance.

Antimicrobial Resistance

As rapidly as new antibiotics are introduced, organisms can develop resistance to them. This resistance can be encoded on transferable plasmids and exchanged among species, genera, and even families of bacteria. In recent years, acquisition of resistance genes has created some Enterobacteriaceae, particularly *Klebsiella*, resistant to all classes of antibiotics.

Escherichia coli

E. coli is the most common and important member of the genus *Escherichia*. This organism is associated with a variety of diseases, including gastroenteritis and extraintestinal infections such as UTIs, meningitis, and sepsis. A multitude of strains are capable of causing disease, with some serotypes associated with greater virulence (e.g., *E. coli* O157 is the most common cause of hemorrhagic colitis and hemolytic uremic syndrome [HUS]).

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

E. coli possesses a broad range of virulence factors (Table 25.2). In addition to the general factors possessed by all members of the family Enterobacteriaceae, *Escherichia* strains possess specialized virulence factors that can be placed into two general categories: adhesins and exotoxins. The function of these factors will be discussed in greater detail in the following sections.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Large numbers of *E. coli* are present in the GI tract. Although these organisms can be opportunistic pathogens when the intestines are perforated and the bacteria enter the peritoneal cavity, most *E. coli* that cause GI and extraintestinal disease do so because they have acquired specific virulence factors encoded on plasmids or in bacteriophage deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). The effectiveness of *E. coli* as a pathogen is illustrated by the fact that the bacteria are (1) the most common gram-negative rods isolated from patients with sepsis (Fig. 25.3), (2) responsible for causing more than 80% of all community-acquired UTIs and many hospital-acquired infections, and (3) a prominent cause of gastroenteritis. Most infections (with the exception of gastroenteritis and neonatal meningitis) are endogenous; that is, the *E. coli* that are part of the patient's normal microbial flora are able to establish infection when the patient's defenses are compromised (e.g., through trauma or immune suppression).

TABLE 25.2 Specialized Virulence Factors Associated with *Escherichia coli*

Bacteria	Adhesins	Exotoxins
ETEC	Colonization factor antigens (CFA/I, CFA/II, CFA/III)	Heat-labile toxin (LT-1); heat-stable toxin (STa)
EPEC	BFP; intimin	—
EAEC	Aggregative adherence fimbriae (AAF/I, AAF/II, AAF/III)	Enteroaggregative heat-stable toxin; plasmid-encoded toxin
STEC	BFP; intimin	Shiga toxins (Stx1, Stx2)
EIEC	Invasive plasmid antigen	Hemolysin (HlyA)
Uropathogens	P pili; Dr fimbriae	—

BFP, Bundle-forming pili; *EAEC*, enteroaggregative *E. coli*; *EIEC*, enteroinvasive *E. coli*; *EPEC*, enteropathogenic *E. coli*; *ETEC*, enterotoxigenic *E. coli*; *STEC*, Shiga toxin–producing *E. coli*.

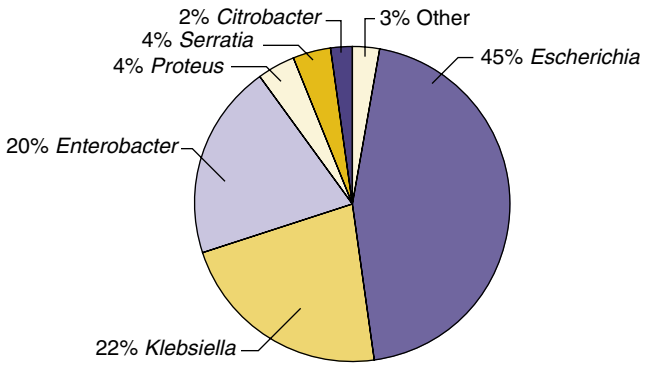


Fig. 25.3 Incidence of Enterobacteriaceae associated with bacteremia. (Data courtesy Barnes-Jewish Hospital, St Louis, MO.)

CLINICAL DISEASES

Gastroenteritis

The strains of *E. coli* that cause gastroenteritis are subdivided into a number of groups. Five of these groups will be the focus of this chapter: enterotoxigenic, enteropathogenic, enteroaggregative, Shiga toxin–producing, and enteroinvasive *E. coli* (EIEC) (Table 25.3). The first three groups primarily cause a secretory diarrhea involving the small intestine, and the last two groups primarily involve the large intestine.

TABLE 25.3 Gastroenteritis Caused by *Escherichia coli*

Organism	Site of Action	Disease	Pathogenesis	Diagnosis
ETEC	Small intestine	Traveler's diarrhea; infant diarrhea in developing countries; watery diarrhea, vomiting, cramps, nausea, low-grade fever	Plasmid-mediated, ST and LT enterotoxins that stimulate hypersecretion of fluids and electrolytes	Most U.S. outbreaks caused by ST-producing strains; commercial immunoassays available for detecting ST in clinical specimens and cultures; PCR assays used with clinical specimens
EPEC	Small intestine	Infant diarrhea in developing countries; watery diarrhea and vomiting, nonbloody stools; believed to be rare in United States	Plasmid-mediated A/E histopathology, with disruption of normal microvillus structure resulting in malabsorption and diarrhea	Characteristic adherence to HEp-2 or HeLa cells; probes and amplification assays developed for the plasmid-encoded bundle-forming pili and gene targets on the "locus of enterocyte effacement" pathogenicity island
EAEC	Small intestine	Infant diarrhea in developing and probably developed countries; traveler's diarrhea; persistent watery diarrhea with vomiting, dehydration, and low-grade fever	Plasmid-mediated aggregative adherence of rods ("stacked bricks") with shortening of microvilli, mononuclear infiltration, and hemorrhage; decreased fluid absorption	Characteristic adherence to HEp-2 cells; DNA probe and amplification assays developed for conserved plasmid
STEC	Large intestine	Initial watery diarrhea followed by grossly bloody diarrhea (hemorrhagic colitis) with abdominal cramps; little or no fever; may progress to hemolytic uremic syndrome	STEC evolved from EPEC; A/E lesions with destruction of intestinal microvilli, resulting in decreased absorption; pathology mediated by cytotoxic Shiga toxins (Stx1, Stx2), which disrupt protein synthesis	Screen for O157:H7 with sorbitol-MacConkey agar; confirm by serotyping; immunoassays (ELISA, latex agglutination) for detection of the Stx toxins in stool specimens and cultured bacteria; DNA amplification assays developed for Stx genes
EIEC	Large intestine	Rare in developing and developed countries; fever, cramping, watery diarrhea; may progress to dysentery with scant bloody stools	Plasmid-mediated invasion and destruction of epithelial cells lining colon	Sereny (guinea pig keratoconjunctivitis) test; plaque assay in HeLa cells; probes and amplification assays for genes regulating invasion (cannot discriminate between EIEC and *Shigella*)

A/E, Attachment/effacement; *DNA,* deoxyribonucleic acid; *EAEC,* enteroaggregative *E. coli*; *EIEC,* enteroinvasive *E. coli*; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *EPEC,* enteropathogenic *E. coli*; *ETEC,* enterotoxigenic *E. coli*; *LT,* labile toxin; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *ST,* stable toxin; *STEC,* Shiga toxin–producing *E. coli*.

Enterotoxigenic *E. coli*

Enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC) is one of the most common causes of bacterial diarrheal disease in developing countries (estimated 840 million cases annually) and in an estimated 30% of travelers to these countries with diarrheal disease. Because the inoculum for disease is high, infections are primarily **acquired through consumption of fecally contaminated food or water.** Person-to-person spread does not occur. **Secretory diarrhea** caused by ETEC develops after a 1- to 2-day incubation period and persists for an average of 3 to 5 days. The symptoms (watery, nonbloody diarrhea and abdominal cramps; less commonly nausea and vomiting) are similar to those of cholera but are usually milder, although mortality is high in malnourished individuals and in those with underlying diseases, particularly children and the elderly.

Disease requires bacterial attachment to the small bowel epithelium by bacterial surface proteins (colonization factors [CFs]) and elaboration of heat-stable and heat-labile enterotoxins. The genes for the CFs and enterotoxins are encoded on a transmissible plasmid. The CFs are subdivided into families (CFA/I, CFA/II, and CFA/IV are the most common) and further subdivided by their antigenic properties (coli surface antigens [CSs]). More than 20 CS CFs have been described, and host specificity is defined by their affinity for receptors on host cells.

ETEC produce two classes of enterotoxins: **heat-stable toxins (STa and STb)** and **heat-labile toxins (LT-I, LT-II).** Heat-stable toxin STa but not STb is associated with human disease; it is found in 75% to 80% of ETEC, either alone or associated with LT, and is responsible more commonly for severe disease than LT-only ETEC strains. STa is a small monomeric peptide that binds to the transmembrane guanylate cyclase C receptor on the intestinal epithelium, leading to an **increase in cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP)** and subsequent hypersecretion of fluids well as inhibition of fluid absorption. Of the heat-labile toxins, LT-I is more commonly associated with human disease. LT-I is functionally and structurally similar to cholera toxin (80% homology) and consists of one A subunit and five identical B subunits. The B subunits bind to the same receptor as cholera toxin (GM_1 gangliosides) and other surface glycoproteins on epithelial cells in the small intestine. After endocytosis, the A subunit moves across the membrane of the vacuole and interacts with a membrane protein (Gs) that regulates adenylate cyclase. The net effect of this interaction is an **increase in cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP)** levels, resulting in enhanced secretion of chloride and decreased absorption of sodium and chloride. These changes are manifested in a watery diarrhea. Exposure to the toxin also stimulates prostaglandin secretion and production of inflammatory cytokines, resulting in further fluid loss.

Enteropathogenic *E. coli*. Two groups of *E. coli* responsible for enteric disease (enteropathogenic *E. coli* [EPEC] and some Shiga toxin–producing *E. coli* [STEC]) possess a

cluster of virulence genes located on a chromosomal pathogenicity island called the **locus of enterocyte effacement (LEE).** Bacteria in the heterogeneous EPEC group were the first *E. coli* strains associated with outbreaks of diarrheal disease reported in the 1940s and 1950s. They were originally characterized by the specific serotypes responsible for each outbreak but are now defined by the (1) presence of LEE and (2) absence of Shiga toxin. EPEC are further subdivided into typical and atypical strains based on the presence or absence of the ***E. coli* adherence factor (EAF) plasmid**. Sporadic disease and outbreaks are relatively uncommon in developed countries and are now reported only sporadically in impoverished countries, with disease primarily in infants and most commonly associated with the atypical strains. Disease is transmitted by fecal-oral exposure to contaminated surfaces or food products. Humans are the only source of typical strains, whereas both humans and a variety of animal hosts are reservoirs of atypical strains.

Infection is initiated by bacterial attachment to epithelial cells of the small intestine, with subsequent effacement (destruction) of the microvillus **(attachment/effacement [A/E] histopathology).** The initial aggregation of typical EPEC leading to the formation of microcolonies on the epithelial cell surface is mediated by plasmid-encoded **bundle-forming pili (BFP);** however, this plasmid is not present in atypical EPEC. The subsequent stages of attachment are regulated by genes encoded on the **LEE pathogenicity island.** This island of more than 40 genes is responsible for attachment and destruction of the host cell surface. After the loose attachment, active secretion of bacterial proteins into the host epithelial cell occurs by the bacterial type III secretion system. One protein, **translocated intimin receptor (Tir),** is inserted into the epithelial cell membrane and functions as a receptor for an outer membrane bacterial adhesin, **intimin.** Binding of intimin to Tir results in polymerization of actin, accumulation of cytoskeletal elements beneath the attached bacteria, loss of cell-surface integrity, and eventual cell death.

Disease occurs primarily in children younger than 2 years and is characterized by **watery diarrhea** that may be severe and protracted and is often accompanied by fever and vomiting. The onset of disease may be as rapid as a few hours after ingestion of EPEC, and although most infections resolve after a few days, persistent diarrhea requiring hospitalization can occur.

Enteroaggregative *E. coli*. Enteroaggregative *E. coli* (EAEC) are a heterogeneous collection of strains characterized by their autoagglutination in a "stacked-brick" arrangement over the epithelium of the small intestine and, in some cases, the colon. The prevalence of disease caused by EAEC is unclear because a single molecular marker for these bacteria has not been discovered. Genes encoding adhesins, toxins including Shiga toxin, and other virulence proteins are highly variable among EAEC. However, comprehensive analyses of outbreaks in both developed and developing countries have demonstrated these bacteria are common. Outbreaks of gastroenteritis caused by EAEC have also been reported in the United States, Europe, and Japan and are likely an important cause of childhood diarrhea in developed countries. These are one of the few bacteria associated with **chronic diarrhea and growth retardation** in children. Characteristically, after adherence to the epithelium, cytokine release is stimulated, which results in neutrophil recruitment and progression to an inflammatory diarrhea. Disease is characterized by a watery secretory diarrhea, often with inflammatory cells and accompanied by fever, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. This process can either be acute or can progress to a persistent diarrhea, particularly in children and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients.

Shiga Toxin–Producing *E. coli*. Nomenclature for this group of *E. coli* is confusing, referring to them as **STEC**, verocytotoxin-producing *E. coli* (VTEC), and enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC). To provide some clarity, consider VTEC an outdated name and EHEC a subset of STEC. All members of this group are defined by the presence of Shiga toxin 1 (Stx1) or 2 (Stx2). Some but not all EHEC strains are LEE positive and form A/E cytopathology, resembling EPEC strains. Classification of STEC is further complicated because the most common serotype associated with human disease is O157:H7, and initial efforts to diagnose disease were made to determine if the suspected pathogen was this serotype. It is now appreciated that although O157:H7 is the most common serotype associated with severe human disease, it represents less than 50% of the responsible serotypes. Additionally, the prevalent serotypes will vary geographically. Thus diagnosis of STEC disease is now based on detection of the Shiga toxins rather than serotyping suspected isolates (Clinical Case 25.1).

Various national programs have been established in the United States, Canada, Europe, and Australia to monitor foodborne diseases and have documented widespread prevalence of STEC disease in these countries, as well as in other countries in which outbreaks have been documented. It is estimated that these bacteria cause 73,000 infections and 60 deaths each year in the United States, although awareness of these pathogens is now associated with an overall decrease in prevalence. STEC disease is most common in the warm months, and the highest incidence is in children

Clinical Case 25.1 **Multistate Outbreak of Shiga Toxin–Producing *Escherichia coli* Infections**

In 2006, *E. coli* O157 was responsible for a large multistate outbreak of gastroenteritis. The outbreak was linked to contamination of spinach, with a total of 173 cases reported in 25 states, primarily over an 18-day period. The outbreak resulted in hospitalization of more than 50% of the patients with documented disease, a 16% rate of hemolytic uremic syndrome, and one death. Despite the wide distribution of the contaminated spinach, publication of the outbreak and the rapid determination that spinach was responsible resulted in prompt removal of spinach from grocery stores and termination of the outbreak. This outbreak illustrates how contamination of a food product, even with small numbers of organisms, can lead to a widespread outbreak with a particularly virulent organism, such as strains of STEC.

younger than 5 years. Most infections are attributed to the consumption of undercooked ground beef or other meat products, water, unpasteurized milk or fruit juices (e.g., cider made from apples contaminated with feces from cattle), uncooked vegetables such as spinach, and fruits. **Ingestion of fewer than 100 bacteria can produce disease,** and person-to-person spread occurs.

Disease caused by STEC ranges from mild uncomplicated diarrhea to **hemorrhagic colitis** with severe abdominal pain and bloody diarrhea. Severe disease is more commonly associated with STEC O157:H7. Initially, diarrhea with abdominal pain develops in patients after 3 to 4 days of incubation. Vomiting is observed in approximately half the patients, but a high fever is generally absent. Within 2 days of onset, disease in 30% to 65% of patients progresses to a bloody diarrhea with severe abdominal pain. Complete resolution of symptoms typically occurs after 4 to 10 days in most untreated patients. **HUS,** a disorder characterized by acute renal failure, thrombocytopenia, and microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, is a complication in 5% to 10% of infected children younger than 10 years. Resolution of symptoms occurs in uncomplicated disease after 4 to 10 days in most untreated patients; however, death can occur in 3% to 5% of patients with HUS, and severe sequelae (e.g., renal impairment, hypertension, central nervous system [CNS] manifestations) can occur in as many as 30% of HUS patients.

Stx1 is essentially identical to the Shiga toxin produced by *S. dysenteriae* (thus the source of the name); Stx2 has a 60% homology. Both toxins are acquired by lysogenic bacteriophages. Both have one A subunit and five B subunits, with the B subunits binding to a specific glycolipid on the host cell (globotriaosylceramide [Gb3]). A high concentration of Gb3 receptors is found in the intestinal villi and renal endothelial cells. After the A subunit is internalized, it is cleaved into two molecules, and the A_1 fragment binds to 28S rRNA and causes a cessation of protein synthesis. STEC strains with both Shiga toxins and A/E activity are more pathogenic than strains producing only one Shiga toxin.

HUS has been preferentially associated with the production of Stx2, which has been shown to destroy glomerular endothelial cells. Damage to the endothelial cells leads to platelet activation and thrombin deposition, which results in decreased glomerular filtration and acute renal failure. The Shiga toxins also stimulate expression of inflammatory cytokines (e.g., tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-γ, interleukin [IL]-6), enhancing expression of the B subunit receptor Gb3.

Enteroinvasive *E. coli*. EIEC strains are rare in both developed and developing countries. Pathogenic strains are primarily associated with a few restricted O serotypes: O124, O143, and O164. The strains are closely related by phenotypic and pathogenic properties to *Shigella.* The bacteria are able to invade and destroy the colonic epithelium, producing a disease characterized initially by **watery diarrhea.** A minority of patients progress to the dysenteric form of disease, consisting of fever, abdominal cramps, and blood and leukocytes in stool specimens.

A series of genes on a plasmid mediate bacterial invasion **(*pInv* genes)** into the colonic epithelium. The bacteria then lyse the phagocytic vacuole and replicate in the cell cytoplasm. Movement within the cytoplasm and into adjacent epithelial cells is regulated by formation of actin tails (similar to that observed with *Listeria*). This process of epithelial cell destruction with inflammatory infiltration can progress to colonic ulceration.

Extraintestinal Infections

Urinary Tract Infection. Most gram-negative rods that produce UTIs originate in the colon, contaminate the urethra, ascend into the bladder, and may migrate to the kidney or prostate. Although most strains of *E. coli* can produce UTIs, disease is more common with certain specific serogroups. These bacteria are particularly virulent because of their ability to produce **adhesins** (primarily P pili, AAF/I, AAF/III, and Dr) that bind to cells lining the bladder and upper urinary tract (preventing elimination of the bacteria in voided urine) and **hemolysin HlyA,** which lyses erythrocytes and other cell types (leading to cytokine release and stimulation of an inflammatory response).

Neonatal Meningitis. *E. coli* and group B streptococci cause the majority of CNS infections in infants younger than 1 month. Approximately 75% of the *E. coli* strains possess the **K1 capsular antigen.** This serogroup is also commonly present in the GI tracts of pregnant women and newborn infants. However, the reason this serogroup has a predilection for crossing the blood-brain barrier and causing meningitis in newborns is not understood.

Septicemia. Typically, septicemia caused by gram-negative rods, such as *E. coli,* most commonly originates from infections in the urinary or GI tract (e.g., intestinal leakage leading to an intraabdominal infection). The mortality associated with *E. coli* septicemia is high for patients in whom immunity is compromised or the primary infection is in the abdomen or CNS.

Salmonella

The taxonomic classification of the genus *Salmonella* is problematic. DNA homology studies have revealed that most clinically significant isolates belong to the species *S. enterica*. More than 2500 unique serotypes have been described for this single species; however, these serotypes are commonly listed as individual species (e.g., *S. typhi, S. choleraesuis, S. typhimurium, S. enteritidis*). These designations are incorrect; for example, the correct nomenclature is *S. enterica,* serovar Typhi. In an effort to prevent confusion and still retain the historical terms, individual serotypes are now commonly written with the serotype name capitalized and not in italics. For example, *S. enterica*, serovar Typhi is commonly designated as *Salmonella* Typhi. For the sake of consistency, this nomenclature will be used in this chapter.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

After ingestion and passage through the stomach, salmonellae attach to the mucosa of the **small intestine** and invade into the **M (microfold) cells** located in Peyer patches, as

well as into enterocytes. The bacteria remain in endocytic vacuoles, in which they replicate. The bacteria can also be transported across the cytoplasm and released into the blood or lymphatic circulation. Regulation of attachment, engulfment, and replication is controlled primarily by two large clusters of genes **(pathogenicity island I and II)** on the bacterial chromosome. Pathogenicity island I encodes **salmonella-secreted invasion proteins (Ssps)** and a **type III secretion system** that injects the proteins into the host cell. Pathogenicity island II contains genes that allow the bacteria to evade the host's immune response and encodes a second type III secretion system for this function. The inflammatory response confines the infection to the GI tract, mediates the release of prostaglandins, and stimulates cAMP and active fluid secretion.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Salmonella can colonize virtually all animals, including poultry, reptiles, livestock, rodents, domestic animals, birds, and humans. Animal-to-animal spread and the use of *Salmonella*-contaminated animal feeds maintain an **animal reservoir.** Serotypes such as *Salmonella* Typhi and *Salmonella* Paratyphi are highly **adapted to humans** and do not cause disease in nonhuman hosts. Other *Salmonella* serotypes (e.g., *Salmonella* Choleraesuis) are adapted to animals and, when they infect humans, can cause severe disease. In addition, in contrast with other *Salmonella* serotypes, strains that are highly adapted to humans (i.e., *Salmonella* Typhi, *Salmonella* Paratyphi) can survive in the gallbladder and establish chronic carriage. Finally, many *Salmonella* strains have no host specificity and cause disease in both human and nonhuman hosts.

Most infections result from **ingestion** of contaminated food products and, in children, from direct fecal-oral spread. The incidence of disease is greatest in children younger than 5 years and adults older than 60 years, who are infected during the summer and autumn months when contaminated foods are consumed at outdoor social gatherings. The most common sources of human infections are **poultry, eggs, dairy products,** and foods prepared on contaminated work surfaces (e.g., cutting boards on which uncooked poultry was prepared). Approximately 50,000 cases of nontyphoidal *Salmonella* infections are reported annually in the United States, although it has been estimated that 1.2 million infections and 400 deaths occur each year. *Salmonella* Typhi infections occur when food or water contaminated by infected food handlers is ingested. There is no animal reservoir. An average of 400 to 500 *Salmonella* Typhi infections are reported annually in the United States, most of which are acquired during foreign travel. In contrast, it is estimated that 27 million *Salmonella* Typhi and *Salmonella* Paratyphi infections and more than 200,000 deaths occur each year worldwide. The risk of disease is highest in children living in poverty in developing countries.

The infectious dose for *Salmonella* Typhi infections is low, so person-to-person spread is common. In contrast, a large inoculum (e.g., 10^6 to 10^8 bacteria) is required for symptomatic disease to develop with most other *Salmonella* serotypes. The organisms can multiply to this high density if contaminated food products are improperly stored (e.g., left at room temperature). The infectious dose is lower for people at high risk for disease because of age, immunosuppression or underlying disease (leukemia, lymphoma, sickle cell disease), or reduced gastric acidity.

CLINICAL DISEASES

The following four forms of *Salmonella* infection exist: gastroenteritis, septicemia, enteric fever, and asymptomatic colonization.

Gastroenteritis

Gastroenteritis is the **most common form of salmonellosis** in the United States. Symptoms generally appear 6 to 48 hours after the consumption of contaminated food or water, with the initial presentation consisting of **nausea, vomiting, and nonbloody diarrhea.** Fever, abdominal cramps, myalgias, and headache are also common. Colonic involvement can be demonstrated in the acute form of the disease. Symptoms can persist for 2 to 7 days before spontaneous resolution.

Septicemia

All *Salmonella* species can cause bacteremia, although infections with *Salmonella* Typhi, *Salmonella* Paratyphi, and *Salmonella* Choleraesuis more commonly lead to a bacteremic phase. The risk for *Salmonella* bacteremia is higher in pediatric and geriatric patients and in immunocompromised patients (e.g., those with HIV infections, sickle cell disease, congenital immunodeficiencies). The clinical presentation of *Salmonella* bacteremia is like that of other gram-negative bacteremias; however, localized suppurative infections (e.g., osteomyelitis, endocarditis, arthritis) can occur in as many as 10% of patients.

Enteric Fever

Salmonella Typhi produces a febrile illness called **typhoid fever.** A milder form of this disease, referred to as **paratyphoid fever,** is produced by *Salmonella* Paratyphi A, *Salmonella* Schottmuelleri (formerly *Salmonella* Paratyphi B), and *Salmonella* Hirschfeldii (formerly *Salmonella* Paratyphi C). Other *Salmonella* serotypes can rarely produce a similar syndrome. The bacteria responsible for enteric fever pass through the cells lining the intestines and are engulfed by macrophages. They replicate after being transported to the liver, spleen, and bone marrow. Ten to 14 days after ingestion of the bacteria, patients experience gradually increasing fever, with nonspecific complaints of headache, myalgias, malaise, and anorexia. These symptoms persist for 1 week or longer and are followed by GI symptoms. This cycle corresponds to an initial bacteremic phase that is followed by colonization of the gallbladder and reinfection of the intestines. Enteric fever is a serious clinical disease and must be suspected in febrile patients who have recently traveled to developing countries where disease is endemic (Clinical Case 25.2).

Asymptomatic Colonization

The strains of *Salmonella* responsible for causing typhoid and paratyphoid fevers are maintained by human colonization. **Chronic colonization** for more than 1 year after symptomatic disease develops in 1% to 5% of patients, with

Clinical Case 25.2 *Salmonella* Typhi Infection

Scully and associates (*N Engl J Med* 345:201–205, 2007) described a 25-year-old woman who was admitted to a Boston hospital with a history of persistent fever that did not respond to amoxicillin or acetaminophen or ibuprofen. She was a resident of the Philippines who had been traveling in the United States for the previous 11 days. On physical examination, she was febrile and had an enlarged liver, abdominal pain, and an abnormal urinalysis. Blood cultures were collected on admission to the hospital and were positive the next day with *Salmonella* Typhi. Because the organism was susceptible to fluoroquinolones, this therapy was selected. Within 4 days, she had defervesced and was discharged to return home to the Philippines. Although typhoid fever can be a very serious life-threatening illness, it can initially present with nonspecific symptoms, as was seen in this woman.

the gallbladder being the reservoir in most patients. Chronic colonization with other species of *Salmonella* occurs in less than 1% of patients and does not represent an important source of human infection.

Shigella

The commonly used taxonomic classification of *Shigella* is simple, although technically incorrect. Four species consisting of almost 50 O-antigen–based serogroups have been described: *S. dysenteriae, S. flexneri, S. boydii,* and *S. sonnei.* However, analysis of DNA has determined that these four species are actually biogroups within the species *E. coli.* Because it would be confusing to refer to these bacteria as *E. coli,* their historical names have been retained.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Shigellae cause disease by invading and replicating in cells lining the **colon.** Structural gene proteins mediate the adherence of the organisms to the cells, as well as their invasion, intracellular replication, and cell-to-cell spread. These genes are carried on a large virulence plasmid but are regulated by chromosomal genes. Thus the presence of the plasmid does not ensure functional gene activity.

Shigella species appear unable to attach to differentiated mucosal cells; rather, they first attach to and invade the M cells located in Peyer patches. The **type III secretion system** mediates secretion of four proteins **(IpaA, IpaB, IpaC,** and **IpaD)** into epithelial cells and macrophages. These proteins induce membrane ruffling on the target cell, leading to engulfment of the bacteria. Shigellae lyse the phagocytic vacuole and replicate in the host cell cytoplasm (unlike *Salmonella,* which replicate in the vacuole). With the rearrangement of actin filaments in the host cells, the bacteria are propelled through the cytoplasm to adjacent cells, in which **cell-to-cell passage** occurs. In this way, *Shigella* organisms are protected from immune-mediated clearance. Shigellae survive phagocytosis by inducing programmed cell death **(apoptosis).** This process also leads to the release of IL-1β, resulting in the attraction of polymorphonuclear leukocytes into the infected tissues. This, in turn, destabilizes the integrity of the intestinal wall and allows the bacteria to reach the deeper epithelial cells.

S. dysenteriae strains produce an exotoxin, **Shiga toxin.** Similar to Shiga toxin produced by STEC, this toxin has one A subunit and five B subunits. The B subunits bind to a host cell glycolipid (Gb3) and facilitate transfer of the A subunit into the cell. The A subunit cleaves the 28S rRNA in the 60S ribosomal subunit, preventing the binding of aminoacyl-transfer RNA and disrupting protein synthesis. The primary manifestation of toxin activity is damage to the intestinal epithelium; however, in a small subset of patients, the Shiga toxin can mediate damage to the glomerular endothelial cells, resulting in renal failure (HUS).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Humans are the only reservoir for *Shigella*. It is estimated that almost 500,000 cases of *Shigella* infections occur each year in the United States. This figure pales in comparison with the estimated 90 million cases that occur annually worldwide. ***S. sonnei*** is responsible for almost 85% of U.S. infections, whereas ***S. flexneri*** predominates in developing countries. Epidemics of ***S. dysenteriae*** infections occur periodically, most recently in West Africa and Central America, and are associated with case fatality rates of 5% to 15%.

Shigellosis is primarily a pediatric disease, with 60% of all infections occurring in children younger than 10 years. Endemic disease in adults is common in male homosexuals and in household contacts of infected children. Epidemic outbreaks of disease occur in day-care centers, nurseries, and custodial institutions. (Clinical Case 25.3) Shigellosis is **transmitted person to person** by the fecal-oral route, primarily by people with contaminated hands and less commonly in water or food. Because as few as 100 to 200 bacteria can establish disease, shigellosis spreads rapidly in communities in which sanitary standards and the level of personal hygiene are low.

Clinical Case 25.3 *Shigella* Infections in Day-Care Centers

In 2005, three states reported outbreaks of multidrug-resistant *Shigella* infections in day-care centers. A total of 532 infections were reported in the Kansas City area, with the median age of patients 6 years old (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: *MMWR* 55:1068–1071, 2006). The predominant pathogen was a multidrug-resistant strain of *S. sonnei,* with 89% of the isolates resistant to ampicillin and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Shigellosis spreads easily in day-care centers because of the increased risk of fecal contamination and the low infectious dose responsible for disease. Parents and teachers, as well as classmates, are at significant risk for disease.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Shigellosis is characterized by **abdominal cramps, diarrhea, fever,** and **bloody stools.** The clinical signs and symptoms of the disease appear 1 to 3 days after the bacteria are ingested. Shigellae initially colonize the small intestine and begin to multiply within the first 12 hours. The first sign of infection (profuse watery diarrhea without histologic evidence of mucosal invasion) is mediated by an enterotoxin. However, the cardinal feature of shigellosis is lower abdominal cramps and tenesmus (straining to defecate), with abundant pus and blood in the stool. It results from invasion of the colonic mucosa by the bacteria. Abundant neutrophils, erythrocytes, and mucus are found in the stool. Infection is generally self-limited, although antibiotic treatment is recommended to reduce the risk of secondary spread to family members and other contacts. Asymptomatic colonization of the organism in the colon develops in a small number of patients and represents a persistent reservoir for infection.

Yersinia

The best known human pathogens within the genus *Yersinia* are ***Y. pestis, Y. enterocolitica,*** and ***Y. pseudotuberculosis.*** *Y. pestis* is a highly virulent pathogen that causes the potentially fatal systemic disease known as **plague;** *Y. enterocolitica* and *Y. pseudotuberculosis* are primarily enteric pathogens that are relatively uncommon and rarely cultured from blood.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

A common characteristic of the pathogenic *Yersinia* species is their ability to **resist phagocytic killing.** The type III secretion system mediates this property. On contact with phagocytic cells, the bacteria secrete proteins into the phagocyte that dephosphorylate several proteins required for phagocytosis (YopH gene product), induce cytotoxicity by disrupting actin filaments (YopE gene product), and initiate apoptosis in macrophages (YopJ/P gene product). The type III secretion system also suppresses cytokine production, in turn diminishing the inflammatory immune response to infection.

Y. pestis has two plasmids that encode virulence genes: (1) fraction 1 *(f1)* gene, which codes for an antiphagocytic **protein capsule,** and (2) **plasminogen activator *(pla)* protease** gene, which degrades complement components C3b and C5a, preventing opsonization and phagocytic migration, respectively. The *pla* gene also degrades fibrin clots, permitting *Y. pestis* to spread rapidly. Other virulence factors specifically associated with *Y. pestis* are serum resistance and the ability of the organism to absorb organic iron as a result of a siderophore-independent mechanism.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

All *Yersinia* infections are **zoonotic,** with humans the accidental hosts. There are two forms of *Y. pestis* infection: **urban plague,** for which rats are the natural reservoirs, and **sylvatic plague,** which causes infections in squirrels, rabbits, field rats, and domestic cats. Pigs, rodents, livestock, and rabbits are the natural reservoirs for *Y. enterocolitica,* whereas rodents, wild animals, and game birds are the natural reservoirs for *Y. pseudotuberculosis.*

Plague, caused by *Y. pestis,* was one of the most devastating diseases in history. Epidemics of the plague were recorded in the Old Testament. The first of three major pandemics (urban plague) started in Egypt in AD 541 and spread throughout North Africa, Europe, central and southern Asia, and Arabia. By the time this pandemic ended in the mid-700s, a major proportion of the population in these countries had died from the plague. The second pandemic, which started in the 1320s, resulted (over a 5-year period) in more than 25 million deaths in Europe alone (30% to 40% of the population). The third pandemic began in China in the 1860s and spread to Africa, Europe, and the Americas. Epidemic and sporadic cases of the disease continue to this day. In recent years, fewer than 10 cases are reported annually in the United States, with disease primarily sylvatic plague and present in western states.

Urban plague is maintained in rat populations and is spread among **rats** or between rats and humans by infected **fleas.** Fleas become infected during a blood meal from a bacteremic rat. After the bacteria replicate in the flea gut, the organisms can be transferred to another rodent or to humans. Urban plague has been eliminated from most communities by the effective control of rats and better hygiene. In contrast, **sylvatic plague** is difficult or impossible to eliminate because the **mammalian reservoirs** and **flea vectors** are widespread. *Y. pestis* produces a fatal infection in the animal reservoir, so cyclic patterns of human disease occur as the number of infected reservoir hosts increases or decreases. Infections can also be acquired through ingestion of contaminated animals or handling of contaminated animal tissues. Although the organism is highly infectious, human-to-human spread is uncommon unless the patient has pulmonary involvement.

Y. enterocolitica is a common cause of enterocolitis in Scandinavian and other northern European countries and in the colder areas of North America. In the United States, approximately one culture-confirmed infection occurs per 100,000 persons each year, with 90% of the infections being associated with the consumption of contaminated meat, milk, or water. Most studies show that infections are more common during the cold months. Virulence with this organism is associated with specific serogroups. The most common serogroups found in Europe, Africa, Japan, and Canada are O3 and O9. Serogroup O8 has been identified in the United States. *Y. pseudotuberculosis* is a relatively uncommon cause of human disease.

CLINICAL DISEASES

The two clinical manifestations of *Y. pestis* infection are bubonic plague and pneumonic plague. **Bubonic plague** is characterized by an incubation period of no more than 7 days after a person has been bitten by an infected flea. Patients have a high fever and a painful **bubo** (inflammatory swelling of the lymph nodes) in the groin or axilla. Bacteremia develops rapidly if patients are not treated, and as many as 75% die. (Clinical Case 25.4) The incubation

Clinical Case 25.4 **Human Plague in the United States**

In 2006, a total of 13 human plague cases were reported in the United States: seven in New Mexico, three in Colorado, two in California, and one in Texas (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: *MMWR* 55:940–943, 2006). The following is a description of a 30-year-old man with a classic presentation of bubonic plague. On July 9, the man presented to his local hospital with a 3-day history of fever, nausea, vomiting, and right inguinal lymphadenopathy. He was discharged without treatment. Three days later, he returned to the hospital and was admitted with sepsis and bilateral pulmonary infiltrates. He was placed on respiratory isolation and treated with gentamicin, to which he responded. Cultures of his blood and enlarged lymph node were positive for *Yersinia pestis*. These bacteria were also recovered in fleas collected near the patient's home. Typically the reservoirs for sylvatic plague are small mammals, and the vectors are fleas. When the mammals die off, the fleas will seek human hosts.

period (2 to 3 days) is shorter in patients with **pneumonic plague.** Initially these patients experience fever and malaise, and pulmonary signs develop within 1 day. The patients are highly infectious; person-to-person spread occurs by aerosols. The mortality rate in untreated patients with pneumonic plague exceeds 90%.

Approximately two thirds of all *Y. enterocolitica* infections are **enterocolitis,** as the name implies. The gastroenteritis is typically associated with ingestion of contaminated food products or water. After an incubation period of 1 to 10 days (average, 4 to 6 days), the patient experiences disease characterized by diarrhea, fever, and abdominal pain that last as long as 1 to 2 weeks. A chronic form of the disease can also develop and persist for months. Disease involves the terminal ileum and, if the mesenteric lymph nodes become enlarged, can mimic acute appendicitis. *Y. enterocolitica* infection is most common in children, with **pseudoappendicitis** posing a particular problem in this age group. *Y. pseudotuberculosis* can also produce an enteric disease with the same clinical features. Other manifestations seen in adults are septicemia, arthritis, intraabdominal abscess, hepatitis, and osteomyelitis.

In 1987, *Y. enterocolitica* was first reported to cause **blood transfusion–related bacteremia** and endotoxic shock. Because *Yersinia* organisms **can grow at 4° C,** this organism can multiply to high concentrations in nutritionally rich blood products that are stored in a refrigerator.

Other Enterobacteriaceae

KLEBSIELLA

Members of the genus *Klebsiella* have a prominent capsule that is responsible for the mucoid appearance of isolated colonies and the enhanced virulence of the organisms in vivo. Additionally, strains of *Klebsiella* resistant to all β-lactam antibiotics including the carbapenems, as well as most other classes of antibiotics, are becoming increasingly common globally. The management of patients with *Klebsiella* infections is a major clinical challenge.

The most commonly isolated members of the genus are ***K. pneumoniae*** and ***K. oxytoca*,** which can cause community-acquired or hospital-acquired primary **lobar pneumonia.** Pneumonia caused by *Klebsiella* species frequently involves necrotic destruction of alveolar spaces, formation of cavities, and the production of blood-tinged sputum. These bacteria also cause wound and soft-tissue infections and UTIs.

The organism, formerly called *Donovania granulomatis* and then *Calymmatobacterium granulomatis,* has been reclassified as ***K. granulomatis*.** *K. granulomatis* is the etiologic agent of **granuloma inguinale,** which is a granulomatous disease affecting the genitalia and inguinal area (Figs. 25.4 and 25.5). Unfortunately, this disease is commonly called **donovanosis** in reference to the historical origin of the genus name. Granuloma inguinale is a rare disease in

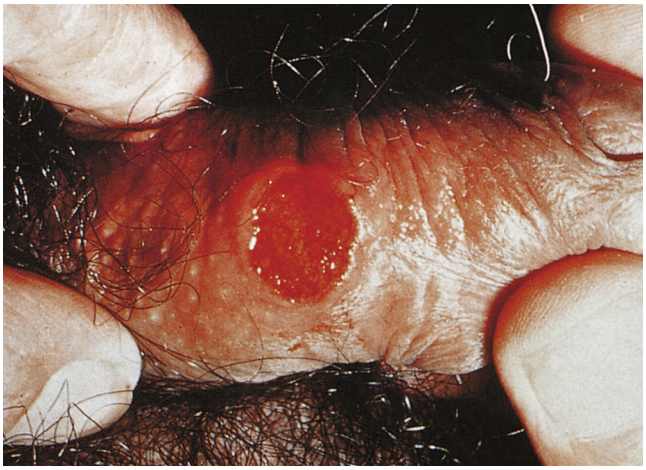


Fig. 25.4 Penile ulcer caused by *Klebsiella granulomatis.* This can mimic the chancre of syphilis. (From Morse, S.A., Ballard, R.C., Holmes, K.K., et al., 2010. Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS, fourth ed. London, Saunders.)

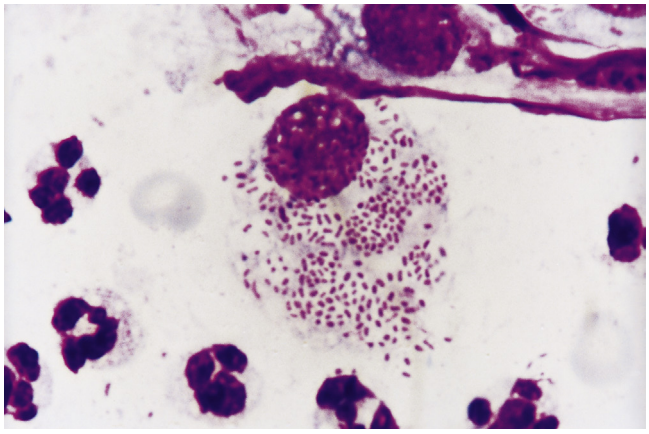


Fig. 25.5 Light microscopy of impression smear of granulation tissue from genital lesion of patient infected with *Klebsiella granulomatis.* Note the numerous bacteria in the cytoplasmic vacuole of the mononuclear cell (modified Giemsa stain). (From Morse, S.A., Ballard, R.C., Holmes, K.K., et al., 2010. Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS, fourth ed. London, Saunders.)

the United States, but it is endemic in parts of Papua New Guinea, the Caribbean, South America, India, southern Africa, Vietnam, and Australia. It can be transmitted after repeated exposure through sexual intercourse or nonsexual trauma to the genitalia. After a prolonged incubation of weeks to months, subcutaneous nodules appear on the genitalia or in the inguinal area. The nodules subsequently break down, revealing one or more painless granulomatous lesions that can extend and coalesce into ulcers resembling syphilitic lesions.

Two other *Klebsiella* species of clinical importance are ***K. rhinoscleromatis,*** which is the cause of a granulomatous disease of the nose, and ***K. ozaenae,*** which is the cause of chronic atrophic rhinitis. Both diseases are relatively uncommon in the United States.

PROTEUS

P. mirabilis, the most common member of this genus, primarily produces infections of the urinary tract (e.g., bladder infection or cystitis; kidney infection or pyelonephritis). *P. mirabilis* produces large quantities of urease, which splits urea into carbon dioxide and ammonia. This process raises the urine pH, precipitating magnesium and calcium in the form of struvite and apatite crystals, respectively, and results in the formation of **renal (kidney) stones.** The increased alkalinity of the urine is also toxic to the uroepithelium.

ENTEROBACTER, CITROBACTER, MORGANELLA, AND *SERRATIA*

Primary infections caused by *Enterobacter, Citrobacter, Morganella,* and *Serratia* are rare in immunocompetent patients. They are more common causes of hospital-acquired infections in neonates and immunocompromised patients. For example, ***Citrobacter koseri*** has been recognized to have a predilection for causing meningitis and brain abscesses in neonates.

Other General Properties

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Culture

Members of the family Enterobacteriaceae grow readily on culture media. Specimens of normally sterile material, such as spinal fluid and tissue collected at surgery, can be inoculated onto nonselective blood agar media. Selective media (e.g., MacConkey agar, eosin-methylene blue [EMB] agar) are used for the culture of specimens normally contaminated with other organisms (e.g., sputum, feces). Use of these selective differential agars enables the separation of lactose-fermenting Enterobacteriaceae genera (e.g., *Escherichia, Klebsiella, Enterobacter*) from nonfermenting genera (e.g., *Salmonella, Shigella*). Another example of a selective differential agar is **sorbitol-containing MacConkey agar** (S-MAC), which is used to screen stool specimens for sorbitol-negative (colorless), gram-negative bacteria such as *E. coli* O157. Highly selective or organism-specific media are useful for the recovery of organisms such as *Salmonella* and *Shigella* in stool specimens, in which an abundance of normal flora can obscure the presence of these important pathogens.

It is difficult to recover *Y. enterocolitica* because this organism grows slowly at traditional incubation temperatures and prefers cooler temperatures, at which it is more active metabolically. Clinical laboratories have exploited this property, however, by mixing the fecal specimen with saline and then storing the specimen at 4° C for 2 weeks or more before subculturing it to agar media. This **cold enrichment** permits the growth of *Yersinia* but inhibits or kills other organisms in the specimen. Although use of the cold enrichment method does not aid in the initial management of a patient with *Yersinia* gastroenteritis, it has helped elucidate the role of this organism in chronic intestinal disease.

Biochemical Identification

There are many diverse species in the family Enterobacteriaceae. The citations listed in the Bibliography at the end of this chapter provide additional information about their biochemical identification. Biochemical test systems have become increasingly sophisticated, and the most common members of the family can be identified accurately in less than 24 hours with one of the many commercially available identification systems. Sequencing of species-specific genes (e.g., 16S rRNA gene) or detection of characteristic protein profiles by mass spectrometry is used to identify most species of Enterobacteriaceae.

Serologic Classification

Serologic testing is very useful for determining the clinical significance of an isolate (e.g., serotyping specific pathogenic strains such as *E. coli* O157 or *Y. enterocolitica* O8) and for classifying isolates for epidemiologic purposes. The usefulness of this procedure is limited, however, by cross-reactions with antigenically related Enterobacteriaceae and with organisms from other bacterial families.

Nucleic Acid Amplification Tests

In the last decade, commercial multiplex nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) have become widely used for specific diseases, such as respiratory or GI infections. The advantage of these tests is that a large selection of enteric pathogens (e.g., *Salmonella, Shigella, E. coli, Campylobacter*, as well as common enteric viruses and parasites) are identified simultaneously with a single test.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Antibiotic therapy for infections with Enterobacteriaceae must be guided by in vitro susceptibility test results and clinical experience. Some organisms, such as *E. coli* and *P. mirabilis,* are susceptible to many antibiotics, but others can be highly resistant. Production of enzymes that inactivate all the penicillins and cephalosporins (e.g., ESBLs) is now widespread in *E. coli, Klebsiella,* and *Proteus*. Additionally, use of carbapenems (e.g., imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem) was once a mainstay of treatment; however, the recent recovery of carbapenemase-producing bacteria has limited the empirical use of carbapenems and all other β-lactam antibiotics for many regions of the world. In general, **antibiotic resistance**

is more common in hospital-acquired infections than in community-acquired infections. Antibiotic therapy is not recommended for some infections. For example, symptomatic relief but not antibiotic treatment is usually recommended for patients with STEC and *Salmonella* gastroenteritis because antibiotics can prolong the fecal carriage of these organisms or increase the risk of secondary complications (e.g., HUS with STEC infections in children). Treatment of *Salmonella* Typhi infections or other systemic *Salmonella* infections is indicated; however, increasing resistance to antibiotics, such as the fluoroquinolones, has complicated therapy.

It is difficult to prevent infections with Enterobacteriaceae because these organisms are a major part of the endogenous microbial population. However, some risk factors for the infections should be avoided. These include the unrestricted use of antibiotics that can select for resistant bacteria, performance of procedures that traumatize mucosal barriers without prophylactic antibiotic coverage, and use of urinary catheters. Unfortunately, many of these factors are present in patients at greatest risk for infection (e.g., immunocompromised patients confined to the hospital for extended periods).

Exogenous infection with Enterobacteriaceae is theoretically easier to control. For example, the source of infections with organisms such as *Salmonella* is well defined. However, these bacteria are ubiquitous in poultry and eggs. Unless care is taken in the preparation and refrigeration of such foods, little can be done to control these infections. *Shigella* organisms are predominantly transmitted in young children, but it is difficult to interrupt the fecal-hand-mouth transmission responsible for spreading the infection in this population. Outbreaks of these infections can be effectively prevented and controlled only through education and the introduction of appropriate infection-control procedures (e.g., handwashing, proper disposal of soiled diapers and linens) in the settings in which these infections typically occur.

A vaccine for *Y. pestis* is no longer available, although this is likely to change in light of the concern that this organism can be used by bioterrorists. Two vaccines for *Salmonella* Typhi are available: an oral, live, attenuated vaccine and a Vi capsular polysaccharide vaccine. Both vaccines protect 40% to 70% of the recipients. Vaccination is recommended for travelers to endemic areas of the world (e.g., Africa, Asia, Latin America). The Vi capsular vaccine can be administered in a single dose, but the attenuated live vaccine must be administered in four doses over a 1-week period. Refer to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention website (www.cdc.gov) for current recommendations.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Abbott, S., 2007. *Klebsiella, Enterobacter, Citrobacter, Serratia, Plesiomonas*, and other Enterobacteriaceae. In: Murray, P.R., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, ninth ed. American Society of Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Ackers, M.L., Puhr, N.D., Tauxe, R.V., et al., 2000. Laboratory-based surveillance of Salmonella serotype Typhi infections in the United States: antimicrobial resistance on the rise. JAMA 283, 2668–2673.

Croxen, M.A., Law, R.J., Scholz, R., et al., 2013. Recent advances in understanding enteric pathogenic Escherichia coli. Clin Microbiol Rev 26, 822–880.

Darwin, K.H., Miller, V.L., 1999. Molecular basis of the interaction of Salmonella with the intestinal mucosa. Clin Microbiol Rev 12, 405–428.

Farmer, J.J., et al., 2007. Enterobacteriaceae: introduction and identification. In: Murray, P.R., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, ninth ed. American Society of Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Jackson, B.R., Iqbal, S., Mahon, B., 2015. Updated recommendations for the use of typhoid vaccine—Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, United States. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 64 (11), 305–308.

Kotloff, K.L., Nataro, J.P., Blackwelder, W.C., et al., 2013. Burden and etiology of diarrhoeal disease in infants and young children in developing countries (the Global Enteric Multicenter Study, GEMS): a prospective, case-control study. Lancet 382, 209–222.

Lamberti, L.M., Bourgeois, A.L., Fischer Walker, C.L., et al., 2014. Estimating diarrheal illness and deaths attributable to Shigella and enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli among older children, adolescents, and adults in South Asia and Africa. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 8, e2705.

Nataro, J., et al., 2007. *Escherichia, Shigella*, and *Salmonella*. In: Murray, P.R., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, ninth ed. American Society of Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Ross, A.G., Olds, G.R., Cripps, A.W., et al., 2013. Enteropathogens and chronic illness in returning travelers. N Engl J Med 368, 1817–1825.

Wanger, A., 2007. *Yersinia*. In: Murray, P.R., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, ninth ed. American Society of Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Wong, C.S., Jelacic, S., Habeeb, R.L., et al., 2000. The risk of the hemolytic-uremic syndrome after antibiotic treatment of Escherichia coli O157:H7 infections. N Engl J Med 342, 1930–1936.

Zaharik, M.L., Gruenheid, S., Perrin, A.J., et al., 2002. Delivery of dangerous goods: type III secretion in enteric pathogens. Int J Med Microbiol 291, 593–603.

Case Study and Questions

A 25-year-old previously healthy woman came to the emergency room for evaluation of bloody diarrhea and diffuse abdominal pain of 24 hours' duration. She complained of nausea and had vomited twice. She reported no history of inflammatory bowel disease, previous diarrhea, or contact with other people with diarrhea. The symptoms began 24 hours after she had eaten an undercooked hamburger at a local fast food restaurant. Rectal examination revealed watery stool with gross blood. Sigmoidoscopy showed diffuse mucosal erythema and petechiae with a modest exudation but no ulceration or pseudomembranes.

1. Name four genera of Enterobacteriaceae that can cause gastrointestinal (GI) disease. Name two genera that can cause hemorrhagic colitis.
2. What virulence factor mediates this disease?
3. Name the five groups of *E. coli* that can cause gastroenteritis. What is characteristic of each group of organisms?
4. What are the four forms of *Salmonella* infection?
5. Differentiate between disease caused by *Salmonella* Typhi and that caused by *S. sonnei.*
6. Describe the epidemiology of the two forms of disease caused by *Y. pestis.*

26 Vibrio *and Related Bacteria*

A 67-year-old woman living in Louisiana developed massive watery diarrhea 2 days after she ate crabs. She was admitted to the local hospital's intensive care unit with hypotension and bradycardia. She was resuscitated after a large volume of fluid (≈22 liters of fluids over 24 hours) was administered. Stool cultures grew *Vibrio cholerae* 01 biotype El Tor, serotype Inaba, and treatment with intravenous doxycycline was initiated. Over the next week her diarrhea resolved, and her recovery was uneventful.

1. *Vibrio* and *Aeromonas* are important gram-negative rods that cause significant enteric disease and wound infections. What properties do these genera share with the Enterobacteriaceae, and how would they be differentiated from this family?
2. How do certain strains of *Vibrio cholerae* produce cholera, and what other organism has a similar virulence factor?
3. What disease does *V. vulnificus* produce, and who is at greatest risk for serious disease?
4. What diseases are associated with *Aeromonas*?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

VIBRIO CHOLERAE

Trigger Words

Serogroup O1, cholera, cholera toxin, shellfish, gastroenteritis

Biology and Virulence

- Curved gram-negative rods
- Fermentative, facultative anaerobic; require salt for growth
- Strains subdivided into more than 200 serogroups (O–cell wall antigens)
- *V. cholerae* serogroup O1 is further subdivided into serotypes (Inaba, Ogawa, and Hikojima) and biotypes (Classical and El Tor)
- Disease mediated by cholera toxin (complex A-B toxin) and toxin coregulated pilus

Epidemiology

- Serotype O1 is responsible for major pandemics (worldwide epidemics), with significant mortality in developing countries; O139 can cause similar diseases
- Organism found in estuarine and marine environments worldwide (including along the coast of the United States); associated with chitinous shellfish
- Organism can multiply freely in water
- Bacterial levels in contaminated waters increase during the warm months
- Most commonly spread by consumption of freshly contaminated water
- Direct person-to-person spread is rare because the infectious dose is high; the infectious dose is high because most organisms are killed by stomach acids

Diseases

- Infection can range from asymptomatic colonization or mild diarrhea to severe, rapidly fatal diarrhea

Diagnosis

- Microscopic examination of stool can be useful in acute infections in the setting of an epidemic but rapidly becomes negative as the disease progresses
- Immunoassays for cholera toxin or O1 and O139 lipopolysaccharides can be useful, although the analytical performance of the assays is quite variable
- Multiplex nucleic acid amplification tests can be used to detect many enteric pathogens (bacteria, viruses, and parasites) and are the diagnostic test of choice
- Culture should be performed early in course of disease with fresh stool specimens maintained in a neutral to alkaline pH

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Fluid and electrolyte replacement are crucial
- Antibiotics (e.g., azithromycin) reduce the bacterial burden and exotoxin production, as well as duration of diarrhea
- Improved hygiene is critical for control
- Combination inactivated whole cell and cholera toxin B subunit vaccines provide limited protection and herd immunity

VIBRIO PARAHAEMOLYTICUS

Trigger Words

Kanagawa hemolysin, shellfish, gastroenteritis

Biology and Virulence

- Curved gram-negative rods
- Fermentative, facultative anaerobic; require salt for growth
- Production of thermostable direct hemolysin (Kanagawa hemolysin) associated with pathogenic strains

Epidemiology

- Organism found in estuarine and marine environments worldwide
- Associated with consumption of contaminated raw shellfish
- Most common cause of bacterial gastroenteritis in Japan and Southeast Asia
- Most common cause of seafood-associated gastroenteritis in United States

Diseases

- Most symptomatic infections are self-limited diarrhea

Diagnosis

- Culture should be performed as with *V. cholerae*

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Self-limited disease, although antibiotics can shorten length of symptoms and fluid loss
- Disease prevented by proper cooking of shellfish
- No vaccine is available

VIBRIO VULNIFICUS

Trigger Words

Septicemia, wound infections, hepatic disease

Biology and Virulence

- Curved gram-negative rods
- Fermentative, facultative anaerobic; require salt for growth
- Virulence associated with presence of polysaccharide capsule and hydrolytic enzymes

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

Epidemiology
- Infection associated with exposure of a wound to contaminated salt water or ingestion of improperly prepared shellfish

Diseases
- High mortality associated with primary septicemia and wound infections, particularly in patients with underlying hepatic disease

Diagnosis
- Culture wounds and blood

Treatment, Prevention, and Control
- Life-threatening illnesses that must be promptly treated with antibiotics
- Minocycline or doxycycline combined with a ceftriaxone or cefotaxime is the treatment of choice
- No vaccine is available

TABLE 26.1 Important *Vibrio* and *Aeromonas* Species

Organism	Historical Derivation
Vibrio	*vibrio,* move rapidly or vibrate (rapid movement caused by polar flagella)
V. cholerae	*cholera,* cholera or an intestinal disease
V. parahaemolyticus	*para,* by the side of; *haema,* blood; *lyticus,* dissolving (dissolving blood; Kanagawa toxin–positive strains are hemolytic)
V. vulnificus	*vulnificus,* inflicting wounds (associated with prominent wound infections)
Aeromonas	*aero,* gas or air; *monas,* unit or monad (gas-producing bacteria)
A. caviae	*cavia,* guinea pig (first isolated in guinea pigs)
A. hydrophila	*hydro,* water; *phila,* loving (water loving)
A. veronii	*veron,* named after the bacteriologist Veron

The second major group of gram-negative, facultatively anaerobic, fermentative rods are the genera *Vibrio* and *Aeromonas.* These organisms were at one time classified together in the family Vibrionaceae and were separated from the Enterobacteriaceae on the basis of a positive oxidase reaction and the presence of polar flagella. These organisms were also classified together because they are primarily found in water and are able to cause gastrointestinal disease. However, deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequencing has established that these genera are only distantly related and belong in separate families: *Vibrio* and *Aeromonas* are now classified in the families Vibrionaceae and Aeromonadaceae, respectively (Table 26.1). Despite this taxonomic reorganization, it is appropriate to consider these bacteria together because their epidemiology and range of diseases are similar.

Vibrio

The genus *Vibrio* has undergone numerous changes in recent years, with a number of less common species described or reclassified. Currently the genus is composed of more than 150 species and subspecies of **curved rods.** Three species are particularly important human pathogens (Table 26.2): ***V. cholerae, V. parahaemolyticus,*** and ***V. vulnificus.***

TABLE 26.2 *Vibrio* Species Most Commonly Associated with Human Disease

Species	Source of Infection	Clinical Disease
Vibrio cholerae	Water, food	Gastroenteritis, bacteremia
V. parahaemolyticus	Shellfish, seawater	Gastroenteritis, wound infection, bacteremia
V. vulnificus	Shellfish, seawater	Bacteremia, wound infection

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Vibrio species can grow on a variety of simple media within a broad temperature range (from 14° C to 40° C). All species of *Vibrio* **require sodium chloride (NaCl)** for growth. *V. cholerae* can grow on most media without additional salt, but most other halophilic ("salt-loving") species require supplementation with NaCl. Vibrios tolerate a wide range of pH (e.g., pH of 6.5 to 9.0) but are **susceptible to stomach acids.** Generally, exposure to a large inoculum of organisms is required for disease, but if gastric acid production is reduced or neutralized, patients are more susceptible to *Vibrio* infections.

Most vibrios have **polar flagella** (important for motility) and various pili that are important for virulence (e.g., **toxin coregulated pilus** [TCP] in epidemic strains of *V. cholera*). The cell wall structure of vibrios is also important. All strains possess **lipopolysaccharides** consisting of lipid A (endotoxin), core polysaccharide, and an O polysaccharide side chain. The O polysaccharide is used to subdivide *Vibrio* species into **serogroups:** there are more than 200 serogroups of *V. cholerae* plus multiple serogroups of *V. vulnificus* and *V. parahaemolyticus.* The interest in this classification scheme is more than academic; ***V. cholerae* O1 and O139** produce **cholera toxin** and are associated with epidemics of cholera. Other strains of *V. cholerae* generally do not produce cholera toxin and do not cause epidemic disease. *V. cholerae* serogroup O1 is further subdivided into serotypes **(Inaba, Ogawa,** and **Hikojima)** and biotypes **(Classical** and **El Tor).** Strains can shift between serotype Inaba and serotype Ogawa, with Hikojima a transitional state in which both Inaba and Ogawa antigens are expressed. Seven worldwide pandemics of *V. cholerae* infections have been documented since 1817. *V. cholerae* strains responsible for the sixth worldwide pandemic of cholera were of the

TABLE 26.3 Virulence Factors of *Vibrio* Species

Species	Virulence Factor	Biological Effect
Vibrio cholerae	Cholera toxin	Hypersecretion of electrolytes and water
	Toxin coregulated pilus	Surface binding site receptor for bacteriophage CTXΦ; mediates bacterial adherence to intestinal mucosal cells
	Chemotaxis protein	Adhesin factor
	Accessory cholera enterotoxin	Increases intestinal fluid secretion
	Zonula occludens toxin	Increases intestinal permeability
	Neuraminidase	Modifies cell surface to increase GM_1 binding sites for cholera toxin
V. parahaemolyticus	Kanagawa hemolysin	Enterotoxin that induces chloride ion secretion (watery diarrhea)
V. vulnificus	Polysaccharide capsule	Antiphagocytic
	Cytolysins, proteases, collagenase	Mediates tissue destruction

Classical biotype, whereas strains responsible for the current seventh pandemic are of the El Tor biotype.

V. vulnificus and non-O1 *V. cholerae* produce acidic **polysaccharide capsules** that are important for disseminated infections. *V. cholerae* O1 does not produce a capsule, so infections with this organism do not spread beyond the confines of the intestine.

V. cholerae and *V. parahaemolyticus* possess two circular chromosomes, each of which carries essential genes for these bacteria. Plasmids, including those encoding antimicrobial resistance, are also commonly found in *Vibrio* species.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Virulence of *V. cholerae* involved acquisition of a sequence of genes including **TCP** on what is termed the **Vibrio Pathogenicity Island (VPI-1),** followed by infection with the **bacteriophage CTXΦ**, which encodes the genes for the two subunits of **cholera toxin** (*ctxA* and *ctxB*) (Table 26.3). TCP serves as the cell-surface receptor for the bacteriophage, permitting it to move into the bacterial cell, in which it becomes integrated into the *V. cholerae* genome. The lysogenic bacteriophage chromosomal locus also contains other virulence factors, including the *ace* gene (**accessory cholera enterotoxin**), *zot* gene (**zonula occludens toxin**), and *cep* gene (**chemotaxis proteins**). Multiple copies of these genes are found in *V. cholerae* O1 and O139, and their expression is coordinated by regulatory genes.

The cholera toxin is a **complex A-B toxin** that is structurally and functionally similar to the heat-labile enterotoxin of enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli* (ETEC). A ring of five identical B subunits of cholera toxin binds to the ganglioside GM_1 receptors on the intestinal epithelial cells. The active portion of the A subunit is internalized and interacts with G proteins that control adenylate cyclase, leading to the catabolic conversion of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). This results in a hypersecretion of water and electrolytes. Severely infected patients can lose as much as 1 liter of fluid per hour during the height of the disease. Such a tremendous loss of fluid would normally flush the organisms out of the gastrointestinal tract; however, *V. cholerae* are able to **adhere to the mucosal cell layer** by means of (1) the **TCP** encoded by the *tcp* gene complex, and (2) the *cep*-encoded **chemotaxis proteins.** Nonadherent strains are unable to establish infection.

In the absence of cholera toxin, *V. cholerae* O1 can still produce significant diarrhea through the action of the **accessory cholera enterotoxin** and **zonula occludens toxin.** The enterotoxin produces increased fluid secretion, and the zonula occludens toxin loosens the tight junctions (zonula occludens) of the small intestine mucosa, leading to increased intestinal permeability.

Unlike other non-O1 serotypes, *V. cholerae* O139 possesses the same virulence complex as the O1 strains. Thus the ability of the O139 strains to adhere to the intestinal mucosa and produce cholera toxin is the reason these strains can produce a watery diarrhea similar to cholera.

The means by which other *Vibrio* species cause disease is less clearly understood, although a variety of potential virulence factors have been identified. Most virulent strains of *V. parahaemolyticus* produce adhesins, a thermostable direct hemolysin (TDH; also called **Kanagawa hemolysin**), and type III secretion systems that mediate bacterial survival and expression of virulence factors. TDH is an enterotoxin that induces chloride ion secretion in epithelial cells by increasing intracellular calcium. An important method for classifying virulent strains of *V. parahaemolyticus* is detection of this hemolysin, which produces β-hemolytic colonies on agar media with human blood but not sheep blood. These virulent strains are referred to as **Kanagawa positive.**

In the presence of gastric acids, *V. vulnificus* rapidly degrades lysine, producing alkaline by-products that neutralize the acids. In addition, the bacteria are able to evade the host immune response by inducing macrophage apoptosis and to avoid phagocytosis by expression of a polysaccharide capsule. *V. vulnificus* also possesses surface proteins that mediate attachment to host cells and secretes cytolytic toxins leading to tissue necrosis.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Halophilic *Vibrio* species, including *V. cholerae,* grow naturally in **estuarine and marine environments** worldwide. All *Vibrio* species are able to survive and replicate in contaminated waters with increased salinity. Pathogenic vibrios can also flourish in waters with chitinous **shellfish** (e.g., oysters, clams, mussels); hence the association between *Vibrio* infections and the consumption of shellfish. Asymptomatically infected humans can also be an important reservoir for this organism in areas in which *V. cholerae* disease is endemic.

Seven major pandemics of cholera have occurred since 1817, resulting in thousands of deaths and major socioeconomic changes. Sporadic disease and epidemics occurred before this time, but worldwide spread of the disease

became possible with intercontinental travel resulting from increased commerce and wars.

The seventh pandemic, which was caused by ***V. cholerae* O1 biotype El Tor,** began in Asia in 1961 and spread to Africa, Europe, and Oceania in the 1970s and 1980s. In 1991, the pandemic strain spread to Peru and subsequently has caused disease in most countries in South and Central America, as well as in the United States and Canada. A second epidemic strain emerged in 1992 in India and rapidly spread across Asia but now remains primarily restricted to this area. This strain, ***V. cholerae* O139 Bengal,** produces the cholera toxin and shares other traits with *V. cholerae* O1. This is the first non-O1 strain capable of causing epidemic disease, and it is capable of producing disease in adults who were previously infected with the O1 strain (showing that no protective immunity is conferred).

It is estimated that 3 to 5 million cases of cholera and 120,000 deaths occur worldwide each year. The most recent epidemics occurred in 2004 in Bangladesh after flooding, in 2008 to 2009 in Zimbabwe, and in 2010 in Haiti after the devastating earthquake. Cholera is spread by **contaminated water and food** rather than direct person-to-person spread because a high inoculum (e.g., $>10^8$ organisms) is required to establish infection in a person with normal gastric acidity. In a person with achlorhydria or hypochlorhydria, the infectious dose can be as low as 10^3 to 10^5 organisms. Strains shed from patients are 10- to 100-fold more infectious than environmental strains, although this hyperinfectivity is lost within 24 hours of shedding. Thus cholera is usually seen in communities with **poor sanitation.** Indeed, one outcome from the cholera pandemics was recognition of the role of contaminated water in the spread of disease and the need to improve community sanitation systems so that the disease could be controlled. Thus it is not surprising to observe cholera outbreaks when natural disasters, such as the earthquake in Haiti, compromise the control of sanitary wastes. DNA sequencing of the genomes of epidemic strains has helped us to understand how epidemics develop and are maintained. *V. cholerae* strains in contaminated waters are typically polyclonal. In contrast, epidemic strains are monoclonal, which means they are able to initiate disease by specific virulence properties. Thus exposure to *V. cholerae* whose concentration in water may fluctuate during the seasons or after a natural disaster is not sufficient to maintain an epidemic. Exposure must be with the specific clone responsible for disease.

Infections caused by *V. parahaemolyticus, V. vulnificus,* and other pathogenic vibrios result from consumption of improperly cooked seafood, particularly oysters, or exposure to contaminated seawater. ***V. parahaemolyticus*** is the most common cause of bacterial gastroenteritis in Japan and Southeast Asia and is the most common *Vibrio* species responsible for gastroenteritis in the United States. ***V. vulnificus*** is not frequently isolated but is responsible for severe wound infections and a high incidence of fatal outcomes. *V. vulnificus* is the most common cause of *Vibrio* septicemia. Gastroenteritis caused by vibrios occurs throughout the year because oysters are typically contaminated with abundant organisms year-round. In contrast, septicemia and wound infections with *Vibrio* occur during the warm months, when the organisms in seawater can multiply to high numbers.

BOX 26.1 *Vibrio* Clinical Summaries

Vibrio cholerae

Cholera: it begins with an abrupt onset of watery diarrhea and vomiting and can progress to severe dehydration, metabolic acidosis and hypokalemia, and hypovolemic shock.

Gastroenteritis: milder forms of diarrheal disease can occur in toxin-negative strains of *V. cholerae* O1 and in non-O1 serotypes.

Vibrio parahaemolyticus

Gastroenteritis: it is generally self-limited, with an explosive onset of watery diarrhea and nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps, headache, and low-grade fever.

Wound infection: it is associated with exposure to contaminated water.

Vibrio vulnificus

Wound infection: severe, potentially fatal infections characterized by erythema, pain, bullae formation, tissue necrosis, and septicemia.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Vibrio cholerae

The majority of individuals exposed to toxigenic ***V. cholerae* O1** have asymptomatic infections or self-limited diarrhea; however, some individuals develop severe, rapidly fatal diarrhea (Box 26.1). The clinical manifestations of cholera begin an average of 2 to 3 days after ingestion of the bacteria (can be <12 hours), with the abrupt onset of watery diarrhea and vomiting. Fever is rare and may be indicative of a secondary infection. As more fluid is lost, the feces-streaked stool specimens become colorless and odorless, free of protein, and speckled with mucus **("rice-water" stools).** The resulting severe fluid and electrolyte loss can lead to dehydration, painful muscle cramps, metabolic acidosis (bicarbonate loss), and hypokalemia and hypovolemic shock (potassium loss), with cardiac arrhythmia and renal failure. The mortality rate is as high as 70% in untreated patients but less than 1% in patients who are promptly treated with replacement of lost fluids and electrolytes. (Clinical Case 26.1) Disease caused by ***V. cholerae* O139** can be as severe as disease caused by *V. cholerae* O1. Other serotypes of *V. cholerae* (commonly called ***V. cholerae* non-O1**) do not produce cholera toxin and are usually responsible for mild watery diarrhea. These strains can also cause extraintestinal infections such as septicemia, particularly in patients with liver disease or hematologic malignancies.

Vibrio parahaemolyticus

The severity of gastroenteritis caused by *V. parahaemolyticus* can range from a self-limited diarrhea to a mild, cholera-like illness. In general, the disease develops after a 5- to 72-hour incubation period (mean, 24 hours), with explosive **watery diarrhea.** No grossly evident blood or mucus is found in stool specimens except in severe cases. Headache, abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, and low-grade fever may persist for 72 hours or more. The patient usually experiences an uneventful recovery. (Clinical Case 26.2) Wound infections with this organism can occur in people exposed to contaminated seawater.

Clinical Case 26.1 **Cholera Caused by *Vibrio cholerae***

Although cholera is widespread in Africa, Asia, and Latin America, toxigenic *V. cholerae* O1 is also endemic along the U.S. Gulf Coast. Most disease reported in the United States occurs in travelers to countries with an active cholera outbreak in the community; however, after Hurricane Katrina and Hurricane Rita, unsanitary conditions in coastal communities along the Gulf increased the risk of cholera, as illustrated by the following report (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *MMWR* 55:31–32, 2006). Three weeks after extensive damage to their southeastern Louisiana community by Hurricane Rita, a 43-year-old man and his 46-year-old wife developed diarrhea. Whereas the woman had only mild diarrhea, the man was hospitalized the next day with low-grade fever, muscle pains, nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps, and severe diarrhea and dehydration. He rapidly progressed to complete loss of renal function and respiratory and cardiac failure. With antibiotic therapy and aggressive rehydration therapy, he eventually recovered to his previous state of health. Toxigenic *V. cholerae* O1, serotype Inaba, biotype El Tor, was isolated at the hospital from stool specimens of the two patients. The isolates were indistinguishable from each other and from other isolates previously associated with the Gulf Coast by use of pulsed-field gel electrophoresis. This case illustrates the rapid progression of cholera resulting from severe diarrhea and dehydration, the need for aggressive rehydration therapy, and the association with deterioration of the public health infrastructure after a natural disaster.

Clinical Case 26.2 ***Vibrio parahaemolyticus* Disease**

One of the largest known outbreaks of *V. parahaemolyticus* in the United States was reported in 2005 by McLaughlin and associates (*N Engl J Med* 353:1463–1470, 2005). On July 19, the Nevada Office of Epidemiology reported isolation of *V. parahaemolyticus* from a person who developed gastroenteritis 1 day after eating raw oysters served on an Alaskan cruise ship. Epidemiologic investigations determined that 62 individuals (29% attack rate) developed gastroenteritis after consumption of as few as one raw oyster. In addition to watery diarrhea, the ill individuals reported abdominal cramping (82%), chills (44%), myalgias (36%), headache (32%), and vomiting (29%), with symptoms lasting a median of 5 days. None of the persons required hospitalization. All of the oysters were harvested from a single farm in which the water temperatures in July and August were recorded at 16.6° C and 17.4° C. Water temperatures above 15° C are considered favorable for growth of *V. parahaemolyticus*. Since 1997, the mean water temperatures at the oyster farm have increased 0.21° C per year, and they now remain consistently above 15° C. Thus this seasonal warming has extended the range of *V. parahaemolyticus* and the associated gastrointestinal disease. This outbreak illustrates the role of contaminated shellfish in *V. parahaemolyticus* disease and the clinical symptoms typically observed.

Clinical Case 26.3 ***Vibrio vulnificus* Septicemia**

Septicemia and wound infections are well-known complications after exposure to *V. vulnificus*. The following clinical case published in *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report* (*MMWR* 45:621–624, 1996) illustrates typical features of these diseases. A 38-year-old man with a history of alcoholism and insulin-dependent diabetes developed fever, chills, nausea, and myalgia 3 days after eating raw oysters. He was admitted to the local hospital the next day with high fevers and two necrotic lesions on his left leg. The clinical diagnosis of sepsis was made, and the patient was transferred to the intensive care unit. Antibiotic therapy was initiated, and on the second hospital day *V. vulnificus* was isolated from blood specimens collected at the time of admission. Despite aggressive medical management, the patient continued to deteriorate and died on the third day of hospitalization. This case illustrates the rapid, often fatal progression of *V. vulnificus* disease and the risk factor of eating raw shellfish, particularly for individuals with liver disease. A similar progression of disease could have been observed if this individual had been exposed to *V. vulnificus* through a contaminated superficial wound.

Vibrio vulnificus

V. vulnificus is a particularly virulent species of *Vibrio* responsible for more than 90% of the *Vibrio*-related deaths in the United States. The most common presentations are **primary septicemia** after consumption of contaminated raw oysters or rapidly progressive **wound infection** after exposure to contaminated seawater. Patients with primary septicemia present with a sudden onset of fever and chills, vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain. Secondary skin lesions with tissue necrosis are often present. The mortality in patients with *V. vulnificus* septicemia can be as high as 50%. (Clinical Case 26.3) The wound infections are characterized by initial swelling, erythema, and pain at the wound site, followed by the development of vesicles or bullae and eventual tissue necrosis together with systemic signs of fever and chills. Mortality associated with wound infections ranges from 20% to 30%. *V. vulnificus* infections are most severe in patients with hepatic disease, hematopoietic disease, or chronic renal failure and in those receiving immunosuppressive drugs.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Vibrio species are small (0.5 to 1.5 to 3 μm), curved, gram-negative rods. Large numbers of organisms are typically present in the stools of patients at the onset of cholera, so the direct microscopic examination of stool specimens can provide a rapid, presumptive diagnosis in cholera outbreaks; however, as disease progresses the organisms are diluted with massive fluid loss, and microscopy is less useful. Examination of Gram-stained wound specimens may also be useful in a setting suggestive of *V. vulnificus* infection (e.g., exposure of susceptible individual to seafood or seawater).

Immunoassays

Immunoassays for the detection of cholera toxin or the O1 and O139 lipopolysaccharides are used for the diagnosis of cholera in endemic areas. These tests have variable sensitivity (as high as 97%) and specificity and have decreasing value as the disease progresses because fewer organisms are present in the clinical specimens.

Nucleic Acid Amplification Tests

Commercial nucleic acid amplification tests are now widely used for diagnosis of enteric infections because they are rapid and have high sensitivity compared with alternative tests. Most of these tests are multiplex tests, allowing detection of multiple bacterial, viral, and parasitic enteric pathogens. These are rapidly becoming the standard of diagnosis for enteric infections.

Culture

Vibrio organisms survive poorly in an acidic or dry environment. Specimens must be collected early in the disease and inoculated promptly onto culture media. If culture will be delayed, the specimen should be mixed in a Cary-Blair transport medium and refrigerated. Vibrios have low survival rates in buffered glycerol-saline, which is the transport medium used for most enteric pathogens.

Vibrios grow on most media used in clinical laboratories for stool and wound cultures, including blood agar and MacConkey agar. Special selective agar for vibrios (e.g., thiosulfate citrate bile salts sucrose **[TCBS]** agar), as well as an enrichment broth (e.g., **alkaline peptone broth,** pH 8.6), can also be used to recover vibrios in specimens with a mixture of organisms (e.g., stools). Isolates are identified with selective biochemical tests and serotyped using polyvalent antisera. In tests performed to identify halophilic vibrios, the media for biochemical testing must be supplemented with 1% NaCl.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Patients with cholera must be promptly treated with **fluid and electrolyte replacement** before the resultant massive fluid loss leads to hypovolemic shock. Antibiotic therapy, although of secondary value, can reduce toxin production and clinical symptoms and decrease transmission by the more rapid elimination of the organism. A single dose of **azithromycin** is currently the drug of choice for children and adults because macrolide resistance is relatively uncommon. A single dose of doxycycline or ciprofloxacin in nonpregnant adults can be used as alternative therapy if demonstrated to be active in vitro; however, resistance to the tetracycline and fluoroquinolones is relatively common.

V. parahaemolyticus gastroenteritis is usually a self-limited disease, although antibiotic therapy can be used in addition to fluid and electrolyte therapy in patients with severe infections. *V. vulnificus* wound infections and septicemia must be promptly treated with antibiotic therapy. The combination of minocycline or doxycycline with ceftriaxone or cefotaxime appears to be the most effective treatment.

People infected with *V. cholerae* can shed bacteria for the first few days of acute illness and represent important sources of new infections. Although long-term carriage of *V. cholerae* does not occur, vibrios are free living in estuarine and marine reservoirs. Only improvements in sanitation can lead to effective control of the disease. This involves adequate sewage management, use of purification systems to eliminate contamination of the water supply, and implementation of appropriate steps to prevent contamination of food.

Although no oral cholera vaccine is available in the United States, a variety of killed oral **vaccines** are available outside the United States; however, none of the vaccines provide long-term protection. A killed vaccine consisting of whole cells of *V. cholerae* O1 plus recombinant cholera toxin B subunit or a bivalent killed vaccine of whole cells of *V. cholerae* O1 and O139 is recommended for short-term protection of travelers in high-risk settings (e.g., exposure to untreated water or care of ill patients) and endemic regions of the world. Antibiotic prophylaxis of contacts to household patients with cholera can limit the spread but is generally ineffective in communities in which disease occurs.

Aeromonas

Aeromonas is a **gram-negative, facultative anaerobic, fermentative rod** that morphologically resembles members of the family Enterobacteriaceae. As with *Vibrio,* extensive reorganization of the taxonomy of these bacteria has occurred. Almost 50 species and subspecies of *Aeromonas* have been described, many of which are associated with human disease. The most important pathogens are ***A. hydrophila, A. caviae,*** and ***A. veronii*** biovar sobria. The organisms are ubiquitous in fresh and brackish water.

Aeromonas species cause three forms of disease: (1) **diarrheal disease** in otherwise healthy people, (2) **wound infections,** and (3) **opportunistic systemic disease** in immunocompromised patients (particularly those with hepatobiliary disease or an underlying malignancy). Intestinal disease can present as acute watery diarrhea, dysenteric diarrhea characterized by severe abdominal pain and blood and leukocytes in the stools, or a chronic illness with intermittent diarrhea. Gastrointestinal carriage has been observed in individuals, with the highest carriage in the warm months. Thus the significance of isolating *Aeromonas* in enteric specimens must be determined by the clinical presentation of the patient. Gastroenteritis typically occurs after the ingestion of contaminated water or food (e.g., fresh produce, meats, dairy products), whereas wound infections most commonly result from a traumatic injury associated with exposure to contaminated water. One unusual form of *Aeromonas* wound infections is associated with the use of medicinal leeches whose gut is colonized with *A. veronii* biovar sobria (Clinical Case 26.4).

Although numerous potential virulence factors (e.g., endotoxin, hemolysins, heat-labile and heat-stable enterotoxins) have been identified for *Aeromonas,* their precise role in disease is unknown.

Acute diarrheal disease is self-limited, and only supportive care is indicated in affected patients. Antimicrobial therapy is necessary in patients with chronic diarrheal disease, wound infections, or systemic disease. *Aeromonas* species are resistant to penicillins, most cephalosporins,

Clinical Case 26.4 ***Aeromonas* Wound Infections**

Medicinal leeches *(Hiruda medicinalis)* are sometimes used in plastic surgery to stimulate blood flow in surgical skin grafts. Leeches remove stagnant blood and stimulate oozing of blood into the skin graft for up to 48 hours after removal of the leech. This bleeding is mediated by an inhibitor of thrombin, hirudin (source of the genus name), which is present in the saliva of leeches. *Aeromonas* is present in the leech gut and produces proteolytic enzymes used by the leech to digest blood. One complication of using leeches is wound infections with *Aeromonas,* as illustrated by the patient described by Snower and associates (*J Clin Microbiol* 27:1421–1422, 1989). A 62-year-old woman had basal cell epitheliomas removed from her forehead, with the surgical site covered with skin grafts. Medicinal leeches were used to relieve swelling at the graft site. The leeches were removed from a leech tank and applied to the wound for 1 hour on four separate occasions. Eleven days after the initial surgery, the graft appeared infected and was removed. Cultures of this graft, and leeches and water from the leech tank, were positive for *Aeromonas*. The patient was treated with parenteral antibiotics, and regrafting without the use of leeches was successful.

and erythromycin. Fluoroquinolones (e.g., levofloxacin, ciprofloxacin) are almost uniformly active against *Aeromonas* strains isolated in the United States and Europe; however, resistance has been reported in strains recovered in Asia. Thus the long-term effectiveness of fluoroquinolones remains to be seen. A fluoroquinolone can be used initially for empirical therapy, but activity should be confirmed with in vitro susceptibility tests.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Albert, M.J., Nair, G.B., 2005. *Vibrio cholerae* O139-10 years on. Rev Med Microbiol 16, 135–143.

Baker-Austin, C., Oliver, J., 2018. *Vibrio vulnificus*: new insights into a deadly opportunistic pathogen. Environmental Microbiol 20, 423–430.

Dick, M.H., Guillerm, M., Moussy, F., et al., 2012. Review of two decades of cholera diagnostics—how far have we really come. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 6, e1845.

Harris, J.B., LaRocque, R.C., Qadri, F., et al., 2012. Cholera. Lancet 379, 2466–2476.

Janda, J.M., Abbott, S., 2010. The genus *Aeromonas*: taxonomy, pathogenicity, and infection. Clin Microbiol Rev 23, 35–73.

Kitaoka, M., Miyata, S.T., Unterweger, D., et al., 2011. Antibiotic resistance mechanisms of *Vibrio cholerae*. J Med Microbiol 60, 397–407.

Miyata, S.T., Bachmann, V., Pukatzki, S., 2013. Type VI secretion system regulation as a consequence of evolutionary pressure. J Med Microbiol 62, 663–676.

Moore, S., Thomson, N., Mutreja, A., et al., 2014. Widespread epidemic cholera due to a restricted subset of *Vibrio cholerae* clones. Clin Microbiol Infect 20, 373–379.

Parker, J., Shaw, J., 2011. *Aeromonas* spp. clinical microbiology and disease. J Infect 62, 109–118.

Pastor, M., Pedraz, J., Esquisabela, A., 2013. The state-of-the-art of approved and under-development cholera vaccines. Vaccine 31, 4069–4078.

Snower, D.P., Ruef, C., Kuritza, A.P., et al., 1989. *Aeromonas hydrophila* infection associated with the use of medicinal leeches. J Clin Microbiol 27, 1421–1422.

Zhang, L., Orth, K., 2013. Virulence determinants for *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* infection. Curr Opin Microbiol 16, 70–77.

Case Study and Questions

A 57-year-old man was hospitalized in New York with a 2-day history of severe watery diarrhea. The illness had begun 1 day after his return from Ecuador. The patient was dehydrated and suffering from an electrolyte imbalance (acidosis, hypokalemia). He made an uneventful recovery after fluid and electrolyte replacement was instituted to compensate for the losses resulting from the watery diarrhea. Stool cultures were positive for *Vibrio cholerae.*

1. What are the characteristic clinical symptoms of cholera?
2. What is the most important virulence factor in this disease? What other virulence factors have been described? What are the modes of their action?
3. How did this patient acquire this infection? How does this situation differ from the acquisition of infections caused by *V. parahaemolyticus* or *V. vulnificus*?
4. How can cholera be controlled in areas in which infection is endemic?

27 Pseudomonas *and Related Bacteria*

A 70-year-old man who had been admitted 7 days previously to the intensive care unit for acute shortness of breath and a temperature of 39°C developed a new productive cough and associated pleuritic chest pain. Examination of his chest revealed crackles at the bases of both lungs, with rhonchi present in both upper lobes; the chest radiograph indicated bilateral opacities consistent with bronchopneumonia. Sputum and blood cultures were performed, and 24 hours later the laboratory reported isolation of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. *Pseudomonas* and the other nonfermentative rods discussed in this chapter are primarily opportunistic pathogens responsible for infections in hospitalized patients, in patients with innate immunity defects (e.g., compromised pulmonary function), or after trauma (e.g., contamination of a wound).

1. *Pseudomonas, Burkholderia,* and *Stenotrophomonas* share what epidemiologic factors?
2. What is the most important virulence factor in *P. aeruginosa*, and how does it function?
3. What patient population is at risk for infections with *B. cepacia*? What is the infection in these patients?
4. Which antibiotics are generally effective against *Pseudomonas* but not *Stenotrophomonas*, and against *S. maltophilia* but not *P. aeruginosa*?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

PSEUDOMONAS AERUGINOSA

Trigger Words

Capsule, exotoxin A, opportunistic, nosocomial infections

Biology and Virulence

- Small gram-negative rods typically arranged in pairs
- Obligate aerobe; glucose oxidizer; simple nutritional needs
- Mucoid polysaccharide capsule
- Multiple virulence factors, including adhesins (e.g., flagella, pili, lipopolysaccharide, alginate capsule), secreted toxins and enzymes (e.g., exotoxin A, pyocyanin, pyoverdin, elastases, proteases, phospholipase C, exoenzymes S and T), and antimicrobial resistance (intrinsic, acquired, and adaptive)

Epidemiology

- Ubiquitous in nature and moist environmental hospital sites (e.g., flowers, sinks, toilets, mechanical ventilation, and dialysis equipment)
- No seasonal incidence of disease
- Can transiently colonize the respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts of hospitalized patients, particularly those treated with broad-spectrum antibiotics, exposed to respiratory therapy equipment, or hospitalized for extended periods
- Patients at high risk for developing infections include neutropenic or immunocompromised patients, cystic fibrosis patients, and burn patients

Diseases

- Diseases include infections of the respiratory tract, urinary tract, skin and soft tissues, ears, and eyes, as well as bacteremia and endocarditis

Diagnosis

- Grows rapidly on common laboratory media
- Identified by colonial characteristics (e.g., β-hemolysis, green pigment, grape-like odor) and simple biochemical tests (e.g., positive oxidase reaction, oxidative utilization of carbohydrates)

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Combined use of effective antibiotics (e.g., aminoglycoside and β-lactam antibiotics) frequently required; monotherapy is generally ineffective and can select for resistant strains
- Hospital infection-control efforts should concentrate on preventing contamination of sterile medical equipment and nosocomial transmission; unnecessary use of broad-spectrum antibiotics can select for resistant organisms

Pseudomonas and related nonfermentative rods are opportunistic pathogens of plants, animals, and humans. To complicate our understanding of these organisms, their taxonomic classification has undergone numerous changes in recent years. Despite the many genera, most clinically significant isolates are members of five genera: *Pseudomonas, Burkholderia, Stenotrophomonas, Acinetobacter,* and *Moraxella* (Table 27.1). These organisms will be the focus of this chapter.

Pseudomonas

The genus *Pseudomonas* originally consisted of a large heterogeneous collection of nonfermentative bacteria that were grouped together because of their morphologic similarity. They were referred to as pseudomonads because they are commonly arranged in pairs of cells that resemble a single cell (Fig. 27.1). In 1992, this genus was subdivided into a number of new genera (including *Burkholderia* and *Stenotrophomonas*); however, there are still more than 250 species in *Pseudomonas*. ***P. aeruginosa*** is the most important species and the one discussed in this chapter.

Members of the genus are found in soil, decaying organic matter, vegetation, and water. Unfortunately, they are also found throughout the hospital environment in moist reservoirs such as food, cut flowers, sinks, toilets, floor mops, respiratory therapy and dialysis equipment, and even disinfectant solutions. It is uncommon for carriage to persist in humans as part of the normal microbial flora, except in hospitalized patients and ambulatory, immunocompromised hosts.

TABLE 27.1 Important Nonfermentative Gram-Negative Rods

Organism	Historical Derivation
Acinetobacter	*akinetos,* unable to move; *bactrum,* rod (nonmotile rods)
A. baumannii	*baumannii,* named after the microbiologist Baumann
Burkholderia	*Burkholderia,* named after the microbiologist Burkholder
B. cepacia	*cepacia,* like an onion (original strains isolated from rotten onions)
B. mallei	*mallei,* the disease glanders
B. pseudomallei	*pseudes,* false; *mallei* (refers to the fact this species closely resembles *B. mallei*)
Moraxella	*Moraxella,* named after the Swiss ophthalmologist Morax, who first recognized the species
M. catarrhalis	*catarrhus,* downflowing or catarrh (refers to inflammation of the respiratory tract mucus membranes)
Pseudomonas	*pseudes,* false; *monas,* a unit (refers to Gram-stain appearance of pairs of organisms that resemble a single cell)
P. aeruginosa	*aeruginosa,* full of copper rust or green (refers to blue and yellow pigments produced by this species that appear green)
Stenotrophomonas	*stenos,* narrow; *trophos,* one who feeds; *monas,* unit (refers to observation that these are narrow bacteria that require few substrates for growth)
S. maltophilia	*malt,* malt; *philia,* friend (friend of malt)

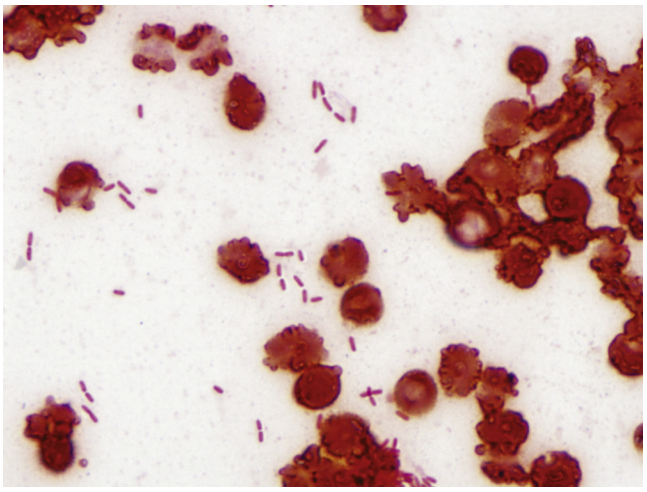


Fig. 27.1 Gram stain of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* with cells arranged singly and in pairs.

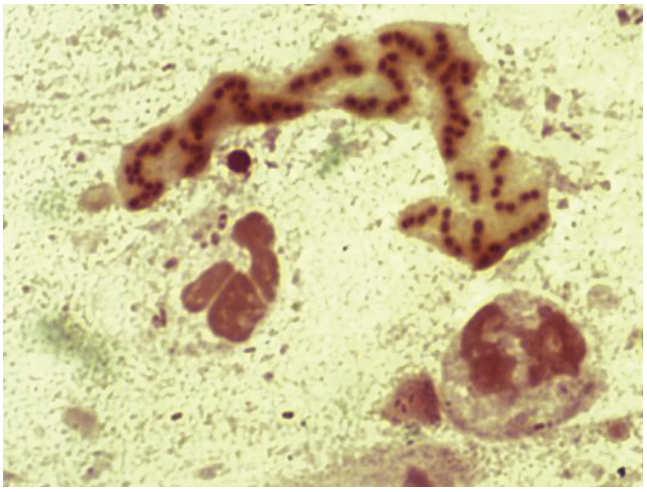


Fig. 27.2 Gram stain of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* surrounded by mucoid capsular material in cystic fibrosis patient.

The broad environmental distribution of *Pseudomonas* is made possible by their simple growth requirements and nutritional versatility. They are capable of using many organic compounds as sources of carbon and nitrogen, and some strains can even grow in distilled water by using trace nutrients. These organisms also possess many structural factors, enzymes, and toxins that enhance their virulence and render them resistant to most commonly used antibiotics. Indeed, it is surprising that they are not more common pathogens, considering their ubiquitous presence, ability to grow in virtually any environment, virulence properties, and resistance to many antibiotics. Fortunately, *Pseudomonas* infections are **primarily opportunistic** (i.e., restricted to patients receiving broad-spectrum antibiotics that suppress the normal intestinal bacterial population or patients with compromised host defenses). Additionally, expression of virulence traits is regulated by complex cell-density signaling (quorum sensing) systems that in turn are influenced by host factors such as the presence of serum and cytokines.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Pseudomonas species are usually motile, straight or slightly curved, gram-negative rods (0.5 to 1.0 × 1.5 to 5.0 μm) typically **arranged in pairs** (see Fig. 27.1). The organisms utilize carbohydrates through **aerobic respiration,** with oxygen the terminal electron acceptor. Although described as obligate aerobes, they can grow anaerobically using nitrate or arginine as an alternate electron acceptor. The presence of **cytochrome oxidase** (detected in a rapid 5-minute test) in *Pseudomonas* species is used to differentiate them from the Enterobacteriaceae and *Stenotrophomonas*. Some strains appear **mucoid** because of the abundance of a polysaccharide capsule (Fig. 27.2); these strains are particularly common in patients with cystic fibrosis (CF). Some species produce **diffusible pigments** (e.g., pyocyanin [blue], pyoverdin [yellow-green], pyorubin [reddish-brown]) that give them a characteristic appearance in culture and simplify the preliminary identification.

P. aeruginosa has one of the largest bacterial genomes, encoding 5567 genes including 468 regulatory genes. This is important for the understanding that *P. aeruginosa* is highly adaptable, and is capable of growth in a wide range of environmental conditions and in the presence of antimicrobials.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

P. aeruginosa has many virulence factors, including adhesins, toxins, and enzymes. In addition, the delivery system

used by *Pseudomonas*, the type III secretion system, is particularly effective in injecting toxins into the host cell. Despite the diversity of virulence factors, most experts believe that multiple factors must work together for *P. aeruginosa* to cause disease.

Adhesins

As with many bacteria, adherence to host cells is critical for establishing infection. At least four surface components of *P. aeruginosa* facilitate this adherence: (1) flagella, (2) pili, (3) lipopolysaccharide (LPS), and (4) alginate. Flagella and pili also mediate motility in *P. aeruginosa,* and the lipid A component of LPS is responsible for endotoxin activity. Alginate is a mucoid exopolysaccharide that forms a prominent **capsule** on the bacterial surface and protects the organism from phagocytosis and antibiotic killing. Production of this mucoid polysaccharide is under complex regulation. The genes controlling production of the alginate polysaccharide can be activated in patients such as those with CF or other chronic respiratory diseases, who are predisposed to long-term colonization with these mucoid strains of *P. aeruginosa.*

Secreted Toxins and Enzymes

Exotoxin A (ETA) is believed to be one of the most important virulence factors produced by pathogenic strains of *P. aeruginosa.* This toxin **disrupts protein synthesis** by blocking peptide chain elongation in eukaryotic cells, much like the diphtheria toxin produced by *Corynebacterium diphtheriae.* However, the toxins produced by these two organisms are structurally and immunologically different, and ETA is less potent than diphtheria toxin. ETA most likely contributes to the dermatonecrosis that occurs in burn wounds, corneal damage in ocular infections, and tissue damage in chronic pulmonary infections.

A blue pigment, **pyocyanin,** produced by *P. aeruginosa,* catalyzes the production of superoxide and hydrogen peroxide, which are toxic forms of oxygen. This pigment also stimulates interleukin (IL)-8 release, leading to enhanced attraction of neutrophils. A yellow-green pigment, **pyoverdin,** is a siderophore that binds iron for use in metabolism. This pigment also regulates secretion of other virulence factors including ETA.

Two elastases, LasA **(serine protease)** and LasB **(zinc metalloprotease),** act synergistically to degrade elastin, resulting in damage to elastin-containing tissues and producing the lung parenchymal damage and hemorrhagic lesions **(ecthyma gangrenosum)** associated with disseminated *P. aeruginosa* infections. These enzymes can also degrade complement components and inhibit neutrophil chemotaxis and function, leading to further spread and tissue damage in acute infections. Chronic *Pseudomonas* infections are characterized by the formation of antibodies to LasA and LasB, with the deposition of immune complexes in the infected tissues. Similar to the elastases, **alkaline protease** contributes to tissue destruction and spread of *P. aeruginosa.* It also interferes with the host immune response.

Phospholipase C is a heat-labile hemolysin that breaks down lipids and lecithin, facilitating tissue destruction. The exact role of this enzyme in respiratory and urinary tract infections (UTIs) is unclear, although an important association between hemolysin production and disease has been recognized.

Exoenzymes S and **T** are extracellular toxins produced by *P. aeruginosa.* When the type III secretion system introduces the proteins into their target eukaryotic cells, epithelial cell damage occurs, facilitating bacterial spread, tissue invasion, and necrosis. This cytotoxicity is mediated by actin rearrangement.

Antibiotic Resistance

P. aeruginosa is intrinsically **resistant to many antibiotics** and can acquire resistance to additional antibiotics through horizontal transfer of resistance genes and mutations. The main mechanisms responsible for **intrinsic resistance** are the low rate of movement of antibiotics through the outer membrane pores into the bacterial cell, combined with the rapid efflux of antibiotics caused by intrinsic regulation of efflux pumps. Resistance to additional antibiotics such as aminoglycosides and β-lactams can be acquired **(acquired resistance)** through horizontal transfer of resistance genes on plasmids and other genetic elements or mutations of genes that increase expression of resistance. A third form of resistance, **adaptive resistance,** is induced when *Pseudomonas* is exposed to environmental stimuli or specific antibiotics. For example, biofilm formation, such as in the lungs of a CF patient or on the surface of catheters, can trigger bacterial regulatory genes that permit expression of resistance. In the same way, exposure to some β-lactam antibiotics (e.g., ceftazidime) triggers the expression of the ampC gene in *Pseudomonas* that results in inactivation of many β-lactam antibiotics. It is important to recognize that in vitro susceptibility tests can identify resistance caused by intrinsic and acquired mechanisms but likely would not be able to predict adaptive resistance, underlying the limitations of these lab tests.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Pseudomonas is an opportunistic pathogen present in a variety of environments. The ability to isolate this organism from moist surfaces may be limited only by the efforts to look for the organism. *Pseudomonas* has minimal nutritional requirements, tolerates a wide range of temperatures (4° C to 42° C), and is resistant to many antibiotics and disinfectants. Indeed, the recovery of *Pseudomonas* from an environmental source (e.g., hospital sink or floor) means very little unless there is epidemiologic evidence that the contaminated site is a reservoir for infection.

Furthermore, isolation of *Pseudomonas* from a hospitalized patient is worrisome but does not normally justify therapeutic intervention unless there is evidence of disease. The recovery of *Pseudomonas,* particularly species other than *P. aeruginosa,* from a clinical specimen may represent transient colonization of the patient or environmental contamination of the specimen during collection or laboratory processing. Patients at high risk for developing infections with *P. aeruginosa* include neutropenic or immunocompromised patients, CF patients, burn patients, and individuals receiving broad-spectrum antibiotics. It is estimated that *P. aeruginosa* is responsible for more than 50,000 healthcare associated infections annually in the United States and approximately 440 deaths.

BOX 27.1 Clinical Summaries for Nonfermentative Gram-Negative Rods

Pseudomonas aeruginosa

Pulmonary infections: range from mild irritation of the bronchi (tracheobronchitis) to necrosis of the lung parenchyma (necrotizing bronchopneumonia)
Primary skin infections: opportunistic infections of existing wounds (e.g., burns) to localized infections of hair follicles (e.g., associated with immersion in contaminated waters such as hot tubs)
Urinary tract infections: opportunistic infections in patients with indwelling urinary catheters and after exposure to broad-spectrum antibiotics (selects for these antibiotic-resistant bacteria)
Ear infections: can range from mild irritation of external ear ("swimmer's ear") to invasive destruction of cranial bones adjacent to the infected ear
Eye infections: opportunistic infections of mildly damaged corneas
Bacteremia: dissemination of bacteria from primary infection (e.g., pulmonary) to other organs and tissues; can be characterized by necrotic skin lesions (ecthyma gangrenosum)

***Burkholderia cepacia* Complex**

Pulmonary infections: most worrisome infections are in patients with chronic granulomatous disease or cystic fibrosis, in whom infections can progress to significant destruction of pulmonary tissue
Opportunistic infections: urinary tract infections in catheterized patients; bacteremia in immunocompromised patients with contaminated intravascular catheters

Burkholderia pseudomallei

Pulmonary infections: can range from asymptomatic colonization to abscess formation (melioidosis)

Stenotrophomonas maltophilia

Opportunistic infections: a variety of infections (most commonly bacteremia and pneumonia) in immunocompromised patients previously exposed to broad-spectrum antimicrobial therapy

***Acinetobacter* Species**

Pulmonary infections: opportunistic pathogen in patients receiving respiratory therapy
Wound infections: traumatic (e.g., resulting from military conflicts) and nosocomial wounds

Moraxella catarrhalis

Pulmonary infections: tracheobronchitis or bronchopneumonia in patients with chronic pulmonary diseases

CLINICAL DISEASES

Pulmonary Infections

P. aeruginosa infections of the lower respiratory tract can range in severity from **asymptomatic colonization** or benign inflammation of the bronchials **(tracheobronchitis)** to severe **necrotizing bronchopneumonia** (Box 27.1). Colonization is seen in patients with CF, other chronic lung diseases, or neutropenia. Infections in patients with CF have been associated with exacerbation of the underlying disease and invasive pulmonary disease. Mucoid strains are commonly isolated from these patients and are difficult to eradicate because chronic infections with these bacteria are associated with progressive increase in acquired antibiotic resistance and expression of adaptive resistance (see earlier discussion).

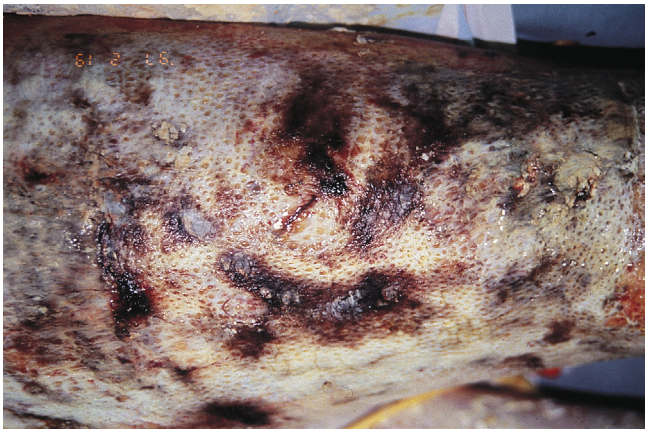


Fig. 27.3 *Pseudomonas* infection of burn wound. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.B., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. St Louis, Mosby.)

Conditions that predispose immunocompromised patients to infections with *Pseudomonas* include (1) previous therapy with broad-spectrum antibiotics that eliminate the normal, protective bacterial population and (2) use of mechanical ventilation equipment, which may introduce the organism to the lower airways. Invasive disease in this population is characterized by a diffuse, typically bilateral bronchopneumonia with microabscess formation and tissue necrosis. The mortality rate is as high as 70%.

Primary Skin and Soft-Tissue Infections

P. aeruginosa can cause a variety of primary skin infections. The most recognized are infections of **burn wounds** (Fig. 27.3). Colonization of a burn wound, followed by localized vascular damage, tissue necrosis, and ultimately bacteremia, is common in patients with severe burns. The moist surface of the burn and inability of neutrophils to penetrate into the wounds predispose patients to such infections. Wound management with topical antibiotic creams has had only limited success in controlling these infections.

Folliculitis (Fig. 27.4; Clinical Case 27.1) is another common infection caused by *Pseudomonas,* resulting from immersion in contaminated water (e.g., hot tubs, whirlpools, swimming pools). Secondary infections with *Pseudomonas* also occur in people who have acne or who depilate their legs. Finally, *P. aeruginosa* can cause fingernail infections in people whose hands are frequently exposed to water or who frequent "nail salons."

P. aeruginosa is also the most common cause of **osteochondritis** (inflammation of bone and cartilage) of the foot after a penetrating injury (e.g., associated with stepping on a nail).

Urinary Tract Infections

Infection of the urinary tract is seen primarily in patients with long-term **indwelling urinary catheters.** Typically, such patients are treated with multiple courses of antibiotics, which tend to select for the more resistant strains of bacteria, such as *Pseudomonas.*

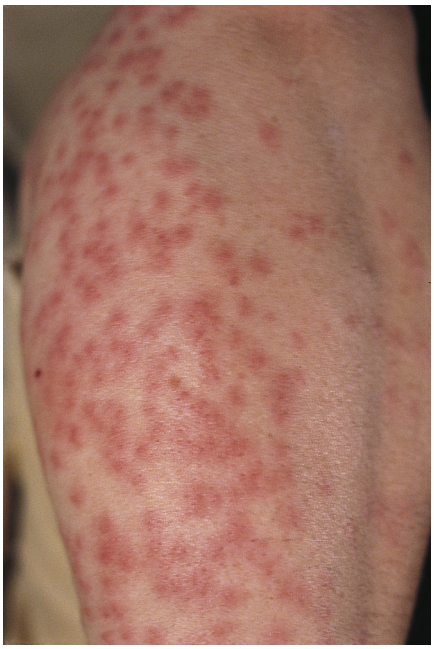


Fig. 27.4 *Pseudomonas* folliculitis. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.B., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. St Louis, Mosby.)

Clinical Case 27.1 *Pseudomonas* Folliculitis

Ratnam and associates (*J Clin Microbiol* 23:655–659, 1986) described an outbreak of folliculitis caused by *P. aeruginosa* in guests of a Canadian hotel. A number of guests complained of a skin rash that began as pruritic erythematous papules and progressed to erythematous pustules distributed in the axilla and over the abdomen and buttocks. For most patients, the rash resolved spontaneously over a 5-day period. The local health department investigated the outbreak and determined the source was a whirlpool contaminated with a high concentration of *P. aeruginosa*. The outbreak was terminated when the whirlpool was drained, cleaned, and superchlorinated. Skin infections such as this are common in individuals with extensive exposure to contaminated water.

Ear Infections

External otitis is frequently caused by *P. aeruginosa*, with swimming an important risk factor **("swimmer's ear").** This localized infection can be managed with topical antibiotics and drying agents. **Malignant external otitis** is a virulent form of disease seen primarily in persons with diabetes and elderly patients. It can invade the underlying tissues, damage the cranial nerves and bones, and be life-threatening. Aggressive antimicrobial and surgical intervention is required for patients with the latter disease. *P. aeruginosa* is also associated with **chronic otitis media.**

Eye Infections

Infections of the eye occur after initial trauma to the cornea (e.g., abrasion from contact lens, scratch on the eye surface) and then exposure to *P. aeruginosa* in contaminated water. **Corneal ulcers** develop and can progress to rapidly progressive, eye-threatening disease unless prompt treatment is initiated.

Bacteremia and Endocarditis

Bacteremia caused by *P. aeruginosa* is clinically indistinguishable from that caused by other gram-negative bacteria. However, the mortality rate in affected patients is higher with *P. aeruginosa* bacteremia because of (1) the predilection of the organism for immunocompromised patients, (2) difficulty in treating antibiotic-resistant strains, and (3) the inherent virulence of *Pseudomonas.* Bacteremia occurs most often in patients with neutropenia, diabetes mellitus, extensive burns, and hematologic malignancies. Most bacteremias originate from infections of the lower respiratory tract, urinary tract, and skin and soft tissue (particularly burn wound infections). Although seen in a minority of bacteremic patients, characteristic skin lesions **(ecthyma gangrenosum)** may develop. The lesions manifest as erythematous vesicles that become hemorrhagic, necrotic, and ulcerated. Microscopic examination of the lesion shows abundant organisms, vascular destruction (which explains the hemorrhagic nature of the lesions), and an absence of neutrophils, as would be expected in neutropenic patients.

Pseudomonas **endocarditis** is uncommon and is primarily seen in intravenous drug abusers. These patients acquire the infection from the use of drug paraphernalia contaminated with the waterborne organisms. The tricuspid valve is often involved, and the infection is associated with a chronic course but with a more favorable prognosis than that in patients who have infections of the aortic or mitral valve.

Other Infections

P. aeruginosa is also the cause of a variety of other infections, including those localized in the gastrointestinal tract, central nervous system, and musculoskeletal system. The underlying conditions required for most infections are (1) the presence of the organism in a moist reservoir and (2) compromised host defenses (e.g., cutaneous trauma, elimination of normal microbial flora as a result of antibiotic usage, neutropenia).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Observation of thin gram-negative rods arranged singly and in pairs is suggestive of *Pseudomonas* but not definitive; *Burkholderia, Stenotrophomonas,* and other pseudomonads have a similar morphology.

Culture

Because *Pseudomonas* has simple nutritional requirements, the bacteria are readily recovered on common isolation media such as blood agar and MacConkey agar. They do require aerobic incubation (unless nitrate is available), so their growth in broth is generally confined to the broth–air interface, in which the oxygen concentration is the highest.

Identification

The colonial morphology (Fig. 27.5), odor, and results of selected rapid biochemical tests (e.g., positive **oxidase** reaction)

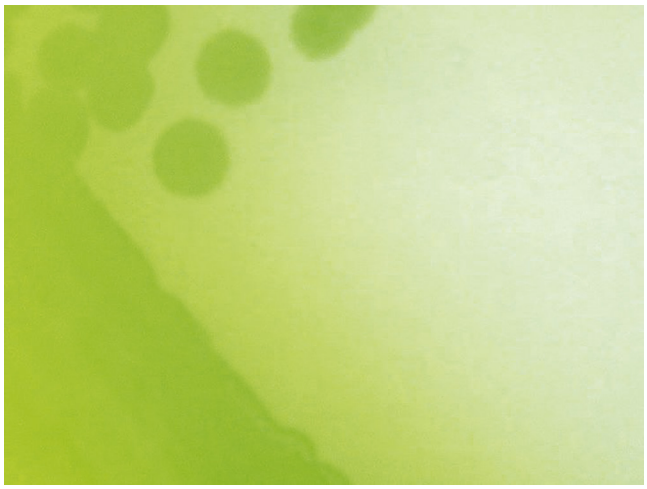


Fig. 27.5 Colonial morphology of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa;* note the green pigmentation that results from the production of two water-soluble dyes: blue pyocyanin and yellow fluorescein.

are sufficient for the preliminary identification of these isolates. For example, *P. aeruginosa* grows rapidly and has flat colonies with a spreading border, **β-hemolysis,** a **green pigmentation** caused by the production of the blue (pyocyanin) and yellow-green (pyoverdin) pigments, and a characteristic sweet, **grapelike odor.** Although definitive identification of *P. aeruginosa* is relatively easy, an extensive battery of physiologic tests may be required to identify other *Pseudomonas* species.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The antimicrobial therapy for *Pseudomonas* infections is frustrating because (1) the bacteria are typically resistant to most antibiotics, and (2) the infected patient with compromised host defenses cannot augment the antibiotic activity. A **combination of active antibiotics** is generally required for therapy to be successful in patients with serious infections. This is challenging because many strains of *P. aeruginosa* are now resistant to all β-lactam antibiotics including the carbapenems, aminoglycosides, and colistin.

Attempts to eliminate *Pseudomonas* from the hospital environment are practically useless given the ubiquitous presence of the organism in water supplies. Effective infection-control practices should concentrate on **preventing the contamination of sterile equipment,** such as mechanical ventilation equipment and dialysis machines, and the cross-contamination of patients by medical personnel. Inappropriate use of broad-spectrum antibiotics should also be avoided because such use can suppress the normal microbial flora and permit overgrowth of resistant strains of *Pseudomonas*.

Burkholderia

In 1992, seven species formerly classified as *Pseudomonas* were reclassified as members of the new genus *Burkholderia.* It was subsequently appreciated that the most common species, *B. cepacia,* was actually a complex of 17 species. Because most laboratories cannot identify the individual species, the collection is commonly referred to as *B. cepacia* complex. ***B. cepacia* complex** and ***B. pseudomallei*** are important human pathogens in this genus (see Box 27.1); other species (e.g., *B. mallei*) are less commonly associated with human disease.

Clinical Case 27.2 ***Burkholderia* Granulomatous Disease**

Mclean-Tooke and associates (*BMC Clin Pathol* 7:1–5, 2007) described a 21-year-old man with granulomatous lymphadenitis. The man presented with a history of weight loss, fevers, hepatosplenomegaly, and cervical lymphadenopathy. During the preceding 3 years he had presented on two occasions with enlarged lymph nodes that were biopsied, and histologic examination revealed granulomatous lymphadenitis. A clinical diagnosis of sarcoidosis was made, and the man was discharged on 20 mg prednisolone. Over the next 24 months, the patient remained clinically well; however, he developed pancytopenia, and granulomas were observed on a bone marrow biopsy. During the current hospitalization, the patient developed a cough. Chest radiograph revealed consolidation in the base of the lungs. A lung biopsy and bronchoalveolar lavage was submitted for culture, and *B. cepacia* was isolated from both specimens. A subsequent immunologic evaluation of the patient confirmed that he had a genetic disease, chronic granulomatous disease (CGD). This case illustrates the susceptibility of CGD patients to infections with *Burkholderia*.

Like *P. aeruginosa, Burkholderia* species can colonize a variety of moist environmental surfaces and are **opportunistic pathogens**. Patients particularly susceptible to pulmonary infections with *B. cepacia* complex are those with CF or chronic granulomatous disease (CGD; a primary immunodeficiency in which white blood cells have defective intracellular microbicidal activity). (Clinical Case 27.2) Colonization of the respiratory tract of CF patients with *B. cepacia* complex has such a poor prognosis that this is a contraindication for lung transplantation. *B. cepacia* complex is also responsible for UTIs in catheterized patients, septicemia (particularly in patients with contaminated intravascular catheters), and other opportunistic infections. With the exception of pulmonary infections, *B. cepacia* complex has a relatively low level of virulence, and infections with the organism do not commonly result in death.

B. pseudomallei is a saprophyte found in soil, water, and vegetation. It is endemic in Southeast Asia, India, Africa, and Australia. Infections are acquired by either inhalation or less commonly by percutaneous inoculation. Most persons exposed to *B. pseudomallei* remain asymptomatic; however, alcoholics, diabetics, and individuals with chronic renal or lung disease are susceptible to opportunistic infections caused by this organism. Infections are called **melioidosis** (*melis,* distemper; *eidos,* resemblance; *osis,* condition: disease resembling equine distemper or glanders caused by *B. mallei*). Exposure by the percutaneous route presents as a localized, suppurative **cutaneous infection** accompanied by regional lymphadenitis, fever, and malaise. This form of disease can resolve without incident or can progress rapidly to overwhelming sepsis. **Pulmonary disease** that develops after respiratory exposure may range in severity from a mild bronchitis to necrotizing pneumonia. Cavitation

Clinical Case 27.3 **Disseminated *Stenotrophomonas* Infection in a Neutropenic Patient**

Wan-Yee and associates (*Ann Acad Med Singapore* 35:897–900, 2006) described an 8-year-old Chinese girl with acute myeloid leukemia and a complex history of recurrent fungal and bacterial infections during treatment of her leukemia. Infections included pulmonary aspergillosis and septicemia with *Klebsiella, Enterobacter, Staphylococcus, Streptococcus,* and *Bacillus*. While receiving treatment with meropenem (a carbapenem antibiotic) and amikacin (an aminoglycoside), and during a period of severe neutropenia, she became bacteremic with *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* that was sensitive to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX). Over the next few days, she developed painful, erythematous, nodular skin lesions. *S. maltophilia* was isolated from a biopsy of one of the lesions. Treatment with intravenous TMP-SMX led to gradual resolution of the skin lesions. This case illustrates the predilection for *Stenotrophomonas* to cause disease in immunocompromised patients receiving a carbapenem antibiotic. Characteristically, *Stenotrophomonas* is one of the few gram-negative bacteria that is inherently resistant to carbapenems and aminoglycoside and susceptible to TMP-SMX.

progressing to overwhelming sepsis and death can develop if appropriate antimicrobial therapy is not instituted. *B. pseudomallei* has been used in biological weapons programs, so work with this organism is restricted to appropriately licensed laboratories and its recovery from a patient justifies intervention by the public health department. Isolation of *B. pseudomallei* for diagnostic purposes should be approached carefully because the organism is highly infectious, similar to respiratory pathogens such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

Burkholderia species are susceptible to **trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX),** which distinguishes them from *P. aeruginosa,* which is uniformly resistant. Although the organisms appear to be susceptible in vitro to piperacillin, broad-spectrum cephalosporins, and ciprofloxacin, the clinical response is generally poor.

Stenotrophomonas maltophilia

S. maltophilia was originally classified in the genus *Pseudomonas,* moved to the genus *Xanthomonas,* and then transferred to the genus *Stenotrophomonas.* Despite the confusion created by these taxonomic changes, the clinical importance of this opportunistic pathogen is well known. It is responsible for infections in debilitated patients with impaired host defense mechanisms. Also, because *S. maltophilia* is resistant to most commonly used β-lactam and aminoglycoside antibiotics, patients receiving long-term antibiotic therapy with these drugs are particularly at risk for acquiring infections.

The most common nosocomial infections caused by *S. maltophilia* are bacteremia and pneumonia, with both associated with a high incidence of complications and death (Clinical Case 27.3). Hospital infections with this organism have been traced to contaminated intravenous catheters, disinfectant solutions, mechanical ventilation equipment, and ice machines.

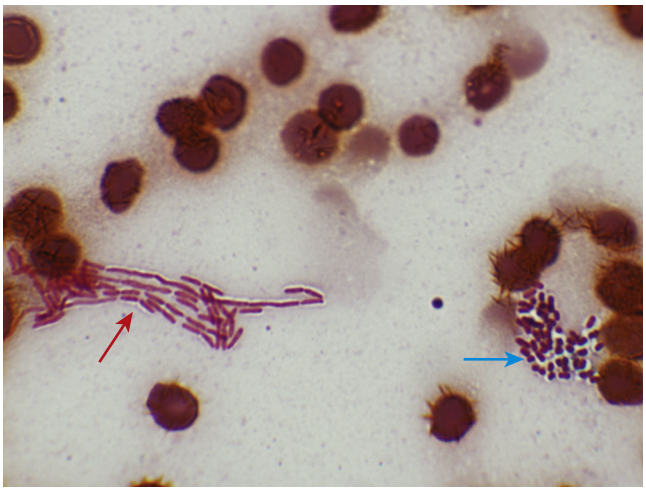


Fig. 27.6 Gram stain of *Acinetobacter baumannii (blue arrow)* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa (red arrow).*

Antimicrobial therapy is complicated because the organism is resistant to many commonly used drugs. In contrast with most gram-negative rods, *Stenotrophomonas* is uniformly **resistant to carbapenems** (e.g., imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem, doripenem) and typically susceptible to **TMP-SMX,** although increased resistance has been reported in some studies. Treatment is usually effective with TMP-SMX (if susceptible) or with ciprofloxacin combined with ticarcillin-clavulanate or ceftazidime.

Acinetobacter

Acinetobacters are strictly aerobic, oxidase-negative, plump gram-negative coccobacilli (Fig. 27.6). They are saprophytes, recovered in nature and in the hospital and able to survive on both moist surfaces, such as mechanical ventilation equipment, and on dry surfaces, such as human skin (the latter feature is unusual for gram-negative rods). These bacteria are also part of the normal oropharyngeal flora of a small number of healthy people and can proliferate to large numbers during hospitalization. The genus *Acinetobacter* is subdivided into two groups: glucose-oxidizing species (***A. baumannii*** is the most common) and glucose nonoxidizing species (***A. lwoffii*** and ***A. haemolyticus*** are the most common). Most human infections are caused by *A. baumannii*.

Acinetobacters are **opportunistic pathogens** (see Box 27.1) that cause infections in the respiratory tract, urinary tract, and wounds; they also cause septicemia. Patients at risk for *Acinetobacter* infections are those receiving broad-spectrum antibiotics, recovering from surgery, or on respiratory ventilation. Nosocomial wound and pulmonary infections in hospitalized patients have become a significant problem because many of the infections are caused by strains resistant to most antibiotics, including the carbapenems. Specific therapy must be guided by in vitro susceptibility tests. Care must be taken when carbapenems or

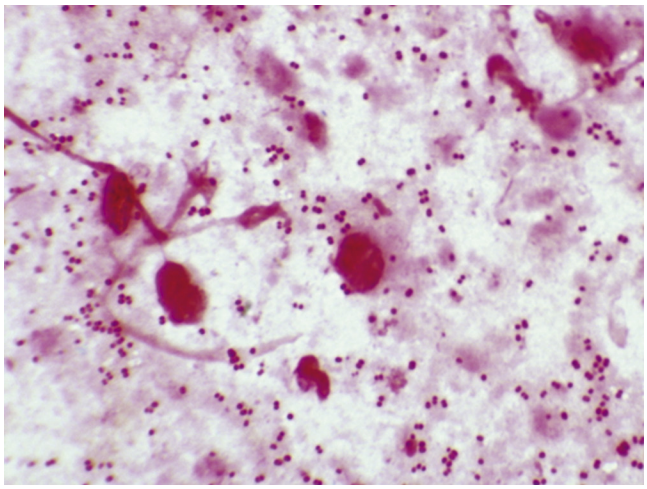


Fig. 27.7 Gram stain of *Moraxella catarrhalis*.

colistin are selected because in vitro tests may not reliably detect heteroresistant strains (i.e., a highly resistant subpopulation of organisms).

Moraxella

Like other genera discussed in this chapter, the genus *Moraxella* was reorganized on the basis of nucleic acid analysis. Although the species classified in this genus continue to change, *M. catarrhalis* is the most important pathogen. ***M. catarrhalis*** is a strictly aerobic, oxidase-positive, gram-negative diplococci (Fig. 27.7). This organism is a common cause of bronchitis and bronchopneumonia (in elderly patients with chronic pulmonary disease), sinusitis, and otitis (see Box 27.1). The latter two infections occur most commonly in previously healthy people. Most isolates produce β-lactamases and are **resistant to penicillins;** however, these bacteria are uniformly susceptible to most other antibiotics, including cephalosporins, erythromycin, tetracycline, TMP-SMX, and the combination of penicillins with a β-lactamase inhibitor (e.g., clavulanic acid).

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Azam, M., Khan, A., 2018. Updates on the pathogenicity states of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Drug Discov Today. http://doi.org/10.1016/drudis.2018.07.003.

Breidenstein, E., de la Fuente-Nunez, C., Hancock, R., 2011. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*: all roads lead to resistance. Trends Microbiol 19, 419–426.

Broides, A., Dagan, R., Greenberg, D., et al., 2009. Acute otitis media caused by *Moraxella catarrhalis:* epidemiology and clinical characteristics. Clin Infect Dis 49, 1641–1647.

Brooke, J., 2012. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia:* an emerging global opportunistic pathogen. Clin Microbiol Rev 25, 2–41.

Dijkshoorn, L., Nemec, A., Seifert, H., 2007. An increasing threat in hospitals: multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*. Nat Rev Microbiol 5, 939–951.

Hauser, A., 2009. The type III secretion system of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*: infection by injection. Nat Rev Microbiol 7, 654–665.

Ikonomidis, A., Neou, E., Gogou, V., et al., 2009. Heteroresistance to meropenem in carbapenem-susceptible *Acinetobacter baumannii*. J Clin Microbiol 47, 4055–4059.

Jimenez, P.N., Koch, G., Thompson, J.A., et al., 2012. The multiple signaling systems regulating virulence in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 76, 46–65.

Karthikeyan, R.S., Priya, J.L., Leal Jr., S.M., et al., 2013. Host response and bacterial virulence factor expression in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* corneal ulcers. PLoS ONE 8, e64867.

Kipnis, E., Sawa, T., Wiener-Kronish, J., 2006. Targeting mechanisms of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* pathogenesis. Med Mal Infect 36, 78–91.

Kruczek, C., Qaisar, U., Comer-Hamood, J.A., et al., 2014. Serum influences the expression of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* quorum-sensing genes and QS-controlled virulence genes during early and late stages of growth. Microbiologyopen 3, 64–79.

Ledizet, M., Murray, T.S., Puttagunta, S., et al., 2012. The ability of virulence factor expression by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to predict clinical disease in hospitalized patients. PLoS ONE 7, e49578.

Looney, W.J., Narita, M., Muhlemann, K., 2009. *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: an emerging opportunist human pathogen. Lancet Infect Dis 9, 312–323.

McGregor, K., Chang, B.J., Mee, B.J., et al., 1998. *Moraxella catarrhalis:* clinical significance, antimicrobial susceptibility and BRO beta-lactamases. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis 17, 219–234.

Peleg, A., Seifert, H., Paterson, D., 2008. *Acinetobacter baumannii*: emergence of a successful pathogen. Clin Microbiol Rev 21, 538–582.

Voor, A.F., Severin, J.A., Lesaffre, E.M., et al., 2014. A systematic review and meta-analyses show that carbapenems use and medical devices are the leading risk factors for carbapenem-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 58, 2626–2637.

Yates, S.P., Jorgensen, R., Andersen, G.R., et al., 2006. Stealth and mimicry by deadly bacterial toxins. Trends Biochem Sci 31, 123–133.

Case Study and Questions

A 63-year-old man has been hospitalized for 21 days for the management of newly diagnosed leukemia. Three days after he entered the hospital, a UTI with *Escherichia coli* developed. He was treated for 14 days with broad-spectrum antibiotics. On day 21 of his hospital stay, the patient experienced fever and shaking chills. Within 24 hours he became hypotensive, and ecthymic skin lesions appeared. Despite aggressive therapy with antibiotics, the patient died. Multiple blood cultures were positive for *P. aeruginosa.*

1. What factors put this man at increased risk for infection with *P. aeruginosa?*
2. What virulence factors possessed by the organism make it a particularly serious pathogen? What are the biological effects of these factors?
3. What three mechanisms are responsible for the antibiotic resistance found in *P. aeruginosa?*
4. What diseases are caused by *B. cepacia* complex? *S. maltophilia? A. baumannii? M. catarrhalis?* What antibiotics can be used to treat these infections?

28 Campylobacter *and* Helicobacter

A 26-year-old woman was admitted to the hospital with a 48-hour history of colicky lower abdominal pain associated with about 20 watery stools per day, which contained mucus and blood. She was afebrile and had diffuse abdominal tenderness. No pathogens were isolated on routine stool culture, but specimens were also inoculated on a *Campylobacter*-selective medium and incubated microaerophilically at 40°C. Examination of the plates after 42 hours revealed the presence of flat, nonhemolytic, mucoid colonies that were subsequently identified as *C. jejuni*.

***Campylobacter* and *Helicobacter* are now widely recognized as significant human pathogens; however, they were unrecognized for many years.**

1. What properties of *Campylobacter* and *Helicobacter* led to their delayed discovery?
2. *Campylobacter* is associated with what two immune disorders?
3. How does *H. pylori* survive in the stomach?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

CAMPYLOBACTER

Trigger Words

Curved rods, gastroenteritis, Guillain-Barré syndrome

Biology and Virulence

- Thin, curved, gram-negative rods
- Factors that regulate adhesion, motility, and invasion into intestinal mucosa are poorly defined

Epidemiology

- Zoonotic infection; improperly prepared poultry is a common source of human infections
- Infections acquired by ingestion of contaminated food, unpasteurized milk, or contaminated water
- Person-to-person spread is unusual
- Dose required to establish disease is high unless the gastric acids are neutralized or absent
- Worldwide distribution with enteric infections seen throughout the year

Diseases

- Most common disease is acute enteritis with diarrhea, malaise, fever, and abdominal pain
- Guillain-Barré syndrome is believed to be an autoimmune disease caused by antigenic cross-reactivity between oligosaccharides in the bacterial capsule and glycosphingolipids on the surface of neural tissues
- Most infections are self-limited but can persist for a week or more
- *C. fetus* is associated with septicemia and is disseminated to multiple organs

Diagnosis

- Microscopic detection of thin, S-shaped, gram-negative rods in stool specimens is specific but insensitive
- Commercial multiplex nucleic acid amplification assays are highly sensitive and specific for enteric pathogens and particularly useful for detection of *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* infections
- Culture requires use of specialized media incubated with reduced oxygen, increased carbon dioxide, and (for thermophilic species) elevated temperatures; requires incubation for 2 or more days and is relatively insensitive unless fresh media are used
- Detection of *Campylobacter* antigens in stool specimens is moderately sensitive and very specific compared with culture

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- For gastroenteritis, infection is self-limited and is managed by fluid and electrolyte replacement
- Severe gastroenteritis and septicemia are treated with erythromycin or azithromycin
- Gastroenteritis is prevented by proper preparation of food and consumption of pasteurized milk; preventing contamination of water supplies also controls infection
- Experimental vaccines targeting the outer capsular polysaccharides are promising for control of infections in animal reservoirs

*H*ELICOBACTER PYLORI

Trigger Words

Gastritis, peptic ulcers, gastric cancer, lymphoid tissue lymphoma, urease

Biology and Virulence

- Curved gram-negative rods
- Urease production at very high levels is typical of gastric helicobacters (e.g., *H. pylori;* important diagnostic test for *H. pylori*) and uncommon in intestinal helicobacters
- Multiple factors contribute to gastric colonization, inflammation, alteration of gastric acid production, and tissue destruction

Epidemiology

- Infections are common, particularly in people in a low socioeconomic class or in developing nations
- Humans are the primary reservoir
- Person-to-person spread is important (typically fecal-oral)
- Ubiquitous and worldwide, with no seasonal incidence of disease

Diseases

- *H. pylori* is an important cause of acute and chronic gastritis, peptic ulcers, gastric adenocarcinoma, and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma

Diagnosis

- Microscopy: histologic examination of biopsy specimens is sensitive and specific
- Urease test relatively sensitive and highly specific; urea breath test is a noninvasive test
- *H. pylori* antigen test is sensitive and specific; performed with stool specimens
- Culture requires incubation in microaerophilic conditions; growth is slow; relatively insensitive unless multiple biopsies are cultured
- Serology useful for demonstrating exposure to *H. pylori*

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Multiple regimens have been evaluated for treatment of *H. pylori* infections. Combined therapy with a proton pump inhibitor (e.g., omeprazole), a macrolide (e.g., clarithromycin), and a β-lactam (e.g., amoxicillin) for 2 weeks has had a high success rate
- Prophylactic treatment of colonized individuals has not been useful and potentially has adverse effects, such as predisposing patients to adenocarcinomas of the lower esophagus
- Human vaccines are not currently available

TABLE 28.1 Important *Campylobacter* and *Helicobacter* Species

Organism	Historical Derivation
Campylobacter	*kampylos,* curved; *bacter,* rod (a curved rod)
C. jejuni	*jejuni,* of the jejunum
C. coli	*coli,* of the colon
C. fetus	*fetus,* refers to the initial observation that these bacteria caused fetal infections
C. upsaliensis	*upsaliensis,* original isolates recovered from the feces of dogs at an animal clinic in Uppsala, Sweden
Helicobacter	*helix,* spiral; *bacter,* rod (a spiral rod)
H. pylori	*pylorus,* lower part of the stomach
H. cinaedi	*cinaedi,* of a homosexual (the organism was first isolated from homosexuals with gastroenteritis)
H. fennelliae	*fennelliae,* named after C. Fennell, who first isolated the organism

There are two families of related spiral-shaped gram-negative bacteria of clinical importance: **Campylobacteraceae,** which includes *Campylobacter* and **Helicobacteraceae,** which includes *Helicobacter* (Table 28.1). Members of these families share two important properties that contribute to problems with recovering the organisms in culture and identification by traditional biochemical testing: (1) microaerophilic growth requirements (i.e., growth only in the presence of reduced oxygen and increased carbon dioxide) and (2) inability to ferment or oxidize carbohydrates.

Campylobacter

The genus *Campylobacter* consists of small (0.2 to 0.5 μm wide and 0.5 to 5.0 μm long), motile, **comma-shaped, gram-negative rods** (Fig. 28.1). Bacteria in older colonies may appear coccoid rather than rodlike. More than 50 species and subspecies are recognized, many of which are associated with human disease, but only four species are common human pathogens (Table 28.2).

The primary diseases caused by campylobacters are gastroenteritis and septicemia. *Campylobacter* is the most common cause of bacterial gastroenteritis in both developed and developing countries, with ***C. jejuni*** responsible for most infections and ***C. coli*** associated with a minority of cases of *Campylobacter* gastroenteritis in the United States (more commonly observed in developing countries). The incidence of gastroenteritis caused by ***C. upsaliensis*** is unknown because the organism is inhibited by the antibiotics used in most isolation media for other campylobacters; however, some have estimated that 10% of *Campylobacter* gastroenteritis is caused by this bacterium. Unlike other *Campylobacter* species, ***C. fetus*** is primarily responsible for causing systemic infections such as bacteremia, septic thrombophlebitis, arthritis, septic abortion, and meningitis.

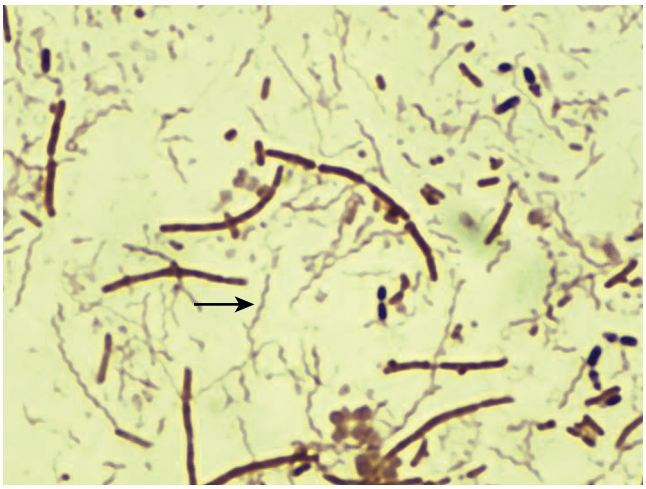


Fig. 28.1 Mixed culture of bacteria from a fecal specimen. *Campylobacter jejuni* is the thin, curved, gram-negative bacteria *(arrow).*

TABLE 28.2 Common *Campylobacter* Species Associated with Human Disease

Species	Common Reservoir Hosts	Human Disease
Campylobacter jejuni	**Poultry,** cattle, sheep	**Gastroenteritis,** extraintestinal infections, **Guillain-Barré syndrome, reactive arthritis**
C. coli	**Pigs,** poultry, sheep, birds	**Gastroenteritis,** extraintestinal infections
C. fetus	**Cattle, sheep**	**Vascular infections** (e.g., septicemia, septic thrombophlebitis, endocarditis), meningoencephalitis, gastroenteritis
C. upsaliensis	**Dogs,** cats	**Gastroenteritis,** extraintestinal infections, Guillain-Barré syndrome

Bold type signifies the most common hosts and diseases.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Recognition of the role of campylobacters in gastrointestinal (GI) disease was delayed because the organisms grow best in an atmosphere of reduced oxygen (5% to 7%) and increased carbon dioxide (5% to 10%). These are not the typical incubation conditions used for bacterial cultures. In addition, ***C. jejuni* grows better at 42°C** than at 37°C. These properties have been exploited for the selective isolation of pathogenic campylobacters in stool specimens. The **small size** of the organisms (0.2 to 0.5 μm in diameter) also has been used to recover the bacteria by filtration of stool specimens. Campylobacters pass through 0.45-μm filters, whereas other bacteria are retained. Although this property led to the initial discovery of campylobacters (stools were filtered looking for viruses), filtration of stool specimens is a cumbersome procedure and is not used in clinical laboratories. Campylobacters have a gram-negative cell wall structure with an outer polysaccharide capsule. Instead of cell wall lipopolysaccharides (LPS) with endotoxin activity found in other gram-negative bacteria, they express

lipooligosaccharides. The capsular polysaccharides contribute to the virulence of the bacteria and are the targets of vaccine development.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Although adhesins, cytotoxic enzymes, and enterotoxins have been detected in *C. jejuni,* their specific role in disease remains poorly defined. It is clear that the risk of disease is influenced by the infectious dose. The organisms are killed when exposed to gastric acids, so conditions that decrease or neutralize gastric acid secretion favor disease. The patient's immune status also affects the severity of disease. People living in a population of high endemic disease develop measurable levels of specific serum and secretory antibodies and have less severe disease. As would be expected, patients with hypogammaglobulinemia have prolonged severe disease with *C. jejuni*.

C. jejuni GI disease characteristically produces **histologic damage to the mucosal surfaces of the jejunum** (as implied by the name of the species), ileum, and colon. The mucosal surface appears ulcerated, edematous, and bloody, with crypt abscesses in the epithelial glands and infiltration of the lamina propria with neutrophils, mononuclear cells, and eosinophils. This inflammatory process is consistent with invasion of the organisms into the intestinal tissue. However, the precise roles of cytopathic toxins, enterotoxins, and endotoxic activity that have been detected in *C. jejuni* isolates have not been defined. For example, strains lacking enterotoxin activity are still fully virulent.

C. jejuni and *C. upsaliensis* have been associated with **Guillain-Barré syndrome,** which is an autoimmune disorder of the peripheral nervous system characterized by development of symmetric weakness over several days and recovery requiring months or longer. Although this is an uncommon complication of *Campylobacter* disease (≈1 in 1000 diagnosed infections), the syndrome has been associated with specific serotypes (primarily *C. jejuni* serotype O:19). It is believed that the pathogenesis of this disease is related to **antigenic cross-reactivity** between the surface lipooligosaccharides of some strains of *Campylobacter* and peripheral nerve gangliosides. Thus antibodies directed against specific strains of *Campylobacter* can damage neural tissue in the peripheral nervous system. Another immune-related late complication of *Campylobacter* infections is **reactive arthritis,** which is a condition characterized by joint pain and swelling involving the hands, ankles, and knees and persisting from 1 week to several months. Reactive arthritis is unrelated to the severity of the diarrheal disease but is more common in patients who have the HLA-B27 phenotype.

C. jejuni and *C. coli* rarely cause bacteremia (1.5 cases per 1000 intestinal infections); however, *C. fetus* has a propensity to spread from the GI tract to the blood and distal foci. In vitro studies provide an explanation for this observation: *C. fetus* is resistant to complement- and antibody-mediated serum killing, and *C. jejuni* and most other *Campylobacter* species are killed rapidly. *C. fetus* is covered with a heat-stable, capsule-like protein **(S protein)** that prevents C3b binding to the bacteria and subsequent complement-mediated killing in serum. *C. fetus* loses its virulence if this protein layer is removed. Bacteremia is particularly common in debilitated and immunocompromised patients, such as those with liver disease, diabetes mellitus, chronic alcoholism, or malignancies.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Campylobacter infections are **zoonotic,** with a variety of animals serving as reservoirs (see Table 28.2). Humans acquire the infections with *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* after consumption of contaminated food, milk, or water; **contaminated poultry** is responsible for more than half of the *Campylobacter* infections in developed countries. Food products that neutralize gastric acids (e.g., milk) effectively reduce the infectious dose. Fecal-oral transmission from person-to-person contact may also occur, but it is **uncommon for the disease to be transmitted by food handlers.** *C. upsaliensis* infections are acquired primarily after contact with domestic dogs (either healthy carriers or pets with diarrheal disease).

Campylobacter infections are the most common bacterial diarrheal illness in the United States with an estimated annual incidence of 1.3 million illnesses, more than 13,000 hospitalizations, and 119 deaths with a cost of approximately $1.7 billion in medical care and lost productivity. The number of *Campylobacter* infections is likely to be even higher because many laboratories do not routinely culture for these pathogens, and *C. upsaliensis* is not isolated by commonly used techniques. Additionally, the increasing adoption of molecular diagnostics for enteric diseases have identified the poor sensitivity of culture.

Disease occurs sporadically through the year, with a peak incidence during the summer months. Disease is most commonly observed in **infants and young children,** with a second peak of disease in 20- to 40-year-old adults. The incidence of disease is higher in developing countries, with symptomatic disease in infants and young children and asymptomatic carriage frequently observed in adults.

C. fetus infections are relatively uncommon, with fewer than 250 cases reported in the United States annually. Unlike *C. jejuni, C. fetus* primarily infects immunocompromised or elderly people.

CLINICAL DISEASES

GI infections with *C. jejuni, C. coli,* and *C. upsaliensis* present most commonly as **acute enteritis** with diarrhea, fever, and severe abdominal pain. Affected patients can have 10 or more bowel movements per day during the peak of disease, and stools may be bloody on gross examination. The disease is generally self-limited, although symptoms may last for a week or longer. The range of clinical manifestations includes acute colitis, **abdominal pain mimicking acute appendicitis,** and chronic enteric infections that develop most commonly in immunocompromised patients (e.g., patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]). Various extraintestinal infections are reported but are relatively uncommon. **Guillain-Barré syndrome** and **reactive arthritis** are well-recognized complications of *Campylobacter* infections.(Clinical Case 28.1) *C. fetus* differs from other *Campylobacter* species in that this species is primarily responsible for **intravascular** (e.g., septicemia, endocarditis, septic thrombophlebitis) and **extraintestinal** (e.g., meningoencephalitis, abscesses) **infections.**

Clinical Case 28.1 ***Campylobacter jejuni* Enteritis and Guillain-Barré Syndrome**

Scully and associates (*N Engl J Med* 341:1996–2003, 1999) described the clinical history of a 74-year-old woman who developed Guillain-Barré syndrome after an episode of *C. jejuni* enteritis. After 1 week of fever, watery diarrhea, nausea, abdominal pain, weakness, and fatigue, the patient's speech was noted to be severely slurred. She was taken to the hospital, where it was noted she was unable to speak, although she was oriented and able to write coherently. She had perioral numbness, bilateral ptosis and facial weakness were noted, and her pupils were nonreactive. Neurologic examination revealed bilateral muscle weakness in her arms and chest. On the second hospital day, the muscle weakness extended to her upper legs. On the third hospital day, the patient's mental status remained normal, but she could only move her thumb minimally and could not lift her legs. Sensation to light touch was normal, but deep-tendon reflexes were absent. *C. jejuni* was recovered from this patient's stool culture, collected at the time of admission, and the clinical diagnosis of Guillain-Barré syndrome was made. Despite aggressive medical treatment, the patient had significant neurologic deficits 3 months after discharge to a rehabilitation facility. This woman illustrates one of the significant complications of *Campylobacter* enteritis.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Campylobacters are thin and not easily seen when specimens are Gram stained. Despite the low sensitivity of a Gram stain, observation of the characteristic **thin, S-shaped organisms** in a stool specimen (see Fig. 28.1) is useful for a presumptive confirmation of *Campylobacter* infection.

Antigen Detection

Commercial immunoassays for detection of *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* are available. When compared with culture, the tests have a sensitivity of 80% to 90% and a specificity of greater than 95%. Some strains of *C. upsaliensis* are also reactive in these tests.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Commercial multiplex nucleic acid amplification tests for enteric pathogens are rapidly gaining acceptance because they can detect a comprehensive spectrum of bacterial, viral, and parasitic pathogens with a sensitivity superior to culture. This is particularly true for *Campylobacter* infections, although these molecular assays are generally restricted to detection of *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* and not the other *Campylobacter* species.

Culture

C. jejuni, C. coli, and *C. upsaliensis* went unrecognized for many years because their isolation requires growth in a **microaerophilic atmosphere** (i.e., 5% to 7% oxygen, 5% to 10% carbon dioxide), at an **elevated incubation temperature** (i.e., 42° C), and on selective agar media to suppress nonpathogenic enteric bacteria. The appropriate atmosphere for growing campylobacters can be produced by disposable commercial gas generator systems that are added to an incubation jar with the inoculated culture media. The selective media must contain blood or charcoal to remove toxic oxygen radicals, and antibiotics are added to inhibit the growth of contaminating organisms. Unfortunately, the antibiotics used in most *Campylobacter* media may inhibit some species (e.g., *C. upsaliensis*). Campylobacters are **slow-growing** organisms, usually requiring incubation for 48 hours or longer. *C. fetus* is not thermophilic and cannot grow at 42° C; however, its isolation requires a microaerophilic atmosphere.

Identification

A presumptive identification of isolates is based on growth under selective conditions, typical microscopic morphology, and positive oxidase and catalase tests. Mass spectrometry can be used for definitive species identification.

Antibody Detection

Serologic testing for immunoglobulin (Ig)M and IgG is useful for epidemiologic surveys but is not used for diagnosis in an individual patient.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Campylobacter gastroenteritis is typically a self-limited infection managed by the replacement of lost fluids and electrolytes. Antibiotic therapy may be used in patients with severe infections or septicemia. Campylobacters are susceptible to a variety of antibiotics, including macrolides (i.e., erythromycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin), tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, chloramphenicol, fluoroquinolones, clindamycin, amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, and imipenem. Most isolates are resistant to penicillins, cephalosporins, and sulfonamide antibiotics. **Erythromycin** or **azithromycin** are the antibiotics of choice for the treatment of enteritis, with tetracycline or fluoroquinolones used as secondary antibiotics. Resistance to fluoroquinolones has increased, so these drugs may be less effective. Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid can be used in place of tetracycline, which is contraindicated in young children. Systemic infections are treated with an aminoglycoside, chloramphenicol, or imipenem.

Exposure to enteric campylobacters is prevented by proper food preparation (particularly poultry), avoidance of unpasteurized dairy products, and implementation of safeguards to prevent contamination of water supplies. Almost 50 capsular serotypes of *C. jejuni* are recognized, although the majority of strains associated with disease are restricted to a limited number of serotypes. Preliminary studies demonstrate these are attractive targets for vaccines and potentially could reduce the colonization rate in food animals such as chickens and turkeys.

Helicobacter

In 1983, **spiral gram-negative rods** resembling campylobacters were found in patients with type B gastritis (chronic inflammation of the stomach antrum [pyloric end]). The organisms were originally classified as *Campylobacter* but

TABLE 28.3 *Helicobacter* Species Associated with Human Disease

Species	Common Reservoir Hosts	Human Disease
Helicobacter pylori	**Humans,** primates, pigs	**Gastritis, peptic ulcers, gastric adenocarcinoma,** mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue B-cell lymphomas
H. cinaedi	**Humans,** hamster	**Gastroenteritis,** septicemia, proctocolitis
H. fennelliae	**Humans**	**Gastroenteritis,** septicemia, proctocolitis

Bold type signifies the most common hosts and diseases.

were subsequently reclassified as a new genus, *Helicobacter*. Helicobacters were subsequently subdivided into species that primarily colonize the stomach **(gastric helicobacters)** and those that colonize the intestines **(enterohepatic helicobacters).** The most important species is ***H. pylori*,** which is a gastric helicobacter associated with **gastritis, peptic ulcers**, **gastric adenocarcinoma,** and **gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) B-cell lymphomas** (Table 28.3). The most important enterohepatic helicobacters associated with **gastroenteritis** and **bacteremia** are ***H. cinaedi*** and ***H. fennelliae*,** which have been isolated most commonly in immunocompromised patients (e.g., homosexual men with human immunodeficiency virus [HIV] infections).

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Helicobacter species are characterized according to sequence analysis of their 16S rRNA genes, their cellular fatty acids, and the presence of polar flagella. Currently, more than 40 species have been characterized, but this taxonomy is changing rapidly. Helicobacters have a bacillary or **spiral shape** in young cultures (0.5 to 1.0 μm wide × 2 to 4 μm long) and, like campylobacters, can assume coccoid forms in older cultures (Fig. 28.2).

All gastric helicobacters, including *H. pylori,* are highly **motile** (corkscrew motility) and produce an abundance of **urease.** These properties are believed to be important for survival in gastric acids and rapid movement through the viscous mucus layer toward a neutral pH environment. Most helicobacters are catalase- and oxidase-positive and do not ferment or oxidize carbohydrates, although they can metabolize amino acids by fermentative pathways. LPS, consisting of lipid A, core oligosaccharide, and an O side chain, is present in the outer membrane. *H. pylori* lipid A has low endotoxin activity compared with other gram-negative bacteria, and the O side chain is antigenically similar to the Lewis blood group antigens, which may protect the bacteria from immune clearance.

Growth of *H. pylori* and other helicobacters requires a complex medium supplemented with blood, serum, charcoal, starch, or egg yolk in microaerophilic conditions (decreased oxygen and increased carbon dioxide) and in a temperature range between 30° C and 37° C. Because helicobacters are relatively difficult to isolate in culture and identify by biochemical testing, most diseases caused by *H. pylori* are confirmed by nonculture techniques.

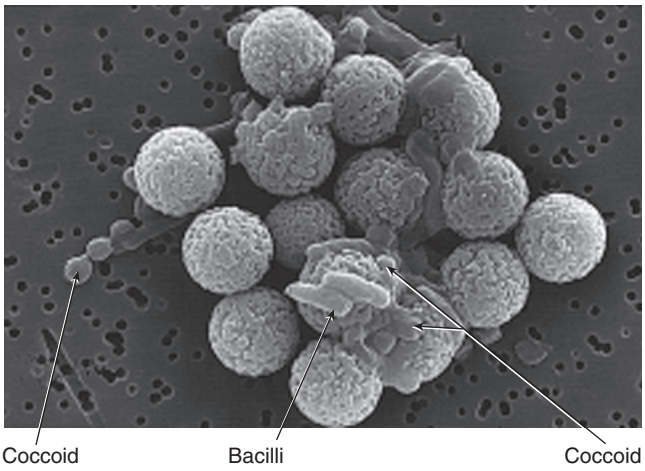


Fig. 28.2 Scanning electron micrograph of *Helicobacter pylori* in a 7-day culture. Bacillary and coccoid forms are bound to paramagnetic beads used in immunomagnetic separation. (Courtesy Dr. L. Engstrand, Uppsala, Sweden.)

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

H. pylori is a remarkable bacterium in its ability to establish lifelong colonization in the stomach of untreated humans. Most research into the virulence factors in helicobacters has focused on *H. pylori.* Multiple factors contribute to the gastric colonization, inflammation, alteration of gastric acid production, and tissue destruction that are characteristic of *H. pylori* disease. Initial colonization is facilitated by (1) blockage of acid production by a bacterial acid–inhibitory protein and (2) neutralization of gastric acids with the ammonia produced by bacterial urease activity. The actively motile helicobacters can then pass through the gastric mucus and adhere to the gastric epithelial cells by multiple surface adhesion proteins. Surface proteins can also bind host proteins and help the bacteria evade the immune system. Localized tissue damage is mediated by **urease by-products**, **mucinase, phospholipases,** and the activity of **vacuolating cytotoxin A (VacA),** which is a protein that after penetration into epithelial cells damages the cells by producing vacuoles. Another important virulence factor of *H. pylori* is the **cytotoxin-associated gene *(cagA)*** that resides on a pathogenicity island containing approximately 30 genes. These genes encode a structure (type VI secretion system) that acts like a syringe to inject the CagA protein into the host epithelial cells, which interferes with the normal cytoskeletal structure of the epithelial cells. The *cag p*hosphoribosyl-*a*nthranilate *i*somerase (PAI) genes also induce **interleukin (IL)-8 production,** which attracts neutrophils. Release of proteases and reactive oxygen molecules by these neutrophils is believed to contribute to gastritis and gastric ulcers.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

An enormous amount of information about the prevalence of *H. pylori* has been collected since 1984 when the organism was first isolated in culture. The highest incidence of carriage is found in developing countries, in which 70% to 90% of the population is colonized, most before the age of 10 years. The prevalence of *H. pylori* in industrial countries such as the United States is less than 40% and is decreasing because

of improved hygiene and active treatment of colonized individuals. These studies have also demonstrated that 70% to 100% of patients with gastritis, gastric ulcers, or duodenal ulcers are infected with *H. pylori.* **Humans are the primary reservoir for *H. pylori*,** and colonization is believed to persist for life unless the host is specifically treated. Transmission is most likely via the **fecal-oral route.**

An interesting observation about *H. pylori* colonization has been made. This organism is clearly associated with diseases such as gastritis, gastric ulcers, gastric adenocarcinoma, and gastric MALT lymphomas. It is anticipated that treatment of colonized or infected individuals will lead to a reduction of these diseases. However, colonization with *H. pylori* appears to offer protection from gastroesophageal reflux disease and adenocarcinomas of the lower esophagus and gastric cardia. Thus it may be unwise to eliminate *H. pylori* in patients without symptomatic disease. Certainly, the complex relationship between *H. pylori* and its host continues to be defined.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Disease caused by helicobacters is directly related to their site of colonization. For example, *H. pylori* is associated with gastritis, whereas the enterohepatic species cause gastroenteritis. Colonization with *H. pylori* invariably leads to histologic evidence of **gastritis** (i.e., infiltration of neutrophils and mononuclear cells into the gastric mucosa). The acute phase of gastritis is characterized by a feeling of fullness, nausea, vomiting, and hypochlorhydria (decreased acid production in the stomach). This can evolve into chronic gastritis, with disease confined to the gastric antrum (in which few acid-secreting parietal cells are present) in individuals with normal acid secretion, or involve the entire stomach (pangastritis) if acid secretion is suppressed. Approximately 10% to 15% of patients with chronic gastritis will progress to develop peptic ulcers. The ulcers develop at the sites of intense inflammation, commonly involving the junction between the corpus and antrum **(gastric ulcer)** or the proximal duodenum **(duodenal ulcer).** *H. pylori* is responsible for 85% of the gastric ulcers and 95% of the duodenal ulcers. Recognition of the role of *H. pylori* has dramatically changed the treatment and prognosis of peptic ulcer disease (Clinical Case 28.2).

Chronic gastritis eventually leads to replacement of the normal gastric mucosa with fibrosis and proliferation of intestinal-type epithelium. This process increases the patient's risk for **gastric cancer** by almost 100-fold. This risk is influenced by the strain of *H. pylori* and the host's response (*cagA*-positive strains and high levels of IL-1 production are associated with a higher risk for cancer). Infection with *H. pylori* is also associated with infiltration of lymphoid tissue into the gastric mucosa. In a small number of patients, a monoclonal population of B cells may develop and evolve into a **MALT lymphoma.**

Clinical Case 28.2 **The Discovery of *Helicobacter pylori***

In 1984, Australian physicians Marshall and Warren reported a discovery that completely changed the approach to treatment of gastritis and peptic ulcer disease, as well as set the foundation for understanding the cause of gastric adenocarcinomas and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphomas (*Lancet* i:1311–1315, 1984). In an analysis of gastric biopsy specimens from 100 consecutive patients presenting for gastroscopy, they demonstrated curved gram-negative rods resembling *Campylobacter* in 58 patients. The bacteria were observed in most patients with active gastritis, gastric ulcers, and duodenal ulcers. Although similar organisms were observed associated with gastric tissues 45 years earlier, this report stimulated resurgence in investigations of the role of this "new" organism in gastric diseases. Despite the skepticism that greeted their initial report, the significance of their work with *Campylobacter* was recognized in 2005 when Marshall and Warren received the Nobel Prize in Medicine.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

H. pylori is detected by histologic examination of gastric biopsy specimens. Although the organism can be seen in specimens stained with hematoxylin-eosin or Gram stain, the Warthin-Starry silver stain is the most sensitive. When an adequate specimen is collected and examined by an experienced microscopist, the test sensitivity and specificity approaches 100% and is considered diagnostic. Because this is an invasive test, alternative test procedures are preferred for routine diagnosis. The microscopic examination of stool specimens for helicobacters is not reliable because the organisms are difficult to see and nonpathogenic helicobacters may be present.

Antigen Detection

Biopsy specimens can also be tested for the presence of bacterial urease activity. The abundance of urease produced by *H. pylori* permits detection of the alkaline by-product in less than 2 hours. The sensitivity of the direct test with biopsy specimens varies from 75% to 95%; however, the specificity approaches 100%. Thus a positive reaction is compelling evidence of an active infection. As with microscopy, the limitation of this method is the requirement for a biopsy specimen. Noninvasive urease testing of human breath (urea breath test) after consumption of an isotopically labeled urea solution has excellent sensitivity and specificity. Unfortunately, this assay is relatively expensive because of the cost of the detection instruments.

A number of polyclonal and monoclonal immunoassays for *H. pylori* antigens excreted in stool have been developed and demonstrated to have sensitivities and specificities exceeding 95%. These tests are easy to perform, inexpensive, and able to be used on stool specimens rather than biopsies. These assays are now widely recommended for both detection of *H. pylori* infections and confirmation of cure after antibiotic treatment.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Currently, nucleic acid–based amplification tests for *H. pylori* and enterohepatic helicobacters are restricted to research laboratories and not used in clinical laboratories.

Culture

H. pylori adheres to gastric mucosa and is not recovered in stool or blood specimens. The bacteria can be isolated in culture if the specimen is inoculated onto an enriched medium supplemented with blood, hemin, or charcoal and incubated in a microaerophilic atmosphere for up to

2 weeks. However, diagnosis of *H. pylori* infections is most commonly done by noninvasive methods (e.g., immunoassay), with culture reserved for antibiotic susceptibility tests.

Identification

Presumptive identification of isolates is based on their growth characteristics under selective conditions; typical microscopic morphologic findings; and detection of oxidase, catalase, and urease activity. Mass spectrometry can be used for definitive species identification.

Antibody Detection

Serology is an important screening test for the diagnosis of *H. pylori,* with a variety of commercial tests available. Although IgM antibodies disappear rapidly, IgA and IgG antibodies can persist for months to years. Because the **antibody titers persist** for many years, the test cannot be used to discriminate between past and current infection. Furthermore, the titer of antibodies measured does not correlate with the severity of disease or the response to therapy. However, the tests are useful for documenting exposure to the bacteria, either for epidemiologic studies or for the initial evaluation of a symptomatic patient.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Numerous antibiotic regimens have been evaluated for treating *H. pylori* infections. Use of a single antibiotic or an antibiotic combined with bismuth is ineffective. The greatest success in curing gastritis or peptic ulcer disease has been accomplished with the combination of a **proton pump inhibitor** (e.g., omeprazole), a **macrolide** (e.g., clarithromycin), and a β**-lactam** (e.g., amoxicillin), with administration for 7 to 10 days initially. Treatment failure is most commonly associated with clarithromycin resistance. Susceptibility testing should be performed if the patient does not respond to therapy. Metronidazole can also be used in combination therapy, but resistance is commonplace.

Infection with *H. pylori* stimulates a strong TH1 cell–mediated inflammatory response. Use of *H. pylori* antigens in experimental vaccines that stimulate TH1 cells leads to enhanced inflammation. In contrast, use of antigens in combination with mucosal adjuvants that induce a TH2 cell response is protective in an animal model and can eradicate existing infections. The effectiveness of these vaccines in humans remains to be demonstrated.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Algood, H., Cover, T., 2006. *Helicobacter pylori* persistence: an overview of interactions between *H. pylori* and host immune defenses. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 19, 597–613.

Burnham, P., Hendrixson, D., 2018. *Campylobacter jejuni*: collective components promoting a successful enteric lifestyle. Nature Rev. Microbiol. 16, 551–565.

Farinha, P., Gascoyne, R., 2005. *Helicobacter pylori* and MALT lymphoma. Gastroenterology 128, 1579–1605.

Geissler, A., Carrillo, F., Swanson, K., et al., 2017. Increasing Campylobacter Infections, Outbreaks and Antimicrobial Resistance in the United States, 2004-2012, 128, pp. 1579–1605.

Iovine, N., 2013. Resistance mechanisms in *Campylobacter jejuni*. Virulence 4, 230–240.

Nachamkin, I., Allos, B.M., Ho, T., 1998. *Campylobacter* species and Guillain-Barré syndrome. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 11, 555–567.

O'Morain N, Dore M, O'Connor A, et al. Treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in 2018, *Helicobacter* 23(Suppl. 1):e12519, 2018. https://doi.org/10.1111/hel.12519.

Pike, B., Guerry, P., Poly, F., 2013. Global distribution of *Campylobacter jejuni* Penner serotypes: a systematic review. PLoS One 8, 1–8.

Plummer, P., 2012. LuxS and quorum-sensing in *Campylobacter*. Front Cell. Infect. Microbiol. 2, 1–9.

Skrebinska, S., Megraund, F., Bessede, E., 2018. Diagnosis of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Helicobacter. 23 (Suppl. 1), e12515. https://doi.org.10.1111/hel.12515.

Solnick, J., 2003. Clinical significance of *Helicobacter* species other than *Helicobacter pylori*. Clin. Infect. Dis. 36, 348–354.

Waskito, L., Salama, N., Yamaoka, Y., 2018. Pathogenesis of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Helicobacter. 23 (Suppl. 1), e12516. http://doi.org/10.1111/hel.12516.

Case Study and Questions

A mother and her 4-year-old son came to the local emergency room with a 1-day history of diarrhea and abdominal cramping. Both patients had low-grade fevers, and blood was grossly evident in the child's stool specimen. The symptoms had developed 18 hours after the patients had consumed a dinner consisting of mixed green salad, chicken, corn, bread, and apple pie. Culture of blood samples was negative for organisms, but *C. jejuni* was isolated from stool specimens of both the mother and the child.

1. Which food that they consumed is most likely responsible for these infections? What measures should be used to prevent these infections?
2. Name three *Campylobacter* species that have been associated with gastroenteritis. Name the species of *Campylobacter* most commonly associated with septicemia.
3. What diseases have been associated with Helicobacter pylori? *H. cinaedi*? *H. fennelliae*?
4. *H. pylori* has multiple virulence factors. Which factors are responsible for interfering with gastric acid secretion? For adhering to the gastric epithelium? For disrupting the gastric mucus? For interfering with phagocytic killing?

29 Miscellaneous Gram-Negative Rods

The gram-negative rods discussed in this chapter are a miscellaneous collection of clinically important bacteria.

1. Which *Bartonella* species are associated with disease in immunocompromised patients, and how do these infections present?
2. What is the epidemiologic source of *Bordetella pertussis* infections?
3. Why is culture not a good diagnostic test for *B. pertussis?*
4. What is the most common source of human infections with *Francisella* and *Brucella?*
5. What disease is produced by *Cardiobacterium* species?
6. Why had *Legionella* not been recognized before the 1976 outbreak in Philadelphia at the American Legion convention?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

BORDETELLA PERTUSSIS

Trigger Words

Slow growing, whooping cough, pertussis toxin, person to person, vaccination

Biology and Virulence

- Very small gram-negative coccobacilli
- Nonfermentative but can oxidize amino acids as an energy source
- Strict aerobe
- Growth in vitro requires prolonged incubation in media supplemented with charcoal, starch, blood, or albumin
- Adherence to eukaryotic cells mediated by pertactin, filamentous hemagglutinin, and fimbria; localized tissue destruction mediated by dermonecrotic toxin and tracheal cytotoxin; systemic toxicity produced by pertussis toxin

Epidemiology

- Pertussis is a human disease with no known animal or environmental reservoir
- Worldwide distribution with a high prevalence in unvaccinated populations
- Children younger than 1 year are at greatest risk for infection and mortality
- In vaccinated populations, disease is observed in older children and young adults
- Unvaccinated individuals are at greatest risk for disease
- Disease spread person to person by infectious aerosols

Diseases

- Pertussis characterized by three stages: catarrhal, paroxysmal, and convalescent
- Most severe disease is in unvaccinated individuals, particularly children

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is insensitive and nonspecific
- Culture is specific but insensitive
- Nucleic acid amplification tests are the most sensitive and specific tests
- Detection of immunoglobulin (Ig)G or IgA can be used as a confirmatory test

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment with macrolide (i.e., azithromycin, clarithromycin) is effective in eradicating organisms and reducing length of infectious stage
- Azithromycin is used for prophylaxis
- Vaccines containing inactivated pertussis toxin, filamentous hemagglutinin, and pertactin are effective
- Pediatric vaccine administered in five doses (at ages 2, 4, 6, and 15 to 18 months, and between ages 4 and 6 years); adult vaccine administered at ages 11 to 12 years and between 19 to 65 years

BRUCELLA

Trigger Words

Small coccobacilli, slow growing, zoonotic, undulant fever

Biology and Virulence

- Very small gram-negative coccobacilli (0.5×0.6 to $1.5\ \mu m$)
- Strict aerobe; does not ferment carbohydrates
- Requires complex media and prolonged incubation for in vitro growth
- Intracellular pathogen that is resistant to killing in serum and by phagocytes
- Smooth colonies associated with virulence

Epidemiology

- Animal reservoirs are goats and sheep *(B. melitensis);* cattle and American bison *(B. abortus);* swine, reindeer, and caribou *(B. suis);* and dogs, foxes, and coyotes *(B. canis)*
- Infects animal tissues rich in erythritol (e.g., breast, uterus, placenta, epididymis)
- Worldwide distribution, particularly in Latin America, Africa, the Mediterranean basin, the Middle East, and Western Asia
- Vaccination of herds has controlled disease in the United States
- Most disease in the United States is reported in California and Texas in travelers from Mexico
- Individuals at greatest risk for disease are people who consume unpasteurized dairy products, people in direct contact with infected animals, and laboratory workers

Diseases

- Refer to Box 29.1 for diseases

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is insensitive
- Culture (blood, bone marrow, infected tissue if localized infection) is sensitive and specific if prolonged incubation is used (minimum of 3 days to 2 weeks)
- Serology can be used to confirm the clinical diagnosis; fourfold increase in titer or single titer ≥1:160; high titers can persist for months to years

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Recommended treatment is doxycycline combined with rifampin for a minimum of 6 weeks for nonpregnant adults; trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for pregnant women and for children younger than 8 years
- Human disease is controlled by eradication of the disease in the animal reservoir through vaccination and serologic monitoring of the animals for evidence of disease, pasteurization of dairy products, and use of proper safety techniques in clinical laboratories working with this organism

FRANCISELLA TULARENSIS

Trigger Words

Small coccobacilli, slow growing, cysteine-supplemented media, zoonotic, ulceroglandular, oculoglandular, pneumonic

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

Biology and Virulence

- Very small gram-negative coccobacilli (0.2 × 0.2 to 0.7 μm)
- Strict aerobe; do not ferment carbohydrates
- Antiphagocytic capsule
- Intracellular pathogen resistant to killing in serum and by phagocytes

Epidemiology

- Wild mammals, domestic animals, birds, and fish, and blood-sucking arthropods are reservoirs; rabbits, cats, hard ticks, and biting flies are most commonly associated with human disease; humans are accidental hosts
- A total of 239 cases were seen in United States in 2017, although the actual number may be much higher
- Infectious dose is small when exposure is by arthropod, through skin, or by inhalation; large numbers of organisms must be ingested for infection by this route

Diseases

- Clinical symptoms and prognosis determined by route of infection: ulceroglandular, oculoglandular, glandular, typhoidal, oropharyngeal, gastrointestinal, pneumonic (see Box 29.1)

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is insensitive
- Culture on cysteine-supplemented media (e.g., chocolate agar, buffered charcoal yeast extract agar) is sensitive if prolonged incubation is used
- Serology can be used to confirm clinical diagnosis; fourfold increase in titer or single titer ≥1:160; high titers can persist for months to years

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Gentamicin is the antibiotic of choice; fluoroquinolones (e.g., ciprofloxacin) and doxycycline have good activity; penicillins and some cephalosporins are ineffective
- Disease prevented by avoiding reservoirs and vectors of infection; clothing and gloves are protective
- Live attenuated vaccine available but rarely used for human disease

LEGIONELLA PNEUMOPHILA

Trigger Words

Poor-staining slender rods, legionnaires disease, Pontiac fever, contaminated water, BCYE agar

Biology and Virulence

- Slender, pleomorphic, nonfermentative, gram-negative rods
- Stains poorly with common reagents
- Nutritionally fastidious, with requirement for L-cysteine and enhanced growth with iron salts
- Capable of replication in alveolar macrophages (and in amebae in nature)
- Prevents phagolysosome fusion

Epidemiology

- Capable of sporadic, epidemic, and nosocomial infections
- Commonly found in natural bodies of water, cooling towers, condensers, and water systems (including hospital systems)
- Estimated to be as many as 18,000 cases of infection in United States annually
- Patients at high risk for symptomatic disease include patients with compromised pulmonary function and patients with decreased cellular immunity (particularly transplant patients)

Diseases

- Responsible for legionnaires disease and Pontiac fever

Diagnosis

- Microscopy is insensitive
- Antigen tests are sensitive for *L. pneumophila* serogroup 1 but have poor sensitivity for other serogroups and species
- Culture on buffered charcoal yeast extract agar is the diagnostic test of choice
- Seroconversion must be demonstrated; this can take as long as 6 months to develop; positive serology may persist for months
- Nucleic acid amplification assays are as sensitive and specific as culture

Treatment, Control, and Prevention

- Macrolides (e.g., azithromycin, clarithromycin) or fluoroquinolones (e.g., ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin) are the treatment of choice
- Decrease environmental exposure to reduce risk of disease
- For environmental sources associated with disease, treat with hyperchlorination, superheating, or copper-silver ionization

A few medically important gram-negative rods have not been discussed in the preceding chapters and are the subject of this chapter (Table 29.1).

Bartonella

As with many groups of bacteria studied in recent years, analysis of the 16S ribosomal ribonucleic acid (rRNA) gene has led to reorganization of the genus *Bartonella.* Currently, 35 species are included in the genus, with 3 species most commonly associated with human disease: ***B. bacilliformis, B. henselae,*** and ***B. quintana*** (Box 29.1). Members of the genus are short (0.2 to 0.6 × 0.5 to 1.0 μm), gram-negative, coccobacillary or bacillary rods with fastidious growth requirements, requiring prolonged incubation (2 to 6 weeks) for their initial recovery in culture.

Members of the genus *Bartonella* are found in a variety of animal reservoirs and are typically present without evidence of disease. Spread of most *Bartonella* species from colonized animals to humans is either by direct contact or **insect vectors** (e.g., *B. bacilliformis,* **sandflies;** *B. quintana,* **lice;** *B. henselae,* **fleas**). Most infections with *Bartonella* are characterized by **recurrent fevers** and/or **angioproliferative lesions** (blood-filled cysts).

B. bacilliformis, the original member of the genus, is responsible for **Carrión disease,** which is an acute hemolytic bacteremia consisting of fevers and severe anemia **(Oroya fever)** followed by the development of chronic vasoproliferative nodules (**verruga peruana,** "Peruvian wart"). The disease is restricted to the Andes mountain regions of Peru, Ecuador, and Colombia, which is the endemic area of the sandfly vector *Phlebotomus.* After the bite of an infected sandfly, the bacteria enter the blood, multiply, and penetrate into erythrocytes and endothelial cells. This process increases the fragility of the infected cells and facilitates their clearance by the reticuloendothelial system, leading to acute anemia. Myalgia, arthralgia, and headache are also common. This stage of illness ends with the development of humoral immunity. In the chronic stage of Carrión disease, 1- to 2-cm cutaneous nodules, often engorged with blood (angioproliferative), appear over the course of 1 to 2 months and may persist for months to years. The link between verruga peruana skin lesions and Oroya fever was demonstrated by a medical student named Carrión who infected himself with aspirates from the skin lesions and died of Oroya fever. This act of scientific recklessness immortalized him and illustrates the high mortality associated with this disease if untreated, so it is recommended that *B. bacilliformis* infections should be treated with chloramphenicol or ciprofloxacin.

TABLE 29.1 Important Miscellaneous Gram-Negative Rods

Organism	Historical Derivation
Bartonella	Named after Barton, who originally described *B. bacilliformis*
B. bacilliformis	*bacillus,* rod; *forma,* shape (rod shaped)
B. henselae	*hensel,* named after D.M. Hensel, who worked with this organism
B. quintana	*quintana,* fifth (refers to 5-day fever)
Bordetella	Named after Jules Bordet, who first isolated the organism responsible for pertussis
B. pertussis	*per,* very or severe; *tussis,* cough (a severe cough)
B. parapertussis	*para,* resembling (resembling pertussis)
B. bronchiseptica	*bronchus,* the trachea; *septicus,* septic (an infected bronchus)
B. holmesii	Named after the microbiologist Barry Holmes
Brucella	Named after Sir David Bruce, who first recognized the organism as a cause of "undulant fever"
B. abortus	*abortus,* abortion or miscarriage (this organism is responsible for abortion in infected animals)
B. melitensis	*melitensis,* pertaining to the Island of Malta (Melita), on which the first outbreak was recognized by Bruce
B. suis	*suis,* of the pig (a swine pathogen)
B. canis	*canis,* of the dog (a dog pathogen)
Cardiobacterium hominis	*cardia,* heart; *bakterion,* small rod; *hominis,* of man (small rod of the hearts of men; refers to the predilection of this bacterium to cause endocarditis in humans)
Francisella	Named after the American microbiologist Edward Francis, who first described tularemia
F. tularensis subsp. *tularensis* (type A)	*tularensis,* pertaining to Tulare County, California, in which the disease was first described
F. tularensis subsp. *holarctica* (type B)	*holos,* whole; *arctos,* northern regions (reference to distribution in the arctic or northern regions)
F. tularensis subsp. *mediaasiatica*	*media,* middle; *asiatica,* Asian (pertaining to middle Asia)
F. tularensis subsp. *novicida*	*novus,* new; *cida,* to cut (a "new killer")
Legionella pneumophila	*Legionella,* first recognized outbreak was at an American Legion convention; *pneumôn,* lung; *phila,* loving; *pneumophila,* lung-loving.
Streptobacillus moniliformis	*streptos,* twisted or curved; *bacillus,* rod; *monile,* necklace; *forma,* shape (twisted, necklace-shaped bacillus; refers to the pleomorphic morphology of the bacteria)

B. quintana was originally described as the causative organism of **trench fever** (also called **"5-day" fever**), which is a disease prevalent during World War I. Infection can vary from asymptomatic to a severe, debilitating illness. Typically, patients have severe headache, fever, weakness, and pain in the long bones (particularly the tibia). The fever can recur at 5-day intervals, hence the name of the disease. Although trench fever does not cause death, the illness can be very severe. No animal reservoir for this disease has been identified; rather, exposure to contaminated feces of the **human body louse** spreads disease from person to person. *B. quintana* is also associated with disease in immunocompromised patients, particularly patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) who have **recurrent fevers with bacteremia** (Clinical Case 29.1) and **bacillary angiomatosis.** Bacteremia is characterized by an insidious onset of malaise, body aches, fatigue, weight loss, headaches, and recurrent fevers. This can lead to endocarditis or more commonly vascular proliferative diseases of the skin (bacillary angiomatosis; Fig. 29.1), subcutaneous tissues, or bone. The vascular lesions appear as multiple blood-filled nodules (resembling verruga peruana; as described previously). As with trench fever, the vector of these diseases appears to be the human body louse, and disease is primarily restricted to the homeless population, in whom personal hygiene is substandard. Oral erythromycin, doxycycline, or azithromycin is most commonly used for treatment of *B. quintana* infections.

B. henselae is also responsible for bacillary angiomatosis; however, it primarily involves the skin, lymph nodes, liver **(peliosis hepatis),** or spleen **(splenic peliosis).** The reasons for this differential tissue affinity are not known. Also like *B. quintana, B. henselae* can cause subacute endocarditis. The reservoirs for *B. henselae* are cats and their fleas. The bacteria are carried asymptomatically in the feline oropharynx and can cause transient bacteremia, particularly in young or feral cats. *B. henselae* is responsible for another disease acquired after exposure to cats (e.g., scratches, bites, contact with the contaminated feces of cat fleas) called **cat-scratch disease.** Typically, cat-scratch disease is a benign infection in children, characterized by **chronic regional adenopathy** of the lymph nodes draining the site of contact. Although most infections are self-limited, dissemination can occur to the liver, spleen, eye, or central nervous system. Bacteria may be seen in the lymph node tissues; however, culture is virtually always negative. A definitive diagnosis is based on the characteristic presentation and serologic evidence of a recent infection. Cultures are not

BOX 29.1 Clinical Summaries

Bartonella bacilliformis

Carrión disease: febrile disease characterized by acute hemolytic bacteremia (Oroya fever) followed by the development of chronic cutaneous blood-filled nodules (verruga peruana)

Bartonella quintana

Trench fever: disease characterized by severe headache, fever, weakness, and pain in the long bones; the fever recurs at 5-day intervals
Chronic bacteremia: malaise, myalgias, fatigue, weight loss, headaches, and recurrent fevers in immunocompromised patients
Subacute endocarditis: mild but progressive infection of the endocardium
Bacillary angiomatosis: vascular proliferative disease in immunocompromised patients with blood-filled nodules involving the skin, subcutaneous tissues, and bones

Bartonella henselae

Bacillary angiomatosis: same as previously mentioned, except primarily involving the skin, lymph nodes, or liver and spleen
Subacute endocarditis: same as previously mentioned
Cat-scratch disease: chronic regional lymphadenopathy associated with cat scratch

Bordetella pertussis

Pertussis: after a 7- to 10-day incubation period, disease is characterized by the catarrhal stage (resembles the common cold), progressing to the paroxysmal stage (repetitive coughs followed by inspiratory whoops), then the convalescence stage (diminishing paroxysms and secondary complication)
Bordetella parapertussis: produces a milder form of pertussis
Bordetella bronchiseptica: primarily a respiratory disease of animals but can cause bronchopneumonia in humans
Bordetella holmesii: uncommon cause of sepsis

Brucella

Brucellosis: initial nonspecific symptoms of malaise, chills, sweats, fatigue, myalgias, weight loss, arthralgias, and fever; can be intermittent (undulant fever); can progress to systemic involvement (gastrointestinal tract, bones or joints, respiratory tract, other organs)
Brucella melitensis: severe, acute systemic disease, with complications common
Brucella abortus: mild disease with suppurative complications
Brucella suis: chronic, suppurative, destructive disease
Brucella canis: mild disease with suppurative complications

Cardiobacterium hominis

Subacute endocarditis: same as previously mentioned

Francisella tularensis

Ulceroglandular tularemia: painful papule develops at the site of inoculation that progresses to ulceration; localized lymphadenopathy
Oculoglandular tularemia: after inoculation into the eye (e.g., rubbing eye with a contaminated finger), painful conjunctivitis develops, with regional lymphadenopathy
Pneumonic tularemia: pneumonitis with signs of sepsis develops rapidly after exposure to contaminated aerosols; high mortality unless promptly diagnosed and treated

Legionella pneumophila

Pontiac fever: self-limited febrile disease with chills, myalgias, malaise, and headache but no evidence of pneumonia
Legionnaires disease: severe pneumonia with acute onset of fever, chills, nonproductive cough, and headache progressing to multilobar consolidation of the lungs and multiorgan failure

Streptobacillus moniliformis

Rat-bite fever: irregular fever, headache, chills, myalgia, and arthralgia associated with rodent bite; pharyngitis and vomiting associated with exposure to bacteria in food or water

Clinical Case 29.1 Fever and Bacteremia Caused by *Bartonella*

Slater and associates (*N Engl J Med* 3323:1587–1593, 1990) described the first *Bartonella henselae* infection in an HIV-infected patient. A 31-year-old man with advanced HIV infection presented with high fevers, chills, sweats, and weight loss. Blood cultures were negative after 2 days of incubation, and despite an initial response to oral antibiotic therapy, the fevers returned after 2 weeks. The patient was pancytopenic and had elevated liver enzyme levels. Hepatomegaly was the only abnormality detected by computed tomography. All diagnostic tests were negative until after more than 2 weeks of incubation; gram-negative rods were recovered from the blood cultures. Subsequent studies characterized this as a newly discovered organism and named it *B. henselae*. The patient was treated with parenteral erythromycin and, despite recurrent fevers, subsequently became culture negative. This patient illustrates the susceptibility of HIV patients to this organism and the insidious onset and prolonged course of the disease.

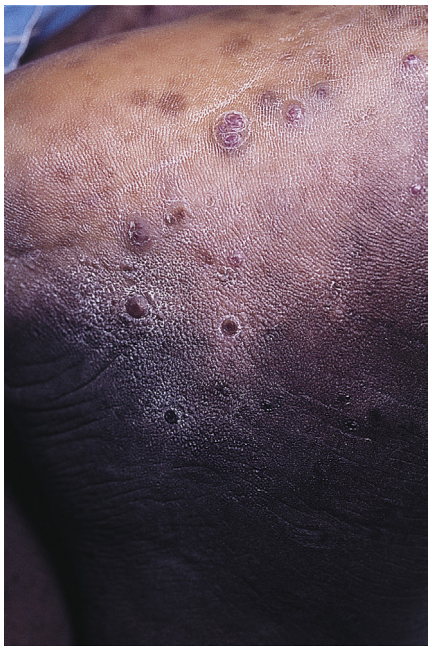


Fig. 29.1 Skin lesions of bacillary angiomatosis caused by *Bartonella henselae.* (From Cohen J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

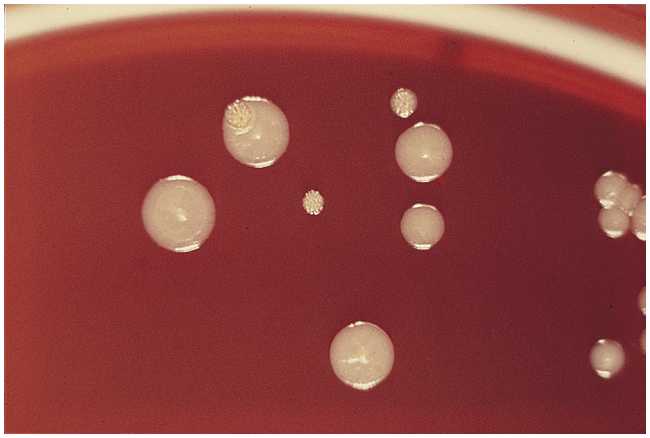


Fig. 29.2 *Bartonella henselae* growing on blood agar plates; note the two typical colonial morphologies. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

useful because relatively few organisms are present in the tissues as a result of the vigorous cellular immune reaction in immunocompetent patients. In contrast, *B. henselae* can be isolated from blood collected from immunocompromised patients with chronic bacteremia if the cultures are incubated for 4 weeks or more (Fig. 29.2).

The effectiveness of treating cat-scratch disease with antibiotics has not been demonstrated, although azithromycin is recommended if treatment is used. Oral erythromycin, doxycycline, or azithromycin is used for treatment of other *B. henselae* infections. Penicillinase-resistant penicillins, first-generation cephalosporins, and clindamycin do not appear active in vitro against *Bartonella*. The incidence of *Bartonella* infections in HIV-infected patients has declined in recent years because these patients are treated routinely with azithromycin or clarithromycin for prevention of *Mycobacterium avium* infections.

Bordetella

Bordetella is an extremely **small** (0.2 to 0.5 × 1 μm), **strictly aerobic, gram-negative coccobacillus.** Fourteen species are currently recognized, with four species responsible for human disease (see Box 29.1): ***B. pertussis,*** the agent responsible for pertussis or whooping cough; ***B. parapertussis,*** responsible for a milder form of pertussis; ***B. bronchiseptica,*** responsible for respiratory disease in dogs, swine, laboratory animals, and occasionally humans; and ***B. holmesii,*** an uncommon cause of sepsis. *Bordetella* species are differentiated on the basis of their growth characteristics, biochemical reactivity, and antigenic properties. Despite phenotypic differences, genetic studies have shown that the four species pathogenic for humans are closely related or identical species, differing only in the expression of virulence genes.

Infection with *B. pertussis* and the development of whooping cough require exposure to the organism, bacterial attachment to the ciliated epithelial cells of the respiratory tract, proliferation of the bacteria, and production of localized tissue damage and systemic toxicity. Attachment of the organisms to ciliated epithelial cells is mediated by the protein adhesins **pertactin, filamentous hemagglutinin,** and **fimbria.** Similar proteins are also found in *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica.* Localized tissue damage is mediated by **dermonecrotic toxin** (produces localized ischemia in mouse model) and **tracheal cytotoxin** (inhibits cilia movement, disrupting normal clearance mechanisms in the respiratory tree leading to the characteristic pertussis cough). Systemic toxicity is produced primarily by **pertussis toxin.** This toxin inactivates the protein that controls adenylate cyclase activity, leading to an increase in cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) levels and a subsequent increase in respiratory secretions and mucus production, all characteristic of the paroxysmal stage of pertussis.

Pertussis is a **human disease** with no other recognized animal or environmental reservoir. Although the incidence of pertussis, with its associated morbidity and mortality, was reduced considerably after the introduction of vaccines in 1949, the disease is still endemic worldwide, with an estimated 24 million infections and 160,000 deaths in 2014 globally, primarily in unvaccinated children. The incidence of reported disease in the United States was 18,975 in 2017, representing a 42% decrease from 2014. Historically, pertussis was considered a pediatric disease, but now a significant proportion of infections are found in **adolescents and adults** (Clinical Case 29.2). The recognition of milder forms of disease in older children and adults and improved diagnostic tests have contributed to the increase in reported disease.

Infection is initiated when infectious aerosols are inhaled and the bacteria become attached to and proliferate on ciliated epithelial cells. After a 7- to 10-day incubation period, the classical presentation of pertussis proceeds through three stages (Fig. 29.3). The first stage, the **catarrhal stage,** resembles a common cold, with serous rhinorrhea, sneezing, malaise, anorexia, and low-grade fever. Because the peak number of bacteria is produced during this stage and the cause of the disease is not yet recognized, patients in the catarrhal stage pose the highest risk to their contacts. After 1 to 2 weeks, the **paroxysmal stage** begins. During this time, ciliated epithelial cells are extruded from the respiratory tract, and the clearance of mucus is impaired. This stage is characterized by the **classic whooping**

Clinical Case 29.2 **Pertussis Outbreak in Health Care Workers**

Pascual and associates (*Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol* 27:546–552, 2006) reported an outbreak of pertussis among hospital workers. The index case, a nurse anesthetist, presented acutely with coughing paroxysms followed by vomiting and apneic episodes that led to loss of consciousness. Surgical service personnel and exposed patients and family members were surveyed, with cultures, polymerase chain reaction testing, and serology obtained from patients with respiratory symptoms. Twelve (23%) health care workers and 0 of 146 patients had clinical pertussis. The lack of disease in patients was attributed to mask use, cough etiquette, and limited face-to-face contact. This outbreak emphasizes the susceptibility of adults to infection and the highly infectious nature of *Bordetella pertussis*.

cough paroxysms (i.e., a series of repetitive coughs followed by an inspiratory whoop). Mucus production in the respiratory tract is common and is partially responsible for causing airway restriction. The paroxysms are frequently terminated with vomiting and exhaustion. A marked lymphocytosis is also prominent during this stage. Affected patients may experience as many as 40 to 50 paroxysms daily during the height of the illness. After 2 to 4 weeks, the disease enters the **convalescent stage;** at this time, the paroxysms diminish in number and severity, but secondary complications can occur. It is now appreciated that this classic presentation of pertussis may not be seen in patients with partial immunity or in adults. Such patients may have a history of a chronic persistent cough without whooping or vomiting. Because this presentation is not distinctive, appropriate diagnostic tests should be performed for *Bordetella* as well as other bacterial (e.g., *Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Chlamydia pneumoniae, Legionella pneumophila*) and viral respiratory pathogens.

The laboratory diagnosis of *B. pertussis* infections has changed in recent years. The bacteria are extremely sensitive to drying and do not survive unless care is taken during collection and transport of the specimen to the laboratory. Although *Bordetella* species have simple nutritional requirements, some species are highly **susceptible to toxic substances and metabolites** present in common laboratory media. These species (particularly *B. pertussis*) require media supplemented with charcoal, starch, blood, or albumin to absorb these toxic substances. The more fastidious species also grow slowly in culture, and all require freshly prepared media. Even under ideal conditions, recovery of *B. pertussis* in culture is difficult. For these reasons, a number of nucleic acid amplification assays, either targeted for *B. pertussis* or multiplex assays for a variety of respiratory pathogens, have been developed and are the diagnostic test of choice. The performance characteristics of these assays (e.g., sensitivity, specificity) are superior to microscopy and culture. It is difficult to interpret the results of serologic tests because microscopy and culture techniques are relatively insensitive standards by which these tests have been evaluated. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) tests have been developed to detect antibodies against pertussis toxin, filamentous hemagglutinin, pertactin, and fimbriae.

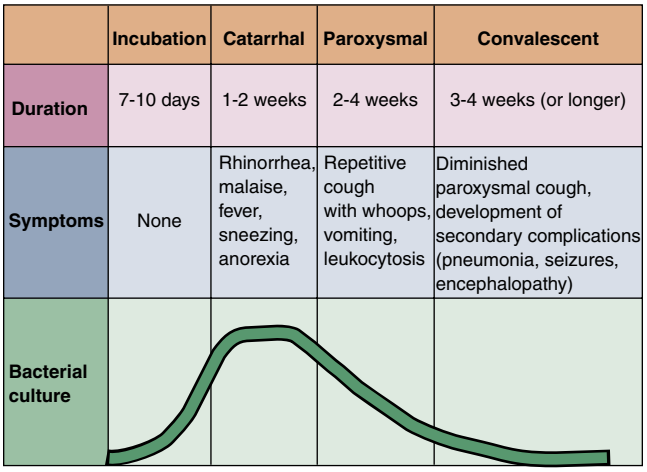


Fig. 29.3 Clinical presentation of *Bordetella pertussis* disease.

Treatment for pertussis is primarily supportive, with nursing supervision during the paroxysmal and convalescent stages of the illness. Antibiotics can ameliorate the clinical course and reduce infectivity, particularly during the early stages of disease, but convalescence depends primarily on the rapidity and degree to which the layer of ciliated epithelial cells regenerates. **Macrolides** (i.e., erythromycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin) are effective in eradicating the organisms; however, this effect has limited value because the illness is usually unrecognized during the peak of contagiousness. Azithromycin and clarithromycin are generally better tolerated and are the preferred macrolides. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or fluoroquinolones can be used in patients unable to tolerate macrolides. Postexposure antimicrobial prophylaxis with azithromycin is used for individuals at increased risk of severe disease if treatment is administered within 21 days of exposure to the symptomatic patient.

Two **acellular vaccines** (one for children, one for adults) administered in combination with vaccines for tetanus and diphtheria are currently approved in the United States. Both vaccines contain inactivated pertussis toxin, filamentous hemagglutinin, and pertactin. The pediatric vaccine is administered to children at the ages of 2, 4, 6, and 15 to 18 months, with the fifth dose between the ages of 4 and 6 years. The current recommendation for the adult vaccine is to administer it at 11 or 12 years of age, and then again between the ages of 19 and 65. Because pertussis is highly contagious in a susceptible population, and unrecognized infections in family members of a symptomatic patient can maintain disease in a community, azithromycin has been used for prophylaxis in select instances.

Other *Bordetella* Species

B. parapertussis is responsible for causing 10% to 20% of the cases of mild pertussis occurring annually in the United States. *B. bronchiseptica* causes respiratory disease primarily in animals but has been associated with human respiratory tract colonization and bronchopulmonary disease. Investigators at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in Atlanta, Georgia, reported that *B. holmesii* is primarily associated with septicemia.

Brucella

Molecular studies of the genus *Brucella* demonstrate a close relationship among the strains and are consistent with a single species; however, the genus is subdivided into 12 species, with 4 species most commonly associated with human disease: ***B. abortus, B. melitensis, B. suis,*** and ***B. canis*** (see Box 29.1). The diseases caused by members of this genus are characterized by a number of names based on the original microbiologists who isolated and described the organisms (e.g., Sir David Bruce **[brucellosis],** Bernhard Bang **[Bang disease]**), their clinical presentation **(undulant fever),** and the sites of recognized outbreaks (e.g., Malta fever, Mediterranean remittent fever, rock fever of Gibraltar, county fever of Constantinople, fever of Crete). The most commonly used term is brucellosis.

Brucellae are small (0.5 × 0.6 to 1.5 μm), nonmotile, nonencapsulated, gram-negative coccobacilli. The organism grows slowly in culture (taking a week or more) and generally requires complex growth media; is strictly aerobic, with some strains requiring supplemental carbon dioxide for growth; and does not ferment carbohydrates.

Colonies can assume both smooth (translucent, homogeneous) and rough (opaque, granular, or sticky) forms, as determined by the O antigen of the cell wall lipopolysaccharide (LPS). Antisera to one form (e.g., smooth) do not cross-react with the other form (e.g., rough).

Brucella does not produce a detectable exotoxin, and the endotoxin is less toxic than that produced by other gram-negative rods. Reversion of smooth strains to the rough morphology is associated with greatly reduced virulence, so the O chain of the smooth LPS is an important marker for virulence. *Brucella* is also an **intracellular parasite** of the **reticuloendothelial system.** After the initial exposure, the organisms are phagocytosed by macrophages and monocytes, in which the bacteria survive and replicate. Phagocytosed bacteria are carried to the spleen, liver, bone marrow, lymph nodes, and kidneys. The bacteria secrete proteins that induce granuloma formation in these organs, and destructive changes in these and other tissues occur in patients with advanced disease.

Brucella infections have a **worldwide distribution,** with endemic disease most common in countries that do not have domestic animal vaccination programs, such as Latin America, Africa, the Mediterranean basin, the Middle East, and Western Asia. More than 500,000 documented cases are reported annually worldwide. In contrast, the incidence of disease in the United States is much lower (140 reported infections in 2017). The highest numbers of U.S. cases are reported in **California** and **Texas,** and most of these infections occur in residents from Mexico or visitors to that country. Laboratory personnel are also at significant risk for infection through direct contact or inhalation of the organism. Disease in cattle, swine, sheep, and goats in the United States has been eliminated effectively through the destruction of infected animals and the vaccination of disease-free animals.

Brucellosis in humans can be acquired by direct contact with the organism (e.g., a laboratory exposure), ingestion (e.g., consumption of contaminated food products), or inhalation. Of particular concern is the potential use of *Brucella* as a biological weapon, in which exposure would most likely be by inhalation.

Brucella causes mild or asymptomatic disease in the natural host: *B. abortus* infects cattle and American bison; *B. melitensis* infects goats and sheep; *B. suis* infects swine, reindeer, and caribou; and *B. canis* infects dogs, foxes, and coyotes. The organism has a predilection for infecting organs rich in **erythritol,** which is a sugar metabolized by many *Brucella* strains in preference to glucose. Animal (but not human) tissues, including breast, uterus, placenta, and epididymis, are rich in erythritol. The organisms thus localize in these tissues in nonhuman reservoirs and can cause sterility, abortions, or asymptomatic lifelong carriage. Brucellae are shed in high numbers in milk, urine, and birth products. Human disease in the United States is most commonly caused by ***B. melitensis*** and results primarily from consumption of contaminated, unpasteurized milk and other **dairy products.**

CLINICAL DISEASES

The disease spectrum of **brucellosis** (Box 29.1) depends on the infecting organism. *B. abortus* and *B. canis* tend to produce mild disease with rare suppurative complications. In contrast, *B. suis* causes the formation of destructive lesions and has a prolonged course. *B. melitensis* also causes severe disease with a high incidence of serious complications because the organisms can multiply to high concentrations in phagocytic cells.

Acute disease develops in approximately half of the patients infected with *Brucella,* with symptoms first appearing typically 1 to 3 weeks after exposure. Initial symptoms are nonspecific and consist of malaise, chills, sweats, fatigue, weakness, myalgias, weight loss, arthralgias, and nonproductive cough. Almost all patients have fever, and this can be intermittent in untreated patients, hence the name **undulant fever.** (Clinical Case 29.3) Patients with advanced disease can have gastrointestinal tract symptoms; osteolytic lesions or joint effusions; respiratory tract symptoms; and less commonly, cutaneous, neurologic, or cardiovascular manifestations. Chronic infections can also develop in inadequately treated patients, with symptoms developing within 3 to 6 months after discontinuing antibiotic therapy. Relapses are associated with a persistent focus on infections (e.g., in bone, spleen, liver) and not with the development of antibiotic resistance.

For the laboratory diagnosis of brucellosis, several blood samples should be collected for culture and serologic testing. Bone marrow cultures and cultures of infected tissues may also be useful. To ensure safe handling of the specimen, the laboratory should be notified if brucellosis is suspected. *Brucella* organisms are readily stained using conventional techniques, but their intracellular location and small size make them difficult to detect in clinical specimens. The organisms grow slowly in culture, requiring enriched blood agars and extended incubation (3 days or more). **Blood cultures should be incubated for 2 weeks** before they are considered negative. Preliminary identification of *Brucella* is based on the isolate's microscopic and colonial morphology, positive oxidase and urease reactions, and reactivity with specific antibodies. Identification at the genus level can also be accomplished by sequencing the 16S rRNA gene. Subclinical brucellosis and many cases of acute and chronic diseases are identified by a specific antibody response in the infected patient. Antibodies are detected in virtually all patients and

Clinical Case 29.3 **Brucellosis**

Lee and Fung (*Hong Kong Med J* 11:403–406, 2005) described a 34-year-old woman who developed brucellosis caused by *Brucella melitensis*. The woman presented with recurrent headaches, fever, and malaise that developed after she had handled goat placenta in China. Blood cultures were positive for *B. melitensis* after extended incubation. She was treated for 6 weeks with doxycycline and rifampicin and had a successful response. The case was a classical description of exposure to contaminated tissues high in erythritol, a presentation of recurrent fevers and headaches, and response to the combination of doxycycline and rifampicin.

can persist for many months or years; thus a significant increase in the antibody titer is required to provide definitive serologic evidence of current disease. A **presumptive diagnosis** can be made if there is a fourfold increase in the titer or a single titer is 1:160 or greater.

Tetracyclines, with **doxycycline** as the preferred agent, are generally active against most strains of *Brucella;* however, because this is a bacteriostatic drug, relapse is common after an initially successful response. The World Health Organization currently recommends the combination of **doxycycline with rifampin.** Because the tetracyclines are toxic to young children and fetuses, doxycycline should be replaced with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for pregnant women and for children younger than 8 years. Treatment must be continued for 6 weeks or longer for it to be successful. Fluoroquinolones, macrolides, penicillins, and cephalosporins are either ineffective or have unpredictable activity. Relapse of disease is caused by inadequate therapy and not the development of antibiotic resistance.

Control of human brucellosis is accomplished through control of the disease in livestock, as demonstrated in the United States. This requires systematic identification (by serologic testing) and elimination of infected herds and **animal vaccination** (currently with the rough strain of *B. abortus* strain RB51). The avoidance of unpasteurized dairy products, the observance of appropriate safety procedures in the clinical laboratory, and the wearing of protective clothing by abattoir workers are further ways to prevent brucellosis. The live attenuated *B. abortus* and *B. melitensis* vaccines have been used successfully to prevent infection in animal herds. Vaccines have not been developed against *B. suis* or *B. canis,* and the existing vaccines cannot be used in humans because they produce symptomatic disease. Lack of an effective human vaccine is of concern because *Brucella* could be used as an agent of bioterrorism.

Cardiobacterium

Cardiobacterium hominis is named for the predilection of this bacterium to cause endocarditis in humans (see Box 29.1). These bacteria are nonmotile, facultatively anaerobic, and characteristically small (1 × 1 to 2 μm) pleomorphic gram-negative or gram-variable rods. The bacteria are fermentative, oxidase positive, and catalase negative. *C. hominis* is present in the upper respiratory tract of most healthy people.

Endocarditis is the primary human disease caused by *C. hominis* and the related species *C. valvarum* (Clinical Case 29.4). Many infections are likely to be unreported or undiagnosed because of the low virulence of this organism and its slow growth in vitro. Most patients with *Cardiobacterium* endocarditis have **preexisting heart disease** and either a history of oral disease or have undergone a dental procedure before the clinical symptoms developed. The organisms are able to enter the blood from the oropharynx, adhere to the damaged heart tissue, and then slowly multiply. The course of disease is insidious and subacute; patients typically have symptoms (e.g., fatigue, malaise, and low-grade fever) for months before seeking medical care. Complications are rare, and complete recovery after appropriate antibiotic therapy is common.

Clinical Case 29.4 ***Cardiobacterium*** **Endocarditis**

Hoover and associates (*Ann Intern Med* 142:229–230, 2005) described the first patient infected with *Cardiobacterium valvarum* (a newly described species in the genus *Cardiobacterium*). The patient was a 46-year-old man who, over the course of 1 month, developed anorexia and fatigue. The symptoms developed 2 weeks after a dental extraction. His physical examination was notable for fatigue, lower extremity edema, and a new heart murmur. Bilateral pleural effusions were revealed on chest radiography. All blood cultures collected over a 24-hour period were positive for a pleomorphic gram-negative rod that was subsequently identified as *C. valvarum*. Management of the patient involved replacement of the aortic valve with a prosthetic valve and 4 weeks of treatment with ceftriaxone. Follow-up visits with the patient documented complete recovery. This case illustrates the subacute presentation and generally successful outcome for patients with *Cardiobacterium* endocarditis. What is unique is that the patient did not have a history of previous heart disease, although it is likely to have been present.

The isolation of *C. hominis* from blood cultures confirms the diagnosis of endocarditis. The organism grows slowly in culture, requiring 1 week or more for growth to be detected. The organism requires enhanced carbon dioxide and humidity levels to grow on agar media, with 1-mm pinpoint colonies seen on blood or chocolate agar plates after 2 days of incubation. The organism does not grow on MacConkey agar or other selective media commonly used for gram-negative rods. *C. hominis* can be readily identified from its growth properties, microscopic morphology, and reactivity in biochemical tests.

C. hominis is susceptible to many antibiotics, and most infections are treated successfully with **penicillin or ampicillin** for 2 to 6 weeks, although penicillin-resistant strains have been reported. *C. hominis* endocarditis in people with preexisting heart disease is prevented by maintenance of good oral hygiene and use of antibiotic prophylaxis at the time of dental procedures. Long-acting penicillin is effective prophylaxis. Erythromycin should not be used because *C. hominis* is commonly resistant to it.

Francisella

Francisella is an important **zoonotic pathogen** that can cause significant human disease. The most important human pathogen in the genus *Francisella* is *F. tularensis,* which is the causative agent of **tularemia** (also called **glandular fever, rabbit fever, tick fever,** and **deerfly fever**) in animals and humans (see Box 29.1). *F. tularensis* is subdivided into three subspecies based on their biochemical properties. **Subspecies *tularensis* (type A)** and **subspecies *holarctica* (type B)** are the most important, whereas *F. tularensis* subsp. *mediaasiatica* is rarely associated with human disease. *F. novicida* and *F. philomiragia* are uncommon, opportunistic pathogens that have a predilection for patients with immunologic deficiencies

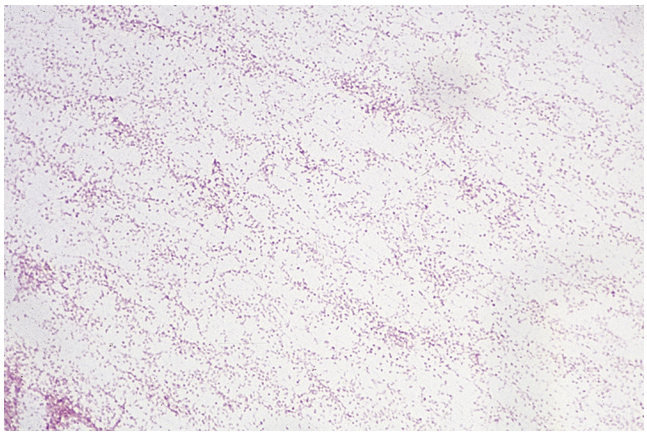


Fig. 29.4 Gram stain of *Francisella tularensis* isolated in culture; note the extremely small, dotlike coccobacilli.

(i.e., chronic granulomatous disease, myeloproliferative diseases).

F. tularensis is a **very small** (0.2 × 0.2 to 0.7 μm), faintly staining, gram-negative coccobacillus (Fig. 29.4). The organism is nonmotile, has a thin lipid capsule, and has fastidious growth requirements (i.e., most strains **require cysteine** for growth). It is **strictly aerobic** and requires 3 or more days before growth is detected in culture.

F. tularensis is an **intracellular pathogen** that can replicate in macrophages, neutrophils, epithelial cells, and endothelial cells. The organism inhibits phagosome-lysosome fusion through secretion of proteins that facilitate bacterial escape from the phagosome and subsequent replication in the cytosol. Pathogenic strains possess an antiphagocytic, **polysaccharide-rich capsule,** and loss of the capsule is associated with decreased virulence. The capsule protects the bacteria from complement-mediated killing during the bacteremia phase of disease. This organism has an endotoxin, but it is considerably less active than the endotoxin found in other gram-negative rods.

A strong, innate immune response with production of interferon (IFN)-γ and tumor necrosis factor is important for controlling bacterial replication in macrophages in the early phase of infection. Specific T-cell immunity is required for activation of macrophages for intracellular killing in the late stages of disease. B-cell–mediated immunity is less important for elimination of this facultative intracellular pathogen.

F. tularensis subsp. *tularensis* (type A) is restricted to North America, whereas subsp. *holarctica* (type B) is endemic throughout the Northern Hemisphere. Type A strains are further subdivided into **type A–west,** which predominates in the arid region from the Rocky Mountains to the Sierra Nevada Mountains, and **type A–east,** which occurs in the central southeast states of Arkansas, Missouri, and Oklahoma and along the Atlantic Coast. **Type B** strains cluster along major waterways, such as the upper Mississippi River, and in areas with high rainfall, such as the Pacific Northwest. The distribution of these strains is important because the epidemiologic features of the individual diseases are distinct and the course of clinical disease is significantly different. The geographic distribution of type A–west, type A–east, and type B strains is defined by the distribution of the natural reservoirs and vectors of *F. tularensis*. More than 200 species of mammals, as well as birds and blood-sucking arthropods, are infected naturally with *F. tularensis*. Type A infections are most commonly associated with exposure to **lagomorphs** (rabbits, hares) and **cats;** type B infections are associated with **rodents** and cats, but not lagomorphs. (Clinical Case 29.5) Infections caused by **biting arthropods** (e.g., hard ticks [*Ixodes, Dermacentor, Amblyomma* spp.], deerflies) are more common with type A than with type B strains. The spread to type A–east strains from the central southeast states to the Atlantic Coast states occurred when infected rabbits were imported from the central states to East Coast hunting clubs in the 1920s and 1930s. Type A–east infections are more commonly associated with disseminated disease and a high mortality rate when compared with disease caused by type A–west strains; the course of disease caused by type B stains is intermediate.

The reported incidence of disease is low. In 2017, 239 cases were reported in the United States; however, the actual number of infections is likely to be much higher because tularemia is frequently unsuspected and is difficult to confirm by laboratory tests. Most of the infections occur during the summer (when exposure to infected ticks is greatest). The incidence of disease increases dramatically when a relatively warm winter is followed by a wet summer, causing the tick population to proliferate. People at greatest risk for infection are hunters, laboratory personnel, and those exposed to ticks and other biting arthropods. In areas in which the organism is endemic, it is said that if a rabbit is moving so slowly that it can be shot by a hunter or caught by a pet, the rabbit could be infected (Clinical Case 29.5).

Clinical Case 29.5 **Cat-Associated Tularemia**

Capellan and Fong (*Clin Infect Dis* 16:472–475, 1993) described a 63-year-old man who developed ulceroglandular tularemia complicated by pneumonia after a cat bite. He initially presented with pain and localized swelling of his thumb 5 days after the bite. Oral penicillins were prescribed, but the patient's condition worsened, with increased local pain, swelling, and erythema at the wound site, and systemic signs (fever, malaise, vomiting). Incision of the wound was performed, but no abscess was found; culture of the wound was positive for a light growth of coagulase-negative staphylococci. Intravenous penicillins were prescribed, but the patient continued to deteriorate, with the development of tender axillary lymphadenopathy and pulmonary symptoms. A chest radiograph revealed pneumonic infiltrates in the right middle and lower lobes of the lung. The patient's therapy was changed to clindamycin and gentamicin, which was followed by defervescence and improvement of his clinical status. After 3 days of incubation, tiny colonies of faintly staining gram-negative coccobacilli were observed on the original wound culture. The organism was referred to a national reference laboratory, in which it was identified as *Francisella tularensis*. A more complete history revealed that the patient's cat lived outdoors and fed on wild rodents. This case illustrates the difficulty in making the diagnosis of tularemia and the lack of responsiveness to penicillins.

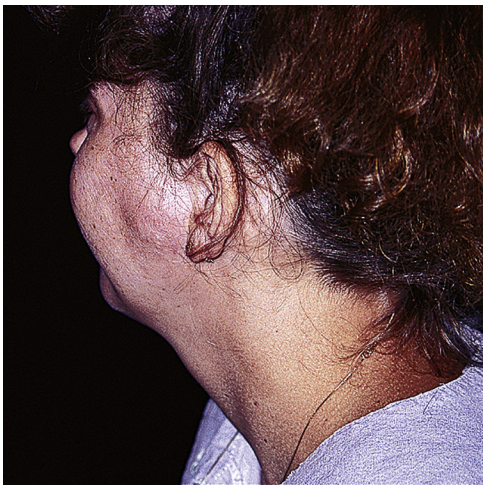


Fig. 29.5 Patient with oculoglandular tularemia (note swelling beside the ear).

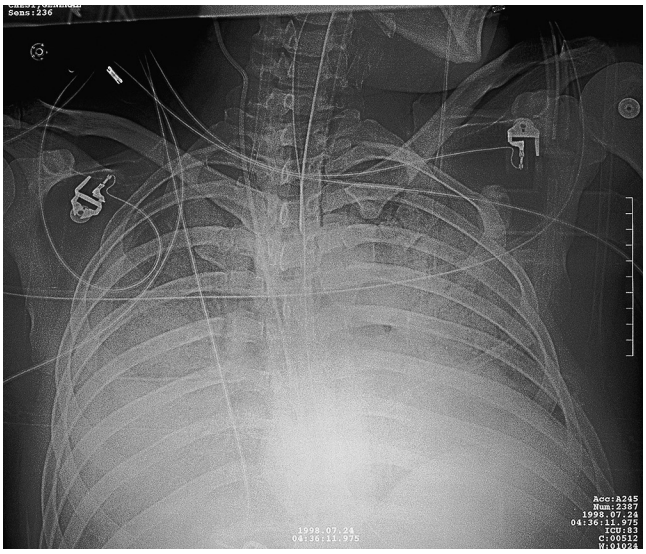


Fig. 29.6 Chest radiograph of patient with pulmonary tularemia.

Disease caused by *F. tularensis* is subdivided into several forms based on the clinical presentation: **ulceroglandular** (cutaneous ulcer and swollen lymph node), **oculoglandular** (eye involvement and swollen cervical lymph nodes), **glandular** (primarily swollen lymph nodes with no other localized symptoms), **typhoidal** (systemic signs of sepsis), **pneumonic** (pulmonary symptoms), and **oropharyngeal** and **gastrointestinal** disease after ingestion of *F. tularensis.* Variations of these presentations are also common (e.g., pneumonic tularemia typically has systemic signs of sepsis).

Ulceroglandular tularemia is the most common manifestation. The skin lesion, which starts as a painful papule, develops at the site of the tick bite or direct inoculation of the organism into the skin (e.g., a laboratory accident). The papule then ulcerates and has a necrotic center and raised border. Localized lymphadenopathy and bacteremia are also typically present (although bacteremia may be difficult to document).

Oculoglandular tularemia (Fig. 29.5) is a specialized form of the disease and results from direct contamination of the eye. The organism can be introduced into the eyes, for example, by contaminated fingers or through exposure to water or aerosols. Affected patients have a painful conjunctivitis and regional lymphadenopathy.

Pneumonic tularemia (Fig. 29.6) results from inhalation of infectious aerosols and is associated with high morbidity and mortality unless the organism is recovered rapidly in blood cultures (it is generally difficult to detect in respiratory cultures). There is also concern that *F. tularensis* could be used as a biological weapon. As such, creation of an infectious aerosol would be the most likely method of dispersal.

Collection and processing of specimens for the isolation of *F. tularensis* are hazardous for both the physician and the laboratory worker. The organism, by virtue of its small size, can penetrate through unbroken skin and the mucous membranes during collection of the sample, or it can be inhaled if aerosols are produced (a particular concern during processing of specimens in the laboratory). Although tularemia is rare, laboratory-acquired infections are disproportionately common. Gloves should be worn during collection of the specimen (e.g., aspiration of an ulcer or lymph node), and all laboratory work (both initial processing and identification tests) should be performed in a biohazard hood.

Detection of *F. tularensis* in Gram-stained aspirates from infected nodes or ulcers is almost always **unsuccessful** because the organism is extremely small and stains faintly (see Fig. 29.4). Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) are primarily restricted to research labs. It has been stated that *F. tularensis* cannot be reliably recovered on common laboratory media because the organism requires sulfhydryl-containing substances (e.g., **cysteine**) for growth. However, *F. tularensis* can grow on **chocolate agar** or **buffered charcoal yeast extract (BCYE)** agar, which are media supplemented with cysteine that are used in most laboratories. If infection with *F. tularensis* is suspected, the laboratory should be notified because *F. tularensis* grows slowly and may be overlooked if the cultures are not incubated for a prolonged period. In addition, because this organism is highly infectious, special care is required for microbiological testing. Blood cultures are generally negative for the organism unless the cultures are incubated for a week or longer. Cultures of respiratory specimens will be positive if appropriate selective media are used to suppress the more rapidly growing bacteria from the upper respiratory tract. *F. tularensis* also grows on the selective media used for *Legionella* (e.g., BCYE agar). Aspirates of lymph nodes or draining sinuses are usually positive if the cultures are incubated for 3 days or longer.

Preliminary identification of *F. tularensis* is based on the slow growth of very small gram-negative coccobacilli on chocolate agar but not blood agar (blood agar is not supplemented with cysteine). The identification is confirmed by demonstrating the reactivity of the bacteria with specific antiserum (i.e., agglutination of the organism with antibodies against *Francisella*).

Tularemia is diagnosed in most patients by the finding of a fourfold or greater increase in the titer of antibodies during the illness or a single titer of 1:160 or greater. However, antibodies (including immunoglobulin [Ig]G, IgM, and IgA) can persist for many years, making it difficult to differentiate between past and current disease.

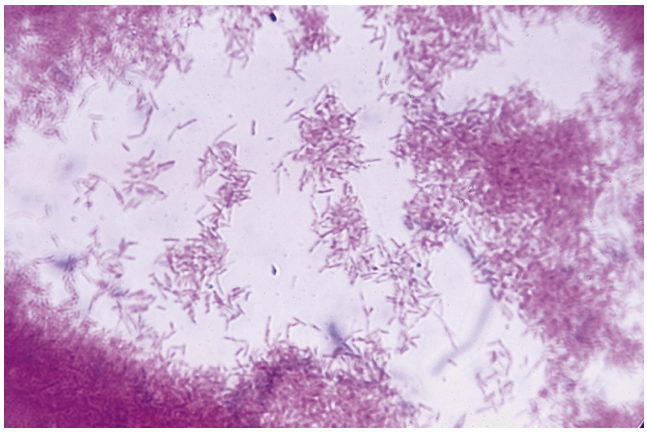


Fig. 29.7 Gram stain of *Legionella pneumophila* grown on buffered charcoal yeast extract agar. Note the pleomorphic forms characteristic of *Legionella*. (Courtesy Dr. Janet Stout, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania.)

Gentamicin is considered the antibiotic of choice. Doxycycline and ciprofloxacin can be used to treat mild infections. *F. tularensis* strains produce β-lactamase, which renders penicillins and cephalosporins ineffective. The mortality rate is less than 1% if patients are treated promptly but is much higher in untreated patients, particularly those infected with type A–east strains.

To prevent infection, people should avoid the reservoirs and vectors of infection (e.g., rabbits, ticks, biting insects), but this is often difficult. At a minimum, people should not handle ill-appearing rabbits and should wear gloves when skinning and eviscerating animals. Because the organism is present in the arthropod's feces and not saliva, the tick must feed for a prolonged time before the infection is transmitted. Prompt removal of the tick can therefore prevent infection. Wearing protective clothing and using insect repellents reduce the risk of exposure. Persons who have a high-risk exposure (e.g., exposure to an infectious aerosol) should be treated with prophylactic antibiotics. Interest in developing a live attenuated vaccine is motivated by fear of exposure to the bacteria as a bioterrorism agent; however, an effective vaccine is not currently available. Inactivated vaccines do not elicit protective cellular immunity.

Legionella

In the summer of 1976, public attention was focused on an outbreak of severe pneumonia that caused many deaths among American Legion members attending a convention in Philadelphia. After months of intensive investigations, a previously unknown gram-negative rod was isolated. Subsequent studies found an organism, named ***Legionella pneumophila,*** to be the cause of multiple epidemics and sporadic infections. The organism was not previously recognized because it stains poorly with conventional dyes and does not grow on common laboratory media. Despite initial problems with the isolation of *Legionella* organisms, it is now known to be a ubiquitous aquatic saprophyte.

The most important member of the family Legionellaceae is *Legionella* with 61 species and 3 subspecies. Approximately half of these species have been implicated in human disease, with the others found in environmental sources. *L. pneumophila* is the cause of 90% of all infections; serotypes 1 and 6 are most commonly isolated.

Members of the genus *Legionella* are **slender, pleomorphic, gram-negative rods** measuring 0.3 to 0.9 × 2 μm in size. The organisms characteristically appear as short coccobacilli when observed in tissue but are very pleomorphic (up to 20 μm long) on artificial media (Fig. 29.7). Legionellae in clinical specimens do not stain with common reagents but can be seen in tissues stained with Dieterle silver stain.

Legionellae are obligatively aerobic and nutritionally fastidious. They require media supplemented with L-cysteine, and growth is enhanced by iron. Growth of these bacteria on supplemented media but not on conventional blood agar media has been used as the basis for the preliminary identification of clinical isolates. The bacteria have developed multiple methods to acquire iron from their host cells or in vitro media, and loss of this ability is associated with loss of virulence. The organisms derive energy from the metabolism of amino acids but not carbohydrates.

Respiratory tract disease caused by *Legionella* species develops in susceptible people who inhale infectious aerosols. Legionellae are facultative **intracellular bacteria** that multiply in free-living amebae in nature, and in alveolar macrophages, monocytes, and alveolar epithelial cells in infected hosts. This ability to infect and replicate in macrophages is mediated by first binding complement component C3b to an outer membrane porin protein on the bacterial surface and then binding to the CR3 complement receptor on the mononuclear phagocyte surface. The organisms then penetrate the cell through endocytosis and initiate replication. The bacteria are not killed in the cells by exposure to toxic superoxide, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl radicals because phagolysosome fusion is inhibited. Chemokines and cytokines released by the infected macrophages stimulate a robust inflammatory response that is characteristic of infections with *Legionella*. The organisms proliferate in their intracellular vacuole and produce proteolytic enzymes (phosphatase, lipase, and nuclease) that eventually kill the host cell when the vacuole is lysed. Immunity to disease is primarily cell mediated, with humoral immunity playing a minor role. The bacteria are not killed until sensitized helper T cells (TH1 cells) activate the parasitized macrophages. Production of IFN-γ is critical for elimination of *Legionella* organisms.

Legionellae have a **worldwide distribution**, and are commonly present in natural bodies of water such as lakes and streams, as well as in air conditioning cooling towers and condensers, and in water systems (e.g., showers, hot tubs). Human infections are most commonly associated with **exposure to contaminated aerosols** (e.g., air conditioning cooling towers, whirlpool spas, showerheads, water misters). (Clinical Case 29.6) The organisms can survive in moist environments for a long time, at relatively high temperatures, and in the presence of disinfectants such as chlorine. One reason for their survival is that the bacteria parasitize amebae in the water and replicate in this protected environment (similar to their replication in human macrophages). The bacteria also survive in biofilms that develop in the pipes of water systems.

The incidence of infections caused by *Legionella* species is unknown because disease is difficult to document. The

Clinical Case 29.6 **Outbreak of Legionnaires Disease**

Kirrage and associates (*Respir Med* 101:1639–1644, 2007) described an outbreak of legionnaires disease (LD) that occurred in Hereford, England. On October 24, 2003, the public health agency was notified that an elderly man had died of LD. Three days later, the agency was notified that an elderly woman had also died of LD. As part of an active surveillance investigation, two additional patients with positive *Legionella* urine antigen tests were identified in a local hospital. Further investigations revealed 28 epidemiologically linked patients with the onset of disease from October 8 to November 20. All patients had positive urine antigen tests, four had high antibody titers, and two were culture positive. The implicated source of the outbreak was a cooling tower that had recently been restarted after a period of inactivity. After the tower was closed and recleaned, the epidemic was terminated. This outbreak illustrates the difficulty of recognizing the problem when the individuals infected may present to different hospitals. This is particularly a problem when the source is located in a hotel or vacation place.

number of reported cases has steadily risen since 2000, with almost 7500 cases reported in 2016. However, the CDC estimates that up to 18,000 cases of legionnaires disease occur each year in the United States. Serologic studies have also shown that a significant proportion of the population has acquired immunity to these organisms. It is reasonable to conclude that contact with the organism and acquisition of immunity after an asymptomatic infection are common.

Although sporadic outbreaks of the disease occur throughout the year, most epidemics of the infection occur in late summer and autumn because the organism proliferates in water reservoirs during the warm months. More than 90% of the documented infections in the United States are in persons aged 40 years or older, presumably because they are more likely to have decreased cellular immunity and compromised pulmonary function. A significant proportion of reported cases are acquired in hospitals because of the predominance of high-risk patients. Person-to-person spread or an animal reservoir has not been demonstrated.

Asymptomatic *Legionella* infections are believed to be relatively common. Symptomatic infections primarily affect the lungs and present in one of two forms (see Box 29.1): (1) an influenza-like illness (referred to as **Pontiac fever**) and (2) a severe form of pneumonia (i.e., **legionnaires disease**).

L. pneumophila was responsible for causing a self-limited, febrile illness in people working at the Pontiac, Michigan, Public Health Department in 1968. Fever, chills, myalgia, malaise, and headache, but no clinical evidence of pneumonia, are characteristic of the disease. The symptoms developed over 12 hours, persisted for 2 to 5 days, and then resolved spontaneously without antibiotic treatment and with minimal morbidity and no deaths. Other outbreaks of Pontiac fever, with and without *Legionella* pneumonia, have been reported. The precise pathogenesis of this syndrome is unknown, although it is believed that this disease is caused by a hypersensitivity reaction to bacterial toxin (e.g., endotoxin).

Legionnaires disease (legionellosis) is characteristically more severe and, if untreated, promptly causes considerable morbidity, often leading to death in 15% of previously healthy individuals and up to 75% of immunocompromised patients. After an incubation period of 2 to 10 days, systemic signs of an acute illness appear abruptly (e.g., fever and chills, a dry, nonproductive cough, headache). Multiorgan disease involving the gastrointestinal tract, central nervous system, liver, and kidneys is common. The primary manifestation is pneumonia, with multilobar consolidation and inflammation and microabscesses in lung tissue observed on histopathologic studies. Pulmonary function steadily deteriorates in susceptible patients with untreated disease. The clinical presentation of pneumonia caused by *Legionella* is not unique, so laboratory tests are required to confirm the diagnosis.

Since *Legionella* was first isolated, the laboratory diagnosis of infections caused by this organism has undergone a significant transition. Initial testing depended on microscopy, culture, and serology. Although culture remains the gold standard for diagnosis, microscopy and serology have been replaced by immunoassays for the detection of *Legionella*-specific antigens in urine, and nucleic acid amplification assays have replaced microscopy and serology for diagnosis with respiratory secretions. The bacteria stain poorly with Gram stain and are rarely observed in clinical specimens; serology is insensitive and nonspecific.

Immunoassays are used to detect soluble ***Legionella* serogroup 1–specific LPS antigens** excreted in the urine of infected patients. The sensitivity of these assays for *L. pneumophila* serogroup 1 is relatively high (up to 90%), particularly with concentrated urines, but the assays do not reliably detect other serogroups or *Legionella* species. This is an important distinction because *L. pneumophila* serogroup 1 is responsible for 80% to 90% of community-acquired infections but is responsible for less than 50% of hospital-acquired infections. Antigens persist in the urine of treated patients, with almost 50% of patients remaining positive at 1 month and 25% at 2 months. Persistence is particularly common with immunosuppressed patients, in which antigens can persist for up to 1 year.

Nucleic acid amplification assays are highly specific and have a sensitivity equivalent to culture for detection of *Legionella* species in respiratory secretions (i.e., bronchial alveolar lavage fluid). The presence of inhibitors in respiratory secretions may cause false-negative reactions, so all specimens should still be cultured.

Although legionellae were difficult to grow initially, commercially available media now make culture easy (test sensitivity, 80% to >90%). As previously mentioned, legionellae require L-cysteine, and recovery is enhanced in the presence of iron salts (supplied in hemoglobin or ferric pyrophosphate). The medium most commonly used for the isolation of legionellae is **BCYE agar,** although other supplemented media have been used. Antibiotics can be added to suppress the growth of rapidly growing, contaminating bacteria. Legionellae grow in air or 3% to 5% carbon dioxide at 35° C after 3 to 5 days. The small (1- to 3-mm) colonies have a characteristic ground-glass appearance.

It is easy to identify an isolate as *Legionella* from the findings of typical morphology and specific growth requirements. Legionellae appear as weakly staining, pleomorphic, thin,

gram-negative rods. Their growth on BCYE agar, but not on media without L-cysteine, is presumptive evidence that the organism is *Legionella.* In contrast to identification of the genus, species classification is problematic and generally relegated to reference laboratories. Although biochemical tests are useful for differentiating species, the species can be identified definitively only through sequencing species-specific gene targets or assessment of protein profiles using mass spectrometry.

In vitro susceptibility tests are not performed with legionellae because the organisms grow poorly on the media commonly used for these tests. In addition, some antibiotics that appear active in vitro are ineffective in treating infections. One explanation is that these antibiotics cannot penetrate the macrophages in which the legionellae survive and multiply. Accumulated clinical experience indicates that **macrolides** (e.g., azithromycin, clarithromycin) or **fluoroquinolones** (e.g., ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin) should be used to treat *Legionella* infections. β-Lactam antibiotics are ineffective because most isolates produce β-lactamases, and these antibiotics do not penetrate macrophages. Specific therapy for Pontiac fever is generally unnecessary because it is a self-limited hypersensitivity disease.

Prevention of legionellosis requires identification of the environmental source of the organism and reduction of the microbial burden. Hyperchlorination of the water supply and maintenance of elevated water temperatures have proved moderately successful. However, elimination of *Legionella* organisms from a water supply is often difficult or impossible to achieve. Because the organism has a low potential for causing disease, reducing the number of organisms in the water supply is often an adequate control measure. Hospitals with patients at high risk for disease should monitor their water supply on a regular basis for the presence of *Legionella* and their hospital population for disease. If hyperchlorination or superheating of the water does not eliminate disease (complete elimination of the organisms in the water supply is probably not possible), continuous copper-silver ionization of the water supply may be necessary.

Streptobacillus

Streptobacillus moniliformis, the causative agent of **rat-bite fever,** is a long, thin (0.1 to 0.5 × 1 to 5 μm), gram-negative rod that tends to stain poorly and to be more pleomorphic in older cultures. Granules, bulbous swellings resembling a string of beads, and extremely long filaments may be seen (Fig. 29.8).

Streptobacillus is found in the nasopharynx of rats and other small rodents, as well as transiently in animals that feed on rodents (e.g., dogs, cats). Human infections result from rodent bites (**rat-bite fever;** Clinical Case 29.7) or much less commonly from consumption of contaminated food or water **(Haverhill fever)** (see Box 29.1). Most cases of rat-bite fever in the United States are in children with pet rats, laboratory workers, and pet shop employees. After a 2- to 10-day incubation period, the onset of rat-bite fever is abrupt, characterized by irregular fever, headache, chills, muscle pain, and migratory pain in multiple joints (polyarthralgias). A maculopapular or petechial rash develops a few days later, with involvement extending to the hands and feet. This hemorrhagic rash in a patient with a recent history of a rat bite and migratory polyarthralgias is diagnostic. In the absence of effective antibiotics, rat-bite fever is associated with a 10% mortality rate. Despite effective treatment, some patients have persistent polyarthralgias, fatigue, and a slowly resolving rash.

Laboratory confirmation of *Streptobacillus* infections is difficult. Blood and joint fluid should be collected, and the laboratory should be notified that *S. moniliformis* is suspected because growth of the organism requires use of enriched media supplemented with 15% blood, 20% horse or calf serum, or 5% ascitic fluid. *S. moniliformis* grows slowly, taking at least 3 days to be isolated. When grown in broth, it has the appearance of "puffballs." Small, round colonies are seen when grown on agar, and the colonies of cell wall–defective variants resemble fried eggs (heaped center with spreading edges) on agar media. It is difficult to identify the organisms by biochemical tests because they are

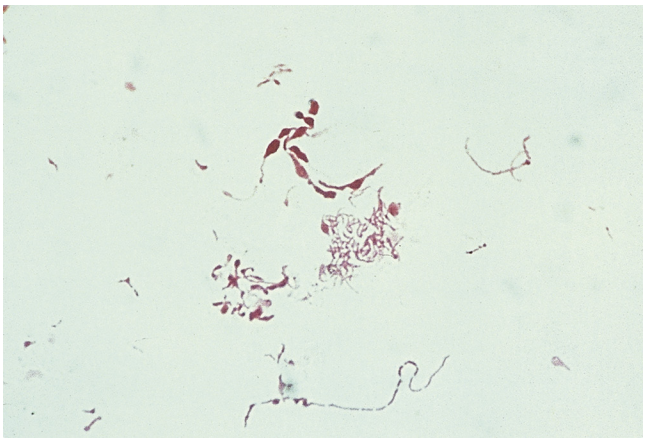


Fig. 29.8 Gram stain of *Streptobacillus moniliformis;* note the pleomorphic forms and bulbous swellings.

Clinical Case 29.7 **Rat-Bite Fever**

Irvine (*Clin Microbiol Newslett* 28:15–17, 2006) described a 60-year-old man who developed rat-bite fever. The patient was admitted to the hospital complaining of fever, confusion, headaches, and pustular lesions on both hands. The diagnosis of sepsis was made, and blood cultures, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), and the purulent material from the lesions were collected. Lymphocytes were the predominant cells in the CSF, and no bacteria were seen on Gram stain, consistent with aseptic meningitis. A Gram stain of purulent material revealed pleomorphic gram-negative rods. After 3 days of incubation, the bacteria grew from both the blood and wound cultures. Growth in the blood culture broths appeared as clumps of organisms resembling "bread crumbs." The organism was subsequently identified as *Streptobacillus moniliformis*. The patient was treated with penicillin, and within 24 hours his fever resolved and sensorium cleared. A more complete social history revealed that the patient had a pet snake and maintained mice to feed the snake. Although he did not remember recent bites from the mice, exposure of open cuts on his hands to the rodents would have been sufficient for an infection to develop.

relatively inactive metabolically. The most reliable method for identifying isolates is to sequence the 16S rRNA gene. *S. moniliformis* is susceptible to many antibiotics, including **penicillin** (not active against cell wall–defective variants) and **tetracycline.**

For case studies and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Carbonetti, N., 2010. Pertussis toxin and adenylate cyclase toxin: key virulence factors of Bordetella pertussis and cell biology tools. Future Microbiol. 5, 455–469.

de Figueiredo, P., Ficht, T., Rice-Ficht, A., et al., 2015. Pathogenesis and immunobiology of brucellosis: review of Brucella-host interactions. Am. J. Pathol. 185, 1505–1517.

Elliott, S., 2007. Rat bite fever and Streptobacillus moniliformis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 20, 13–22.

Jones, B.D., Faron, M., Rasmussen, J.A., et al., 2014. Uncovering the components of the Francisella tularensis virulence stealth strategy. Front Cell. Infect. Microbiol. 4, 32.

Kilgore, P., Salim, A., Zervos, M., Schmitt, H.-J., 2016. Pertussis: microbiology, disease, treatment, and prevention. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 29, 449485.

Lee, A., Cassiday, P., Pawloski, L., et al., 2018. Clinical evaluation and validation of laboratory methods for the diagnosis of Bordetella pertussis infection: culture, polymerase chain reaction (PCR, and anti-pertussis toxin IgG serology (IgG-PT). PLoS ONE 13 (4), e0195979.

Melvin, J.A., Scheller, E.V., Miller, J.F., et al., 2014. Bordetella pertussis pathogenesis: current and future challenges. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 12, 274–284.

Mercante, J., Winchell, J., 2015. Current and emerging Legionella diagnostics for laboratory and outbreak investigations. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 28, 95–133.

Newton, H.J., Ang, D.K., van Driel, I.R., et al., 2010. Molecular pathogenesis of infections caused by Legionella pneumophila. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 23, 274–298.

Okaro, U., Addisu, A., Casanas, B., Anderson, B., 2017. Bartonella species, an emerging cause of blood-culture negative endocarditis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 30, 709–746.

Pappas, G., Akritidis, N., Bosilkovski, M., et al., 2005. Brucellosis. N. Engl. J. Med. 352, 2325–2336.

Prutsky, G., Domecq, J.P., Mori, L., et al., 2013. Treatment outcomes of human bartonellosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Int. J. Infect Dis. 17, e811–e819.

Staples, J.E., Kubota, K.A., Chalcraft, L.G., et al., 2006. Epidemiologic and molecular analysis of human tularemia, United States, 1964–2004. Emerg. Infect Dis. 12, 1113–1118.

Yeung, K.H.T., Duclos, P., Nelson, E., Hutubessy, R., 2017. An update of the global burden of pertussis in children younger than 5 years: a modelling study. Lancet. Infect Dis. 17, 974–980.

Because this chapter examines a group of unrelated gram-negative bacteria, a series of case studies are presented to help the student review the chapter content.

Case Study 1 and Questions

A previously healthy 12-year-old girl developed a slowly enlarging, swollen axillary lymph node. One week before the onset of disease, she had suffered a scratch while playing with a kitten. Her physician suspected the diagnosis of cat-scratch disease.

1. What is the most sensitive diagnostic test for confirming this diagnosis?

2. What infections are caused by *B. quintana* and *B. henselae*? How does the epidemiology of these infections differ?

Case Study 2 and Questions

A 5-year-old girl was brought to the local public health clinic because of a severe, intractable cough. During the previous 10 days, she had a persistent cold that had worsened. The cough developed the previous day and was so severe that vomiting frequently followed it. The child appeared exhausted from the coughing episodes. A blood cell count showed a marked leukocytosis with a predominance of lymphocytes. The examining physician suspected that the child had pertussis.

3. What laboratory tests can be performed to confirm the physician's clinical diagnosis? What specimens should be collected, and how should they be submitted to the laboratory?

4. What is the natural progression and prognosis for this disease? How can it be prevented?

Case Study 3 and Questions

A 27-year-old man was mowing his field when he ran over two young rabbits. When he stopped his mower, he realized that two other rabbits were dead in the unmowed part of the lawn. He removed all the rabbits and buried them. Three days later he developed a fever, muscle aches, and a dry, nonproductive cough. Over the next 12 hours he became progressively sicker and was transported by his wife to the area hospital. Results of a chest radiograph showed infiltrates in both lung fields. Blood cultures and respiratory secretions were collected, and antibiotics were initiated. Blood cultures became positive, with small gram-negative rods after 3 days of incubation, and the same organism grew from the respiratory specimen that was inoculated onto BCYE agar.

5. What test should be performed to confirm the tentative diagnosis of *F. tularensis*?

6. This infection was presumably acquired by inhalation of aerosolized contaminated blood. What are the most common sources of *F. tularensis* infections and the most common routes of exposure?

Case Study 4 and Questions

A 73-year-old man was admitted to the hospital because of breathing difficulties, chest pain, chills, and fever of several days' duration. He had been well until 1 week before admission, when he noted the onset of a persistent headache and a productive cough. The patient smoked two packs of cigarettes a day for more than 50 years and drank a six-pack of beer daily; he also had a history of bronchitis. Physical examination results revealed an elderly man in severe respiratory distress with a temperature of 39° C, pulse of 120 beats/min, respiratory rate of 36 breaths/min, and blood pressure of 145/95 mm Hg. A chest radiograph revealed an infiltrate in the middle and lower lobes of the right lung. The white blood cell count was 14,000 cells/mm^3 (80% polymorphonuclear neutrophils). Gram stain of the sputum showed neutrophils but no bacteria, and routine bacterial cultures of sputum and blood were negative for organisms. Infection with *L. pneumophila* was suspected.

7. What laboratory tests can be used to confirm this diagnosis? Why were the routine culture and Gram-stained specimen negative for *Legionella* organisms?

30 Clostridium

The genus *Clostridium* consists of a large heterogeneous collection of spore-forming anaerobic rods. Pathogens such as *C. tetani* and *C. botulinum*, the agents responsible for tetanus and botulism, respectively, are well recognized and have historical significance. Disease caused by *C. difficile* has evolved in recent years as an infectious complication of antibiotic usage, in both the hospital and the community. Other species of clostridia are also well-recognized pathogens.

1. *C. perfringens* is an important cause of myonecrosis. What virulence factors are responsible for this disease?
2. Food poisoning caused by *C. perfringens* and *C. botulinum* is caused by ingestion of toxins (intoxication). Compare the clinical manifestations of these two diseases.
3. What disease is caused by *C. septicum*, and what patient population is most susceptible?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

CLOSTRIDIUM DIFFICILE

Trigger Words

Spore former, fecal carriage, toxins A and B, antibiotic-associated diarrhea, pseudomembranous colitis

Biology and Virulence

- Large anaerobic rod characterized by abundant spore formation, rapid growth, and production of volatile fatty acids
- Most strains produce two toxins: an enterotoxin that attracts neutrophils and stimulates their release of cytokines, and a cytotoxin that increases permeability of the intestinal wall and subsequent diarrhea
- Spore formation allows the organism to persist in the hospital environment and resist decontamination efforts
- Resistance to antibiotics such as clindamycin, cephalosporins, and fluoroquinolones allows *C. difficile* to overgrow the normal intestinal bacteria in patients exposed to these antibiotics and produce disease

Epidemiology

- Colonizes the intestines of a small proportion of healthy individuals (<5%)
- Exposure to antibiotics is associated with overgrowth of *C. difficile* and subsequent disease (endogenous infection)

Diseases

- Antibiotic-associated diarrhea: acute diarrhea generally developing 5 to 10 days after initiation of antibiotic treatment; may be brief and self-limited or more protracted with recurrent bouts of diarrhea
- Pseudomembranous colitis: most severe form of *C. difficile* disease, with profuse diarrhea, abdominal cramping, and fever; whitish plaques (pseudomembranes) form over intact colonic tissue; can progress to death

Diagnosis

- *C. difficile* disease is confirmed by detecting cytotoxin or enterotoxin or the toxin genes in the patient's feces

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- The implicated antibiotic should be discontinued
- Treatment with metronidazole or vancomycin should be used in severe disease; fecal transplants of colonic bacteria from healthy individuals can be used to treat recurrent disease
- Relapse is common because antibiotics do not kill spores; a second course of therapy with the same antibiotic is usually successful, although multiple courses may be necessary
- The hospital room should be carefully cleaned after the infected patient is discharged

CLOSTRIDIUM PERFRINGENS

Trigger Words

Spore former, myonecrosis, sepsis, food poisoning

Biology and Virulence

- Large gram-positive rods with spores rarely observed
- Distinct colony morphology and rapid growth
- Produces many toxins and enzymes that lyse blood cells and destroy tissues, leading to diseases such as overwhelming sepsis, massive hemolysis, and myonecrosis
- Produces a heat-sensitive enterotoxin that binds to receptors on the epithelium of the small intestine leading to loss of fluids and ions (watery diarrhea)

Epidemiology

- Ubiquitous; present in soil, water, and intestinal tract of humans and animals
- Type A strains are responsible for most human infections

Diseases

- Food poisoning associated with contaminated meat products (beef, poultry, gravy) held at temperatures between 5° C and 60° C, which allows the organisms to grow to large numbers
- Soft-tissue infections typically associated with bacterial contamination of wounds or localized trauma

Diagnosis

- Reliably recognized in Gram-stained tissue specimens (large, rectangular, gram-positive rods)
- Grows rapidly in culture with characteristic colony morphology and hemolytic pattern

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Rapid treatment is essential for serious infections
- Severe infections require surgical debridement and high-dose penicillin therapy
- Symptomatic treatment for food poisoning
- Proper wound care and judicious use of prophylactic antibiotics will prevent most infections

CLOSTRIDIUM TETANI

Trigger Words

Spore former, environmental, neurotoxin, contaminated wounds, tetanus, vaccine

Biology and Virulence

- Organism extremely oxygen sensitive, which makes detection by culture difficult
- The primary virulence factor is tetanospasmin, which is a heat-labile neurotoxin that blocks release of neurotransmitters for inhibitory synapses (i.e., gamma-aminobutyric acid, glycine)

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

Epidemiology

- Ubiquitous; spores are found in most soils and can colonize the gastrointestinal tract of humans and animals
- Exposure to spores is common, but disease is uncommon, except in developing countries in which there is poor access to vaccine and medical care
- Risk is greatest for people with inadequate vaccine-induced immunity
- Disease does not induce immunity

Diseases

- Disease is characterized by unrelenting muscle spasms and involvement of the autonomic nervous system

Diagnosis

- Diagnosis is based on clinical presentation and not laboratory tests
- Microscopy and culture are insensitive, and neither tetanus toxin nor antibodies are typically detected

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment requires the combination of wound debridement, antibiotic therapy (penicillin, metronidazole), passive immunization with antitoxin globulin, and vaccination with tetanus toxoid
- Prevention through use of vaccination, consisting of three doses of tetanus toxoid followed by booster doses every 10 years

CLOSTRIDIUM BOTULINUM

Trigger Words

Spore former, environmental, neurotoxin, foodborne and infant botulism, no vaccine

Biology and Virulence

- Multiple distinct botulinum toxins are produced, with human disease caused most commonly by types A and B; types E and F are also associated with human disease
- Botulinum toxin prevents release of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine, blocking neurotransmission at peripheral cholinergic synapses, leading to a flaccid paralysis

Epidemiology

- *C. botulinum* spores are found in soil worldwide
- Relatively few cases of botulism in the United States but prevalent in developing countries
- Infant botulism more common than other forms in the United States; associated with ingestion of contaminated soil or contaminated foods (particularly honey)

Diseases

- Foodborne botulism is characterized by blurred vision, dry mouth, constipation, and abdominal pain, with progressive weakness of the peripheral muscles and flaccid paralysis
- Infant botulism begins with nonspecific symptoms but progresses to flaccid paralysis
- Other forms of botulism include wound botulism and inhalation botulism

Diagnosis

- Diagnosis of foodborne botulism is confirmed if toxin activity is demonstrated in the implicated food or in the patient's serum, feces, or gastric fluid
- Infant botulism is confirmed if toxin is detected in the infant's feces or serum, or the organism cultured from feces
- Wound botulism is confirmed if toxin is detected in the patient's serum or wound, or the organism cultured from the wound

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment involves the combination of administration of metronidazole or penicillin, trivalent botulinum antitoxin, and ventilatory support
- Spore germination in foods prevented by maintaining food at an acid pH, by high sugar content (e.g., fruit preserves), or by storing the foods at 4° C or colder
- Toxin is heat labile; therefore it can be destroyed by heating of food for 10 minutes at 60° C to 100° C

Historically, the collection of all anaerobic gram-positive rods capable of forming **endospores** was in the genus *Clostridium;* however, clinically significant members of the genus can be misclassified by these criteria. Spores are only rarely demonstrated in some species *(C. perfringens, C. ramosum)*, some species are aerotolerant and can grow on agar media exposed to air (e.g., *C. tertium, C. histolyticum*), and some clostridia consistently stain gram-negative (e.g., *C. ramosum, C. clostridioforme*). It should not be surprising that the use of gene-sequencing techniques has led to reorganization of this heterogeneous collection of organisms into many new genera; however, most clinically significant species cluster in homology group I and remain in the genus *Clostridium.* These bacteria are the focus of this chapter (Table 30.1).

The clostridia are **ubiquitous** in soil, water, and sewage and are part of the normal microbial population in the gastrointestinal (GI) tracts of animals and humans. Most clostridia are harmless saprophytes, but some are well-recognized human pathogens with a clearly documented history of causing diseases such as **diarrhea** and **colitis** *(C. difficile)*, **food poisoning** *(C. perfringens)*, **tetanus** *(C. tetani)*, **botulism** *(C. botulinum)*, and **myonecrosis** (**gas gangrene)** *(C. perfringens, C. septicum, C. sordellii)* (Table 30.2; Box 30.1). The remarkable ability of clostridia to cause diseases is attributed to their (1) ability to survive adverse environmental conditions through spore formation; (2) rapid growth in a nutritionally enriched, oxygen-deprived environment; and (3) production of numerous histolytic toxins, enterotoxins, and neurotoxins.

Clostridium difficile

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

C. difficile is a large (0.5 to 1.9 × 3.0 to 17 μm) anaerobic rod that freely forms spores *in vivo* and in culture. The organism grows rapidly in culture, although the vegetative cells (i.e., cells without a spore) die rapidly when exposed to oxygen. *C. difficile* produces a variety of volatile fatty acids that produce a characteristic "barnyard" smell in culture.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

C. difficile produces two toxins: an **enterotoxin (toxin A)** and a **cytotoxin (toxin B).** The enterotoxin is chemotactic for neutrophils, stimulating the infiltration of polymorphonuclear neutrophils into the ileum with release of cytokines. Toxin A also produces a cytopathic effect, resulting in disruption of the tight cell-to-cell junction, increased permeability of the intestinal wall, and subsequent diarrhea. The cytotoxin causes actin to depolymerize, with resultant destruction of the cellular cytoskeleton both *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Although both toxins appear to interact synergistically in the pathogenesis of disease, enterotoxin A–negative

TABLE 30.1 Important Clostridia

Organism	Historical Derivation
Clostridium	*closter,* a spindle
C. botulinum	*botulus,* sausage (the first major outbreak was associated with insufficiently smoked sausage)
C. difficile	*difficile,* difficult (difficult to isolate and grow; refers to the extreme oxygen sensitivity of this organism)
C. perfringens	*perfringens,* breaking through (associated with highly invasive tissue necrosis)
C. septicum	*septicum,* putrefactive (associated with sepsis and a high mortality)
C. tertium	*tertium,* third (historically, the third most commonly isolated anaerobe from war wounds)
C. tetani	*tetani,* related to tension (disease caused by this organism characterized by muscle spasms)

TABLE 30.2 Pathogenic Clostridia and Their Associated Human Diseases[a]

Species	Human Disease	Frequency
C. difficile	Antibiotic-associated diarrhea, pseudomembranous colitis	Common
C. perfringens	Soft-tissue infections (e.g., cellulitis, suppurative myositis, myonecrosis, gas gangrene), food poisoning, enteritis necroticans, septicemia	Common
C. septicum	Gas gangrene, septicemia	Uncommon
C. botulinum	Botulism	Uncommon
C. tetani	Tetanus	Uncommon
C. tertium	Opportunistic infections	Uncommon
C. sordellii	Gas gangrene, septic shock syndrome	Uncommon

[a]Other clostridial species have been associated with human disease but primarily as opportunistic pathogens or rarely observed. In addition, some species (e.g., *C. clostridioforme, C. innocuum, C. ramosum*) are commonly isolated but rarely associated with disease.

isolates can still produce disease. In addition, production of one or both toxins alone does not appear to be sufficient for disease (e.g., carriage of *C. difficile* and high levels of toxins are common in young children, although disease is rare). Bacterial "surface layer proteins" are important for the binding of *C. difficile* to the intestinal epithelium, leading to localized production of toxins and subsequent tissue damage.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

C. difficile is part of the normal intestinal flora in a small number of healthy people and hospitalized patients. In contrast with the original belief that *C. difficile* disease is restricted to hospitalized patients, it is now recognized that a significant proportion of individuals with *C. difficile* disease develop symptomatic disease outside the hospital. For most of these patients, they have a recent history of exposure to a health care facility, in which they acquired *C. difficile*. The disease develops in people taking antibiotics because the drugs alter the normal enteric flora, either permitting overgrowth of these relatively resistant organisms or making the patient more susceptible to exogenous acquisition of *C. difficile*. The disease occurs if the organisms proliferate in the colon and produce their toxins.

BOX 30.1 Clostridial Diseases: Clinical Summaries

Clostridium difficile

Antibiotic-associated diarrhea: acute diarrhea generally developing 5 to 10 days after initiation of antibiotic treatment (particularly clindamycin, penicillins, cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones); may be brief and self-limited or more protracted
Pseudomembranous colitis: most severe form of *C. difficile* disease, with profuse diarrhea, abdominal cramping, and fever; whitish plaques (pseudomembranes) over intact colonic tissue seen on colonoscopy

Clostridium perfringens

Soft-Tissue Infections

Cellulitis: localized edema and erythema with gas formation in the soft tissue; generally nonpainful
Suppurative myositis: accumulation of pus (suppuration) in the muscle planes, without muscle necrosis or systemic symptoms
Myonecrosis: painful, rapid destruction of muscle tissue; systemic spread with high mortality

Gastroenteritis

Food poisoning: rapid onset of abdominal cramps and watery diarrhea with no fever, nausea, or vomiting; short duration and self-limited
Necrotizing enteritis: acute, necrotizing destruction of jejunum, with abdominal pain, vomiting, bloody diarrhea, and peritonitis

Clostridium tetani

Generalized tetanus: generalized musculature spasms and involvement of the autonomic nervous system in severe disease (e.g., cardiac arrhythmias, fluctuations in blood pressure, profound sweating, dehydration)
Localized tetanus: musculature spasms restricted to localized area of primary infection
Neonatal tetanus: neonatal infection primarily involving the umbilical stump; very high mortality

Clostridium botulinum

Foodborne botulism: initial presentation of blurred vision, dry mouth, constipation, and abdominal pain; progresses to bilateral descending weakness of the peripheral muscles, with flaccid paralysis
Infant botulism: initially nonspecific symptoms (e.g., constipation, weak cry, failure to thrive) that progress to flaccid paralysis and respiratory arrest
Wound botulism: clinical presentation same as with foodborne disease, although the incubation period is longer and fewer gastrointestinal symptoms are reported
Inhalation botulism: rapid onset of symptoms (flaccid paralysis, pulmonary failure) and high mortality from inhalation exposure to botulinum toxin

CLINICAL DISEASES

Until the mid-1970s, the clinical importance of *C. difficile* was not appreciated (see Box 30.1). This organism was infrequently isolated in fecal cultures, and its role in human disease was unknown. Systematic studies now show that

Clinical Case 30.1 *Clostridium difficile* Colitis

Limaye and colleagues (*J Clin Microbiol* 38:1696, 2000) presented a classic presentation of *C. difficile* disease in a 60-year-old man who received a transplanted liver 5 years previous to his hospital admission for evaluation of crampy abdominal pain and severe diarrhea. Three weeks before admission he received a 10-day course of oral trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for sinusitis. On physical examination, the patient was febrile and had moderate abdominal tenderness. Abdominal computed tomography scan revealed right colon thickening but no abscess. Colonoscopy showed numerous whitish plaques and friable erythematous mucosa consistent with pseudomembranous colitis. Empirical therapy with oral metronidazole and intravenous levofloxacin was initiated. A stool immunoassay for *C. difficile* toxin A was negative, but *C. difficile* toxin was detected by both culture and cytotoxicity assay (demonstration stool filtrate causes cytotoxicity to cell cultures that is neutralized by specific antisera against *C. difficile* toxins). Therapy was changed to oral vancomycin, and the patient responded with resolution of diarrhea and abdominal pain. This is an example of severe *C. difficile* disease after antibiotic exposure in an immunocompromised patient, with a characteristic presentation of pseudomembranous colitis. The diagnostic problems with immunoassays are well known and have now been replaced by polymerase chain reaction assays that target the toxin genes. Treatment with metronidazole is currently preferred, although vancomycin is an acceptable alternative.

toxin-producing *C. difficile* is the most common cause of antibiotic-associated GI diseases ranging from a relatively benign, self-limited diarrhea to severe, life-threatening pseudomembranous colitis (Figs. 30.1 and 30.2). (Clinical Case 30.1)

In 2003, disease caused by a highly virulent strain (referred to as O27) of *C. difficile* was reported in communities and hospitals in Canada, the United States, and Europe. This strain was responsible for more severe disease, a high mortality rate, increased risk of relapse, and more complications. It was initially thought that this increased virulence was related to increased toxin production combined with the presence of a second toxin, **binary toxin.** However, it is now appreciated that *C. difficile* virulence is more complex and cannot be attributed to specific genotypes; rather, it is attributed to multiple virulent phenotypes.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Isolation of the *C. difficile* in stool culture documents colonization but not disease, so the diagnosis of disease is confirmed by demonstration of the enterotoxin or cytotoxin in a stool specimen from a patient with compatible clinical symptoms or detection of the *C. difficile* toxin A and B genes directly in clinical specimens by nucleic acid amplification techniques. Commercial molecular assays with high sensitivity and specificity are now available that provide results within a few hours of sample collection.

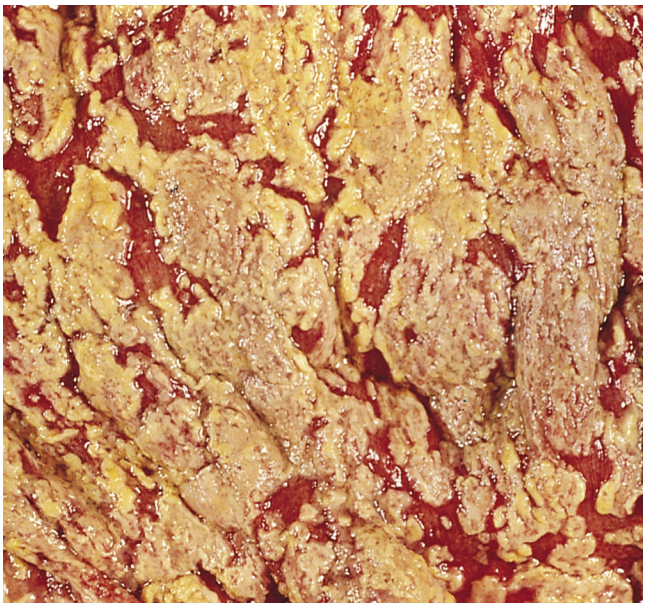


Fig. 30.1 Antibiotic-associated colitis: gross section of the lumen of the colon. Note the white plaques of fibrin, mucus, and inflammatory cells overlying the normal red intestinal mucosa.

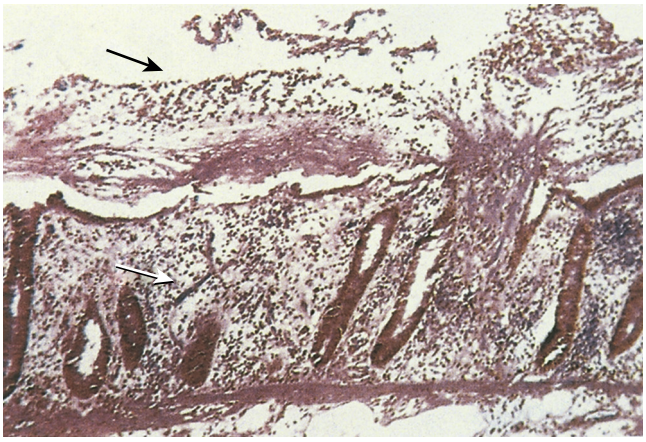


Fig. 30.2 Antibiotic-associated colitis caused by *Clostridium difficile.* A histologic section of colon shows an intense inflammatory response, with the characteristic "plaque" *(black arrow)* overlying the intact intestinal mucosa *(white arrow)* (hematoxylin and eosin stain). (From Lambert, H.P., Farrar, W.E. (Eds.), 1982. Infectious Diseases Illustrated. Gower, London, UK.)

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Discontinuation of the implicated antibiotic (e.g., ampicillin, clindamycin, fluoroquinolones) is generally sufficient to alleviate mild disease. However, specific therapy with **metronidazole** or **vancomycin** is necessary for the management of severe diarrhea or colitis. Relapses may occur in as many as 20% to 30% of patients after completion of therapy because only the vegetative forms of *C. difficile* are killed by the antibiotics; the spores are resistant. A second course of treatment with the same antibiotic is frequently successful, although multiple relapses are well documented in some patients. One novel approach to treat recurrent disease is to infuse fecal contents from a healthy donor ("rePOOPulate") into the intestines of the ill patient. Remarkable success

with these "fecal transplants" has been demonstrated, illustrating the fact that *C. difficile* does not become established when a healthy enteric population of bacteria is present. It is difficult to prevent the disease because the organism commonly exists in hospitals, particularly in areas adjacent to infected patients (e.g., beds, bathrooms). The spores of *C. difficile* are difficult to eliminate unless thorough housekeeping measures are used. Thus the organism can contaminate an environment for many months and can be a major source of nosocomial outbreaks of *C. difficile* disease.

Clostridium perfringens

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

C. perfringens is a large (0.6 to 2.4 × 1.3 to 19.0 μm), rectangular, gram-positive rod (Fig. 30.3), with **spores rarely observed** either in vivo or after in vitro cultivation, which is an important characteristic that differentiates this species from most other clostridia. Colonies of *C. perfringens* are also distinctive, with their rapid, spreading growth on laboratory media and β-hemolysis on blood-containing media (Fig. 30.4). The production of one or more "major lethal" toxins by *C. perfringens* (alpha, beta, epsilon, and iota toxins) is used to subdivide isolates into five types (A through E).

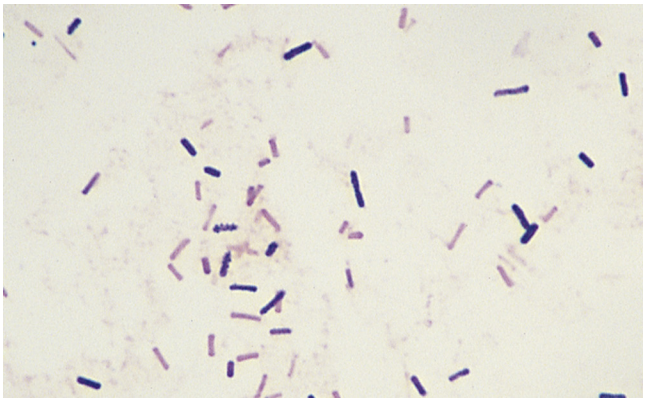


Fig. 30.3 Gram stain of *Clostridium perfringens* in a wound specimen. Note the rectangular shape of the rods, the presence of many decolorized rods appearing gram-negative, and the absence of spore and blood cells.

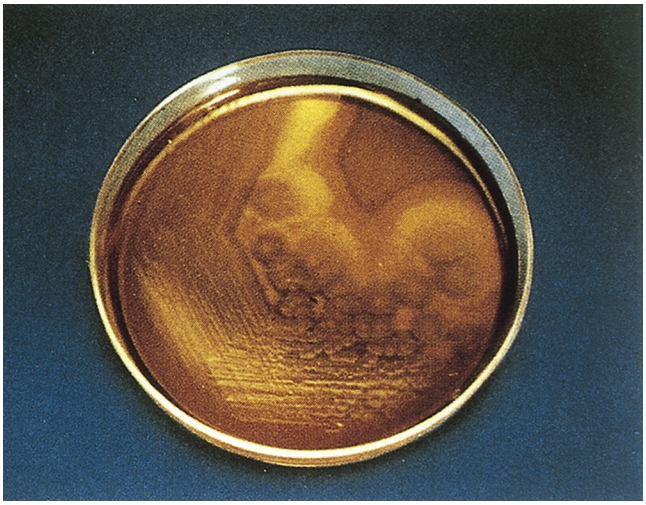


Fig. 30.4 Growth of *Clostridium perfringens* on sheep blood agar. Note the flat, spreading colonies and the hemolytic activity of the organism. A presumptive identification of *C. perfringens* can be made by detection of a zone of complete hemolysis (caused by the theta toxin) and a wider zone of partial hemolysis (caused by the alpha toxin), combined with the characteristic microscopic morphology.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Alpha toxin, produced by all five types of *C. perfringens,* is a lecithinase (phospholipase C) that lyses erythrocytes, platelets, leukocytes, and endothelial cells. This toxin mediates massive hemolysis, increased vascular permeability and bleeding (augmented by destruction of platelets), tissue destruction, hepatic toxicity, and myocardial dysfunction (bradycardia, hypotension). **Beta toxin** is responsible for intestinal stasis, loss of mucosa with formation of necrotic lesions, and progression to necrotizing enteritis. **Epsilon toxin,** which is a protoxin, is activated by trypsin and increases the vascular permeability of the GI wall. **Iota toxin,** produced by type E *C. perfringens,* has necrotic activity and increases vascular permeability.

C. perfringens produces **enterotoxin,** primarily by type A strains, whose activity is enhanced by exposure to trypsin. The enterotoxin is produced during the phase transition from vegetative cells to spores and is released in the alkaline environment of the small intestine when the cells undergo the terminal stages of spore formation **(sporulation).** The released enterotoxin binds to receptors on the brush border membrane of the small intestine epithelium in the ileum (primarily) and jejunum but not the duodenum. Insertion of the toxin into the cell membrane leads to altered membrane permeability and loss of fluids and ions. The enterotoxin also acts as a superantigen, stimulating T-lymphocyte activity.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Type A *C. perfringens* commonly inhabits the intestinal tract of humans and animals and is widely distributed in nature, particularly in soil and water contaminated with feces. Spores form under adverse environmental conditions and survive for prolonged periods. Strains of types B through E do not survive in soil but colonize the intestinal tracts of animals and occasionally humans. *C. perfringens,* particularly type A, is responsible for a variety of diseases including soft-tissue infections, food poisoning, necrotizing enteritis, and septicemia.

CLINICAL DISEASES

C. perfringens is responsible for a range of soft-tissue infections including **cellulitis** (Fig. 30.5), fasciitis or suppurative **myositis,** and **myonecrosis** with gas formation in the soft tissue (gas gangrene). Clostridial myonecrosis is most commonly caused by *C. perfringens,* although other species, particularly *C. septicum*, can also produce this disease. This is a life-threatening disease that illustrates the full virulence potential of histotoxic clostridia. The onset of disease, characterized by intense pain, generally develops within a week after clostridia are introduced into tissue by trauma or surgery. The onset is followed rapidly by extensive muscle

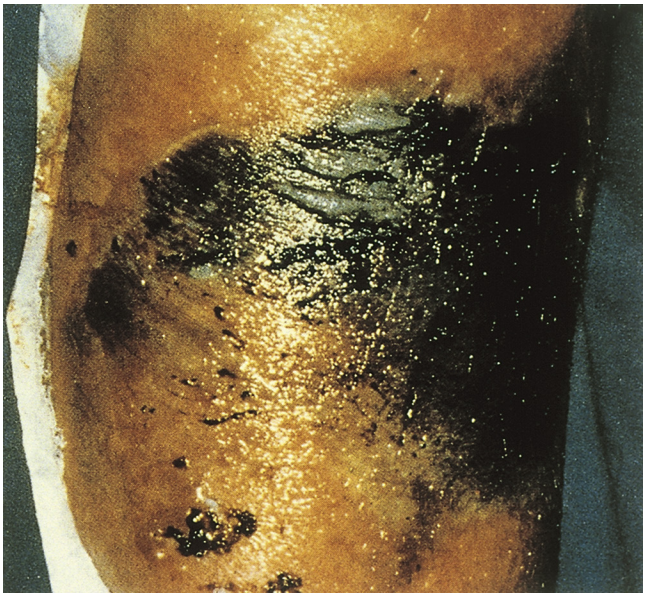


Fig. 30.5 Clostridial cellulitis. Clostridia can be introduced into tissue during surgery or by a traumatic injury. This patient suffered a compound fracture of the tibia. Five days after the injury, the skin became discolored, and bullae and necrosis developed. A serosanguineous exudate and subcutaneous gas were present, but there was no evidence of muscle necrosis. The patient had an uneventful recovery. (From Lambert, H., Farrar, W. (Eds.), 1982. Infectious Diseases Illustrated. Gower, London, UK.)

necrosis, shock, renal failure, and death, often within 2 days of initial onset. Macroscopic examination of muscle reveals devitalized necrotic tissue. Gas found in the tissue is caused by the metabolic activity of the rapidly dividing bacteria (hence the name **gas gangrene**). Gram stain of tissue or exudate collected from the wound of a patient with *C. perfringens* myonecrosis will reveal abundant rectangular gram-positive rods with the absence of inflammatory cells (resulting from lysis by clostridial toxins). The clostridial toxins characteristically cause extensive hemolysis and bleeding (see Box 30.1).

Clostridial food poisoning (Clinical Case 30.2), a relatively common but underappreciated intoxication, is characterized by (1) a short incubation period (8 to 12 hours); (2) a clinical presentation that includes abdominal cramps and watery diarrhea but no fever, nausea, or vomiting; and (3) a clinical course lasting less than 24 hours. Disease results from ingestion of meat products (e.g., beef, chicken, turkey, gravy) contaminated with large numbers (10^8 to 10^9 organisms) of enterotoxin-producing type A *C. perfringens*. Holding contaminated foods at temperatures less than 60° C allows spores that survived the cooking process to germinate and multiply to high numbers. Rapid refrigeration of food after preparation prevents this bacterial growth. Alternatively, reheating the food to 74° C can destroy the heat-labile enterotoxin.

Necrotizing enteritis (also called **enteritis necroticans** or **pig-bel**) is a rare necrotizing process in the jejunum characterized by acute abdominal pain, vomiting, bloody diarrhea, ulceration of the small intestine, and perforation of the intestinal wall, leading to peritonitis and shock. Mortality in patients with this infection approaches 50%. Beta toxin produced by *C. perfringens* type C is responsible for this disease. Necrotizing enteritis is most common in Papua New Guinea, with sporadic cases reported from other countries. This results from the dietary habits of the population, in which disease can follow consumption of both undercooked contaminated pork and sweet potatoes. Sweet potatoes contain a heat-resistant trypsin inhibitor that protects the beta toxin from inactivation by trypsin. Other risk factors for the disease are exposure to large numbers of organisms and malnutrition (with loss of the proteolytic activity that inactivates the toxin).

Isolation of *C. perfringens* or other clostridial species in blood cultures can be alarming; however, more than half of the isolates are clinically insignificant, representing a transient bacteremia or, more likely, contamination of the culture with clostridia colonizing the skin. Patients with clinically significant **septicemia** complicating other infections (e.g., myonecrosis, necrotizing enteritis) will typically present dramatically with massive hemolysis and overwhelming septic shock.

Clinical Case 30.2 ***Clostridium perfringens* Gastroenteritis**

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reported two outbreaks of *C. perfringens* gastroenteritis associated with corned beef served at St. Patrick's Day celebrations (*MMWR* 43:137, 1994). On March 18, 1993, the Cleveland City Health Department received telephone calls from 15 persons who became ill after eating corned beef purchased from one delicatessen. After publicizing the outbreak, 156 persons contacted the Health Department with a similar history. In addition to a history of diarrhea, 88% complained of abdominal cramps and 13% had vomiting, which developed an average of 12 hours after eating the implicated meat. An investigation revealed the delicatessen had purchased 1400 pounds of raw, salt-cured meat, and beginning on March 12, portions of the corned beef were boiled for 3 hours, allowed to cool at room temperature, and then refrigerated. On March 16 and 17, the meat was removed from the refrigerator, heated to 48.8° C, and served. Cultures of the meat yielded greater than 10^5 colonies of *C. perfringens* per gram. The Health Department recommended that if the meat could not be served immediately after cooking, it should be rapidly cooled in ice and refrigerated. Before it is served, it should be warmed to at least 74° C to destroy the heat-sensitive enterotoxin.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The laboratory performs a confirmatory role in the diagnosis of clostridial soft-tissue diseases because therapy must be initiated immediately. The microscopic detection of gram-positive rods in clinical specimens, usually in the absence of leukocytes, can be a very useful finding because these organisms have a characteristic morphology. It is also relatively simple to culture these anaerobes. Under appropriate conditions, *C. perfringens* divides every 8 to 10 minutes, so growth on agar media or in blood culture broths can be detected after incubation for only a few hours. The role of *C. perfringens* in food poisoning is documented by recovery of more than 10^5 organisms per gram of food or more than 10^6 bacteria per gram of feces collected within 1 day of the

onset of disease. Immunoassays have also been developed for detection of the enterotoxin in fecal specimens, However, clostridial food poisoning is primarily a clinical diagnosis and culture or immunoassays are not commonly used.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

C. perfringens soft-tissue infections, such as suppurative myositis and myonecrosis, must be treated aggressively with **surgical debridement** and **high-dose penicillin therapy.** Hyperbaric oxygen treatment has been used to manage these infections; however, the results are inconclusive. Despite all therapeutic efforts, the prognoses in patients with these diseases is poor, with mortality reported from 40% to almost 100%. Less serious, localized soft-tissue infections can be successfully treated with debridement and penicillin.

Clostridial food poisoning is managed by oral rehydration and in severe cases intravenous fluids and electrolytes. Antibiotic therapy is not recommended because this is a self-limiting disease (i.e., the diarrhea washes the bacteria out of the intestines, and the normal intestinal flora reestablishes itself).

Exposure to *C. perfringens* is difficult to avoid because the organisms are ubiquitous. Disease requires introduction of the organism into devitalized tissues and maintenance of an anaerobic environment favorable for bacterial growth. Thus proper wound care and the judicious use of prophylactic antibiotics can do much to prevent most infections.

Clostridium tetani

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

C. tetani is a large (0.5 to 2 × 2 to 18 μm), motile, spore-forming rod. The organism produces round, terminal spores that give it the appearance of a drumstick. Unlike *C. perfringens, C. tetani* is difficult to grow because the organism is extremely sensitive to oxygen toxicity; when growth is detected on agar media, it typically appears as a film over the surface of the agar rather than discrete colonies. The bacteria are proteolytic but unable to ferment carbohydrates.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Although the vegetative cells of *C. tetani* die rapidly when exposed to oxygen, spore formation allows the organism to survive in the most adverse conditions. Of greater significance is the fact that *C. tetani* produces two toxins, an oxygen-labile hemolysin **(tetanolysin)** and a plasmid-encoded, heat-labile neurotoxin **(tetanospasmin).** The plasmid carrying the gene for tetanospasmin is nonconjugative, so a nontoxic *C. tetani* strain cannot be converted to a toxigenic strain. Tetanolysin is serologically related to streptolysin O and the hemolysins produced by *C. perfringens* and *Listeria monocytogenes;* however, the clinical significance of tetanolysin is unknown because it is inhibited by oxygen and serum cholesterol.

Tetanospasmin is produced during the stationary phase of growth, released when the cell is lysed, and responsible for the clinical manifestations of tetanus. Tetanospasmin (an **A-B toxin**) is synthesized as a single 150,000-Da peptide that is cleaved into a light (A chain) subunit and a heavy (B chain) subunit by an endogenous protease when the cell releases the neurotoxin. A disulfide bond and noncovalent forces hold the two chains together. The carbohydrate-binding domain of the carboxyl-terminal portion of the heavy chain (100,000-Da) binds to specific sialic acid receptors (e.g., polysialogangliosides) and adjacent glycoproteins on the surface of motor neurons. The intact toxin molecules are internalized in endosomal vesicles and transported in the neuron axon to motor neuron soma located in the spinal cord. In this location, the endosome becomes acidified, resulting in a conformational change in the N-terminus domain of the heavy chain, insertion into the endosome membrane, and passage of the toxin light chain into the cytosol of the cell. The light chain is a **zinc endopeptidase** that cleaves core proteins involved in the trafficking and release of neurotransmitters. Specifically, tetanospasmin **inactivates proteins that regulate release of the inhibitory neurotransmitters** glycine and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA). This leads to unregulated excitatory synaptic activity in the motor neurons, resulting in **spastic paralysis.** The toxin binding is irreversible, so recovery depends on formation of new axonal terminals.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

C. tetani is **ubiquitous.** It is found in fertile soil and transiently colonizes the GI tracts of many animals, including humans. The vegetative forms of *C. tetani* are extremely susceptible to oxygen toxicity, but the organisms sporulate readily and can survive in nature for a long time. Disease is relatively rare in the United States because of the high incidence of vaccine-induced immunity. Only 33 cases were reported in 2017, and the disease occurs primarily in elderly patients with waning immunity. However, tetanus is still responsible for many deaths in developing countries in which vaccination is unavailable or medical practices are lax. It is estimated that more than 1 million cases occur worldwide, with a mortality rate ranging from 30% to 50%. At least half the deaths occur in neonates.

CLINICAL DISEASES

The incubation period for tetanus varies from a few days to weeks. The duration of the incubation period is directly related to the distance of the primary wound infection from the central nervous system (Clinical Case 30.3; see Box 30.1).

Generalized tetanus is the most common form. Involvement of the masseter muscles (trismus or lockjaw) is the presenting sign in most patients. The characteristic sardonic smile that results from the sustained contraction of the facial muscles is known as *risus sardonicus* (Fig. 30.6). Other early signs are drooling, sweating, irritability, and persistent back spasms *(opisthotonos)* (Fig. 30.7). The autonomic nervous system is involved in patients with more severe disease; the signs and symptoms include cardiac arrhythmias, fluctuations in blood pressure, profound sweating, and dehydration.

Another form of *C. tetani* disease is **localized tetanus,** in which the disease remains confined to the musculature at the site of primary infection. A variant is **cephalic tetanus,**

Clinical Case 30.3 **Tetanus**

The following is a typical history of a patient with tetanus (CDC, *MMWR* 51:613–615, 2002). An 86-year-old man saw a physician for care of a splinter wound in his right hand, acquired 3 days earlier while gardening. He was not treated with either a tetanus toxoid vaccine or tetanus immunoglobulin. Seven days later he developed pharyngitis, and after an additional 3 days, he presented to the local hospital with difficulty talking, swallowing, and breathing, and with chest pain and disorientation. He was admitted to the hospital with the diagnosis of stroke. On his fourth hospital day, he had developed neck rigidity and respiratory failure, requiring tracheostomy and mechanical ventilation. He was transferred to the medical intensive care unit, where the clinical diagnosis of tetanus was made. Despite treatment with tetanus toxoid and immunoglobulin, the patient died 1 month after admission to the hospital. This case illustrates that *Clostridium tetani* is ubiquitous in soil and can contaminate relatively minor wounds; it also illustrates the unrelenting progression of neurologic disease in untreated patients.

in which the primary site of infection is the head. In contrast to the prognosis for patients with localized tetanus, the prognosis for patients with cephalic tetanus is very poor.

Neonatal tetanus (tetanus neonatorum) is typically associated with an initial infection of the umbilical stump that progresses to become generalized. The mortality in infants exceeds 90%, and developmental defects are present in survivors. This is almost exclusively a disease in developing countries.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of tetanus, as with that of most other clostridial diseases, is made on the basis of the clinical presentation. The microscopic detection of *C. tetani* or recovery in culture is useful but frequently unsuccessful. Culture results are positive in only approximately 30% of patients with tetanus because disease can be caused by relatively few organisms and the slow-growing bacteria are killed rapidly when exposed to air. Neither tetanus toxin nor antibodies to the toxin are detectable in the patient because the toxin is rapidly bound to motor neurons and internalized. If the organism is recovered in culture, production of toxin by the isolate can be confirmed with the tetanus antitoxin neutralization test in mice (a procedure performed only in public health reference laboratories).

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The mortality associated with tetanus has steadily decreased during the past century, resulting in large part from the decreased incidence of tetanus in the United States. The highest mortality is in newborns and in patients in whom the incubation period is shorter than 1 week.

Treatment of tetanus requires **debridement** of the primary wound (which may appear innocuous), use of **penicillin** or **metronidazole** to kill the bacteria and reduce toxin production, **passive immunization** with human tetanus immunoglobulin to neutralize unbound toxin, and **vaccination** with tetanus toxoid (because infection does not confer immunity). Metronidazole and penicillin have equivalent activity against *C. tetani;* however, some have recommended metronidazole treatment because penicillin, like tetanospasmin, inhibits GABA activity, which can produce central nervous system excitability. Toxin bound to nerve endings is protected from antibiotics, thus the toxic effects must be controlled symptomatically until the normal regulation of synaptic transmission is restored. Vaccination with a series of three doses of tetanus toxoid, followed by booster doses every 10 years, is highly effective in preventing tetanus.

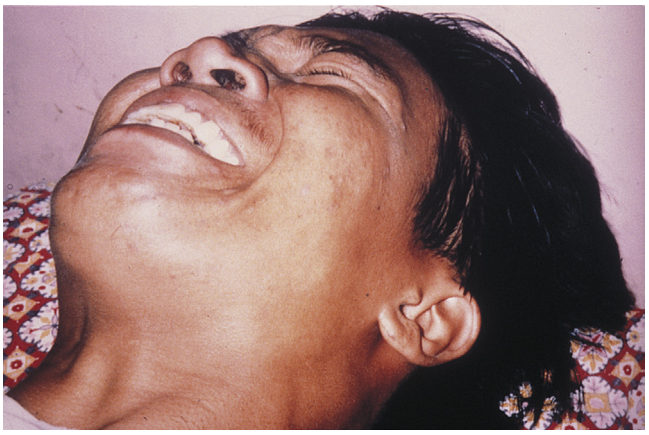


Fig. 30.6 Facial spasm and *risus sardonicus* in a patient with tetanus. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.)

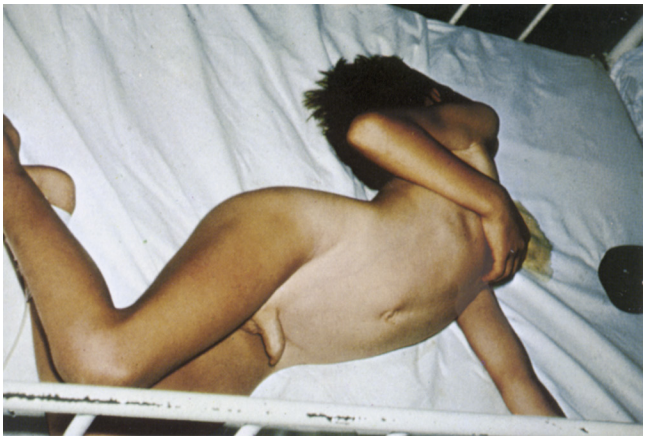


Fig. 30.7 A child with tetanus and opisthotonos resulting from persistent spasms of the back muscles. (From Emond, R.T., Rowland, H.A.K., Welsby, P., 1995. Colour Atlas of Infectious Diseases, third ed. Wolfe, London, UK.)

Clostridium botulinum

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The etiologic agents of botulism are a heterogeneous collection of large (0.6 to 1.4 × 3.0 to 20.2 μm), fastidious, spore-forming, anaerobic rods. These bacteria are subdivided into four groups based on phenotypic and genetic properties and

certainly represent four separate species, although they have been historically classified within a single species, *C. botulinum*. Seven antigenically distinct botulinum toxins (A to G) have been described; human disease is associated with types A, B, E, and F. Other species of clostridia produce botulinum toxins, including *C. butyricum* (type E toxin), *C. baratii* (type F toxin), and *C. argentinense* (type G toxin). Human disease has only rarely been associated with *C. butyricum* and *C. baratii* and not definitively demonstrated with *C. argentinense*.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Similar to tetanus toxin, *C. botulinum* toxin is a 150,000-Da progenitor protein (A-B toxin) consisting of a small subunit (light, or A chain) with **zinc-endopeptidase** activity and a large, nontoxic subunit (B, or heavy chain). In contrast with the tetanus neurotoxin, the *C. botulinum* toxin is complexed with nontoxic proteins that protect the neurotoxin during passage through the digestive tract (this is unnecessary for tetanus neurotoxin). The carboxyl-terminal portion of the botulinum heavy chain binds specific sialic acid receptors and glycoproteins (different from those targeted by tetanospasmin) on the surface of motor neurons and stimulates endocytosis of the toxin molecule. Also, in contrast with tetanospasmin, the botulinum neurotoxin remains at the neuromuscular junction. Acidification of the endosome stimulates N-terminal, heavy-chain–mediated release of the light chain. The botulinum endopeptidase then **inactivates the proteins that regulate release of acetylcholine,** blocking neurotransmission at peripheral cholinergic synapses. Because acetylcholine is required for excitation of muscle, the resulting clinical presentation of botulism is a **flaccid paralysis.** As with tetanus, recovery of function after botulism requires regeneration of the nerve endings.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

C. botulinum is commonly isolated in soil and water samples throughout the world. In the United States, type A strains are found mainly in neutral or alkaline soil west of the Mississippi River, type B strains are found primarily in the eastern part of the country in rich organic soil, and type E strains are found only in wet soil. Although *C. botulinum* is commonly found in soil, disease is uncommon in the United States. A total of 177 cases including 137 cases of infant botulism were reported in 2017.

Four forms of botulism have been identified: (1) classic or foodborne botulism, (2) infant botulism, (3) wound botulism, and (4) inhalation botulism. In the United States, fewer than 25 cases of **foodborne botulism** are seen annually; most are associated with consumption of home-canned foods (types A and B toxins) and occasionally with consumption of preserved fish (type E toxin). The food may not appear spoiled, but even a small taste can cause full-blown clinical disease. **Infant botulism** is more common and has been associated with consumption of foods (e.g., honey, infant milk powder) contaminated with botulinum spores and ingestion of spore-contaminated soil and dust (now the most common source of infant exposure). The incidence of **wound botulism** is unknown, but the disease is very rare. **Inhalation botulism** is a major concern in this era of bioterrorism. Botulinum toxin has been concentrated for purposes of aerosolization as a biological weapon. When administered in this manner, inhalation disease has a rapid onset and potentially high mortality.

Clinical Case 30.4 **Foodborne Botulism with Commercial Carrot Juice**

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reported an outbreak of foodborne botulism associated with contaminated carrot juice (*MMWR* 55:1098, 2006). On September 8, 2006, three patients went to a hospital in Washington County, Georgia, with cranial nerve palsies and progressive descending flaccid paralysis resulting in respiratory failure. The patients had shared meals on the previous day. Because botulism was suspected, the patients were treated with botulinum antitoxin. The patients had no progression of their neurologic symptoms, but they remained hospitalized and on ventilators. An investigation determined that the patients had consumed contaminated carrot juice produced by a commercial vendor. Botulinum toxin type A was detected in the serum and stool of all three patients and in leftover carrot juice. An additional patient in Florida was also hospitalized with respiratory failure and descending paralysis after drinking carrot juice sold in Florida. Because carrot juice has a low acid content (pH 6.0), *Clostridium botulinum* spores can germinate and produce toxin if contaminated juice is left at room temperature.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Patients with **foodborne botulism** (Clinical Case 30.4) typically become weak and dizzy 1 to 3 days after consuming the contaminated food. Initial signs include blurred vision with fixed dilated pupils, dry mouth (indicative of the anticholinergic effects of the toxin), constipation, and abdominal pain. Fever is absent. Bilateral descending weakness of the peripheral muscles develops in patients with progressive disease (flaccid paralysis), and death is most commonly attributed to respiratory paralysis. Patients maintain a clear sensorium throughout the disease. Despite aggressive management of the patient's condition, the disease may continue to progress because the neurotoxin is irreversibly bound and inhibits the release of excitatory neurotransmitters for a prolonged period. Complete recovery in patients often requires many months to years, or until the affected nerve endings regrow. Mortality in patients with foodborne botulism, which once approached 70%, has been reduced to 5% to 10% through the use of better supportive care, particularly in the management of respiratory complications (see Box 30.1).

Infant botulism (Clinical Case 30.5) was first recognized in 1976 and is now the most common form of botulism in the United States. In contrast with foodborne botulism, this disease is caused by neurotoxin produced *in vivo* by *C. botulinum* colonizing the GI tracts of infants. Although adults are exposed to the organism in their diet, *C. botulinum* cannot survive and proliferate in their intestines. However, in the absence of competitive bowel microbes, the organism can become established in the GI tracts of infants. The disease typically affects infants younger than 1 year (most between 1 and 6 months), and the symptoms are initially nonspecific

Clinical Case 30.5 **Infant Botulism**

In January 2003, four children with infant botulism were reported by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (*MMWR* 52:24, 2003). The following is the description of one of the children. A 10-week-old infant with a history of constipation in the first month of life was admitted to a hospital after having difficulty in sucking and swallowing for 2 days. The infant was irritable and had loss of facial expression, generalized muscle weakness, and constipation. Mechanical ventilation was required for 10 days because of respiratory failure. A diagnosis of infant botulism was established 29 days after onset of symptoms by detection of *C. botulinum*-producing toxin type B in stool enrichment cultures. The patient was treated with Botulism Immune Globulin Intravenous (BIG-IV) and discharged fully recovered after 20 days. In contrast with foodborne botulism, diagnosis of infant botulism can be made by detecting the organism in the baby's stools.

(e.g., constipation, weak cry, or "failure to thrive"). Progressive disease with flaccid paralysis and respiratory arrest can develop; however, mortality in documented cases of infant botulism is very low (1% to 2%). Some infant deaths attributed to other conditions (e.g., sudden infant death syndrome) may actually be caused by botulism.

Wound botulism develops from toxin production by *C. botulinum* in contaminated wounds. Although the symptoms of disease are identical to those of foodborne disease, the incubation period is generally longer (4 days or more), and the GI tract symptoms are less prominent.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical diagnosis of foodborne botulism is confirmed if toxin activity is demonstrated in the implicated food or in the patient's serum, feces, or gastric fluid. Infant botulism is confirmed if toxin is detected in the infant's feces or serum, or the organism cultured from feces. Wound botulism is confirmed if toxin is detected in the patient's serum or wound, or if the organism is cultured from the wound. Toxin activity is most likely to be found early in the disease. No single test for foodborne botulism has sensitivity greater than 60%; in contrast, toxin is detected in the serum of more than 90% of infants with botulism.

Isolation of *C. botulinum* from specimens contaminated with other organisms (e.g., feces, wounds) can be improved by heating the specimen for 10 minutes at 80° C to kill all non–spore-forming bacteria. Culture of the heated specimen on nutritionally enriched anaerobic media allows the heat-resistant *C. botulinum* spores to germinate. Demonstration of toxin production (typically performed at public health laboratories) must be done with a mouse bioassay. This procedure consists of the preparation of two aliquots of the isolate, mixing of one aliquot with antitoxin, and intraperitoneal inoculation of each aliquot into mice. If the antitoxin treatment protects the mice, toxin activity is confirmed. Samples of the implicated food, stool specimen, and patient's serum should also be tested for toxin activity.

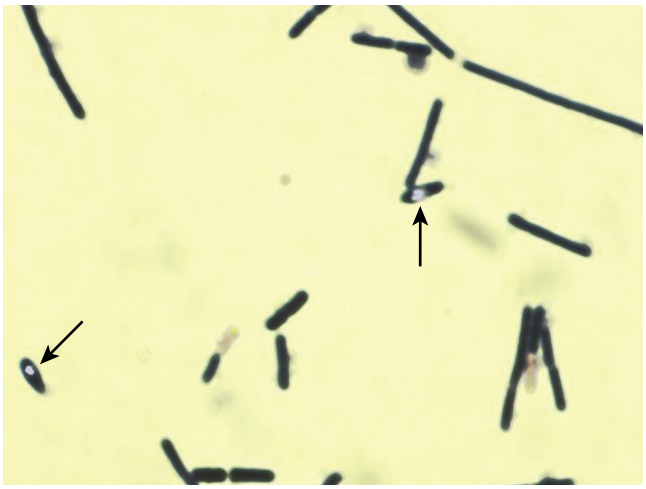


Fig. 30.8 *Clostridium septicum:* note the spores *(arrows)* within the rods.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Patients with botulism require the following treatment measures: (1) adequate **ventilatory support**; (2) elimination of the organism from the GI tract through the judicious use of gastric lavage and **metronidazole or penicillin** therapy; and (3) use of **trivalent botulinum antitoxin** versus toxins A, B, and E to inactivate unbound toxin circulating in the bloodstream. Ventilatory support is extremely important in reducing mortality. Protective levels of antibodies do not develop after disease, so patients remain susceptible to botulism.

Disease is prevented by destroying the spores in food (virtually impossible for practical reasons), preventing spore germination (by maintaining the food in an acid pH or storage at 4° C or colder), or destroying the preformed toxin (all botulinum toxins are inactivated by heating at 60° C to 100° C for 10 minutes). Infant botulism has been associated with consumption of honey contaminated with *C. botulinum* spores, so children younger than 1 year should not eat honey.

Other Clostridial Species

Many other clostridia have been associated with clinically significant disease. Their virulence is a result of their ability to survive exposure to oxygen by forming spores and producing many diverse toxins and enzymes. ***C. septicum*** (Figs. 30.8 and 30.9) is a particularly important pathogen because it is a cause of nontraumatic myonecrosis and often exists in patients with occult colon cancer, acute leukemia, or diabetes. If the integrity of the bowel mucosa is compromised and the patient's body is less able to mount an effective response to the organism, *C. septicum* can spread into tissue and rapidly proliferate, producing gas and tissue destruction (Fig. 30.10). Most patients have a fulminant course, dying within 1 to 2 days after initial presentation. ***C. sordellii*** is implicated in a fatal toxic shock syndrome associated with natural childbirth or medically induced abortions (Clinical Case 30.6). ***C. tertium*** is another important clostridium that is commonly isolated in soil samples. It has primarily

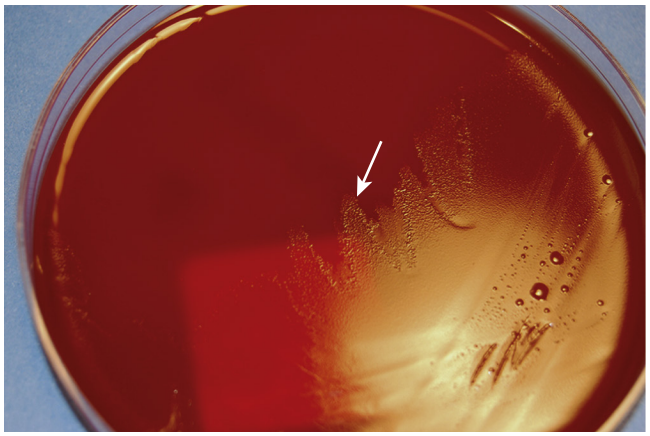


Fig. 30.9 *Clostridium septicum:* note how the growth "swarms" *(arrow)* across the surface of the blood agar plate. This rapid spreading growth is also characteristic of rapid progression of disease in an infected patient.

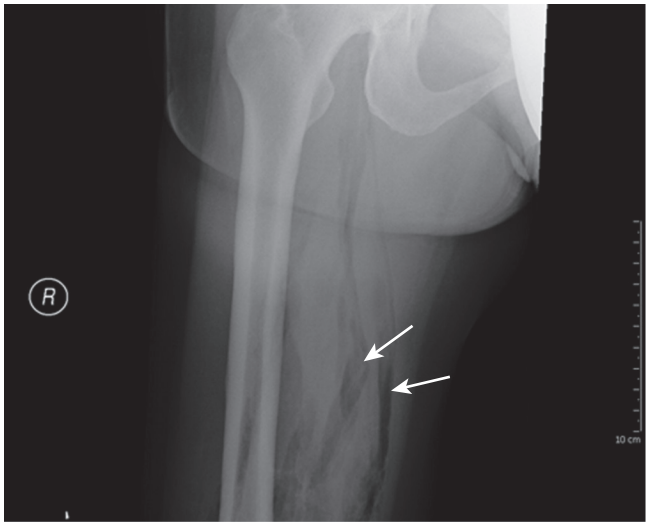


Fig. 30.10 Radiograph of the leg of a patient with myonecrosis caused by *Clostridium septicum*. Note the gas *(arrows)* in the tissue.

Clinical Case 30.6 ***Clostridium sordellii* Toxic Shock Syndrome Associated with Medical Abortions**

A fatal toxic shock syndrome caused by *C. sordellii* has been associated with medical abortions. This is a description of this disease by Fischer and associates (*N Engl J Med* 353:2352–2360, 2005). A previously healthy 22-year-old woman underwent a medically induced abortion with 200 mg of oral mifepristone followed by 800 µg of vaginal misoprostol. Five days later she presented to a local emergency department with nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and severe abdominal pain. She was afebrile, tachycardic, and normotensive. The next day, her tachycardia (130 to 140 beats/min) remained persistent, she became hypotensive (blood pressure, 80/40 mm Hg), and her urine output decreased. Laboratory findings demonstrated hemoconcentration with elevated neutrophil count (leukemoid reaction) and severe metabolic acidosis. An emergency laparotomy was performed and revealed generalized edema of the abdominal and pelvic organs and 1 liter of serous peritoneal fluid. The patient died during the procedure, 23 hours after her initial presentation. Histopathologic examination of the uterus showed extensive inflammation, abscess formation, edema, necrosis, and hemorrhage. Numerous gram-positive rods were seen in the endometrium, and *C. sordellii* DNA was demonstrated in the uterine tissue by specific polymerase chain reaction assays. Endometritis and toxic shock syndrome caused by *C. sordellii* is an uncommon but well-described complication of natural childbirth and medically induced abortions. Characteristic of this disease are the fulminant course, afebrile presentation, and hemoconcentration.

been associated with traumatic wound infections (e.g., war wounds, a fall producing a soil-contaminated wound). This organism can pose a diagnostic challenge because it can grow on aerobically incubated agar media and appear to be gram-negative. Correct identification can be made once spores are observed and it is determined that the organism grows better anaerobically.

Bibliography

Aronoff, D., 2013. *Clostridium novyi, sordellii,* and *tetani:* mechanisms of disease. Anaerobe 24, 98–101.

Bauer, M., Kuijper, E., van Dissel, J., 2009. European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases (ESCMID): treatment guidance document for *Clostridium difficile* infection. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 15, 1067–1079.

Cohen, S.H., Gerding, D.N., Johnson, S., et al., 2010. Clinical practice guidelines for *Clostridium difficile* infection in adults: 2010 update by the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America (SHEA) and the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA). Infect. Contr. Hosp. Epidemiol. 31, 431–455.

Curry, S., 2010. Clostridium difficile. Clin. Lab. Med. 30, 329–342.

Fischer, M., Bhatnagar, J., Guarner, J., et al., 2005. Fatal toxic shock syndrome associated with *Clostridium sordellii* after medical abortion. N. Engl. J. Med. 353, 2352–2360.

Grass, J., Gould, L., Mahon, B., 2013. Epidemiology of foodborne disease outbreaks caused by *Clostridium perfringens,* United States, 1998–2010. Foodborne Pathog. Dis. 10, 131–136.

Kennedy, C.L., Smith, D.J., Lyras, D., et al., 2009. Programmed cellular necrosis mediated by the pore-forming α-toxin from *Clostridium septicum*. PLoS Pathogens 5, e1000516.

Lalli, G., Bohnert, S., DeinharDt, K., et al., 2003. The journey of tetanus and botulinum neurotoxins in neurons. Trends. Microbiol. 11, 431–437.

Lessa, F., Mu, Y., Bamberg, W., et al., 2015. Burden of *Clostridium difficile* infection in the United States. N. Engl. J. Med. 372, 825–834.

Lindstrom, M., Korkeala, H., 2006. Laboratory diagnostics of botulism. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 19, 298–314.

McCune, V., Struthers, J., Hawkey, P., 2014. Faecal transplantation for the treatment of *Clostridium difficile* infection: a review. Int. J. Antimicrob. Agents. 43, 201–206.

Schwan, C., Stecher, B., Tzivelekidis, T., et al., 2009. *Clostridium difficile* toxin CDT induces formation of microtubule-based protrusions and increases adherence of bacteria. PLoS Pathogens 5, e1000626.

Stevens, D.L., Bryant, A.E., 2002. The role of clostridial toxins in the pathogenesis of gas gangrene. Clin. Infect. Dis. 35 (Suppl. 1), S93–S100.

Voth, D.E., Ballard, J.D., 2005. *Clostridium difficile* toxins: mechanism of action and role in disease. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 18, 247–263.

Ziakas, P., Zacharioudakis, I., Zervou, F., et al., 2015. Asymptomatic carriers of toxigenic *C. difficile* in long-term care facilities: a meta-analysis of prevalence and risk factors. PLoS ONE 10 (2), e0117195.

Case Study and Questions

A 61-year-old woman with left-sided face pain came to the emergency department of a local hospital. She was unable to open her mouth because of facial muscle spasms and had been unable to eat for 4 days because of severe pain in her jaw. Her attending physician had noted trismus and *risus sardonicus*. The patient reported that 1 week before presentation, she had incurred a puncture wound to her toe while walking in her garden. She had cleaned the wound and removed small pieces of wood from it, but she had not sought medical attention. Although she had received tetanus immunizations as a child, she had not had a booster vaccination since she was 15 years old. The presumptive diagnosis of tetanus was made.

1. How should this diagnosis be confirmed?

2. What is the recommended procedure for treating this patient? Should management wait until laboratory results are available? What is the long-term prognosis for this patient?

3. Compare the mode of action of the toxins produced by *C. tetani* and *C. botulinum.*

4. What virulence factors are produced by *C. perfringens*?

5. *C. perfringens* causes what diseases?

6. *C. difficile* causes what diseases? Why is it difficult to manage infections caused by this organism?

31 Non–Spore-Forming Anaerobic Bacteria

A 36-year-old woman with urinary retention, pelvic pain, and fever presented to the emergency department 6 days after transvaginal oocyte retrieval and embryo transfer for male infertility. The computed tomography scan revealed large multiloculated pelvic and tuboovarian abscesses. The woman improved after drainage of the abscesses and antibiotic therapy. Gram stain of the abscess material revealed a polymicrobic mixture of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, and both aerobic and anaerobic bacteria were recovered in culture.

1. What are the most likely anaerobic bacteria in this infection?
2. What is characteristic about most infections with *Actinomyces?*
3. What infections are typically caused by *Bacteroides fragilis?*
4. What antibiotics are usually active against *B. fragilis?*

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

The non–spore-forming anaerobic cocci and rods are a heterogeneous group of bacteria that form the predominant bacterial population on the skin and mucosal surfaces (Table 31.1). The organisms are primarily opportunistic pathogens, typically responsible for endogenous infections, and are usually recovered in mixtures of aerobic and anaerobic bacteria. Many of these anaerobes have fastidious nutritional requirements and grow slowly on laboratory media. Fortunately, the appropriate management and treatment of most infections with these organisms can be based on the knowledge that a mixture of aerobic and anaerobic organisms is present in the clinical specimen and does not require isolation and identification of the individual organisms. An exception to these general rules is infections caused by *Bacteroides fragilis,* which is a rapidly growing gram-negative rod that can produce life-threatening disease.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

BACTEROIDES FRAGILIS

Trigger Words

Pleomorphic gram-negative rod, capsule, abscess formation, drug resistance

Biology and Virulence

- Anaerobic, pleomorphic, gram-negative rod
- Surrounded by polysaccharide capsule
- Lipopolysaccharide major cell wall component but without endotoxin activity
- Polysaccharide capsule major virulence factor
- Heat-labile metalloprotease toxin responsible for diarrheal disease

Epidemiology

- Colonizes the gastrointestinal tract of animals and humans as a minor member of the microbiome; rare or absent from the oropharynx or genital tract of healthy individuals
- Endogenous infections

Diseases

- Associated with pleuropulmonary, intraabdominal, genital, and skin and soft-tissue infections characterized by abscess formation; bacteremia

Diagnosis

- Characteristic Gram stain from clinical specimens
- Grows rapidly in cultures incubated anaerobically
- Identified by biochemical tests, gene sequencing, or matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization mass spectrometry

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Resistant to penicillin and 25% of isolates resistant to clindamycin; uniformly susceptible to metronidazole and most strains to carbapenems and piperacillin-tazobactam

Anaerobic Gram-Positive Cocci

At one time, all clinically significant anaerobic cocci were included in the genus *Peptostreptococcus*. Unfortunately, it was recognized that these organisms were organized in a single genus based primarily on their Gram-stain morphology and inability to grow aerobically. More sophisticated methods such as gene sequencing have since been used to reclassify many of these species into new genera. Although some anaerobic cocci are more virulent than others and some are associated with specific diseases, specific identification of the different genera is generally unnecessary, and knowledge that anaerobic cocci are associated with an infection is typically sufficient.

The anaerobic gram-positive cocci normally colonize the oral cavity, gastrointestinal (GI) tract, genitourinary tract, and skin. They produce infections when they spread from these sites to normally sterile sites. For example, bacteria colonizing the upper airways can cause sinusitis and pleuropulmonary infections; bacteria in the intestines can cause intraabdominal infections; bacteria in the genitourinary tract can cause endometritis, pelvic abscesses, and salpingitis; bacteria on the skin can cause cellulitis and soft-tissue infections; and bacteria that invade the blood can spread to the bones and solid organs (Fig. 31.1).

Laboratory confirmation of infections with anaerobic bacteria is complicated by the following three factors: (1) care must be taken to prevent contamination of the clinical specimen with the anaerobes that normally colonize the skin and mucosal surfaces, (2) the collected specimen must be transported in an oxygen-free container to prevent loss of the organisms, and (3) specimens should be cultured in an anaerobic atmosphere on nutritionally enriched media for a prolonged period (i.e., 5 to 7 days). In addition, some

Answers

1. Anaerobic bacteria responsible for pelvic abscesses include anaerobic gram-positive cocci, *Actinomyces, Fusobacterium, Prevotella, Porphyromonas,* and *Bacteroides.*

2. Infections with *Actinomyces* are characteristically chronic, requiring weeks to months to develop. The organisms also grow slowly in culture and respond slowly to antibiotic treatment.

3. Infections caused by *B. fragilis* are characterized by abscess formation. Although this organism has been implicated in infections of the lungs and brain, intraabdominal and skin and soft-tissue infections are the most common.

4. Metronidazole, carbapenems, and combinations of β-lactams and β-lactamase inhibitors.

TABLE 31.1 Important Non–Spore-Forming Anaerobic Bacteria

Organism	Historical Derivation
ANAEROBIC GRAM-POSITIVE COCCI	
Anaerococcus	*an,* without; *aer,* air; *coccus,* berry or coccus (anaerobic coccus)
Atopobium	*atopos,* uncommon; *bios,* life
Finegoldia	Named after the American microbiologist Sid Finegold
Micromonas	*micro,* tiny; *monas,* cell (tiny cell)
Peptoniphilus	*peptonum,* peptone; *philus,* loving (loving peptones, major source of energy)
Peptostreptococcus	*pepto,* cook or digest (the digesting streptococcus)
Schleiferella	Named after the German microbiologist K.H. Schleifer
ANAEROBIC GRAM-POSITIVE RODS	
Actinomyces	*aktinos,* ray; *mykes,* fungus (ray fungus, referring to the radial arrangement of filaments in granules)
Bifidobacterium	*bifidus,* cleft; *bakterion,* small rod (a small clefted or bifurcated rod)
Cutibacterium	*cutis*, skin (skin bacteria)
Eubacterium	*eu,* good or beneficial (a beneficial rod, that is, a rod normally present)
Lactobacillus	*lacto,* milk (milk bacillus; organism originally recovered in milk; also, lactic acid is the primary metabolic product of fermentation)
Mobiluncus	*mobilis,* capable of movement or being active; *uncus,* hook (motile curved rod)
Propionibacterium	*propionicum,* propionic acid (propionic acid is the primary metabolic product of fermentation)
ANAEROBIC GRAM-NEGATIVE COCCI	
Veillonella	Named after A. Veillon, the French bacteriologist who isolated the type species
ANAEROBIC GRAM-NEGATIVE RODS	
Bacteroides	*bacter,* staff or rod; *idus,* shape (rod-shaped)
Fusobacterium	*fusus,* a spindle; *bakterion,* a small rod (a small, spindle-shaped rod)
Porphyromonas	*porphyreos,* purple; *monas,* unit (pigmented rods)
Prevotella	Named after the French microbiologist A.R. Prevot, a pioneer in anaerobic microbiology

species of staphylococci and streptococci initially grow only in an anaerobic atmosphere and may be mistaken for anaerobic cocci. However, these organisms eventually grow well in air supplemented with 10% carbon dioxide (CO_2), so they cannot be classified as anaerobes.

Anaerobic cocci are usually susceptible to **penicillins** and **carbapenems** (e.g., imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem); have intermediate susceptibility to broad-spectrum cephalosporins, clindamycin, erythromycin, and the tetracyclines; and are resistant to the aminoglycosides (as are all anaerobes). Specific therapy is generally indicated in monomicrobic infections; however, because most infections with these organisms are polymicrobic,

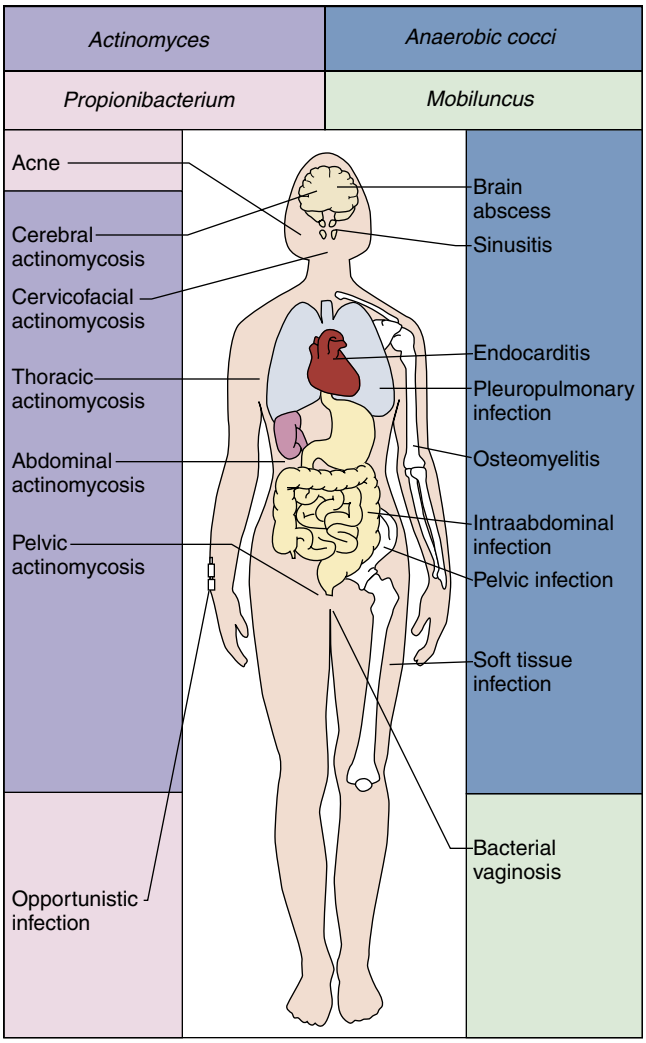


Fig. 31.1 Diseases associated with anaerobic cocci and *Actinomyces, Propionibacterium,* and *Mobiluncus;* the latter three are anaerobic, non–spore-forming, gram-positive rods.

broad-spectrum therapy against aerobic and anaerobic bacteria is usually selected.

Anaerobic Gram-Positive Rods

The non–spore-forming gram-positive rods are a diverse collection of facultatively anaerobic or strictly anaerobic bacteria that colonize the skin and mucosal surfaces (Table 31.2; also see Table 31.1). *Actinomyces, Mobiluncus, Lactobacillus,* and *Cutibacterium* (*Propionibacterium*) are well-recognized opportunistic pathogens, whereas other genera such as *Bifidobacterium* and *Eubacterium* can be isolated in clinical specimens but rarely cause human disease.

ACTINOMYCES

Actinomyces organisms are facultatively anaerobic or strictly anaerobic gram-positive rods. They are not acid-fast (in contrast to the morphologically similar *Nocardia* species), they grow slowly in culture, and they tend to produce **chronic, slowly developing infections.** They typically

TABLE 31.2 Anaerobic, Non–Spore-Forming, Gram-Positive Rods

Organism	Human Disease
Actinomyces spp.	Localized oral infections, actinomycosis (cervicofacial, thoracic, abdominal, pelvic, central nervous system)
Cutibacterium (Propionibacterium) spp.	Acne, lacrimal canaliculitis, opportunistic infections
Mobiluncus spp.	Bacterial vaginosis, opportunistic infections
Lactobacillus spp.	Endocarditis, opportunistic infections
Eubacterium spp.	Opportunistic infections
Bifidobacterium spp.	Opportunistic infections

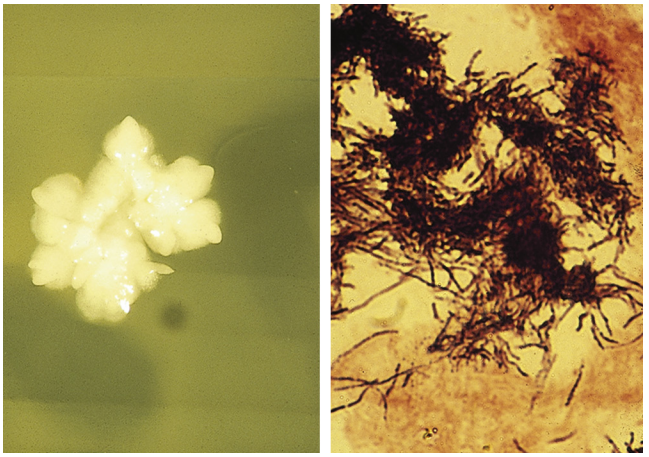


Fig. 31.2 Macroscopic colony *(left)* and Gram stain *(right)* of *Actinomyces.*

develop delicate filamentous forms or hyphae (resembling fungi) in clinical specimens or when isolated in culture (Fig. 31.2). However, these organisms are true bacteria in that they lack mitochondria and a nuclear membrane, reproduce by fission, and are inhibited by penicillin but not antifungal antibiotics. More than 50 species and subspecies have been described and many have been implicated in human disease; however, many isolates were likely misidentified before gene sequencing and mass spectrometry techniques were available. Regardless, identification at the genus level is generally sufficient.

Actinomyces organisms colonize the upper respiratory, GI, and female genital tracts but are not normally present on the skin surface. The organisms have a low virulence potential and cause disease only when the normal mucosal barriers are disrupted by trauma, surgery, or infection. Infections caused by actinomycetes are **endogenous,** with no evidence of person-to-person spread or disease originating from an exogenous source.

Classic disease caused by *Actinomyces* is termed **actinomycosis** (in keeping with the original belief that these organisms were fungi or "mycoses"). Actinomycosis is characterized by the development of chronic granulomatous lesions that become suppurative and form abscesses connected by sinus tracts. Macroscopic colonies of organisms resembling grains of sand can frequently be seen in the abscesses and sinus tracts. These colonies, called **sulfur granules** because they

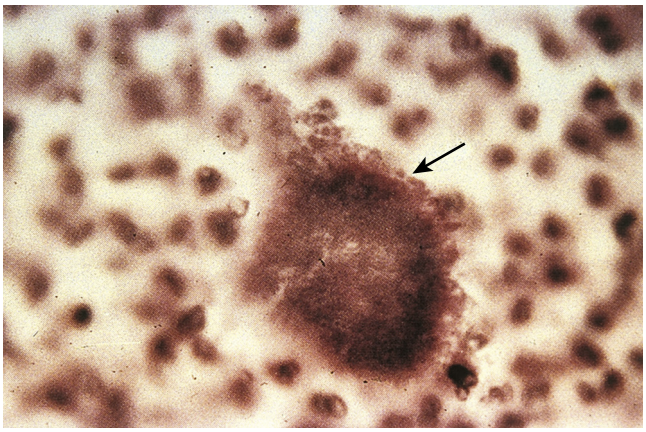


Fig. 31.3 Sulfur granule collected from the sinus tract in a patient with actinomycosis. Delicate filamentous rods *(arrow)* are seen at the periphery of the crushed granule.

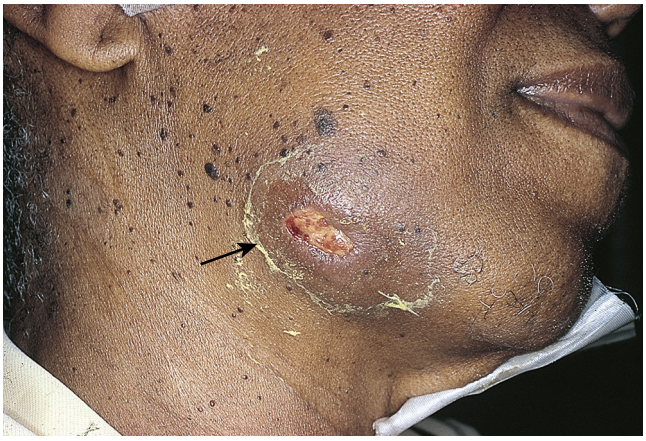


Fig. 31.4 Patient suffering from cervicofacial actinomycosis. Note the draining sinus tract *(arrow).*

may appear yellow or orange, are masses of filamentous organisms bound together by calcium phosphate (Fig. 31.3). The areas of suppuration are surrounded by fibrosing granulation tissue, which gives the surface overlying the involved tissues a hard or woody consistency.

Most actinomycetes infections are **cervicofacial,** developing in patients who have poor oral hygiene or have undergone an invasive dental procedure or oral trauma (Fig. 31.4). In these patients, the *Actinomyces* present in the mouth invade into the diseased tissue and initiate the infectious process. The disease may occur as an acute pyogenic infection or as a slowly evolving, relatively painless process. The finding of tissue swelling with fibrosis and scarring, as well as draining sinus tracts along the angle of the jaw and neck, should alert the physician to the possibility of actinomycosis. Symptoms of **thoracic actinomycosis** are nonspecific. Abscesses may form in the lung tissue early in the disease and then spread into adjoining tissues as the disease progresses. **Abdominal actinomycosis** can spread throughout the abdomen, potentially involving virtually every organ system. **Pelvic actinomycosis** can occur as a relatively benign form of vaginitis or, more commonly, there can be extensive tissue destruction, including development of tuboovarian abscesses or ureteral obstruction

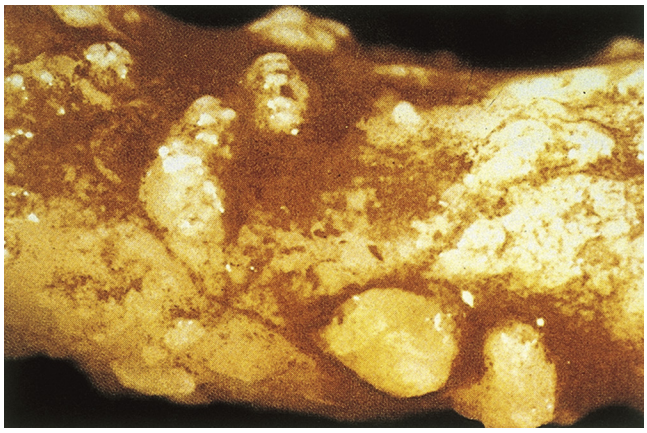


Fig. 31.5 *Actinomyces* species can colonize the surface of foreign bodies, such as this intrauterine device, leading to the development of pelvic actinomycosis. (From Smith, E., 1982. In: Lambert, H., Farrar, W. (Eds.), Infectious Diseases Illustrated. Gower, London, UK.)

Clinical Case 31.1 **Pelvic Actinomycosis**

Quercia and associates (*Med Mal Infect* 36:393–395, 2006) described a classic presentation of pelvic actinomycosis associated with an intrauterine contraceptive device (IUD). The patient was a 41-year-old woman who presented with a 5-month history of abdominal and pelvic pain, weight loss, malaise, and a yellow vaginal discharge. Since 1994 she had used an IUD, which was removed in June 2004. Her symptoms began soon after removal of the IUD. A computed tomography scan revealed a large pelvic mass involving the fallopian tubes, as well as numerous hepatic abscesses. A surgical biopsy was performed, and *Actinomyces* was recovered in culture. She underwent surgical debridement and received oral therapy with a penicillin antibiotic for 1 year. This episode illustrates the chronic nature of actinomycosis and the need for surgical drainage and long-term antibiotic therapy.

(Fig. 31.5; Clinical Case 31.1). The most common manifestation of **central nervous system actinomycosis** is a solitary brain abscess, but meningitis, subdural empyema, and epidural abscess are also seen. Actinomycosis in patients with chronic granulomatous disease, presenting as a nonspecific febrile illness, has been described.

Laboratory confirmation of actinomycosis is often difficult. Care must be used during collection of clinical specimens that they not become contaminated with *Actinomyces* that are part of the normal bacterial population on mucosal surfaces. Because the organisms are concentrated in sulfur granules and are sparse in involved tissues, a large amount of tissue or pus should be collected. If sulfur granules are detected in a sinus tract or in tissue, the granule should be crushed between two glass slides, stained, and examined microscopically. Thin, gram-positive, branching rods can be seen along the periphery of the granules (see Fig. 31.3). *Actinomyces* are fastidious and grow slowly under anaerobic conditions; it can take 2 weeks or more for the organisms to be isolated. Colonies appear white and have a domed surface that can become irregular after incubation for a week

Fig. 31.6 Molar tooth appearance of *Actinomyces israelii* after incubation for 1 week. This colonial morphology serves as a reminder that the bacteria are normally found in the mouth.

or more, resembling the top of a molar (Fig. 31.6). Recovery of *Actinomyces* in blood cultures should be evaluated carefully because most isolates represent transient, insignificant bacteremia from the oropharynx or GI tract.

Treatment for actinomycosis involves the combination of drainage of a localized abscess or **surgical debridement** of the involved tissues, and prolonged administration of antibiotics. *Actinomyces* are uniformly susceptible to **penicillin** (considered the antibiotic of choice), carbapenems, macrolides, and clindamycin. Most species are resistant to metronidazole, and the tetracyclines have variable activity. An undrained focus should be suspected in patients with infections that do not appear to respond to prolonged therapy (e.g., 4 to 12 months). The clinical response is generally good even in patients who have suffered extensive tissue destruction. Maintenance of good oral hygiene and the use of appropriate antibiotic prophylaxis when the mouth or GI tract is penetrated can lower the risk of these infections.

LACTOBACILLUS

Lactobacillus species are facultatively anaerobic or strictly anaerobic rods. They are found as part of the normal flora of the mouth, stomach, intestines, and genitourinary tract. The organisms are most commonly isolated in urine specimens and blood cultures. Because lactobacilli are the most common organism in the urethra, their recovery in urine cultures usually is a result of contamination of the specimen, even when large numbers of the organisms are present. The reason lactobacilli rarely cause infections of the urinary tract is their inability to grow in urine. Invasion into blood occurs in one of the following three settings: (1) **transient bacteremia** from a genitourinary source (e.g., after childbirth or a gynecologic procedure), (2) **endocarditis** (Clinical Case 31.2), and (3) **opportunistic septicemia** in

Clinical Case 31.2 ***Lactobacillus* Endocarditis**

The following is a classical description of endocarditis caused by *Lactobacillus* (Salvana and Frank, *J Infect* 53:5–10, 2006). A 62-year-old woman was admitted for atrial fibrillation and a 2-week history of flulike symptoms. The patient had had dental work performed 4 weeks before this admission and did not take antibiotic prophylaxis despite a history of rheumatic fever in childhood, with resultant mitral valve prolapse and regurgitation. On examination, the patient was afebrile, tachycardic, and mildly tachypneic. Cardiac examination was significant for a systolic murmur. Three blood cultures were collected, all of which yielded *Lactobacillus acidophilus* on culture. The patient was treated with the combination of penicillin and gentamicin for a total of 6 weeks, resulting in complete recovery. This case illustrates the need for antibiotic prophylaxis during dental procedures for patients with underlying damaged heart valves, and the requirement for combined antibiotic therapy for successful treatment of serious infections caused by lactobacilli.

an immunocompromised patient. Strains of lactobacilli used as probiotics have occasionally been associated with septicemia, most commonly in immunocompromised patients.

Treatment of endocarditis and opportunistic infections is difficult because lactobacilli are resistant to vancomycin (an antibiotic commonly active against gram-positive bacteria) and are inhibited but not killed by other antibiotics. A combination of **penicillin with an aminoglycoside** is required for bactericidal activity.

MOBILUNCUS

Members of the genus *Mobiluncus* are obligate anaerobic, gram-variable or gram-negative, curved rods with tapered ends. Despite their appearance in Gram-stained specimens (Fig. 31.7), they are classified as gram-positive rods because they (1) have a gram-positive cell wall; (2) lack endotoxin; and (3) are susceptible to vancomycin, clindamycin, erythromycin, and ampicillin but resistant to colistin. The organisms are fastidious, growing slowly even on enriched media supplemented with rabbit or horse serum. Of the two species of *Mobiluncus*, ***M. curtisii*** is rarely found in the vaginas of healthy women but is abundant in women with **bacterial vaginosis** (vaginitis). Their microscopic appearance is a useful marker for this disease, but the precise role of these organisms in the pathogenesis of bacterial vaginosis is unclear.

CUTIBACTERIUM (PROPIONIBACTERIUM)

In 2016 the name *Propionibacterium* was changed to *Cutibacterium*. Both names are commonly found in the literature and, because the most common species (*C. acnes*) is the bacterium responsible for acne and opportunistic infections (Clinical Case 31.3), both names are used in this edition of *Medical Microbiology*. Cutibacteria are small gram-positive rods often arranged in short chains or clumps (Fig. 31.8). They are commonly found on the skin (in contrast with the *Actinomyces*), conjunctiva, and external ear, and in the oropharynx and female genital tract. Cutibacteria are also

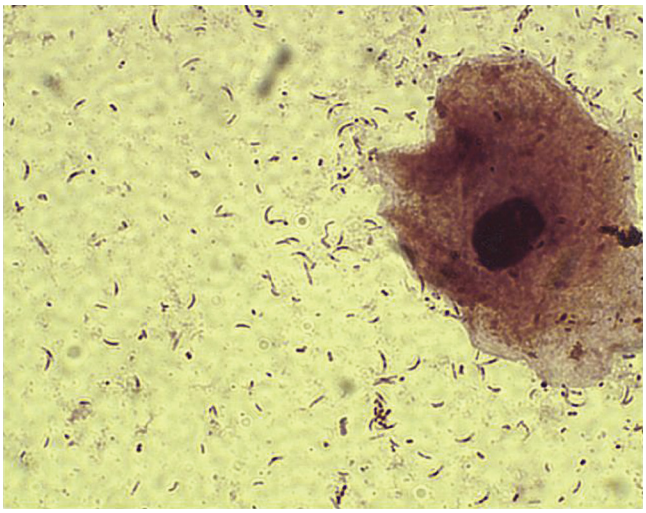


Fig. 31.7 Gram stain of *Mobiluncus*. The bacterial cells are curved and have pointed ends.

Clinical Case 31.3 ***Cutibacterium (Propionibacterium)* Shunt Infection**

Chu and associates (*Neurosurgery* 49:717–720, 2001) reported three patients with central nervous system infections with *Cutibacterium* (*Propionibacterium*) *acnes*. The following patient illustrates the problems with this organism. A 38-year-old woman with congenital hydrocephalus presented with a 1-week history of decreased level of consciousness, headaches, and emesis. She had undergone numerous ventriculoperitoneal shunt placements in the past, with the last one placed 5 years before this presentation. The patient was afebrile and had no meningeal signs, but she was somnolent and arousable only by deep stimuli. Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) collected from the shunt contained no erythrocytes but had 55 white blood cells; protein levels were high and glucose slightly low. Pleomorphic gram-positive rods were observed on Gram stain, and *C. acnes* grew in the anaerobic culture of the CSF. After 1 week of therapy with high-dose penicillin, the CSF remained positive by Gram stain and culture. The patient was taken to surgery, during which all foreign material was removed, and she was treated with penicillin for an additional 10 weeks. This patient illustrates the chronic, relatively asymptomatic nature of this disease, the need to remove the shunt and other foreign bodies, and the need to treat for a prolonged period of time.

commonly isolated in blood cultures, but this finding usually represents contamination with bacteria on the skin at the phlebotomy site.

The central role of *C. acnes* in acne is to stimulate an inflammatory response. Production of a low-molecular-weight peptide by the bacteria residing in sebaceous follicles attracts leukocytes. The bacteria are phagocytized and, after release of bacterial hydrolytic enzymes (lipases, proteases, neuraminidase, and hyaluronidase), stimulate a localized inflammatory response.

Cutibacteria can grow on most common media, although it may take 2 to 5 days for growth to appear. Care must be taken to avoid contamination of the specimen with the

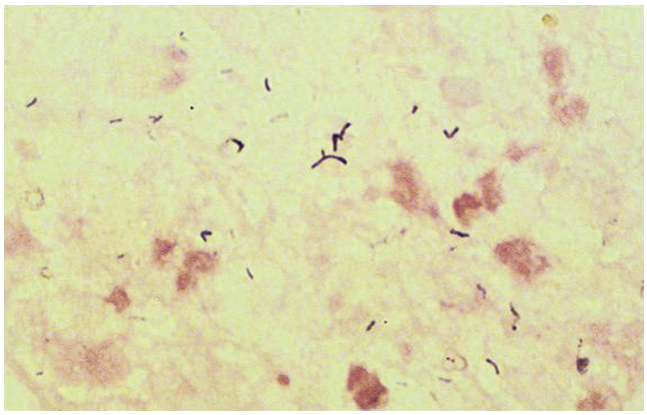


Fig. 31.8 Gram stain of *Cutibacterium (Propionibacterium)* in a blood culture.

organisms normally found on the skin. The significance of the recovery of an isolate must also be interpreted in light of the clinical presentation (e.g., a catheter or other foreign body can serve as a focus for these opportunistic pathogens).

Acne is unrelated to the effectiveness of skin cleansing because the lesion develops within the sebaceous follicles. For this reason, acne is managed primarily through topical application of benzoyl peroxide and antibiotics. Antibiotics such as erythromycin and clindamycin have proved effective for treatment.

BIFIDOBACTERIUM AND *EUBACTERIUM*

Bifidobacterium and *Eubacterium* species are commonly found in the oropharynx, large intestine, and vagina. These bacteria can be isolated in clinical specimens but have a very low virulence potential and usually represent clinically insignificant contaminants. Confirmation of their etiologic role in an infection requires their repeated isolation in large numbers from multiple specimens and the absence of other pathogenic organisms.

Anaerobic Gram-Negative Cocci

The anaerobic gram-negative cocci are rarely isolated in clinical specimens except when present as contaminants. Members of the genus *Veillonella* are the predominant anaerobes in the oropharynx, but they represent less than 1% of all anaerobes isolated in clinical specimens. The other anaerobic cocci are rarely isolated.

Anaerobic Gram-Negative Rods

The most important anaerobic gram-negative rods are in the genera *Bacteroides, Fusobacterium, Porphyromonas,* and *Prevotella* (see Table 31.1). These anaerobes are the predominant bacteria on most mucosal surfaces, outnumbering aerobic bacteria 10- to 1000-fold. Despite the abundance and diversity of these bacteria, most infections are caused by relatively few species (Table 31.3).

The genus *Bacteroides* is composed of more than 100 species and subspecies, and *B. fragilis* is the most important

TABLE 31.3 Predominant Anaerobic Gram-Negative Bacteria Responsible for Human Disease

Infection	Bacteria
Head and neck	*Bacteroides ureolyticus* *Fusobacterium nucleatum* *F. necrophorum* *Porphyromonas asaccharolytica* *P. gingivalis* *Prevotella intermedia* *P. melaninogenica*
Intraabdominal	*Bacteroides fragilis* *B. thetaiotaomicron* *P. melaninogenica*
Gynecologic	*B. fragilis* *P. bivia* *P. disiens*
Skin and soft tissue	*B. fragilis*
Bacteremia	*B. fragilis* *B. thetaiotaomicron* *Fusobacterium* spp.

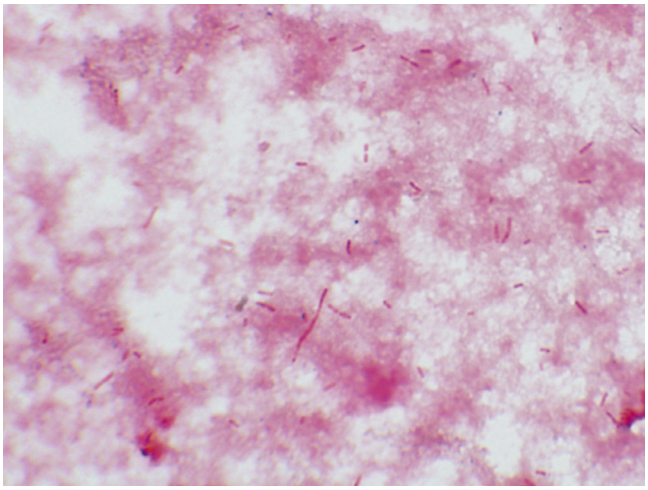


Fig. 31.9 *Bacteroides fragilis.* Organisms appear as faintly staining, pleomorphic, gram-negative rods.

member of this genus. A characteristic common to most species in the genus *Bacteroides* is that their growth is stimulated by bile. *Bacteroides* species are pleomorphic in size and shape and resemble a mixed population of organisms in a casually examined Gram stain (Fig. 31.9). Other anaerobic gram-negative rods can be very small (e.g., *Porphyromonas, Prevotella*) or elongated (e.g., *Fusobacterium;* Fig. 31.10). Most gram-negative anaerobes stain weakly with the Gram stain, so stained specimens must be carefully examined. Although *B. fragilis* grows rapidly in culture, the other anaerobic gram-negative rods are fastidious and cultures may have to be incubated for 3 days or longer before the bacteria can be detected.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Bacteroides have a typical gram-negative cell wall structure that can be surrounded by a **polysaccharide capsule.** A major component of the cell wall is a surface lipopolysaccharide (LPS). In contrast to the LPS molecules in the aerobic

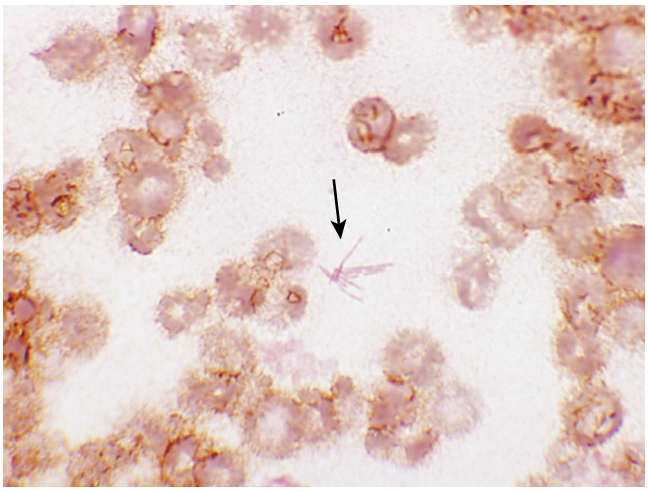


Fig. 31.10 *Fusobacterium nucleatum.* Organisms *(arrow)* are thin, faintly staining, and elongated with tapered ends (e.g., fusiform).

gram-negative rods, the *Bacteroides* LPS has little or no endotoxin activity. This is because the lipid A component of LPS lacks phosphate groups on the glucosamine residues, and the number of fatty acids linked to the amino sugars is reduced; both factors are correlated with the loss of endotoxin activity.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

B. fragilis, other *Bacteroides* species, and *Porphyromonas gingivalis* can adhere to epithelial cells and extracellular molecules (e.g., fibrinogen, fibronectin, lactoferrin) by means of fimbriae. The fimbriae of *P. gingivalis* are also important for inducing expression of proinflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α and interleukin (IL)-1β. *B. fragilis* and *Prevotella melaninogenica* strains can also adhere to peritoneal surfaces more effectively than other anaerobes because their surface is covered with a polysaccharide capsule. This capsule is also antiphagocytic, similar to other bacterial capsules, and it is the major virulence factor in *B. fragilis*. The short-chain fatty acids (e.g., succinic acid) produced during anaerobic metabolism inhibit phagocytosis and intracellular killing. Finally, proteases are produced by some *Porphyromonas* and *Prevotella* species that degrade immunoglobulins.

In general, anaerobes capable of causing disease can tolerate exposure to oxygen. Catalase and superoxide dismutase, which inactivate hydrogen peroxide and the superoxide free radicals (O_2^-), respectively, are produced by many pathogenic strains.

Strains of enterotoxigenic *B. fragilis* that cause diarrheal disease produce a **heat-labile zinc metalloprotease toxin (*B. fragilis* toxin).** This toxin causes morphologic changes of the intestinal epithelium via F-actin rearrangement, with the resultant stimulation of chloride secretion and fluid loss. The enterotoxin also induces IL-8 secretion by intestinal epithelial cells, contributing to inflammatory damage to the epithelium.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

As previously stated, anaerobes colonize the human body in large numbers (functioning to stabilize the resident bacterial flora), prevent colonization by pathogenic organisms from exogenous sources, aid in the digestion of food, and stimulate host immunity. These normal protective organisms produce disease only when they move from their endogenous homes to normally sterile sites. Thus the organisms in the resident flora are able to spread by trauma or disease from the normally colonized mucosal surfaces to sterile tissues or fluids.

As expected, endogenous infections are characterized by the presence of a polymicrobial mixture of organisms. It is important to realize, however, that the mixture of organisms that appear on healthy mucosal surfaces differs from the mixture in diseased tissues. Studies of the microbial population, or **microbiome,** of healthy mucosal surfaces show a complex mixture of many species of bacteria. In the disease state, the mixture changes to less diversity (i.e., fewer species are represented) and predominance of the most clinically significant organisms. For example, *B. fragilis* is commonly associated with pleuropulmonary, intraabdominal, and genital infections. However, the organism constitutes less than 1% of the colonic flora and is rarely isolated from the oropharynx or genital tract of healthy people unless highly selective techniques are used.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Respiratory Tract Infections

Nearly half of the chronic infections of the sinuses and ears, and virtually all periodontal infections involve mixtures of gram-negative anaerobes, and *Prevotella, Porphyromonas, Fusobacterium,* and non-*fragilis Bacteroides* are the most commonly isolated. Anaerobes are less commonly associated with infections of the lower respiratory tract unless there is a history of aspiration of oral secretions.

Brain Abscess

Anaerobic infections of the brain are typically associated with a history of chronic sinusitis or otitis. Such history is confirmed by radiologic evidence of direct extension into the brain. A less common cause of such infections is bacteremic spread from a pulmonary source. In this case, multiple abscesses are present. The most common anaerobes in these polymicrobial infections of the brain are species of *Prevotella, Porphyromonas,* and *Fusobacterium* (as well as *Peptostreptococcus* and other anaerobic and aerobic cocci).

Intraabdominal Infections

Despite the diverse population of bacteria that colonize the GI tract, relatively few species are associated with intraabdominal infections. Anaerobes are recovered in virtually all of these infections, and *B. fragilis* is the most common organism (Fig. 31.11). Other important anaerobes are *B. thetaiotaomicron* and *P. melaninogenica,* as well as the anaerobic and aerobic gram-positive cocci.

Gynecologic Infections

Mixtures of anaerobes are often responsible for causing infections of the female genital tract (e.g., vaginitis, pelvic inflammatory disease, abscesses, endometritis, surgical wound infections). Although a variety of anaerobes can be isolated in patients with these infections, *P. bivia* and *P. disiens* are the most important; *B. fragilis* is commonly responsible for abscess formation.

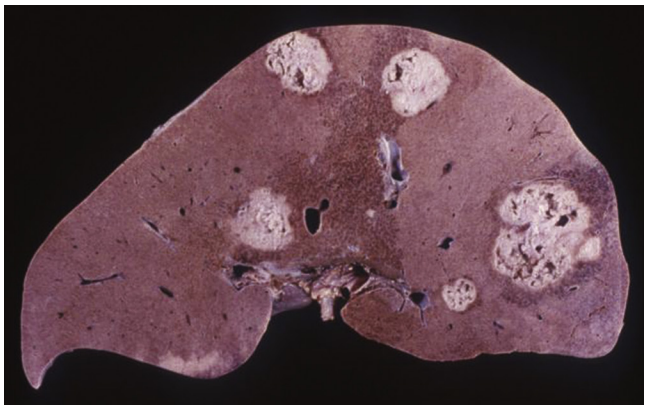


Fig. 31.11 Liver abscesses caused by *Bacteroides fragilis*.

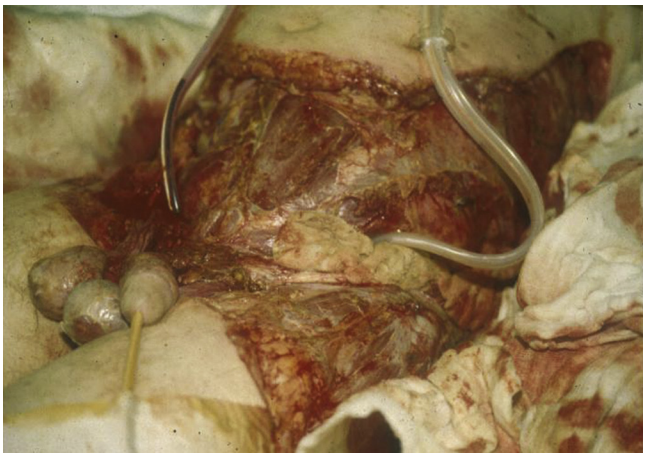


Fig. 31.12 Synergistic polymicrobial infection involving *Bacteroides fragilis* and other anaerobes. The infection started at the scrotum and rapidly spread up the trunk and down the thighs, with extensive myonecrosis.

Skin and Soft-Tissue Infections

Although anaerobic gram-negative bacteria are not part of the normal flora of the skin (in contrast to *Peptostreptococcus* and *Cutibacterium* [*Propionibacterium*] organisms), they can be introduced by a bite or through contamination of a traumatized surface. In some cases, the organisms may simply colonize a wound without producing disease; in other cases, colonization may quickly progress to life-threatening disease such as myonecrosis (Fig. 31.12). *B. fragilis* is the organism most commonly associated with significant disease (Clinical Case 31.4).

Bacteremia

Anaerobes were at one time responsible for more than 20% of all clinically significant cases of bacteremia; however, these organisms now cause less than 5% of such infections. The reduced incidence of disease is not completely understood but probably can be attributed to the widespread use of broad-spectrum antibiotics with anaerobic activity. *B. fragilis* is the anaerobe most commonly isolated in clinically significant positive blood cultures.

Gastroenteritis

Strains of enterotoxin-producing *B. fragilis* can produce a self-limited watery diarrhea. The majority of infections have been observed in children younger than 5 years, although disease has also been reported in adults.

Clinical Case 31.4 **Retroperitoneal Necrotizing Fasciitis**

Pryor and associates (*Crit Care Med* 29:1071–1073, 2001) described an unfortunate patient with a polymicrobic fasciitis. A 38-year-old man with a 10-year history of human immunodeficiency virus infection underwent an uncomplicated hemorrhoidectomy. Over the next 5 days, thigh and buttock pain developed, as well as nausea and vomiting. At the time this patient presented to the hospital, he had a heart rate of 120 beats/min, blood pressure of 120/60 mm Hg, respiratory rate of 22 respirations/min, and temperature of 38.5° C. Physical examination revealed extensive erythema around the surgical site, flank, thighs, and abdominal wall. Gas was observed in the tissues underlying the areas of erythema and extended to his upper chest. At surgery, extensive areas of tissue necrosis and foul-smelling brownish exudates were found. Multiple surgeries to aggressively debride the involved tissues were necessary. Cultures obtained at surgery grew a mixture of aerobic and anaerobic organisms, with *Escherichia coli*, β-hemolytic streptococci, and *Bacteroides fragilis* predominating. This clinical case illustrates the potential complications of rectal surgery: aggressive destruction of tissue, polymicrobic etiology with *B. fragilis* as a prominent organism, and foul-smelling necrotic tissue with gas production.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Microscopic examination of specimens from patients with suspected anaerobic infections can be useful. Although the bacteria may stain faintly and irregularly, the finding of pleomorphic gram-negative rods can serve as useful preliminary information.

Culture

Specimens should be collected and transported to the laboratory in an oxygen-free system, promptly inoculated onto specific media for the recovery of anaerobes, and incubated in an anaerobic environment. Because most anaerobic infections are endogenous, it is important to collect specimens so that they are not contaminated with the normal bacterial population present on the adjacent mucosal surface. Specimens should also be kept in a moist environment because drying causes significant bacterial loss.

Most *Bacteroides* grow rapidly and should be detected within 2 days; however, recovery of other gram-negative anaerobes may require longer incubation. In addition, it is sometimes difficult to recover all clinically significant bacteria because of the different organisms present in polymicrobial infections. The use of selective media, such as media supplemented with bile, has facilitated the recovery of most important anaerobes (Fig. 31.13).

Bacterial Identification

Although identification of gram-negative anaerobes has traditionally been performed by biochemical tests, the

Fig. 31.13 Growth of *Bacteroides fragilis* on *Bacteroides* bile-esculin agar. Most aerobic and anaerobic bacteria are inhibited by bile and gentamicin in this medium, whereas the *B. fragilis* group of organisms is stimulated by bile, resistant to gentamicin, and able to hydrolyze esculin, producing a black precipitate.

proliferation of newly recognized species has made this approach unreliable. Sequence analysis of species-specific genes (e.g., 16S ribosomal RNA gene) is a reliable but time-consuming and expensive approach. More recently, proteomic tools (i.e., mass spectrometry for spectral analysis of species-specific protein profiles) have been used for organism identification and is the diagnostic method of choice.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Antibiotic therapy combined with surgical intervention is the main approach for managing serious anaerobic infections. Virtually all members of the *B. fragilis* group, many *Prevotella* and *Porphyromonas* species, and some *Fusobacterium* isolates produce β-lactamases. This enzyme renders the bacteria resistant to penicillin and many cephalosporins. Clindamycin resistance in *Bacteroides,* which is plasmid mediated, is common. Antibiotics with the best activity against gram-negative anaerobic rods are **metronidazole**, **carbapenems** (e.g., imipenem, meropenem), and **β-lactam–β-lactamase inhibitors** (e.g., piperacillin-tazobactam).

Because *Bacteroides* species constitute an important part of the normal microbial flora, and because infections result from endogenous spread of the organisms, disease is virtually impossible to control. It is important to recognize, however, that disruption of the natural barriers around the mucosal surfaces by diagnostic or surgical procedures can introduce these organisms into normally sterile sites. If the barriers are invaded, prophylactic treatment with antibiotics is indicated.

Bibliography

Aldridge, K.E., O'Brien, M., 2002. In vitro susceptibilities of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group species: change in isolation rates significantly affects overall susceptibility data. J. Clin. Microbiol. 40, 4349–4352.

Brook, I., Frazier, E.H., 1991. Infections caused by *Propionibacterium* species. Rev. Infect. Dis. 3, 819–822.

Cannon, J.P., Lee, T.A., Bolanos, J.T., et al., 2005. Pathogenic relevance of *Lactobacillus:* a retrospective review of over 200 cases. Eur. J. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. Dis. 24, 31–40.

Kononen, E., Wade, W.G., 2015. Actinomyces and related organisms in human infections. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 28, 419–442.

Murdoch, D., 1998. Gram-positive anaerobic cocci. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 11, 81–120.

Reichenbach, J., Lopatin, U., Mahlaoui, N., et al., 2009. *Actinomyces* in chronic granulomatous disease: an emerging and unanticipated pathogen. Clin. Infect. Dis. 49, 1703–1710.

Sears, C., 2009. Enterotoxigenic *Bacteroides fragilis:* a rogue among symbiotes. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 22, 349–369.

Tiveljung, A., Forsum, U., Monstein, H.J., 1996. Classification of the genus *Mobiluncus* based on comparative partial 16S rRNA gene analysis. Int. J. Syst. Bacteriol. 46, 332–336.

Wexler, H., 2007. *Bacteroides*: the good, the bad, and the nitty-gritty. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 20, 593–621.

Case Studies and Questions

A 41-year-old man entered the university hospital for treatment of a chronically draining wound in his jaw. The patient had undergone extraction of many teeth 3 months earlier and had poor oral hygiene and fetid breath at the time of admission. Multiple pustular nodules were observed overlying the carious teeth, and some nodules had ruptured. The drainage material consisted of serosanguineous fluid containing small, hard granules.

1. The diagnosis of actinomycosis is considered. How would you collect and transport specimens for confirmation of this diagnosis? What diagnostic tests can be performed?

2. Describe the epidemiology of actinomycosis. What is the risk factor for this patient?

3. What diseases does *Cutibacterium (Propionibacterium)* cause? What is the most common source of this organism?

A 65-year-old man entered the emergency department of a local hospital. He appeared to be acutely ill, with abdominal tenderness and a temperature of 40° C. He was taken to surgery because appendicitis was suspected. A ruptured appendix surrounded by approximately 20 ml of foul-smelling pus was found at laparotomy. The pus was drained and submitted for aerobic and anaerobic bacterial culture analysis. Postoperatively, the patient was started on antibiotic therapy. Gram stain of the specimen revealed a polymicrobial mixture of organisms, and the culture was positive for *B. fragilis, Escherichia coli,* and *Enterococcus faecalis.*

4. Which organism or organisms are responsible for causing the abscess formation? What virulence factors are responsible for causing abscess formation?

5. *B. fragilis* causes infections at what other body sites?

6. What antibiotics should be selected to manage this polymicrobial infection?

7. What other anaerobic gram-negative rods are important causes of human disease?

32 Treponema, Borrelia, *and* Leptospira

A 23-year-old homosexual man presented to the emergency department with a painless ulcer on the shaft of his penis. Primary syphilis was suspected and later confirmed by serologic tests. It is a very rare student who is not familiar with the diseases caused by the spirochetes discussed in this chapter: syphilis, Lyme disease, relapsing fever, and leptospirosis.

1. Why do many patients with syphilis develop chronic infections even though penicillin is uniformly active against *Treponema pallidum?*
2. What reservoir and vector are most important for the transmission of *Borrelia burgdorferi* infections in humans?
3. What diagnostic test is most useful for early localized Lyme disease and for patients who develop arthritis or neurologic complications?
4. What specimens are optimum for recovering *Leptospira* in culture?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

TREPONEMA PALLIDUM

Trigger Words

Thin spirochete, sexually transmitted disease, congenital infections, painless ulcer (chancre)

Biology and Virulence

- Coiled spirochete (0.1 to 0.2 × 6 to 20 μm) too thin to be seen with Gram or Giemsa stains; observed by darkfield microscopy
- Outer membrane proteins promote adherence to host cells
- Hyaluronidase facilitates perivascular infiltration
- Coating of fibronectin protects against phagocytosis
- Tissue destruction primarily results from host's immune response to infection

Epidemiology

- Humans are the only natural host
- Syphilis transmitted by sexual contact or congenitally
- Syphilis occurs worldwide, with no seasonal incidence

Diseases

- Syphilis presents as primary disease (painless ulcer [chancre] at site of infection, with regional lymphadenopathy and bacteremia), secondary syphilis (flulike syndrome with generalized mucocutaneous rash and bacteremia), and late-stage disease (diffuse chronic inflammation and destruction of any organ or tissue); congenital (latent multiorgan malformations, fetal death)

Diagnosis

- Darkfield or direct fluorescent antibody microscopy is useful if mucosal ulcers are observed in primary or secondary stages of syphilis
- Serology is very sensitive in secondary and late stages of syphilis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Penicillin is the drug of choice; doxycycline is administered if patient is allergic to penicillin
- Safe sex practices should be emphasized, and sexual partners of infected patients should be treated
- No vaccine is available

BORRELIA

Trigger Words

Large spirochetes, erythema migrans, Lyme disease, relapsing fever, hard and soft ticks, body louse

Biology and Virulence

- Borreliae are large (0.2 to 0.5 × 8 to 30 μm) and can be seen when stained with aniline dyes (e.g., Giemsa, Wright stains)
- Immune reactivity against Lyme disease agents may be responsible for clinical disease

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Lyme Disease

- *B. burgdorferi* causes disease in the United States and Europe; *B. garinii* and *B. afzelii* cause disease in Europe and Asia
- Transmitted by hard ticks from mice to humans; reservoirs include mice, deer, and ticks; vectors include *Ixodes scapularis* in eastern and midwestern United States, *I. pacificus* in the western United States, *I. ricinus* in Europe, and *I. persulcatus* in Eastern Europe and Asia
- Most Lyme disease cases in the United States are from two principal foci: Northeast and Mid-Atlantic states (Maine to Virginia) and the Upper Midwest (Minnesota, Wisconsin)
- Individuals at risk for Lyme disease include people exposed to ticks in areas of high endemicity
- Worldwide distribution
- Seasonal incidence corresponds to feeding patterns of vectors; most cases of Lyme disease in the United States occur in late spring and early summer (feeding pattern of nymph stage of ticks); peak in June and July

Epidemic Relapsing Fever

- Etiologic agent is *B. recurrentis*
- Person-to-person transmission; reservoir includes humans; vector includes human body louse
- Individuals at risk are people exposed to lice (epidemic disease) in crowded or unsanitary conditions
- Occurs in Ethiopia, Eritrea, Somalia, and Sudan

Endemic Relapsing Fever

- Many *Borrelia* species are responsible
- Transmitted from rodents to humans; reservoirs include rodents, small mammals, and soft ticks; vector includes soft ticks
- Individuals at risk are people exposed to ticks (endemic disease) in rural areas
- Worldwide distribution; in the western part of the United States

Diseases

- Borreliae are responsible for two human diseases: Lyme disease and relapsing fever (epidemic and endemic)
- *Borrelia* species responsible for relapsing fever are able to undergo antigenic shift and escape immune clearance; periodic febrile and afebrile periods result from antigenic variation

Diagnosis

- Serology is test of choice for Lyme disease
- Polymerase chain reaction tests available for Lyme disease but relatively insensitive
- Microscopy is the test of choice for diagnosis of relapsing fever

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- For early localized or disseminated Lyme disease, treatment is with amoxicillin, tetracycline, cefuroxime; late manifestations are treated with intravenous penicillin or ceftriaxone
- For relapsing fever, treatment is with tetracycline or erythromycin
- Improved sanitary conditions to decrease risk of epidemic relapsing fever
- Reduced exposure to hard ticks (Lyme disease) and soft ticks (relapsing fever) through use of insecticides, application of insect repellents to clothing, and wearing protective clothing that reduces exposure of skin to insects

LEPTOSPIRA

Trigger Words

Thin, spirochetes, flulike disease, aseptic meningitis, Weil disease, zoonotic, contaminated water exposure

Biology and Virulence

- Thin, coiled spirochetes (0.1 × 6 to 20 μm) that grow slowly in specialized cultures
- Able to directly invade and replicate in tissues, inducing an inflammatory response
- Immune complex produces renal disease (glomerulonephritis)
- Most disease is a mild virus-like syndrome
- Systemic leptospirosis presents most commonly as aseptic meningitis
- Overwhelming disease (Weil disease) is characterized by vascular collapse, thrombocytopenia, hemorrhage, and hepatic and renal dysfunction

Epidemiology

- US reservoirs: rodents (particularly rats), dogs, farm animals, and wild animals
- Humans: accidental end-stage host
- Organism can penetrate the skin through minor breaks in the epidermis
- People are infected with leptospires through exposure to water contaminated with urine from an infected animal or handling of tissues from an infected animal
- People at risk are those exposed to urine-contaminated streams, rivers, and standing water; occupational exposure to infected animals for farmers, meat handlers, and veterinarians
- Infection is rare in the United States but has worldwide distribution
- Disease is more common during warm months (recreational exposure)

Diagnosis

- Microscopy not useful because too few organisms are generally present in fluids or tissues
- Culture blood or cerebrospinal fluid in the first 7 to 10 days of illness; urine after the first week
- Serology using the microscopic agglutination test is relatively sensitive and specific but not widely available in resource-limited countries; enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay tests are less accurate but can be used to screen patients

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment with penicillin or doxycycline
- Doxycycline but not penicillin is used for prophylaxis
- Herds and domestic pets should be vaccinated
- Rats should be controlled

The bacteria in the order Spirochaetales have been grouped together on the basis of their common morphologic properties (Table 32.1). These spirochetes are thin, helical (0.1 to 0.5 × 5 to 20 μm), gram-negative bacteria. The order Spirochaetales is subdivided into 4 families and 14 genera, of which 3 genera (*Treponema* and *Borrelia* in the family Spirochaetaceae, and *Leptospira* in the family Leptospiraceae) are responsible for human disease (Table 32.2).

TABLE 32.1 Medically Important Genera in the Order Spirochaetales

Spirochaetales	Human Disease	Etiologic Agent
FAMILY SPIROCHAETACEAE		
Genus *Borrelia*	Epidemic relapsing fever	*B. recurrentis*
	Endemic relapsing fever	Many *Borrelia* species
	Lyme borreliosis	*B. burgdorferi, B. garinii, B. afzelii*
Genus *Treponema*	Venereal syphilis	*T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum*
	Endemic syphilis (bejel)	*T. pallidum* subsp. *endemicum*
	Yaws	*T. pallidum* subsp. *pertenue*
FAMILY LEPTOSPIRACEAE		
Genus *Leptospira*	Leptospirosis	*Leptospira* spp.

TABLE 32.2 Important Spirochetes

Organism	Historical Derivation
Treponema	*trepo,* turn; *nema,* a thread (a turning thread; refers to the morphology of the bacteria)
T. pallidum	*pallidum,* pale (refers to the fact that these organisms are not stained with traditional dyes)
Borrelia	Named after A. Borrel
B. recurrentis	*recurrens,* recurring (reference to relapsing fever)
B. hermsii	*hermsii,* of hermsi (named after the tick vector *Ornithodoros hermsii*)
B. burgdorferi	Named after W. Burgdorfer
Leptospira	*lepto,* thin; *spira,* a coil (a thin coil; refers to the morphology of the bacteria)

Treponema

The most important treponemal species that causes human disease is *Treponema pallidum*, with three subspecies. The subspecies are distinguished by their epidemiologic characteristics, clinical presentation, and host range in experimental animals. *T. pallidum* subspecies *pallidum* (referred to as *T. pallidum* in this chapter) is the etiologic agent of the venereal disease **syphilis;** *T. pallidum* subspecies *endemicum* causes endemic syphilis **(bejel);** and *T. pallidum* subspecies *pertenue* causes **yaws.** Bejel and yaws are nonvenereal diseases.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

T. pallidum and related pathogenic treponemes are thin, tightly coiled spirochetes (0.1 to 0.2 × 6 to 20 μm) with pointed, straight ends. Traditional diagnostic tests such as microscopy and culture are of little value because the spirochetes are too thin to be seen with light microscopy in specimens stained with Gram or Giemsa stains, and these spirochetes do not grow in cell-free cultures. Limited growth of the organisms has been achieved in cultured rabbit epithelial cells, but replication is slow (doubling time is 30 hours) and can be maintained for only a few generations.

The reason for this failure to grow *T. pallidum* in vitro is because the tricarboxylic acid cycle is missing in the bacteria and they are dependent on host cells for all purines, pyrimidines, and most amino acids. In addition, spirochetes are microaerophilic or anaerobic and extremely sensitive to oxygen, consistent with the discovery the bacteria have no genes for catalase or superoxide dismutase to protect them from oxygen toxicity.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The inability to grow *T. pallidum* to high concentrations in vitro has limited detection of specific virulence factors in this organism. However, analysis of the entire genome sequence and the unique structural properties of this spirochete have revealed some insights. Although a number of lipoproteins are anchored in the bacterial cytoplasmic membrane, most or all are not exposed on the surface of the outer membrane. Thus the lack of species-specific antigens on the cell surface allows the spirochete to evade the immune system. Although the bacteria are able to resist phagocytosis, they can adhere to host fibronectin, allowing direct interaction with the host tissues. Analysis of the genome sequence demonstrates the presence of at least five hemolysins, but it is unclear if they mediate tissue damage. Likewise, it has been proposed that production of hyaluronidase facilitates perivascular infiltration. Most investigators believe that the tissue destruction and lesions observed in syphilis are primarily the consequence of the patient's immune response to infection.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Syphilis is found worldwide and is the third most common sexually transmitted bacterial disease in the United States (after *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infections). Overall, the incidence of disease decreased after the introduction of penicillin in the early 1940s, although periodic increases have been observed that correspond to changes in sexual practices (e.g., use of birth control pills in the 1960s, gay bath houses in the 1970s, increased prostitution related to crack cocaine use in the 1990s). A troubling trend is evolving now. Between 2000 and 2017, the incidence of newly acquired disease has increased each year. In 2017 the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reported that there were more than 100,000 reported new cases of syphilis, with 30,644 primary and secondary stage disease, which are the most infectious forms of syphilis. The increase in syphilis is primarily in homosexual males. This likely reflects the mistaken perception that sexually acquired diseases, including human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infections, can be controlled effectively with antibiotics, so unprotected sex is incorrectly considered a low-risk activity. Unfortunately, patients infected with syphilis are at increased risk for transmitting and acquiring HIV when genital lesions are present. Thus despite a concerted public health effort to eliminate syphilis, this disease remains a serious problem in sexually active populations.

Natural syphilis is exclusive to humans and has no other known natural hosts (Clinical Case 32.1). *T. pallidum* is extremely labile, and is unable to survive exposure to drying or disinfectants. Thus syphilis cannot be spread through contact with inanimate objects such as toilet seats. The most common route of spread is by direct sexual contact. The disease can also be acquired congenitally or by transfusion with contaminated blood. Syphilis is not highly contagious; the risk of contracting the disease after a single sexual contact is estimated to be 30%. However, contagiousness is influenced by the stage of disease in the infectious person. *T. pallidum* is transferred primarily during the early stages of disease when many organisms are present in moist cutaneous or mucosal lesions. During the early stages of disease, the patient becomes bacteremic, and if the disease is untreated, intermittent bacteremia can persist for as long as 8 years. Congenital transmission from mother to fetus can occur at any time during this period. Even after bacteremia ceases, the disease can remain active.

Clinical Case 32.1 **History of Syphilis**

The origins of syphilis have been debated for decades. Examination of skeletal remains recovered in the Americas, Europe, Asia, and Africa may have resolved this debate. The disease we know as syphilis is likely to have evolved from yaws and, more recently, bejel. Each disease produces distinctive bone alterations. The earliest evidence of treponemal disease was in Africa and appeared to have spread to the Americas through an Asian route. At the time Columbus sailed to the Americas, syphilis was well established throughout the New World, including the Dominican Republic, where he landed. In contrast, there is no evidence of syphilis in pre-Columbian Europe, Africa, or Asia. Thus it is likely that Columbus' crew acquired this New World disease and introduced it into the Old World population on their return home.

CLINICAL DISEASES

The clinical course of syphilis evolves through three phases. The initial or **primary phase** is characterized by one or more skin lesions **(chancres)** at the site in which the spirochete penetrated (Fig. 32.1). The lesion develops 10 to 90 days after the initial infection and starts as a papule but then erodes to become a **painless ulcer** with raised borders. Histologic examination of the lesion reveals endarteritis and periarteritis (characteristic of syphilitic lesions at all stages) and infiltration of the ulcer with polymorphonuclear leukocytes and macrophages. Phagocytic cells ingest spirochetes, but the organisms often survive, with abundant organisms present in the chancre. In most patients, a painless regional lymphadenopathy develops 1 to 2 weeks after the appearance of the chancre, which represents a local focus for the proliferation of spirochetes and dissemination in the blood. The fact that this ulcer heals spontaneously within 2 months gives the patient a false sense of relief.

In the **secondary phase,** the clinical signs of disseminated disease appear, with prominent skin lesions dispersed over the entire body surface (Fig. 32.2). In this stage, patients typically experience a flulike syndrome with sore throat, headache, fever, myalgias (muscle aches), anorexia, lymphadenopathy (swollen lymph nodes), and a generalized mucocutaneous rash. The flulike syndrome and

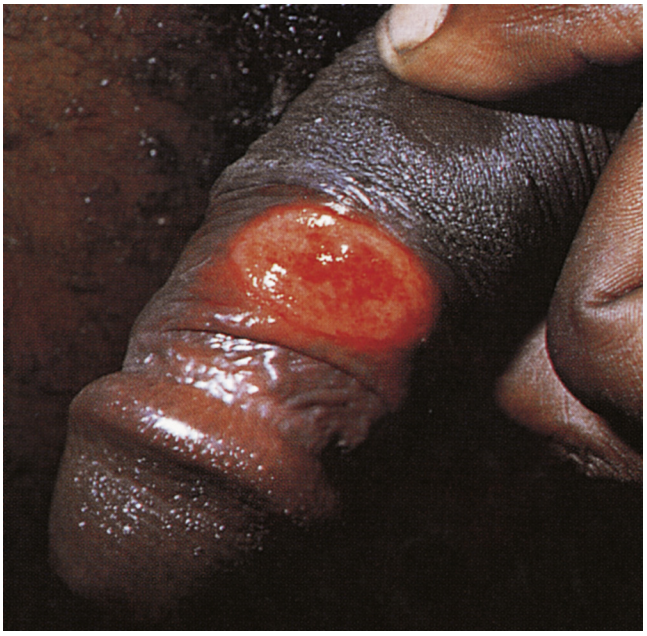


Fig. 32.1 Primary chancre of the penile shaft. Typically the lesion is painless unless secondary bacterial infection is present. Large numbers of spirochetes are present in the lesion. (From Morse, S.A., Ballard, R.C., Holmes, K.K., et al., 2010. Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS, fourth ed. Saunders, London, UK.)

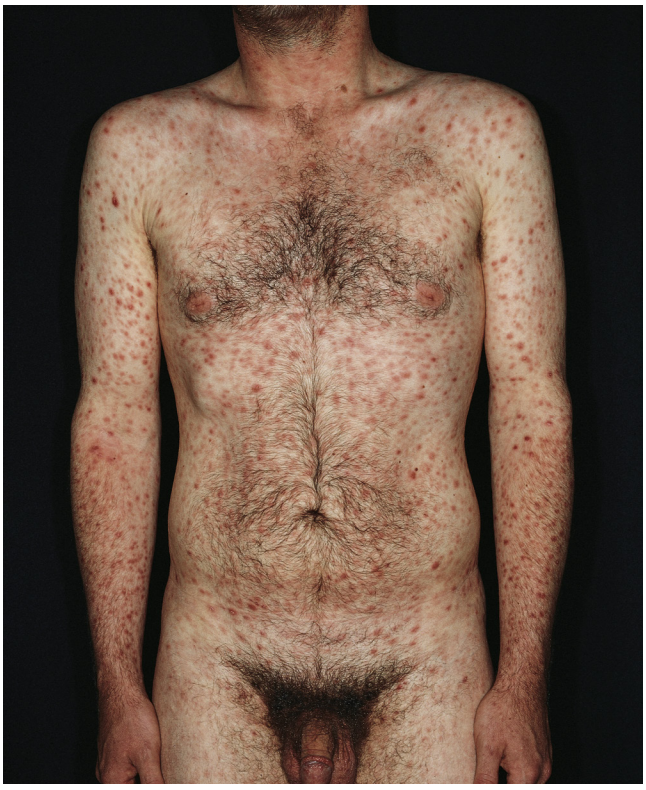


Fig. 32.2 Disseminated rash in secondary syphilis. (From Habif, T.P., 2010. Clinical Dermatology: A Color Guide to Diagnosis and Therapy, fifth ed. Mosby, London, UK.)

lymphadenopathy generally appear first and then are followed a few days later by the disseminated rash. The rash can be variable (macular, papular, or pustular) and cover the entire skin surface (including the palms and soles). Raised lesions called **condylomata lata** may occur in moist skinfolds, and erosions may develop in the mouth and on other mucosal surfaces. As with the primary chancre, these lesions are highly infectious. The rash and symptoms resolve spontaneously within a few weeks, and patients may undergo spontaneous remission, enter the latent or clinically inactive stage of disease, or progress to the **late phase** of disease.

Approximately one-third of untreated patients progress to the tertiary stage of syphilis. Clinical symptoms of the diffuse chronic inflammation characteristic of late syphilis develop after an asymptomatic period of a few years to decades and can cause devastating destruction of virtually any organ or tissue (e.g., arteritis, dementia, blindness). Granulomatous lesions **(gummas)** may be found in bone, skin, and other tissues. The nomenclature of late syphilis reflects the organs of primary involvement (e.g., neurosyphilis, cardiovascular syphilis). An increased incidence of neurosyphilis despite adequate therapy for early syphilis has been documented in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). In addition, spirochetes are introduced into the central nervous system during the early stages of disease, and neurologic symptoms (e.g., meningitis) can develop within the first few months of disease. Thus neurosyphilis is not exclusively a late manifestation.

In utero infections (congenital syphilis) can lead to serious fetal disease, resulting in latent infections, multiorgan malformations, or death of the fetus. Most infected infants are born without clinical evidence of the disease, but rhinitis then develops and is followed by a widespread desquamating maculopapular rash. Teeth and bone malformation, blindness, deafness, and cardiovascular syphilis are common in untreated infants who survive the initial phase of disease.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Because *T. pallidum* is too thin to be seen by light microscopy, **darkfield microscopy** or **special fluorescent stains** must be used (Table 32.3). The diagnosis of primary, secondary, or congenital syphilis can be made rapidly by darkfield examination of the exudate from skin lesions; however, the test is reliable only when an experienced microscopist examines the clinical material immediately, when actively motile spirochetes can be observed. The spirochetes do not survive transport to the laboratory, and tissue debris can be mistaken for nonviable spirochetes. Material collected from oral and rectal lesions should not be examined because nonpathogenic spirochetes can be routinely observed in those specimens. Because of the limitations of darkfield microscopy, a more useful test for detecting *T. pallidum* is the **direct fluorescent antibody test.** Fluorescein-labeled antitreponemal antibodies are used to stain the bacteria (Fig. 32.3). A monoclonal antibody reagent is available that is specific for pathogenic treponemes, so oral and rectal specimens can be examined. In addition, nonviable spirochetes will also stain, so specimens do not need to be examined immediately after collection.

TABLE 32.3 Diagnostic Tests for Syphilis

Diagnostic Test	Method or Examination
Microscopy	Darkfield Direct fluorescent antibody staining
Culture	Not available
Serology	Nontreponemal tests: VDRL test RPR test USR test TRUST Treponemal tests: FTA-ABS TP-PA test EIA

EIA, Enzyme immunoassay; *FTA-ABS,* fluorescent treponemal antibody-absorption; *RPR,* rapid plasma reagain; *TP-PA, Treponema pallidum* particle agglutination; *TRUST,* toluidine red unheated serum test; *USR,* unheated serum reagin; *VDRL,* Veneral Disease Research Laboratory.

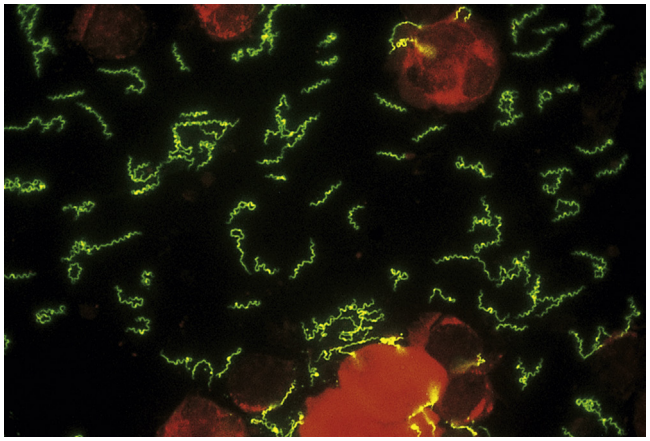


Fig. 32.3 *Treponema pallidum* in the direct fluorescent antibody test for *T. pallidum.* (From Morse, S.A., Ballard, R.C., Holmes, K.K., et al., 2010. Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS, fourth ed. Saunders, London, UK.)

Culture

Efforts to culture *T. pallidum* in vitro should not be attempted because the organism does not grow in artificial cultures.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Nucleic acid amplification tests (i.e., polymerase chain reaction [PCR]) have been developed for detecting *T. pallidum* in genital lesions, infant blood, and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) but are currently not widely available.

Antibody Detection

Syphilis is diagnosed in most patients on the basis of serologic tests. The two general types of tests used are biologically nonspecific (nontreponemal) tests and specific treponemal tests. The nontreponemal tests are used as screening tests because they are rapid to perform and inexpensive. Positive reactivity with one of these tests is confirmed with a treponemal test.

Nontreponemal tests measure immunoglobulin (Ig) G and IgM antibodies (also called **reaginic antibodies**) that developed against lipids released from damaged cells during the early stage of disease and that appear on the cell surface of treponemes. The antigen used for the nontreponemal tests is **cardiolipin,** which is derived from beef heart. The two tests used most commonly are the **Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL) test** and the **rapid plasma reagin (RPR) test.** Both tests measure the flocculation of cardiolipin antigen by the patient's serum. Only the VDRL test should be used to test CSF from patients with suspected neurosyphilis. Other nontreponemal tests in use include the unheated serum reagin (USR) test and the toluidine red unheated serum test (TRUST). All nontreponemal tests have essentially the same sensitivity (very low reactivity when the primary lesion appears but rises to 70% to 85% reactivity after 1 week; 100% reactivity for secondary disease; 70% to 75% for late syphilis) and specificity (98% to 99%).

Treponemal tests use *T. pallidum* as the antigen and detect specific anti–*T. pallidum* antibodies. The treponemal test results can be positive before the nontreponemal test results become positive in early syphilis, and they can remain positive when the nonspecific test results revert to negative in some patients who have late syphilis. Historically, the most commonly used treponemal test was the **fluorescent treponemal antibody-absorption (FTA-ABS) test**, which is an indirect fluorescent antibody test. *T. pallidum* immobilized on glass slides is used as the antigen. The slide is overlaid with the patient's serum, which has been mixed with an extract of nonpathogenic treponemes. The fluorescein-labeled antihuman antibodies are then added to detect the presence of specific antibodies in the patient's serum. Because these tests are technically difficult to interpret, most laboratories now use either the ***Treponema pallidum* particle agglutination (TP-PA) test** or one of a number of specific **enzyme immunoassays (EIAs).** The TP-PA test is a microtiter agglutination test. Gelatin particles sensitized with *T. pallidum* antigens are mixed with dilutions of the patient's serum. If antibodies are present, the particles agglutinate. A variety of specific EIAs have been developed and appear to have sensitivities (80% to 95% for primary disease, 100% for secondary and late syphilis) and specificities (96% to 99%) similar to the FTA-ABS and TP-PA tests. These immunoassays are widely used in resource-limited countries in which screening with traditional nontreponemal tests and use of more sensitive treponemal tests such as FTA-ABS is impractical.

Because positive reactions with the nontreponemal tests develop late during the first phase of disease, the serologic findings are negative in many patients who present with chancres. However, serologic results are positive within 3 months in all patients and remain positive in untreated patients with secondary syphilis. The antibody titers decrease slowly in patients with untreated syphilis, and serologic results are negative in approximately 25% to 30% of patients with late syphilis. Thus the limitation of the nontreponemal tests is reduced sensitivity in early primary disease and late syphilis. Although the results of treponemal tests generally remain positive for the life of the person who has syphilis, a negative test is unreliable in patients with AIDS.

Successful treatment of primary or secondary syphilis and, to a lesser extent, late syphilis leads to reduced titers measured in the VDRL and RPR tests. Thus these tests can be used to monitor the effectiveness of therapy, although seroreversion is slowed in patients in an advanced stage of

BOX 32.1 Conditions Associated with False-Positive Serologic Test Results for Syphilis

Nontreponemal Tests

Viral infection
Rheumatoid arthritis
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Acute or chronic illness
Pregnancy
Recent immunization
Drug addiction
Leprosy
Malaria
Multiple blood transfusions

Treponemal Tests

Pyoderma
Rheumatoid arthritis
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Psoriasis
Crural ulceration
Skin neoplasm
Drug addiction
Mycoses
Lyme disease
Acne vulgaris

disease, those with high initial titers, and those who have previously had syphilis. The treponemal tests are influenced less by therapy than are the VDRL and RPR tests, with seroreversion observed in less than 25% of patients successfully treated during the primary stage of the disease.

Transient false-positive reactions with the nontreponemal tests are seen in patients with acute febrile diseases, after immunizations, and in pregnant women. Long-term false-positive reactions occur most often in patients with chronic autoimmune diseases or infections that involve the liver or that cause extensive tissue destruction. Most false-positive reactions with the treponemal tests are observed in patients with elevated immunoglobulin levels and autoimmune diseases (Box 32.1).

Diagnosis of neurosyphilis and congenital syphilis can be problematic. The diagnosis of neurosyphilis is based on clinical symptoms and laboratory findings. A VDRL test on CSF is highly specific but not sensitive. Thus a positive VDRL confirms the diagnosis, but a negative test does not rule out neurosyphilis. In contrast, the FTA-ABS CSF test has high sensitivity but low specificity because of passive transfer of antitreponemal antibodies from blood to CSF. In this case, a positive FTA-ABS CSF test is consistent with neurosyphilis but is not diagnostic, and a negative test would essentially rule out the diagnosis. Positive serologic test results in infants of infected mothers can represent a passive transfer of antibodies or a specific immunologic response to a congenital infection. These two possibilities are distinguished by measuring the antibody titers in the sera of the infant during a 6-month period. The antibody titers in noninfected infants decrease to undetectable levels within 3 months of birth but remain elevated in infants who have congenital syphilis.

Clinical Case 32.2 Lyme Disease in Lyme, Connecticut

In 1977, Steere and associates (*Arthritis Rheum* 20:7–17, 1977) reported an epidemic of arthritis in eastern Connecticut. The authors studied a group of 39 children and 12 adults who developed an illness characterized by recurrent attacks of swelling and pain in a few large joints. Most attacks were for a week or less, but some attacks lasted for months. Twenty-five percent of the patients remembered they had an erythematous cutaneous lesion 4 weeks before the onset of their arthritis. This was the first report of Lyme disease, named after the town in Connecticut in which the disease was first recognized. We now know the erythematous lesion (erythema migrans) is the characteristic presentation of early Lyme disease. A few years after this report, the *Borrelia* responsible for Lyme disease, *B. burgdorferi,* was isolated.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Penicillin is the drug of choice for treating *T. pallidum* infections. A single intramuscular dose of long-acting benzathine **penicillin G** is used for the early stages of syphilis, and three doses at weekly intervals is recommended for congenital and late syphilis. **Doxycycline** or **azithromycin** can be used as alternative antibiotics for patients allergic to penicillin. Only penicillin can be used for the treatment of neurosyphilis; thus penicillin-allergic patients must undergo desensitization. This is also true for pregnant women, who should not be treated with tetracyclines. Treatment failures with macrolides have been observed, so patients treated with azithromycin should be closely monitored.

Because protective vaccines are not available, syphilis can be controlled only through the practice of safe-sex techniques and adequate contact and treatment of the sex partners of patients who have been documented with infection. The control of syphilis and other venereal diseases has been complicated by an increase in prostitution among drug abusers and high-risk sexual practices in homosexual males.

Borrelia

Members of the genus *Borrelia* cause two important human diseases: **Lyme disease** and **relapsing fever.** The recorded history of Lyme disease began in 1977 when an unusual cluster of children with arthritis was noted in Lyme, Connecticut (Clinical Case 32.2). Five years later, W. Burgdorfer discovered the spirochete responsible for this disease. Lyme disease is a tick-borne disease with protean manifestations, including dermatologic, rheumatologic, neurologic, and cardiac abnormalities. Initially it was believed that all cases of Lyme disease (or Lyme borreliosis) were caused by one organism, ***B. burgdorferi***. However, subsequent studies have determined that a complex of at least 10 *Borrelia* species are responsible for Lyme disease in animals and humans. Three species, *B. burgdorferi, B. garinii,* and *Borrelia afzelii,* cause human disease, with *B. burgdorferi* found in the United States and Europe and *B. garinii* and *B. afzelii*

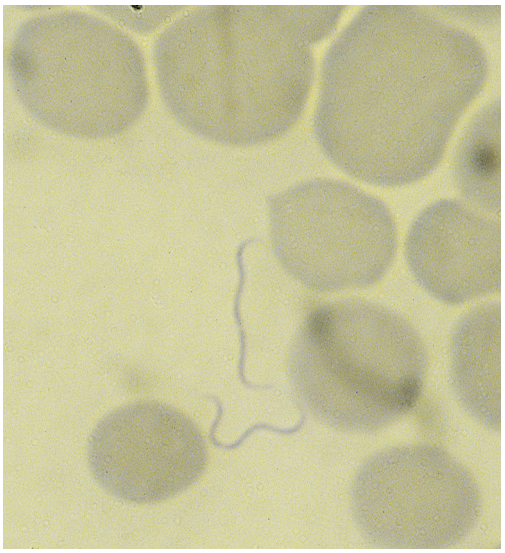


Fig. 32.4 *Borrelia* organisms are present in the blood of this patient with endemic relapsing fever (Giemsa stain).

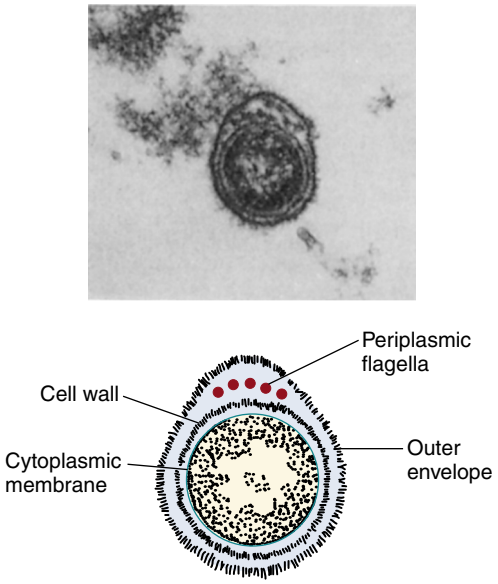


Fig. 32.5 Electron micrograph and drawing of a cross-section through *Borrelia burgdorferi,* which is the agent that causes Lyme borreliosis. The protoplasmic core of the bacterium is enclosed in a cytoplasmic membrane and conventional cell wall. This in turn is surrounded by an outer envelope, or sheath. Between the protoplasmic core and outer sheath are periplasmic flagella (also called *axial fibrils*), which are anchored at either end of the bacterium and wrap around the protoplasmic core. (From Steere, A.C., Grodzicki, R.L., Kornblatt, A.N., et al., 1983. The spirochetal etiology of Lyme disease. New Engl. J. Med. 308, 733–740.)

found in Europe and central to eastern Asia. This chapter focuses on *B. burgdorferi* infections.

Relapsing fever is a febrile illness characterized by recurrent episodes of fever and septicemia separated by afebrile periods. Two forms of the disease are recognized. *B. recurrentis* is the etiologic agent of **epidemic** or **louse-borne relapsing fever** and is spread person to person by the **human body louse** *(Pediculus humanus).* **Endemic relapsing fever** is caused by as many as 15 species of borreliae and is spread by infected **soft ticks** of the genus *Ornithodoros.*

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Members of the genus *Borrelia* stain poorly with the Gram stain reagents and are considered neither gram positive nor gram negative, even though they have an outer membrane similar to gram-negative bacteria. They are larger than other spirochetes (0.2 to 0.5 × 8 to 30 μm), stain well with aniline dyes (e.g., Giemsa or Wright stain), and can be easily seen by light microscopy when present in smears of peripheral blood from patients with relapsing fever but not those with Lyme disease (too few organisms to be observed) (Figs. 32.4 and 32.5). Borreliae are microaerophilic and have complex nutritional needs (i.e., requiring *N*-acetylglucosamine, long-chain saturated and unsaturated fatty acids, glucose, amino acids), which makes them difficult to grow in the lab. The species that have been successfully cultured have generation times of 18 hours or longer. Because culture is generally unsuccessful, diagnosis of diseases caused by borreliae is by serology (Lyme disease) or microscopy (relapsing fever).

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The growth of borreliae in both arthropod vectors and mammalian hosts is regulated by differential gene expression with upregulation or downregulation of outer surface proteins. For example, outer surface protein A (OspA) is expressed on the surface of *B. burgdorferi* residing in the midgut of unfed ticks. This protein binds specifically to gut proteins. On feeding, expression of this protein is repressed, allowing the spirochete to migrate to the salivary glands, and outer surface protein C (OspC) expression, which appears critical for transmission from ticks to mammals, is upregulated. Unfortunately, knowledge of the complete genome sequence of *B. burgdorferi* has not led to a clear understanding of how these organisms cause disease. *B. burgdorferi* organisms are present in low numbers in the skin when erythema migrans develops. This has been shown by culture of the organism from skin lesions and detection of bacterial nucleic acids by PCR amplification; however, culture and PCR tests are relatively insensitive in the early phase of disease. In addition, spirochetes are infrequently isolated from clinical material late in the disease. It is not known whether the viable organisms cause these late manifestations of disease or whether they represent immunologic cross-reactivity to *Borrelia* antigens. Although the immune response to the organism is depressed at the time that skin lesions initially develop, antibodies develop over months to years and are responsible for producing the complement-mediated clearance of the borreliae.

Our understanding of mechanisms by which borreliae cause relapsing fever is also incomplete. Members of the genus do not produce recognized toxins and are removed rapidly when a specific antibody response is mounted. The periodic febrile and afebrile cycles of relapsing fever result from the ability of the borreliae to undergo antigenic variation. These spirochetes carry a large number of genes homologous to the OspC gene, but only one gene is expressed at a time. When specific antibodies are formed,

agglutination with complement-mediated lysis occurs, and the borreliae are cleared rapidly from the blood. However, switching of the expression of the gene family occurs at a frequency of 10^{-3} to 10^{-4} per generation. Thus a new population of spirochetes with a new lipoprotein coat will appear in the blood, heralding a new febrile episode. These antigenic shifts are the reason serology tests are not used to diagnose relapsing fever.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Despite the relatively recent recognition of Lyme disease in the United States, retrospective studies have shown that the disease was present for many years in this and other countries. Lyme disease has been described on six continents, in many countries, and in all U.S. states. The incidence of disease has risen dramatically between 1982 (497 cases were reported) and 2017 (42,743 cases were reported). **Lyme disease is the leading vector-borne disease in the United States.** The vast majority of Lyme disease cases are reported from two U.S. foci: Northeast and Mid-Atlantic states (Maine to Virginia) and the Upper Midwest (Minnesota and Wisconsin). **Hard ticks are the major vectors** of Lyme disease: *Ixodes scapularis* in the Northeast, Mid-Atlantic, and Midwest, and *I. pacificus* on the West Coast. *I. ricinus* is the major tick vector in Europe, and *I. persulcatus* is the major tick vector in Eastern Europe and Asia. The major reservoir hosts in the United States are the white-footed mouse and the white-tailed deer. The **white-footed mouse** is the primary host of larval and nymph forms of *Ixodes* species, and the adult *Ixodes* species infest the **white-tailed deer.** Because the nymph stage causes more than 90% of the cases of documented disease, the mouse host is more relevant for human disease.

Ixodes larvae become infected when they feed on the mouse reservoir. The larva molts to a nymph in late spring and takes a second blood meal; in this case, humans can be accidental hosts. Although the borreliae are transmitted in the tick's saliva during a prolonged period of feeding (≥48 hours), most patients do not remember having had a specific tick bite because the nymph is the size of a poppy seed. The nymphs mature into adults in the late summer and take a third feeding. Although the white-tailed deer is the natural host, humans can also be infected at this stage. Most infected patients are identified in June and July, although disease can be encountered throughout the year.

As previously mentioned, the etiologic agent of louse-borne epidemic relapsing fever is *B. recurrentis,* the vector is the human body louse, and humans are the only reservoir (Fig. 32.6). Lice become infected after feeding on an infected person. The organisms are ingested, pass through the wall of the gut, and multiply in hemolymph. Disseminated disease is not believed to occur in lice; thus human infection occurs when the lice are crushed during feeding. Because infected lice do not survive for more than a few months, maintenance of the disease requires crowded, unsanitary conditions (e.g., wars, natural disasters) that permit frequent human contact with infected lice. Although epidemics of louse-borne relapsing fever swept from Eastern to Western Europe in the past century, the disease now appears to be restricted to Ethiopia, Eritrea, Somalia, and Sudan.

Infection	Reservoir	Vector
Relapsing fever epidemic (louse-borne)	Humans	Body louse 
Relapsing fever endemic (tick-borne)	Rodents, soft ticks	Soft tick 
Lyme disease	Rodents, deer, domestic pets, hard ticks	Hard tick 

Fig. 32.6 Epidemiology of *Borrelia* infections.

Several features distinguish **endemic relapsing fever** from epidemic disease. Tick-borne endemic relapsing fever is a **zoonotic disease,** with rodents, small mammals, and soft ticks (*Ornithodoros* species) as the main reservoirs and **many species of** *Borrelia* responsible for the disease. Unlike the louse-borne infections, the borreliae that cause endemic disease produce a disseminated infection in ticks. In addition, the arthropods can survive and maintain an endemic reservoir of infection by transovarian transmission. Furthermore, ticks can survive for months between feedings. A history of a tick bite may not be elicited because soft ticks are primarily nocturnal feeders and remain attached for only a few minutes. The ticks contaminate the bite wound with borreliae present in saliva or feces. Tick-borne disease is found worldwide, corresponding to the distribution of the *Ornithodoros* tick. In the United States, the disease is primarily found in the western states, with the most common occurrences in Washington and California. Worldwide, the disease is found in Mexico, Central and South America, the Mediterranean, Central Asia, and much of Africa.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Lyme Disease

Clinical diagnosis of Lyme disease is complicated by the varied manifestations of the disease caused by *B. burgdorferi* and other *Borrelia* species, as well as the lack of reliable diagnostic tests. The clinical and laboratory definitions of Lyme disease recommended by the CDC are summarized in Box 32.2. The following paragraph is a description of Lyme disease in the United States. The frequency of the skin lesions and late manifestations differ in disease observed in other countries.

Lyme disease begins as an early localized infection, progresses to an early disseminated stage, and, if untreated, can progress to a late manifestation stage. After an incubation period of 3 to 30 days, one or more skin lesions typically develop at the site of the tick bite. The lesion **(erythema migrans)** begins as a small macule or papule and then enlarges over the next few weeks, ultimately covering an area ranging from 5 cm to more than 50 cm in diameter (Fig. 32.7). The lesion typically has a flat, red border and central clearing as it develops; however, erythema, vesicle formation, and central necrosis can also be seen. The lesion

BOX 32.2 Definition of Lyme Disease

Clinical Case Definition

Either of the Following:
Erythema migrans (≈5 cm in diameter)
At least one late manifestation (i.e., musculoskeletal, nervous system, or cardiovascular involvement) and laboratory confirmation of infection

Laboratory Criteria for Diagnosis

At Least One of the Following:
Isolation of *Borrelia burgdorferi*
Demonstration of diagnostic levels of IgM or IgG antibodies to the spirochetes
Significant increase in antibody titer between acute and convalescent serum samples

Ig, Immunoglobulin.

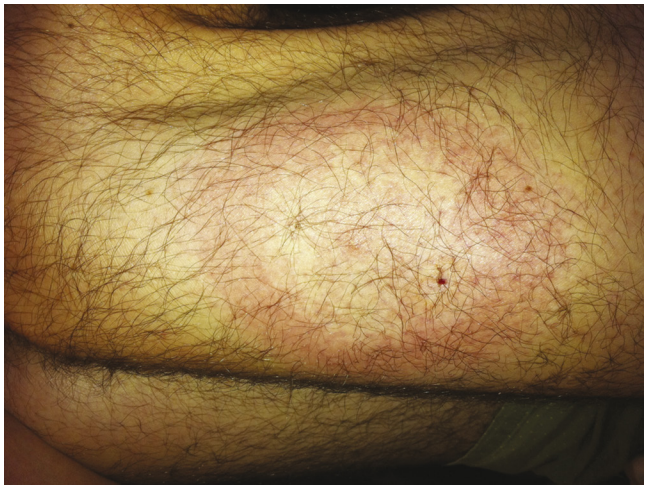


Fig. 32.7 Erythema migrans rash on the thigh of the author's (PRM) son. An engorged nymph stage of an *Ixodes* tick was found 3 days after exposure. Twelve days later, the rash appeared with accompanying localized pain and progressed to 5 cm in diameter with central clearing. The rash faded over the next week with doxycycline treatment, and the infection, confirmed by culture of the biopsy, resolved with no secondary complications.

fades and disappears within weeks, although new transient lesions may subsequently appear. Although the skin lesion is characteristic of Lyme disease, it is not pathognomonic. A similar skin lesion associated with disease of unknown etiology (*s*outhern *t*ick-*a*ssociated *r*ash *i*llness, or SARI) occurs after the bite of the *Amblyomma americanum* tick (lone star tick). These ticks, found in the southeast and south central regions of the United States, are not infected with *B. burgdorferi.* Other early signs and symptoms of Lyme disease include malaise, severe fatigue, headache, fever, chills, musculoskeletal pains, myalgias, and lymphadenopathy. These symptoms last for an average of 4 weeks.

Hematogenous dissemination will occur in untreated patients within days to weeks of the primary infection. This stage is characterized by systemic signs of disease (e.g., severe fatigue, headache, fever, malaise), arthritis and arthralgia, myalgia, erythematous skin lesions, cardiac dysfunction, and neurologic signs. Approximately 60% of patients with untreated Lyme disease will develop **arthritis,** typically involving the knee; approximately 10% to 20% will develop **neurologic manifestations** (most commonly facial nerve palsy); and 5% will have **cardiac complications** (usually varying degrees of atrioventricular block).

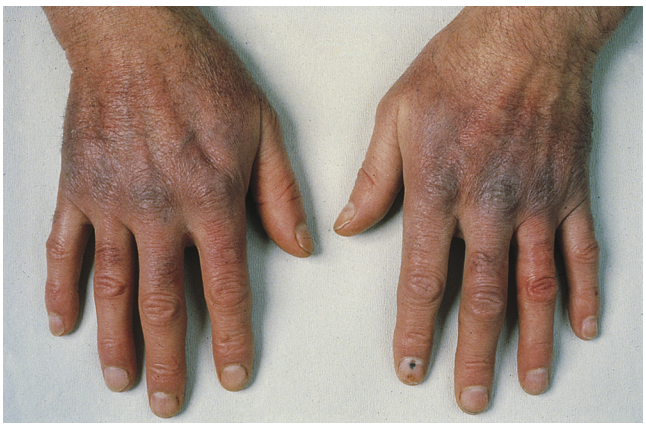


Fig. 32.8 Acrodermatitis chronica atrophicans. Bluish-red skin lesions characteristic of late disseminated manifestations of Lyme borreliosis. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.)

Late-stage manifestations of Lyme disease in untreated patients can develop months to years after the initial infection. Arthritis can involve one or more joints intermittently. Chronic skin involvement with discoloration and swelling (**acrodermatitis chronica atrophicans**; Fig. 32.8) is more common in Lyme disease seen in Europe. The existence of chronic, symptomatic Lyme disease in appropriately treated patients has not been demonstrated definitively.

Relapsing Fever

The clinical presentations of epidemic louse-borne and endemic tick-borne relapsing fever are essentially the same, although a small pruritic eschar may develop at the site of the tick bite. (Clinical Case 32.3) After a 1-week incubation period, the disease is heralded by the abrupt onset of shaking chills, fever, muscle aches, and headache. Splenomegaly and hepatomegaly are common. These symptoms correspond to the bacteremic phase of the disease and resolve after 3 to 7 days, when the borreliae are cleared from the blood. Bacteremia and fever return after a 1-week afebrile period. The clinical symptoms are generally milder and last a shorter time during this and subsequent **febrile episodes.** A single relapse is characteristic of epidemic louse-borne disease, and as many as 10 relapses occur in endemic tick-borne disease. The clinical course and outcome of epidemic relapsing fever tend to be more severe than they are in those with endemic disease, but this may be related to the patients' underlying poor state of health. Mortality with endemic disease is less than 5% but can be as high as 70% in louse-borne epidemic disease. Deaths are caused by cardiac failure, hepatic necrosis, or cerebral hemorrhage (Clinical Case 32.3).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Microscopic examination of blood or tissues from patients with Lyme disease is not recommended because *B.*

Clinical Case 32.3 **Outbreak of Tick-Borne Relapsing Fever**

In August 2002, the New Mexico Department of Health was notified of an outbreak of tick-borne relapsing fever (*MMWR* 52:809–812, 2003). Approximately 40 people attended a family gathering held in a cabin in the mountains of northern New Mexico. Half of the family members slept overnight in the cabin. Some of the family arrived 3 days before the event to clean the unoccupied cabin. Four days after the event, one of the individuals who arrived early sought care at a local hospital with a 2-day history of fever, chills, myalgia, and a raised pruritic rash on the forearms. Spirochetes were observed on a peripheral blood smear. As many as 14 individuals who attended the family gathering developed symptoms consistent with relapsing fever and had either positive serology or spirochetes observed in blood smears. The majority had a history of fever, headache, arthralgia, and myalgia. Rodent nesting material was found inside the interior walls of the cabin. This outbreak of endemic relapsing fever illustrates the risks associated with exposure to ticks that feed on infected rodents, the fact that tick bites are generally not remembered because the feeding is for a short duration at night, and the relapsing nature of this febrile illness.

burgdorferi is rarely seen in clinical specimens. Borreliae that cause relapsing fever can be observed during the febrile period on Giemsa-stained or Wright-stained preparation of blood. This is the most sensitive method for diagnosing relapsing fever, with smears positive for organisms in more than 70% of patients.

Culture

Some borreliae, including *B. recurrentis* and *Borrelia hermsii* (a common cause of endemic relapsing fever in the United States), can be cultured in vitro on specialized media. The cultures are rarely performed in most clinical laboratories because the media are not readily available and the organisms grow slowly on them. There has been limited success with the culture of *B. burgdorferi,* although isolation of the organism has been improved through the use of specialized media. However, the sensitivity of culture is low for all specimens except the initial skin lesion.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Nucleic acid amplification techniques have a sensitivity of approximately 65% to 75% with skin biopsies, 50% to 85% with synovial fluid, and 25% with CSF specimens from patients with documented Lyme disease. These tests are generally restricted to research and reference laboratories, and the negative test results should be confirmed by serology.

Antibody Detection

Serologic tests are not useful in the diagnosis of relapsing fever because the borreliae that cause this condition undergo antigenic phase variation. In contrast, serologic testing is the diagnostic test of choice for patients with suspected Lyme disease. The tests most commonly used are the **immunofluorescence assay (IFA)** and **EIA.** The U.S. Food and Drug Administration has cleared more than 70 serologic assays for the diagnosis of Lyme disease. Unfortunately, all serologic tests are relatively insensitive during the early acute stage of disease. IgM antibodies appear 2 to 4 weeks after the onset of erythema migrans in untreated patients; the levels peak after 6 to 8 weeks of illness and then decline to a normal range after 4 to 6 months. The IgM level may remain elevated in some patients with a persistent infection. The IgG antibodies appear later. Their levels peak after 4 to 6 months of illness and persist during the late manifestations of the disease. Thus most patients with late complications of Lyme disease have detectable antibodies to *B. burgdorferi,* although the antibody level may be ablated in patients treated with antibiotics. Detection of antibodies in CSF is strong evidence for neuroborreliosis.

BOX 32.3 **Bacteria and Diseases Associated with Cross-Reactions in Serologic Tests for Lyme Borreliosis**

Treponema pallidum
Oral spirochetes
Other *Borrelia* species
Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis
Rheumatoid arthritis
Systemic lupus erythematosus
Infectious mononucleosis
Subacute bacterial endocarditis

Although cross-reactions are uncommon, positive serologic results must be interpreted carefully, particularly if the titers are low (Box 32.3). Most false-positive reactions occur in patients with syphilis. These false results can be excluded by performing a nontreponemal test for syphilis; the result is negative in patients with Lyme disease. Western blot analysis has been used to confirm the specificity of a positive EIA or IFA reaction. A specimen with a negative EIA or IFA reaction does not require further testing. Guidelines for interpretation of Western immunoblots are available on the CDC website (www.cdc.gov). Antigenic heterogeneity in *B. burgdorferi* and other *Borrelia* species that cause Lyme disease affects the test sensitivity. The magnitude of this problem in the United States is unknown, but it should be significant in Europe and Asia, where multiple *Borrelia* species are found to cause Lyme disease. At present, serologic tests should be considered confirmatory and should not be performed in the absence of an appropriate history and clinical symptoms of Lyme disease.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The early manifestations of **Lyme disease** are managed effectively with orally administered **amoxicillin, doxycycline,** or **cefuroxime.** Antibiotic treatment lessens the likelihood and severity of late complications. Despite this intervention, Lyme arthritis and acrodermatitis chronica atrophicans still occur in a small number of patients. Oral cefuroxime, doxycycline, or amoxicillin has been used for the treatment of these manifestations. Patients with recurrent arthritis or central or peripheral nervous system disease typically require parenteral treatment with intravenous ceftriaxone, cefotaxime, or penicillin G. Previously treated patients with chronic symptoms ("post–Lyme

disease syndrome") should be treated symptomatically because there is no evidence that multiple courses of oral or parenteral antibiotics relieve the symptoms.

Relapsing fever has been treated most effectively with **tetracyclines** or **penicillins.** Tetracyclines are the drugs of choice but are contraindicated for pregnant women and young children. A Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction (shock-like profile with rigors, leukopenia, an increase in temperature, and a decrease in blood pressure) can occur in patients within a few hours after therapy is started and must be carefully managed. This reaction corresponds to the rapid killing of borreliae and the possible release of toxic products.

Prevention of tick-borne *Borrelia* diseases includes avoiding ticks and their natural habitats, wearing protective clothing (e.g., long pants tucked into socks), and applying insect repellents. Rodent control is also important in the prevention of endemic relapsing fever. Epidemic louse-borne disease is controlled through the use of delousing sprays and improvements in hygienic conditions.

Vaccines are not available for relapsing fever. A recombinant vaccine directed against the OspA antigen of *B. burgdorferi* was removed from the market in 2002.

Leptospira

The taxonomy of the genus *Leptospira* is a source of great confusion. Traditionally the genus has been grouped by phenotypic properties, serologic relationships, and pathogenicity. Pathogenic strains were placed in the species *Leptospira interrogans,* and nonpathogenic strains were placed in the species *Leptospira biflexa*. Each of the two species contained many serovars (i.e., serologically distinct groups). Although this classification scheme exists in the literature, it is not consistent with nucleic acid analysis that supports subdividing the genus into three genera with 24 species in the genus *Leptospira*. To avoid confusion, leptospires will be referred to as pathogenic (for humans) or nonpathogenic without reference to either specific species or serovars.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Leptospires **are thin, coiled spirochetes** (0.1 × 6.0 to 20.0 μm) with a hook at one or both pointed ends (Fig. 32.9). Motility is by means of two periplasmic flagella extending the length of the bacteria and anchored at opposite ends. Leptospires are obligate aerobes with optimum growth at 28° C to 30° C in media supplemented with vitamins, long-chain fatty acids, and ammonium salts. The practical significance of this is that these organisms can be cultured in a highly specialized medium from clinical specimens collected from infected patients, although this is not commonly done.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Pathogenic leptospires can cause subclinical infection, a mild influenza-like febrile illness, or severe systemic disease **(Weil disease)** with renal and hepatic failure, extensive vasculitis, myocarditis, and death. The number of infecting organisms, the host's immunologic defenses, and the virulence of the infecting strain influence the severity of the disease.

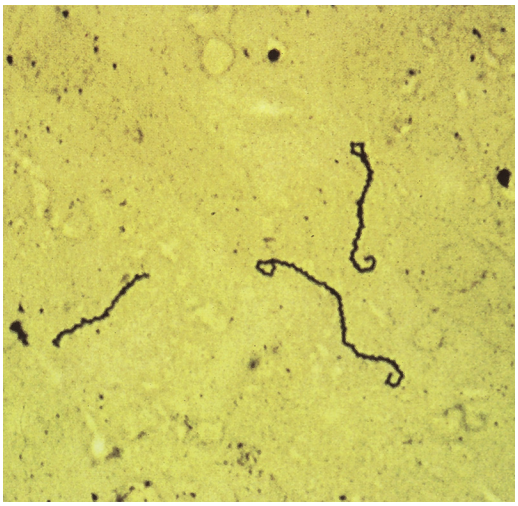


Fig. 32.9 Silver staining of leptospires grown in culture. Notice the tightly coiled body with hooked ends. (From Emond, R., Rowland, H., 1995. Color Atlas of Infectious Diseases, third ed. Wolfe, London, UK.)

Because leptospires are thin and highly motile, they can **penetrate intact mucous membranes or skin through small cuts or abrasions.** They can then spread in the blood to all tissues, including the central nervous system. Leptospires multiply rapidly and damage the endothelium of small blood vessels, resulting in the major clinical manifestations of disease (e.g., meningitis, hepatic and renal dysfunction, hemorrhage). Organisms can be **found in blood and CSF early in the disease and in urine during the later stages.** Clearance of leptospires occurs when humoral immunity develops. However, late manifestations of the disease such as vascular damage with increased vascular permeability are associated with the immune response to the organisms.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Leptospirosis has a worldwide distribution. Approximately 100 infections occur in the United States and U.S. territories each year, with most cases reported in Puerto Rico and Hawaii. However, the incidence of disease is significantly underestimated because most infections are mild and misdiagnosed as a "viral syndrome" or aseptic viral meningitis. Because many states failed to report this disease to the public health service, mandatory reporting was discontinued in 1995; however, leptospirosis was reinstated as a nationally notifiable disease in 2013.

Leptospires infect two types of hosts: reservoir hosts and incidental hosts. Endemic, chronic infections are established in **reservoir hosts,** which serve as a permanent reservoir for maintaining the bacteria. Different species and serovars of leptospires are associated with specific reservoir hosts (important for epidemiologic investigations). The **most common reservoirs are rodents and other small mammals.** Leptospires usually cause asymptomatic infections in their reservoir host, in which the spirochetes colonize the renal tubules and are shed in urine in large numbers. Streams, rivers, standing water, and moist soil can be contaminated with urine from infected animals, with organisms surviving for as long as 6 weeks in such sites. Contaminated water or direct exposure to infected

Clinical Case 32.4 **Leptospirosis in Triathlon Participants**

There are a number of reports of leptospirosis in athletes participating in water sport events. In 1998, public health officials reported leptospirosis in triathlon participants in Illinois and Wisconsin (*MMWR* 47:673–676, 1998). A total of 866 athletes participated in the Illinois event on June 21, 1998, and 648 participated in the Wisconsin event on July 5, 1998. The case definition of leptospirosis used for this investigation was onset of fever, followed by at least two of the following symptoms or signs: chills, headache, myalgia, diarrhea, eye pain, or red eyes. Nine percent of the participants met this case definition; two-thirds sought medical care, including one-third who were hospitalized. Leptospirosis was confirmed in a portion of these patients by serologic tests. These outbreaks illustrate the potential danger of swimming in contaminated water, the presentation of leptospirosis in a previously healthy population, and the severity of disease that can be experienced.

animals can serve as a source for infection in **incidental hosts** (e.g., dogs, farm animals, rodents, humans). Most human infections result from recreational exposure to contaminated water (e.g., lakes) or occupational exposure to infected animals (farmers, slaughterhouse workers, veterinarians). Most human infections occur during the warm months, when recreational exposure is greatest. Person-to-person spread has not been documented. By definition, chronic carriage is not established in incidental hosts (Clinical Case 32.4).

CLINICAL DISEASES

Most human infections with leptospires are clinically inapparent and detected only through the demonstration of specific antibodies. Infection is introduced through skin abrasions or the conjunctiva. Symptomatic infections develop after a 1- to 2-week incubation period and in two phases. The initial phase is similar to an influenza-like illness, with fever, myalgia, chills, headache, vomiting, or diarrhea. During this phase, the patient is bacteremic with the leptospires, and the organisms can frequently be isolated in CSF even though no meningeal symptoms are present. The symptoms may remit after 1 week or the patient may progress to the second phase, which is characterized by more severe disease, with the sudden onset of headache, myalgia, chills, abdominal pain, and conjunctival suffusion (i.e., reddening of the eye). Severe disease can progress to vascular collapse, thrombocytopenia, hemorrhage, and hepatic and renal dysfunction.

Leptospirosis confined to the central nervous system can be mistaken for **aseptic viral meningitis** because the course of the disease is generally uncomplicated and has a very low mortality rate. Culture of CSF is usually negative at this stage. In contrast, the icteric form of generalized disease (≈10% of all symptomatic infections) is more severe and associated with a mortality approaching 10% to 15%. Although hepatic involvement with jaundice (icteric disease, or **Weil disease**) is striking in patients with severe leptospirosis, hepatic necrosis is not seen and surviving patients do not suffer permanent hepatic damage. Similarly, most patients recover full renal function. Congenital leptospirosis can also occur. This disease is characterized by the sudden onset of headache, fever, myalgias, and a diffuse rash.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Because leptospires are thin, they are at the limit of the resolving power of a light microscope and thus cannot be seen by conventional light microscopy. Neither Gram stain nor silver stain is reliable in the detection of leptospires. Darkfield microscopy is also relatively insensitive and capable of yielding nonspecific findings when cell fragments are present.

Culture

Leptospires can be cultured on specially formulated media (e.g., Fletcher, Ellinghausen-McCullough-Johnson-Harris [EMJH], Tween 80-albumin). They grow slowly (generation time, 6 to 16 hours), requiring incubation at 28° C to 30° C for as long as 4 months; however, most cultures are positive within 2 weeks. Consistent with the two phases of illness, leptospires are present in blood or CSF during the first 10 days of infection and in urine after the first week and for as long as 3 months. Because the concentration of organisms in blood, CSF, and urine may be low, several specimens should be collected if leptospirosis is suspected. In addition, inhibitors present in blood and urine may delay or prevent recovery of leptospires. Likewise, urine must be treated to neutralize the pH and concentrated by centrifugation. A few drops of the sediment are then inoculated into the culture medium. Growth of the bacteria in culture is detected by darkfield microscopy.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Preliminary work with the detection of leptospires using nucleic acid probes has had limited success. Techniques using nucleic acid amplification (e.g., PCR) are more sensitive than culture. Unfortunately, this technique is not widely available at this time, particularly in resource-limited countries in which disease is common.

Antibody Detection

Because of the need for specialized media and prolonged incubation, most laboratories do not attempt to culture leptospires, relying instead on serologic techniques. The reference method for all serologic tests is the **microscopic agglutination test (MAT).** This test measures the ability of the patient's serum to agglutinate live leptospires. Because the test is directed against specific serotypes, it is necessary to use pools of leptospiral antigens. In this test, serial dilutions of the patient's serum are mixed with the test antigens and then examined microscopically for agglutination. Agglutinins appear in the blood of untreated patients after 5 to 7 days of illness, although this response may be delayed for as long as several months. Infected patients have a titer of at least 800 (i.e., agglutinins are detected in a 1:800 dilution of the patient's serum), or a fourfold increase in antibody titers. Patients treated with antibiotics may have a diminished antibody response or nondiagnostic titers. Agglutinating antibodies are detectable for many

years after the acute illness; thus the presence of low levels of antibodies may represent either a blunted antibody response in a treated patient with acute disease or residual antibodies in a person with a distant unrecognized infection with leptospires. Because the MAT uses live organisms, it is performed only in reference laboratories. Alternative tests, such as indirect hemagglutination, slide agglutination, and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) are less sensitive and specific. These tests can be used to screen a patient, but positive reactions must be confirmed with the MAT or culture. Serologic cross-reactions occur with other spirochetal infections (i.e., syphilis, relapsing fever, Lyme disease) and legionellosis.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Leptospirosis is usually not fatal, particularly in the absence of icteric disease. Patients should be treated with either intravenously administered **penicillin** or **doxycycline.** Doxycycline, but not penicillin, can be used to prevent disease in persons exposed to infected animals or water contaminated with urine. It is difficult to eradicate leptospirosis because the disease is widespread in wild and domestic animals. However, vaccination of livestock and pets has proved successful in reducing the incidence of disease in these populations and therefore subsequent human exposure. Rodent control is also effective in eliminating leptospirosis in communities.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Aguero-Rosenfeld, M.E., Wang, G., Schwartz, I., et al., 2005. Diagnosis of Lyme borreliosis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 18, 484–509.

Antal, G.M., Lukehart, S.A., Meheus, A.Z., 2002. The endemic treponematoses. Microbes. Infect. 4, 83–94.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2013. Sexually Transmitted Disease Surveillance 2012. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Atlanta.

Feder Jr., H.M., Johnson, B.J., O'Connell, S., et al., 2007. Review article: a critical appraisal of "chronic Lyme disease. N. Engl. J. Med. 357, 1422–1430.

Gayet-Ageron, A., Lautenschlager, S., Ninet, B., et al., 2013. Sensitivity, specificity and likelihood rations of PCR in the diagnosis of syphilis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Sex Transm. Infect. 89, 251–256.

Jafari, Y., Peeling, R.W., Shivkumar, S., et al., 2013. Are Treponema pallidum–specific rapid and point-of-care tests for syphilis accurate enough for screening in resource limited settings? Evidence from a meta-analysis. PLoS ONE. 8:e54695.

LaFond, R.E., Lukehart, S.A., 2006. Biological basis for syphilis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 19, 29–49.

Levitt, P.N., 2001. Leptospirosis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 14, 296–326.

Mitja, O., Asiedu, K., Mabey, D., 2013. Yaws. Lancet 381, 763–773.

Rothschild, B.M., 2005. History of syphilis. Clin. Infect. Dis. 40, 1454–1463.

Shapiro, E., 2014. Lyme disease. N. Engl. J. Med. 370, 1724–1731.

Steere, A.C., McHugh, G., Damle, N., et al., 2008. Prospective study of serologic tests for Lyme disease. Clin. Infect. Dis. 47, 188–195.

Toner, B., 2007. Current controversies in the management of adult syphilis. Clin. Infect. Dis. 44, S130–S146.

Wormser, G.P., 2006. Early Lyme disease. N. Engl. J. Med. 354, 2794–2801.

Wormser, G.P., Dattwyler, R.J., Shapiro, E.D., et al., 2006. The clinical assessment, treatment, and prevention of Lyme disease, human granulocytic anaplasmosis, and babesiosis: clinical practice guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin. Infect. Dis. 43, 1089–1134.

Case Study and Questions

An 18-year-old woman complained of knee pain that started 2 weeks earlier. Three months earlier, soon after vacationing in Connecticut, she noticed a circular area of redness on her lower leg; it was approximately 10 cm in diameter. During the next 2 weeks, the area enlarged and the border became more clearly demarcated; however, the rash gradually disappeared. A few days after the rash disappeared, the woman experienced the onset of headaches, an inability to concentrate, and nausea. These symptoms also gradually abated. The pain in her knee developed approximately 1 month after these symptoms disappeared. On examination of the knee, mild tenderness and pain were elicited. A small amount of serous fluid was aspirated from the joint, and it had an elevated white blood cell count. Antibodies to *B. burgdorferi* were present in the patient's serum (titers of 1:32 and 1:1024 for IgM and IgG, respectively), confirming the clinical diagnosis of Lyme arthritis.

1. What are the initial and late manifestations of Lyme disease?
2. What are the limitations of the following diagnostic tests for Lyme disease: microscopy, culture, and serology? How do these compare with the diagnostic tests for other relapsing fevers?
3. Name two examples each of nontreponemal and treponemal tests for syphilis. What reactions to those tests would you expect in patients with primary, secondary, and late syphilis?
4. What are the reservoir and vectors for syphilis, epidemic and endemic relapsing fever, Lyme disease, and leptospirosis?
5. What diagnostic tests can be used for the diagnosis of leptospirosis?

33 Mycoplasma

A 13-year-old girl was admitted to the hospital with a 5-day history of fever and a nonproductive cough. She had received 3 days of treatment with a cephalosporin as an outpatient, with no relief of symptoms. On admission, examination of the chest revealed bilateral crackling rales, dullness to percussion, and a chest radiograph that showed a right lower lobe infiltrate. Bacterial stains and cultures were negative, but a polymerase chain reaction (PCR) test for *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* was positive.

1. What is unique about the cellular structure of mycoplasmas? How does this affect their susceptibility to antibiotics?
2. What infections are attributed to *Mycoplasma pneumoniae? M. genitalium?*
3. What is the most sensitive test for the diagnosis of *M. pneumoniae* infection?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

MYCOPLASMA PNEUMONIAE

Trigger Words

No cell wall, person-to-person, tracheobronchitis

Biology and Virulence

- The smallest free-living bacterium; able to pass through 0.45-μm pore filters
- Absence of cell wall and a cell membrane containing sterols are unique among bacteria
- Slow rate of growth (generation time, 6 hours); strict aerobe
- P1 adhesin protein binds to base of cilia on epithelial cells, leading to eventual loss of ciliated epithelial cells
- Stimulates migration of inflammatory cells and release of cytokines

Epidemiology

- Worldwide disease with no seasonal incidence (in contrast to disease caused by most respiratory pathogens)
- Primarily infects children between ages 5 and 15 years, but all populations susceptible to disease
- Transmitted by inhalation of aerosolized droplet

Diseases

- Strict human pathogen
- Refer to Table 33.1 for disease

Diagnosis

- Refer to Table 33.2

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Drug of choice is erythromycin, doxycycline, or newer fluoroquinolones
- Immunity to reinfection is not lifelong, and vaccines have proved ineffective

The order Mycoplasmatales is subdivided into four genera: *Eperythrozoon, Haemobartonella, Mycoplasma,* and *Ureaplasma*. The most clinically significant genus is *Mycoplasma* (127 species) and the most important species is *M. pneumoniae* (also called **Eaton agent** after the investigator who originally isolated it). ***M. pneumoniae*** causes respiratory tract diseases such as tracheobronchitis and pneumonia. Other commonly isolated pathogens include ***M. genitalium*** and ***M. hominis*** (Table 33.1).

Physiology and Structure

Mycoplasma organisms are the **smallest free-living bacteria.** They are unique among bacteria because they **do not have a cell wall** and their cell membrane contains **sterols.** In contrast, other cell wall–deficient bacteria (called **L forms**) do not have sterols in their cell membrane and can form cell walls under the appropriate growth conditions. Absence of the cell wall renders the mycoplasmas resistant to penicillins, cephalosporins, vancomycin, and other antibiotics that interfere with synthesis of the cell wall.

The mycoplasmas form pleomorphic shapes varying from 0.2- to 0.3-μm coccoid forms to rods 0.1 to 0.2 μm in width and 1 to 2 μm long. Many can pass through the 0.45-μm filters used to remove bacteria from solutions, which was why the mycoplasmas were originally thought to be viruses. However, the organisms divide by binary fission (typical of all bacteria), grow on artificial cell-free media, and contain both ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Mycoplasmas are facultatively anaerobic (except *M. pneumoniae,* which is a **strict aerobe**), and require exogenous sterols supplied by animal serum added to the growth medium. The mycoplasmas **grow slowly,** with a generation time of 1 to 16 hours, and most form small colonies that are difficult to detect without extended incubation.

Pathogenesis and Immunity

M. pneumoniae is an extracellular pathogen that adheres to the respiratory epithelium by means of a specialized attachment structure that forms at one end of the cell. The structure consists of a complex of adhesion proteins, and the **P1 adhesin** the most important. The adhesions interact specifically with sialated glycoprotein receptors at the base of cilia on the epithelial cell surface (and on the surface of erythrocytes). Ciliostasis then

Answers

1. Mycoplasmas lack a cell wall, and their cell membrane contains sterols. The absence of a cell wall renders the bacteria resistant to antibiotics that interfere with cell wall synthesis (e.g., penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, vancomycin).
2. *M. pneumoniae* causes respiratory infections (tracheobronchitis, pharyngitis, pneumonia); *M. genitalium* is implicated in urethritis, cervicitis, and pelvic inflammatory disease; *M. hominis* is implicated in infections of the respiratory tract and urinary tract, as well as in systemic infections in immunocompromised patients.
3. Laboratory diagnosis of *M. pneumoniae* infections is problematic because culture is not performed in most laboratories, microscopy has no value for diagnosis, and serology is insensitive. The best diagnostic test is PCR for species-specific targets.

Table 33.1 Important Mycoplasmataceae

Organism	Site	Human Disease
Mycoplasma pneumoniae	Respiratory tract	Tracheobronchitis, pharyngitis, pneumonia, secondary complications (neurologic, pericarditis, hemolytic anemia, arthritis, mucocutaneous lesions)
M. genitalium	Genitourinary tract	Nongonococcal urethritis, cervicitis, pelvic inflammatory disease
M. hominis	Respiratory tract, genitourinary tract	Pyelonephritis, postpartum fever, systemic infections in immunocompromised patients

occurs, after which first the cilia, then the ciliated epithelial cells, are destroyed. Loss of these cells interferes with the normal clearance of the upper airways and permits the bacteria to spread to the lower respiratory tract. This process is responsible for the persistent cough present in patients with symptomatic disease. *M. pneumoniae* functions as a superantigen, stimulating inflammatory cells to migrate to the site of infection and release cytokines, initially tumor necrosis factor (TFN)-α and interleukin (IL)-1 and later IL-6. This process contributes to both the clearance of the bacteria and the observed disease.

Some *Mycoplasma* species are able to change expression of surface lipoproteins rapidly, which is important for evading the host immune response and establishing persistent or chronic infections.

Epidemiology

M. pneumoniae is a strict human pathogen. Respiratory disease (e.g., tracheobronchitis, pneumonia) caused by *M. pneumoniae* occurs worldwide throughout the year, with no consistent increase in seasonal activity. Epidemic disease occurs every 4 to 8 years. Disease is most common in school-age children and young adults (ages 5 to 15 years), although all age groups are susceptible.

It has been estimated that 2 million cases of *M. pneumoniae* pneumonia and 100,000 pneumonia-related hospitalizations occur annually in the United States. However, *M. pneumoniae* disease is not a reportable disease, and reliable diagnostic tests are not widely available, so the true incidence is not known.

M. pneumoniae colonizes the nose, throat, trachea, and lower airways of infected individuals and is spread via large respiratory droplets during coughing episodes. Infection usually spreads among classmates, family members, or other close contacts. The attack rate is higher in children than in adults (overall average, ≈60%), presumably because most adults are partially immune from previous exposure. The incubation period and time of infectivity are prolonged, so disease can persist for months. *M. pneumoniae* is not part of the normal mucosa flora of humans; however, prolonged carriage can occur following symptomatic disease.

Genitourinary tract colonization with *M. hominis* and *M. genitalium* is common, increasing after puberty, corresponding to sexual activity. Approximately 15% of sexually active men and women are colonized with *M. hominis* and a higher proportion with *M. genitalium.* The incidence of carriage in adults who are sexually inactive is no greater than that in prepubertal children.

Clinical Case 33.1 *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* Pneumonia in a Young Adult

Caxboeck and associates (*Wien Klin Wochenschr* 119:379–384, 2007) described an unusual case of fatal *M. pneumoniae* pneumonia in a previously healthy 18-year-old woman. Before admission to the hospital, she had seen her physician with respiratory complaints and a chest radiograph consistent with pneumonia. A fluoroquinolone antibiotic was prescribed, but she failed to respond. On admission to the hospital, she had a temperature of 40° C and a productive cough. Her antibiotic was changed to a macrolide and cephalosporin; however, she continued to deteriorate, with progression of the pulmonary infiltrates, development of bilateral pleural effusions, and evidence of liver failure. Despite aggressive antibiotic therapy and respiratory support, her disease progressed to hemorrhagic pneumonia with multiorgan failure, and she died on hospital day 35. Diagnosis of *M. pneumoniae* infection was based on positive serology and the lack of other respiratory pathogens by microscopy, culture, and antigen testing. Although diagnosis by culture or polymerase chain reaction would be more convincing, the case illustrates the susceptibility of adults to mycoplasma infections and the uncommon but well-recognized occurrence of serious complications in susceptible patients. It also should be noted that this patient most likely had an undiagnosed immune defect that increased her susceptibility to this pathogen.

Clinical Diseases

Exposure to *M. pneumoniae* typically results in **asymptomatic carriage.** The most common clinical presentation of *M. pneumoniae* infection is **tracheobronchitis.** Low-grade fever; malaise; headache; and a dry, nonproductive cough develop 2 to 3 weeks after exposure. Acute **pharyngitis** may also be present. Symptoms gradually worsen over the next few days and can persist for 2 weeks or longer. The bronchial passages primarily become infiltrated with lymphocytes and plasma cells. Pneumonia (referred to as primary **atypical pneumonia** or walking pneumonia) can also develop, with a patchy bronchopneumonia seen on chest radiographs that is typically more impressive than the physical findings. Myalgias and gastrointestinal tract symptoms are uncommon. Secondary complications include neurologic abnormalities (e.g., meningoencephalitis, paralysis, myelitis), pericarditis, hemolytic anemia, arthritis, and mucocutaneous lesions (Clinical Case 33.1).

Because the genitourinary tract is colonized with other *Mycoplasma* species, it is difficult to determine the role of these organisms in disease in individual patients. However, it is accepted that *M. genitalium* can cause nongonococcal urethritis (NGU), cervicitis, and pelvic inflammatory disease; and *M. hominis* can cause pyelonephritis, postpartum fevers, and systemic infections in immunocompromised patients. The evidence implicating the organisms in these diseases is based on

Table 33.2 Diagnostic Tests for *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* Infections

Test	Assessment
Microscopy	Test is not useful because organisms do not have a cell wall and do not stain with conventional reagents
Culture	Test is slow (2 to 6 weeks before positive diagnosis) and insensitive; it is not available in most laboratories
Molecular diagnosis	Polymerase chain reaction–based amplification assays, with excellent sensitivity; specificity is not well defined
SEROLOGY	
Complement fixation	Antibody titers versus glycolipid antigens peak in 4 weeks and persist for 6 to 12 months; poor sensitivity and specificity; rarely used today
Enzyme immunoassays	Multiple assays are available, with varying sensitivity and specificity; assays directed versus P1 adhesin protein may be most specific
Cold agglutinin	Sensitivity and specificity poor, with cross-reactions with other respiratory pathogens (e.g., Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus, adenovirus); test commonly used but not recommended

detection of the bacteria in specimens from infected patients, a serologic response to the organism, clinical improvement after treatment with specific antibiotics, demonstration of disease in animal models, or a combination of these findings.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Microscopy is of no diagnostic value because mycoplasmas stain poorly with the Gram stain (Table 33.2). Likewise, antigen tests have poor sensitivity and specificity and are not recommended. The most sensitive diagnostic tests are nucleic acid amplification tests of species-specific gene targets, although the specificity for pathogenic mycoplasmas has not been established. *M. pneumoniae* can be isolated in culture from throat washings, bronchial washings, and expectorated sputum; however, the organisms grow slowly (generation time, 6 hours) and require special media supplemented with serum (provides sterols), yeast extract (for nucleic acid precursors), glucose, a pH indicator, and penicillin (to inhibit other bacteria). A positive culture result is definitive evidence of disease, but it is relatively **insensitive.** Serology tests are available for *M. pneumoniae.* A number of enzyme immunoassays for the detection of immunoglobulin (Ig)M and IgG antibodies are available. In general, the tests are more sensitive than culture. The disadvantage with these tests is that sera have to be collected early in the course of disease and then after 3 to 4 weeks to demonstrate a rise in antibody levels. Historically, it was also possible to measure nonspecific reactions to the outer membrane glycolipids of *M. pneumoniae* by the production of **cold agglutinins** (e.g., IgM antibodies that bind to antigens on the surface of human erythrocytes at 4° C). This test is insensitive and nonspecific, so it should not be performed. *M. hominis* is a facultative anaerobe that grows within 1 to 4 days. The colonies have a typical large, fried-egg appearance, and inhibition of their growth with specific antisera is used to differentiate them from other genital mycoplasmas. *M. genitalium* grows extremely slowly in culture so the diagnostic test of choice is nucleic acid amplification.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Macrolides (e.g., azithromycin), tetracyclines (particularly doxycycline), and fluoroquinolones are effective in treating *M. pneumoniae* infections, although the tetracyclines and fluoroquinolones are reserved for use in adults. Azithromycin is widely used for treating *M. pneumoniae* infections, although resistance has become common in some regions (e.g., greater than 90% in Asia). *M. genitalium* is commonly resistant to macrolides (e.g., azithromycin) and fluoroquinolones, so treatment of many infections is problematic. *M. hominis* is resistant to macrolides and occasionally to the tetracyclines. Clindamycin has been used to treat infections caused by these resistant strains.

The prevention of *Mycoplasma* disease is problematic. *M. pneumoniae* infections are spread by close contact; thus the isolation of infected people could theoretically reduce the risk of infection. Isolation is impractical, however, because patients are typically infectious for a prolonged period, even while receiving appropriate antibiotics. Inactivated vaccines and attenuated live vaccines have also proved disappointing. The protective immunity conferred by infection has been low. Infections with *M. hominis* and *M. genitalium* are transmitted by sexual contact; therefore these diseases can be prevented by avoidance of unprotected sexual activity.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Citti, C., Nouvel, L., Baranowski, E., 2010. Phase and antigenic variation in mycoplasmas. Future Microbiol. 5, 1073–1085.

Gnanadurai R, Fifer H. 2019. Mycoplasma genitalium: a review. Microbiol DOI 10.1099/mic.0.000830.

Lis, R., Rowhani-Rahbar, A., Manhart, L., 2015. *Mycoplasma genitalium* infection and female reproductive tract disease: a meta-analysis. Clin. Infect. Dis. 61, 418–426.

Loens, K., Ursi, D., Goossens, H., et al., 2003. Molecular diagnosis of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* respiratory tract infections. J. Clin. Microbiol. 41, 4915–4923.

Meyer, P., van Rossum, A., Vink, C., 2014. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* in children: carriage, pathogenesis, and antibiotic resistance. Curr. Opin. Infect. Dis. 27, 220–227.

Waites, K., Talkington, D., 2004. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* and its role as a human pathogen. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 17, 697–728.

Case Study and Questions

Increased lethargy, headache, cough, a low-grade fever, and chills and sweats at night developed in a 21-year-old university student. When she was seen at the student health center, she had a nonproductive cough and shortness of breath on exertion. Her pulse rate was 95 beats/min, and her respiratory rate was 28 breaths/min. Her pharynx was erythematous; scattered rhonchi and rales were found, but no consolidation was noted on auscultation. Results of a chest radiograph showed patchy infiltrates. A Gram stain of sputum revealed many white blood cells but no organisms. The antibody titer for a *Mycoplasma* complement fixation test performed on a specimen collected at admission was 1:8; the titer for a specimen collected a week later was 1:32. The patient was treated with erythromycin, to which her disease responded slowly during the next 2 weeks.

1. If cultures were performed, what would be the best specimen? When would the results be available? What are the sensitivity and specificity of culture in a patient infected with *M. pneumoniae*?

2. Describe the epidemiology of *M. pneumoniae* infections. What aspects of this case are characteristic of such infections?

34 Rickettsia, Ehrlichia, *and Related Bacteria*

A 24-year-old man living in North Carolina came to the local emergency department because of fever, arthralgias, myalgias, and malaise. He was well until 4 days before admission, when he developed a fever reaching 40°C, chills, severe headache, and muscle aches. Physical examination revealed a critically ill man with a temperature of 39.7°C, pulse of 110 beats/min, respiratory rate of 28 breaths/min, blood pressure of 100/60 mm Hg, and a rash over his extremities, including his palms and soles. The patient recalled having had numerous tick bites 10 days before the onset of symptoms. Rocky Mountain spotted fever was considered in the diagnosis, and serologic tests for Rickettsia species confirmed this diagnosis.

1. What antibiotics can be used to treat this infection? Which antibiotics should not be used?
2. Which rickettsiae are associated with the following vectors: ticks, lice, mites, and fleas?
3. Why is use of the Gram stain inappropriate for the diagnosis of rickettsial infections?
4. *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* have been historically associated with *Rickettsia.* Compare clinical disease caused by *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* and *A. phagocytophilum.*
5. What clinical diseases are caused by *Coxiella burnetii?*

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

RICKETTSIA RICKETTSII

Trigger Words

Intracellular bacteria, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, vasculitis, tick, microimmunofluorescence test

Biology and Virulence

- Small intracellular bacteria
- Stain poorly with Gram stain; best with Giemsa or Gimenez stains
- Replication occurs in cytoplasm and nucleus of endothelial cells, with resulting vasculitis
- Intracellular growth protects the bacteria from immune clearance

Epidemiology

- *R. rickettsii* is the most common rickettsial pathogen in the United States
- Hard ticks (e.g., dog tick, wood tick) are the primary reservoirs and vectors
- Transmission requires prolonged contact
- Distribution in Western Hemisphere; in United States, the majority of infections are reported in five states: North Carolina, Oklahoma, Arkansas, Tennessee, and Missouri
- Disease is most common from April through September

Diseases

- Rocky Mountain spotted fever characterized by high fever, severe headache, myalgias, and rash; complications common in untreated patients or where diagnosis is delayed

Diagnosis

- Serology (e.g., microimmunofluorescence test) is used most commonly for diagnosis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Doxycycline is the drug of choice
- People should avoid tick-infested areas, wear protective clothing, and use effective insecticides
- People should remove attached ticks immediately
- No vaccine is currently available

RICKETTSIA PROWAZEKII

Trigger Words

Intracellular bacteria, louse-borne typhus, Brill-Zinsser disease, vasculitis, human reservoir, microimmunofluorescence test

Biology and Virulence

- Small intracellular bacteria
- Stain poorly with Gram stain; best with Giemsa or Gimenez stains
- Replicate in cytoplasm of endothelial cells, with resulting vasculitis
- Intracellular growth protects the bacteria from immune clearance

Epidemiology

- Humans are the primary reservoir, with person-to-person transmission by louse vector
- It is believed that sporadic disease is spread from squirrels to humans via squirrel fleas
- Recrudescent disease can develop years after initial infection
- People at greatest risk are those living in crowded, unsanitary conditions
- Disease is worldwide, with most infections in Central and South America and Africa
- Sporadic disease is seen in the eastern United States

Diseases

- Epidemic typhus (louse-borne typhus) characterized by high fever, severe headache, and myalgias
- Recrudescent typhus (Brill-Zinsser disease) is a milder form of the disease

Diagnosis

- The microimmunofluorescence test is the test of choice

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Doxycycline is the drug of choice
- Controlled through improvements in living conditions and reduction of the lice population through use of insecticides
- Inactivated vaccine is available for high-risk populations

EHRLICHIA AND ANAPLASMA

Trigger Words

- Intracellular bacteria, monocytic and granulocytic disease, ticks

Biology and Virulence

- Small intracellular bacteria that stain poorly with Gram stain; best with Giemsa or Gimenez stains
- Replicates in phagosome of infected cells
- Intracellular growth protects bacteria from immune clearance
- Able to prevent fusion of phagosome with lysosome of monocytes or granulocytes
- Initiates inflammatory response that contributes to pathology

Epidemiology

- Depending on the species of *Ehrlichia,* important reservoirs are white-tailed deer, white-footed mouse, chipmunks, voles, and canines

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

- Ticks are important vectors, but transovarian transmission in inefficient
- Disease in United States is most common in the southeastern, Mid-Atlantic, midwestern, and south central states
- People at greatest risk are those exposed to ticks in the endemic areas
- Disease is most common from April to October

Diseases

- Diseases are human monocytic ehrlichiosis and human anaplasmosis (formerly called *human granulocytic ehrlichiosis*)

Diagnosis

- Microscopy of limited value
- Serology and nucleic acid amplification tests are methods of choice

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Doxycycline is the drug of choice; rifampin is an acceptable alternative
- Prevention involves avoidance of tick-infested areas, use of protective clothing and insect repellents, and prompt removal of embedded ticks
- Vaccines are not available

COXIELLA BURNETII

Trigger Words

Intracellular bacteria, flulike illness, subacute endocarditis, inhalation exposure, phase I and II antigens

Biology and Virulence

- Small intracellular bacteria that stain poorly with Gram stain; best with Giemsa or Gimenez stains
- Replicate in phagosomes of infected cells
- Exists in two forms: small cell variant infectious, extremely stable to environmental factors; large cell variant is the metabolically active form
- Phase transition occurs during infection: phase I with intact LPS, phase II with truncated LPS (O-antigen sugars missing)
- Intracellular growth protects the bacteria from immune clearance
- Able to replicate in acidic environment of phagosomes
- Extracellular form extremely stable; can survive in nature for a prolonged period

Epidemiology

- Many reservoirs, including mammals, birds, and ticks
- Most human infections associated with contact with infected cattle, sheep, goats, dogs, and cats
- Most disease acquired through inhalation; possible disease from consumption of contaminated milk; ticks are not an important vector for human disease
- Worldwide distribution
- No seasonal incidence

Diseases

- Most infections are asymptomatic; most common acute presentation is nonspecific influenza-like syndrome; less than 5% develop significant acute disease (pneumonia, hepatitis, pericarditis, fever)
- Endocarditis most common form of chronic disease

Diagnosis

- Detection of antibody response to phase I and phase II antigens is test of choice

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Doxycycline is the drug of choice for acute infections; hydroxychloroquine combined with doxycycline is used to treat chronic infections
- Phase I antigen vaccines are protective and safe if administered in a single dose before the animal or human has been exposed to *Coxiella;* not available in the United States for animals or humans

LPS, Lipopolysaccharide.

All of the bacteria discussed in this chapter were at one time classified in the family Rickettsiaceae, based on the observation that they were obligate aerobic, intracellular, gram-negative rods. Analysis of their deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequences revealed that this classification was invalid, so three separate families were created: Rickettsiaceae with two genera, ***Rickettsia*** and ***Orientia;*** Anaplasmataceae with two genera, ***Ehrlichia*** and ***Anaplasma;*** and Coxiellaceae with **Coxiella** (Table 34.1).

Rickettsiaceae

The family Rickettsiaceae consists of two genera, *Rickettsia* and *Orientia,* and the genus *Rickettsia* is subdivided into the **spotted fever group** and the **typhus group.** Many species of *Rickettsia* in the spotted fever group are associated with human disease; however, only ***R. rickettsii*** (Rocky Mountain spotted fever) and ***R. akari*** (rickettsialpox) are discussed in this chapter. Two species of *Rickettsia* are members of the typhus group: *R. prowazekii* and *R. typhi.* A single species is in the genus *Orientia,* ***O. tsutsugamushi,*** is the organism responsible for the disease scrub typhus.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The organisms of the family Rickettsiaceae are small (0.3 × 1 to 2 μm), structurally similar to gram-negative rods, and grow only in the cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells. The cell wall structures of *Rickettsia* are typical of gram-negative rods, with a peptidoglycan layer and lipopolysaccharide (LPS); however, the peptidoglycan layer is minimal (stains poorly with the Gram stain), and the LPS has only weak endotoxin activity. *Orientia* lacks both the peptidoglycan layer and LPS. Both groups of organisms are seen best with Giemsa or Gimenez stains (Fig. 34.1).

Rickettsia and *Orientia* are strict intracellular parasites found free in the cytoplasm of infected cells. The bacteria enter eukaryotic cells by attaching to host cell surface receptors and stimulating phagocytosis. After engulfment, *Rickettsia* and *Orientia* degrade the phagosome membrane by producing a phospholipase and must be released into the cytoplasm or they will not survive. Multiplication in the host cell by binary fission is slow (generation time, 9 to 12 hours). The spotted fever group of *Rickettsia* and *Orientia* grow in the cytoplasm and nucleus of infected cells and are continually released from cells through long cytoplasmic projections. In contrast, the typhus group accumulates in the cell cytoplasm until the cell membranes lyse, signaling cell death and bacterial release. It is believed that the fundamental difference is caused by intracellular motility; the spotted fever group is able to polymerize host cell actin, whereas the typhus group lacks the required gene. Once these bacteria are released from the host cell, they are unstable and die quickly.

The genome of *R. prowazekii* has been sequenced, providing insight about the parasitic nature of these bacteria.

TABLE 34.1 *Rickettsia, Orientia, Ehrlichia, Anaplasma,* and *Coxiella*

Organism	Historical Derivation
Rickettsia rickettsii	Named after Howard Ricketts, who implicated the wood tick as the vector of Rocky Mountain spotted fever
R. akari	*akari,* mite; the vector of rickettsialpox
R. prowazekii	Named after Stanislav von Prowazek, an early investigator of typhus who was a victim of this disease
R. typhi	*typhi,* typhus or fever
Orientia tsutsugamushi	*Orientia,* Orient; *tsutsugamushi,* "mite disease," the popular name of this disease in the Orient
Ehrlichia	Named after the German microbiologist Paul Ehrlich
E. chaffeensis	First isolated in an Army reservist at Fort Chaffee, Arkansas
E. ewingii	Named after the American microbiologist William Ewing
Anaplasma	*an,* without; *plasma,* anything formed (a thing without form; referring to the intracytoplasmic inclusions)
A. phagocytophilum	*phago,* to eat; *kytos,* a vessel or enclosure; *philein,* to love (found in phagocytes)
Coxiella burnetii	Named after Herald Cox and F.M. Burnet who isolated the bacterium from ticks in Montana and patients in Australia, respectively

The bacteria depend on their host cell for many functions: carbohydrate metabolism, lipid biosynthesis, nucleotide synthesis, and amino acid synthesis. Additionally, the bacteria are able to produce adenosine triphosphate (ATP) by means of the tricarboxylic acid cycle, or they can act as energy parasites using the host cell ATP as long as it is available.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

A good model for rickettsial infections is *R. rickettsii,* which is the agent responsible for **Rocky Mountain spotted fever** and the most common rickettsia causing human disease in the United States. There is no evidence that *R. rickettsii* produces toxins or that the host's immune response is responsible for the pathologic manifestations of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. The **outer membrane protein A (OmpA)** expressed on the surface of *R. rickettsii* is responsible for the ability of the bacteria to adhere to endothelial cells. After the bacteria penetrate into the cell, they are released from the phagosome, freely multiply in both the cytoplasm and nucleus, and move from cell to adjacent cell. The primary clinical manifestations appear to result from the replication of bacteria in endothelial cells, with subsequent damage to the cells and leakage of the blood vessels. Hypovolemia and hypoproteinemia caused by the loss of plasma into tissues can lead to reduced perfusion of various organs and organ failure. The host immune response to infection is based on cytokine-mediated intracellular killing and clearance by cytotoxic CD8 lymphocytes. Antibody response to rickettsial outer membrane proteins may also be important.

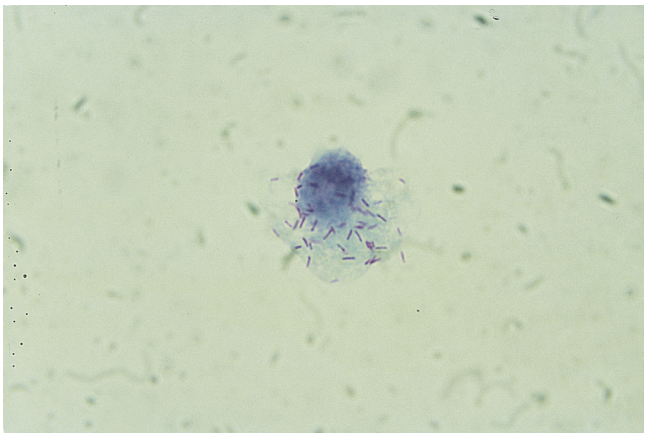


Fig. 34.1 Gimenez stain of tissue culture cells infected with spotted fever group *Rickettsia.* (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The pathogenic species of *Rickettsia* and *Orientia* are maintained in animal and arthropod reservoirs and are transmitted by arthropod vectors (e.g., ticks, mites, lice, fleas; Table 34.2). Humans are accidental hosts. Rickettsiae are maintained in reservoir hosts (primarily rodents) and their arthropod vectors (e.g., ticks, mites, fleas). Because **transovarian transmission** occurs in arthropods, they can serve as both vector and host. The exception to this is *R. prowazekii,* for which humans are the primary host and the arthropod vector is the human body louse. The bacteria kill the louse, so transovarian transmission is not important.

The distribution of rickettsial diseases is determined by the distribution of the arthropod host/vector. Most infections with tick vectors (e.g., spotted fevers) have a restricted geographic distribution, whereas rickettsial infections with other vectors, such as lice *(R. prowazekii),* fleas *(R. typhi),* and mites *(R. akari, O. tsutsugamushi),* have worldwide distribution (see Table 34.2).

In 2017, more than 6200 cases of Rocky Mountain spotted fever were reported in the United States. More than 90% of the infections occurred from **April to September,** corresponding to the period of greatest tick activity, with the majority of infections reported in North Carolina, Oklahoma, Arkansas, Tennessee, and Missouri. The principal reservoir and vector for *R. rickettsia* are **hard ticks** in the family Ixodidae. The three hard ticks most commonly associated with disease in the United States are the **American dog tick *(Dermacentor variabilis)*** in the southeastern states and on the West Coast, the **brown dog tick (*Rhipicephalus sanguineus*)** in Arizona, and the **wood tick *(D. andersoni)*** in the Rocky Mountain States and southwestern Canada. Other tick vectors have been identified in Central and South America. A person must be exposed to the tick for a lengthy period (e.g., ≥6 hours) before transmission occurs. The dormant avirulent rickettsiae are activated by the warm blood meal and then released from the tick salivary glands into the blood of the human host.

TABLE 34.2 Epidemiology of Infections Caused by *Rickettsia* and Related Bacteria

Organism	Disease	Reservoir	Vector	Distribution
Rickettsia rickettsii	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	Ticks, wild rodents	Hard ticks (dog tick, wood tick)	Western Canada, continental United States, Mexico, Panama, Argentina, Brazil, Bolivia, Colombia, Costa Rica
R. akari	Rickettsialpox	Mites (chiggers), wild rodents	Mites	North America (particularly urban areas of northeastern United States), Mexico, Europe (e.g., Croatia, Ukraine, Turkey), Asia (e.g., Korea), Africa
R. prowazekii	Epidemic (louse-borne) typhus	Humans	Human body louse	Mountainous regions of Central and Eastern Africa (Burundi, Rwanda, Ethiopia), Central and South America, Asia
	Recrudescent typhus	Humans	Relapse disease	Worldwide
	Sporadic typhus	Flying squirrels, squirrel fleas and lice	Possibly squirrel fleas	United States
R. typhi	Endemic (murine) typhus	Cats, opossums, raccoons, skunks, wild rodents	Cat flea, rat flea	Worldwide
Orientia tsutsugamushi	Scrub typhus	Mites (chiggers), wild rodents	Mites	Japan, Eastern Asia, Northern Australia, Western and Southwestern Pacific
Ehrlichia chaffeensis	Human monocytic ehrlichiosis	Deer, dogs, foxes, coyotes, and wolves	Soft ticks (lone star tick)	North and South America, Asia
E. ewingii	Human granulocytic ehrlichiosis	Dogs, deer	Soft ticks (lone star tick	North America (uncommon, Missouri)
Anaplasma phagocytophilum	Human granulocytic anaplasmosis	Small mammals (rodents, chipmunks, voles), deer, sheep	Soft ticks (Blacklegged tick)	North America (Upper Midwest and Northeast), Europe, Asia
Coxiella burnetii	Q fever	Mammals, birds, ticks	Ticks incidental (most infections after inhalation)	Worldwide

R. akari, the agent responsible for causing **rickettsialpox,** is one of the few rickettsiae in the spotted fever group that have a **cosmopolitan** distribution and are transmitted by infected **mites.** Culture-confirmed disease has been reported from Ukraine, Croatia, Korea, and the United States, primarily in the New York City area. A cluster of cases was documented in New York City after the release of *Bacillus anthracis* in 2001, when biopsies of eschars from city residents were demonstrated to contain *R. akari* and not *B. anthracis*. Based on this experience, it is likely that rickettsialpox is underdiagnosed in endemic areas. Infections with *R. akari* are maintained in the rodent population through the bite of mouse ectoparasites (e.g., mites) and in mites by transovarian transmission. Humans become accidental hosts when bitten by infected mites.

R. prowazekii, one of two members of the typhus group of rickettsiae, is the etiologic agent of **epidemic** or **louse-borne typhus. Humans** are the principal reservoir of this disease, and the vector is the **human body louse,** *Pediculus humanus*. Epidemic typhus occurs among people living in crowded, unsanitary conditions that favor the spread of body lice; for example, conditions such as those that arise during wars, famines, and natural disasters. Lice die from their infection within 2 to 3 weeks, preventing transovarian transmission of *R. prowazekii*. The disease is present in Central and South America, Africa, and less commonly in the United States.

The incidence of the disease in the United States is unknown because it is not a disease reportable to public health departments. Sporadic disease in the United States is primarily restricted to rural areas of the eastern states. In this area, **flying squirrels** and squirrel fleas and lice are infected with *R. prowazekii.* Squirrel lice do not feed on humans, but the fleas are less discriminating and may be responsible for transmitting the *Rickettsia* from squirrels to humans. Epidemiologic and serologic evidence supports this hypothesis.

Recrudescent disease with *R. prowazekii* **(Brill-Zinsser disease)** can occur in people years after their initial infection. Such people in the United States are primarily Eastern European immigrants who were exposed to the typhus epidemic during World War II.

Endemic or murine typhus is caused by *R. typhi.* Disease is distributed worldwide primarily in warm, humid areas. In the United States, 50 to 100 cases are reported annually, with most cases in the Gulf States (especially Texas) and Southern California. Endemic disease continues to be reported in people living in the temperate and subtropical coastal areas of Africa, Asia, Australia, Europe, and South America. **Rodents** are the primary reservoir, and the **rat flea** *(Xenopsylla cheopis)* is the principal vector. However, the **cat flea** *(Ctenocephalides felis),* which infests cats, opossums, raccoons, and skunks, is considered an

important vector for disease in the United States. Most cases occur during the warm months.

O. tsutsugamushi is the etiologic agent for **scrub typhus,** which is a disease transmitted to humans by **mites** (chiggers, red mites). The reservoir is the mite population, in which the bacteria are transmitted by transovarian means. Infection is also present in the **rodent** population, which can serve as a reservoir for mite infections. Rodents are not believed to be an important reservoir for human disease because mites feed only once during their life, so they cannot transmit infection from rodents to humans. Scrub typhus is present in people living in eastern Asia, Australia, and Japan and other Western Pacific islands. It can also be imported into the United States.

Clinical Case 34.1 **Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever**

Oster and associates (*N Engl J Med* 297:859–863, 1977) described a series of patients who acquired Rocky Mountain spotted fever after working with *Rickettsia rickettsii* in the laboratory. One patient, a 21-year-old veterinary technician, presented to a clinic with complaints of myalgia and a nonproductive cough. He was treated with penicillin and discharged. Over the next few days, he developed chills and a headache. When he returned to the hospital, he had a temperature of 40.0° C and a macular rash on his extremities and trunk. Intramuscular tetracycline was started, but he remained febrile, and the rash evolved to petechiae on his truck, his extremities, and the soles of his feet. Bilateral pleural effusions developed, and intravenous tetracycline was begun. Over the next 2 weeks, the effusions resolved and the patient made a slow but uneventful recovery. Although this patient was not working directly with *R. rickettsiae,* he had visited a laboratory that was processing the bacterium. This patient illustrates the characteristic presentation of Rocky Mountain spotted fever—headache, fever, myalgias, and a macular rash—which can evolve into a petechial or spotted rash.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Symptomatic Rocky Mountain spotted fever (Clinical Case 34.1) develops 7 days (range, 2 to 14 days) after the tick bite (Table 34.3), although the patient may not recall the painless tick bite. The onset of disease is heralded by a high fever and headache that may be associated with malaise, myalgias, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and diarrhea. A macular rash develops in 90% of patients after 3 days, initially on the wrists, arms, and ankles and then spreading to the trunk. The palms and soles can also be involved. The rash can evolve to the "spotted" or petechial form, which is a harbinger of more severe disease. Complications of Rocky Mountain spotted fever include neurologic manifestations, pulmonary and renal failure, and cardiac abnormalities. A delay in diagnosis, either because the clinical presentation is not characteristic or the physician does not recognize the disease, is associated with a worse prognosis. The fatality rate in untreated disease is 10% to 25%.

Clinical infection with *R. akari* (rickettsialpox) is biphasic. First a papule develops at the site in which the mite bites the host. The papule appears approximately 1 week after the bite and quickly progresses to ulceration and then **eschar formation.** During this period, the rickettsiae spread systemically. After an incubation period of 7 to 24

TABLE 34.3 Human Diseases Caused by *Rickettsia* and Related Bacteria

Disease	Average Incubation Period (Days)	Clinical Presentation	Rash	Eschar	Mortality without Treatment (%)
Rocky Mountain spotted fever	7	Abrupt onset; fever, headache, malaise, myalgias, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain	>90%; macular; centripetal spread	No	10–25
Rickettsialpox	9–14	Abrupt onset; fever, headache, chills, myalgias, photophobia	100%; papulovesicular; generalized	Yes	Low
Epidemic typhus	8	Abrupt onset; fever, headache, chills, myalgias, arthralgia	20%–80%; macular; centrifugal spread	No	20
Endemic typhus	7–14	Gradual onset; fever, headache, myalgias, cough	50%; maculopapular rash on trunk	No	Low
Scrub typhus	10–12	Abrupt onset; fever, headache, myalgias	<50%; maculopapular rash; centrifugal	No	1–15
Human monocytic ehrlichiosis	7–14	High fever, headache malaise, myalgias; leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, elevated serum transaminases	Rash (more common in children than in adults)	No	2–3
Human granulocytic ehrlichiosis	7–14	High fever, headache malaise, myalgias	Rash	No	Insufficient data
Human granulocytic anaplasmosis	5–10	High fever, headache, malaise, myalgias, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, elevated serum transaminases	Rash in <10% of patients	No	<1
Q fever	10–14	Abrupt onset; high fever, headache, malaise, myalgias; may progress to hepatitis, pneumonia, or subacute endocarditis (chronic Q fever)	No	No	<5

Clinical Case 34.2 **Rickettsialpox in New York City**

Koss and associates (*Arch Dermatol* 139:1545–1552, 2003) described 18 patients with rickettsialpox who were diagnosed at Columbia Presbyterian Medical Center in New York City during a 20-month period after the anthrax bioterrorism attack in the fall of 2001. The patients presented to the hospital because they had a necrotic eschar and were thought to have cutaneous anthrax. The patients also had fever, headache, and a papulovesicular rash. Many patients also complained of myalgias, sore throat, arthralgias, and gastrointestinal symptoms. Immunohistochemical staining of eschar and skin biopsies confirmed the diagnosis of rickettsialpox and not cutaneous anthrax. These patients illustrate the diagnostic difficulties of recognizing uncommon diseases even when the clinical presentation is characteristic.

days (average, 9 to 14 days), the second phase of the disease develops abruptly, with high **fever,** severe headache, chills, sweats, myalgias, and photophobia. A generalized **papulovesicular rash** forms within 2 to 3 days. A poxlike progression of the rash is then seen, in which vesicles form and then crust over. Presence of the rash distinguishes this disease from anthrax and, in a patient with a high fever and eschar, should raise suspicion of rickettsialpox. Despite the appearance of the disseminated rash, rickettsialpox is usually mild and uncomplicated, and complete healing is seen within 2 to 3 weeks without treatment (Clinical Case 34.2).

In one study of epidemic typhus in Africa, clinical disease developed an average of 8 days after exposure (range, 2 to 30 days). Most of the patients initially had nonspecific symptoms, then within 1 to 3 days, high **fever,** severe **headache,** and **myalgias.** Other symptoms can include pneumonia, arthralgia, and neurologic involvement (stupor, confusion, coma). A petechial or macular rash develops in many patients, but this may be obscured in darkly pigmented individuals. The mortality rate in the absence of treatment is 20% to 30% but may be much higher in populations with poor general health and nutrition and lacking proper supportive medical care. In patients with uncomplicated disease, the body temperature returns to normal within 2 weeks, but complete convalescence may take 3 months or longer. The rickettsiae may remain dormant for years and then reactivate to cause recrudescent epidemic typhus or Brill-Zinsser disease. At the time symptoms develop, bacteremia occurs and the patient is potentially infectious for lice. The course of this form of disease is generally milder and a rash is frequently absent, making diagnosis more difficult.

The incubation period for *R. typhi* disease (murine typhus) is 7 to 14 days. The symptoms appear abruptly, with fever, severe headache, chills, myalgias, and nausea most common. A rash develops in approximately half of infected patients, most commonly late in the illness. It is typically restricted to the chest and abdomen. The course of disease is generally uncomplicated, lasting less than 3 weeks even in untreated patients.

O. tsutsugamushi disease (scrub typhus) develops suddenly after a 6- to 18-day incubation period (average, 10 to 12 days), with severe **headache, fever,** and **myalgias.** A macular to papular rash develops on the trunk in less than half of patients and spreads centrifugally to the extremities. Generalized lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, central nervous system complications, and heart failure can occur. Fever in untreated patients disappears after 2 to 3 weeks.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Microscopy

Although rickettsiae stain poorly with Gram stain, they can be stained with Giemsa or Gimenez stains. Specific fluorescein-labeled antibodies can also be used to stain the intracellular bacteria in biopsy tissue specimens. This direct detection of *R. rickettsiae* antigens is a rapid, specific method for confirming the clinical diagnosis of Rocky Mountain spotted fever but is primarily available only through reference laboratories.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

Specific nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) are now used in many reference laboratories for the diagnosis of rickettsial diseases. Unfortunately, these assays are relatively insensitive when blood samples are used.

Culture

Although isolation of rickettsiae in tissue culture systems or embryonated eggs is relatively easy, only reference laboratories with extensive experience with rickettsiae routinely perform these cultures. If culture is attempted, buffy coat preparations of blood or skin biopsy specimens should be processed.

Antibody Detection

Although the **Weil-Felix test** (which involves the differential agglutination of cross-reacting *Proteus* antigens) has been used historically for the diagnosis of rickettsial infections, it is no longer recommended, because it is insensitive and nonspecific. Unfortunately, this test is still used in laboratories with limited resources. The serology test that is considered the reference method is the **microimmunofluorescence (MIF)** test. This test detects antibodies directed against outer membrane proteins (species specific) and the LPS antigen. Because the LPS antigen is shared among rickettsial species, the **Western blot immunoassay** must be performed to define the individual species. The sensitivity and specificity of MIF is high, with diagnostic levels of antibodies generally detected in the second week of illness. Commercially prepared enzyme immunoassays are also available but generally have a lower sensitivity and specificity when compared with MIF.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice for treating all rickettsial infections is **doxycycline.** Although tetracyclines are generally contraindicated for pregnant women and young children, this antibiotic is recommended for all patients with suspected rickettsial disease because it is the most effective antibiotic and inadequately treated disease is associated with a high morbidity and mortality. Fluoroquinolones (e.g., ciprofloxacin) have good in vitro activity, but clinical experience is inadequate to recommend this for primary therapy. Chloramphenicol also

has activity in vitro against rickettsiae, but its use for treatment of infections is associated with a higher incidence of relapse. Prompt diagnosis and institution of appropriate therapy usually result in a satisfactory prognosis; unfortunately, this scenario may not occur if key clinical signs (e.g., rash) develop late or not at all. In addition, the serologic findings often are not available until 2 or more weeks after the onset of disease, also delaying the start of treatment. Therefore it is recommended that empirical therapy with doxycycline be started as soon as the diagnosis is considered.

Vaccines are not available for rickettsial disease except for louse-borne typhus. Prevention of disease involves avoiding tick-infested areas and use of protective clothing and insect repellents, and prompt removal of attached ticks. Rodent control is important for diseases in which these represent an important reservoir. Effective louse-control measures are used to manage epidemic typhus.

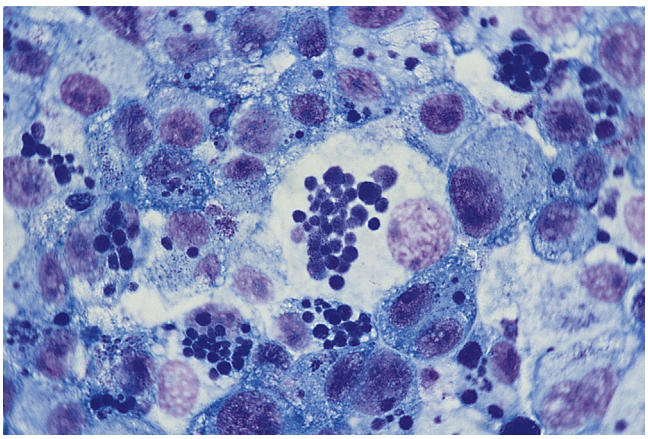


Fig. 34.2 Multiple morulae of *Ehrlichia canis (E. chaffeensis)* in DH82 tissue culture cells. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

Anaplasmataceae

The genera *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* consist of intracellular bacteria that parasitize granulocytes, monocytes, erythrocytes, and platelets. Three species of these genera are important human pathogens: *E. chaffeensis,* responsible for **human monocytic ehrlichiosis;** *E. ewingii,* the etiologic agent of **human granulocytic ehrlichiosis;** and *A. phagocytophilum,* the agent for **human granulocytic anaplasmosis.**

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

In contrast with *Rickettsia* and *Orientia, Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* remain in the phagocytic vacuole after entry into the host cell. Fusion with lysosomes is prevented because expression of appropriate receptors on the phagocytic vacuole surface is interrupted. Thus the bacteria can multiply by binary fission in the phagosome without exposure to the hydrolytic lysosome enzymes. Two morphologic forms of the bacteria exist: small (0.2 to 0.4 μm) **elementary bodies** and larger (0.8 to 1.5 μm) **reticulate bodies.** A few days after the cell is infected, the replicating elementary bodies assemble into membrane-enclosed masses called **morulae** (Fig. 34.2). Progressive infection leads to lysis of the infected cell, release of bacteria, and subsequent infection of new cells. Detection of morulae when the cells are stained with **Giemsa** or **Wright stains** is a rapid, specific diagnostic test; however, relatively few infected cells may be seen, so a negative test is not helpful.

The cell wall structure of *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* is similar to that of gram-negative bacteria; however, the bacteria lack genes for synthesis of peptidoglycan or LPS. In addition, many of the genes of the glycolytic pathway also are absent. A number of protein antigens are shared among species in these genera, as well as with species of other genera. For this reason, cross-reactive antibodies are commonly observed in serologic assays.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The intracellular location of the organisms protects them from the host's antibody response. However, bacterial stimulation of proinflammatory cytokine production is believed to play an important role in activating macrophages that act either directly on infected cells or on antibody-opsonized bacteria during their extracellular phase.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The first human infection in the United States with these organisms was reported in 1986. In 2017, almost 8000 cases of ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis were reported in the United States. The prevalence of this disease is underestimated because serologic studies have shown that antibodies to *E. chaffeensis* are at least as common as antibodies to *R. rickettsii,* which has a similar geographic distribution. *E. chaffeensis* disease in the United States is found predominantly in the Midwest (Missouri, Arkansas, Oklahoma) and coastal Atlantic (Maryland, Virginia, New Jersey, New York) states. This area corresponds to the geographic distribution of *Amblyomma americanum* (lone star tick), which is the primary vector responsible for transmitting the organism, and of white-tailed deer, which are an important reservoir for *E. chaffeensis*. Other animals that can serve as hosts include domestic dogs, foxes, coyotes, and wolves. *E. ewingii* is relatively uncommon and has been primarily reported in Missouri (see Table 34.2).

Disease caused by *A. phagocytophilum* is found primarily in the upper midwestern states (Minnesota, Wisconsin) and northeast Atlantic states (Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey). The reservoirs are small mammals (e.g., white-footed mouse, chipmunks, voles), and the vectors are *Ixodes* ticks. More than 90% of all disease caused by *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* in the United States occurs between mid-April and late October.

Transovarian transmission of *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* in ticks does not occur (in contrast with *Rickettsia* and *Orientia*), so these bacteria must be maintained in reservoir vertebrate hosts. Ticks become infected when an immature stage (e.g., larva, nymph) ingests blood from a naturally infected host and then transmits the bacteria to another mammalian host (e.g., human) during the next blood meal. Humans are accidental hosts; thus transmission terminates at this stage.

CLINICAL DISEASES

Human Monocytic Ehrlichiosis

Human monocytic ehrlichiosis is caused by *E. chaffeensis* after infection of blood monocytes and mononuclear phagocytes in tissues and organs. Approximately 1 to 2 weeks after a tick bite, patients develop a flulike illness with **high fever,** headache, malaise, and myalgias. A late-onset **rash** develops in 30% to 40% of patients (more common in children than in adults). **Leukopenia, thrombocytopenia,** and **elevated serum transaminases** develop in the majority of patients and can range from mild to severe. Although mortality is low (2% to 3%), more than half the infected patients require hospitalization and experience a prolonged recovery period. A fulminant septic syndrome can develop, particularly in immunocompromised patients. The pathology of this infection is disproportionate to the number of infected cells or microbial burden present in tissue. It is believed that *E. chaffeensis* disturbs mononuclear phagocytic function and regulation of the inflammatory response. Thus the immune response both eliminates the pathogen and produces much of the tissue damage.

Human (Canine) Granulocytic Ehrlichiosis

E. ewingii primarily causes disease in canines, with humans acting as the accidental hosts. Because there is serologic cross-reactivity between *E. ewingii* and *E. chaffeensis,* the incidence of infections with this organism is likely to be underestimated. The clinical presentation is similar to that of *E. chaffeensis,* with fever, headaches, and myalgias. Leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and elevated serum transaminases also are seen.

Human Anaplasmosis

Human granulocytic anaplasmosis is caused by *A. phagocytophilum*. (Clinical Case 34.3) Granulocytes (i.e., neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils) are primarily infected. The disease presents 5 to 10 days after exposure as a flulike illness with a high fever, headache, malaise, and myalgias; a rash is observed in less than 10% of patients. As with human monocytic ehrlichiosis, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and serum transaminase elevation are observed in most patients. More than half the infected patients require hospitalization, and severe complications, particularly peripheral neuropathies (e.g., demyelinating polyneuropathy, facial palsy) can occur. Despite the potential severity of this disease, mortality is less than 1%. As with *E. chaffeensis* infections, the pathology of this disease appears related to macrophage activation.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical presentation of *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* infections is not distinctive, and although the geographic distribution of disease has limited overlap, laboratory testing is required for a definitive diagnosis. Microscopy has limited value because the bacteria stain poorly with the Gram stain, and detection of intracytoplasmic inclusions (clumps or organisms, morulae) in Giemsa-stained preparations of peripheral blood is only useful during the first week of illness. Morulae are detected in less than 10% of patients with monocytic ehrlichiosis and in 25% to 75% of patients with granulocytic anaplasmosis. Likewise, although *Ehrlichia* organisms have been cultured in vitro in established cell lines, this procedure is not performed in most clinical laboratories. The most common methods for laboratory diagnosis of ehrlichiosis are NAATs and serology. Species-specific DNA amplification tests are available in some reference laboratories and can provide a sensitive, specific diagnostic test for acute disease. An increase in the antibody titer is typically observed 3 to 6 weeks after the initial presentation, so these serologic tests are primarily confirmatory. Sensitivity of the NAATs and serology is reduced in patients receiving effective therapy. *E. chaffeensis* and *E. ewingii* are closely related and cannot be differentiated by serology. The specificity of the serology tests is compromised by cross-reactions with organisms responsible for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, Q fever, Lyme disease, brucellosis, and Epstein-Barr virus infections.

Clinical Case 34.3 **Human Anaplasmosis**

Heller and associates (*N Engl J Med* 352:1358–1364, 2005) described a 73-year-old man who presented to their hospital with fever, weakness, and leg myalgias. Six days before his admission, he had traveled to South Carolina, and 3 days later, he developed intense leg pains, a high fever, and generalized weakness. On admission, he was febrile, tachycardic, and hypertensive; the liver and spleen could not be palpated, and no cutaneous rash was noted. Cultures for bacteria, fungi, and viruses were negative. A peripheral blood smear showed rare intracytoplasmic inclusions in the granulocytes, suggestive of morulae. Polymerase chain reaction analysis of blood samples collected on the second and third hospital days were positive for *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* DNA, confirming the diagnosis of anaplasmosis. The patient was treated successfully with a 14-day course of doxycycline, although residual muscle weakness and pain persisted. Serum collected during the convalescent period was positive for *Anaplasma.* It is noteworthy that the patient did not remember a tick bite during his South Carolina trip, consistent with the observation that the early tick stages, larva and nymphs, are most commonly associated with human disease.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Patients with suspected ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis should be treated with **doxycycline.** Therapy should not be delayed to wait for laboratory confirmation of the disease. Rifampin has been used to treat patients who are unable to tolerate doxycycline. Fluoroquinolones, penicillins, cephalosporins, chloramphenicol, aminoglycosides, and macrolides are ineffective. Infection is prevented by avoidance of tick-infested areas, wearing protective clothing, and use of insect repellents. Embedded ticks should be removed promptly. Vaccines are not available.

Coxiellaceae

COXIELLA BURNETII

C. burnetii are gram-negative bacteria that stain weakly with the Gram stain, grow intracellularly in eukaryotic

cells, and are associated with arthropods (e.g., **ticks**). The disease caused by *C. burnetii* is **Q (query) fever,** so named because the initial investigation of an outbreak in Australian abattoir workers did not identify the causal organism.

Physiology and Structure

Two structural forms of *C. burnetii* are recognized: **small cell variants** that are resistant to environmental stress (e.g., heat, desiccation, chemical agents) and **large cell variants** that are the metabolically active form. Additionally, *C. burnetii* undergoes a phase transition similar to what is observed in some other gram-negative bacteria. In the phase observed in nature **(phase I),** *C. burnetii* has an intact LPS; however, mutations can occur in the LPS genes, resulting in a molecule with lipid A and core sugars but missing the outermost O-antigen sugars **(phase II).** This phase variation is important for understanding the progression of disease and for diagnostic purposes.

Small cell variants attach to macrophages and monocytes and are internalized in a phagocytic vacuole. The normal progression after phagocytosis of most organisms is fusion of the phagosome with a series of endosomes (intracellular vesicles), resulting in a drop in intracellular pH, followed by fusion with lysosomes containing hydrolytic enzymes and resultant bacterial death. This occurs with *C. burnetii* if phase II organisms are ingested; however, phase I *Coxiella* is able to arrest this process before lysosomal fusion. In addition, the organisms require acid pH for their metabolic activities, which in turn protects them from the killing activities of most antibiotics.

Pathogenesis and Immunity

Slowly replicating intracellular pathogens must avoid programmed cell death (apoptosis), which is an important component of intrinsic immunity. *Coxiella* is able to regulate the cell signaling pathways in its phagocytic home so that cell death is delayed. The ability of *C. burnetii* to cause either acute or chronic disease is determined in part by the organism's ability to survive intracellularly. In the presence of interferon-γ, phagosome-lysosome fusion occurs, leading to bacterial death; however, in chronic infections, interleukin (IL)-10 is overproduced by the host cell, which interferes with fusion and allows intracellular survival of *C. burnetii*.

Epidemiology

C. burnetii is extremely stable in harsh environmental conditions and **can survive in soil and milk for months to years** (see Table 34.2). The range of hosts for *C. burnetii* is wide, with infections being found in mammals, birds, and numerous species of ticks. Farm animals, such as sheep, cattle, and goats, and recently infected cats, dogs, and rabbits, are the **primary reservoirs** for human disease. The bacteria can reach high concentrations in the placenta of infected livestock. Dried placentas left on the ground after parturition and feces, urine, and tick feces can contaminate soil, which in turn can serve as a focus for infection if these bacteria become airborne and are inhaled. Human infections occur after the **inhalation of airborne particles** from a contaminated environmental source or, less commonly, after ingestion of contaminated **unpasteurized milk** or other dairy products. Ticks do not transmit disease to humans.

Q fever has a worldwide distribution. Although fewer than 200 infections are reported annually in the United States, this figure is certainly an underestimation of the actual prevalence of the disease. Infection is common in livestock in the United States, but symptomatic disease in livestock is rare. Human exposure—particularly for ranchers, veterinarians, and food handlers—is frequent, and experimental studies have shown that the infectious dose of *C. burnetii* is small (≤10 bacteria). Thus most human infections are asymptomatic or mild, a finding confirmed by serologic studies that have shown that most persons with detectable antibodies do not have a history of disease. Infections also go undetected because diagnostic tests for *C. burnetii* are often not considered.

Clinical Diseases

The majority of individuals exposed to *C. burnetii* have an **asymptomatic infection,** and most symptomatic infections are mild, presenting with nonspecific **flulike symptoms** with an abrupt onset, high-grade fever, fatigue, headache, and myalgias. Less than 5% of infected persons develop symptoms severe enough to require hospitalization, with the most common presentations being **hepatitis, pneumonia,** or isolated **fevers.** Hepatitis is usually asymptomatic or presents with fever and increase in serum transaminases. Most cases of pneumonia are mild with a nonproductive cough, fever, and nonspecific findings on chest radiograph. Histologically, diffuse granulomas are typically seen in the involved organs. Chronic Q fever (symptoms lasting >6 months) can develop months to years after the initial exposure and occurs almost exclusively in patients with predisposing conditions such as underlying valvular heart disease or immunosuppression. **Subacute endocarditis** is the most common presentation and can be difficult to diagnose because of the lack of specific signs and symptoms. (Clinical Case 34.4) However, chronic Q fever is a serious illness with significant mortality and morbidity, even in patients with rapid diagnosis and appropriate treatment.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Q fever can be diagnosed by culture (not commonly performed), serology, or the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Culture can be performed in tissue culture cells and, recently, in a cell-free medium; however, culture is rarely performed except in research laboratories licensed to work with these highly contagious organisms. **Serology** is the most commonly used diagnostic test. As previously mentioned, *C. burnetii* undergoes phase variation characterized by the development of phase I and II antigens. The phase I antigens are only weakly antigenic. A variety of methods are used to measure antibody production: the microagglutination tests, indirect immunofluorescence antibody (IFA) test, and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). IFA is the test of choice, although ELISA is used in many laboratories and appears to be as sensitive. Cross-reactions occur with *Bartonella,* which can cause a similar disease, so all serologic tests should include an assay for both organisms. In acute Q fever, immunoglobulin (Ig)M and IgG antibodies are developed primarily against **phase II antigens.** A diagnosis of chronic Q fever is confirmed by the demonstration of antibodies against both **phase I and II antigens,** with

Clinical Case 34.4 *Coxiella burnetii* Endocarditis

Karakousis and associates (*J Clin Microbiol* 44:2283–2287, 2006) described a 31-year-old man from West Virginia who developed chronic endocarditis caused by *C. burnetii*. At the time the patient was admitted to the hospital, he described an 11-month history of fevers, night sweats, paroxysmal coughing, fatigue, and weight loss. He had received various antibiotic treatments for bronchitis, with no relief. His past medical history was significant for congenital heart disease, with placement of a shunt as an infant. He lived on a farm and participated in birthing his calves. His cardiac examination on admission revealed a murmur; no hepatosplenomegaly or peripheral stigmata of endocarditis were noted, and his liver enzymes were elevated. All bacterial and fungal blood cultures were negative; however, serology for *Coxiella* phase I and phase II antibodies were markedly elevated. Treatment with doxycycline and rifampin was initiated, and the patient rapidly defervesced. Although prolonged treatment was recommended, the patient was unreliable, and he rapidly became symptomatic every time he discontinued one or both antibiotics. He also refused to take hydroxychloroquine because of his concerns about retinal toxicity. This patient typifies the risk for patients with underlying heart disease and the difficulties in treating this infection.

the titers to the phase I antigen typically higher. NAA techniques such as PCR have been developed in reference laboratories but are generally not available for routine diagnosis. In addition, although the tests are sensitive when tissue samples are examined, the sensitivity is poor with serum. PCR-based tests are not required for the diagnosis of chronic *C. burnetii* infections because these patients characteristically have high levels of antibodies present.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Treatment of acute and chronic *C. burnetii* infections is guided by clinical experience, not by in vitro susceptibility tests. Currently, it is recommended that acute infections be treated for 14 days with **doxycycline.** Chronic disease should be treated for a prolonged period with a bactericidal combination of drugs, such as **doxycycline and the alkalinizing agent hydroxychloroquine.** Fluoroquinolones (e.g., ofloxacin, pefloxacin) have been used as an alternative to doxycycline but are contraindicated in children and pregnant women.

Inactivated whole-cell vaccines and partially purified antigen vaccines for Q fever have been developed, and the vaccines prepared from phase I organisms have been shown to provide the best protection. Vaccination of animal herds appears efficacious unless the animals have been previously infected naturally. Vaccination does not eradicate *Coxiella* in infected animals or decrease asymptomatic shedding. Likewise, vaccination of humans with phase I vaccines is protective if the those vaccinated are uninfected. Vaccination of previously infected individuals is contraindicated because immune stimulation can lead to an increase in adverse reactions. For this reason, a single-dose vaccine with no booster immunizations is recommended.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Angelakis, E., Raoult, D., 2010. Review: Q fever. Vet. Microbiol. 140, 297–309.

Bakken, J., Dumler, S., 2008. Human granulocytic anaplasmosis. Infect. Dis. Clin. North. Am. 22, 433–448.

Dumler, J.S., Madigan, J.E., Pusterla, N., et al., 2007. Ehrlichioses in humans: epidemiology, clinical presentation, diagnosis, and treatment. Clin. Infect. Dis. 45, S45–S51.

Dumler, J.S., Walker, D., 2005. Rocky Mountain spotted fever—changing ecology and persisting virulence. N. Engl. J. Med. 353, 551–553.

Ghigo, E., Pretat, L., Desnues, B., et al., 2009. Intracellular life of *Coxiella burnetii* in macrophages: an update. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 1166, 55–66.

Gürtler, L., Bauerfeind, U., Blümel, J., et al., 2014. *Coxiella burnetii*—pathogenic agent of Q (Query) fever. Transfus. Med. Hemother. 41, 60–72.

Ismail, N., Bloch, K., McBride, J., 2010. Human ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis. Clin. Lab. Med. 30, 261–292.

Koss, T., Carter, E.L., Grossman, M.E., et al., 2003. Increased detection of rickettsialpox in a New York City hospital following the anthrax outbreak of 2001. Arch. Dermatol. 139, 1545–1552.

Paddock, C.D., Koss, T., Eremeeva, M.E., et al., 2006. Isolation of *Rickettsia akari* from eschars of patients with rickettsialpox. Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg. 75, 732–738.

Parola, P., Paddock, C., Raoult, D., 2005. Tick-borne rickettsioses around the world: emerging diseases challenging old concepts. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 18, 719–756.

Richards, A., 2004. Rickettsial vaccines: the old and the new. Expert. Rev. Vaccines. 3, 541–555.

Rikihisa, Y., 2010. *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* and *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*: subversive manipulators of host cells. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 8, 328–339.

Shannon, J., Heinzen, R., 2009. Adaptive immunity to the obligate intracellular pathogen *Coxiella burnetii*. Immunol. Res. 43, 138–148.

Case Study and Questions

A 46-year-old man went to his physician with a 2-month history of weight loss (15 lb), night sweats, and a low-grade fever. Results of a chest examination revealed a new heart murmur. The physician suspected his patient had subacute endocarditis, and three sets of blood cultures were collected. After 1 week of incubation, the cultures remained negative.

1. What diagnostic test(s) should be performed to determine whether this patient has endocarditis caused by *C. burnetii*?

2. If this diagnosis is confirmed, how did the patient most likely acquire his infection?

3. How should this infection be treated?

35 Chlamydia

A 14-day-old girl was readmitted to the pediatric intensive care unit with respiratory distress, dyspnea, fever, and a dry, unproductive, staccato cough. Chest radiographs demonstrated right bronchopneumonia. The preliminary diagnosis of chlamydial infant pneumonia was made and confirmed by nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs). Although Chlamydia trachomatis is the best known member of the family Chlamydiaceae, C. psittaci and C. pneumoniae also cause significant human disease.

1. Which members of the Chlamydiaceae family cause respiratory disease? Ocular disease? Genital disease?
2. Why is it significant that *C. trachomatis* serotype A does not induce immunity?
3. What laboratory tests are useful for confirming the diagnosis of infections with *Chlamydia?*

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

CHLAMYDIA TRACHOMATIS

Trigger Words
Intracellular bacteria, elementary and reticulate bodies, trachoma, infant pneumonia, urethritis, LGV, person to person

Biology and Virulence
- Small gram-negative rods
- Strict intracellular parasite of humans
- Two distinct forms: infectious elementary bodies and noninfectious reticulate bodies
- Lipopolysaccharide antigen shared by *Chlamydia* and *Chlamydophila* species
- Major outer membrane proteins are species specific
- Two biovars associated with human disease: trachoma and LGV
- Infects nonciliated columnar, cuboidal, and transitional epithelial cells
- Prevents fusion of phagosome with cellular lysosomes

Epidemiology
- Most common sexually transmitted bacteria in United States
- Ocular trachoma primarily in North and sub-Saharan Africa, the Middle East, South Asia, South America
- LGV highly prevalent in Africa, Asia, and South America

Diseases
- Pathologic effects of trachoma caused by repeated infections
- Diseases, refer to Box 35.1

Diagnosis
- Culture is highly specific but relatively insensitive
- Antigen tests (direct fluorescent antibody, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) are relatively insensitive
- Molecular amplification tests are the most sensitive and specific tests currently available

Treatment, Prevention, and Control
- Treat LGV with doxycycline or erythromycin
- Treat ocular or genital infections with azithromycin or doxycycline
- Treat newborn conjunctivitis or pneumonia with erythromycin
- Safe sex practices and prompt treatment of patient and sexual partners help control infections

LGV, Lymphogranuloma venereum.

The taxonomy of the family Chlamydiaceae has been controversial since 1999 when it was proposed to divide the family into two genera: *Chlamydia* and *Chlamydophila*. Although this division was accepted officially, experts in the field point to mounting evidence that this subdivision is not justified based on deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequencing data. This is mentioned in this chapter because (1) we recognized in previous editions of this textbook the recommendation for using the two genus names, and (2) we believe the evidence is compelling to revert back to the use of *Chlamydia* for all species. Maybe the only relevance for the students is they will likely see both names used in the scientific literature. Thus there are three species responsible for human disease that the student should know: ***Chlamydia trachomatis, C. (Chlamydophila) psittaci,*** and ***C. (Chlamydophila) pneumoniae*** (Table 35.1).

The Chlamydiaceae are **obligate intracellular parasites** that were once considered viruses because they are small enough to pass through 0.45-μm filters; however, the organisms have the following properties of bacteria: (1) possess inner and outer membranes similar to those of gram-negative bacteria; (2) contain both DNA and ribonucleic acid (RNA); (3) possess prokaryotic ribosomes; (4) synthesize their own proteins, nucleic acids, and lipids; and (5) are susceptible to numerous antibacterial antibiotics.

Unlike other bacteria, the Chlamydiaceae have a unique developmental cycle, forming metabolically inactive infectious forms **(elementary bodies [EBs])** and metabolically active noninfectious forms **(reticulate bodies [RBs]).** Properties that differentiate the three important human pathogens in this family are summarized in Table 35.2.

Physiology and Structure

Much like a spore, EBs are resistant to many harsh environmental factors. Although recent evidence has demonstrated a peptidoglycan layer in the cell wall of replicating RBs, this has not been demonstrated in EBs. Even though the peptidoglycan layer may be absent in EBs, they possess a central dense core surrounded by a cytoplasmic membrane and a double-layer outer membrane. The cell wall contains a **lipopolysaccharide (LPS),** which is common to all members of the family. The LPS has only **weak endotoxin activity.** The **major outer membrane protein (MOMP)** in the cell wall is an important structural component of the outer membrane and is unique for each species. Variable regions in the gene encoding this protein are found in *C. trachomatis* and are responsible for 18 serologic

variants (called **serovars**). Similar variable regions are found in *C. psittaci* MOMP; in contrast, the *C. pneumoniae* MOMP is homogenous, and only a single serovar has been described. A second highly conserved outer membrane protein, **OMP 2,** is shared by all *Chlamydia*. This cysteine-rich protein is responsible for the extensive disulfide cross-links that provide the stability in the EBs.

The EBs cannot replicate but are infectious; that is, they can bind to receptors on host cells and stimulate uptake by the infected cell. In this intracellular location, the EBs convert into RBs, the metabolically active replicating chlamydial form. Because the extensive cross-linked proteins are absent in RBs, this form is osmotically fragile; however, they are protected by their intracellular location.

Chlamydiae replicate by means of a unique growth cycle that occurs within susceptible host cells (Fig. 35.1). The cycle is initiated when the small (300- to 400-nm), infectious EBs become attached to the microvilli of susceptible cells, followed by active penetration into the host cell. After they are internalized, the bacteria remain within cytoplasmic phagosomes, in which the replicative cycle proceeds. If the outer membrane of the EB is intact, fusion of cellular lysosomes with the EB-containing phagosome is inhibited, preventing intracellular killing. If the outer membrane is damaged or the bacteria are inactivated by heat or coated with antibodies, phagolysosomal fusion occurs, with subsequent bacterial killing. Within 6 to 8 hours after entering the cell, the EBs reorganize into the larger (800- to 1000-nm), metabolically active RBs. Chlamydiae are **energy parasites** because they use host cell adenosine triphosphate for their energy requirements. Some strains may also depend on the host to provide specific amino acids. The RBs replicate by binary fission, similar to other bacteria, and histologic stains can readily detect the phagosome with accumulated RBs, which is called an **inclusion.** Approximately 18 to 24 hours after infection, the RBs begin reorganizing into the smaller EBs, and between 48 and 72 hours, the cell ruptures and then releases the infectious bacteria.

TABLE 35.1 Important Chlamydiaceae

Organism	Historical Derivation
Chlamydia	*chlamydis,* a cloak
C. trachomatis	*trachomatis,* of trachoma or rough (the disease trachoma is characterized by rough granulations on the conjunctival surfaces that lead to chronic inflammation and blindness)
C. pneumoniae	*pneumoniae,* pneumonia
C. psittaci	*psittacus,* a parrot (disease associated with birds)

CHLAMYDIA TRACHOMATIS

C. trachomatis has a limited host range, with infections restricted to humans (Box 35.1). The species responsible for human disease are subdivided into two **biovars: trachoma** and **lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV).** The biovars have been further divided into **serovars** based on antigenic differences in the MOMP. Specific serovars are associated with specific diseases (Table 35.3).

Pathogenesis and Immunity

The range of cells that *C. trachomatis* can infect is limited. Receptors for EBs are primarily restricted to nonciliated columnar, cuboidal, and transitional epithelial cells, which are found on the mucous membranes of the urethra, endocervix, endometrium, fallopian tubes, anorectum, respiratory tract, and conjunctivae. The LGV serovars are more invasive than the other serovars because they replicate in mononuclear phagocytes. The clinical manifestations of chlamydial infections are caused by (1) the direct destruction of cells during replication, and (2) the proinflammatory cytokine response they stimulate.

Chlamydiae gain access through minute abrasions or lacerations. In LGV, the lesions form in the lymph nodes draining the site of primary infection (Fig. 35.2). Granuloma formation is characteristic. The lesions may become necrotic, attract polymorphonuclear leukocytes, and cause the inflammatory process to spread to surrounding tissues. Subsequent rupture of the lymph node leads to formation of abscesses or sinus tracts. Infection with non-LGV serovars of *C. trachomatis* stimulates a severe inflammatory response consisting of neutrophils, lymphocytes, and plasma cells.

Infection does not confer long-lasting immunity; rather, reinfection characteristically induces a vigorous

TABLE 35.2 Differentiation of *Chlamydia* That Cause Human Disease

Property	*C. trachomatis*	*C. pneumoniae*	*C. psittaci*
Host range	Primarily human pathogen	Primarily human pathogen	Primarily animal pathogen; occasionally infects humans
Biovars	LGV and trachoma	TWAR	Many
Diseases	LGV; ocular trachoma, oculogenital disease, infant pneumonia	Bronchitis, pneumonia, sinusitis, pharyngitis, coronary artery disease (?)	Pneumonia (psittacosis)
Elementary body morphology	Round, narrow periplasmic space	Pear-shaped, large periplasmic space	Round, narrow periplasmic space
Inclusion body morphology	Single round inclusion per cell	Multiple uniform inclusions per cell	Multiple variably sized inclusions per cell
Plasmid DNA	Yes	No	Yes
Iodine-staining glycogen in inclusions	Yes	No	No
Susceptibility to sulfonamides	Yes	No	No

LGV, Lymphogranuloma venereum.

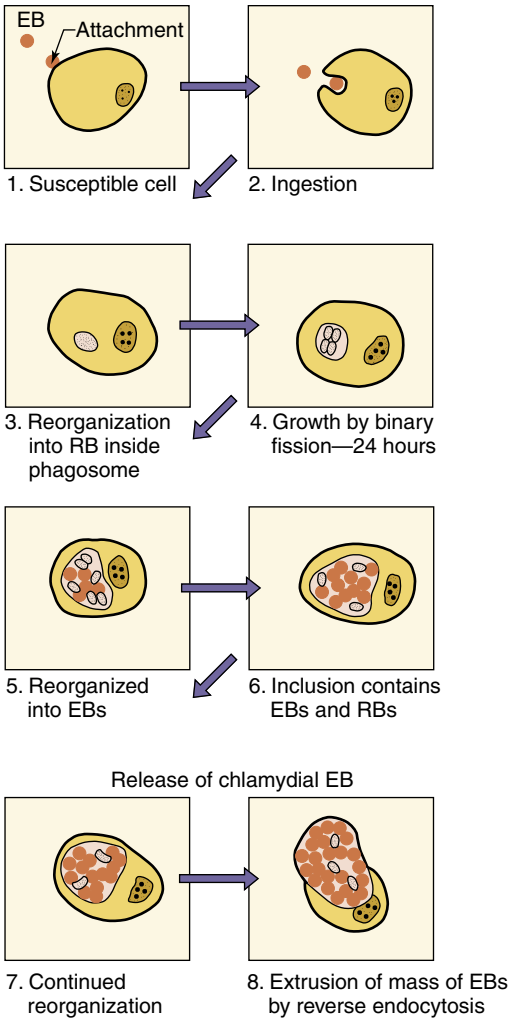


Fig. 35.1 Growth cycle of *Chlamydia trachomatis*. *EB,* Elementary body; *RB,* reticulate body. (Modified from Batteiger, B., Jones, R., 1987. Chlamydial infections. Infectious Disease Clinics of North America 1, 55–81.)

BOX 35.1 Chlamydiaceae: Clinical Summaries

Chlamydia trachomatis

Trachoma: chronic inflammatory granulomatous process of eye surface, leading to corneal ulceration, scarring, pannus formation, and blindness

Adult inclusion conjunctivitis: acute process with mucopurulent discharge, dermatitis, corneal infiltrates, and corneal vascularization in chronic disease

Neonatal conjunctivitis: acute process characterized by a mucopurulent discharge

Infant pneumonia: after a 2- to 3-week incubation period, the infant develops rhinitis, followed by bronchitis with a characteristic dry cough

Urogenital infections: acute process involving the genitourinary tract with characteristic mucopurulent discharge; asymptomatic infections common in women

Lymphogranuloma venereum: a painless ulcer develops at the site of infection that spontaneously heals, followed by inflammation and swelling of lymph nodes draining the area, then progression to systemic symptoms

BOX 35.1 Chlamydiaceae: Clinical Summaries—cont'd

Chlamydia pneumoniae

Respiratory infections: can range from asymptomatic or mild disease to severe atypical pneumonia requiring hospitalization

Atherosclerosis: *C. pneumoniae* has been associated with inflammatory plaques in blood vessels; the etiologic role in this disease is controversial

Chlamydia psittaci

Respiratory infections: can range from asymptomatic colonization to severe bronchopneumonia with localized infiltration of inflammatory cells, necrosis, and hemorrhage

TABLE 35.3 Clinical Spectrum of *Chlamydia trachomatis* Infections

Serovars	Disease
A, B, Ba, C	Trachoma
D–K	Urogenital tract disease
L1, L2, L2a, L2b, L3	Lymphogranuloma venereum

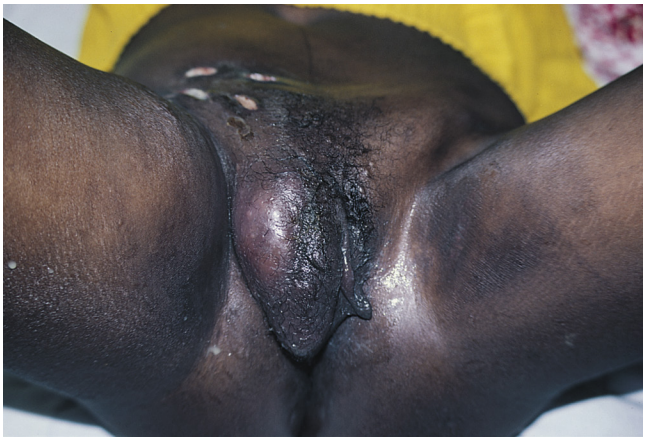


Fig. 35.2 Patient with lymphogranuloma venereum causing unilateral vulvar lymphedema and inguinal buboes. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.)

inflammatory response with subsequent tissue damage. This response produces the vision loss in patients with chronic ocular infections, and scarring with sterility and sexual dysfunction in patients with genital infections.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

C. trachomatis is found worldwide and causes trachoma (chronic keratoconjunctivitis), oculogenital disease, pneumonia, and LGV. Trachoma is endemic in North and sub-Saharan Africa, the Middle East, South Asia, and South America. The World Health Organization estimates 6 million people are blind because of trachoma, and more than 150 million people are in need of treatment. Trachoma is the **leading cause of preventable blindness.** Infections occur predominantly in children, who are the chief reservoir of *C.*

trachomatis in endemic areas. The incidence of infection is lower in older children and adolescents; however, the incidence of blindness continues to rise through adulthood as the disease progresses. Eye-to-eye transmission of trachoma is by droplet, hands, contaminated clothing, and flies that transmit ocular discharges from the eyes of infected children to the eyes of uninfected children. Because a high percentage of children in endemic areas harbor *C. trachomatis* in their respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts, the pathogen may also be transmitted by respiratory droplet or through fecal contamination. Trachoma generally is endemic in communities in which the living conditions are crowded, sanitation is poor, and the personal hygiene of the people is poor; they are all risk factors that promote the transmission of infections.

Most cases of *C. trachomatis* **adult inclusion conjunctivitis** occur in people who are 18 to 30 years of age, and genital infection probably precedes eye involvement. Autoinoculation and oral-genital contact are believed to be the routes of transmission. A third form of *C. trachomatis* eye infection is **newborn inclusion conjunctivitis,** which is an infection acquired during passage of the infant through an infected birth canal. *C. trachomatis* conjunctivitis develops in approximately 25% of infants whose mothers have active genital infections.

Pulmonary infection with *C. trachomatis* also occurs in newborns. A diffuse **interstitial pneumonia** develops in 10% to 20% of infants exposed to the pathogen at birth.

C. trachomatis is thought to be the most common **sexually transmitted bacterial disease** in the United States. More than 1.7 million infections were reported in the United States in 2017; however, this figure is believed to be an underestimate because most infected patients either do not seek medical treatment or are treated without a specific diagnosis. It is estimated that almost 3 million Americans are infected each year, and as many as 50 million new infections occur annually worldwide. Most genital tract infections are caused by serotypes D to K.

LGV is a chronic sexually transmitted disease caused by *C. trachomatis* serotypes L1, L2, L2a, L2b, and L3. It occurs sporadically in the United States and other industrialized countries but is highly prevalent in Africa, Asia, and South America. Acute LGV is seen more frequently in men, primarily because symptomatic infection is less common in women.

Clinical Diseases

Trachoma

Trachoma is a **chronic disease** caused by serovars A, B, Ba, and C. Initially, patients have a **follicular conjunctivitis** with diffuse inflammation that involves the entire conjunctiva. The conjunctivae become scarred as the disease progresses, causing the patient's eyelids to turn inward. The turned-in eyelashes abrade the cornea, eventually resulting in corneal ulceration, scarring, pannus formation (invasion of vessels into the cornea), and loss of vision. It is common for trachoma to recur after apparent healing, which is most likely a result of subclinical infections that have been documented in children in endemic areas and in immigrants to the United States who acquired trachoma during childhood in their native countries.

Adult Inclusion Conjunctivitis

An acute follicular conjunctivitis caused by the *C. trachomatis* strains associated with genital infections (serovars A, B, Ba, and D to K) has been documented in sexually active adults. The infection is characterized by mucopurulent discharge, keratitis, corneal infiltrates, and occasionally some corneal vascularization. Corneal scarring has been observed in patients with chronic infection.

Clinical Case 35.1 *Chlamydia trachomatis* Pneumonia in Newborn Infants

Niida and associates (*Eur J Pediatr* 157:950–951, 1998) described two infant girls with *C. trachomatis* pneumonia. The first infant was born by vaginal delivery after 39 weeks' gestation and the second by caesarean section (because of fetal distress) at 40 weeks' gestation. The infants were in good condition until fever and tachypnea developed at 3 and 13 days, respectively. Chest radiographs showed infiltrates over the entire lungs. Cultures of blood, urine, throat, feces, and cerebrospinal fluid were negative, but antigen tests for *C. trachomatis* were positive from conjunctival and nasopharyngeal swabs. These cases illustrate the presentation of pneumonia in infants infected with *C. trachomatis* at or near birth, although the characteristic staccato cough was not described.

Neonatal Conjunctivitis

Eye infections can also develop in **infants exposed to *C. trachomatis* at birth.** After an incubation of 5 to 12 days, the infant's eyelids swell, hyperemia occurs, and copious purulent discharge appears. Untreated infections may run a course as long as 12 months, during which time conjunctival scarring and corneal vascularization occur. Infants who are untreated or are treated with topical therapy only are at risk for *C. trachomatis* pneumonia.

Infant Pneumonia

The incubation period for infant pneumonia is variable, but the onset generally occurs 2 to 3 weeks after birth. Rhinitis is initially observed in such infants, after which a **distinctive staccato cough** develops. The child remains afebrile throughout the clinical illness, which can last for several weeks. Radiographic signs of infection can persist for months (Clinical Case 35.1).

Ocular Lymphogranuloma Venereum

The LGV serotypes of *C. trachomatis* have been implicated in Parinaud oculoglandular conjunctivitis, which is a conjunctival inflammation associated with preauricular, submandibular, and cervical lymphadenopathy.

Urogenital Infections

Most genital tract infections in women are asymptomatic (as many as 80%) but can nevertheless become symptomatic. The clinical manifestations include bartholinitis, cervicitis, endometritis, perihepatitis, salpingitis, and urethritis. Asymptomatic patients with chlamydial infection are an important reservoir for the spread of *C. trachomatis*. A mucopurulent discharge (Fig. 35.3) is seen in patients with symptomatic infection, whose specimens generally yield more organisms on cultures than specimens from patients with asymptomatic infections. Urethritis caused by *C. trachomatis* may occur with or without a concurrent cervical infection (Clinical Case 25.2).

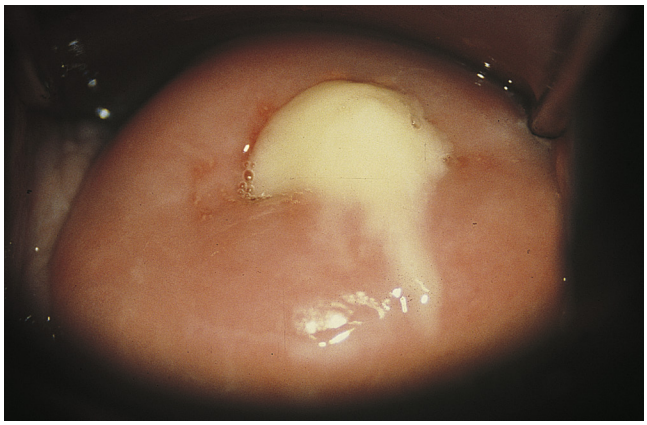


Fig. 35.3 Mucopurulent cervicitis caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis.* (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W. 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO; photo courtesy J. Paavonen.)

Although most *C. trachomatis* genital infections in men are symptomatic, and as many as 25% of the infections will be inapparent. Approximately 35% to 50% of cases of nongonococcal urethritis are caused by *C. trachomatis;* dual infections with both *C. trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* are common. Symptoms of the chlamydial infection develop after successful treatment of the gonorrhea because the incubation period is longer and the use of β-lactam antibiotics to treat gonorrhea would be ineffective against *C. trachomatis*. Although there is less purulent exudate in patients with chlamydial urethral infections, such infections cannot be differentiated reliably from gonorrhea, so specific diagnostic tests for both organisms should be performed.

It is believed that **Reiter syndrome** (urethritis, conjunctivitis, polyarthritis, and mucocutaneous lesions) is initiated by genital infection with *C. trachomatis*. Although chlamydiae have not been isolated from the synovial fluid of such patients, chlamydial EBs have been observed in synovial fluid or tissue specimens from men with sexually acquired reactive arthritis. The disease usually occurs in young white men. Approximately 50% to 65% of patients with Reiter syndrome have a chlamydial genital infection at the onset of arthritis, and serologic studies indicate that more than 80% of men with Reiter syndrome have evidence of a preceding or concurrent infection with *C. trachomatis*.

Lymphogranuloma Venereum

After an incubation of 1 to 4 weeks, a primary lesion appears at the site of infection (e.g., penis, urethra, glans, scrotum, vaginal wall, cervix, vulva) in patients with LGV. The lesion (either a papule or an ulcer) is often overlooked because it is small, painless, and heals rapidly. The absence of pain differentiates these ulcers from those observed in herpes simplex virus infections. The patient may experience fever, headache, and myalgia when the lesion is present.

The second stage of infection is marked by inflammation and swelling of the lymph nodes draining the site of initial infection. The inguinal nodes are most commonly involved, becoming painful, fluctuant **buboes** that gradually enlarge and can rupture, forming draining fistulas. Systemic manifestations include fever, chills, anorexia, headache, meningismus, myalgias, and arthralgia.

Proctitis is common in women with LGV, resulting from lymphatic spread from the cervix or the vagina. Proctitis develops in men after anal intercourse or as the result of lymphatic spread from the urethra. Untreated LGV may resolve at this stage or may progress to a chronic ulcerative phase in which genital ulcers, fistulas, strictures, or genital elephantiasis develop.

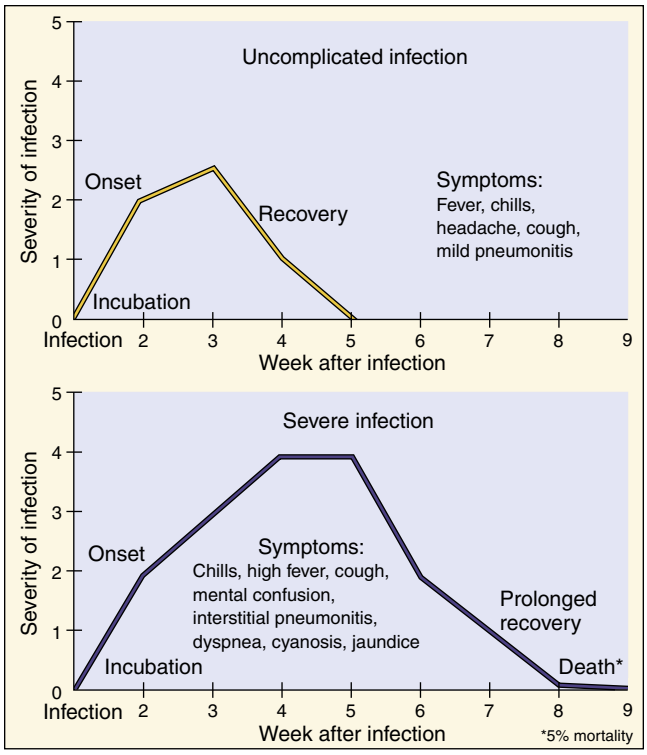


Fig. 35.4 Time course of *Chlamydia psittaci* infection.

Laboratory Diagnosis

C. trachomatis infection can be diagnosed (1) on the basis of cytologic, serologic, or culture findings; (2) through the direct detection of antigen in clinical specimens; and (3) through the use of nucleic acid–based tests. The sensitivity of each method depends on the patient population examined, the site in which the specimen is obtained, and the nature of the disease. For example, symptomatic infections are generally easier to diagnose than asymptomatic infections because more chlamydiae are present in the specimen. The quality of the specimen is also important. Although it may seem obvious, specimens must be obtained from the involved site (e.g., urethra, cervix, rectum, oropharynx, conjunctiva) and not from pus or a vaginal exudate, where relatively few organisms may be present. Chlamydiae infect columnar or squamocolumnar cells; therefore endocervical and not vaginal specimens should be collected. It has been estimated that one-third of the specimens submitted for study in patients with suspected *Chlamydia* infection are inappropriate.

Antigen Detection

Two general approaches have been used to detect chlamydial antigens in clinical specimens: **direct immunofluorescence staining** with fluorescein-conjugated monoclonal antibodies (Fig. 35.4) and **enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays.** In both assays, antibodies are used that have been prepared against either the chlamydial MOMP or the cell wall LPS. Because antigenic determinants on LPS may

Clinical Case 35.2 **Reiter Syndrome and Pelvic Inflammatory Disease**

Serwin and associates (*J Eur Acad Derm Vener* 20:735–736, 2006) described a 30-year-old man who presented to a university hospital with complaints of dysuria for a 3-year duration, penile inflammation, joint swelling, and fever. Skin lesions and nail changes were also noted. High levels of *Chlamydia* antibodies were present, but antigen tests and nucleic acid amplification tests of the urethral exudates and conjunctiva were negative for *Chlamydia trachomatis*. A diagnosis of Reiter syndrome was made, and treatment with ofloxacin was initiated. Complete remission of the skin lesions and urethral symptoms was achieved. The patient's wife was also admitted to the hospital with a history of 2 years of lower abdominal pain and vaginal bleeding and discharge. The diagnosis of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) was made, and *C. trachomatis* infection was confirmed by positive cervical and urethral antigen tests (direct fluorescent antibody). The vaginal smear was also positive for *Trichomonas vaginalis*. These patients illustrate two complications of *C. trachomatis* urogenital infections: Reiter syndrome and PID.

be shared with other bacteria, particularly those in fecal specimens, tests that target the LPS antigen are less specific. The sensitivity of each assay method has been reported to vary enormously, but neither method is considered as sensitive as culture or nucleic acid–based tests, particularly if male urethral specimens or specimens from asymptomatic patients are used. The latter pose a problem because they may contain relatively few chlamydiae.

Nucleic Acid–Based Tests

NAATs are the test of choice for the diagnosis of chlamydia infections (generally reported to be 90% to 98% sensitive and very specific). First-voided urine from a patient with urethritis and urethral discharge can be used. Care must be used to monitor for the presence of inhibitors (e.g., urine) to the amplification reaction and to prevent cross-contamination of specimens.

Culture

The isolation of *C. trachomatis* in cell culture remains the most **specific** method of diagnosing *C. trachomatis* infections but is **relatively insensitive** compared with NAATs. The bacteria infect a restricted range of cell lines in vitro, which is similar to the narrow range of cells they infect in vivo. The sensitivity of culture is compromised if inadequate specimens are used and if chlamydial viability has been lost during transport of the specimen. It has been estimated that the sensitivity of the findings yielded by a single endocervical specimen may be only 70% to 85%.

Antibody Detection

Serologic testing is of limited value in the diagnosis of *C. trachomatis* urogenital infections in adults because the test cannot differentiate between current and past infections. Demonstration of a significant increase in antibody levels can be useful; however, this increase may not be demonstrated for a month or longer, particularly in patients who receive antibiotic treatment. Testing for immunoglobulin (Ig)M antibodies also is not usually helpful because these antibodies may not be detected in adolescents and adults. An exception is the detection of IgM antibodies in infants with chlamydial pneumonitis.

Antibody tests for the diagnosis of LGV can be helpful. Infected patients produce a vigorous antibody response that can be detected by complement fixation (CF), microimmunofluorescence (MIF), or enzyme immunoassay (EIA). The CF test is directed against the genus-specific LPS antigen. Thus a positive result (i.e., fourfold increase in titer or a single titer ≥1:256) is highly suggestive of LGV. Confirmation is determined by the MIF test, which is directed against species- and serovar-specific antigens (the chlamydial MOMPs). Similar to the CF test, EIAs are genus specific. The advantage of these tests is that they are less technically cumbersome; however, the results must be confirmed by MIF.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

It is recommended that patients with LGV be treated with doxycycline for 21 days. Treatment with erythromycin is recommended for children younger than 9 years, pregnant women, and patients unable to tolerate doxycycline. Ocular and genital infections in adults should be treated with one dose of azithromycin or doxycycline for 7 days. Newborn conjunctivitis and pneumonia should be treated with erythromycin for 10 to 14 days.

It is difficult to prevent trachoma because the population with endemic disease commonly has limited access to medical care. The blindness associated with advanced stages of trachoma can be prevented only by prompt treatment of early disease and prevention of reexposure. Although treatment can be successful in individuals living in areas in which the disease is endemic, it is difficult to eradicate the disease within a population and to prevent reinfections unless sanitary conditions are improved. *Chlamydia* conjunctivitis and genital infections are prevented through the use of safe sex practices and the prompt treatment of symptomatic patients and their sexual partners.

CHLAMYDIA PNEUMONIAE

C. pneumoniae was first isolated from the conjunctiva of a child in Taiwan. It was initially considered a psittacosis strain because the morphology of the inclusions produced in cell culture was similar. However, it was subsequently shown that the Taiwan isolate (TW-183) was related serologically to a pharyngeal isolate designated AR-39 and was unrelated to psittacosis strains. This new organism was initially called TWAR (from the two original isolates), then classified as *Chlamydia pneumoniae.* Only a single serotype (TWAR) has been identified. Respiratory secretions transmit infection; no animal reservoir has been identified.

C. pneumoniae is a **human pathogen** that causes sinusitis, pharyngitis, bronchitis, and pneumonia. Infections are believed to be transmitted person to person by respiratory secretions. The prevalence of infections is very controversial, with wide variations reported in the literature, in large part because of significant variation in diagnostic test methods. It is believed that most *C. pneumoniae* infections are asymptomatic or mild, causing a persistent cough and malaise; most patients do not require hospitalization. More

severe respiratory tract infections typically involve a single lobe of the lungs. These infections cannot be differentiated from other atypical pneumonias such as those caused by *Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Legionella pneumophila,* and respiratory viruses.

The role of *C. pneumoniae* in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis remains to be defined. It is known that *C. pneumoniae* can infect and grow in smooth muscle cells, endothelial cells of the coronary artery, and macrophages. The organism has also been demonstrated in biopsy specimens of atherosclerotic lesions by means of culture, polymerase chain reaction amplification, immunohistologic staining, electron microscopy, and in situ hybridization. Thus the association of *C. pneumoniae* with atherosclerotic lesions is clear. What is not clear is the role of the organism in the development of atherosclerosis. It has been proposed that the disease results from an inflammatory response to chronic infection; however, this remains to be proven.

Diagnosis of *C. pneumoniae* infections is difficult. The organisms do not grow in the cell lines used for the isolation of *C. trachomatis,* and although *C. pneumoniae* will grow in the HEp-2 cell line, this cell line is not used in most clinical laboratories. Detection of *C. pneumoniae* by NAATs has been successful; however, significant interlaboratory variation has been reported among laboratories with experience in the use of these assays. The MIF test is the only acceptable test for serodiagnosis. The criteria for the diagnosis of acute *C. pneumoniae* infection is a single IgM titer of greater than 16 or a fourfold increase in IgG titer. A single elevated IgG titer cannot be used. Because IgG antibodies do not appear for 6 to 8 weeks after infection, serologic testing has limited value for the diagnosis of an acute infection.

Macrolides (erythromycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin), doxycycline, or levofloxacin is recommended for treatment of *C. pneumoniae* infections, although evidence supporting their use is limited. Control of exposure to *C. pneumoniae* is likely to be difficult because the bacterium is ubiquitous.

CHLAMYDIA PSITTACI

C. psittaci is the cause of psittacosis (parrot fever), which can be transmitted to humans. The disease was first observed in parrots, thus the name **psittacosis** (*psittakos* is the Greek word for parrot). In reality, however, the natural reservoir of *C. psittaci* is virtually any species of bird, and the disease has been referred to more appropriately as **ornithosis** (derived from the Greek word *ornithos,* for bird). Other animals, such as sheep, cows, and goats, as well as humans, can become infected. The organism is present in the blood, tissues, feces, and feathers of infected birds that may appear either ill or healthy (Clinical Case 35.3).

Infection occurs by means of the respiratory tract, after which the bacteria spread to the reticuloendothelial cells of the liver and spleen. The organisms multiply in these sites, producing focal necrosis. The lung and other organs are then seeded as the result of hematogenous spread, which causes a predominantly lymphocytic inflammatory response in the alveolar and interstitial spaces. Edema, thickening of the alveolar wall, infiltration of macrophages, necrosis, and occasionally hemorrhage occur at these sites. Mucous plugs develop in the bronchioles, causing cyanosis and anoxia.

Clinical Case 35.3 **Psittacosis in a Previously Healthy Man**

Scully and associates (*N Engl J Med* 338:1527–1535, 1998) described a 24-year-old man who was admitted into a local hospital in acute respiratory distress. Several days before his hospitalization, he developed nasal congestion, myalgia, dry cough, mild dyspnea, and a headache. Immediately before admission, the cough became productive and he developed pleuritic pain, fever, chills, and diarrhea. Radiographs demonstrated consolidation of the right upper lobe of the lungs and patchy infiltrates in the left lower lobe. Despite the fact that his antibiotic treatment included erythromycin, doxycycline, ceftriaxone, and vancomycin, his pulmonary status did not begin to improve for 7 days, and he was not discharged from the hospital until a month after his admission. A careful history revealed the man had been exposed to parrots in a hotel lobby while vacationing. The diagnosis of *Chlamydia psittaci* pneumonia was made by growing the organism in cell culture and serologic tests.

Fewer than 25 cases of the disease are reported annually in the United States, with most infections in adults. This number certainly is an underestimation of the true prevalence of disease, however, because (1) human infections may be asymptomatic or mild, (2) exposure to an infected bird may not be suspected, (3) convalescent serum may not be collected to confirm the clinical diagnosis, and (4) antibiotic therapy may blunt the antibody response. Furthermore, because of the serologic cross-reactions with *C. pneumoniae,* specific estimates of the prevalence of disease will remain unreliable until a definitive diagnostic test is developed.

The bacterium is usually transmitted to humans through the inhalation of dried excrement, urine, or respiratory secretions from psittacine birds (e.g., parrots, parakeets, macaws, cockatiels). Person-to-person transmission is rare. Veterinarians, zookeepers, pet shop workers, and employees of poultry-processing plants are at increased risk for this infection.

The illness develops after an incubation of 5 to 14 days and usually manifests as headache, high fever, chills, malaise, and myalgias (see Fig. 35.4). Pulmonary signs include a nonproductive cough, rales, and consolidation. Central nervous system involvement is common, usually consisting of headache, but encephalitis, convulsions, coma, and death may occur in severe untreated cases. Patients may suffer gastrointestinal tract symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Other systemic symptoms include carditis, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, and follicular keratoconjunctivitis.

Psittacosis is usually diagnosed on the basis of serologic findings. A fourfold increase in titer, shown by the CF testing of paired acute and convalescent phase sera, is suggestive of *C. psittaci* infection, but the species-specific MIF test must be performed to confirm the diagnosis. *C. psittaci* can be isolated in cell culture (e.g., with L cells) after 5 to 10 days of incubation, although this procedure is rarely performed in clinical laboratories.

Infections can be treated successfully with doxycycline or macrolides. Person-to-person transmission rarely occurs, so isolation of the patient and prophylactic treatment of contacts are not necessary. Psittacosis can be prevented only through the control of infections in domestic and imported

pet birds. Such control can be achieved by treating birds with chlortetracycline hydrochloride for 45 days. No vaccine currently exists for this disease.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Bebear, C., de Barbeyrac, B., 2009. Genital chlamydia trachomatis infections. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 15, 4–10.

Beeckman, D., Vanrompay, D., 2009. Zoonotic chlamydophila psittaci infections from a clinical perspective. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 15, 11–17.

Byrne, G., 2010. Chlamydia trachomatis strains and virulence: rethinking links to infection prevalence and disease severity. J. Infect. Dis. 201, S126–S133.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2014. Recommendations for the laboratory-based detection of chlamydia trachomatis and Neisseria gonorrhoeae—2014. MMWR. Recomm. Rep. 63 (RR–02), 1–19.

Gambhir, M., Basáñez, M.G., Turner, F., et al., 2007. Trachoma: transmission, infection, and control. Lancet. Infect. Dis. 7, 420–427.

Kern, J., Maass, V., Maass, M., 2009. Molecular pathogenesis of chronic chlamydia pneumoniae infections: a brief overview. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 15, 36–41.

Kumar, S., Hammerschlag, M., 2007. Acute respiratory infection due to chlamydia pneumoniae: current status of diagnostic methods. Clin. Infect. Dis. 44, 568–576.

Liechti, G.W., Kuru, E., Hall, E., et al., 2014. A new metabolic cell-wall labeling method reveals peptidoglycan in chlamydia trachomatis. Nature 506, 507–510.

Morré, S.A., Rozendaal, L., van Valkengoed, I.G., et al., 2000. Urogenital chlamydia trachomatis serovars in men and women with a symptomatic or asymptomatic infection: an association with clinical manifestations? J. Clin. Microbiol. 38, 2292–2296.

Nieuwenhuizen, A., Dijkstra, F., Notermans, D., van der Hoek, W., 2018. Laboratory methods for case finding in human psittacosis outbreaks: a systematic review. BMC. Infect. Dis. 18, 442–458.

Nunes, A., Gomes, J., 2014. Evolution, phylogeny, and molecular epidemiology of chlamydia. Infect. Genet. Evol. 23, 49–64.

Van der Bij, A.K., Spaargaren, J., Morré, S.A., et al., 2006. Diagnostic and clinical implications of anorectal lymphogranuloma venereum in men who have sex with men: a retrospective case-control study. Clin. Infect. Dis. 42, 186–194.

Vasilevsky, S., Greub, G., Nardelli-Haefliger, D., et al., 2014. Genital chlamydia trachomatis: understanding the roles of innate and adaptive immunity in vaccine research. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 27, 346–370.

Case Study and Questions

A 22-year-old man came to the emergency department with a history of urethral pain and purulent discharge that developed after he had sexual contact with a prostitute. Gram stain of the discharge revealed abundant gram-negative diplococci resembling *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. The patient was treated with penicillin and sent home. Two days later, the patient returned to the emergency room with a complaint of persistent watery urethral discharge. Abundant white blood cells but no organisms were observed on Gram stain of the discharge. Culture of the discharge was negative for *N. gonorrhoeae* but positive for *Chlamydia trachomatis*.

1. Why is penicillin ineffective against *Chlamydia*? What antibiotic can be used to treat this patient?

2. Describe the growth cycle of *Chlamydia.* What structural features make the EBs and RBs well suited for their environment?

3. Describe the differences among the three *Chlamydia* species that cause human disease.

4. *C. trachomatis, C. pneumoniae,* and *C. psittaci* each cause respiratory tract infections. Describe the patient population most commonly infected and the epidemiology of these infections.

SECTION 5

Virology

SECTION OUTLINE

36 Viral Classification, Structure, and Replication

Viruses were first described as "filterable agents." Their small size allows them to pass through filters designed to retain bacteria. Unlike most bacteria, fungi, and parasites, **viruses are obligate intracellular parasites** that depend on the biochemical machinery of the host cell for replication. In addition, *reproduction of viruses occurs by assembly of the individual components rather than by binary fission* (Boxes 36.1 and 36.2).

The simplest viruses consist of a genome of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA) packaged in a protective shell of protein and, for some viruses, a membrane (Fig. 36.1). Viruses lack the capacity to make energy or substrates, cannot make their own proteins, and cannot replicate their genome independently of the host cell. To use the cell's biosynthetic machinery, the virus must be adapted to the biochemical rules of the cell.

The physical structure and genetics of viruses have been optimized by mutation and selection to infect humans or other hosts. To do this, the virus must be capable of transmission between hosts, must traverse the skin or other protective barriers of the host, must be adapted to the biochemical machinery of the host cell for replication, and must escape elimination by the host immune response.

Knowledge of the structural **(size and morphology)** and genetic **(type and structure of nucleic acid)** features of a virus provides insight into how the virus replicates, spreads, and causes disease. The concepts presented in this chapter are repeated in greater detail in the discussions of specific viruses in later chapters.

Classification

Viruses range from the structurally simple and small parvoviruses and picornaviruses to the large and complex poxviruses and herpesviruses. Their names may describe viral characteristics, the diseases they are associated with, or even the tissue or geographic locale in which they were first identified. Names such as **picornavirus** (*pico*, "small"; *rna*, "ribonucleic acid") or **togavirus** (*toga*, Greek for "mantle," referring to a membrane envelope surrounding the virus) describe the structure of the virus. The name **retrovirus** (*retro*, "reverse") refers to the virus-directed synthesis of DNA from an RNA template, whereas the *poxviruses* are named for the disease smallpox, caused by one of its members. The **adenoviruses** (*adeno*ids) and the **reoviruses** (*r*espiratory, *e*nteric, *o*rphan) are named for the body site from which they were first isolated. Reovirus was discovered before it was associated with a specific disease; thus it was designated an "orphan" virus. Norwalk virus is named for Norwalk, Ohio; coxsackievirus is named for Coxsackie, New York; and many of the togaviruses, arenaviruses, and bunyaviruses are named after African places in which they were first isolated.

Viruses can be grouped by characteristics such as disease (e.g., hepatitis), target tissue, means of transmission (e.g., enteric, respiratory), or vector (e.g., arboviruses; arthropod-borne virus) (Box 36.3). *The most consistent and current means of classification is by physical and biochemical characteristics, such as size, morphology (e.g., presence or absence of a membrane envelope), type of genome, and means of replication* (Figs. 36.2 and 36.3). DNA viruses associated with human disease are divided into seven families (Tables 36.1 and 36.2). The RNA viruses may be divided into at least 13 families (Tables 36.3 and 36.4).

Virion Structure

The units for measurement of virion size are nanometers (nm). The clinically important viruses range from 18 nm (parvoviruses) to 300 nm (poxviruses). The latter are almost visible with a light microscope and are approximately one-fourth the size of staphylococcal bacteria. *Larger virions can hold a larger genome that can encode more proteins, and they are generally more complex.*

The **virion** (the virus particle) consists of a nucleic acid **genome** packaged into a protein coat **(capsid)** or a membrane **(envelope)** (Fig. 36.4). The virion may also contain certain essential or accessory enzymes or other proteins to facilitate initial replication in the cell. Capsid or nucleic acid–binding proteins may associate with the genome to form a **nucleocapsid,** which may be the same as the virion or surrounded by an envelope.

The genome of the virus consists either of DNA or RNA. The DNA can be single stranded or double stranded or linear or circular. The RNA can be either positive sense (+) (like messenger RNA [mRNA]) or negative sense (−) (analogous to a photographic negative), double stranded (+/−), or ambisense (containing + and − regions of RNA attached end to end). The RNA genome may also be segmented into pieces, with each piece encoding one or more genes. Just as there are many different types of computer memory devices, all of these forms of nucleic acid can maintain and transmit the genetic information of the virus. Similarly, the larger the genome, the more information (genes) it can carry and the larger the capsid or envelope structure required to contain the genome.

The outer layer of the virion is the **capsid** or **envelope.** These structures are the package, protection, and delivery vehicle during transmission of the virus from one host to another and for spread within the host to the target cell. The surface structures of the capsid and envelope mediate the interaction of the virus with the target cell through a **viral attachment protein (VAP)** or structure. *Removal or disruption of the outer package inactivates the virus. Antibodies generated against the VAP prevent virus infection.*

BOX 36.1 Definition and Properties of a Virus

Viruses are filterable agents.
Viruses are obligate intracellular parasites.
Viruses cannot make energy or proteins independently of a host cell.
Viral genomes may be RNA or DNA but not both.
Viruses have a naked capsid or an envelope morphology.
Viral components are assembled and do not replicate by "division."

BOX 36.2 Consequences of Viral Properties

Viruses are not living.
Viruses must be infectious to endure in nature.
Viruses must be able to use host cell processes to produce their components (viral messenger RNA, protein, and identical copies of the genome).
Viruses must encode any required processes not provided by the cell.
Viral components must self-assemble.

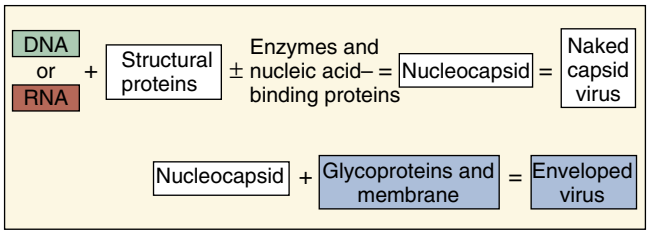


Fig. 36.1 Components of the basic virion.

BOX 36.3 Means of Classification and Naming of Viruses

Structure: size, morphology, and nucleic acid (e.g., picornavirus [small RNA], togavirus)
Biochemical characteristics: structure and mode of replication[a]
Disease: encephalitis and hepatitis viruses, for example
Means of transmission: arbovirus spread by insects, for example
Host cell (host range): animal (human, mouse, bird), plant, bacteria
Tissue or organ (tropism): adenovirus and enterovirus, for example

[a]This is the current means of taxonomic classification of viruses.

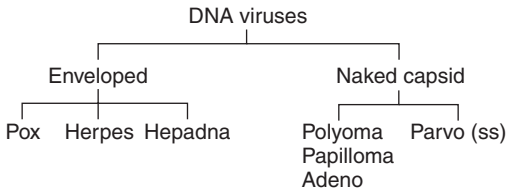


Fig. 36.2 DNA viruses and their morphology. The viral families are determined by the structure of the genome and the morphology of the virion. *ss,* Single-stranded genome.

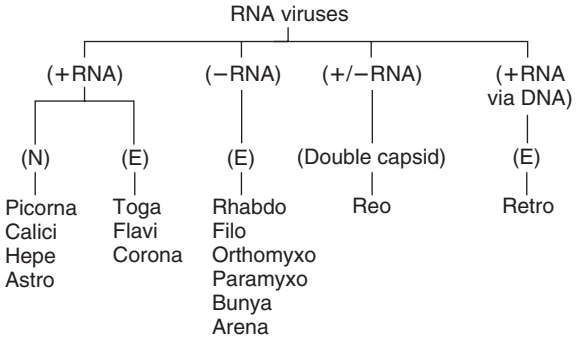


Fig. 36.3 RNA viruses, their genome structure, and their morphology. The viral families are determined by the structure of the genome and the morphology of the virion. *E,* Enveloped; *N,* naked capsid.

TABLE 36.1 Families of DNA Viruses and Some Important Members

Family[a]	Members[b]
POXVIRIDAE	*Smallpox virus,* vaccinia virus, monkeypox, canarypox, molluscum contagiosum
Herpesviridae	*Herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2,* varicella-zoster virus, Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus, human herpesviruses 6, 7, and 8
Adenoviridae	*Adenovirus*
Papillomaviridae	*Papillomavirus*
Polyomaviridae	*JC virus,* BK virus, SV40
Parvoviridae	*Parvovirus B19,* adeno-associated virus
Hepadnaviridae	*Hepatitis B virus*

[a]The size of type is indicative of the relative size of the virus.
[b]The italicized virus is the prototype virus for the family.

The influence of virion structure on viral properties is summarized in Boxes 36.4 and 36.5.

The **capsid** is a rigid structure able to withstand harsh environmental conditions. Like a soccer ball, naked capsid viruses also have a tough exterior and are generally resistant to drying, acid, and detergents, including the acid and bile of the enteric tract. Many of these viruses are transmitted by the fecal-oral route and can endure transmission even in sewage.

The **envelope** is a membrane composed of lipids, proteins, and glycoproteins. The membranous structure of the envelope can be maintained only in aqueous solutions. It is readily disrupted by drying, acidic conditions, detergents, and solvents such as ether, which results in inactivation of the virus. *As a result, enveloped viruses must remain wet and are generally transmitted in fluids, respiratory droplets, blood, and tissue.* Most cannot survive the harsh conditions of the gastrointestinal tract.

CAPSID VIRUSES

The viral capsid is assembled from individual proteins associated into progressively larger units. All of the components of the capsid have chemical features that allow them to fit together and to assemble into a larger unit. Individual

TABLE 36.2 Properties of Virions of Human DNA Viruses

	GENOME[a]		VIRION		
Family	**Molecular Mass × 10^6 Da**	**Nature**	**Shape**	**Size (nm)**	**Encodes Polymerase?[b]**
Poxviridae	85–140	ds, linear	Brick-shaped, enveloped	300 × 240 × 100	+[c,e]
Herpesviridae	100–150	ds, linear	Icosadeltahedral, enveloped	Capsid, 100–110 Envelope, 120–200	+
Adenoviridae	20–25	ds, linear	Icosadeltahedral with fibers	70–90	+
Hepadnaviridae	1.8	ds, circular[d]	Spherical, enveloped	42	+[c,f]
Polyomaviridae and Papillomaviridae	3–5	ds, circular	Icosadeltahedral	45–55	—
Parvoviridae	1.5–2.0	ss, linear	Icosahedral	18–26	—

[a]Genome invariably a single molecule.
[b]DNA-dependent DNA polymerase (unless otherwise noted).
[c]Polymerase carried in the virion.
[d]Circular molecule is double stranded for most of its length but may contain a single-stranded region.
[e]Poxviruses also encode a DNA-dependent RNA polymerase.
[f]DNA-dependent RNA polymerase (reverse transcriptase).
ds, Double-stranded; *ss,* single-stranded.

TABLE 36.3 Families of RNA Viruses and Some Important Members

Family[a]	**Members[b]**
PARAMYXOVIRIDAE	Parainfluenza virus, Sendai virus, *measles virus,* mumps virus, respiratory syncytial virus, metapneumovirus
ORTHOMYXOVIRIDAE	*Influenza virus* types A, B, C and thogotoviruses
CORONAVIRIDAE	*Coronavirus,* SARS virus, MERS virus
Arenaviridae	*Lassa fever virus,* Tacaribe virus complex (Junin and Machupo viruses), lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus
Rhabdoviridae	*Rabies virus,* vesicular stomatitis virus
Filoviridae	*Ebola virus,* Marburg virus
Bunyaviridae	*California encephalitis virus,* La Crosse virus, sandfly fever virus, hemorrhagic fever virus, hantavirus
Retroviridae	Human T-cell leukemia virus types I and II, *HIV,* animal oncoviruses
Reoviridae	*Rotavirus*, Colorado tick fever virus
Togaviridae	Rubella virus; *western, eastern, and Venezuelan equine encephalitis virus;* Ross River virus; Sindbis virus; Semliki Forest virus; chikungunya virus
Flaviviridae	*Yellow fever virus,* dengue virus, St. Louis encephalitis virus, West Nile virus, hepatitis C virus
Caliciviridae	*Norwalk virus,* calicivirus
Picornaviridae	Rhinoviruses, *poliovirus,* echoviruses, parechovirus, coxsackievirus, hepatitis A virus
Hepeviridae	Hepatitis E virus
Astroviridae	Astrovirus
Delta	Delta agent

[a]The size of the type is indicative of the relative size of the virus.
[b]The italicized virus is the prototype virus for the family.
MERS, Middle East respiratory syndrome; *SARS,* severe acute respiratory syndrome; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus

structural proteins associate into **subunits,** which associate into **protomers, capsomeres** (distinguishable in electron micrographs), and finally, a recognizable **procapsid** or **capsid** (Fig. 36.5). A procapsid requires further processing to the final, transmissible capsid. For some viruses, the capsid forms around the genome; for others the capsid forms as an empty shell (procapsid) to be filled by the genome.

The simplest viral structures that can be built stepwise are symmetric and include **helical** and **icosahedral** structures. Helical structures appear as rods, whereas the icosahedron is an approximation of a sphere assembled from symmetric subunits (Fig. 36.6). Nonsymmetric capsids are complex forms and are associated with certain bacterial viruses (phages).

Helical nucleocapsids are observed within the envelope of most negative-strand RNA viruses (see Fig. 48.1). The nucleocapsid proteins bound to the genome will be delivered into the infected cell and are the enzymes necessary for transcription and replication. Simple icosahedrons are used by small viruses such as the picornaviruses and parvoviruses. The icosahedron is made of 12 capsomeres, each with fivefold symmetry (pentamer or penton). For the picornaviruses, every pentamer is made up of five protomers, each of which is composed of three subunits of four separate proteins (see Fig. 36.5). X-ray crystallography and image analysis of cryoelectron microscopy have defined the structure of the picornavirus capsid to the molecular level. These studies have depicted a canyon-like cleft, which is a "docking site" to bind to the receptor on the surface of the target cell (see Fig. 46.2).

Larger capsid virions are constructed by inserting structurally distinct capsomeres between the pentons at the vertices. These capsomeres have six nearest neighbors **(hexons).** This extends the icosahedron and is called an **icosadeltahedron,** and its size is determined by the number of hexons inserted along the edges and within the surfaces between the pentons. *Older soccer balls were icosadeltahedrons.* For example, the herpesvirus nucleocapsid has 12 pentons and 150 hexons. The herpesvirus nucleocapsid is also surrounded by an envelope. The adenovirus capsid is composed of 252 capsomeres, with 12 pentons

TABLE 36.4 Properties of Virions of Human RNA Viruses

	GENOME		VIRION			
Family	**Molecular Mass × 10^6 Da**	**Nature**	**Shape[a]**	**Size (nm)**	**Polymerase in Virion**	**Envelope[a]**
Paramyxoviridae	5–7	ss, –	Spherical	150–300	+	+
Orthomyxoviridae	5–7	ss, –, seg	Spherical	80–120	+	+
Coronaviridae	6–7	ss, +	Spherical	80–130	–	+[b]
Arenaviridae	3–5	ss, –, seg	Spherical	50–300	+	+[b]
Rhabdoviridae	4–7	ss, –	Bullet-shaped	180 × 75	+	+
Filoviridae	4–7	ss, –	Filamentous	800 × 80	+	+
Bunyaviridae	4–7	ss, –	Spherical	90–100	+	+[b]
Retroviridae	2 × (2–3)[c]	ss, +	Spherical	80–110	+[d]	+
Reoviridae	11–15	ds, seg	Icosahedral	60–80	+	–
Picornaviridae[e]	2.5	ss, +	Icosahedral	25–30	–	–
Togaviridae	4–5	ss, +	Icosahedral	60–70	–	+
Flaviviridae	4–7	ss, +	Spherical	40–50	–	+
Caliciviridae[f]	2.6	ss, +	Icosahedral	35–40	–	–

[a]Some enveloped viruses are very pleomorphic (sometimes filamentous).
[b]No matrix protein.
[c]Genome has two identical single-stranded RNA molecules.
[d]Reverse transcriptase.
[e]Hepeviridae (hepatitis E virus) resemble picornaviruses
[f]Astroviridae resemble caliciviruses
ds, Double-stranded; *seg,* segmented; *ss,* single-stranded; + *or* –, polarity of single-stranded nucleic acid.

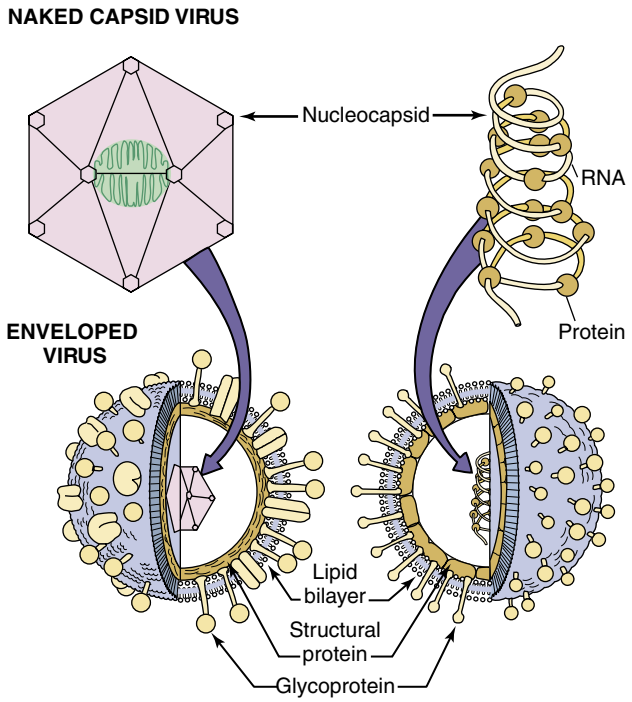


Fig. 36.4 Structures of a naked icosahedral capsid virus *(top left)* and enveloped viruses *(bottom)* with an icosahedral *(left)* nucleocapsid or a helical *(right)* ribonucleocapsid. Helical nucleocapsids are always enveloped for human viruses.

BOX 36.4 Virion Structure: Naked Capsid

Component

Protein

Properties[a]

Is environmentally stable to the following:
- Temperature
- Acid
- Proteases
- Detergents
- Drying

Is released from cell by lysis

Consequences[a]

Can be spread easily (on fomites, from hand to hand, by dust, by small droplets)
Can dry out and retain infectivity
Can survive the adverse conditions of the gut
Can be resistant to detergents and poor sewage treatment
Antibody may be sufficient for immunoprotection

[a]Exceptions exist.

and 240 hexons. A long fiber is attached to each penton of adenovirus to serve as the VAP to bind to target cells, and it also contains the type-specific antigen (see Fig. 42.1). The reoviruses have an icosahedral double capsid with fiber-like proteins partially extended from each vertex. The outer capsid protects the virus and promotes its uptake across the gastrointestinal tract and into target cells, whereas the inner capsid contains enzymes for the synthesis of RNA (see Figs. 36.6 and 51.3).

ENVELOPED VIRUSES

The virion envelope is composed of lipids, proteins, and glycoproteins (see Fig. 36.4 and Box 36.5). The envelope has a membrane structure similar to cellular membranes.

BOX 36.5 Virion Structure: Envelope

Components

Membrane
Lipids
Proteins
Glycoproteins

Properties[a]

Is environmentally labile—disrupted by the following:
- Acid
- Detergents
- Drying
- Heat

Modifies cell membrane during replication
Is released by budding and cell lysis

Consequences[a]

Must stay wet
Cannot survive the gastrointestinal tract
Spreads in large droplets, secretions, organ transplants, and blood transfusions
Does not need to kill the cell to spread
May need antibody and cell-mediated immune response for protection and control
Elicits hypersensitivity and inflammation to cause immunopathogenesis

[a]Exceptions exist.

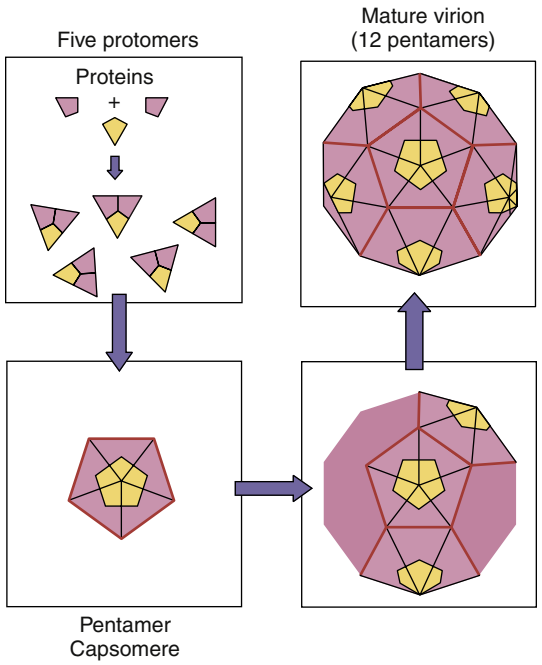


Fig. 36.5 Capsid assembly of the icosahedral capsid of a picornavirus. Individual proteins associate into subunits, which associate into protomers, capsomeres, and an empty procapsid. Inclusion of the (+) RNA genome triggers its conversion to the final capsid form.

Cellular proteins are rarely found in the viral envelope, even though the envelope is obtained from cellular membranes. Most enveloped viruses are round or pleomorphic. Two exceptions are the poxvirus, which has a complex internal and a bricklike external structure, and the rhabdovirus, which is bullet shaped.

Most viral glycoproteins have asparagine-linked (*N*-linked) carbohydrates and extend through the envelope and away from the surface of the virion. For many viruses, these can be observed as spikes (Fig. 36.7). Some glycoproteins act as **VAPs,** and are capable of binding to structures on target cells. VAPs that also bind to erythrocytes are termed **hemagglutinins (HAs).** Some glycoproteins have other functions, such as the neuraminidase (NA) of orthomyxoviruses (influenza) and the Fc receptor and the C3b receptor associated with herpes simplex virus (HSV) glycoproteins, or the fusion glycoproteins of paramyxoviruses. Glycoproteins, especially the VAPs, are also major antigens that elicit protective immunity.

The envelope of the togaviruses surrounds an icosahedral nucleocapsid containing a positive-strand RNA genome. The envelope contains spikes consisting of two or three glycoprotein subunits anchored to the virion's icosahedral capsid. This causes the envelope to adhere tightly and conform (shrink-wrap) to an icosahedral structure discernible by cryoelectron microscopy.

All of the negative-strand RNA viruses are enveloped. Components of the viral RNA-dependent RNA polymerase associate with the (−) RNA genome of the orthomyxoviruses, paramyxoviruses, and rhabdoviruses to form helical nucleocapsids. These enzymes are required to initiate virus replication, and their association with the genome ensures their delivery into the cell. **Matrix proteins** lining the inside of the envelope facilitate the assembly of the ribonucleocapsid into the virion. Influenza A (orthomyxovirus) is an example of a (−) RNA virus with a segmented genome. Its envelope is lined with matrix proteins and has two glycoproteins: the HA, which is the VAP, and an NA (see Fig. 49.1). Bunyaviruses do not have matrix proteins.

The herpesvirus envelope is a baglike structure that encloses the icosadeltahedral nucleocapsid (see Fig. 43.1). Depending on the specific herpesvirus, the envelope may contain as many as 11 glycoproteins. The interstitial space between the nucleocapsid and the envelope is called the **tegument,** and it contains enzymes, other proteins, and even RNA that facilitate the viral infection.

The poxviruses are enveloped viruses with large, complex, bricklike shapes (see Fig. 44.1). The envelope encloses a dumbbell-shaped, DNA-containing nucleoid structure; lateral bodies; fibrils; and many enzymes and proteins, including the enzymes and transcriptional factors required for mRNA synthesis.

Viral Replication

The major steps in viral replication are the same for all viruses (Fig. 36.8; Box 36.6). The cell acts as a factory, providing the substrates, energy, and machinery necessary for the synthesis of viral proteins and replication of the genome. Processes not provided by the cell must be encoded in the genome of the virus. The manner in which each virus accomplishes these steps and overcomes the cell's biochemical limitations is different for different structures of the genome and of the virion (whether it is enveloped or

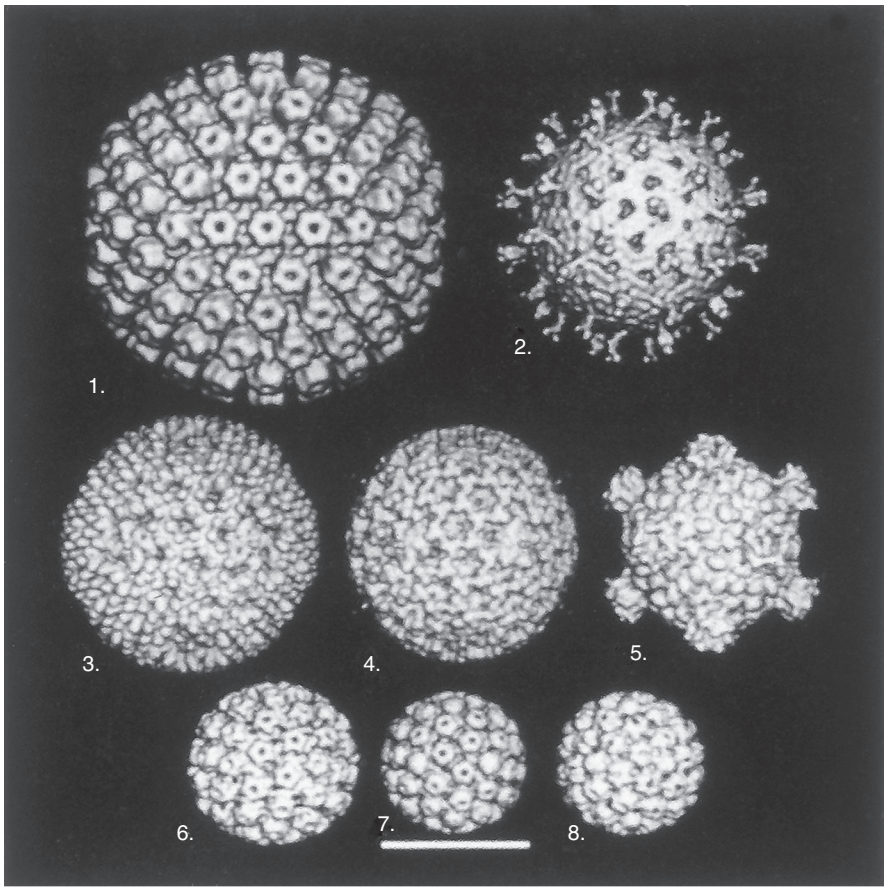


Fig. 36.6 Cryoelectron microscopy and computer-generated three-dimensional image reconstructions of several icosahedral capsids. These images show the symmetry of capsids and the individual capsomeres. During assembly, the genome may fill the capsid through the holes in the herpesvirus, polyomavirus, and papillomavirus capsomeres. *1,* Equine herpesvirus nucleocapsid; *2,* simian rotavirus; *3,* reovirus type 1 (Lang) virion; *4,* intermediate subviral particle (reovirus); *5,* core (inner capsid) particle (reovirus); *6,* human papillomavirus type 19; *7,* mouse polyomavirus; *8,* cauliflower mosaic virus. Bar = 50 nm. (Courtesy Dr. Tim Baker, Purdue University, West Lafayette, Indiana.)

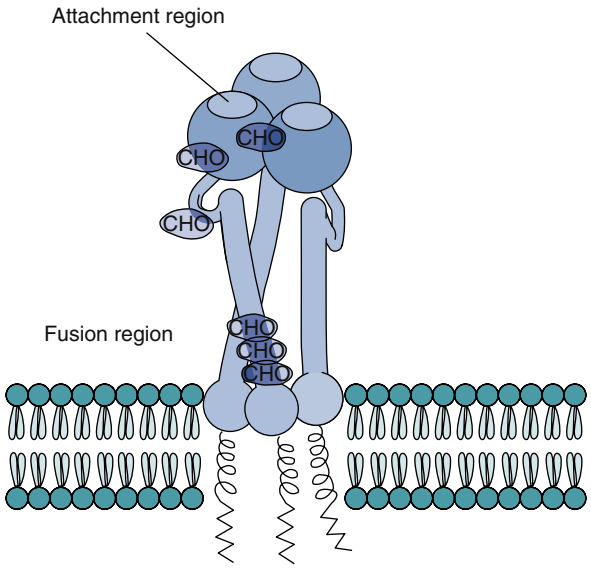


Fig. 36.7 Diagram of the hemagglutinin glycoprotein trimer of influenza A virus, which is a representative spike protein. The region for attachment to the cellular receptor is exposed on the spike protein's surface. Under mild acidic conditions, the hemagglutinin folds over to bring the virion envelope and cellular membrane together and exposes a hydrophobic sequence to promote fusion. *CHO, N*-linked carbohydrate attachment sites. (Modified from Schlesinger, M.J., Schlesinger, S., 1987. Domains of virus glycoproteins. Adv. Virus Res. 33, 1–44.)

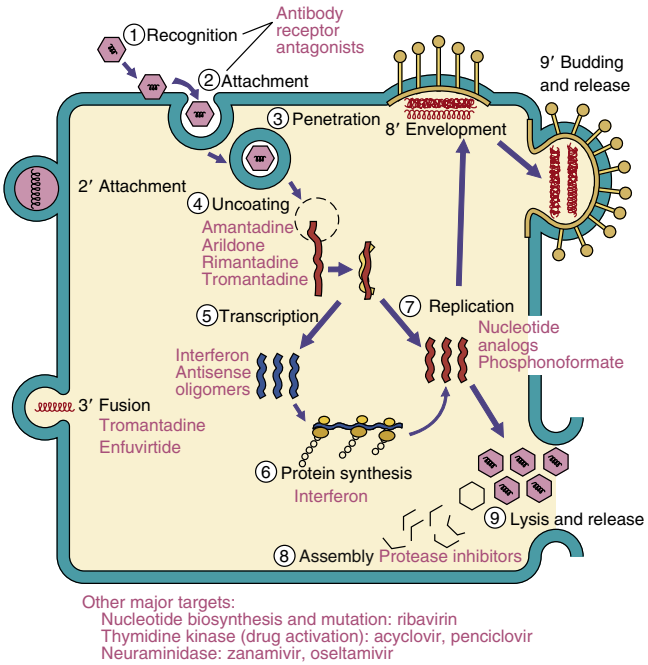


Fig. 36.8 General scheme of viral replication. Enveloped viruses may also enter by steps 2′ and 3′ and assemble and exit from the cell by steps 8′ and 9′. Some of the antiviral drugs for susceptible steps in viral replication are listed in magenta.

BOX 36.6 Steps in Viral Replication

1. Recognition of the target cell
2. Attachment
3. Penetration
4. Uncoating
5. Macromolecular synthesis
   a. Early mRNA and nonstructural protein synthesis: genes for enzymes and nucleic acid–binding proteins
   b. Replication of genome
   c. Late mRNA and structural protein synthesis
   d. Posttranslational modification of protein
6. Assembly of virus
7. Budding of enveloped viruses
8. Release of virus

mRNA, Messenger RNA.

has a naked capsid). This is illustrated in later figures in this chapter and in subsequent chapters (see later).

A single round of the viral replication cycle can be separated into several phases. During the **early phase** of infection, the virus must recognize an appropriate target cell; attach to the cell; penetrate the plasma membrane and be taken up by the cell; release (uncoat) its genome into the cytoplasm; and if necessary, deliver the genome to the nucleus. The **late phase** begins with the start of genome replication and viral macromolecular synthesis and proceeds through viral assembly and release. Uncoating of the genome from the capsid or envelope during the early phase abolishes its infectivity and identifiable structure, initiating the eclipse period. The **eclipse period,** like a solar eclipse, ends with the appearance of new virions after virus assembly. The **latent period** (not to be confused with latent infection), during which extracellular infectious virus is not detected, includes the eclipse period and ends with the release of new viruses (Fig. 36.9). Each infected cell may produce as many as 100,000 particles; however, only 1% to 10% of these particles may be infectious. The noninfectious particles **(defective particles)** result from mutations and errors in the manufacture and assembly of the virion. The yield of infectious virus per cell, or **burst size,** and the time required for a single cycle of virus reproduction are determined by the properties of the virus and the target cell. Although it may seem wasteful to produce so many defective particles, the virus uses this mechanism to generate mutants that may have a selective advantage, and 1% of 100,000 viruses is still a large amount of virus.

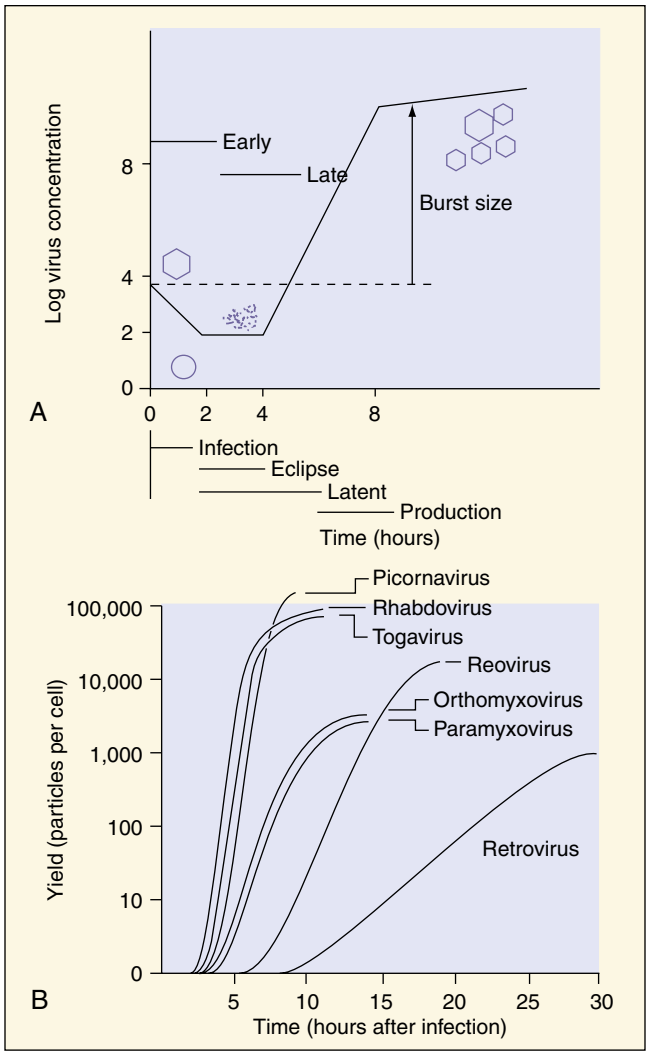


Fig. 36.9 (A) Single-cycle growth curve for a virus that is released by cell lysis. The different stages are defined by the absence of visible viral components (eclipse period) or infectious virus in the media (latent period), or the presence of macromolecular synthesis (early/late phases). (B) Growth curve and burst size (yield) of representative viruses. (A, Modified from Davis, B.D., Dulbecco, R., Eisen, H.N., et al., 1990. Microbiology, fourth ed. Lippincott, Philadelphia, PA. B, Modified from White, D.O., Fenner, F., 1986. Medical Virology, third ed. Academic, New York, NY.)

RECOGNITION OF AND ATTACHMENT TO THE TARGET CELL

The binding of the **VAPs** or structures on the surface of the virion capsid (Table 36.5) to **receptors on the cell** (Table 36.6) initially determines which cells can be infected by a virus. *The receptors for the virus on the cell may be proteins or carbohydrates on glycoproteins or glycolipids.* Viruses that bind to receptors expressed on specific cell types may be restricted to certain species **(host range)** (e.g., human, mouse) or specific cell types. The susceptible target cell defines the **tissue tropism** (e.g., neurotropic, lymphotropic). Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), a herpesvirus, has a very limited host range and tropism because it binds to the C3d receptor (CR2) expressed on human B cells. The B19 parvovirus binds to globoside (blood group P antigen) expressed on erythroid precursor cells.

The viral attachment structure for a capsid virus may be part of the capsid or a protein that extends from the capsid. A canyon on the surface of picornaviruses, such as rhinovirus 14, serves as a "keyhole" for the insertion of a portion of the intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM-1) from the cell surface (see Fig. 46.2). The fibers of the adenoviruses and the σ-1 proteins of the reoviruses at the vertices of the capsid interact with receptors expressed on specific target cells.

Specific glycoproteins are the VAPs of enveloped viruses. The HA of influenza A virus binds to specific sialic acid carbohydrates expressed on many but not all cells of different species. Similarly, the α-togaviruses and the flaviviruses are

TABLE 36.5 Examples of Viral Attachment Proteins

Virus Family	Virus	Viral Attachment Protein
Picornaviridae	Rhinovirus	VP1-VP2-VP3 complex
Adenoviridae	Adenovirus	Fiber protein
Reoviridae	Reovirus	σ-1
	Rotavirus	VP7
Togaviridae	Semliki Forest virus	E1-E2-E3 complex gp
Rhabdoviridae	Rabies virus	G-protein gp
Orthomyxoviridae	Influenza A virus	HA gp
Paramyxoviridae	Measles virus	H gp
Herpesviridae	Epstein-Barr virus	gp350 and gp220
Retroviridae	Murine leukemia virus	gp70
	Human immunodeficiency virus	gp120

gp, Glycoprotein; *H* or *HA,* hemagglutinin.

TABLE 36.6 Examples of Viral Receptors

Virus	Target Cell	Receptor[a]
Epstein-Barr virus	B cell	C3d complement receptor (CR2, CD21)
HIV	Helper T cell	CD4 molecule and chemokine coreceptor
Rhinovirus	Epithelial cells	ICAM-1 (immunoglobulin superfamily protein)
Poliovirus	Epithelial cells	Immunoglobulin superfamily protein
Herpes simplex virus	Many cells	Herpesvirus entry mediator (HveA), nectin-1
Rabies virus	Neuron	Acetylcholine receptor, NCAM
Influenza A virus	Epithelial cells	Sialic acid
B19 parvovirus	Erythroid precursors	Erythrocyte P antigen (globoside)

[a]Other receptors for these viruses may also exist.
CD, Cluster of differentiation; *ICAM-1,* intercellular adhesion molecule; *NCAM,* neural cell adhesion molecule.

able to bind to receptors expressed on cells of many animal species, including arthropods, reptiles, amphibians, birds, and mammals. This allows them to infect animals, mosquitoes, and other insects and to be spread by them.

PENETRATION

Interactions between multiple VAPs and cellular receptors initiate the internalization of the virus into the cell. The mechanism of internalization depends on the virion structure and cell type. Most nonenveloped viruses enter the cell by receptor-mediated endocytosis or by viropexis. **Endocytosis** is a normal process used by the cell for the uptake of receptor-bound molecules such as hormones, low-density lipoproteins, and transferrin. Picornaviruses, papillomaviruses, and polyomaviruses may enter by **viropexis.** Hydrophobic structures of capsid proteins may be exposed after viral binding to the cells, and these structures help the virus or the viral genome slip through (direct penetration) the membrane.

Enveloped viruses fuse their membranes with cellular membranes to deliver the nucleocapsid or genome directly into the cytoplasm. The optimum pH for fusion determines whether penetration occurs at the cell surface at neutral pH or whether the virus must be internalized by endocytosis, and fusion occurs in an endosome at acidic pH. The fusion activity may be provided by the VAP or another protein. The HA of influenza A (see Fig. 36.7) binds to sialic acid receptors on the target cell. Under the mild acidic conditions of the endosome, the HA undergoes a dramatic conformational change to expose hydrophobic portions capable of promoting membrane fusion. Paramyxoviruses have a fusion protein that is active at neutral pH to promote virus-to-cell fusion. Paramyxoviruses can also promote cell-to-cell fusion to form multinucleated giant cells **(syncytia).** Some herpesviruses and retroviruses fuse with cells at a neutral pH and induce syncytia after replication.

UNCOATING

Once internalized, the nucleocapsid must be delivered to the site of replication within the cell and the capsid or envelope removed. The genome of DNA viruses, except for poxviruses, must be delivered to the nucleus, whereas most RNA viruses remain in the cytoplasm. The uncoating process may be initiated by attachment to the receptor or promoted by the acidic environment or proteases found in an endosome or lysosome. Picornavirus capsids are weakened by the release of the VP4 capsid protein to allow uncoating. VP4 is released by insertion of the receptor into the keyhole-like canyon attachment site of the capsid. Enveloped viruses are uncoated on fusion with cell membranes. Fusion of the herpesvirus envelope with the plasma membrane releases its nucleocapsid, which then "docks" with the nuclear membrane to deliver its DNA genome directly to the site of replication. The release of the influenza nucleocapsid from its matrix and envelope is facilitated by the passage of protons from inside the endosome through the ion pore formed by the influenza M2 membrane protein to acidify the virion.

The reovirus and poxvirus are only partially uncoated on entry. The outer capsid of reovirus is removed, but the genome remains in an inner capsid, which contains the polymerases necessary for RNA synthesis. The initial uncoating of the poxviruses exposes a subviral particle to the cytoplasm, allowing synthesis of mRNA by virion-contained enzymes. An uncoating enzyme can then be synthesized to release the DNA-containing core into the cytoplasm.

MACROMOLECULAR SYNTHESIS

Once inside the cell, the genome must direct the synthesis of viral mRNA and protein and generate identical copies of itself. The genome is useless unless it can be transcribed into functional mRNAs capable of binding to ribosomes and being translated into proteins. The means by which each virus accomplishes these steps depends on the structure of the genome (Fig. 36.10) and the site of replication.

The naked genome of DNA viruses (except poxviruses) and the positive-sense RNA viruses (except retroviruses) are

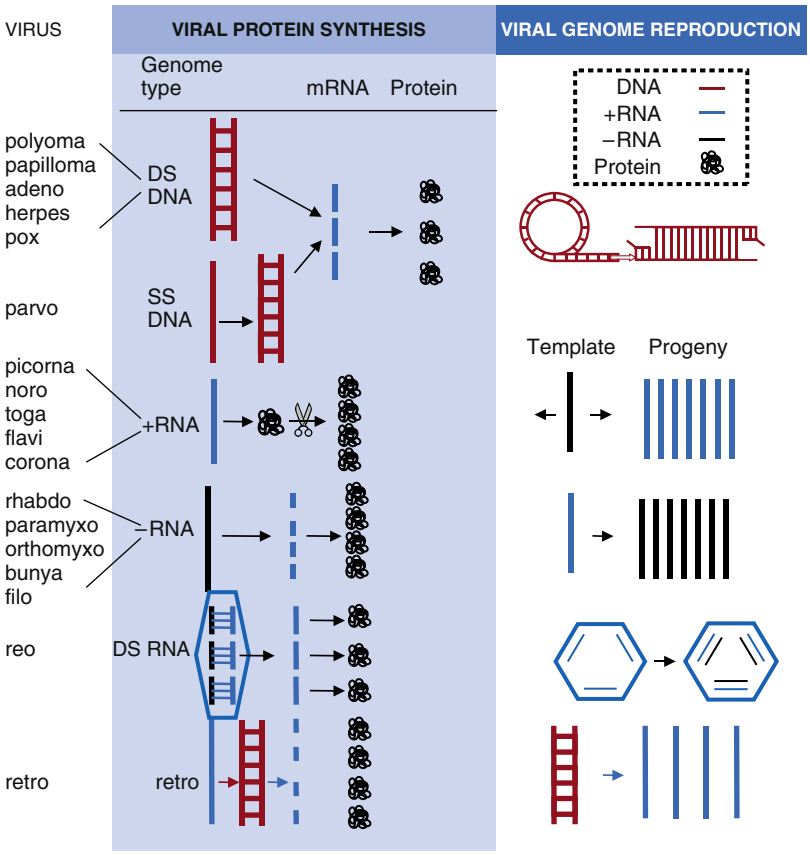


Fig. 36.10 Viral macromolecular synthesis steps: the structure of the genome determines the mechanism of viral mRNA and protein synthesis and also genome replication. (1) Double-stranded DNA *(DS DNA)* uses host machinery in the nucleus (except poxviruses) to make mRNA, which is translated by host cell ribosomes into proteins. Replication of viral DNA occurs by semiconservative means, by rolling circle, linear, and in other ways. (2) Single-stranded DNA *(SS DNA)* is converted into DS DNA and replicates like DS DNA. (3) (+) RNA resembles an mRNA that binds to ribosomes to make a polyprotein that is cleaved into individual proteins. One of the viral proteins is an RNA polymerase that makes a (–) RNA template and then more (+) RNA genome progeny and mRNAs. (4) (–) RNA is transcribed into mRNAs and a full-length (+) RNA template by the RNA polymerase carried in the virion. The (+) RNA template is used to make (–) RNA genome progeny. (5) DS RNA acts like (–) RNA. The (–) strands are transcribed into mRNAs by an RNA polymerase in the capsid. New (+) RNAs get encapsidated and (–) RNAs are made in the inner capsid. (6) Retroviruses have (+) RNA that is converted to complementary DNA (cDNA) by reverse transcriptase carried in the virion. cDNA integrates into the host chromosome, and the host makes mRNAs, proteins, and full-length RNA genome copies.

sometimes referred to as **infectious nucleic acids** because they are sufficient for initiating replication on injection into a cell. These genomes can interact directly with host machinery to promote mRNA or protein synthesis.

Most DNA viruses use the cell's machinery for transcription and mRNA processing in the nucleus, including the DNA-dependent RNA polymerase II and other enzymes to make mRNA. (*The names of the polymerases describe what they do—first the template and then the product [e.g., the polymerase that makes mRNA in the cell is a DNA-dependent RNA polymerase, and the enzyme that copies DNA is a DNA-dependent DNA polymerase]*). In addition, the viral mRNAs acquire a 3′ polyadenylated (polyA) tail and a 5′ methylated cap (for binding to the ribosome) and are processed to remove introns before being exported to the cytoplasm like the cell's mRNA. Viruses that replicate in the cytoplasm must provide these functions or an alternative. Although poxviruses are DNA viruses, they replicate in the cytoplasm; therefore they must encode enzymes for all these functions.

Most RNA viruses replicate and produce mRNA in the cytoplasm, except for orthomyxoviruses and retroviruses. RNA viruses must encode the necessary enzymes for transcription and replication because the cell has no means of replicating RNA. The mRNAs for RNA viruses may or may not acquire a 5′ cap or polyA tail.

In general, mRNA for nonstructural proteins is transcribed first. **Early gene products** (nonstructural proteins) are often DNA-binding proteins and enzymes, including virus-encoded polymerases. These proteins are catalytic, and only a few are required. Replication of the genome usually initiates the transition to transcription of late gene products. **Late viral genes** encode structural and other proteins. Many copies of these proteins are required to package the virus but are generally not required before the genome is replicated. Newly replicated genomes also provide new templates to amplify late gene mRNA synthesis. Different DNA and RNA viruses control the time and amount of viral gene and protein synthesis in different ways.

DNA VIRUSES

Transcription of the DNA virus genome (except for poxviruses) occurs in the nucleus, using host cell polymerases and other enzymes for viral mRNA synthesis (Fig. 36.11; Box 36.7).

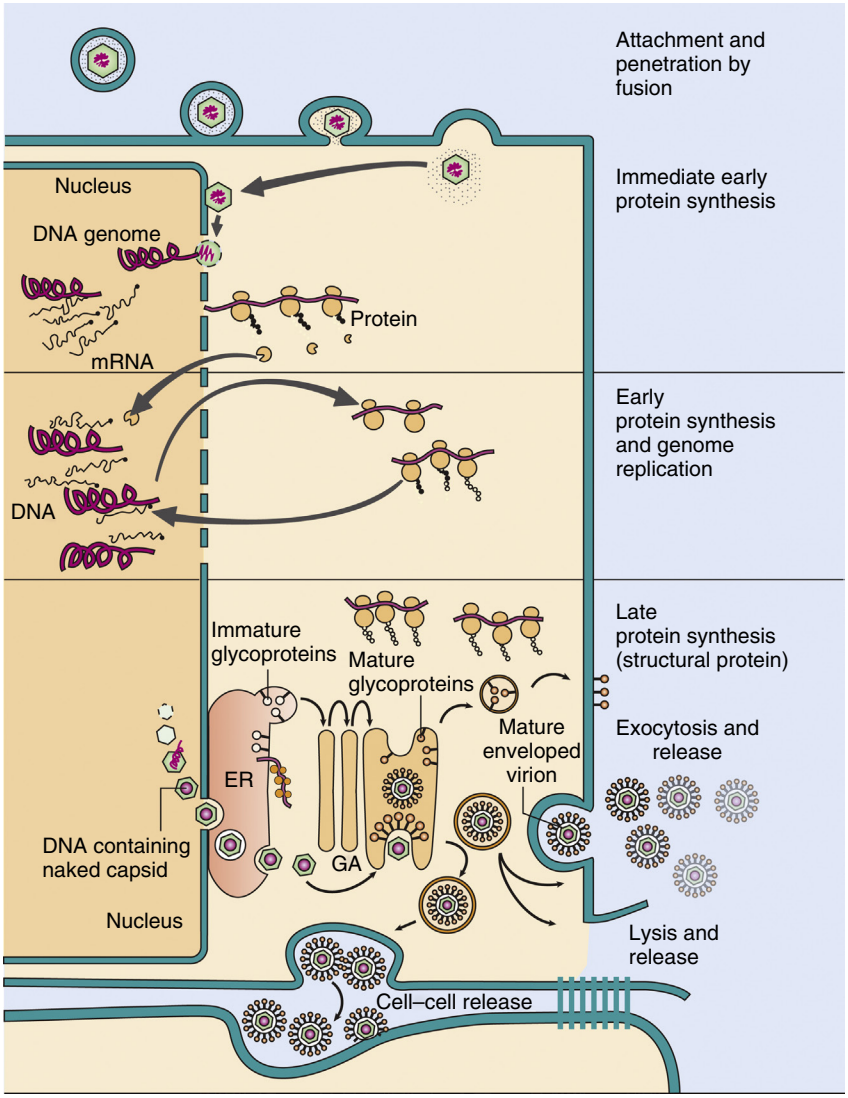


Fig. 36.11 Replication of herpes simplex virus, a complex enveloped DNA virus. The virus binds to specific receptors and fuses with the plasma membrane. The nucleocapsid then delivers the DNA genome to the nucleus. Transcription and translation occur in three phases: immediate early, early, and late. Immediate early proteins promote the takeover of the cell; early proteins consist of enzymes, including the DNA-dependent DNA polymerase; and the late proteins are structural and other proteins, including the viral capsid and glycoproteins. The genome is replicated before transcription of the late genes. Capsid proteins migrate into the nucleus, assemble into icosadeltahedral capsids, and are filled with the DNA genome. The capsids filled with genomes bud through the nuclear and endoplasmic reticulum *(ER)* membranes into the cytoplasm, acquire tegument proteins, and then acquire their envelope as they bud through the viral glycoprotein-modified membranes of the trans-Golgi network. The virus is released by exocytosis, cell lysis, or through cell-cell bridges (not shown). *GA,* Golgi apparatus.

Transcription of the viral genes is regulated by the interaction of specific DNA-binding proteins with promoter and enhancer elements in the viral genome. Cells from some tissues do not express the DNA-binding proteins necessary for activating the transcription of viral genes; thus replication of the virus in that cell is prevented or limited.

Different DNA viruses control the duration, timing, and quantity of viral gene and protein synthesis in different ways. The more complex viruses encode their own transcriptional activators, which enhance or regulate the expression of viral genes. For example, HSV encodes many proteins that regulate the kinetics of viral gene expression, including the VMW 65 (α-TIF protein, VP16). VMW 65 is carried in the virion, binds to the host cell transcription-activating complex (Oct-1), and enhances its ability to stimulate transcription of the immediate early genes of the virus.

Genes may be transcribed from either DNA strand of the genome and in opposite directions. For example, the early and late genes of the SV40 polyomavirus are on opposite, nonoverlapping DNA strands. Viral genes may have introns requiring posttranscriptional processing of the mRNA by the cell's nuclear machinery (splicing). The late genes of papillomaviruses and polyomaviruses and adenoviruses are initially transcribed as a large RNA from a single promoter and then processed to produce several different mRNAs after removal of different intervening sequences (introns).

Replication of viral DNA follows the same biochemical rules as for cellular DNA and requires a DNA-dependent

BOX 36.7 Properties of DNA Viruses

DNA is not transient or labile.
Many DNA viruses establish persistent infections (e.g., latent, immortalizing).
DNA genomes reside in the nucleus (except for poxviruses).
Viral DNA resembles host DNA for transcription and replication.
Viral genes must interact with host transcriptional machinery (except for poxviruses).
Viral gene transcription is temporally regulated.
Early genes encode DNA-binding proteins and enzymes.
Late genes encode structural and other proteins.
DNA polymerases require a primer to replicate the viral genome.
The larger DNA viruses encode means to promote efficient replication of their genome.
Parvovirus: requires cells undergoing DNA synthesis to replicate.
Papillomavirus: stimulates cell growth and DNA synthesis.
Polyomavirus: stimulates cell growth and DNA synthesis.
Hepadnavirus: stimulates cell growth, cell makes RNA intermediate, encodes a reverse transcriptase.
Adenovirus: stimulates cellular DNA synthesis and encodes its own polymerase.
Herpesvirus: stimulates cell growth, encodes its own polymerase and enzymes to provide deoxyribonucleotides for DNA synthesis, establishes latent infection in host.
Poxvirus: encodes its own polymerases and enzymes to provide deoxyribonucleotides for DNA synthesis, replication machinery, and transcription machinery in the cytoplasm.

DNA polymerase, other enzymes, and deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates, especially thymidine. Replication is initiated at a unique DNA sequence of the genome called the **origin (ori).** This is a site recognized by cellular or viral nuclear factors and the **DNA-dependent DNA polymerase.** Viral DNA synthesis is semiconservative, and viral and cellular *DNA polymerases require a primer* to initiate synthesis of the DNA chain. The parvoviruses have DNA sequences that are inverted and repeated to allow the DNA to fold back and hybridize with itself to provide a primer. Replication of the adenovirus genome is primed by deoxycytidine monophosphate attached to a terminal protein. A cellular enzyme (primase) synthesizes an RNA primer to start the replication of the papillomavirus and polyomavirus genomes, whereas the herpesviruses encode a primase.

Replication of the genome of the simple DNA viruses (e.g., parvoviruses, polyomaviruses, papillomaviruses) uses the host DNA-dependent DNA polymerases, whereas the larger, more complex viruses (e.g., adenoviruses, herpesviruses, poxviruses) encode their own polymerases *(puny parvovirus, polyomavirus, and papillomavirus all require cell polymerases)*. Viral polymerases are usually faster but less precise than host cell polymerases, causing a higher mutation rate in viruses and providing a target for nucleotide analogs as antiviral drugs.

Hepadnavirus replication is unique because a larger than genome positive-strand RNA copy is first synthesized by the cell's DNA-dependent RNA polymerase and circularizes. Viral proteins surround the RNA, which is a viral-encoded RNA-dependent DNA polymerase (reverse transcriptase) in this virion core makes a negative-strand DNA, and then the RNA is degraded. Positive-strand DNA synthesis is initiated but stops when the genome and core are enveloped, yielding a partially double-stranded, circular DNA genome.

Major limitations for replication of a DNA virus include availability of the DNA polymerase and deoxyribonucleotide substrates. Most cells in the resting phase of growth will not support DNA virus replication without help from viral encoded enzymes because they are not undergoing DNA synthesis, the necessary enzymes are not present, and deoxythymidine pools are limited. *The smaller the DNA virus, the more dependent the virus is on the host cell* to provide these functions (see Box 36.7). The parvoviruses are the smallest DNA viruses and replicate only in growing cells, such as erythroid precursor cells or fetal tissue. Speeding up the growth of the cell can enhance viral DNA and mRNA synthesis. The T antigen of SV40, the E6 and E7 of papillomavirus, and the E1a and E1b proteins of adenovirus bind to and prevent the function of growth-inhibitory proteins (p53 and the retinoblastoma gene product), resulting in cell growth, which also promotes virus replication. HSV is an example of a large DNA virus that encodes a DNA polymerase and scavenging enzymes (e.g., deoxyribonuclease, ribonucleotide reductase, thymidine kinase) to generate the necessary deoxyribonucleotide substrates for replication of its genome. Larger DNA viruses can replicate in growing and nongrowing cells.

RNA VIRUSES

Replication and transcription of RNA viruses are similar processes because the viral genomes are usually either an mRNA (positive-strand RNA) (Fig. 36.12) or a template for mRNA (negative-strand RNA) (Fig. 36.13; Box 36.8). During replication and transcription, a double-stranded RNA replicative intermediate is formed. Double-stranded RNA is not normally found in uninfected cells and is a strong inducer of innate host protections.

The RNA virus genome must code for **RNA-dependent RNA polymerases (replicases and transcriptases)** and enzymes for synthesis and processing of the viral mRNA because the cell has no means of replicating RNA. Transcription of viral mRNA may require adding a terminal protein to the RNA for the picornaviruses or, like eukaryotic mRNA, the addition of a 5′ methylguanosine cap and 3′ polyadenosine. Negative-strand and double-strand RNA viruses bring the machinery for these processes into the cell together with the genome as part of the nucleocapsid.

Because RNA is degraded relatively quickly, the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase must be provided or synthesized soon after uncoating to generate more viral RNA, or the infection will be aborted. Most viral RNA polymerases work at a fast pace but are also error prone, causing mutations. Replication of the genome provides new templates for the production of more mRNA and genomes, which amplifies and accelerates virus replication.

The **positive-strand RNA viral genomes** of the picornaviruses, **caliciviruses, coronaviruses, flaviviruses,** and togaviruses act as mRNA, bind to ribosomes, and direct protein synthesis. *The naked positive-strand RNA viral genome is sufficient to initiate infection by itself.* Viral proteins are translated from the genome as a polyprotein that is cleaved by viral and cellular proteases into active proteins. These viruses create a **replication organelle** and scaffold to contain and organize the genome and viral and cellular enzymes necessary for replication and transcription of the genome.

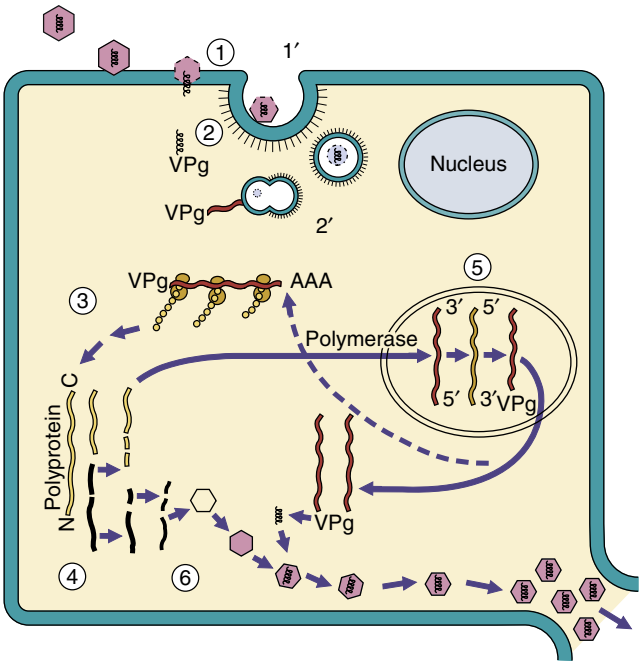


Fig. 36.12 Replication of picornaviruses: a simple (+) RNA virus. *1,* Interaction of the picornaviruses with receptors on the cell surface defines the target cell and weakens the capsid. *2,* The genome is injected through the virion and across the cell membrane. *2′,* Alternatively, the virion is endocytosed, and then the genome is released. *3,* The genome is used as mRNA for protein synthesis. One large polyprotein is translated from the virion genome. *4,* Then the polyprotein is proteolytically cleaved into individual proteins, including an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. *5,* Macromolecular synthesis proceeds in a replication organelle created by the virus. The polymerase makes a (–) strand template from the genome and replicates the genome. A protein *(VPg)* is covalently attached to the 5′ end of the viral genome. *6,* The structural proteins associate into the capsid structure, the genome is inserted, and the virions are released on cell lysis.

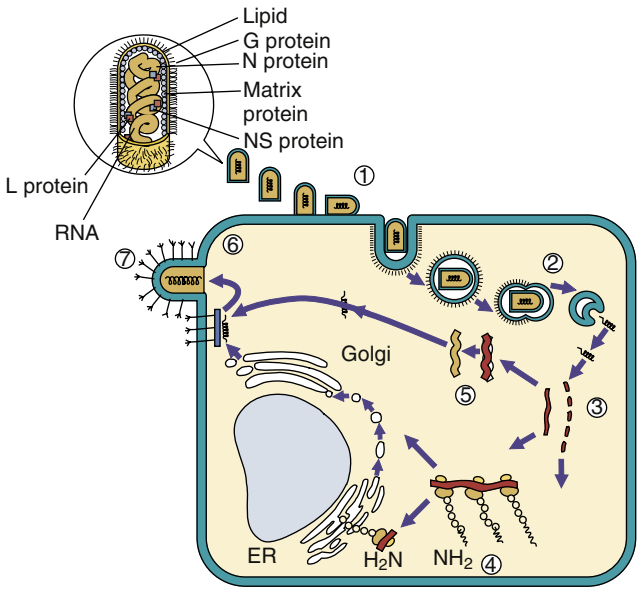


Fig. 36.13 Replication of rhabdoviruses: a simple enveloped (–) RNA virus. *1,* Rhabdoviruses bind to the cell surface and are *(2)* endocytosed. The envelope fuses with the endosome vesicle membrane to deliver the nucleocapsid to the cytoplasm. The virion must carry a polymerase, which *(3)* produces five individual messenger RNAs (mRNAs) and a full-length (+) RNA template. *4,* Proteins are translated from the mRNAs, including one glycoprotein (G), which is cotranslationally glycosylated in the endoplasmic reticulum *(ER),* processed in the Golgi apparatus, and delivered to the cell membrane. *5,* The genome is replicated from the (+) RNA template, and N, L, and NS proteins associate with the genome to form the nucleocapsid. *6,* The matrix protein associates with the G-protein–modified membrane, which is followed by assembly of the nucleocapsid. *7,* The virus buds from the cell in a bullet-shaped virion.

The virus-encoded RNA-dependent RNA polymerase produces a negative-strand RNA template (antigenome), and this template is used to generate more mRNA and to replicate the genome. For picornaviruses and flaviviruses, the genome and negative-sense template RNA and mRNA are the same size. For the togaviruses, coronaviruses, and caliciviruses, a full-length template and mRNA are initially produced, and then later, several smaller mRNAs for structural and other proteins (late genes) are generated from the template.

The **negative-strand RNA virus genomes** of the rhabdoviruses, orthomyxoviruses, paramyxoviruses, filoviruses, and bunyaviruses are the templates for production of individual mRNAs. The negative-strand RNA genome is not infectious nor can it bind to the ribosome, and a polymerase must be carried into the cell with the genome (associated with the genome as part of the nucleocapsid) to make the mRNAs for the different viral proteins. As a result, a full-length positive-strand RNA must also be produced by the viral polymerase to act as a template to generate more copies of the genome. The (–) RNA genome is like the negative from a roll of photographic film: each frame encodes a photo/mRNA, but a full-length positive is required for replicating the roll. Except for influenza viruses, transcription and replication of negative-strand RNA viruses occur in the cytoplasm. The influenza transcriptase requires a primer to produce mRNA. It uses the 5′ ends of cellular mRNA in the nucleus as primers for its polymerase and, in the process, steals the 5′ cap from the cellular mRNA. The influenza genome is also replicated in the nucleus.

The reoviruses have a **segmented, double-stranded RNA genome** and undergo a more complex means of replication and transcription. The reovirus RNA polymerase is part of the inner capsid core; individual mRNA units are transcribed from each of the 10 or more segments of the genome while they are still in the core. The negative strands of the genome segments are used as templates for mRNA production in a manner similar to that of the negative-strand RNA viruses. Reovirus-encoded enzymes contained in the inner capsid core add the 5′ cap to viral mRNA. The mRNA does not have polyA. The mRNAs are released into the cytoplasm, in which they direct protein synthesis or are sequestered into new cores. The positive-strand RNA in the new cores acts as a template for negative-strand RNA, and the core polymerase produces the progeny double-stranded RNA.

The arenaviruses have an **ambisense genome** with (–) sequences colinear to (+) sequences. The early mRNAs of the virus are transcribed from the negative-sense portion of the genome, a full-length replicative intermediate is produced to generate a new genome, and the late mRNAs of the virus are transcribed from the region of the replicative intermediate that is complementary to the (+) sequences.

Although the **retroviruses** have a positive-strand RNA genome, the virus provides no means for replication of the RNA in the cytoplasm. Instead, the retroviruses carry two

BOX 36.8 Properties of RNA Viruses

RNA is labile and transient.
Most RNA viruses replicate in the cytoplasm.
Cells cannot replicate RNA. RNA viruses must encode an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase.
The genome structure determines the mechanism of transcription and replication.
RNA viruses are prone to mutation.
The genome structure and polarity determine how viral mRNA is generated and proteins are processed.
RNA viruses, except for (+) RNA genome, must carry polymerases.
All (–) RNA viruses are enveloped.

Picornaviruses, Hepeviruses, Astroviruses, Togaviruses, Flaviviruses, Caliciviruses, and Coronaviruses

(+) RNA genome resembles mRNA and is translated into a polyprotein, which is proteolyzed. A (–) RNA template is used for replication. For togaviruses, coronaviruses, and caliciviruses, early proteins are translated from the genome and late proteins from smaller mRNAs transcribed from the template.

Orthomyxoviruses, Paramyxoviruses, Rhabdoviruses, Filoviruses, and Bunyaviruses

(–) RNA genome is a template for individual mRNAs, but the full-length (+) RNA template is required for replication. Orthomyxoviruses replicate and transcribe in the nucleus, and each segment of the genome encodes one mRNA and is a template.

Reoviruses

(+/–) Segmented RNA genome is a template for mRNA (+RNA). (+) RNA may also be encapsidated to generate the (+/–) RNA and then more mRNA.

Retroviruses

(+) Retrovirus RNA genome is converted into DNA, which is integrated into the host chromatin and transcribed as a cellular gene.

mRNA, Messenger RNA.

copies of the genome, two transfer RNA (tRNA) molecules, and an RNA-dependent DNA polymerase **(reverse transcriptase)** in the virion. The tRNA is used as a primer for synthesis of a circular complementary DNA **(cDNA)** copy of the genome. The cDNA is synthesized in the cytoplasm, travels to the nucleus, and it is then integrated into the host chromatin. The viral genome becomes a cellular gene. Promoters at the end of the integrated viral genome enhance the transcription of the viral DNA sequences by the cell. Full-length RNA transcripts are used as new genomes, and individual mRNAs are generated by differential splicing of this RNA.

The most unusual mode of replication is reserved for the **deltavirus.** The deltavirus resembles a viroid. The genome is a circular, rod-shaped, single-stranded RNA, which is extensively hybridized to itself. As the exception, the deltavirus RNA genome is replicated by the host cell DNA-dependent RNA polymerase II in the nucleus. A portion of the genome forms an RNA structure called a ribozyme, which cleaves the RNA circle to produce an mRNA.

VIRAL PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

All viruses depend on the host cell ribosomes, tRNA, and mechanisms for posttranslational modification to produce their proteins. The binding of mRNA to the ribosome is mediated by a 5′ cap structure of methylated guanosine or a special RNA loop structure (internal ribosome entry sequence [IRES]), which binds within the ribosome to initiate protein synthesis. The cap structure, if used, is acquired in different ways by different viruses. The IRES structure was discovered first in the picornavirus genome and then in selected cellular mRNAs. Most but not all viral mRNA have a polyA tail, like eukaryotic mRNAs.

Unlike bacterial ribosomes, which can bind to a polycistronic mRNA and translate several gene sequences into separate proteins, the eukaryotic ribosome binds to mRNA and can make only one continuous protein, and then it falls off the mRNA. Each virus deals with this limitation differently, depending on the structure of the genome. For example, the entire genome of a positive-strand RNA virus is read by the ribosome and translated into one giant **polyprotein.** The polyprotein is subsequently cleaved by cellular and viral proteases into functional proteins. DNA viruses, retroviruses, and most negative-strand RNA viruses transcribe separate mRNA for smaller polyproteins or individual proteins. The orthomyxovirus and reovirus genomes are segmented, and most of the segments code for single proteins for this reason.

Viruses use different tactics to promote preferential translation of their viral mRNA instead of cellular mRNA. In many cases, the concentration of viral mRNA in the cell is so large it occupies most of the ribosomes, preventing translation of cellular mRNA. Adenovirus infection blocks the egress of cellular mRNA from the nucleus. HSV and other viruses inhibit cellular macromolecular synthesis and induce degradation of the cell's DNA and mRNA. To promote selective translation of its mRNA, poliovirus uses a virus-encoded protease to inactivate the 200,000-Da cap-binding protein of the ribosome to prevent binding and translation of the cell's 5′-capped cellular mRNA. Togaviruses and many other viruses increase the permeability of the cell's membrane; thus the ribosomal affinity for most cellular mRNA is decreased. All these actions also contribute to the cytopathology of the virus infection. The pathogenic consequences of these actions are discussed further in Chapter 37.

Some viral proteins require **posttranslational modifications** such as phosphorylation, glycosylation, acylation, or sulfation. Protein phosphorylation is accomplished by cellular or viral protein kinases and is a means of modulating, activating, or inactivating proteins. Several herpesviruses and other viruses encode their own protein kinases. *Viral glycoproteins are synthesized on membrane-bound ribosomes and have the amino acid sequences to allow insertion into the rough endoplasmic reticulum and N-linked glycosylation.* The high-mannose precursor form of the glycoproteins progresses from the endoplasmic reticulum through the vesicular transport system of the cell and is processed through the Golgi apparatus. The mature, sialic acid–containing glycoprotein is expressed on the plasma membrane of the cell. Some glycoproteins express protein sequences for distribution to different sides of a polarized epithelial cell (e.g., lung) or retention in an intracellular organelle. *The membrane presence of the glycoproteins determines whether the virion will assemble on internal membranes or at the apical or basolateral surfaces.* Other modifications, such as *O*-glycosylation, acylation, and sulfation of the proteins, can also occur during progression through the Golgi apparatus.

ASSEMBLY

Virion assembly is analogous to a three-dimensional interlocking puzzle that puts itself together in the box. The virion is built from small, easily manufactured parts that enclose the genome in a functional package. Each part of the virion has recognition structures that allow the virus to form the appropriate protein–protein, protein–nucleic acid, and (for enveloped viruses) protein–membrane interactions needed to assemble into the final structure. The assembly process begins when the necessary pieces are synthesized, and the concentration of structural proteins in the cell is sufficient to drive the process thermodynamically, much like a crystallization reaction. The assembly process may be facilitated by scaffolding proteins or other proteins, some of which are activated or release energy on proteolysis. For example, cleavage of the VP0 protein of the poliovirus releases the VP4 peptide, which solidifies the capsid.

The site and mechanism of virion assembly in the cell depend on where genome replication occurs and whether the final structure is a naked capsid or an enveloped virus. Assembly of the DNA nucleocapsid for viruses other than poxviruses occurs in the nucleus and requires transport of the virion proteins into the nucleus. RNA virus and poxvirus assemblies occur in the cytoplasm.

Capsid viruses may be assembled as empty structures (procapsids) to be filled with the genome (e.g., picornaviruses), or they may be assembled around the genome. Nucleocapsids of the retroviruses, togaviruses, and the negative-strand RNA viruses assemble around the genome and are subsequently enclosed in an envelope. The helical nucleocapsid of negative-strand RNA viruses includes the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase necessary for mRNA synthesis in the target cell.

For enveloped viruses, newly synthesized and processed viral glycoproteins are delivered to cellular membranes by vesicular transport. Acquisition of an envelope occurs after association of the nucleocapsid with the viral glycoprotein-containing regions of host cell membranes in a process called **budding.** Matrix proteins for some negative-strand RNA viruses line and promote the adhesion of nucleocapsids with the glycoprotein-modified membrane. As more interactions occur, the membrane surrounds the nucleocapsid, and the virus buds from the membrane.

The type of genome and the protein sequence of the glycoproteins determine the site of budding. Most RNA viruses bud from the plasma membrane, and the virus is released from the cell at the same time without killing the cell. The flaviviruses, coronaviruses, and bunyaviruses acquire their envelope by budding into the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi membranes and may remain cell associated in these organelles. The HSV nucleocapsid assembles in the nucleus and buds into and then out of the adjacent endoplasmic reticulum. The nucleocapsid is dumped into the cytoplasm, viral proteins associate with the capsid, and then the envelope is acquired by budding into a trans-Golgi network membrane decorated with the 10 viral glycoproteins. The virion is transported to the cell surface and released by exocytosis, on cell lysis, or transmitted through cell-to-cell bridges.

Viruses use different tricks to ensure that all the parts of the virus are assembled into complete virions. The RNA polymerase required for infection by negative-strand RNA viruses is carried on the genome as part of a helical nucleocapsid. The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and other retrovirus genomes are packaged in a procapsid consisting of a polyprotein containing the protease, polymerase, integrase, and structural proteins. This procapsid binds to viral glycoprotein-modified membranes, and the virion buds from the membrane. The virus-encoded protease is activated within the virion and cleaves the polyprotein to produce the final infectious nucleocapsid and the required proteins within the envelope.

Assembly of viruses with segmented genomes, such as influenza or reovirus, requires accumulation of at least one copy of each gene segment to be infectious. The segments nest within structures created by the viral proteins.

Errors are made by the viral polymerase and during viral assembly. Empty virions and virions containing defective genomes are produced. As a result, the particle–to–infectious virus ratio, also called *particle-to-plaque–forming unit ratio,* is high, usually greater than 10, and during rapid viral replication can even be 10^4. Defective viruses can occupy the machinery (e.g., bind to the receptor) required for normal virus replication to prevent (interfere with) virus production **(defective interfering particles).**

RELEASE

Viruses can be released from cells after lysis of the cell, by exocytosis, or by budding from the plasma membrane. Naked capsid viruses are generally released after lysis of the cell. Release of most enveloped viruses occurs after budding from the plasma membrane without killing the cell. Survival of the cell allows continual production and release of virus from the factory. Lysis and plasma membrane budding are efficient means of release. Viruses that assemble, bud, or acquire their membrane in the cytoplasm (e.g., flaviviruses, poxviruses) remain cell associated and are released by exocytosis or cell lysis. Viruses that bind to sialic acid receptors (e.g., orthomyxoviruses, certain paramyxoviruses) may also have an NA. The NA removes potential sialic acid receptors on the glycoproteins of the virion and host cell to prevent clumping within the cell and facilitate release.

SPREAD OF THE INFECTION

Virus can be spread to other cells on release to the extracellular medium, but alternatively the virus, nucleocapsid, or genome can be transmitted *through cell-to-cell bridges, after cell-to-cell fusion, or vertically to daughter cells.* These alternate routes allow the virus to escape antibody detection. Some herpesviruses, retroviruses, and paramyxoviruses can induce cell-to-cell fusion to merge the cells into multinucleated giant cells **(syncytia),** which become huge virus factories. The retroviruses and some DNA viruses can transmit their integrated copy of the genome vertically to daughter cells on cell division.

Viral Genetics

Mutations spontaneously and readily occur in viral genomes, creating new virus strains with properties

different from the **parental** or **wild-type, virus.** Most mutations have no effect or are detrimental to the virus, but mutations in essential genes can inactivate the virus. Mutations in other genes may produce antiviral drug resistance or alter the antigenicity or pathogenicity of the virus.

Viral polymerases are error prone and generate many mutations during replication of the genome. In addition, RNA viruses lack a genetic error-checking mechanism. As a result, the rates of mutation for RNA viruses are usually greater than for DNA viruses.

Mutations that inactivate essential genes are termed **lethal mutations.** These mutants are difficult to isolate because the virus cannot replicate. A **deletion mutant** results from loss or selective removal of a portion of the genome and the function it encodes. Other mutations may produce **plaque mutants,** which differ from the wild type in the size or appearance of the infected cells; **host range mutants,** which differ in the tissue type or species of target cell that can be infected; or **attenuated mutants,** which are variants that cause less serious disease in animals or humans. **Conditional mutants,** such as **temperature-sensitive (ts)** or **cold-sensitive mutants,** have a mutation in a gene for an essential protein that allows virus production only at certain temperatures. Whereas ts mutants generally grow well or relatively better at 30°C to 35°C, the encoded protein is inactive at elevated temperatures of 38°C to 40°C, preventing virus production. Live virus vaccines are often conditional or host range mutants and attenuated for human disease.

New virus strains can also arise by genetic interactions between viruses or between the virus and the cell (Fig. 36.14). Intramolecular genetic exchange between viruses or the virus and the host is termed **recombination.** Recombination can occur readily between two related DNA viruses. For example, coinfection of a cell with the two closely related herpesviruses (HSV types 1 and 2) yields intertypic recombinant strains. These new hybrid strains have genes from types 1 and 2. Integration of retroviruses into host cell chromatin is a form of recombination. Recombination of two related RNA viruses, Sindbis and eastern equine encephalitis virus, resulted in creation of another togavirus, western equine encephalitis (WEE) virus.

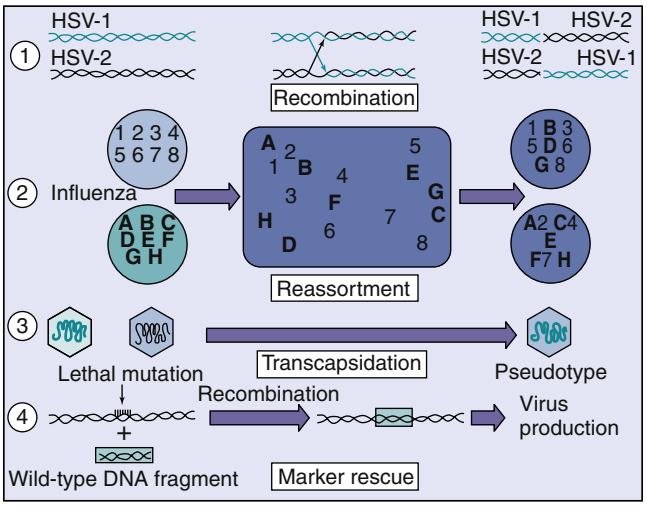


Fig. 36.14 Genetic exchange between viral particles can give rise to new viral types, as illustrated. Representative viruses include the following: *1,* intertypic recombination of herpes simplex virus type 1 *(HSV-1)* and type 2 *(HSV-2); 2,* reassortment of two strains of influenza virus; *3,* rescue of a polyomavirus defective in assembly by a complementary defective virus (transcapsidation); and *4,* marker rescue of a lethal or conditional mutation.

Viruses with segmented genomes (e.g., influenza viruses and reoviruses) form hybrid strains on infection of one cell with more than one virus strain. This process, termed **reassortment,** is analogous to picking 10 marbles out of a box containing 10 black and 10 white marbles. Very different strains of influenza A virus are created on coinfection with a virus from different species (see Fig. 49.5).

A defective virus can be rescued and replicate **(complementation)** if the missing function required by the mutant is provided by the replication of another mutant, by the wild-type virus, or by a cell line that expresses the missing function. An experimental disabled infectious single-cycle HSV (DISC-HSV) vaccine lacks an essential gene and is grown in a cell line that expresses that gene product to "complement" the virus. The vaccine virus can infect the normal cells of the individual, but the virions that are produced lack the function necessary for replication in other cells and cannot spread. Rescue of a lethal or conditional-lethal mutant with a defined genetic sequence, such as a restriction endonuclease DNA fragment, is called **marker rescue.** Marker rescue is used to map the genomes of viruses such as HSV. Virus produced from cells infected with different virus strains may be phenotypically mixed and have the proteins of one strain but the genome of the other **(transcapsidation). Pseudotypes** are generated when transcapsidation occurs between different types of viruses, but this is rare outside of the lab.

Individual virus strains or mutants are **selected** by their ability to use the host cell machinery and to withstand the conditions of the body and the environment. Cellular properties that can act as **selection pressures** include the growth rate of the cell, tissue-specific expression of certain proteins required by the virus (e.g., enzymes, glycoproteins, transcription factors) and proteins that prevent essential virus functions. The conditions of the body, its elevated temperature, innate and immune defenses, tissue structure and antiviral drug treatment are also selection pressures for viruses. The viruses that cannot endure these conditions or evade the host defenses are eliminated. A small selective advantage in a mutant virus can shortly lead to its becoming the predominant viral strain. The high mutation rate of HIV promotes a switch in target cell tropism to include different types of T cells, the development of antiviral drug-resistant strains, and the generation of antigenic variants during a patient's course of infection.

The growth of virus under benign laboratory conditions allows weaker strains to survive because of the absence of the selective pressures of the human body. This process is used to select attenuated virus strains for use in vaccines.

Viral Vectors for Therapy

Genetically manipulated viruses can be excellent delivery systems for foreign genes. Viruses can provide gene replacement therapy, can be used as vaccines to promote immunity to other agents or tumors, and can act as targeted killers of tumors. The advantages of using viruses are that they can

be readily amplified by replication in appropriate cells, and they target specific tissues and deliver the DNA or RNA into the cell. Viruses that are being developed as vectors include retroviruses, adenoviruses, HSV, an adeno-associated virus (parvovirus), poxviruses (e.g., vaccinia and canarypox) (see Fig. 44.7), and even some togaviruses. The viral vectors are usually defective or attenuated viruses in which the foreign DNA replaces a virulence or unessential gene. The foreign gene may be under the control of a viral promoter or even a tissue-specific promoter. Defective virus vectors are grown in cell lines that express the missing viral functions "complementing" the virus. The progeny can deliver their nucleic acid but not produce infectious virus. Retroviruses and adeno-associated viruses can integrate into cells and permanently deliver a gene into the cell's chromosome. Adenovirus and HSV promote targeted delivery of the foreign gene to receptor-bearing cells. Genetically attenuated HSVs (oncolytic viruses) are used to specifically kill the growing cells of glioblastomas while sparing the surrounding neurons. Adenovirus and canarypox virus are being used to carry and express HIV and other genes as vaccines. Vaccinia virus carrying a gene for the rabies glycoprotein is already being used successfully to immunize raccoons, foxes, and skunks in the wild. Someday, virus vectors may be routinely used to treat cystic fibrosis, Duchenne muscular dystrophy, lysosomal storage diseases, and immunologic disorders.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Viruses: microbial spies and saboteurs. Infect Dis Clin Pract 14, 97–106.

Loefllholz, M.J., 2016. Clinical Virology Manual, fifth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

Websites

All the virology on the www.virology.net/garryfavweb.html. Accessed June 8, 2018.

The big picture book of viruses. www.virology.net/Big_Virology/BVHomePage.html. Accessed June 8, 2018.

Stannard, L., Virological Methods Slideset. http://virology-online.com/general/Test1.htm. Accessed June 8, 2018.

Stannard, L., Virus Ultra Structure: Electron Micrograph Images. http://www.virology.uct.ac.za/vir/teaching/linda-stannard/electron-micrograph-images. Accessed June 8, 2018.

Questions

1. Describe the structural and replicative features that are similar, and those that are different, and the implications of the differences.
   a. Poliovirus and rhinovirus
   b. Poliovirus and rotavirus
   c. Poliovirus and WEE virus
   d. Yellow fever virus and dengue virus
   e. EBV and cytomegalovirus (CMV)

2. Match the characteristics from column A with ALL of the appropriate viral families in column B, based on your knowledge of their physical and genome structure and their implications.

PROPERTIES	VIRUSES
a. Are resistant to detergents	A. Picornaviruses
b. Are resistant to drying	B. Togaviruses
c. Genome replication in the nucleus	C. Orthomyxoviruses
d. Genome replication in the cytoplasm	D. Paramyxoviruses
e. Can be released from the cell without cell lysis	E. Rhabdoviruses
f. Provide targets for approved antiviral drug action	F. Reoviruses
g. Undergo reassortment on coinfection with two strains	G. Retroviruses
h. Make DNA from an RNA template	H. Herpesviruses
i. Use a (+) RNA template to replicate the genome	I. Papillomaviruses
j. Genome translated into a polyprotein	J. Adenoviruses
	K. Poxviruses
	L. Hepadnaviruses
	M. Caliciviruses

3. Based on structural considerations, which of the virus families listed in question 2 should be able to endure fecal-oral transmission?

4. Indicate the type of polymerase that is encoded by the viruses listed in question 2.

5. A mutant defective in the HSV type 1 DNA polymerase gene replicates in the presence of HSV type 2. The progeny virus has a predominantly HSV type 1 genome but infection is blocked by antibodies to HSV type 2. Which genetic mechanisms may be occurring? What type of protein was most likely encoded by the HSV type 2 gene to allow neutralization by antibody?

6. Which types of proteins are encoded by the early and late genes of the togaviruses, polyomaviruses, and herpesviruses, and how is the time of their expression regulated?

7. What are the consequences (no effect, decreased efficiency, or inhibition of replication) of a deletion mutation in the following viral enzymes?
   a. EBV polymerase
   b. HSV thymidine kinase
   c. HIV reverse transcriptase
   d. Influenza B virus NA
   e. Rabies virus (rhabdovirus) G-protein

37 Mechanisms of Viral Pathogenesis

Viruses cause disease after they break through the natural protective barriers of the body, evade immune control, and either kill cells of an important tissue (e.g., brain) or trigger a destructive immune and inflammatory response. The outcome of a viral infection is determined by the nature of the virus–host interaction and the host's response to the infection (Box 37.1). The immune response is the best treatment, but it often contributes to the pathogenesis of a viral infection. The tissue targeted by the virus defines the nature of the disease and its symptoms. Viral and host factors govern the severity of the disease; they include the strain of virus, the inoculum size, and the general health of the infected person. The ability of the infected person's immune response to control the infection determines the severity and duration of the disease. A particular disease may be caused by several viruses that have a common tissue **tropism** (preference), such as hepatitis (the liver), common cold (the upper respiratory tract), and encephalitis (the central nervous system). On the other hand, a particular virus may cause several different diseases or no observable symptoms. For example, herpes simplex virus type-1 (HSV-1) can cause gingivostomatitis, pharyngitis, herpes labialis (cold sores), genital herpes, encephalitis, or keratoconjunctivitis, depending on the affected tissue, or it can cause no apparent disease at all. Although rarely lethal in an adult, HSV infection can be life-threatening in a newborn or an immunocompromised person.

Viruses encode activities **(virulence factors)** that promote the efficiency of viral replication, viral transmission, access and binding of the virus to target tissue, or escape of the virus from host defenses and immune resolution (see Chapter 10). These activities may not be essential for viral growth in tissue culture but are necessary for the pathogenicity or survival of the virus in the host. Loss of these virulence factors results in **attenuation** of the virus. Many live-virus vaccines are attenuated virus strains.

The discussion in this chapter focuses on viral disease at the cellular level (cytopathogenesis), the host level (mechanisms of disease), and the population level (epidemiology and control). The antiviral immune response is discussed here and in Chapter 10.

Basic Steps in Viral Disease

Viral disease in the body progresses through defined steps, just like viral replication in the cell (Fig. 37.1A). These steps are noted in Box 37.2.

The incubation period may proceed without symptoms **(asymptomatic)** or may produce nonspecific, cytokine-induced early symptoms, such as fever, head or body aches, or chills, termed the **prodrome.** Often the viral infection is resolved by innate host protections, without symptoms. The symptoms of the disease are caused by tissue damage and systemic effects caused by the virus and the immune system. These symptoms may continue through **convalescence** while the body repairs the damage. The individual usually develops a memory immune response for future protection against a similar challenge with this virus.

Infection of the Target Tissue

The virus gains **entry into the body** through breaks in the skin (cuts, bites, injections) or across the mucoepithelial membranes that line the orifices of the body (eyes, respiratory tract, mouth, genitalia, and gastrointestinal tract). The skin is an excellent barrier to infection. Tears, mucus, ciliated epithelium, stomach acid, bile, and immunoglobulin (Ig)A protect the orifices. *Inhalation is probably the most common route of viral infection.*

On entry into the body, the virus replicates in cells that express viral receptors and have the appropriate biosynthetic machinery. Many viruses initiate infection in the oral mucosa or upper respiratory tract. Disease signs may accompany viral replication at the primary site. The virus may replicate and remain at the primary site, disseminate to other tissues via the bloodstream or within mononuclear phagocytes and lymphocytes, or disseminate through neurons (see Fig. 37.1B).

The bloodstream and lymphatic system are the predominant means of viral transfer in the body. The virus may gain access to them after tissue damage; on uptake by macrophages; or on transport past the mucoepithelial cells of the oropharynx, gastrointestinal tract, vagina, or anus. Several enteric viruses (picornaviruses and reoviruses) bind to receptors on M cells, which translocate the virus to the underlying Peyer patches of the lymphatic system.

The transport of virus in the blood is termed **viremia.** The virus may either be free in the plasma or be cell associated in lymphocytes or macrophages. Viruses taken up by phagocytic macrophages may be inactivated, replicate, or be delivered to other tissues. Replication of a virus in macrophages, the endothelial lining of blood vessels, the lung, or the liver can cause the infection to be amplified and initiate development of a **secondary viremia.** In many cases, a secondary viremia precedes delivery of the virus to the **target tissue** (e.g., liver, brain, skin) and the manifestation of characteristic symptoms.

Viruses can gain access to the central nervous system or brain (1) from the bloodstream (e.g., arboencephalitis viruses), (2) from infected meninges or cerebrospinal fluid, (3) by means of the migration of infected macrophages, or (4) by infection of peripheral and sensory (olfactory) neurons. The meninges are accessible to many of the viruses spread by viremia, which may also provide access

BOX 37.1 Determinants of Viral Disease

Nature of the Disease

Target tissue
Portal of entry of virus
Access of virus to target tissue
Tissue tropism of virus
Permissiveness of cells for viral replication
Pathogenic activity (strain specific)

Severity of Disease

Cytopathic ability of virus
Virus inoculum size
Immune status (naive or immunized)
Competence of the immune system
Immunopathology
Length of time before resolution of infection
General health of the person
Nutrition
Other diseases influencing immune status
Genetic makeup of the person
Age

to neurons. Herpes simplex, varicella-zoster, and rabies viruses initially infect mucoepithelium, skin, or muscle, and then the peripheral innervating neuron, which transports the virus to the central nervous system or brain.

Viral Pathogenesis

CYTOPATHOGENESIS

The five potential outcomes of a viral infection of a cell are as follows (Box 37.3; Table 37.1):

1. Failed infection (abortive infection)
2. Cell death (lytic infection)
3. Replication without cell death (**persistent infection**).
4. Replication without cell death but with immortalization of the cell
5. Presence of virus without virus production but with potential for reactivation (latent-recurrent infection)

Persistent infections may be (1) **chronic** (nonlytic, productive), (2) **latent** (limited viral macromolecular but no virus synthesis), (3) **recurrent** (periods of latency then virus production), or (4) **transforming** (immortalizing).

The nature of the infection is determined by the characteristics of the virus and the target cell. Viral mutants, which do not multiply, cause abortive infections and therefore disappear. A **nonpermissive cell** may lack a receptor, important enzyme pathway, or transcriptional activator or express an antiviral mechanism that will not allow replication of a particular type or strain of virus. For example, neurons and nongrowing cells lack the machinery and substrates for replication of some deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) viruses. These cells can also limit viral protein synthesis by phosphorylation of the elongation initiation factor-2α (eIF-2α) to prevent the assembly of ribosomes on 5′-capped mRNA. This protection is triggered by the large amount of protein synthesis required for virus production (unfolded protein response) or its activation by the antiviral

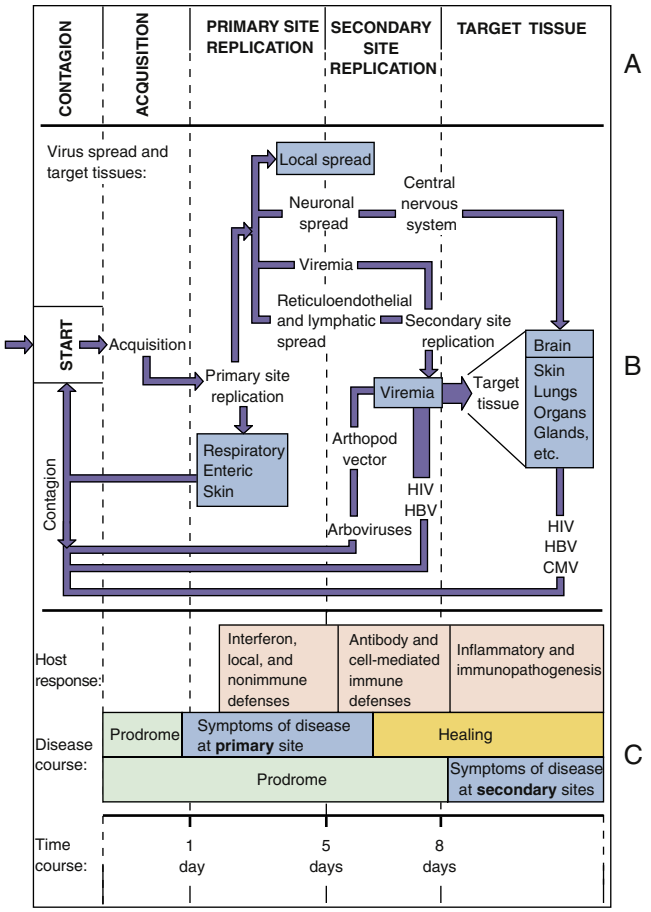


Fig. 37.1 1 (A) Stages of viral infection. The virus is released from one person, is acquired by another, replicates, and initiates a primary infection at the site of acquisition. Depending on the virus, it may then spread to other body sites and finally to a target tissue characteristic of the disease. (B) The cycle starts with acquisition, as indicated, and proceeds until the release of new virus. The thickness of the arrow denotes the degree to which the original virus inoculum is amplified on replication. The boxes indicate a site or cause of symptoms. (C) Time course of viral infection. The time course of symptoms and the immune response correlate with the stage of viral infection and depend on whether the virus causes symptoms at the primary site or only after dissemination to another (secondary) site. *CMV,* Cytomegalovirus; *HBV,* hepatitis B virus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus.

BOX 37.2 Progression of Viral Disease

1. **Acquisition** (entry into the body)
2. Initiation of infection at a primary site
3. Activation of innate protections
4. An **incubation period,** when the virus is amplified and may spread to a secondary site
5. Replication in the **target tissue,** which causes the characteristic disease signs
6. **Host responses** that limit and contribute (immunopathogenesis) to the disease
7. Virus production in a tissue that releases the virus to other people for **contagion**
8. **Resolution** or **persistent infection/chronic disease**

BOX 37.3 Determinants of Viral Pathogenesis

Interaction of Virus with Target Tissue

Access of virus to target tissue
Stability of virus in the body
  Temperature
  Acid and bile of the gastrointestinal tract
Ability to cross skin or mucosal epithelial cells (e.g., cross the gastrointestinal tract into the bloodstream)
Ability to establish viremia
Ability to spread through the reticuloendothelial system
Target tissue
  Specificity of viral attachment proteins
  Tissue-specific expression of receptors

Cytopathologic Activity of the Virus

Efficiency of viral replication in the cell
  Optimum temperature for replication
  Permissiveness of cell for replication
Cytotoxic viral proteins
Inhibition of cell's macromolecular synthesis
Accumulation of viral proteins and structures (inclusion bodies)
Altered cell metabolism (e.g., cell immortalization)

Host Protective Responses

Antigen-nonspecific antiviral responses
  Interferon and cytokines
  Natural killer cells and macrophages
Antigen-specific immune responses
  T-cell responses
  Antibody responses
Viral mechanisms of escape of immune responses

Immunopathology

Interferon and cytokines: flulike systemic symptoms
T-cell responses: cell killing, inflammation
Antibody: complement, antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity, immune complexes
Other inflammatory responses

TABLE 37.1 Types of Viral Infections at the Cellular Level

Type	Virus Production	Fate of Cell
Abortive	–	No effect
Cytolytic	+	Death
Persistent		
Productive	+	Senescence
Latent	–	No effect
Transforming		
DNA viruses	–	Immortalization
Retroviruses	+	Immortalization

state induced by interferon (IFN)-α, IFN-β of IFN λ antiviral state. Herpesviruses and some other viruses prevent this by inhibiting the phosphorylating enzyme (protein kinase R) or by activating a cellular protein phosphatase to remove the phosphate on eIF-2α. Another example is APOBEC3, which is an enzyme that causes hypermutation inactivation of the cDNA of retroviruses. This is a mechanism for restricting the growth of the numerous endogenous retroviruses that are part of the human chromosome. The viral infectivity factor (Vif) protein of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) overcomes this block by promoting the degradation of APOBEC3.

A **permissive cell** provides the biosynthetic machinery to support the complete replicative cycle of the virus. Replication of the virus in a **semipermissive cell** may be very inefficient, or the cell may support some but not all the steps in viral replication.

Lytic Infections

Lytic infection results when virus replication kills the target cell. Some viruses damage the cell and prevent repair by inhibiting the synthesis of cellular macromolecules or by producing degradative enzymes and toxic proteins. For example, HSV and other viruses produce proteins that inhibit the synthesis of cellular DNA and mRNA and synthesize other proteins that degrade host DNA to provide substrates for viral genome replication. Cellular protein synthesis may be actively blocked (e.g., poliovirus inhibits translation of 5′-capped cellular mRNA) or passively blocked (e.g., through production of a great deal of viral mRNA that successfully competes for ribosomes) (see Chapter 36).

Replication of the virus and accumulation of viral components and progeny within the cell can disrupt the structure and function of the cell or disrupt lysosomes, causing cell death. Expression of viral antigens on the cell surface and disruption of the cytoskeleton can change cell-to-cell interactions and the cell's appearance, making the cell a target for immune cytolysis. Viral nucleic acids in the cytoplasm can activate pathogen-associated molecular pattern receptors (PAMPRs) to activate the inflammasome, cytokine, and interferon responses that can limit virus replication.

Viral infection or cytolytic immune responses may induce **apoptosis** in the infected cell. Apoptosis is a preset cascade of events that, when triggered, leads to cellular suicide. This process may facilitate release of the virus from the cell, but it also limits the amount of virus that is produced by destroying the viral "factory." As a result, *many viruses (e.g., herpesviruses, adenoviruses, hepatitis C virus [HCV]) encode methods for inhibiting apoptosis.*

Cell-surface expression of the glycoproteins of some paramyxoviruses, herpesviruses, and retroviruses triggers the fusion of neighboring cells into **multinucleated giant cells** called **syncytia.** Syncytia formation allows the viral infection to spread from cell to cell and escape antibody detection. Syncytia may be fragile and susceptible to lysis. The syncytia that occurs in infection with HIV also causes death of the cells.

Some viral infections cause cytolysis or characteristic changes in the appearance and properties of the target cell, which is called the **cytopathologic effect (CPE)**. The effects on the cell may result from viral takeover of macromolecular synthesis, accumulation of viral proteins or particles, modification or disruption of cellular structures, or manipulation of cellular functions (Table 37.2). For example, chromosomal aberrations and degradation may occur and can be detected with histologic staining (e.g., marginated chromatin ringing the nuclear membrane in HSV-infected and adenovirus-infected cells). In addition, new stainable structures called **inclusion bodies** may

TABLE 37.2 Mechanisms of Viral Cytopathogenesis

Mechanism	Examples
Inhibition of cellular protein synthesis	Poliovirus, HSV, togaviruses, poxviruses
Inhibition and degradation of cellular DNA	Herpesviruses
Alteration of cell membrane structure	Enveloped viruses
Viral glycoprotein insertion in cell membrane	All enveloped viruses
Syncytia formation	HSV, varicella-zoster virus, paramyxoviruses, human immunodeficiency virus
Disruption of cytoskeleton	Nonenveloped viruses (accumulation), HSV
Permeability	Togaviruses, herpesviruses
Toxicity of virion components	Adenovirus fibers, reovirus NSP4 protein
Inclusion Bodies	
Negri bodies (intracytoplasmic)	Rabies
Intranuclear basophilic (owl's eye)	Cytomegalovirus (enlarged cells), adenoviruses
Cowdry type A (intranuclear)	HSV, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (measles) virus
Intracytoplasmic acidophilic	Poxviruses
Perinuclear cytoplasmic acidophilic	Reoviruses

HSV, Herpes simplex virus.

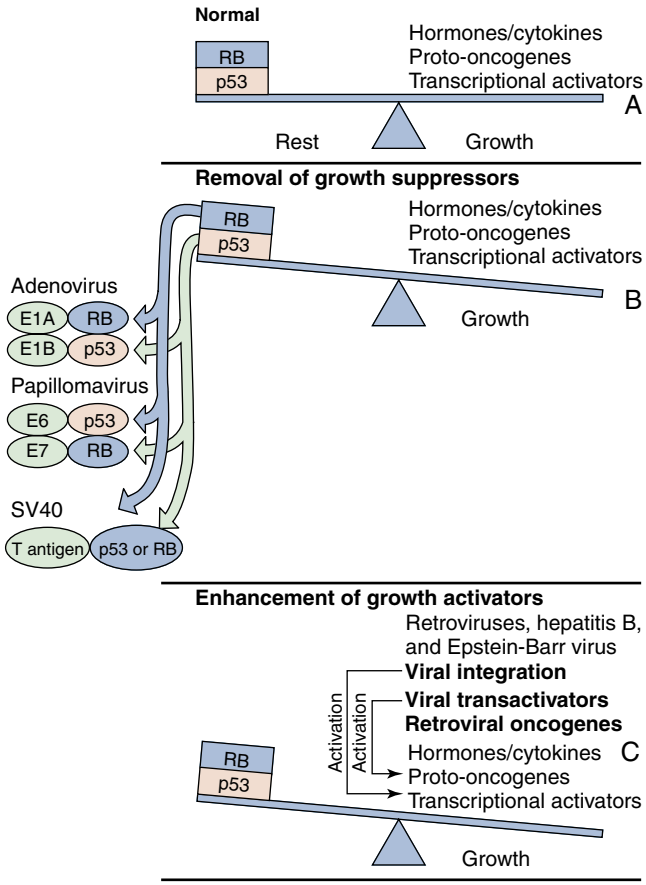


Fig. 37.2 Mechanisms of viral transformation and immortalization. Cell growth is controlled (A) by the maintenance of a balance in the external and internal growth activators (accelerators) and by growth suppressors such as p53 and the retinoblastoma *(RB)* gene product (brakes). Oncogenic viruses alter the balance by removing the brakes (B) or by enhancing the effects of the accelerators (C).

appear within the nucleus or cytoplasm. These structures may result from virus-induced changes in the membrane or chromosomal structure or may represent the sites of viral replication or accumulations of viral capsids. Because the nature and location of these inclusion bodies are characteristic of particular viral infections, their presence facilitates laboratory diagnosis (see Table 37.2). Viral infection may also cause vacuolization, rounding of the cells, and other nonspecific histologic changes that are characteristics of sick cells.

Nonlytic Infections

A **persistent infection** occurs in an infected cell that is not killed by the virus. Some viruses cause a persistent productive infection because the virus is released gently from the cell through exocytosis or through budding (many enveloped viruses) from the plasma membrane. Thinking like a parasite, the virus does not want to kill the cell because *the longer a cell is alive, the longer the virus remains in the body, and the more virus is produced to spread to other cells or individuals.*

A **latent infection** may result from DNA virus infection of a cell that restricts or lacks the machinery for transcribing all the viral genes, or the virus may encode functions that suppress virus replication (e.g., cytomegalovirus) to extend its parasitism. The specific transcription factors required by such a virus may be expressed only in specific tissues, in growing but not resting cells, or after hormone or cytokine induction. For example, HSV establishes a latent infection in neurons that do not express the nuclear factors required to transcribe the immediate early viral genes, but stress and other stimuli can activate the cells to allow viral replication.

Oncogenic Viruses

Some DNA viruses and retroviruses establish persistent infections that can also stimulate uncontrolled cell growth, causing **transformation** or **immortalization** of the cell (Fig. 37.2). *Characteristics of transformed cells include continued growth without senescence, alterations in cell morphology and metabolism, increased cell growth rate and sugar transport, loss of cell-contact inhibition of growth, and ability to grow in a suspension or pile up into foci when grown in a semisolid agar.*

Different **oncogenic** viruses have different mechanisms for immortalizing cells. Viruses immortalize cells by (1) activating or providing growth-stimulating genes, (2) removing the inherent braking mechanisms that limit DNA synthesis and cell growth, (3) preventing apoptosis, or (4) providing or inducing growth-stimulating cytokines. Immortalization by DNA viruses occurs in semipermissive cells, which express only selected viral genes but do not produce virus. Synthesis of viral DNA, late mRNA, late proteins, or virus leads to cell death, which precludes immortalization. Several oncogenic DNA viruses integrate into the host cell chromosome. Papillomavirus, SV40 virus, and adenovirus encode proteins

that bind and inactivate cell growth–regulatory proteins, such as p53 and the retinoblastoma gene product, releasing the brakes on cell growth. Loss of p53 also makes the cell more susceptible to mutation. Epstein-Barr virus immortalizes B cells by stimulating cell growth (as a B-cell mitogen) and by preventing programmed cell death (apoptosis).

Retroviruses (RNA viruses) use three approaches to oncogenesis. Some oncoviruses encode **oncogene** proteins (e.g., SIS, RAS, SRC, MOS, MYC, JUN, FOS) that are almost identical to the cellular proteins involved in cellular growth control (e.g., components of a growth-factor signal cascade [receptors, G-proteins, protein kinases], or growth-regulating transcription factors). The overproduction or altered function of these oncogene products stimulates cell growth. These oncogenic viruses *rapidly* cause tumors to form. *However, no human retrovirus of this type has been identified.*

Human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1 (HTLV-1), the only human oncogenic retrovirus identified, uses more subtle mechanisms of leukemogenesis. It encodes a protein **(TAX)** that **transactivates** gene expression, including genes for growth-stimulating cytokines (e.g., interleukin [IL]-2). This constitutes two approaches for oncogenesis. The third approach is integration of the DNA copy of HTLV-1 near a cellular growth-stimulating gene, which can also cause the gene to be activated by the strong viral enhancer and promoter sequences encoded at each end of the viral genome (long terminal repeat [LTR] sequences). *HTLV-1–associated leukemias* ***develop slowly,*** *occurring 20 to 30 years after infection.* Retroviruses continue to produce the virus in immortalized or transformed cells.

Some viruses may initiate tumor formation indirectly. Hepatitis B virus (HBV) and HCV may have mechanisms for direct oncogenesis; however, both viruses establish persistent infections that cause inflammation and require significant tissue repair. Inflammation and continuous stimulation of liver cell growth and repair may promote mutations that lead to tumor formation. Human herpesvirus-8 (HHV-8) promotes the development of Kaposi sarcoma by means of growth-promoting cytokines encoded by the virus; this disease occurs most often in immunosuppressed patients, such as those with AIDS.

Viral transformation is the first step but is generally not sufficient to cause oncogenesis and tumor formation. Instead, over time, immortalized cells are more likely than normal cells to accumulate other mutations or chromosomal rearrangements that promote development of tumor cells. Immortalized cells may also be more susceptible to cofactors and tumor promoters (e.g., phorbol esters, butyrate) that enhance tumor formation. Approximately 15% of human cancers can be related to oncogenic viruses such as HTLV-1, HBV, HCV, human high risk papillomaviruses, HHV-8, and Epstein-Barr virus.

HOST DEFENSES AGAINST VIRAL INFECTION

The ultimate goals of the host antiviral innate and immune responses are to prevent entry, prevent spread, and eliminate the virus and the cells harboring or replicating the virus **(resolution).** The immune response is the best and in most cases the only means of controlling a viral infection. Interferon and cytotoxic T-cell responses may have evolved primarily as antiviral defense mechanisms. Innate humoral and cellular immune responses are important for antiviral immunity. *The longer the virus replicates in the body, the greater the dissemination of the infection, the more rigorous the immune response necessary to control the infection, and the greater the potential for immunopathogenesis.* A detailed description of the antiviral immune response is presented in Chapter 10.

The skin is the best barrier to infection. The orifices of the body (e.g., mouth, eyes, nose, ears, and anus) are protected by mucus, ciliated epithelium, tears, the gastric acid and bile of the gastrointestinal tract, and secreted IgA. After the virus penetrates these natural barriers, it activates the **antigen-nonspecific (innate) host defenses** (e.g., fever, interferon, macrophages, dendritic cells, natural killer [NK] cells), which attempt to limit and control local viral replication and spread. Unlike for bacteria, the innate response is triggered by infected cells or against infected cells, and the initial response is more likely to be mediated by interferon and cytokines, which induce flulike symptoms rather than inflammation mediated by complement and neutrophils. Viral molecules, including double-stranded RNA (which is the replicative intermediate of RNA viruses), certain forms of DNA and single-stranded RNA, and some viral glycoproteins, activate type I and III interferon production (see Box 10.4) and innate cellular responses through interaction with cytoplasmic receptors or the Toll-like receptors (TLRs) in endosomes. *Innate responses prevent most viral infections from causing disease.*

Antigen-specific immune responses (see Box 10.3) take several days to be activated and become effective. The goal of these protective responses is to resolve the infection by eliminating all infectious virus and virus-infected cells from the body. ***Antibody*** *is effective against extracellular virus and may be sufficient to control cytolytic viruses because viral replication will eliminate the virion factory within the infected cell. Antibody is essential to control virus spread to target tissues by viremia.* ***Cell-mediated immunity*** *is required for lysis of cells infected with a* ***noncytolytic virus*** *(e.g., hepatitis A virus) and infections caused by* ***enveloped viruses.***

Prior immunity may not prevent the initial stages of infection but, in most cases, it does prevent disease progression. Cell-mediated responses are more effective at limiting the local spread of virus, and serum antibody can prevent viremic spread of the virus to the target tissue to prevent the characteristic disease presentation. Memory immune responses can be generated by prior infection or vaccination.

Many viruses, especially the larger viruses, have the means to escape one or more aspects of immune control (see Table 10.3). These mechanisms include preventing interferon action, changing viral antigens, spreading by cell-to-cell transmission to escape antibody, and suppressing antigen presentation and lymphocyte function. By preventing the consequences of the antiviral state induced by IFN-α and IFN-β, HSV protein synthesis and replication can continue. Inhibition of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) I expression by cytomegalovirus and adenoviruses prevents T-cell killing of the infected cell. Antigenic variation over the course of several years (antigenic shift and drift) by influenza or during the lifetime of the infected individual by HIV limits the antiviral efficacy of antibody.

TABLE 37.3 Viral Immunopathogenesis

Immunopathogenesis	Immune Mediators	Examples
Flulike symptoms	Interferon, cytokines	Respiratory viruses, arboviruses (viremia-inducing viruses)
Type IV hypersensitivity and inflammation	T cells, macrophages, and polymorphonuclear leukocytes	Enveloped viruses
Immune complex disease	Antibody, complement	Hepatitis B virus, rubella
Hemorrhagic disease	T cells, antibody, complement	Yellow fever, dengue, Lassa fever, Ebola viruses
Postinfection cytolysis	T cells	Enveloped viruses (e.g., postmeasles encephalitis)
Cytokine storm	Antigen-presenting cells, T cells, cytokines	Enveloped and other viruses
Immunosuppression	T cells, macrophages, dendritic cells	Human immunodeficiency virus, cytomegalovirus, measles virus, influenza virus

Failure to resolve the infection may lead to persistent infection, chronic disease, or death of the patient.

IMMUNOPATHOLOGY

The hypersensitivity and inflammatory reactions initiated by antiviral immunity can be the major cause of the pathologic manifestations and symptoms of viral disease (Table 37.3). Early responses to the virus and viral infection (e.g., interferon, cytokines) can initiate local inflammatory and systemic responses. For example, interferon and cytokines stimulate the **flulike systemic symptoms** (e.g., fever, malaise, headache) usually associated with *respiratory viral infections and viremias* (e.g., arboencephalitis viruses). These symptoms during the viremic stage often precede **(prodrome)** the characteristic symptoms of the viral infection. Some viral infections induce a large cytokine response (cytokine storm), and this can dysregulate immune responses and may trigger autoimmune diseases in genetically predisposed individuals. Later, immune complexes and complement activation (classic pathway), CD4 T-cell–induced type IV hypersensitivity, and CD8 cytolytic T-cell action may induce tissue damage. These actions often promote neutrophil infiltration and more cell damage.

The inflammatory response initiated by cell-mediated immunity is difficult to control and damages tissue. Infections by enveloped viruses, in particular, induce cell-mediated immune responses that usually produce more extensive immunopathologic conditions. For example, the classic symptoms of measles, mumps, and the hepatitis viruses result primarily from the **T-cell–induced inflammatory responses** rather than from cytopathologic effects of the virus. The presence of large amounts of antigen and antibody in blood during viremias or chronic infections (e.g., HBV infection) can initiate the **classic type III immune complex hypersensitivity reactions.** These **immune complexes** can activate the complement system, triggering inflammatory responses and tissue destruction. These immune complexes often accumulate in the kidney and cause glomerulonephritis.

In the case of dengue, partial immunity to a related, or for measles, to an inactivated virus, can result in a more severe host response and disease on subsequent challenge with a related or virulent virus. This is because antigen-specific T-cell and antibody responses are enhanced and induce significant inflammatory and hypersensitivity damage to infected endothelial cells **(dengue hemorrhagic fever)** or skin and the lung **(atypical measles).** In addition, a nonneutralizing antibody can facilitate the uptake of dengue and yellow fever viruses into macrophages through Fc receptors, in which they can replicate.

Children generally have a less active cell-mediated immune response (e.g., NK or natural killer T [NKT] cells) than adults; therefore they usually have milder symptoms during infections by some viruses (e.g., measles, mumps, Epstein-Barr, and varicella-zoster viruses). However, in the case of HBV, mild or no symptoms correlate with an inability to resolve the infection, resulting in chronic disease.

Viral Disease

The relative **susceptibility** of a person and the **severity** of the disease depend on the following factors:

1. Mechanism of exposure and site of infection
2. Immune status, age, and general health of the person
3. Viral dose
4. Genetics of the virus and the host

Once the host is infected, however, the host's immune status and competence are probably the major factors that determine whether a viral infection causes a life-threatening disease, a benign outcome, or no symptoms at all.

The stages of viral disease are shown in Fig. 37.1C. During the **incubation period,** the virus is replicating but has not reached the target tissue or induced sufficient damage to cause the disease. *The incubation period is relatively short if the primary site of infection is the target tissue and produces the characteristic symptoms of the disease. Longer incubation periods occur when the virus must spread to other sites and be amplified before reaching the target tissue, or the symptoms are caused by immunopathology.* Nonspecific or flulike symptoms may precede the characteristic symptoms during the **prodrome.** The incubation periods for many common viral infections are listed in Table 37.4. Specific viral diseases are discussed in subsequent chapters and reviewed in Chapter 38.

The nature and severity of the symptoms of a viral disease are related to the function of the infected target tissue (e.g., liver, hepatitis; brain, encephalitis) and the extent of the immunopathologic responses triggered by the infection. **Inapparent infections** result if (1) the infected tissue is

TABLE 37.4 Incubation Periods of Common Viral Infections

Disease	Incubation Period (Days)[a]
Influenza	1–2
Common cold	1–3
Herpes simplex	2–8
Bronchiolitis, croup	3–5
Acute respiratory disease (adenoviruses)	5–7
Dengue	5–8
Enteroviruses	6–12
Poliomyelitis	5–20
Measles	9–12
Smallpox	12–14
Chickenpox	13–17
Mumps	16–20
Rubella	17–20
Mononucleosis	30–50
Hepatitis A	15–40
Hepatitis B	50–150
Rabies	30–100+
Papilloma (warts)	50–150
HIV	1–15 years
AIDS	1–10 years

[a]Until first appearance of prodromal symptoms. Diagnostic signs (e.g., rash, paralysis) may not appear until 2–4 days later.
Modified from White, D.O., Fenner, F., 1986. Medical Virology, third ed. Academic, New York, NY.

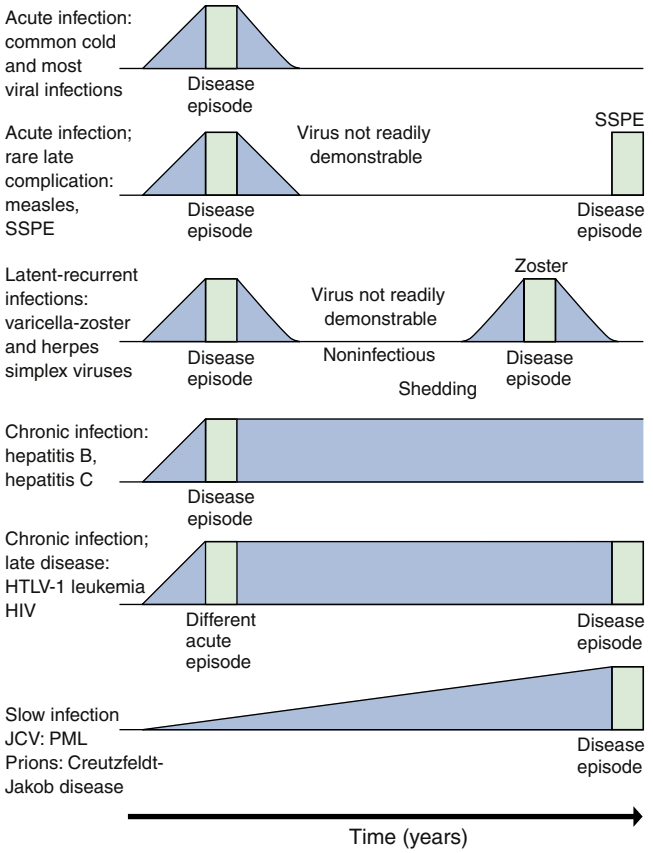


Fig. 37.3 Acute infection and various types of persistent infection, as illustrated by the diseases indicated in the column at the left. *Blue* represents presence of virus; *green* indicates episode of disease. *HIV,* Human immunodeficiency virus; *HTLV-1,* human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1; *JCV,* JC virus; *PML,* progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy; *SSPE,* subacute sclerosing panencephalitis. (Modified from White, D.O., Fenner, F.J., 1986. Medical Virology, third ed. Academic Press, New York, NY.)

undamaged, (2) the infection is controlled before the virus reaches its target tissue, (3) the target tissue is expendable, (4) the damaged tissue is rapidly repaired, or (5) the extent of damage is below a functional threshold for that particular tissue. For example, many infections of the brain are inapparent or are below the threshold of severe loss of function, but encephalitis results if the loss of function becomes significant. Despite the lack of symptoms, virus-specific antibody will be produced. *Inapparent or asymptomatic infections are major sources of contagion.*

Viral infections may cause **acute** or **chronic disease (persistent infection).** The ability and speed with which a person's immune system controls and resolves a viral infection usually determine whether acute or chronic disease ensues, as well as the severity of the symptoms (Fig. 37.3). The acute episode of a persistent infection may be asymptomatic (JC polyomavirus) or may cause symptoms later in life similar to (varicella and zoster) or different from (HIV: acute versus AIDS) those of the acute disease. **Slow viruses and prions** have long incubation periods during which sufficient virus or tissue destruction accumulates before a rapid progression of symptoms.

Epidemiology

Epidemiology studies the spread of disease through a population. Infection of a population is similar to infection of a person in that the virus must spread through the population and is controlled by immunization of the population (Box 37.4). *To endure, viruses must continue to infect new, immunologically naive, susceptible hosts.*

EXPOSURE

People are exposed to viruses throughout their lives. However, some situations, vocations, lifestyles, and living arrangements increase the likelihood that a person will come in contact with certain viruses. In contrast, many viruses are ubiquitous. Previous exposure to HSV-1, HHV-6, varicella-zoster virus, parvovirus B19, Epstein-Barr virus, and many respiratory and enteric viruses can be detected in most young children or by early adulthood by the presence of antibodies to the virus.

Poor hygiene and crowded living, school, and job conditions promote exposure to respiratory and enteric viruses. Day-care centers are consistent sources of viral infections, especially viruses spread by the respiratory and fecal-oral routes. Travel, summer camp, and vocations that bring people in contact with a virus vector (e.g., mosquitoes) put them at particular risk for infection by arboviruses and other zoonoses. Sexual promiscuity also promotes the spread and acquisition of several viruses. Health care workers, such as

BOX 37.4 Viral Epidemiology[a]

Mechanisms of Viral Transmission[b]

Aerosols
Food, water
Fomites (e.g., tissues, clothes)
Direct contact with secretions (e.g., saliva, semen)
Sexual contact, birth
Blood transfusion or organ transplant
Zoonoses (animals, insects [arboviruses])
Genetic (vertical) (e.g., retroviruses)

Disease and Viral Factors That Promote Transmission

Stability of virion in response to environment (e.g., drying, detergents, temperature)
Replication and secretion of virus into transmissible aerosols and secretions (e.g., saliva, semen)
Asymptomatic transmission
Transience or ineffectiveness of immune response to control reinfection or recurrence

Risk Factors

Age
Health
Immune status
Occupation: contact with agent or vector
Travel history
Lifestyle
Children in day-care centers
Sexual activity

Critical Community Size

Seronegative, susceptible people

Geography and Season

Presence of cofactors or vectors in the environment
Habitat and season for arthropod vectors (mosquitoes)
School session: close proximity and crowding
Home-heating season

Modes of Control

Quarantine
Elimination of the vector
Immunization/vaccination
Treatment
Education

[a]Infection of a population instead of a person.
[b]See also Table 37.5.

TABLE 37.5 Viral Transmission

Mode	Examples
Respiratory transmission	Paramyxoviruses, influenza viruses, picornaviruses, rhinoviruses, varicella-zoster virus, B19 virus
Fecal-oral transmission	Picornaviruses, rotavirus, reovirus, noroviruses, adenovirus
Contact (lesions, fomites)	HSV, rhinoviruses, poxviruses, adenovirus
Zoonoses (animals, insects)	Togaviruses (alpha), flaviviruses, bunyaviruses, orbiviruses, arenaviruses, hantaviruses, rabies virus, influenza A virus, orf (pox)
Transmission via blood	HIV, HTLV-1, HBV, HCV, hepatitis delta virus, cytomegalovirus
Sexual contact	HSV, human papillomavirus, molluscum contagiosum, Zika, HIV, HTLV-1, HBV, HCV
Maternal-neonatal transmission	Rubella virus, cytomegalovirus, B19 virus, echovirus, HSV, varicella-zoster virus, HIV
Genetic	Prions, retroviruses

HBV, Hepatitis B virus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus; *HTLV-1,* human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1.

physicians, dentists, nurses, and technicians, are frequently exposed to respiratory and other viruses but are uniquely at risk for acquiring viruses from contaminated blood (HBV, HIV) or vesicle fluid (HSV).

TRANSMISSION OF VIRUSES

Viruses are transmitted by direct contact (including sexual contact), injection with contaminated fluids or blood, transplantation of organs, and the respiratory and fecal-oral routes (Table 37.5). *The route of transmission depends on the source of the virus (the tissue site of viral replication and secretion) and the ability of the virus to endure the hazards and barriers of the environment and the body en route to the target tissue.* For example, viruses that replicate in the respiratory tract (e.g., influenza A virus) are released in aerosol droplets, whereas enteric viruses (e.g., picornaviruses and reoviruses) are passed by the fecal-oral route. Cytomegalovirus is transmitted in most bodily secretions because it infects mucoepithelial, secretory, and other cells found in the skin, secretory glands, lungs, liver, and other organs.

The presence or absence of an envelope is the major structural determinant of the mode of viral transmission. **Nonenveloped viruses** (naked capsid viruses) can withstand drying, the effects of detergents, and extremes of pH and temperature, whereas enveloped viruses generally cannot (see Box 36.4). Specifically, most nonenveloped viruses can withstand the acidic environment of the stomach and the detergent-like bile of the intestines and mild disinfection and insufficient sewage treatment. These viruses are generally transmitted by the respiratory and fecal-oral routes and can often be acquired from contaminated objects **(fomites).** For example, hepatitis A virus, which is a picornavirus, is a nonenveloped virus that is transmitted by the fecal-oral route and acquired from contaminated water, shellfish, and food. Adenoviruses and many other nonenveloped viruses can be spread by contact with fomites such as handkerchiefs and toys.

Unlike the sturdy nonenveloped viruses, most **enveloped viruses** are comparatively fragile (see Box 36.5). They require an intact envelope for infectivity. These viruses must remain wet and are spread (1) in respiratory droplets, blood, mucus, saliva, and semen; (2) by injection; or (3) in organ transplants. Most enveloped viruses are also labile to treatment with acid and detergents, which is a feature that precludes their being transmitted by the fecal-oral route. Exceptions are HBV and coronaviruses.

Animals and insects can also act as **vectors** that spread viral disease to other animals and humans and even to other locales. They can also be **reservoirs** for the virus, maintaining and amplifying the virus in the environment.

Viral diseases that are shared by animals or insects and humans are called **zoonoses.** For example, raccoons, foxes, bats, dogs, and cats are reservoirs and vectors for the rabies virus. Arthropods (e.g., mosquitoes, ticks, sandflies) can act as vectors for togaviruses, flaviviruses, bunyaviruses, or reoviruses. These viruses are often referred to as **arboviruses** because they are *ar*thropod *bo*rne. A more detailed discussion of arboviruses is presented in Chapter 52. Most arboviruses have a very broad host range, capable of replicating in specific insects, birds, amphibians, and mammals, in addition to humans. Also, the arboviruses must establish a sufficient viremia in the animal reservoir so that the insect can acquire the virus during its blood meal.

Other factors that can promote transmission of viruses are the potential for asymptomatic infection, crowded living conditions, certain occupations, certain lifestyles, day-care centers, and travel. Viral transmission during an asymptomatic infection (e.g., HIV, varicella-zoster virus) occurs unknowingly and is difficult to restrict. This is an important characteristic of **sexually transmitted diseases.** Viruses that cause persistent productive infections (e.g., cytomegalovirus, HIV) are a particular problem because the infected person is a continual source of virus that can be spread to immunologically naive people. Viruses with many different serotypes (rhinoviruses) or viruses capable of changing their antigenicity (influenza and HIV) also readily find immunologically naive populations.

MAINTENANCE OF A VIRUS IN THE POPULATION

The persistence of a virus in a community depends on the availability of a critical number of immunologically naive (seronegative), susceptible people. The efficiency of virus transmission determines the size of the susceptible population necessary for maintenance of the virus in the population. Measles will spread if only 5% to 10% of the population are unimmunized and this includes infants. Immunization produced by natural means or by vaccination provides herd immunity and is the best way of reducing the number of such susceptible people.

AGE

A person's age is an important factor in determining his or her susceptibility to viral infections. Infants, children, adults, and elderly persons are susceptible to different viruses and have different symptomatic responses to the infection. These differences may result from variations in body size, recuperative abilities, and most important, immune status in people in these age groups. Differences in lifestyles, habits, school environments, and job settings at different ages also determine when people are exposed to viruses.

Infants and children acquire a series of respiratory and exanthematous viral diseases at first exposure because they are immunologically naive. Infants are especially prone to more serious presentations of paramyxovirus respiratory infections and viral gastroenteritis because of their small size and physiologic requirements (e.g., nutrients, water, electrolytes). However, children generally do not mount as severe an immunopathologic response as adults, and some diseases (herpesviruses) are more benign in children.

Elderly persons are especially susceptible to new viral infections and the reactivation of latent viruses. Because they are less able to initiate a new immune response, repair damaged tissue, and recover, elderly persons are therefore more susceptible to complications after infection and outbreaks of the new strains of the influenza A and B viruses. Elderly persons are also more prone to zoster (shingles), which is a recurrence of varicella-zoster virus, as a result of a decline in this specific immune response with age.

IMMUNE STATUS

The competence of a person's immune response and immune history determine how quickly and efficiently the infection is resolved and can also determine the severity of the symptoms. The rechallenge of a person with prior immunity usually results in asymptomatic or mild disease without transmission. People who are in an immunosuppressed state as a result of AIDS, cancer, or immunosuppressive therapy are at greater risk of suffering more serious disease on primary infection (measles, vaccinia) and are more prone to suffer recurrences of infections with latent viruses (e.g., herpesviruses, papovaviruses).

OTHER HOST FACTORS

General health plays an important role in determining the competence and nature of the immune response and ability to repair diseased tissue. Poor nutrition can compromise a person's immune system and decrease his or her tissue regenerative capacity. Measles becomes much more deadly for individuals deficient in vitamin A, possibly because of an antiinflammatory action of vitamin A. Immunosuppressive diseases and therapies may allow viral replication or recurrence to proceed unchecked. Genetic makeup also plays an important role in determining the response of the immune system to viral infection. Specifically, genetic differences in immune response genes, genes for viral receptors, and other genetic loci affect susceptibility to a viral infection and severity of disease.

GEOGRAPHIC AND SEASONAL CONSIDERATIONS

The geographic distribution of a virus is usually determined by whether the requisite cofactors or vectors are present or whether there is an immunologically naive, susceptible population. For example, many of the arboviruses are limited to the ecologic niche of their arthropod vectors. Extensive global transportation is reducing many of the geographically determined restrictions to virus distribution.

Seasonal differences in the occurrence of viral disease correspond with behaviors that promote spread of the virus. For example, respiratory viruses are more prevalent in the winter because crowding facilitates the spread of such viruses, and the temperature and humid conditions stabilize them. Enteric viruses, on the other hand, are more prevalent during the summer, possibly because hygiene is more lax during this season. The seasonal differences in arboviral diseases reflect the life cycle of the arthropod vector or its reservoir (e.g., birds).

OUTBREAKS, EPIDEMICS, AND PANDEMICS

Outbreaks of a viral infection often result from the introduction of a virus (e.g., hepatitis A) into a new location. The outbreak originates from a **common source** (e.g., food preparation) and often can be stopped once the source is identified. Norovirus outbreaks on cruise ships or from restaurants can often be traced to the dirty hands of an employee. **Epidemics** occur over a larger geographic area and generally result from the introduction of a new strain of virus into an immunologically naive population. **Pandemics** are worldwide epidemics, usually resulting from the introduction of a new virus (e.g., HIV). Pandemics of influenza A used to occur approximately every 10 years as the result of the introduction of new strains of the virus.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Control of Viral Spread

The spread of a virus can be controlled by quarantine, good hygiene, changes in lifestyle, elimination of the vector, or immunization of the population. **Quarantine** was once the only means of limiting epidemics of viral infections and is most effective for limiting the spread of viruses that always cause symptomatic disease (e.g., smallpox). It is now used in hospitals to limit the **nosocomial spread** of viruses, especially to high-risk patients (e.g., immunosuppressed people). Proper sanitation of contaminated items and disinfection of the water supply are means of limiting the spread of enteric viruses. Education and resultant changes in lifestyle have made a difference in the spread of sexually transmitted viruses such as HIV, HBV, and HSV. Elimination of an arthropod or its ecologic niche (e.g., drainage of the swamps it inhabits) has proved effective for controlling arboviruses.

The **best way to limit viral spread, however, is to immunize the population.** Immunization, whether produced by natural infection or by vaccination, protects individuals and reduces the size of the immunologically naive, susceptible population necessary to promote the spread and maintenance of the virus. Immunization of the population to prevent infection of the individual is called **herd immunity**.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, St Louis.
Emond, R.T., Welsby, P.D., Rowland, H.A.K., 2003. Color Atlas of Infectious Diseases, fourth ed. Mosby, St Louis.
Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Gershon, A.A., Hotez, P.J., Katz, S.L., 2004. Krugman's Infectious Diseases of Children, eleventh ed. Mosby, St Louis.
Goering, R., Dockrell, H., Zuckerman, M., et al., 2018. Mims' Medical Microbiology and Immunology, sixth ed. Elsevier, London.
Haller, O., Kochs, G., Weber, F., 2006. The interferon response circuit: induction and suppression by pathogenic viruses. Virology 344, 119–130.
Hart, C.A., Broadhead, R.L., 1992. Color Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases. Mosby, St Louis.
Hart, C.A., Shears, P., 2004. Color Atlas of Medical Microbiology. Mosby, London.
Kaslow, R.A., Stanberry, L.R., Le Duc, J.W., 2014. Viral Infections of Humans: Epidemiology and Control, fifth ed. Heidelberg. Springer.
Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.
Kumar, V., Abul, K., Abbas, A.K., Aster, J.C., 2015. Robbins & Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease, ninth ed. Elsevier.
Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.
Mims, C.A., White, D.O., 1984. Viral Pathogenesis and Immunology. Blackwell, Oxford, England.
Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2009. Clinical Virology, third ed. American Society Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Rosenthal, K.S., 2006. Viruses: microbial spies and saboteurs. Infect. Dis. Clin. Pract. 14, 97–106.
Stark, G.R., Kerr, I.M., Williams, B.R., et al., 1998. How cells respond to interferons. Ann. Rev. Biochem. 67, 227–264.
Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic Press, San Diego.
Wells, A.I., Coyne, C.B., 2018. Type III Interferons in Antiviral Defenses at Barrier Surfaces. Trends in Immunology 39, 848–858 https://doi.org/10.1016/j.it.2018.08.008.
Zuckerman, A.J., Banatvala, J.E., Pattison, J.R., 2009. Principles and Practice of Clinical Virology, sixth ed. Wiley, Chichester, England.

Websites

All the virology on the www.virology.net/garryfavweb.html. Accessed June 8, 2018.
The big picture book of viruses. www.virology.net/Big_Virology/BVHomePage.html. Accessed June 8, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: CDC A-Z index, www.cdc.gov/health/diseases.htm. Accessed June 8, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Traveler's health. www.cdc.gov/travel/diseases.htm. Accessed June 8, 2018.
National Foundation for Infectious Diseases, Fact sheets on diseases. www.nfid.org/factsheets/Default.html. Accessed June 8, 2018.
World Health Organization, Immunization service delivery. www.who.int/immunization_delivery/en/. Accessed June 8, 2018.
World Health Organization, Infectious diseases. www.who.int/topics/infectious_diseases/en/. Accessed June 8, 2018.

Questions

1. What are the routes by which viruses gain entry into the body? For each route, list the barriers to infection and a virus that infects by it.

2. Describe or draw the disease path in the body of a virus that is transmitted by an aerosol and causes lesions on the skin (similar to varicella).

3. Identify the structures that elicit a protective antibody response to adenovirus, influenza A virus, poliovirus, and rabies virus.

4. Describe the major roles of each of the following in promoting resolution of a viral infection: interferon, macrophage, NK cells, CD4 T cells, CD8 T cells, and antibody.

5. Why are IFN-α and IFN-β produced before IFN-γ?

6. How does the nucleoprotein of influenza virus become an antigen for cytolytic CD8 T cells?

7. What events occur during the prodromal periods of a respiratory virus disease (e.g., parainfluenza virus) and encephalitis (e.g., St. Louis encephalitis virus)?

8. List the viral characteristics (structure, replication, target tissue) that would promote transmission by the fecal-oral route, by arthropods, by fomites, by mother's milk, and by sexual activity.

9. What are the different mechanisms by which oncogenic viruses immortalize cells? Describe them.

38 Role of Viruses in Disease

Most viral infections cause mild or no symptoms and do not require extensive treatment. When disease occurs, it often results from the spread of the virus to important tissues and the killing of their cells by either virus replication, inflammation, or other host protections. In addition, viruses are excellent inducers of interferon and cytokine production, which results in systemic symptoms, including flulike symptoms.

In general, the symptoms and severity of a viral infection are determined by (1) the patient's ability to prevent the spread or rapidly resolve the infection before the virus can reach important organs or cause significant damage, (2) the importance of the target tissue, (3) the virulence of the virus, (4) the extent of immunopathology induced in response to the infection, and (5) the ability of the body to repair the damage.

Immunization by prior infection or vaccination is the best means of protection against viral disease. Unlike bacteria, there are relatively few targets for the development of antiviral drugs, but drugs are available for certain viruses.

In this chapter, viral diseases are discussed with respect to their symptoms, the organ system they target, and the host factors that influence their presentation. Subsequent chapters will discuss the characteristics of the members of specific viral families and the diseases they cause. **A return to this chapter will provide a good review of the viruses and their diseases.**

Viral Diseases

The major sites of viral disease are the respiratory tract; the gastrointestinal tract; the epithelial, mucosal, and endothelial linings of the skin, mouth, and genitalia; the lymphoid tissue; the liver and other organs; and the central nervous system (CNS) (Fig. 38.1). The examples given in this chapter represent the more common viral causes of disease.

ORAL AND RESPIRATORY TRACT INFECTIONS

The oropharynx and respiratory tract are the **most common sites** of viral infection and disease (Table 38.1). The viruses are spread in respiratory droplets, aerosols, food, water, and saliva, as well as by close contact and on hands. Similar respiratory symptoms can be caused by several different viruses. For example, bronchiolitis may be caused by respiratory syncytial or parainfluenza virus. Alternatively, one virus may cause different symptoms in different people. Influenza virus can cause a mild upper respiratory tract infection in one person and life-threatening pneumonia in another.

Many viral infections start in the oropharynx or respiratory tract, infect the lung, and spread without causing significant respiratory symptoms. Varicella-zoster virus (VZV) and the measles virus initiate infection in the lung and can cause pneumonia but generally cause systemic infections, resulting in an exanthem (rash). Other viruses that establish primary infection of the oropharynx or respiratory tract and then progress to other sites include rubella, mumps, enteroviruses, and several human herpesviruses (HHVs).

The symptoms and severity of a respiratory viral disease depend on the nature of the virus, the site of infection (upper or lower respiratory tract), and the immune status and age of the person. Conditions such as cystic fibrosis and smoking, which compromise the ciliated and mucoepithelial barriers to infection, increase the risk of serious disease.

Pharyngitis and oral disease are common viral presentations. Most enteroviruses (picornaviruses) infect the oropharynx and then progress by way of a viremia to other target tissues. For example, symptoms such as acute-onset pharyngitis, fever, and oral vesicular lesions are characteristic of coxsackievirus A infections (herpangina, hand-foot-and-mouth disease) and some coxsackievirus B and echovirus infections. Adenovirus and the early stages of Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) disease are characterized by sore throat and tonsillitis with exudative membranes; EBV goes on to cause infectious mononucleosis. Herpes simplex virus (HSV) causes local primary infections of the oral mucosa and face (gingivostomatitis) and then establishes a latent neuronal infection that can recur in the form of herpes labialis (cold sores, fever blisters). HSV is also a common cause of pharyngitis. HSV and coxsackievirus A may also involve the tonsils, but with vesicular lesions. Vesicular lesions on the buccal mucosa (Koplik spots) are an early diagnostic feature of measles infection.

Upper respiratory tract viral infections, including the common cold and pharyngitis, account for at least 50% of absenteeism from schools and the workplace, despite being generally benign. Rhinoviruses and coronaviruses are the predominant causes of upper respiratory tract infections. A runny nose (rhinitis) followed by congestion, cough, sneezing, conjunctivitis, headache, and sore throat are typical symptoms of the common cold. Other causes of the common cold or pharyngitis are specific serotypes of echoviruses and coxsackieviruses, adenoviruses, influenza viruses, parainfluenza viruses, metapneumovirus, and respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).

Tonsillitis, laryngitis, and **croup** (laryngotracheobronchitis) may accompany certain respiratory tract viral infections. Inflammatory responses to viral infection cause the trachea to narrow below the vocal cords (subglottic area), resulting in laryngitis (adults) and croup (children). This narrowing causes loss of voice; a hoarse, barking cough; and the risk, especially in young children, for a blocked airway and choking. Children infected with parainfluenza viruses are especially at risk for croup.

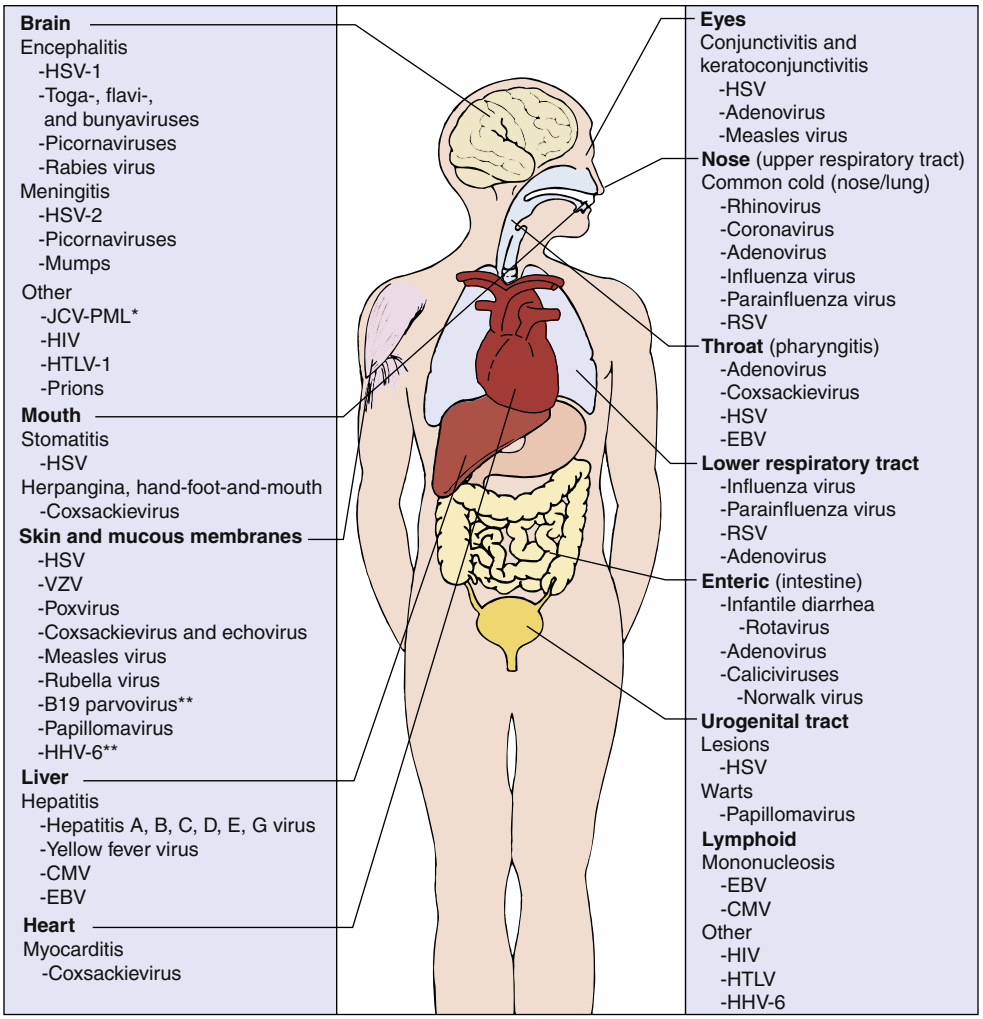


Fig. 38.1 Major target tissues of viral disease. Asterisk *(*)* indicates progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy *(PML)*. Infection by viruses indicated by double asterisks *(**)* results in an immune-mediated rash. *CMV,* Cytomegalovirus; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *HHV-6,* human herpesvirus 6; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus; *HTLV,* human T-cell lymphotropic virus; *JCV,* JC virus; *RSV,* respiratory syncytial virus; *VZV,* varicella-zoster virus.

Lower respiratory tract viral infections can result in more serious disease. Symptoms of such infections include bronchiolitis (inflammation of the bronchioles), pneumonia, pneumonitis, and related diseases. Parainfluenza virus, metapneumovirus, and RSVs are major problems for infants and children but usually cause asymptomatic infections or common cold symptoms in adults. Parainfluenza 3 virus, and especially RSV infections, are major causes of life-threatening pneumonia or bronchiolitis in infants younger than 6 months. Infection with these viruses does not provide lifelong immunity.

Influenza virus is probably the best known and most feared of the common respiratory viruses, with the annual introduction of new strains of virus ensuring the presence of immunologically naive victims. Children are universally susceptible to new strains of virus, whereas older people may have been immunized during a prior outbreak of the annual strain. Despite such immunization, elderly people are especially susceptible to pneumonia caused by new strains of virus because they may not be able to mount a sufficient primary immune response to the new strain of influenza virus or to repair the tissue damage caused by the disease. Influenza infection also increases risk for life-threatening pneumonia by *Staphylococcus aureus* or streptococcal coinfections. Other possible viral agents of pneumonia are adenovirus, paramyxoviruses, and primary VZV infections of adults.

FLULIKE AND SYSTEMIC SYMPTOMS

Many viral infections cause classic **flulike symptoms** (e.g., fever, malaise, anorexia, headache, body aches). During the viremic phase, many viruses induce the release of interferon and cytokines, which cause these symptoms. In addition to the respiratory viruses, flulike symptoms may accompany infections by arboencephalitis viruses, HSV type 2 (HSV-2), and other viruses.

Arthritis, arthralgia, and other inflammatory diseases may result from the cytokine storm and immune hypersensitivity responses induced by the infection or

TABLE 38.1 Oral and Respiratory Diseases

Disease	Etiologic Agent
Common cold	Rhinovirus[a] Coronavirus[a] Influenza viruses Parainfluenza viruses RSV Metapneumovirus Adenovirus Enteroviruses
Pharyngitis	Adenovirus[a] Coxsackievirus A[a] (herpangina, hand-foot-and-mouth disease) and other enteroviruses Epstein-Barr virus Herpes simplex virus
Croup, tonsillitis, laryngitis, and bronchitis (children <2 years)	Parainfluenza virus 1[a] Parainfluenza virus 2 Influenza virus Adenovirus Epstein-Barr virus
Bronchiolitis	RSV[a] (infants) Parainfluenza virus 3[a] (infants and children) Parainfluenza viruses 1 and 2 Metapneumovirus
Pneumonia	RSV[a] (infants) Parainfluenza virus[a] (infants) Influenza virus[a] Metapneumovirus Adenovirus Varicella-zoster virus (primary infection of adults or immunocompromised hosts) Cytomegalovirus (infection of immunocompromised host) Measles

[a]Most common causal agents.
RSV, Respiratory syncytial virus.

immune complexes containing viral antigen that accompany viremia. For example, parvovirus B19 infection (of adults); rubella; the hepatitis A, B, and C viruses; and infection with some arboviruses elicit arthritis and arthralgia. The arthralgia and myalgia of dengue earned the title "break-bone fever." Immune complex disease that is associated with chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) can result in various presentations, including arthritis and nephritis.

GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT INFECTIONS

Infections of the gastrointestinal tract can result in gastroenteritis, vomiting, diarrhea, or no symptoms (Box 38.1). These viruses are naked capsid viruses with a physical structure that can withstand the harsh conditions of the gastrointestinal tract. Norwalk virus, caliciviruses, astroviruses, adenoviruses, reoviruses, and rotaviruses infect the small intestine but not the colon, altering the function or damaging the epithelial lining and the absorptive villi. This leads to malabsorption of water and an electrolyte imbalance. The resultant diarrhea in older children and adults is generally self-limited and can be treated with rehydration and restoration of the electrolyte balance. These viruses, especially rotavirus, are major problems for adults and children in regions in which there is drought and starvation.

BOX 38.1 Gastrointestinal Viruses

Infants

Rotavirus A[a]
Adenovirus 40, 41
Coxsackievirus A24

Infants, Children, and Adults

Norwalk virus[a]
Calicivirus
Astrovirus
Rotavirus A and B (outbreaks in China)
Reovirus

[a]Most common causal agents.

Viral gastroenteritis has a more significant effect on infants and may necessitate hospitalization. The extent of tissue damage and consequent loss of fluids and electrolytes may be life-threatening. Rotavirus and adenovirus serotypes 40 and 41 are the major causes of infantile gastroenteritis.

Fecal-oral spread of the enteric viruses is promoted by poor hygiene and is especially prevalent in day-care centers. Norwalk virus and calicivirus outbreaks affecting older children and adults are generally linked to a common contaminated food or water source. Vomiting usually accompanies diarrhea in patients infected with the Norwalk virus and rotavirus. Although enteroviruses (picornaviruses) are spread by the fecal-oral route, they usually cause only mild or no gastrointestinal symptoms. Instead, these viruses establish a viremia, spread to other target organs, and then cause clinical disease.

EXANTHEMS, HEMORRHAGIC FEVERS, AND ARTHRITIDES

Virus-induced skin disease (Table 38.2) can result from infection through the mucosa or small cuts or abrasions in the skin (HSV), as a secondary infection after establishment of a viremia (VZV and smallpox), or as a result of the inflammatory response mounted against viral antigens (parvovirus B19). The major classifications of viral rashes are maculopapular, vesicular, nodular, and hemorrhagic. **Macules** are flat, colored spots. **Papules** are slightly raised areas of the skin that may result from immune or inflammatory responses rather than the direct effects of the virus. **Nodules** are larger raised areas of the skin. **Vesicular lesions** are blisters and are likely to contain virus. Human papillomaviruses (HPVs) cause warts, and molluscum contagiosum causes wartlike growths (nodules) by stimulating the growth of skin cells.

The classic childhood exanthems are roseola infantum (exanthem subitum [HHV-6]); fifth disease (erythema infectiosum [parvovirus B19]); and (in unvaccinated children) varicella, measles, and rubella. The rash follows a viremia and is accompanied by fever. Rashes are also caused by enterovirus, alpha togaviruses, and dengue and other flavivirus infections. They also are occasionally seen in patients with infectious mononucleosis.

The yellow fever virus, dengue virus, Ebola virus, Lassa fever, Sin Nombre virus, Zika, and other hemorrhagic

TABLE 38.2 Viral Exanthems

Condition	Etiologic Agent
RASH	
Rubeola	Measles virus
German measles	Rubella virus
Roseola infantum	Human herpesvirus 6[a]
Erythema infectiosum	Human parvovirus B19[a]
Boston exanthem	Echovirus 16
Infectious mononucleosis	Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus
VESICLES	
Oral or genital herpes	Herpes simplex virus[a]
Chickenpox/shingles	Varicella-zoster virus[a]
Hand-foot-and-mouth disease, herpangina	Coxsackievirus A[a]
PAPILLOMAS, NODULES	
Warts	Papillomavirus[a]
Molluscum	Molluscum contagiosum[a]

[a]Most common causal agents.

BOX 38.2 Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers

Yellow fever virus
Dengue viruses
Hantavirus
Ebola virus
Marburg virus
Lassa fever virus

BOX 38.3 Infections of Organs and Tissues

Liver

Hepatitis A,[a] 2 B,[a] C,[a] G, D, and E viruses
Yellow fever virus
Epstein-Barr virus
Hepatitis in the neonate or immunocompromised person:
- Cytomegalovirus
- Herpes simplex virus
- Varicella-zoster virus
- Rubella virus (congenital rubella syndrome)

Heart

Coxsackievirus B

Kidney

Cytomegalovirus
BK papillomavirus

Muscle

Coxsackievirus B (pleurodynia)

Glands

Cytomegalovirus
Mumps virus
Coxsackievirus B

Eye

Herpes simplex virus[a]
Adenovirus[a]
Measles virus
Rubella virus
Enterovirus 70
Coxsackievirus A24

[a]Most common causal agents.

fever viruses establish a viremia and infect the endothelial cell lining of the vasculature, possibly compromising the structure of the blood vessel (Box 38.2). Viral or immune cytolysis can then lead to greater permeability or rupture of the vessel, producing a hemorrhagic rash with petechiae (pinpoint hemorrhages under the skin) and ecchymoses (massive bruises) and hence internal bleeding, loss of electrolytes, and shock.

Arthritis can be a consequence of direct infection of the joint or immune responses to viruses such as the togaviruses (e.g., Chikungunya, rubella), parvovirus B19, flaviviruses (e.g., dengue and hepatitis C virus [HCV]), HBV, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1 (HTLV-1). Immune complexes containing viral antigen may trigger inflammatory responses, or the virus infection may trigger autoimmune responses, but most viral arthritis is temporary.

INFECTIONS OF THE EYE

Infections of the eye result from direct contact with a virus or from viremic spread (Box 38.3). Conjunctivitis (pinkeye) is a normal feature of many childhood infections and is a characteristic of infections caused by specific adenovirus serotypes (3, 4a, and 7), measles virus, and rubella virus. Keratoconjunctivitis, caused by adenovirus (8, 19a, and 37), HSV, or VZV, involves the cornea and can cause severe damage. HSV disease can recur, causing scarring and blindness. Enterovirus 70 and coxsackievirus A24 can cause an acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis. Cataracts are classic features of babies born with congenital rubella syndrome. Chorioretinitis is associated with cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection in newborns (congenital) and in immunosuppressed people (e.g., those with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]).

INFECTIONS OF THE ORGANS AND TISSUES

Infection of the major organs may cause significant disease or result in further spread or secretion of the virus (see Box 38.3). The symptoms may arise from tissue damage or inflammatory responses.

The liver is a prominent target for many viruses that reach the liver by means of a viremia or the mononuclear phagocyte (reticuloendothelial) system. The liver acts as a source for a secondary viremia but can also be damaged by the infection. Infections with hepatitis A, B, C, G, D, and E viruses and yellow fever virus cause classic symptoms of hepatitis. Immunopathology is a major cause of the signs and symptoms of hepatitis. Hepatosplenomegaly (enlarged liver and spleen) is often associated with EBV infectious mononucleosis and CMV infections. The liver is also a

major target in disseminated HSV infection of neonates and infants.

The heart and other muscles are also susceptible to viral infection and damage. Coxsackievirus can cause myocarditis or pericarditis in newborns, children, and adults. Coxsackievirus B can infect muscle and cause pleurodynia (Bornholm disease). Other viruses (e.g., influenza virus, CMV) can also infect the heart.

Infection of the secretory glands, accessory sexual organs, and mammary glands results in contagious spread of CMV. An inflammatory response to the infection, as occurs in **mumps** (parotitis, orchitis), may be the cause of the symptoms. Coxsackievirus B infection of islet cells can initiate autoimmune responses that cause type 1 diabetes. CMV infection of the kidney and reactivation are problems for immunosuppressed people and a predominant reason for kidney transplant failure.

INFECTIONS OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Viral infections of the brain and CNS may cause the most serious viral diseases because of the importance of the CNS and its very limited capacity to repair damage (Box 38.4). Tissue damage is usually caused by a combination of viral pathogenesis and immunopathogenesis. Most potentially neurotropic viral infections are asymptomatic, however, because the virus does not reach the brain from its peripheral infection site or does not cause sufficient tissue damage to produce symptoms.

Virus may spread to the CNS in blood (arboviruses) or in macrophages (HIV); it may spread from a peripheral infection of the neurons (olfactory), or it may first infect skin (HSV) or muscle (polio, rabies) and then progress to the innervating neurons. The virus may have a predilection for certain sites in the brain. For example, the temporal lobe is targeted in HSV encephalitis, the Ammon horn in rabies, and the anterior horn of the spinal cord and motor neurons in polio.

Viral infections of the CNS are usually distinguished from bacterial infections by the finding of mononuclear cells, low numbers of polymorphonuclear leukocytes, and normal or slightly reduced levels of glucose in the cerebrospinal fluid. Immunoassay detection of specific antigen, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) or reverse transcriptase (RT)-PCR detection of viral genomes or mRNA, or isolation of the virus from a cerebrospinal fluid or biopsy specimen confirms the diagnosis and identifies the viral agent. The season of the year also facilitates the diagnosis, in that enteroviral and arboviral diseases generally occur during the summer, whereas HSV encephalitis and other viral syndromes may be observed year-round.

Aseptic meningitis is caused by an inflammation and swelling of the meninges that envelopes the brain and spinal cord in response to infection with enteroviruses (especially echoviruses and coxsackieviruses), HSV-2, the mumps virus, or the lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus. The disease is usually self-limited and, unlike bacterial meningitis, resolves without sequelae unless the virus gains access to and infects neurons or the brain **(meningoencephalitis).** The viruses gain access to the meninges by means of a viremia.

BOX 38.4 Central Nervous System Infections

Meningitis

Enteroviruses
- Echoviruses
- Coxsackievirus[a]
- Poliovirus

Herpes simplex virus 2[a]
Adenovirus
Mumps virus
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus
Arboencephalitis viruses

Paralysis

Poliovirus
Enteroviruses D68, 70 and 71
Coxsackievirus A and A16
West Nile virus

Encephalitis

Herpes simplex virus 1[a]
Varicella-zoster virus
Arboencephalitis viruses[a]
Rabies virus
Coxsackieviruses A and B
Polioviruses

Postinfectious Encephalitis (Immune Mediated)

Measles virus
Mumps virus
Rubella virus
Varicella-zoster virus
Influenza viruses

Other

JC virus (progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy [in immunosuppressed people])
Measles variant (subacute sclerosing panencephalitis)
Prions (spongiform encephalopathy)
Human immunodeficiency virus (AIDS dementia)
Human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1 (tropical spastic paraparesis)

[a]Most common causal agents.
AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

Encephalitis and **myelitis** result from a combination of viral pathogenesis and immunopathogenesis in brain tissue and neurons and are either fatal or cause significant damage and permanent neurologic sequelae. HSV, VZV, rabies virus, California encephalitis viruses, West Nile and St. Louis encephalitis viruses, mumps, and measles virus are potential causes of encephalitis. Poliovirus and several other enteroviruses cause paralytic disease (myelitis).

HSV and VZV are ubiquitous and usually cause asymptomatic latent infections of the CNS but can also cause encephalitis. Most arboencephalitis virus infections result in flulike symptoms rather than encephalitis. Postmeasles encephalitis and subacute sclerosing panencephalitis were rare sequelae of measles in the prevaccine era.

Other virus-induced neurologic syndromes are HIV dementia, HTLV-1 tropical spastic paraparesis, JC papovavirus–induced progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML) in immunodeficient people, and the prion-associated spongiform encephalopathies (kuru, Creutzfeldt-Jakob

disease, Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker disease). PML and the spongiform encephalopathies have long incubation periods.

HEMATOLOGIC DISEASES

Lymphocytes and macrophages are not very permissive for viral replication but are targets for several viruses that establish persistent infections. These cells are also antigen-presenting cells, and during the acute phase of infection, viral replication of EBV, HIV, or CMV elicits a large T-cell response, resulting in **mononucleosis-like syndromes.** In addition, CMV, measles virus, and HIV infections of T cells are immunosuppressive. HIV reduces the numbers of CD4 helper T cells, further compromising the immune system. HTLV-1 infection causes little disease on infection but may lead to **adult T-cell leukemia** or tropical spastic paraparesis much later in life (Box 38.5).

Macrophages and cells of the macrophage lineage can be infected by many viruses. Macrophages act as vehicles for spreading the virus throughout the body because viruses replicate inefficiently in them, and the cells are generally not lysed by the infection. This process promotes persistent and chronic infections. The macrophage is the primary target cell for the dengue virus. Nonneutralizing antibody can promote uptake of dengue virus and HIV into the cell through Fc receptors. Macrophages and cells of the myeloid lineage are the initial cells infected with HIV and provide a reservoir for the virus and access to the brain. AIDS dementia is thought to result from the actions of HIV-infected macrophages and microglial cells in the brain.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED VIRAL DISEASES

Sexual transmission is a major route for the spread of papillomavirus, HSV, CMV, HIV, HTLV-1, HBV, HCV, and hepatitis D virus (HDV) (Box 38.6). Such viruses establish chronic and latent recurrent infections, with asymptomatic shedding into semen and vaginal secretions. These viral properties foster dissemination via a route of transmission that is used relatively infrequently and might be avoided during symptomatic disease. The viruses can also be transmitted neonatally or perinatally to infants. Papillomaviruses and HSV establish local primary infections, with recurrent disease at the initial site. Lesions and asymptomatic shedding are sources for sexual transmission and for perinatal transmission to the newborn. CMV and HIV infect myeloid and lymphoid cells under the mucosal lining, whereas the hepatitis viruses are delivered to the liver. CMV, HIV, and the hepatitis viruses are present in blood, semen, and vaginal secretions, which can transmit the virus to sexual partners and neonates. Zika virus can also be spread by sexual transmission.

BOX 38.5 Viruses Transmitted in Blood

Hepatitis B, C, G, D
Human immunodeficiency virus
Human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1
Cytomegalovirus
Epstein-Barr virus
West Nile encephalitis virus

BOX 38.6 Sexually Transmitted Viruses

Human papillomavirus 6, 11, 42
Human papillomavirus 16, 18, 31, 45, and others (high risk for human cervical carcinoma)
Herpes simplex virus (HSV-1 and HSV-2)
Cytomegalovirus
Hepatitis B, C, and D viruses
Human immunodeficiency virus
Human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1
Zika virus

VIRUSES SPREAD BY TRANSFUSION AND TRANSPLANTATION

HBV, HCV, HDV, HIV, HTLV-1, and CMV are transmitted by blood and organ transplants. These viruses are also present in semen and therefore are sexually transmitted. The chronic nature of the infection, the persistent asymptomatic release of the virus, or the infection of macrophages and lymphocytes promotes transmission by these routes. West Nile encephalitis virus establishes a sufficient viremia for a long enough period that transmission by transfusion has occurred. Screening of the blood supply for HBV, HCV, HIV, and HTLV has controlled transmission of these viruses in blood transfusions (Box 38.7). Blood for babies and organ recipients are screened for CMV.

VIRUSES SPREAD BY ARTHROPODS AND ANIMALS

Arthropod-borne viruses **(arboviruses)** include many of the togaviruses, flaviviruses, and bunyaviruses and the Colorado tick fever reovirus. These viruses establish sufficient viremia in birds or animals (host) to allow their acquisition by mosquitos or ticks (vector) and subsequent transmission to humans when humans enter the habitat of the vector and host. If a virus can establish a sufficient viremia in humans, then the virus, such as yellow fever virus, West Nile, or St. Louis encephalitis virus, will be spread from people in an urban setting. Arenavirus, hantavirus, and rhabdovirus are transmitted to humans in saliva, urine, or feces or through the bite of an infected animal (Table 38.3). Rabies vaccines are available for individuals whose jobs put them at risk or who are suspected to have been infected with rabies.

BOX 38.7 Screening of the Blood Supply

HIV-1 and HIV-2
Hepatitis B virus
Hepatitis C virus
Human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1 and 2
West Nile encephalitis virus
Treponema pallidum (syphilis)[a]

[a]Other than bacterial growth, *Treponema pallidum* is the only nonviral microbe assayed.

SYNDROMES OF POSSIBLE VIRAL ETIOLOGY

Several diseases either produce symptoms or have epidemiologic or other characteristics that resemble those of viral infections or may be the sequelae of viral infections (e.g., inflammatory responses to a persistent viral infection). They include **multiple sclerosis, Kawasaki disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, arthritis, diabetes,** and **chronic fatigue syndrome.** Also, the strong cytokine response to many virus infections and the resemblance of viral proteins to host proteins (molecular mimicry) may trigger a loss of tolerance to self-antigens to initiate autoimmune diseases.

Chronic and Potentially Oncogenic Infections

Chronic infections occur when the immune system has difficulty resolving the infection. The DNA viruses (except parvovirus and poxvirus) and the retroviruses cause latent infections with the potential for recurrence. CMV and other herpesviruses; hepatitis viruses B, C, G, and D; and retroviruses cause chronic productive infections. These "passengers" may influence the health of the individual in subtle ways.

HBV, HCV, EBV, HHV-8, HPV, and HTLV-1 are associated with **human cancers.** EBV, HPV, and HTLV-1 can immortalize cells; after immortalization, cofactors, chromosomal aberrations, or both enable a clone of virus-containing cells to grow into a cancer. EBV normally causes infectious mononucleosis but is also associated with African Burkitt lymphoma, Hodgkin lymphoma, lymphomas in immunosuppressed individuals, and nasopharyngeal carcinoma; HTLV-1 is associated with human adult T-cell leukemia. Many papillomaviruses induce a simple hyperplasia characterized by the development of a wart; however, several other strains of HPV have been associated with human cancers (e.g., types 16, 18, 33, 35, 58, and 68 are associated with cervical, anal, penile and oropharyngeal cancers.). Direct viral action or the inflammation and chronic cell damage and repair in livers infected by HBV or HCV can result in a tumorigenic event leading to hepatocellular carcinoma. Immunosuppression in patients who have AIDS, patients undergoing cancer chemotherapy, or transplant recipients also allows the production of lymphoma by EBV. HHV-8 infection produces many cytokines to stimulate cell growth, and this growth can progress to Kaposi sarcoma, especially in persons with AIDS.

Vaccines are now available for HBV and high-risk HPV strains. Vaccination has reduced the spread of viral hepatitis, which will reduce the occurrence of primary hepatocellular carcinoma. Similarly, the HPV vaccines should also reduce the incidence of cervical and other HPV associated cancers.

TABLE 38.3 Arboviruses and Zoonoses

Virus	Family	Reservoir/Vector
Eastern equine encephalitis	Togaviridae	Birds/*Aedes* mosquito
Western equine encephalitis	Togaviridae	Birds/*Culex* mosquito
West Nile encephalitis	Flaviviridae	Birds/*Culex* mosquito
St. Louis encephalitis	Flaviviridae	Birds/*Culex* mosquito
Chikungunya	Togaviridae	Birds, mammals/*Aedes* mosquito
California encephalitis	Bunyaviridae	Small mammals/*Aedes* mosquito
La Crosse encephalitis	Bunyaviridae	Small mammals/*Aedes* mosquito
Yellow fever	Flaviviridae	Birds/*Aedes* mosquito
Dengue	Flaviviridae	Monkeys/*Aedes* mosquito
Zika	Flaviviridae	*Aedes* mosquito
Colorado tick fever	Reoviridae	Tick
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis	Arenaviridae	Rodents
Lassa fever	Arenaviridae	Rodents
Sin Nombre hantavirus	Bunyaviridae	Deer mice
Ebola	Filoviridae	Bats and other
Rabies	Rhabdoviridae	Bats, foxes, raccoons, etc.
Influenza A	Orthomyxoviridae	Birds, swine, etc.

Infections in Immunocompromised Patients

Patients with **deficient cell-mediated immunity** are generally more susceptible to serious disease from enveloped viruses (especially the herpesviruses, measles virus, and even the vaccinia virus used for smallpox vaccinations) and to recurrences of infections with latent viruses (herpesviruses and papovaviruses). Severe T-cell deficiencies also affect the antiviral antibody response. Cell-mediated immunodeficiencies can be congenital or acquired. They may result from genetic defects (e.g., Duncan disease, DiGeorge syndrome, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome), leukemia or lymphoma, infections (e.g., AIDS), or immunosuppressive therapy.

Viruses cause atypical and more severe presentations in immunosuppressed people. For example, infections with herpesviruses (e.g., HSV, CMV, VZV) or the vaccinia smallpox vaccine, which are normally benign and localized, can progress locally or may disseminate and cause visceral and neurologic infections that can be life-threatening. A measles infection might cause a giant cell (syncytial) pneumonia rather than the characteristic rash.

People with immunoglobulin A deficiency or hypogammaglobulinemia (antibody deficiency) have more problems with respiratory and gastrointestinal viruses. Hypogammaglobulinemic people are more likely to suffer significant disease after infection by viruses that progress by viremia, which also include the live polio vaccine, echovirus, and VZV.

Congenital, Neonatal, and Perinatal Infections

The development and growth of the fetus are so ordered and rapid that a viral infection can damage or prevent appropriate formation of important tissues, leading to miscarriage or congenital abnormalities. Infection can occur in utero (prenatal, e.g., rubella, parvovirus B19, CMV, HIV), during transit through the birth canal by contact with lesions or blood (neonatal, e.g., HSV, HBV, CMV, HPV), or soon after birth (postnatal, e.g., HIV, CMV, HBV, HSV, coxsackievirus B, echovirus).

Neonates depend on the mother's immunity to protect them from viral infections. They receive maternal antibodies through the placenta and then in the mother's milk. This type of passive immunity can remain effective for 6 months to 1 year after birth. Maternal antibodies can (1) protect against spread of virus to the fetus during a viremia (e.g., rubella, B19), (2) protect against many enteric and respiratory tract viral infections, and (3) reduce the severity of other viral diseases after birth. Nevertheless, because the cell-mediated immune system is not mature at birth, newborns are susceptible to viruses that spread by cell-to-cell contact (e.g., RSV, HSV, VZV, CMV, HIV).

Rubella virus and CMV are examples of **teratogenic viruses** that can cause congenital infection and severe congenital abnormalities. HIV infection acquired in utero or from mother's milk initiates a chronic infection, leading to lymphadenopathy, failure to thrive, or encephalopathy within 2 years of birth. HSV can be acquired during passage through an infected birth canal and can result in life-threatening disseminated disease. Nosocomial infection of newborns can result in a similar outcome. If parvovirus B19 is acquired in utero, it can cause spontaneous abortion.

Bibliography

Atkinson, W., Wolfe, S., Hamborsky, J. (Eds.), 2011. Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases, twelfth ed. Public Health Foundation, Washington, DC.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1989. Guidelines for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis B virus to health-care and public-safety workers. MMWR. Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep. 38 (Suppl. 6), 1–37.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Ellner Emond, R.T.D., Rowland, H.A.K., Welsby, P., 2003. Colour Atlas of Infectious Diseases, fourth ed. Mosby, London.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Haaheim, L.R., Pattison, J.R., Whitley, R.J., 2002. A Practical Guide to Clinical Virology, second ed. Wiley, New York.

Kadambari, S., Segal, S., 2017. Acute viral exanthems. Medicine 45 (12), 788–793.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Logan, S.A.E., MacMahon, E., 2008. Viral meningitis. BMJ 336, 36–40.

Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Outhred, A.C., Kok, J., Dwyer, D.E., 2011. Viral arthritides. Expert. Rev. Antiinfect. Ther. 9, 545–554.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

Tyler, K.L., 2018. Acute viral encephalitis. N. Engl. J. Med. 379, 557–566. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra1708714.

Tyrrell, C.S.B., Allen, J.L.Y., Carson, G., 2017. Influenza and other emerging respiratory viruses. Medicine 45 (12), 781–787.

Websites

All the virology on the www.virology.net/garryfavweb.html. Accessed June 8, 2018.

The big picture book of viruses. www.virology.net/Big_Virology/BVHomePage.html. Accessed June 8, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: CDC A-Z index. www.cdc.gov/health/diseases.htm. Accessed June 8, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Traveler's health. www.cdc.gov/travel/diseases.htm. Accessed June 8, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Vital Signs: Trends in Reported Vectorborne Disease Cases United States and Territories, 2004–2016 MMWR, May 1, 2018/Vol. 67. https://mail.google.com/mail/u/0/#inbox/FFNDWMQWGHJSPXsMXjTJJBTxspwGvPdK?projector=1&messagePartId=0.13.

National Foundation for Infectious Diseases: Fact sheets on diseases. www.nfid.org/factsheets/Default.html. Accessed June 8, 2018.

World Health Organization: Immunization service delivery. www.who.int/immunization_delivery/en/. Accessed June 8, 2018.

World Health Organization: Infectious Diseases. www.who.int/topics/infectious_diseases/en/. Accessed June 8, 2018.

World Health Organization: List of all health topic publications including specific viruses. https://www.who.int/health-topics/.

National Foundation for Infectious Diseases: Fact sheets on diseases. www.nfid.org/factsheets/Default.html. Accessed June 17, 2018.

39 Laboratory Diagnosis of Viral Diseases

Viral laboratory studies are primarily performed to confirm the diagnosis by identifying the viral agent of infection; however, to guide the choice of appropriate antimicrobial therapy, check on the compliance of the patient taking antiviral drugs, define the course of the disease, monitor the disease epidemiologically, and educate physicians and patients (Box 39.1). The molecular and immunologic techniques used for many of these procedures are described in Chapters 5 and 6.

There have been many new developments that have changed laboratory viral diagnosis of clinical samples. Methods are more rapid and sensitive, less expensive, technically easier, and commercially available. These include genome amplification techniques and genomic sequencing for direct identification of the virus, better antibody reagents and more sensitive assays for antigen and serology, and assays that can identify multiple viruses (multiplex) and be automated. Often, isolation of the organism is unnecessary and avoided to minimize the risk to laboratory and other personnel. The quicker turnaround allows a more rapid choice of the appropriate therapy, whether antiviral, antibacterial, or other.

Specimen Collection

Selection of the appropriate specimen is dependent on the differential diagnosis for the patient and the tests to be performed (Table 39.1). The selection is often complicated because several viruses may cause the same clinical disease. For example, the development of meningitis symptoms during the summer suggests an arbovirus, in which case cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and blood should be collected, or an enterovirus, in which case CSF, a throat swab, and stool specimens should be collected for genome analysis and possible virus isolation. A focal encephalitis with a temporal lobe localization preceded by headaches and disorientation suggests herpes simplex virus (HSV) infection, for which CSF can be relatively quickly analyzed for viral deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequences by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification.

Specimens should be collected early in the acute phase of infection, before the virus ceases to be shed. For example, respiratory viruses may be shed for only 3 to 7 days, and shedding may lapse before the symptoms cease. HSV and varicella-zoster virus (VZV) or viral DNA may not be recoverable from lesions more than 5 days after the onset of symptoms. It may be possible to isolate an enterovirus from the CSF for only 2 to 3 days after the onset of the central nervous system manifestations. In addition, antibody produced in response to the infection may block the detection of virus.

The shorter the interval between the collection of a specimen and its delivery to the laboratory, the greater is the potential for isolating a virus. This is because many viruses are labile, and the samples are susceptible to bacterial and fungal overgrowth. Viruses are best transported and stored on ice and in special media that contain antibiotics and proteins, such as serum albumin or gelatin. Significant losses in infectious titers occur when enveloped viruses (e.g., HSV, VZV, influenza virus) are kept at room temperature or frozen at −20° C. This is less of a risk for nonenveloped viruses (e.g., adenoviruses, enteroviruses).

Cytology

Many viruses produce a characteristic cytopathologic effect (CPE). Characteristic CPEs in the tissue sample or in cell culture include changes in cell morphology, cell lysis, vacuolation, syncytia, and inclusion bodies. **Syncytia** are multinucleated giant cells formed by viral fusion of individual cells (Fig. 39.1). *Paramyxoviruses, HSV, VZV, and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) promote syncytia formation.* **Inclusion bodies** are either histologic changes in the cells caused by viral components or virus-induced changes in cell structures. For example, intranuclear basophilic (owl's-eye) inclusion bodies found in large cells of tissues with cytomegalovirus (CMV) (see Chapter 43, Fig. 43.17) or in the sediment of urine from patients with the infection are readily identifiable. Cowdry type A nuclear inclusions in single cells or in large syncytia (multiple cells fused together) are a characteristic finding in cells infected with HSV or VZV (Fig. 39.2). Rabies may be detected through the finding of cytoplasmic Negri bodies (rabies virus inclusions) in brain tissue (Fig. 39.3).

Often the cytologic specimens will be examined for the presence of specific viral antigens or viral genomes by in situ hybridization or processed for PCR for a rapid, definitive identification. These tests are specific for individual viruses and must be chosen based on the differential diagnosis. These methods are discussed later.

Electron Microscopy

Electron microscopy is not a standard clinical laboratory technique, but it can be used to detect and identify some viruses if sufficient viral particles are present. The addition of virus-specific antibody to a sample can cause viral particles to clump, facilitating the detection and simultaneous identification of the virus (immunoelectron microscopy). Enteric viruses (e.g., rotavirus) that are produced in abundance and have a characteristic morphology can be detected in stool by these methods. Appropriately processed tissue from a biopsy or clinical specimen can also be examined for the presence of viral structures.

Viral Isolation and Growth

Isolation of the virus allows subsequent analysis and archiving of samples but may put personnel at risk for infection. A virus can be grown in tissue culture, embryonated eggs, and experimental animals (Box 39.2). Although embryonated eggs are still used for the growth of virus for some vaccines (e.g., influenza), they have been replaced by cell cultures for routine virus isolation in clinical laboratories. Experimental animals are rarely used in clinical laboratories for isolating viruses.

CELL CULTURE

Specific types of tissue culture cells are used to grow viruses. **Primary cell cultures** are obtained by dissociating specific animal organs with trypsin or collagenase. The cells obtained by this method are then grown as monolayers (fibroblast or epithelial), as organoids (mini-organs) or in suspension (lymphocyte) in artificial media supplemented with bovine serum or another source of growth factors. Primary cells can be dissociated and allowed to grow into new monolayers to become secondary cell cultures. **Diploid cell lines** are cultures of a single cell type that are capable of being passed a large but finite number of times before they senesce or undergo a significant change in their characteristics. **Tumor cell lines** and **immortalized cell lines,** usually initiated from human or animal tumors or by treatment of primary cells with oncogenic viruses or chemicals, consist of single cell types that can be passed continuously without senescing.

Primary monkey kidney cells are excellent for the recovery of influenza viruses, paramyxoviruses, many enteroviruses, and some adenoviruses. Human fetal diploid cells, which are generally fibroblastic cells, support the growth of a broad spectrum of viruses (e.g., HSV, VZV, CMV, adenoviruses, picornaviruses). HeLa cells, a continuous line of epithelial cells derived from a human cervical cancer, are also appropriate for the recovery of many different viruses including respiratory syncytial virus, adenoviruses, and HSV. Many clinically significant viruses can be recovered in at least one of these cell cultures.

BOX 39.1 Laboratory Procedures for Diagnosing Viral Infections

Cytologic examination
Electron microscopy
Virus isolation and growth
Detection of viral proteins (antigens and enzymes)
Detection of viral genomes
Serology

VIRAL DETECTION

A virus can be detected and initially identified through observation of the virus-induced CPE in the cell monolayer (Fig. 39.4; Box 39.3), by immunofluorescence, or by

TABLE 39.1 Specimens for Viral Diagnosis

Common Pathogenic Viruses	Specimens for Culture	Procedures and Comments
RESPIRATORY TRACT		
Influenza virus, paramyxoviruses, coronavirus, rhinovirus, enterovirus (picornavirus)	Nasal washing, throat swab, nasal swab, sputum	RT-PCR, ELISA, multiplex assays detect several agents; cell culture
GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT		
Reovirus, rotavirus, adenovirus, Norwalk virus, other calicivirus	Stool, rectal swab	PCR, RT-PCR, ELISA; viruses are not cultured
MACULOPAPULAR RASH		
Adenovirus, enterovirus (picornavirus)	Throat swab, rectal swab	PCR, RT-PCR
Rubella virus, measles virus	Urine	RT-PCR, ELISA
VESICULAR RASH		
Coxsackievirus, echovirus, HSV, VZV	Vesicle fluid, scraping, or swab, enterovirus in stool	HSV and VZV: vesicle scraping (Tzanck smear), cell culture, PCR, IF; enterovirus: RT-PCR
CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM (ASEPTIC MENINGITIS, ENCEPHALITIS)		
Enterovirus (picornavirus)	Stool, CSF	RT-PCR
Arboviruses (e.g., togaviruses, bunyavirus)	Blood, CSF; rarely cultured	RT-PCR, serology; multiplex assays detect several agents
Rabies virus	Tissue, saliva, brain biopsy, CSF	IF of biopsy, RT-PCR
HSV, CMV, mumps virus, measles virus	CSF	PCR or RT-PCR, virus isolation, and antigen are assayed
URINARY TRACT		
Adenovirus, CMV	Urine	PCR; CMV may be shed without apparent disease
BLOOD		
HIV, human T-cell leukemia virus, hepatitis B, C, and D viruses, EBV, CMV, HHV-6	Blood	ELISA for antigen or antibody, PCR, RT-PCR, multiplex assays

CMV, Cytomegalovirus; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *HHV-6,* human herpes virus 6; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus; *IF,* immunofluorescence; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction; *VZV,* varicella-zoster virus.

genome analysis of the infected cell culture. A **plaque** is formed when a single virus infects, spreads, and kills surrounding cells. The type of cell culture, characteristics of the CPE, and rapidity of viral growth can be used to initially identify many clinically important viruses. This approach to identifying viruses is similar to that used in the identification of bacteria, which is based on the growth and morphology of colonies on selective differential media.

Some viruses grow slowly or not at all or do not readily cause a CPE in cell lines typically used in clinical virology laboratories. Some viruses cause diseases that are hazardous to personnel. These viruses are not cultured but diagnosed on the basis of serologic findings or through detection of viral genomes or proteins.

Characteristic viral properties can also be used to identify viruses. For example, the rubella virus may not cause a CPE, but it does prevent (interfere with) the replication of picornaviruses in a process known as **heterologous interference,** which can be used to detect the rubella virus. Cells infected with the influenza virus, parainfluenza virus, mumps virus, and togavirus express a viral glycoprotein (hemagglutinin) that binds erythrocytes of defined animal species to the infected cell surface **(hemadsorption)** (Fig. 39.5). When released into the cell culture medium, such viruses can be detected by the agglutination of erythrocytes, which is a process termed **hemagglutination.** The virus can then be identified from the specific antibody that blocks

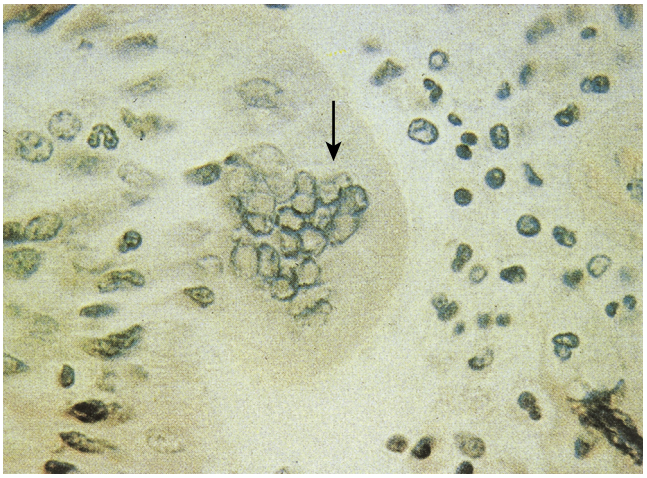


Fig. 39.1 Syncytium formation by measles virus. Multinucleated giant cell *(arrow)* visible in a histologic section of lung biopsy tissue from a measles virus–induced giant cell pneumonia in an immunocompromised child. (From Hart, C., Broadhead, R.L., 1992. A Color Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases. Wolfe, London, UK.)

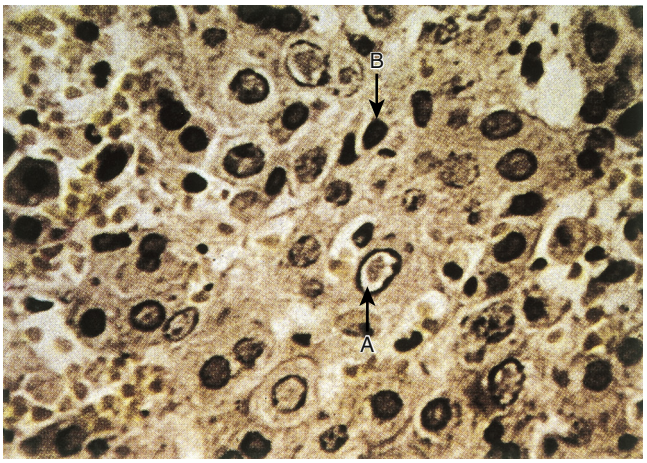


Fig. 39.2 Herpes simplex virus (HSV)-induced cytopathologic effect. A biopsy specimen of an HSV-infected liver shows an eosinophilic Cowdry type A intranuclear inclusion body *(A)* surrounded by a halo and a ring of marginated chromatin at the nuclear membrane. An infected cell *(B)* exhibits a smaller condensed nucleus (pyknotic). (Courtesy Dr. JI Pugh, St Albans City Hospital, Hertfordshire, England; from Emond R.T., Rowland H.A.K., 1995. A Color Atlas of Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, London, UK.)

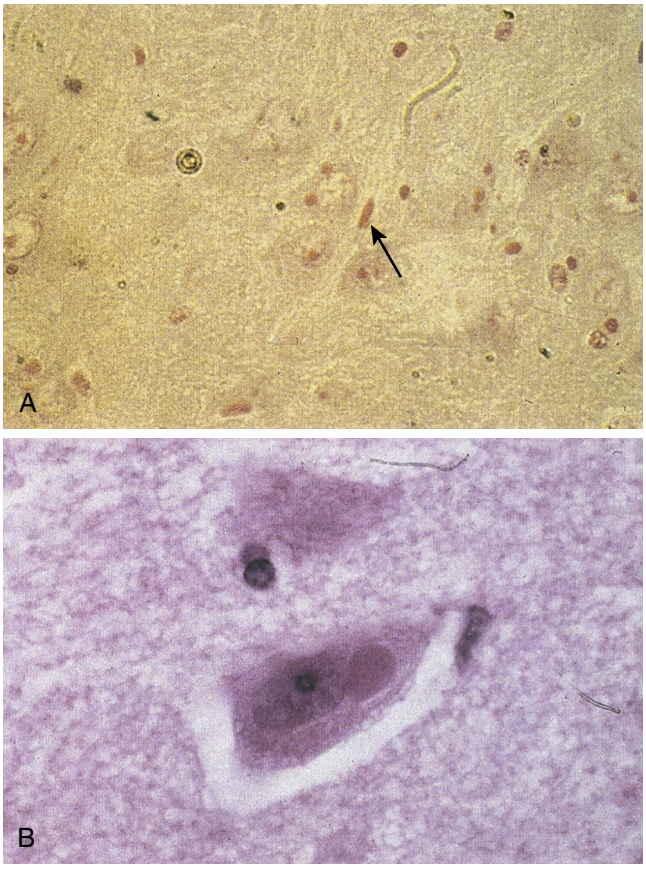


Fig. 39.3 Negri bodies caused by rabies. (A) A section of brain from a patient with rabies shows Negri bodies *(arrow)*. (B) Higher magnification from another biopsy specimen. (A, From Hart, C., Broadhead, R.L., 1992. A Color Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases. Wolfe, London, UK.)

BOX 39.2 Systems for Propagation of Viruses

People
Animals: cows (e.g., Jenner cowpox vaccine), chickens, mice, rats, suckling mice
Embryonated eggs
Organ culture
Tissue culture
Primary
Diploid cell line
Tumor or immortalized cell line

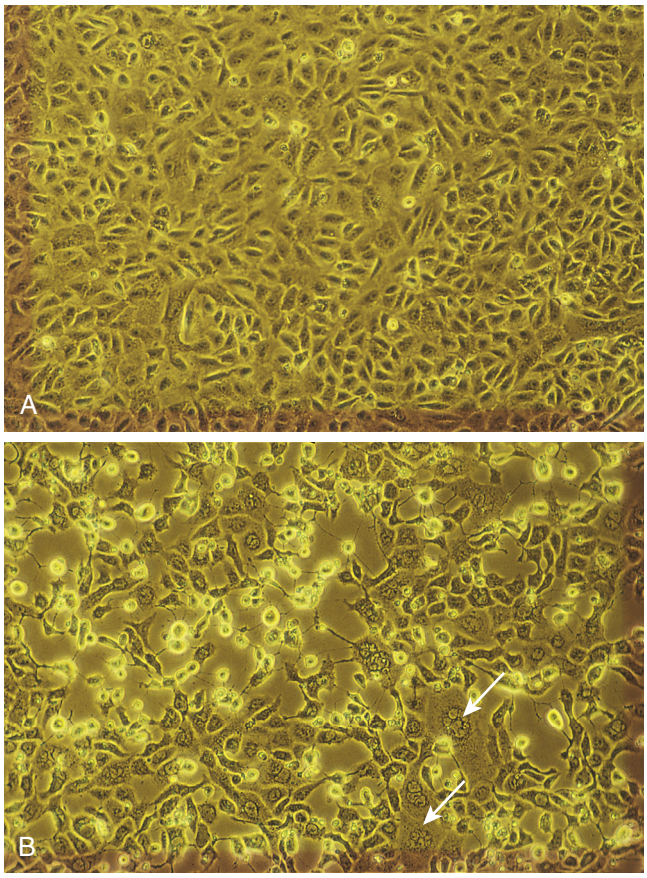


Fig. 39.4 Cytopathologic effect of herpes simplex virus (HSV) infection. (A) Uninfected Vero cells, which shows an African green monkey kidney cell line. (B) HSV-1–infected Vero cells showing rounded cells, multinucleated cells, and loss of the monolayer. *Arrows* point to syncytia.

BOX 39.3 Viral Cytopathologic Effects[a]

Cell death
- Cell rounding
- Degeneration
- Aggregation
- Loss of attachments to culture dish

Characteristic histologic changes: inclusion bodies in the nucleus or cytoplasm, margination of chromatin

Syncytia: multinucleated giant cells caused by virus-induced cell-to-cell fusion

Cell surface changes
- Viral antigen expression
- Hemadsorption (hemagglutinin expression)

[a]The effects may be characteristics of specific viruses.

the hemagglutination, which is a process called **hemagglutination inhibition (HI).** An innovative approach to detection of HSV infection uses genetically modified tissue culture cells that express the β-galactosidase gene and can be stained blue when infected with HSV (enzyme-linked virus-inducible system [ELVIS]).

One can quantitate a virus by determining the greatest dilution that retains the following properties **(titer):**

1. **Tissue culture dose (TCD_{50}):** titer of virus that causes cytopathologic effects in half the tissue culture cells

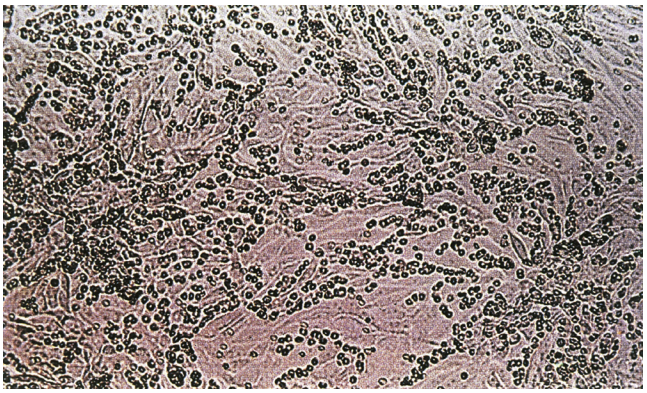


Fig. 39.5 Hemadsorption of erythrocytes to cells infected with influenza viruses, mumps virus, parainfluenza viruses, or togaviruses. These viruses express a hemagglutinin on their surfaces, which binds to erythrocytes of selected animal species.

2. **Lethal dose (LD_{50}):** titer of virus that kills 50% of a set of test animals
3. **Infectious dose (ID_{50}):** titer of virus that initiates a detectable symptom, antibody, or other response in 50% of a set of test animals

The number of infectious viruses can also be evaluated with a count of the plaques produced by 10-fold dilutions of sample **(plaque-forming units).** The ratio of viral particles (from electron microscopy) to plaque-forming units (**particle to plaque-forming unit ratio**) is always much greater than 1 because numerous defective viral particles are produced during viral replication.

Detection of Viral Genetic Material

The genetic sequence of a virus is a major distinguishing characteristic of the family, type, and strain of virus (see Chapter 5 and Box 39.4). Sequence-specific genetic probes, genome amplification techniques, and next generation sequencing techniques allow rapid detection, identification, and quantitation with a minimum of risk from infectious virus.

GENOME AMPLIFICATION

For many laboratories, the method of choice for detection, quantification, and identification of viruses uses genome amplification techniques, including **PCR** for DNA genomes, **reverse transcriptase (RT)-PCR** for ribonucleic acid (RNA) genomes, and **real-time PCR** for identification and quantification of RNA or DNA. Use of the appropriate primers for PCR can promote a millionfold amplification of a target sequence in a few hours. This technique is especially useful for detecting latent and integrated sequences of viruses, such as retroviruses, herpesviruses, papillomaviruses, and other papovaviruses, as well as evidence of viruses present in low concentrations and viruses that are difficult or too dangerous to isolate in cell culture. RT-PCR uses the retroviral reverse transcriptase to convert viral RNA to DNA and allow PCR amplification of the viral nucleic acid sequences.

BOX 39.4 Assays for Viral Proteins and Nucleic Acids

Proteins

Antigen detection (e.g., direct and indirect immunofluorescence, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, Western blot)
Protein patterns (electrophoresis)
Enzyme activities (e.g., reverse transcriptase)
Hemagglutination and hemadsorption

Nucleic Acids

PCR (DNA)
Reverse transcriptase PCR (RNA)
Real-time quantitative PCR
Branched-chain DNA and related tests (DNA, RNA)
Genome sequencing
Restriction endonuclease cleavage patterns
Size of RNA for segmented RNA viruses (electrophoresis)
DNA genome hybridization in situ (cytochemistry)
Southern, Northern, and dot blots

DNA, Deoxyribonucleic acid; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid.

Automated commercial systems are available to analyze a panel of microbes from multiple samples. These systems process the sample, concentrate the genomic sequences, simultaneously amplify the genomes for the different microbes (multiplex), and then utilize rapid techniques for detection of the amplified DNA to indicate the presence of the viral genome. For example, a commercially available respiratory panel detects 17 viruses and 3 bacteria.

Real-time PCR is a rapid means of identifying and quantifying the number of genomes that can be extrapolated to patient levels (**virus load**). The concentration of the viral genome (RNA genomes would first be converted to DNA) is proportional to the initial rate of the PCR amplification of the genomic DNA. This test is readily automated and has become important for identification of many viruses and for quantifying blood levels of HIV and other viral genomes.

PCR is the prototype for several other genome amplification techniques. **Transcription-based amplification** uses reverse transcriptase and viral sequence–specific primers to make a complementary DNA (cDNA) and also attaches a sequence recognized by the DNA-dependent RNA polymerase from the T7 bacteriophage to the sample DNA. The DNA is transcribed to RNA by the T7 RNA polymerase, and the new RNA sequences are then cycled back into the reaction to amplify the relevant sequence. The amplified genome is detected by hybridization of a luminescent DNA probe. Unlike PCR, these reactions do not require special equipment.

Some other genome amplification and detection approaches are similar in concept to enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). These approaches use immobilized DNA sequences complementary to the relevant viral genomic sequence to capture the viral genome. This is followed by the binding of another complementary sequence that contains a marker that can be detected by an antibody or other detection system. ELISA methods can then be used to detect the presence of the genome. Like ELISA, these methods can be automated and set up to analyze a panel of viruses.

Viral genomes can also be analyzed after genome amplification. Methods for sequencing DNA **(next generation sequencing)** have become sufficiently rapid and inexpensive to be routine procedures. Once the sequence of a fragment or the entire genome has been obtained, its identity can be determined by computer comparison to established databases.

IN SITU ANALYSIS

Virus-specific **DNA probes** can be used like antibodies as sensitive and specific tools for detecting a virus. These probes can detect the virus even in the absence of viral replication. Specific viral genetic sequences in fixed, permeabilized tissue biopsy specimens can be detected by **in situ hybridization** (e.g., **fluorescence in situ hybridization [FISH]**). DNA probe analysis is especially useful for detecting slowly replicating or nonproductive viruses, such as CMV and human papillomavirus, or when the viral antigen cannot be detected using immunologic tests (see Fig. 5.1).

Detection of Viral Proteins

Viral enzymes and other proteins are produced during viral replication and can be detected by biochemical, immunologic, and molecular biological means (see Box 39.4). The viral proteins can be separated by electrophoresis and their patterns used to identify and distinguish different viruses. For example, the electrophoretically separated HSV-infected cell proteins and virion proteins exhibit different patterns for different types and strains of HSV-1 and HSV-2.

The detection and assay of characteristic enzymes or activities can identify and quantitate specific viruses. For example, the presence of reverse transcriptase in serum or cell culture indicates the presence of a retrovirus or hepadnavirus. Antibodies can be used as sensitive and specific tools to detect, identify, and quantitate the virus and viral antigen in clinical specimens or cell cultures (immunohistochemistry). Specifically, monoclonal or monospecific antibodies are useful for distinguishing viruses. Viral antigens on the cell surface or within the cell can be detected by **immunofluorescence** and **enzyme immunoassay (EIA)** (see Figs. 6.2 and 6.3). Virus or antigen released from infected cells can be detected and quantitated by **ELISA, latex agglutination (LA)** (see Chapter 6 for definitions), and variations on these assays. Test kits to detect single and multiple (multiplex) viral agents are commercially available. Rapid ELISA-like detection kits, similar to pregnancy tests, are available for influenza and HIV.

SIGNIFICANCE OF VIRUS DETECTION

In general, the detection of any virus in host tissues, CSF, blood, or vesicular fluid can be considered a highly significant finding. However, viral shedding may occur and be unrelated to the disease symptoms. Certain viruses can be intermittently shed without causing symptoms in the affected person for periods ranging from weeks (enteroviruses in feces) to many months or years (HSV or CMV in the oropharynx and vagina; adenoviruses in the oropharynx

and intestinal tract). Similarly, a negative result cannot be conclusive because the sample may have been improperly handled, contain neutralizing antibody, or be acquired before or after viral shedding.

Viral Serology

The humoral immune response provides a history of a patient's infections. Serologic studies are used for the identification of viruses that are difficult to isolate and grow in cell culture, as well as viruses that cause diseases of long duration (e.g., EBV, HBV, HIV) (see Box 6.2). Serology can be used to identify the virus and its strain or serotype, whether it is an acute or chronic disease, and determine whether it is a primary infection or a reinfection. The detection of **virus-specific immunoglobulin (Ig)M antibody,** which is present during the first 2 or 3 weeks of a primary infection, generally indicates a recent primary infection. **Seroconversion** is indicated by at least **a fourfold increase in the antibody titer** between the serum obtained during the acute phase of disease and that obtained at least 2 to 3 weeks later during the convalescent phase. Reinfection or recurrence later in life causes an anamnestic (secondary or booster) response. Antibody titers may remain high in patients who suffer frequent recurrence of a disease (e.g., herpesviruses).

Because of the inherent imprecision of serologic assays based on twofold serial dilutions, a fourfold increase in the antibody titer between acute and convalescent sera is required to indicate seroconversion. For example, samples with 512 and 1023 units of antibody would both give a signal on a 512-fold dilution but not on a 1024-fold dilution, and the titers of both would be reported as 512. On the other hand, samples with 1020 and 1030 units are not significantly different but would be reported as titers of 512 and 1024, respectively.

The presence of antibodies to several key viral antigens and their titers can be used to identify the stage of disease caused by certain viruses. This approach is especially useful for the diagnosis of viral diseases with slow courses (e.g., infectious mononucleosis caused by Epstein-Barr virus [EBV], hepatitis B) (see Chapters 43 and 55). In general, the first antibodies to be detected are directed against the antigens most available to the immune system (e.g., expressed on the virion or infected-cell surfaces). Later in the infection, when the infecting virus or the cellular immune response has lysed the cells, antibodies directed against the intracellular viral proteins and enzymes are detected. For example, antibodies to the envelope and capsid antigens of EBV are detected first. Then during convalescence, antibodies to nuclear antigens, such as the EBV nuclear antigen (EBNA), are detected.

A **serologic battery or panel** consisting of assays for several viruses may be used for the diagnosis of certain diseases. For example, HSV and the viruses of mumps, western and eastern equine encephalitides, and St. Louis, West Nile, and California encephalitides might be included in a panel of tests for central nervous system diseases. An ELISA test that detects antibodies to HIV-1 and HIV-2 and the HIV p24 protein has obviated the need for the Western blot confirmative test for HIV infection.

SEROLOGIC TEST METHODS

The serologic tests that can be used in virology are listed in Box 6.1. **Neutralization** and **HI tests** assay antibody on the basis of its recognition of and binding to virus. The antibody coating of the virus blocks its binding to indicator cells and subsequent infection (Fig. 39.6). For HI, antibody in patient serum prevents a standardized amount of virus from binding to and agglutinating erythrocytes.

The indirect fluorescent antibody test and solid-phase immunoassays, such as LA and **ELISA,** are commonly used to detect and quantitate viral antigen and antiviral antibody. The ELISA test is used to screen the blood supply to exclude individuals who are seropositive for hepatitis B and C viruses and HIV. **Western blot** analysis can be used to determine the specific proteins recognized by patient serum and was used to confirm seroconversion and hence infection with HIV (Fig. 39.7).

LIMITATIONS OF SEROLOGIC METHODS

The presence of an antiviral antibody indicates previous infection but is not sufficient to indicate when the infection occurred. False-positive or false-negative test results may confuse the diagnosis. In addition, patient antibody may be bound with viral antigen (as occurs in patients with hepatitis B) in immune complexes, preventing antibody detection.

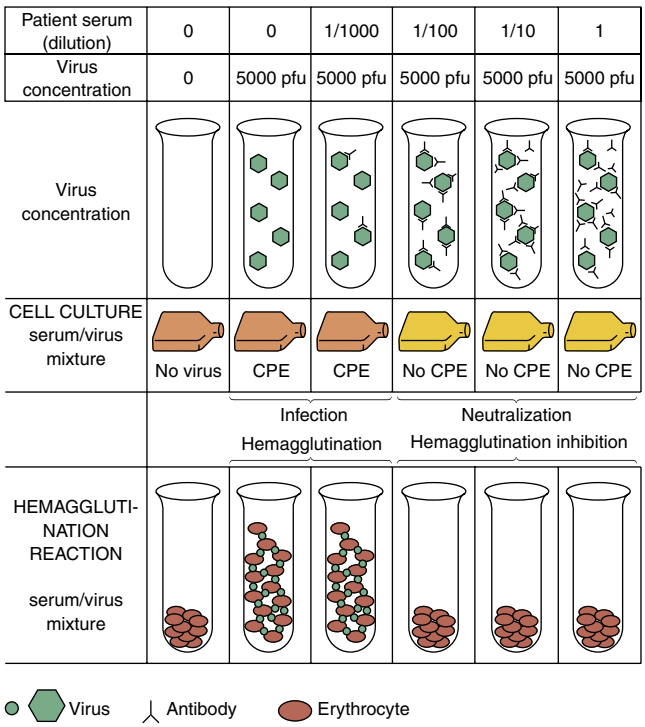


Fig. 39.6 Neutralization, hemagglutination, and hemagglutination inhibition assays. In the assay shown, 10-fold dilutions of serum were incubated with virus. Aliquots of the mixture were then added to cell cultures or erythrocytes. In the absence of the antibody, the virus infected the monolayer (indicated by cytopathologic effect *[CPE]*) or caused hemagglutination (i.e., formed a gel-like suspension of erythrocytes). In the presence of the antibody, infection was blocked, preventing CPE (neutralization), or hemagglutination was inhibited, allowing the erythrocytes to pellet. The titer of antibody of this serum would be 100. *pfu,* Plaque-forming units.

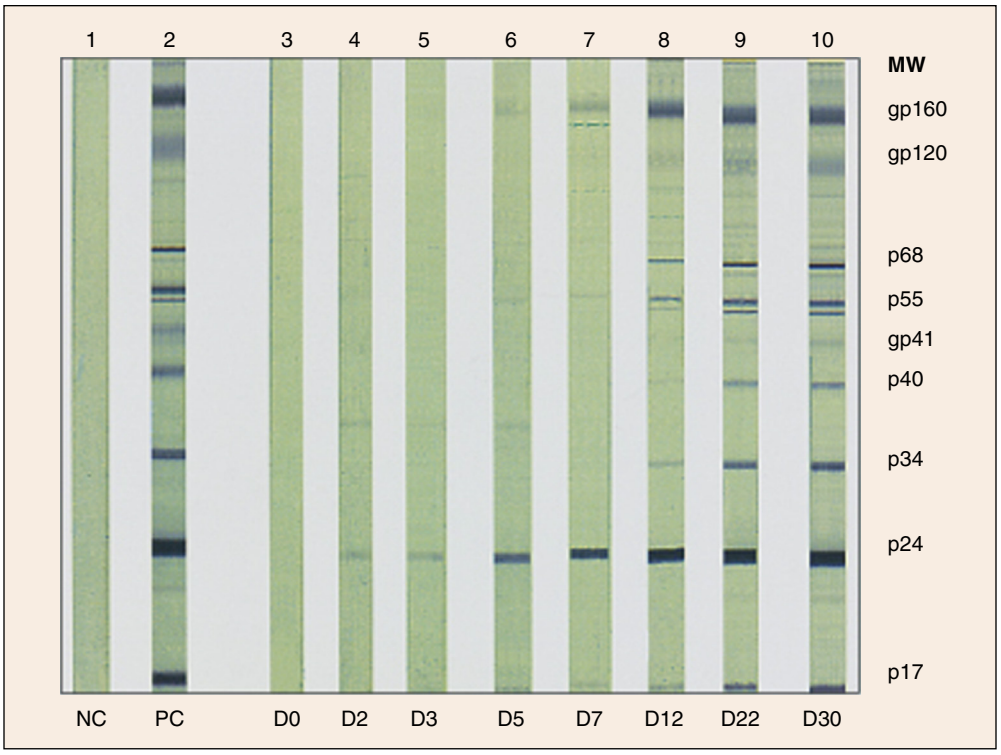


Fig. 39.7 Western blot analysis of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) antigens and antibody. HIV protein antigens are separated by electrophoresis and blotted onto nitrocellulose paper strips. Each strip is incubated with patient antibody, washed to remove the unbound antibody, and then reacted with enzyme-conjugated antihuman antibody and chromophoric substrate. Serum from an HIV-infected person binds and identifies the major antigenic proteins of HIV. These data demonstrate the seroconversion of one HIV-infected individual with sera collected on day 0 *(D0)* to day 30 *(D30)* compared with a known positive control *(PC)* and negative control *(NC)*. *MW,* molecular weight. (From Kuritzkes, D.R., 2004. Diagnostic tests for HIV infection and resistance assays. In: Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G. (Eds.), Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

Serologic cross-reactions between different viruses may also confuse the identity of the infecting agent (e.g., parainfluenza and mumps express related antigens). Conversely, the antibody used in the assay may be too specific (many monoclonal antibodies) and may not recognize strains of virus from the same family, giving a false-negative result (e.g., rhinovirus). A good understanding of the clinical symptoms and knowledge of the limitations and potential problems with serologic assays aid the diagnosis.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Caliendo, A.M., 2011. Multiplex PCR and emerging technologies for the detection of respiratory pathogens. Clin. Infect. Dis. 52 (Suppl. 4), S326–S330.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Tille, P.M., 2017. Bailey and Scott's Diagnostic Microbiology, fourteenth ed. Elsevier, St Louis.

Fairfax, M.R., Bluth, M.H., 2018. Diagnostic molecular microbiology: a 2018 Snapshot. Clin. Lab. Med. 38, 253–276. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cll.2018.02.004.

Ginocchio, C.G., McAdam, A.J., 2011. Current best practices for respiratory virus testing. J. Clin. Micro. 49, S44–S48.

Jorgensen, J.H., Pfaller, M.A., Carroll, K.C., Funke, G., Landry, M.L., Richter, S.S., et al., 2015. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, seventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Leland, D.S., Ginocchio, C.C., 2007. Role of cell culture for virus detection in the age of technology. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 20, 49–78.

Jerome, K.R., Lennette, E.H., 2010. Laboratory Diagnosis of Viral Infections, fourth ed. Informa Health Care, New York.

Doern, C.D., 2018. Pocket Guide to Clinical Microbiology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Persing, D.H., et al., 2016. Molecular Microbiology: Diagnostic Principles and Practice, third ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Loeffelholz, M.L., Hodinka, R.L., Young, S.A., Pinsky, B.A., 2016. Clinical Virology Manual, fifth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Websites

Diagnostic methods in virology. http://virology-online.com/general/Tests.htm. Accessed June 22, 2018

Leland, D.S., Ginocchio, C.C., Role of cell culture for virus detection in the age of technology. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1797634/. Accessed April 22, 2015.

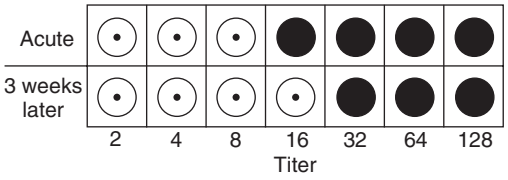
Questions

1. Brain tissue is obtained at autopsy from a person who died of rabies. What procedures could be used to confirm the presence of rabies virus–infected cells in the brain tissue?

2. A cervical Papanicolaou smear is taken from a woman with a vaginal papilloma (wart). Certain types of papillomas have been associated with cervical carcinoma. What method or methods would be used to detect and identify the type of papilloma in the cervical smear?

3. A legal case would be settled by identification of the source of an HSV infection. Serum and viral isolates are obtained from the infected person and two contacts. What methods could be used to determine whether the person is infected with HSV-1 or HSV-2? What methods could be used to compare the type and strain of HSV obtained from each of the three people?

4. A 50-year-old man experiences flulike symptoms. The following figure shows results of HI tests on serum specimens collected when the disease manifested (acute) and 3 weeks later. The HI data for the current strain of influenza A (H3N2) are presented. Filled circles indicate hemagglutination. Is the patient infected with the current strain of influenza A?



5. A policeman accidentally sticks his finger with a drug addict's syringe needle. He is concerned that he may be infected with HIV. Samples are taken from the policeman a month later for analysis. What assays would be appropriate to determine whether the man is infected with the virus? In this case, it may be too early to detect an antibody response to the virus.

40 Antiviral Agents and Infection Control

Unlike bacteria, viruses are obligate intracellular parasites that use the host cell's biosynthetic machinery and enzymes for replication (see Chapter 36). Hence it is more difficult to inhibit viral replication without also being toxic to the host. Most antiviral drugs are targeted toward viral-encoded enzymes or structures of the virus that are important for replication. Most of these compounds are classic biochemical inhibitors of viral-encoded enzymes. Some antiviral drugs are actually stimulators of host innate immune protective responses.

Antiviral drugs are available for viruses that cause significant morbidity and mortality and provide reasonable targets for drug action (Box 40.1), but unlike antibacterial drugs, the activity of most antiviral drugs is limited to a specific virus. Antiviral drugs may be used for prophylaxis or treatment. Many antiviral drugs cause serious side effects because of their toxicity. As has occurred with antibacterial drugs, resistance to antiviral drugs is becoming more of a problem because of the high rate of mutation for viruses, especially RNA viruses, and the long-term treatment of some patients with chronic infections, especially those who are immunocompromised (e.g., patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]).

Targets for Antiviral Drugs

The different targets for antiviral drugs (e.g., structures, enzymes, or processes important or essential for virus production) are discussed with respect to the steps of the viral replication cycle they inhibit. These targets and their respective antiviral agents are listed in Table 40.1 (see also Fig. 36.8).

VIRION DISRUPTION

Enveloped viruses are susceptible to certain lipid and detergent-like molecules that disperse or disrupt the envelope membrane, preventing acquisition of the virus. Rhinoviruses are susceptible to acid, and citric acid can be incorporated into facial tissues as a means of blocking viral transmission.

ATTACHMENT

The first step in viral replication is mediated by the interaction of a viral attachment protein with its cell-surface receptor. This interaction can be blocked by **neutralizing antibodies,** which bind to the viral attachment protein, or by **receptor antagonists.** The administration of specific antibodies **(passive immunization)** is the oldest form of antiviral therapy. Receptor antagonists include peptide or sugar analogs of the cell receptor or the viral attachment protein that competitively blocks interaction of the virus with the cell. Compounds that bind to the C-C chemokine receptor 5 (CCR5) molecule block binding of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) to macrophages and some CD4 T cells to prevent the initial infection. Acidic polysaccharides (e.g., heparan, dextran sulfate) interfere with viral binding and have been suggested for the treatment of infection with HIV, herpes simplex virus (HSV), and other viruses.

PENETRATION AND UNCOATING

Penetration and uncoating of the virus are required to deliver the viral genome into the cytoplasm of the host cell. Arildone, disoxaril, pleconaril, and other methylisoxazole compounds block uncoating of picornaviruses by fitting into a cleft in the receptor-binding canyon of the capsid and preventing disassembly of the capsid. For viruses that enter through endocytic vesicles, uncoating may be triggered by conformational changes in attachment proteins that promote fusion or by membrane disruption resulting from the acidic environment of the vesicle. **Amantadine, rimantadine,** and other hydrophobic amines (weak organic bases) are antiviral agents that can neutralize the pH of these compartments and inhibit virion uncoating. Amantadine and rimantadine only have activity against influenza A. These compounds act specifically by binding to and blocking the hydrogen ion (H^+) channel formed by the viral M_2 protein. Without the influx of H^+, the M_1 matrix proteins do not dissociate from the nucleocapsid (uncoating), so movement of the nucleocapsid to the nucleus, transcription, and replication are prevented. Blockage of this proton pore also disrupts proper processing of the hemagglutinin protein late in the replication cycle. In the absence of a functional M_2 proton pore, the hemagglutinin inopportunely changes its conformation into its "fusion form" and is inactivated as it traverses the normally acidic Golgi environment. **Docosanol** inhibits the fusion of enveloped viruses, including HSV, with cellular membranes. **Tromantadine,** a derivative of amantadine, also inhibits penetration of HSV. Penetration and uncoating of HIV are blocked by a 33-amino acid peptide, T20 **(enfuvirtide [Fuzeon]),** which inhibits the action of the viral fusion protein gp41.

RNA SYNTHESIS

Although messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) synthesis is essential for the production of virus, it is not a good target for antiviral drugs because it is difficult to inhibit viral RNA synthesis without affecting cellular mRNA synthesis. Even so, **sofosbuvir,** a prodrug for a nucleoside analog, is approved as an inhibitor of the hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. **Baloxavir marboxil** inhibits influenza A and B by inhibiting the cap snatching endonuclease activity

of the viral polymerase. Guanidine and 2-hydroxybenzylbenzimidine are two compounds that can block picornavirus RNA synthesis by binding to the 2*C* picornavirus protein, which is essential for RNA synthesis. **Ribavirin** resembles riboguanosine and promotes hypermutation and inhibits nucleoside biosynthesis, mRNA capping, and other processes (cellular and viral) important to the replication of many viruses. Isatin-β-thiosemicarbazone induces mRNA degradation in poxvirus-infected cells and was used as a treatment for smallpox.

The proper processing (splicing) and translation of viral mRNA can be inhibited by antisense oligonucleotides and **type 1 interferons**. Viral infection of an interferon-treated cell triggers a cascade of biochemical events that block viral replication. Specifically, the degradation of viral and cellular mRNA is enhanced, and ribosomal assembly is blocked, preventing protein synthesis and viral replication. Interferon is described further in Chapter 10. Interferon is approved for clinical use (papilloma, hepatitis C).

GENOME REPLICATION

Most antiviral drugs are **nucleoside analogs,** which are compounds with modifications of the base, sugar, or both (Fig. 40.1). The viral **DNA-dependent DNA polymerases** of the herpesviruses and the **reverse transcriptases** of HIV and hepatitis B virus (HBV) *are the prime targets for most antiviral drugs because they are essential for virus replication and are different from host enzymes*. Before being used by the polymerase, the nucleoside analogs must be phosphorylated to the triphosphate form by viral enzymes (e.g., HSV thymidine kinase), cellular enzymes, or both. For example, the thymidine kinase of HSV and varicella-zoster virus (VZV) applies the first phosphate to **acyclovir (ACV),** and cellular enzymes apply the rest. HSV mutants lacking thymidine kinase activity are resistant to ACV. Cellular enzymes phosphorylate **azidothymidine (AZT)** and many other nucleoside analogs.

Nucleoside analogs selectively inhibit viral polymerases because these enzymes are less accurate than host cell enzymes. The viral enzyme binds nucleoside analogs that have modifications of the base, sugar, or both several hundred times better than the host cell enzyme. These drugs either **prevent chain elongation,** as a result of the absence of a 3′-hydroxyl on the sugar, or **alter recognition and base pairing,** as a result of a base modification, and induce inactivating mutations (see Fig. 40.1). Hypermutation of a viral genome by an antiviral drug (like ribavirin) is the equivalent of replacing every fourth letter in an essay with a random letter. Antiviral drugs that cause termination of the DNA chain by means of modified nucleoside sugar residues include ACV, ganciclovir (GCV), valacyclovir, penciclovir, famciclovir, adefovir, cidofovir, adenosine arabinoside (vidarabine, ara-A), zidovudine (AZT), lamivudine (3TC), dideoxycytidine, and dideoxyinosine. Antiviral drugs that become incorporated into the viral genome and cause errors in replication (mutation) and transcription (inactive mRNA and proteins) because of modified nucleoside bases include **ribavirin, 5-iododeoxyuridine (idoxuridine),** and **trifluorothymidine (trifluridine).** The rapid rate and large extent of nucleotide incorporation by HIV- and

BOX 40.1 Viruses Treatable with Antiviral Drugs

Herpes simplex virus
Varicella-zoster virus
Cytomegalovirus
Human immunodeficiency virus
Influenza A and B viruses
Respiratory syncytial virus
Hepatitis B and C viruses
Adenovirus
Papillomavirus

TABLE 40.1 Examples of Targets for Antiviral Drugs

Replication Step or Target	Agent	Targeted Virus
Attachment	Peptide analogs of attachment protein	HIV (CCR5 coreceptor antagonist)
	Neutralizing antibodies	Most viruses
	Heparan and dextran sulfate	HIV, HSV
Penetration and uncoating	Amantadine, rimantadine	Influenza A virus
	Tromantadine, docosanol	HSV
	Arildone, disoxaril, pleconaril	Picornaviruses
Transcription	Interferon	HCVs, papillomavirus
	Sofosbuvir, dasabuvir	HCV
	Baloxavir marboxil	Influenza A and B
	Antisense oligonucleotides	—
Hypermutation/guanosine analog	Ribavirin	HCV, respiratory syncytial virus, Lassa fever virus
Protein synthesis	Interferon	HCV, papillomavirus
DNA replication (polymerase)	Nucleoside analogs	Herpesviruses, HIV, hepatitis B virus, poxviruses, adenovirus, etc.
	Phosphonoformate, phosphonoacetic acid	Herpesviruses
Nucleoside scavenging (thymidine kinase)	Nucleoside analogs	HSV, varicella-zoster virus
Assembly (protease)	Hydrophobic substrate analogs	HIV, HCV
Assembly (neuraminidase)	Oseltamivir, zanamivir	Influenza A, B virus

CCR5, C-C chemokine receptor 5; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus.

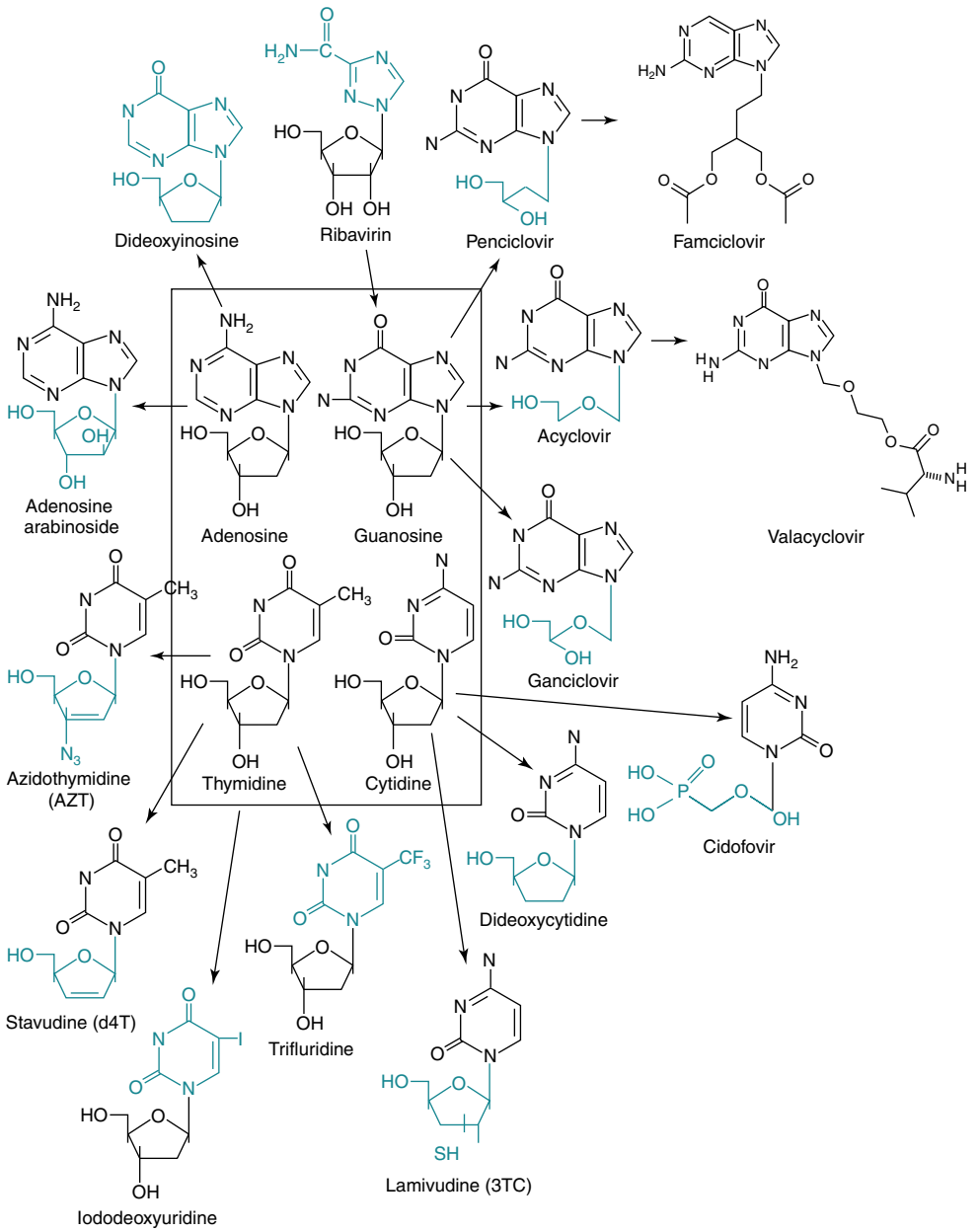


Fig. 40.1 Structure of the most common nucleoside analogs that are antiviral drugs. The chemical distinctions between the natural nucleoside and the antiviral drug analogs are highlighted. *Arrows* indicate related drugs. Valacyclovir is the L-valyl ester of acyclovir. Famciclovir is the diacetyl 6-deoxy-analog of penciclovir. Both of these drugs are metabolized to the active drug in the liver or intestinal wall.

herpesvirus-encoded polymerases make these viruses especially susceptible to these drugs. A variety of other nucleoside analogs are also being developed as antiviral drugs.

Pyrophosphate analogs resembling the by-product of the polymerase reaction, such as **phosphonoformic acid (foscarnet, PFA)** and **phosphonoacetic acid (PAA),** are classic inhibitors of the herpesvirus polymerases. **Nevirapine, delavirdine,** and other nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors bind, as noncompetitive inhibitors of the enzyme, to sites on the polymerase other than the substrate site.

Deoxyribonucleotide scavenging enzymes (e.g., the thymidine kinase and ribonucleoside reductase of the herpesviruses) are also potential enzyme targets of antiviral drugs. Inhibition of these enzymes reduces the levels of deoxyribonucleotides necessary for the replication of the DNA virus genome, preventing virus replication.

Integration of the cDNA of HIV into the host chromosome is catalyzed by the viral integrase enzyme and essential for virus replication. **Raltegravir** inhibits the HIV integrase.

PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

Although bacterial protein synthesis is the target for several antibacterial compounds, viral protein synthesis is a poor target for antiviral drugs. The virus uses host cell ribosomes and synthetic mechanisms for replication, so selective

inhibition is not possible. **Type 1 interferons (IFNs) α and β,** stop a virus by promoting the inhibition of protein synthesis in the virus-infected cell.

Inhibition of the posttranslational modification of proteins, such as the proteolysis of a viral polyprotein **(protease inhibitors)** or glycoprotein processing (castanospermine, deoxynojirimycin), can also inhibit virus replication. **Boceprevir** and **telaprevir** are two protease inhibitors for treatment of HCV. Proteases of other viruses, especially HIV (see later), are also targets for antiviral drugs.

VIRION ASSEMBLY AND RELEASE

The **HIV protease** is unique and **essential** to the assembly of virions and the production of infectious virions. Computer-assisted molecular modeling was used to design inhibitors of the HIV protease, such as **saquinavir, ritonavir,** and **indinavir** (*navir,* "no virus"), that would fit into the active site of the enzyme. The enzyme structures were defined by x-ray crystallography and molecular biology studies.

The **neuraminidase of influenza** is essential to prevent intracellular and cell-surface aggregation of viral glycoproteins and allow their incorporation into the envelope. **Zanamivir (Relenza), oseltamivir (Tamiflu),** and **peramavir (Rapivab)** act as enzyme inhibitors and, unlike amantadine and rimantadine, can inhibit both influenza A and B. Amantadine and rimantadine also inhibit release of influenza A.

STIMULATORS OF HOST INNATE IMMUNE PROTECTIVE RESPONSES

Stimulation or supplementation of the natural response is an effective approach to limit or treat viral infections. Innate responses of dendritic cells, macrophages, and other cells can be stimulated by **imiquimod, resiquimod, and CpG oligodeoxynucleotides,** which bind to Toll-like receptors to stimulate release of protective cytokines, activation of natural killer cells, and subsequent cell-mediated immune responses. **Interferon** and interferon inducers, including mismatched polynucleotides and double-stranded RNA (e.g., **Ampligen, poly rI:rC**), facilitate the treatment of chronic diseases of hepatitis C and papillomaviruses. **Antibodies,** acquired naturally or by passive immunization (see Chapters 10 and 11), prevent both acquisition and spread of the virus. For example, passive immunization is administered after exposure to rabies and hepatitis A virus (HAV) and HBV.

Nucleoside Analogs

Most of the antiviral drugs approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) (Table 40.2) are nucleoside analogs that inhibit viral polymerases. Resistance to the drug is usually caused by a mutation of the polymerase.

ACYCLOVIR, VALACYCLOVIR, PENCICLOVIR, AND FAMCICLOVIR

ACV (acycloguanosine) and its valyl derivative, valacyclovir, differ in pharmacologic ways. ACV differs from the nucleoside guanosine by having an acyclic (hydroxyethoxymethyl) side chain instead of a ribose or deoxyribose sugar. *ACV has selective action against HSV and VZV, the herpesviruses that encode a thymidine kinase* (Fig. 40.2). The viral thymidine kinase is required to activate the drug by phosphorylation, and host cell enzymes complete the progression to the diphosphate form and finally to the triphosphate form. Because there is no initial phosphorylation in

TABLE 40.2 Some Antiviral Drug Therapies Approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration

Virus	Antiviral Drug	Trade Name
Herpes simplex and varicella-zoster viruses	Acyclovir[a] Valacyclovir[a] Penciclovir Famciclovir[a] Trifluridine	Zovirax Valtrex Denavir Famvir Viroptic
Cytomegalovirus	Ganciclovir Valganciclovir Cidofovir Phosphonoformate (foscarnet)	Cytovene Valcyte Vistide Foscavir
Adenovirus	Cidofovir	Vistide
Influenza A virus	Amantadine Rimantadine	Symmetrel Flumadine
Influenza A and B viruses	Zanamivir Oseltamivir Peramivir Baloxavir marboxil	Relenza Tamiflu Rapivab Xofluza
Chronic hepatitis B virus	Lamivudine Adefovir dipivoxil	Epivir Hepsera
Hepatitis C virus	Interferon-α, ribavirin Boceprevir Telaprevir Sofosbuvir	Various Victrelis Incivek Sovaldi
Papillomavirus	Interferon-α Imiquimod	Various Aldara
Respiratory syncytial virus and Lassa virus	Ribavirin	Virazole
HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS[b]		
Nucleoside analog reverse transcriptase inhibitors	Azidothymidine (zidovudine) Dideoxyinosine (didanosine) Stavudine (d4T) Lamivudine (3TC)	Retrovir Videx Zerit Epivir
Nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors	Nevirapine Delavirdine	Viramune Rescriptor
Protease inhibitors	Saquinavir Ritonavir Darunavir Fosamprenavir Atazanavir	Invirase Norvir Prezista Lexiva Reyataz
Integrase inhibitor	Raltegravir	Isentriss
CCR5 coreceptor antagonist	Maraviroc	Selzentry
Fusion inhibitor	Enfuvirtide	Fuzeon

[a]Also active against varicella-zoster virus.
[b]A more complete list is found in Chapter 54.
CCR5, C-C chemokine receptor 5.

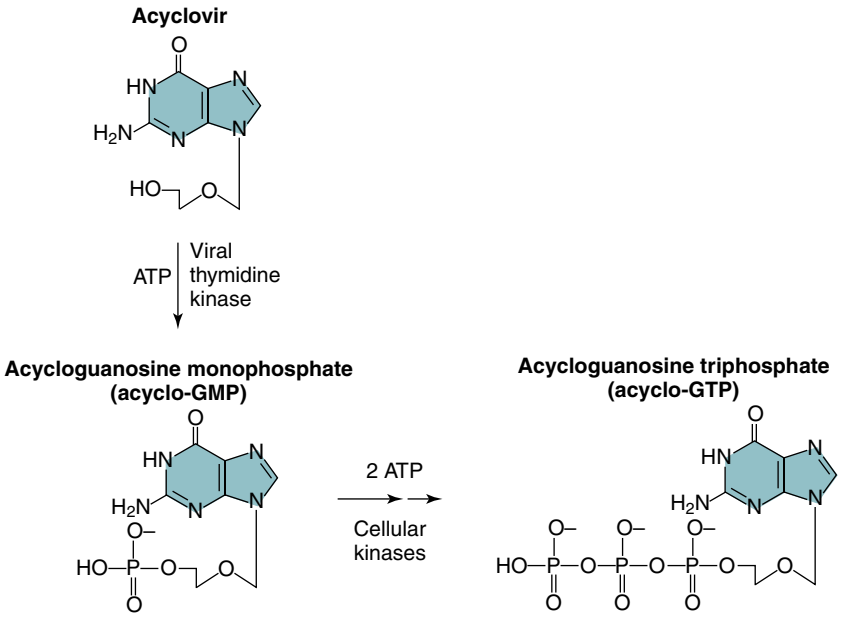


Fig. 40.2 Activation of acyclovir (ACV) (acycloguanosine) in herpes simplex virus–infected cells. ACV is converted to acycloguanosine monophosphate *(acyclo-GMP)* by herpes-specific viral thymidine kinase and then to acycloguanosine triphosphate *(acyclo-GTP)* by cellular kinases. *ATP,* Adenosine triphosphate.

uninfected cells, there is no active drug to inhibit cellular DNA synthesis or cause toxicity. The ACV triphosphate causes termination of the growing viral DNA chain because there is no 3′-hydroxyl group on the ACV molecule to allow chain elongation. The minimal toxicity of ACV is also a result of a 100-fold or greater use by the viral DNA polymerase than by cellular DNA polymerases. **Resistance to ACV** develops by mutation of *either* the thymidine kinase, so that activation of ACV cannot occur, or the DNA polymerase, to prevent ACV binding.

Valacyclovir, the valyl ester derivative of ACV, is more efficiently absorbed after oral administration and rapidly converted into ACV, increasing the bioavailability of ACV for the treatment of HSV and serious VZV. ACV and valacyclovir can also be used for the treatment of VZV infection, although higher doses are required. VZV is less sensitive to the agent in part because ACV is phosphorylated less efficiently by the VZV thymidine kinase.

Penciclovir inhibits HSV and VZV in the same way as ACV but is concentrated and persists in the infected cells to a greater extent than ACV. Penciclovir also has some activity against the Epstein-Barr virus and cytomegalovirus (CMV). **Famciclovir** is a prodrug derivative of penciclovir that is well absorbed orally and then is converted to penciclovir in the liver or intestinal lining. Resistance to penciclovir and famciclovir develops in the same manner as for ACV.

GANCICLOVIR

GCV (dihydroxypropoxymethyl guanine) differs from ACV in having a single hydroxymethyl group in the acyclic side chain (see Fig. 40.1). The remarkable result of this addition is that it confers considerable activity against CMV. CMV does not encode a thymidine kinase; instead, a viral-encoded protein kinase phosphorylates GCV. Once activated by phosphorylation, GCV inhibits all herpesvirus DNA polymerases. The viral DNA polymerases have nearly 30 times greater affinity for the drug than the cellular DNA polymerase. Similar to ACV, a valyl ester of GCV **(valganciclovir)** was developed to improve the pharmacologic properties of GCV.

The potential for bone marrow and other toxicity to GCV limits its use. Of interest, this potential toxicity has been used as the basis for the development of an antitumor therapy. In one application, an HSV thymidine kinase gene was incorporated into the cells of a brain tumor with the use of a retrovirus vector. The retrovirus replicated only in the growing cells of the tumor, and the thymidine kinase was expressed only in the tumor cells, making the tumor cells susceptible to GCV.

CIDOFOVIR AND ADEFOVIR

Cidofovir and **adefovir** are both nucleotide analogs and contain a phosphate attached to the sugar analog. This obviates the need for the initial phosphorylation by a viral enzyme. Compounds with this type of sugar analog are substrates for DNA polymerases or reverse transcriptases and have an expanded spectrum of susceptible viruses. Cidofovir, a cytidine analog, is approved for CMV infections in AIDS patients but can also inhibit replication of polyomavirus and papillomaviruses and inhibit the polymerases of other herpesviruses, adenoviruses, and poxvirus. Adefovir and adefovir dipivoxil (a diester prodrug) are analogs of adenosine and are approved for treatment of HBV.

AZIDOTHYMIDINE

Originally developed as an anticancer drug, **AZT** was the first useful therapy for HIV infection. AZT (Retrovir), a nucleoside analog of thymidine, inhibits the reverse transcriptase of HIV (see Fig. 40.1). Similar to other nucleosides,

AZT must be phosphorylated by host cell enzymes. It lacks the 3′-hydroxyl necessary for DNA chain elongation and prevents complementary DNA synthesis. The selective therapeutic effect of AZT stems from the 100-fold lower sensitivity of the host cell DNA polymerase compared with the HIV reverse transcriptase.

Continuous oral AZT treatment is administered to HIV-infected people with depleted CD4 T-cell counts to prevent progression of disease. AZT treatment of pregnant HIV-infected women can reduce the likelihood of, or prevent transmission of the virus to the baby. Side effects of AZT range from nausea to life-threatening bone marrow toxicity.

The high error rate of the HIV polymerase creates extensive mutations and promotes the development of antiviral drug-resistant strains. This problem is being addressed by the administration of multidrug therapy as initial therapy **(highly active antiretroviral therapy [HAART]).** It is more difficult for the HIV to develop resistance to multiple drugs with multiple target enzymes. Multidrug-resistant HIV strains are likely to be much weaker than the parent strains.

DIDEOXYINOSINE, DIDEOXYCYTIDINE, STAVUDINE, AND LAMIVUDINE

Several other nucleoside analogs have been approved as anti-HIV agents. Dideoxyinosine (didanosine) is a nucleoside analog that is converted to dideoxyadenosine triphosphate (see Fig. 40.1). Similar to AZT, dideoxyinosine, **dideoxycytidine,** and **stavudine** (d4T) lack a 3′-hydroxyl group. The modified sugar attached to **lamivudine** (2′-deoxy-3′-thiacytidine [3TC]) inhibits the HIV reverse transcriptase by preventing DNA chain elongation and HIV replication. Lamivudine and related drugs are also active on the reverse transcriptase polymerase of HBV. Most of the anti-HIV agents have potential toxic side effects.

RIBAVIRIN

Ribavirin is an analog of the nucleoside guanosine (see Fig. 40.1) but differs from guanosine in that its base ring is incomplete and open. Similar to other nucleoside analogs, ribavirin must be phosphorylated. The drug is active in vitro against a broad range of viruses.

Ribavirin monophosphate resembles guanosine monophosphate and inhibits nucleoside biosynthesis, mRNA capping, and other processes important to the replication of many viruses. Ribavirin depletes the cellular stores of guanine by inhibiting inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase, which is an enzyme important in the synthetic pathway of guanosine. It also prevents the synthesis of the mRNA 5′ cap by interfering with the guanylation and methylation of the nucleic acid base. In addition, ribavirin triphosphate inhibits RNA polymerases and promotes hypermutation of the viral genome. Its multiple sites of action may explain the lack of ribavirin-resistant mutants.

Ribavirin is administered in an aerosol to children with severe respiratory syncytial virus bronchopneumonia and potentially to adults with severe influenza or measles. The drug may be effective for the treatment of influenza B, as well as Lassa, Rift Valley, Crimean-Congo, Korean, and Argentine hemorrhagic fevers, for which it is administered orally or intravenously. Ribavirin is approved for use against HCV in combination with IFN-α and protease inhibitors. Treatment can have serious side effects.

OTHER NUCLEOSIDE ANALOGS

Idoxuridine, trifluorothymidine (see Fig. 40.1), and **fluorouracil** are analogs of thymidine. These drugs either (1) inhibit the biosynthesis of thymidine, which is a nucleotide essential for DNA synthesis, or (2) replace thymidine and become incorporated into the viral DNA. These actions inhibit further synthesis of the virus or cause extensive misreading of the genome, leading to mutation and inactivation of the virus. These drugs target cells in which extensive DNA replication is taking place, such as those infected with HSV, and spare the nongrowing cells from harm.

Idoxuridine was the first anti-HSV drug approved for human use but has been replaced by **trifluridine** and other more effective, less toxic agents. **Fluorouracil** is an antineoplastic drug that kills rapidly growing cells but also has been used for topical treatment of warts caused by human papillomaviruses.

Adenine arabinoside was the principal anti-HSV drug until ACV was introduced, but it is no longer used because of difficulties in administration and toxicity. Ara-A is an adenosine nucleoside analog with an arabinose substituted for deoxyribose as the sugar moiety (see Fig. 40.1). Many other nucleoside analogs that have antiviral activity are being investigated for clinical use against the herpesviruses, HBV, and HIV.

Baloxavir marboxil is also a nucleoside analogue that inhibits the subunit of the influenza polymerase that snatches the cap portion of cellular mRNAs to use as primers for transcription of the viral mRNA.

Nonnucleoside Polymerase Inhibitors

Foscarnet (PFA) and the related PAA are simple compounds that resemble pyrophosphate (Fig. 40.3). These drugs inhibit viral replication by binding to the pyrophosphate-binding site of the DNA polymerase to block nucleotide binding. PFA inhibits the DNA polymerase of all

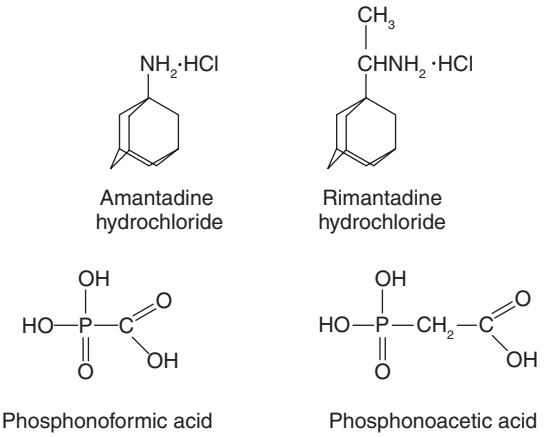


Fig. 40.3 Structures of antiviral drugs.

herpesviruses and the HIV reverse transcriptase without having to be phosphorylated by nucleoside kinases (e.g., thymidine kinase). PFA and PAA can cause renal and other problems because of their ability to chelate divalent metal ions (e.g., calcium) and they become incorporated into bone. PFA has been approved for the treatment of CMV retinitis in patients with AIDS.

Nevirapine, delavirdine, efavirenz, and other nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors bind to sites on the enzyme different from the substrate. Because these drugs' mechanisms of action differ from those of the nucleoside analogs, the mechanism of HIV resistance to the agents is also different. As a result, these drugs are very useful in combination with nucleoside analogs for the treatment of HIV infection.

Protease Inhibitors

The unique structure of the HIV protease and its essential role in the production of a functional virion have made this enzyme a good target for antiviral drugs. **Saquinavir, indinavir, ritonavir, nelfinavir,** and other agents work by slipping into the hydrophobic active site of the enzyme to inhibit its action. Drug-resistant strains arise through mutation of the protease. Use of protease inhibitors significantly improved the outcomes for HIV patients. The combination of a protease inhibitor with AZT and a second nucleoside analog (HAART) can reduce blood levels of HIV to undetectable levels.

Protease inhibitors **(boceprevir, telaprevir, simeprevir)** have also improved the treatment of patients with chronic hepatitis C.

Antiinfluenza Drugs

Amantadine and **rimantadine** are amphipathic amine compounds with clinical efficacy against the influenza A but not the influenza B virus (see Fig. 40.3). These drugs have several effects on influenza A replication. Both compounds are acidotrophic and concentrate in and buffer the contents of the endosomal vesicles involved in the uptake of the influenza virus. This effect can inhibit the acid-mediated change in conformation in the hemagglutinin protein that promotes fusion of the viral envelope with cell membranes. However, the specificity for influenza A is a result of its ability to bind to and block the proton channel formed by the M_2 membrane protein of the influenza A virus. Resistance is the result of an altered M_2 or hemagglutinin protein.

Amantadine and rimantadine may be useful in ameliorating an influenza A infection if either agent is taken within 48 hours of exposure. They are also useful as a prophylactic treatment in lieu of vaccination. In addition, amantadine is an alternative therapy for Parkinson disease. The principal toxic effect is on the central nervous system, with patients experiencing nervousness, irritability, and insomnia.

Zanamivir (Relenza) and **oseltamivir (Tamiflu)** inhibit influenza A and B as enzyme inhibitors of the neuraminidase of influenza. Without the neuraminidase to cleave sialic acid, the hemagglutinin of the virus binds to these sugars on other glycoproteins, forming clumps and preventing assembly and virus release. These drugs can be taken prophylactically as an alternative to vaccination or, if taken within the first 48 hours of infection, to reduce the length of illness. Mutations in the neuraminidase cause resistance.

Immunomodulators

Genetically engineered forms of IFN-α have been approved for human use. Interferons work by binding to cell-surface receptors and by initiating a cellular antiviral response. In addition, interferons stimulate the immune response and promote the immune clearance of viral infection.

IFN-α is active against many viral infections. It has been approved for the treatment of condyloma acuminatum (genital warts, a presentation of papillomavirus) and hepatitis C (in combination therapy). Attachment of polyethylene glycol to IFN-α (pegylated IFN-α) increases its potency. Pegylated IFN-α can be used with ribavirin to treat hepatitis C infections. Natural interferon causes the influenza-like symptoms observed during many viremic and respiratory tract infections, and the synthetic agent has similar side effects during treatment. Interferon is discussed further in Chapters 10 and 37.

Imiquimod, a Toll-like receptor ligand, stimulates innate responses to attack the virus infection. This therapeutic approach can activate local protective responses against papillomas, which generally escape immune control.

Infection Control

Infection control is essential in hospital and health care settings. The spread of respiratory viruses is the most difficult to prevent. Viral spread can be controlled in the following ways:

1. Limiting personnel contact with sources of infection (e.g., wearing gloves, mask, goggles; using quarantine)
2. Improving hygiene, sanitation, and disinfection
3. Ensuring that all personnel are immunized against common diseases
4. Educating all personnel regarding points 1, 2, and 3 and in the ways to decrease high-risk behaviors

Methods for disinfection differ for each virus and depend on its structure. Naked capsid viruses are much more difficult to inactivate than enveloped viruses. Most viruses are inactivated by 70% ethanol, 15% chlorine bleach, 2% glutaraldehyde, 4% formaldehyde, or autoclaving (as described in *Guidelines for Prevention of Transmission of Human Immunodeficiency Virus and Hepatitis B Virus to Health-Care and Public-Safety Workers,* issued in 1989 by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC]). Most enveloped viruses do not require such rigorous treatment and are inactivated by soap and detergents. Other means of disinfection are also available.

Special "universal" precautions are required for the handling of human blood; that is, all blood should be assumed to be contaminated with HIV or HBV and should be handled with caution. In addition to these procedures, special care must be taken with syringe needles and surgical tools contaminated with blood. Specific guidelines are available from the CDC.

Control of an outbreak usually requires identification of the source or reservoir of the virus, followed by cleanup, quarantine, immunization, or a combination of these measures. The first step in controlling an outbreak of gastroenteritis or hepatitis A is identification of the food, water, or possibly the day-care center that is the source of the outbreak.

Education programs can promote compliance with immunization programs and help people change lifestyles associated with viral transmission. Such programs have had a significant effect in reducing the prevalence of vaccine-preventable diseases such as smallpox, polio, measles, mumps, and rubella. It is hoped that educational programs will also promote changes in lifestyles and habits to restrict the spread of the blood-borne and sexually transmitted HBV and HIV.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

De Clercq, E., 2011. A 40-year journey in search of selective antiviral chemotherapy. Ann. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol. 51, 1–24.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2009. Clinical Virology, third ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Diseases, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

Websites

New Medical Information, Health Information, Antiviral drugs: antiviral agents, antiviral medications. http://drugs.nmihi.com/antivirals.htm. Accessed June 30, 2018.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration, HBV and HCV. https://www.fda.gov/ForPatients/Illness/HepatitisBC/ucm408658.htm. Accessed June 30, 2018.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration, HIV Drugs. https://www.fda.gov/patients/hivaids/hiv-treatment. Accessed 30 June 2019.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Influenza (flu) antiviral drugs and related information. www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/InformationbyDrugClass/ucm100228.htm. Accessed June 30, 2018.

Questions

1. List the steps in viral replication that are poor targets for antiviral drugs. Why?

2. Which viruses can be treated with an antiviral drug? Distinguish the viruses treatable with an antiviral nucleoside analog.

3. A mutation in the gene for which enzymes or proteins would confer resistance to the following antiviral drugs: ACV, phosphonoformate, amantadine, and AZT?

4. A patient has been exposed to influenza A virus and is in his sixth day of symptoms. He has heard that an antiinfluenza drug is available and requests therapy. You tell him that therapy is not appropriate. To what therapeutic agents is the patient referring, and why did you decline to use the treatment?

5. What disinfection procedures are sufficient for inactivating the following viruses: HAV, HBV, HSV, and rhinovirus?

6. What precautions should health care workers take to protect themselves from infection with the following viruses: HBV, influenza A virus, HSV (whitlow), and HIV?

41 Papillomaviruses and Polyomaviruses

A 47-year-old divorced, sexually active woman is seen for a routine gynecologic exam. She is a pack-a-day smoker. A Papanicolaou (Pap) smear is performed, and the report indicates high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (SIL) corresponding to a moderate dysplasia and cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) score of 2. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) analysis indicates that cells in the lesion are infected with human papillomavirus 16 (HPV-16).

1. What properties of HPV-16 promote the development of cervical cancer?
2. How is the virus transmitted?
3. What is the nature of the immune response to the virus?
4. How can transmission and disease be prevented?

A 42-year-old man comes to his physician 9 months after a lung transplant, complaining that he has double vision, difficulty speaking, feels that his muscles do not work right, has difficulty with balance, has tingling of his hands and feet, and keeps forgetting things. A month later, he has difficulty speaking and needs assistance with normal daily functions. His mental and physical functions become progressively worse. He is treated with cidofovir, and his immunosuppressive therapy is eased, but his disease progresses to paralysis and he dies. A biopsy of the brain shows lesions with sites of demyelination, astrocytosis with atypical nuclei, and many histiocytes. PCR analysis demonstrates the presence of JC polyomavirus in the lesion, confirming a diagnosis of progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML).

5. What properties of JC virus (JCV) promote the development of PML?
6. Why is this disease also prevalent in individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)? Who else is at risk for this disease and why?

Answers to these questions are available on StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

PAPILLOMAVIRUSES

Trigger Words

HPV, warts, koilocytes, cervical cancer, STD, CIN

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Small naked capsid, DNA genome
- E6 and E7 proteins inactivate p53 and RB to promote cell growth.
- Virus is acquired by close contact and infects the epithelial cells of the skin or mucous membranes
- Tissue tropism and disease presentation depend on the papillomavirus type
- Virus persists in the basal layer and then produces virus in terminally differentiated keratinocytes
- Viruses cause benign outgrowth of cells into warts
- HPV infection is hidden from immune responses and persists
- Warts resolve slowly but spontaneously, possibly as a result of immune response
- Certain types (HPV-16, HPV-18, etc.) are associated with cervical, anal, penile, and oropharyngeal cancers

Epidemiology

- Transmitted by direct contact, sexual contact (sexually transmitted disease), fomites, passage through infected birth canal for laryngeal papillomas (types 6 and 11)
- Warts common; STD
- Asymptomatic transmission, found worldwide, no seasonal incidence

Diagnosis

- PCR genome analysis of cervical swabs and tissue specimens

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Vaccine for HPV types 6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58

POLYOMAVIRUSES

Trigger Words

- JCV: PML, opportunistic disease, abnormal oligodendrocytes, demyelination; BK virus: kidney; MCPyV: Merkel cell carcinoma

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Small naked capsid, DNA genome
- T antigen inactivates p53 and RB to promote cell growth
- Virus infects tonsils and lymphocytes, and spreads by viremia to the kidneys early in life
- Virus is ubiquitous and infections are asymptomatic
- Virus establishes persistent and latent infection in organs such as kidneys and lungs
- In immunocompromised people, JCV is activated, spreads to the brain, and causes PML, which is a conventional slow virus disease
- In PML, JCV partially transforms astrocytes and kills oligodendrocytes, causing characteristic lesions and sites of demyelination
- PML lesions are demyelinated, with unusual large astrocytes and oligodendroglial cells with very large nuclei
- BK virus is benign but may cause kidney disease in immunocompromised patients

Epidemiology

- Transmitted by inhalation or contact with contaminated water or saliva
- Ubiquitous; immunocompromised people at risk for PML by JCV and kidney damage by BK virus
- Found worldwide; no seasonal incidence

Diagnosis

- JC: Presence of PCR-amplified viral DNA in cerebrospinal fluid and MRI or CT evidence of lesions

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- No modes of control

CIN, Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia; *CT,* computerized tomography; *HPV,* human papilloma virus; *JCV,* JC virus; *MRI,* magnetic resonance imaging; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *PML,* progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy; *STD,* sexually transmitted disease.

What used to be called the **papovavirus family** (Papovaviridae) has been divided into two families, Papillomaviridae and Polyomaviridae (Table 41.1). These viruses are capable of causing lytic, chronic, latent, and transforming infections, depending on the host cell. HPVs cause **warts,** and several genotypes are associated with human cancer (e.g., **cervical carcinoma**). **BK virus (BKV)** and **JCV**, members of the **Polyomaviridae,** usually cause asymptomatic infection but are associated with renal disease and **PML,** respectively, in immunosuppressed people. **Simian virus 40 (SV40)** is the prototype polyomavirus.

The papillomaviruses and polyomaviruses are small, nonenveloped, icosahedral capsid viruses with double-stranded circular deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) genomes (Box 41.1). They encode proteins that promote cell growth. The promotion of cell growth facilitates lytic viral replication in a permissive cell type but **may oncogenically transform a cell that is nonpermissive.** The polyomaviruses, especially SV40, have been studied extensively as model oncogenic viruses.

Human Papillomaviruses

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

HPVs are distinguished and typed by DNA sequence homology. At least 100 types have been identified and classified into 16 (A through P) groups. HPV can be distinguished further as **cutaneous HPV** or **mucosal HPV** on the basis of the susceptible tissue. Within the mucosal HPV, there is a group associated with cervical, penile, anal, and laryngeal cancer. Viruses in a group cause similar types of warts.

The **icosahedral capsid** of HPV is 50 to 55 nm in diameter and consists of two structural proteins that form 72 capsomeres (Fig. 41.1). The HPV genome is **circular** and has approximately 8000 base pairs. The HPV DNA encodes seven or eight early genes (*E1* to *E8*), depending on the virus, and two late or structural genes (*L1* and *L2*). An upstream regulatory region contains the control sequences for transcription, the shared N-terminal sequence for the early proteins, and the origin of replication. All the genes are located on one strand (the plus strand) (Fig. 41.2).

The replication cycle of HPV is linked to the life cycle of the keratinocyte and epithelial cell of the skin and mucosa. The virus accesses the basal cell layer through breaks in the skin (Fig. 41.3). The L1 protein of HPV is the viral attachment protein and initiates replication by binding to heparin proteoglycans and other receptors to trigger endocytosis from the cell surface. The early genes of the virus stimulate cell growth, which facilitates replication of the viral genome by the host cell DNA polymerase when the cells divide. Binding of the E1 and E2 proteins to viral DNA target cellular replication machinery to the genome. The virus-induced increase in cell number causes the basal and the prickle cell layer (stratum spinosum) to thicken (wart, condyloma, or papilloma). As the basal cell differentiates, the specific nuclear factors expressed in the different layers and types of skin and mucosa promote transcription of different viral genes. Expression of the viral genes correlates with the expression of specific keratins. The late genes encoding the structural proteins are expressed only in the terminally differentiated upper layer, and the virus assembles in the nucleus. As the infected skin cell matures and works its way to the surface, the virus matures and is shed with the dead cells of the upper layer and takes up to 3 weeks.

TABLE 41.1 Human Papillomaviruses and Polyomaviruses and Their Diseases

Virus	Disease
Papillomavirus	Warts, condylomas, papillomas; cervical, penile, and anal cancer[a]
Polyomavirus	
BK virus	Renal disease[b]
JC virus	Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy[b]
Merkel cell virus	Merkel cell carcinoma

[a]High-risk genotypes are present in 99.7% of these carcinomas.
[b]Disease occurs in immunosuppressed patients.

PATHOGENESIS

Papillomaviruses infect and replicate in the squamous epithelium of skin **(warts)** and mucous membranes **(genital, oral, and conjunctival papillomas)** to induce epithelial proliferation. The HPV types are very tissue specific, causing different disease presentations. The wart develops because of virus stimulation of cell growth and thickening of the basal and prickle layers (stratum spinosum), as well as the stratum granulosum. **Koilocytes,** characteristic of papillomavirus infection, are enlarged keratinocytes with clear halos around shrunken nuclei. It usually takes 3 to 4 weeks to months for the wart to develop (Fig. 41.4). The viral infection remains local and generally regresses spontaneously but can recur. The HPV pathogenic mechanisms are summarized in Box 41.2.

Innate and cell-mediated immunity are important for control and resolution of HPV infections. HPV can suppress or hide from protective immune responses. In addition to very low levels of antigen expression (except in the

BOX 41.1 Unique Properties of Polyomaviruses and Papillomaviruses

Papillomavirus: HPV types 1 to 100+ (as determined by genotype; types defined by DNA homology, tissue tropism, and association with oncogenesis)
Polyomavirus: SV40, **JC virus, BK virus,** KI, WU, Merkel cell polyomavirus (MCPyV)
Small icosahedral capsid virion
Double-stranded circular DNA genome replicated and assembled in nucleus
Viruses have defined tissue tropisms determined by receptor interactions and transcriptional machinery of cell
Viruses encode proteins that promote cell growth by binding to cellular growth-suppressor proteins p53 and p105RB (p105 retinoblastoma gene product); polyoma **T antigen** binds to p105RB and p53; high-risk **papillomavirus E6 protein binds to p53, activates telomerase, and suppresses apoptosis, and E7 protein binds to p105RB**
Viruses can cause lytic infections in permissive cells but cause abortive, persistent, or latent infections or **immortalize (transform)** nonpermissive cells

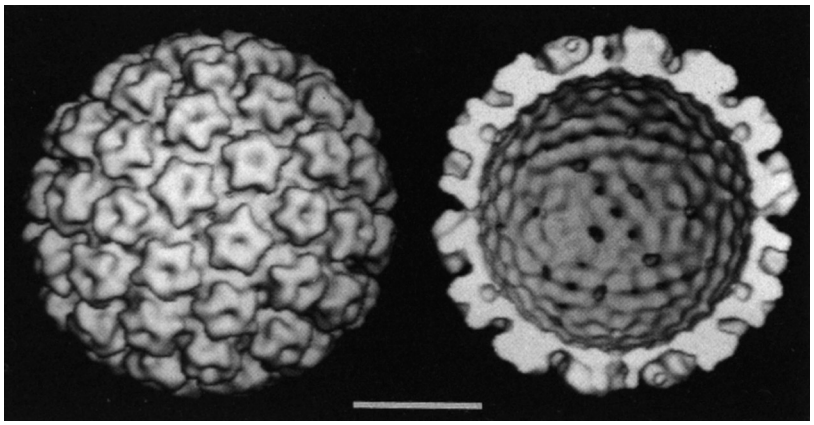


Fig. 41.1 Computer reconstruction of cryoelectron micrographs of human papillomavirus (HPV). *Left,* View of the surface of HPV shows 72 capsomeres arranged in an icosadeltahedron. All the capsomeres appear to form a regular five-point star shape. *Right,* Computer cross-section of the capsid shows the interaction of the capsomeres and channels in the capsid. (From Baker, T.S., Newcomb, W.W., Olson, N.H., et al., 1991. Structures of bovine and human papillomaviruses. Analysis by cryoelectron microscopy and three-dimensional image reconstruction. Biophys. J. 60, 1445–1456.)

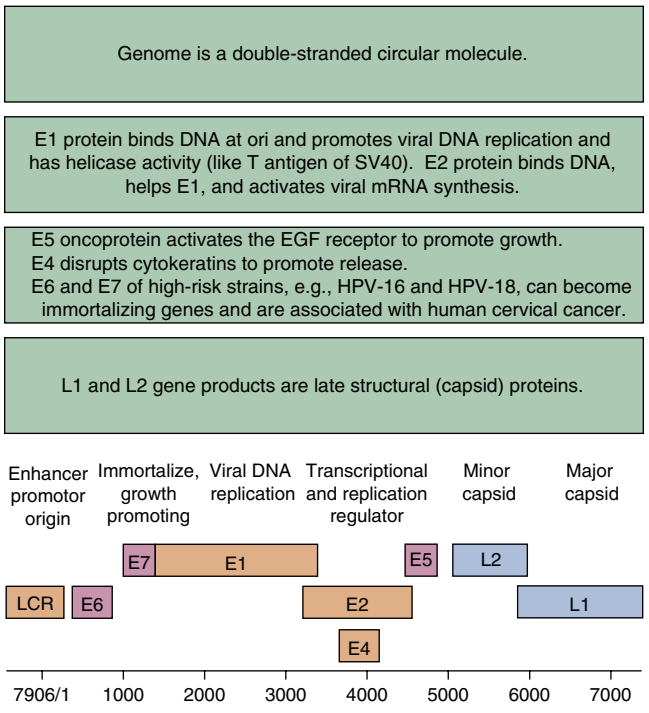


Fig. 41.2 Genome of human papillomavirus type 16 *(HPV-16).* Genomic DNA is normally a double-stranded circular molecule, but it is shown here in a linear form. *E5,* Oncogene protein that enhances cell growth by stabilizing and activating the epidermal growth factor receptor; *E6,* oncogene protein that binds p53 and promotes its degradation; *E7*, oncogene protein that binds p105RB (p105 retinoblastoma gene product); *EGF,* epidermal growth factor; *L1,* major capsid protein; *L2,* minor capsid protein; *LCR* (URR), long control region (upstream regulatory region); *ori,* origin of replication. (Courtesy Tom Broker, Baltimore.)

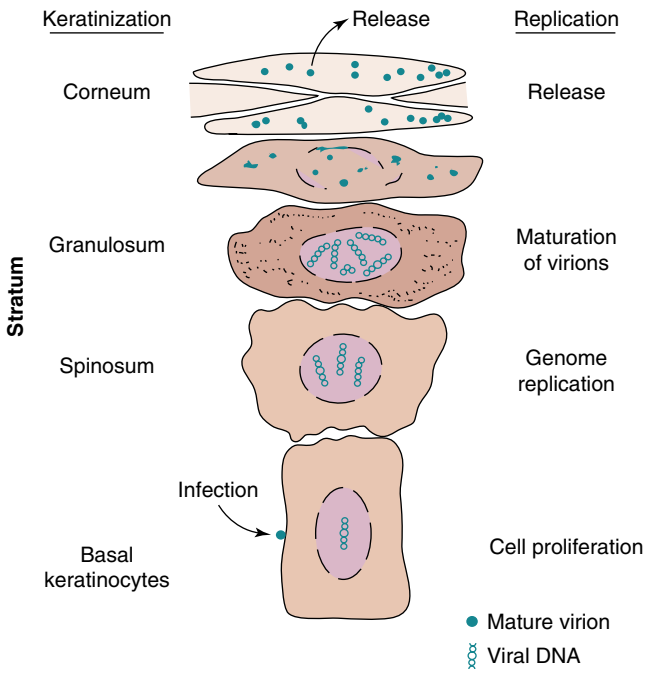


Fig. 41.3 Development of a papilloma (wart). Human papillomavirus infection promotes the outgrowth of the basal layer, increasing the number of prickle cells of the stratum spinosum (acanthosis). These changes cause the skin to thicken and promote the production of keratin (hyperkeratosis), causing epithelial spikes to form (papillomatosis). Virus is produced in the granular cells close to the final keratin layer.

"near-dead" terminally differentiated skin cell), the keratinocyte is an immunologically privileged site for replication. Inflammatory responses are required to activate protective cytolytic responses and promote resolution of warts. Immunosuppressed persons have recurrences and more severe presentations of papillomavirus infections. Antibody to the L1 protein neutralizes the virus. IgG produced by vaccination is secreted into the vagina and elsewhere and can protect against infection.

High-risk HPV types (e.g., HPV-16, HPV-18; Table 41.2) can initiate the development of cervical carcinoma and oropharyngeal, esophageal, penile, and anal cancers. Viral DNA is found in benign and malignant tumors, especially mucosal papillomas. **Almost all cervical carcinomas contain integrated HPV DNA, with 70% from HPV-16 or HPV-18.** Breaking of the circular genome within the *E1* or *E2* genes to promote integration causes these genes to be inactivated, preventing viral replication without preventing expression of other HPV genes, including the *E5*, *E6*, and *E7* genes (Fig. 41.5). The E5, E6, and E7 proteins of HPV-16 and HPV-18 have been identified as **oncogenes.** The E5

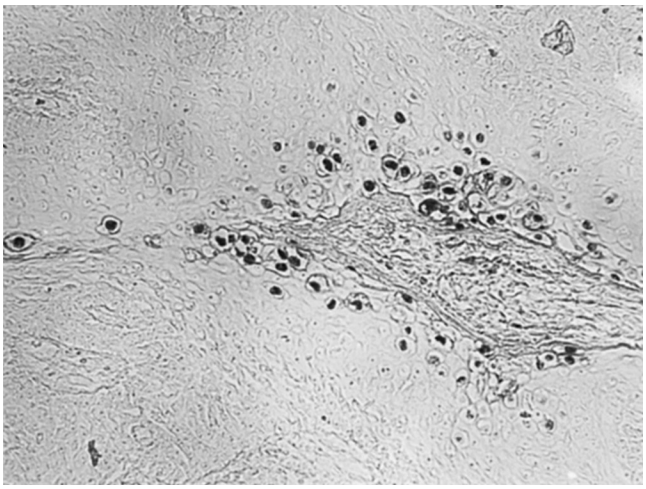


Fig. 41.4 DNA probe analysis of a human papillomavirus 6–induced anogenital condyloma. A biotin-labeled DNA probe was localized by horseradish peroxidase–conjugated avidin conversion of a substrate to a chromogen precipitate. Dark staining is seen over the nuclei of koilocytotic cells. (From Belshe, R.B., 1991. Textbook of Human Virology, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

protein enhances cell growth by stabilizing the epidermal growth factor receptor to make the cell more sensitive to growth signals, whereas the E6 and E7 proteins bind and prevent function of the cellular growth-suppressor (transformation-suppressor) proteins, p53, and the *p105* retinoblastoma gene product (RB). E6 binds the p53 protein and targets it for degradation, and E7 binds and inactivates p105. Enhanced cell growth and inactivation of p53 makes the cell more susceptible to mutation, chromosomal aberrations, or the action of a cofactor and promotes the development of cancer.

BOX 41.2 Disease Mechanisms of Papillomaviruses and Polyomaviruses

Papillomaviruses

Virus is acquired by **close contact** and infects the epithelial cells of the skin or mucous membranes.
Tissue tropism and disease presentation depend on the papillomavirus type.
Virus persists in the basal layer and then produces virus in terminally differentiated keratinocytes.
Viruses cause benign outgrowth of cells into **warts.**
HPV infection is hidden from immune responses and persists.
Warts resolve spontaneously as a result of immune response.
Certain types are associated with **dysplasia** that may become **cancerous** with the action of cofactors.
DNA of specific HPV types is present (integrated) in the tumor cell chromosomes.

Polyomaviruses (JCV and BKV)

Virus is acquired through the respiratory or oral route, infects tonsils and lymphocytes, and spreads by viremia to the kidneys early in life.
Virus is ubiquitous, and infections are **asymptomatic.**
Virus establishes **persistent** and **latent** infection in organs such as the kidneys and lungs.
In **immunocompromised** people, JCV is activated, spreads to the brain, and causes **PML,** which is a conventional slow virus disease.
In PML, JCV partially transforms astrocytes and kills oligodendrocytes, causing characteristic lesions and sites of demyelination.
PML lesions are demyelinated, with unusual large astrocytes and oligodendroglial cells with very large nuclei.
BKV is benign but may cause kidney disease in immunocompromised patients.

BKV, BK virus; *HPV,* human papillomavirus; *JCV,* JC virus; *PML,* progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

HPV resists inactivation and can be transmitted on fomites such as the surfaces of countertops or furniture, bathroom floors, and towels (Box 41.3). Asymptomatic shedding may promote transmission. HPV infection is acquired (1) by direct contact through small breaks in the skin or mucosa, (2) during sexual intercourse, or (3) while an infant is passing through an infected birth canal.

Common, plantar, and flat warts are most common in children and young adults. Laryngeal papillomas occur in young children and middle-aged adults.

HPV only infects humans. It is possibly the most prevalent sexually transmitted infection in the world, with certain HPV types common among sexually active men and women. At least 79 million people in the United States are infected with HPV, with approximately14 million new anogenital cases per year.

High-risk HPV types, including HPV-16 and HPV-18, are present in oropharyngeal, penile, cervical, vaginal, and anal cancers. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, oropharyngeal squamous cell carcinoma is now the most common HPV-associated cancer.

HPV is present in 99.7% of all cervical cancers, with HPV-16 and HPV-18 in 70% of them. Other high-risk genotypes are more prevalent in different socioethnic groups. Types 33, 35, 58, and 68 are common high-risk HPV types for African American women. Other high-risk strains are listed in Table 41.2. Cervical cancer is the second leading cause of cancer death in women (≈14,000 cases and 4000 deaths per year in the United States).

Approximately 5% of all Pap smears contain HPV-infected cells, and 10% of women infected with the high-risk HPV types will develop cervical **dysplasia,** which is a precancerous state. Multiple sexual partners, smoking, a family history of cervical cancer, and immunosuppression are the major risk factors for infection and progression to cancer.

HPV-6 and HPV-11 are low-risk HPV types for cervical carcinoma but cause condyloma acuminatum and oral and laryngeal papillomas.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The clinical syndromes and the HPV types that cause them are summarized in Table 41.2.

Warts

A **wart** is a benign self-limited proliferation of skin that regresses with time. Most people with HPV infection have the common types of the virus (HPV-1 through HPV-4), which infect keratinized surfaces, usually on the hands and feet (Fig. 41.6). Initial infection occurs in childhood or early

TABLE 41.2 Clinical Syndromes Associated with Papillomaviruses

Syndrome	HUMAN PAPILLOMAVIRUS TYPES: Common	Less Common
CUTANEOUS SYNDROMES		
Skin Warts		
Plantar wart	1	2, 4
Common wart	2, 4	1, 7, 26, 29
Flat wart	3, 10	27, 28, 41
Epidermodysplasia verruciformis	5, 8, 17, 20, 36	9, 12, 14, 15, 19, 21-25, 38, 46
MUCOSAL SYNDROMES		
Benign Head and Neck Tumors		
Laryngeal papilloma	6, 11	—
Oral papilloma	6, 11	2, 16
Conjunctival papilloma	11	—
Anogenital Warts		
Condyloma acuminatum	6, 11	1, 2, 10, 16, 30, 44, 45
Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, cancer (high-risk types)	16, 18	31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 51, 52, 56, 58, 59, 66, 68, 69, 73, 82

Modified from Balows, A., Hausler Jr., W.J., Lennette, E.H. (Eds.), 1988. Laboratory Diagnosis of Infectious Diseases: Principles and Practice, vol 2. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY. Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2001. Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases, 12th ed. Public Health Foundation, Washington, DC.

BOX 41.3 Epidemiology of Polyomaviruses and Papillomaviruses

Disease/Viral Factors

Capsid virus is resistant to inactivation.
Virus persists in host.
Asymptomatic shedding is likely.

Transmission

Papillomavirus: **direct contact, sexual contact** (sexually transmitted disease) for certain virus types, or passage through infected birth canal for laryngeal papillomas (types 6 and 11)
Polyomavirus: inhalation or contact with contaminated water, stool, urine, or saliva

Who Is at Risk?

Papillomavirus: warts are common; sexually active people at risk for infection with human papillomavirus types correlated with oral and genital cancers
Polyomavirus: ubiquitous; immunocompromised people at risk for progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy

Geography/Season

Viruses are found worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

Vaccine for HPV types 6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, 58

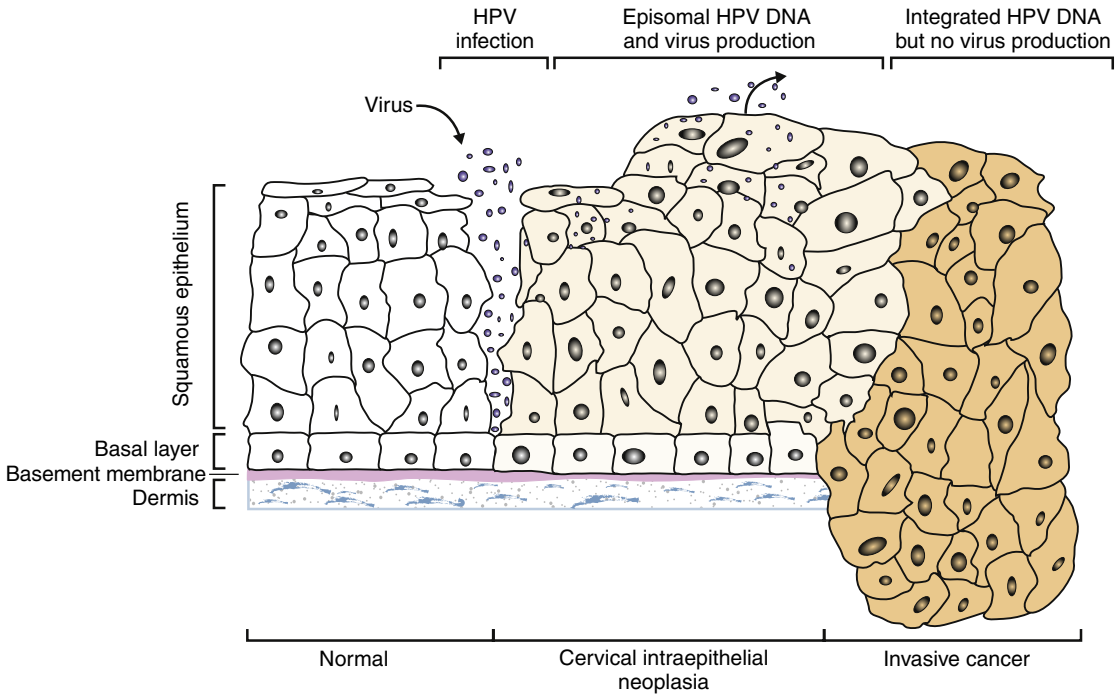


Fig. 41.5 Progression of human papillomavirus *(HPV)*–mediated cervical carcinoma. HPV infects and replicates in the epithelial cells of the cervix, maturing and releasing virus as the epithelial cells progress through terminal differentiation. Growth stimulation of the basal cells produces a wart. In some cells, the circular genome integrates into host chromosomes, inactivating the *E2* gene, which is necessary for replication. Expression of the other genes without virus production stimulates growth of the cells and possible progression to neoplasia. (Adapted from Woodman, C.B.J., Collins, S.I., Young, L.S., 2007. The natural history of cervical HPV infection: unresolved issues. Nat. Rev. Cancer 7, 11–22.)

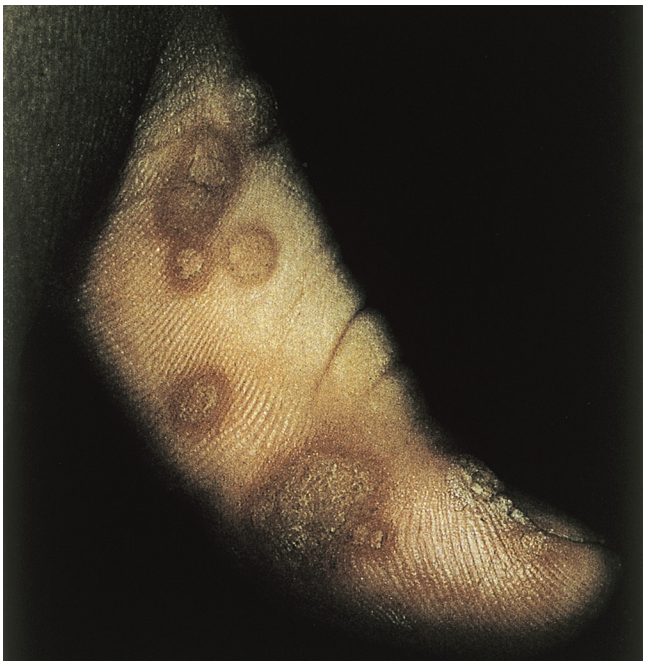


Fig. 41.6 Common warts. (From Habif, T.P., 1985. Clinical Dermatology: A Color Guide to Diagnosis and Therapy. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

adolescence. The incubation period before a wart develops may be as long as 3 to 4 months. The appearance of the wart (dome shaped, flat, or plantar) depends on the HPV type and the infected site.

Head and Neck Papillomas and Tumors

Single oral papillomas are the most benign epithelial tumors of the oral cavity. They are pedunculated with a fibrovascular stalk, and their surface usually has a rough, papillary appearance. They can occur in people of any age group, are usually solitary, and rarely recur after surgical excision. **Laryngeal papillomas** are commonly associated with HPV-6 and HPV-11 and are the most common benign epithelial tumors of the larynx. Infection of children probably occurs at birth and can be life-threatening if the papillomas obstruct the airway. Occasionally, papillomas may be found farther down in the trachea and into the bronchi. As many as 80% of **oropharyngeal carcinomas** contain high-risk HPV DNA.

Anogenital Warts

Anogenital warts **(condylomata acuminata)** occur almost exclusively on the squamous epithelium of the external genitalia and perianal areas and are common for promiscuous individuals. Approximately 90% are caused by HPV-6 and HPV-11. Anogenital lesions infected with these types of HPV can be problematic but rarely become malignant in otherwise healthy people. Anal and penile warts can progress to cancer if caused by high-risk oncogenic strains of HPV.

Cervical Dysplasia and Neoplasia

HPV infection of the genital tract is a very common sexually transmitted disease. Infection is usually asymptomatic but may result in slight itching. Genital warts may

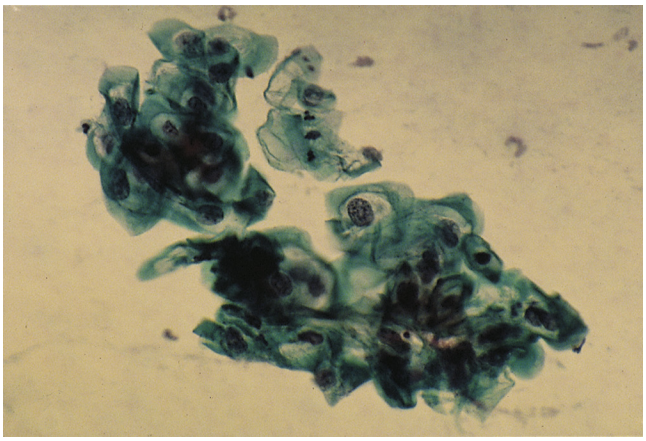


Fig. 41.7 Papanicolaou stain of exfoliated cervicovaginal squamous epithelial cells, showing the perinuclear cytoplasmic vacuolization termed *koilocytosis* (vacuolated cytoplasm), which is characteristic of human papillomavirus infection (400× magnification).

appear as soft, flesh-colored warts that are flat, raised, and sometimes cauliflower shaped. The warts can appear within weeks or months of sexual contact with an infected person. Cytologic changes indicating HPV infection **(koilocytotic cells)** are detected in **Papanicolaou-stained cervical smears** (Pap smears) (Fig. 41.7). Infection of the female genital tract by high-risk HPV types is associated with intraepithelial cervical neoplasia and cancer. The first neoplastic changes are termed **dysplasia.** Approximately 40% to 70% of the mild dysplasias spontaneously regress.

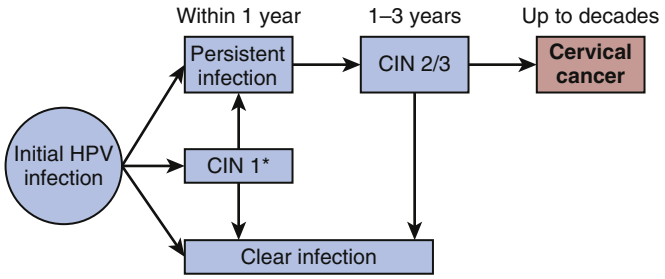
Cervical cancer is thought to develop through a continuum of progressive cellular changes from mild (CIN 1) to moderate neoplasia (CIN 2) to severe neoplasia or carcinoma in situ (Fig. 41.8; see Fig. 41.5). This sequence of events can occur over 1 to 4 years. Routine and regular Pap smears can promote early detection, treatment, and cure of cervical cancer.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

A wart can be confirmed microscopically on the basis of its characteristic histologic appearance, which consists of hyperplasia of the **prickle cells** and an excess production of keratin **(hyperkeratosis)**. Papillomavirus infection can be detected in Pap smears by the presence of koilocytotic (vacuolated cytoplasm) squamous epithelial cells, which are rounded and occur in clumps (Fig. 41.4; and Fig. 41.7). **DNA molecular probe, PCR, and real-time PCR** analysis of cervical swabs and tissue specimens are the methods of choice for establishing the diagnosis and typing of the HPV infection. Papillomaviruses do not grow in cell cultures, and tests for HPV antibodies are rarely used except in research studies.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Warts spontaneously regress, but the regression may take many months to years. Warts are removed because of pain and discomfort, for cosmetic reasons, and to prevent spread to other parts of the body or to other people. They are removed through the use of surgical cryotherapy,



*CIN: cervical intraepithelial neoplasia

Fig. 41.8 Progression of high-risk HPV infection to cervical carcinoma. Most HPV infections resolve spontaneously, but the virus can establish a persistent infection that can progress to low-grade cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN 1). This may resolve or progress directly to a higher grade CIN (CIN2 or CIN3) and if untreated progress to cervical cancer. (Adapted from https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/hpv.html.)

TABLE 41.3 Laboratory Diagnosis of Papillomavirus Infections

Test	Detects
Cytology	Koilocytotic cells
In situ DNA probe analysis	Viral nucleic acid
PCR[a]	Viral nucleic acid
Real-time PCR	Viral nucleic acid
Culture	Not useful

[a]Method of choice.
PCR, Polymerase chain reaction.

electrocautery, or chemical means (e.g., 10% to 25% solution of podophyllin), although recurrences are common. Surgery may be necessary for the removal of laryngeal papillomas.

Stimulators of innate and inflammatory responses, such as **imiquimod** (Aldara), **interferon,** and even stripping off duct tape, can promote more rapid healing. Topical or intralesional delivery of **cidofovir** can treat warts by selectively killing the HPV-infected cells. Cidofovir induces apoptosis by inhibiting the host cell DNA polymerase.

Immunization with a nine-valent (Gardasil 9: 6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58) HPV vaccine is recommended for girls and boys starting at age 11 years (before sexual activity) to prevent cervical cancer and penile and anogenital warts. A bivalent (Cervarix) and a tetravalent vaccine (Gardasil) are no longer offered in the United States. In 2018 the U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved immunization of adults aged 27 to 45. These vaccines consist of the L1 major capsid protein assembled into virus-like particles. Vaccinated women are not protected against all possible high-risk HPV strains. The HPV vaccine **is not a replacement for a Pap smear,** and women should continue to be tested. At present, the best way to prevent transmission of warts is to avoid coming in direct contact with infected tissue. Proper precautions (e.g., use of condoms) can prevent sexual transmission of HPV.

Polyomaviridae

The human polyomaviruses, **BKV** and **JCV,** are ubiquitous but usually do not cause disease. Less prevalent human polyomaviruses include the KI, WU, and Merkel cell polyomaviruses (MCVs). The human viruses are difficult to grow in cell culture. SV40 (a simian polyomavirus) and murine polyomaviruses, in particular, have been studied extensively as models of tumor-causing viruses, but only recently has a polyomavirus been associated with human cancers.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

The polyomaviruses are smaller (45 nm in diameter), contain less nucleic acid (5000 base pairs), and are less complex than the papillomaviruses (see Box 41.1). The genomes of BKV, JCV, and SV40 are closely related and are divided into early, late, and noncoding regions (Fig. 41.9). The early region on one strand codes for nonstructural **T (transformation) proteins** (including **large T, T′, and small t antigens**), and the late region, which is on the other strand, codes for **three viral capsid proteins (VP1, VP2,** and **VP3)** (Box 41.4). The noncoding region contains the origin of DNA replication and transcriptional control sequences for both early and late genes.

For JCV infection of glial cells, the virus binds to sialylated carbohydrates and serotonin receptors and then enters the cell by endocytosis. The DNA genome is uncoated and delivered to the nucleus. The early genes encode the large T and small t antigens, which are proteins that promote cell growth. Viral replication requires the transcriptional and DNA replication machinery provided by a growing cell. The large T antigens of SV40, BKV, and JCV have several functions. For example, the T antigen of SV40 binds to DNA and controls early and late gene transcription, as well as viral DNA replication. In addition, the T antigen binds to and inactivates the two major cellular growth-suppressor proteins, p53 and p105RB, promoting cell growth.

Similar to replication of the HPVs, replication of polyomavirus is highly dependent on host cell factors. Permissive cells allow the transcription of late viral messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) and viral replication, which results in cell death. Immune factors can promote a block in replication causing the virus to establish latency in these nonpermissive cells. Some animal cells allow only the early genes, including the T antigen, to be expressed, promoting cell growth and potentially leading to oncogenic transformation of the cell.

The polyomavirus genome is used very efficiently. The noncoding region of the genome contains the initiation sites for the early and late mRNAs and the origin of DNA replication. The three late proteins are produced from mRNAs, which have the same initiation site and then are processed into three unique mRNAs.

The circular viral DNA is maintained and replicated bidirectionally, similar to the way a bacterial plasmid is maintained and replicated. DNA replication precedes late mRNA transcription and protein synthesis. The virus is assembled in the nucleus and is released by cell lysis.

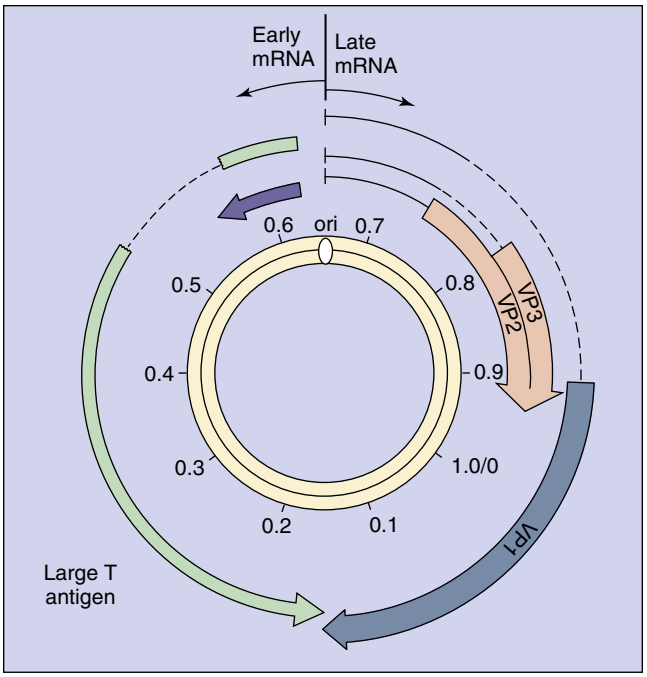


Fig. 41.9 Genome of the SV40 virus. The genome is a prototype of other polyomaviruses and contains early, late, and noncoding regions. The noncoding region contains the start sequence for the early and late genes and for DNA replication *(ori)*. The individual early and late mRNAs are processed from the larger nested transcripts. (Modified from Butel, J.S., Jarvis, D.L., 1986. The plasma-membrane-associated form of SV40 large tumor antigen: biochemical and biological properties. Biochim. Biophys. Acta 865, 171–195.)

BOX 41.4 Polyomavirus Proteins

Early

Large T: regulation of early and late messenger RNA transcription; DNA replication; cell growth promotion and transformation
Small t: viral DNA replication

Late

VP1: major capsid protein and viral attachment protein
VP2: minor capsid protein
VP3: minor capsid protein

PATHOGENESIS

Each polyomavirus is limited to specific hosts and cell types within that host. For example, JCV and BKV are human viruses that probably enter the respiratory tract or tonsils, after which they infect lymphocytes and then the kidney with a minimal cytopathologic effect. BKV establishes latent infection in the kidney, and JCV establishes infection in the kidneys, B cells, monocyte-lineage cells, and other cells. Replication is blocked in immunocompetent persons.

In T-cell–deficient patients, such as those with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), reactivation of the virus in the kidney leads to viral shedding in the urine and potentially severe urinary tract infections (BKV) or viremia and central nervous system infection (JCV) (Fig. 41.10). JCV crosses the blood-brain barrier by replicating in the endothelial cells of capillaries. An abortive infection

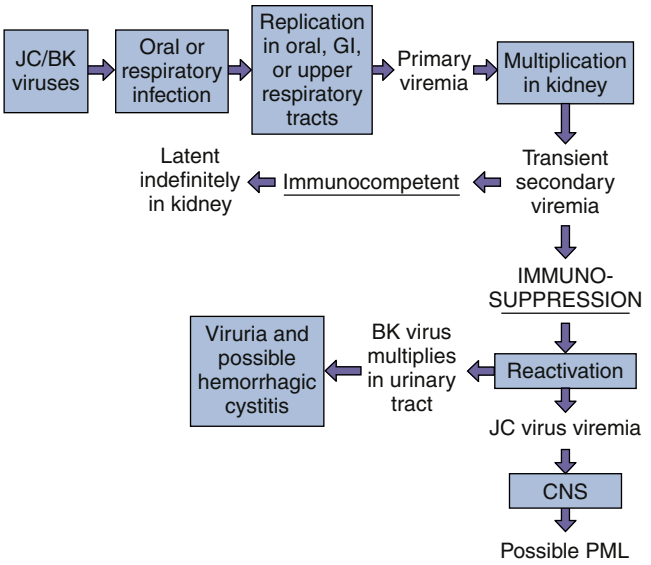


Fig. 41.10 Mechanisms of spread of polyomaviruses within the body. *CNS*, Central nervous system; *GI*, gastrointestinal; *PML*, progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy.

of astrocytes results in partial transformation, yielding enlarged cells with abnormal nuclei resembling glioblastomas. Productive lytic infections of oligodendrocytes cause demyelination. Although SV40, BKV, and JCV can cause tumors in hamsters, these viruses are not associated with any human tumors. Integration and a mutation of the T antigen that prevents replication of the MCV allow this virus to convert the cell into a tumor.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Polyomavirus infections are ubiquitous, and most people are infected with both JCV and BKV by the age of 15 years (see Box 41.3). The viruses are spread in urine, in feces, and potentially in aerosols. Latent infections can be reactivated in people whose immune systems are suppressed because of AIDS, organ transplantation, or pregnancy. Approximately 10% of people with AIDS develop PML, and the disease is fatal in approximately 90% of all cases. The incidence has decreased with the success of the highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART).

Early batches of live attenuated polio vaccine were contaminated with SV40 that was undetected in the primary monkey cell cultures used to prepare the vaccine. Although many people were vaccinated with the contaminated vaccines, no SV40-related tumors have been reported.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Primary infection is almost always asymptomatic (Box 41.5). BKV and JCV can be activated in immunocompromised patients, as indicated by the presence of virus in the urine of as many as 40% of these patients. The viruses are also reactivated during pregnancy, but no effects on the fetus have been noted. During pregnancy, cell-mediated immunity, including those activities that restrict the replication of polyomaviruses, are suppressed so that the fetus (a tissue graft) is not rejected.

BOX 41.5 Clinical Summaries

Wart: A 22-year-old patient develops a conical, flesh-colored, hard, scaly round area (papule) over the index finger. It has a rough surface and is nontender. Otherwise, the patient is healthy and has no other complaints. The wart is treated topically on a daily basis with salicylic acid to kill the cells harboring the virus and remove the wart.

Cervical papilloma: On cervical examination, a large, flat papule was observed, which turned white with application of 4% acetic acid. The Pap smear from this 25-year-old sexually active woman had koilocytotic cells.

Cervical carcinoma: A 32-year-old woman comes in for her routine Pap smear, which shows evidence of abnormal cells. A biopsy shows squamous cell carcinoma. PCR analysis of cellular DNA yields HPV-16 DNA.

PML: A 42-year-old AIDS patient has become forgetful and has difficulty speaking, seeing, and keeping his balance, which is suggestive of lesions in many sites in the brain. The condition progresses to paralysis and death. Autopsy shows foci of demyelination, with oligodendrocytes containing inclusion bodies only in the white matter.

A 37-year-old woman with multiple sclerosis was treated with natalizumab and interferon-β and developed PML.

HPV, Human papillomavirus; *Pap,* Papanicolaou; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *PML,* progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy.

The ureteral stenosis observed in renal transplant recipients appears to be associated with BKV, as is the hemorrhagic cystitis observed in bone marrow transplant recipients. **PML** caused by **JCV** is a subacute demyelinating disease that occurs in immunocompromised patients, including those with AIDS (Clinical Case 41.1). Immunotherapy that inhibits the α4-integrin adhesion protein (natalizumab) also increases risk for PML. Although rare, the incidence of PML has increased because of the increased numbers of people with AIDS and immunosuppressive therapy. As the name implies, patients may have multiple neurologic symptoms unattributable to a single anatomic lesion. Speech, vision, coordination, mentation, or a combination of these functions is impaired, followed by paralysis of the arms and legs and finally death. People who are diagnosed with PML live 1 to 4 months, and most die within 2 years.

The genome of a new polyomavirus, MCV (or MCPyV), was recently discovered integrated into the chromatin of Merkel cell carcinomas, which is a highly aggressive type of skin cancer. This is the first example of a polyomavirus associated with a human cancer.

Clinical Case 41.1 Progressive Multifocal Leukoencephalopathy (PML)

Liptai and associates (*Neuropediatrics* 38:32–35, 2007) described a case in which a 15½-year-old human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)–infected boy presented with fatigue and depression. Symptoms included dizziness, double vision, and loss of motor coordination, as indicated in his handwriting, computer usage, and unsteady gait. He had acquired HIV as an infant by injection with an unclean syringe needle in a Transylvanian hospital. Over the years, his CD4 T-cell count slowly decreased, and his HIV genome load increased, most likely because of poor compliance with his anti-HIV therapy and a refusal of highly active antiretroviral therapy. A 30-mm nonenhancing lesion of the right cerebellar hemisphere was seen by magnetic resonance imaging. PML was diagnosed, based on detection of JC virus sequences in cerebrospinal fluid by polymerase chain reaction. Within 10 days, the boy lost the ability to walk and developed facial and hypoglossal palsies, with further neurologic deterioration, including severe depression and loss of ability to communicate. He died 4 months after the onset of symptoms. Microscopic analysis of the cerebellum and brainstem indicated broad areas of demyelination and necrosis, astrocytosis, and oligodendrocytes with nuclear inclusion bodies. Although JC virus infection is ubiquitous and normally benign, it only causes PML in immunocompromised individuals. Previously rare, PML has become more prevalent because of increased numbers of immunocompromised individuals including acquired immunodeficiency syndrome patients who are not on or are not compliant with anti-HIV therapy or for whom anti-HIV therapy is ineffective.

PML, Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of PML is confirmed by the presence of PCR-amplified viral DNA in cerebrospinal fluid and magnetic resonance imaging or computed tomographic evidence of lesions. Histologic examination of brain tissue obtained by biopsy or at autopsy will show foci of demyelination surrounded by oligodendrocytes with inclusions adjacent to areas of demyelination. The term *leukoencephalopathy* refers to the presence of lesions in only the white matter. There is little if any inflammatory cell response. In situ immunofluorescence; immunoperoxidase; DNA probe analysis; and PCR analysis of cerebrospinal fluid, urine, or biopsy material for the particular genetic sequences can also be used to detect virus. Urine cytologic tests can reveal the presence of JCV or BKV infection by revealing the existence of enlarged cells with dense basophilic intranuclear inclusions resembling those induced by cytomegalovirus. It is difficult to isolate BKV and JCV in tissue cultures; therefore this procedure is not attempted.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Decreasing the immunosuppression responsible for allowing the polyomavirus to be reactivated is the best treatment for JC and BK viruses. Cidofovir may also be helpful. The ubiquitous nature of polyomaviruses and the lack of understanding of their modes of transmission make it unlikely that the primary infection can be prevented.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Arthur, R.R., Shah, K.V., Baust, S.J., et al., 1986. Association of BK viruria with hemorrhagic cystitis in recipients of bone marrow transplants. N. Engl. J. Med. 315, 230–234.

Berman, T.A., Schiller, J.T., 2017. Human papillomavirus in cervical cancer and oropharyngeal cancer: One cause, two diseases. Cancer 123, 2219–2229.

Chow, L.T., Broker, T.R., 2013. Human papillomavirus infections: warts or cancer? Cold. Spring. Harb. Perspect. Biol. 5 (7), a012997.
Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.
de Villiers, E.M., Fauquet, C., Broker, T.R., et al., 2004. Classification of papillomaviruses. Virology 324, 17–24.
Feng, H., Shuda, M., Chang, Y., et al., 2008. Clonal integration of a polyomavirus in human Merkel cell carcinoma. Science 319, 1096–1100.
Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Harper, D.M., DeMars, L.R., 2017. HPV vaccines—a review of the first decade. Gynecologic. Oncol. 146, 196–204.
Jiang, M., Abend, J.R., Johnson, S.F., Imperiale, M.J., 2009. The role of polyomaviruses in human disease. Virology 384, 266–273.
Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.
Major, E.O., 2010. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy in patients on immunomodulatory therapies. Annu. Rev. Med. 61, 35–47.
Major, E.O., Yousry, T.A., Clifford, D.B., 2018. Pathogenesis of progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy and risks associated with treatments for multiple sclerosis: a decade of lessons learned. Lancet. Neurol. 17, 467–480.
Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.
Raff, A.B., Woodham, A.W., Raff, L.M., et al., 2013. The evolving field of human papillomavirus receptor research: a review of binding and entry. J Virol 87 (11), 6062–6072.
Spence, A.R., Franco, E.L., Fetenczy, A., 2005. The role of human papillomaviruses in cancer. Am. J. Cancer 4, 49–64.
Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic Press, San Diego.
zür-Hausen, H., 2009. Papillomaviruses in the causation of human cancers—a brief historical account. Virology 384, 260–265.
zür-Hausen, H., 2011. Infections Causing Human Cancer. Wiley-Blackwell, Germany.

Websites

National Cancer Institute, Pap test results. www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/understanding-cervical-changes/test-results. Accessed 2 July 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Human papillomavirus (HPV) and STD. www.cdc.gov/std/HPV/. Accessed July 2, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Human papillomavirus (HPV). www.cdc.gov/hpv/. Accessed July 2, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Human papillomavirus overview. https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/hpv.html.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Human papillomavirus (HPV) and cancer. www.cdc.gov/cancer/hpv/index.htm. Accessed July 2, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1999 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Trends in Human Papillomavirus–Associated Cancers — United States, 1Section 5 Virology. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/67/wr/mm6733a2.htm?s_cid=mm6733a2_e. Accessed September 23, 2018.
Gearhart, P.A., Randall, T.C., Buckley, R.M., et al., Human papillomavirus. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/219110-overview. Accessed July 2, 2018.
Merck: Gardasil 9. www.gardasil9.com/. Accessed July 2, 2018.
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases: Human papillomavirus (HPV) and genital warts. http://www.rightdiagnosis.com/artic/human_papillomavirus_and_genital_warts_niaid_fact_sheet_niaid.htm. Accessed July 2, 2018
Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy: https://www.ninds.nih.gov/Disorders/All-Disorders/Progressive-Multifocal-Leukoencephalopathy-Information-Page. Accessed July 2, 2018.

Case Study and Questions

A 25-year-old carpenter notices the appearance of several hyperkeratotic papules (warts) on the palm side of his index finger. They do not change in size and cause him only minimal discomfort. After a year, they spontaneously disappear.

1. Will this virus infection spread to other body sites?

2. After its disappearance, is the infection likely to be completely resolved or to persist in the host?

3. What viral, cellular, and host conditions regulate the replication of this virus and other HPVs?

4. How would the papillomavirus type causing this infection be identified?

5. Is it likely that this type of HPV is associated with human cancer? If not, which types are associated with cancers, and which cancers are they?

42 Adenoviruses

A 19-year-old army recruit complained that he had a high fever, chills, cough, runny nose, and sore throat. Several other members of his unit complained of similar symptoms.

1. How is adenovirus transmitted?
2. Which adenovirus types are most likely to cause acute respiratory distress syndrome?
3. What other diseases can adenoviruses cause?
4. What type of immune response would protect against infection?
5. Why did the military develop an attenuated vaccine for adenovirus strains 4 and 7?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

ADENOVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Pharyngitis, conjunctivitis, atypical pneumonia, icosadeltahedral capsid

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Medium-sized icosadeltahedral capsid with fibers, linear DNA genome with terminal proteins
- E1A and E1B proteins inactivate E6 and E7 to promote growth
- Virus encodes polymerase
- Capsid virus resistant to inactivation
- Lytic virus
- Causes pharyngitis, conjunctivitis, atypical pneumonia, infantile gastroenteritis, acute respiratory disease
- Can be used as vector for making vaccines and gene therapy

Epidemiology

- Transmitted by aerosols, direct contact, fecal-oral, contaminated swimming pools

Diagnosis

- Immunological assays and PCR genome analysis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Adenovirus types 4 and 7 vaccine only for military

Adenoviruses were first isolated in 1953 in a human adenoid cell culture. Since then, approximately 100 serotypes have been recognized, at least 52 of which infect humans. All human serotypes are included in a single genus within the family Adenoviridae. There are seven subgroups for human adenoviruses (A through G) (Table 42.1). The viruses in each subgroup share many properties.

The human adenoviruses numbered 1 to 7 are the most common. Common disorders caused by the adenoviruses include **respiratory tract infection, pharyngoconjunctivitis (pinkeye), hemorrhagic cystitis,** and **gastroenteritis.** Immunocompromised individuals are at risk for more serious presentations. Several adenoviruses have oncogenic potential in animals but not humans, and for this reason they have been extensively studied by molecular biologists. These studies have elucidated many viral and eukaryotic cellular processes. For example, analysis of the gene for the adenovirus hexon protein led to the discovery of introns and the splicing of eukaryotic messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA). Adenovirus is also being used in genetic therapies to deliver deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) for gene replacement and modification therapy (e.g., cystic fibrosis) to express genes for other viruses (e.g., human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]) as a vaccine, and as oncolytic therapy.

Structure and Replication

Adenoviruses are double-stranded DNA viruses with a genome of approximately 36,000 base pairs, which is large enough to encode 30 to 40 genes. The adenovirus genome is a **linear double-stranded DNA** with a **terminal protein** (molecular mass, 55 kDa) covalently attached at each 5′ end. The virions have a unique structure. The **nonenveloped icosadeltahedral capsid** comprises 240 capsomeres that consist of hexons and pentons and has a diameter of 70 to 90 nm (Fig. 42.1 and Box 42.1). The 12 pentons, which are located at each of the vertices, have a penton base and a fiber. The **fiber** contains the **viral attachment proteins.** The penton base and fiber are toxic to cells. The pentons and fibers also carry type-specific antigens.

The core complex within the capsid includes viral DNA and at least two major proteins. There are at least 11 proteins in the adenovirus virion, 9 of which have an identified structural function (Table 42.2).

The virus replication cycle takes approximately 32 to 36 hours and produces approximately 10,000 virions. Attachment of the viral fiber proteins to a glycoprotein member of the immunoglobulin superfamily of proteins (≈100,000 fiber receptors are present on each cell) initiates infection for most adenoviruses. This same receptor is used by many coxsackievirus B viruses; thus it is given the name **coxsackie adenovirus receptor.** Some adenoviruses use the class I major histocompatibility complex (MHC I) molecule as a receptor. Internalization is initiated by the interaction of the penton base with an α_v integrin followed by receptor-mediated endocytosis in a clathrin-coated vesicle. The virus lyses the endosomal vesicle, and the capsid delivers the DNA genome to the nucleus. The penton and fiber proteins of the capsid are toxic to the cell and can inhibit cellular macromolecular synthesis.

Table 42.1 Illnesses Associated with Adenoviruses

Disease	Types	Patient Population
RESPIRATORY DISEASES		
Febrile, undifferentiated upper respiratory tract infection	1, 3, 5, 7, 14, 21, etc.	Infants, young children
Pharyngitis and pharyngoconjunctival fever	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 14	Children, adults
Acute respiratory disease	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 14, 21	Infants, young children, military recruits
Pertussis-like syndrome	1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 14, 21, 30	Infants, young children
Pneumonia		Infants, young children, military recruits, immunocompromised patients
OTHER DISEASES		
Acute hemorrhagic cystitis/nephritis	11, 21	Children, immunocompromised patients
Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis	8, 9, 11, 19, 35, 37	Any age
Gastroenteritis	31, 40, 41, 52	Infants, young children, immunocompromised patients
Hemorrhagic cystitis	11, 21, 34, 35	Infants, young children
Hepatitis	1, 2, 5, 7, 31	Immunocompromised patients
Meningoencephalitis	7	Children, immunocompromised patients
Myocarditis	7, 21	Children
Obesity/adipogenesis	31	Any age

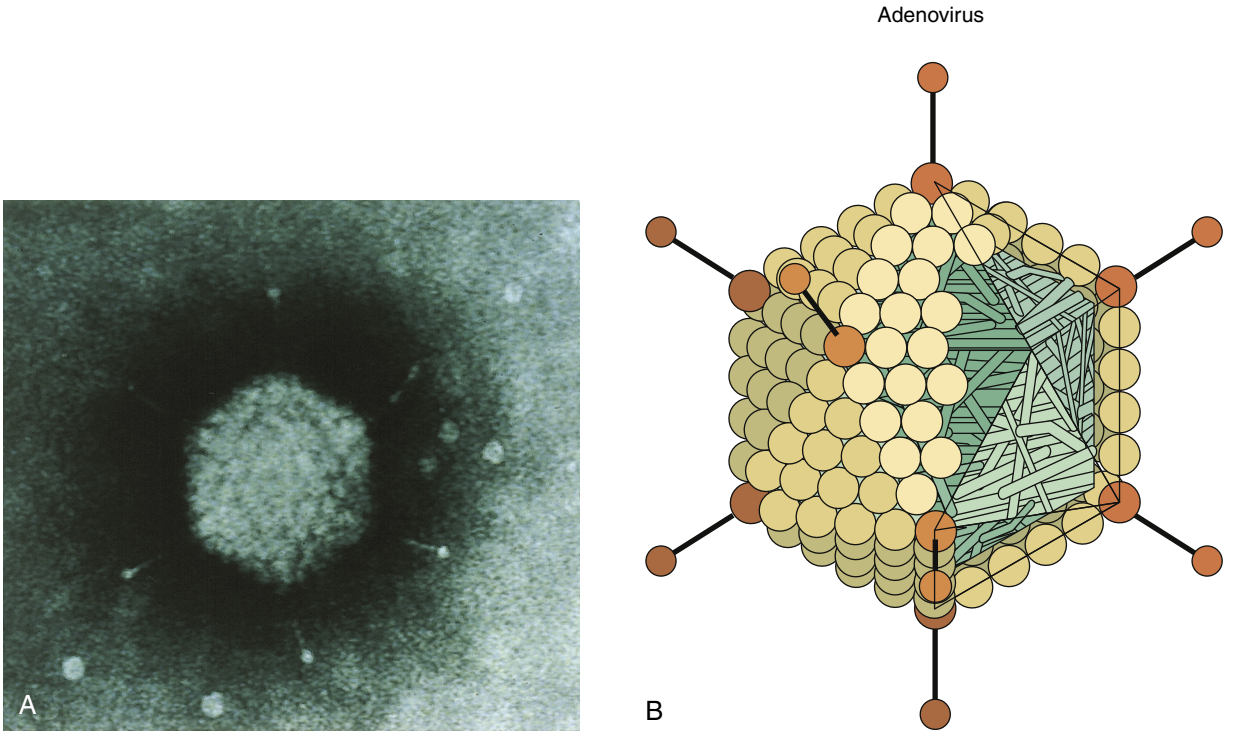


Fig. 42.1 (A) Electron micrograph of adenovirus virion with fibers. (B) Model of adenovirus virion with fibers. (A, From Valentine, R.C., Pereira, H.G., 1965. Antigens and structure of the adenovirus. J. Mol. Biol. 13, 13–20. B, From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.)

A map of the adenovirus genome shows the locations of the viral genes (Fig. 42.2). The genes are transcribed from both DNA strands and in both directions at different times during the replication cycle. Genes for related functions are clustered together. Most of the RNA transcribed from the adenovirus genome is processed into several individual mRNAs in the nucleus. Adenovirus encodes its own DNA polymerase and proteins that promote cell growth and suppress apoptosis and host immune and inflammatory responses.

Transcription of mRNA occurs in two phases. Early proteins promote cell growth and include a DNA polymerase that is involved in the replication of the genome. As for the papovaviruses, several adenovirus mRNAs are transcribed

BOX 42.1 Unique Features of Adenovirus

Naked icosadeltahedral capsid has **fibers** (viral attachment proteins) at vertices.
Linear double-stranded genome has 5′ terminal proteins.
Synthesis of viral DNA polymerase activates a switch from early to late genes.
Virus encodes its own **DNA polymerase** and other proteins to facilitate growth and immune escape.
Human adenoviruses are grouped A through G by DNA homologies and by serotype (>55 human types).
Serotype is mainly a result of differences in the penton base and fiber protein, which determine the nature of tissue tropism and disease.
Virus causes **lytic, persistent,** and **latent** infections in humans, and some strains can **immortalize certain animal cells.**

Table 42.2 Major Adenovirus Proteins

Gene	Number	Molecular Mass (kDa)	Functions of Proteins
E1A[a]	—	—	Activates viral gene transcription Binds cellular growth suppressor (p105RB) to promote cell growth and transformation Deregulates cell growth Inhibits activation of interferon response elements
E1B	—	—	Binds cellular growth suppressor (p53) to promote cell growth and transformation Blocks apoptosis
E2	—	—	Activates some promoters Terminal protein on DNA DNA polymerase
E3	—	—	Prevents TNF-α action; MHC I expression
E4	—	—	Limits viral cytopathologic effect
VA RNAs	—	—	Inhibits interferon response
Capsid	II	120	Contains family antigen and some serotyping antigens
	III	85	Penton base protein Toxic to tissue culture cells
	IV	62	Fiber Responsible for attachment; contains some serotyping antigens
	VI	24	Hexon-associated proteins
	VIII	13	Penton-associated proteins
	IX	12	"Capsid cement" nonessential
	IIIa	66	"Facilitates assembly"
Core	V	48	Core protein 1: DNA-binding protein
	VII	18	Core protein 2: DNA-binding protein

[a]Early genes encode several messenger RNAs and proteins by alternative splicing patterns.
E, Early; *MHC I,* major histocompatibility complex I; *RB,* retinoblastoma gene product; *TNF-α,* tumor necrosis factor-α; *VA,* virus-associated.

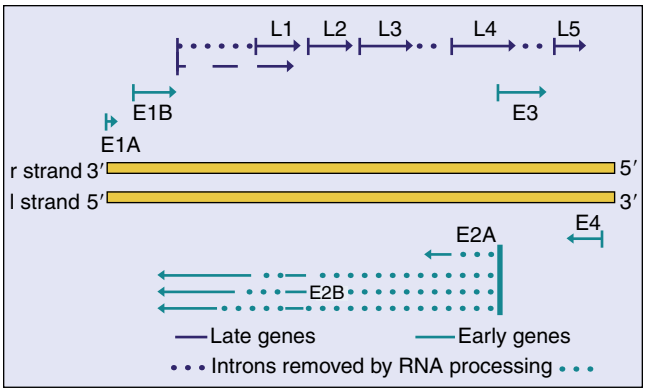


Fig. 42.2 Simplified genome map of adenovirus type 2. Genes are transcribed from both strands (*l* and *r*) in opposite directions. The early genes are transcribed from four promoter sequences, and each generates several messenger RNAs by processing the primary RNA transcripts. This produces the full repertoire of viral proteins. The splicing pattern for only the E2 transcript is shown as an example. All of the late genes are transcribed from one promoter sequence. *E,* Early protein; *L,* late protein. (Modified from Jawetz, E., Adelberg, E.A., Melnick, J.L., 1987. Review of Medical Microbiology, 17th ed. Appleton & Lange, Norwalk, CT.)

from the same promoter and share initial sequences but are produced through the splicing out of different introns. Transcription of the early *E1* gene, processing of the primary transcript (splicing out of introns to yield three mRNAs), and translation of the immediate early **E1A transactivator** protein are required for transcription of early proteins. The early proteins include more DNA-binding proteins, the DNA polymerase, and proteins to help the virus escape the immune response. The **E1A** protein together with the **E1B** protein can stimulate cell growth by binding to the cellular growth-suppressor proteins **p105RB** (*p105RB* retinoblastoma gene product) (E1A) and **p53** (E1B). In permissive cells, stimulation of cell division facilitates transcription and replication of the genome, with cell death resulting from virus replication. In nonpermissive cells, the virus establishes latency, and the genome remains in the nucleus. For rodent, not human, cells, the E1A and E1B proteins may promote cell growth but without cell death; therefore the virus oncogenically transforms the cell.

Viral DNA replication occurs in the nucleus and is mediated by the **viral-encoded DNA polymerase.** The polymerase uses the 55-kDa viral protein (terminal protein) with an attached cytosine monophosphate as a primer to replicate both strands of the DNA. The terminal protein remains attached to the DNA.

Late gene transcription starts after DNA replication. Most of the individual late mRNAs are generated from a large (83% of the genome) primary RNA transcript that is processed into at least 18 individual mRNAs.

Capsid proteins are produced in the cytoplasm and then transported to the nucleus for viral assembly. Empty procapsids first assemble, and then the viral DNA and core proteins enter the capsid through an opening at one of the vertices. The replication and assembly processes are inefficient and prone to error, producing as few as one infectious unit per 2300 particles. DNA, protein, and numerous defective particles accumulate in nuclear inclusion bodies. The virus remains in the cell and is released when the cell degenerates and lyses.

BOX 42.2 Disease Mechanisms of Adenoviruses

Virus is spread in **aerosols, in fecal matter,** and by **close contact.** Fingers spread virus to eyes.
Virus infects **mucoepithelial cells** in the respiratory tract, gastrointestinal tract, and conjunctiva or cornea, causing cell damage directly.
Disease is determined by the tissue tropism of the specific group or serotype of the virus strain.
Virus **persists** in lymphoid tissue (e.g., tonsils, adenoids, Peyer patches).
Antibody is important for prophylaxis and resolution, but cell-mediated immunity is also important.

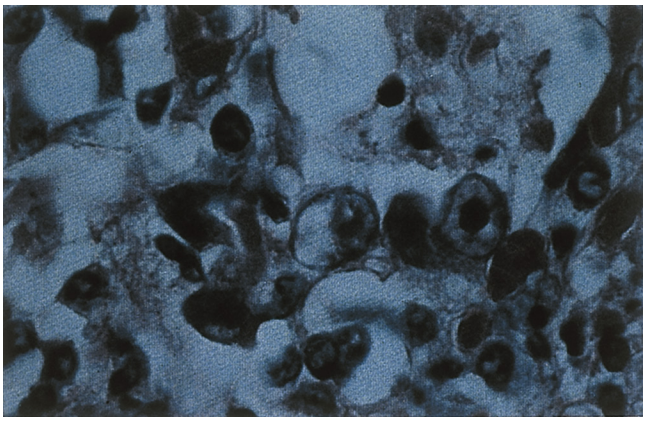


Fig. 42.3 Histologic appearance of adenovirus-infected cells. Inefficient assembly of virions yields dark basophilic nuclear inclusion bodies containing DNA, proteins, and capsids.

Pathogenesis and Immunity

Adenoviruses are capable of causing **lytic** (e.g., mucoepithelial cells), **latent** (e.g., macrophage, T cells, adenoid cells and other cells), and **transforming** (hamster, not human) infections. These viruses initially infect epithelial cells lining the oropharynx, as well as the respiratory and enteric organs (Box 42.2). The viral fiber proteins determine the target cell specificity. The toxic activity of the penton base protein can result in the inhibition of cellular mRNA transport and protein synthesis, cell rounding, and tissue damage.

The histologic hallmark of adenovirus infection is a dense, central intranuclear inclusion (that consists of viral DNA and protein) within an infected epithelial cell (Fig. 42.3). These inclusions may resemble those seen in cells infected with cytomegalovirus, but adenovirus does not cause cellular enlargement (cytomegaly). Mononuclear cell infiltrates and epithelial cell necrosis are seen at the site of infection.

Initial infection occurs to the pharynx, conjunctiva, or upper respiratory tract for most types and then spreads to lymph nodes and possibly the lower respiratory tract. The infection may resolve or the virus may become **latent and persist** in lymphoid and other tissue such as adenoids, tonsils, and Peyer patches, and can be reactivated in immunosuppressed patients. Viremia may occur after local replication of the virus, with subsequent spread to visceral organs. This dissemination is more likely to occur in immunocompromised patients than in immunocompetent ones.

BOX 42.3 Epidemiology of Adenoviruses

Disease/Viral Factors

Capsid virus is resistant to inactivation by gastrointestinal tract, drying, and detergents.
Disease symptoms may resemble those of other respiratory virus infections.
Virus may cause asymptomatic shedding.

Transmission

Direct contact, respiratory droplets and fecal matter on hands and fomites (e.g., towels, contaminated medical instruments), and inadequately chlorinated swimming pools and ponds

Who Is at Risk?

Children <14 years of age
People in crowded areas (e.g., day-care centers, military training camps, swimming clubs)

Geography/Season

Virus is found worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

Live vaccine for serotypes 4 and 7 is available for military use.

Although certain adenoviruses (groups A and B) are **oncogenic in certain rodents,** adenovirus transformation of human cells has not been observed.

Innate responses limit the initial spread of the virus and activate protective NK and T-cell responses. Cell-mediated immunity is important in limiting virus outgrowth, and immunosuppressed people suffer more serious and recurrent disease. Antibody is important for resolving lytic adenovirus infections and protects the person from reinfection with the same serotype but not other serotypes. Neutralizing antibody is directed at the fiber proteins. Adenoviruses have several mechanisms to evade host defenses and help them persist in the host. They encode small virus-associated RNAs (VA RNAs) that prevent activation of the interferon-induced protein kinase R–mediated inhibition of viral protein synthesis. The viral E3 and E1A proteins block apoptosis induced by cellular responses to the virus or by T-cell or cytokine (e.g., tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-α) actions. Some strains of adenoviruses can inhibit $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T-cell action by preventing proper expression of MHC I molecules and therefore antigen presentation.

Epidemiology

Adenovirus virions resist drying, detergents, gastrointestinal tract secretions (acid, protease, and bile), and even mild chlorine treatment (Box 42.3). These virions are spread in aerosols and by the fecal-oral route, by fingers, by fomites (including towels and medical instruments), and in ponds or poorly chlorinated swimming pools. Crowds and close proximity, as occurs in classrooms and military barracks, promotes spread of the virus. Adenoviruses may be shed intermittently and over long periods from the pharynx and especially in feces. Most infections are asymptomatic,

BOX 42.4 Clinical Summaries

Pharyngoconjunctival fever: A 7-year-old student develops sudden onset of red eyes, sore throat, and a fever of 38.9° C (102° F). Several children in the local elementary school have similar symptoms.

Gastroenteritis: An infant has diarrhea and is vomiting. Adenovirus serotype 41 is identified by polymerase chain reaction analysis of stool for epidemiologic reasons.

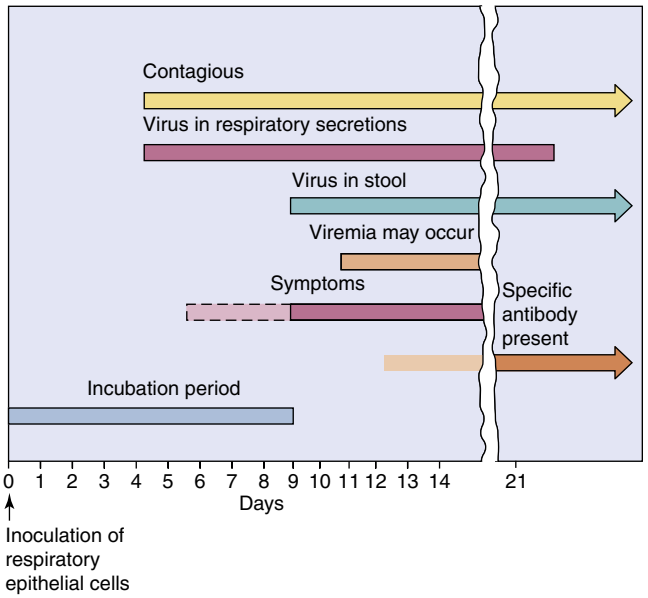


Fig. 42.4 Time course of adenovirus respiratory infection.

which is a feature that greatly facilitates their spread in the community.

Adenoviruses 1 through 7 are the most prevalent serotypes. From 5% to 10% of cases of pediatric respiratory tract disease are caused by adenovirus types 1, 2, 5, and 6, and the infected children shed virus for months after infection. Adenovirus causes 15% of the cases of gastroenteritis requiring hospitalization. Serotypes 4 and 7 seem especially able to spread among military recruits because of their close proximity and rigorous lifestyle. Immunosuppressed individuals are at highest risk to serious disease.

Clinical Syndromes

Adenoviruses primarily infect children and, less commonly, adults (Box 42.4). Disease from reactivated virus occurs in immunocompromised children and adults. Specific clinical syndromes are associated with specific adenovirus types (see Table 42.1). The time course of adenovirus respiratory infection is shown in Fig. 42.4.

ACUTE FEBRILE PHARYNGITIS AND PHARYNGOCONJUNCTIVAL FEVER

Adenovirus causes **pharyngitis,** which is often accompanied by **conjunctivitis (pharyngoconjunctival fever).** Pharyngitis alone occurs in young children, particularly those younger than 3 years, and may mimic streptococcal infection. Affected patients have mild, flulike symptoms (including nasal congestion, cough, coryza, malaise, fever, chills, myalgia, and headache) that may last 3 to 5 days. Pharyngoconjunctival fever occurs more often in outbreaks involving older children.

Clinical Case 42.1 **Pathogenic Adenovirus 14**

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (*MMWR* 56:1181–1184, 2007) reported that analysis of isolates from trainees during an outbreak of febrile respiratory infection at Lackland Air Force Base showed 63% resulting from adenovirus, and 90% of these were adenovirus 14. Of the 423 cases, 27 were hospitalized with pneumonia, 5 required admission to the intensive care unit, and 1 patient died. In an analogous case reported by CNN (www.cnn.com/2007/HEALTH/conditions/12/19/killer.cold/index.html), an 18-year-old high school athlete complained of flulike symptoms with vomiting, chills, and fever of 104° F that progressed to life-threatening pneumonia within days. The adenovirus causing these infections is a mutant of the adenovirus 14, which was first identified in 1955. The adenovirus 14 mutant has spread around the United States, putting adults at risk for severe disease. Adenovirus 14 infection usually causes a benign respiratory infection in adults, with newborns and the elderly at higher risk for severe outcomes. Although most virus mutations produce a weaker virus, occasionally a more virulent antibody-escape or antiviral drug–resistant virus may occur.

ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISEASE

Acute respiratory disease is a syndrome consisting of fever, runny nose, cough, pharyngitis, and possible conjunctivitis (Clinical Case 42.1). The high incidence of infection of military recruits stimulated the development and use of a vaccine for serotypes 4 and 7.

OTHER RESPIRATORY TRACT DISEASES

Adenoviruses cause coldlike symptoms, laryngitis, croup, and bronchiolitis. They can also cause a pertussis-like illness in children and adults that consists of a prolonged clinical course and true viral pneumonia.

CONJUNCTIVITIS AND EPIDEMIC KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS

Adenoviruses cause **follicular conjunctivitis** (pinkeye) in which the mucosa of the palpebral conjunctiva becomes pebbled or nodular, and both conjunctivae (palpebral and bulbar) become inflamed (Fig. 42.5). Such conjunctivitis may occur sporadically or in outbreaks that can be traced to a common source. **Swimming pool conjunctivitis** is a familiar example of a common-source adenovirus infection. **Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis** may be an occupational hazard for industrial workers. The most striking such epidemic occurred in people working in the naval shipyards of Pearl Harbor in Hawaii, in which it caused more than 10,000 cases during 1941 and 1942. Irritation of the eye

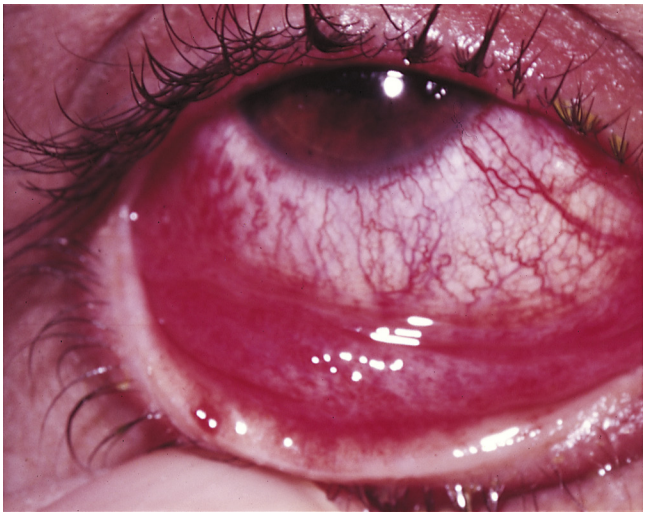


Fig. 42.5 Conjunctivitis caused by adenovirus.

by a foreign body, dust, debris, and so forth is a risk factor for acquisition of this infection.

GASTROENTERITIS AND DIARRHEA

Adenovirus is a major cause of acute viral gastroenteritis, especially in infants. The enteric adenoviruses (types 40 to 42) do not replicate in the same tissue culture cells as do other adenoviruses and rarely cause fever or respiratory tract symptoms.

OTHER MANIFESTATIONS

Adenovirus has also been associated with intussusception in young children, acute hemorrhagic cystitis with dysuria and hematuria in young boys, musculoskeletal disorders, and genital and skin infections. Adenovirus (type 36) is also associated with obesity.

SYSTEMIC INFECTION IN IMMUNOCOMPROMISED PATIENTS

Immunocompromised patients, especially those deficient in T-cell function, are at risk for serious adenovirus infections. Adenoviral disease in immunocompromised patients includes pneumonia, acute diarrhea, hepatitis, and life-threatening systemic disease affecting multiple organs. Infection can originate from infection or reactivation from latency.

Laboratory Diagnosis

For the results of virus isolation to be significant, the isolate should be obtained from a site or secretion relevant to the disease symptoms. The presence of adenovirus in the throat of a patient with pharyngitis is usually diagnostic if laboratory findings eliminate other common causes of pharyngitis, such as *Streptococcus pyogenes*.

Direct analysis of the clinical sample without virus isolation can be used for rapid detection and identification of adenoviruses. Immunoassays (e.g., fluorescent antibody and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) and genome assays (e.g., different variations of polymerase chain reaction [PCR] and DNA probe analysis) can be used to detect, type, and group the virus in clinical samples and tissue cultures. These approaches must be used for enteric adenovirus serotypes 40 to 42, which do not grow readily in available cell cultures. Serologic testing is rarely used except for epidemiologic purposes.

The isolation of most adenovirus types is best accomplished in cell cultures derived from epithelial cells (e.g., primary human embryonic kidney cells, continuous [transformed] lines, such as HeLa and human epidermal carcinoma cells). Within 2 to 20 days, the virus causes a lytic infection with characteristic inclusion bodies and cell death. Recovery of virus from cell culture requires an average of 6 days. The characteristic intranuclear inclusions can be seen in infected tissue during histologic examination. However, such inclusions are rare and must be distinguished from those produced by cytomegalovirus.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Careful handwashing and chlorination of swimming pools can reduce transmission of adenovirus. There is no approved treatment for routine adenovirus infections. Cidofovir and also ribavirin can be used to treat adenovirus-infected immunosuppressed individuals. Live oral vaccines have been used to prevent infections with adenovirus types 4 and 7 in military recruits but are not used in civilian populations.

Therapeutic Adenoviruses

Adenoviruses have been used and are being considered for gene delivery for correction of human diseases, including immune deficiencies (e.g., adenosine deaminase deficiency), cystic fibrosis, and lysosomal storage diseases. The virus is inactivated by deletion or mutation of the *E1* and other viral genes (e.g., *E2, E4*). The appropriate gene is inserted into the viral genome, replacing this DNA, and it is controlled by an appropriate promoter. The resultant virus vector must be grown in a cell that expresses the missing viral functions (E1, E4) to complement the deficiency and allow production of virus. Types 4 and 7 and replication defective mutants of types 5, 26, and 35 are being developed to carry genes of HIV, Ebola, and other viruses as hybrid attenuated vaccines for these deadly viruses. Oncolytic therapy can be provided by adenoviruses lacking a functional *E1B* gene, which selectively grows and kills tumor cells that lack a functional p53 protein. Despite the genetically engineered attenuation, these viruses still may cause serious disease in immunocompromised individuals.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Arnold, A., MacMahon, E., 2017. Adenovirus infections, Medicine 45: 777–780.

Benihoud, K., Yeh, P., Perricaudet, M., 1999. Adenovirus vectors for gene delivery. Curr. Opin. Biotechnol. 10, 440–447.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Doerfler, W., Bohm, P., 2003, Adenoviruses: Model and Vectors in Virus-Host Interactions, Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (vol 272-273), Springer-Verlag, New York.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Ghebremedhin, B., 2014. Human adenovirus: viral pathogen with increasing importance. Europ. J. Microbiol. Immunol. 4 (1), 26–33. http://doi.org/10.1556/EuJMI.4.2014.1.2.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Kolavic-Gray, S.A., Binn, L.N., Sanchez, J.L., et al., 2002. Large epidemic of adenovirus type 4 infection among military trainees: epidemiological, clinical, and laboratory studies. Clin. Infect. Dis. 35, 808–818.

Lasaro, M.O., Ertl, H.C.J., 2009. New Insights on adenovirus as vaccine vectors. Molecul. Ther. 17, 1333–1339.

Lee, C.S., Bishop, E.S., Zhang, R., Yu, X., Farina, E.M., Yan, S., He, T.C., 2017. Adenovirus-mediated gene delivery: potential applications for gene and cell-based therapies in the new era of personalized medicine. Genes. Dis. 4 (2), 43–63. http://doi.org/10.1016/j.gendis.2017.04.001.

Lenaerts, L., De Clercq, E., Naesens, L., 2008. Clinical features and treatment of adenovirus infections. Rev. Med. Virol. 18, 357–374.

Lion, T., 2014. Adenovirus infections in immunocompetent and immunocompromised patients. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 27, 44–462.

Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic Press, San Diego.

Websites

Gompf, S.G., Kelkar, D., Oehler, R., 2018. Adenoviruses. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/211738-overview. Accessed July 2, 2018.

Case Study and Questions

A 7-year-old boy attending summer camp complains of sore throat, headache, cough, red eyes, and tiredness and is sent to the infirmary. His temperature is 40° C. Within hours, other campers and counselors visit the infirmary with similar symptoms. Symptoms last for 5 to 7 days. All the patients have gone swimming in the camp pond. More than 50% of the people in the camp complain of symptoms similar to those in the initial case. The Public Health Department identifies the agent as adenovirus serotype 3.

1. Toward which adenovirus syndrome do the symptoms point?

2. An outbreak as large as this indicates a common source of infection. What was the most likely source or sources? What were the most likely routes by which the virus was spread?

3. What physical properties of the virus facilitate its transmission?

4. What precautions should the camp owners take to prevent other outbreaks?

5. What sample or samples would have been used by the Public Health Department to identify the infectious agent, and what tests would be required to diagnose the infection?

43 Human Herpesviruses

(a) A vesicular lesion erupts at the corner of a 27-year-old man's mouth 3 days after returning from a skiing trip.
(b) A 26-year-old pediatric medical resident develops serious pneumonia, and then vesicular lesions erupt in crops on his head, trunk, and elsewhere.
(c) Several high school cheerleaders developed a sore throat, fever, swollen glands, and were very tired. They shared a water bottle at a football game three weeks earlier.
(d) A 57-year-old heart transplant recipient had an outbreak of herpes simplex virus (HSV) lesions, cytomegalovirus (CMV) pneumonitis, and subsequently an Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)–related lymphoma. The lymphoma resolved after immunosuppressive therapy was decreased.

1. Which viruses cause these diseases?
2. What features are similar/different for these viruses?
3. How were each of these infections obtained?
4. What are the risk factors for serious herpes disease?
5. Which of the infections can be prevented by vaccine or treated with antiviral drugs?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

HERPESVIRUSES

Trigger Words

- HSV-1 and HSV-2: neurotropic, Cowdry type A inclusion bodies, syncytia, vesicle, Tzanck smear
- VZV: neurotropic, (V) all stages of lesions, (Z) lesions along single dermatome
- EBV: lymphotropic: B cell, heterophile-positive mononucleosis, Burkitt lymphoma
- CMV: large cell and owl's eye inclusion body, opportunistic, mononucleosis, congenital disease
- and HHV7: lymphotropic, roseola
- HHV-8: Kaposi sarcoma, AIDS-related disease
- B virus: monkey, fatal encephalopathy

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Large, enveloped, icosadeltahedral capsid, DNA genome
- Encodes polymerase and other proteins (HSV and VZV: thymidine kinase)
- Cell-mediated immune response essential for control
- Lytic, latent, recurrent infections; EBV and HHV-8 also associated with cancers
- HSV: oral/genital, encephalitis, keratoconjunctivitis, neonatal HSV; recurs from neurons
- VZV: pneumonia in adults, varicella, zoster; recurs from neurons
- EBV: heterophile-positive mononucleosis, B-cell lymphomas; recurs from memory B cell
- CMV: opportunistic disease, congenital CMV, retinitis; recurs from monocyte and stem cell
- HHV-6: roseola
- HHV-8: Kaposi sarcoma

Epidemiology

- Ubiquitous viruses
- Transmitted by direct contact, bodily fluids
- VZV transmitted by aerosol and direct contact

Diagnosis

- Culture, immunologic tests (EBV serology), PCR and genome analysis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Vaccines for varicella and zoster
- Antiviral drugs for HSV, VZV, and CMV

CMV, Cytomegalovirus; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *HHV,* human herpesvirus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *VZV,* varicella-zoster virus.

The herpesviruses are an important group of large deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)–enveloped viruses with the following features in common: virion morphology, basic mode of replication, and capacity to establish latent and recurrent infections. Cell-mediated immunity is important for causing symptoms and controlling infection with these viruses. Herpesviruses encode proteins and enzymes that facilitate replication and interaction of the virus with the host. EBV and human herpesvirus 8 (HHV-8) are associated with human cancers (Box 43.1).

HHVs are grouped into three subfamilies on the basis of differences in viral characteristics (genome structure, tissue tropism, cytopathologic effect, and site of latent infection), as well as the pathogenesis of the disease and disease manifestation (Table 43.1). HHVs are HSV types 1 and 2 (HSV-1 and HSV-2), VZV, EBV, CMV, HHV-6 and HHV-7, and HHV-8.

Herpesvirus infections are common, and the viruses, except HHV-8, are **ubiquitous.** Although these viruses usually cause benign disease, especially in children, they can also cause significant morbidity and mortality, especially in immunosuppressed people. Fortunately, some herpesviruses encode targets for antiviral agents, and there are vaccines for VZV.

Structure of Herpesviruses

The herpesviruses are **large, enveloped** viruses that contain **double-stranded DNA.** The virion is approximately 150 nm in diameter and has the characteristic morphology shown in Fig. 43.1. The DNA core is surrounded by an **icosadeltahedral capsid** containing 162 capsomeres. This capsid is enclosed by a glycoprotein-containing envelope. Herpesviruses encode several glycoproteins for viral attachment, fusion, and escaping immune control. Attached to the capsid and in the space between the envelope and the capsid (the **tegument**) are viral proteins and enzymes that help initiate replication. As enveloped viruses, the herpesviruses are sensitive to acid, solvents, detergents, and drying.

Herpesviral genomes are linear, double-stranded DNA, but they differ in size and gene orientation (Fig. 43.2). Direct or inverted repeat sequences bracket unique regions of the genome (unique long [U_L], unique short [U_S]), allowing circularization and recombination within the genome. Recombination among inverted repeats of HSV, CMV, and VZV allows large portions of the genome to flip the orientation of their U_L and U_S gene segments with respect to each other to form isomeric genomes.

BOX 43.1 Unique Features of Herpesviruses

Have large, enveloped, icosadeltahedral capsids containing double-stranded DNA genomes.
Encode many proteins that manipulate the host cell and immune response.
Encode enzymes (DNA polymerase) that promote viral DNA replication and are good targets for antiviral drugs.
DNA replication and capsid assembly occurs in the nucleus.
Virus is released by exocytosis, by cell lysis, and through cell-to-cell bridges.
Can cause lytic, persistent, latent, and (for Epstein-Barr virus) immortalizing infections.
Ubiquitous.
Cell-mediated immunity is required for control.

Herpesvirus Replication

Herpesvirus replication is initiated by the interaction of viral glycoproteins with cell-surface receptors (see Fig. 36.11). The tropism of some herpesviruses (e.g., EBV) is highly restricted because of the species and tissue-specific expression of their receptors. Viral glycoproteins facilitate the fusion of its envelope with the plasma membrane, releasing the nucleocapsid into the cytoplasm. Enzymes and transcription factors are carried into the cell in the tegument of the virion. The nucleocapsid docks with the nuclear membrane and delivers the genome into the nucleus, in which the genome is transcribed and replicated.

Transcription of the viral genome and viral protein synthesis proceeds in a coordinated and regulated manner in three phases:

1. **Immediate early proteins (α),** consisting of proteins important for the regulation of gene transcription and takeover of the cell
2. **Early proteins (β),** consisting of more transcription factors and enzymes, including the DNA polymerase
3. **Late proteins (γ),** consisting mainly of structural proteins, which are generated after viral genome replication has begun

TABLE 43.1 Properties Distinguishing the Herpesviruses

Subfamily	Virus	Primary Target Cell	Site of Latency	Means of Spread
ALPHAHERPESVIRINAE				
HHV-1	Herpes simplex type 1	Mucoepithelial cells	Neuron	Close contact (STD)
HHV-2	Herpes simplex type 2	Mucoepithelial cells	Neuron	Close contact (STD)
HHV-3	Varicella-zoster virus	Mucoepithelial and T cells	Neuron	Respiratory and close contact
GAMMAHERPESVIRINAE				
HHV-4	Epstein-Barr virus	B cells and epithelial cells	Memory B cell	Saliva (kissing disease)
HHV-8	Kaposi sarcoma–related virus	Lymphocytes and ?	B cell	Close contact (sexual), saliva
BETAHERPESVIRINAE				
HHV-5	Cytomegalovirus	Macrophages, lymphocytes, epithelial cells, and ?	HPC, myeloid stem cell, monocyte	Close contact (STD), transfusions, tissue transplant, and congenital
HHV-6	HHV-6	T lymphocytes, epithelial cells, neuronal cells	HPC, T cells	Saliva
HHV-7	HHV-7	Like HHV-6	HPC and T cell	Saliva

HHV, Human herpesvirus; *HPC,* hematopoietic progenitor cells *STD,* sexually transmitted disease; *?,* indicates that other cells may also be the primary target or site of latency.

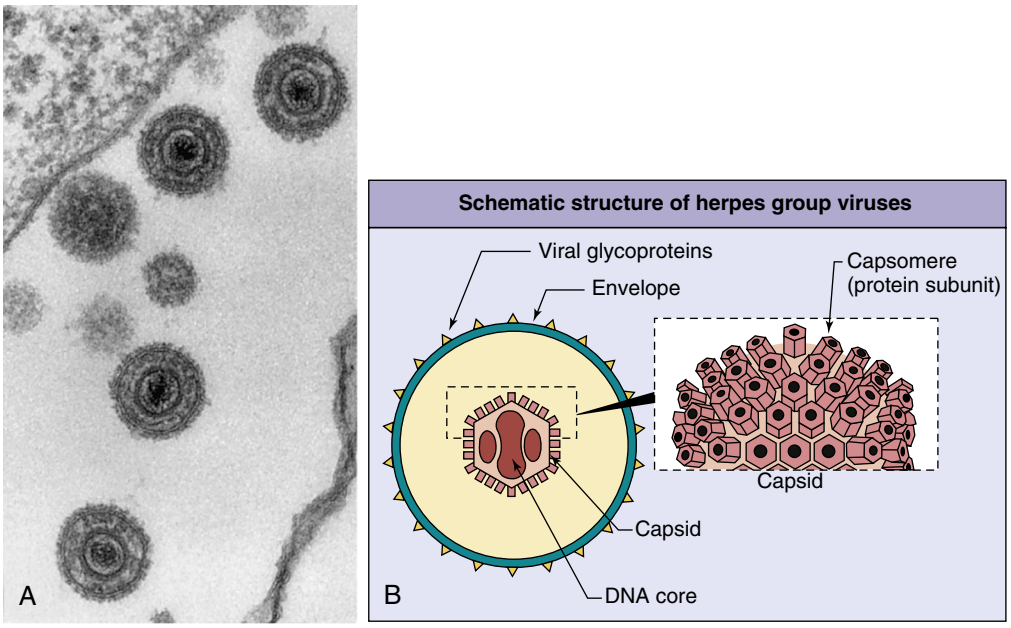


Fig. 43.1 (A) Electron micrograph and (B) general structure of the herpesviruses. The DNA genome of the herpesvirus in the core is surrounded by an icosadeltahedral capsid and an envelope. Glycoproteins are inserted into the envelope. (A, From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.)

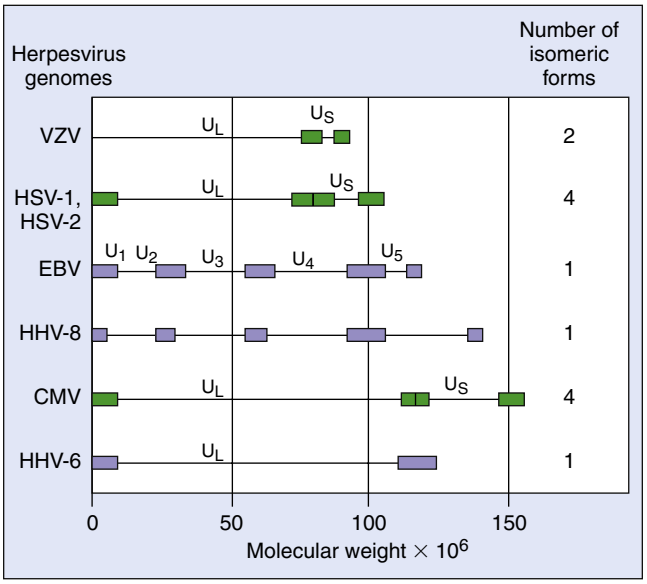


Fig. 43.2 Herpesvirus genomes. The genomes of herpesviruses are doubled-stranded DNA. The length and complexity of the genome differ for each virus. Inverted repeats in herpes simplex virus *(HSV),* varicella-zoster virus *(VZV),* and cytomegalovirus *(CMV)* allow the genome to recombine with itself to form isomers. Large genetic repeat sequences are boxed. The genomes of HSV and CMV have two sections, the unique long *(U_L)* and the unique short *(U_S),* each of which is bracketed by two sets of inverted repeats of DNA. The inverted repeats facilitate the replication of the genome and also allow the U_L and U_S regions to invert independently of each other to yield four different genomic configurations, or isomers. VZV has only one set of inverted repeats and can form two isomers. Epstein-Barr virus *(EBV)* exists in only one configuration, with several unique regions surrounded by direct repeats. *Blue bars* indicate direct repeat DNA sequences; *green bars* indicate inverted repeated DNA sequences. *HHV-6,* Human herpesvirus 6; *HHV-8,* human herpesvirus 8.

The viral genome is transcribed by the cellular DNA-dependent ribonucleic acid (RNA) polymerase and is regulated by viral-encoded and cellular nuclear factors. The interplay of these factors determines whether a lytic, persistent, or latent infection occurs. Cells that promote latent infection transcribe a special set of viral genes without genome replication. *Progression to early and late gene expression results in virus production and usually cell death.*

The **viral-encoded DNA polymerase,** which is a target of antiviral drugs, replicates the viral genome. **Viral-encoded scavenging enzymes** provide deoxyribonucleotide substrates for the polymerase. These and other viral enzymes facilitate replication of the virus in nongrowing cells that lack sufficient deoxyribonucleotides and enzymes for viral DNA synthesis (e.g., neurons). Other proteins manipulate cellular machinery to optimize replication, inhibit immune responses, and inhibit apoptosis or establish latency.

Empty procapsids assemble in the nucleus, are filled with DNA, bud into and out of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), acquire tegument-associated proteins and bud into the Golgi membrane to acquire their envelope, and exit the cell by exocytosis or by lysis of the cell. Transcription, protein synthesis, glycoprotein processing, and exocytotic release from the cell are performed by cellular machinery. During replication, herpesviruses disrupt cellular processes, degrade cellular DNA, and alter the cytoskeleton of the cells. The replication of HSV is discussed in more detail as the prototype of the herpesviruses.

Herpes Simplex Virus

The name *herpes* is derived from a Greek word meaning "to creep." "Cold sores" were described in antiquity, and their viral etiology was established in 1919.

The two types of HSVs, HSV-1 and HSV-2, share many characteristics, including DNA homology, antigenic determinants, tissue tropism, and disease signs. However, they can still be distinguished by subtle but significant differences in these properties.

HERPES SIMPLEX VIRUS PROTEINS

The HSV genome is large enough to encode approximately 80 proteins. Only half the proteins are required for viral replication; the others facilitate HSV's interaction with different host cells and the immune response. The HSV genome encodes enzymes that include a DNA-dependent DNA polymerase and scavenging enzymes such as deoxyribonuclease, thymidine kinase, ribonucleotide reductase, and protease. Ribonucleotide reductase converts ribonucleotides to deoxyribonucleotides, and thymidine kinase phosphorylates the deoxyribonucleosides to provide substrates for replication of the viral genome. The substrate specificities of these enzymes and the DNA polymerase are less selective than those of their cellular analogs and thus represent potentially good targets for antiviral chemotherapy.

HSV encodes at least 10 glycoproteins that serve as viral attachment proteins (gB, gC, gD, gE/gI), fusion proteins (gB, gH/gL), structural proteins, immune escape proteins (gC, gE, gI), and provide other functions.

REPLICATION

HSV can infect most types of human cells, and even cells of other species. The virus generally causes lytic infections of fibroblasts and epithelial cells and latent infections of neurons (see Fig. 36.11, for a diagram).

HSV-1 binds quickly and efficiently to cells through an initial interaction with heparan sulfate, which is a proteoglycan found on the outside of many cell types, and then through a tighter interaction with receptor proteins at the cell surface. Penetration into the cell requires interaction with nectin-1 (herpesvirus entry mediator C), which is an intercellular adhesion molecule that is a member of the immunoglobulin protein family and similar to the poliovirus receptor. Nectin-1 is found on most cells and neurons. Another receptor is HveA, which is a member of the tumor necrosis factor receptor family expressed on activated T cells, neurons, and other cells. HSV can penetrate the host cell by fusion of its envelope with the cell-surface membrane. On fusion, the virion releases its capsid into the cytoplasm, along with a protein that promotes the initiation of viral gene transcription, a viral-encoded protein kinase, and cytotoxic proteins. The capsid docks with a nuclear pore and delivers the genome into the nucleus.

The **immediate early gene products** include DNA-binding proteins that stimulate DNA synthesis and promote transcription of the early viral genes. During a latent infection of neurons, the only region of the genome to be transcribed generates the **latency-associated transcripts (LATs).** These RNAs are not translated into protein but encode micro-RNAs that inhibit expression of important immediate early and other genes.

The **early proteins** include the DNA-dependent DNA polymerase and a thymidine kinase. As catalytic proteins, relatively few copies of these enzymes are required to promote replication. Other early proteins inhibit production and initiate degradation of cellular messenger RNA (mRNA) and DNA. Expression of the early and late genes generally leads to cell death.

The genome is replicated as soon as the polymerase is synthesized. Circular end-to-end concatemeric forms of the genome are made initially. Later in the infection, the DNA is replicated by a rolling-circle mechanism to produce a linear string of genomes that, in theory, resemble a roll of toilet paper. The concatemers are cleaved into individual genomes as the DNA is sucked into a procapsid.

Genome replication triggers transcription of the late genes from which structural and other proteins are encoded. Many copies of the structural proteins are required. The capsid proteins are then transported to the nucleus, in which they are assembled into empty procapsids and filled with DNA. DNA-containing capsids associate with viral protein-disrupted nuclear membranes and bud into and then out of the ER into the cytoplasm. The viral glycoproteins are synthesized and processed like cellular glycoproteins. Tegument proteins associate with the viral capsid in the cytoplasm, and then the capsid buds into a portion of the trans-Golgi network to acquire their glycoprotein-containing envelope. The virus is released by exocytosis or cell lysis. Virus can also spread between cells through intracellular bridges, which allows the virus to escape antibody detection. Virus-induced syncytia formation also spreads the infection.

HSV infection of neurons may result in virus replication or establishment of latency, depending on which viral genes the neuron is capable of transcribing. Transcription of the LAT and no other viral gene will result in latency. As for other alphaherpesviruses, HSV encodes a thymidine kinase (scavenging enzyme) to facilitate replication in nondividing cells such as neurons. HSV also encodes ICP34.5, which is a protein unique to HSV, that has multiple functions to facilitate virus growth in neurons and neuroinvasive disease. ICP34.5 removes a block to protein synthesis activated in response to virus infection or as part of the antiviral response of type 1 interferons, inhibits autophagy, and promotes release of capsids from the nucleus and virus at cell–cell junctions.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The mechanisms involved in the pathogenesis of HSV-1 and HSV-2 are very similar (Box 43.2). Both viruses initially infect, replicate in mucoepithelial cells, cause disease at the site of infection, and then establish latent infection of the innervating neurons. HSV-1 and HSV-2 differ in growth characteristics and antigenicity, and HSV-1 has a greater potential to cause encephalitis, whereas HSV-2 has a greater potential to cause viremia with associated systemic flulike symptoms.

HSV can cause **lytic** infections of most cells and **latent** infection of neurons. Cytolysis generally results from the virus-induced inhibition of cellular macromolecular synthesis, the degradation of host cell DNA, membrane permeation, cytoskeletal disruption, and senescence of the cell. Visible changes in the nuclear structure and margination of the chromatin occur, and **Cowdry type A acidophilic intranuclear inclusion bodies** are produced.

BOX 43.2 Disease Mechanisms for Herpes Simplex Viruses

Disease is initiated by direct contact and depends on infected tissue (e.g., oral, genital, brain).
Virus causes direct cytopathologic effects.
Virus avoids antibody by cell-to-cell spread and syncytia.
Virus establishes latency in neurons (hides from immune response).
Virus is reactivated from latency by stress, ultraviolet B light, or immune suppression.
Cell-mediated immunity is required for resolution, with a limited role for antibody.
Cell-mediated immunopathologic effects contribute to symptoms.

BOX 43.3 Triggers of Herpes Simplex Virus Recurrences

Ultraviolet B radiation (skiing, tanning)
Fever (hence the name "fever blister")
Emotional stress (e.g., final examinations, big date)
Physical stress (irritation)
Menstruation
Foods: spicy, acidic, allergies
Immunosuppression:
  Transient (stress related)
  Chemotherapy, radiotherapy
  Human immunodeficiency virus

Many strains of HSV also initiate **syncytia** formation. In tissue culture, HSV rapidly kills cells, causing them to appear rounded.

HSV initiates infection through mucosal membranes or breaks in the skin. The virus replicates in the cells at the base of the lesion and infects the innervating neuron, traveling by retrograde transport to the ganglion (the trigeminal ganglia for oral HSV and the sacral ganglia for genital HSV) (see Fig. 43.5) to establish latent infection. CD8 T cells and interferon (IFN)-γ are important to maintain latency of HSV and other herpesviruses. On reactivation, the virus then returns to the initial site of infection, and the infection may be inapparent or may produce **vesicular lesions.** The vesicle fluid contains infectious virions. Tissue damage is caused by a combination of viral pathology and immunopathology. The lesion generally heals without producing a scar.

Innate protections, including interferon and natural killer (NK) cells, may be sufficient to limit the initial progression of the infection. *T-helper 1 (TH1)–associated and CD8 cytotoxic killer T-cell responses are required to kill infected cells and resolve acute disease*. The immunopathologic effects of the cell-mediated and inflammatory responses are also a major cause of the disease signs. Antibody directed against the glycoproteins of the virus neutralizes extracellular virus, limiting its spread, but it is not sufficient to resolve the infection. In the absence of functional cell-mediated immunity, HSV infection is likely to recur and be more severe, and it may disseminate to the vital organs and the brain.

HSV has several ways to escape host protective responses. The virus blocks the interferon-induced inhibition of viral protein synthesis and encodes a protein to plug the transporter associated with processing (TAP) channel, preventing delivery of peptides into the ER, which blocks their association with class I major histocompatibility complex (MHC I) molecules and prevents CD8 T-cell recognition of infected cells. The virus can escape antibody neutralization and clearance by direct cell-to-cell spread and syncytia formation and by going into hiding during latent infection of the neuron. In addition, the virion and virus-infected cells express glycoproteins, which are antibody (Fc) (gE/gI) and complement receptors (gC) that weaken these humoral defenses.

Latent infection occurs in neurons and results in no detectable damage. A **recurrence** can be activated by various stimuli (e.g., stress, trauma, fever, sunlight [ultraviolet B]) (Box 43.3). These events trigger virus replication in an individual nerve cell within the bundle and allow the virus to travel back down the nerve to cause lesions to develop at the same dermatome and location each time. The stress triggers reactivation by promoting replication of the virus in the nerve, by transiently depressing cell-mediated immunity, or by inducing both processes. The virus can be reactivated despite the presence of antibody. However, recurrent infections are generally less severe, more localized, and of shorter duration than the primary episodes because of the nature of the spread and the existence of memory immune responses.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

HSV infection is common with more than 700,000 new HSV-1 and HSV-2 infections in the United States per year. Because HSV can establish latency with the potential for asymptomatic recurrence, the infected person is a lifelong source of contagion (Box 43.4). HSV is transmitted in secretions and by close contact. As an enveloped virus, HSV is very labile and is readily inactivated by drying, detergents, and the conditions of the gastrointestinal tract. Although HSV can infect animal cells, HSV infection is exclusively a human disease.

HSV is transmitted in vesicle fluid, saliva, and vaginal secretions (the **"mixing and matching of mucous membranes"**). The site of infection, and hence the disease, is determined primarily by which mucous membranes are mixed. *Both types of HSV can cause oral and genital lesions.*

HSV-1 is readily spread by oral contact (kissing) or through the sharing of drinking glasses, toothbrushes, or other saliva-contaminated items. HSV-1 can infect the fingers or body through a cut or abraded skin. HSV-1 is also a major cause of genital and pharyngeal herpes. Autoinoculation may also cause infection of the eyes or fingers.

HSV-2 is spread mainly by sexual contact or autoinoculation or from an infected mother to her infant at birth. Depending on a person's sexual practices and hygiene, HSV-2 may infect the genitalia, anorectal tissues, or oropharynx. HSV-1 and HSV-2 may cause symptomatic or asymptomatic primary genital infection or recurrences.

Neonatal infection usually results from the excretion of HSV-2 from the cervix during vaginal delivery (Clinical Case 43.1) but can occur from an ascending in utero infection during a primary infection of the mother or infection soon after birth. Neonatal infection results in disseminated and neurologic disease with severe consequences.

BOX 43.4 Epidemiology of Herpes Simplex Virus

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus causes lifelong infection.
Recurrent disease is a source of contagion.
Virus may cause asymptomatic shedding.

Transmission

Virus is transmitted in saliva, in vaginal secretions, and by contact with lesion fluid (mixing and matching of mucous membranes).
Virus is transmitted orally and sexually and by placement into eyes and breaks in skin.
HSV-1 is generally transmitted orally; HSV-2 is generally transmitted sexually, but not exclusively.

Who Is at Risk?

Children and sexually active people are at risk for primary disease of HSV-1 and HSV-2, respectively.
Physicians, nurses, dentists, and others in contact with oral and genital secretions are at risk for infections of fingers (herpetic whitlow).
Immunocompromised people and neonates are at risk for disseminated life-threatening disease.

Geography/Season

Virus is found worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

Antiviral drugs are available for treatment and prophylaxis.
No vaccine is available.
Health care workers should wear gloves to prevent herpetic whitlow.
People with active genital lesions should refrain from intercourse until lesions are completely reepithelialized.

Clinical Case 43.1 Neonatal Herpes Simplex Virus

Parvey and Ch'ien (*Pediatrics* 65:1150–1153, 1980) reported a case of neonatal HSV contracted during birth. During a breech presentation, a fetal monitor was placed on the buttocks of the baby, and because of the greatly prolonged labor, the baby was delivered by cesarean section. The 5-pound boy had minor difficulties that were successfully treated, but on the sixth day, vesicles with an erythematous base appeared at the site in which the fetal monitor had been placed. HSV was grown from the vesicle fluid and from spinal fluid, cornea, saliva, and blood. The baby became moribund, with frequent apneic episodes and seizures. Intravenous treatment with adenosine arabinoside (Ara-A; vidarabine) was initiated. The baby also developed bradycardia and occasional vomiting. The vesicles spread to cover the lower extremities and were also on the back, palm, nares, and right eyelid. Within 72 hours of Ara-A treatment, the baby's condition started to improve. Treatment was continued for 11 days but discontinued because of a low platelet count. The baby was discharged on the 45th day after his birthday, and normal development was reported at 1 and 2 years of age. At 6 weeks after the birth, a herpes lesion was found on the mother's vulva. This baby was successfully treated with Ara-A and was able to overcome the damage caused by the infection. The virus, most likely HSV-2, was probably acquired through an abrasion caused by the fetal monitor while the neonate was in the birth canal. Ara-A has since been replaced with antiviral drugs that are better, less toxic, and easier to administer, such as acyclovir, valacyclovir, and famciclovir.

HSV, Herpes simplex virus.

Initial infection with HSV-2 occurs later in life than infection with HSV-1 and correlates with increased sexual activity. The current statistics indicate that 20% of adults in the United States are infected with HSV-2, which amounts to approximately 65 million people.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

HSV-1 and HSV-2 are common human pathogens that can cause painful, but usually benign, lesions and recurrent disease (Fig. 43.3). The same diseases may be caused by either HSV-1 or HSV-2, unless noted. *HSV can cause significant morbidity and mortality on infection of the eye or brain and on disseminated infection of an immunosuppressed person or a neonate*. In the classic manifestation, the lesion is a clear vesicle on an erythematous base ("dewdrop on a rose petal") and then progresses to pustular lesions, ulcers, and crusted lesions (Fig. 43.4).

The lesions of oral herpes, herpes labialis or gingivostomatitis, begin as clear vesicles that rapidly ulcerate. The vesicles are usually at the crimson border of the lips but may be widely distributed around or throughout the mouth, involving the palate, pharynx, gingivae, buccal mucosa, and tongue (Fig. 43.5). Many other conditions (e.g., coxsackievirus lesions, canker sores, acne) may resemble HSV lesions.

Infected people may experience recurrent mucocutaneous HSV infection **(cold sores, fever blisters)** (Fig. 43.6) even though they never had a clinically apparent primary infection. The lesions usually occur at the corners of the mouth or next to the lips. Recurrent facial herpes infections are generally reactivated from the trigeminal ganglia. As noted earlier, the symptoms of a recurrent episode are less severe, more localized, and of shorter duration than those of a primary episode. **Herpes pharyngitis** is becoming a prevalent diagnosis in young adults with sore throats.

Herpetic keratitis is almost always limited to one eye. It can cause recurrent disease, leading to permanent scarring, corneal damage, and blindness. TH17 immune responses are important for control but contribute to the pathogenesis of eye infections.

Herpetic whitlow is an infection of the finger, and **herpes gladiatorum** is an infection of the body. The virus establishes infection through cuts or abrasions in the skin. Herpetic whitlow often occurs in nurses or physicians who attend patients with HSV infections, in thumb-sucking children (Fig. 43.7), and in people who have genital HSV infections. Herpes gladiatorum is often acquired during wrestling or rugby.

Eczema herpeticum is acquired by children with active eczema. The underlying disease promotes the spread of the infection along the skin and potentially to the adrenal glands, liver, and other organs.

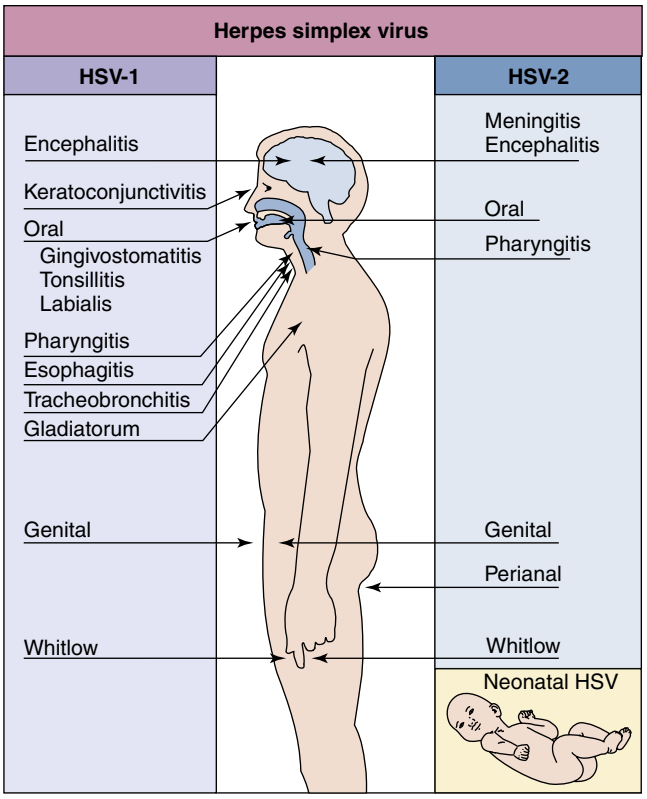


Fig. 43.3 Disease syndromes of herpes simplex virus *(HSV)*. HSV-1 and HSV-2 can infect the same tissues and cause similar diseases but have a predilection for the sites and diseases indicated.

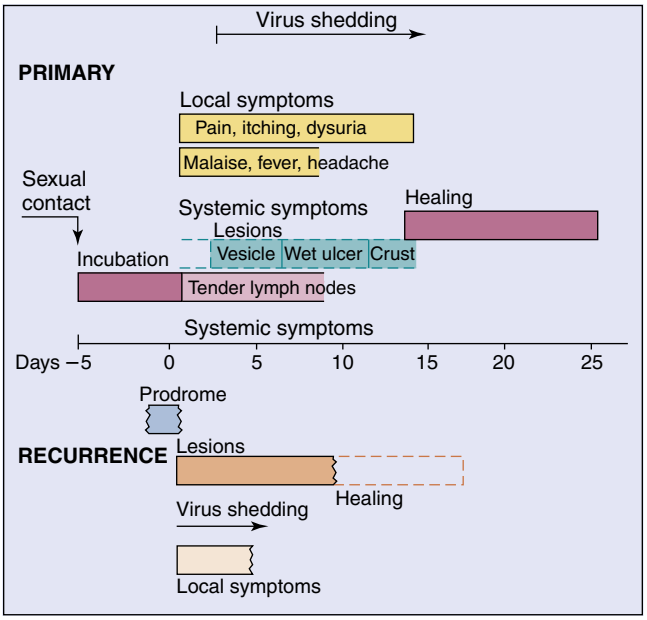
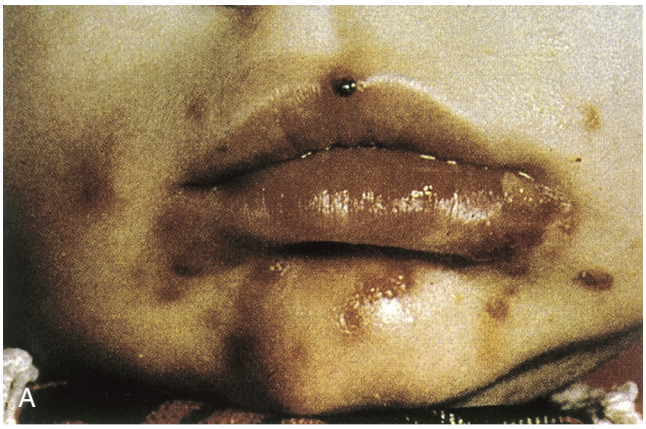


Fig. 43.4 Clinical course of genital herpes infection. The time course and symptoms of primary and recurrent genital infection with herpes simplex virus type 2 are compared. *Top,* Primary infection; *bottom,* recurrent disease. (Data from Corey, L., Adams, H.G., Brown, Z.A., et al., 1983. Genital herpes simplex virus infection: clinical manifestations, course and complications. Ann. Intern. Med. 98, 958–972.)



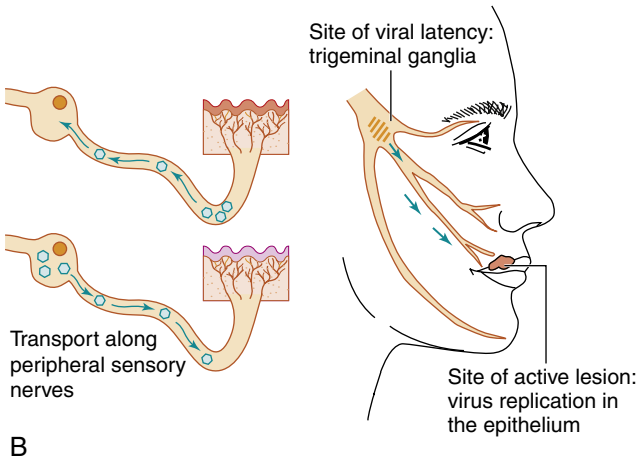


Fig. 43.5 (A) Primary herpes gingivostomatitis. (B) Herpes simplex virus establishes latent infection and can recur from the trigeminal ganglia. (A, From Hart, C.A., Broadhead, R.L., 1992. A Color Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases. Wolfe, London, UK. B, Modified from Straus, S.E., 1993. Herpes simplex virus and its relatives. In: Schaechter, M., Eisenstein, B.I., Medoff, G. (Eds.), Mechanisms of Microbial Disease, second ed. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, MD.)

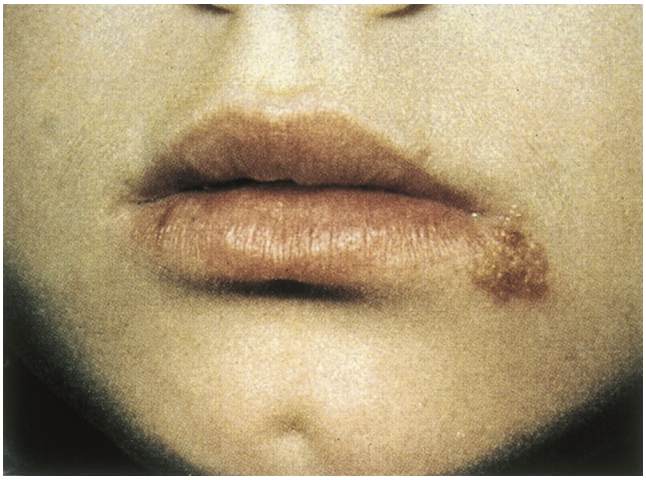


Fig. 43.6 Cold sore of recurrent herpes labialis. It is less severe than that of primary disease. (From Hart, C.A., Broadhead, R.L., 1992. A Color Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases. Wolfe, London, UK.)

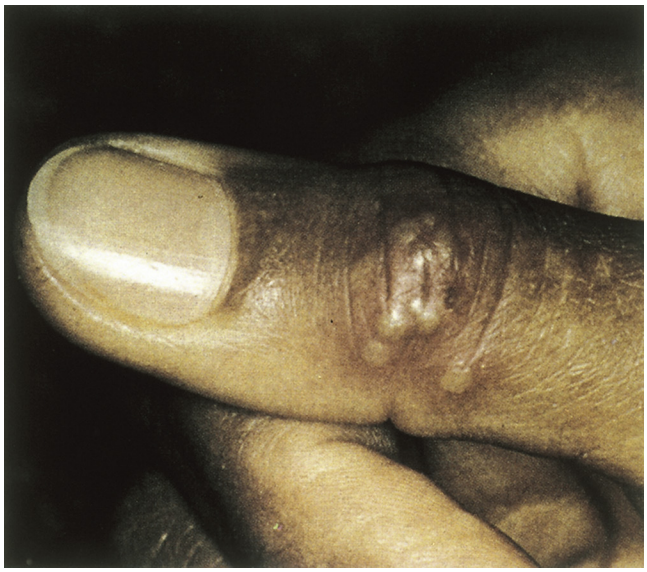


Fig. 43.7 Herpetic whitlow. (From Emond, R.T.D., Rowland, H.A.K., 1995. A Color Atlas of Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, London, UK.)

TABLE 43.2 Laboratory Diagnosis of Herpes Simplex Virus Infections

Approach	Test/Comment
Direct microscopic examination of cells from base of lesion (Tzanck smear)	Multinucleated giant cells and Cowdry type A inclusion bodies in cells
Cell culture	Identifiable cytopathologic effect in most cell cultures
Assay of tissue biopsy, smear, cerebrospinal fluid, or vesicular fluid for HSV antigen or genome	**Enzyme immunoassay, immunofluorescent stain, in situ DNA probe analysis, or PCR[a]**
HSV type distinction (HSV-1 versus HSV-2)	Type-specific antibody, DNA probe analysis, and PCR
Serology	Serology is not useful except for epidemiology

HSV, Herpes simplex virus; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.
[a]currently favored approaches currently favored approaches

Genital herpes can be caused by HSV-1 or HSV-2. In male patients, the lesions typically develop on the glans or shaft of the penis and occasionally in the urethra. In female patients, the lesions may be seen on the vulva, vagina, cervix, perianal area, or inner thigh and are frequently accompanied by itching and a mucoid vaginal discharge. Anal sex can lead to HSV proctitis, which is a condition in which the lesions are found in the lower rectum and anus. The lesions are usually painful. In patients of both sexes, a primary infection may be accompanied by fever, malaise, and myalgia, which are symptoms related to a transient viremia. The symptoms and time course of primary and recurrent genital herpes are compared in Fig. 43.4.

Recurrent HSV disease is shorter in duration and less severe than the primary episode. In approximately 50% of patients, recurrences are preceded by a characteristic prodrome of burning or tingling in the area in which the lesions eventually erupt. Episodes of recurrence may be as frequent as every 2 to 3 weeks or may be infrequent. Unfortunately, any infected person may shed the virus asymptomatically. Such individuals are important vectors for spread of this virus.

Herpes encephalitis is usually caused by HSV-1. The lesions are generally limited to one of the temporal lobes. The viral pathology and immunopathology cause destruction of the temporal lobe and give rise to erythrocytes in the cerebrospinal fluid, seizures, focal neurologic abnormalities, and other characteristics of viral encephalitis. HSV is the most common viral cause of sporadic encephalitis and results in significant morbidity and mortality, even in patients who receive appropriate treatment. Unlike arbovirus encephalitis, the disease occurs at all ages and at any time of the year. **HSV meningitis** may be a complication of genital HSV-2 infection, and if so, symptoms often resolve by themselves.

HSV infection in the neonate is a devastating and often fatal disease. It may be acquired in utero, but more commonly, it is contracted either during passage of the infant through the vaginal canal (possibly at the baby's scalp-monitor site) because the mother is shedding herpesvirus at the time of delivery, or it is acquired postnatally from family members or hospital personnel. The baby initially appears septic, and vesicular lesions may or may not be present. Because the cell-mediated immune response is not yet developed in the neonate, HSV disseminates to the liver, lung, and other organs, as well as to the central nervous system (CNS). Progression of the infection to the CNS results in death, mental retardation, or neurologic disability, even with treatment.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Direct Analysis of a Clinical Sample

Characteristic cytopathologic effects (CPEs) can be identified in a **Tzanck smear** (a scraping of the base of a lesion), Papanicolaou (Pap) smear, or biopsy specimen (Table 43.2). CPEs include syncytia, "ballooning" cytoplasm, and Cowdry type A intranuclear inclusions (see Fig. 39.2). A definitive diagnosis can be made by demonstrating viral antigen (using immunofluorescence or the immunoperoxidase method) or DNA (using in situ hybridization or PCR) in the tissue sample or vesicle fluid.

Virus Isolation

Virus isolation allows archiving and additional testing. Virus can be obtained from vesicles but not crusted lesions. Specimens are collected by aspiration of the lesion fluid or by application of a cotton swab to the vesicles and kept cold but not frozen at −20° C. The sample is inoculated directly into cell cultures.

HSV produces CPEs within 1 to 3 days in HeLa cells, human embryonic fibroblasts, and other cells. Infected cells become enlarged and rounded (see Fig. 39.4). Some isolates induce fusion of neighboring cells, giving rise to multinucleated giant cells (syncytia). A sensitive approach for identification uses a cell line that expresses β-galactosidase on HSV infection of cells (enzyme-linked viral-inducible system [ELVIS]). Addition of the appropriate substrate produces color and allows detection of the enzyme in the infected cells.

Genome Detection

HSV type-specific DNA probes, specific DNA primers for PCR, and quantitative PCR are used to detect and differentiate HSV-1 and HSV-2. **PCR analysis** of the clinical sample or infected tissue culture media has become the method of choice for detection and distinction of HSV-1 and HSV-2 for most patients.

Serology

Serologic procedures are useful only for diagnosing a primary HSV infection and for epidemiologic studies. They are not useful for diagnosing recurrent disease because a significant rise in antibody titers does not usually accompany recurrent disease.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

HSV encodes several target enzymes for antiviral drugs (Box 43.5) (see Chapter 40). Most antiherpes drugs are nucleoside analogs that are activated by the viral thymidine kinase and inhibit the viral DNA polymerase, which is an enzyme essential for viral replication and the best antiviral drug target. Treatment prevents or shortens the course of primary or recurrent disease. None of the drug treatments can eliminate latent infection.

The prototype anti-HSV drug is **acyclovir (ACV). Valacyclovir** (the valyl ester of ACV), **penciclovir,** and **famciclovir** (a derivative of penciclovir) are related to ACV in their mechanisms of action but have different pharmacologic properties (see Fig. 40.1).

Phosphorylation of ACV and penciclovir by the viral **thymidine kinase** and cellular enzymes activates the drug as a substrate for the viral **DNA polymerase.** These drugs are then incorporated into and **prevent elongation of the viral DNA** (see Fig. 40.2). ACV, valacyclovir, penciclovir, and famciclovir are relatively nontoxic, effective in treating serious presentations of HSV disease and first episodes of genital herpes, and are also used for prophylactic treatment.

The most prevalent form of resistance to these drugs results from mutations that inactivate the thymidine kinase, preventing conversion of the drug to its active form. Mutation of the viral DNA polymerase also produces resistance. Fortunately, resistant strains appear to be less virulent.

ACV and its analogs are effective against all HSV infections, including encephalitis, disseminated herpes, and other serious herpes diseases. The fact that it is not toxic to uninfected cells allows use of it and its analogs as a suppressive treatment to prevent recurrent outbreaks, especially in immunosuppressed people. A recurrent episode may be prevented if it is treated before or soon after the triggering event. The replication of HSV can be inhibited, but treatment cannot resolve the latent HSV infection.

Although cidofovir and adefovir are active against HSV, cidofovir is only approved for treatment of CMV. Vidarabine (adenosine arabinoside [Ara A]) is less soluble, less potent, and more toxic than ACV and is no longer in use. Trifluridine, penciclovir, and ACV have replaced iododeoxyuridine as topical agents for the treatment of herpetic keratitis. Tromantadine, an amantadine derivative, is approved for topical use in countries other than the United States. It works by inhibiting penetration and syncytia formation. Docosanol inhibits entry of the virus, and other nonprescription treatments may be effective for specific individuals.

Avoidance of direct contact with lesions reduces the risk of infection. Unfortunately, the symptoms may be inapparent; thus the virus can be transmitted unknowingly. Physicians, nurses, dentists, and technicians must be especially careful when handling potentially infected tissue or fluids. Wearing gloves can prevent acquisition of infections of the fingers (herpetic whitlow). People with recurrent herpetic whitlow disease are very contagious and can spread the infection to patients.

HSV is readily inactivated by soap, disinfectants, bleach, and 70% ethanol. Washing with soap readily disinfects the virus.

Patients who have a history of genital HSV infection must be instructed to refrain from sexual intercourse while they have prodromal symptoms or lesions and to resume sexual intercourse only after lesions are completely reepithelialized because the virus may be transmitted from lesions that have crusted over. Condoms may be useful and are undoubtedly better than nothing but may not be fully protective.

A pregnant woman who has active genital HSV infection or who is asymptomatically shedding the virus in the vagina at term may transmit HSV to the neonate if the infant is delivered vaginally. Such transmission can be prevented by cesarean section.

No vaccine is currently available for HSV. However, killed, subunit, vaccinia hybrid, genetically attenuated, and DNA vaccines are being developed to prevent acquisition of the virus or to treat infected people. The glycoprotein D is being used in several of these experimental vaccines.

BOX 43.5 U.S. Food and Drug Administration–Approved Antiviral Treatments for Herpesvirus Infections

Herpes Simplex 1 and 2

Acyclovir
Penciclovir
Valacyclovir
Famciclovir
Trifluridine

Varicella-Zoster Virus

Acyclovir
Famciclovir
Valacyclovir
Varicella-zoster immune globulin
Zoster immune plasma
Live or adjuvanted subunit vaccine

Epstein-Barr Virus

None

Cytomegalovirus

Ganciclovir[a]
Valganciclovir[a]
Foscarnet[a]
Cidofovir[a]

[a]Also inhibits herpes simplex and varicella-zoster viruses.

Varicella-Zoster Virus

VZV causes **chickenpox (varicella)** and, on recurrence, causes herpes **zoster, or shingles.** As an alphaherpesvirus, VZV shares many characteristics with HSV, including (1) the ability to establish latent infection of neurons and recurrent disease, (2) the importance of cell-mediated immunity in controlling and preventing serious disease, and (3) the characteristic blister-like lesions. Like HSV, VZV encodes a **thymidine kinase** and is susceptible to the same **antiviral drugs.** Unlike HSV, VZV spreads predominantly by the **respiratory route** and, after local replication of the virus in the respiratory tract, by **viremia** to form skin lesions over the entire body.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

VZV has the smallest genome of the HHVs. VZV replicates in a similar manner but slower and in fewer types of cells than HSV. Human diploid fibroblasts in vitro and activated T cells, epithelial cells, and epidermal cells in vivo support productive VZV replication. Newly synthesized VZV is sequestered into lysosomes and degraded in most cells because of its binding to the mannose-6-phosphate receptor but is released from terminally differentiated skin cells that lack this protein. As such, it spreads within the body by cell–cell contact. Like HSV, VZV establishes a latent infection of neurons, but unlike HSV, several viral RNAs and specific viral proteins can be detected in the latently infected cells.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

VZV-infected cells show similar CPE to those seen in HSV-infected cells with Cowdry type A intranuclear inclusions and syncytia.

VZV is generally acquired by inhalation, and primary infection begins in the tonsils and mucosa of the respiratory tract. The virus progresses via the bloodstream and lymphatic system to the cells of the reticuloendothelial system (Figs. 43.8 and 43.9; Box 43.6). A secondary viremia then occurs and spreads the virus throughout the body and to the skin. The virus infects T cells, and these cells can home to the skin and transfer virus to skin epithelial cells. The virus overcomes inhibition by IFN-α, and vesicles are produced in the skin. The virus remains cell associated and is transmitted by cell-to-cell interaction, except for terminally differentiated epithelial cells in the lungs and keratinocytes of skin lesions, which can release infectious virus. Virus replication in the lung is a major source of contagion. The virus causes a dermal vesiculopustular rash that develops over time in successive crops. Fever and systemic symptoms occur with the rash.

The virus becomes latent in the dorsal root, cranial nerve, and other ganglia after the primary infection. The virus can be reactivated in older adults when immunity wanes or in patients with impaired cellular immunity. On reactivation, the virus replicates and is released along the length of the neuron to infect the skin, causing a vesicular rash along the entire dermatome, which is known as **herpes zoster,** or **shingles.** This damages the neuron and may result in very painful postherpetic neuralgia.

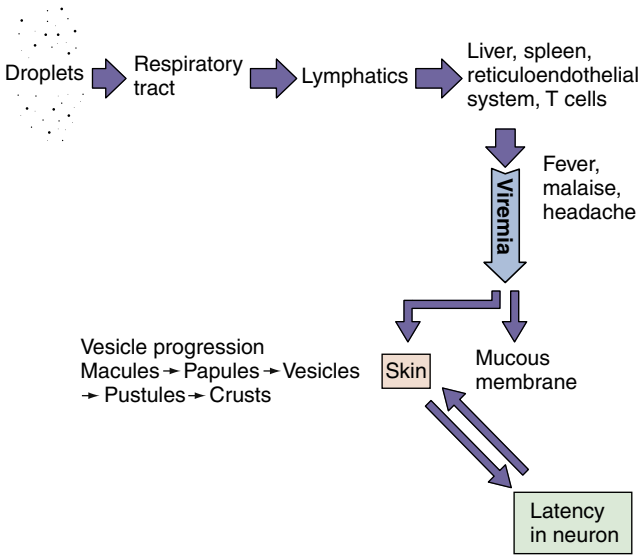


Fig. 43.8 Mechanism of spread of varicella-zoster virus (VZV) within the body. VZV initially infects the respiratory tract and is spread to the reticuloendothelial system and T cells and then by cell-associated viremia to the skin.

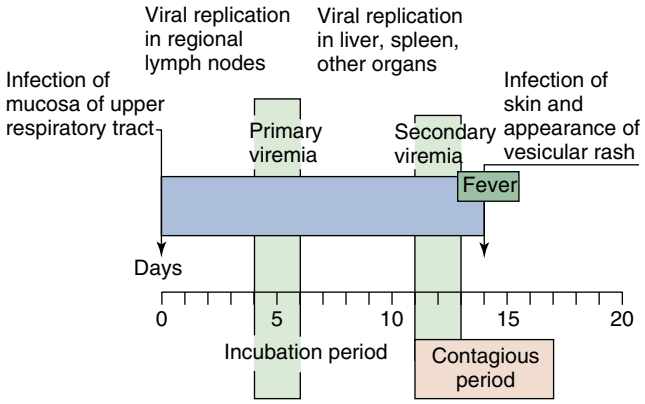


Fig. 43.9 Time course of varicella (chickenpox). The course in young children, as presented in this figure, is generally shorter and less severe than that in adults.

BOX 43.6 Disease Mechanisms of Varicella-Zoster Virus

Initial replication is in the respiratory tract.
Infects epithelial cells, fibroblasts, T cells, and neurons.
Can form syncytia and spread directly from cell to cell.
Spread by viremia in T cells to skin and causes lesions in successive crops.
Life-threatening pneumonia occurs in adults with primary infection caused by vigorous inflammatory response.
Can evade antibody clearance, and cell-mediated immune response is essential to control infection.
Disseminated life-threatening disease can occur in immunocompromised people.
Establishes latent infection of neurons, usually dorsal root and cranial nerve ganglia.
Herpes zoster is a recurrent disease; it results from virus replication along the entire dermatome.
Herpes zoster results from depression of cell-mediated immunity.

VZV, Varicella-zoster viurs.

IFN-α, interferon-stimulated protections, and NK and T cells limit the spread of the virus in tissue, but **antibody** is important for limiting the viremic spread of VZV. Passive immunization with **varicella-zoster immunoglobulin (VZIg)** within 4 days of exposure is protective. Cell-mediated immunity is essential for resolving the acute disease and controlling the latent infection. The virus causes more disseminated and more serious disease in the absence of cell-mediated immunity (e.g., in children with leukemia) and may recur on immunosuppression. Although important for protection, cell-mediated immune responses contribute to the symptomatology. An overzealous response in adults is responsible for causing more extensive cell damage and a more severe manifestation (especially in the lung) in primary infection than that seen in children. T-cell and antibody levels decrease later in life, allowing VZV recurrence and herpes zoster disease.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

VZV is extremely communicable, with rates of infection exceeding 90% among susceptible household contacts (Box 43.7). The disease is spread principally by the respiratory route but may also be spread through contact with skin vesicles. Patients are contagious before and during symptoms. More than 90% of adults in developed countries have the VZV antibody. Herpes zoster results from the reactivation of a patient's latent virus. The disease develops in approximately 10% to 20% of the population infected with VZV, and the incidence rises with age. Herpes zoster lesions contain viable virus and therefore may be a source of varicella infection in a nonimmune person (i.e., a child).

BOX 43.7 Epidemiology of Varicella-Zoster Virus

Disease/Viral Factors

Causes lifelong infection.
Recurrent disease is a source of contagion.

Transmission

Virus is transmitted mainly by respiratory droplets but also by direct contact.

Who Is at Risk?

Children (aged 5 to 9 years) experience mild classic disease.
Teenagers and adults are at risk for more severe disease with potential pneumonia.
Immunocompromised people and newborns are at risk for life-threatening pneumonia, encephalitis, and progressive disseminated varicella.
Elderly and immunocompromised people are at risk for recurrent disease (herpes zoster [shingles]) caused by a waning immune response.

Geography/Season

Virus is found worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

Antiviral drugs are available.
Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin is available for immunocompromised people and staff exposed to virus, as well as newborns of mothers showing symptoms within 5 days of birth.
Live vaccine (Oka strain) is available for children (varicella) and adults (zoster). Adjuvanted subunit vaccine also is available for zoster.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Varicella (chickenpox) is one of the five **classic childhood exanthems** (along with rubella, roseola, fifth disease, and measles). The disease results from a primary infection with VZV; it is usually a mild disease of childhood and is normally symptomatic, although asymptomatic infection can occur (see Fig. 43.9). Varicella characteristics include fever and a maculopapular rash that appear after an incubation period of approximately 14 days (Fig. 43.10). Within hours, each maculopapular lesion forms a thin-walled vesicle on an erythematous base ("dewdrop on a rose petal") that measures approximately 2 to 4 mm in diameter. This vesicle is the hallmark of varicella. Within 12 hours, the vesicle becomes pustular and begins to crust, after which scabbed lesions appear. Successive crops of lesions appear for 3 to 5 days, and at any given time, all stages of skin lesions can be observed.

The rash spreads across the entire body but is more prevalent on the trunk and head than on the extremities. Its presence on the scalp distinguishes it from many other rashes. The lesions itch and cause scratching, which may lead to bacterial superinfection and scarring. Lesions on the mucous membrane typically occur in the mouth, conjunctivae, and vagina.

Primary infection is usually more severe in adults than in children. **Interstitial pneumonia** may occur in 20% to 30% of adult patients and may be fatal. The pneumonia results from inflammatory reactions at this primary site of infection.

As noted earlier, **herpes zoster** (*zoster* means "belt" or "girdle") is a recurrence of a latent varicella infection acquired earlier in the patient's life. Severe pain in the area innervated by the nerve usually precedes the appearance of the chickenpox-like lesions. The rash is limited to a dermatome and resembles varicella (Fig. 43.11). Common sites of

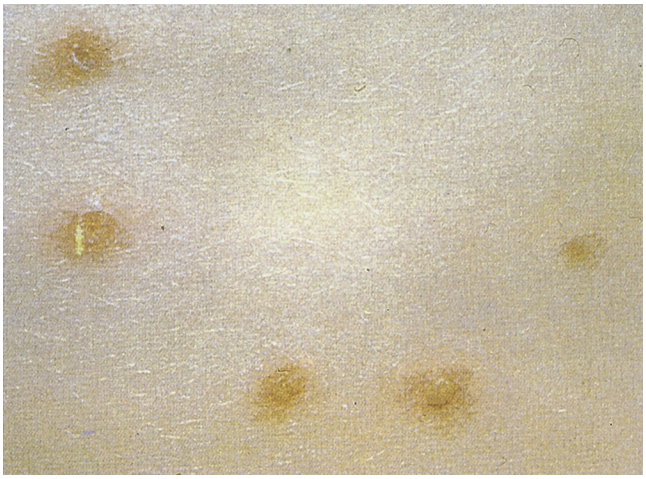


Fig. 43.10 Characteristic rash of varicella in all stages of its evolution. (From Hart, C.A., Broadhead, R.L., 1992. A Color Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases. Wolfe, London, UK.)

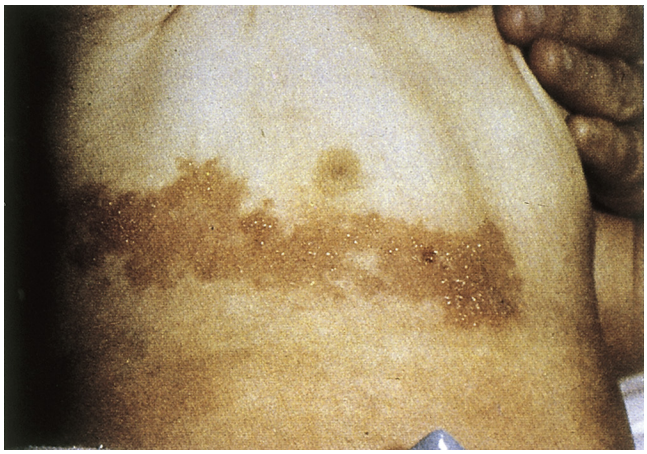


Fig. 43.11 Herpes zoster ("shingles") in a thoracic dermatome.

presentation are a quadrant of the head or along a thoracic dermatome. A chronic pain syndrome called **postherpetic neuralgia,** which can persist for months to years, occurs in as many as 30% of patients in whom herpes zoster develops.

VZV infection in immunocompromised patients or neonates can result in serious, progressive, and potentially fatal disease. Defects of cell-mediated immunity in such patients increase the risk for dissemination of the virus to the lungs, brain, and liver, which may be fatal. The disease may occur in response to a primary exposure to varicella or because of recurrent disease.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Isolation of VZV is not routinely done because the virus is labile during transport to the laboratory and replicates poorly in vitro. PCR and genome detection techniques are especially useful for confirming a diagnosis. A direct fluorescent antibody to membrane antigen (FAMA) test can also be used to examine skin lesion scrapings or biopsy specimens.

Serologic tests that detect antibodies to VZV are used to screen populations for immunity to VZV. However, antibody levels are normally low, so sensitive tests such as immunofluorescence and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) must be performed to detect the antibody. A significant increase in antibody level can be detected in people experiencing herpes zoster.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment may be appropriate for adults and immunocompromised patients with VZV infections and for people with zoster, but no treatment is usually necessary for children with varicella. **ACV, famciclovir,** and **valacyclovir** have been approved for the treatment of VZV infections. The VZV DNA polymerase is much less sensitive to ACV treatment than the HSV enzyme, requiring larger doses of ACV or the improved pharmacodynamics of famciclovir and valacyclovir (see Box 43.5). There is no good treatment, but analgesics and other painkillers, topical anesthetics, or capsaicin cream may provide some relief from the postherpetic neuralgia that follows zoster.

As with other respiratory viruses, it is difficult to limit the transmission of VZV. Because VZV infection in children is generally mild and induces lifelong immunity, exposure of children to VZV early in life is often encouraged. However, high-risk people (e.g., immunosuppressed children) should be protected from exposure to VZV.

Immunocompromised patients susceptible to severe disease may be protected from serious disease through the administration of **VZIg.** VZIg is prepared through the pooling of plasma from seropositive people. VZIg prophylaxis can prevent viremic spread leading to disease but is ineffective as a therapy for patients already suffering from active varicella or herpes zoster disease.

A **live attenuated vaccine** for VZV (Oka strain) (Varivax) has been licensed for use in the United States and elsewhere and is administered after 1 year of age on the same schedule as the measles, mumps, and rubella vaccine. The vaccine induces production of protective antibody and cell-mediated immunity. A stronger version of this vaccine (Zostavax) is available for adults older than 60 years; it boosts antiviral responses to limit the onset of zoster. A subunit vaccine (Shingrix) consisting of the VZV glycoprotein E and an adjuvant is given in two doses and is also available.

Epstein-Barr Virus

EBV is the ultimate B-lymphocyte parasite, and the diseases it causes reflect this association. EBV was discovered by electron-microscopic observation of characteristic herpes virions in biopsy specimens of a B-cell neoplasm, African Burkitt lymphoma (AfBL). Its association with infectious mononucleosis was discovered accidentally when serum collected from a laboratory technician convalescing from infectious mononucleosis was found to contain the antibody that recognized AfBL cells. This finding was later confirmed in a large serologic study performed on college students.

EBV causes *heterophile antibody–positive infectious mononucleosis* and *stimulates the growth and immortalizes B cells* in tissue culture. EBV has been causally associated with **AfBL (endemic Burkitt lymphoma), Hodgkin disease,** and **nasopharyngeal carcinoma.** EBV has also been associated with B-cell lymphomas in patients with acquired or congenital immunodeficiencies.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

EBV is a member of the subfamily Gammaherpesvirinae, with a very limited host range and a **tissue tropism** defined by the limited cellular expression of its receptor. The primary receptor for EBV is also *the receptor for the C3d component of the complement system* (*also called CR2 or CD21*). It is expressed on B cells of humans and New World monkeys and on some epithelial cells of the oropharynx and nasopharynx. EBV also binds to MHC II.

EBV infection has the following three potential outcomes, it can

1. Replicate in B cells or epithelial cells permissive for EBV replication and produce virus,
2. Cause latent infection of memory B cells in the presence of competent T cells, and
3. Stimulate growth and immortalize B cells.

EBV encodes more than 70 proteins, different groups of which are expressed for the different types of infections.

TABLE 43.3 Markers of Epstein-Barr Virus Infection

Name	Abbreviation	Characteristics	Biological Association	Clinical Association
EBV nuclear antigens	EBNAs	Nuclear	EBNAs are nonstructural antigens and first antigens to appear; EBNAs seen in all infected and transformed cells	Anti-EBNA develops after resolution of infection
Early antigen	EA-R	Only cytoplasmic	EA-R appears before EA-D; appearance is first sign that infected cell has entered lytic cycle	—
	EA-D	Diffuse in cytoplasm and nucleus	—	Anti–EA-D seen in infectious mononucleosis
Viral capsid antigen	VCA	Cytoplasmic	VCA are late proteins; found in virus-producing cells	Anti-VCA IgM is transient; anti-VCA IgG is persistent
Membrane antigen	MA	Cell surface	MAs are envelope glycoproteins	Same as VCA
Heterophile antibody	—	Recognition of Paul-Bunnell antigen on sheep, horse, or bovine erythrocytes	EBV-induced B-cell proliferation promotes production of heterophile antibody	Early symptom occurs in more than 50% of patients

EA, Early antigen; *EBNA,* Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *MA,* membrane antigen; *VCA,* viral capsid antigen.

EBV in saliva infects epithelial cells and then naive resting B cells in the tonsils. The growth of the B cells is stimulated first by virus binding to the C3d receptor, a B-cell growth-stimulating receptor, and then by expression of the transformation and latency proteins. These include **Epstein-Barr nuclear antigens (EBNAs)** 1, 2, 3A, 3B, and 3C; latent proteins **(LPs); latent membrane proteins (LMPs) 1 and 2;** and two small Epstein-Barr–encoded RNA (EBER) molecules, EBER-1 and EBER-2. The EBNAs and LPs are DNA-binding proteins that are essential for establishing and maintaining the infection (EBNA-1), immortalization (EBNA-2), and other purposes. The LMPs are membrane proteins with oncoprotein-like activity. The genome becomes circularized; the cells proceed to follicles that become germinal centers in the lymph node, in which the infected cells differentiate into memory cells. EBV protein synthesis ceases, and the virus establishes latency in these memory B cells. EBNA-1 is present at cell division to hold onto and retain the genome in the cells.

Antigen stimulation of the B cells and infection of certain epithelial cells allow transcription and translation of the ZEBRA (peptide encoded by the Z-gene region) transcriptional activator protein, which activates the immediate early genes of the virus and the lytic cycle. After synthesis of the DNA polymerase and replication of DNA, the structural and other late proteins are synthesized. They include gp350/220 (related glycoproteins of 350,000 and 220,000 Da), which is the viral attachment protein, and other glycoproteins. These glycoproteins bind to CD21 and MHC II molecules, receptors on B cells and epithelial cells, and promote fusion of the envelope with cell membranes.

The viral proteins produced during a productive infection are serologically defined and grouped as **early antigen (EA), viral capsid antigen (VCA),** and the glycoproteins of the **membrane antigen (MA)** (Table 43.3). An early protein mimics a cellular inhibitor of apoptosis, and a late protein mimics the activity of human interleukin (IL)-10 (BCRF-1), which enhances B-cell growth and inhibits TH1 immune responses.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

EBV has adapted to the human B cell and manipulates and uses the different phases of B-cell development to establish a lifelong infection. The diseases of EBV result from either an overactive immune response (infectious mononucleosis) or the lack of effective immune control (lymphoproliferative disease and hairy cell leukoplakia).

The productive infection of B cells and epithelial cells of the oropharynx, such as in the tonsils (Fig. 43.12 and Box 43.8), promotes virus shedding into saliva to transmit the virus to other hosts and establishes a viremia to spread the virus to other B cells in lymphatic tissue and blood.

EBV proteins replace host factors that normally activate B-cell growth and development. In the absence of T cells (e.g., in tissue culture), EBV can immortalize B cells and promote the development of B-lymphoblastoid cell lines. In vivo, B-cell activation and proliferation occurs and is indicated by the spurious production of an IgM antibody to the Paul-Bunnell antigen, termed the **heterophile antibody** (see later discussion of serology).

The outgrowth of the B cell is controlled by a normal T-cell response to B-cell proliferation and to EBV antigenic peptides. B cells are excellent antigen-presenting cells and present EBV antigens on both MHC I and MHC II molecules. The activated T cells appear as **atypical lymphocytes** (also called **Downey cells**) (Fig. 43.13). They increase in number in the peripheral blood during the second week of infection, accounting for 10% to 80% of the total white blood cell count at this time (hence the "mononucleosis").

Infectious mononucleosis is essentially *a "civil war" between the EBV-infected B cells and the protective T cells.* The classic **lymphocytosis** (increase in mononuclear cells), swelling of lymphoid organs (lymph nodes, spleen, and liver), and malaise associated with infectious mononucleosis results mainly from the activation and proliferation of T cells. A large amount of energy is required to power the T-cell response, leading to great fatigue. The sore throat of infectious mononucleosis is a response to EBV-infected epithelium and B cells in the tonsils and throat. Children have

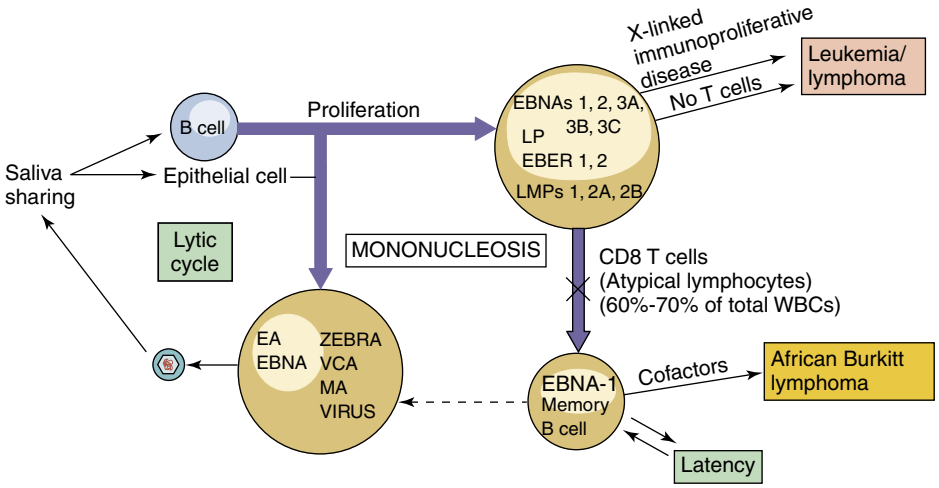


Fig. 43.12 Progression of Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) infection. Infection may result in lytic, latent, or immortalizing infection, which can be distinguished on the basis of production of virus and expression of different viral proteins and antigens. T cells limit the outgrowth of the EBV-infected cells and maintain the latent infection. *CD,* Cluster of differentiation; *EA,* early antigen; *EBER,* Epstein-Barr–encoded RNA; *EBNA,* Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen; *LMPs,* latent membrane proteins; *LP,* latent protein; *MA,* membrane antigen; *VCA,* viral capsid antigen; *WBCs,* white blood cells; *ZEBRA,* peptide encoded by the *Z* gene region.

BOX 43.8 Disease Mechanisms of Epstein-Barr Virus

Virus in saliva initiates infection of oral epithelia and tonsillar B cells.
There is productive infection of epithelial cells and B cells.
Virus promotes growth of B cells (immortalizes).
T cells are stimulated by infected B cells; they kill and limit B-cell outgrowth. T cells are required for controlling infection.
Antibody role is limited.
EBV establishes latency in memory B cells and is reactivated when the B cell is activated.
T-cell response (lymphocytosis) contributes to symptoms of **infectious mononucleosis.**
There is causative association with lymphoma in immunosuppressed people and African children living in malarial regions (African Burkitt lymphoma) and with nasopharyngeal carcinoma in China.
EBV-associated B-cell lymphomas may result from immunosuppression.

EBV, Epstein-Barr virus.

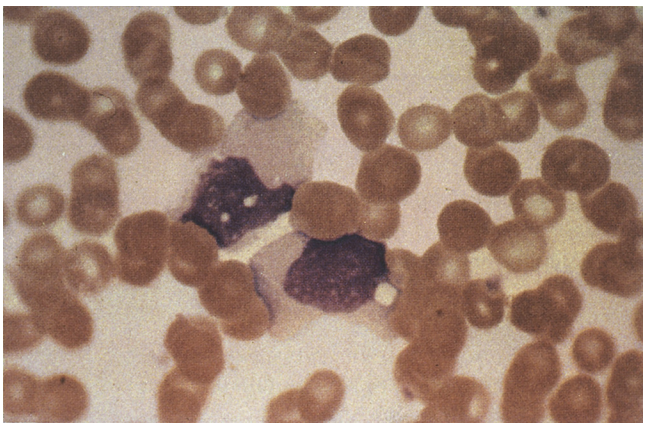


Fig. 43.13 Atypical T-cell (Downey cell) characteristic of infectious mononucleosis. The cells have a more basophilic and vacuolated cytoplasm than normal lymphocytes, and the nucleus may be oval, kidney shaped, or lobulated. The cell margin may seem to be indented by neighboring red blood cells.

a less active immune response to EBV infection and therefore have mild disease.

During productive infection, antibody is first developed against the components of the virion, VCA, and MA, and later against the EA. After resolution of the infection (lysis of the productively infected cells), antibody against the nuclear antigens (EBNAs) is produced. T cells are essential for limiting the proliferation of EBV-infected B cells and controlling the disease (Fig. 43.14). EBV counteracts some of the protective action of TH1 CD4 T-cell responses during productive infection by producing an IL-10 analog (BCRF-1) that inhibits the protective TH1 CD4 T-cell responses and stimulates B-cell growth.

The virus persists in peripheral blood memory B cells and in the tonsils. They can be detected in at least one memory B cell per milliliter of blood for the infected person's lifetime. EBV may be reactivated when the memory B cell is activated (especially in the tonsils or oropharynx) and may be shed in saliva.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

At least 70% of the population of the United States is infected by age 30. EBV is transmitted in saliva (Box 43.9). More than 90% of EBV-infected people intermittently shed the virus for life, even when totally asymptomatic. Children can acquire the virus at an early age by sharing contaminated drinking glasses. *Children generally have subclinical disease.* Saliva sharing between adolescents and young adults often occurs during kissing; thus EBV mononucleosis has earned the nickname "the kissing disease." Disease in these people may go unnoticed or may manifest in varying degrees of severity.

The geographic distribution of some EBV-associated neoplasms indicates a possible association with cofactors.

Malaria appears to be a cofactor in the progression of chronic or latent EBV infection to AfBL. The restriction of nasopharyngeal carcinoma to people living in certain regions of China indicates a possible genetic predisposition to the cancer or the presence of cofactors in the food or environment. More subtle mechanisms may facilitate the role of EBV in 30% to 50% of cases of Hodgkin disease and other cancers.

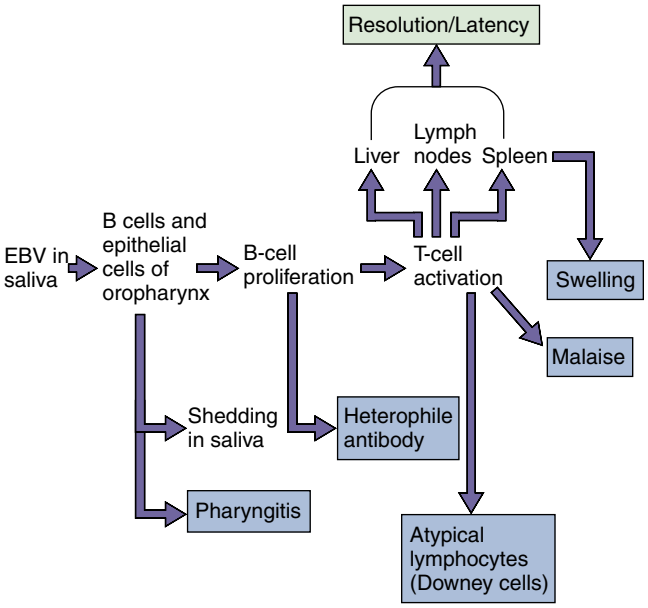


Fig. 43.14 Pathogenesis of Epstein-Barr virus *(EBV)*. EBV is acquired by close contact between persons through saliva and infects B cells. Resolution of the EBV infection and many of the symptoms of infectious mononucleosis result from activation of T cells in response to the infection.

BOX 43.9 Epidemiology of Epstein-Barr Virus

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus causes lifelong infection.
Recurrent disease is primary source of contagion.
Virus may cause asymptomatic shedding.

Transmission

Transmission occurs via saliva, close oral contact ("kissing disease"), or sharing of items such as toothbrushes and cups.

Who Is at Risk?

Children experience asymptomatic disease or mild symptoms.
Teenagers and adults are at risk for infectious mononucleosis.
Immunocompromised people are at highest risk for life-threatening neoplastic disease.

Geography/Season

Infectious mononucleosis has worldwide distribution.
There is causative association with African Burkitt lymphoma in the malarial belt of Africa.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

There are no modes of control.

Transplant recipients, patients with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), and genetically immunodeficient people are at high risk for lymphoproliferative disorders initiated by EBV. These disorders may appear as polyclonal and monoclonal B-cell lymphomas. Such people are also at high risk for a productive EBV infection in the form of **hairy oral leukoplakia.**

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Heterophile Antibody–Positive Infectious Mononucleosis

The triad of classic symptoms for infectious mononucleosis is **lymphadenopathy** (swollen glands), **splenomegaly** (large spleen), and **exudative pharyngitis** accompanied by high fever, malaise, and often hepatosplenomegaly (large liver and spleen) (Clinical Case 43.2). A rash may occur, especially after ampicillin treatment (for a possible strep throat). The major complaint of people with infectious mononucleosis is fatigue (Fig. 43.15). The disease is rarely fatal in healthy people but can cause serious complications resulting from neurologic disorders, laryngeal obstruction, or rupture of the spleen. Neurologic complications include meningoencephalitis and Guillain-Barré syndrome. Similar to infections caused by other herpesviruses, EBV infection in a child is much milder than infection in an adolescent or adult. In fact, infection in children is usually subclinical.

Clinical Case 43.2 Epstein-Barr Virus in the Immunocompromised Individual

Purtilo and associates (*Ann Intern Med* 101:180–186, 1984) reported on a boy with Duncan disease who presented with reduced levels of IgA, a history of thrush, and recurrent episodes of otitis media. This member of the Duncan family had an X-linked recessive, progressive, combined, variable immunodeficiency disease caused by a mutation in the SH2D1A protein, which prevents proper communication between B and T cells. After exposure to EBV at age 11 years, the boy did not develop antibodies to EBV, but generic serum IgM levels increased, and EBNA-positive immortalized B-cell lines readily grew from his peripheral blood. Establishment of the B-cell lines is indicative of aberrant T-cell control of the virus-induced B-cell proliferation. At age 18 years, he was treated with packed red cells for red cell aplasia; then 9 weeks later he developed infectious mononucleosis with fever, generalized lymphadenomegaly, tender liver and swollen spleen, lymphocytosis with a predominance of atypical lymphocytes, and a positive Monospot test. Within another 6 months, he was agammaglobulinemic with no detectable B cells and suffered from *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* pneumonias. After an additional 5 months, B cells were again detected. The onset of infectious mononucleosis at age 18 years may have resulted from new infection or a reactivation of the earlier infection. This case illustrates the unusual nature of EBV and other virus infections when the immune response is compromised.

EBNA, Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen; *EBV*, Epstein-Barr virus; *Ig*, immunoglobulin.

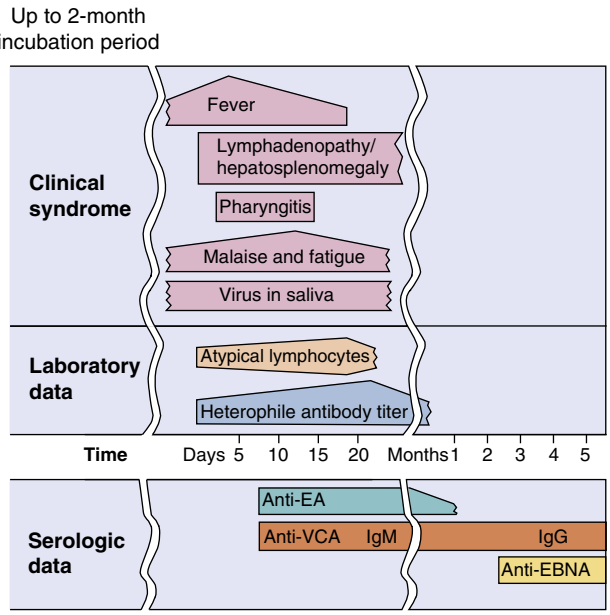


Fig. 43.15 Clinical course of infectious mononucleosis and laboratory findings of those with the infection. Epstein-Barr virus infection may be asymptomatic or may produce the symptoms of mononucleosis. The incubation period can last as long as 2 months. *EA,* Early antigen; *EBNA,* Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *VCA,* viral capsid antigen.

Mononucleosis-like syndromes can also be caused by CMV, HHV-6, *Toxoplasma gondii,* and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). As for EBV, mononucleosis syndrome is caused by T-cell proliferation in response to infection of an antigen-presenting cell; a B cell; a macrophage; or a dendritic cell, which stimulates CD4 and CD8 T cells with antigenic peptides on MHC II and MHC I. Heterophile antibody is not generated during these syndromes.

Chronic Disease

EBV can cause cyclic recurrent disease in some people. These patients experience chronic tiredness and may also have low-grade fever, headaches, and a sore throat. This disorder is different from chronic fatigue syndrome, which has an unknown etiology.

Epstein-Barr Virus–Induced Lymphoproliferative Diseases

On infection with EBV, people lacking T-cell immunity are likely to suffer life-threatening polyclonal leukemia-like B-cell proliferative disease and lymphoma instead of infectious mononucleosis. Men with congenital deficiencies of T-cell function are likely to suffer life-threatening X-linked lymphoproliferative disease. One such X-linked genetic defect in a T-cell gene (signaling lymphocyte activation molecule [SLAM]–associated protein) prevents the T cell from controlling B-cell growth during a normal immune response to antigen or because of EBV. Transplant recipients undergoing immunosuppressive treatment are at high risk for **posttransplant lymphoproliferative** disease, instead of infectious mononucleosis, after exposure to the virus or on reactivation of latent virus. The disease dissipates on reduction of immunosuppression. Similar diseases are seen in patients with AIDS.

BOX 43.10 Diagnosis of Epstein-Barr Virus

1. Symptoms
   a. Mild headache, fatigue, fever
   b. Triad: lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, exudative pharyngitis
   c. Other: hepatitis, ampicillin-induced rash
2. Complete blood cell count
   a. Hyperplasia
   b. Atypical lymphocytes (Downey cells, T cells)
3. Heterophile antibody (transient)
4. EBV–antigen-specific antibody
5. Genome detection by PCR

EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

EBV was first associated with **AfBL (endemic lymphoma)** and then Burkitt lymphoma elsewhere in the world, Hodgkin lymphoma, and several other lymphoproliferative diseases. AfBL is a poorly differentiated monoclonal B-cell lymphoma of the jaw and face that is endemic in children living in the malarial regions of Africa. EBV infection facilitates the survival of cells that undergo a chromosomal translocation that juxtaposes the *c-MYC* oncogene to a very active promoter, such as an immunoglobulin gene promoter [t(8;14), t(8;22), t(8;2)], to allow tumor growth. Virions can occasionally be seen on electron micrographs of infected material. The tumor cells are also relatively invisible to immune control. Malaria may enhance the development of AfBL by promoting the proliferation of EBV-bearing memory B cells.

EBV is also associated with **nasopharyngeal carcinoma,** which is endemic in adults in Asia. The tumor cells contain EBV DNA, but unlike Burkitt lymphoma, in which the tumor cells are derived from lymphocytes, the tumor cells of nasopharyngeal carcinoma are of epithelial origin.

Hairy Oral Leukoplakia

Hairy oral leukoplakia is an unusual manifestation of a productive EBV infection of epithelial cells characterized by lesions of the tongue and mouth. It is an opportunistic manifestation that occurs in patients with AIDS.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

EBV-induced infectious mononucleosis is diagnosed on the basis of the **symptoms** (Box 43.10), the finding of atypical lymphocytes, the presence of **lymphocytosis** (mononuclear cells constituting 60% to 70% of the white blood cell count, with 30% atypical lymphocytes), **heterophile antibody,** antibody to viral antigens, and viral DNA. Virus isolation is not practical. PCR and DNA probe analysis for the viral genome and amount of virus (virus load) and immunofluorescent identification of viral antigens are used to detect and follow the course of infection.

Atypical lymphocytes are probably the earliest detectable indication of an EBV infection. These cells appear with the onset of symptoms and disappear with resolution of the disease.

Heterophile antibody results from the nonspecific, mitogen-like activation of B cells by EBV and the production

TABLE 43.4 Serologic Profile for Epstein-Barr Virus Infection

	Mononucleosis	Heterophile Antibodies	EBV-SPECIFIC ANTIBODIES				Comment
			VCA-IgM	VCA-IgG	EA	EBNA	
Susceptible	–	–	–	–	–	–	Heterophile antibody present early in disease, anti-VCA and anti-MA present during disease, and anti-EBNA only present during convalescence
Acute primary infection	+	+	+	+	±	–	
Chronic primary infection	–	–	–	+	+	–	
Past infection	–	–	–	+	–	+	
Reactivation infection	–	–	–	+	+	+	
Burkitt lymphoma	–	–	–	+	+	+	
Nasopharyngeal carcinoma	–	–	–	+	+	+	

EA, Early antigen; *EBNA,* Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen; *IgG,* immunoglobulin G; *IgM,* immunoglobulin M; *MA,* membrane antigen; *VCA,* viral capsid antigen.
Modified from Balows, A., Hausler, W.J., Lennette, E.H. (Eds.), 1988. Laboratory Diagnosis of Infectious Diseases: Principles and Practices. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY.

of a wide repertoire of antibodies. These antibodies include an IgM heterophile antibody that recognizes the Paul-Bunnell antigen on sheep, horse, and bovine erythrocytes but not that on guinea pig kidney cells. The heterophile antibody response can usually be detected by the end of the first week of illness and lasts for as long as several months. It is an excellent indication of EBV infection in adults but is not as reliable in children or infants. The horse cell (Monospot) test and ELISA are rapid and widely used for detection of the heterophile antibody.

Serologic tests for antibody to viral antigens are a more dependable method than heterophile antibody to confirm the diagnosis of EBV mononucleosis (Table 43.4; see Fig. 43.15). EBV infection is indicated by the finding of any of the following: (1) IgM antibody to the VCA, (2) the presence of VCA antibody and the absence of EBNA antibody, or (3) elevation of antibodies to VCA and EA. The finding of both VCA and EBNA antibodies in serum indicates that the person had a previous infection. Generation of antibody to EBNA requires lysis of the infected cell and usually indicates T-cell control of active disease and its presence indicates resolution of the disease.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

No effective treatment or vaccine is available for EBV disease. After being activated by the viral protein kinase, acyclovir will reduce viral shedding but not disease. The ubiquitous nature of the virus and the potential for asymptomatic shedding make control of infection difficult. However, infection elicits lifelong immunity. Therefore the best means of preventing infectious mononucleosis is exposure to the virus early in life because the disease is more benign in children.

Cytomegalovirus

CMV is a common human pathogen, infecting approximately 1% of all newborns and at least 50% to 80% of adults by age 40. It is the most common viral cause of **congenital defects** with 1 in 150 children born infected with the virus and 1 in 750 born with or will develop permanent disabilities caused by congenital CMV. Although usually causing mild or asymptomatic disease in children and adults, CMV is particularly important as an **opportunistic pathogen in immunocompromised patients.**

BOX 43.11 Disease Mechanisms of Cytomegalovirus

Acquired from blood, tissue, and most body secretions.
Causes productive infection of macrophages, epithelial cells, and other cells.
Establishes latency in hematopoietic stem cells and monocytes
Cell-mediated immunity is required for resolution and maintenance of latency and contributes to symptoms.
The role of antibody is limited.
Suppression of cell-mediated immunity allows recurrence and severe disease.
CMV generally causes subclinical infection.

CMV, Cytomegalovirus.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

CMV is a member of the subfamily Betaherpesvirinae. It has the largest genome of the HHVs. Only a quarter of its genes are required for replication, whereas most of the other genes manipulate host interactions and the immune response. In contrast to the traditional definition of a virus, which states that a virion particle contains DNA or RNA, CMV carries specific mRNAs into the cell in the virion particle to facilitate infection. Human CMV replicates only in human cells. Fibroblasts, epithelial cells, granulocytes, macrophages, and other cells are permissive for CMV replication. Virus replication is much slower than for HSV, and CPE may not be seen for 7 to 14 days. This may facilitate the establishment of latent infection in myeloid stem cells, monocytes, lymphocytes, the stromal cells of the bone marrow, or other cells.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

CMV is an excellent parasite and readily establishes persistent and latent infections rather than an extensive lytic infection (Box 43.11). CMV is highly cell associated and is spread throughout the body within infected cells, especially

Clinical Case 43.3 A Role for Cytomegalovirus in Medulloblastoma

CMV is present in a large percentage of medulloblastomas, which is the most common malignant brain tumor in children. In a study of these tumors by Baryawno and associates (*J Clin Invest* 121:4043–4055, 2011), CMV induced inflammation and promoted the production of interleukin 6, vascular endothelial growth factor, and prostaglandin E_2, which promoted the growth of the medulloblastoma cells. Treatment with ganciclovir and a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug stopped the growth of these cells.

CMV, Cytomegalovirus.

lymphocytes and leukocytes. The virus establishes latency in hematopoietic progenitor cells in the bone marrow and monocytes. The virus reactivates on immunosuppression (e.g., corticosteroids, infection with HIV) and possibly by allogeneic stimulation (i.e., the host response to transfused or transplanted cells) and replicates in ductal epithelia to be shed in saliva, urine, breast milk, semen and other body fluids. **CMV is shed sporadically throughout life.**

Cell-mediated immunity is essential for resolving and controlling the outgrowth of CMV infection. However, CMV is an expert at immune evasion and has several means for evading innate and immune responses. The virus prevents antigen presentation to both CD8 cytotoxic T cells and CD4 T cells by preventing the expression of MHC I molecules on the cell surface and by interfering with cytokine-induced expression of MHC II molecules on antigen-presenting cells (including the infected cells). A viral protein also blocks NK-cell attack of CMV-infected cells. Similar to EBV, CMV also encodes an IL-10 analog that would inhibit TH1 protective immune responses.

CMV is a common passenger in many children and adults and may reactivate throughout life to cause transient immune responses and inflammation and influence the health of the individual. CMV has been implicated as a cofactor for medulloblastoma, leukemia, and other diseases (Clinical Case 43.3).

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND CLINICAL SYNDROMES

In most cases, CMV replicates and is shed without causing symptoms (Table 43.5). Activation and replication of CMV in the kidney and secretory glands promote its secretion in urine and bodily secretions. CMV can be isolated from urine, blood, throat washings, saliva, tears, breast milk, semen, stool, amniotic fluid, vaginal and cervical secretions, and tissues obtained for transplantation (Box 43.12 and Table 43.6). Virus can be transmitted to other individuals by means of blood transfusions and organ transplants. The congenital, oral, and sexual routes, blood transfusion, and tissue transplantation are the major means by which CMV is transmitted. CMV disease is an opportunistic disease, rarely causing symptoms in the immunocompetent host but causing serious disease in an immunosuppressed or immunodeficient person, such as a patient with AIDS or a neonate (Fig. 43.16).

TABLE 43.5 Sources of Cytomegalovirus Infection

Age Group	Source
Neonate	Transplacental transmission, intrauterine infections, cervical secretions
Baby or child	Body secretions: breast milk, saliva, tears, urine
Adult	Sexual transmission (semen), blood transfusion, organ graft

BOX 43.12 Epidemiology of Cytomegalovirus Infection

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus causes lifelong infection.
Recurrent disease is source of contagion.
Virus causes asymptomatic shedding.

Transmission

Transmission occurs via blood, organ transplants, and all secretions (urine, saliva, semen, cervical secretions, breast milk, and tears).
Virus is transmitted orally and sexually, in blood transfusions, in tissue transplants, in utero, at birth, and by nursing.

Who Is at Risk?

Babies
  Babies of mothers who experience seroconversion during term are at high risk for congenital defects
Sexually active people
Blood and organ recipients
Burn victims
Immunocompromised people: symptomatic and recurrent disease

Geography/Season

Virus is found worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

Antiviral drugs are available for serious disease.
Screening potential blood and organ donors for cytomegalovirus reduces transmission of virus.

Congenital Infection

CMV is the most prevalent viral cause of congenital disease. Approximately 15% of stillborn babies are infected with CMV. Almost 1% of all newborns in the United States are infected with CMV before birth, and a large percentage of babies are infected within the first months of life. Of these, 80% may shed virus for long periods with as many as 25% of them having hearing, eyesight, and IQ deficits that develop over time. CMV is the most common infectious cause of congenital hearing loss in the United States, and vision loss and mental retardation are also common consequences of congenital CMV infection. Approximately 1/10,000 live births will be born with **cytomegalic inclusion disease**. Disease signs include small size, thrombocytopenia, microcephaly, intracerebral calcification, jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, and rash. The risk for serious birth defects is extremely high for infants born to mothers who had primary CMV infections during their pregnancies.

TABLE 43.6 Cytomegalovirus Syndromes

Tissue	Children/Adults	Immunosuppressed Patients
Predominant presentation	Asymptomatic	Disseminated disease, severe disease
Eyes	—	Retinitis
Lungs	—	Pneumonia, pneumonitis
Gastrointestinal tract	—	Esophagitis, colitis
Nervous system	Polyneuritis, myelitis	Meningitis and encephalitis, myelitis
Lymphoid system	Mononucleosis syndrome, posttransfusion syndrome	Leukopenia, lymphocytosis
Major organs	Carditis,[a] hepatitis[a]	Hepatitis
Neonates	Deafness, intracerebral calcification, microcephaly, mental retardation	—

[a]Complication of mononucleosis or posttransfusion syndrome.

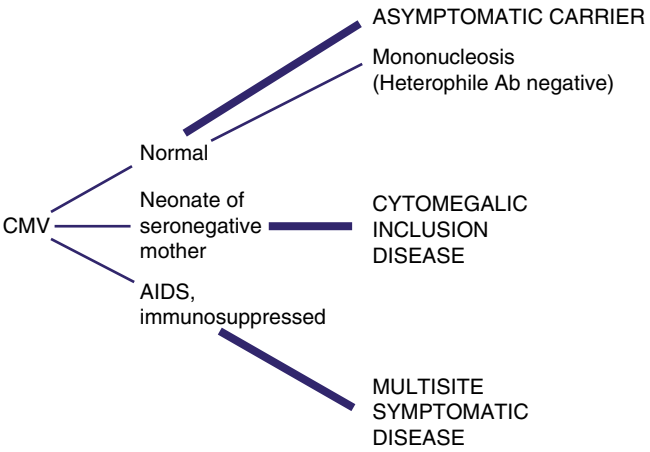


Fig. 43.16 Outcomes of cytomegalovirus *(CMV)* infections. The outcome of CMV infection depends very heavily on the immune status of the patient. *Ab,* Antibody; *AIDS,* acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

Fetuses are infected by the virus in the mother's blood (primary infection) or by virus ascending from the cervix (after a recurrence). Congenital CMV infection is best documented by isolation of the virus from the infant's urine during the first week of life.

Perinatal Infection

In the United States, approximately 60% of pregnant women are infected with CMV at term and are likely to experience reactivation of the virus during pregnancy. Approximately half the neonates born from an infected mother acquire CMV infection and become excreters of the virus at 3 to 4 weeks of age. Neonates may also acquire CMV from maternal milk or colostrum. Perinatal infection causes no clinically evident disease in healthy full-term infants. Significant clinical infection may occur in premature infants who acquire CMV from transfused blood, usually resulting in pneumonia and hepatitis.

Infection in Children and Adults

Approximately 40% of adolescents are infected with CMV, but this number increases to 50% to 85% of adults in the United States by the age of 40. CMV is more prevalent among people in low socioeconomic brackets living in crowded conditions and in people living in developing countries. CMV is a **sexually transmitted disease,** and 90% to 100% of patients attending sexually transmitted disease clinics are infected**.** The titer of the CMV in semen is the highest of that in any body secretion.

Although most CMV infections acquired in young adulthood are asymptomatic, patients may show a **heterophile-negative mononucleosis syndrome.** The symptoms of CMV disease are similar to those of EBV infection but with less severe pharyngitis and lymphadenopathy (see Fig. 43.16). Although the presence of CMV-infected cells promotes a T-cell outgrowth (atypical lymphocytosis) similar to that seen in EBV infection, heterophile antibody is not present. Because CMV does not infect the B cell, nor does it stimulate or activate the B cell, there is no heterophile antibody. CMV disease should be suspected in a patient who has heterophile-negative mononucleosis or in whom there are signs of hepatitis but results of tests for hepatitis A, B, and C are negative.

Transmission via Transfusion and Transplantation

Transmission of CMV by blood most often results in an asymptomatic infection; if symptoms are present, they typically resemble those of mononucleosis. Fever, splenomegaly, and atypical lymphocytosis usually begin 3 to 5 weeks after transfusion. Pneumonia and mild hepatitis may also occur. CMV may also be transmitted by organ transplantation (e.g., kidneys, bone marrow), and CMV infection is often reactivated in transplant recipients during periods of intense immunosuppression.

Infection in the Immunocompromised Host

CMV is a prominent opportunistic infectious agent. In immunocompromised people, it causes symptomatic primary or recurrent disease (see Table 43.6).

CMV disease of the lung **(pneumonia and pneumonitis)** is a common outcome in immunosuppressed patients and can be fatal if not treated. CMV often causes **retinitis, colitis, or esophagitis** in patients who are severely immunodeficient (e.g., patients with AIDS). Interstitial pneumonia and encephalitis also may be caused by CMV but may be difficult to distinguish from infections caused by other opportunistic agents. CMV esophagitis may mimic candidal esophagitis. A smaller percentage of immunocompromised patients may experience CMV infection of the gastrointestinal tract. Patients with CMV colitis usually have diarrhea, weight loss, anorexia, and fever. Effective anti-HIV therapy has reduced the incidence of these diseases.

CMV is also responsible for the **failure of many kidney transplants.** The graft may succumb to virus replication or cytolytic immune responses to the viral antigens. CMV can also infect the immunosuppressed host.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Histology

The histologic hallmark of CMV infection is the **cytomegalic cell,** which is an **enlarged cell** (25 to 35 mm in

diameter) that contains a dense, **central**, **"owl's eye," basophilic intranuclear inclusion body** (Fig. 43.17 and Table 43.7). Such infected cells may be found in any tissue of the body and in urine and are thought to be epithelial in origin. The inclusions are readily seen with Papanicolaou or hematoxylin-eosin staining.

Antigen and Genome Detection

A rapid, sensitive diagnosis can be obtained by detection of viral antigen, using immunofluorescence or an ELISA, or the viral genome, using PCR and related techniques in cells of a biopsy, blood, bronchoalveolar lavage, or urine sample (see Chapter 5). Distinction of active CMV from latent CMV requires detection of CMV mRNA or large amounts of DNA in blood.

Culture

CMV is grown in diploid fibroblast cell cultures and normally must be maintained for at least 4 to 6 weeks because the characteristic CPE develops very slowly in specimens with very low titers of the virus. Isolation of CMV is especially reliable in immunocompromised patients, who often have high titers of virus in their secretions. For example, in the semen of patients with AIDS, titers of viable virus may be greater than 10^6.

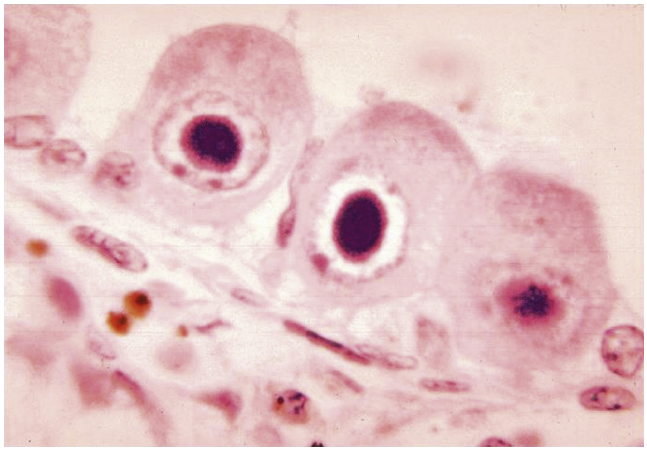


Fig. 43.17 Cytomegalovirus-infected cell with basophilic nuclear inclusion body.

TABLE 43.7 Laboratory Tests for Diagnosing Cytomegalovirus Infection

Test	Finding
Cytology and histology[a]	"Owl's-eye" basophilic nuclear inclusion body Antigen detection In situ DNA probe hybridization **PCR**[b]
Cell culture	Cytologic effect in human diploid fibroblasts (slow) Immunofluorescence detection of early antigens (faster) **PCR (fastest)**
Serology	Only for primary infection

[a]Samples taken for analysis include urine, saliva, blood, bronchoalveolar lavage specimens, and tissue biopsy specimens.
[b]most accepted approach.
PCR, Polymerase chain reaction.

More rapid results are achieved by centrifuging a patient's sample onto cells grown on a coverslip within a shell vial. Specimens are examined after 1 to 2 days of incubation by indirect immunofluorescence for the presence of one or more of the immediate early viral antigens.

Serology

Seroconversion is usually an excellent marker for primary CMV infection. Titers of CMV-specific IgM antibody may be very high in patients with AIDS. However, CMV-specific IgM antibody may also develop during the reactivation of CMV; therefore it is not a dependable indicator of primary infection.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Ganciclovir (dihydroxypropoxymethyl guanine), **valganciclovir** (valyl ester of ganciclovir), **cidofovir**, and **foscarnet** (phosphonoformic acid) have been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of specific diseases resulting from CMV infections of immunosuppressed patients (see Box 43.5). Ganciclovir is structurally similar to ACV; it is phosphorylated and activated by a CMV-encoded protein kinase, inhibits the viral DNA polymerase, and causes DNA termination (see Chapter 40). Ganciclovir is more toxic than ACV. Ganciclovir can be used to treat severe CMV infections in immunocompromised patients. Valganciclovir is a prodrug of ganciclovir that can be taken orally, is converted to ganciclovir in the liver, and has better bioavailability than ganciclovir. Cidofovir is a phosphorylated cytidine nucleoside analog that does not require a viral enzyme for activation. Foscarnet is a simple molecule that inhibits the viral DNA polymerase by mimicking the pyrophosphate portion of nucleotide triphosphates.

CMV spreads mainly by sexual, tissue transplantation, and transfusion routes; and spread by these means is preventable. Semen is a major vector for the sexual spread of CMV to both heterosexual and homosexual contacts. The use of condoms or abstinence would limit viral spread. Transmission of the virus can also be reduced through the screening of potential blood and organ donors for CMV seronegativity. Screening is especially important for donors of blood transfusions to be given to infants. Although congenital and perinatal transmission of CMV cannot effectively be prevented, a seropositive mother is least likely to produce a baby with symptomatic CMV disease. No vaccine for CMV is available.

Human Herpesviruses 6 and 7

The two variants of HHV-6, HHV-6A and HHV-6B, and HHV-7, are members of the genus *Roseolovirus* of the subfamily Betaherpesvirinae. HHV-6 was first isolated from the blood of patients with AIDS and grown in T-cell cultures. It was identified as a herpesvirus because of its characteristic morphology within infected cells. Similar to CMV, HHV-6 is lymphotropic and ubiquitous. At least 45% of the population is seropositive for HHV-6B and HHV-7 by age 2 years, and almost 100% by adulthood. HHV-6B and HHV-7 cause a common disease of children, **exanthem subitum,**

commonly known as **roseola.** HHV-7 was isolated in a similar manner from the T cells of a patient with AIDS who was also infected with HHV-6.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

HHV-6 infection occurs very early in life. The virus replicates in the salivary gland, is shed, and is transmitted in saliva.

HHV-6 primarily infects lymphocytes, especially CD4 T cells. HHV-6 establishes a latent infection in hematopoietic progenitor cells and T cells but may replicate on activation of the cells. Cells in which the virus is replicating appear large and refractile and have occasional intranuclear and intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies. Similar to the replication of CMV, the replication of HHV-6 is controlled by cell-mediated immunity. Similar to CMV, the virus is likely to become activated in patients with AIDS or other lymphoproliferative and immunosuppressive disorders and cause opportunistic disease.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Exanthem subitum, or roseola, is caused by either HHV-6B or HHV-7 and is one of the five classic childhood exanthems previously mentioned (Box 43.13 and Fig. 43.18). It is characterized by the rapid onset of high fever of a few days' duration, which is followed by a rash on the trunk and face, and then it spreads and lasts only 24 to 48 hours. The presence of infected T cells or the activation of delayed-type hypersensitivity T cells in the skin may be the cause of the rash. The disease is effectively controlled and resolved by cell-mediated immunity, but the virus establishes a lifelong latent infection of T cells. Although usually benign, HHV-6 is the most common cause of febrile seizures in childhood (aged 6 to 24 months).

HHV-6 may also cause a mononucleosis syndrome and lymphadenopathy in adults and may be a cofactor in the pathogenesis of AIDS. Similar to CMV, HHV-6A and HHV-6B may reactivate in transplant patients and contribute to graft failure. HHV-6A and HHV-6B have also been associated with multiple sclerosis, Alzheimer disease, and chronic fatigue syndrome. HHV-6 infection or reactivation is also associated with the drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS) syndrome.

In approximately 1% of individuals in the United States and the United Kingdom, HHV-6 is integrated into the telomeres of every chromosome and can be genetically transmitted to offspring. The virus may be reactivated by certain drugs (including antibiotics and steroids), produce virus, and may cause fatigue, cognitive dysfunction, and other problems.

BOX 43.13 Clinical Summaries

Herpes Simplex Virus

Primary oral herpes: A 5-year-old boy has an ulcerative rash with vesicles around the mouth. Vesicles and ulcers are also present within the mouth. Results of a Tzanck smear show multinucleated giant cells (syncytia) and Cowdry type A inclusion bodies. The lesions resolve after 18 days.

Recurrent oral HSV: A 22-year-old medical student studying for examinations feels a twinge at the crimson border of his lip and 24 hours later has a single vesicular lesion at the site.

Recurrent genital HSV: A sexually active 32-year-old woman has a recurrence of ulcerative vaginal lesions with pain, itching, dysuria, and systemic symptoms 48 hours after being exposed to ultraviolet B light while skiing. The lesions resolve within 8 days. Results of a Papanicolaou smear show multinucleated giant cells (syncytia) and Cowdry type A inclusion bodies.

Encephalitis HSV: A patient has focal neurologic symptoms and seizures. Magnetic resonance imaging results show destruction of a temporal lobe. Erythrocytes are present in the cerebrospinal fluid, and polymerase chain reaction is positive for viral DNA.

Varicella-Zoster Virus

Varicella (chickenpox): A 5-year-old boy develops a fever and a maculopapular rash on his abdomen 14 days after meeting with his cousin, who also developed the rash. Successive crops of lesions appear for 3 to 5 days, and the rash spreads peripherally.

Zoster (shingles): A 65-year-old woman has a belt of vesicles along the thoracic dermatome and experiences severe pain localized to the region.

Epstein-Barr Virus

Infectious mononucleosis: A 23-year-old college student develops malaise, fatigue, fever, swollen glands, and pharyngitis. After empirical treatment with ampicillin for a sore throat, a rash appears. Heterophile antibody and atypical lymphocytes are detected from blood.

Cytomegalovirus

Congenital CMV disease: A neonate exhibits microcephaly, hepatosplenomegaly, and rash. Intracerebral calcification is noted on a radiograph. The mother had symptoms similar to mononucleosis during the third trimester of her pregnancy.

Human Herpesvirus 6

Roseola (exanthem subitum): A 4-year-old child experiences a rapid onset of high fever that lasts for 3 days and then suddenly returns to normal. Two days later, a maculopapular rash appears on the trunk and spreads to other parts of the body.

CMV, Cytomegalovirus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus.

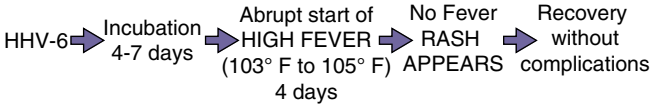


Fig. 43.18 Time course of symptoms of exanthem subitum (roseola) caused by human herpesvirus 6 *(HHV-6).* Compare these symptoms and this time course with those of fifth disease, which is caused by parvovirus B19 (see Chapter 45).

Other Human Herpesviruses

HUMAN HERPESVIRUS 8 (KAPOSI SARCOMA–ASSOCIATED HERPESVIRUS)

HHV-8 DNA sequences were discovered in biopsy specimens of **Kaposi sarcoma, primary effusion lymphoma** (a rare type of B-cell lymphoma), **and multicentric**

Castleman disease through the use of PCR analysis. Kaposi sarcoma is one of the characteristic opportunistic diseases associated with AIDS. Genome sequence analysis showed that the virus was unique and a member of the subfamily Gammaherpesvirinae. Similar to EBV, the B cell is the primary target cell for HHV-8, but the virus also infects a limited number of endothelial cells, monocytes, and epithelial and sensory nerve cells. Within the Kaposi sarcoma tumors, endothelial spindle cells contain the virus.

HHV-8 encodes several proteins that resemble human proteins and promote the growth and prevent apoptosis of the infected and surrounding cells. These proteins include an IL-6 homolog (growth and antiapoptosis), a Bcl-2 analog (antiapoptosis), chemokines, and a chemokine receptor. These proteins can promote growth and development of polyclonal Kaposi sarcoma cells in AIDS patients and others. HHV-8 DNA is present and is associated with peripheral blood lymphocytes, most likely B cells, in approximately 10% of immunocompetent people. HHV-8 is more prevalent in certain geographic areas (Italy, Greece, Africa) and in patients with AIDS. Kaposi sarcoma is the most common cancer in sub-Saharan Africa. The virus is most likely a sexually transmitted disease but may be spread by other means.

Herpesvirus simiae (B virus) (subfamily Alphaherpesvirinae, the simian counterpart of HSV) is indigenous to Asian monkeys. The virus is transmitted to humans by monkey bites or saliva, or even by tissues and cells widely used in virology laboratories. Once infected, a human may have pain, localized redness, and vesicles at the site where the virus entered. An encephalopathy develops and is often fatal; most people who survive have serious brain damage. PCR or serologic tests can be used to establish the diagnosis of B-virus infections. Virus isolation requires special facilities.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Burrell, C., Howard, C., Murphy, F., 2016. Fenner and White's Medical Virology, fifth ed. Academic, New York.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.

McGeoch, D.J., 1989. The genomes of the human herpesviruses: contents, relationships, and evolution. Annu. Rev. Microbiol. 43, 235–265.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Riddell, A., Jeffery-Smith, A., Tong CYT. Herpesviruses, *Medicine* 45:12, 767–771

Strauss, J.H., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

Herpes Simplex Virus

Animations of steps of HSV infection and replication (website): http://darwin.bio.uci.edu/~faculty/wagner/movieindex.html. Accessed July 25, 2018.

Genital herpes Cdc fact sheet https://www.cdc.gov/std/herpes/stdfact-herpes.htm. Accessed July 25, 2018.

Arduino, P.G., Porter, S.R., 2008. Herpes simplex virus type 1 infection: overview on relevant clinico-pathological features. J. Oral. Pathol. Med. 37, 107–121.

Beauman, J.G., 2005. Genital herpes: a review. Am. Fam. Physician. 72, 1527–1534.

Kimberlin, D.W., 2004. Neonatal herpes simplex virus infection. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 17, 1–13.

Rouse, B.T., 1992. Herpes Simplex Virus: Pathogenesis, Immunobiology and Control, Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 179. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, New York.

Varicella-Zoster Virus

Abendroth, A., et al., 2010. Varicella-Zoster Virus Infections, Curr Top Microbiol Immunol, vol. 342. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg.

Chia-Chi Ku, V., Besser, J., Abendroth, A., 2005. Varicella-zoster virus pathogenesis and immunobiology: new concepts emerging from investigations with the SCIDhu mouse model. J. Virol. 79, 2651–2658.

Gnann, J.W., Whitley, R.J., 2002. Herpes zoster. N. Engl. J. Med. 347, 340–346.

Epstein-Barr Virus

Basgoz, N., Preiksaitis, J.K., 1995. Post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder. Infect. Dis. Clin. North. Am. 9, 901–923.

Bennett, N.J., 2017. Pediatric Mononucleosis and Epstein-Barr Virus Infection. https://emedicine.medscape.com/article/963894-overview#a1.

Munz, C., 2015. Epstein Barr Virus Volumes 1 and 2. Curr. Topic. Microbiol. Immunol. 390, 391. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-22834-1. 2015, ISBN 978-3-319-22834-1.

Sugden, B., 1992. EBV's open sesame. Trends. Biochem. Sci. 17, 239–240.

Takada, K., 2001. Epstein-Barr Virus and Human Cancer, Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 258. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Thorley-Lawson, D.A., 1996. Epstein-Barr virus and the B cell: that's all it takes. Trends. Microbiol. 4, 204–208.

Thorley-Lawson, D.A., Babcock, G.J., 1999. A model for persistent infection with Epstein-Barr virus: the stealth virus of human B cells. Life. Sci. 65, 1433–1453.

Cytomegalovirus and Human Herpesviruses 6, 7, and 8

Bigoni, B., Dolcetti, R., de Lellis, L., et al., 1996. Human herpesvirus 8 is present in the lymphoid system of healthy persons and can reactivate in the course of AIDS. J. Infect. Dis. 173, 542–549.

Campadelli-Fiume, G., Mirandoa, P., Menotti, L., 1999. Human herpesvirus 6: an emerging pathogen. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 5, 353–366. Website: www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol5no3/campadelli. Accessed May 14, 2012.

CDC home page on CMV (website): www.cdc.gov/cmv/index.html. Accessed July 25, 2018.

De Bolle, L., Naesens, L., De Clercq, E., 2005. Update on human herpesvirus 6 biology, clinical features, and therapy. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 18, 217–245.

Edelman, D.C., 2005. Human herpesvirus 8—a novel human pathogen. Virol J 2, 78–110.

Flamand, L., Komaroff, A.L., Arbuckle, J.H., et al., 2010. Review, part 1: human herpesvirus-6—basic biology, diagnostic testing, and antiviral efficacy. J. Med. Virol. 82, 1560–1568.

Gnann, J.W., Pellett, P.E., Jaffe, H.W., 2000. Human herpesvirus 8 and Kaposi sarcoma in persons infected with human immunodeficiency virus. Clin. Infect. Dis. 30, S72–S76.

HHV-6 Foundation (website): http://hhv-6foundation.org/. Accessed July 25, 2018.

Integrated HHV-6 (website): http://hhv-6foundation.org/wp-content/uploads/2011/12/Pellett-2011-CIHHV-6-Q-A.pdf. Accessed July 25, 2018.

Picarda, G., Benedict, C.A., 2018. Cytomegalovirus: shape-shifting the immune system. J. Immunol. 200, 3881–3889. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1800171.

Salvaggio MR: Human herpesvirus type 6 (website). www.emedicine.com/MED/topic1035.htm. Accessed July 25, 2018.

Shenk, T.E., Stinski, M.F., 2008. Human Cytomegalovirus. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Stoeckle, M.Y., 2000. The spectrum of human herpesvirus 6 infection: from roseola infantum to adult disease. Annu. Rev. Med. 51, 423–430.

Turbett, S.E., Tsiaras, W.G., McDermott, S., Eng, G., 2018. HHV6 and DRESS: Case 26-2018: A 48-Year-Old man with fever, chills, myalgias, and rash. N. Engl. J. Med. 379, 775–785. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMcpc1807494.

Wyatt, L.S., Frenkel, N., 1992. Human herpesvirus 7 is a constitutive inhabitant of adult human saliva. J. Virol. 66, 3206–3209.

Yamanishi, K., Okuno, T., Shiraki, K., et al., 1988. Identification of human herpesvirus-6 as a causal agent for exanthema subitum. Lancet 1, 1065–1067.

Case Studies and Questions

A 2-year-old child with fever for 2 days has not been eating and has been crying often. On examination, the physician notes that the mucous membranes of the mouth are covered with numerous shallow, pale ulcerations. A few red papules and blisters are also observed around the border of the lips. The symptoms worsen over the next 5 days and then slowly resolve, with complete healing after 2 weeks.

1. The physician suspects that this is an HSV infection. How would the diagnosis be confirmed?

2. How could you determine whether this infection was caused by HSV-1 or HSV-2?

3. What immune responses were most helpful in resolving this infection, and when were they activated?

4. HSV escapes complete immune resolution by causing latent and recurrent infections. What was the site of latency in this child, and what might promote future recurrences?

5. What were the most probable means by which the child was infected with HSV?

6. Which antiviral drugs are available for the treatment of HSV infections? What are their targets? Were they indicated for this child? Why or why not?

A 17-year-old high school student has had low-grade fever and malaise for several days, followed by sore throat, swollen cervical lymph nodes, and increasing fatigue. The patient also notes some discomfort in the left upper quadrant of the abdomen. The sore throat, lymphadenopathy, and fever gradually resolve over the next 2 weeks, but the patient's full energy level does not return for another 6 weeks.

7. What laboratory tests would confirm the diagnosis of EBV-induced infectious mononucleosis and distinguish it from CMV infection?

8. To what characteristic diagnostic feature of the disease does mononucleosis refer?

9. What causes the swollen glands and fatigue?

10. Who is at greatest risk for a serious outcome of an EBV infection? What is the outcome? Why?

Thought Question: The herpesviruses are ubiquitous and establish lifelong latent-recurrent infections. Immune responses are continuously activated to prevent recurrence. The viruses recur with different frequency depending on the person, and although the recurrence may be asymptomatic, it will elicit immune and inflammatory responses. Consider for a moment how this can influence the health of the individual over his or her lifetime. The immune stimulation may be helpful, harmful, or have no consequence. The presence of the virus within cells during latency may have no effect or may alter the growth or function of the cell.

44 Poxviruses

A goat herder has a large vesicular lesion on his index finger.

1. How does the orf virus infecting this individual resemble smallpox?
2. What was the source, and how was it acquired?
3. How is replication of this virus different from other DNA viruses?
4. Why was it possible to eradicate wild-type smallpox virus?

A 57-year-old woman who has rheumatoid arthritis and treated with a tumor necrosis factor (TNF) antagonist notices a large number of umbilicated papules on the skin of her upper thighs.

5. How does the molluscum contagiosum virus (MCV) resemble and differ from other poxviruses?
6. What was the source, and how was it acquired?
7. What other conditions increase susceptibility to this infection and presentation?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

POXVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Molluscum, smallpox, zoonosis, vaccinia vaccine, cytoplasmic replication

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Very large, enveloped with complex morphology, linear DNA genome fused at ends, virus encodes DNA-dependent RNA and DNA-dependent DNA polymerases
- Cell-mediated immunity essential for control
- Molluscum contagiosum stimulates cell growth to cause wartlike growth; only infects humans
- Smallpox: lytic, only infects humans, vesicles appear all at once, bioterror agent
- Vaccinia, orf: lytic viruses, zoonotic

Epidemiology

- Smallpox transmitted by aerosols, direct contact; all others only by contact

Diagnosis

- Polymerase chain reaction genome analysis of lesion fluid

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Vaccinia virus as vaccine for smallpox
- Quarantine

The poxviruses include the human viruses **variola (smallpox)** (genus *Orthopoxvirus*) and **molluscum contagiosum** (genus *Molluscipoxvirus*) and some viruses that naturally infect animals but can cause incidental infection in humans **(zoonoses).** Many of these viruses share antigenic determinants with smallpox, allowing the use of an animal poxvirus for a human vaccine.

In 18th century England, smallpox accounted for 7% to 12% of all deaths and the deaths of one-third of children. However, the development of the first live vaccine in 1796 and the later worldwide distribution of this vaccine led to eradication of smallpox by 1980. As a result, reference stocks of smallpox virus in two World Health Organization (WHO) laboratories were destroyed in 1996 after an international agreement to do so was reached. Unfortunately, smallpox did not disappear. Stocks of the virus still exist in the United States and Russia. While the world was successfully eliminating natural smallpox, the former Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR) was stockpiling immense amounts of weaponized smallpox virus for biowarfare. Smallpox is considered a *category A agent* by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), along with anthrax, plague, botulism, tularemia, and viral hemorrhagic fevers because of their great potential as bioterrorism-biowarfare agents capable of large-scale dissemination and serious disease. The potential for these stocks of smallpox to be acquired and used by a terrorist has been the impetus to renew interest in developing new smallpox vaccine programs and antiviral drugs.

On a positive note, the vaccinia and canarypox viruses have found a beneficial use as gene delivery vectors and for the development of hybrid vaccines. These hybrid viruses contain and express the genes of other infectious agents, and infection results in immunization against both agents.

Structure and Replication

Poxviruses are the largest viruses and are almost visible on light microscopy (Box 44.1). They measure 230 × 300 nm and are ovoid to brick shaped with a complex morphology. The poxvirus virion particle must carry many enzymes, including a deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)-dependent ribonucleic acid (RNA) polymerase, to allow viral messenger RNA (mRNA) synthesis to occur in the cytoplasm. The viral genome consists of a large, double-stranded, linear DNA that is fused at both ends. The structure and replication of vaccinia virus is representative of the other poxviruses (Fig. 44.1). The genome of vaccinia virus consists of approximately 189,000 base pairs.

The replication of poxviruses is unique among the DNA-containing viruses in that the entire multiplication cycle

takes place within the host cell cytoplasm (Fig. 44.2). Thus poxviruses must encode the enzymes required for mRNA and DNA synthesis and activities other DNA viruses normally obtain from the host cell.

After binding to a cell-surface receptor, the poxvirus outer envelope fuses with cellular membranes, either at the cell surface or within the cell. Early gene transcription is initiated on removal of the outer membrane. The virion core contains a specific transcriptional activator and all the enzymes necessary for transcription, including a multisubunit RNA polymerase, as well as enzymes for polyadenylate addition and capping mRNA. Among the early proteins produced is an uncoating protein (uncoatase) that removes the core membrane, liberating viral DNA into the cell cytoplasm. Viral DNA then replicates in electron-dense cytoplasmic inclusions (Guarnieri inclusion bodies), referred to as **factories.** Late viral mRNA for structural, virion, and other proteins is produced after DNA replication. In poxviruses, unlike other viruses, the membranes assemble around the core factories. Approximately 10,000 viral particles are produced per infected cell. Different forms of viruses are released by exocytosis or on cell lysis, but both are infectious.

MCV infection proceeds similarly to the other poxviruses but is restricted to keratinocytes, stimulates the growth of the cell, prevents apoptosis, inhibits inflammation, and is not cytolytic. Like human papillomaviruses, the virus is released when the keratinocyte matures and senesces.

BOX 44.1 Unique Properties of Poxviruses

Largest, most complex viruses.
Have complex, oval- to brick-shaped morphology with internal structure.
Have a linear, double-stranded DNA genome with fused ends.
DNA viruses that replicate in the cytoplasm.
Encodes and carries all proteins necessary for mRNA synthesis.
Also encodes proteins for functions such as DNA synthesis, nucleotide scavenging, and immune escape mechanisms.
Assembled in inclusion bodies (Guarnieri bodies; factories), where it acquires its outer membranes.

Pathogenesis and Immunity

After being inhaled, smallpox virus replicates in the upper respiratory tract (Fig. 44.3). Dissemination occurs via lymphatic and cell-associated viremic spread. Internal and dermal tissues are inoculated after a second, more intense viremia, causing simultaneous eruption of the characteristic "pocks." Molluscum contagiosum and the other poxviruses, however, are acquired through direct contact with lesions and do not spread extensively. Molluscum contagiosum stimulates cell growth and causes a wartlike lesion rather than a lytic infection.

The poxviruses encode many proteins that facilitate their replication and pathogenesis in the host. They include proteins that initially stimulate host cell growth and then lead to cell lysis and viral spread.

Cell-mediated immunity is essential for resolving a poxvirus infection. However, up to 30% of the genome of poxviruses is devoted to activities that help the virus evade immune control, including proteins that impede the interferon, complement, inflammatory, antibody, and cell-mediated protective responses. In addition, these viruses can spread cell to cell and avoid antibody. The disease mechanisms of poxviruses are summarized in Box 44.2.

Epidemiology

Smallpox and molluscum contagiosum are strictly human viruses. Smallpox is transmitted by aerosols and by contact with lesion material or by a fomite. Molluscum contagiosum is spread by direct contact (e.g., sexual contact, wrestling, self-inoculation) or by fomites (e.g., towels). In contrast, the natural hosts for the other poxviruses are vertebrates other than humans (e.g., cow, sheep, goats), and they infect humans only through accidental or occupational exposure (zoonosis). A recent outbreak of monkeypox in the United States is such an example. The infected individuals had purchased prairie dog pets that had been in contact with Gambian giant rats, which were the probable source of the virus. The revival of smallpox vaccination of military personnel has brought with it incidences of vaccine-mediated (vaccinia) disease in contacts.

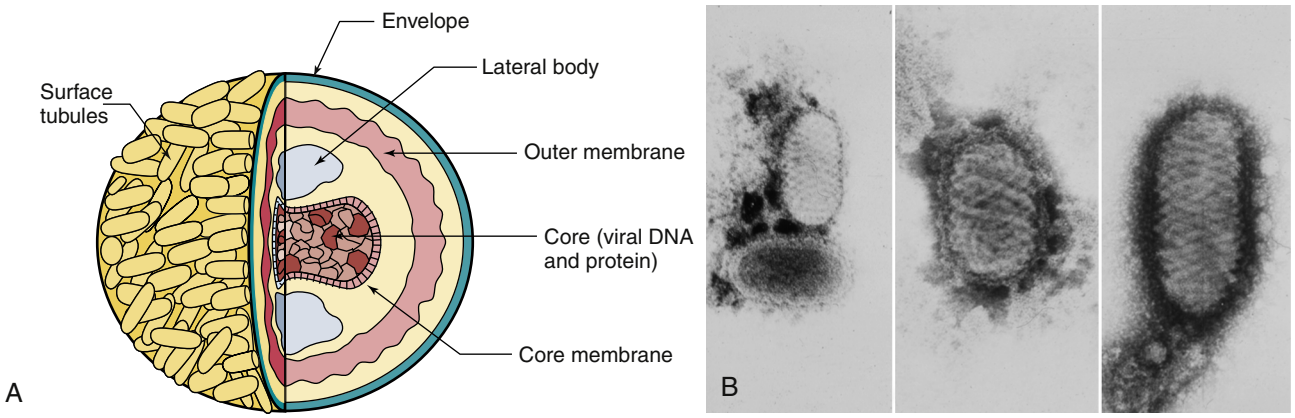


Fig. 44.1 (A) Structure of the vaccinia virus. Within the virion, the core assumes the shape of a dumbbell because of the large lateral bodies. Virions have a double membrane; the "outer membrane" assembles around the core in the cytoplasm, and the virus leaves the cell by exocytosis or on cell lysis. (B) Electron micrographs of orf virus. Note its complex structure.

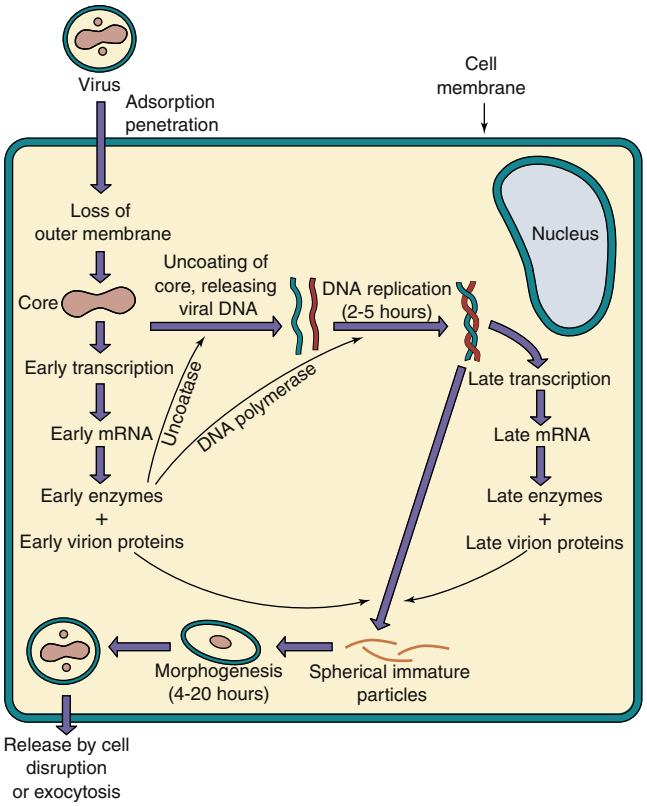


Fig. 44.2 Replication of vaccinia virus. The core is released into the cytoplasm, where virion enzymes initiate transcription of early genes. A viral-encoded "uncoatase" enzyme then causes the release of DNA. Viral polymerase replicates the genome, and late transcription occurs. DNA and protein are assembled into cores within the core membrane. An outer membrane shrouds the core containing the lateral bodies and the enzymes required for infectivity. The virion is exocytosed or is released by cell lysis.

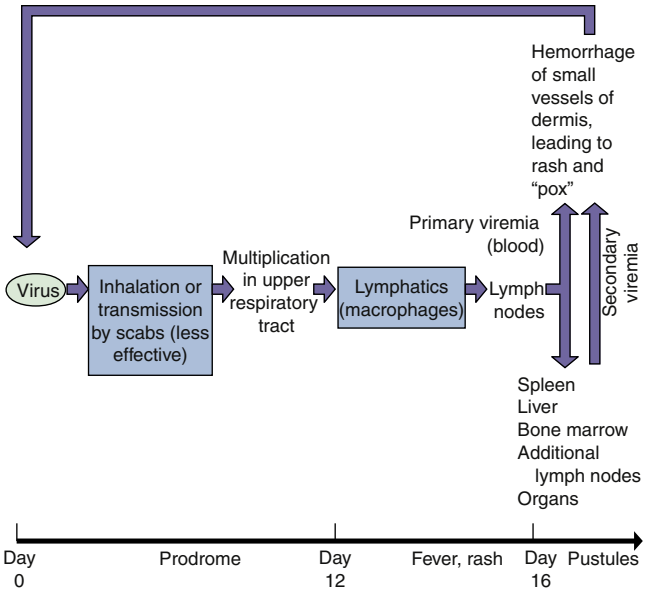


Fig. 44.3 Spread of smallpox within the body. The virus enters and replicates in the respiratory tract without causing symptoms. The virus infects macrophages, which enter the lymphatic system and carry the virus to regional lymph nodes. The virus then replicates and initiates a viremia, causing the infection to spread to the spleen, bone marrow, lymph nodes, liver, and all organs, followed by the skin (rash). A secondary viremia causes the development of additional lesions throughout the host, followed by death or recovery with or without sequelae. Recovery from smallpox was associated with prolonged immunity and lifelong protection.

Smallpox (variola) was very contagious and, as just noted, was spread primarily by the respiratory route. It was also spread less efficiently through close contact with dried virus on clothes or other materials. Despite the severity of the disease and its tendency to spread, several factors contributed to its elimination, as listed in Box 44.3.

Clinical Syndromes

The diseases associated with poxviruses are listed in Table 44.1.

SMALLPOX

The two variants of smallpox disease were variola major, which was associated with a mortality rate of 15% to 40%, and variola minor, which was associated with a mortality rate of 1%. Smallpox was usually initiated by infection of the respiratory tract, with subsequent involvement of local lymph glands, which in turn led to viremia.

The symptoms and course of the disease are presented in Fig. 44.3, and the characteristic rash is shown in Fig. 44.4. After a 5- to 17-day incubation period, the infected person experienced high fever, fatigue, severe headache, backache, and malaise, followed by the vesicular rash in the mouth

BOX 44.2 Disease Mechanisms of Poxvirus

Smallpox is initiated by respiratory tract infection and is spread mainly by the lymphatic system and cell-associated viremia.
Molluscum contagiosum and other poxviruses are transmitted by contact.
Virus may cause initial stimulation of cell growth and then cell lysis.
Virus encodes immune evasion mechanisms.
Cell-mediated immunity and humoral immunity are important for resolution.
Most poxviruses share antigenic determinants, allowing preparation of "safe" live vaccines from animal poxviruses.

BOX 44.3 Properties of Natural Smallpox That Led to Its Eradication

Viral Characteristics

Exclusive human host range (no animal reservoirs or vectors)
Single serotype (immunization protected against all infections)
Shares antigenic determinants with other pox viruses.

Disease Characteristics

Consistent disease presentation with visible pustules (identification of sources of contagion allowed quarantine and vaccination of contacts)

Vaccine

Immunization with animal poxviruses protects against smallpox
Stable, inexpensive, and easy-to-administer vaccine
Presence of scar, indicating successful vaccination

Public Health Service

Successful worldwide World Health Organization program combining vaccination and quarantine

TABLE 44.1 Diseases Associated with Poxviruses

Virus	Disease	Source	Location
Variola	Smallpox (now extinct)	Humans	Extinct
Vaccinia	Used for smallpox vaccination	Laboratory product	—
Orf	Localized lesion	Zoonosis: sheep, goats	Worldwide
Cowpox	Localized lesion	Zoonosis: rodents, cats, cows	Europe
Pseudocowpox	Milker nodule	Zoonosis: dairy cows	Worldwide
Monkeypox	Generalized disease	Zoonosis: monkeys, squirrels	Africa
Bovine papular stomatitis virus	Localized lesion	Zoonosis: calves, beef cattle	Worldwide
Tanapox	Localized lesion	Rare zoonosis: monkeys	Africa
Yabapox	Localized lesion	Rare zoonosis: monkeys, baboons	Africa
Molluscum contagiosum	Many skin lesions	Humans	Worldwide

Modified from Balows, A., Hausler, W.J., Lennette, E.H. (Eds.), 1988. Laboratory Diagnosis of Infectious Diseases: Principles and Practice, vol. 2. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY.

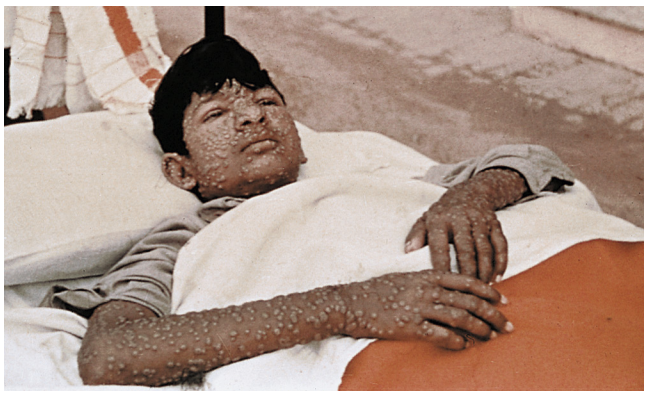


Fig. 44.4 Child with smallpox. Note the characteristic rash.

and soon after on the body. Vomiting, diarrhea, and excessive bleeding would quickly follow. The simultaneous outbreak of the vesicular rash distinguishes smallpox from the vesicles of varicella-zoster, which erupt in successive crops.

Smallpox was the first disease to be controlled by immunization, and its eradication is one of the greatest triumphs of public health. Eradication resulted from a massive WHO campaign to vaccinate all susceptible people, especially those exposed to anyone with the disease, interrupting the chain of human-to-human transmission. The campaign began in 1967 and succeeded. The last case of naturally acquired infection was reported in 1977, and eradication of the disease was acknowledged in 1980.

Variolation, an early approach to immunization, involved inoculation of susceptible people with the virulent smallpox pus. It was first performed in the Far East and later in England. Cotton Mather introduced the practice to America. Variolation was associated with a fatality rate of approximately 1%, which is a better risk than that associated with smallpox itself. In 1796, Jenner developed and then popularized a vaccine using the less virulent cowpox virus, which shares antigenic determinants with smallpox.

Renewed interest is being paid to antiviral drugs that are effective against smallpox and other poxviruses. Cidofovir, a nucleotide analog capable of inhibiting the viral DNA polymerase, is effective and approved for treatment of poxvirus infections. Newer, safer vaccines are being stockpiled in response to concerns regarding the use of smallpox in biowarfare.

Clinical Case 44.1 **Vaccinia Infection in Vaccinated Contacts**

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (*MMWR* 56:417–419, 2007) described the case of a woman who visited the public health clinic in Alaska because the pain from vaginal tears had increased over the course of 10 days. There was no fever, itching, or dysuria. Clinical examination showed two shallow ulcers, redness, and vaginal discharge. There was no inguinal lymphadenopathy. A viral specimen from the lesion was identified by the CDC as the vaccine strain of vaccinia virus. Presence of the virus was identified by a variation of a polymerase chain reaction test, which produces characteristic vaccinia DNA fragments from the genome. Although the woman routinely insisted on using condoms during sex, a condom broke during vaginal intercourse with a new male sex partner. The male partner was in the U.S. military and had been vaccinated for smallpox 3 days before initiating his relationship with the woman. Virus from the lesion was placed on the condom or into the site. Military and other personnel are receiving vaccinia immunization for protection against weaponized smallpox. This increases the potential for unintentional transmission of the vaccinia vaccine virus. Other cases of vaccine-related vaccinia infection have included infants and individuals with atopic dermatitis, who had more severe consequences.

VACCINIA AND VACCINE-RELATED DISEASE

Vaccinia is the virus used for the smallpox vaccine (Clinical Case 44.1). Although thought to be derived from cowpox, it may be a hybrid or other poxvirus. The vaccination procedure consists of scratching live virus into the patient's skin with a bifurcated needle and then observing for the development of vesicles and pustules to confirm a "take." As the incidence of smallpox waned, however, it became apparent that there were more complications related to vaccination

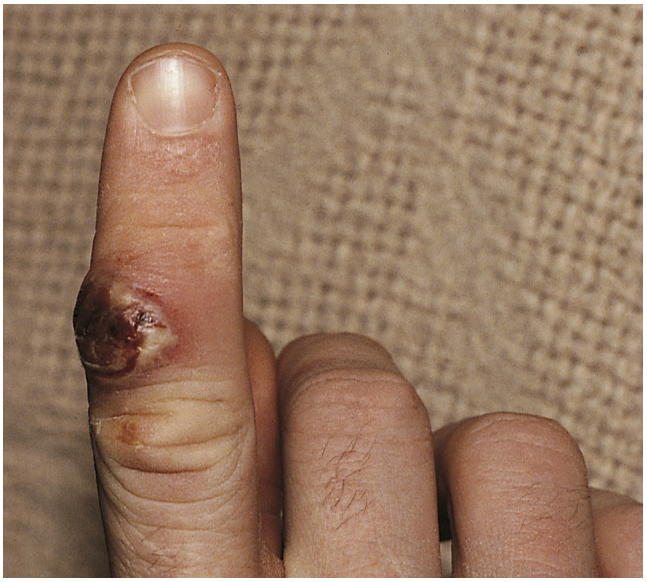


Fig. 44.5 Orf lesion on the finger of a taxidermist. (Courtesy Joe Meyers, MD, Akron, Ohio.)

than cases of smallpox. Several of these complications were severe and even fatal. Therefore routine smallpox vaccination began to be discontinued in the 1970s and was totally discontinued after 1980, but it has been reintroduced for military personnel and first responders in case of biowarfare.

Complications from vaccination included encephalitis and progressive infection (vaccinia necrosum), the latter occurring occasionally in immunocompromised patients who were inadvertently vaccinated. Recent cases of vaccine-related disease have been noted in family members and contacts of immunized military personnel (see Clinical Case 44.1). The virus was transmitted to these individuals by contact with vesicular fluid. They can be treated with vaccinia immune globulin and antiviral drugs.

ORF, COWPOX, AND MONKEYPOX

Human infection with the orf (poxvirus of sheep and goat) or cowpox (vaccinia) virus is usually an occupational hazard resulting from direct contact with lesions on the animal. A single nodular lesion usually forms on the point of contact, such as the fingers, hand, or forearm, and is hemorrhagic (cowpox) or granulomatous (orf or pseudocowpox) (Fig. 44.5). Vesicular lesions frequently develop and then regress in 25 to 35 days, generally without scar formation. The lesions may be mistaken for anthrax. The virus can be grown in culture or seen directly with electron microscopy, but it is usually diagnosed from the symptoms and patient history.

The more than 100 cases of illnesses resembling smallpox have been attributed to the monkeypox virus. Except for the outbreak in Illinois, Indiana, and Wisconsin in 2003, they all have occurred in western and central Africa, especially in Zaire. Monkeypox causes a milder version of smallpox disease, including the pocklike rash.

MOLLUSCUM CONTAGIOSUM

Molluscum contagiosum is a common disease affecting 3% to 20% of the population (Box 44.4). The lesions of

BOX 44.4 Clinical Summary

Molluscum contagiosum: A 5-year-old girl has a group of wartlike growths on her arm that exude white material on squeezing.

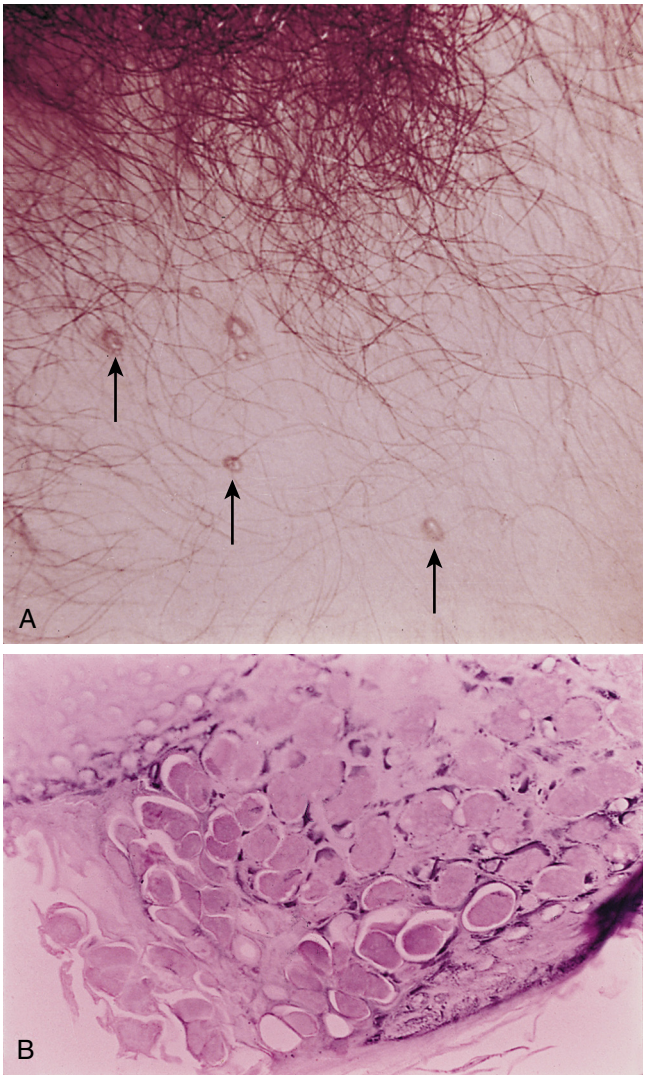


Fig. 44.6 Molluscum contagiosum. (A) Skin lesions *(arrows)*. (B) Microscopic view; epidermis is filled with molluscum bodies (magnification 100×).

molluscum contagiosum differ significantly from other pox lesions because they are nodular to wartlike (Fig. 44.6A). They begin as papules and then become pearl-like umbilicated nodules that are 2 to 10 mm in diameter and have a central caseous plug that can be squeezed out. They are most common on the trunk, genitalia, and proximal extremities and usually occur in a cluster of 5 to 20 nodules. The incubation period for molluscum contagiosum is 2 to 8 weeks. The disease is more common in children than adults, but its incidence is increasing in sexually active and immunocompromised individuals.

The diagnosis of molluscum contagiosum is confirmed histologically by the finding of characteristic large, eosinophilic, cytoplasmic inclusions (molluscum bodies) in

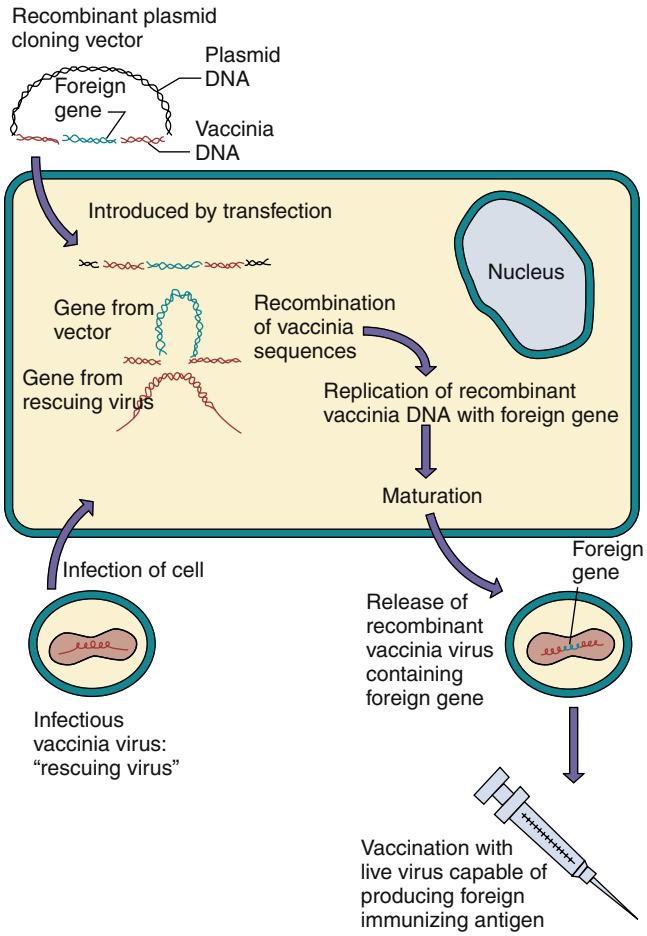


Fig. 44.7 Vaccinia virus as an expression vector for the production of live recombinant vaccines. (Modified from Piccini, A., Paoletti, E., 1988. Vaccinia: virus, vector, vaccine. Adv. Virus Res. 34, 43–64.)

epithelial cells (see Fig. 44.6B). These bodies can be seen in biopsy specimens or in the expressed caseous core of a nodule. MCV cannot be grown in tissue culture or animal models.

Lesions of molluscum contagiosum usually disappear within 2 to 12 months, presumably as a result of immune responses. The nodules can be removed by curettage (scraping) or by the application of liquid nitrogen or iodine solutions.

HYBRID POXVIRUSES FOR GENE DELIVERY AND VACCINES

The vaccinia and canarypox viruses are used as expression vectors to produce live recombinant/hybrid vaccines for more virulent infectious agents (Fig. 44.7). Immunization with the recombinant poxvirus results from expression of the foreign gene and its presentation to the immune response, almost as if by infection with the other agent. A vaccinia hybrid virus containing the G-protein of rabies virus soaked onto a bait food and dropped into forests has been used successfully to immunize raccoons, foxes, and other mammals. Experimental vaccines for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B, influenza, and other viruses have also been prepared using these techniques. The potential for producing other vaccines in this manner is unlimited.

Hybrid vaccinia viruses are also being used for oncolytic agents to selectively kill tumors and for gene replacement therapy.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Breman, J.G., Henderson, D.A., 2002. Diagnosis and management of smallpox. N. Engl. J. Med. 346, 1300–1308.
Burrell, C., Howard, C., Murphy, F., 2016. Fenner and White's Medical Virology, fifth ed. Academic, New York.
Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.
Fenner, F., 1982. A successful eradication campaign: Global eradication of smallpox. Rev. Infect. Dis. 4, 916–930.
Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.
Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.
Patel, N.A., Diven, D., 2018. Vaccinia. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/231773-overview. Accessed July 28, 2018.
Randall, C.M.H., Shisler, J.L., 2013. Molluscum contagiosum virus. Future Virol. 8, 561–573. Website: www.medscape.com/viewarticle/805709_print. Accessed July 28, 2018.
Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2002. Viruses and Human Disease. Academic, San Diego.
Poxvirus vectors RSS Joost H.C.M. Kreijtz, Sarah C. Gilbert and Gerd Sutter Vaccine, 2013-09-06, Volume 31, Issue 39, Pages 4217-4219, https://www.clinicalkey.com/#!/content/journal/1-s2.0-S0264410X13008839.

Questions

1. The structure of poxviruses is more complex than that of most other viruses. What problems does this complexity create for viral replication?

2. Poxviruses replicate in the cytoplasm. What problems does this feature create for viral replication?

3. How does the immune response to smallpox infection in an immunologically naive person differ from that in a vaccinated person? When is antibody present in each case? What stage or stages of viral dissemination are blocked in each case?

4. What characteristics of smallpox facilitated its elimination?

5. Vaccinia virus is being used as a vector for the development of hybrid vaccines. Why is vaccinia virus well suited to this task? Which infectious agents would be appropriate for a vaccinia hybrid vaccine, and why?

6. How does molluscum contagiosum infection resemble that of human papillomavirus?

(see https://www.clinicalkey.com/#!/content/journal/1-s2.0-S0264410X13008839).

45 Parvoviruses

A 6-year-old girl had a viral respiratory infection and then became very pale, weak, tired, and severely anemic because of a transient aplastic crisis.

1. What predisposing condition exacerbated the relatively benign disease in this child?
2. What cell type is the host for this virus, and what determines this tropism?
3. What disease signs occur after infection of an adult? Of a fetus?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

PARVOVIRUSES

Trigger Words

B19, fifth disease, slapped cheeks, aplastic crisis, sickle crisis, spontaneous abortions

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Small, icosahedral capsid, single-strand DNA genome
- Must replicate in growing cell: erythroid precursor cells

- Children: erythema infectiosum (fifth disease); high fever during viremia followed later by rash
- Individuals with chronic anemia: aplastic crisis
- Adults: arthralgia and arthritis
- Fetus: anemia-related disease and death (hydrops fetalis)

Epidemiology

- Transmitted by aerosols, direct contact

Diagnosis

- Symptomatology, confirmation by polymerase chain reaction genome analysis of blood

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- No modes of control or treatment

The Parvoviridae are the smallest of the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) viruses. Their small size and limited genetic repertoire make them more dependent than any other DNA virus on the host cell, or they require the presence of a helper virus to replicate. **B19** and **bocavirus** cause human disease, and adeno-associated viruses (AAVs) are used for gene replacement therapy.

B19 normally causes **erythema infectiosum,** or **fifth disease,** which is a mild febrile exanthematous disease that occurs in children. It goes by the latter name because it was counted as one of five classic childhood exanthems (the first four being varicella, rubella, roseola, and measles). B19 is also responsible for episodes of **aplastic crisis in patients with chronic hemolytic anemia** and is associated with **acute polyarthritis** in adults. Infection of the fetus during pregnancy can result in hydrops fetalis and abortion. **Bocavirus** is a recently discovered virus that can cause acute respiratory disease, which may become severe in young children.

Other parvoviruses, such as RA-1 (isolated from a person with rheumatoid arthritis), fecal parvoviruses, and PARV4 may cause nonspecific viral symptoms and will not be discussed further. Feline and canine parvoviruses do not cause human disease and are preventable with vaccination of the pet.

AAVs are members of the genus *Dependovirus*. They commonly infect humans but replicate only in association with a second "helper" virus, which is usually an adenovirus. Dependoviruses neither cause illness nor modify infection by their helper viruses. These properties and the propensity of AAVs to integrate into the host chromosome have made genetically modified AAVs excellent candidates for use in **gene-replacement therapy.**

Structure and Replication

The parvoviruses are extremely small (18 to 26 nm in diameter) and have a nonenveloped icosahedral capsid (Fig. 45.1 and Box 45.1). The B19 virus genome contains one linear, single-stranded DNA molecule with a molecular mass of 1.5 to 1.8 × 10^6 Da (5500 bases in length) (Box 45.2). Plus or minus DNA strands are packaged separately into virions. The genome encodes three structural and two major nonstructural proteins. Unlike larger DNA viruses, the parvoviruses must infect mitotically active cells because they do not encode the means to stimulate cell growth or a polymerase. Only one serotype of B19 is known to exist.

B19 virus replicates in mitotically active cells and prefers cells of the erythroid lineage, such as fresh human bone marrow cells, erythroid cells from fetal liver, and erythroid leukemia cells (Fig. 45.2). After binding to the erythrocyte blood group P antigen (globoside) and its internalization, the virion is uncoated, and the single-stranded DNA genome is delivered to the nucleus. Factors available only during the S phase of the cell's growth cycle and cellular DNA polymerases are required to generate a complementary DNA strand.

The single-stranded DNA virion genome is converted to a double-stranded DNA version, which is required for transcription and replication. Inverted repeat sequences of DNA at both ends of the genome fold back and hybridize with the genome to create a primer for the cell's DNA polymerase. This creates the complementary strand and replicates the genome. The two major nonstructural proteins and the VP1 and VP2 structural capsid proteins are synthesized in the

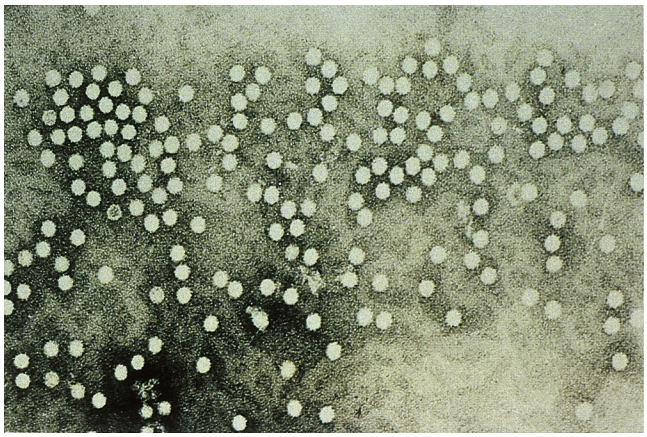


Fig. 45.1 Electron micrograph of parvovirus. Parvoviruses are small (18 to 26 nm), nonenveloped viruses with single-stranded DNA. (Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia.)

BOX 45.1 Unique Properties of Parvoviruses

Smallest DNA virus
Naked icosahedral capsid
Single-stranded (+ or – sense) DNA genome
Requirement of growing cells (B19) or helper virus (dependovirus) for replication

BOX 45.2 Parvovirus Genome

Single-stranded linear DNA genome.
Approximately 5.5 kilobases in length.
Plus and minus strands packaged into separate B19 virions.
Ends of the genome have inverted repeats that hybridize to form hairpin loops and a primer for DNA synthesis.
Separate coding regions for nonstructural and structural proteins.

cytoplasm, and the structural proteins go to the nucleus, in which the virion is assembled. The VP2 protein is cleaved later to produce VP3. The nuclear and cytoplasmic membrane degenerates, and the virus is released on cell lysis.

Pathogenesis and Immunity

B19 targets and is cytolytic for erythroid precursor cells (Box 45.3). B19 disease is determined by the direct killing of these cells and the subsequent immune response to the infection (rash and arthralgia). The immunopathogenesis for B19 and rubella are similar; both are caused by immune complexes with virions, hence both cause rash and arthralgia in adults.

Studies performed in volunteers suggest that B19 virus first replicates in the nasopharynx or upper respiratory tract and then spreads by viremia to the bone marrow and elsewhere, where it replicates and kills erythroid precursor cells (Fig. 45.3). Bocavirus also initiates infection in the respiratory tract, replicates in the respiratory epithelium, and causes disease.

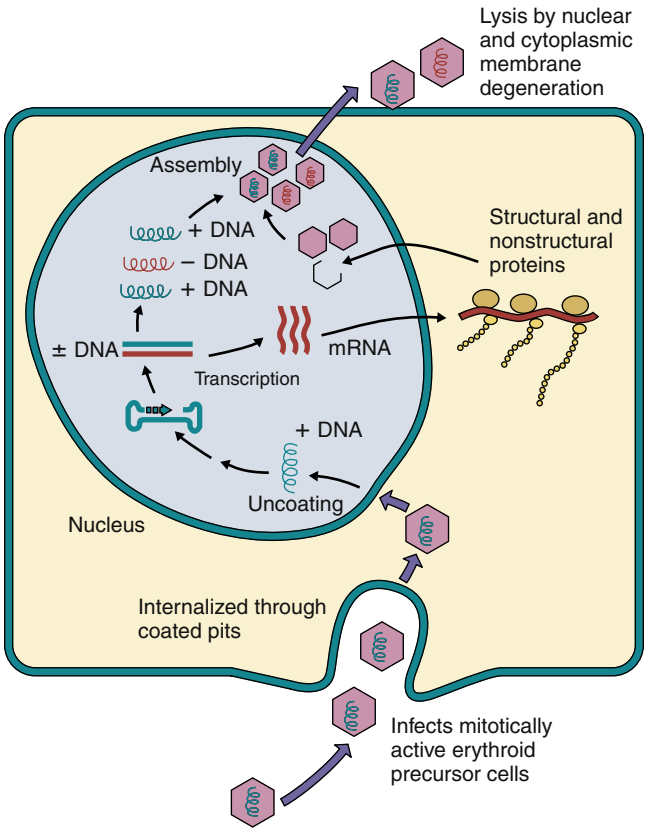


Fig. 45.2 Postulated replication of parvovirus (B19) based on information from related viruses (minute virus of mice). The internalized parvovirus delivers its genome to the nucleus, in which the single-stranded (plus or minus) DNA is converted to double-stranded DNA by host factors, and DNA polymerases present only in growing cells. Transcription, replication, and assembly occur in the nucleus. Virus is released by cell lysis.

BOX 45.3 Disease Mechanisms of B19 Parvovirus

Spreads by **respiratory** and **oral** secretions.
Infects mitotically active erythroid precursor cells in bone marrow and establishes lytic infection.
Establishes large **viremia** and can **cross the placenta.**
Antibody is important for resolution and prophylaxis.
Causes biphasic disease.
  Initial phase is related to viremia:
    Flulike symptoms and viral shedding
  Later phase is related to immune response:
    Circulating immune complexes of antibody and virions that do not fix complement
    Erythematous maculopapular rash, arthralgia, and arthritis
Depletion of erythroid precursor cells and destabilization of erythrocytes initiate **aplastic crisis in persons with chronic anemia and cause hydrops fetalis in a fetus.**

B19 viral disease has a **biphasic course.** The *initial febrile stage is the infectious stage*. During this time, erythrocyte production is stopped for approximately 1 week because of the viral killing of erythroid precursor cells. A large viremia occurs within 8 days of infection and is accompanied by nonspecific flulike symptoms. Large numbers of viruses are

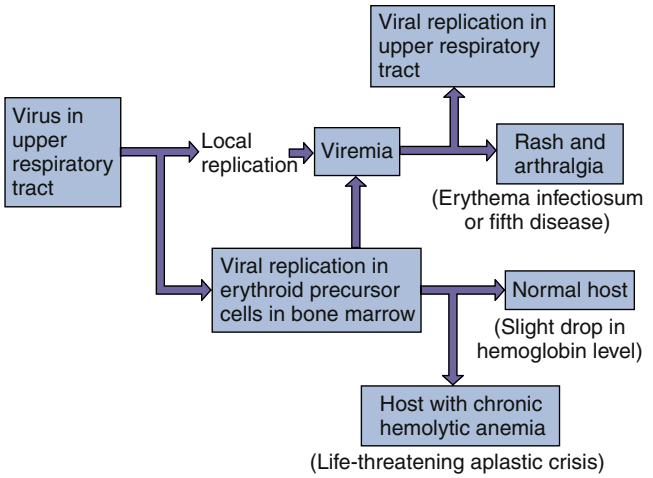


Fig. 45.3 Mechanism of spread of parvovirus within the body.

also released into oral and respiratory secretions. Antibody stops the viremia and is important for resolution of the disease but contributes to the symptoms.

The *second, symptomatic, stage is immune mediated.* The rash and arthralgia seen in this stage coincide with the appearance of virus-specific antibody, the disappearance of detectable B19 virus, and the formation of immune complexes.

Hosts with chronic hemolytic anemia (e.g., sickle cell anemia) who are infected with B19 are at risk for a life-threatening reticulocytopenia, which is referred to as **aplastic crisis.** The reticulocytopenia results from the combination of B19 depletion of red blood cell precursors and the shortened life span of erythrocytes caused by the underlying anemia.

Epidemiology

Approximately 65% of the adult population has been infected with B19 by age 40 (Box 45.4). Erythema infectiosum is most common in children and adolescents aged 4 to 15 years, who are a source of contagion. Arthralgia and arthritis are likely to occur in adults.

Respiratory droplets and oral secretions transmit the virus before the onset of the rash. Disease usually occurs in late winter and spring. Parenteral transmission of the virus by a blood clotting–factor concentrate has also been described.

Bocavirus is found worldwide and causes disease in children younger than 2 years. The virus is transmitted in respiratory secretions but also can be isolated from stool.

Clinical Syndromes

B19 virus, as stated earlier, is the cause of erythema infectiosum (fifth disease) (Box 45.5). Infection starts with an unremarkable prodromal period of 7 to 10 days during which the person is contagious. Infection of a normal host may cause either no noticeable symptoms or fever and nonspecific symptoms (e.g., fever, runny nose, sore throat, chills, malaise, myalgia, headache), as well as a slight decrease in hemoglobin levels (Fig. 45.4). This period is followed by a

BOX 45.4 Epidemiology of B19 Parvovirus Infection

Disease/Viral Factors

Capsid virus resistant to inactivation
Contagious period precedes symptoms
Virus crosses placenta and infects fetus

Transmission

Transmitted via respiratory droplets

Who Is at Risk?

Children, especially those in elementary school: erythema infectiosum (fifth disease)
Parents of children with B19 infection
Pregnant women: fetal infection and disease
Persons with chronic anemia: aplastic crisis

Geography/Season

Virus found worldwide
Fifth disease more common in late winter and spring

Modes of Control

No modes of control

BOX 45.5 Clinical Consequences of Parvovirus (B19) Infection

Mild flulike illness (fever, headache, chills, myalgia, malaise)
Erythema infectiosum (fifth disease)
Aplastic crisis in persons with chronic anemia
Arthropathy (polyarthritis: symptoms in many joints)
Risk of fetal loss (**hydrops fetalis**) as a result of B19 virus crossing the placenta, causing anemia-related disease but not congenital anomalies

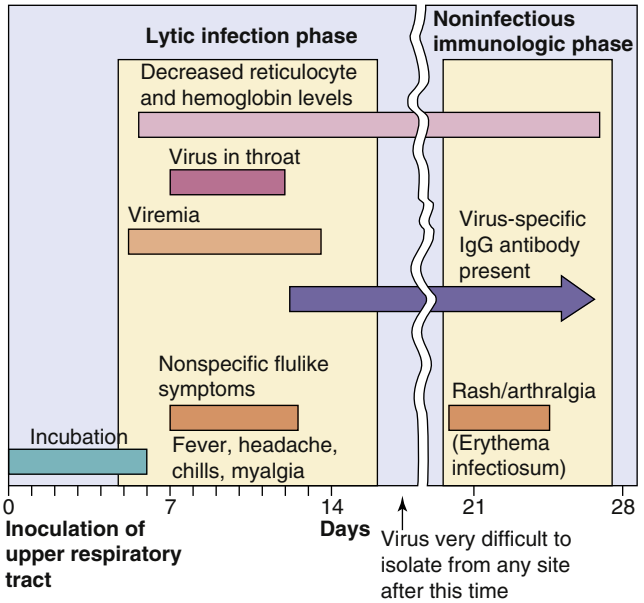


Fig. 45.4 Time course of parvovirus (B19) infection. B19 causes biphasic disease: first, an initial lytic infection phase characterized by febrile flulike symptoms, and then a noninfectious immunologic phase characterized by a rash and arthralgia. *IgG,* Immunoglobulin G.

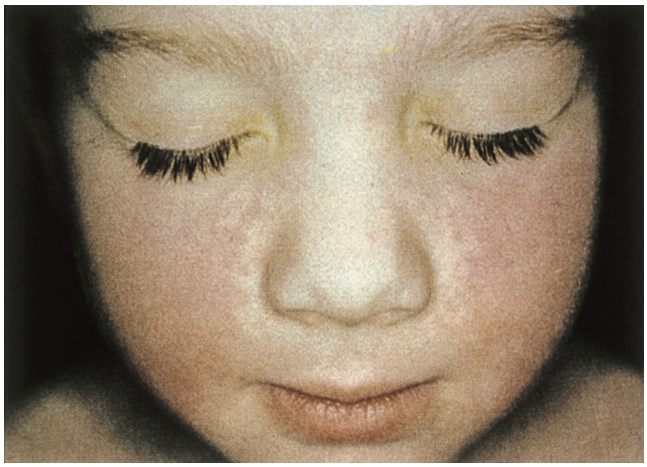


Fig. 45.5 A "slapped-cheek" appearance is typical of the rash for erythema infectiosum. (From Hart, C.A., Broadhead, R.L., 1992. A Color Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases. Wolfe, London, UK.)

Clinical Case 45.1 **B19 Infection of a Transplant Recipient**

Persistent, rather than transient, anemia occurs on human parvovirus B19 infection of immunosuppressed individuals. One such case was reported by Pamidi and associates (*Transplantation* 69:2666–2669, 2000). After 1 year of immunosuppressive therapy (mycophenolate mofetil, prednisone, and tacrolimus) after a kidney transplant, a 46-year-old man complained of dyspnea, lightheadedness, and fatigue on exercise. Laboratory tests confirmed a diagnosis of anemia. Bone marrow analysis indicated erythroid hyperplasia with a predominance of immature erythroblasts. Proerythroblasts could be found, with deep basophilic cytoplasm and intranuclear inclusions that immunohistologically stained for B19 antigen. The patient received 16 units of packed red blood cells over 6 weeks, with continued anemia. Serology indicated the presence of IgM (1:10) but insignificant IgG anti-B19 antibody. Treatment with intravenous IgG for 5 days resulted in a dramatic improvement. Immunosuppressive therapy of this patient prevented class switch to an IgG antibody response and expansion because of the lack of helper T cells. Resolution of the encapsidated parvovirus is dependent on a robust antibody response, and in its absence, the normal transient anemia resulting from virus replication in erythroid precursors cannot be resolved.

distinctive rash on the cheeks, which appear to have been slapped. The rash then usually spreads, especially to exposed skin such as the arms and legs (Fig. 45.5), and then subsides over 1 to 2 weeks (Clinical Case 45.1).

B19 infection in adults causes polyarthritis (with or without a rash) that can last for weeks, months, or longer. Arthritis of the hands, wrists, knees, and ankles predominates. The rash may precede the arthritis but often does not occur. B19 infection of immunocompromised people may result in chronic disease.

The most serious complication of parvovirus infection is the aplastic crisis that occurs in patients with chronic hemolytic anemia (e.g., sickle cell anemia). Infection in these people causes a transient reduction in erythropoiesis in the bone marrow. The reduction results in a transient reticulocytopenia that lasts 7 to 10 days and a decrease in hemoglobin level. An aplastic crisis is accompanied by fever and nonspecific symptoms such as malaise, myalgia, chills, and itching. A maculopapular rash with arthralgia and some joint swelling may also be present.

BOX 45.6 **Clinical Summary**

A 10-year-old patient has a 5-day history of a flulike illness (headache, fever, muscle pain, feels tired) and then a week later develops an intensely red rash over the cheeks and a fainter "lacy" rash over the trunk and extremities.

B19 infection of a seronegative mother increases the risk for fetal death. The virus can infect the fetus and kill erythrocyte precursors, causing anemia, edema, hypoxia, and congestive heart failure **(hydrops fetalis).** Infection of seropositive pregnant women often has no adverse effect on the fetus. There is no evidence that B19 causes congenital abnormalities (Box 45.6; see Box 45.5).

Bocavirus may cause mild or severe acute respiratory disease. The more severe disease occurs in children younger than age 2, who may have bronchiolitis with wheezing and a viremia that extends long beyond the disease. A fatal case of bocavirus bronchiolitis has been reported.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The diagnosis of erythema infectiosum is usually based on the clinical presentation. For B19 disease to be definitively diagnosed; however, specific immunoglobulin (Ig)M or viral DNA must be detected (i.e., to distinguish the rash of B19 from that of rubella in a pregnant woman). Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays for B19 IgM and IgG are available. The polymerase chain reaction test is a very sensitive method for detecting the B19 and bocavirus genomes in clinical samples. Virus isolation is not performed.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

No specific antiviral treatment or means of control are available. Vaccines are available for dog and cat parvoviruses.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Allander, T., 2008. Human bocavirus. J. Clin. Virol. 41, 29–33.

Berns, K.I., 1990. Parvovirus replication. Microbiol. Rev. 54, 316–329.

Brown, K.E., 2010. The expanding range of parvoviruses which infect humans. Rev. Med. Virol. 20, 231–244.

CDC Parvoviruses B19. https://www.cdc.gov/parvovirusb19/fifth-disease.html. Accessed July 28, 2018.

Cennimo D.J., Dieudonne, A. Parvovirus B19 Infection. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/961063-overview. Accessed November 4, 2014.

Chorba, T., Coccia, P., Holman, R.C., et al., 1986. The role of parvovirus B19 in aplastic crisis and erythema infectiosum (fifth disease). J. Infect. Dis. 154, 383–393.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Flower, B., MacMahon, E, Erythrovirus B19 infection, Medicine 45:12, 772–776.
Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.
Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.
Matthews, P.C., Malik, A., Simmons, R., Sharp, C., Simmonds, P., Klenerman, P., 2014. PARV4: An emerging tetraparvovirus. PLoS Pathog. 10 (5), e1004036. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.1004036. Accessed 28 July 2018.
Naides, S.J., Scharosch, L.L., Foto, F., et al., 1990. Rheumatologic manifestations of human parvovirus B19 infection in adults. Arthritis Rheum. 33, 1297–1309.
Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Ursic, T., et al., 2011. Human bocavirus as the cause of a life-threatening infection. J. Clin. Microbiol. 49, 1179–1181.
Young, N.S., Brown, K.E., 2004. Parvovirus B19. N. Engl. J. Med. 350, 586–597.

Case Study and Questions

Mrs. Doe brought her daughter to the pediatrician with the complaint of a rash. The daughter's face appeared as if it had been slapped, but she had no fever or other notable symptoms. On questioning, Mrs. Doe reported that her daughter had had a mild cold within the previous 2 weeks and that she herself was currently having more joint pain than usual and felt very tired.

1. What features of this history indicate a parvovirus B19 etiology?

2. Was the child infectious at presentation? If not, when was she contagious?

3. What caused the symptoms?

4. Were the symptoms of the mother and daughter related?

5. What underlying condition would put the daughter at increased risk for serious disease after B19 infection? The mother?

6. Why is quarantine a poor means of limiting the spread of B19 parvovirus?

46 Picornaviruses

A 9-day-old infant with a fever and who appeared to be septic progressed to multisystem organ dysfunction syndrome with a combination of hepatitis, meningoencephalitis, myocarditis, and pneumonia. The cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) had normal glucose levels and lacked neutrophil infiltrate. The infant was started on acyclovir therapy for a suspected congenital herpes simplex virus (HSV) infection. Genome analysis (polymerase chain reaction [PCR] and reverse transcriptase [RT]-PCR) of the CSF did not detect HSV but did detect an enterovirus that was subsequently identified as echovirus 11. Several days earlier, the mother had had a slight fever and a cold.

1. How did the baby become infected?
2. How does the viral structure facilitate virus spread in the body and transmission to others?
3. What type of immunity is protective for this virus, and why was the baby not protected?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

PICORNAVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Polio: flaccid paralysis, major and minor disease, fecal-oral
Coxsackievirus A: vesicular diseases, meningitis; coxsackievirus B (body): pleurodynia, myocarditis
Other echovirus and enteroviruses: like coxsackievirus and hepatitis A virus
Rhinoviruses: common cold, acid labile, does not replicate above 33° C

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Small size, icosahedral capsid, positive RNA genome with terminal protein
- Genome is sufficient for infection
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm

ENTEROVIRUSES

- Disease caused by lytic infection of important target tissue
- Capsid virus resistant to inactivation
- Initial replication may be in the respiratory tract, oropharynx, or gastrointestinal tract but does not cause enteric disease.
- Polio: cytolytic infection of motor neurons of anterior horn and brainstem, paralysis
- Coxsackievirus A: herpangina, hand-foot-and-mouth disease, common cold, meningitis
- Coxsackievirus B: pleurodynia, neonatal myocarditis, type 1 diabetes
- Echoviruses: like coxsackievirus
- Parechoviruses: like coxsackie and major cause of neonatal viral sepsis and meningitis

HEPATOVIRUS: Hepatitis A virus[a]

- Properties like enterovirus
- Human virus
- Liver disease caused by immune response

RHINOVIRUSES

- Acid labile and cannot replicate at body temperature
- Restricted to upper respiratory tract
- Common cold

Epidemiology

- Enteroviruses transmitted by fecal-oral route and aerosols
- Rhinoviruses transmitted by aerosols and contact

Diagnosis

- Immune assays (ELISA) or RT-PCR genome analysis of blood, CSF, or other relevant sample

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- OPV and IPV polio vaccines

[a]Hepatitis A virus is discussed in Chapter 55.
CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *IPV,* inactivated polio vaccine; *OPV,* oral polio vaccine; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction.

Picornaviridae is one of the largest families of viruses and includes some of the most important human and animal viruses (Box 46.1). As the name indicates, these viruses are **small *(pico)*** ribonucleic acid **(RNA)** viruses that have a **naked capsid** structure. The family has more than 230 members divided into nine genera, including *Enterovirus, Rhinovirus*, *Hepatovirus* (hepatitis A virus; discussed in Chapter 55), *Cardiovirus*, and *Aphthovirus*. The enteroviruses are distinguished from the rhinoviruses by the stability of the capsid at pH 3, the optimum temperature for growth, the mode of transmission, and their diseases (Box 46.2).

At least 90 serotypes of human enteroviruses exist and are classified as polioviruses, coxsackieviruses A and B, echoviruses, parechoviruses or for the more recently discovered viruses, as numbered enteroviruses (e.g., enterovirus D68). Several different disease syndromes may be caused by a specific serotype of enterovirus. Likewise, several different serotypes may cause the same disease, depending on the target tissue affected.

The capsids of enteroviruses are *very resistant to harsh environmental conditions* (sewage systems) and the conditions in the gastrointestinal tract, which facilitates their transmission by the fecal-oral route. Although they may initiate infection in the gastrointestinal tract, the enteroviruses rarely cause enteric disease. In fact, most infections are usually asymptomatic. The best-known and most-studied picornavirus is poliovirus, of which there are three serotypes.

Coxsackieviruses are named after the town of Coxsackie, New York, in which they were first isolated. They are divided into two groups, A and B, on the basis of certain biological and antigenic differences and are further subdivided into numeric serotypes on the basis of additional antigenic differences.

BOX 46.1 Picornaviridae

Enterovirus
- Poliovirus types 1, 2, and 3
- Coxsackievirus A 24 types
- Coxsackievirus B 6 types
- Echovirus[a] 34 types
- Parechovirus 16 types
- Enterovirus 4

Hepatovirus
- Hepatitis A virus

Rhinovirus: >100 types+
Cardiovirus
Aphthovirus

[a]*E*nteric, *c*ytopathic, *h*uman, *o*rphan + virus.

BOX 46.2 Unique Properties of Human Picornaviruses

Virion is a **naked, small** (25 to 30 nm), **icosahedral** capsid enclosing a single-stranded positive RNA genome.
Enteroviruses are resistant to pH 3 to pH 9, detergents, mild sewage treatment, and heat.
Rhinoviruses are labile at acidic pH; optimum growth temperature is 33° C.
Genome is an mRNA.
Naked genome is sufficient for infection.
Virus replicates in cytoplasm.
Viral RNA is translated into **polyprotein,** which is then cleaved into enzymatic and structural proteins.
Most viruses are **cytolytic.**

mRNA, Messenger ribonucleic acid.

The name **echovirus** is derived from ***e***nteric ***c***ytopathic ***h***uman ***o***rphan because the disease associated with these agents was not initially known. Parechoviruses were thought to be echoviruses. Since 1967, newly isolated enteroviruses have been distinguished numerically.

The human **rhinoviruses** consist of at least 100 serotypes and are the major cause of the common cold. They are *sensitive to acidic pH and replicate poorly at temperatures above 33° C*. These properties usually limit rhinoviruses to causing upper respiratory tract infections.

Structure

The plus-strand RNA of the picornaviruses is surrounded by an **icosahedral capsid** that is approximately 30 nm in diameter. The icosahedral capsid has 12 pentameric vertices, each of which is composed of five protomeric units of proteins. The protomers are made of four virion polypeptides (VP1 to VP4). VP2 and VP4 are generated by the cleavage of a precursor, VP0. VP4 in the virion solidifies the structure, but it is not generated until the genome is incorporated into the capsid. This protein is released on binding of the virus to the cellular receptor. The capsids are stable in the presence of heat, acid, and detergent, with the exception of the rhinoviruses, which are labile to acid. The capsid structure is so regular that paracrystals of virions often form in infected cells (Figs. 46.1 and 46.2).

The **genome of the picornaviruses resembles a messenger RNA (mRNA)** (Fig. 46.3). It is a single strand of plus-sense RNA of approximately 7200 to 8450 bases. The genome has a polyA (polyadenosine) sequence at the 3′ end and a small protein, VPg (viral protein genome-linked; 22 to 24 amino acids), attached to the 5′ end. The polyA sequence enhances the infectivity of the RNA, and the VPg is important in packaging the genome into the capsid and initiating viral RNA synthesis. *The naked picornavirus genome is sufficient for infection if microinjected into a cell.*

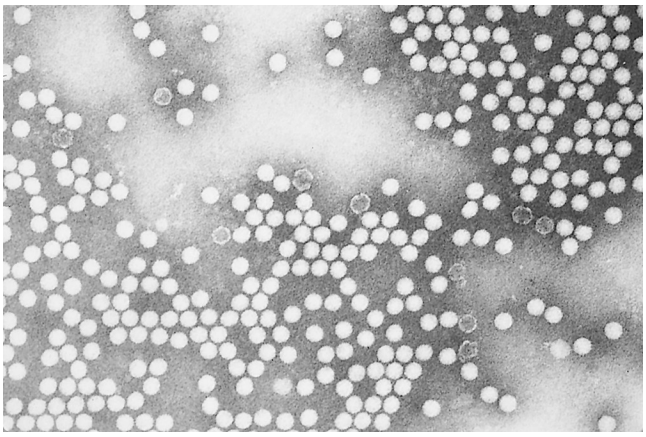


Fig. 46.1 Electron micrograph of poliovirus. (Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia.)

Replication

The specificity of the picornavirus interaction for cellular receptors is the major determinant of the target tissue tropism and disease (see Fig. 36.12). The VP1 proteins at the vertices of the virion contain a canyon structure to which the receptor binds. Pleconaril and related antiviral compounds contain a 3-methylisoxazole group that binds to the floor of this canyon and alters its conformation to prevent the uncoating of the virus.

The picornaviruses can be categorized according to their cell-surface receptor specificity. The receptors for polioviruses, some coxsackieviruses, and rhinoviruses are members of the immunoglobulin superfamily of proteins. At least 80% of the rhinoviruses and several serotypes of coxsackievirus bind to the intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) expressed on epithelial cells, fibroblasts, and endothelial cells. Several coxsackieviruses, echoviruses, and other enteroviruses bind to decay accelerating factor (CD55), and coxsackievirus B shares a receptor with adenovirus. Poliovirus binds to a different molecule (PVR/CD155) that is similar to the receptor for HSV. The poliovirus receptor is present on many different human cells, but not all of these cells will replicate the virus.

On binding to the receptor, the VP4 is released and the capsid is weakened. The genome is then injected directly across the membrane through a channel created by the VP1 protein at one of the vertices of the virion. The genome binds directly to ribosomes, despite the lack of a 5′-cap structure. The ribosomes recognize a unique internal RNA loop (internal ribosome entry site [IRES]) in the genome that is also present in some cellular mRNAs. A **polyprotein** containing all the viral protein sequences is synthesized within 10 to 15 minutes of infection. This polyprotein is cleaved by viral proteases encoded in it. Viral proteins tether the

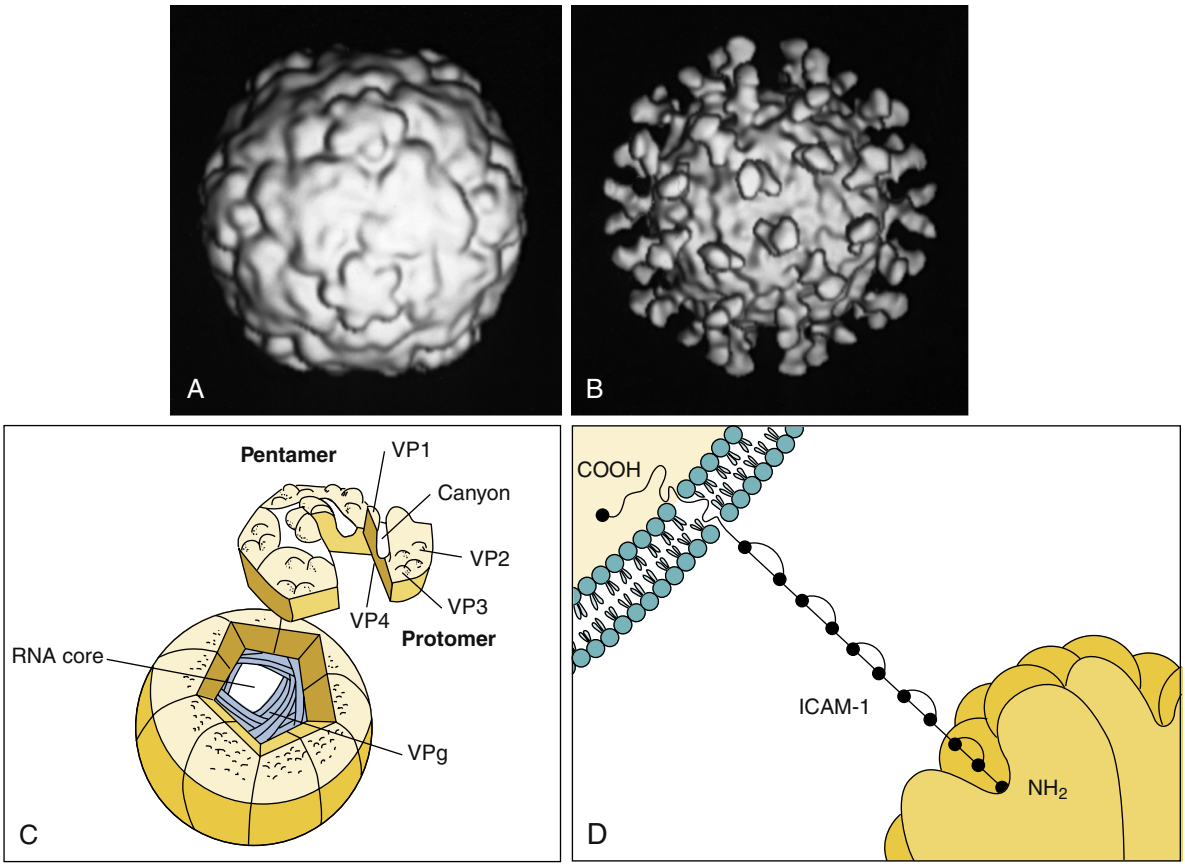


Fig. 46.2 (A) Cryoelectron microscopy computer-generated reconstruction of human rhinovirus 16. (B) Cryoelectron microscopy reconstruction of the interaction of a soluble form of intercellular adhesion molecule-1 *(ICAM-1)* with human rhinovirus 16. Note: There is one ICAM-1 per capsomere. (C) Structure of the human rhinovirus. (D) Binding of the ICAM-1 molecule within the canyon of the virion triggers the opening of the capsid for release of the genome into the cell. *RNA,* Ribonucleic acid; *VP1, 2, 3, 4,* viral protein 1, 2, 3, 4; *VPg,* viral protein genome-linked. (A and B, Courtesy Tim Baker, Purdue University, West Lafayette, Indiana.)

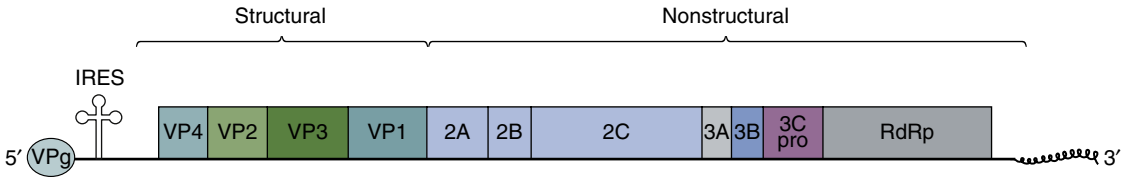


Fig. 46.3 Structure of the picornavirus genome. The genome (7200 to 8400 bases) is translated as a polyprotein that is cleaved by viral-encoded proteases into individual proteins. *Viral genes*: *VP1, 2, 3, 4,* capsid proteins 1, 2, 3, 4; *2A* cleaves eIF4g to inhibit host protein synthesis; *2B, 2C, 3A, 3B* generate membrane-binding, vesicle-forming proteins that facilitate replication; *3B* also encodes VPg genome-binding protein; *3Cpro,* protease; *RdRp,* RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. (Redrawn from Whitton, J.L., Cornell, C.T., Feuer, R., 2005. Host and virus determinants of picornavirus pathogenesis and tropism. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 3, 765–776.)

genome to endoplasmic reticulum membranes, and the machinery for replication of the genome is collected into a vesicle. The viral RNA-dependent RNA polymerase generates a negative-strand RNA template from which the new mRNA/genome can be synthesized. The amount of viral mRNA increases rapidly in the cell, with the number of viral RNA molecules reaching as many as 400,000 per cell.

The genome encodes a polyprotein that is proteolytically cleaved by viral-encoded proteases to produce the enzymatic and structural proteins of the virus (see Fig. 46.3). In addition to the capsid proteins and VPg, the picornaviruses encode at least two proteases and an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase.

Most picornaviruses inhibit cellular RNA and protein synthesis during infection. For example, cleavage of the cell's cap-binding protein (eIF4-G) of the ribosome by a poliovirus protease prevents most cellular mRNA from binding to the ribosome. Inhibition of transcription factors decreases cellular mRNA synthesis, and permeability changes induced by picornaviruses reduce the ability of cellular mRNA to bind to the ribosome. In addition, viral mRNA can outcompete cellular mRNA for the factors required in protein synthesis. These activities contribute to the cytopathologic effect of the virus on the target cell.

As the viral genome is being replicated and translated, the structural proteins VP0, VP1, and VP3 are cleaved from the polyprotein by viral-encoded proteases and assembled into subunits. Five **subunits** associate into **pentamers,** and 12 **pentamers** associate to form the **procapsid.** After insertion of the genome, VP0 is cleaved into VP2 and VP4

to complete the **capsid.** As many as 100,000 virions per cell may be produced and released on cell lysis. The entire replication cycle may be as short as 3 to 4 hours.

Enteroviruses

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Contrary to their name, enteroviruses do not usually cause enteric disease, but they do replicate within and are transmitted by the fecal-oral route. The diseases produced by the enteroviruses are determined mainly by differences in tissue tropism and the cytolytic capacity of the virus (Fig. 46.4; Box 46.3). The virions are impervious to stomach acid, proteases, and bile. Enteroviruses are acquired through the upper respiratory tract and mouth. Viral replication is initiated in the mucosa and lymphoid tissue of the tonsils and pharynx, and the virus later infects M cells and lymphocytes of the Peyer patches and enterocytes in the intestinal mucosa. Primary viremia spreads the virus to receptor-bearing target tissues, including the reticuloendothelial cells of the lymph nodes, spleen, and liver, to initiate a second phase of viral replication, resulting in a secondary viremia and symptoms.

Most enteroviruses are cytolytic, replicating rapidly and causing direct damage to the target cell.

In the case of poliovirus, the virus gains access to the brain by infecting skeletal muscle and traveling up the innervating nerves to the brain, similar to the rabies virus (see Chapter 50). The virus is cytolytic for the motor neurons of the anterior horn and brainstem. The location and number of nerve cells destroyed by the virus govern the extent of paralysis and whether and when other neurons can reinnervate the muscle and restore activity. The combined loss of neurons to polio and to old age may result in paralysis later in life; this is termed **postpolio syndrome.**

Viral shedding from the oropharynx blood or the cerebral spinal fluid can be detected for a short time before and during symptoms, whereas viral production and shedding from the intestine may last for 30 days or longer, even in the presence of a humoral immune response.

Antibody is the major protective immune response to the enteroviruses. Secretory antibody can prevent the initial establishment of infection in the oropharynx and gastrointestinal tract, and serum antibody prevents viremic spread to the target tissue and therefore prevents disease. The time course for antibody development after infection with a live vaccine is presented in Fig. 46.10. Cell-mediated immunity is not usually involved in protection but may play a role in resolution and pathogenesis.

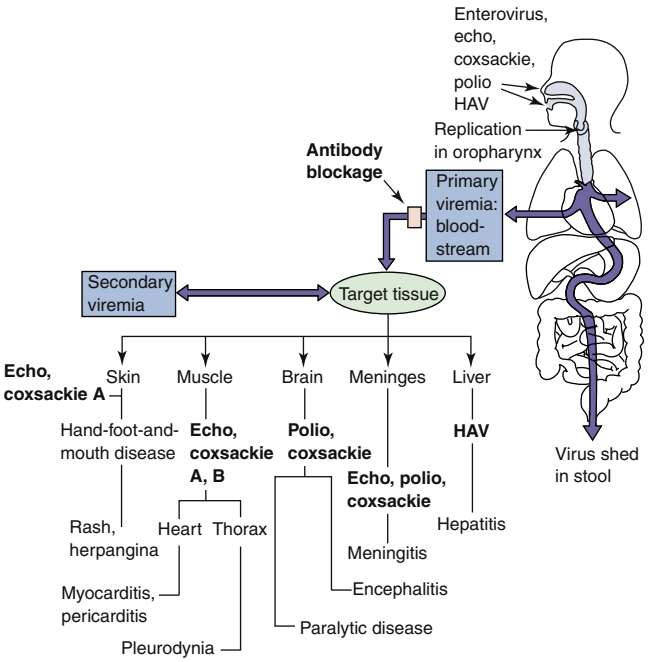


Fig. 46.4 Pathogenesis of enterovirus infection. The target tissue infected by the enterovirus determines the predominant disease caused by the virus. *Coxsackie,* Coxsackievirus; *echo,* echovirus; *HAV,* hepatitis A virus; *polio,* poliovirus.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The enteroviruses are exclusively human pathogens (Box 46.4). As the name implies, these viruses primarily spread via the **fecal-oral** route. **Asymptomatic shedding** can occur for up to a month, putting virus into the environment. Poor sanitation and crowded living conditions foster transmission of the viruses (Fig. 46.5). Sewage contamination of water supplies can result in enterovirus epidemics. Outbreaks of enterovirus disease are seen in schools and day-care settings, and summer is the major season for such disease. The coxsackieviruses and echoviruses may also be spread in aerosol droplets and cause respiratory tract infections.

With the success of the polio vaccines, the wild-type poliovirus has been eliminated from the Western Hemisphere (Fig. 46.6) and most, but not all, of the world. Paralytic polio was never eliminated from Nigeria, Afghanistan, and Pakistan, and the viruses have spread from these countries to others. A small but significant number of vaccine-related cases of polio result from mutation in the VP1 gene of one of the three strains that reestablishes neurovirulence (circulating vaccine-derived poliovirus [cVDPV] 2) in the live vaccine virus. Infectious poliovirus is feared to remain in sewage for very long periods because of the hardy nature

BOX 46.3 Disease Mechanisms of Picornaviruses

Enteroviruses enter via the oropharynx, intestinal mucosa, or upper respiratory tract and infect the underlying lymphatic tissue; rhinoviruses are restricted to the upper respiratory tract.
In the absence of serum antibody, enterovirus spreads by viremia to cells of a receptor-bearing target tissue.
Different picornaviruses bind to different receptors, many of which are members of the immunoglobulin superfamily (i.e., intercellular adhesion molecule-1).
The infected target tissue determines the subsequent disease.
Viral, rather than immune, pathologic effects are usually responsible for causing disease.
The secretory antibody response is transitory but can prevent the initiation of infection.
Serum antibody blocks viremic spread to target tissue, preventing disease.
Enterovirus is shed in feces for long periods.
Infection is often asymptomatic or causes mild, flulike, or upper respiratory tract disease.

of the virions, extending the risk of contact and the need for vaccination programs.

Polioviruses are spread most often during the summer and autumn. Paralytic polio was once considered a middle class disease because good hygiene would delay exposure of a person to the virus until late childhood, the adolescent years, or adulthood, when infection would produce the most severe symptoms. Infection during early childhood is more likely to be asymptomatic or cause very mild disease.

BOX 46.4 Epidemiology of Enterovirus Infections

Disease/Viral Factors

Nature of disease correlates with specific enterovirus
Severity of disease correlates with age of person
Infection often asymptomatic, with viral shedding
Virion resistant to environmental conditions (detergents, acid, drying, mild sewage treatment, and heat)

Transmission

Fecal-oral route: poor hygiene, dirty diapers (especially in day-care settings)
Ingestion via contaminated food and water
Contact with infected hands and fomites
Inhalation of infectious aerosols

Who Is at Risk?

Young children: at risk for polio (asymptomatic or mild disease)
Older children and adults: at risk for polio (asymptomatic to paralytic disease)
Newborns and neonates: at highest risk for serious coxsackievirus, echovirus, and enterovirus disease

Geography/Season

Viruses have worldwide distribution; wild-type polio virtually eradicated in most countries because of vaccination programs
Disease more common in summer

Modes of Control

For polio, live oral polio vaccine (trivalent OPV) or inactivated trivalent polio vaccine (IPV) is administered
For other enteroviruses, no vaccine; good hygiene limits spread

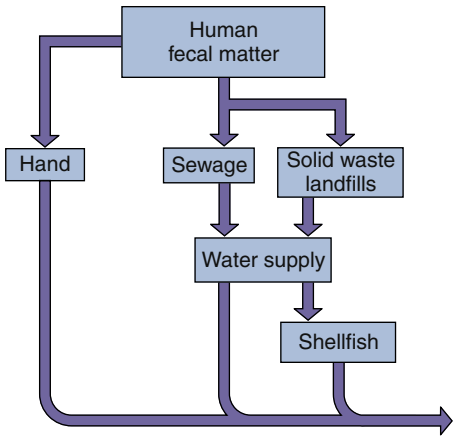


Fig. 46.5 Transmission of enteroviruses. The capsid structure is resistant to mild sewage treatment, salt water, detergents, and temperature changes, allowing these viruses to be transmitted by fecal-oral routes, by fomites, and on hands.

Similar to poliovirus infection, coxsackievirus A disease is generally more severe in adults than in children. Coxsackievirus B and some of the echoviruses (especially echovirus 11) can be particularly harmful to infants. Specific enteroviruses are attributed to causing an increased incidence of acute flaccid myelitis, resembling polio disease, in 2018.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The clinical syndromes produced by the enteroviruses are determined by several factors including (1) viral serotype; (2) infecting dose; (3) tissue tropism; (4) portal of entry; (5) patient's age, gender, and state of health; and (6) pregnancy (Table 46.1). The incubation period for enterovirus disease varies from 1 to 35 days, depending on the virus, the target tissue, and the person's age. Viruses that affect oral and respiratory sites have the shortest incubation periods.

Poliovirus Infections

There are three poliovirus types, with 85% of the cases of paralytic polio caused by type 1. Reversion of the attenuated vaccine virus type 2 to virulence can cause vaccine-associated disease. Wild-type polio infections are rare because of the success of polio vaccines (see Fig. 46.6). As noted earlier, however, vaccine-associated cases of polio do occur, and some populations remain unvaccinated, putting them at risk for infection. Poliovirus may cause one of the following four outcomes in unvaccinated people, depending on the progression of the infection (Fig. 46.7):

1. **Asymptomatic illness** results if the viral infection is limited to the oropharynx and the gut. At least 90% of poliovirus infections are asymptomatic.
2. **Abortive poliomyelitis, the minor illness,** is a nonspecific febrile illness occurring in approximately 5% of infected people. Fever, headache, malaise, sore throat, and vomiting occur in such persons within 3 to 4 days of exposure.
3. **Nonparalytic poliomyelitis or aseptic meningitis** occurs in 1% to 2% of patients with poliovirus infections. In this disease, the virus progresses into the central ner-

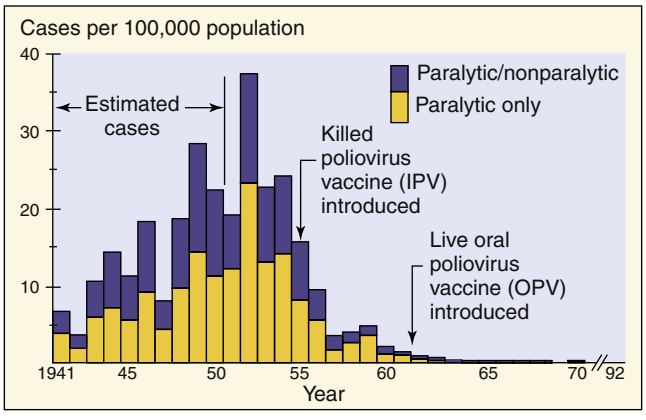


Fig. 46.6 Incidence of polio in the United States. Killed (inactivated) polio vaccine (IPV) was introduced in 1955, and live oral polio vaccine (OPV) was introduced in 1961 and 1962. Wild-type polio has been eradicated in the United States. (Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1973. Against Disease: 1972. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.)

TABLE 46.1 Summary of Clinical Syndromes Associated with Major Enterovirus Groups[a]

Syndrome	Occurrence	Polioviruses	Coxsackievirus A	Coxsackievirus B	Echo-/Enteroviruses[b]
Asymptomatic	Frequent	+	+	+	+
Paralytic disease	Sporadic	+	+	+	+ (enteroD68)
Encephalitis, meningitis	Outbreaks	+	+	+	+
Carditis	Sporadic	—	+	+	+
Neonatal disease	Outbreaks	—	—	+	+
Pleurodynia	Outbreaks	—	—	+	—
Herpangina	Common	—	+	—	—
Hand-foot-and-mouth disease	Common	—	+	—	—
Rash disease	Common	—	+	+	+
Acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis	Epidemics	—	+		+ (entero70)
Respiratory tract infections	Common	+	+	+	+
Undifferentiated fever	Common	+	+	+	+
Diarrhea, gastrointestinal disease	Uncommon	—	—	—	+
Diabetes, pancreatitis	Uncommon	—	—	+	—
Orchitis	Uncommon	—	—	+	—

[a]A member(s) of this family cause(s) this disease.
[b]Enteroviruses 68 to 71+.

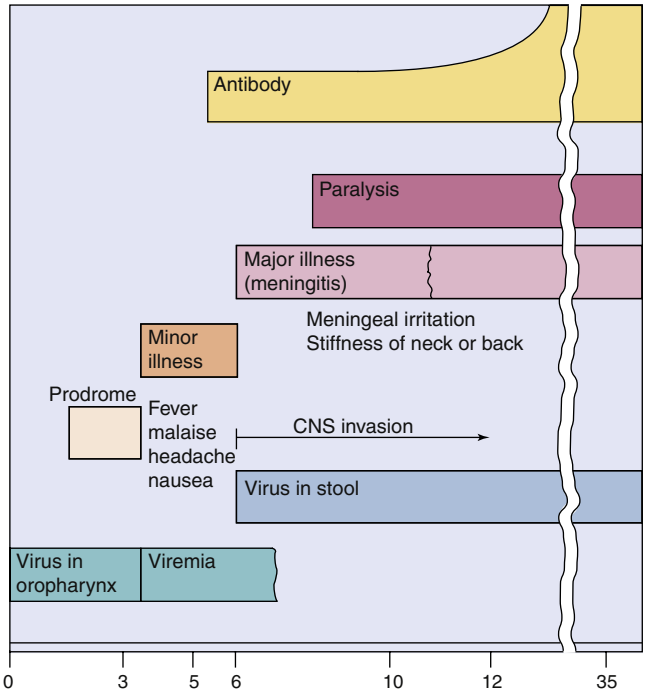


Fig. 46.7 Progression of poliovirus infection. Infection may be asymptomatic or may progress to minor or major disease. *CNS,* Central nervous system.

vous system and the meninges, causing back pain and muscle spasms in addition to the symptoms of the minor illness.

4. **Paralytic polio, the major illness,** occurs in 0.1% to 2.0% of persons with poliovirus infections and is the most severe outcome. It appears 3 to 4 days after the minor illness has subsided, producing a biphasic illness. In this disease, the virus spreads from the blood to the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord and to the motor cortex of the brain. The severity of paralysis is determined by the extent of the neuronal infection and by which neurons are affected. **Paralytic poliomyelitis** is characterized by an asymmetric flaccid paralysis with no sensory loss. The degree of paralysis varies in that it may involve only a few muscle groups (e.g., one leg) or there may be complete flaccid paralysis of all four extremities. The paralysis may then progress over the first few days and may result in complete recovery, residual paralysis, or death. Most recoveries occur within 6 months, but as long as 2 years may be required for complete remission.

Bulbar poliomyelitis can be more severe, may involve the muscles of the pharynx, vocal cords, and respiration, and may result in death in 75% of patients. Iron lungs, chambers that provided external respiratory compression, were used during the 1950s to assist the breathing of patients with such polio disease. Before vaccination programs, iron lungs filled the wards of children's hospitals.

Postpolio syndrome is a sequela of poliomyelitis that may occur much later in life (30 to 40 years later) in 29% of the original victims. Affected persons suffer a deterioration of the originally affected muscles. Poliovirus is not present, but the syndrome is believed to result from a loss of neurons in the initially affected nerves.

Coxsackievirus and Echovirus Infections

Several clinical syndromes may be caused by either a coxsackievirus or an echovirus (e.g., aseptic meningitis), but certain illnesses are specifically associated with coxsackieviruses. Coxsackievirus A is associated with diseases involving vesicular lesions (e.g., herpangina), whereas coxsackievirus B ***(B for body)*** is most frequently associated with myocarditis and pleurodynia. Coxsackieviruses,

Clinical Case 46.1 **Polio-like Disease Caused by Coxsackievirus A**

In a case reported by Yoshimura and Kurashige (*Brain Dev* 20:540–542, 1998), a 4-year-old child's onset of abdominal pain, distended abdomen, inability to urinate, and inability to walk prompted admission to the hospital. All abdominal reflexes were gone, accompanied by bladder and rectal dysfunction. Pain and temperature sense was normal. CSF showed an increase in cell count, with 393 cells/mm^3 and with 95% neutrophils and 5% lymphocytes. CSF protein and glucose were within normal values. Serologic analysis was negative for poliovirus, echovirus, and coxsackievirus types A4, A7, A9, B1, and B5, viruses reported to cause polio-like paralytic disease. Antibody for coxsackievirus A10 was detected during the acute phase (titer = 32) and after 4 weeks (titer = 128). Three weeks after admission, the child was able to walk again, but mild dysfunction of the bladder and rectum remained, even 3 months after admission. Although routine immunization has eliminated polio-induced paralysis in most parts of the world, polio-like disease can still be caused by other picornaviruses and revertants of the vaccine-related strains of polio.

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid.

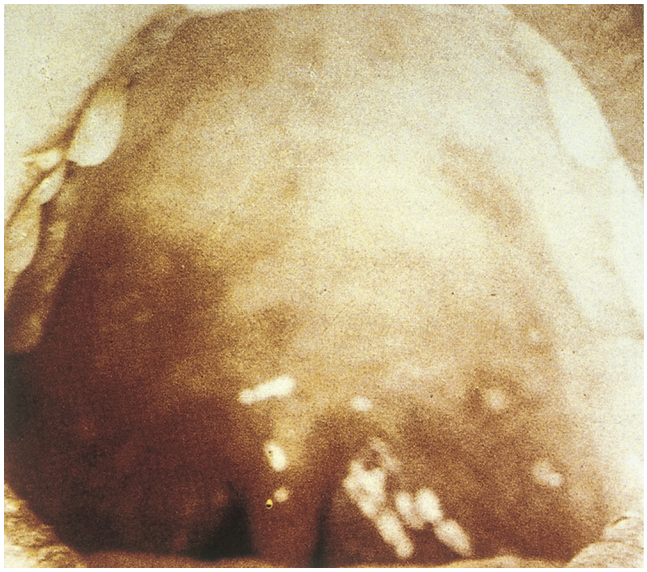


Fig. 46.8 Herpangina. Characteristic discrete vesicles are seen on the anterior tonsillar pillars. (Courtesy Dr. GDW McKendrick; from Lambert, H.P., et al., 1982. Infectious Diseases Illustrated: An integrated text and color atlas. Gower, London.)

enterovirus D68, and other picornaviruses can also cause a polio-like flacid paralytic disease (Clinical Case 46.1). The most common result of infection is lack of symptoms or a mild upper respiratory tract or flulike disease.

Herpangina is caused by several types of coxsackievirus A and is not related to a herpesvirus infection. Fever, sore throat, pain on swallowing, anorexia, and vomiting accompany this disease. The classic finding is vesicular ulcerated lesions around the soft palate and uvula (Fig. 46.8). Less typically, the lesions affect the hard palate.

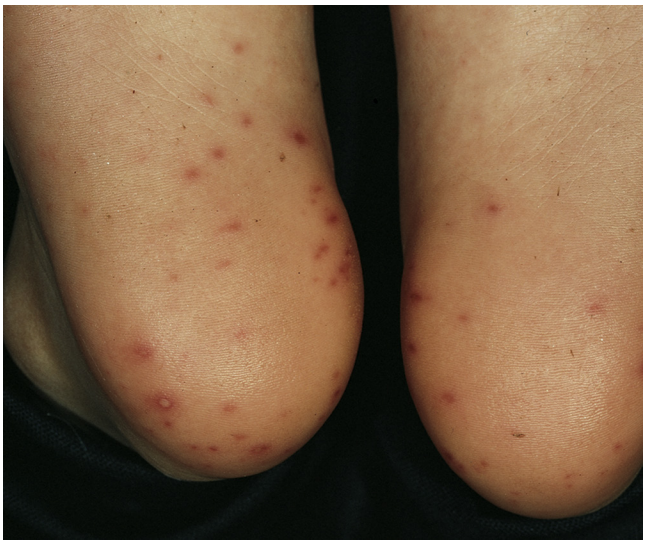


Fig. 46.9 Hand-foot-and-mouth disease caused by coxsackie A virus (A) Lesions initially appear in the oral cavity and then develop within 1 day on the palms and, as seen here, the soles. (From Habif, T.P., Clinical Dermatology: A Color Guide to Diagnosis and Therapy, third ed. Mosby, St. Louis, MO.)

The virus can be recovered from the lesions or from feces. The disease is self-limited and requires only symptomatic management.

Hand-foot-and-mouth disease is a vesicular exanthem usually caused by coxsackievirus A16. The name is descriptive because the main features of this infection consist of vesicular lesions on the hands, feet, mouth, and tongue (Fig. 46.9). The patient is mildly febrile, and the illness subsides in a few days.

Pleurodynia (Bornholm disease), also known as the **devil's grip,** is an acute illness in which patients have a sudden onset of fever and unilateral low thoracic, pleuritic chest pain that may be excruciating. Abdominal pain and even vomiting may also occur, and muscles on the involved side may be extremely tender. Pleurodynia lasts an average of 4 days but may relapse after the condition has been asymptomatic for several days. Coxsackievirus B is the causative agent.

Myocardial and **pericardial infections** caused by coxsackievirus B occur sporadically in older children and adults but are most threatening in newborns. Neonates with these infections have febrile illnesses and sudden and unexplained onset of heart failure. Cyanosis, tachycardia, cardiomegaly, and hepatomegaly occur. The mortality associated with the infection is high, and autopsy typically reveals involvement of other organ systems, including the brain, liver, and pancreas. Acute benign pericarditis affects young adults but may be seen in older persons. The symptoms resemble those of myocardial infarction with fever.

Viral (aseptic) meningitis is an acute febrile illness accompanied by headache and signs of meningeal irritation, including nuchal rigidity. Petechiae or a rash may occur in patients with enteroviral meningitis. Recovery is usually uneventful unless the illness is associated with encephalitis (meningoencephalitis) or occurs in children younger than 1 year. Outbreaks of picornavirus meningitis (echovirus 11) occur each year during the summer and autumn.

Fever, rash, and common coldlike symptoms may occur in patients infected with echoviruses or coxsackieviruses. The rash is usually maculopapular but may occasionally be petechial or even vesicular. The petechial type of eruption can be confused with the rash of meningococcemia, which is life-threatening and must be treated. Enteroviral disease is usually less intense for the child than meningococcemia. Coxsackieviruses A21 and A24 and echoviruses 11 and 20 can cause rhinovirus-like symptoms resembling the common cold.

Other Enterovirus Diseases

Enterovirus 70 and a variant of coxsackievirus A24 have been associated with an extremely contagious ocular disease, **acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis.** The infection causes subconjunctival hemorrhages and conjunctivitis. The disease has a 24-hour incubation period and resolves within 1 or 2 weeks. **Parechoviruses** (including HPeV1 and HPeV2, previously named echovirus 22 and 23) are a major cause of viral sepsis-like illness, meningitis, and sudden death in neonates and infants. Coxsackievirus A16, enterovirus-A71, and D68 have been isolated from spinal fluid of children with acute flaccid paralysis. Some strains of coxsackievirus B, echovirus, and parechovirus can be transmitted transplacentally to the fetus. Infection of the fetus or an infant by this or another route may produce severe disseminated disease. Coxsackievirus B infections of the beta cells of the pancreas are a major cause of **type 1 insulin-dependent diabetes** as a result of immune destruction of the islets of Langerhans.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Clinical Chemistry

CSF from enterovirus aseptic meningitis can be distinguished from bacterial meningitis. The CSF lacks neutrophils, and the glucose level is usually normal or slightly low. The CSF protein level is normal to slightly elevated. The CSF is rarely positive for the virus.

Culture

Polioviruses may be isolated from the patient's pharynx during the first few days of illness, from the feces for as long as 30 days, but only rarely from CSF. The virus grows well in monkey kidney tissue culture. Coxsackieviruses and echoviruses can usually be isolated from the throat and stool during infection and often from CSF in patients with meningitis. Virus is rarely isolated in patients with myocarditis because the symptoms occur several weeks after the initial infection. Coxsackievirus B can be grown on primary monkey or human embryo kidney cells. Many strains of coxsackievirus A do not grow in tissue culture but can be grown in suckling mice.

Genome and Serology Studies

The exact type of enterovirus can be determined through the use of specific antibody and antigen assays (e.g., neutralization, immunofluorescence, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) or RT-PCR detection of viral RNA. RT-PCR of clinical samples has become a rapid and routine method to detect the presence of an enterovirus or distinguish a specific enterovirus, depending on the primers used.

Serology can be used to confirm an enterovirus infection through detection of specific IgM or the finding of a fourfold increase in the antibody titer between the time of the acute illness and the period of convalescence. Because of their many serotypes, this approach may not be practical for detection of echovirus and coxsackievirus unless a specific virus is suspected.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Prevention of paralytic poliomyelitis is one of the triumphs of modern medicine. By 1979, infections with the wild-type poliovirus disappeared from the United States, with the number of cases of polio decreasing from 21,000 per year in the prevaccine era to 18 in unvaccinated patients in 1977. Similar to smallpox, polio has been targeted for elimination. Health care delivery to underdeveloped countries is more difficult, and for this reason, wild-type viral disease still exists in Africa, the Middle East, and Asia. Misinformation, misunderstanding, and political unrest in Africa and other parts of the world have also limited acceptance of polio vaccination. New worldwide vaccination programs have been developed to reach the goal.

The two types of poliovirus vaccine are (1) **inactivated polio vaccine (IPV),** developed by Jonas Salk, and (2) **live attenuated oral polio vaccine (OPV),** developed by Albert Sabin. Both vaccines incorporate the three strains of polio, are stable, are relatively inexpensive, and induce a protective antibody response (Fig. 46.10). The IPV was proven effective in 1955, but the oral vaccine took its place because it is less expensive, easy to administer, limits production of virus and virus transmission, and elicits lifelong and mucosal immunity (Table 46.2). The IPV is now favored based on its safety profile.

The OPV was **attenuated** (i.e., rendered less virulent) by passage in human or monkey cell cultures. Attenuation yielded a virus that can replicate in the oropharynx and intestinal tract but cannot infect neuronal cells. The vaccine elicits IgA and IgG that can stop virus spread in and from the gut as well as spread within the body. A mixed blessing of the live vaccine strain is that it is shed in feces for weeks and may be spread to close contacts. The spread will immunize or reimmunize close contacts, promoting mass immunization. The major drawbacks of the live vaccine are that (1) the vaccine virus may infect an immunologically compromised person, and (2) there is a remote potential for the virus to revert to its virulent form and cause paralytic disease (less than 1 per 4 million doses administered versus 1 in 100 persons infected with the wild-type poliovirus).

In the absence of wild-type poliovirus, IPV has less potential for vaccine-related disease and is the vaccine of choice for routine vaccination. Children should receive the IPV at 2 months, 4 months, and 15 months and then at 4 to 6 years of age. In addition, with the elimination of wild-type polio, the next step is to stop the use of the oral vaccine to eliminate all polio from the world.

There are no vaccines for other enteroviruses. Transmission of these viruses can presumably be reduced by improvements in hygiene and living conditions. Enteroviruses are impervious to most common disinfectants and detergents but can be inactivated by formaldehyde, hypochlorite, and chlorine.

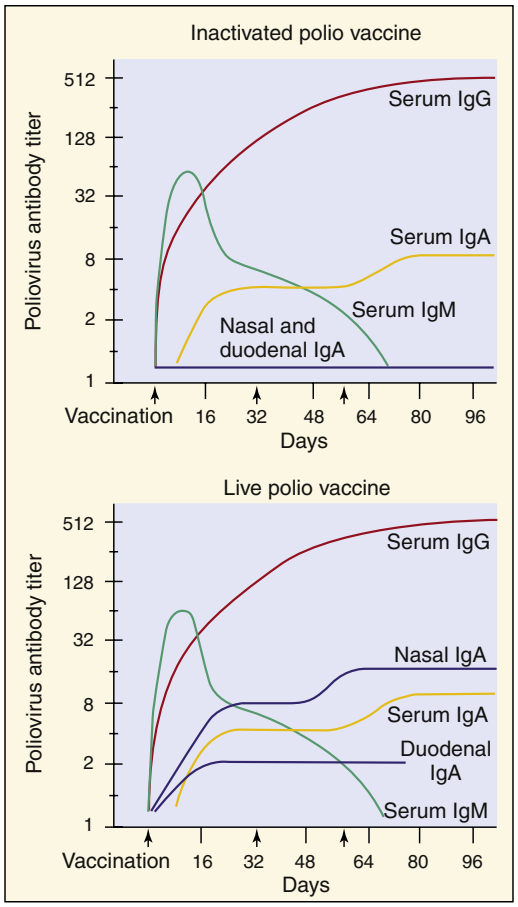


Fig. 46.10 Serum and secretory antibody response to intramuscular inoculation of inactivated polio vaccine (IPV) and to oral live attenuated polio vaccine (OPV). Note the presence of secretory IgA induced by the OPV. *Ig,* Immunoglobulin. (Modified from Ogra, P., Fishaut, M., Gallagher, M.R., 1980. Viral vaccination via the mucosal routes. Reviews of Infectious Diseases 2:352–369. Copyright 1980, University of Chicago Press.)

TABLE 46.2 Advantages and Disadvantages of Polio Vaccines

Vaccine	Advantages	Disadvantages
OPV	Effective Lifelong immunity Induction of secretory antibody response similar to that of natural infection Prevents spread of virus in feces Spread of attenuated virus to contacts promotes indirect immunization Inexpensive and easy to administer No need for repeated booster vaccine Herd immunity	Risk of vaccine-associated poliomyelitis in vaccine recipients or contacts; spread of vaccine to contacts without their consent Not safe for administration to immunodeficient patients
IPV	Effective Good stability during transport and in storage Safe administration in immunodeficient patients No risk of vaccine-related disease	Lack of induction of secretory antibody Booster vaccine needed for lifelong immunity Requires sterile syringes and needles Injection more painful than oral administration Higher community immunization levels needed than with live vaccine Does not prevent replication and spread of virus from gastrointestinal tract

IPV, Inactive polio vaccine; *OPV,* live oral polio vaccine.

Rhinoviruses

Rhinoviruses are the most important cause of the **common cold** and upper respiratory tract infections. Such infections are self-limited, however, and do not cause serious disease. More than 100 serotypes of rhinovirus have been identified. At least 80% of the rhinoviruses have a common receptor that is also used by some of the coxsackieviruses. This receptor has been identified as ICAM-1, which is a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily and is expressed on epithelial, fibroblast, and B-lymphoblastoid cells.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Unlike the enteroviruses, rhinoviruses are **unable to replicate in the gastrointestinal tract**. The rhinoviruses are **labile to acidic pH.** Also, they **grow best at 33° C,** a feature that contributes to their preference for the cooler environment of the nasal mucosa. Infection can be initiated by as little as one infectious viral particle. During the peak of illness, nasal secretions contain concentrations of 500 to 1000 infectious virions per milliliter. The virus enters through the nose, mouth, or eyes and initiates infection of the upper respiratory tract, including the throat. Most viral replication occurs in the nose, and the onset and severity of the symptoms correlate with the time of viral shedding and quantity (titer) of virus shed. Infected cells release bradykinin and histamine, which cause a "runny nose."

Interferon, which is generated in response to the infection, may limit progression of the infection and contribute to the symptoms. Immunity to rhinoviruses is transient and unlikely to prevent subsequent infection (because of the numerous serotypes of the virus). Both nasal secretory IgA and serum IgG serotype specific antibody are induced by a primary rhinovirus infection and can be detected within a week of infection. The protective secretory IgA response dissipates quickly, and immunity begins to wane approximately 18 months after infection. Cell-mediated immunity is not likely to play an important role in controlling rhinovirus infections.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Rhinoviruses cause at least half of all upper respiratory tract infections (Box 46.5). Other agents likely to cause the symptoms of the common cold are enteroviruses, coronaviruses, adenoviruses, and parainfluenza viruses. Rhinoviruses can be transmitted by two mechanisms: as aerosols and on fomites (e.g., by hands or on contaminated inanimate objects). Hands appear to be the major vector, and direct person-to-person contact is the predominant mode of spread. These nonenveloped viruses are extremely stable and can survive on such objects for many hours.

BOX 46.5 Epidemiology of Rhinovirus Infections

Disease/Viral Factors

Virion is resistant to drying and detergents
Multiple serotypes preclude prior immunity
Replication occurs at optimum temperature of 33° C and cooler temperatures

Transmission

Direct contact via infected hands and fomites
Inhalation of infectious droplets

Who Is at Risk?

Persons of all ages

Geography/Season

Virus found worldwide
Disease more common in early autumn and late spring

Modes of Control

Washing hands and disinfecting contaminated objects help prevent spread

BOX 46.6 Clinical Summaries

Poliovirus

Polio: A 12-year-old girl from Nigeria has headache, fever, nausea, and stiff neck. Symptoms improve and then recur several days later, with weakness and paralysis of her legs. She has no history of polio immunization.

Coxsackievirus A

Herpangina: Vesicular lesions on the tongue and roof of the mouth of a 7-year-old patient accompany fever, sore throat, and pain on swallowing.

Coxsackievirus B (B for body)

Pleurodynia: A 13-year-old boy has fever and severe chest pain with headache, fatigue, and aching muscles lasting for 4 days.

Coxsackievirus or Echovirus

Aseptic meningitis: A 7-month-old infant with fever and rash appears listless, with a stiff neck. A sample of his cerebrospinal fluid contains lymphocytes but has normal glucose and no bacteria. Full recovery occurs within 1 week.

Rhinovirus

Common cold: A 25-year-old office worker develops a runny nose, mild cough, and malaise with a low-grade fever. A coworker has had similar symptoms for the past few days.

Rhinoviruses produce clinical illness in only half of the persons infected. Asymptomatic persons are also capable of spreading the virus, even though they may produce less of it.

Rhinovirus "colds" occur most often in early autumn and late spring in persons living in temperate climates. This may reflect social patterns (e.g., return to school and day care) rather than any change in the virus itself.

Rates of infection are highest in infants and children. Children younger than 2 years "share" their colds with their families. Secondary infections occur in approximately 50% of family members, especially other children.

Many different rhinovirus serotypes may be found in a given community during a specific cold season, but the predominant strains are usually the newly categorized serotypes. This pattern indicates the existence of a gradual antigenic drift (mutation) similar to that seen for the influenza virus.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Common cold symptoms caused by rhinoviruses cannot readily be distinguished from those caused by other viral respiratory pathogens (e.g., enteroviruses, paramyxoviruses, coronaviruses) (Box 46.6). An upper respiratory tract infection usually begins with sneezing, which is soon followed by rhinorrhea (runny nose). The rhinorrhea increases and is then accompanied by symptoms of nasal obstruction. Mild sore throat also occurs, along with headache and malaise but usually without fever. The illness peaks in 3 to 4 days, but the cough and nasal symptoms may persist for 7 to 10 days or longer.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical syndrome of the common cold is usually so characteristic that laboratory diagnosis is unnecessary. Virus can be obtained from nasal washings. Rhinoviruses are grown in human diploid fibroblast cells (e.g., WI-38) at 33° C. Virus is identified by the typical cytopathologic effect and the demonstration of acid lability. Serotyping is rarely necessary but can be performed with the use of pools of specific neutralizing sera. Identification can also be made by genome analysis by RT-PCR. The performance of serologic testing to document rhinovirus infection is not practical.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

There are many over-the-counter remedies for the common cold. Nasal vasoconstrictors may provide relief, but their use may be followed by rebound congestion and a worsening of symptoms. Inhaling hot, humidified air, and even the steam from hot chicken soup, may actually help by increasing nasal drainage.

No antiviral drugs are available for picornavirus disease. Pleconaril and similar experimental antiviral drugs (e.g., arildone, rhodanine, disoxaril) contain a 3-methylisoxazole group that inserts into the base of the receptor-binding canyon and blocks uncoating of the virus. Enviroxime inhibits the viral RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. Rhinovirus is not a good candidate for a vaccine program. The multiple serotypes and other causes of the common cold, the apparent antigenic drift in rhinoviral antigens, the requirement for secretory IgA production, and the transience of the antibody response pose major problems for vaccine development. In addition, the benefit-to-risk ratio would be very low because rhinoviruses do not cause significant disease.

Handwashing and disinfection of contaminated objects are the best means of preventing viral spread. Virucidal facial tissues impregnated with citric acid may also limit rhinovirus spread.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Buenz, E.J., Howe, C.L., 2006. Picornaviruses and cell death. Trends Microbiol. 14, 28–38.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

de Crom, S.C.M., Rossen, J.W.A., van Furth, A.M., et al., 2016. Enterovirus and parechovirus infection in children: a brief overview. Eur. J. Pediatr. 175, 1023. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00431-016-2725-7.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.

McKinlay, M.A., Pevear, D.C., Rossmann, M.G., 1992. Treatment of the picornavirus common cold by inhibitors of viral uncoating and attachment. Annu. Rev. Microbiol. 46, 635–654.

Muir, P., 2017. Enteroviruses. Medicine 45 (12), 794–797.

Oshansky, D.M., 2005. Polio: An American Story. Oxford University Press N.Y. ISBN-13:9780195307146.

Poliovirus vaccine chapters. In: Plotkin, S.A., et al. (Ed.), 2018. Vaccines, seventh ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Racaniello, V.R., 2006. One hundred years of poliovirus pathogenesis. Virology 344, 9–16.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2002. Viruses and Human Disease. Academic, San Diego.

Tracy, S., Chapman, N.M., Mahy, B.W.J., 1997. Coxsackie B viruses. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. 223, 153–167.

Whitton, J.L., Cornell, C.T., Feuer, R., 2005. Host and virus determinants of picornavirus pathogenesis and tropism. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 3, 765–776.

Websites

Enterovirus and Parechovirus Surveillance—United States, 2014–2016. MMWR 67 (18), May 11, 2018, 515–518. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/67/wr/mm6718a2.htm.

Alsina-Gilbert, M., Sloan, S.B., Dermatologic manifestations of enteroviral infections. www.emedicine.com/derm/topic875.htm. Accessed July 29, 2018.

Shah, S., Picornavirus—overview. www.emedicine.com/med/topic1831.htm. Accessed July 29, 2018.

Manor Y, Shulman LM, Kaliner E, et al: Intensified environmental surveillance supporting the response to wild poliovirus type 1 silent circulation in Israel, 2013, Euro Surveill 19:20708, 2014. www.eurosurveillance.org/ViewArticle.aspx?ArticleId=20708. Accessed July 29, 2018.

Picornaviridae online. www.picornaviridae.com. Accessed July 29, 2018.

Khan, F., Datta, D., Quddus, A., et al., Progress Toward Polio Eradication—Worldwide, January 2016–March 2018. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 67 (18), 524–528. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/67/wr/mm6718a4.htm. Accessed July 29, 2018.

Buensalido, J.A.L., Rhinovirus infection. www.emedicine.com/ped/topic2707.htm. Accessed July 29, 2018.

Polio vaccines: https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/vpd/polio/index.html. Accessed August 2, 2018.

Polio and its eradication. https://www.cdc.gov/polio/. Accessed August 2, 2018.

Non-polio enteroviruses: https://www.cdc.gov/non-polio-enterovirus/index.html. Accessed August 2, 2018.

Vital Signs: Surveillance for Acute Flaccid Myelitis—United States, 2018. MMWR Weekly 68(27);608–614. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/68/wr/mm6827e1.htm?s_cid=mm6827e1_e&deliveryName=USCDC_921-DM4248. Accessed July 12, 2019.

Case Study and Questions

A 6-year-old girl was brought to the doctor's office at 4:30 p.m. because she had a sore throat, had been unusually tired, and was napping excessively. Her temperature was 39° C. She had a sore throat, enlarged tonsils, and a faint rash on her back. At 10:30 p.m., the patient's mother reported that the child had vomited three times, continued to nap excessively, and complained of a headache when awake. The doctor examined the child at 11:30 p.m. and noted that she was lethargic and aroused only when her head was turned, complaining that her back hurt. Her CSF contained no red blood cells, but there were 28 white blood cells/mm^3, half polymorphonuclear neutrophils and half lymphocytes. The glucose and protein levels in the CSF were normal, and Gram stain of a specimen of CSF showed no bacteria.

1. What were the key signs and symptoms in this case?
2. What was the differential diagnosis?
3. What signs and symptoms suggested an enterovirus infection?
4. How would the diagnosis be confirmed?
5. What were the most likely sources and means of infection?
6. What were the target tissue and mechanism of pathogenesis?

47 Coronaviruses and Noroviruses

A 17-year-old student complains that he has a cold.

1. What are the possible causes?
2. What properties of the virus restrict the infection to the upper respiratory tract?
3. How is it transmitted and acquired?

A day after eating burritos at a fast food restaurant, several medical students complained of serious diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, and a mild fever for 2 days. Other patrons also had gastroenteritis.

4. What are the likely causes of the gastroenteritis? How does the 24-hour incubation period help narrow down the diagnosis?
5. How does this agent cause diarrhea?
6. What is the best means of detecting the agent?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

CORONAVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Common cold, SARS, MERS

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Medium size, enveloped, (+) RNA genome
- Detergent resistant because of glycoprotein corona (exception to the rule for enveloped viruses)
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Most coronaviruses cannot replicate at body temperature, restricted to upper respiratory tract
- Most coronaviruses cause the common cold
- MERS and SARS can replicate at 37° C and cause severe pneumonias

Epidemiology

- Transmitted by aerosols, direct contact, fecal oral, contaminated swimming pools

Diagnosis

- Symptomatology, RT-PCR genome analysis, or respiratory secretions

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Quarantine for SARS, MERS

NOROVIRUSES (CALICIVIRIDAE)

Trigger Words

Outbreaks of diarrhea, cruise ships, watery diarrhea, vomiting

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Small size, capsid, (+) RNA genome
- Very resistant to environment, including detergents and other disinfectants
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Damages intestinal brush border
- Diarrhea with nausea and vomiting

Epidemiology

- Transmitted by fecal-oral route, in contaminated foods and water; very resistant to inactivation

Diagnosis

- Symptomatology, RT-PCR genome analysis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Supportive care

MERS, Middle East respiratory syndrome; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction; *SARS,* severe acute respiratory syndrome.

Coronaviruses

Coronaviruses are named for the solar corona–like appearance (the surface projections) of their virions when viewed with an electron microscope (Fig. 47.1). Coronaviruses are the second most prevalent cause of the **common cold** (rhinoviruses are the first). Coronaviruses have caused outbreaks of **severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV)** in China and the Middle East (Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus [**MERS-CoV**]). Electron microscopic findings have also linked coronaviruses to gastroenteritis in children and adults.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

Coronaviruses are **enveloped virions** with the longest **positive (+) ribonucleic acid (RNA)** genome. Virions measure 80 to 160 nm in diameter (Box 47.1). The glycoproteins on the surface of the envelope appear as club-shaped projections that appear as a halo (corona) around the virus. Unlike most enveloped viruses, the "corona" formed by the glycoproteins allows the virus to endure the conditions in the gastrointestinal tract and be spread by the fecal-oral route.

The large plus-stranded RNA genome (27,000 to 30,000 bases) associates with the N protein to form a helical nucleocapsid. Protein synthesis occurs in two phases, similar to that of the togaviruses. On infection, the genome is translated to produce a polyprotein that is cleaved to produce an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (L [225,000 Da]) and other proteins. Transcription and replication of the genome occurs within membrane vesicles created by viral proteins. The L protein produces and then uses a negative-sense template RNA to replicate new genomes and produce five to seven **individual messenger RNAs (mRNAs)** for the individual viral proteins.

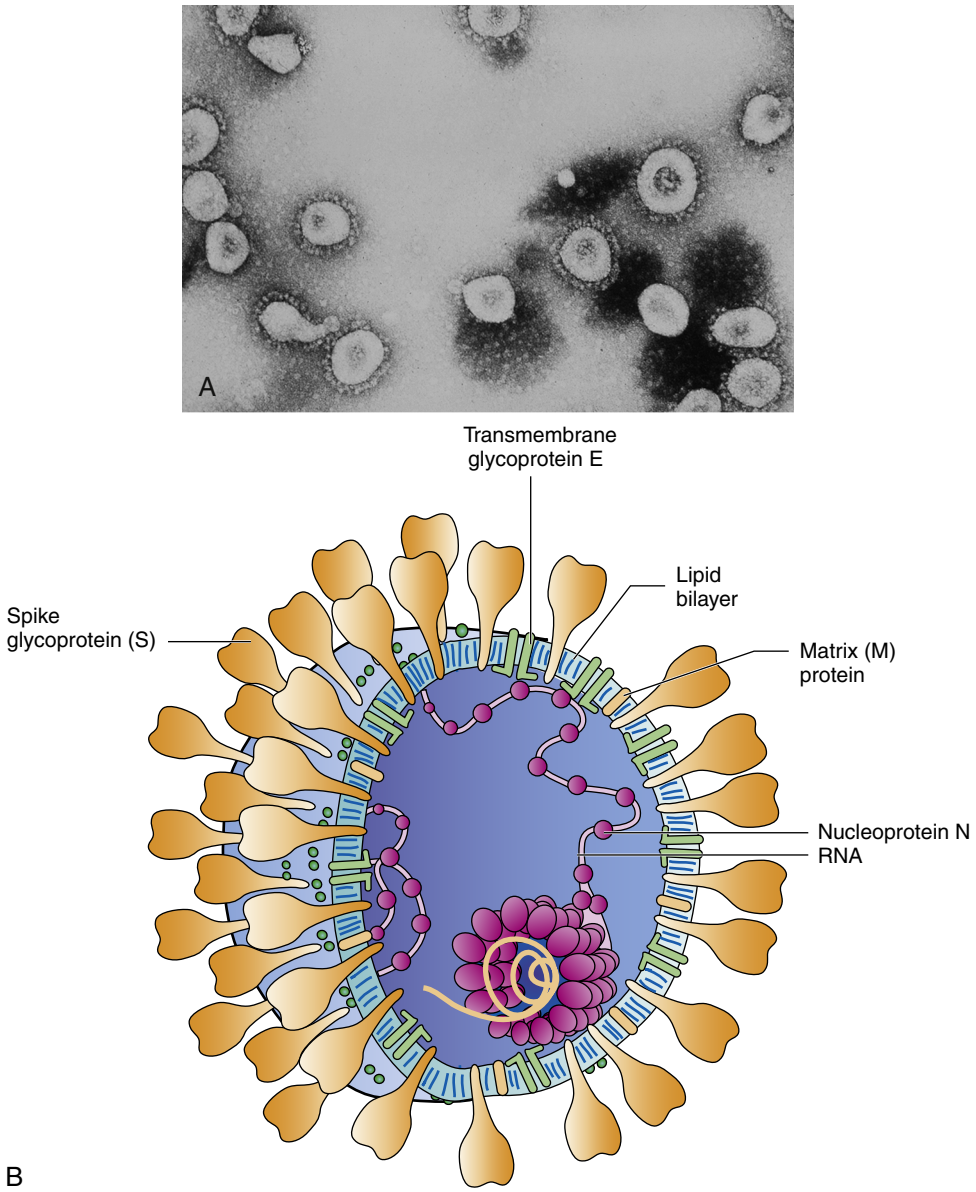


Fig. 47.1 (A) Electron micrograph of the human respiratory coronavirus (magnification 90,000×). (B) Model of a coronavirus. The viral nucleocapsid is a long, flexible helix composed of the positive-strand genomic RNA and many molecules of the phosphorylated nucleocapsid protein N. The viral envelope consists of a lipid bilayer derived from the intracellular membranes of the host cell, two or three viral glycoproteins (Spike [S], E, possibly hemagglutinin-esterase [HE]), and a matrix protein. (A, Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia. B, Modified from Fields, B.F., Knipe, D.M., 1985. Virology. Raven, New York, NY.)

Virions contain the glycoproteins E1 (20,000 to 30,000 Da) and E2 (160,000 to 200,000 Da) and a core nucleoprotein (N [47,000 to 55,000 Da]); some strains also contain a hemagglutinin neuraminidase (E3 [120,000 to 140,000 Da]) (Table 47.1). The E2 glycoprotein is responsible for mediating viral attachment and membrane fusion and is the target of neutralizing antibodies. The E1 glycoprotein is a transmembrane matrix protein. The replication scheme for coronaviruses is shown in Fig. 47.2.

PATHOGENESIS AND CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Most human coronaviruses have an *optimum temperature for viral growth of 33° C to 35° C;* therefore infection remains localized to the upper respiratory tract. Animal coronaviruses, including SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV, can replicate at 37° C and cause systemic disease in humans. Coronaviruses cause cytolytic infections and when inoculated into the respiratory tracts of human volunteers, they infect and disrupt the function of ciliated epithelial cells (Box 47.2).

The virus is most likely spread by aerosols. Most human coronaviruses cause an upper respiratory tract infection, accounting for approximately 10% to 15% of upper respiratory tract infections in humans. The disease is similar to the common cold caused by rhinoviruses but with a longer incubation period (average, 3 days). The infection may exacerbate a preexisting chronic pulmonary disease, such as asthma or bronchitis, and on rare occasions may cause pneumonia.

BOX 47.1 Unique Features of Coronaviruses

Virus has medium-sized virions with a solar corona–like appearance.
Single-stranded, positive-sense RNA genome is enclosed in an envelope containing the E2 viral attachment protein, E1 matrix protein, and N nucleocapsid protein.
Translation of genome occurs in two phases: (1) the early phase produces an RNA polymerase (L), and (2) the late phase, from a negative-sense RNA template, yields structural and nonstructural proteins.
Virus assembles at the rough endoplasmic reticulum.
Virus is difficult to isolate and grow in routine cell culture.

Infections occur mainly in infants and children. Coronavirus disease appears either sporadically or in outbreaks in the winter and spring. Usually, one strain predominates in an outbreak. Antibodies to coronaviruses are uniformly present by adulthood, but reinfections are common, despite the preexisting serum antibodies.

Coronavirus-like particles have also been seen in electron micrographs of stool specimens obtained from adults and children with diarrhea and gastroenteritis and in infants with neonatal necrotizing enterocolitis.

SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV are zoonoses. The outbreaks of these viral diseases have occurred when the animal reservoir has come in contact with man. SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV are cytolytic viruses that can replicate at body temperatures in epithelial cells, lymphocytes, and leukocytes. A combination of viral pathogenesis and immunopathogenesis causes significant lung, kidney, liver, and gastrointestinal tissue damage and depletion of immune cells.

SARS is a form of atypical pneumonia characterized by high fever (>38° C), chills, rigors, headache, dizziness, malaise, myalgia, cough, or breathing difficulty, leading to acute respiratory distress syndrome. Up to 20% of patients will also develop diarrhea. Persons with SARS were exposed within the previous 10 days. Mortality is at least 10% of symptomatic people. Although SARS-CoV is most likely transmitted in respiratory droplets, it is also present in sweat, urine, and feces.

The outbreak of SARS started in November 2002 in South China's Guangdong Province, was brought to Hong Kong by a physician working within the original outbreak, and then was brought to Vietnam, Toronto, and other places by travelers. The virus was shown to be a coronavirus by its electron microscopic morphology and by RT-PCR. The virus apparently jumped to man from animals (masked-palm civets, raccoon dogs, and Chinese ferret badgers) raised for food. A World Health Organization (WHO) global alert prompted containment measures to control the spread of the virus and limited the outbreak to 8000 known diseased individuals, but there were at least 784 deaths. Travel restrictions and public concern resulted in a loss of hundreds of millions of dollars in travel and other business.

MERS-CoV also causes acute respiratory distress syndrome, with a 50% mortality of those identified as infected with MERS. Most of the cases of MERS have occurred in the Arabian Peninsula. Bats and camels are the natural reservoirs of MERS-CoV.

Table 47.1 Major Human Coronavirus Proteins

Proteins	Molecular Weight (kDa)	Location	Functions
E2 (peplomeric glycoprotein)	160-200	Envelope spikes (peplomer)	Binding to host cells; fusion activity
H1 (hemagglutinin protein)	60-66	Peplomer	Hemagglutination
N (nucleoprotein)	47-55	Core	Ribonucleoprotein
E1 (matrix glycoprotein)	20-30	Envelope	Transmembrane protein
L (polymerase)	225	Infected cell	Polymerase activity

Modified from Balows, A., Hausler, W.J., Lennette, E.H., et al., 1998. Laboratory Diagnosis of Infectious Diseases: Principles and Practice. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Laboratory tests are not routinely performed to diagnose coronavirus infections other than for SARS and MERS. RT-PCR is the method of choice for detection of the viral RNA genome in respiratory and stool samples. Virus isolation of the coronaviruses is difficult and for SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV requires stringent biosafety level 3 (BSL-3) conditions.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Control of respiratory transmission of the common cold form of coronavirus would be difficult and is probably unnecessary because of the mildness of the infection. Strict quarantine of infected individuals and screening for fever in travelers from a region with an outbreak of SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV limit the spread of these viruses. No vaccine or specific antiviral therapy is available.

Noroviruses

Norovirus is the most common cause of foodborne disease outbreaks in the United States. The noroviruses are members of the Caliciviridae family, which like astroviruses, are small, round gastroenteritis viruses. Norwalk virus, the prototypical norovirus, was discovered during an epidemic of acute gastroenteritis in Norwalk, Ohio, in 1968 on electron microscopic examination of stool samples from adults. Many of the other viruses in this family also bear the names of the geographic locations in which they were identified (Box 47.3).

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

Noroviruses resemble and are approximately the same size as the picornaviruses. Their **positive-sense RNA genome** (≈7500 bases) has a VPg protein (viral protein genome-linked) and a 3′ terminal polyadenylate sequence similar to picornaviruses. The genome is contained in a 27-nm **naked capsid** consisting of 60,000-Da capsid proteins. Norwalk virion capsid is icosahedral with a ragged outline.

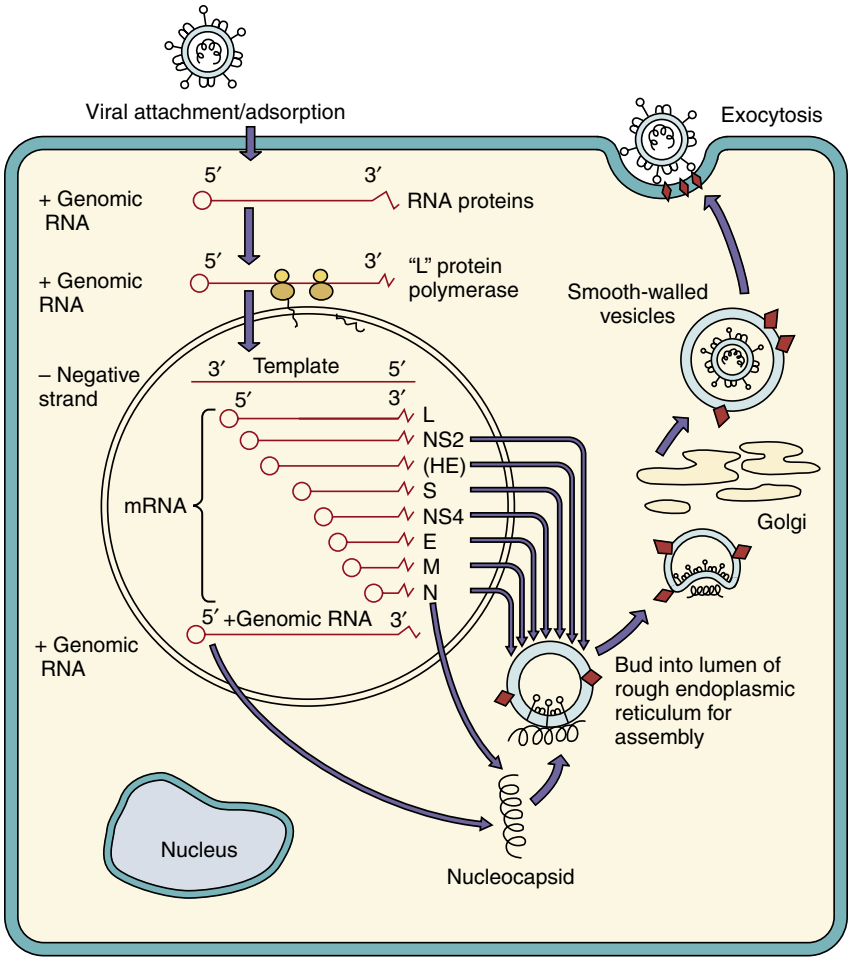


Fig. 47.2 Replication of human coronaviruses. The E2 glycoprotein interacts with receptors on epithelial cells, the virus fuses or is endocytosed into the cell, and the genome is released into the cytoplasm. Protein synthesis is divided into early and late phases, similar to that in the togaviruses. The genome binds to ribosomes, and an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase is translated. This enzyme generates a full-length, negative-sense RNA template for the production of new virion genomes and six individual mRNAs for the other coronavirus proteins. The genome associates with rough endoplasmic reticulum membranes modified by virion proteins and buds into the lumen of the rough endoplasmic reticulum. Vesicles that contain the virus migrate to the cell membrane, and the virus is released by exocytosis. (Modified from Balows, A., Hausler, W.J., Lennette, E.H., et al., 1988. Laboratory Diagnosis of Infectious Diseases: Principles and Practice. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY.)

BOX 47.2 Disease Mechanisms of Human Coronaviruses

Human coronavirus infects and kills epithelial cells of the upper respiratory tract.
Virus replicates best at 33° C to 35° C; therefore it prefers the upper respiratory tract.
Reinfection occurs in the presence of serum antibodies.
The glycoprotein "corona" helps this enveloped virus survive the gastrointestinal tract.
SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV replicate at 37° C, kill cells and initiate inflammatory responses in the lung.

MERS-CoV, Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus; *SARS-CoV,* severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus.

BOX 47.3 Characteristics of Noroviruses

Viruses are small capsid viruses distinguishable by capsid morphology.
Viruses are resistant to environmental pressure, such as detergents, drying, and acid.
Viruses are transmitted by fecal-oral route in contaminated water, food, vomitus.
Viruses cause outbreaks of gastroenteritis.
Disease resolves after 48 hours, without serious consequences.

The capsomeres of noroviruses, other caliciviruses, and astroviruses differ in conformation. Antibodies from seropositive people can also be used to distinguish these viruses.

Most caliciviruses and astroviruses can be grown in routine cell culture, but the Norwalk viruses cannot. Expression of the structural protein genes of different Norwalk viruses in tissue culture cells produces Norwalk virus–like particles. These particles were used to show that Norwalk viruses bind to the carbohydrate of either the A, B, or O blood group antigen on the cell surface. The noroviruses enter and exit cells similar to the picornaviruses but transcribe an early and late mRNA similar to the togaviruses and coronaviruses. The early mRNA encodes a polyprotein containing the RNA polymerase and other enzymes. The late mRNA encodes the capsid proteins.

PATHOGENESIS

The norovirus strains that infect humans can only infect humans. As few as 10 virions will initiate disease in humans. The virus infects and damages the small intestine, preventing proper absorption of water and nutrients and causing a watery diarrhea. Gastric emptying may be delayed, causing vomiting. Shedding of the virus may continue for 2 weeks after symptoms have ceased. Immunity is generally short-lived at best and may not be protective. The large number of strains and high rate of mutation allow reinfection despite antibodies from a previous exposure.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Norwalk and related viruses typically cause outbreaks of gastroenteritis from a common source of contamination (e.g., water, shellfish, salad, raspberries, food service). These viruses are transmitted mainly by the fecal-oral route in stool and vomitus. The virus is resistant to drying and heat and can remain on surfaces for long periods. Infected individuals shed the largest amounts of the virus when sick and for 3 days after recovery but continue to shed the virus for up to 4 weeks. During peak shedding, 100 billion virions are released per gram of feces. Up to 30% of infected individuals are asymptomatic but can spread the infection.

Outbreaks in developed countries may occur year-round and have been described in schools, resorts, hospitals, nursing homes, restaurants, and cruise ships. Common-source outbreaks can often be traced to a careless, infected food handler. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention estimates that nearly 50% (23 million U.S. cases per year) of all foodborne outbreaks of gastroenteritis can be attributed to noroviruses, which is a tribute to the importance of this virus. As many as 70% of children in the United States have antibodies to noroviruses by the age of 7 years.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Norwalk and related viruses cause symptoms similar to those caused by the rotaviruses but in adults and children (Clinical Case 47.1; Box 47.4). Infection causes an acute onset of **diarrhea, nausea, vomiting,** and abdominal cramps, especially in children (Fig. 47.3). Bloody stools do not occur. Fever may occur in as many as a third of patients. The incubation period is usually 12 to 48 hours, and the illness usually resolves within 1 to 3 days without problems but can last up to 6 days.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The use of RT-PCR for detection of the norovirus genome in stool or emesis samples has enhanced the speed and detection of the virus during outbreaks. Immunoelectron microscopy can be used to concentrate and identify the virus from stool. Addition of an antibody directed against the suspected agent causes the virus to aggregate, facilitating recognition. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) tests have been developed to detect the virus, viral antigen, and antibody to the virus. The other calicivirus-like agents are more difficult to detect.

Clinical Case 47.1 **Norwalk Virus Outbreak**

Brummer-Korvenkontio and associates (*Epidemiol Infect* 129:335–360, 2002) described an outbreak of gastroenteritis in children who had attended a concert; infection was traced back to contamination of a specific seating area, bathrooms, and other areas visited by one individual. A male concert attendee was ill before attending a concert and then vomited four times in the concert hall: in a waste bin in the corridor, into the toilets, onto the floor of the fire escape, and on a carpeted area in the walkway. His family members showed symptoms within 24 hours. A children's concert for several schools was held the next day. Children sitting in the same section as the incident case and those who traversed the contaminated carpet had the highest incidence of disease, characterized by watery diarrhea and vomiting for approximately 2 days. RT-PCR analysis of fecal samples from two ill children detected Norwalk virus genomic RNA. Infected vomit may have up to a million viruses per milliliter, and only 10 to 100 viruses are required to transmit the disease. Contact with contaminated shoes, hands, clothing, or aerosols may have infected the children. The encapsidated nature of the Norwalk virus makes it resistant to routine cleansers; disinfection usually requires freshly prepared hypochlorite bleach–containing solutions or steam cleaning.

RT-PCR, Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction.

BOX 47.4 Clinical Summaries

Coronaviruses

Common cold: A 25-year-old office worker develops a runny nose, mild cough, malaise, and a low-grade fever. A coworker has had similar symptoms for the past few days.

SARS: A 45-year-old businessman returned from a 2-week trip to China. Five days after returning home to the United States, he developed a fever of 101.5° F (38.6° C) and cough. Now he observes that it is harder to catch his breath.

Norovirus

Norwalk virus: On the third day of a cruise (incubation period of 24 to 60 hours), a group of 45 passengers on a cruise ship experienced watery diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting for 12 to 60 hours, depending on the individual.

SARS, Severe acute respiratory syndrome.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

There is no specific treatment for the diarrhea caused by caliciviruses or other small, round gastroenteritis viruses other than oral rehydration therapy. Outbreaks may be minimized by handling food carefully and by maintaining the purity of the water supply. Careful hand washing is also important. More resistant to environmental pressures than polioviruses or rotaviruses, the Norwalk virus is resistant to heat (60° C), pH 3, detergent, and even the chlorine levels of drinking water. Contaminated surfaces can be cleaned with a 1:50 to 1:10 dilution of household bleach.

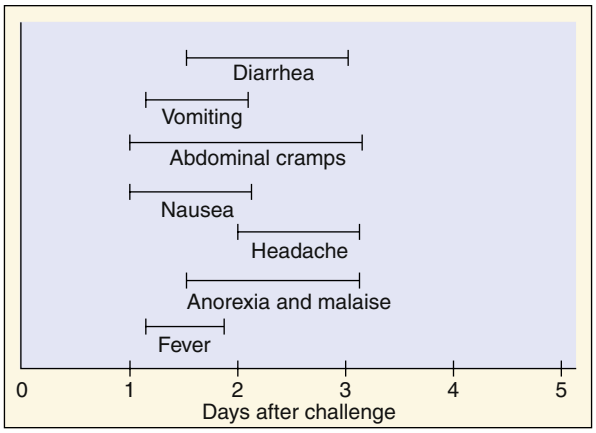


Fig. 47.3 Response to ingestion of Norwalk virus. Symptoms vary in severity.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

Noroviruses

Balows, A., Hausler, W.J., Lennette, E.H., 1988. Laboratory Diagnosis of Infectious Diseases: Principles and Practice. Springer-Verlag, New York.

Blacklow, N.R., Greenberg, H.B., 1991. Viral gastroenteritis. N. Engl. J. Med. 325, 252–264.

Christensen, M.L., 1989. Human viral gastroenteritis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 2, 51–89.

Ettayebi, K., Crawford, S.E., Murakami, K., et al., Aug 2016. Replication of human noroviruses in stem cell–derived human enteroids. Science 25, aaf5211. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aaf5211.

Hall, A.J., Vinje, J., Lopman, B., et al., 2011. Updated norovirus outbreak management and disease prevention guidelines. MMWR Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep. 60, 1–15.

Hall, A.J., Eisenbart, V.G., Etingüe, A., Gould, L., Lopman, B.A., Parashar, U.D., 2012. Epidemiology of Foodborne Norovirus Outbreaks, United States, 2001–2008. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 18 (10), 1566–1573. https://dx.doi.org/10.3201/eid1810.120833.

Patel, M.M., Hall, A.J., Vinje, J., et al., 2009. Noroviruses: a comprehensive review. J. Clin. Virol. 44, 1–8.

Tan, M., Huang, P., Meller, J., et al., 2003. Mutations within the P2 domain of norovirus capsid affect binding to human histo-blood group antigens: evidence for a binding pocket. J. Virol. 77, 12562–12571.

Coronaviruses

Graham, R.L., Donaldson, E.F., Baric, R.S., 2013. A decade after SARS: strategies for controlling emerging coronaviruses. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 11, 836–848.

Gu, J., Korteweg, C., 2007. Pathology and pathogenesis of severe acute respiratory syndrome. Am. J. Pathol. 170, 1136–1147.

Meulen, V., Siddell, S., Wege, H., 1981. Biochemistry and Biology of Coronaviruses. Plenum, New York.

Perlman, S., 2009. Netland J: Coronaviruses post-SARS: update on replication and pathogenesis. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 7, 439–450.

Websites

Norovirus

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Norovirus. https://www.cdc.gov/norovirus/index.html. Accessed January 2, 2019.

Brennan, J., Cavallo, S.J., Garman, K., et al., 2017. Notes from the Field: Multiple Modes of Transmission During a Thanksgiving Day Norovirus Outbreak—Tennessee. MMWR Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep. 2018. 67, 1300–1301. https://doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.mm6746a4. Accessed January 2, 2019.

Hall, A.J., Wikswo, M.E., Pringle, K., et al., 2014. Vital signs: foodborne norovirus outbreaks—United States, 2009–2012. MMWR. 63, 1–5. www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm63e0603a1.htm?s_cid=mm63e0603a1_e. Accessed January 2, 2019.

Coronaviruses

Kamps, B.S., Hoffmann, C., 2003. SARS reference. www.sarsreference.com/sarsref/preface.htm. Accessed January 2, 2019.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Coronavirus https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/about/index.html. Accessed January 2, 2019.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: MERS https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/mers/about/symptoms.html. Accessed January 2, 2019.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: SARS https://www.cdc.gov/sars/about/fs-SARS.html#symptoms. Accessed January 2, 2019.

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases: MERS and SARS. https://www.niaid.nih.gov/diseases-conditions/mers-and-sars. Accessed January 2, 2019.

Trivedi, M.N., Malhotra, P., 2016. Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/237755-overview. Accessed January 2, 2019.

Case Study and Questions

Several adults complained of serious diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, and a mild fever 2 days after visiting Le Café Grease. The symptoms were too severe to result from food poisoning or a routine gastroenteritis but lasted only 24 hours.

1. What characteristics distinguished this disease from a rotavirus infection?
2. What was the most likely means of viral transmission?
3. What physical characteristics of the virus allowed it to be transmitted by these means?
4. What public health measures could be followed to prevent such outbreaks?

48 Paramyxoviruses

A 10-year-old boy presented with cough, conjunctivitis, and coryza plus fever and lymphadenopathy, which progressed to a rash that spread from the hairline down his face and then his body. Within 10 days, the disease appeared to run its course, but a week after the start of the rash, an abrupt onset of headache, vomiting, and confusion progressed to coma, which is consistent with encephalitis.

1. How does measles replicate?
2. What are the characteristic signs of measles?
3. How is it transmitted?
4. Why was the boy susceptible to measles?
5. What other complications are associated with measles?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

PARAMYXOVIRUSES

Trigger Words

- Fusion, syncytia, aerosols, envelope
- Measles: cough, conjunctivitis, coryza, photophobia, Koplik spots, rash, fever, SSPE, postmeasles encephalitis
- Mumps: parotitis, orchitis, aseptic meningitis
- Parainfluenza: croup, barking seal, pneumonia
- RSV: infant, pneumonia

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Large size, enveloped, (–) RNA genome, fusion protein
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Parainfluenza and mumps bind to sialic acid and encode neuraminidase activity (HN glycoprotein); measles and RSV glycoprotein bind to proteins
- Fusion protein promotes entry and cell-cell fusion (syncytia)
- Cell-mediated immune response essential for control but causes pathogenesis
- Measles: maculopapular rash, high fever with cough, conjunctivitis, coryza, Koplik spots (small gray lesions in mouth); more severe if vitamin A deficient, giant cell pneumonia if T-cell deficient, postmeasles encephalitis, SSPE 5–7 years later caused by measles variant
- Mumps: parotitis, orchitis, aseptic meningitis
- Parainfluenza: common cold, croup, bronchitis
- RSV: common cold, pneumonia, bronchiolitis, life-threatening for premature infants

Epidemiology

- Transmitted by aerosols

Diagnosis

- Symptomatology, RT-PCR genome analysis of respiratory secretions

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Live attenuated vaccine for measles and mumps; RSV: passive immunization for premature infants at high risk; aerosolized ribavirin

RSV, Respiratory syncytial virus; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction; *SSPE,* subacute sclerosing panencephalitis.

The Paramyxoviridae include the genera *Morbillivirus, Paramyxovirus,* and *Pneumovirus* (Table 48.1; Box 48.1). Human pathogens within the morbilliviruses include the measles virus; within the paramyxoviruses, the **parainfluenza** and **mumps** viruses; and within the pneumoviruses, the **respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)** and **metapneumovirus.** A new group of highly pathogenic paramyxoviruses, including two zoonosis-causing viruses, Nipah virus and Hendra virus, was identified in 1998 after an outbreak of severe encephalitis in Malaysia and Singapore. Their virions have similar morphologies and protein components. Importantly, paramyxoviruses induce **cell-to-cell fusion (syncytia formation and multinucleated giant cells).**

These agents cause some well-known major diseases. The measles virus causes a potentially serious generalized infection characterized by a maculopapular rash **(rubeola).** Parainfluenza and metapneumoviruses cause upper and lower respiratory tract infections, primarily in children, including the common cold, pharyngitis, croup, bronchitis, bronchiolitis, and pneumonia. The mumps virus causes a systemic infection whose most prominent clinical manifestation is parotitis. RSV causes mild upper respiratory tract infections in children and adults but can cause life-threatening pneumonia in infants.

Measles and mumps viruses have only **one serotype,** and protection is provided by effective **live vaccines.** In the United States and other developed countries, successful vaccination programs using the live attenuated measles and mumps vaccines have made measles and mumps rare. The reduction in measles has led to the virtual elimination of the serious sequelae of measles in these countries. Unfortunately, large and serious outbreaks of measles and mumps are now occurring in the United States and Europe because of increased noncompliance with the vaccine programs.

TABLE 48.1 Paramyxoviridae

Genus	Human Pathogen
Morbillivirus	Measles virus
Paramyxovirus	Parainfluenza viruses 1-4
	Mumps virus
Pneumovirus	Respiratory syncytial virus
	Metapneumovirus

BOX 48.1 Unique Features of the Paramyxoviridae

- Large virion consists of a negative-sense RNA genome in a helical nucleocapsid surrounded by an envelope.
- The three genera can be distinguished by the activities of the viral attachment protein: **HN** of parainfluenza virus and mumps virus binds to sialic acid and red blood cells (hemagglutinin and neuraminidase activity), neuraminidase facilitates release from cell; **H** of measles virus binds protein receptors and is also a hemagglutinin; **G** of RSV binds to cells but is not a hemagglutinin.
- Virus replicates in the cytoplasm.
- Virions penetrate the cell by fusion with the plasma membrane and exit by budding from the plasma membrane without killing the cell.
- Viruses induce cell-to-cell fusion, causing multinucleated giant cells **(syncytia).**
- **Cell-mediated immunity** causes many of the symptoms but is essential for control of the infection.
- Paramyxoviridae are transmitted in **respiratory droplets** and initiate infection in the respiratory tract.
- Measles and mumps establish viremia and spread to other body sites.

Structure and Replication

Paramyxoviruses are relatively large viruses with a **negative-sense, single-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA)** (5 to 8 × 10^6 Da) genome in a helical nucleocapsid surrounded by a pleomorphic **envelope** of approximately 156 to 300 nm (Fig. 48.1). They are similar in many respects to orthomyxoviruses but are larger and do not have the segmented genome of the influenza viruses. Although there are similarities in paramyxovirus genomes, the order of the protein-coding regions differs for each genus. The paramyxovirus proteins are listed in Table 48.2.

The nucleocapsid consists of the negative-sense, single-stranded RNA associated with the nucleoprotein **(N),** polymerase phosphoprotein **(P),** and large **(L)** protein. The L protein is the RNA polymerase, the P protein facilitates RNA synthesis, and the N protein helps maintain genomic structure. The nucleocapsid associates with the matrix **(M)** protein lining the inside of the virion envelope. The envelope contains two glycoproteins, a fusion **(F)** protein, and a viral attachment protein (hemagglutinin-neuraminidase **[HN],** hemagglutinin **[H],** or glycoprotein **[G]** protein) (see Box 48.1). To express membrane-fusing activity, the F protein must be activated by proteolytic cleavage, which produces F_1 and F_2 glycopeptides held together by a disulfide bond. Additional proteins (V and C) result from alternative transcripts of the P gene and facilitate escape from innate host protections.

Replication of the paramyxoviruses is initiated by the binding of the HN, H, or G glycoprotein on the virion envelope to their receptors. The HN of parainfluenza viruses bind to sialic acid on cell-surface glycolipids and glycoproteins. Like influenza, they use the neuraminidase activity to cleave sialic acid on viral and cellular glycoproteins to prevent binding to itself and the infected cell proteins to facilitate exit from the cell. The other paramyxoviruses bind to protein receptors and do not need neuraminidase activity. The F protein promotes fusion of the envelope with the plasma membrane. Paramyxoviruses are also able to induce cell-to-cell fusion, creating multinucleated giant cells (syncytia).

Replication of the genome occurs in a manner similar to that of other negative-strand RNA viruses (i.e., rhabdoviruses). The RNA polymerase is carried into the cell as part of the nucleocapsid. Transcription, protein synthesis, and replication of the genome all occur in the host cell's cytoplasm. The genome is transcribed into individual messenger RNAs (mRNAs) and a full-length positive-sense RNA template. New genomes associate with the L, N, and P proteins to form helical nucleocapsids that associate with the M proteins on viral glycoprotein-modified plasma membranes. The glycoproteins are synthesized and processed like cellular glycoproteins. Mature virions then bud from the host cell plasma membrane and exit without killing the cell. Replication of the paramyxoviruses is represented by the RSV infectious cycle shown in Fig. 48.2.

Measles Virus

Measles, also known as rubeola, is one of the five classic childhood exanthems, along with rubella, roseola, fifth disease, and chickenpox. Historically, measles was one of the most common and unpleasant viral infections, with serious potential sequelae. Before 1960, more than 90% of the population younger than 20 years had experienced the rash, high fever, cough, conjunctivitis, and coryza of measles. Measles is still one of the most prominent causes of disease (>10 million cases per year) and death (120,000 deaths in 2012) worldwide in unvaccinated populations. The development of effective vaccine programs has made measles a rare disease in developed countries, but children remain unvaccinated or do not receive their boosters and outbreaks of measles occur.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Measles virus can infect many cell types because of the presence of its receptors, CD46 (complement regulatory protein) and nectin 4 poliovirus receptor-like 4 (PVRL4) on epithelial and other cells and CD150 (signaling lymphocyte-activation molecule [SLAM]) on dendritic cells and lymphocytes. Binding to CD150 promotes the viremic spread in dendritic cells, and B and T lymphocytes throughout the body. Measles is known for its propensity to cause cell fusion, leading to the formation of giant cells (Box 48.2) and the ability to

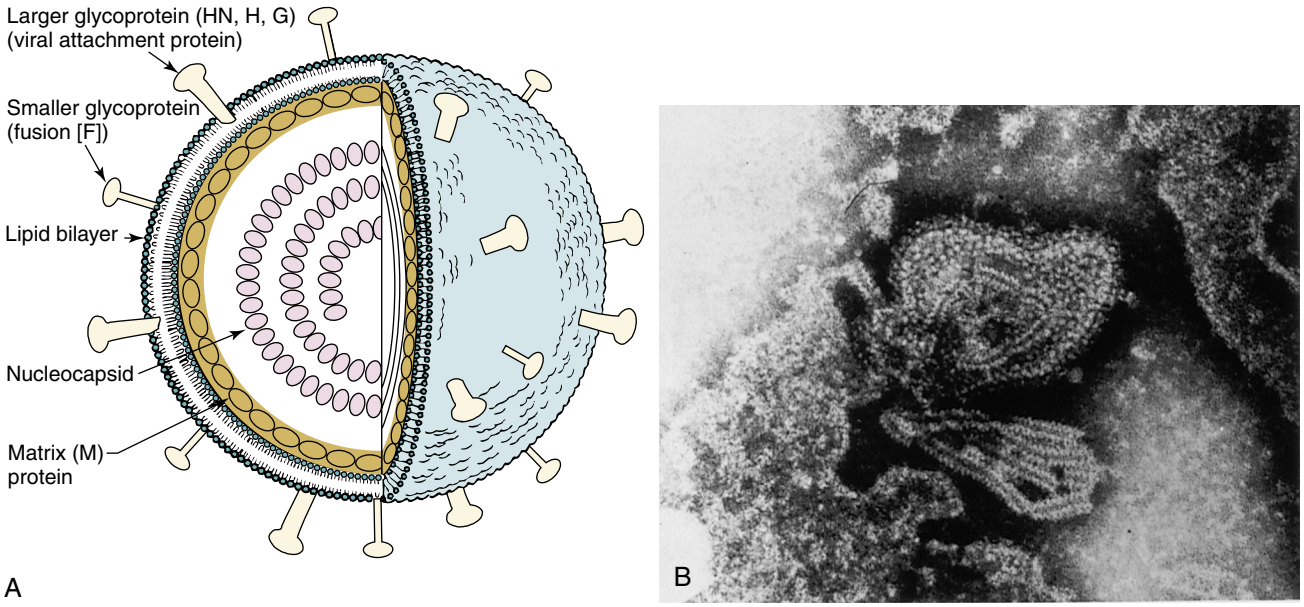


Fig. 48.1 (A) Model of paramyxovirus. The helical nucleocapsid—consisting of negative-sense, single-stranded RNA and the polymerase *(P),* nucleoprotein *(N),* and large protein *(L)*—associates with the matrix *(M)* protein at the envelope membrane surface. The nucleocapsid contains RNA transcriptase activity. The envelope contains the viral attachment glycoprotein (hemagglutinin-neuraminidase *[HN],* hemagglutinin *[H],* or G-protein *[G],* depending on the virus) and the fusion *(F)* protein. (B) Electron micrograph of a disrupted paramyxovirus, showing the helical nucleocapsid. (A, Modified from Jawetz, E., Melnick, J.L., Adelberg, E.A., 1987. Review of Medical Microbiology, 17th ed. Appleton & Lange, Norwalk, CT. B, Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA.)

TABLE 48.2 Major Viral-Encoded Proteins of Paramyxoviruses

Gene and Proteins[a,b]	Virion Location	Protein Function
N: nucleoprotein	Major internal protein	Protection of viral RNA
P: phosphoprotein and C and V proteins	Association with nucleoprotein	Part of transcription complex; C and V are antagonists of innate responses
M: matrix	Inside virion envelope	Assembly of virions
F: fusion protein	Transmembranous envelope glycoprotein	Protein promotes fusion of cells, hemolysis, and viral entry
G: glycoprotein (HN, H, G)[c]	Transmembranous envelope glycoprotein	Viral attachment protein
L: polymerase (large)	Association with nucleoprotein	Polymerase

[a]In order on the genome.
[b]Pneumoviruses also encode an SH and M2 protein.
[c]Glycoproteins differ for the different paramyxoviruses: HN, hemagglutinin-neuraminidase; H, hemagglutinin; G, glycoprotein.

pass directly from cell to cell to escape antibody control. Virus production occurs with eventual cell lysis. Persistent infections without lysis can occur in certain cell types (e.g., human brain cells).

Measles is **highly contagious** and is transmitted from person to person by **respiratory droplets** (Fig. 48.3). After local replication of virus in epithelial cells of the respiratory tract, the virus infects monocytes and lymphocytes, and the virus is spread through the lymphatic system and by a cell-associated viremia. The wide dissemination of the virus causes infection of the conjunctiva, respiratory tract, urinary tract, small blood vessels, lymphatic system, and central nervous system. The characteristic **maculopapular** measles rash is caused by the inflammation resulting from immune T cells targeted to measles-infected epithelial cells. Recovery follows the rash in most patients, who then have **lifelong immunity** to the virus. Death caused by pneumonia, diarrhea, or encephalitis can occur. The time course of measles infection is shown in Fig. 48.4.

Measles can cause encephalitis in three ways: (1) direct infection of neurons, (2) a postinfectious encephalitis that is believed to be immune mediated, and (3) subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE) caused by a defective variant of measles generated during the acute disease. The SSPE virus replicates poorly, stays cell associated, and causes symptoms and cytopathologic effect in neurons many years after acute disease.

Measles and other paramyxoviruses are excellent inducers of interferon (IFN)-α and IFN-β but also have mechanisms to antagonize their action. Cell-mediated immunity is essential for control of the measles infection because a great deal of virus production proceeds before cell death and

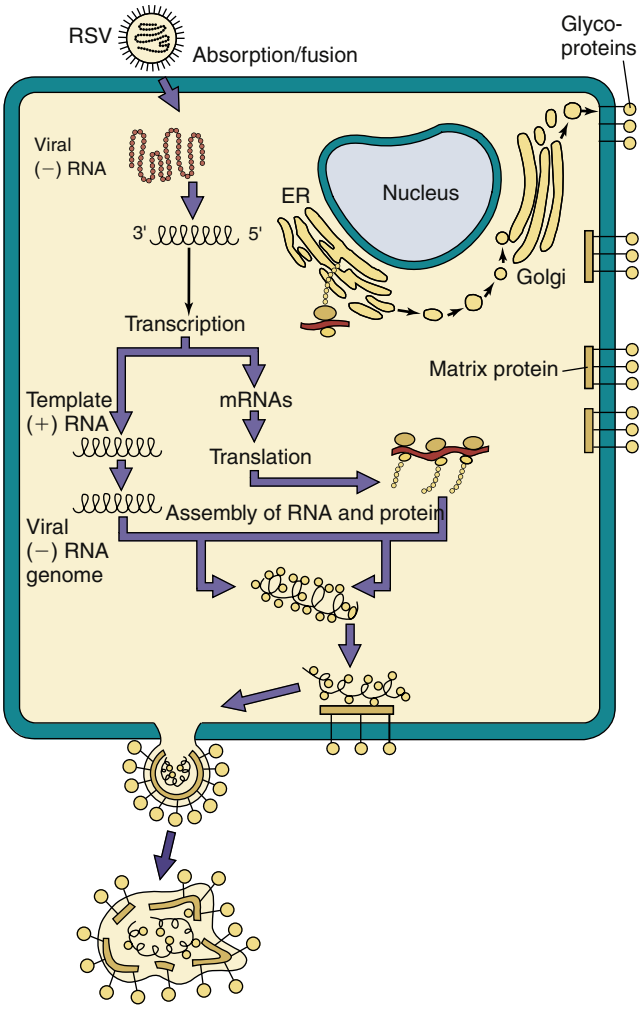


Fig. 48.2 Replication of paramyxoviruses. The virus binds to glycolipids or proteins and fuses with the cell surface. Individual messenger RNAs *(mRNAs)* for each protein and a full-length template are transcribed from the genome. Replication occurs in the cytoplasm. Proteins associate with the new genome, and the nucleocapsid associates with matrix and glycoprotein-modified plasma membranes. The virus leaves the cell by budding. *(−),* Negative sense; *(+),* positive sense; *ER,* endoplasmic reticulum; *RSV,* respiratory syncytial virus. (Modified from Balows, A. et al., 1988. Laboratory Diagnosis of Infectious Diseases: Principles and Practice. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY.)

BOX 48.2 Disease Mechanisms of Measles Virus

Virus infects epithelial cells of respiratory tract.
Virus spreads systemically in lymphocytes by **viremia.**
Virus replicates in cells of conjunctivae, respiratory tract, urinary tract, lymphatic system, blood vessels, and CNS.
Rash is caused by T-cell response to virus-infected epithelial cells.
Virus causes immunosuppression.
Cell-mediated immunity is essential to control infection.
Sequelae in the CNS may result from immunopathogenesis (postinfectious measles encephalitis) or development of defective mutants (subacute sclerosing panencephalitis).

CNS, Central nervous system.

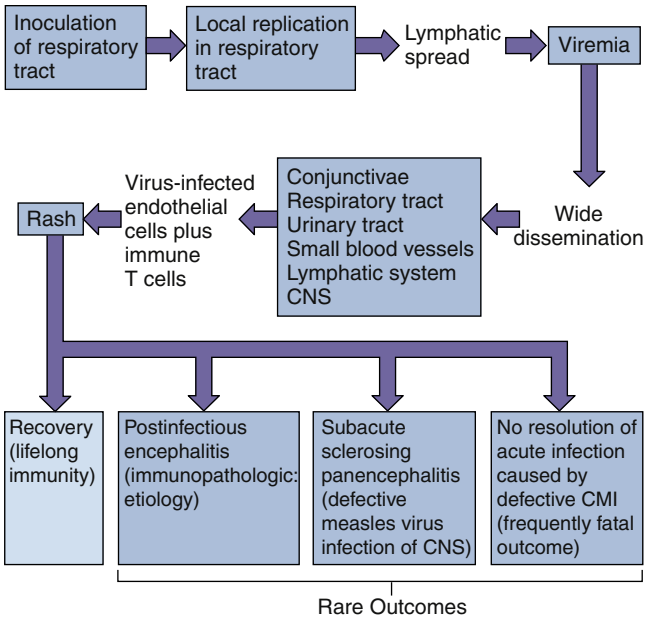


Fig. 48.3 Mechanisms of spread of the measles virus within the body and the pathogenesis of measles. *CMI,* Cell-mediated immunity; *CNS,* central nervous system.

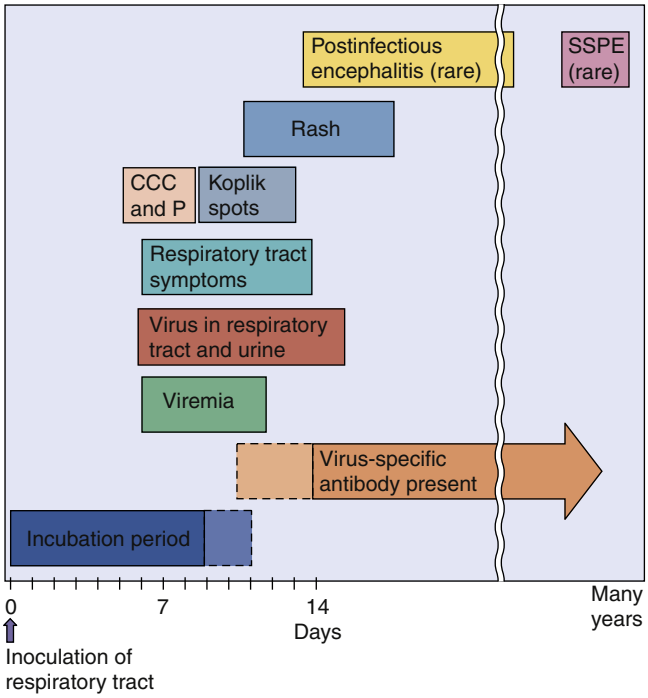


Fig. 48.4 Time course of measles virus infection. Characteristic prodrome symptoms are cough, conjunctivitis, coryza, and photophobia *(CCC and P),* followed by the appearance of Koplik spots and rash. *SSPE,* Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis.

cell–cell transmission by fusion promotes escape from antibody. T-cell–deficient children who are infected with measles have an atypical presentation consisting of **giant cell pneumonia without a rash.** The immune response is also responsible for most of the symptoms of measles. Measles is more severe for people deficient in vitamin A. Vitamin A is important for optimal effector T-cell function and resolution of measles infection. Antibody, including maternal antibody and passive immunization, can block the viremic but not cell-cell spread of the virus to prevent or lessen disease. There is only one serotype of measles, and immune protection from future disease is lifelong.

BOX 48.3 Epidemiology of Measles

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus has large enveloped virion that is easily inactivated by dryness and acid.
Contagion period precedes symptoms.
Very contagious with 95% infectivity rate.
Host range is limited to humans.
Only one serotype exists.
Immunity is lifelong.

Transmission

Inhalation of large-droplet aerosols.

Who Is at Risk?

Unvaccinated people, especially infants <1 year old.
Malnourished people, especially vitamin A deficient, who have more serious outcomes.
Immunocompromised people, who have more serious outcomes.

Geography/Season

Virus found worldwide.
Virus endemic from autumn to spring, possibly because of crowding indoors.

Modes of Control

Live attenuated vaccine (Schwartz or Moraten variants of Edmonston B strain) can be administered.
Immune serum globulin can be administered after exposure.

Measles infection is immunosuppressive. The virus depresses the immune response by (1) directly infecting and killing monocytes and T and B cells and (2) depressing interleukin (IL)-12 production and TH1-type T-cell helper responses. Depression of cell-mediated immune and delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) responses increases risk to concurrent opportunistic and other infections. This immunosuppression lasts for weeks or months after the disease.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Measles is one of the most contagious infections known (Box 48.3). The virus is efficiently spread in respiratory secretions before and after the onset of characteristic symptoms. In a household, approximately 90% of exposed susceptible people become infected, and 95% of these people develop clinical disease.

The measles virus has only one serotype and infects only humans, and infection usually manifests with symptoms. These properties facilitated the development of an effective vaccine program. Once vaccination was introduced, the yearly incidence of measles dropped dramatically in the United States, from 300 to 1.3 per 100,000 (U.S. statistics for 1981 to 1988). This change represented a 99.5% reduction in the incidence of infection from the prevaccination years of 1955 to 1962. Incidences of measles must be reported to state and federal health departments. In areas without a vaccine program, epidemics tend to occur in 1- to 3-year cycles, when a sufficient number of susceptible people have accumulated. Many of these cases occur in preschool-age children who have not been vaccinated and live in large urban areas. The incidence of infection peaks in the winter and spring. Measles is still common in people living in developing countries, especially in individuals who refuse immunization or who have not received a booster in their teenage years. Despite the effectiveness of vaccination programs, poor compliance and the prevaccinated population (children <2 years) continue to provide susceptible individuals. The virus may surface from within the community or can be imported by immigration from areas of the world lacking an effective vaccine program. Once again, outbreaks of measles are occurring more often in the United States, France, and England. In the United States, outbreaks are often initiated by cases imported from other countries and then spread to unvaccinated or unboosted individuals, including infants. An outbreak of measles in a day-care center (10 infants too young to have been vaccinated and two adults) was traced to an infant from the Philippines.

Immunocompromised, malnourished, and vitamin A–deficient people with measles may not be able to resolve the infection, resulting in death. Measles is the most significant cause of death in children age 1 to 5 years in several countries that do not have effective vaccination programs.

TABLE 48.3 Clinical Consequences of Measles Virus Infection

Disorder	Symptoms
Measles	Characteristic maculopapular rash, cough, conjunctivitis, coryza, photophobia, Koplik spots *Complications*: otitis media, croup, pneumonia, blindness, encephalitis
Atypical measles	More intense rash (most prominent in distal areas); possible vesicles, petechiae, purpura, or urticaria
Postmeasles encephalitis	Acute onset of headache, confusion, vomiting, possible coma after rash dissipates
Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis	Central nervous system manifestations (e.g., personality, behavior, and memory changes; myoclonic jerks; spasticity; blindness)

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Measles is a serious febrile illness (Table 48.3). The incubation period lasts 7 to 13 days, and the prodrome starts with 2 to 4 days of **high fever** and **"CCC and P" (cough, coryza, conjunctivitis**, and **photophobia).** The disease is most infectious during this time.

After 2 days of prodromal illness, the typical mucous membrane lesions known as **Koplik spots** (Fig. 48.5) appear. They are seen most commonly on the buccal mucosa across from the molars, but they may appear on other mucous membranes as well, including the conjunctivae and the vagina. The vesicular lesions, which last 24 to 48 hours, are usually small (1 to 2 mm) and are best described as grains of salt surrounded by a red halo. Their appearance with the other disease signs establishes with certainty the diagnosis of measles.

Within 12 to 24 hours of the appearance of Koplik spots, the **exanthem** of measles starts below the ears and spreads over the body. The **rash is maculopapular** and is usually very extensive, and often the lesions become confluent. The rash, which takes 1 or 2 days to cover the body, fades in the

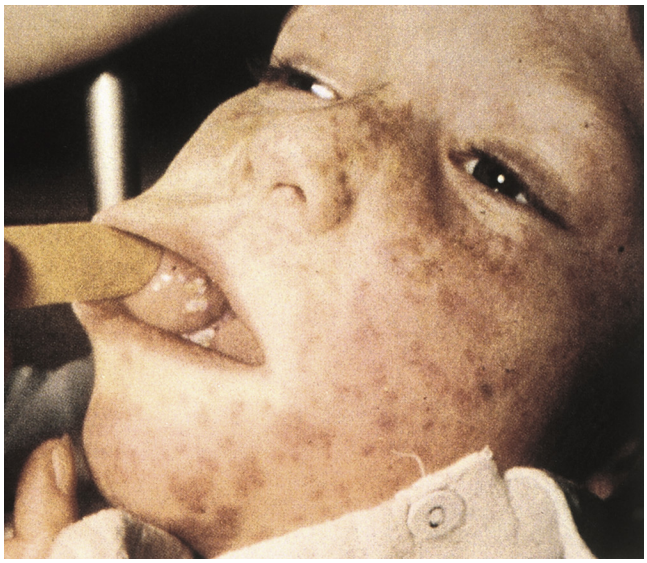


Fig. 48.5 Koplik spots in the mouth and exanthem. Koplik spots usually precede the measles rash and may be seen for the first day or two after the rash appears. (Courtesy Dr. J.I. Pugh, St Albans City Hospital, West Hertfordshire, England. From Emond, R.T.D., Rowland, H.A.K., 1995. A Color Atlas of Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, London, UK.)

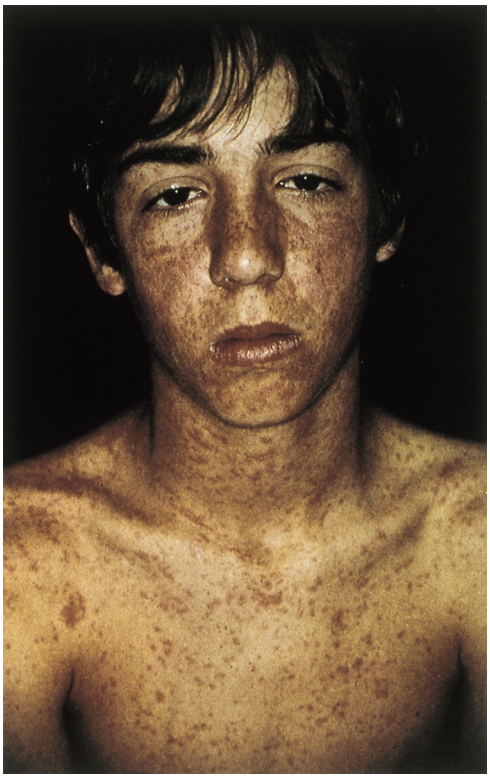


Fig. 48.6 Measles rash. **(A)** A maculopapular rash appears on the face and becomes confluent. **(B)** The rash then appears on the trunk. (From Habif, T.P., 2015. Clinical Dermatology: Color Guide to Diagnosis and Therapy, sixth ed. ©2015, Elsevier.)

same order in which it appeared. The fever is highest and the patient is sickest on the day the rash appears (Fig. 48.6).

Pneumonia, which can also be a serious complication, accounts for 60% of the deaths caused by measles. Similar to the incidence of the other complications associated with measles, the mortality associated with pneumonia is higher in the malnourished and for the extremes of age. **Bacterial superinfection** is common in patients with pneumonia caused by the measles virus.

One of the most feared complications of measles is **encephalitis,** which occurs in as few as 0.5% of those infected but carries a fatality rate of 15%. Encephalitis may rarely occur during acute disease but usually begins 7 to 10 days after the onset of illness. This **postinfectious encephalitis** is caused by immunopathologic reactions, is associated with demyelination of neurons, and occurs more often in older children and adults.

Atypical measles occurred in people who received the older inactivated measles vaccine and were subsequently exposed to the wild-type measles virus. It may also rarely occur in those vaccinated with the attenuated virus vaccine. Prior sensitization with insufficient protection can enhance the immunopathologic response to the challenge by the wild-type measles virus. The illness begins abruptly and is a more intense presentation of measles.

Infections of the immunocompromised and malnourished, especially vitamin A–deficient, child cause the most severe measles disease (Clinical Case 48.1). **Giant cell pneumonia without rash** occurs in children lacking T-cell immunity. Whereas the death rate of measles in the United States is only 0.1%, complications, severe bacterial superinfection, and pneumonia in malnourished children result in up to 60% mortality.

SSPE is an extremely serious, very late neurologic sequela of measles that afflicts approximately 7 of every 1 million patients. The incidence of SSPE has decreased markedly because of measles vaccination programs.

This disease occurs when a defective measles virus persists in the brain, affects multiple loci in the brain (panencephalitis), and acts as a slow virus. The virus can replicate and spread directly from cell to cell but is not released. SSPE is most prevalent in children who were initially infected when younger than 2 years and occurs approximately 7 years after clinical measles. The patient demonstrates changes in personality, behavior, cognition, and memory, followed by myoclonic jerks, blindness, and spasticity, and progresses to coma and death. Unusually high levels of measles antibodies are found in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid of patients with SSPE. Measles antigen and genome can be detected in neurons, as well as Cowdry type A inclusion bodies (these inclusion bodies are usually a marker for herpes simplex virus but also are seen in SSPE).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical manifestations of measles are usually so characteristic that it is rarely necessary to perform laboratory tests to establish the diagnosis. The measles virus should not be isolated. Respiratory tract secretions, urine, blood, and brain tissue are the recommended specimens. It is best to collect respiratory and blood specimens during the prodromal stage and until 1 to 2 days after the appearance of the rash. Measles antigen can be detected with immunofluorescence in pharyngeal cells or urinary sediment, or the measles genome can be identified by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) in respiratory tract

Clinical Case 48.1 **Measles in the Immunocompromised Child**

The lack of cell-mediated immune responses allows measles infection of immunocompromised individuals to progress to serious outcomes. In a case reported by Pullan and associates (*Br Med J* 1:1562–1565, 1976), within 3 days of exposure to measles, a child on chemotherapy for ALL received pooled immunoglobulin. Despite the IgG therapy, 23 days after exposure, she developed an extensive measles rash that became hemorrhagic. She had a fever of 39.5° C and bronchopneumonia. Measles was grown from nasopharyngeal secretions, and immunohistochemistry identified giant cells (syncytia) containing measles antigen within the secretions. Her chemotherapy was stopped, and she received several massive doses of immunoglobulin. She started to improve 1 month after the onset of the rash.

In another case, during the 2.5 years that a boy was under treatment for ALL, he suffered severe herpes simplex virus infections around the mouth and herpes zoster on his trunk. During the third year on therapy, he was exposed to measles from his sister and received pooled IgG. After 19 days, he developed mild respiratory symptoms but no rash. After 29 days, he refused to go to school and misbehaved; behavioral changes progressed. After 9 weeks, he developed focal motor seizures, increased drowsiness, slurring of speech, and confusion, which progressed to coma and death within 8 days of the onset of seizures. Serology indicated a lack of measles antibody. Autopsy indicated the presence of cytomegalovirus but not measles in the lungs. The brain showed extensive degeneration, but no virus was isolated from the samples. Brain sections indicated large intranuclear and cytoplasmic inclusion bodies with tubular structures that resembled measles nucleocapsids in the cytoplasm. Immunofluorescence with antibody from individuals with **SSPE** or antimeasles antibody indicated the presence of measles antigen. These cases illustrate the excessive pathology measles can cause in the absence of a competent T-cell response. The lack of immune control allowed progression of the virus to the brain, in which it or a variant (SSPE) caused pathology leading to encephalitis.

ALL, Acute lymphoblastic leukemia; *SSPE,* subacute sclerosing panencephalitis.

secretions, urine, blood, and brain tissue. Characteristic cytopathologic effects, including multinucleated giant cells with cytoplasmic inclusion bodies, can be seen in Giemsa-stained cells taken from the upper respiratory tract and urinary sediment.

Antibody, especially immunoglobulin (Ig)M, can be detected when the rash is present.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

As stated previously, a live attenuated measles vaccine, in use in the United States since 1963, has been responsible for significant reduction in the incidence of measles. The Schwartz or Moraten attenuated strains of the original Edmonston B vaccine are currently being used. Live attenuated vaccine is given to all children after 12 months of age when the T-cell immune responses are sufficiently mature and antibodies from the mother have been cleared. The vaccine is given in combination with mumps and rubella **(measles-mumps-rubella [MMR] vaccine)** and the varicella vaccines (Box 48.4). Although early childhood immunization is successful in more than 95% of vaccinees, revaccination before grade school or junior high school is required in many states. Because of the very contagious nature of measles, vaccine-induced herd immunity is very important to prevent spread of the virus in the population. A decrease to 93% immunized within the population creates a risk of a measles outbreak. Complacency or misinformation regarding immunization risks causes many parents to refrain from vaccinating their children, putting them at risk of infection, disease, and becoming sources of contagion to others.

BOX 48.4 **Measles-Mumps-Rubella Vaccine**

Composition: live attenuated viruses
Measles: Schwartz or Moraten substrains of Edmonston B strain
Mumps: Jeryl Lynn strain
Rubella: RA/27-3 strain
Vaccination schedule: after 12 months of age and at age 4 to 6 years or before junior high school (12 years of age)
Efficiency: 95% lifelong immunization with a single dose

Data from https://www.vaccines.gov/diseases/.

Because measles is strictly a human virus with only one serotype, it is a good candidate for eradication, but this is prevented by difficulties in distributing the vaccine to regions that lack proper refrigeration facilities (e.g., Africa) and distribution networks.

Hospitals in areas experiencing endemic measles may wish to vaccinate or check the immune status of their employees to decrease the risk of nosocomial transmission. Pregnant women, immunocompromised individuals, and people with allergies to gelatin or neomycin (components of the vaccine) should not receive the MMR vaccine. Exposed susceptible people who are immunocompromised should be given immunoglobulin to lessen the risk and severity of clinical illness. This product is most effective if given within 6 days of exposure. High-dose vitamin A treatment reduces the risk of measles mortality and is recommended by the World Health Organization. No specific antiviral treatment is available for measles.

Parainfluenza Viruses

Parainfluenza viruses, which were discovered in the late 1950s, are respiratory viruses that usually cause **mild coldlike symptoms** but can also cause **serious respiratory tract disease.** Four serologic types within the parainfluenza genus are human pathogens. Types 1, 2, and 3 are second only to RSV as important causes of severe lower respiratory tract infection in infants and young children. They are especially associated with **laryngotracheobronchitis (croup).** Type 4 causes only mild upper respiratory tract infection in children and adults.

BOX 48.5 Disease Mechanisms of Parainfluenza Viruses

There are four serotypes of parainfluenza viruses.
Infection is **limited to the respiratory tract;** upper respiratory tract disease is most common, but significant disease can occur with lower respiratory tract infection.
Parainfluenza viruses do *not* cause viremia or become systemic.
Diseases include **coldlike** symptoms, **bronchitis** (inflammation of bronchial tubes), and **croup** (laryngotracheobronchitis).
Infection induces protective immunity of short duration.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Parainfluenza viruses infect epithelial cells of the upper respiratory tract (Box 48.5). The virus replicates more rapidly than measles and mumps viruses and can cause giant cell formation and cell lysis. Unlike measles and mumps viruses, the parainfluenza viruses rarely cause viremia. The viruses generally stay in the upper respiratory tract, causing only coldlike symptoms. In approximately 25% of cases, the virus spreads to the lower respiratory tract, and in 2% to 3%, disease may take the severe form of laryngotracheobronchitis.

The cell-mediated immune response both causes cell damage and confers protection. IgA responses are protective but short-lived. Parainfluenza viruses manipulate cell-mediated immunity to limit development of memory. Multiple serotypes and the short duration of immunity after natural infection make reinfection common, but the reinfection disease is milder, suggesting at least partial immunity.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Parainfluenza viruses are ubiquitous, and infection is common (Box 48.6). The virus is transmitted by person-to-person contact and respiratory droplets. Primary infections usually occur in infants and children younger than 5 years. Reinfections occur throughout life, indicating short-lived immunity. Infections with parainfluenza viruses 1 and 2, the major causes of croup, tend to occur in the autumn, whereas parainfluenza virus 3 infections occur throughout the year. All these viruses spread readily within hospitals and can cause outbreaks in nurseries and pediatric wards.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Parainfluenza viruses 1, 2, and 3 may cause respiratory tract syndromes ranging from a **mild coldlike upper respiratory tract infection** (coryza, pharyngitis, mild bronchitis, wheezing, and fever) to **bronchiolitis** and **pneumonia.** Older children and adults generally experience milder infections than those seen in young children, although pneumonia may occur in the elderly.

A parainfluenza virus infection in infants may be more severe than infections in adults, causing bronchiolitis, pneumonia, and most notably croup (laryngotracheobronchitis). **Croup** results in subglottal swelling that may close the airway. Hoarseness, a "seal bark" cough, tachypnea, tachycardia, and suprasternal retraction develop in infected patients after a 2- to 6-day incubation period. Most children recover within 48 hours. The principal differential diagnosis is epiglottitis caused by *Haemophilus influenzae*.

BOX 48.6 Epidemiology of Parainfluenza Virus Infections

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus has a large enveloped virion that is easily inactivated by dryness and acid.
Contagion period precedes symptoms and may occur in absence of symptoms.
Host range is limited to humans.
Reinfection can occur later in life.

Transmission

Inhalation of large-droplet aerosols.

Who Is at Risk?

Children: at risk for mild disease or croup.
Adults: at risk for reinfection with milder symptoms.

Geography/Season

Virus is ubiquitous and worldwide.
Incidence is seasonal.

Modes of Control

There are no modes of control.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Rapid RT-PCR techniques are the method of choice to detect and identify parainfluenza viruses from respiratory secretions. Parainfluenza virus is isolated from nasal washings and respiratory secretions and grows well in primary monkey kidney cells. Similar to other paramyxoviruses, the virions are labile during transit to the laboratory and cannot be frozen at −20° C. The presence of virus-infected cells in aspirates or in cell culture is indicated by the finding of syncytia and is identified with immunofluorescence. Similar to the hemagglutinin of the influenza viruses, the hemagglutinin of the parainfluenza viruses promotes hemadsorption and hemagglutination. The serotype of the virus can be determined through the use of specific antibody to block infection (neutralization) and hemadsorption or hemagglutination (hemagglutination inhibition).

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment of croup consists of the administration of nebulized cold or hot steam and careful monitoring of the upper airway. On rare occasions, intubation may become necessary. No specific antiviral agents are available.

Vaccination with killed vaccines is ineffective, possibly because they fail to induce local secretory antibody and appropriate cellular immunity. No live attenuated vaccine is available.

Mumps Virus

Mumps virus is the cause of acute, benign viral **parotitis** (painful swelling of the salivary glands). Mumps is rarely

BOX 48.7 Disease Mechanisms of Mumps Virus

Virus infects epithelial cells of respiratory tract.
Virus spreads systemically by viremia.
Infection of parotid gland, testes, and central nervous system.
Principal symptom is swelling of parotid and other glands caused by inflammation.
Cell-mediated immunity is essential for control of infection and responsible for causing some of the symptoms.
Antibody is not sufficient because of the virus' ability to spread cell to cell.

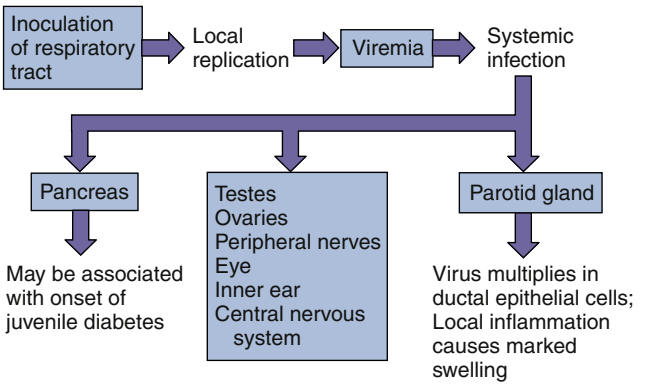


Fig. 48.7 Mechanism of spread of mumps virus within the body.

seen in countries that promote the use of the live vaccine, which is administered with the measles and rubella live vaccines, but outbreaks have occurred recently.

Mumps virus was isolated in embryonated eggs in 1945 and in cell culture in 1955. The virus is most closely related to parainfluenza virus 2, but there is no cross-immunity with the parainfluenza viruses.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The HN glycoprotein of mumps virus binds to sialic acid and initiates infection of the epithelial cells of the upper respiratory tract. The virus progresses to the parotid gland, either by way of the Stensen duct or by means of a viremia (Box 48.7). Like other paramyxoviruses, mumps causes syncytia formation. The virus is spread by viremia throughout the body to the testes, ovary, pancreas, thyroid, and other organs. Infection of the central nervous system, especially the meninges, occurs in as many as 50% of those infected (Fig. 48.7). T cells are important for resolution but also cause immunopathogenesis. Inflammatory responses cause swelling of glands and are mainly responsible for the symptoms. The time course of human infection is shown in Fig. 48.8. There is only one serotype of mumps, and immunity is lifelong.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Mumps, like measles, is a very communicable disease with only one serotype, and it infects only humans (Box 48.8). In the absence of vaccination programs, infection occurs in 90% of people by the age of 15 years. The virus spreads by direct person-to-person contact and respiratory droplets.

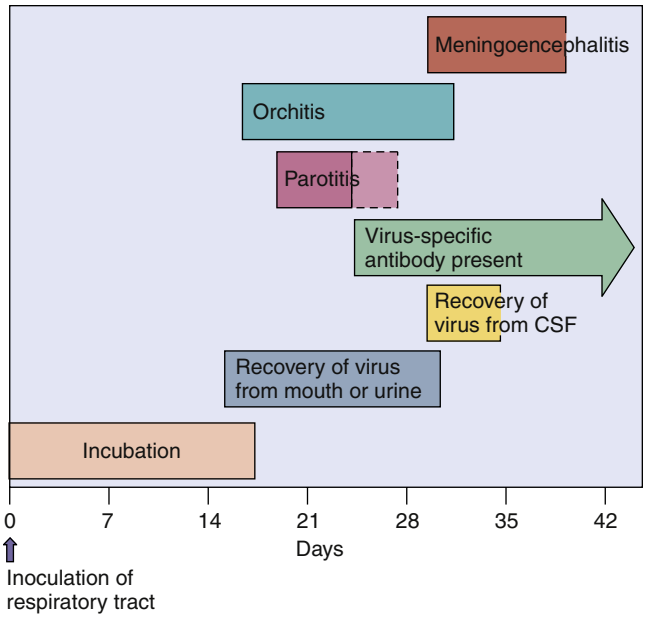


Fig. 48.8 Time course of mumps virus infection. *CSF*, Cerebrospinal fluid.

BOX 48.8 Epidemiology of Mumps Virus

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus has large enveloped virion that is easily inactivated by dryness and acid.
Contagion period precedes symptoms.
Virus may cause asymptomatic shedding.
Host range is limited to humans.
Only one serotype exists.
Immunity is lifelong.

Transmission

Inhalation of large-droplet aerosols.

Who Is at Risk?

Unvaccinated people, especially infants <1 year old.
Immunocompromised people, who have more serious outcomes.

Geography/Season

Virus is found worldwide.
Virus is endemic in late winter and early spring.

Modes of Control

Live attenuated vaccine (Jeryl Lynn strain) is part of measles-mumps-rubella vaccine.

The virus is released in respiratory secretions from patients who are asymptomatic and during the 7-day period before clinical illness, so it is virtually impossible to control the spread of the virus. Living or working in close quarters promotes the spread of the virus, and the incidence of the infection is greatest in the winter and spring.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Mumps infections are often asymptomatic. Clinical illness usually manifests as a parotitis that is almost always bilateral and accompanied by fever. Onset is sudden. Oral

examination reveals redness and swelling of the ostium of the Stensen (parotid) duct. The swelling of other glands (epididymoorchitis, oophoritis, mastitis, pancreatitis, and thyroiditis) and meningoencephalitis may occur a few days after the onset of the viral infection but can occur in the absence of parotitis. The swelling that results from mumps orchitis may cause sterility. Mumps virus involves the central nervous system in approximately 50% of patients; 10% of those affected may exhibit mild meningitis, with 5 per 1000 cases of encephalitis.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical diagnosis of mumps can be confirmed by RT-PCR detection of viral genomes or assay of IgM or antigen by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). Virus can be recovered from saliva, urine, the pharynx, secretions from the Stensen duct, and cerebrospinal fluid. Virus is present in saliva for approximately 5 days after the onset of symptoms and in urine for as long as 2 weeks. Mumps virus grows well in monkey kidney cells, causing the formation of multinucleated giant cells. Hemadsorption of guinea pig erythrocytes also occurs on virus-infected cells because of the viral hemagglutinin.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Vaccines provide the only effective means for preventing the spread of mumps infection. Since the introduction of the live attenuated vaccine (Jeryl Lynn vaccine) in the United States in 1967 and its administration as part of the MMR vaccine at 1 year of age, the yearly incidence of the infection has declined from 76 to less than 1 per 100,000, until recently. As with measles, outbreaks caused by increasing numbers of individuals who are unvaccinated or who did not receive a booster immunization have occurred. In 2014, there was an outbreak in Columbus, Ohio, in schools and universities, with more than 230 reported cases. Antiviral agents are not available.

Respiratory Syncytial Virus

RSV, first isolated from a chimpanzee in 1956, is a member of the *Pneumovirus* genus. There are two types and many different strains of RSV causing the same diseases. The glycoprotein of RSV does not bind to sialic acid or red blood cells; therefore the virus does not need or have a neuraminidase. It is the most common cause of **fatal acute respiratory tract infection** in infants and young children. It infects virtually everyone by 2 years of age, and reinfections occur throughout life, even among elderly persons.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

RSV produces an infection that is localized to the respiratory tract (Box 48.9). It binds to many different cell-surface proteins and heparan sulfate proteoglycans. As the name suggests, RSV induces syncytia. The pathologic effect of RSV is mainly caused by immunologically mediated cell injury. Neutrophils play a large role in the inflammation. Necrosis of the bronchi and bronchioles leads to the formation of "plugs" of mucus, fibrin, and necrotic material within smaller airways. The narrow airways of young infants are readily obstructed by such plugs. RSV can exacerbate previous lung disease and asthma. Natural immunity does not prevent reinfection, and vaccination with killed vaccine was ineffective or enhanced the severity of subsequent disease.

BOX 48.9 Disease Mechanisms of Respiratory Syncytial Virus

Virus causes localized infection of respiratory tract.
Virus does not cause viremia or systemic spread.
Pneumonia results from cytopathologic spread of virus (including syncytia).
Bronchiolitis is most likely mediated by the host's immune response.
Narrow airways of young infants are readily obstructed by virus-induced pathologic effects.
Maternal antibody is insufficient to protect infant from infection.
Natural infection does not prevent reinfection.

BOX 48.10 Epidemiology of Respiratory Syncytial Virus

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus has a large enveloped virion that is easily inactivated by dryness and acid.
Contagion period precedes symptoms and may occur in the absence of symptoms.
Host range is limited to humans.

Transmission

Inhalation of large-droplet aerosols.

Who Is at Risk?

Infants: lower respiratory tract infection (bronchiolitis and pneumonia).
Premature neonates: serious disease.
Children: spectrum of disease from mild to pneumonia.
Adults: reinfection with milder symptoms.
Immunocompromised, chronic heart and lung problems: serious disease.

Geography/Season

Virus is ubiquitous and found worldwide.
Incidence is seasonal.

Modes of Control

Immunoglobulin is available for infants at high risk.
Aerosol ribavirin is available for infants with serious disease.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

RSV is very prevalent in young children; almost all children have been infected by 2 years of age (Box 48.10), with global annual infection rates of 64 million and mortality of 160,000. As many as 25% to 40% of these cases involve the lower respiratory tract, and 1% are severe enough to necessitate hospitalization (occurring in as many as 95,000 children in the United States each year).

TABLE 48.4 Clinical Consequences of Respiratory Syncytial Virus Infection

Disorder	Age Group Affected
Bronchiolitis, pneumonia, or both	Fever, cough, dyspnea, and cyanosis in children <1 year Pneumonia in elderly, or those with chronic heart disease, chronic lung disease, or those who are immunocompromised
Febrile rhinitis and pharyngitis	Children
Common cold	Older children and adults

RSV infections almost always occur in the winter. Unlike influenza, which may occasionally skip a year, RSV epidemics occur every year.

The virus is very contagious, with an incubation period of 4 to 5 days. Virus is shed in respiratory secretions for many days after infection, especially by infants. The virus is transmitted in aerosols but also on hands and by fomites.

Introduction of the virus into a nursery, especially into an intensive care nursery, can be devastating. Virtually every infant becomes infected, and the infection is associated with considerable morbidity and occasionally death. Infants born prematurely and children younger than 2 years with complicated congenital heart disease or chronic lung disease are at high risk to serious RSV disease. Outbreaks of serious disease also may occur among the elderly population (e.g., in nursing homes).

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

RSV can cause any respiratory tract illness, from a **common cold** to **pneumonia** (Table 48.4; Box 48.11). Upper respiratory tract infection with prominent rhinorrhea (runny nose) is most common in older children and adults. A more severe lower respiratory tract illness, **bronchiolitis,** may occur in infants. Because of inflammation at the level of the bronchiole, there is air trapping and decreased ventilation. Clinically, the patient usually has low-grade fever, tachypnea, tachycardia, and expiratory wheezes over the lungs. Bronchiolitis is usually self-limited, but it can be a frightening disease to observe in an infant. Reinfection may present as a common cold or exacerbation of asthma. RSV may be fatal in premature infants, persons with underlying lung disease, and immunocompromised people.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

RSV is difficult to isolate in cell culture. Presence of the viral genome in infected cells and nasal washings can be detected by RT-PCR techniques. Enzyme immunoassay can detect viral antigen in washings and immunofluorescence on exfoliated cells.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

In otherwise healthy infants, treatment is supportive, consisting of administration of oxygen, intravenous fluids, and nebulized cold steam. Aerosolized **ribavirin,** a guanosine analog, is approved for treatment of infants with severe disease, but its use is infrequent. **Prophylactic and therapeutic passive immunization** with anti-RSV immunoglobulin or monoclonal antibody (palivizumab) is available for young children at high risk to serious disease.

Infected children must be isolated. Infection-control measures are required for hospital staff caring for infected children to avoid transmitting the virus to uninfected patients. These measures include handwashing and wearing gowns, goggles, and masks.

No vaccine is currently available for RSV prophylaxis. A previously available vaccine containing inactivated RSV caused recipients to have more severe RSV disease when subsequently exposed to the live virus. This development is thought to be the result of a heightened immunologic response at the time of exposure to the wild virus.

BOX 48.11 Clinical Summaries

Measles: An 18-year-old woman had been home for 10 days after a trip to Haiti when she developed a fever, cough, runny nose, and mild redness of her eyes. She now has a red, slightly raised rash over her face, trunk, and extremities. There are several 1-mm white lesions inside her mouth. She was never immunized for measles because of misinformation that an "egg allergy" would be a problem. The vaccine is not produced in eggs.

Mumps: A 30-year-old man returning from a trip to Russia experienced a 1- to 2-day period of headache and decreased appetite, followed by swelling over both sides of his jaw. The swelling extended from the bottom of the jaw to in front of the ear. Five days after the jaw swelling appeared, the patient began complaining of nausea and lower abdominal and testicular pain. He never received a booster immunization with the MMR vaccine.

Croup: An irritable 2-year-old toddler with little appetite has a sore throat, fever, and hoarse voice and coughs with the sound of a barking seal. A high-pitched noise (stridor) is heard on inhalation. Flaring of the nostrils indicates difficulty breathing.

Human Metapneumovirus

Human metapneumovirus is a recently recognized member of the Pneumovirinae subfamily. Use of RT-PCR methods was and remains the means of detecting the pneumoviruses and distinguishing them from other respiratory disease viruses. Its identity was unknown until recently because it is difficult to grow in cell culture. The virus is ubiquitous, and almost all 5-year-old children have experienced a virus infection and are seropositive.

As with its close cousin RSV, infections by human metapneumovirus may be asymptomatic, cause common cold–type disease, or cause serious bronchiolitis and pneumonia. Seronegative children, the elderly, and immunocompromised people are at risk for disease. Human metapneumovirus probably causes 15% of common colds in children, especially those complicated by otitis media. Signs of disease usually include cough, sore throat, runny nose, and high fever. Approximately 10% of patients with metapneumovirus will experience wheezing, dyspnea, pneumonia, bronchitis, or bronchiolitis. As with other common cold agents,

laboratory identification of the virus is not performed routinely but can be performed by RT-PCR. Supportive care is the only therapy available for these infections.

Nipah and Hendra Viruses

A new paramyxovirus, Nipah virus, was isolated from patients after an outbreak of severe encephalitis in Malaysia and Singapore in 1998. Nipah virus is more closely related to the Hendra virus, which was discovered in 1994 in Australia, than to other paramyxoviruses. Both viruses have broad host ranges, including pigs, humans, dogs, horses, cats, and other mammals. For Nipah virus, the reservoir is a fruit bat (flying fox). The virus can be obtained from fruit contaminated by infected bats or amplified in pigs and then spread to humans. The human is an accidental host for these viruses, but the outcome of human infection is severe. Disease signs for Nipah virus include flulike symptoms, seizures, and coma. Of the 269 cases occurring in 1999, 108 were fatal. Another epidemic in Bangladesh in 2004 had a higher mortality rate. More recent outbreaks have occurred in India and neighboring countries.

For case studies and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Allen, I.V., McQuaid, S., Penalva, R., Ludlow, M., Duprex, W.P., Rima, B.K., 2018. Macrophages and dendritic cells are the predominant cells infected in measles in humans. mSphere 3. e00570-17. https://doi.org/10.1128/mSphere.00570-17.

Anderson LJ, Graham BS. Challenges and Opportunities for Respiratory Syncytial Virus Vaccines. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology 372, 2013.

Editors (view affiliations)

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Collier, L., Oxford, J., 2011. Human Virology, fourth ed. Oxford University Press, Oxford.

de Swart, R.L., Ludlow, M., de Witte, L., Yanagi, Y., van Amerongen, G., et al., 2007. Predominant infection of CD150 lymphocytes and dendritic cells during measles virus infection of macaques. PLoS Pathog. 3 (11), e178. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.ppat.0030178.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Gershon, A., Hotez, P., Katz, S., 2004. Krugman's Infectious Diseases of Children, eleventh ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Griffin, D.E., Oldstone, M.M., 2009. Measles: pathogenesis and control. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 330 (1).

Griffiths, C., Drews, S.J., Marchanta, D.J., 2017. Respiratory syncytial virus: infection, detection, and new options for prevention and treatment. Clin. Micro. Rev. 30, 277–319.

Hart, C.A., Broadhead, R.L., 1992. Color atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases. Mosby, St Louis.

Hinman, A.R., 1982. Potential candidates for eradication. Rev. Infect. Dis. 4, 933–939.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, New York.

Ludlow, M., McQuaid, S., Milner, D., de Swart, R.L., Duprex, W.P., 2015. Pathological consequences of systemic measles virus infection. J. Pathol. 235, 253–265. https://doi.org/10.1002/path.4457. (wileyonlinelibrary.com).

Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Meulen, V., Billeter, M.A., 1995. Measles virus. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. 191, 1–196.

Moss, W.J., Griffen, D.E., 2012. Measles. Lancet 379, 153–164.

Phadke, V.K., Bednarczyk, R.A., Salmon, D.A., et al., 2016. Association between vaccine refusal and vaccine-preventable diseases in the United States. A review of measles and pertussis. JAMA 315 (11), 1149–1158.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

Websites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Human parainfluenza viruses (HPIVs). www.cdc.gov/parainfluenza/index.html. Accessed August 5, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Measles (rubeola). www.cdc.gov/measles/index.html. Accessed August 5, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Mumps. www.cdc.gov/mumps/index.html. Accessed August 5, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Respiratory syncytial virus infection (RSV). www.cdc.gov/rsv/. Accessed August 5, 2018.

Chen, S.S.P., 2018. Measles. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/966220-overview. Accessed August 5, 2018.

Clinical case of SSPE. http://path.upmc.edu/cases/case595.html. Accessed August 5, 2018.

Defendi, G.L., 2017. Mumps. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/966678-overview. Accessed April 4, 2015.

Krilov, L.R., 2017. Respiratory Syncytial Virus (RSV) Infection. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/971488-overview. Accessed August 5, 2018.

Measles, mumps, Rubella Vaccines. https://www.vaccines.gov/diseases/. Accessed August 5, 2018.

Case Studies and Questions

An 18-year-old college freshman complained of a cough, runny nose, and conjunctivitis. The physician in the campus health center noticed small white lesions inside the patient's mouth. The next day, a confluent red rash covered his face and neck.

1. What clinical characteristics of this case were diagnostic for measles?
2. Are any laboratory tests readily available to confirm the diagnosis? If so, what are they?
3. Is there a possible treatment for this patient?
4. When was this patient contagious?
5. Why is this disease not common in the United States?
6. Provide several possible reasons for this person's susceptibility to measles at 18 years of age.

A 13-month-old child had a runny nose, mild cough, and low-grade fever for several days. The cough got worse and sounded like "barking." The child made a wheezing sound when agitated. The child appeared well except for the cough. A lateral radiograph of the neck showed a subglottic narrowing.

7. What are the specific and common names for these symptoms?
8. What other agents would cause a similar clinical presentation (differential diagnosis)?
9. Are there readily available laboratory tests to confirm this diagnosis? If so, what are they?
10. Was there a possible treatment for this child?
11. When was this child contagious, and how was the virus transmitted?

49 Orthomyxoviruses

On April 15, 2009, a 33-year-old woman from California at 35 weeks' gestation had a 1-day history of myalgias, dry cough, and low-grade fever when examined by her obstetrician-gynecologist. The patient had not recently traveled to Mexico. Rapid influenza diagnostic testing performed in the physician's office was positive. On April 19, she was examined in a local emergency department, with worsening shortness of breath, fever, and productive cough. She experienced severe respiratory distress and was intubated and placed on mechanical ventilation. An emergency cesarean delivery was performed, resulting in a healthy female infant. On April 21, the patient developed acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). The patient began receiving oseltamivir on April 28 and broad-spectrum antibiotics but died on May 4.[1]

1. How did the woman acquire the infection?
2. What is the normal presentation, and what is abnormal about this presentation of influenza?
3. What put the woman at higher risk and why?
4. How did this strain of influenza evolve?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

ORTHOMYXOVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Aerosols, envelope, segmented genome/reassortment, hemagglutinin, neuraminidase, antigenic drift (outbreaks), antigenic shift (pandemics), zoonosis

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Large size, enveloped, (–) segmented RNA genome
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in nucleus (exception to the rule)
- Each segment encodes one or two proteins
- Mixed infection results in genetic mixing of segments: reassortment
- Binds to sialic acid (HA glycoprotein) and encodes neuraminidase activity (NA glycoprotein)
- Preexisting antibody can block disease
- Cell-mediated immune response important for control but causes pathogenesis
- Influenza A, not influenza B, is a zoonosis
- Acute flulike symptoms caused by large cytokine release
- Extensive destruction of ciliated epithelium
- Pneumonia by influenza or secondary bacterial infection

Epidemiology

- Transmitted by aerosols
- Annual epidemics caused by mutations, pandemics caused by reassortment of genome segments between human and animal viruses

Diagnosis

- Symptomatology, RT-PCR genome analysis of respiratory secretions, immunology tests (ELISA), hemagglutination and hemagglutination inhibition

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Annual vaccine contains two influenza A and one or two influenza B strains: inactivated vaccines contain HA and NA, live attenuated nasal vaccine (for 2 to 49 year olds)
- Neuraminidase, the M2 channel and the cap-dependent endonuclease are targets for antiviral drugs

ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction.

Influenza A and B viruses are the most important members of the Orthomyxoviridae family. Influenza A is a zoonosis and can be found in many different animals, including birds, pigs, horses, bats, seals, and whales. Influenza C causes only mild respiratory illness, and influenza D infects cattle but is not known to cause human disease. Thogotoviruses are arboviruses, including the tick-borne Bourbon virus. This virus is so named because it caused a lethal infection in Bourbon, Kansas, in 2014. The orthomyxoviruses are **enveloped and have a segmented negative-sense ribonucleic acid (RNA) genome.** The segmented genome of these viruses facilitates the development of new strains through mutation and reassortment of the gene segments among different human and animal (influenza A) strains of virus. This genetic instability is responsible for the annual **epidemics (mutation: drift)** and, for influenza A, **periodic pandemics (reassortment: shift)** of influenza infection worldwide.

Influenza is one of the most prevalent and significant viral infections. Probably the most famous influenza **pandemic (worldwide)** is the Spanish influenza that swept the world from 1918 to 1919, killing 20 to 40 million people. In fact, more people died of influenza during that time than in the battles of World War I. Pandemics caused by novel influenza viruses occurred in 1918, 1947, 1957, 1968, 1977, and 2009. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), more than 80,000 deaths from 2017 to 2018 could be attributed to influenza in the United States. Fortunately, prophylaxis with vaccines and antiviral drugs is available.

Influenza viruses cause respiratory symptoms and the classic flulike symptoms of fever, malaise, headache, and

[1]Adapted from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Novel influenza A (H1N1) virus infections in three pregnant women—United States, April–May 2009, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 58:497–500. www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm58d0512a1.htm.

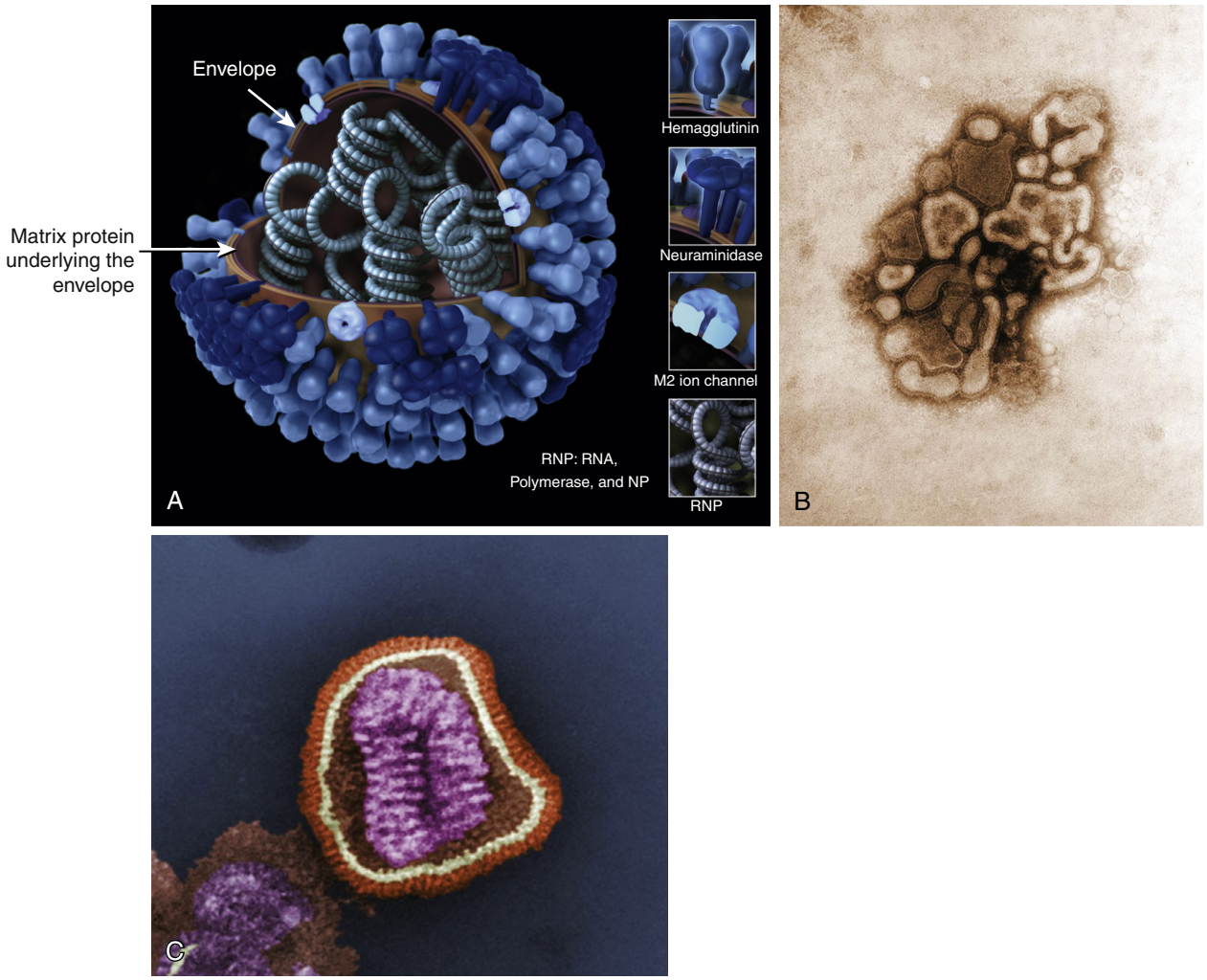


Fig. 49.1 (A) Model of influenza A virus. (B and C) Electron micrographs of influenza A virus. *NP,* Nucleoprotein; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid; *RNP,* ribonucleoprotein complex. (Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA.)

myalgias (body aches). The term **flu,** however, has been mistakenly used to refer to many other respiratory and viral infections (e.g., "intestinal flu").

Structure and Replication

Influenza virions are pleomorphic, appearing spherical or tubular (Fig. 49.1; Box 49.1) and ranging in diameter from 80 to 120 nm. The genome of the influenza A and B viruses consists of **eight different helical nucleocapsid segments,** each of which contains a negative-sense RNA associated with the **nucleoprotein (NP)** and the **transcriptase (RNA polymerase components: PB1, PB2, PA)** (Table 49.1). Influenza C has only seven genomic segments.

The genomic segments in the influenza A virus range from 890 to 2340 bases. The proteins are encoded on separate segments except for the nonstructural proteins (NS_1 and NS_2) and the M1 and M2 proteins, each of which are transcribed from one segment.

BOX 49.1 Unique Features of the Influenza A and B Viruses

The enveloped virion has a genome of eight unique negative-sense RNA nucleocapsid segments.
Hemagglutinin glycoprotein is the viral attachment protein and fusion protein; it elicits neutralizing, protective antibody responses.
Influenza transcribes and replicates its genome in the target cell nucleus but assembles and buds from the plasma membrane.
The polymerase uses capped cellular mRNA as primers for mRNA synthesis, and this is a target for baloxavir marboxil.
The antiviral drugs amantadine and rimantadine target the M2 (membrane) protein for *influenza A only* to inhibit the uncoating step.
The antiviral drugs zanamivir, oseltamivir, and peramivir inhibit the neuraminidase protein of influenza A and B.
The segmented genome promotes genetic diversity caused by mutation and reassortment of segments on infection with two different strains.
Influenza A infects humans, other mammals, and birds (zoonosis).

TABLE 49.1 Products of Influenza Gene Segments

Segment[a]	Protein	Function
1	PB2	Polymerase component
2	PB1	Polymerase component
3	PA	Polymerase component
4	HA	Hemagglutinin, viral attachment protein, fusion protein, target of neutralizing antibody
5	NP	Nucleocapsid protein
6	NA	Neuraminidase (cleaves sialic acid and promotes virus release)
7[b]	M1	Matrix protein: viral structural protein (interacts with nucleocapsid and envelope, promotes assembly)
	M2	Membrane protein (forms membrane channel and target for amantadine, facilitates uncoating and HA production)
8[b]	NS1	Nonstructural protein (inhibits cellular messenger RNA translation)
	NS2	Nonstructural protein (promotes export of nucleocapsid from nucleus)

[a]Listed in decreasing order of size.
[b]Encodes two messenger RNAs.

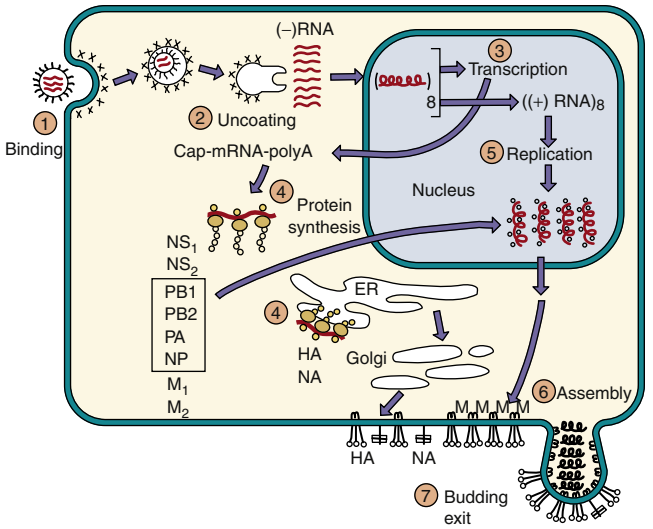


Fig. 49.2 Replication of influenza A virus. After binding *(1)* to sialic acid–containing receptors, influenza is endocytosed and fuses *(2)* with the vesicle membrane. Unlike for most other ribonucleic acid *(RNA)* viruses, transcription *(3)* and replication *(5)* of the genome occur in the nucleus. Viral proteins are synthesized *(4)*, helical ribonucleoprotein complex nucleocapsid segments form and associate *(6)* with the M1 protein–lined membranes containing M2 and the hemagglutinin *(HA)* and neuraminidase *(NA)* glycoproteins. The virus buds *(7)* from the plasma membrane and eventually kills the cell. *(–)*, Negative sense; *(+)*, positive sense; *ER*, endoplasmic reticulum; *NP*, nucleocapsid protein; *NS1, NS2*, nonstructural proteins 1 and 2; *PA, PB1, PB2*, polymerase components; *polyA*, polyadenylate.

The envelope contains two glycoproteins, **hemagglutinin (HA)** and **neuraminidase (NA),** and the **membrane (M2) protein** and is internally lined by the **matrix (M1) protein.** The **HA** forms a spike-shaped trimer; each unit is activated by a protease and is cleaved into two subunits held together by a disulfide bond (see Fig. 36.7). The HA has several functions: it is the viral attachment protein, binding to sialic acid on epithelial cell-surface receptors; it promotes fusion of the envelope to the cell membrane at acidic pH; it hemagglutinates (binds and aggregates) human, chicken, and guinea pig red blood cells; and it elicits the protective neutralizing antibody response. *There are 18 different subtypes of HA designated H1, H2, …, H18.* The HA undergoes minor ("drift") and major ("shift") changes in receptor specificity and antigenicity. ***Shifts occur only with influenza A virus.***

The **NA** glycoprotein forms a tetramer and has enzyme activity. The NA cleaves the sialic acid on glycolipids and glycoproteins, including the cell receptor. Cleavage of the sialic acid on newly synthesized HA and cellular glycoproteins limits binding and prevents clumping of the HA and virions and facilitates the release of virus from infected cells, making NA a target for antiviral drugs, including **zanamivir (Relenza)** and **oseltamivir (Tamiflu).** *The NA of influenza A virus also undergoes antigenic shift, and the different NAs are designated N1, N2, …, N11.*

The M1, M2, and NP proteins are type specific; therefore they are used to differentiate influenza A from B or C viruses. The **M1 proteins** line the inside of the virion and promote assembly. The **M2 protein** forms a proton channel in membranes and promotes uncoating and viral release. The M2 of influenza A is a target for the antiviral drugs **amantadine** and **rimantadine.**

Viral replication begins with the binding of HA to sialic acid on cell-surface glycoproteins (Fig. 49.2). The different HAs bind to different sialic acid structures and, for influenza A (HA1 to H16), this determines the host, human and animal, and site in the lung that can be infected. The virus is then internalized into a coated vesicle and transferred to an endosome. Acidification of the endosome causes the HA to bend over and expose hydrophobic fusion-promoting regions of the protein. The viral envelope then fuses with the endosome membrane. The proton channel formed by the M2 protein promotes acidification of the envelope contents to break the interaction between the M1 protein and the NP, allowing uncoating and delivery of the nucleocapsid into the cytoplasm.

Unlike most RNA viruses, the influenza nucleocapsid travels to the nucleus, where it is transcribed into messenger RNA (mRNA). The transcriptase (PA, PB1, and PB2) uses host cell mRNA as a primer for viral mRNA synthesis. In so doing, it steals the methylated cap region of the RNA, which is the sequence required for efficient binding to ribosomes. This activity of PB2 is a target for **baloxavir marboxil**. All the genomic segments are transcribed into 5′-capped, 3′-polyadenylated (polyA) mRNA for individual proteins except the segments for the M1, M2, and NS1, NS2 proteins, which are each differentially spliced (using cellular enzymes) to produce two different mRNAs. The mRNAs are translated into protein in the cytoplasm. The HA and NA glycoproteins are processed by the endoplasmic reticulum and the Golgi apparatus. The M2 protein inserts into cellular membranes. Its proton channel prevents acidification of Golgi and other vesicles, preventing acid-induced folding and inactivation of the HA within the cell. The HA and NA are then transported to the cell surface, in which the HA protein is activated by cleavage by host proteases.

Positive-sense RNA templates for each segment are produced, and the negative-sense RNA genome is replicated in the nucleus. The genomic segments associate with polymerase and NP proteins to form nucleocapsids, and the NS2 protein facilitates the transport of ribonucleocapsids into the cytoplasm, where they interact with the M1 protein–lined plasma membrane sections containing M2, HA, and NA. The virus buds selectively from the apical (airway) surface of the cell as a result of the preferential insertion of the HA in this membrane. The virus is released approximately 8 hours after infection.

Pathogenesis and Immunity

Influenza initially establishes a local upper respiratory tract infection (Fig. 49.3; Box 49.2). To do so, the virus first targets and kills mucus-secreting, ciliated, and other epithelial cells, causing the loss of this primary defense system. With a lack of ciliated epithelium, swallowed oral and nasal bacteria (e.g., *Staphylococcus aureus*) cannot be expelled and may cause pneumonia. NA facilitates the development of the infection by cleaving sialic acid (neuraminic acid) residues of the mucus, providing access to tissue. Preferential release of the virus at the apical surface of epithelial cells and into the lung promotes cell-to-cell spread and transmission to other hosts. In the lower respiratory tract, the infection can cause severe desquamation (shedding) of bronchial or alveolar epithelium down to a single-cell basal layer or to the basement membrane.

In addition to compromising the mucociliary defenses of the respiratory tract, influenza infection promotes bacterial adhesion to the epithelial cells. Pneumonia may result from a viral pathogenesis or from a secondary bacterial infection. Influenza may also cause a transient or low-level viremia but rarely involves tissues other than the lung.

Influenza infection is an excellent inducer of interferon which is protective. Interferon α and λ promote antiviral activity. The NS1 protein can counteract some of its action. Systemic interferon and cytokine responses peak at 3 to 4 days postinfection. Type I interferon is responsible for the systemic flulike symptoms. This is almost the same time when virus is present in nasal washes. Recovery caused by innate protections often precedes detection of antibody in serum or secretions. T-cell responses are important for effecting recovery and immunopathogenesis, but preexisting antibody, including vaccine-induced antibody, can prevent disease. As for measles, influenza infection depresses macrophage and T-cell function, hindering immune resolution.

Protection against reinfection is primarily associated with the development of neutralizing antibodies to HA, but antibodies to NA are also protective. The antibody response is specific for each strain of influenza, whereas the cell-mediated immune response is more general and is capable of reacting to influenza strains of the same type (influenza A or B virus). Antigenic targets for T-cell responses include peptides from HA and from the nucleocapsid proteins (NP, PB2) and M1 protein. The NP, PB2, and M1 proteins differ considerably for influenza A and B but minimally between strains of these viruses; hence T-cell memory may provide future protection against infection by a strain different from the immunizing strain.

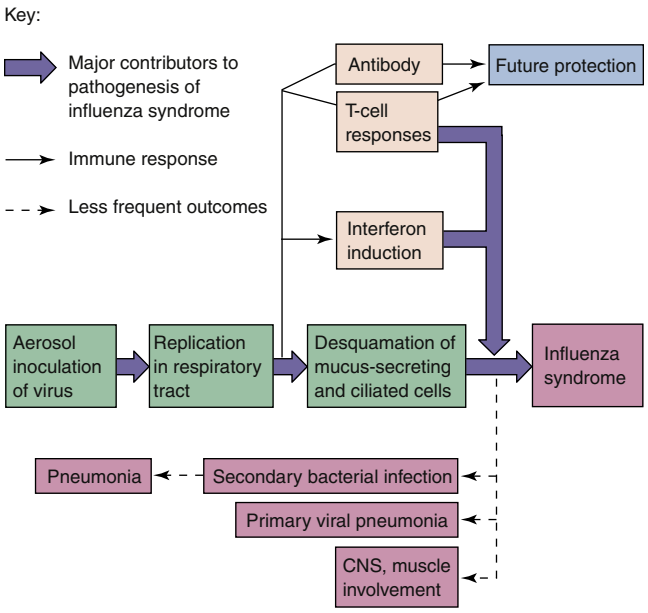


Fig. 49.3 Pathogenesis of influenza A virus. The symptoms of influenza are caused by viral pathologic and immunopathologic effects, but the infection may promote secondary bacterial infection. *CNS,* Central nervous system.

BOX 49.2 Disease Mechanisms of Influenza A and B Viruses

Virus infects the upper and lower respiratory tract.
Systemic symptoms are caused by the interferon and cytokine response to the virus. Local symptoms result from epithelial cell damage, including ciliated and mucus-secreting cells.
Interferon and cell-mediated immune responses (natural killer and T cells) are important for immune resolution and immunopathogenesis.
Infected people are predisposed to bacterial superinfection because of the loss of natural barriers and exposure of binding sites on epithelial cells.
Antibody is important for future protection against infection and is specific for defined epitopes on HA and NA proteins.
The HA and NA of influenza A virus can undergo **major (reassortment: shift)** and **minor (mutation: drift)** antigenic changes to ensure the presence of immunologically naive susceptible people.
Influenza B virus undergoes only minor antigenic changes.

HA, Hemagglutinin; *NA,* neuraminidase.

The symptoms and time course of the disease are determined by the extent of viral and immune killing of epithelial tissue and cytokine action. Influenza is normally a self-limited disease that rarely involves organs other than the lung. The acute onset of *many of the classic flu symptoms (e.g., fever, malaise, headache, and myalgia) is associated with interferon and cytokine induction.* Virus production may be controlled within 4 to 6 days postinfection, but tissue damage caused by innate and immune inflammatory responses continues. Repair of the compromised tissue is initiated within 3 to 5 days of the start of symptoms but may take as long as a month or more, especially for elderly people. The time course of influenza virus infection is illustrated in Fig. 49.4.

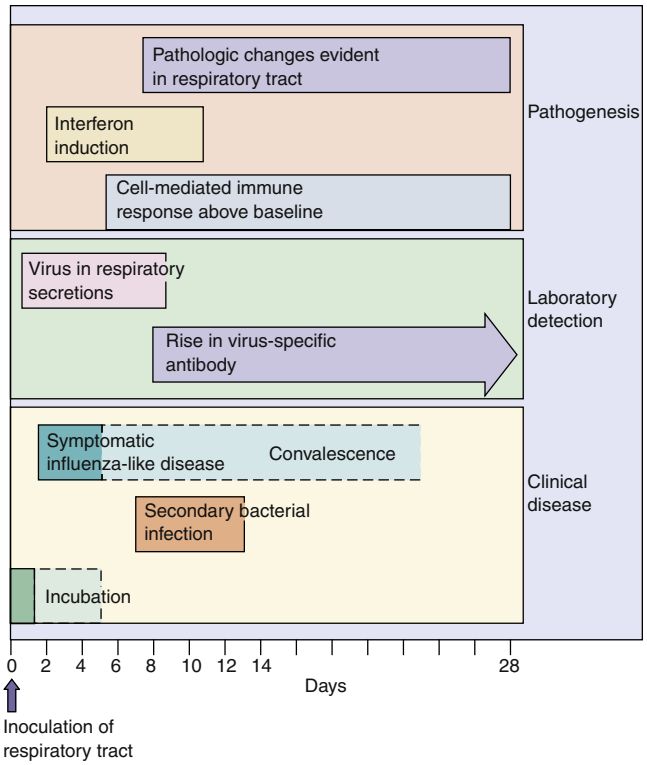


Fig. 49.4 Time course of influenza A virus infection. The classic "flu syndrome" occurs early. Later, pneumonia may result from bacterial pathogenesis, viral pathogenesis, or immunopathogenesis.

Epidemiology

Strains of influenza A virus are classified by the following characteristics:

1. Type (A)
2. Host of origin (chicken, swine, equine), if not human
3. Place of original isolation
4. Strain number
5. Year of original isolation
6. HA and NA type

For example, a current strain of influenza virus might be designated A/duck/Alberta/35/76 (H1N1), meaning that it is an influenza A virus that was first isolated from a duck in Alberta in 1976 and contains HA (H1) and NA (N1) antigens.

Strains of influenza B are designated by (1) type, (2) geography, (3) strain number, and (4) year of isolation (e.g., B/Singapore/3/64) but without specific mention of HA or NA antigens because influenza B does not undergo antigenic shift or pandemics as does influenza A.

Minor antigenic changes resulting from mutation of the HA and NA genes are called **antigenic drift.** This process occurs every 2 to 3 years, causing local outbreaks of influenza A and B infection. **Major antigenic changes (antigenic shift)** result from reassortment of genomes among different strains, including animal strains. *This process occurs only with the influenza A virus*. Such changes are often associated with the occurrence of pandemics. *In contrast to influenza A, influenza B is predominantly a human virus and does not undergo antigenic shift*.

TABLE 49.2 Influenza Pandemics Resulting from Antigenic Shift

Year of Pandemic	Influenza A Subtype
1918	H1N1
1947	H1N1
1957	H2N2; Asian flu strain
1968	H3N2; Hong Kong flu strain
1977	H1N1; Russian
1997, 2003	H5N1: China, avian
2009	H1N1, swine flu

Antigenic shifts occur infrequently, but the pandemics they cause can be devastating (Table 49.2). For example, the prevalent influenza A virus in 1947 was the H1N1 subtype. In 1957, there was a shift in both antigens, resulting in an H2N2 subtype. H3N2 appeared in 1968, and H1N1 reappeared in 1977. The reappearance of H1N1 put the population younger than age 30 years at risk of disease. Prior exposure and an anamnestic antibody response protected members of the population older than 30 years.

The genetic diversity of influenza A is fostered by its segmented genomic structure and ability to infect and replicate in humans and many animal species **(zoonosis),** including birds and pigs. Hybrid viruses are created by coinfection of a cell with different strains of influenza A virus, allowing the genomic segments to randomly associate into new virions. An exchange of the HA glycoproteins may generate a new virus that can infect an immunologically naive human population. Fig. 49.5 depicts the origins of the pandemic A/California/04/2009/H1N1 virus through multiple reassortments of human, avian, and pig influenza viruses, resulting in a virus that was able to infect humans (Clinical Case 49.1).

Influenza infection is spread readily via small airborne droplets expelled during talking, breathing, and coughing. People are most contagious in the first 3 to 4 days of illness, but the period may extend to a week after becoming sick. Low humidity and cool temperatures stabilize the virus, and close proximity during the winter months promotes its spread. The virus can also survive on countertops for as long as a day.

The most susceptible population is children, and school-aged children are most likely to spread the infection. Contagion precedes symptoms and lasts for a long time, especially in children. Children, immunosuppressed people (including pregnant women), the elderly, and people with heart and lung ailments (including smokers) are at highest risk for more serious disease, pneumonia, or other complications of infection. More than 90% of mortalities occur in patients who are older than 65 years, but rapidly progressing lethal bacterial pneumonias secondary to influenza can occur in young healthy individuals.

Influenza A viruses are also spread to humans by aerosols from animals and in the feces of domestic and wild water fowl. Because of its high population density and close proximity of humans, pigs, chickens, and ducks, China is often the breeding ground for new reassortant viruses

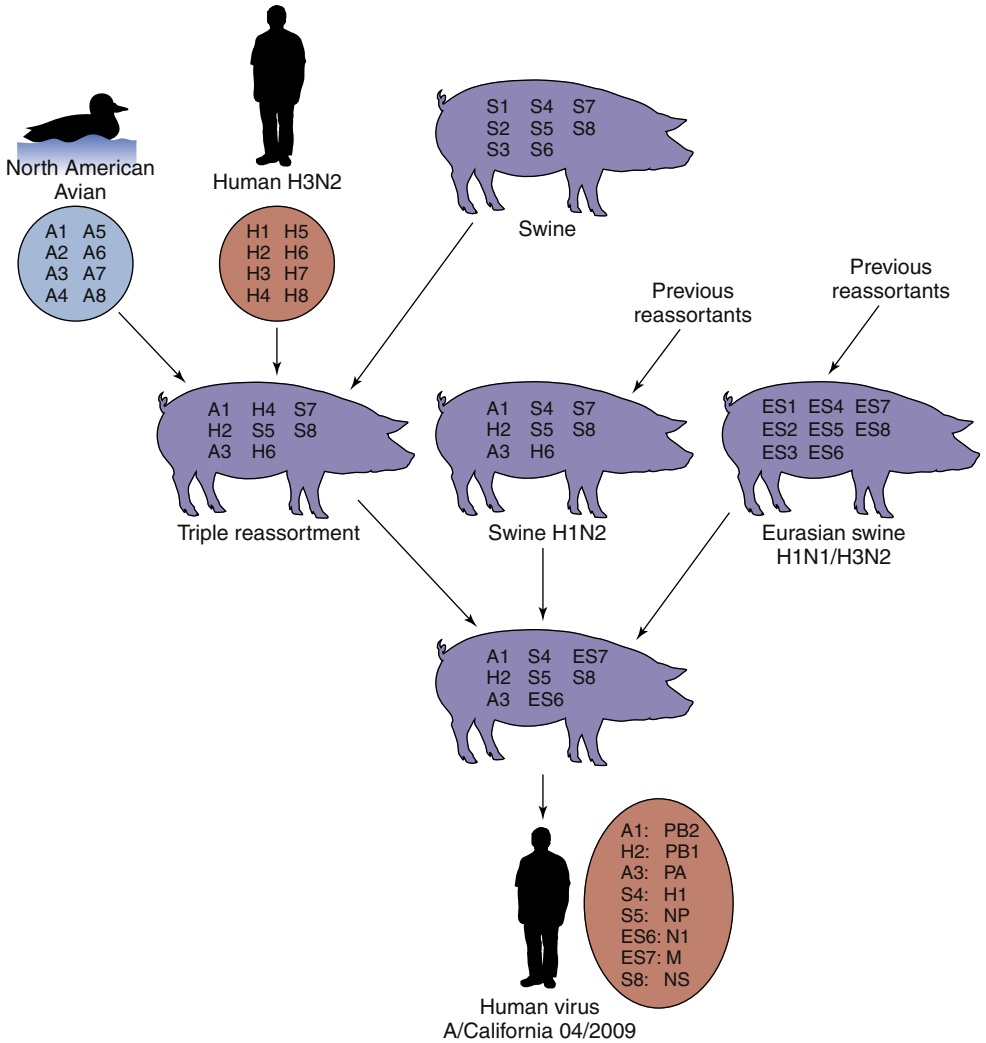


Fig. 49.5 Generation of A/California/04/2009 (H1N1) pandemic swine flu by multiple reassortments of genomic segments of influenza A virus. The pandemic H1N1 virus arose from the mixing of a triple reassortment of avian, human, and swine viruses with two other swine viruses, each of which was also generated by reassortment between swine, human, and other influenza viruses. This new virus emerged in the spring of 2009 (out of season) in Mexico but was first identified in California.

Clinical Case 49.1 **Pandemic Influenza A/California/04/2009 (H1N1)**

In the spring of 2009, a new amantadine- and rimantadine-resistant reassortant H1N1 virus was detected in a 10-year-old patient in California and proceeded to cause a pandemic. As indicated in Fig. 49.5, the virus is a triple-triple reassortant of multiple swine, avian, and human influenza viruses. The virus originated in Mexico and rapidly spread as many cases went unrecognized because of the unseasonal nature of the outbreak. Up to 25,000 deaths occurred worldwide, primarily in people between the ages of 22 months and 57 years. People with chronic medical conditions, especially pregnant women, were at greatest risk to complications, but unlike other outbreaks, this virus had a tendency to affect younger and healthier individuals. Of interest, many people older than 60 years had cross-reactive antibody resulting from prior exposure to an H1N1 influenza virus. Neuraminidase inhibitors were made available for prophylaxis, but detection of resistant strains became a concern. By September, a vaccine had been developed, approved, and manufactured and was available for distribution on a prioritized basis, and then it was administered with the seasonal influenza vaccine. The pandemic was declared over by August 2010, and the H1N1 virus joined H3N2 and influenza B as a seasonal virus.

and the source of many of the pandemic strains of influenza. Inhalation of large amounts of virus (shared living environments) can lead to infection, killing of cells of the lower human lung, and serious disease. In 1997, a highly pathogenic avian influenza virus (HPAIV) (H5N1) strain was isolated from at least 18 humans and caused six deaths in Hong Kong (Clinical Case 49.2). Although primarily a virus of poultry, close contact has caused human infection with H7N9. Outbreaks in 2013 and 2014 of lethal H7N9 disease in China have been traced to chicken-to-human

Clinical Case 49.2 **H5N1 Avian Influenza**

The first case of H5N1 avian influenza in a human was described by Ku and Chan (*J Paediatr Child Health* 35:207–208, 1999). After a 3-year-old boy from China developed a fever of 40° C and abdominal pain, he was given antibiotics and aspirin. On the third day, he was hospitalized with a sore throat, and his chest radiograph demonstrated bronchial inflammation. Blood studies showed a left shift with 9% band forms. On the sixth day, the boy was still febrile and fully conscious, but on the seventh day, his fever increased, he was hyperventilating, and his blood oxygen levels decreased. A chest radiograph indicated severe pneumonia. The patient was intubated. On the eighth day, the boy was diagnosed with fulminant sepsis and ARDS. Therapy for ARDS and other attempts to improve oxygen uptake were unsuccessful. He was treated empirically for sepsis, herpes simplex virus infection (acyclovir), methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (vancomycin), and fungal infection (amphotericin B), but his condition deteriorated further, with disseminated intravascular coagulation and liver and renal failure. He died on the 11th day. Laboratory results indicated elevated influenza A antibody on the eighth day, and influenza A was isolated from a tracheal isolate taken on the ninth day. The isolate was sent to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and elsewhere, in which it was typed as H5N1 avian influenza and named *A/Hong Kong/156/97 (H5N1)*. The child may have contracted the virus while playing with pet ducklings and chickens at his kindergarten. Although the H5N1 virus still has difficulty infecting humans, this case demonstrates the speed and severity of the respiratory and systemic manifestations of avian influenza H5N1 disease.

ARDS, Acute respiratory distress syndrome

BOX 49.3 **Epidemiology of Influenza A and B Viruses**

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus has a large, enveloped virion that is easily inactivated by dryness, acid, and detergents.
Segmented genome facilitates major genetic changes, especially on hemagglutinin and neuraminidase proteins.
Influenza A infects many vertebrate species, including other mammals and birds.
Coinfection with animal and human strains of influenza A can generate very different virus strains by genetic reassortment.
Transmission of virus often precedes symptoms.

Transmission

Virus is spread by inhalation of small aerosol droplets expelled during talking, breathing, and coughing.
Virus likes a cool, less humid atmosphere (e.g., winter heating season).
Virus is extensively spread by schoolchildren.

Who Is at Risk?

Seronegative people
Adults: classic flu syndrome.
Children: asymptomatic to severe respiratory tract infections.
High-risk groups: elderly and immunocompromised people, people in nursing homes or with underlying cardiac or respiratory problems (including asthma sufferers and smokers).

Geography/Season

Worldwide occurrence. Epidemics are local; pandemics are worldwide.
Disease is more common in winter.

Modes of Control

Antiviral drugs have been approved for prophylaxis or early treatment.
Killed and live vaccines contain predicted yearly strains of influenza A and B viruses.

transmission in live poultry markets. Outbreaks of avian influenza require destruction of all potentially infected birds, such as the 1.6 million chickens in Hong Kong, to destroy the potential source of the virus.

The changing antigenic nature of influenza ensures a large proportion of immunologically naive susceptible people (especially children) in the population each year (Box 49.3). An influenza outbreak can be readily detected from increased absenteeism in schools and at work and the number of emergency department visits. The influenza season for the Northern Hemisphere is usually from late fall to early spring.

Extensive surveillance of influenza A and B outbreaks is conducted to identify new strains that should be incorporated into new vaccines. The prevalence of a particular strain of influenza A or B virus changes each year and reflects the particular immunologic naïveté of the population at that time. In 2018, influenza A (H3N2) was the predominant strain and caused severe illness, particularly in children and elderly individuals (≥65 years). Surveillance also extends into the animal populations because of the possible presence of recombinant animal influenza A strains that can cause human pandemics.

Clinical Syndromes

Depending on the degree of immunity to the infecting strain of virus and other factors, disease may range from asymptomatic to severe (Box 49.4). Patients with underlying cardiorespiratory disease, people with immune deficiency (even that associated with pregnancy), the elderly, and smokers are more prone to have a severe case.

After an incubation period of 1 to 4 days, the "flu syndrome" begins with a brief prodrome of malaise and headache lasting a few hours. The prodrome is followed by the **abrupt and intense** onset of a high fever, chills, severe myalgias, loss of appetite, weakness and fatigue, sore throat, runny or stuffy nose, and usually a nonproductive cough. The fever persists for 3 to 8 days, and unless a complication occurs, recovery is complete within 7 to 10 days. Influenza in young children (<3 years) resembles other severe respiratory tract infections, potentially causing bronchiolitis, croup, otitis media, vomiting, and abdominal pain, accompanied rarely by febrile convulsions (Table 49.3). Influenza B disease is similar to influenza A disease.

Influenza may directly cause pneumonia, but it more commonly promotes a secondary bacterial superinfection that leads to bronchitis or a rapidly progressing and potentially lethal pneumonia. The tissue damage caused by progressive influenza virus infection of alveoli can be extensive, leading to hypoxia and bilateral pneumonia. Secondary bacterial infection usually involves *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae,* or *S. aureus.* In these infections, sputum usually is produced and becomes purulent.

The inflammatory responses initiated by influenza disease may cause myocarditis, myositis (inflammation of muscle), encephalopathy, postinfluenza encephalitis, multiorgan failure, and Reye syndrome. The inflammatory response can trigger sepsis and exacerbate asthma and chronic heart disease. Reye syndrome is an acute encephalitis that affects children and occurs after a variety of acute febrile viral infections, including varicella and influenza B and A diseases. Children given salicylates (aspirin) are at increased risk for this syndrome. In addition to encephalopathy, hepatic dysfunction is present. The mortality rate may be as high as 40%.

BOX 49.4 Clinical Summary

Influenza A: A 70-year-old woman has rapid onset of fever with headache, myalgia, sore throat, and nonproductive cough. The disease progresses to pneumonia with bacterial involvement. There is no history of recent immunization with influenza A vaccine. Her husband is treated with amantadine or a neuraminidase inhibitor.

TABLE 49.3 Diseases Associated With Influenza Virus Infection

Disorder	Symptoms
Acute influenza infection in adults	Rapid onset of fever, malaise, myalgia, sore throat, and nonproductive cough
Acute influenza infection in children	Acute disease similar to that in adults but with higher fever, gastrointestinal tract symptoms (abdominal pain, vomiting), otitis media, myositis, and more frequent croup
Complications of influenza virus infection	Primary viral pneumonia Secondary bacterial pneumonia Myositis and cardiac involvement Neurologic syndromes: Guillain-Barré syndrome Encephalopathy Encephalitis Reye syndrome

Laboratory Diagnosis

The diagnosis of influenza is usually based on the characteristic symptoms, the season, and the presence of the virus in the community. Influenza viruses are obtained from respiratory secretions taken early in the illness. Rapid techniques detect and identify the influenza genome or antigens of the virus (Table 49.4). Rapid antigen assays (<30 minutes) can detect and distinguish influenza A and B. Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) and multiplex RT-PCR assays can detect and distinguish influenza A and B, different strains (e.g., H5N1), other respiratory viruses, and bacteria. Enzyme immunoassay or immunofluorescence can be used to detect viral antigen in exfoliated cells, respiratory secretions, or cell culture. Immunofluorescence or inhibition of hemadsorption or hemagglutination (hemagglutination inhibition) with specific antibody (see Fig. 39.6) can also detect and distinguish different influenza strains.

The virus can be isolated in primary monkey kidney cell cultures or the Madin-Darby canine kidney cell line. Although cytolytic, the cytopathologic effects of the virus are often difficult to distinguish but may be noted within as few as 2 days (average, 4 days). Before the cytopathologic effects develop, the addition of guinea pig erythrocytes may reveal **hemadsorption** (adherence of these erythrocytes to HA-expressing infected cells) (see Fig. 39.5). Addition of influenza virus–containing fluids to erythrocytes promotes formation of a gel-like aggregate resulting from **hemagglutination.** Hemagglutination and hemadsorption are not specific to influenza viruses; parainfluenza and other viruses also exhibit these properties.

TABLE 49.4 Laboratory Diagnosis of Influenza Virus Infection

Test	Detects
Cell culture in primary monkey kidney or Madin-Darby canine kidney cells	Presence of virus; limited cytopathologic effects
Hemadsorption to infected cells	Presence of hemagglutinin protein on cell surface
Hemagglutination	Presence of virus in secretions
Hemagglutination inhibition	Type and strain of influenza virus or specificity of antibody
Antibody inhibition of hemadsorption	Identification of influenza type and strain
Immunofluorescence, ELISA	Influenza virus and antigens in respiratory secretions or tissue culture
Serology: hemagglutination inhibition, hemadsorption inhibition, ELISA, immunofluorescence, complement fixation	Seroepidemiology
Genomics: rapid viral RNA detection assays, RT-PCR, multiplex RT-PCR, sequence analysis	Detection and identification of influenza type and strain

ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Hundreds of millions of dollars are spent on acetaminophen, antihistamines, and similar drugs to relieve the symptoms of influenza. The antiviral drug **amantadine** and its analog **rimantadine** target the M2 protein and inhibit an uncoating step of the influenza A virus but do not affect the influenza B and C viruses. These drugs are no longer recommended in the United States due to extensive resistance. **Zanamivir, oseltamivir,** and **peramivir** inhibit both influenza A and B as enzyme inhibitors of NA. Without NA, the HA of the virus binds to sialic acid on other glycoproteins and viral particles to form clumps or stick to the cell surface, preventing virus release. Zanamivir is inhaled, whereas oseltamivir is taken orally as a pill. These drugs are effective for prophylaxis and for treatment during the first 24 to 48 hours after the onset of influenza illness. Treatment cannot prevent the later host-induced immunopathogenic stages of the disease. Naturally resistant or mutant strains are selected when antiviral prophylaxis is used and are becoming more prevalent. Stockpiles of oseltamivir have been developed in many countries as a rapid response to an outbreak and an alternative to vaccines. **Baloxavir marboxil** is a new Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved antiinfluenza drug that targets the activity of the viral polymerase (PB2) that snatches the 5′ cap of cellular mRNAs and uses it as a primer for transcription of viral mRNAs.

The airborne spread of influenza is almost impossible to limit. However, the best way to control the virus is through immunization. Natural immunization, which results from prior exposure, is protective for long periods. Vaccines representing the "strains of the year" and antiviral drug prophylaxis can also prevent infection.

The inactivated subunit influenza vaccines are a mixture of extracts or purified HA and NA proteins from three or four different strains of virus. HA and NA are purified from virus grown in embryonated eggs, from infected tissue culture cells, or by recombinant gene technology. Killed (formalin-inactivated) virion preparations are also used. High-dose and adjuvanted influenza vaccines are available to boost the immunogenicity for older individuals.

The trivalent vaccine incorporates antigens of an influenza A (H1N1) virus, an influenza A (H3N2) virus, and one influenza B virus predicted to be prevalent in the community during the upcoming winter. The quadrivalent vaccine contains an additional influenza B virus. For instance, the 2018–2019 vaccine contained A/Michigan/45/2015 A(H1N1) pdm09-like virus, an A/Singapore/INFIMH-16–0019/2016 A(H3N2)-like virus, and a B/Colorado/06/2017-like (B/Victoria lineage) virus, whereas the quadrivalent vaccine added a B/Phuket/3073/2013-like (B/Yamagata lineage) virus.

A live attenuated influenza vaccine (LAIV) is also available for administration as a nasal spray instead of a "flu shot." The trivalent vaccine consists of reassortant viruses that contain the HA and NA gene segments of the desired influenza strains within a master donor virus that is cold adapted for optimum growth at 25° C. This vaccine is restricted to infecting the nasopharynx and will elicit a more natural protection, including cell-mediated immunity, serum antibody, and mucosal-secretory immunoglobulin (Ig)A antibody. The vaccine is only recommended for people aged 2 to 50 years.

Vaccination is routinely recommended for all individuals and especially persons older than 50 years, health care workers, pregnant women who will be in their second or third trimester during flu season, people living in a nursing home, people with chronic pulmonary heart disease, and others at high risk. Pain at the injection site may result from an Arthus reaction to an annual immunization. Many health care facilities require their personnel to be vaccinated. Persons with serious allergies to eggs can get the recombinant or tissue culture–generated vaccines or the live vaccine.

Although the efficacy of the influenza vaccines may not be 100% for all the viruses, they still reduce the incidence and risk for severe disease. According to the CDC, more than 5 million flu illnesses and 85,000 hospitalizations were prevented in the United States in the 2016–2017 season because of vaccination.

Newer approaches to influenza vaccines include RNA and DNA vaccines and universal influenza A vaccines. RNA and DNA vaccines can be generated from genome sequences within weeks of an outbreak and from smaller and possibly mobile facilities. Molecular regions of the HA protein involved in fusion are being investigated for universal influenza A vaccines.

THOGOTOVIRUSES

Thogotoviruses have six or seven genomic segments and are arboviruses capable of infecting humans and other vertebrates. They are spread primarily by ticks but also possibly by mosquitoes. In 2014, a previously healthy man died of a tick-borne disease that resembled Rocky Mountain spotted fever. It is named the Bourbon virus after Bourbon, Kansas, in which it was isolated.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Bradley et al. 2019. Microbiota-driven tonic interferon signals in lung stromal cells protect from influenza virus infection. Cell Reports 28, 245–256. https://doi.org/10.1016/ j.celrep.2019.05.105.

Carr, C.M., Chaudhry, C., Kim, P.S., 1997. Influenza hemagglutinin is spring-loaded by a metastable native conformation. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U S A. 94, 14306–14313.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Cox, N.J., Subbarao, K., 2000. Global epidemiology of influenza: past and present. Annu. Rev. Med. 51, 407–421.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Galani et al. Interferon-λ mediates non-redundant front-line antiviral protection against influenza virus infection without compromising host fitness. Immunity 46, 875–890. https://dx.doi.org/10.1016/ j.immuni.2017.04.025.

Henry, C., Palm, A.-K.E., Krammer, F., Wilson, P.C., 2018. From Original Antigenic Sin to the Universal Influenza Virus Vaccine. Trends Immunol. 39, 70–79. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.it.2017.08.003.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Laver, W.G., Bischofberger, N., Webster, R.G., 2000. The origin and control of pandemic influenza. Perspect. Biol. Med. 43, 173–192.

Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eighth ed, Saunders, Philadelphia.

Michael, B.A., Oldstone, M.B.A., Compans, R.W., 2014 and 2015. Influenza Pathogenesis and Control—Volume I and II. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 385 and 386. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-11155-1 and https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-11158-2.

Poland, G.A., Jacobson, R.M., Targonski, P.V., 2007. Avian and pandemic influenza: an overview. Vaccine 25, 3057–3061.
Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2009. Clinical Virology, third ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Salomon, R., Webster, R.G., 2009. The influenza virus enigma. Cell 136, 402–410.
Sano, K., Ainai, A., Suzuki, T., Hasegawa, H., 2017. The road to a more effective influenza vaccine: up to date studies and future prospects. Vaccine 35, 5388–5395.
Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.
Webster, R.G., Govorkova, E.A., 2006. H5N1 Influenza, continuing evolution and spread. N. Engl. J. Med. 355, 2174–2177.

Websites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Bourbon virus. www.cdc.gov/ncezid/dvbd/bourbon/. Accessed August 7, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2010. The 2009 H1N1 pandemic: summary highlights, April 2009-2010. www.cdc.gov/h1n1flu/cdcresponse.htm. Accessed August 7, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Seasonal Influenza (flu). www.cdc.gov/flu/. Accessed August 7, 2018.
Nguyen, H.H., 2018. Influenza. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/219557-overview. Accessed August 7, 2018.
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease, Flu (influenza). www.niaid.nih.gov/topics/flu/Pages/default.aspx. Accessed August 7, 2018.
Webster, R.G., 1998. Influenza: an emerging disease. wwwnc.cdc.gov/eid/article/4/3/98-0325_article.htm. Accessed August 7, 2018.

Case Study and Questions

In late December, a 22-year-old man suddenly experienced headache, myalgia, malaise, dry cough, and fever. He basically felt lousy. After a couple of days, he had a sore throat, his cough had worsened, he started to feel nauseated, and he began vomiting. Several of his family members had experienced similar symptoms during the previous 2 weeks.

1. In addition to influenza, what other agents could cause similar symptoms (differential diagnosis)?

2. How would the diagnosis of influenza be confirmed?

3. Oseltamivir is effective against influenza. What is its mechanism of action? Will it be effective for this patient? For uninfected family members or contacts?

4. When was the patient contagious, and how was the virus transmitted?

5. Which types of family members were at greatest risk for serious disease and why?

6. Why is influenza so difficult to control, even when there is a national vaccination program?

50 Rhabdoviruses, Filoviruses, and Bornaviruses

A 15-year-old girl picked up a bat and was bitten on her hand. One month later, she developed double vision, nausea, and vomiting. Over the course of 4 days, her neurologic disease developed, and she had a fever of 38.9° C. Rabies was suspected, and rabies virus–specific antibodies were detected in the patient's serum and cerebrospinal fluid (1:32 titer). The patient was put into a drug-induced coma with ventilator support and treated with intravenous ribavirin for 7 days, when cerebrospinal fluid antibody titers rose to 1:2048. After 3 months, she was able to walk with assistance, ride a stationary cycle for 8 minutes, feed herself a soft solid diet, solve math puzzles, use sign language, and was regaining the ability to speak. This is the only example of a patient surviving without having received timely postexposure rabies immunization[1]*

1. How is rabies infection confirmed?
2. What is the usual disease progression after a bite from a rabid animal?
3. When is antirabies antibody detected in a normal rabies disease presentation?
4. What is postexposure rabies immunization, and why does it work?
5. How does ribavirin inhibit the replication of rabies and other viruses?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

RHABDOVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Mad dog, hydrophobia, salivation, bullet-shaped virion, Negri bodies

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Medium size, bullet shaped, enveloped, (–) RNA genome
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Antibody can block disease
- Virus spreads along neurons to salivary glands and brain
- Antibody produced after virus reaches brain
- Incubation period depends on proximity of bite to CNS and infectious dose

Epidemiology

- Zoonosis
- Reservoir in skunks, raccoons, foxes, badgers, bats (aerosols)

Diagnosis

- RT-PCR, antigen detection in biopsy, presence of Negri bodies in infected cells

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Immunization with killed vaccine *after* bite and antirabies immunoglobulin
- Prophylaxis if job-related risk
- Inactivated vaccine for pets
- Vaccinia virus hybrid vaccine for wild animals

CNS, Central nervous system; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction.

Rhabdoviruses

Members of the family Rhabdoviridae (from the Greek word **rhabdos,** meaning "rod") include pathogens for a variety of mammals, fish, birds, and plants. The family contains *Vesiculovirus* (vesicular stomatitis viruses [VSVs]), *Lyssavirus* (Greek for "frenzy") (rabies and rabies-like viruses), and many other rhabdoviruses of plants, mammals, birds, fish, and arthropods.

Rabies virus is the most significant pathogen of the rhabdoviruses. Until Louis Pasteur developed the killed-rabies vaccine, a bite from a "mad" dog always led to the characteristic symptoms of **hydrophobia** and certain death.

PHYSIOLOGY, STRUCTURE, AND REPLICATION

Rhabdoviruses are simple viruses, encoding only five proteins and appearing as **bullet-shaped enveloped virions** with a diameter of 50 to 95 nm and length of 130 to 380 nm (Fig. 50.1; Box 50.1). Spikes composed of a trimer of the glycoprotein (G) cover the surface of the virus. The viral attachment protein, G-protein, generates neutralizing antibodies. The G-protein of the VSV is a simple glycoprotein with N-linked glycan. This G-protein was used as the prototype for studying eukaryotic glycoprotein processing.

Within the envelope, the **helical nucleocapsid** is coiled symmetrically into a cylindrical structure, giving it the appearance of striations (see Fig. 50.1). The nucleocapsid is composed of one molecule of **single-stranded, negative-sense ribonucleic acid (RNA)** of approximately 12,000 bases and the nucleoprotein (N), large (L), and nonstructural (NS) proteins. The L and NS proteins constitute the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. The N protein is the major structural protein of the virus. It protects the RNA from ribonuclease digestion and maintains the RNA in a configuration acceptable for transcription. The matrix (M) protein lies between the envelope and the nucleocapsid.

The replicative cycle of VSV is the prototype for the rhabdoviruses and other negative-strand RNA viruses

[1]Adapted from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2004. Recovery of a patient from clinical rabies—Wisconsin, 2004, *MMWR Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep.* 53:1171–1173.

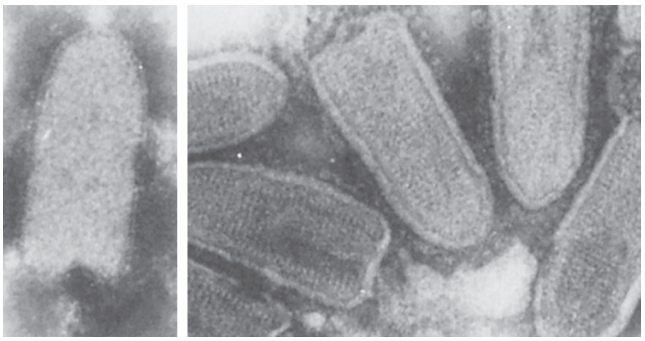


Fig. 50.1 Rhabdoviridae seen by electron microscopy: rabies virus *(left)* and vesicular stomatitis virus *(right)*. (From Fields, B.N., 1985. Virology. Raven, New York, NY.)

BOX 50.1 Unique Features of Rhabdoviruses

Bullet-shaped, enveloped, negative-sense, single-stranded RNA viruses that encode five proteins.
Prototype for replication of negative-strand enveloped viruses.
Replication in cytoplasm.

(see Fig. 36.13). The viral G-protein attaches to the host cell and virions are internalized by endocytosis. Rabies virus binds to either the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (AChR), neural cell adhesion molecule (NCAM), or other molecules. The viral envelope then fuses with the membrane of the endosome on acidification of the vesicle. This uncoats the nucleocapsid, releasing it into the cytoplasm, where replication takes place. In neurons, Endosomal vesicles may deliver whole rabies virions along the axon to neuronal cell to facilitate neuronal spread.

The RNA-dependent RNA polymerase associated with the nucleocapsid transcribes the viral genomic RNA, producing five individual messenger RNAs (mRNAs). For rabies virus, this occurs in the Negri bodies. These mRNAs are then translated into the five viral proteins. The viral genomic RNA is also transcribed into a full-length, positive-sense RNA template that is used to generate new genomes. The G-protein is synthesized by membrane-bound ribosomes, processed by the Golgi apparatus, and delivered to the cell surface in membrane vesicles. The M protein associates with the G-protein–modified membranes.

Assembly of the virion occurs in two phases: (1) assembly of the nucleocapsid in the cytoplasm and (2) envelopment and release at cytoplasmic or plasma membranes. The genome associates with the N protein and then with the polymerase proteins L and NS to form the nucleocapsid. Association of the nucleocapsid with the M protein induces coiling into its condensed form and the characteristic bullet shape of the virion. In most cells, the virus buds from intracytoplasmic membranes and release is inefficient. The exception is the salivary gland, in which the virus buds efficiently from the plasma membrane and is released when the entire nucleocapsid is enveloped. The time for a single cycle of replication depends on the cell type and the inoculum size.

BOX 50.2 Disease Mechanisms of Rabies Virus

Rabies is usually transmitted in saliva and acquired from the bite of a rabid animal.
Rabies virus is **not very cytolytic** and seems to remain cell associated except in salivary gland.
Virus replicates in the muscle at the site of the bite, with minimal or no symptoms **(incubation phase).**
The length of the incubation phase is determined by the infectious dose and the proximity of the infection site to the CNS and brain.
After weeks to months, the virus infects the peripheral nerves and travels up the CNS to the brain **(prodrome phase).**
Infection of the brain causes classic symptoms, coma, and death **(neurologic phase).**
During the neurologic phase, the virus spreads to the glands, skin, and other body parts, including the salivary glands.
Rabies infection does not elicit an antibody response until the late stages of the disease, when the virus has spread from the CNS to other sites.
Salivary glands produce and release large amounts of virus and is the major source of contagion.
Administration of antibody can block progression of the virus and disease if given early enough.
The long incubation period allows active immunization as a post-exposure treatment.

CNS, Central nervous sy stem.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Rabies infection usually results from the bite of a rabid animal (Box 50.2). Rabies infection of the animal causes secretion of the virus in the animal's saliva and promotes aggressive behavior and biting (mad dog), which in turn promotes transmission of the virus. The virus can also be transmitted through inhalation of aerosolized virus (as may be found in bat caves), in transplanted infected tissue (e.g., cornea), and by inoculation through intact mucosal membranes.

The virus replicates quietly at the site of infection for days to months (Fig. 50.2) before progressing to the peripheral nervous system and then the central nervous system (CNS). Rabies virus travels by retrograde axoplasmic transport to the dorsal root ganglia and the spinal cord. Once the virus gains access to the spinal cord, the brain becomes rapidly infected and virus production increases. The affected areas are the hippocampus, brainstem, ganglionic cells of the pontine nuclei, and Purkinje cells of the cerebellum. The virus then disseminates from the CNS via afferent neurons to highly innervated sites such as the skin of the head and neck, **salivary glands,** retina, cornea, nasal mucosa, adrenal medulla, renal parenchyma, and pancreatic acinar cells. Virus is released efficiently from the salivary gland to promote contagion from infected animals. After the virus invades the brain and spinal cord, encephalitis develops and neurons degenerate. Despite extensive CNS involvement and impairment of CNS function, little histopathologic change can be observed in the affected tissue, other than the presence of Negri bodies (see section on Laboratory Diagnosis for rhabies).

Rabies is fatal once the clinical disease is apparent. The length of the incubation period is determined by the

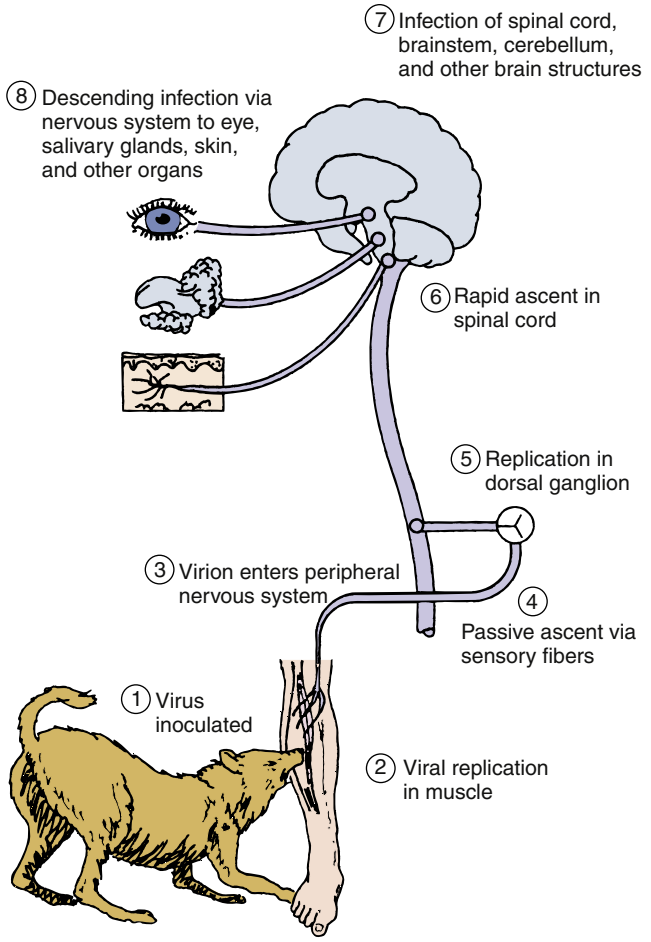


Fig. 50.2 Pathogenesis of rabies virus infection. Numbered steps describe the sequence of events. (Modified from Belshe, R.B., 1991. Textbook of Human Virology, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

(1) concentration of the virus in the inoculum, (2) proximity of the wound to the brain, (3) severity of the wound, (4) host's age, and (5) host's immune status.

In contrast to other viral encephalitis syndromes, rabies is minimally cytolytic and rarely causes inflammatory lesions. Viral proteins inhibit apoptosis and aspects of interferon action. Little antigen is released, and the infection probably remains hidden from the immune response. Neutralizing antibodies are not apparent until after the clinical disease is well established. Cell-mediated immunity appears to play little or no role in protection against rabies virus infection.

Antibody can block the spread of virus to the CNS and brain if administered or generated by vaccination during the incubation period. The incubation period is usually long enough to allow generation of a therapeutic protective antibody response after active immunization with the killed rabies vaccine.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Rabies is the **classic zoonotic infection** spread from animals to humans (Box 50.3). Rabies occurs in most parts of the world but is rarely seen in Japan, Australia, New Zealand, United Kingdom, and certain island states. Rabies is maintained and spread in three ways. In urban rabies, dogs are the primary transmitter, in sylvatic (forest) rabies, many species of wildlife can serve as transmitters, and then there is bat rabies. Virus-containing aerosols, bites, and scratches from infected bats also spread the disease. In the United States, rabies is more prevalent in cats because they are not vaccinated. The principal reservoir for rabies in most of the world, however, is the dog. In Latin America and Asia, this feature is a problem because of the existence of many stray unvaccinated dogs and the absence of rabies-control programs. Although rare, there are cases of rabies transmission via corneal and organ transplants.

Because of the excellent dog vaccination program in the United States, sylvatic and bat exposure accounts for most of the cases of animal rabies in this country. Statistics for animal rabies are collected by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, which in 1999 recorded more than 8000 documented cases of rabies in raccoons, skunks, bats, and farm animals, in addition to dogs and cats (Fig. 50.3). Badgers and foxes are also major carriers of rabies in Western Europe. In South America, vampire bats transmit rabies to cattle, resulting in losses of millions of dollars each year.

Although underreported, it is estimated that rabies accounts for 40,000 to 100,000 deaths (mostly children) annually worldwide, with at least 20,000 deaths in India, in which the virus is transmitted by dogs in 96% of cases. In Latin America, cases of human rabies primarily result from contact with rabid dogs in urban areas. In Indonesia, an outbreak of more than 200 human cases of rabies in

BOX 50.3 Epidemiology of Rabies Virus

Disease/Viral Factors

Virus-induced aggressive behavior in animals promotes virus spread.
Production of virus by salivary gland transmits virus in bite.
Disease has long, asymptomatic incubation period.

Transmission

Zoonosis
- Reservoir: wild animals.
- Vector: wild animals and unvaccinated dogs and cats.

Source of virus
- Major: saliva in bite of rabid animal (including bats).
- Minor: aerosols in bat caves containing rabid bats.
- Rare: transplant of contaminated cornea or organ.

Who Is at Risk?

Veterinarians and animal handlers.
Person bitten by a rabid animal.
Inhabitants of countries with no pet vaccination program.

Geography/Season

Virus found worldwide, except in some island nations.
No seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

Vaccination program is available for pets.
Vaccination is available for at-risk personnel.
Vaccination programs have been implemented to control rabies in forest mammals.

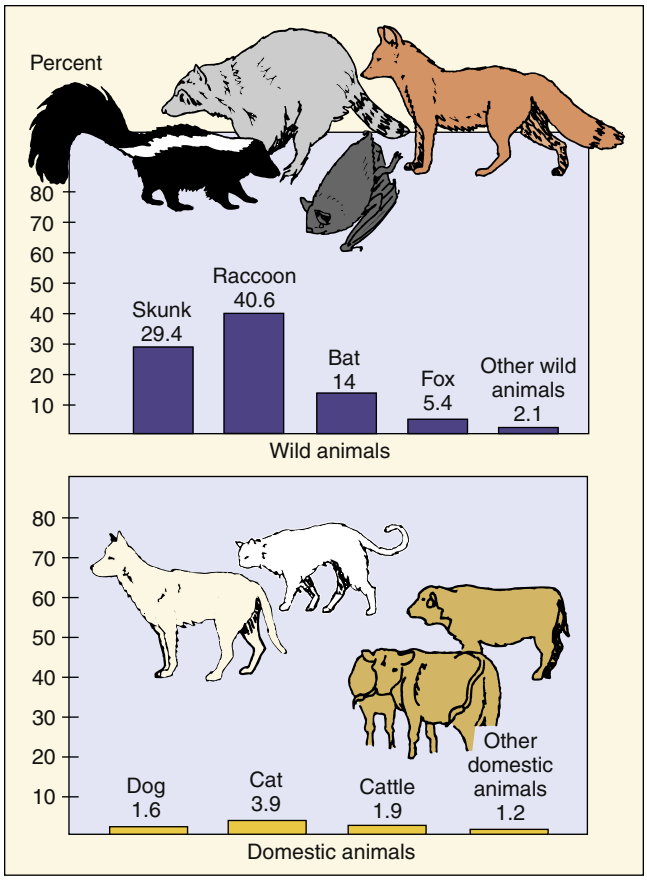


Fig. 50.3 Distribution of animal rabies in the United States, 1999. Percentages relate to the total number of cases of animal rabies. (Data from Krebs, J.W., Rupprecht, C.E., Childs, J.E., 2000. Rabies surveillance in the United States during 1999. Am. Veter. Med. Assoc. 217, 1799–1811.)

1999 prompted the killing of more than 40,000 dogs on the islands. The incidence of human rabies in the United States is approximately one case per year, due in large part to effective dog vaccination programs and limited human contact with skunks, raccoons, and bats. Since 1990, human cases of rabies in the United States are acquired elsewhere or caused primarily by bat variants of the virus. The World Health Organization estimates that 10 million people per year receive treatment after exposure to animals suspected of being rabid.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Rabies is virtually always fatal unless treated by vaccination. After a long but highly variable incubation period, the prodrome phase of rabies ensues (Box 50.4; Table 50.1). The patient has symptoms such as fever, malaise, headache, pain or paresthesia (itching) at the site of the bite, gastrointestinal symptoms, fatigue, and anorexia. The prodrome usually lasts 2 to 10 days, after which the neurologic symptoms specific to rabies appear. **Hydrophobia** (fear of water), the most characteristic symptom of rabies, occurs in 20% to 50% of patients. It is triggered by the pain associated with the patient's attempts to swallow water. Focal and generalized seizures, disorientation, and hallucinations are also common during the neurologic phase. Paralysis (15% to 60% of patients) may be the only manifestation of rabies and may lead to respiratory failure.

The patient becomes comatose after the neurologic phase, which lasts from 2 to 10 days. This phase almost universally leads to death resulting from neurologic and pulmonary complications.

BOX 50.4 Clinical Summary

Rabies: A 3-year-old girl was found to have a bat flying in her bedroom. The bat apparently was there all night. There was no evidence of any bite wound or contact, and the bat was caught and released. Three weeks later, the child developed a change in behavior, becoming irritable and agitated. This state quickly progressed to confusion, uncontrollable thrashing about, and inability to handle her secretions. She eventually became comatose and died from respiratory arrest.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The occurrence of neurologic symptoms in a person who has been bitten by an animal generally establishes the diagnosis of rabies. Unfortunately, *evidence of infection, including symptoms and the detection of antibody, does not occur until it is too late for intervention*. Laboratory tests are usually performed to confirm the diagnosis (too late for treatment) and determine whether a suspected animal is rabid (postmortem).

Antigen detection using direct immunofluorescence or genome detection using reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) are relatively quick and sensitive assays, and they are the preferred methods for diagnosing rabies. Samples of saliva are easy to test, but serum, spinal fluid, skin biopsy material from the nape of the neck, brain biopsy or autopsy material, and impression smears of corneal epithelial cells can also be examined.

Infected cells will have intracytoplasmic inclusions consisting of aggregates of viral nucleocapsids **(Negri bodies)** in affected neurons (see Fig. 39.3). Although their finding is diagnostic of rabies, Negri bodies are seen in only 70% to 90% of brain tissue from infected humans.

Antibody is not detectable until late in the disease but can be assayed from serum and cerebrospinal fluid by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA).

TREATMENT AND PROPHYLAXIS

Clinical rabies is almost always fatal unless treated early with postrabies immunization. Once the symptoms have appeared, little other than supportive care can be given. There is one case of successful cessation of disease progression by postexposure ribavirin treatment (see introductory case study).

Postexposure prophylaxis is the only hope for preventing overt clinical illness in the affected person. Although human cases of rabies are rare, approximately 20,000 people receive rabies prophylaxis each year in the United States alone. Prophylaxis should be initiated for anyone exposed by bite or by contamination of an open wound or mucous membrane to the saliva or brain tissue of an animal suspected to be infected with the virus, unless the animal is tested and shown not to be rabid.

TABLE 50.1 Progression of Rabies Disease

Disease Phase	Symptoms	Time (Days)	Viral Status	Immunologic Status
Incubation phase	Asymptomatic	60–365 after bite	Low titer, virus in muscle	—
Prodrome phase	Fever, nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, headache, lethargy, pain at site of bite	2–10	Low titer, virus in CNS and brain	—
Neurologic phase	Hydrophobia, pharyngeal spasms, hyperactivity, anxiety, depression CNS symptoms: loss of coordination, paralysis, confusion, delirium	2–7	High titer, virus in brain and other sites	Detectable antibody in serum and CNS
Coma	Coma, hypotension, hypoventilation, secondary infections, cardiac arrest	0–14	High titer, virus in brain and other sites	—
Death	—	—	—	—

CNS, Central nervous system.

The first protective measure is local treatment of the wound. The wound should be washed immediately with soap and water or another substance that inactivates the virus. Antirabies immunoglobulin is injected near the wound.

Subsequently, four immunizations with rabies vaccine are administered within 2 weeks, with one initial dose of human rabies immunoglobulin (HRIG) or equine antirabies serum. Passive immunization with HRIG provides antibody until the patient produces antibody in response to the vaccine. The slow course of rabies disease allows active immunity to be generated in time to afford protection.

The rabies vaccine is a killed-virus vaccine prepared through chemical inactivation of rabies infected–tissue culture human diploid cells (HDCV) or chick embryo cells. These vaccines cause fewer negative reactions than the older vaccines (Semple and Fermi), which were prepared in the brains of adult or suckling animals. Serum monitoring and preexposure vaccination should be performed on animal workers, laboratory workers who handle potentially infected tissue, and people traveling to areas in which rabies is endemic. HDCV is administered intramuscularly to these individuals and provides 2 years of protection.

Ultimately, the prevention of human rabies hinges on effective control of rabies in domestic and wild animals. Its control in domestic animals depends on removal of stray and unwanted animals and vaccination of all dogs and cats. A variety of attenuated oral vaccines have also been used successfully to immunize foxes. A live recombinant vaccinia virus vaccine expressing the rabies virus G-protein is in use in the United States. This vaccine, which is injected into bait and parachuted into the forest, successfully immunizes raccoons, foxes, and other animals. Accidental injection of a woman with this vaccinia-rabies hybrid vaccine resulted in immunization against both smallpox and rabies viruses (see Bibliography).

Filoviruses

The **Marburg** and **Ebola** viruses (Fig. 50.4) were classified as members of the family Rhabdoviridae but are now classified as **filoviruses (Filoviridae).** They are **filamentous, enveloped, negative-strand RNA viruses.** These agents cause **severe or fatal hemorrhagic fevers** and are **endemic in Africa.** Awareness of the Ebola virus increased after an outbreak of the disease in Zaire in 1995,

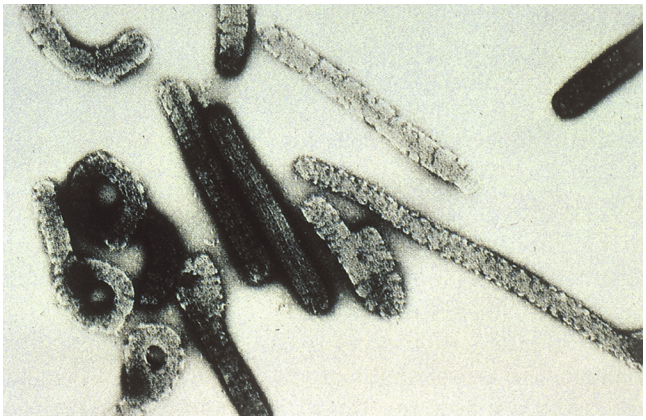


Fig. 50.4 Electron micrograph of Ebola virus. (Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA.)

in Gabon in 1996, and also after the release of the movie *Outbreak,* based on the book by Robin Cook, and the book *The Hot Zone* by Richard Preston. In 2014, an epidemic of Ebola killed many thousands, mostly in the West African countries of Liberia, Sierra Leone, and Guinea, and more recent outbreaks (2018- ongoing as of printing) have been in the Democratic Republic of Congo.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

Filoviruses have a single-stranded RNA genome (4.5×10^6 Da) that encodes seven proteins. The virions form long enveloped filaments with a diameter of 80 nm but may also assume other shapes. They vary in length from 800 nm to as long as 1400 nm and may contain none, one, or multiple genomes. The nucleocapsid is helical and enclosed in an envelope containing one glycoprotein. The glycoprotein is cleaved into two components, and a shorter version is secreted. The Ebola virus binds to Niemann-Pick C1 (NPC1), which is a cholesterol transfer protein, and T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain 1 (TIM-1), which is also the hepatitis A virus receptor. The virus enters the cell and replicates in the cytoplasm like the rhabdoviruses.

PATHOGENESIS

The filoviruses replicate efficiently, producing large amounts of virus in endothelial cells, monocytes, macrophage,

dendritic cells, and other cells. Replication in macrophages, monocytes, and dendritic cells elicits a cytokine storm of proinflammatory cytokines similar to a superantigen-induced cytokine storm promoting sepsis-like symptoms. Viral cytopathogenesis causes extensive tissue necrosis in parenchymal cells of the liver, spleen, lymph nodes, and lungs. Infection of endothelial cells prevents production of cell adhesion proteins and causes cytolysis leading to vascular injury and leakage. Strains with mutations in the glycoprotein gene lack the hemorrhagic component of disease. The widespread hemorrhage that occurs in affected patients causes edema, hypovolemic shock, and disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC). The virus also can evade host innate, including interferon, and immune responses.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Marburg virus infection was first detected among laboratory workers in Marburg, Germany, who had been exposed to tissues from apparently healthy African green monkeys. Rare cases of Marburg virus infection have been seen in Zimbabwe and Kenya.

Ebola virus was named for the river in the Democratic Republic of Congo (formerly Zaire) in which it was discovered. Outbreaks of Ebola virus disease have occurred in the Democratic Republic of Congo, Sudan, and, most recently, Liberia, Sierra Leone, and Guinea. During an outbreak, the Ebola virus is so lethal it can eliminate the susceptible population before it can be spread from the region. In urban areas, spread of the virus is more difficult to control. In rural areas of central Africa, as much as 18% of the population has antibody to this virus, indicating that subclinical infections do occur.

These viruses may be endemic in bats or wild monkeys and can be spread to humans and between humans. Contact with the animal reservoir or direct contact with infected blood or secretions can spread the disease. These viruses have been transmitted by accidental injection and through the use of contaminated syringes. Health care workers tending to the sick, funeral workers, and monkey handlers may be at risk. In response to the 2014 epidemic, screening similar to that for severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) coronavirus was initiated at major airports, and all patients in the United States with flulike symptoms were asked for their travel history.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Marburg and Ebola viruses (Clinical Case 50.1) are the most severe causes of viral hemorrhagic fevers. The illness usually begins with flulike symptoms such as headache and myalgia. Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea occur within a few days; a rash also may develop. Subsequently, hemorrhage from multiple sites (especially the gastrointestinal tract) and death occur in as many as 90% of patients with clinically evident disease.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

All specimens from patients with a suspected filovirus infection must be handled with extreme care to prevent accidental infection. Handling of these viruses requires **level 4 isolation** procedures that are not routinely available. Viral antigens can be detected in tissue by direct immunofluorescence analysis and in fluids by ELISA. RT-PCR amplification of the viral genome in secretions can be used to confirm the diagnosis and minimize handling of samples.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Antibody-containing serum, artificially produced antibody (ZMAPP), and interferon and ribavirin therapies have been tried in patients with filovirus infections. Infected patients should be quarantined, and contaminated animals should be sacrificed. Handling of the viruses, infected individuals, dead bodies, and contaminated materials requires very stringent (level 4) isolation procedures. Several approaches have been used to develop a vaccine. In the 2018 outbreak in the Democratic Republic of Congo, the rVSV-ZEBOV, a recombinant vaccine in which VSV expresses the Ebola glycoprotein instead of its own, was used. Health care workers and individuals in areas surrounding the outbreak of Ebola who are most likely to be infected (ring vaccination) had priority to be immunized.

Borna Disease Virus

Borna disease virus (BDV) is the only member of a family of enveloped, negative-strand RNA viruses. BDV was first associated with infection of horses in Germany. The virus has received considerable interest because of its association with specific neuropsychiatric diseases such as schizophrenia.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

The 8910-nucleotide-long genome of BDV encodes five detectable proteins, including a polymerase (L), nucleoprotein (N), phosphoprotein (P), matrix protein (M), and envelope glycoprotein (G). Unlike most negative-strand viruses, BDV replicates in the nucleus. Although this is similar to the orthomyxoviruses, BDV differs in that its genome is unsegmented.

PATHOGENESIS

BDV is highly neurotropic and capable of spreading throughout the CNS. BDV also infects parenchymal cells of different organs and peripheral blood mononuclear cells. The virus is not very cytolytic and establishes a persistent infection in the infected individual. T-cell immune responses are important for controlling BDV infections but also contribute to tissue damage, leading to disease.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Although there is limited understanding of the BDV disease in humans, infection of animals can result in subtle losses of learning and memory and in fatal immune-mediated meningoencephalitis. Many of the outcomes of BDV infection of laboratory animals resemble human neuropsychiatric diseases, including depression, bipolar disorder, schizophrenia, and autism. The presence of antibodies to the virus and/or infected peripheral blood mononuclear cells in higher than background numbers of patients with schizophrenia, autism, and other neuropsychiatric diseases suggests that BDV either causes or exacerbates these mental illnesses.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

BDV is capable of infecting many different mammalian species (zoonosis), including horses, sheep, and humans. Most outbreaks of the virus have occurred in Central Europe, but it has also been detected in North America and Asia. Neither the reservoir nor the mode of transmission of BDV is known. Higher levels of infection of humans are present where outbreaks in horses have been observed.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Infection can be detected by direct analysis for the viral genome and mRNA in peripheral blood mononuclear cells using RT-PCR. Serologic analysis of antibody to the viral proteins continues to be used to identify an association of BDV with human diseases.

TREATMENT

Similar to many other RNA viruses, BDV is sensitive to ribavirin treatment. Ribavirin treatment may be a reasonable treatment approach for some psychoneurologic disorders if BDV is demonstrated as a cofactor.

Clinical Case 50.1 **Ebola**

Emond and associates described the following case of Ebola infection (*Br Med J* 2:541–544, 1977). Within 6 days of a needle-stick accident while handling animal liver infected with Ebola virus, a scientist complained of abdominal pain and nausea. He was transferred to a high-security infectious disease unit and placed in an isolation room. At admission (day 1), he was experiencing fatigue, anorexia, nausea, and abdominal pain and had a fever of 38° C. Interferon was administered twice a day, and it appeared to have worked, except that the next morning his fever returned (39° C). He was given heat-inactivated convalescent serum with no immediate effect. On day 4, he sweated profusely, and his temperature dropped to normal, but he had a new rash on his chest. At midday of day 4, he experienced sudden violent shivering, fever of 40° C, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. These symptoms continued for 3 days, with spread of the rash across his body. On day 6, more convalescent serum and rehydration treatment were administered. The patient made a slow recovery over the next 10 weeks. Virus (detected by electron microscopy and inoculation of guinea pigs) was present in his blood from the first day of symptoms. (Currently, the analysis would be performed by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction, with less risk to laboratory personnel.) Virus titers dropped by 1000-fold after interferon treatment and were undetectable by day 9. Treatment of the patient and handling of samples were performed under the strictest isolation conditions available at the time. Even though the scientist took precautions and soaked his hand in bleach as soon as possible, his fate was already sealed. Luckily, interferon therapy and convalescent serum were available to limit the extent of disease progression. In their absence, he would have died from a rapidly progressing hemorrhagic disease

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Anderson, L.J., Nicholson, T.G., Tauxe, R.V., et al., 1984. Human rabies in the United States, 1960–1979: epidemiology, diagnosis, and prevention. Ann. Intern. Med. 100, 728–735.

Burrell, C., Howard, C., Murphy, F., 2016. Fenner and White's Medical Virology, fifth ed. Academic, New York.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1988. Rabies vaccine, absorbed: a new rabies vaccine for use in humans. MMWR Morb. Mortal. Wkly. Rep. 37, 217–223.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St. Louis.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Mandell, G.L., Bennet, J.E., Dolin, R., 2015. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, eight ed. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Plotkin, S.A., 2000. Rabies: state of the art clinical article. Clin. Infect. Dis. 30, 4–12.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Rupprecht, C.E., 2001. Human infection due to recombinant vaccinia-rabies glycoprotein virus. N. Engl. J Med. 345, 582–586.

Schnell, M.J., McGettigan, J.P., Wirblich, C., et al., 2010. The cell biology of rabies virus: using stealth to reach the brain. Nat. Rev. Microbiol. 8, 51–61.

Steele, J.H., 1988. Rabies in the Americas and remarks on the global aspects. Rev. Infect. Dis. 10 (Suppl. 4), S585–S597.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

Warrell, D.A., Warrell, M.J., 1988. Human rabies and its prevention: an overview. Rev. Infect. Dis. 10 (Suppl. 4), S726–S731.

Winkler, W.G., 1992. Bogel K: Control of rabies in wildlife. Sci. Am. 266, 86–92.

Wunner, W.H., Larson, J.K., Dietzschold, B., et al., 1988. The molecular biology of rabies viruses. Rev. Infect. Dis. 10 (Suppl. 4), S771–S784.

Filoviruses

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Ebola (Ebola virus disease)*. www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/. Accessed August 10, 2018.

Groseth, A., Feldmann, H., Strong, J.E., 2007. The ecology of Ebola virus. Trends. Microbiol. 15, 408–416.

King, J.W., 2018. *Ebola*. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/216288-overview. Accessed August 10, 2018.

Klenk, H.D., 1999. Marburg and Ebola Viruses. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology (vol. 235), p. 225.

Mohamadzadeh, M., Chen, L., Schmaljon, A.L., 2007. How Ebola and Marburg viruses battle the immune system. Nat. Rev. Immunol. 7, 556–567.

Preston, R., 1994. The Hot Zone. Random House, New York.

Sodhi, A., 1996. Ebola virus disease. Postgrad. Med. 99, 75–76.

Bornaviruses

Jordan, I., 2001. Lipkin WI: borna disease virus. Rev. Med. Virol. 11, 37–57.

Richt, J.A., et al., 1997. Borna disease virus infection in animals and humans. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 3, 129–135. wwwnc.cdc.gov/eid/article/3/3/pdfs/97-0311.pdf. Accessed August 10, 2018.

Websites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Ebola hemorrhagic fever. www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/index.html. Accessed August 10, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Rabies. www.cdc.gov/rabies/. www.cdc.gov/features/dsRabies/index.html. Accessed August 10, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Rabies Vaccines. https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/vpd/rabies/hcp/index.html. Accessed August 10, 2018.

Gompf, S.G., Pham, T.M., Somboonwit, C., et al., 2017. Rabies. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/220967-overview. Accessed August 10, 2018.

Kapitanyan, R., Pryor II, P.W., Bertolini, J., et al., 2017. Emergency treatment of rabies. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/785543-overview. Accessed August 10, 2018.

King, J.W., Markanday, A., 2018. Ebola virus. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/216288-overview. Accessed August 10, 2018.

WHO, Rabies. www.who.int/topics/rabies/en/. Accessed August 10, 2018.

Case Study and Questions

An 11-year-old boy was brought to a hospital in California after falling; his bruises were treated, and he was released. The next day, he refused to drink water with his medicine, and he became more anxious. That night he began to act up and hallucinate. He also was salivating and had difficulty breathing. Two days later, he had a fever of 40.8° C (105.4° F) and experienced two episodes of cardiac arrest. Although rabies was suspected, no remarkable data were obtained from a computed tomographic image of the brain or cerebrospinal fluid analysis. A skin biopsy from the nape of the neck was negative for viral antigen on day 3 but positive for rabies on day 7. The patient's condition continued to deteriorate, and he died 11 days later. When the parents were questioned, it was learned that 6 months earlier the boy had been bitten on the finger by a dog while on a trip to India.

1. What clinical features of this case suggested rabies?

2. Why does rabies have such a long incubation period?

3. What treatment should have been given immediately after the dog bite? What treatment should have been given as soon as the diagnosis was suspected?

4. How do the clinical aspects of rabies differ from those of other neurologic viral diseases?

51 Reoviruses

In January, a 6-month-old boy was seen in the emergency department after 2 days of persistent watery diarrhea and vomiting accompanied by a low-grade fever and mild cough. The infant appeared dehydrated and required hospitalization. The patient attended a day-care center.

1. In addition to rotavirus, what other viral agents must be considered in the differential diagnosis of this infant's disease? What agents would need consideration if the patient were a teenager or an adult?
2. How would the diagnosis of rotavirus have been confirmed?
3. How was the virus transmitted? How long was the patient contagious?
4. Who was at risk for serious disease?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

REOVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Fecal-oral, infantile diarrhea, double-double (capsid and double-stranded segmented RNA genome), oral vaccine

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Medium size, double capsid, double-stranded segmented RNA genome
- Capsid resistant to inactivation
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Each segment encodes one or two proteins
- Mixed infection results in genetic mixing of segments: reassortment
- Rotavirus induces cholera-type diarrhea
- One of the most serious causes of diarrhea in young children
- Colorado tick fever, zoonosis, dengue-like disease with rash

Epidemiology

- Rotavirus
- Worldwide and ubiquitous, occurs year round
- Fecal-oral spread, very contagious, infants at risk for serious disease

Diagnosis

- ELISA for virus in stool

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment: supportive rehydration
- Prevention: oral live vaccines administered at 2, 4, and 6 months of age
- Control: handwashing and good hygiene

The **Reoviridae** consist of the orthoreoviruses, rotaviruses, orbiviruses, and coltiviruses (Table 51.1). The name reovirus was proposed in 1959 by Albert Sabin for a group of respiratory and enteric viruses that were not associated with any known disease **(*r*espiratory, *e*nteric, *o*rphan).** The Reoviridae are nonenveloped viruses with **double-layered protein capsids** containing **10 to 12 segments of the double-stranded ribonucleic acid (dsRNA) genomes.** These viruses are stable in detergents, over wide pH and temperature ranges, and in airborne aerosols. The orbiviruses and coltiviruses are spread by arthropods and are arboviruses.

The **orthoreoviruses,** also referred to as **mammalian reoviruses** or simply reoviruses, were first isolated in the 1950s from the stools of children. They are the prototype of this virus family, and the molecular basis of their pathogenesis has been studied extensively. In general, these viruses cause asymptomatic infections in humans.

Rotaviruses cause **human infantile gastroenteritis,** which is a very common disease. Before the use of the rotavirus vaccines, rotaviruses accounted for approximately 50% of all cases of diarrhea in children requiring hospitalization because of dehydration and in underdeveloped countries, accounted for at least 1 million deaths each year from uncontrolled viral diarrhea in undernourished children. Fortunately, newer vaccines are safer and have lessened the incidence of this disease worldwide.

Structure

Rotaviruses and reoviruses share many structural, replicative, and pathogenic features. Reoviruses and rotaviruses have an icosahedral morphology with a double or triple protein-layered capsid (60 to 80 nm in diameter) (Fig. 51.1; Box 51.1) and a double-stranded segmented genome. The name **rotavirus** is derived from the Latin word **rota,** meaning **"wheel,"** which refers to the triple-layered virion appearance in negative-stained electron micrographs (Fig. 51.2). Proteolytic cleavage of the outer capsid (as occurs in the gastrointestinal tract) activates the virus for infection and produces an **intermediate/infectious subviral particle (ISVP).**

The outer capsid is composed of structural proteins (Figs. 51.3 and 51.4) that surround a nucleocapsid core that includes enzymes for RNA synthesis and 10 (reovirus) or 11 (rotavirus) different dsRNA genomic segments. For rotavirus, the inner capsid consisting of VP2 is surrounded by the intermediate capsid consisting mainly of the major capsid protein (VP6) and an outer layer that contains the viral attachment protein (VP4) and glycoprotein (VP7). Of interest, rotaviruses resemble enveloped viruses in that they (1) have glycoproteins (VP7, NSP4) that are on the outside of the virion, (2) acquire but then lose an envelope during

assembly, and (3) appear to have a fusion protein activity that promotes direct penetration of the target cell membrane.

The genomic segments of rotaviruses and reoviruses encode structural and nonstructural proteins. As for the influenza virus, reassortment of gene segments can occur and thus create hybrid viruses. The genomic segments of rotavirus, the proteins they encode, and their functions are summarized in Table 51.2, and those of the reovirus are summarized in Table 51.3. Core proteins include enzymatic activities required for the transcription of messenger RNA (mRNA). They include a 5′-methyl guanosine mRNA capping enzyme and an RNA polymerase. The σ1 protein (reovirus) and VP4 (rotavirus) are located at the vertices of the capsid and extend from the surface like spike proteins. They have several functions, including viral attachment and hemagglutination, and they elicit neutralizing antibodies. VP4 is activated by protease cleavage into VP5 and VP8 proteins, exposing a structure similar to that of the fusion proteins of paramyxoviruses. Its cleavage facilitates productive entry of the virus into cells.

TABLE 51.1 Reoviridae Responsible for Human Disease

Virus	Disease
Orthoreovirus[a]	Mild upper respiratory tract illness, gastrointestinal tract illness, biliary atresia
Orbivirus/Coltivirus	Febrile illness with headache and myalgia (zoonosis)
Rotavirus	Gastrointestinal tract illness, respiratory tract illness (?)

[a]Reovirus is the common name for the family Reoviridae and for the specific genus *Orthoreovirus*.

Replication

Replication of reoviruses and rotaviruses starts with ingestion of the virus (Fig. 51.5). The virion outer capsid protects the inner nucleocapsid and core from the environment, especially the acidic environment of the gastrointestinal tract. The complete virion is then partially digested in the gastrointestinal tract and activated by protease cleavage and loss of the external capsid proteins (σ3/VP7) and cleavage of the σ1/VP4 protein to produce the ISVP. The σ1/VP4 protein at the vertices of the ISVP binds to sialic acid–containing glycoproteins on epithelial and other cells. Additional receptors include the β-adrenergic receptor for reovirus and integrin molecules for rotavirus. The cleaved VP4 of rotavirus also promotes the direct penetration of the virion through the plasma membrane into the cell. Whole virions of reovirus and rotavirus can also be taken up by receptor-mediated endocytosis.

The ISVP releases the core into the cytoplasm, and the enzymes in the core initiate mRNA production. The **dsRNA always remains in the core.** Transcription of the genome occurs in two phases, early and late. In a manner similar to a negative-sense RNA virus, each of the negative-sense (−) RNA strands is used as a template by virion core enzymes, which synthesize individual mRNAs. Virus-encoded enzymes within the core add a 5′-methyl guanosine cap and a 3′-polyadenylate tail. The 5′-methyl guanosine cap was first discovered for reovirus mRNA and then shown to occur for cellular mRNA. The mRNA then leaves the core and is translated. Later, virion proteins and positive-sense (+) RNA segments associate together into corelike structures within large cytoplasmic inclusions called viroplasms. The (+) RNA segments are copied to produce (−) RNAs in the new cores,

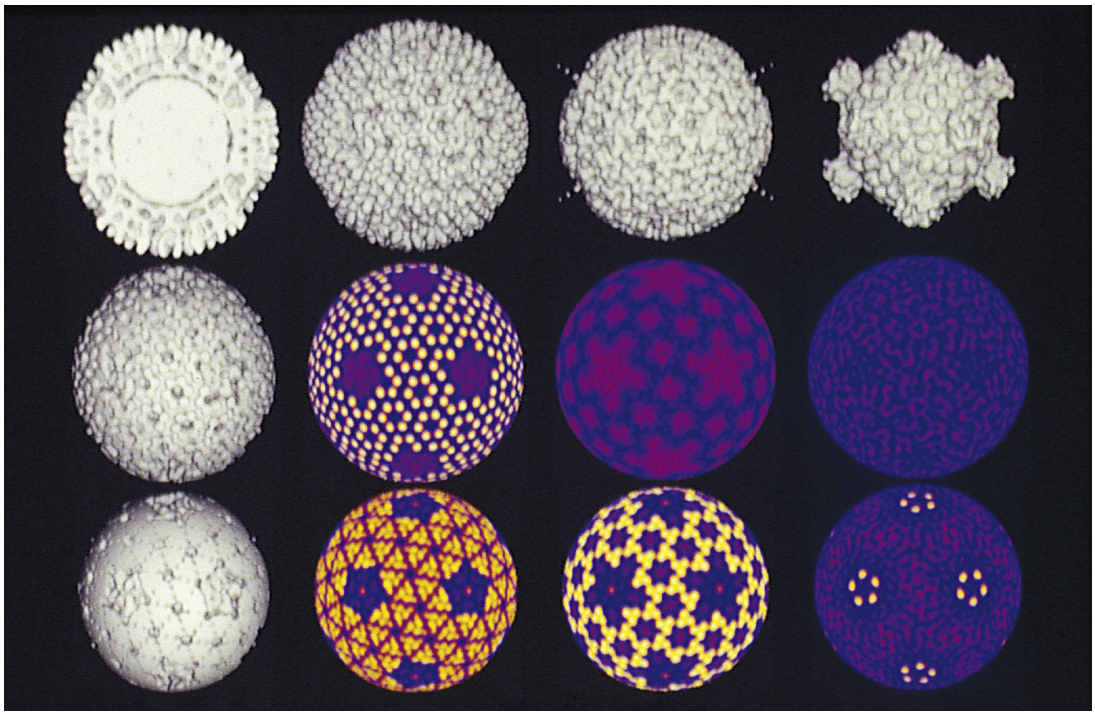


Fig. 51.1 Computer reconstruction of cryoelectron micrographs of human reovirus type 1 (Lang). *Top, left to right:* Cross section of virion, intermediate/infectious subviral particle (ISVP), and core particle. The ISVP and core particles are generated by proteolysis of the virion and play important roles in the replication cycle. *Center and bottom:* Computer-generated images of the virions at different radii after the outer layers of features have been shaved off. The colors help one visualize the symmetry and molecular interactions within the capsid. (Courtesy Tim Baker, Purdue University, West Lafayette, Indiana.)

BOX 51.1 Unique Features of Reoviridae

Double-layered or triple-layered capsid virion (60 to 80 nm) has icosahedral symmetry containing 10 to 12 (depending on the virus) unique **double-stranded genomic segments** *(double:double virus).*

Virion is **resistant** to environmental and gastrointestinal conditions (e.g., detergents, acidic pH, drying).

Rotavirus and orthoreovirus virions are activated by mild proteolysis to intermediate/infectious subviral particles, increasing their infectivity.

Inner capsid contains a complete transcription system, including RNA-dependent RNA polymerase and enzymes for 5′ capping and polyadenylate addition.

Viral replication occurs in the cytoplasm. Double-stranded RNA remains in the inner core.

Inner capsid aggregates around (+) RNA and transcribes (–) RNA in the cytoplasm.

Rotavirus-filled inner capsids bud into the endoplasmic reticulum, acquiring its outer capsid and a membrane, which is then lost.

Virus is released by cell lysis.

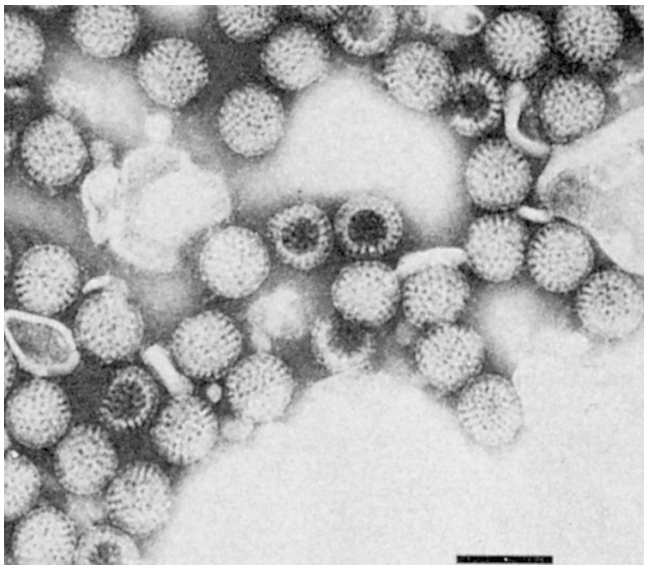


Fig. 51.2 Electron micrograph of rotavirus. Bar = 100 nm. (From Fields, B.N., Knipe, D.M., Chanock, R.M., et al., 1985. Virology. Raven, New York.)

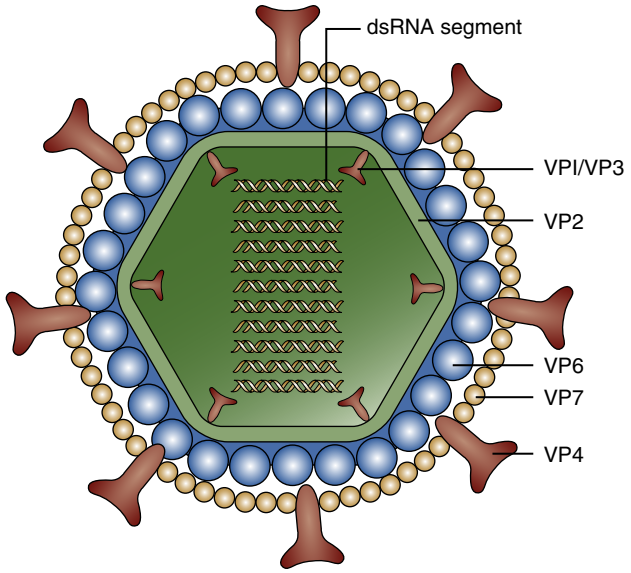


Fig. 51.3 Schematic of rotavirus. See Table 51.2 for descriptions of the viral proteins. *dsRNA,* Double-stranded ribonucleic acid.

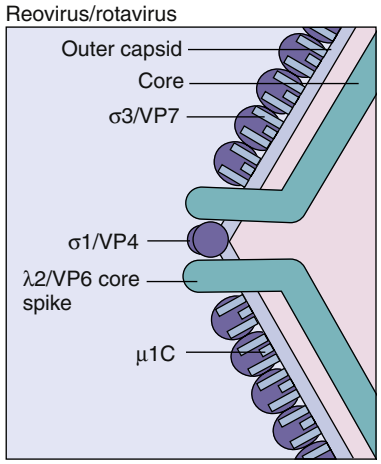


Fig. 51.4 Structure of rotavirus core and outer proteins. See Table 51.2 for descriptions of the viral proteins. (Modified from Sharpe, A.H., Fields, B.N., 1985. Pathogenesis of viral infections. Basic concepts derived from the reovirus model. N. Engl. J. Med. 312, 486–497.)

replicating the double-stranded genome. The new cores either generate more (+) RNA or are assembled into virions.

The assembly processes for reovirus and rotavirus differ. In the assembly of reovirus, the outer capsid proteins associate with the core, and the virion leaves the cell on cell lysis. Assembly of rotavirus resembles that of an enveloped virus in that the rotavirus cores associate with the NSP4 viral protein on the outside of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER); on budding into the ER, they acquire its VP7 outer capsid glycoprotein. The membrane is lost in the ER, and the virus leaves the cell during cell lysis. Cellular macromolecular synthesis is inhibited within 8 hours of infection.

Rotaviruses

Rotaviruses are common agents of infantile diarrhea worldwide. The rotaviruses are a large group of gastroenteritis-causing viruses infecting many different mammals and birds.

Rotavirus virions are stable to environmental abuse, including treatment with detergents, pH extremes of 3.5 to 10, and even repeated freezing and thawing. Within the intestine, proteolytic enzymes such as trypsin enhance infectivity.

Human and animal rotaviruses are divided into serotypes, groups, and subgroups. Serotypes are distinguished primarily by the VP7 (glycoprotein, G) and VP4 (protease-sensitive protein, P) outer capsid proteins. Groups are determined primarily on the basis of the antigenicity of VP6 and the electrophoretic mobility of the genomic segments. Seven groups (A to G) of human and animal rotaviruses have been identified on the basis of the VP6 inner capsid protein. Human disease is caused by group A rotavirus and occasionally group B and C rotaviruses.

TABLE 51.2 Functions of Rotavirus Gene Products

Gene Segment	Protein (Location)	Function
1	VP1 (inner capsid)	Polymerase
2	VP2 (inner capsid)	Transcriptase component
3	VP3 (inner capsid)	mRNA capping
4	VP4 (outer capsid spike protein at vertices of virion)	Activation by protease produces VP5 and VP8 in ISVP, hemagglutinin, viral attachment protein[a]
5	NSP1 (NS53)	RNA binding
6	VP6 (inner capsid)	Major structural protein of inner capsid, binding to NSP4 at ER to promote assembly of outer capsid
7	NSP3 (NS34)	RNA binding
8	NSP2 (NS35)	RNA binding, important for genome replication and packaging
9	VP7 (outer capsid)	Type-specific antigen, major outer capsid component that is glycosylated in ER and facilitates attachment and entry[a]
10	NSP4 (NS28)	Glycosylated protein in ER that promotes inner capsid binding to ER, transient envelopment, and addition of outer capsid; acts as enterotoxin to mobilize calcium and cause diarrhea
11	NSP5 (NS26)	RNA binding
11	NSP6	Binds to NSP5

[a]Target of neutralizing antibody.
ER, Endoplasmic reticulum; *ISVP,* intermediate/infectious subviral particle; *mRNA,* messenger ribonucleic acid.

TABLE 51.3 Functions of Reovirus Gene Products

Genomic Segments (Molecular Weight, Da)	Protein	Function (If Known)
LARGE SEGMENTS (2.8 × 106)		
1	λ3 (inner capsid)	Polymerase
2	λ2 (outer capsid)	Capping enzyme
3	λ1 (inner capsid)	Transcriptase component
MEDIUM SEGMENTS (1.4 × 106)		
1	μ2 (inner capsid)	binds RNA and microtubules
2	μ1C (outer capsid)	Cleaved from μ1, complexes with σ3, promotes entry
3	μNS	Promotes viral assembly[a]
SMALL SEGMENTS (0.7 × 106)		
1	σ1 (outer capsid)	Viral attachment protein, hemagglutinin, determines tissue tropism[b]
2	σ2 (inner capsid)	Facilitates viral RNA synthesis
3	σNS	Facilitates viral RNA synthesis
4	σ3 (outer capsid)	Major component of outer capsid with μ1C

[a]Proteins are not found in the virion.
[b]Target of neutralizing antibodies.
Modified from Fields, B.N., Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 1996. Virology, third ed. Lippincott-Raven, New York.

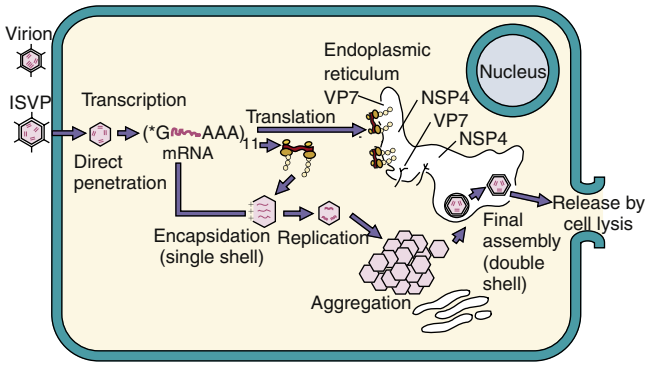


Fig. 51.5 Replication of rotavirus. Rotavirus virions can be activated by protease (e.g., in the gastrointestinal tract) to produce an intermediate/infectious subviral particle *(ISVP)*. The virion or ISVP binds, penetrates the cell, and loses its outer capsid. The inner capsid contains the enzymes for messenger ribonucleic acid *(mRNA)* transcription using the (±) strand as a template. Some mRNA segments are transcribed early, and others are transcribed later. Enzymes in the virion cores attach 5′-methyl capped guanosine ***(*G)*** and 3′-polyadenylate sequence (poly A ***[AAA]***) to mRNA. (+) RNA is mRNA and is also enclosed into inner capsids as a template to replicate the ± segmented genome. VP7 and NSP4 are synthesized as glycoproteins and expressed in the endoplasmic reticulum. The capsids aggregate and "dock" onto the NSP4 protein in the endoplasmic reticulum, acquiring VP7 and its outer capsid and an envelope. The virus loses the envelope and leaves the cell on cell lysis.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The rotavirus can survive the acidic environment in a buffered stomach or in a stomach after a meal and is converted to the ISVP by proteases (Box 51.2). Clumps of the virus have enhanced infectivity. Viral replication occurs after adsorption of the ISVP to columnar epithelial cells covering the villi of the small intestine. Approximately 8 hours after infection, cytoplasmic inclusions that contain newly synthesized proteins and RNA are seen. As many as 10^{10} viral particles per gram of stool may be released during disease. Studies of the small intestine, either of experimentally infected animals or in biopsy specimens from infants, show shortening and blunting of

BOX 51.2 Disease Mechanisms of Rotavirus

Virus is spread primarily by the **fecal-oral route.**
Cytolytic and toxin-like action on the intestinal epithelium causes loss of electrolytes and prevents reabsorption of water.
Disease can be significant in infants <24 months, but can be asymptomatic in adults.
Large amounts of virus are released during the diarrheal phase.

the microvilli and mononuclear cell infiltration into the lamina propria.

Similar to cholera, rotavirus infection prevents absorption of water, causing a net secretion of water and loss of ions, which together result in a watery diarrhea. The **NSP4 protein** of rotavirus acts in a **toxin-like manner** to promote calcium ion influx into enterocytes, which disrupts the cytoskeleton and the tight junctions to cause leakage and also the release of cytokines and neuronal activators, which alter water absorption. The loss of fluids and electrolytes can lead to severe dehydration and even death if therapy does not include electrolyte replacement. Of interest, the diarrhea also promotes transmission of the virus.

Immunity to infection depends on antibody, primarily immunoglobulin (Ig)A, in the lumen of the gut. Antibodies to the VP7 and VP4 neutralize the virus. Actively or passively acquired antibody (including antibody in colostrum and mother's milk) can lessen the severity of disease but does not consistently prevent reinfection. In the absence of antibody, the inoculation of even small amounts of virus causes infection and diarrhea. Infection in infants and small children is generally symptomatic, whereas in adults it is usually asymptomatic.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Rotaviruses are ubiquitous worldwide, with 95% of children infected by 3 to 5 years of age (Box 51.3). Rotaviruses are passed from person to person by the **fecal-oral route.** Maximal shedding of the virus occurs 2 to 5 days after the start of diarrhea but can occur without symptoms. The virus survives well on fomites (e.g., furniture and toys) and on hands because it can withstand drying. Outbreaks occur in preschools and day-care centers and among hospitalized infants.

Rotaviruses are **one of the most common causes of serious diarrhea in young children** worldwide. Before the vaccines, 4 of 5 children would get rotavirus diarrhea and 1 of 7 of them required medical help, with 20 to 50 deaths per year in the United States and as many as 500,000 deaths worldwide. In North America, outbreaks occur during the autumn, winter, and spring. More severe disease occurs in severely malnourished children. In developing countries, rotavirus diarrhea is a very contagious and severe life-threatening disease for infants and occurs year round. Several outbreaks of group B rotavirus have occurred in China because of contaminated water supplies that affected millions of people.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Rotavirus is a major cause of gastroenteritis (Clinical Case 51.1; Box 51.4). The incubation period for rotavirus diarrheal illness is estimated to be 48 hours. The major clinical findings in hospitalized patients are **vomiting, diarrhea, fever,** and **dehydration.** Neither fecal leukocytes nor blood occurs in stool for this form of diarrhea. Rotavirus gastroenteritis is a self-limited disease, and recovery is generally complete and without sequelae. However, the

BOX 51.3 Epidemiology of Rotavirus

Disease/Viral Factors

Capsid virus is resistant to environmental and gastrointestinal conditions.
Large amounts of virus are released in fecal matter.
Asymptomatic infection can result in release of virus.

Transmission

Virus is transmitted in fecal matter, especially in day-care settings.
Respiratory transmission may be possible.

Who Is at Risk?

Rotavirus Group A

Infants <24 months of age: at risk for infantile gastroenteritis with potential dehydration.
Older children and adults: at risk for mild diarrhea.
Undernourished people in underdeveloped countries: at risk for diarrhea, dehydration, and death.

Rotavirus Group B (Adult Diarrhea Rotavirus)

Infants, older children, and adults in China: at risk for severe gastroenteritis.

Geography/Season

Virus is found worldwide.
Disease is more common in autumn, winter, and spring.

Modes of Control

Handwashing and isolation of known cases are modes of control.
Live vaccines use attenuated human or bovine reassorted rotavirus.

Clinical Case 51.1 Rotavirus Infection of Adults

Mikami and associates (*J Med Virol* 73:460–464, 2004) described an outbreak of acute gastroenteritis that occurred over a 5-day period in 45 of 107 children (aged 11 to 12 years) after a 3-day school trip. The source person for the outbreak was ill at the start of the trip. A case of rotavirus acute gastroenteritis is defined as three or more episodes of diarrhea and/or two or more episodes of vomiting per day. Other symptoms included fever, nausea, fatigue, abdominal pain, and headache. The rotavirus responsible for the outbreak was identified from stool of several individuals as serotype G2 group A rotavirus compared with the genomic ribonucleic acid migration pattern by electrophoresis, by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction, and by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay of virus obtained from stool samples. Although rotavirus is the most common cause of infantile diarrhea, this virus, especially the G2 strain, also causes gastroenteritis in adults. This article illustrated the different laboratory methods available for detection of a virus that is difficult to grow in tissue culture.

BOX 51.4 Clinical Summary

Rotavirus: A 1-year-old infant has watery diarrhea, vomiting, and fever for 4 days. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay analysis of stool confirms rotavirus. The baby is very dehydrated.

infection may prove fatal in infants who are malnourished and dehydrated before the infection.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical findings in patients with rotavirus infection resemble those of other viral diarrheas (e.g., Norwalk virus). Most patients have large quantities of virus in stool, making direct detection of viral antigen the method of choice for diagnosis. Enzyme-linked immunoassay and latex agglutination are quick, easy, and relatively inexpensive ways to detect rotavirus in stool. Viral particles in specimens can also be readily detected on electron microscopy or by immunoelectron microscopy. Reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) is useful to detect and distinguish the genotypes of rotavirus.

Cell culture of rotavirus requires pretreatment of the virus with trypsin to generate the ISVP for infection to occur but is not used for diagnostic purposes.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Rotaviruses are acquired very early in life. Their ubiquitous nature makes it difficult to limit the spread of the virus and infection. Hospitalized patients with disease must be isolated to limit spread of the infection to other susceptible patients.

No specific antiviral therapy is available for a rotavirus infection. The morbidity and mortality associated with rotavirus diarrhea result from dehydration and electrolyte imbalance. Similar to the therapy for cholera, rehydration therapy is necessary to replace fluids so that blood volume and electrolyte and acid–base imbalances are corrected.

Development of a safe rotavirus vaccine was a high priority for protecting children, especially those in underdeveloped countries, from potentially fatal disease. Animal rotaviruses, such as the rhesus monkey rotavirus and the Nebraska calf diarrhea virus, share antigenic determinants with human rotaviruses and do not cause disease in humans. A human–rhesus monkey reassortant vaccine (RotaShield) was recalled in 1999 because of the incidence of intussusception (misfolding of the bowel possibly resulting from inflammatory reactions) in a small number of infants, more recently shown to be similar to levels in the unvaccinated. Two new safer rotavirus hybrid and live vaccines have since been developed and are approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration in the United States and elsewhere. RotaTeq consists of five reassortant bovine rotaviruses containing the VP4 or VP7 of five different human rotaviruses. The Rotarix vaccine is a single-strain attenuated human rotavirus. The **vaccines are administered orally as young as possible,** at 2, 4, and 6 months of age. Oral administration of these vaccines promotes secretory IgA production and good memory responses.

Orthoreoviruses (Mammalian Reoviruses)

The orthoreoviruses are ubiquitous. The virions are very stable and have been detected in sewage and river water. The mammalian reoviruses occur in three serotypes referred to as **reovirus types 1, 2, and 3;** these serotypes are based on neutralization and hemagglutination inhibition tests.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Orthoreoviruses do not cause significant disease in humans. However, studies of reovirus disease in mice have advanced our understanding of the pathogenesis of viral infections in humans. Depending on the reovirus strain, the virus can be neurotropic or viscerotropic in mice. The functions and virulence properties of the reovirus proteins were identified through comparison of the activities of interstrain hybrid (reassortant) viruses that differ in only one genomic segment (encoding one protein). With this approach, the new activity is attributable to the genomic segment from the other virus strain.

Mice, and presumably humans, mount protective humoral and cellular immune responses to outer capsid proteins. Although orthoreoviruses are normally lytic, they can also establish persistent infection in cell culture.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The virus is primarily spread by the fecal-oral route and potentially in aerosols. As previously mentioned, the orthoreoviruses have been found worldwide. Most people are infected during childhood.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Orthoreoviruses infect people of all ages; linking specific diseases to these agents has been difficult. Most infections are asymptomatic or so mild they go undetected. These viruses have been linked to common coldlike, mild upper respiratory tract illness (low-grade fever, rhinorrhea, and pharyngitis), gastrointestinal tract disease, and biliary atresia.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Human orthoreovirus infection can be detected through assay of the viral antigen or genomic RNA or virus isolation from throat, nasopharyngeal, and stool specimens, or serologic assays for virus-specific antibody.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Orthoreovirus disease is mild and self-limited. For this reason, treatment has not been necessary, and prevention and control measures have not been developed.

Coltiviruses and Orbiviruses

The coltiviruses and orbiviruses infect vertebrates and invertebrates. The coltiviruses cause Colorado tick fever and related human disease. The orbiviruses mainly cause disease in animals, including blue tongue disease of sheep, African horse sickness, and epizootic hemorrhagic disease of deer.

Colorado tick fever, an acute disease characterized by fever, headache, and severe myalgia, was originally described in the 19th century and is now believed to be one of the most common tick-borne viral diseases in the United States. Although hundreds of infections occur annually, the exact number is not known, because Colorado tick fever is not a reportable disease.

The structure and physiology of the coltiviruses and orbiviruses are similar to those of the other Reoviridae, with the following major exceptions:

1. The outer capsid of the orbiviruses has no discernible capsomeric structure, even though the inner capsid is icosahedral.
2. The virus causes viremia, infects erythrocyte precursors, and remains in the mature red blood cells, protected from the immune response.
3. The *Orbivirus* life cycle includes vertebrates and invertebrates (insects).
4. Colorado tick fever viruses have 12 ds-RNA genomic segments, and orbiviruses have 10.

PATHOGENESIS

Colorado tick fever virus infects erythroid precursor cells without severely damaging them. The virus remains within the cells even after they mature into red blood cells; this factor protects the virus from clearance. The resulting viremia can persist for weeks or months even after cessation of symptoms. Both of these factors promote transmission of the virus to the tick vector.

Serious hemorrhagic disease can result from infection of vascular endothelial and vascular smooth muscle cells and pericytes, weakening capillary structure. The weakness leads to leakage, hemorrhage, and potentially hypotension and shock. Neuronal infection can lead to meningitis and encephalitis.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Colorado tick fever occurs in western and northwestern areas of the United States and western Canada at elevations of 4000 to 10,000 feet, which is the habitat of the wood tick *Dermacentor andersoni* (Fig. 51.6). Ticks acquire the virus by feeding on a viremic host and subsequently transmit the virus in saliva when feeding on a new host. Natural hosts of this virus include many mammals, including squirrels, chipmunks, rabbits, and deer. Human disease is observed during the spring, summer, and autumn, seasons when humans are more likely to invade the habitat of the tick.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Colorado tick fever virus generally causes mild or subclinical infection. The symptoms of the acute disease resemble those of dengue fever. After a 3- to 6-day incubation period,

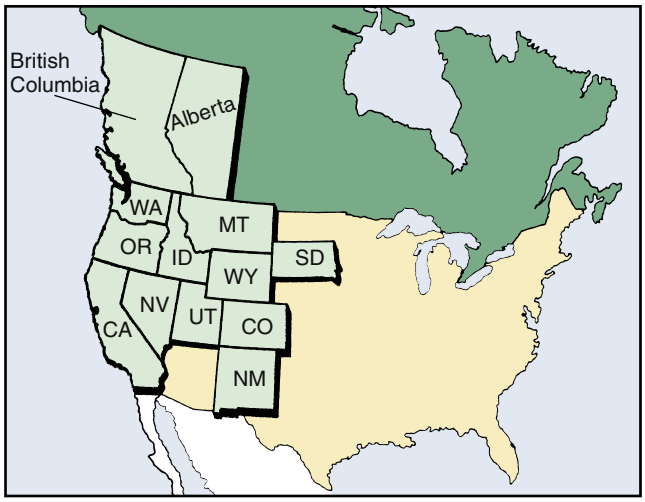


Fig. 51.6 Geographic distribution of Colorado tick fever.

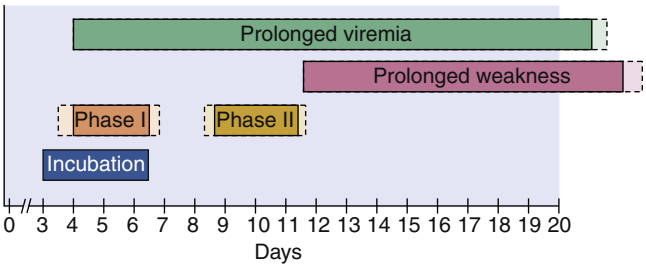


Fig. 51.7 Time course of Colorado tick fever.

symptomatic infections start with the sudden onset of fever, chills, headache, photophobia, myalgia, arthralgia, and lethargy (Fig. 51.7). Characteristics of the infection include a biphasic fever, conjunctivitis, and possibly lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, and a maculopapular or petechial rash. A leukopenia involving both neutrophils and lymphocytes is an important hallmark of the disease. Children occasionally have a more severe hemorrhagic disease. Colorado tick fever must be differentiated from Rocky Mountain spotted fever, which is a tick-borne rickettsial infection characterized by a rash, because the latter disease requires antibiotic treatment.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

A diagnosis of Colorado tick fever can be established through direct detection of viral antigens, genome, virus isolation, or serologic tests. Viral antigen can be detected on the surfaces of erythrocytes in a blood smear through the use of immunofluorescence, and viral genomes can be detected with RT-PCR. Laboratory tests may be available through state public health departments or the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Serology can be performed for epidemiologic purposes.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

No specific treatment is available for Colorado tick fever. The disease is generally self-limited, indicating that supportive care is sufficient. The viremia is long lasting, implying that

infected patients should not donate blood soon after recovery. Prevention consists of (1) avoiding tick-infested areas, (2) using protective clothing and tick repellents, and (3) removing ticks before they bite. Unlike tick-borne rickettsial disease, in which prolonged feeding is required for the bacteria to be transmitted, the coltivirus from the tick's saliva can enter the bloodstream rapidly and is sufficient to initiate disease.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Bellamy, A.R., Both, G.W., 1990. Molecular biology of rotaviruses. Adv. Virol. 38:1–44.

Blacklow, N.R., Greenberg, H.B., 1991. Viral gastroenteritis. N. Engl. J. Med. 325, 252–264.

Burke, R.M., et al, 2018. Three rotavirus outbreaks in the postvaccine era–California, 2017. MMWR 67(16).

Burrell, C., Howard, C., Murphy, F., 2016. Fenner and White's Medical Virology, fifth ed. Academic, New York.

Christensen, M.L., 1989. Human viral gastroenteritis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 2, 51–89.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Gershon, A.A., Hotez, P.J., Katz, S.L., 2004. Krugman's Infectious Diseases of Children, eleventh ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Greenberg, H.B., Estes, M.K., 2009. Rotaviruses: from pathogenesis to vaccination. Gastroenterology 136, 1939–1951.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Nibert, M.L., Furlong, D.B., Fields, B.N., 1991. Mechanisms of viral pathogenesis: distinct forms of reovirus and their roles during replication in cells and host. J. Clin. Invest. 88, 727–734.

Ramig, R.F., 1994. Rotaviruses. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 185. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Ramig, R.F., 2007. Systemic rotavirus infection. Expert. Rev. Anti. Infect. Ther. 5, 591–612.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Roy, P., 2006. Reoviruses: Entry, Assembly and Morphogenesis. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 309. Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, Germany.

Sharpe, A.H., Fields, B.N., 1985. Pathogenesis of viral infections: basic concepts derived from the reovirus model. N. Engl. J. Med. 312, 486–497.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed,. Academic, San Diego.

Tyler, K.L., Oldstone, M.B.A., 1998. Reoviruses. Curr Top Microbiol Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 233. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Websites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Rotavirus. www.cdc.gov/rotavirus/. Accessed August 12, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Rotavirus Vaccines. https://www.cdc.gov/rotavirus/vaccination.html. Accessed August 12, 2018.

2017 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018. Three rotavirus outbreaks in the postvaccine era—California, 2017. MMWR 67 (16).

Nguyen, D.D., Henin, S.S., King, B.R., 2018. Rotavirus. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/803885-overview. Accessed August 12, 2018.

Stevenson, A., Chandranesan, J., 2017. Reoviruses. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/227348-overview. Accessed August 8, 2018.

Case Study and Questions

A 10-month-old Pakistani infant has watery diarrhea, vomiting, and fever for 4 days. The baby becomes very dehydrated and dies.

1. How could a diagnosis of rotavirus be confirmed?
2. How does this agent cause diarrhea?
3. What is the treatment?
4. How can the disease be prevented?
5. Why was this baby at such high risk for mortality?
6. Why is it important to immunize with the rotavirus vaccines so early in life and with a live attenuated oral vaccine?

52 Togaviruses and Flaviviruses

A 5-year-old Indonesian girl died of hemorrhagic shock. The presence of dengue virus serotype 3 in her blood was confirmed by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR).

1. How was the child infected with dengue virus?
2. What are the diseases caused by dengue virus?
3. What types of immune responses are protective? Potentially harmful?
4. Where is dengue prevalent? Why?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

TOGAVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Arboviruses: mosquito, encephalitis
Rubella: German measles, congenital disease, rash, vaccine

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Small size, envelope surrounds icosahedral nucleocapsid, (+) RNA genome
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Early and late mRNA and proteins produced
- Virus spreads in blood to target tissues, including neurons and brain
- Antibody can block viremia and disease
- Prodrome of flulike symptoms caused by interferon and cytokine response
- Arboviruses: equine encephalitis viruses (WEE, EEE, VEE)
- Rubella: benign childhood rash, swollen glands. Adult complications include arthritis, encephalitis. Congenital infection: teratogenic, cataracts, deafness, microcephaly, etc.

Epidemiology

- Arboviruses: zoonosis, reservoir in birds, vectors are *Aedes* and *Culex* mosquitoes
- Rubella: aerosol spread, only infects humans, unvaccinated individuals at risk, fetus at high risk

Diagnosis

- RT-PCR, ELISA

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Arboviruses: mosquito control
- Live attenuated rubella vaccine at 1 year of age in MMR; booster at 4 to 6 years

FLAVIVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Arboviruses: mosquito, encephalitis, hemorrhagic diseases
Hepatitis C virus: see Chapter 55

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Small size, envelope surrounds icosahedral nucleocapsid, (+) RNA genome
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Neutralizing antibody can block disease
- Nonneutralizing antibody promotes dengue virus infection
- Cross-reactive antibodies produced against different flaviviruses
- Virus spreads in blood to target tissues: for encephalitis viruses neurons and brain; for hemorrhagic viruses vasculature, liver, organs
- Prodrome of flulike symptoms caused by interferon and cytokine response
- Arboviruses
- Encephalitis viruses: St. Louis, West Nile, Japanese encephalitis viruses
- Hemorrhagic disease:
  Yellow fever: jaundice, black vomit
  Dengue: hemorrhagic fever, breakbone fever, dengue shock syndrome

Epidemiology

- Endemic to habitat of mosquito
- Arboviruses: zoonosis, reservoir in birds, vectors are *Aedes* or *Culex* mosquitoes

Diagnosis

- RT-PCR, ELISA

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Arboviruses: mosquito control
- Yellow fever virus: attenuated live vaccine

EEE, Eastern equine encephalitis; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *MMR,* measles-mumps- rubella; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction; *VEE,* Venezuelan equine encephalitis; *WEE,* western equine encephalitis.

The members of the Togaviridae and Flaviviridae families are enveloped, positive-sense, single-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA) viruses (Box 52.1). The *Alphavirus* genus of togaviruses and *Flavivirus* differ in size, morphology, gene sequence, and replication but are discussed together because of similarities in the diseases they cause and in their epidemiology. Most are transmitted by arthropods and are therefore arboviruses (arthropod-borne viruses).

The Togaviridae (togaviruses) that cause human disease are in the *Alphavirus* and *Rubivirus* genera (Table 52.1). **Rubella** virus is the only member of the *Rubivirus* group; it is discussed separately because its disease manifestation **(German measles)** and its means of spread differs from those of the alphaviruses. The Flaviviridae include the flaviviruses, pestiviruses, and hepaciviruses (hepatitis C and G viruses). Hepatitis C and G are discussed in Chapter 55.

Alphaviruses and Flaviviruses

Alphaviruses and flaviviruses are classified as arboviruses because they are spread by arthropod vectors. These viruses

BOX 52.1 Unique Features of Togaviruses and Flaviviruses

Viruses have enveloped, single-stranded, positive-sense RNA.
Togavirus replication includes early (nonstructural) and late (structural) protein synthesis.
Togaviruses replicate in the cytoplasm and bud at plasma membranes.
Flaviviruses replicate in the cytoplasm and bud at intracellular membranes.

TABLE 52.1 Togaviruses and Flaviviruses

Virus Group	Human Pathogens
TOGAVIRUSES	
Alphavirus	Arboviruses
Rubivirus	Rubella virus
Arterivirus	None
FLAVIVIRUSES	Arboviruses
Hepaciviridae	Hepatitis C virus
Pestivirus	None

have a very **broad host range,** including vertebrates (e.g., mammals, birds, amphibians, reptiles) and invertebrates (e.g., mosquitoes, ticks). Diseases spread by animals or with an animal reservoir are called **zoonoses.** Examples of pathogenic alphaviruses and flaviviruses are listed in Table 52.2.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION OF ALPHAVIRUSES

The alphaviruses have an **icosahedral capsid** and a positive-sense, single-strand RNA genome that resembles messenger RNA (mRNA). They are slightly larger than picornaviruses (45 to 75 nm in diameter) and are surrounded by an **envelope** (Latin **toga,** "cloak"). The togavirus genome encodes **early** and **late proteins.**

Alphaviruses have two or three glycoproteins that associate to form a single spike. The carboxy (COOH) terminus of the glycoproteins is anchored in the capsid, forcing the envelope to wrap tightly ("shrink-wrap") and take on the shape of the capsid (Fig. 52.1). The capsid proteins of all the alphaviruses are similar in structure and are antigenically cross-reactive. The viruses can be grouped (complexes) and distinguished by different antigenic determinants on their envelope glycoproteins.

The alphaviruses attach to specific receptors expressed on many different cell types from many different species (Fig. 52.2). The host range for these viruses includes vertebrates (e.g., humans, monkeys, horses, birds, reptiles, amphibians) and invertebrates (e.g., mosquitoes, ticks). However, the individual viruses have different tissue tropisms, accounting somewhat for the different disease presentations.

The virus enters the cell by means of receptor-mediated endocytosis (see Fig. 52.2). The viral envelope then fuses with the membrane of the endosome on acidification of the vesicle to deliver the capsid and genome into the cytoplasm. Once released into the cytoplasm, the alphavirus genomes bind to ribosomes as mRNA. The alphavirus genome is translated in early and late phases. The initial two-thirds of the alphavirus RNA is translated into a polyprotein that includes proteases that subsequently cleave the polyprotein into four nonstructural early proteins (NSPs 1 through 4). These early proteins are components of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. As for all positive strand RNA viruses, the enzymes for replication of the genome assemble on a membrane scaffold in a vesicle. First, a full-length 42S negative-sense RNA is synthesized as a template for replication of the genome, and then more 42S positive-sense mRNA is produced. In addition, a 26S late mRNA, corresponding to one-third of the genome, is transcribed from the template. The 26S RNA encodes the capsid (C) and envelope (E1 through E3) proteins. Late in the replication cycle, viral mRNA can account for as much as 90% of the mRNA in the infected cell. The abundance of late mRNAs allows production of a large amount of the structural proteins required for packaging the virus.

The structural proteins are produced by protease cleavage of the late polyprotein that was produced from the 26S mRNA. The C protein is translated first and is cleaved from the polyprotein. A signal sequence is then made that associates the nascent polypeptide with the endoplasmic reticulum. Thereafter, envelope glycoproteins are translated, glycosylated, and cleaved from the remaining portion of the polyprotein to produce the E1, E2, and E3 glycoprotein spikes. The E3 is released from most alphavirus glycoprotein spikes. The glycoproteins are processed by the normal cellular machinery in the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi apparatus and are acetylated and acylated with long-chain fatty acids. Alphavirus glycoproteins are then transferred efficiently to the plasma membrane.

The C proteins associate with the genomic RNA soon after their synthesis and form an icosahedral capsid. Once this step is completed, the capsid associates with portions of the membrane expressing the viral glycoproteins. The alphavirus capsid has binding sites for the C-terminus of the glycoprotein spike, which pulls the envelope tightly around itself in a manner like shrink-wrap (see Figs. 52.1 and 52.2). Alphaviruses are released on budding from the plasma membrane of human cells. They are cytolytic for human but not insect cells.

Of interest, the western equine encephalitis virus (WEEV) was created by recombination of two alphaviruses, the eastern equine encephalitis virus (EEEV) and the Sindbis virus. The beginning of the WEEV genome is almost identical to EEEV, with similar glycoproteins and virulence genes, whereas the end of the genome resembles Sindbis.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION OF FLAVIVIRUSES

The flaviviruses also have a positive-strand RNA genome, an icosahedral capsid, and an envelope but are slightly smaller than an alphavirus (40 to 65 nm in diameter). The E viral glycoprotein folds over, pairs up with another E glycoprotein, and lies flat across the surface of the virion to form an outer protein layer (see Fig. 52.1). Most of the

TABLE 52.2 Arboviruses

Virus	Vector	Host	Distribution	Disease
ALPHAVIRUSES				
Sindbis[a]	*Aedes* and other mosquitoes	Birds	Africa, Australia, India	Subclinical
Semliki Forest[a]	*Aedes* and other mosquitoes	Birds	East and West Africa	Subclinical
Venezuelan equine encephalitis	*Aedes*, *Culex*	Rodents, horses	North, South, and Central America	Mild systemic; severe encephalitis
Eastern equine encephalitis	*Aedes*, *Culiseta*	Birds	North and South America, Caribbean	Mild systemic; encephalitis
Western equine encephalitis	*Culex*, *Culiseta*	Birds	North and South America	Mild systemic; encephalitis
Chikungunya	*Aedes*	Humans, monkeys	Africa, Asia	Fever, arthralgia, arthritis
FLAVIVIRUSES				
Dengue[a]	*Aedes*	Humans, monkeys	Worldwide, especially tropics	Mild systemic; breakbone fever, dengue hemorrhagic fever, and dengue shock syndrome
Yellow fever[a]	*Aedes*	Humans, monkeys	Africa, South America	Hepatitis, hemorrhagic fever
Zika	Aedes	Humans, monkeys, rodents	Worldwide, especially tropics	Systemic, rash, arthralgia, congenital disease
Japanese encephalitis	*Culex*	Pigs, birds	Asia	Encephalitis
West Nile encephalitis	*Culex*	Birds	Africa, Europe, Central Asia, North America	Fever, encephalitis, hepatitis
St. Louis encephalitis	*Culex*	Birds	North America	Encephalitis
Russian spring-summer encephalitis	*Ixodes* and *Dermacentor* ticks	Birds	Russia	Encephalitis
Powassan encephalitis	*Ixodes* ticks	Small mammals	North America	Encephalitis

[a]Prototypical viruses.

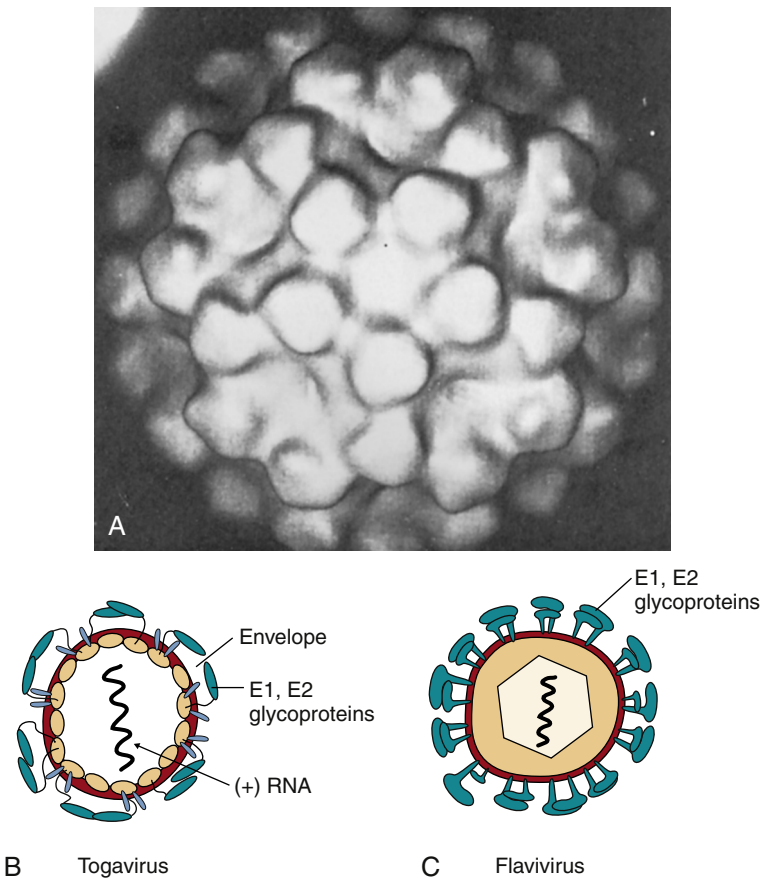


Fig. 52.1 Alphavirus morphology. (A) Morphology of the alphavirus virion obtained from cryoelectron microscopy and image processing of the micrographs to show that the envelope is held tightly and conforms to the icosahedral shape and symmetry of the capsid. (B) Cross section of alpha-togavirus. The envelope is tightly associated with the capsid. (C) Cross section of flavivirus. The envelope protein surrounds the membrane envelope, which encloses an icosahedral nucleocapsid. *RNA,* Ribonucleic acid. (A, From Fuller, S.D., 1987. The T = 4 envelope of Sindbis virus is organized by interactions with a complementary T = 3 capsid. Cell 48, 923–934.)

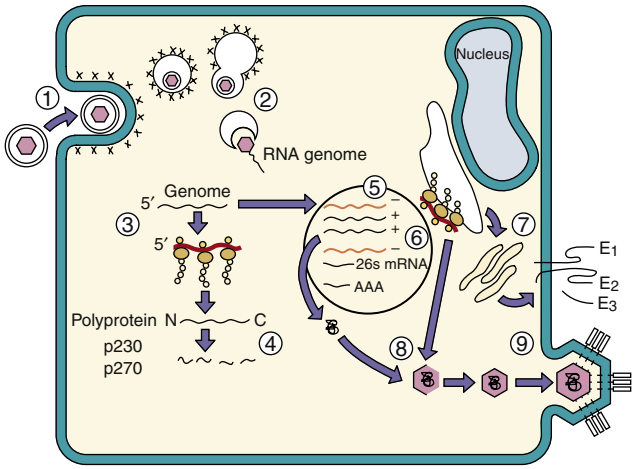


Fig. 52.2 Replication of a togavirus. *1,* Togaviruses bind to cell receptors and are internalized in a coated vesicle. *2,* On acidification of the endosome, the viral envelope fuses with the endosomal membrane to release the nucleocapsid into the cytoplasm. *3,* Ribosomes bind to the positive-sense ribonucleic acid *(RNA)* genome, and the p230 or p270 (full-length) early polyproteins are made. *4,* The polyproteins are cleaved to produce nonstructural proteins 1 to 4 (NSP1 to NSP4), which include a polymerase to transcribe the genome into a negative-sense RNA template. *5,* The replication enzymes assemble onto cellular membrane scaffolds in vesicles, and the template is used to produce a full-length 42S positive-sense mRNA genome and a late 26S mRNA for the structural proteins. *6,* The capsid (C) protein is translated first and cleaved. A signal peptide is exposed, the peptide associates with the endoplasmic reticulum *7,* in which the E glycoproteins are synthesized and glycosylated. They are transferred to the Golgi apparatus and then the plasma membrane. *8,* The capsid proteins assemble on the 42S genomic RNA and then associate with regions of cytoplasmic and plasma membranes containing the E1, E2, and E3 spike proteins. *9,* Budding from the plasma membrane releases the virus. *AAA,* Polyadenylate; *mRNA,* messenger ribonucleic acid.

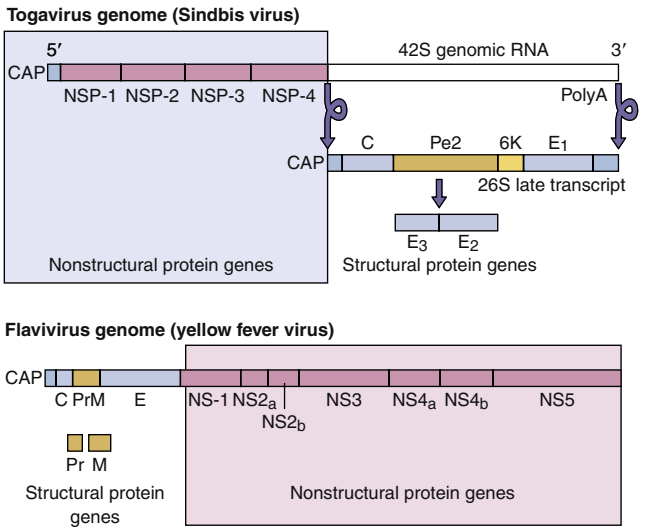


Fig. 52.3 Comparison of the togavirus (alphavirus) and flavivirus genomes. *Alphavirus:* The enzymatic activities are translated from the 5′ end of the input genome, promoting their early rapid translation. The structural proteins are translated later from a smaller messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) transcribed from the genomic template. *Flavivirus:* The genes for the structural proteins of the flaviviruses are at the 5′ end of the genome/mRNA, and only one species of polyprotein is made, which represents the entire genome. *PolyA,* Polyadenylate.

flaviviruses are antigenically related, and antibodies to one virus may recognize and neutralize another virus.

Attachment and penetration of the flaviviruses occur in the same way as described for the alphaviruses. Antibody can enhance infectivity and promote viral uptake into macrophages, monocytes, and other cells that have Fc receptors when the virus is coated with antibody. The major differences between alphaviruses and flaviviruses are in the organization of their genomes and their mechanisms of protein synthesis. The entire flavivirus genome is translated into a single polyprotein in a manner more similar to the process for picornaviruses than for alphaviruses (Fig. 52.3). As a result, there is no temporal distinction in the translation of the different viral proteins. The polyprotein produced from the yellow fever genome contains 10 proteins, including a protease and components of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, plus the capsid and envelope proteins.

Unlike in the alphavirus genome, the structural genes are at the 5′-end of the flavivirus genome. As a result, the portions of the polyprotein containing the structural (not the catalytic) proteins are synthesized first and with the greatest efficiency and the polymerase (NS5) is last. This arrangement allows production of more structural proteins, but it decreases the efficiency of nonstructural protein synthesis and the initiation of viral replication. The entire flavivirus polyprotein associates with the endoplasmic reticulum membrane and then is cleaved into its components. Unlike the togaviruses, the flaviviruses acquire their envelope by budding into the endoplasmic reticulum rather than at the cell surface. The virus is then released by exocytosis or cell lysis mechanisms. This route is less efficient, and the virus may remain cell associated.

ARBOVIRUS PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Because the arboviruses are acquired from the bite of an arthropod such as a mosquito, knowledge of the course of infection in both the vertebrate host and the invertebrate vector is important for an understanding of the diseases. Infections of invertebrates are usually persistent, with continued virus production.

The death of an infected cell results from a combination of virus-induced insults. Increased permeability of the target cell membrane and changes in ion concentrations can alter enzyme activities and favor the translation of viral mRNA over cellular mRNA. The large amount of viral RNA produced on the replication and transcription of the genome blocks cellular mRNA from binding to ribosomes. The displacement of cellular mRNA from the protein synthesis machinery prevents rebuilding and maintenance of the cell and is a major cause of the death of the virus-infected cell.

Female mosquitoes acquire the alphaviruses and flaviviruses by taking a blood meal from a **viremic vertebrate host.** *A sufficient viremia must be maintained in the vertebrate host to allow acquisition of the virus by the mosquito.* The virus then infects the epithelial cells of the midgut of the mosquito, spreads through the basal lamina of the midgut to the circulation, and infects the salivary glands. The virus

BOX 52.2 Disease Mechanisms of Togaviruses and Flaviviruses

Viruses are cytolytic, except for rubella and hepatitis C.
Viruses establish viremia and systemic infection.
Viruses are good inducers of interferon and cytokines, which can account for the flulike symptoms during prodrome.
Viruses, except rubella and hepatitis C, are arboviruses.
Flaviviruses can infect cells of the monocyte-macrophage lineage.
Nonneutralizing antibody can enhance flavivirus infection via Fc receptors on cells.

	Flulike/Systemic[a]	Encephalitis	Hepatitis	Hemorrhage	Shock
Dengue	+	—	+	+	+
Yellow fever	+	—	+	+	+
Zika[b]	+	—	—	—	—
St. Louis encephalitis	+	+	—	—	—
West Nile encephalitis	+	+	—	—	—
Chikungunya	+	—	—	—	—
Eastern equine encephalitis	+	+	—	—	—
Japanese encephalitis	+	+	—	—	—

[a]Systemic symptoms may include arthralgia
[b]Can cause microcephaly in fetus.

sets up a persistent infection and replicates to high titers in these cells. The salivary glands can then release virus into the saliva. Not all arthropod species can generate virus in their saliva. For example, the normal vector for WEEV is the *Culex tarsalis* mosquito, but certain strains of virus are limited to the midgut of this mosquito, cannot infect its salivary glands, and therefore cannot be transmitted to humans.

On biting a host, the female mosquito regurgitates virus-containing saliva into the skin and the victim's bloodstream. The primary target cells of the flaviviruses are of the monocyte-macrophage lineage, including dendritic cells. Although these cells are found throughout the body and may have different characteristics, they express Fc receptors for antibody and release cytokines on challenge. Flavivirus infection is enhanced 200- to 1000-fold by nonneutralizing antiviral antibody that promotes binding of the virus to the Fc receptors and its uptake into the cell. The virus also infects the endothelial cells of capillaries.

These viruses are associated with **mild systemic disease, encephalitis, arthrogenic disease,** or **hemorrhagic disease** (Box 52.2). The ultimate nature of alphavirus and flavivirus disease is determined by (1) the specific tissue tropisms of the individual virus type, (2) the concentration of infecting virus, and (3) individual responses to the infection.

The initial viremia produces systemic symptoms such as fever, chills, headaches, backaches, and other flulike symptoms within 7 days of infection. Most of these symptoms can be attributed to the effects of the interferon and other cytokines produced in response to the viremia and infection of host cells. Most viral infections do not progress beyond the mild systemic disease associated with viremia. A secondary viremia can produce sufficient virus to infect target organs (e.g., brain, liver, skin, vasculature), depending on the tissue tropism of the virus (Fig. 52.4). The virus gains access to the brain by infecting the endothelial cells lining the small vessels of the brain or the choroid plexus. Hemorrhagic disease and shock, as for dengue virus, results from viral and immune-induced cytolysis of infected vascular endothelial cells exacerbated by extensive cytokine production (cytokine storm), which induces vascular leakage.

IMMUNE RESPONSE

Replication of the alphaviruses and flaviviruses produces a double-stranded RNA replicative intermediate that is a good inducer of interferon (IFN)-α and IFN-β. The interferon limits replication of the virus and is also released into the bloodstream to stimulate innate and immune responses. Interferon and other cytokines are produced after infection of plasmacytoid dendritic and other cells in blood, causing rapid onset of the flulike symptoms characteristic of mild systemic disease.

Circulating immunoglobulin (Ig)M is produced within 6 days of infection, followed by production of IgG. Antibody to the viral attachment protein blocks viremic spread of the virus and subsequent infection of other tissues. Through recognition of the type-common antigens expressed on all viruses in the family, immunity to one flavivirus may provide some protection against infection with other flaviviruses. Cell-mediated immunity is also important in controlling the primary infection.

Immunity to these viruses is a double-edged sword. The interferon and cytokine responses cause the prodrome and systemic symptoms, including the arthritides. Inflammation and cytolysis resulting from complement and cell-mediated immune responses can destroy tissues and significantly contributes to the pathogenesis of encephalitis. Hypersensitivity reactions to cell-associated antibody or initiated by formation of immune complexes with virions and viral antigens can activate complement and disrupt vascular cells to cause the hemorrhagic symptoms. An antibody to another flavivirus that does not neutralize the virus can enhance the uptake of flaviviruses into macrophages and other cells that express Fc receptors. Immune responses to a related strain of dengue virus that do not prevent infection can exacerbate immunopathogenesis, leading to dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) or dengue shock syndrome (DSS).

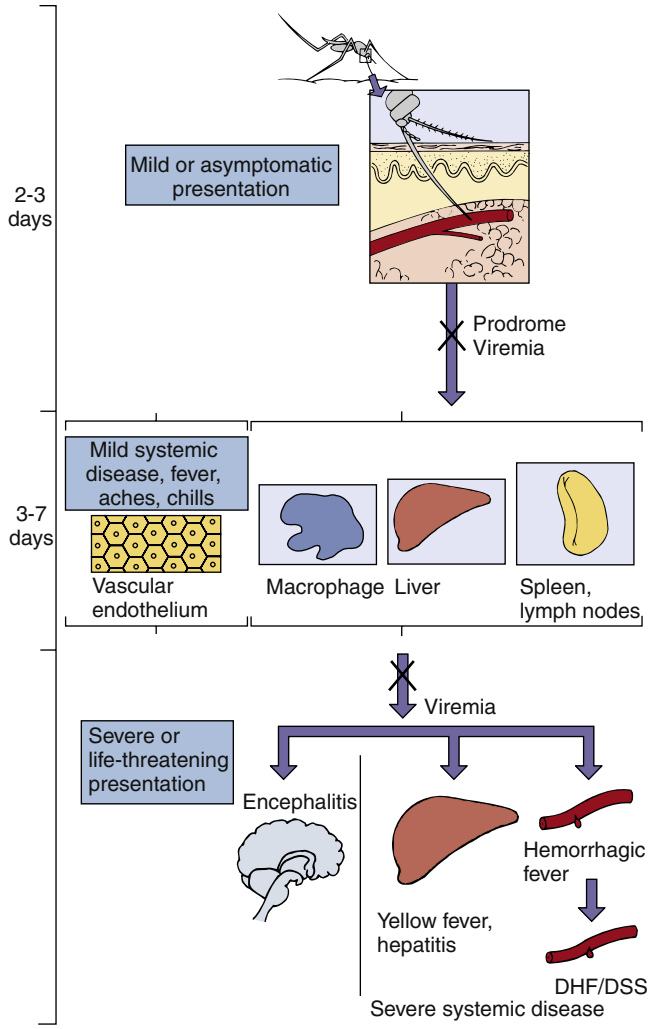


Fig. 52.4 Disease syndromes of the alphaviruses and flaviviruses. Primary viremia may be associated with mild systemic disease. Most infections are limited to this. If sufficient virus is produced during the secondary viremia to reach critical target tissues, then severe systemic disease or encephalitis may result. If antibody is present *(X),* viremia is blocked. For dengue virus, rechallenge with another strain can result in severe dengue hemorrhagic fever *(DHF),* which can cause dengue shock syndrome *(DSS)* because of the loss of fluids from the vasculature.

BOX 52.3 Epidemiology of Alphavirus and Flavivirus Infection

Disease/Viral Factors

Enveloped virus must stay wet and can be inactivated by drying, soap, and detergents.
Virus can infect mammals, birds, reptiles, and insects.
Asymptomatic or nonspecific (flulike fever or chills), encephalitis, hemorrhagic fever, or arthralgia.

Transmission

Specific arthropods characteristic of each virus (zoonosis: arbovirus).

Who Is at Risk?

People who enter ecologic niche of arthropods infected by arboviruses.

Geography/Season

Endemic regions for each arbovirus are determined by habitat of mosquito or other vector.
Aedes mosquito, which carries dengue and yellow fever, is found in urban areas and in pools of water.
Culex mosquito, which carries St. Louis encephalitis and West Nile encephalitis viruses, is found in forest and urban areas.
Disease is more common in summer.

Modes of Control

Mosquito breeding sites and mosquitoes should be eliminated.
Live attenuated yellow fever virus and inactivated Japanese encephalitis virus vaccines.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Alphaviruses and most flaviviruses are prototypical arboviruses (Box 52.3). To be an arbovirus, the virus must be able to (1) infect both vertebrates and invertebrates, (2) initiate a sufficient viremia in a vertebrate host for a sufficient time to allow acquisition of the virus by the invertebrate vector, and (3) initiate a persistent productive infection of the salivary gland of the invertebrate to provide virus for the infection of other host animals. **Humans are usually "dead-end" hosts** in that they cannot spread the virus back to the vector because they do not maintain a persistent viremia. *If the virus is not in the blood, the mosquito cannot acquire it*. A full cycle of infection occurs when the virus is transmitted by the arthropod vector and amplified in a susceptible, immunologically naive host **(reservoir),** allowing reinfection of other arthropods (Fig. 52.5). The vectors, natural hosts, and geographic distribution of representative alphaviruses and flaviviruses are listed in Table 52.2.

These viruses are usually restricted to a specific arthropod vector, its vertebrate host, and their ecologic niche. The most common vector is the mosquito, but ticks and sandflies spread some arboviruses. Even in a tropical region overrun with mosquitoes, spread of these viruses is still restricted to a specific genus of mosquitoes. Not all arthropods can act as good vectors for each virus. For example, *C. quinquefasciatus* is resistant to infection by WEEV (alphavirus) but is an excellent vector for St. Louis encephalitis virus (flavivirus).

Birds and small mammals are the usual reservoir hosts for the alphaviruses and flaviviruses, but reptiles and amphibians also can act as hosts. A large population of viremic animals can develop in these species to continue the infection cycle of the virus. For example, West Nile encephalitis virus (WNV) was first noted in 1999 as an outbreak in New York by the unusual deaths of captive birds at the Bronx Zoo. RT-PCR analysis identified the virus as WNV. The virus is transmitted by *C. pipiens* mosquitoes, and crows, blue jays, and other wild birds are the reservoir. The virus spread throughout the United States, and by 2006, the virus and human disease had been noted in almost every state. WNV establishes a sufficient viremia in humans to be a risk factor for transmission through blood transfusions. Documentation of two such cases has led to screening blood donors for WNV and rejecting donors who have fever and headache during the week of blood donation.

Arbovirus diseases occur during the summer months and rainy seasons, when the arthropods breed, and the

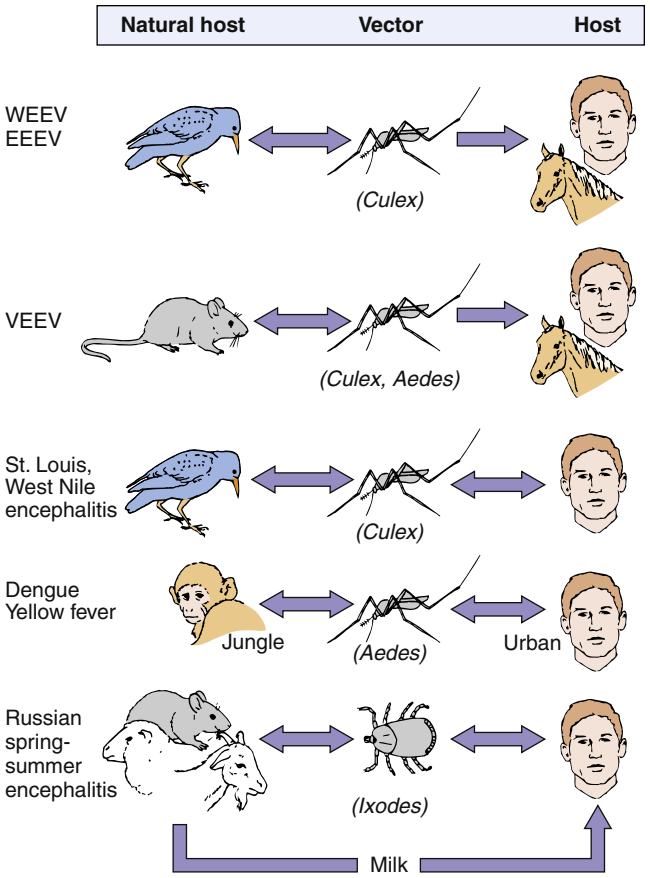


Fig. 52.5 Patterns of alphavirus and flavivirus transmission. Birds and small mammals are the hosts that maintain and amplify an arbovirus, which is spread by the insect vector during a blood meal. A *double arrow* indicates a cycle of replication in both host (including man) and vector. "Dead-end" infections with no transmission of the virus back to the vector are indicated by the single arrow. *EEEV,* Eastern equine encephalitis virus; *VEEV,* Venezuelan equine encephalitis virus; *WEEV,* western equine encephalitis virus.

arboviruses are cycled among a host reservoir (birds), an arthropod (e.g., mosquitoes), and human hosts. This cycle maintains and increases the amount of virus in the environment. In the winter, the vector is not present to maintain the virus. The virus may either (1) persist in arthropod larvae or eggs or in reptiles or amphibians that remain in the locale or (2) migrate with the birds and then return during the summer.

When humans travel into the ecologic niche of the mosquito vector, they risk being infected by the virus. Pools of standing water, drainage ditches, and trash dumps in cities can also provide breeding grounds for mosquitoes such as *Aedes aegypti,* which is the vector for yellow fever, dengue, and chikungunya viruses. An increase in the population of these mosquitoes, as has occurred in the United States, increases the risk for human infection. Health departments in many areas monitor birds and mosquitoes caught in traps for arboviruses and initiate control measures such as insecticide spraying when necessary.

Urban outbreaks of arbovirus infections occur when the reservoirs for the virus are humans or urban animals (see Fig. 52.5). Yellow fever, dengue, Zika and chikungunya viruses are transmitted by *Aedes* mosquitoes in a **sylvatic** or **jungle cycle,** in which monkeys are the natural host, and also in an **urban cycle,** in which humans are the host. *A. aegypti,* a vector for each of these viruses, is a household mosquito. It breeds in pools of water, open sewers, and other accumulations of water in cities. The incidence of chikungunya has greatly increased since 2000 and is prevalent from western Africa across southern Asia to the Philippines and in South America, the Caribbean Islands, and tropical United States. St. Louis encephalitis and WNV are maintained in an urban environment because their vectors, *Culex* mosquitoes, breed in stagnant water, including puddles and sewage, and the reservoir group includes common city birds (e.g., crows).

In addition to transmission by mosquitos, Zika virus also can be spread in blood, during unprotected sex, and in utero to the fetus. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, risk for transmission by these routes remains for at least 3 months after a potential exposure (travel to an endemic region).

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

More humans are infected with alphaviruses and flaviviruses than show significant characteristic symptoms. The incidence of arbovirus disease is sporadic. Alphavirus infections are usually asymptomatic or cause low-grade disease such as **flulike symptoms** (chills, fever, rash, aches) that correlate with systemic infection during the initial viremia. EEEV, WEEV, and Venezuelan equine encephalitis virus (VEEV) infections can progress to **encephalitis** in humans. The equine encephalitis viruses are usually more of a problem to livestock than to humans. An affected human may experience fever, headache, and decreased consciousness 3 to 10 days after infection. Unlike herpes simplex virus encephalitis, the disease will often resolve without significant sequelae, but there is the possibility of paralysis, mental disability, seizures, and death.

The name **chikungunya** (Swahili for "that which bends up") refers to the crippling arthritis associated with serious disease caused by infection with these viruses. A typical symptomatic infection presents as a week of fever and joint pain.

Most flavivirus infections are relatively benign, but serious **aseptic meningitis** and **encephalitic** or **hemorrhagic disease** can occur. The encephalitis viruses include **St. Louis, West Nile,** Japanese, Murray Valley, and Russian spring-summer viruses. Symptoms and outcomes are similar to those of the togavirus encephalitides. Approximately 20% of individuals infected with WNV will develop West Nile fever, characterized by fever, headache, tiredness, and body aches, occasionally with a rash on the trunk of the body and swollen lymph glands usually lasting only a few days (Clinical Case 52.1). Encephalitis, meningitis, or meningoencephalitis occurs in approximately 1% of WNV-infected individuals. Individuals older than 50 years and the immunocompromised are at higher risk for serious disease.

The hemorrhagic viruses are dengue and yellow fever viruses. **Dengue virus** is a major worldwide problem, with at least 100 million cases of dengue fever and 300,000 cases of **DHF** occurring per year. The virus and its vector are present in central and northern South America, and cases have occurred in Puerto Rico, Texas, and Florida. The incidence of the more serious DHF has quadrupled since

Clinical Case 52.1 **West Nile Encephalitis Virus**

Hirsch and Warner (*N Engl J Med* 348:2239–2247, 2003) described the case of a 38-year-old Massachusetts woman who presented with a progressively worsening headache with photophobia and fever. Because it was August, she was on summer vacation and 10 days earlier (−10) had traveled to St. Louis and stayed for 8 days. While there, she walked in the woods and visited the zoo. A day before the onset of these symptoms (−1), she vacationed along the Atlantic shore and noted that she had been bitten by mosquitos and removed ticks from her dog. Four days later (+4), she was admitted with fever (40° C), chills, rapid heartbeat, confusion, lightheadedness, and lethargy. Although appearing alert, oriented, and only slightly ill, her neck was rigid and Kernig sign was present. The signs of meningitis prompted testing of cerebrospinal fluid, which contained IgM to WNV and low titers to SLE virus. Patient antibody neutralized WNV but not SLE virus infection of tissue culture cells, suggesting that the activity to SLE was caused by cross-reactivity between flaviviruses. Tests for other organisms were negative. She was treated empirically for meningitis and for HSV (acyclovir). Antibacterial and anti-HSV treatment for meningitis and encephalitis was necessary until the laboratory results were available. On day 5 post onset, she became more lethargic and had difficulty answering questions. MRI indicated subtle changes in the brain. On day 6, she could not distinguish her right from her left hand, but her headache lessened, and she could respond to commands. On day 7, she had a tremor in her right arm, but her mental status was improving, and by day 8, she was alert and lucid. On day 9, a cranial MRI was normal; on day 10, she was recovered; and on day 11, she was released from the hospital. The season of the year, exposure to insects, and travel by this woman were suggestive of several different arboviral encephalitis diseases in addition to WNV. Viruses in the differential diagnosis included eastern equine encephalitis, SLE, Powassan virus (tick-borne flavivirus), HSV, and WNV. Unlike HSV encephalitis, flavivirus meningoencephalitis usually resolves with limited sequelae.

HSV, Herpes simplex virus; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *MRI,* magnetic resonance imaging; *SLE,* St. Louis encephalitis; *WNV,* West Nile virus.

1985. Dengue fever is also known as **breakbone fever;** the symptoms and signs consist of high fever, headache, rash, hemorrhagic presentations, and back and bone pain that last 6 to 7 days. Petechiae (10 or more per square inch) under the cuff while testing blood pressure *(tourniquet test)* is indicative of dengue. On rechallenge with another of the four related strains, dengue can also cause **DHF** and **DSS.** Nonneutralizing antibody promotes uptake of the virus into macrophages, which causes memory T cells to become activated, release cytokines, and initiate inflammatory reactions. These reactions and the virus result in weakening and rupture of the vasculature, internal bleeding, and loss of plasma, leading to shock symptoms and internal bleeding. Dengue is endemic in at least 100 countries in Asia, the Pacific, the Americas, Africa, and the Caribbean, accounting for 40% of the world's population. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that 50 to 100 million infections occur yearly, including 500,000 DHF cases and 22,000 deaths, mostly among children.

Yellow fever infections are characterized by severe systemic disease, with degeneration of the liver, kidney, and heart, as well as hemorrhage. Liver involvement causes the jaundice from which the disease gets its name, but massive gastrointestinal hemorrhages ("black vomit") may also occur. The mortality rate associated with yellow fever during epidemics is as high as 50%.

Zika virus infection is usually asymptomatic. Disease resembles mild cases of dengue and chikungunya with fever, rash, headache, muscle and joint pain and conjunctivitis. Infection correlates with higher incidence of Guillain-Barré syndrome. Despite a lack of symptoms, the virus can be transmitted sexually and vertically to the fetus for at least 3 months after infection. Infection of the fetus can cause microcephaly and other congenital abnormalities.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Detection and characterization of the alphaviruses and flaviviruses is now performed by RT-PCR testing of viral mRNA in blood or other samples. Monoclonal antibodies to the individual viruses have become a useful tool for distinguishing the individual species and strains of viruses. The alphaviruses and flaviviruses can be grown in both vertebrate and mosquito cell lines, but most are difficult to isolate. A variety of serologic methods can be used to diagnose infections, but the serologic cross-reactivity among viruses limits distinction of the actual viral species in many cases.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

No treatments exist for arbovirus diseases, other than supportive care. *The easiest means of preventing the spread of any arbovirus is elimination of its vector and breeding grounds.* After 1900, when Walter Reed and his colleagues discovered that yellow fever was spread by *A. aegypti,* the number of cases was reduced from 1400 to none within 2 years, purely through control of the mosquito population. Many public health departments monitor bird and mosquito populations in a region for arboviruses and periodically spray to reduce the mosquito population. Avoidance of the breeding grounds of a mosquito vector is also a good preventive measure.

A live vaccine against yellow fever virus and killed vaccines against EEEV, WEEV, Japanese encephalitis virus, and Russian spring-summer encephalitis virus are available. A live Japanese encephalitis virus vaccine is used in China. These vaccines are meant for people working with the virus or at risk for contact. A live vaccine against VEEV is available but only for use in domestic animals. Vaccines consisting of all four strains of dengue virus are being developed to ensure that immune enhancement of the disease on subsequent challenge does not occur. An interesting approach to the dengue virus vaccine consists of chimeric viruses in which the glycoprotein and other genes for each of the other dengue virus strains is inserted into either an attenuated dengue 2 virus or the 17D yellow fever virus.

The yellow fever vaccine is prepared from the 17D strain isolated from a patient in 1927 and grown for long periods

in monkeys, mosquitoes, embryonic tissue culture, and embryonated eggs. The vaccine is administered intradermally and elicits lifelong immunity to yellow fever and possibly other cross-reacting flaviviruses.

Rubella Virus

Rubella virus has the same structural properties and mode of replication as the other togaviruses. However, unlike the other togaviruses, rubella is a **respiratory virus** and **does not cause readily detectable cytopathologic effects.**

Rubella is one of the five **classic childhood exanthems,** along with measles, roseola, fifth disease, and chickenpox. Rubella, meaning "little red" in Latin, was first distinguished from measles and other exanthems by German physicians; thus the common name for the disease, **German measles.** In 1941, an astute Australian ophthalmologist, Norman McAlister Gregg, recognized that maternal rubella infection was the cause of congenital cataracts. Maternal rubella infection has since been correlated with several other **severe congenital defects.** This finding prompted the development of a unique program to vaccinate children to prevent infection of pregnant women and neonates.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

Rubella virus is not cytolytic but does interfere with cellular machinery. The replication of rubella prevents (in a process known as **heterologous interference**) the replication of superinfecting picornaviruses. This property allowed the first isolations of rubella virus in 1962.

Rubella infects the upper respiratory tract and then spreads to local lymph nodes, which coincides with a period of lymphadenopathy (Fig. 52.6). This stage is followed by establishment of viremia, which spreads the virus throughout the body. Infection of other tissues and the characteristic mild rash occur. The prodromal period lasts approximately 2 weeks (Fig. 52.7). The infected person can shed virus in respiratory droplets during the prodromal period and for as long as 2 weeks after the onset of the rash.

IMMUNE RESPONSE

Antibody is generated after the viremia, and its appearance correlates with the appearance of the rash. The antibody limits viremic spread, but cell-mediated immunity plays an important role in resolving the infection. Only one serotype of rubella exists, and natural infection produces lifelong protective immunity. Most important, serum antibody in a pregnant woman prevents spread of the virus to the fetus. *Immune complexes most likely cause the rash and arthralgia associated with rubella infection.*

CONGENITAL INFECTION

Rubella infection in a pregnant woman can result in serious congenital abnormalities in the child. If the mother does not have antibody, the virus can replicate in the placenta and spread to the fetal blood supply and throughout the fetus. Rubella can replicate in most tissues of the fetus. The virus may not be cytolytic, but the normal growth, mitosis, and chromosomal structure of the cells of the fetus can be altered by the infection. The alterations can lead to improper development of the fetus, small size of the infected baby, and the **teratogenic effects** associated with congenital rubella infection. The nature of the disorder is determined by the (1) tissue affected and (2) stage of development disrupted. Since the vaccine era, cytomegalovirus has replaced rubella as the most common cause of congenital defects.

The virus may persist in tissues such as the lens of the eye for 3 to 4 years and may be shed up to a year after birth.

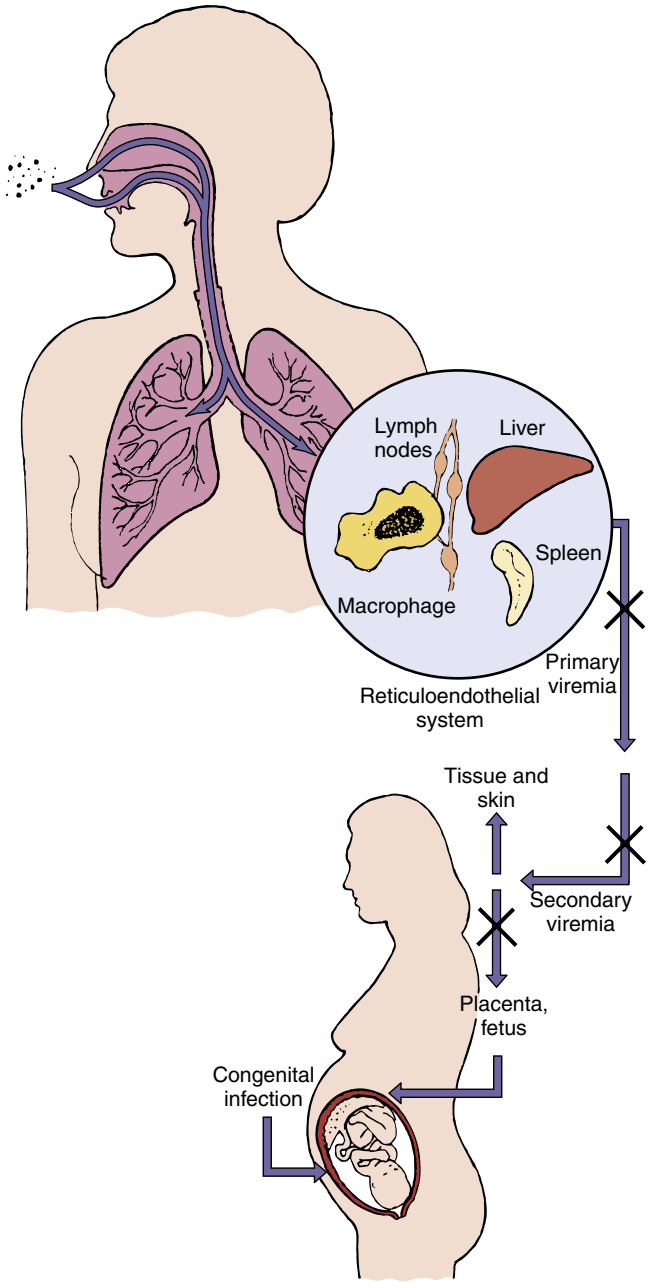


Fig. 52.6 Spread of rubella virus within the host. Rubella enters and infects the nasopharynx and lung and then spreads to the lymph nodes and monocyte-macrophage system. The resulting viremia spreads the virus to other tissues and the skin. Circulating antibody can block the transfer of virus at the indicated points *(X)*. In an immunologically deficient pregnant woman, the virus can infect the placenta and spread to the fetus.

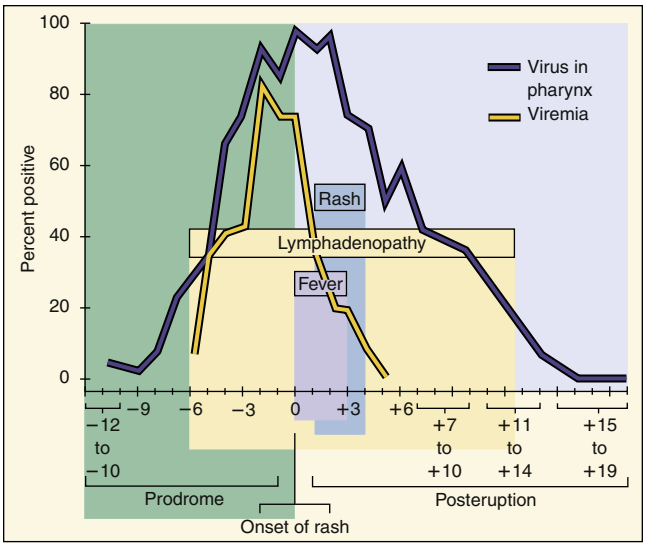


Fig. 52.7 Time course of rubella disease. Rubella production in the pharynx precedes the appearance of symptoms and continues throughout the course of the disease. The onset of lymphadenopathy coincides with the viremia. Fever and rash occur later. The person is infectious as long as the virus is produced in the pharynx. (Modified from Plotkin, S.A., Orenstein, W.A., Offit, P.A., 2008. Vaccines, fifth ed. Saunders, Philadelphia, PA.)

Presence of the virus during the development of the baby's immune response may even have a tolerogenic effect on the system, preventing effective clearance of the virus after birth.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Humans are the only host for rubella (Box 52.4). The virus is spread in respiratory secretions and is generally acquired during childhood. Spread of virus, before or in the absence of symptoms, and crowded conditions (e.g., day-care centers) promote contagion.

Approximately 20% of women of childbearing age escape infection during childhood and are susceptible to infection unless vaccinated. Programs in many U.S. states test expectant mothers for antibodies to rubella.

Before the development and use of the rubella vaccine, cases of rubella in schoolchildren would be reported every spring, and major epidemics of rubella occurred at regular 6- to 9-year intervals. The severity of the 1964–1965 epidemic in the United States is shown in Table 52.3. Congenital rubella occurred in as many as 1% of all the children born in cities such as Philadelphia during this epidemic. The immunization program has succeeded in eliminating endemic rubella virus infection in the United States.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Rubella disease is normally benign in children. After a 14- to 21-day incubation period, the symptoms in children consist of a 3-day **maculopapular** or **macular rash** and swollen glands (Fig. 52.8). Infection in adults, however, can be more severe and include problems such as bone and joint pain (arthralgia and arthritis) and (rarely) thrombocytopenia or postinfectious encephalopathy. Immunopathologic effects resulting from cell-mediated immunity and hypersensitivity reactions are a major cause of the more severe forms of rubella in adults.

Congenital disease is the most serious outcome of rubella infection. The fetus is at major risk until the 20th week of pregnancy. Maternal immunity to the virus resulting from prior exposure or vaccination prevents spread of the virus to the fetus. The most common manifestations of congenital rubella infection are cataracts, mental retardation, cardiac abnormalities, and deafness (Boxes 52.5 and 52.6; see Table 52.3). The mortality in utero and within the first year after birth is high for affected babies.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Isolation of the rubella virus is difficult and rarely attempted. When isolation of the virus is necessary, the virus is usually

BOX 52.4 Epidemiology of Rubella Virus

Disease/Viral Factors

Rubella infects only humans.
Virus can cause asymptomatic disease.
There is one serotype.

Transmission

Respiratory route

Who Is at Risk?

Children: mild exanthematous disease.
Adults: more severe disease with arthritis or arthralgia.
Fetus <20 weeks: congenital defects.

Modes of Control

Live attenuated vaccine administered as part of the measles-mumps-rubella vaccine.

TABLE 52.3 Estimated Morbidity Associated with the 1964–1965 U.S. Rubella Epidemic

Clinical Events	Number Affected
Rubella cases	12,500,000
Arthritis-arthralgia	159,375
Encephalitis	2,084
DEATHS	
Excess neonatal deaths	2,100
Other deaths	60
Total deaths	2,160
Excess fetal wastage	6,250
CONGENITAL RUBELLA SYNDROME	
Deaf children	8,055
Deaf/blind children	3,580
Mentally retarded children	1,790
Other congenital rubella syndrome symptoms	6,575
Total congenital rubella syndrome	20,000
Therapeutic abortions	5,000

From National Communicable Disease Center, 1969. Rubella surveillance, Report No. 1. U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Washington, DC.

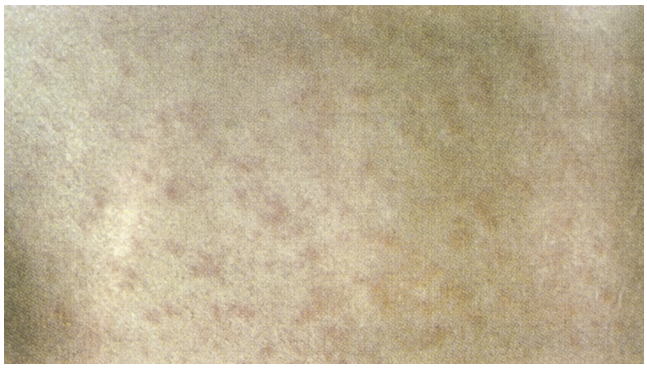


Fig. 52.8 Close-up of the rubella rash. Small erythematous macules are visible. (From Hart, C.A., Broadwell, R.L., 1992. A Color Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Disease. Wolfe, London, UK.)

BOX 52.5 Prominent Clinical Findings in Congenital Rubella Syndrome

Cataracts and other ocular defects
Heart defects
Deafness
Intrauterine growth retardation
Failure to thrive
Mortality within the first year
Microcephaly
Mental retardation

BOX 52.6 Clinical Summaries

West Nile encephalitis: During August, a 70-year-old man from a swampy area of Louisiana developed fever, headache, muscle weakness, nausea, and vomiting. He had difficulty answering questions. He progressed into a coma. Magnetic resonance imaging results show no specific localization of lesions (unlike in herpes simplex virus encephalitis). His disease progressed to respiratory failure and death. His 25-year-old niece, living next door, complained of sudden onset of fever (39° C [102.2° F]), headache, and myalgias, with nausea and vomiting lasting 4 days. (See website https://doi.org/10.3810/pgm.2003.07.1456).

Yellow fever: A 42-year-old man had fever (103° F), headache, vomiting, and backache that started 3 days after returning from a trip to Central America. He appeared normal for a short time, but then his gums started to bleed; he had bloody urine and vomited blood; and he developed petechiae, jaundice, and a slower and weakened pulse. He started to improve 10 days after the onset of disease.

Rubella: A 6-year-old girl from Romania developed a faint rash on her face, accompanied by mild fever and lymphadenopathy. Over the next 3 days, the rash progressed to other parts of the body. She had no history of rubella immunization.

obtained from urine. The virus can be detected by RT-PCR of viral RNA. The diagnosis can be confirmed by the presence of antirubella-specific IgM. Antibodies to rubella are assayed early in pregnancy to determine the immune status of the woman; this test is required in many states.

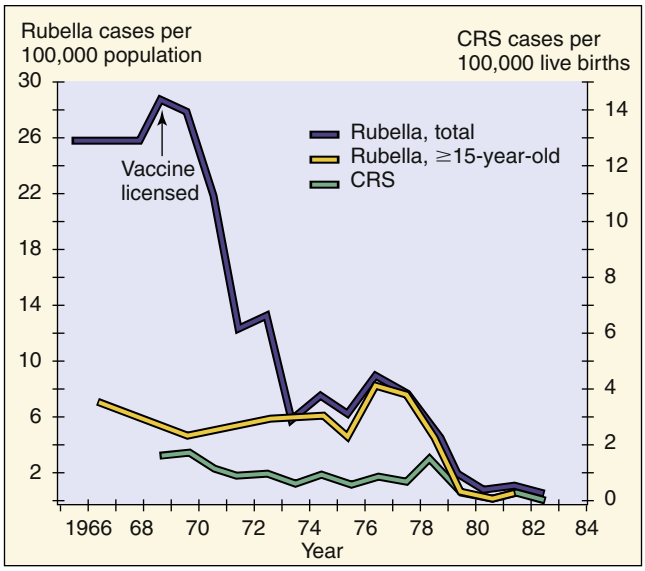


Fig. 52.9 Effect of rubella virus vaccination on the incidence of rubella and congenital rubella syndrome *(CRS).* (Modified from Williams, M.N., Preblud, S.R., 1984. Current trends: rubella and congenital rubella—United States. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report 33, 237–247.)

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

No treatment is available for rubella. The best means of preventing rubella is vaccination with the live cold-adapted RA27/3 vaccine strain of virus (Fig. 52.9). The live rubella vaccine is usually administered with the measles and mumps vaccines **(MMR vaccine)** after 12 months of age. The triple vaccine is included routinely in well-baby care. Vaccination promotes both humoral and cellular immunity.

The primary reason for the rubella vaccination program is to prevent congenital infection by decreasing the number of susceptible people in the population, especially children. As a result, there are fewer seronegative mothers and a smaller chance they will be exposed to the virus from contact with infectious children. Because only one serotype for rubella exists and humans are the only reservoir, vaccination of a large proportion of the population can significantly reduce the likelihood of exposure to the virus.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Burrell, C.J., Howard, C.R., Murphy, F.A., 2017. Fenner and White's Medical Virology 5e. Academic, Cambridge, MA.

Chambers, T.J., Hahn, C.S., Galler, R., et al., 1990. Flavivirus genome organization, expression, and replication. Annu. Rev. Microbiol. 44, 649–688.

Chambers, T.J., Monath, T.P., 2003. The flaviviruses: detection, diagnosis, and vaccine development, vol 61; The flaviviruses: pathogenesis and immunity, vol 60. Adv. Virus Res. Elsevier Academic, San Diego.

Fernandez-Garcia, M.D., Mazzon, M., Jacobs, M., et al., 2009. Pathogenesis of flavivirus infections: using and abusing the host cell. Cell. Host. Microbe. 5, 318–328.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Gelfand, M.S., 2003. West Nile virus infection. What you need to know about this emerging threat. Postgrad. Med. 114, 31–38.

Gould, E.A., Solomon, T., 2008. Pathogenic flaviviruses. Lancet 371, 500–509.

Guabiraba, R., Ryffel, B., 2014. Dengue virus infection: current concepts in immune mechanisms and lessons from murine models. Immunology 141, 143–156.
Halstead, S.B., Thomas, S.J., 2018. Dengue Virus. In: Plotkin, S.A., Orenstein, W.A., Offit, P.A., Edwards, K.M. (Eds.), Vaccines, seventh ed. Elsevier. Saunders, Philadelphia.
Johnson, R.T., 1998. Viral Infections of the Nervous System. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia.
Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.
Koblet, H., 1990. The "merry-go-round": alphaviruses between vertebrate and invertebrate cells. Adv. Virus. Res. 38, 343–403.
Kuhn, R.J., Zhang, W., Rossmann, M.G., et al., 2002. Structure of dengue virus: implications for flavivirus organization, maturation, and fusion. Cell 108, 717–725.
Mackenzie, J.S., Barrett, A.D.T., Deubel, V., 2002.
Japanese Encephalitis and West Nile Viruses. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 267. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
Mukhopadhyay, S., Kim, B.S., Chipman, P.R., et al., 2003. Structure of West Nile virus. Science 302, 248.
Nash, D., Mostashari, F., Fine, A., et al., 2001. The outbreak of West Nile virus infection in the New York City area in 1999. N. Engl. J. Med. 344, 1807–1814.
Plotkin, S.A., Graham, B.S., 2018. Zika virus. In: Plotkin, S.A., Orenstein, W.A., Offit, P.A., Edwards, K.M. (Eds.), Vaccines, seventh ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.
Plotkin, S.A., Reef, S., 2018. Rubella vaccine. In: Plotkin, S.A., Orenstein, W.A., Offit, P.A., Edwards, K.M. (Eds.), Vaccines, seventh ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.
Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.
Rothman, A.L., 2010. Dengue Virus. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol 338. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-02215-9.
Staples, J.E., Monath, T.P., Gershman, M.D., Barrett, A.D.T., 2018. Yellow fever vaccine. In: Plotkin, S.A., Orenstein, W.A., Offit, P.A., Edwards, K.M. (Eds.), Vaccines, seventh ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.
Tyler, K.L., 2018. Acute viral encephalitis. N. Engl. J. Med. 379, 557–566. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra1708714.

Websites

Centers for Disease Control. Vital Signs: Trends in Reported Vectorborne Disease Cases—United States and Territories, 2004–2016. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/67/wr/mm6717e1.htm. Accessed September 4, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Division of Vector Borne Diseases. www.cdc.gov/ncezid/dvbd/. Accessed September 3, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Chikungunya. https://www.cdc.gov/chikungunya/. Accessed September 3, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Dengue. www.cdc.gov/dengue/. Accessed September 3, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Dengue training modules. https://www.cdc.gov/dengue/training/cme/ccm/page32415.html. Accessed September 3, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: West Nile virus. www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/westnile/index.htm. Accessed September 3, 2018.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Zika Virus. https://www.cdc.gov/zika/index.html. Accessed September 3, 2018.

Case Studies and Questions

A 27-year-old businessman experienced a high fever, serious retroorbital headache, and severe joint and back pain 5 days after he and his family returned from a trip to Malaysia. The symptoms lasted for 4 days, and then a rash appeared on his palms and soles, which lasted for 2 days. At the same time, the man's 5-year-old son experienced mild flulike symptoms and then collapsed after 2 to 5 days. The boy's hands were cold and clammy, his face was flushed, and his body was warm. There were petechiae on his forehead and ecchymoses elsewhere. He bruised very easily. He was breathing rapidly and had a weak, rapid pulse. He then rapidly recovered after 24 hours.

1. What features of these cases pointed to the diagnosis of dengue virus infection?

2. Of what significance was the trip to Malaysia?

3. What was the source of infection in the father and son?

4. What were the significance of and the pathogenic basis for the petechiae and ecchymoses in the child?

Two weeks after returning from a trip to Pakistan, a 25-year-old man had arthralgia (joint aches) and a mild rash that started on his face and spread to his body. He recalled that he had felt as if he had the flu a few days before the onset of the rash. The rash disappeared in 4 days.

5. What features of this case pointed to the diagnosis of rubella infection?

6. Why is it significant that the symptoms started after a trip outside the United States?

7. What precaution could the man have taken to prevent this infection?

8. How was this infection transmitted?

9. Who was at risk for a serious outcome of this infection?

10. If this disease is normally mild in children, why is their immunization so important?

53 Bunyaviridae and Arenaviridae

A 50-year-old man was visiting family in Liberia and stayed in a house infested with rodents. He developed severe flulike symptoms, a sore throat, and red eyes and was treated with amoxicillin and chloroquine. His condition worsened, with increased fever, severe headache, and swollen lymph nodes, tonsils, and spleen. He began to cough up blood and then went into shock and died.

1. How was this individual infected with Lassa fever virus?
2. What are the unique characteristics of arenaviruses?
3. How are they similar to bunyaviruses? How are they different?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

BUNYAVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Arboviruses: mosquito, encephalitis
Hantaviruses: rodent, hemorrhagic disease

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Medium size, enveloped, (–) segmented RNA genome
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Antibody can block disease
- Virus spreads in blood to tissues, neurons, and brain
- Prodrome of flulike symptoms caused by interferon and cytokine response
- Encephalitis: La Crosse, California encephalitis
- Hantaviruses: pulmonary syndrome

Epidemiology

- Encephalitis viruses: zoonosis, reservoir in birds, vector is the mosquito
- Hantavirus: inhalation of aerosols from rodent urine or feces

Diagnosis

- RT-PCR, ELISA

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Arboviruses: mosquito control
- Hantaviruses: rodent control

ARENAVIRUSES

Trigger Words

- Ribosomes in virion, rodent, Lassa fever virus, hemorrhagic disease, LCM virus, meningitis

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Medium size, enveloped, (–) segmented RNA genome
- Nonfunctional ribosomes in virion
- Encodes RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, replicates in cytoplasm
- Antibody can block disease
- Virus spreads in blood to tissues, neurons, and brain
- Prodrome of flulike symptoms caused by interferon and cytokine response
- LCM virus: meningitis
- Lassa fever: hemorrhagic fever

Epidemiology

- Inhalation of aerosols from rodent urine or feces
- LCM virus: worldwide
- Lassa fever: Africa

Diagnosis

- RT-PCR, ELISA

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Rodent control

ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *LCM,* lymphocytic choriomeningitis, *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction.

The Bunyaviridae and Arenaviridae share several similarities. The viruses of these families are negative-strand ribonucleic acid (RNA)-enveloped viruses with similar modes of replication. Both are zoonoses; most of the Bunyaviridae are arboviruses. The hantaviruses and Arenaviridae are spread by rodents and not insects. Many of the viruses from these families cause encephalitis or hemorrhagic disease.

Bunyaviridae

The Bunyaviridae constitute a "supergroup" of at least **200 enveloped, segmented, negative-strand RNA viruses** (Box 53.1). The supergroup of mammalian viruses is further broken down into genera on the basis of structural and biochemical features: *Bunyavirus, Phlebovirus, Nairovirus,* and *Hantavirus* (Table 53.1). Most of the Bunyaviridae are **arboviruses** (*ar*thropod-*bo*rne) that are spread by mosquitoes, ticks, or flies and are endemic to the environment of the vector. The **hantaviruses** are the exception; they are carried by **rodents.** New human viruses are still being discovered, including the tick-borne Heartland phlebovirus in the United States in 2012. In 2011, the tick-borne severe fever with thrombocytopenia syndrome virus (SFTSV) was discovered in China.

STRUCTURE

The bunyaviruses are roughly spherical particles 90 to 120 nm in diameter. The envelope of the virus contains two glycoproteins (G1 and G2) and encloses three unique negative-strand RNAs, the large **(L),** medium **(M),** and small **(S)** RNAs that are associated with protein to form nucleocapsids (Table 53.2). The genome segments for the La Crosse and related California encephalitis viruses form circles. The nucleocapsids include the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase

BOX 53.1 Unique Features of Bunyaviruses

There are at least 200 related viruses in five genera that share a common morphology and basic components.
Virion is enveloped with three (L, M, S) negative-sense ribonucleic acid nucleocapsids but no matrix proteins.
Virus replicates in the cytoplasm.
Virus can infect humans, animals, and arthropods.
Virus in an arthropod can be transmitted to its eggs.

(L protein) and two nonstructural proteins (NS_s, NS_m) (Fig. 53.1). Unlike other negative-strand RNA viruses, the Bunyaviridae **do not have a matrix protein.** The genera of Bunyaviridae are distinguished by differences in (1) the number and sizes of the virion proteins; (2) the lengths of the L, M, and S strands of the genome; and (3) how they are transcribed.

REPLICATION

The Bunyaviridae replicate in the same way as other enveloped negative-strand RNA viruses. For most Bunyaviridae, the G1 glycoprotein interacts with β-integrins on the cell surface, and the virus is internalized by endocytosis. After fusion of the envelope with endosomal membranes on acidification of the vesicle, the nucleocapsid is released into the cytoplasm, and messenger RNA (mRNA) and protein synthesis begin. Like influenza, the bunyaviruses steal the 5′-capped portion of mRNAs to prime the synthesis of viral mRNAs; but unlike influenza, this occurs in the cytoplasm. Separate positive-strand templates are used to replicate the genome.

The M strand encodes the NS_m nonstructural protein and the G1 (viral attachment) and G2 proteins, and the L strand encodes the L protein (polymerase) (see Table 53.2). The S strand of RNA encodes two nonstructural proteins, N and NS_s. For the *Phlebovirus* group, the S strand is ambisense, such that one mRNA is transcribed from the genome and the other from the (+) RNA template for replication.

The glycoproteins are synthesized and glycosylated in the endoplasmic reticulum, after which they are transferred to the Golgi apparatus but not translocated to the plasma membrane. Virions are assembled by budding into the Golgi apparatus and are released by cell lysis or exocytosis.

PATHOGENESIS

Most of the Bunyaviridae are arboviruses and possess many of the same pathogenic mechanisms as the togaviruses and flaviviruses (Box 53.2). For example, the viruses are spread by an arthropod vector and are injected into the blood to initiate a viremia. Progression past this stage to secondary viremia and further dissemination of the virus can deliver the virus to target sites such as the central nervous system, liver, kidney, and vascular endothelium to cause disease. Many Bunyaviridae cause encephalitis; others cause hepatic necrosis or hemorrhagic disease (e.g., Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever and Hantaan hemorrhagic disease) in ways similar to the toga and flaviviruses. In the latter infection, hemorrhagic necrosis of the kidney occurs often. Like togaviruses, flaviviruses, and arenaviruses, the bunyaviruses are good inducers of type 1 interferons. Bunyavirus disease is caused by a combination of immune and viral pathogenesis.

Unlike the other bunyaviruses, rodents are the reservoir and vector for hantaviruses, and humans acquire the virus by breathing aerosols contaminated with infected urine. Hantaviruses target the kidneys and cause chronic asymptomatic infection in rodents, which leads to long-term viral shedding in urine. Human inhalation brings the virus to the lungs, and then it can spread to the vasculature and kidneys, in which it replicates but is not cytolytic. It disrupts endothelial cell function, causing vascular permeability, which can lead to shock and induces cytolytic immune responses to cause hemorrhagic tissue destruction and lethal pulmonary disease.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Most bunyaviruses are transmitted by infected mosquitoes, ticks, or *Phlebotomus* flies to rodents, birds, and larger animals (Box 53.3). The animals then become the **reservoirs** for the virus, continuing the cycle of infection. Humans are infected when they enter the environment of the insect vector (Fig. 53.2) but are usually dead-end hosts. Transmission occurs during the summer, but unlike many other arboviruses, many of the Bunyaviridae can survive a winter in the mosquito eggs and remain in a locale.

Many of the members of this virus family are found in South America, southeastern Europe, Southeast Asia, and Africa and bear the exotic names of their ecologic niches. Viruses of the **California encephalitis virus group** (e.g., La Crosse virus) are spread by mosquitoes found in the forests of North America (Fig. 53.3). Up to 100 cases of encephalitis are reported during the summer each year in the United States, but most infections are asymptomatic. These viruses are spread mainly by aggressive day-biting *Aedes triseriatus,* which breeds in the water in tree holes and in discarded tires.

The hantaviruses do not have an arthropod vector but are maintained in a rodent species specific for each virus. Humans are infected by close contact with rodents or through inhalation of aerosolized rodent urine. In May 1993, a deadly outbreak of **hantavirus pulmonary syndrome** (HPS) occurred in the Four Corners area of New Mexico. The outbreak is attributed to increased contact with the deer mouse vector during a season of unusually high rainfall, greater availability of food, and a rise in the rodent population. Viruses of the Sin Nombre subfamily were isolated from the victims and rodents. Since this incident, viruses from this subfamily have been detected and associated with outbreaks of respiratory tract disease in the eastern and western United States and in Central and South America.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Bunyaviridae, even those that can cause serious disease, usually cause relatively mild nonspecific febrile, flulike, viremia-related illness (Clinical Case 53.1; see Table 53.1) that is indistinguishable from illnesses caused by other viruses. The incubation period for these illnesses is approximately 48 hours, and the fevers typically last 3 days.

Encephalitis illnesses (e.g., La Crosse virus) are sudden in onset after an incubation period of approximately 1 week, and symptoms at this time consist of fever, headache,

TABLE 53.1 Notable Bunyaviridae Genera[a]

Genus	Members	Insect Vector	Pathologic Conditions	Vertebrate Hosts
Bunyavirus	Bunyamwera virus, California encephalitis virus, La Crosse virus, Oropouche virus; 150 members	Mosquito	Febrile illness, encephalitis, rash	Rodents, small mammals, primates, marsupials, birds
Phlebovirus	Rift Valley fever virus, sandfly fever virus, Heartland virus; 38 members	Fly, tick	Sandfly fever, hemorrhagic fever, encephalitis, conjunctivitis, myositis	Sheep, cattle, domestic animals
Nairovirus	Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus; 6 members	Tick	Hemorrhagic fever	Hares, cattle, goats, seabirds
Uukuvirus	Uukuniemi virus; 7 members	Tick	—	Birds
Hantavirus	Old World; Hantaan virus and others New World; Sin Nombre and others	None None	Hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome, adult respiratory distress syndrome Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome, shock, pulmonary edema	Rodents Rodents

[a]Additional viruses possess several common properties with Bunyaviridae but are as yet unclassified.

TABLE 53.2 Genome and Proteins of California Encephalitis Virus

Genome[a]	Proteins
L	RNA polymerase, 170 kDa
M	G1 glycoprotein, 75 kDa G2 glycoprotein, 65 kDa NS_m (nonstructural) protein, 15–17 kDa
S	N (nonstructural) protein, 25 kDa NS_s (nonstructural) protein, 10 kDa

[a]Negative-strand RNA.

lethargy, and vomiting. Seizures occur in 50% of patients with encephalitis, usually early in the illness. Signs of meningitis may also be present. The illness lasts 10 to 14 days. Death occurs in less than 1% of patients, but seizure disorders may occur as sequelae in as many as 20%.

Hemorrhagic fevers such as Rift Valley fever are characterized by petechial hemorrhages, ecchymosis, epistaxis, hematemesis, melena, and bleeding of the gums. Death occurs in as many as half of patients with hemorrhagic disease. **HPS** occurs in the Americas and is a terrible disease, manifesting initially as a prodrome of fever, flulike symptoms, and muscle aches but followed rapidly by interstitial pulmonary edema, respiratory failure, shock, and death within days. Hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome (HFRS) occurs in Europe and Asia and adds petechial rash, systemic hemorrhagic disease, and kidney failure to HPS.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Detection of viral RNA by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) has become the accepted method for detecting and identifying bunyaviruses. The Sin Nombre and Convict Creek hantaviruses were initially identified with the RT-PCR test, using primers with characteristic hantavirus sequences.

Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) may detect antigen in clinical specimens from patients with an intense viremia (e.g., Rift Valley fever, HFRS, Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever) or from mosquitoes.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

No specific therapy for infections of the Bunyaviridae is available. Human disease is prevented by interruption of the contact between humans and the vector, whether arthropod or mammal. Arthropod vectors are controlled by (1) eliminating the growth conditions for the vector, (2) spraying with insecticide, (3) installing netting or screening at windows and doors, (4) wearing protective clothing, and (5) controlling the tick infestation of animals. Rodent control minimizes the transmission of hantaviruses.

Arenaviruses

The arenaviruses include **lymphocytic choriomeningitis (LCM)** and **hemorrhagic fever viruses,** such as the **Lassa, Junin,** and **Machupo** viruses (Box 53.4). These viruses cause persistent infections in specific rodents and can be transmitted to humans as **zoonoses.**

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

Arenaviruses are seen in electron micrographs as **pleomorphic enveloped viruses** (diameter, 120 nm) that have a **sandy appearance** (the name comes from the Greek word ***arenosa,*** meaning "sandy") because of the **ribosomes in the virion**. Although functional, the ribosomes do not seem to serve a purpose. Virions contain a nucleocapsid with **two single-stranded RNA circles** (S, 3400 nucleotides; L, 7200 nucleotides) and a transcriptase. The L strand is a negative-sense RNA and encodes the polymerase. The S strand encodes the nucleoprotein (N protein) and the glycoproteins but is **ambisense.** Whereas the mRNA for the N protein is transcribed directly from the ambisense S strand, the mRNA for the glycoprotein is transcribed from a full-length template of the S strand. Like togaviruses, the glycoproteins are produced as late proteins after genome

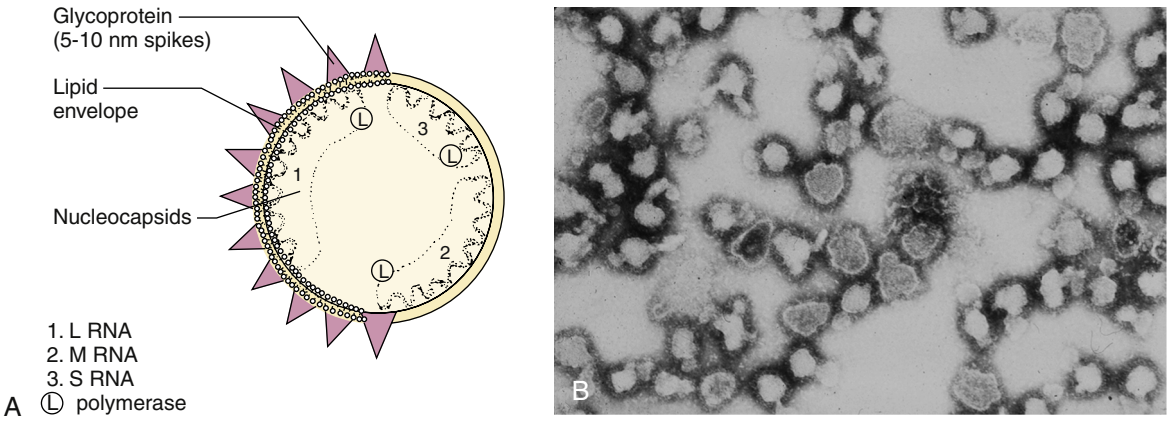


Fig. 53.1 (A) Model of the bunyavirus particle. (B) Electron micrograph of La Crosse variant of bunyavirus. Note the spike proteins at the surface of the virion envelope. *RNA,* Ribonucleic acid. (A, Modified from Fraenkel-Conrat, H., Wagner, R.R., 1979. Comprehensive Virology, vol. 14. Plenum, New York, NY. B, Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia.)

BOX 53.2 Disease Mechanisms for Bunyaviruses

Virus is acquired from an arthropod bite (e.g., mosquito).
For hantaviruses, the virus is acquired from rodent urine or feces.
Initial viremia causes flulike symptoms.
Establishment of secondary viremia may allow virus access to specific target tissues that define the disease, including the central nervous system, organs, and vascular endothelium.
Viral and immunopathogenesis causes tissue disruption.
Antibody is important in controlling viremia; interferon and cell-mediated immunity may prevent the outgrowth of infection and contribute to disease.

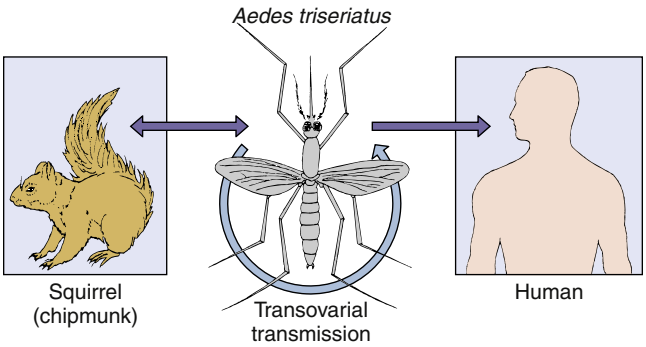


Fig. 53.2 Transmission of La Crosse (California) encephalitis virus.

BOX 53.3 Epidemiology of Bunyavirus Infections

Disease/Viral Factors

Arboviruses able to replicate in mammalian and arthropod cells.
Arboviruses able to pass into ovary and infect arthropod eggs, allowing virus to survive during winter.

Transmission

Arboviruses, via arthropod's blood meal; California encephalitis group, *Aedes* mosquito;
Aedes mosquitoes are aggressive daytime feeders and live in forests.
Aedes mosquitoes lay eggs in small pools of water trapped in places such as trees and tires.
Hantavirus: transmitted in aerosols from rodent urine and feces and by close contact with infected rodents.

Who Is at Risk?

People in habitat of arthropod or rodent vector.
California encephalitis group: campers, forest rangers, woodsmen.

Geography/Season

Disease incidence correlates with distribution of vector.
Disease more common in summer.

Modes of Control

Elimination of vector or vector's habitat.
Avoidance of vector's habitat.

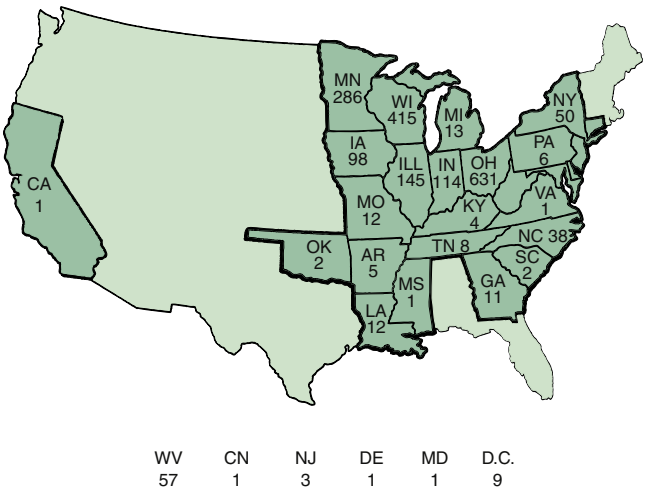


Fig. 53.3 Distribution of California encephalitis, 1964 to 2010. (Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia.)

replication. Arenaviruses replicate in the cytoplasm and acquire their envelope by budding from the host cell plasma membrane.

Arenaviruses readily cause persistent infections. This may result from inefficient transcription of the glycoprotein genes and thus poor virion assembly.

Clinical Case 53.1 **Hantavirus in Virginia**

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (*Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 53:1086–1089, 2004) reported a case of hantavirus in a 32-year-old wildlife sciences graduate student. The patient visited the ED in Blacksburg, Virginia, after experiencing fever, cough, and a "sore chest." The student had been trapping, handling, and studying mice during the previous month. Neither he nor his colleagues wore gloves while handling the mice or their excreta; they did not wash before eating and had numerous mouse bites on their hands. He had a fever of 39.3° C and normal lung function, but a chest radiograph indicated a faint right-sided pneumonia. The man started vomiting in the ED and was admitted. The pneumonia progressed, and he became more hypoxic, eventually requiring intubation and mechanical ventilation. On the next day, he was given activated protein C to prevent disseminated intravascular coagulation. The patient continued to fail and died on the third day after hospitalization. Serum specimens contained IgM and IgG antibody and genomic ribonucleic acid (determined by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction) to hantavirus, and viral antigens were present in the spleen. Although the hantavirus received its greatest notoriety with the Sin Nombre virus outbreak in the southwestern United States in 1993, it can occur wherever people come in contact with the urine and feces of rodents carrying these viruses. Cases have been reported in 31 of the United States.

ED, Emergency Department; *Ig,* immunoglobulin.

BOX 53.4 Characteristics of Arenaviruses

Virus has **enveloped** virion with two **circular, negative-RNA** genome segments (L, S). Virion appears **sandy because of ribosomes.**
S genome segment is ambisense.
Arenaviruses are zoonoses, establishing persistent infections in rodents.
Pathogenesis of arenavirus infections is largely attributed to immunopathogenesis.

PATHOGENESIS

Arenaviruses are able to infect macrophages, induce cytokine and interferon release, and promote cell and vascular damage. T-cell–induced immunopathologic effects significantly exacerbate tissue destruction. The incubation period for arenavirus infections averages 10 to 14 days.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Most arenaviruses, except for the virus that causes LCM, are found in the tropics of Africa and South America. The arenaviruses, like the hantaviruses, infect specific rodents and are endemic to the rodents' habitats. Chronic asymptomatic infection is common in these animals and leads to long-term viral shedding in saliva, urine, and feces. Humans may become infected through inhalation of aerosols, consumption of contaminated food, or contact with fomites. Animal bites are not a usual mechanism of spread.

The virus that causes LCM infects hamsters and house mice *(Mus musculus)*. It was found in 20% of mice in Washington, DC. Lassa fever virus infects *Mastomys natalensis*, which is an African rodent. The Lassa fever virus is spread from human to human through contact with infected secretions or body fluids, but the viruses that cause LCM and other hemorrhagic fevers are rarely, if ever, spread in this way.

From 1999 to 2000, three cases of fatal hemorrhagic disease in California were found to be caused by the Whitewater Arroyo arenavirus. This virus is normally found in the white-throated wood rat, so its occurrence in humans constitutes a newly emergent disease. The disease association was made by a special RT-PCR assay.

BOX 53.5 Clinical Summary

Lassa fever: Approximately 10 days after returning from a trip to visit family in Nigeria, a 47-year-old man developed flulike symptoms with a higher than expected fever and malaise. The disease got progressively worse, and after 3 days, the patient developed abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, pharyngitis, bleeding gums, and began vomiting blood. He developed shock and then died.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis

The name of this virus, **lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus,** suggests that meningitis is a typical clinical event, but actually, LCM usually causes a febrile illness with flulike myalgia (Box 53.5). Only about 10% of infected persons progress to a central nervous system infection. The meningeal illness, if it occurs, will start 10 days after the initial phase of illness, with full recovery. Perivascular mononuclear infiltrates may be seen in neurons of all sections of the brain and in the meninges of an affected patient.

Lassa and Other Hemorrhagic Fevers

Lassa fever, which is endemic to West Africa, is the best known of the hemorrhagic fevers caused by an arenavirus. Other agents, however, such as the Junin and Machupo viruses, cause similar syndromes in the inhabitants of Argentina and Bolivia, respectively.

Clinical illness is characterized by fever, coagulopathy, petechiae, and occasional visceral hemorrhage, as well as by liver and spleen necrosis, but not vasculitis. Hemorrhage and shock also occur, as does occasional cardiac and liver damage. In contrast to LCM, hemorrhagic fevers cause no lesions in the central nervous system. Pharyngitis, diarrhea, and vomiting may be prevalent, especially in patients with Lassa fever. Death occurs in as many as 50% of those with Lassa fever and in a smaller percentage of those infected with the other arenaviruses that cause hemorrhagic fevers. The diagnosis is suggested by recent travel to endemic areas.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

An arenavirus infection is usually diagnosed on the basis of serologic and genomic (RT-PCR) findings. These viruses are too dangerous for isolation. Throat specimens can yield

arenaviruses; urine is a source for the Lassa fever virus but not for the LCM virus. The risk of infection is substantial for laboratory workers handling body fluids. Therefore if the diagnosis is suspected, laboratory personnel should be so warned and the specimens processed only in facilities that specialize in the isolation of contagious pathogens **(level 3 for LCM and level 4 for Lassa fever and other arenaviruses).**

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The antiviral drug **ribavirin** has limited activity against arenaviruses and can be used to treat Lassa fever. However, supportive therapy is usually all that is available for patients with arenavirus infections.

These rodent-borne infections can be prevented by limiting contact with the vector. For example, improved hygiene to limit contact with mice reduced the incidence of LCM in Washington, DC. In the geographic areas in which hemorrhagic fever occurs, trapping rodents and carefully storing food may decrease exposure to the virus.

The incidence of laboratory-acquired cases can be reduced if samples submitted for arenavirus isolation are processed in at least level 3 or level 4 biosafety facilities and not in the usual clinical virology laboratory.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Avšič-Županc, T., Saksida, A., Korva, M., 2016. Hantavirus infections. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. https://doi.org/ 10.1111/1469-0691.12291.

Bishop, D.H.L., Shope, R.E., 1979. Bunyaviridae. Plenum, New York.

Burrell, C.J., Howard, C.R., Murphy, F.A., 2017. Fenner and White's Medical Virology 5e. Academic, Cambridge, MA.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Gonzalez, J.P., et al., 2007. Arenaviruses, Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 315. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 253–288.

Johnson, R.T., 1998. Viral Infections of the Nervous System. Lippincott-Raven, Philadelphia.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Kolakofsky, D., 1991. Bunyaviridae. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 169. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Oldstone, M.B.A., 2002. Arenaviruses I and II, Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 262–263, Berlin, Springer-Verlag.

Peters, C.J., Simpson, G.L., Levy, H., 1999. Spectrum of hantavirus infection: hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome and hantavirus pulmonary syndrome. Annu. Rev. Med. 50, 531–545.

Schmaljohn, C.S., Nichol, S.T., 2001. Hantaviruses, Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 256. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

Tsai, T.F., 1991. Arboviral infections in the United States. Infect. Dis. Clin. North. Am. 5, 73–102.

Tyler, K.L., 2018. Acute viral encephalitis. N. Engl. J. Med. 379, 557–566. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra1708714.

Walter, C.T., Barr, J.N., 2011. Recent advances in the molecular and cellular biology of bunyaviruses. J. Gen. Virol. 92, 2467–2484. http://vir.sgmjournals.org/content/early/2011/08/22/vir.0.035105-0.full.pdf+html.

Wrobel, S., 1995. Serendipity, science, and a new hantavirus. FASEB J. 9, 1247–1254.

Websites

Ayoade, F.O., California encephalitis. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/234159-overview. Accessed September 4, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Hantavirus. www.cdc.gov/hantavirus/index.html. Accessed September 4, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Heartland virus. www.cdc.gov/ncezid/dvbd/heartland/index.html. Accessed September 4, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, La Crosse encephalitis. www.cdc.gov/lac/. Accessed September 4, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Lassa fever. www.cdc.gov/vhf/lassa/. Accessed September 4, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Lymphocytic choriomeningitis (LCMV). www.cdc.gov/vhf/lcm/. Accessed September 4, 2018.

Gompf, S.G., Smith, K.M., Choe, U., Arenaviruses. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/212356-overview. Accessed September 4, 2018.

Case Studies and Questions

A 58-year-old woman complained of flulike symptoms, severe headache, stiff neck, and photophobia. She was lethargic and had a mild fever. The cerebrospinal fluid specimen contained 900 white blood cells per milliliter, mostly lymphocytes, and LCM virus. She recovered after a week. Her home was infested with gray mice *(M. musculus)*.

1. What were the significant symptoms of this disease?

2. How was the virus transmitted?

3. What type of immune response is most important in controlling this infection?

A 15-year-old summer camp counselor in Ohio suddenly complained of headache, nausea, and vomiting; she had a fever and experienced a stiff neck. She was admitted to the hospital, in which a spinal tap and examination of cerebrospinal fluid revealed inflammatory cells. She became lethargic over the next day but became alert again after 4 to 5 days.

4. The physician suspected La Crosse encephalitis virus as the agent. What clues pointed to La Crosse virus?

5. What other agents would also be considered in the differential diagnosis?

6. How was the patient infected?

7. How would transmission of this agent be prevented?

8. How could the local public health department determine the prevalence of La Crosse virus in the environment of the summer camp? What samples would they obtain, and how would they test them?

54 Retroviruses

A 63-year-old woman has tuberculosis and a severe oral *Candida* yeast infection. Her CD4 T-cell level was 50/μL, and 200,000 human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) genomes per milliliter of blood were detected. Although monogamous, she finds out that her husband was not.

1. What cell types does HIV infect, and why does this have such an effect on the patient's immune response?
2. How does the virus replicate?
3. To what other opportunistic infections is this woman susceptible?
4. What are risk factors for infection?
5. How was the HIV infection detected and how was compliance to treatment followed?
6. How can the HIV infection be treated?

Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

RETROVIRUSES

Trigger Words

Reverse transcriptase, integration, syncytia
HIV: AIDS, CD4, chemokine co-receptor, opportunistic diseases
HTLV: leukemia, flower cell, CD4 T cell

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Virion: medium size, envelope, nucleocapsid, two copies of (+) RNA genome
- Simple retroviruses have three genes: *gag, pol, env*
- Complex retroviruses (HIV, HTLV) have *gag, pol, env,* and other important genes
- Encodes RNA-dependent DNA polymerase (RT), replicates in nucleus
- Virion carries RT, integrase, and protease enzymes
- Replicates through DNA intermediate, integrates viral DNA into host chromosome
- Causes syncytia
- Incapacitates and escapes immune control
- Oncornaviruses may encode oncogene and have a short latency period before cancer
- HTLV-1, no oncogene, long latency period before leukemia
- **HTLV:** acute T-cell lymphocytic leukemia, tropical spastic paraparesis
- **HIV:** initially infects CD4/CCR5 macrophages, dendritic cells, and T cells; initial disease phase resembles mononucleosis followed by latent period; AIDS results when CD4 T cells drop below 200/μL
- **Endogenous retroviruses:** integrated and approximately 8% of human genome

Epidemiology

- Worldwide
- Transmitted in blood and semen
- High-risk groups: promiscuous individuals, IV drug users, infants of infected mothers

Diagnosis

- RT-PCR, ELISA

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- HIV treatment with nucleoside analogs, protease inhibitors, and other antiviral drugs
- Prevention by screening of blood supply, safe sex, antiviral drug prophylaxis, education

ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *HTLV,* human T-cell lymphotropic virus; *IV,* intravenous; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction.

The retroviruses are probably the most studied group of viruses in molecular biology. These viruses are **enveloped positive-strand ribonucleic acid (RNA)** viruses with a unique morphology and means of replication. In 1970, Baltimore and Temin showed that the retroviruses encode an **RNA-dependent deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) polymerase (reverse transcriptase [RT])** and replicate through a DNA intermediate. The DNA copy of the viral genome is then integrated into the host chromosome to become a cellular gene. This discovery, which earned Baltimore, Temin, and Dulbecco the 1975 Nobel Prize, contradicted what had been the central dogma of molecular biology—that genetic information passed from DNA to RNA and then to protein.

The first retrovirus to be isolated was the Rous sarcoma virus, shown by Peyton Rous to produce solid tumors (sarcomas) in chickens. Like most retroviruses, the Rous sarcoma virus proved to have a very limited host and species range. Cancer-causing retroviruses have since been isolated from other animal species and are classified as RNA tumor viruses or **oncornaviruses.** Many of these viruses alter cellular growth by expressing analogs of cellular growth-controlling genes **(oncogenes).** Not until 1981, however, when Robert Gallo and his associates isolated human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1 (HTLV-1) from a person with adult human T-cell leukemia, was a human retrovirus associated with human disease.

In the late 1970s and early 1980s, an unusual number of young homosexual men, Haitians, heroin addicts, and hemophiliacs in the United States (the initial "4H club" of risk groups) were noted to be dying of normally benign opportunistic infections. Their symptoms defined a new disease, called **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).** However, as is now known, AIDS is not limited to these groups but can occur in anyone exposed to the virus. Now approximately 37 million men, women, and children around the world are living with the virus that causes AIDS. Montagnier and associates

in Paris, and Gallo and colleagues in the United States, reported the isolation of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1) from patients with lymphadenopathy and AIDS. A closely related virus, designated **HIV-2,** was isolated later and is prevalent in West Africa. HIV appears to have been acquired by humans from chimpanzees and then rapidly spread through Africa and the world by an increasingly mobile population. Although a devastating disease that cannot be completely cured, the development of antiviral drug cocktails (highly active antiretroviral therapy [HAART]) has allowed many HIV patients to resume a normal life.

Endogenous retroviruses, the ultimate parasites, are integrated, are transmitted vertically, and may take up as much as 8% of the human chromosome. Although they may not produce virions, they may still contribute to or influence functions of the body.

Our understanding of the retroviruses has paralleled progress in molecular biology and immunology. In turn, the retroviruses have provided a major tool for molecular biology, the RT enzyme, and through the study of viral oncogenes also have provided a means of advancing our understanding of cell growth, differentiation, and oncogenesis.

The three subfamilies of human retroviruses are the **Oncovirinae** (HTLV-1, HTLV-2, HTLV-5), the **Lentivirinae** (HIV-1, HIV-2), and the **Spumavirinae** (Table 54.1). Although a spumavirus was the first human retrovirus to be isolated, no such virus has been associated with human disease.

Classification

The retroviruses are classified by the diseases they cause, tissue tropism and host range, virion morphology, and genetic complexity (see Table 54.1). The **oncoviruses** include the only retroviruses that can **immortalize or transform target cells.** These viruses are also categorized by the morphology of their core and capsid as type A, B, C, or D, as seen in electron micrographs (Fig. 54.1; see Table 54.1). The **lentiviruses are slow viruses associated with neurologic and immunosuppressive diseases.** The spumaviruses, represented by a foamy virus, cause a distinct cytopathologic effect but, as already noted, do not seem to cause clinical disease.

Structure

The retroviruses are roughly spherical, enveloped, RNA viruses with a diameter of 80 to 120 nm (Fig. 54.2 and Box 54.1). The envelope contains viral glycoproteins and is acquired by budding from the plasma membrane. The **envelope surrounds a capsid that contains two identical copies of the positive-strand RNA genome** inside an electron-dense core. The virion also contains 10 to 50 copies of the **RT and integrase enzymes** and **two cellular transfer RNA (tRNAs).** These tRNAs are base-paired to each copy of the genome to be used as a primer for the RT. The morphology of the core differs for different viruses and is used as a means of classifying the retroviruses (see Fig. 54.1). The HIV virion core resembles a truncated cone (Fig. 54.3).

The genome of the **simple retroviruses** *consists of three major genes that encode polyproteins* for the following enzymatic and structural proteins of the virus: **Gag** (group-specific antigen, *capsid, matrix,* and *nucleic acid–binding proteins*), **Pol** *(polymerase, protease*, and *integrase)*, and **Env** (envelope, *glycoproteins*) (Fig. 54.4 and Table 54.2). At each end of the genome are **long terminal repeat (LTR)** sequences. The LTR sequences contain promoters, enhancers, and other gene sequences used for binding different cellular transcription factors. Oncogenic viruses may also contain a growth-promoting **oncogene.** The **complex retroviruses,** including HTLV, HIV, and other lentiviruses, express early and late proteins and encode several virulence-enhancing proteins that require more complex transcriptional processing (splicing) than the simple retroviruses. Although the genome resembles a messenger RNA (mRNA), unlike a picornavirus genome, it is not infectious because the RT and integrase carried within the virion are required for replication.

The viral glycoproteins are produced by proteolytic cleavage of the polyprotein encoded by the *env* gene. The size of the glycoproteins differs for each group of viruses. For

TABLE 54.1 Classification of Retroviruses

Subfamily	Characteristics	Examples
Oncovirinae	Are associated with cancer and neurologic disorders	—
B	Have eccentric nucleocapsid core in mature virion	Mouse mammary tumor virus
C	Have centrally located nucleocapsid core in mature virion	Human T-cell lymphotropic virus[a] (HTLV-1, HTLV-2, HTLV-5), Rous sarcoma virus (chickens)
D	Have nucleocapsid core with cylindrical form	Mason-Pfizer monkey virus
Lentivirinae	Have slow onset of disease, cause neurologic disorders and immunosuppression, are viruses with D-type cylindrical nucleocapsid core	Human immunodeficiency virus[a] (HIV-1, HIV-2), visna virus (sheep), caprine arthritis/encephalitis virus (goats)
Spumavirinae	Cause no known clinical disease but cause characteristic vacuolated "foamy" cytopathology	Human foamy virus[a]
HERVs	Retrovirus sequences that are integrated into human genome	Human placental virus

[a]Also classified as complex retroviruses because of the requirement for accessory proteins for replication.
HERVs, Human endogenous retroviruses.

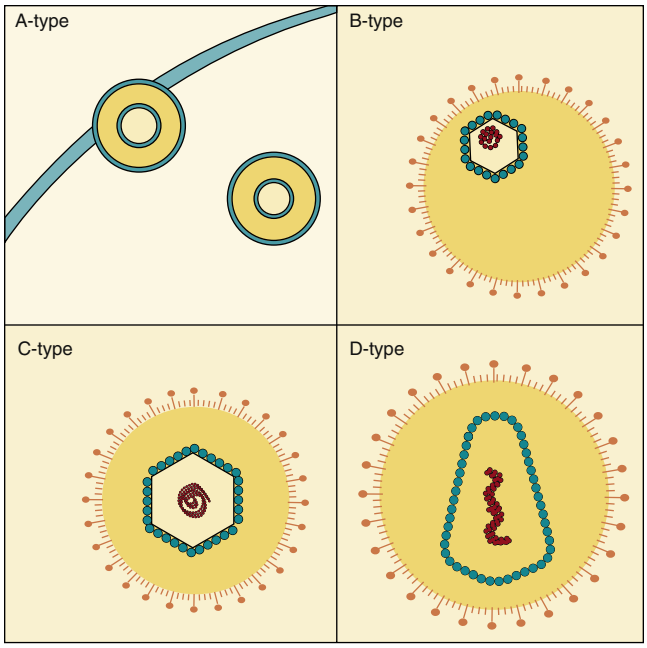


Fig. 54.1 1 Morphologic distinction of retrovirions. The morphology and position of the nucleocapsid core are used to classify the viruses. A-type particles are immature intracytoplasmic forms that bud through the plasma membrane and mature into B-type, C-type, and D-type particles.

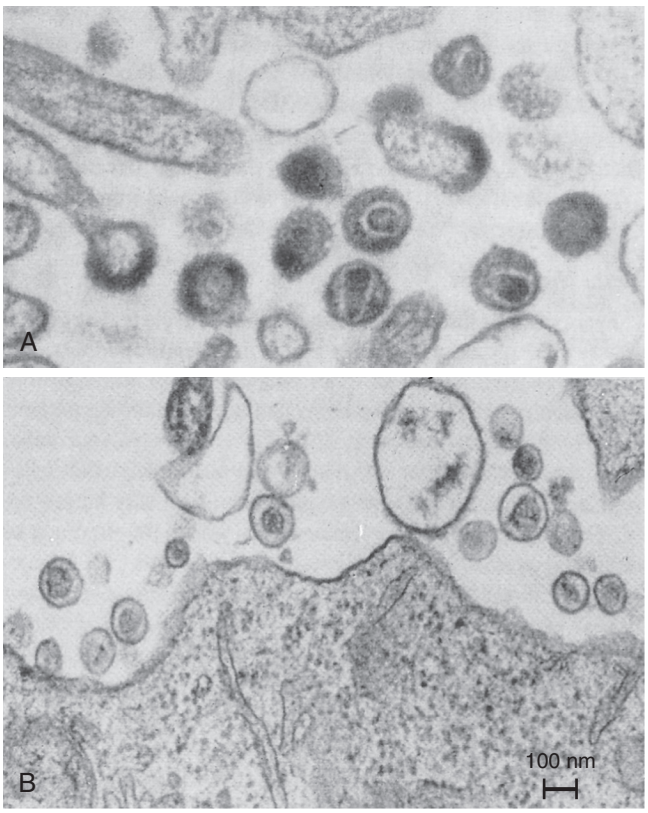


Fig. 54.2 Electron micrographs of two retroviruses. (A) HIV. Note the cone-shaped nucleocapsid in several of the virions. (B) Human T-cell lymphotropic virus. Note the C-type morphology characterized by a central symmetric nucleocapsid. (From Belshe, R.B., 1991. Textbook of Human Virology, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

BOX 54.1 Unique Characteristics of Retroviruses

Virus has an **enveloped** spherical virion that is 80 to 120 nm in diameter and encloses a capsid containing **two** copies of the **positive-strand RNA** genome (≈9 kilobases for HIV and human T-cell lymphotropic virus).
RNA-dependent DNA polymerase **(reverse transcriptase),** two copies of tRNA, protease, and integrase enzymes are carried in the virion.
Virus receptor is the initial determinant of tissue tropism.
Replication proceeds through a DNA intermediate termed the *provirus.*
The provirus **integrates** randomly into the host chromosome and becomes a cellular gene.
Transcription of the genome is regulated by the interaction of host transcription factors with promoter and enhancer elements in the long terminal repeat portion of the genome.
Simple retroviruses encode *gag, pol,* and *env* genes. **Complex viruses** also encode accessory genes (e.g., *tat, rev, nef, vif,* and *vpu* for HIV).
Virus assembles and buds from the plasma membrane.
Final morphogenesis of HIV *requires* protease cleavage of Gag and Gag-Pol polypeptides after envelopment.

tRNA, Transfer RNA.

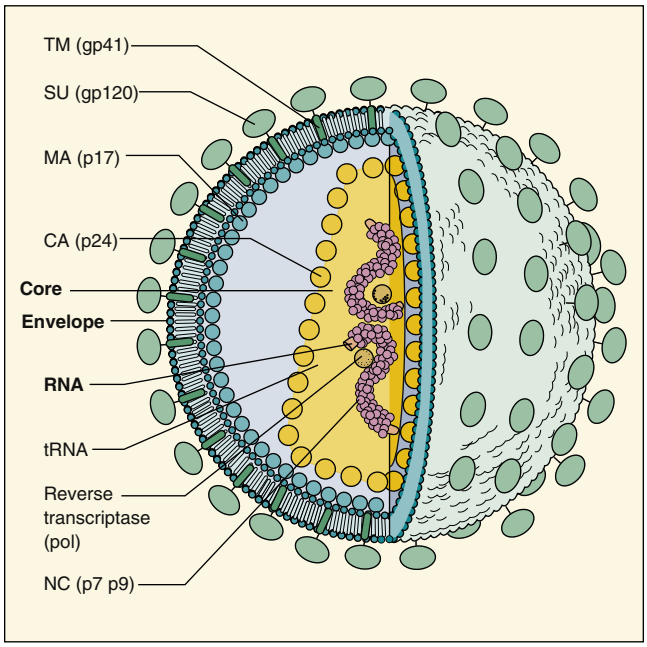


Fig. 54.3 Cross section of HIV. The enveloped virion contains two identical ribonucleic acid *(RNA)* strands, RNA polymerase, integrase, and two transfer RNAs *(tRNA)* base-paired to the genome within the protein core. This is surrounded by proteins and a lipid bilayer. The envelope spikes are the glycoprotein *(gp)*120 attachment protein and gp41 fusion protein. *CA,* Capsid; *MA,* matrix; *NC,* nucleocapsid; *SU,* surface component; *TM,* transmembrane component of envelope glycoprotein. (Modified from Gallo, R.C., Montagnier, L., 1988. AIDS in 1988. Scientific American 259, 41–48. Copyright George Kelvin.)

example, the (glycoprotein) gp62 of HTLV-1 is cleaved into gp46 and p21, and the *gp160 of HIV is cleaved into gp41 and gp120*. These glycoproteins form lollipop-like trimer spikes that are visible on the surface of the virion. The larger of the HIV glycoproteins (gp120), which binds to cell-surface

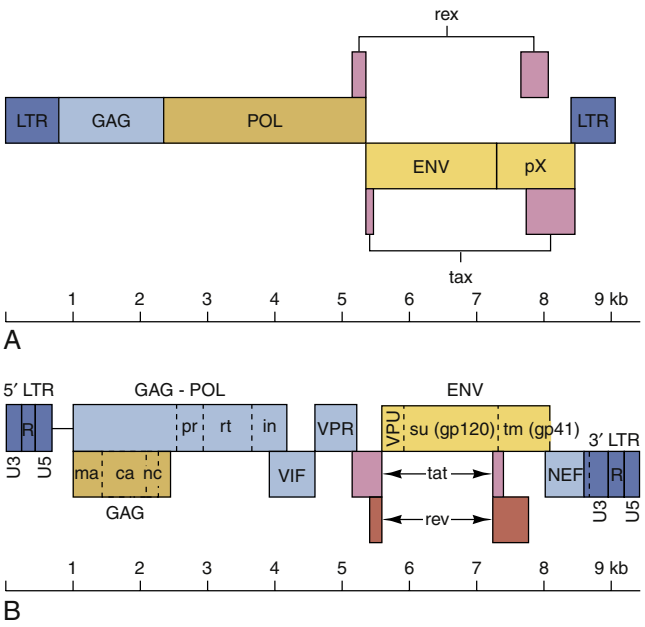


Fig. 54.4 Genomic structure of human retroviruses. (A) Human T-cell lymphotropic virus (HTLV-1). The *pX* gene includes sequences for tax, rex, p12, p13, p30, and HBZ. (B) HIV-1. The genes are defined in Table 54.2 and Fig. 54.3. Unlike the other genes of these viruses, production of the messenger RNA for *tax* and *rex* genes (HTLV-1) and *tat* and *rev* genes (HIV) requires excision of two intron units. HIV-2 has a similar genome map but has a *vpx* but not a *vpu* gene. *ENV,* Envelope glycoprotein gene; *GAG,* group antigen gene; *LTR,* long terminal repeat; *POL,* polymerase gene. Protein nomenclature for HIV: **ca,** Capsid protein; **in,** integrase; **ma,** matrix protein; **nc,** nucleocapsid protein; **pr,** protease; **rt,** reverse transcriptase; **su,** surface glycoprotein component; **tm,** transmembrane glycoprotein component. (Modified from Belshe, R.B., Textbook of Human Virology, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

TABLE 54.2 Retrovirus Genes and Their Function

Gene	Virus	Function
gag	All	Group-specific antigen: core and capsid proteins
int	All	Integrase
pol	All	Polymerase: reverse transcriptase, protease, integrase
pro	All	Protease
env	All	Envelope: glycoproteins
pX	HTLV	Sequence containing tax, rex, p12, p13, p30, and HBZ: facilitate persistent viral infection of the host
hbz	HTLV	Regulator of tax, promotes cell proliferation
tax	HTLV	Transactivation of viral and cellular genes
tat	HIV-1	Transactivation of viral and cellular genes
rex	HTLV	Regulation of RNA splicing and promotion of export to cytoplasm
rev	HIV-1	Regulation of RNA splicing and promotion of export to cytoplasm
nef	HIV-1	Decreases cell-surface CD4; facilitates T-cell activation, progression to AIDS (essential)
vif	HIV-1	Virus infectivity, promotion of assembly, blocks a cellular antiviral protein
vpu	HIV-1	Facilitates virion assembly and release, induces degradation of CD4
vpr (vpx[a])	HIV-1	Transport of complementary DNA to nucleus, arresting of cell growth; facilitates replication in macrophages
LTR	All	Promoter, enhancer elements

[a]Only in HIV-2.
HTLV, Human T-cell lymphotropic virus; *LTR,* long terminal repeat (sequence).

receptors, initially determines the tissue tropism of the virus and is recognized by neutralizing antibody. The smaller subunit (gp41 in HIV) forms the lollipop stick and promotes cell-to-cell fusion. The gp120 of HIV is extensively glycosylated, and *its antigenicity can drift and receptor specificity can shift by mutations that occur during the course of a chronic HIV infection*. These factors impede antibody clearance of the virus.

Replication

Replication of HIV will serve as an example for the other retroviruses unless noted. Infection starts with binding of the viral glycoprotein spikes (trimer of gp120 and gp41 molecules) to the primary receptor, **the CD4 protein,** and then a second receptor, a 7-transmembrane G-protein–coupled **chemokine receptor** (Fig. 54.5). *Binding to these receptors is the initial and major determinant of tissue tropism and host range for a retrovirus.* The co-receptor used on initial infection by HIV is **CCR5,** which is expressed on **myeloid and peripheral, activated, central memory, intestinal, and other subsets of CD4 T cells (macrophages, [M]-tropic virus).** Later, during chronic infection of a person, the *env* gene mutates so that the gp120 binds to a different chemokine receptor **(CXCR4),** which is expressed primarily on T cells **(T-tropic virus)** (Fig. 54.6). Binding to the chemokine receptor activates the cell and brings the viral envelope and cell plasma membrane close together, allowing the gp41 to interact with and promote fusion of the two membranes. Binding to CCR5 and gp41-mediated fusion are both targets for antiviral drugs. HIV can also bind to a cellular adhesion molecule, α-4 β-7 integrin (also known as VLA-4 [very late antigen-4] and the gut homing receptor for T cells), and dendritic cell–specific intercellular adhesion molecule-3-grabbing nonintegrin (DC-SIGN) on dendritic and other cells.

Once the genome is released into the cytoplasm, the early phase of replication begins. The RT, encoded by the *pol* gene, uses the tRNA in the virion as a primer and synthesizes a **complementary** negative-strand DNA **(cDNA).** The RT also acts as a ribonuclease H, degrades the RNA genome, and then synthesizes the positive strand of DNA (Fig. 54.7). The RT is the major target for antiviral drugs. During the synthesis of the virion DNA **(provirus),** sequences from each end of the genome (U3 and U5) are duplicated, attaching the LTRs to both ends. This process creates sequences necessary for integration and *creates enhancer and promoter sequences within the LTR for regulation of transcription*. The DNA copy of the genome is larger than the original RNA.

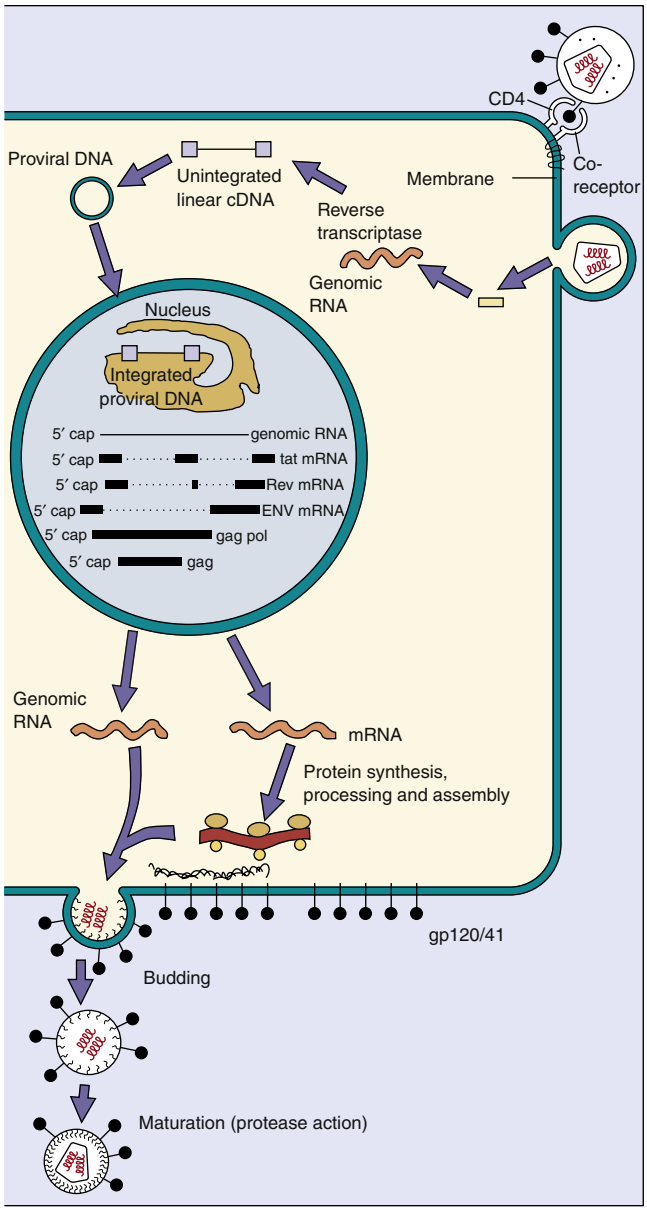


Fig. 54.5 Life cycle of HIV. HIV binds to CD4 and chemokine co-receptors and enters by fusion. The genome is reverse transcribed into deoxyribonucleic acid *(DNA)* in the cytoplasm, enters the nucleus, and is integrated into the nuclear DNA. Transcription and translation of the genome occur as a cellular gene in a fashion similar to that of human T-cell lymphotropic virus (see Fig. 54.7). The virus assembles at the plasma membrane and matures after budding from the cell. *cDNA,* Complementary DNA; *mRNA,* messenger ribonucleic acid. (Modified from Fauci, A.S., 1988. The human immunodeficiency virus: infectivity and mechanisms of pathogenesis. Science 239, 617–622.)

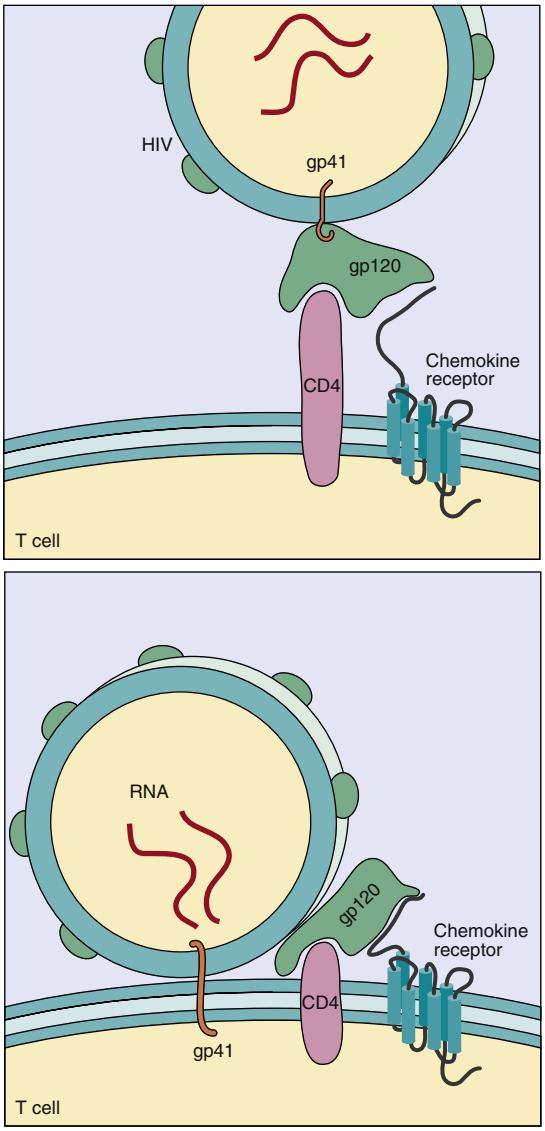


Fig. 54.6 Target cell binding of human immunodeficiency virus *(HIV).* The CCR5 chemokine receptor is a co-receptor with CD4 on initial infection of an individual, and after mutation of the *env* gene, the CXCR4 receptor is also used. *RNA,* Ribonucleic acid. (Modified from Balter, M., 1988. New hope in HIV disease. Science 274, 1988.)

RT is very error prone. For example, the error rate for the RT from HIV is one error per 2000 bases, or approximately five errors per genome (HIV, 9000 base pairs), which is the equivalent of at least one typo on every page of this text but different errors for every book. This genetic instability of HIV is responsible for promoting the generation of new strains of virus during a person's disease, which is a property that may alter the pathogenicity of the virus and promote antiviral resistance or immune escape.

Unlike other retroviruses, the double-stranded cDNA of HIV and other lentiviruses can enter the nucleus through nuclear pores of resting T cells. Dissolution of the nuclear envelope on cell division is required by other retroviruses. The cDNA is then spliced into the host chromosome with the aid of a virus-encoded, virion-carried enzyme, **integrase.** Integration requires cell growth, but the cDNA of HIV and other lentiviruses can remain in the nucleus and cytoplasm in a nonintegrated circular DNA form until the cell is activated. Integrase is a target for an antiviral drug.

Once integrated, the late phase begins and viral DNA **provirus** is transcribed as a cellular gene by the host RNA polymerase II. Transcription of the genome produces a full-length RNA, which for simple retroviruses is processed to produce several mRNAs that contain the *gag, gag-pol,* or *env* gene sequences. The full-length transcripts of the genome can also be assembled into new virions.

Because the provirus acts as a cellular gene, its replication depends on the extent of methylation of the viral DNA and

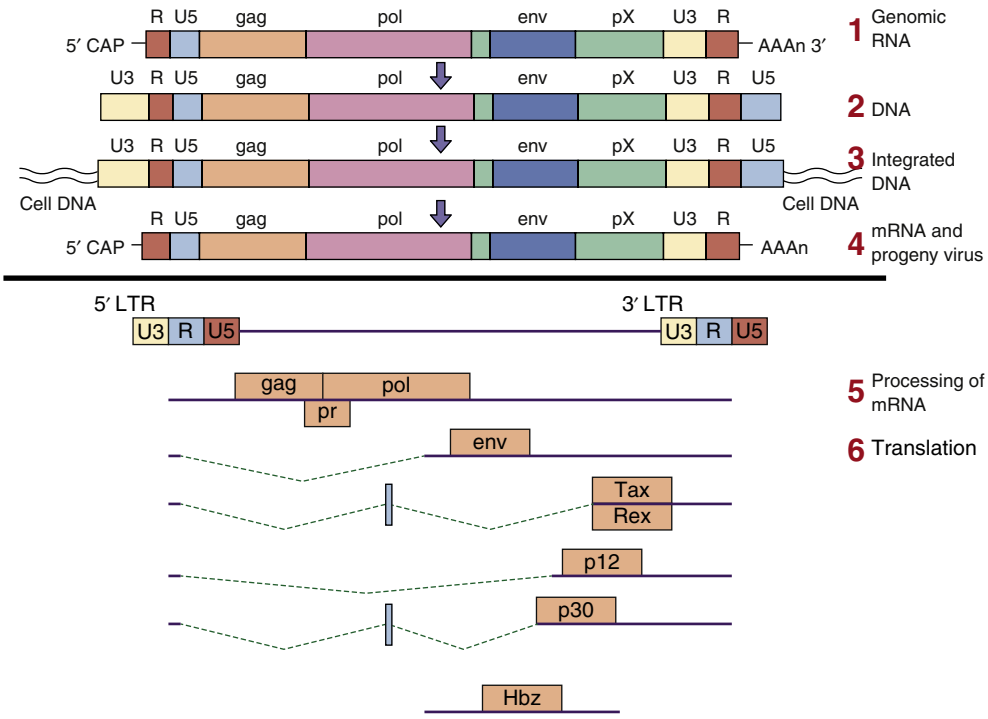


Fig. 54.7 Transcription and translation of human T-cell lymphotropic virus. (A similar but more complex approach is used for HIV.) *(1)* Genomic ribonucleic acid *(RNA)* is reverse transcribed and *(2)* circularized and then *(3)* integrated into the host chromatin. *(4)* A full-length RNA and *(5)* individual messenger RNAs *(mRNAs)* are processed from this RNA. The mRNA for tax, rex, and p30 require excision of two sequences from the *gag-pol* and *env* sequences. The other mRNAs, including the *env* mRNA, require excision of one sequence. *(6)* Translation of these mRNAs produces polyproteins, which are subsequently cleaved. *AAAn,* Polyadenylate. Gene nomenclature: *env,* Envelope glycoprotein; *gag,* group antigen gene; *pr,* protease; *pol,* polymerase; *rex,* regulator of splicing; *tax,* transactivator. Protein nomenclature: **C,** Carboxyl terminus of peptide; **CA,** capsid; **MA,** matrix; **N,** amino terminus; **NC,** nucleocapsid; **PR,** protease; **SU,** surface component; **TM,** transmembrane component of envelope glycoprotein. Prefixes: **gp,** glycoprotein; **gPr,** glycosylated precursor polyprotein; **p,** protein; **PR,** precursor polyprotein. (Adapted from Kannian, P., Green, P.L., 2010. Human T lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1): molecular biology and oncogenesis. Viruses 2 [9], 2037–2077.)

on the cell's growth rate, but mostly on the ability of the cell to recognize the enhancers and promoter sequences encoded in the LTR region. Stimulation of the cell by cytokines or mitogens produced in response to other infections generates transcription factors that bind to the LTR and for HIV are required to activate transcription of the integrated genome. For other retroviruses that encode viral oncogenes, these proteins promote cell growth and stimulate transcription and hence viral replication. *The ability of a cell to transcribe the retroviral genome is also a major determinant of tissue tropism and host range for a retrovirus.*

HTLV and HIV are **complex retroviruses** and undergo two phases of transcription. During the early phase, HTLV-1 expresses two proteins, **Tax** and **Rex,** which regulate viral replication. Unlike the other viral mRNAs, the mRNA for Tax and Rex requires more than one splicing step. The *rex* gene encodes two proteins that bind to a structure on the viral mRNA, preventing further splicing and promoting mRNA transport to the cytoplasm. The doubly spliced *tax*/*rex* mRNA is expressed early (at a low concentration of Rex), and structural proteins are expressed late (at a high concentration of Rex). Late in the infection, Rex selectively enhances expression of the singly spliced structural genes, which are required in abundance. The tax protein is a **transcriptional activator** and enhances transcription of the viral genome from the promoter gene sequence in the 5′ LTR. Tax also activates other genes, including those for interleukin (IL)-2, IL-3, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, and the receptor for IL-2. Activation of these genes promotes the growth of the infected T cell, which enhances virus replication.

HIV replication is regulated by as many as six **"accessory" gene products** (see Table 54.2). The **Tat** protein, like Tax, is a transactivator of the transcription of viral and cellular genes. The **Rev** protein acts like the Rex protein to regulate and promote transport of viral mRNA into the cytoplasm. The **Nef** protein reduces cell-surface expression of CD4 and major histocompatibility complex I (MHC I) molecules, alters T-cell signaling pathways, regulates the cytotoxicity of the virus, and is required to maintain high viral loads. *The Nef protein appears to be essential for causing the infection to progress to AIDS.* The **Vif** protein promotes assembly and maturation and binds to an antiviral cellular protein (APOBEC-3G) to prevent it from hypermutating and inactivating the cDNA and helps the virus replicate in myeloid and other cells. The **Vpu protein** reduces cell-surface CD4 expression and enhances virion release. The **Vpr protein** (Vpx in HIV-2) is important for transport of the cDNA into the nucleus. Vpr protein also arrests the cell in the G2 phase of the growth cycle, which is likely to be optimal for HIV replication. Vpx facilitates virus replication in dendritic cells and macrophages. Interestingly, this facilitates antigen presentation on MHC-1 antigens, which promotes CD8 cytotoxic T-cell production and can limit HIV-2 disease progression.

The proteins translated from the *gag, gag-pol,* and *env* mRNAs are synthesized as polyproteins and are subsequently cleaved to functional proteins (see Fig. 54.7). The viral glycoproteins are synthesized, glycosylated, and

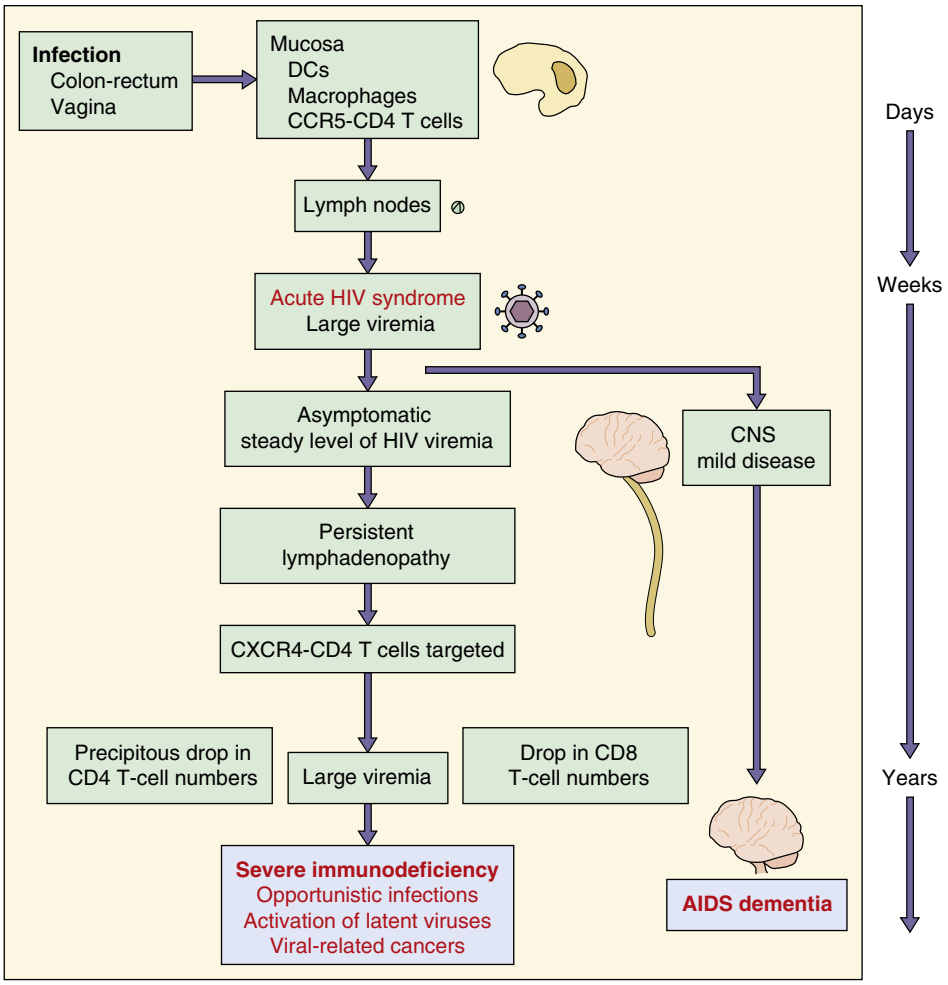


Fig. 54.8 Pathogenesis of human immunodeficiency virus *(HIV)*. HIV causes lytic and latent infection of macrophage, dendritic cells, and CD4 T cells and disrupts neuronal function. The outcomes of these actions are immunodeficiency and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome *(AIDS)* dementia. *CNS,* Central nervous system. (Modified from Fauci, A.S., 1988. The human immunodeficiency virus: infectivity and mechanisms of pathogenesis. Science 239, 617–622.)

processed by the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi apparatus. These glycoproteins are then cleaved, associate to form trimers, and migrate to the plasma membrane.

The Gag and Gag-Pol polyproteins are acylated and then bind to the plasma membrane containing the envelope glycoprotein. The association of two copies of the genome and cellular tRNA molecules promotes budding of the virion.

Envelopment and release of retroviruses occur at the cell surface. The HIV envelope picks up cellular proteins, including MHC molecules, on budding. After envelopment and release from the cell, the viral protease cleaves the Gag and Gag-Pol polyproteins to release the RT and form the virion core, ensuring inclusion of these components into the virion. The protease step is required for the production of infectious virions and is a target for antiviral drugs.

Replication and budding of the retrovirus do not necessarily kill the cell. HIV can also spread from cell to cell through the production of multinucleated giant cells, or syncytia. Syncytia are fragile, and their formation enhances the cytolytic activity of the virus.

Human Immunodeficiency Virus

There are four genotypes of HIV-1, designated M (main), N, O, and P. Most HIV-1 is of the M subtype, and this is divided into 11 subtypes, or clades, designated A to K (for HIV-2, A to F). The designations are based on differences in the sequence of their *env* (7% to 12% difference) and *gag* genes, and hence the antigenicity and immune recognition of the gp120 and capsid proteins of these viruses.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

The major determinant in the pathogenesis and disease caused by HIV is the **virus tropism for CD4-expressing T cells and myeloid cells** (Fig. 54.8 and Box 54.2). HIV-induced immunosuppression (AIDS) results from a reduction in the number of CD4 T cells, which decimates the ability to activate and control innate and immune responses.

During sexual transmission, HIV infects a mucosal surface, enters, and rapidly infects cells of the mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT), including the intestine. The

BOX 54.2 Disease Mechanisms of Human Immunodeficiency Virus

HIV primarily infects CD4 T cells and cells of the myeloid lineage (e.g., monocytes, macrophages, alveolar macrophages of the lung, dendritic cells, and microglial cells of the brain).
Virus mutates during chronic infection and switches from myeloid/T-cell tropic to T-cell tropic based on co-receptor preference.
Virus causes lytic infection of activated permissive CD4 T cells and induces apoptosis-like death of nonpermissive CD4 T cells.
Virus causes persistent low-level productive and latent infection of myeloid lineage cells and memory T cells.
Virus causes syncytia formation, with cells expressing large amounts of CD4 antigen (T cells); subsequent lysis of the cells occurs.
Virus alters T-cell, dendritic cell, and macrophage cell function.
Virus reduces CD4 T-cell numbers and helper-cell activation of CD8 T-cell, macrophage, and other cell functions.
CD8 T-cell numbers and macrophage function decrease.
Infected microglial cells disrupt neuronal function.

initial stages of infection are mediated by M-tropic viruses that bind to CD4 and the CCR5 chemokine receptors on dendritic and other monocyte-macrophage lineage cells, as well as memory, TH1, most intestine-associated T cells, and other CD4 T cells. Individuals who are deficient in the CCR5 receptor are also resistant to HIV infection, and CCR5 binding is a target for an antiviral drug. The CCR5-delta 32 mutation that prevents surface expression of this co-receptor is prevalent in northern Europeans (1% are homozygous and 10% to 15% are heterozygous for the mutation).

Targeting of CCR5 or α-4 β-7 integrin–expressing CD4 T cells rapidly depletes the intestinal lymphoid tissue of CD4 T cells. Depletion of the intestinal CD4 T-cell population wreaks havoc on immune regulation of normal gut flora and maintenance of the intestinal mucosal epithelium, leading to leakage and diarrhea.

Macrophages, dendritic cells, memory T cells, and hematopoietic stem cells are persistently infected with HIV and are the major reservoirs and means of distribution of HIV (Trojan horse). HIV can bind to the DC-SIGN lectin molecule and remain on the surface of dendritic cells (including follicular dendritic cells). CD4 T cells can be infected with the cell-bound HIV or by cell-to-cell transmission of virus on binding to the dendritic cell. Late in the disease progression, mutation in the *env* gene for the gp120 occurs for some of the virus, and this shifts its tropism from M-tropic (R5) to T-tropic (X4 virus). The gp120 of the T-tropic virus binds to CD4 and the CXCR4 chemokine receptor. Some viruses may use both receptors (R5X4 viruses). This expands the viral target range to include almost all CD4 T cells.

Killing of CD4 T cells may result from direct HIV-induced cytolysis (including syncytia formation) and cytotoxic T-cell–induced immune cytolysis, but large numbers of nonpermissive resting T cells commit a type of inflammatory cell suicide (pyroptosis) induced by the presence of large amounts of nonintegrated circular DNA copies of the genome. Pyroptosis is an inflammatory form of cell death that may lure more unactivated T cells to the site to be infected and also succumb to pyroptosis.

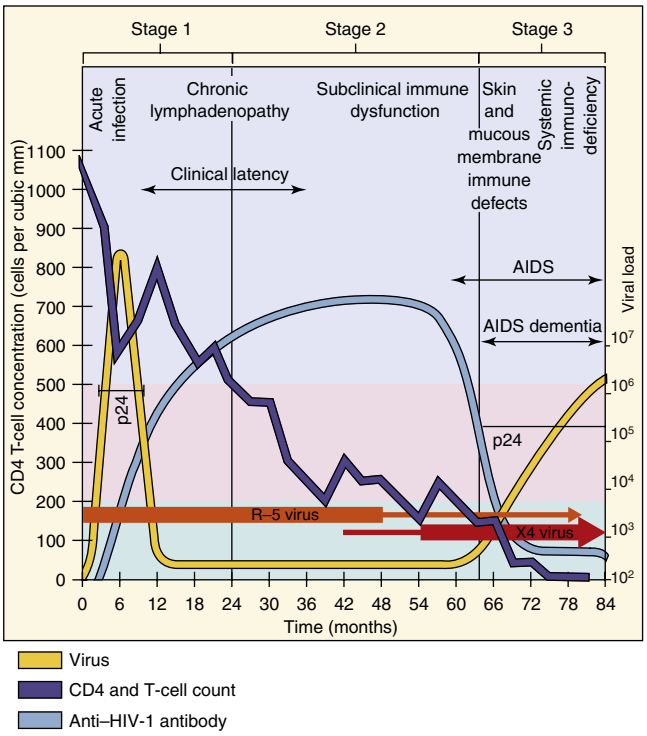


Fig. 54.9 Time course and stages of human immunodeficiency virus *(HIV)*. A long clinical latency period follows the initial mononucleosis-like symptoms. Initial infection is with the R5–M-tropic virus, and following mutation, the X4–T-tropic virus. The progressive decrease in the number of CD4 T cells, even during the latency period, allows opportunistic infections to occur. The stages in HIV disease are defined by the CD4 T-cell levels and occurrence of opportunistic diseases. HIV can be detected by the presence of p24, HIV genome, or antibodies to the virus. (Modified from Redfield, R.R., Burke, D.S., 1996. HIV infection: the clinical picture. Scientific American 259, 90–98; updated 1996.)

The course of HIV disease parallels the reduction in CD4 T-cell numbers and the amount of virus in the blood (Fig. 54.9). HIV infects and depletes the intestinal CCR5-expressing CD4 T cells very soon after infection. During the subsequent acute phase of the infection, there is a large burst of virus production (10^7 particles per milliliter of plasma). T-cell proliferation in response to antigen presentation by infected dendritic cells, macrophages, and even activated CD4 T cells promotes a **mononucleosis-like syndrome.** CD8 T cells kill many infected cells and limit virus production. Virus levels in the blood decrease and the individual is asymptomatic (latent period), but viral replication continues in the lymph nodes, causing disruption of their structure and function, and CD4 T-cell numbers continue to drop. Late in the disease, CD4 levels decrease to the point that they cannot maintain the antiviral action of CD8 T cells, and then virus levels in the blood increase greatly, T-tropic virus rises, CD4 T-cell numbers drop faster, the structures of the lymph nodes are destroyed, and the patient becomes immunodeficient.

The central role of the CD4 helper T cells in the initiation and control of innate and immune responses is indicated by the onset of opportunistic diseases after HIV infection (Fig. 54.10). Activated CD4 T cells initiate immune responses by the release of cytokines required for the activation of epithelial cells, neutrophils, macrophages, other T cells, B cells, and natural killer cells. The CD4 TH17 responses that activate neutrophils and protect the mucoepithelium are

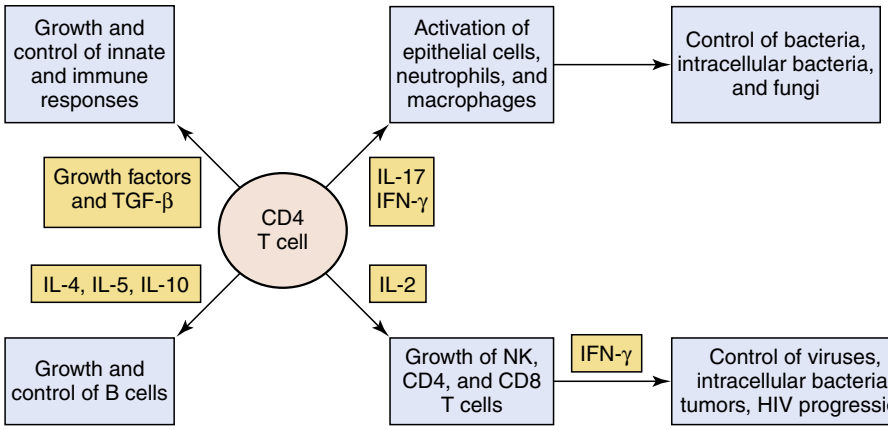


Fig. 54.10 CD4 T cells have a critical role in activating and regulating cell-mediated immune responses, especially toward intracellular pathogens. Human immunodeficiency virus *(HIV)*–induced loss of CD4 T cells results in loss of the functions activated and regulated by the indicated cytokines. *IFN,* Interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *NK,* natural killer; *TGF-β,* transforming growth factor-β.

the first to be depleted (CD4 numbers < 500/μL), increasing susceptibility to fungal and bacterial infections. As the CD4 T cells decrease (CD4 numbers < 200/μL), TH1 responses dissipate and cannot activate sufficient numbers of CD8 T cells and macrophages to control new infections of intracellular bacteria and latent viruses (e.g., herpesviruses and JC polyomavirus progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy [PML] and Epstein-Barr virus [EBV] and human herpes virus [HHV]-8–associated cancers [Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphomas, Kaposi sarcoma]).

In addition to immunodepression, HIV can also cause neurologic abnormalities. The microglial cell and macrophage are the predominant HIV-infected cell types in the brain. Infected monocytes and microglial cells release neurotoxic substances or chemotactic factors that promote inflammatory responses and neuronal death in the brain. Immunosuppression also puts the individual at risk of opportunistic infections of the brain.

The innate and immune response attempts to restrict viral infection but also contributes to pathogenesis. The infected cells have enzymes that restrict retrovirus replication (including endogenous retroviruses), but HIV can override their actions. The presence of unintegrated HIV cDNA triggers type 1 interferon production and inflammatory cell suicide (pyroptosis). CD8 T cells are critical to limiting HIV disease progression. CD8 T cells can kill infected cells by direct cytotoxic action and can produce suppressive factors that restrict viral replication, including chemokines that also block the binding of virus to its co-receptor. Individuals with certain MHC types (human leukocyte antigen [HLA] B27 or B57) will preferentially bind HIV peptides rather than cellular peptides to make infected cells better targets for CD8 T-cell killing, and these individuals are more resistant to HIV disease. Neutralizing antibodies are generated against gp120. Antibody-coated virus can be infectious, however, and is taken up by macrophages.

HIV has several ways of escaping immune control (Table 54.3). Most significant is the virus' ability to undergo mutation and hence alter its antigenicity and escape antibody clearance. Persistent infection of macrophages and resting CD4 T cells maintains the virus in an immune-privileged cell and cells in immune-privileged tissues (e.g., central nervous system and genital organs). Ultimately, infection of CD4 T cells compromises the entire immune system.

TABLE 54.3 Means of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Escape from the Immune System

Characteristic	Function
Infection of dendritic cells, macrophages, and CD4 T helper cells	Loss of cellular activators and controllers of the immune system
Antigenic drift (via mutation) of gp120	Evasion of antibody detection
Heavy glycosylation of gp120	Evasion of antibody detection
Direct cell-to-cell spread and syncytia formation	Evasion of antibody detection

EPIDEMIOLOGY

AIDS was first noted in homosexual men in the United States but has spread in epidemic proportions throughout the population (Figs. 54.11 and 54.12; Box 54.3). Although the number of HIV-infected people is very large and continues to rise, as of 2016, the rate of increase has begun to decrease because of prevention campaigns.

HIV-1 is genetically most similar to a chimpanzee immunodeficiency virus. HIV-2 is more similar to simian immunodeficiency virus. The initial human infection occurred in Africa before the 1930s but went unnoticed in rural areas. The migration of infected people to the cities and increased nonsterile use of syringes after the 1960s brought the virus into population centers, and cultural acceptance of prostitution promoted its transmission throughout the population.

Geographic Distribution

HIV-1 infections are spreading worldwide, with the largest number of AIDS cases in sub-Saharan Africa, but with a growing number of cases in Asia, the United States, and the rest of the world (see Fig. 54.12). HIV-2 is more prevalent in Africa (especially West Africa) than in the United States and other parts of the world. HIV-2 produces a disease similar to but less severe than AIDS. Heterosexual transmission is the major means of spread of HIV-1 and HIV-2 in Africa, with men and women equally affected by these viruses. The different clades of HIV-1 have different worldwide geographic distributions.

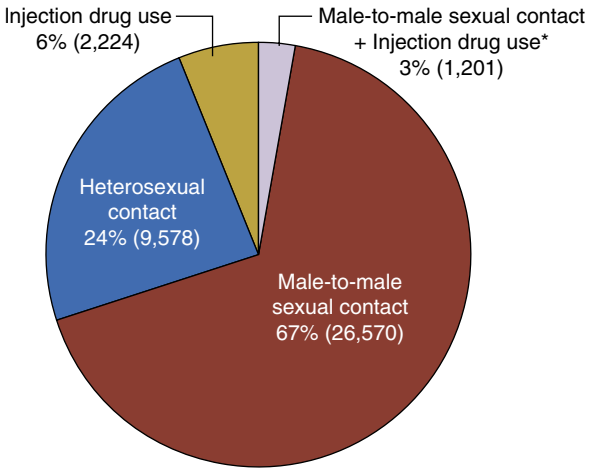


Fig. 54.11 Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome *(AIDS)* statistics for the United States as of 2016. The percentages of AIDS cases are presented by exposure category. In the United States, unlike Africa and many other parts of the world, men having sex with men (MSM) is the largest exposure category. However, intravenous *(IV)* drug abusers and heterosexual partners are becoming more prevalent. (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2016. HIV Surveillance Report. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/library/reports/surveillance/cdc-hiv-info-sheet-diagnoses-of-HIV-infection-2016.pdf.) accessed 10.4.2019

Although rare, there are cases of long-term survivors. Some of these result from infection with HIV strains that lack a functional Nef protein. The Nef protein is necessary to promote the progression of HIV infection to AIDS. Resistance to the virus also correlates with a lack of or mutation of the CCR5 chemokine co-receptor for the virus or specific HLA types that promote more vigorous cytotoxic T-cell responses that control the infection.

Transmission

The presence of **HIV in the blood, semen, and vaginal secretions** of infected people and **the long asymptomatic period of infection** are factors that have promoted spread of the disease through sexual contact and exposure to contaminated blood and blood products (Table 54.4). The fetus and newborn are likely to acquire the virus from an infected mother. HIV is *not,* however, transmitted by casual contact, touching, hugging, kissing, coughing, sneezing, insect bites, water, food, utensils, toilets, swimming pools, or public baths.

Populations at Highest Risk

Sexually active people (men who have sex with men [MSM] and heterosexual men and women), IV drug abusers and their sexual partners, and the newborns of HIV-positive

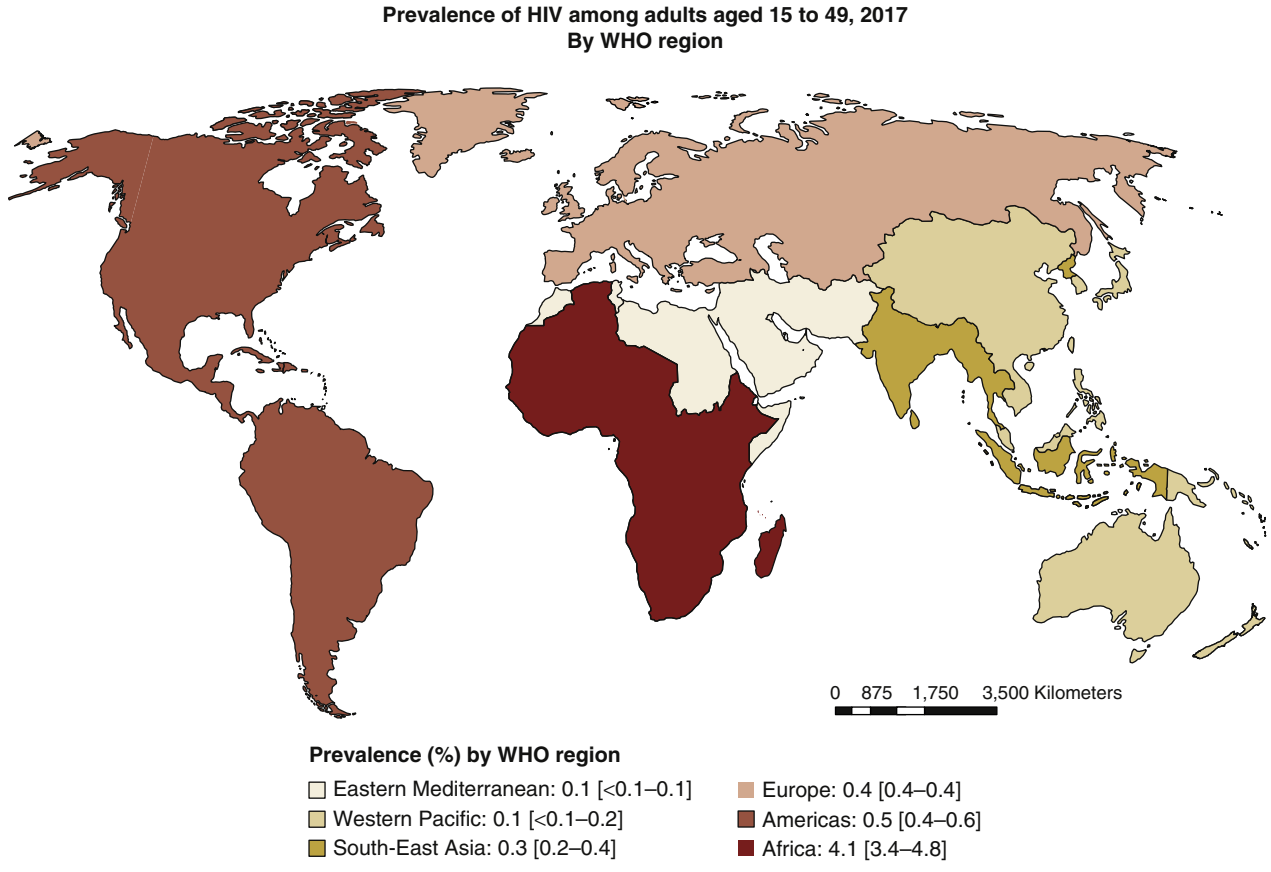


Fig. 54.12 Upper estimates of numbers of people living with HIV infections as of the end of 2017. More than 70 million people have been infected with the HIV virus, about 35 million people have died of HIV, and 36.9 million (31.1 to 43.9 million) people were living with HIV at the end of 2017.The highest rates are in sub-Saharan Africa. (Global Health Observatory Data, 2019. Summary of the global HIV epidemic [2018]. http://www.who.int/gho/hiv/en/ [accessed 13.09.2018.])

BOX 54.3 Epidemiology of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infections

Disease Viral Factors

Enveloped virus is easily inactivated and must be transmitted in body fluids.
Disease has a long prodromal period.
Virus can be shed before development of identifiable symptoms.

Transmission

Virus is present in blood, semen, and vaginal secretions.
See Table 54.4 for modes of transmission.

Who Is at Risk?

Intravenous drug abusers, sexually active people with many partners (MSM and heterosexual), prostitutes, newborns of HIV-positive mothers, sexual partners of infected individuals.
Blood and organ transplant recipients and hemophiliacs treated before 1985 (before prescreening programs).

Geography/Season

There is an expanding epidemic worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

Antiviral drugs limit progression of disease.
Antiviral drugs for pre- and post-exposure prophylaxis.
No vaccines available.
Safe, monogamous sex helps limit spread.
Sterile injection needles should be used.
Circumcision.
Large-scale screening programs of blood for transfusions, organs for transplants, and clotting factors used by hemophiliacs.

MSM, Men who have sex with men.

TABLE 54.4 Transmission of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection

Routes	Specific Transmission
KNOWN ROUTES OF TRANSMISSION	
Inoculation in blood	Transfusion of blood and blood products Needle sharing among intravenous drug abusers Needlestick, open wound, and mucous membrane exposure in health care workers Tattoo needles
Sexual transmission	Anal and vaginal intercourse
Perinatal transmission	Intrauterine transmission Peripartum transmission Breast milk
ROUTES NOT INVOLVED IN TRANSMISSION	
Close personal contact	Household members Health care workers not exposed to blood

mothers are at highest risk for HIV infections, with black and Hispanic persons disproportionately represented in the HIV-positive population.

As already noted, AIDS was initially described in young, promiscuous, homosexual men and is still prevalent in the gay community. Anal intercourse is an efficient means of viral transmission. However, heterosexual transmission by vaginal intercourse and IV drug abuse have become the major routes by which HIV is being spread in the larger population. The prevalence of HIV in drug abusers stems from sharing contaminated syringe needles, which is a common practice in "shooting galleries." In New York alone, more than 80% of IV drug abusers are positive for the HIV antibody, and these people are now the major source of heterosexual and congenital transmission of the virus. Tattoo needles and contaminated inks are other potential means by which HIV can be transmitted.

Before 1985, people receiving blood transfusions or organ transplants and hemophiliacs receiving clotting factors from pooled blood were at high risk for HIV infection. HIV was spread in many countries by health care workers using shared or improperly sterilized syringe needles or instruments. Proper screening of the blood supply and transplant tissue in the United States and elsewhere has practically eliminated the danger of HIV being transmitted in blood transfusions (see Fig. 54.11). Hemophiliacs who receive pooled clotting factors are protected further by proper handling of the factor (prolonged heating) to kill the virus or by the use of genetically engineered proteins.

Health care workers are at risk for HIV infection from accidental needlesticks or cuts, or through the exposure of broken skin and mucosal membranes to contaminated blood. Fortunately, studies of needlestick victims have shown that seroconversion occurs in less than 1% of those exposed to HIV-positive blood.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

AIDS is one of the most devastating epidemics ever recorded. Most HIV-infected people will become symptomatic, and the overwhelming majority of them will ultimately succumb to the disease without treatment. HIV disease progresses from an asymptomatic nonspecific or mononucleosis-like disease to profound immunosuppression, referred to as **AIDS** (Clinical Case 54.1; see Fig. 54.9). The diseases related to AIDS mainly consist of opportunistic infections, cancers, and the direct effects of HIV on the central nervous system (Table 54.5).

The initial symptoms after HIV infection (acute phase, 2 to 4 weeks after infection) may resemble those of influenza or heterophile antibody negative mononucleosis, with "aseptic" meningitis or a rash occurring up to 3 months after infection (Box 54.4). As in EBV mononucleosis, the symptoms stem from T-cell responses triggered by a widespread infection of antigen-presenting cells (macrophages). These symptoms subside spontaneously after 2 to 3 weeks and are followed by a period of asymptomatic infection or a persistent generalized lymphadenopathy that may last for several years. During this period, the virus is replicating in the lymph nodes.

Deterioration of the immune response is indicated by increased susceptibility to opportunistic pathogens. The onset of symptoms correlates with a reduction in the number of CD4 T cells to less than 500/μL and increased levels of virus (as determined by genome quantitation techniques) and viral protein p24 in the blood. Full-blown AIDS occurs when **CD4 T-cell counts are less than 200/μL** (oftentimes to 50/μL or undetectable) and **virus load is greater than 75,000 copies/mL** and involves the onset of more

Clinical Case 54.1 **An Early Case of HIV/AIDS**

Elliott and associates (*Ann Int Med* 98:290–293, 1983) reported that in July 1981, a 27-year-old man complained of dysuria, fever, chills, night sweats, weakness, dyspnea, cough with white sputum, anorexia, and a 16-pound weight loss. For the past 7 years, he had been receiving up to 4 monthly infusions of factor VIII concentrate to correct his hemophilia. He did not have any other risk factors for HIV infection. In August, pulmonary infiltrates were visible by chest radiograph, and in September, blood test results were hemoglobin 10.7 g/dL, leukocytes 4200/μL with 50% polymorphonuclear leukocytes, 2% band forms, 36% lymphocytes, and 12% monocytes. Immunoglobulin G antibody was present to cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, *Toxoplasma,* hepatitis B surface antigen, and hepatitis B core. An immune deficiency was suggested by a lack of response in tuberculin, mumps, and *Candida* skin tests. The presence of *Pneumocystis jirovecii* in a methenamine silver stain of a transbronchial lung biopsy specimen prompted oral treatment with trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole. Episodes of thrush caused by *Candida albicans* prompted treatment with ketoconazole. In May of 1982, development of splenomegaly and lymphadenopathy prompted admission to the hospital, with a leukocyte count of 2100/μL and only 11% lymphocytes. At this time, *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* was detected in bone marrow, lymph nodes, and granulomas, and total lymphocyte counts were 448/μL, compared with a normal count of 2668/μL; levels were not responsive to mitogen stimulation. In July 1982, total lymphocyte count fell to 220/μL, with 45/μL CD3-positive T cells (normal 1725 and 64, respectively) and a CD4:CD8 ratio of 1:4 (normal 2.2:1). The patient continued to deteriorate and died at the end of September 1982. Cytomegalovirus was isolated from lung and liver and *M. avium-intracellulare* from most tissue samples. In 1981, AIDS was a newly described disease, and HIV had not been discovered. Monoclonal antibodies and immunophenotyping were new technologies. The patient acquired HIV infection from the factor VIII concentrate at a time before routine screening of the blood supply.

TABLE 54.5 Indicator Diseases of Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome[a]

Infection	Disease (Selected)
OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTIONS	
Protozoal	Toxoplasmosis of the brain Cryptosporidiosis with diarrhea Isosporiasis with diarrhea
Fungal	Candidiasis of the esophagus, trachea, and lungs *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia Cryptococcosis (extrapulmonary) Histoplasmosis (disseminated) Coccidioidomycosis (disseminated)
Viral	Cytomegalovirus disease Herpes simplex virus infection (persistent or disseminated) Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (JC virus) Hairy leukoplakia caused by Epstein-Barr virus
Bacterial	*Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* complex (disseminated) Any "atypical" mycobacterial disease Extrapulmonary tuberculosis *Salmonella* septicemia (recurrent) Pyogenic bacterial infections (multiple or recurrent)
OPPORTUNISTIC NEOPLASIAS	
	Kaposi sarcoma Primary lymphoma of the brain Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphomas HPV-associated cancers
OTHERS	
	HIV wasting syndrome HIV encephalopathy Lymphoid interstitial pneumonia

[a]Manifestations of HIV infection—defining AIDS according to criteria of Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
Modified from Belshe, R.B., Textbook of Human Virology, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.
HPV, Human papillomavirus.

BOX 54.4 Clinical Summary

A 32-year-old former heroin addict had a mononucleosis-like illness for 2 weeks. He recalled experiencing occasional night sweats and fever for 3 years and then presented with thrush, cytomegalovirus retinitis, and *Pneumocystis* pneumonia. His CD4 T-cell count was 50/μL. He was started on highly active antiretroviral therapy.

significant diseases, including HIV wasting syndrome (weight loss and diarrhea for >1 month) and opportunistic infections, malignancies, and dementia (see Table 54.5).

AIDS may be manifested in several different ways, including lymphadenopathy and fever, opportunistic infections, malignancies, and AIDS-related dementia.

Lymphadenopathy and Fever

Lymphadenopathy and fever develop insidiously and may be accompanied by weight loss and malaise. These findings may persist indefinitely or progress. Symptoms may also include opportunistic infections, diarrhea, night sweats, and fatigue. The wasting disease is termed **slim disease** in Africa.

Opportunistic Infections

Normally benign infections caused by agents such as *Candida albicans* and other fungi, DNA viruses capable of recurrent disease, parasites, and intracellularly growing bacteria cause significant disease after HIV depletion of CD4 T cells and subsequent reduction of CD8 T cells (see Table 54.5). ***Pneumocystis jirovecii*–induced *Pneumocystis* pneumonia (PCP)** is a major sign of AIDS. Oral candidiasis (thrush), cerebral toxoplasmosis, and cryptococcal meningitis also often occur, as do prolonged and severe viral infections, including molluscum contagiosum poxvirus, papovaviruses (JC virus, causing PML), and recurrences of the herpesviruses (e.g., herpes simplex virus, varicella-zoster virus, EBV [hairy leukoplakia of the mouth, EBV-associated lymphomas], cytomegalovirus [CMV; especially retinitis, pneumonia, and

bowel disease], HHV-8 [Kaposi sarcoma]). Tuberculosis and other mycobacterial diseases and diarrhea caused by common pathogens (*Salmonella, Shigella,* and *Campylobacter* species) and uncommon agents (cryptosporidia, mycobacteria, and *Amoeba* species) are also common problems.

Malignancies

The most notable malignancy to develop in patients with AIDS is the HHV-8–associated Kaposi sarcoma, which is a rare and otherwise benign skin cancer that disseminates to involve visceral organs in immunodeficient patients. EBV-related lymphomas are also prevalent.

Dementia Related to AIDS

AIDS-related dementia may result from opportunistic infection or HIV infection of the macrophages and microglial cells of the brain. Patients with this condition may undergo a slow deterioration of their intellectual abilities and exhibit other signs of a neurologic disorder, similar to the signs of the early stages of Alzheimer disease. Neurologic deterioration could also result from infection with one of the many opportunistic infections.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Tests for HIV infection are performed for one of four reasons: (1) to identify those with the infection so that antiviral drug therapy can be initiated, (2) to identify carriers who may transmit infection to others (specifically blood or organ donors, pregnant women, and sex partners), (3) to follow the course of disease and confirm the diagnosis of AIDS, or (4) to evaluate the efficacy of treatment (Table 54.6).

The chronic nature of the disease allows the use of serologic tests to document HIV infection, as supplemented by genome detection and quantitation with PCR-related techniques. HIV is very difficult to grow in tissue culture, and virus isolation is not performed. Recent infection or late-stage disease are indicated by the presence of large quantities of viral RNA in blood samples, the p24 viral antigen, or the RT enzyme (see Fig. 54.9).

Genomics

Newer methods for detection and quantitation of HIV genomes (viral nucleic acid tests **[NATs]**) in blood have become a mainstay for following the course of an HIV infection and the efficacy and patient compliance with antiviral therapy. After converting viral RNA into DNA with an RT (laboratory provided), the cDNA of the genome can be detected by PCR and quantitated by real-time PCR, branched-chain DNA amplification, and other methods (see Chapter 5). Determination of the viral load (amount of genome in blood) is an excellent indicator of the course of disease and efficacy of therapy. These tests are usually more expensive than serologic tests and are not used for screening.

Serology

Screening of blood and organ donors is performed by serology. HIV antibody may develop slowly, taking 4 to 8 weeks in most patients; however, it may take 6 months or more in as many as 5% of those infected (see Fig. 54.9). As such, the new fifth generation screening test is a multiplexed enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) that combines detection of the viral p24 antigen, which is present during the early, acute phase of disease, with detection of patient antibody to HIV-1 and HIV-2. Before the combined assays, Western blot analysis of patient serum was necessary to confirm seropositive results. The Western blot assay (see Fig. 6.6 and Fig. 39.7) demonstrates the presence of antibody to the viral antigens (p24 or p31) and glycoproteins (gp41 and gp120/160). In addition to assays for screening blood, assays of urine, oral mucosal transudate tests, and rapid screening and home screening tests are also available.

TABLE 54.6 Laboratory Analysis for Human Immunodeficiency Virus

Test	Purpose
SEROLOGY	
Combined antigen and antibody enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay	Initial screening
Latex agglutination	Initial screening
Rapid oral antibody test	Initial screening
Urine antibody test	Initial screening
Western blot analysis (for antibody)	Confirmation test[a]
Virion RNA RT-PCR	Detection of virus in blood
Real-time RT-PCR	Quantitation of virus in blood
Branched-chain DNA	Quantitation of virus in blood
p24 antigen	Early marker of infection
Isolation of virus	Test not readily available
CD4 T-cell counts, CD4:CD8 T-cell ratio	Indicators of HIV disease

[a]Western blot confirmation is not necessary with fifth-generation combined p24 antigen and antibody enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay tests.
RT-PCR, Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction.

Immunologic Studies

The status of an HIV infection can be inferred from an analysis of the T-cell subsets. The absolute number of CD4 lymphocytes and the *ratio of CD4 to CD8 lymphocytes* are *abnormally low* in HIV-infected people. The particular concentration of CD4 lymphocytes identifies the stage of AIDS. The choice to initiate therapy is oftentimes based on CD4 T-cell counts.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The numbers of approved drugs and combinations of anti-HIV drugs have increased to allow customizing personal therapy to optimize efficacy and limit adverse effects in an individual. The principal (as of 2018) anti-HIV therapies are listed in Box 54.5, but more complete lists are available on line (see Bibliography). The anti-HIV drugs approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration are classified by their mechanism of action.

BOX 54.5 Potential Antiviral Therapies for Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection

Nucleoside Analog Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors

Azidothymidine (AZT) (Zidovudine) [Retrovir]
3TC (Lamivudine) [Epivir]
Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (adenosine class) [Viread]
ABC (Abacavir) [Ziagen]
FTC (Emtricitabine) [Emtriva]

Nonnucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors

Nevirapine [Viramune]
Doravirine [Pifeltro]
Efavirenz [Sustiva]
Etravirine [Intelence]
Rilpivirine [Edurant]

Protease Inhibitors (PIs)

Tipranavir [Aptivus]
Darunavir [Prezista]
Ritonavir [Norvir]
Fosamprenavir [Lexiva]
Atazanavir [Reyataz]
Saquinavir [Invirase]

Binding and Fusion Inhibitors

CCR5 inhibitor (maraviroc) [Selzentry]
Fusion inhibitor (enfuvirtide) [Fuzeon]

Integrase Inhibitor

Raltegravir [Isentress]
Dolutegravir [Tivicay]

Examples of Highly Active Antiretroviral Therapy

Efavirenz/tenofovir/emtricitabine (EFV/TDF/FTC) [Atripla]
Abacavir/zidovudine/lamivudine [Trizivir]
Dolutegravir/abacavir/lamivudine [Triumeq]
Emtricitabine, rilpivirine, and tenofovir disoproxil fumarate [Complera]
Elvitegravir/cobicistat/tenofovir/emtricitabine [Stribild]
Emtricitabine/tenofovir disoproxil fumarate [Truvada]
Lamivudine/zidovudine [Combivir]
Lopinavir/ritonavir [Kaletra]

Modified from U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2018. FDA-approved HIV medicines. https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/understanding-hiv-aids/fact-sheets/21/58/fda-approved-hiv-medicines (accessed 13.09.2018).

Inhibition of binding to the CCR5 co-receptor with a receptor agonist (e.g., maraviroc) or fusion of the viral envelope and cell membrane with a peptide (e.g., enfuvirtide) that blocks the action of the gp41 molecule will prevent the initial infection event. Inhibition of the integrase (e.g., dolutegravir, raltegravir) prevents all subsequent events in the replication of the virus. Inhibition of the RT prevents the initiation of virus replication by blocking cDNA synthesis. Azidothymidine (AZT) and the other nucleotide analogs are phosphorylated by cellular enzymes and incorporated into cDNA by the RT to cause DNA chain termination. Nonnucleoside RT inhibitors (e.g., nevirapine) inhibit the enzyme by other mechanisms. Protease inhibitors (e.g., darunavir) block the morphogenesis of the virion by inhibiting cleavage of the Gag and Gag-Pol polyproteins. The viral proteins and resulting virion are inactive. Most anti-HIV drugs have significant side effects, and the search continues for new anti-HIV drugs. Each of the replicative steps and all of the viral proteins are being targeted for development of new anti-HIV drugs.

AZT was the first successful anti-HIV therapy. Although still given to infants born to HIV-positive mothers for 6 weeks postpartum, the single use of AZT or another nucleotide analog by itself is decreasing. Anti-HIV therapy is currently given as a cocktail of several antiviral drugs termed **highly active antiretroviral treatment (HAART)** (see Box 54.5). Use of a mixture of drugs with different mechanisms of action has less potential to encounter or select for resistance. Multidrug therapy can reduce blood levels of virus to nearly zero and reduce morbidity and mortality in many patients with advanced AIDS. Customization of HAART for each patient can minimize the drug side effects, ease the pill-taking regimen, and allow the patient to return to nearly normal health and lifestyle. Some HAARTs are taken once a day as a single pill, assisting compliance. Therapy should be initiated for individuals showing symptoms of AIDS, AIDS-defining illnesses, or if CD4 T cells drop to less than 350/μL. Therapy may also be considered if viral loads are high (>100,000), even if CD4 numbers are above 350/μL.

Preexposure prophylaxis, or PrEP, has recently been approved for people who have a high risk of HIV infection (e.g., partners of HIV-infected individuals and IV drug users). Currently, the suggested therapy is a single pill of a HAART that combines tenofovir and emtricitabine. This therapy is also appropriate for postexposure prophylaxis (e.g., needlestick).

Effective treatment can reduce HIV to undetectable levels, which almost eliminates the risk of transmission. Even in the absence of a vaccine, combination of proper precautions, continued and effective treatment of HIV-infected individuals, and the administration of PrEP to high-risk individuals will significantly reduce the number of HIV infections in the United States in the near future.

Education

The principal way HIV infection can be prevented and its spread controlled is by educating the population about the methods of transmission and the measures that may curtail viral spread. For instance, monogamous relationships, the practice of safe sex, and use of condoms reduce the possibility of exposure. Because contaminated needles are a major source of HIV infection in IV drug abusers, people must be taught that needles must not be shared. The reuse of contaminated needles in clinics was the source of outbreaks of AIDS in the former Soviet bloc and other countries. In some places, efforts have been launched to provide sterile equipment to IV drug abusers. A successful anti-HIV education campaign in Uganda has been cited as being more effective than antiviral drugs for saving lives.

Blood, Blood Product, and Organ Screening

Potential blood and organ donors are screened before they donate blood, tissue, and blood products. People testing positive for HIV must not donate blood. People who anticipate a future need for blood, such as those awaiting elective

surgery, should consider donating blood beforehand. To limit the worldwide epidemic, blood screening must be initiated in developing nations as well.

Infection Control

The infection-control procedures for HIV infection are the same as those for hepatitis B virus. They include use of universal blood and body fluid precautions, which are based on the assumption that all patients are infectious for HIV and other blood-borne pathogens. Precautions include wearing protective clothing (e.g., gloves, mask, gown) and using other barriers to prevent exposure to blood products. Syringes and surgical instruments should never be reused unless carefully disinfected. Contaminated surfaces should be disinfected with 10% household bleach, 70% ethanol or isopropanol, 2% glutaraldehyde, and 4% formaldehyde, or 6% hydrogen peroxide. Washing laundry in hot water with detergent should be sufficient to inactivate HIV.

Circumcision of males reduces their risk of infection. Circumcision eliminates a site of frequent infections and a unique microbiome that can cause breaks in the skin and inflammation, both of which may increase susceptibility to HIV infection.

Approaches to Vaccine Prophylaxis

There are many difficulties in development of a vaccine against HIV. A successful vaccine must be able to block the initial infection and the movement of infected dendritic cells and T cells to lymph nodes. Otherwise, like herpesviruses, HIV infection rapidly establishes a chronic or latent infection. The vaccine must elicit neutralizing antibody and cell-mediated immunity. A major difficulty is that the primary target of neutralizing antibody, the gp120, is different for the different HIV clades, even within a clade, there are many antigenically distinct mutants and the virus mutates extensively creating different strains during the infection of the individual. Cell-mediated immunity is necessary because the virus can be spread through cell-to-cell bridges and remains latent, hiding from antibody. Finally, testing of the vaccine is difficult and expensive because large numbers of susceptible people must be evaluated, and long-term follow-up is required to monitor the efficacy of each formulation.

Several different approaches have been tried for developing an HIV vaccine. Live attenuated vaccines (e.g., deletion of the *nef* gene) were too dangerous because they still caused disease in infants and may establish chronic infection. Protein subunit vaccines with gp120 or its precursor, gp160, by themselves, elicit only antibody to a single strain of HIV and have not been successful. The stem region of the gp120 does not differ extensively between strains and vaccines that expose this region elicit antibody to multiple strains. Immunization with hybrid HIV vaccines that incorporate the gene for gp160 *(env)* and other HIV genes into a vaccinia, canarypox, or defective adenovirus vector or into a DNA or RNA vaccine can initiate cell-mediated responses. This can be followed by a protein boost with gp120 or gp160 to activate B cells and develop neutralizing antibody. The gp120 and gp160 proteins are genetically engineered and expressed in different eukaryotic cell systems (e.g., yeast, baculovirus).

TABLE 54.7 Mechanisms of Retrovirus Oncogenesis

Disease	Speed	Effect
Acute leukemia or sarcoma	Fast: oncogene	Direct effect Provision of growth-enhancing proteins
Leukemia	Slow: trans-activation	Indirect effect Transactivation protein (Tax) or long terminal repeat promoter sequences that enhance expression of cellular growth genes

TABLE 54.8 Representative Examples of Oncogenes

Function	Oncogene	Virus
Tyrosine kinase	*Src*	Rous sarcoma virus
	Abl	Abelson murine leukemia virus
	Fes	ST feline sarcoma virus
Growth factor receptors	*Erb*-B (EGF receptor)	Avian erythroblastosis virus
	Erb-A (thyroid hormone receptor)	Avian erythroblastosis virus
Guanosine triphosphate–binding proteins	Ha-*ras*	Harvey murine sarcoma virus
	Ki-*ras*	Kirsten murine sarcoma virus
Nuclear proteins	*Myc*	Avian myelocytomatosis virus
	Myb	Avian myeloblastosis virus
	Fos	Murine osteosarcoma virus FBJ
	Jun	Avian sarcoma virus 17

EGF, Epidermal growth factor; *FBJ,* Finkel-Biskis-Jinkins; *ST,* Snyder-Theilen.

Human T-Cell Lymphotropic Virus and Other Oncogenic Retroviruses

The Oncovirinae were originally called the **RNA tumor viruses** and have been associated with the development of leukemias, sarcomas, and lymphomas in many animals. These viruses are not cytolytic. Members of this family are distinguished by their mechanism of cell transformation (immortalization) and thus the length of the latency period between infection and development of disease (Table 54.7).

The **sarcoma and acute leukemia viruses** have incorporated modified versions of cellular genes (protooncogenes) encoding growth-controlling factors into their genome ***(v-onc).*** These include genes that encode growth hormones, growth hormone receptors, protein kinases, guanosine triphosphate–binding proteins (G-proteins), and nuclear DNA–binding proteins. These viruses can cause transformation of cells relatively rapidly and are highly oncogenic. *No human virus of this type has been identified.*

At least 35 different viral oncogenes have been identified (Table 54.8). Transformation results from the overproduction or altered activity of the growth-stimulating protein encoded by the oncogene. Increased cell growth then promotes transcription, which also promotes viral replication.

Incorporation of the oncogene into many of these viruses causes the coding sequences for the *gag, pol,* or *env* genes to be replaced, such that most of these viruses are defective and require helper viruses for replication. Many of these viruses become endogenous and then are transmitted vertically through the germline of the animal.

The human oncoviruses include HTLV-1, HTLV-2, and HTLV-5, but only HTLV-1 has been definitively associated with disease (i.e., adult T-cell leukemia [ATLL]). HTLV-2 was isolated from atypical forms of hairy cell leukemia, and HTLV-5 was isolated from a malignant cutaneous lymphoma. HTLV-1 and HTLV-2 share as much as 50% homology. The **leukemia viruses,** including HTLV-1, are competent in terms of replication but cannot transform cells in vitro. They cause cancer after a **long latency period** of at least 30 years. The leukemia viruses promote cell growth in more indirect ways than the oncogene-encoding viruses. HTLV-1 also causes HTLV-1–associated myelopathy (HAM) (**tropical spastic paraparesis**), which is a nononcogenic neurologic disease.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

HTLV-1 is cell associated and is spread in cells after blood transfusion, sexual intercourse, or breastfeeding. The virus enters the bloodstream and infects the CD4 helper T cells. In addition to blood and lymphatic organs, these T cells have a tendency to reside in the skin, contributing to the symptoms of ATLL. Neurons also express a receptor for HTLV-1.

The *PX* gene of HTLV-1 encodes additional proteins (tax, rex, p12, p13, p30, and HBZ) that promote cell growth, cause evasion of immune detection, and facilitate leukemogenic transformation. Tax is a transcriptional regulator that can activate promoters in the viral LTR gene region and specific cellular genes (including growth-controlling and cytokine genes, such as those encoding IL-2, IL-2 receptor, and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor) to promote the outgrowth of that cell. The virus also encodes HBZ to limit Tax activity and promote cell proliferation and viral persistence. HBZ and tax are important for promoting leukemogenesis. HTLV-1 can also stimulate growth of the cell by integrating near cellular growth-controlling genes to allow the enhancer and promoter gene sequences encoded in the viral LTR region to promote the expression of the cellular growth-stimulating proteins. Other genetic changes required to produce leukemia are more likely to occur because of the stimulated growth of the infected cell.

There is a long latency period (≈30 years) before the onset of leukemia. Although the virus can induce a polyclonal outgrowth of T cells, HTLV-1–induced ATLL is usually monoclonal.

Antibodies are elicited to the gp46 and other proteins of HTLV-1. HTLV-1 infection also causes immunosuppression.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

HTLV-1 is transmitted and acquired by the same routes as HIV. It is endemic in southern Japan, Australia, the Caribbean, Central Africa, and among African Americans in the southeastern United States. In the endemic regions of Japan and Australia, children acquire HTLV-1 at birth and in breast milk from their mothers, whereas adults are infected sexually. The number of seropositive people in some regions of Japan may be as high as 35% (Okinawa), and 40% in some regions of Australia. The mortality rate from leukemia may be twice that of other regions. IV drug abuse and blood transfusion are becoming the most prominent means of transmitting the virus in the United States, in which the high-risk groups for HTLV-1 infection are the same as those for HIV infection.

HTLV-2 is endemic in many native Amerindian groups. IV drug users are at high risk for infection.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

HTLV infection is usually asymptomatic but can progress to ATLL in approximately 1 in 20 persons over a 30- to 50-year period. ATLL caused by HTLV-1 is a neoplasia of the CD4 helper T cells that can be acute or chronic. The malignant cells have been termed "flower cells" because they are pleomorphic and contain lobulated nuclei. In addition to an elevated white blood cell count, this form of ATLL is characterized by skin lesions similar to those seen in another leukemia, Sézary syndrome. ATLL is usually fatal within a year of diagnosis, regardless of treatment. HTLV-1 can also cause other diseases, including HAM (tropical spastic paraparesis), uveitis, HTLV-associated infectious dermatitis, and other inflammatory disorders. HAM can lead to demyelination of the spinal cord and paralysis. HTLV infection is also immunosuppressive. HTLV-2 infection is unlikely to cause leukemia but may cause neurologic disease, such as HAM.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

HTLV-1 infection is detected using ELISA to find virus-specific antigens in blood, using RT-PCR for viral RNA, or using ELISA to detect specific antiviral antibodies.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

A combination of AZT and interferon (IFN)-α has been effective in some patients with ATLL. However, no particular treatment has been approved for the management of HTLV-1 infection.

The measures used to limit the spread of HTLV-1 are the same as those used to limit the transmission of HIV. Sexual precautions, screening of the blood supply, and increased awareness of the potential risks and diseases are ways to prevent transmission of the virus. Routine screening for HTLV-1, HIV, hepatitis B virus, and hepatitis C virus is performed to protect the blood supply. Maternal infection of children is very difficult to control, however.

Endogenous Retroviruses

Different retroviruses have integrated into and become a part of the chromosomes of humans and animals. In fact, retrovirus sequences may make up at least 8% of the human genome. Complete and partial provirus sequences with gene sequences similar to those of HTLV, mouse mammary tumor virus, and other retroviruses, can be detected in humans.

These human endogenous retroviruses (HERVs) generally lack the ability to replicate because of deletions or the insertion of termination codons, or because they are poorly transcribed. In addition, our cells express proteins, such as apolipoprotein B editing catalytic (APOBEC) proteins, to suppress the replication of endogenous retroviruses. One such retrovirus can be detected in placental tissue and is activated by pregnancy. This virus produces syncytin, which is necessary to facilitate placental function. Other HERVs are associated with prostate and other cancers, multiple sclerosis, and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS).

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Doltch, G., Cavrois, M., Lassen, K.G., et al., 2010. Abortive HIV infection mediates CD4 T cell depletion and inflammation in human lymphoid tissue. Cell 143, 789–801.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Kannian, P., Green, P.L., 2010. Human T lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1): molecular biology and oncogenesis. Viruses. 2 (9), 2037–2077. https://doi.org/10.3390/v2092037.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Kräusslich, H.G., 1996. Morphogenesis and Maturation of Retroviruses. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Levy, J.A., 2007. HIV and the Pathogenesis of AIDS, seventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Morse, S.A., Holmes, K.K., et al., 2011. Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS, fourth ed. Saunders, St Louis.

Ryan, F.P., 2004. Human endogenous retroviruses in health and disease: a symbiotic perspective. J. R. Soc. Med. 97, 560–565.

Stine, G.J., 2011. AIDS Update 2011. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Strauss, J.M., Strauss, E.G., 2007. Viruses and Human Disease, second ed. Academic, San Diego.

HIV/AIDS and HTLV Websites

About.com: AIDS/HIV. http://aids.about.com/. Accessed September 11, 2018.

Avert: Global information and education on HIV and AIDS. https://www.avert.org/public-hub. Accessed September 11, 2018

Bennett, N.J., HIV disease. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/211316-overview. Accessed September 11, 2018.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: HIV/AIDS statistics and surveillance. www.cdc.gov/hiv/library/reports/surveillance/index.html. Accessed September 11, 2018.

National Institutes of Health: http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/. Accessed September 11, 2018

Szczypinska, E.M., Wallace, M.R., Wainscoat, B., et al., Human T-cell lymphotropic viruses. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/219285-overview. Accessed September 11, 2018.

UNAIDS, Homepage. www.unaids.org/. Accessed 11 September 2018.

University of California, San Francisco: HIV InSite. http://hivinsite.ucsf.edu. Accessed September 11, 2018.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services: Clinical guidelines portal: federally approved HIV/AIDS medical practice guidelines. http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines. Accessed September 11, 2018.

HIV Exposure and Therapy Websites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Updated U.S. Public Health Service guidelines for the management of exposures to HIV and recommendations for postexposure prophylaxis. https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/20711. Accessed September 11, 2018.

Federal Drug Administration. https://www.fda.gov/ForPatients/Illness/HIVAIDS/Treatment/ucm118915.htm. Accessed September 8, 2018.

National Institutes of Health. https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/understanding-hiv-aids/fact-sheets/21/58/fda-approved-hiv-medicines. Accessed September 8, 2018.

National Institutes of Health. Drugs. https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/drugs. Accessed September 11, 2018.

Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents: Guidelines for the use of antiretroviral agents in HIV-1–infected adults and adolescents. Department of Health and Human Services. https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv/2/introduction. Accessed September 11, 2018.

Case Study and Questions

A 28-year-old man had several complaints. He had a bad case of thrush (oral candidiasis) and low-grade fever, had serious bouts of diarrhea, had lost 20 pounds in the past year without dieting, and most seriously, he complained of difficulty breathing. His lungs showed a bilateral infiltrate on radiographic examination, characteristic of *P. jirovecii* pneumonia. A stool sample was positive for *Giardia* organisms. He was a heroin addict and admitted to sharing needles at a shooting gallery.

1. What laboratory tests could be done to support and confirm a diagnosis of HIV infection and AIDS?

2. How did this man acquire the HIV infection? What are other high-risk behaviors for HIV infection?

3. What was the immunologic basis for the increased susceptibility of this patient to opportunistic infections?

4. What precautions should be taken in handling samples from this patient?

5. What precautions could the patient have taken to prevent infection?

6. Several forms of HIV vaccines are being developed. What are possible components of an HIV vaccine? Who would be appropriate recipients of an HIV vaccine?

Thought Question: HERVs are the ultimate passengers in our cells. Infections with EBV or CMV can activate one of the HERVs; infections with other retroviruses (HTLV or HIV) or other stimuli may activate other HERVs. Consider their possible influence on the functioning and physiology of our cells, immune system, and other functions. (See review by Ryan [*J R Soc Med* 2004;97:560–565] for some answers.)

55 Hepatitis Viruses

A 43-year-old woman complained of fatigue, nausea, and abdominal discomfort. She had a slight fever, her urine was dark yellow, and her abdomen was distended and tender. Serologic assays demonstrated the presence of immunoglobulin (Ig)M antibody to the hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg) and the presence of the hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) and the hepatitis Be antigen (HBeAg). She also had IgG to hepatitis A virus.

1. Which aspects are common to hepatitis disease and which are specific to hepatitis B virus (HBV)?
2. How does serology define the course of this disease?
3. How is this infection transmitted?
4. How could this infection and disease be prevented? How could it be treated?

A 41-year-old intravenous drug abuser complained of fatigue, nausea, and abdominal discomfort. He had a slight fever, his urine was dark yellow, and his abdomen was distended and tender. Serologic assays demonstrated the presence of IgG antibody to the HBsAg but no hepatitis antigens or other anti-HBV antibodies. Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) analysis of his serum detected the hepatitis C virus (HCV) genome.

5. Is this person infected with HBV? Has this person ever been infected with HBV?
6. What is the most likely disease outcome for this patient? Other patients with this infection?
7. How can this infection be treated?

 **Answers to these questions are available on Student Consult.com.**

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

HEPATITIS VIRUSES

Trigger Words

Hepatitis A: acute/sudden onset, picornavirus, fecal-oral
Hepatitis B: blood-borne, STD, hepadnavirus, reverse transcriptase, chronic, Dane particle, HBsAg
Hepatitis C: chronic, blood-borne, flavivirus
Hepatitis D: defective, hepatitis B helper virus, fulminant disease
Hepatitis E: fecal-oral, acute/sudden onset, pregnant women

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Liver disease defines symptoms
- Nonlytic viruses: cell-mediated immunity causes symptoms
- Hepatitis A: nonlytic picornavirus, acute onset, no sequelae
- Hepatitis B: hepadnavirus, enveloped and encodes reverse transcriptase
  - Disease followed by serology
  - Chronic disease 5% of time, especially in children
  - Risk for PHC
- Hepatitis C: flavivirus
  - Causes chronic disease in 70% of patients
  - Risk for PHC and cirrhosis after long period
- Hepatitis D: viroid-like, requires HBV as helper virus
- Hepatitis E: Hepevirus, calici-like virus, acute onset, no sequelae, severe for pregnant women

Epidemiology

- HAV, HEV: fecal-oral transmission
- HBV, HCV, HDV: spread in blood, tissue, and semen; STDs

Diagnosis

- RT-PCR, ELISA

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- HAV: inactivated vaccine, hygiene
- HEV: hygiene
- HBV: virus-like particle HBsAg vaccine, screening of blood supply, safe sex, antiviral drugs
- HCV: screening of blood supply, safe sex, antiviral drugs
- HDV: immunization for HBV

ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *HAV,* hepatitis A virus; *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen; *HBV,* hepatitis B virus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HDV,* hepatitis D virus; *HEV,* hepatitis E virus; *PHC,* primary hepatocellular carcinoma; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase-polymer chain reaction; *STD,* sexually transmitted disease.

The hepatitis alphabet of viruses includes at least six viruses, A through E and G (Table 55.1; a summary is provided in Box 55.1). Although the target organ for each of these viruses is the liver and the basic hepatitis symptoms are similar, they differ greatly in their structure, mode of replication, mode of transmission, and in the time course and sequelae of the disease they cause. **Hepatitis A** and **hepatitis B viruses (HAV, HBV)** are the classic hepatitis viruses, and **hepatitis C, D, E, and G viruses (HCV, HDV [the delta agent], HEV, and HGV)** are called **non-A, non-B hepatitis (NANBH) viruses.** Other viruses can also cause hepatitis.

Each of the hepatitis viruses infects and initiates inflammatory responses that damage the liver, causing the classic **icteric symptoms of jaundice and the release of liver enzymes.** The specific virus causing the disease can be distinguished by the course, nature, and serology of the disease. These viruses are readily spread because infected people are contagious before, or even without showing symptoms.

Hepatitis A, which is sometimes known as **infectious hepatitis,** is caused by a picornavirus, which is a ribonucleic acid (RNA) virus. It is spread by the fecal-oral route, has an incubation period of approximately 1 month, after which *icteric symptoms start abruptly,* does not cause chronic liver disease, and rarely causes fatal disease.

Hepatitis B, previously known as **serum hepatitis,** is caused by a hepadnavirus with a deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) genome; is spread parenterally by blood or needles,

by sexual contact, and perinatally; has a median incubation period of approximately 3 months, after which *icteric symptoms start insidiously;* is followed by chronic hepatitis in 5% to 10% of patients; and is causally associated with primary hepatocellular carcinoma (PHC). More than one-third of the world's population has been infected with HBV, resulting in 1 to 2 million deaths per year. The incidence of HBV is decreasing, however, especially in infants, because of the development and use of the HBV subunit vaccine.

HCV is caused by a flavivirus with an RNA genome, is spread by the same routes as HBV with more than 170 million chronically infected carriers of the disease, is more likely to cause asymptomatic infection and cause chronic disease than HBV, and increases risk for PHC.

HGV is also a flavivirus and causes chronic infections.

HEV is an enteric, encapsidated virus with an RNA genome in its own family, and its disease resembles HAV but can be severe in pregnant women.

Hepatitis D, or **delta hepatitis,** is unique in that it requires actively replicating HBV as a "helper virus" and occurs only in patients who have active HBV infection. HBV provides an envelope for HDV RNA and its antigens. HDV exacerbates the symptoms caused by HBV.

Hepatitis A Virus

HAV causes infectious hepatitis and is spread by the fecal-oral route. HAV infections often result from consumption

BOX 55.1 Everything You Want to Know About Hepatitis Viruses a la Dr. Seuss

Hepatitis A, B, C
Hepatitis D, E, G
Liver is the target
But immune response hurts me
Liver suffers from A to G

Eat the virus, it won't stay
E and A go away
Poop, water, and shellfish dot dot A
That's the acute virus that goes away
Pregnant woman fears the E
It is deadly but not for me

B and C and also D
Blood, tissue, and semen can carry the three
B and C stay with me
PHC with C and B
For the baby, chronic B
HBsAg you will see

Anti-HBs no more sick
Vaccines do this, that's the trick
Antivirals for B and C
Immunize for A or B
Risky business A through G
Yellow eyes you will see

by K.S. Rosenthal

HBsAg, Hepatitis B surface antigen; *PHC,* primary hepatocellular carcinoma.

TABLE 55.1 Comparative Features of Hepatitis Viruses

Feature	Hepatitis A	Hepatitis B	Hepatitis C	Hepatitis D	Hepatitis E
Common name	"Infectious"	"Serum"	"Non-A, non-B posttransfusion"	"Delta agent"	"Enteric non-A, non-B"
Virus structure	Picornavirus; capsid, (+) RNA	Hepadnavirus; envelope, DNA	Flavivirus; envelope, (+) RNA	Viroid-like; envelope, circular RNA	Hepevirus capsid, (+) RNA
Transmission	Fecal-oral	Parenteral, sexual	Parenteral, sexual	Parenteral, sexual	Fecal-oral
Onset	Abrupt	Insidious	Insidious	Abrupt	Abrupt
Incubation period (days)	15-50	45-160	14-180+	15-64	15-50
Severity	Mild	Occasionally severe, 3%-10% chronicity in adults; 30%-90% in infants and children	Usually subclinical; 70% chronicity	Co-infection with HBV occasionally severe; superinfection with HBV often severe	Normal patients, mild; pregnant women, severe
Mortality	<0.5%	1%-2%	≈4%	High to very high	Normal patients, 1%-2%; pregnant women, 20%
Chronicity/ carrier state	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Other disease associations	None	Primary hepatocellular carcinoma, cirrhosis	Primary hepatocellular carcinoma, cirrhosis	Cirrhosis, fulminant hepatitis	None
Laboratory diagnosis	Symptoms and anti-HAV IgM	Symptoms, serum levels of HBsAg, HBeAg, and anti-HBc IgM, genome	Symptoms and anti-HCV ELISA, genome testing	Anti-HDV ELISA	—

ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *HAV,* hepatitis A virus; *HBc,* hepatitis B core; *HBeAg,* hepatitis Be antigen; *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen; *HBV,* hepatitis B virus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HDV,* hepatitis D virus; *IgM,* immunoglobulin M.

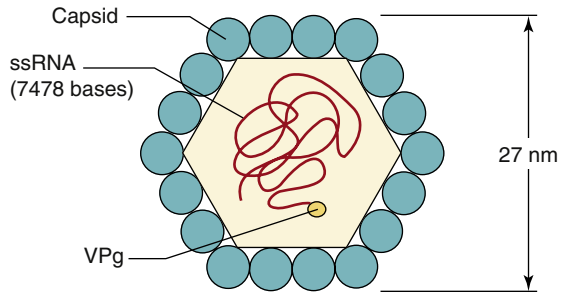


Fig. 55.1 Picornavirus structure of hepatitis A virus. The icosahedral capsid is made up of four viral polypeptides (VP1 to VP4). Inside the capsid is a single-stranded positive-sense ribonucleic acid *(ssRNA)* that has a genomic viral protein *(VPg)* on the 5′ end.

BOX 55.2 Characteristics of Hepatitis A Virus

Stable to:

Acid at pH 1
Solvents (ether, chloroform)
Detergents
Salt water, groundwater (months)
Drying (stable)

Temperature:

4° C for weeks: stable
56° C for 30 minutes: stable
61° C for 20 minutes: partial inactivation

Inactivated by:

Chlorine treatment of drinking water
Formalin (0.35%, 37° C, 72 hours)
Peracetic acid (2%, 4 hours)
β-Propiolactone (0.25%, 1 hour)
Ultraviolet radiation (2 μW/cm^2/min)

of contaminated water, shellfish, or other food. HAV is a **picornavirus** and was formerly called *enterovirus 72*, but it has been placed into its own genus, *Hepatovirus*.

STRUCTURE

HAV has a 27-nm, **naked, icosahedral capsid** surrounding a **positive-sense single-stranded RNA** genome consisting of approximately 7470 nucleotides (Fig. 55.1). As a picornavirus, the HAV genome has a VPg protein attached to the 5′ end and a polyadenylate sequence attached to the 3′ end. The capsid is even more stable than other picornaviruses to acid and other treatments (Box 55.2). There is only one serotype of HAV but there are multiple genotypes.

REPLICATION

HAV replicates like other picornaviruses (see Chapter 46). It interacts specifically with the HAV cell receptor 1 glycoprotein (HAVCR-1, which is also known as T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain protein [TIM-1]) expressed on liver cells and T cells. The structure of HAVCR-1 can vary for different individuals, and specific forms correlate with severity of disease. Unlike other picornaviruses, however, HAV is not cytolytic and is released by exocytosis. Laboratory isolates of HAV have been adapted to grow in primary and continuous monkey kidney cell lines, but clinical isolates are difficult to grow in cell culture.

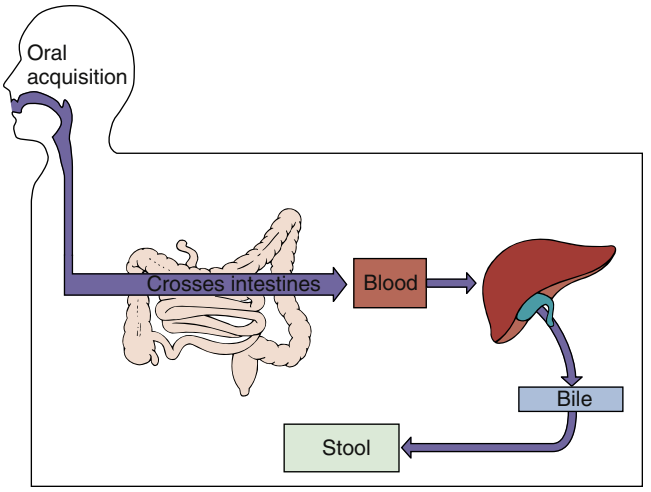


Fig. 55.2 Spread of hepatitis A virus within the body.

PATHOGENESIS

HAV is ingested and probably enters the bloodstream through the epithelial lining of the oropharynx or the intestines to reach its target, which are the parenchymal cells of the liver (Fig. 55.2). The virus replicates in hepatocytes and Kupffer cells. Virus is produced in these cells and is released into the bile and from there into the stool. Virus is shed in large quantities into the stool approximately 10 days before symptoms of jaundice appear or antibody can be detected.

HAV replicates slowly in the liver without producing apparent cytopathic effects. Although interferon limits viral replication, natural killer cells and cytotoxic T cells are required to eliminate infected cells. Antibody, complement, and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity also facilitate clearance of the virus and induction of immunopathology. Icterus, resulting from damage to the liver, occurs because of inflammation of the liver when cell-mediated immune responses and antibody to the virus can be detected. Antibody protection against reinfection is lifelong.

The liver pathology caused by HAV infection is indistinguishable histologically from that caused by HBV. It is most likely caused by immunopathology and not virus-induced cytopathology. However, **unlike HBV, HAV cannot initiate a chronic infection** and is not associated with hepatic cancer.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Approximately 40% of acute cases of hepatitis are caused by HAV (Box 55.3). The virus spreads readily in a community because most infected people are contagious 10 to 14 days before symptoms occur, and 90% of infected children and 25% to 50% of infected adults have **inapparent but productive** infections.

The virus is released into stool in high concentrations and is spread via the **fecal-oral** route. Virus is spread in contaminated water, in food, and by dirty hands. HAV is resistant to detergents, acid (pH of 1), and temperatures as high as 60° C, and it can survive for many months in fresh water and salt water. Raw or improperly treated sewage can taint the

BOX 55.3 Epidemiology of Hepatitis A Virus and Hepatitis E Virus

Disease/Viral Factors

Capsid viruses are strongly resistant to inactivation.
Contagious period extends from before to after symptoms.
Virus may cause asymptomatic shedding.

Transmission

Virus can be transmitted via fecal-oral route.
Ingestion of contaminated food and water can cause infection.
HAV in shellfish is from sewage-contaminated water.
HEV from pigs and game animals.
Virus can be transmitted by food handlers, day-care workers, and children.

Who Is at Risk?

People in overcrowded, unsanitary areas
Travelers to high-risk regions
Children: mild disease, possibly asymptomatic; day-care centers are a major source of spread of HAV
Adults: abrupt-onset hepatitis
Pregnant women: high mortality associated with HEV

Geography/Season

Virus is found worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Means of Control

Good hygiene.
HAV: passive antibody protection for contacts
Killed vaccine
Live vaccine in China

HAV, Hepatitis B virus: *HEV,* hepatitis E virus.

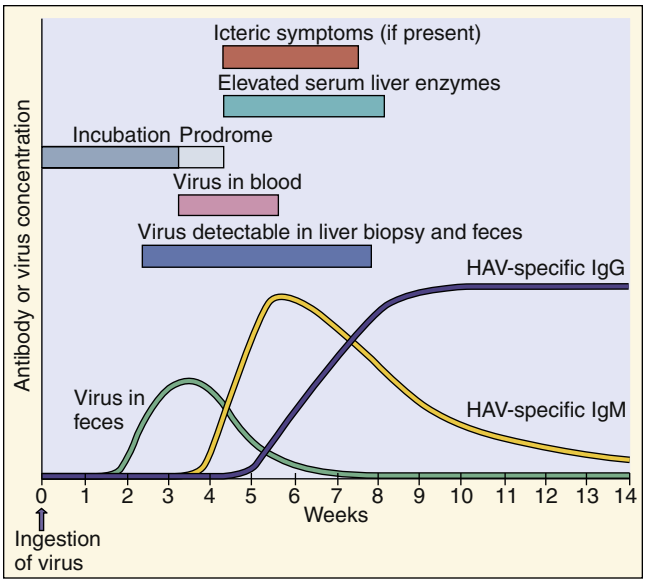


Fig. 55.3 Time course of hepatitis A virus *(HAV)* infection. Note that the person is contagious before onset of symptoms and that symptoms correlate with the onset of immune responses. *Ig,* Immunoglobulin.

water supply and contaminate shellfish. Shellfish, especially clams, oysters, and mussels, are important sources of the virus because they are efficient filter feeders and can therefore concentrate the viral particles, even from dilute solutions. This is exemplified by an epidemic of HAV that occurred in Shanghai, China, in 1988, when 300,000 people were infected with the virus after eating clams obtained from a sewage-polluted river.

HAV outbreaks usually originate from a common source (e.g., water supply, restaurant, day-care center). Asymptomatic shedding and a long (15 to 40 days) incubation period make it difficult to identify the source. Day-care settings are a major source for spread of the virus among classmates and their parents. Because the children and personnel in day-care centers may be transient, the number of contacts at risk for HAV infection from a single day-care center can be great.

HAV infections are relatively common, with greater incidence with poor hygienic conditions and overcrowding. Most people infected with HAV in developing countries are children who have mild illness and then lifelong immune protection against reinfection. In the United States, the incidence has dropped significantly with use of the vaccine.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The symptoms caused by HAV are very similar to those caused by HBV and stem from immune-mediated damage to the liver. The **symptoms occur abruptly** 15 to 50 days after exposure, intensify for 4 to 6 days before the icteric (jaundice) phase, and can last for up to 2 months (Fig. 55.3). Initial symptoms include fever, fatigue, nausea, loss of appetite, vomiting, and abdominal pain. The icteric phase is indicated by jaundice, dark urine (bilirubinuria), and pale stool and may be accompanied by abdominal pain. As already noted, disease in children is generally milder than that in adults and is usually asymptomatic. Jaundice is observed in 70% to 80% of adults but in only 10% of children (<6 years of age). Symptoms generally wane during the jaundice period. Viral shedding in the stool precedes the onset of symptoms by approximately 14 days but stops before the cessation of symptoms. Complete recovery occurs 99% of the time within 2 to 4 weeks of onset.

Fulminant hepatitis is less likely for HAV infection but occurs in 1 to 3 persons per 1000 and is associated with an 80% mortality rate. Unlike HBV, immune complex–related symptoms (e.g., arthritis, rash) rarely occur in people with HAV disease.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of HAV infection is generally made on the basis of the time course of the clinical symptoms, identification of a known infected source, and most reliably, results of specific serologic tests. The best way to demonstrate an acute HAV infection is by finding anti-HAV IgM, as measured by an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). Virus isolation is not performed, because efficient tissue culture systems for growing the virus are not available. Viral RNA in blood or stool can also be detected by reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) or real-time PCR analysis to follow the course of the disease.

BOX 55.4 Unique Features of Hepadnaviruses

Virus has enveloped virion containing partially double-stranded, circular DNA genome.
Replication is through an overlapping circular RNA intermediate.
Virus encodes and carries a reverse transcriptase.
Virus encodes several proteins (HBsAg [L, M, S]; HBe/HBc antigens) that share genetic sequences but with different in-frame start codons.
HBV has a strict tissue tropism to the liver.
HBV-infected cells produce and release large amounts of HBsAg particles lacking DNA.
The HBV genome can integrate into the host chromosome.

HBc, Hepatitis B core antigen; *HBe,* hepatitis Be antigen; *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen; *HBV,* hepatitis B virus.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The spread of HAV is reduced by interrupting the fecal-oral spread of the virus. This is accomplished by avoiding potentially contaminated water or food, especially uncooked shellfish, and by proper processing of sewage. Proper handwashing, especially in day-care centers, mental hospitals, and other care facilities, is vitally important. Chlorine treatment of drinking water is generally sufficient to kill the virus.

Prophylaxis with immune serum globulin given before or early in the incubation period (i.e., <2 weeks after exposure) is 80% to 90% effective in preventing clinical illness.

Killed HAV vaccines are recommended for all children after 1 year of age and for adults at high risk for infection, including travelers to endemic regions, intravenous drug abusers, and men who have sex with men. The vaccine is administered in two doses, 6 months apart, and can be administered with the HBV vaccine. Live HAV vaccines are in use in China. There is only one serotype of HAV, and HAV infects only humans; these are all factors that help ensure the success of an immunization program.

Hepatitis B Virus

HBV is the major member of the **hepadnaviruses.** Other members of this family (Box 55.4) include woodchuck, ground squirrel, and duck hepatitis viruses. These viruses have limited tissue tropisms and host ranges. HBV infects the liver and, to a lesser extent, the kidneys and pancreas of humans and chimpanzees. Advances in molecular biology have made it possible to study HBV despite the limited host range of the virus and the difficult cell-culture systems in which to grow it.

STRUCTURE

HBV is a small enveloped DNA virus with several unusual properties (Fig. 55.4). Specifically, the **genome is a small, circular, partly double-stranded DNA** of only 3200 bases. Although a DNA virus, it encodes a **reverse transcriptase** and replicates through an **RNA intermediate.**

The virion, also called the **Dane particle,** is 42 nm in diameter. The virions are unusually stable for an enveloped

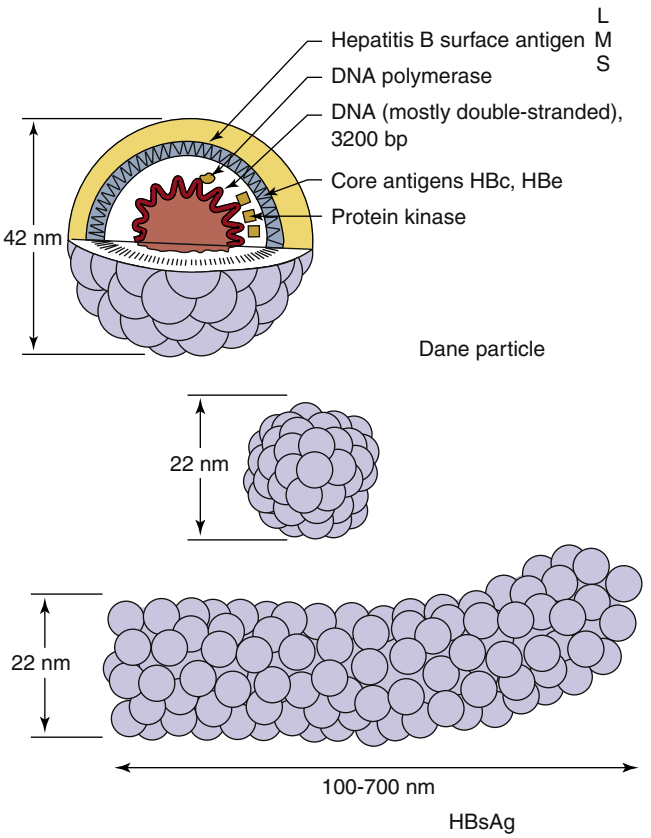


Fig. 55.4 Hepatitis B virus (Dane particle) and hepatitis B surface antigen *(HBsAg)* particles. The spherical HBsAg consists mainly of the S form of HBsAg, with some M. The filamentous HBsAg has S, M, and L forms. *bp,* Base pair; *DNA,* deoxyribonucleic acid; *L,* gp42; *M,* gp36; *S,* gp27.

virus. They resist treatment with ether, low pH, freezing, and moderate heating. These characteristics assist transmission from one person to another and hamper disinfection.

The HBV **virion includes a protein kinase and a polymerase** with reverse transcriptase and ribonuclease H activity, as well as a P protein attached to the genome. All of this is surrounded by an icosahedral capsid formed by the **hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg)** and an envelope containing three forms of the glycoprotein **hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg).** The **hepatitis Be antigen (HBeAg)** protein shares most of its protein sequence with HBcAg but is processed differently by the cell, is primarily secreted into serum, does not self-assemble (like the core capsid antigen), and expresses different antigenic determinants.

HBsAg-containing particles are released into the serum of infected people and outnumber the actual virions. These particles can be spherical (but smaller than the Dane particle) or filamentous (see Fig. 55.4). They are immunogenic and were processed into the first commercial vaccine against HBV.

HBsAg, originally termed the *Australia antigen,* includes three glycoproteins (L, M, and S) encoded by the same gene and read in the same frame but translated into protein from different AUG (adenine, uracil, guanine) start codons. The S (gp27; 24 to 27 kDa) glycoprotein is completely contained in the M (gp36; 33 to 36 kDa) glycoprotein, which is contained in the L (gp42; 39 to 42 kDa) glycoprotein; all share

the same C-terminal amino acid sequences. All three forms of HBsAg are found in the virion. The S glycoprotein is the major component of HBsAg particles; it self-associates into 22-nm spherical particles that are released from the cells. The filamentous particles of HBsAg found in serum contain mostly S, as well as small amounts of the M and L glycoproteins and other proteins and lipids. There are 10 genotypes and serotypes of HBV.

REPLICATION

The replication of HBV is unique for several reasons (see Box 55.4). First, HBV has a distinctly defined tropism for the liver. Its small genome also necessitates economy, as illustrated by the pattern of its transcription and translation. In addition, *HBV replicates through an RNA intermediate and produces and releases antigenic decoy particles (HBsAg)* (Fig. 55.5).

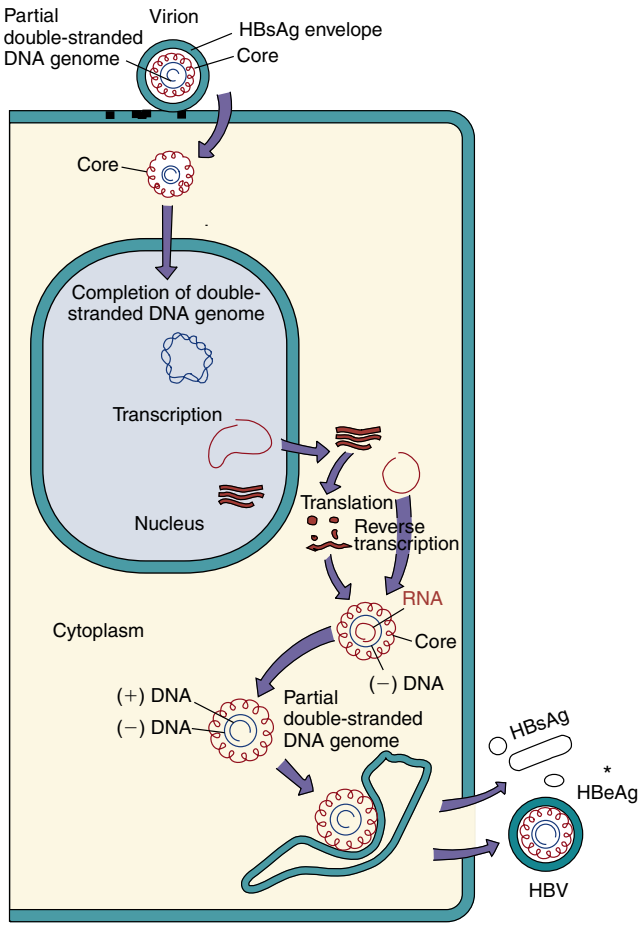


Fig. 55.5 Replication of hepatitis B virus *(HBV)*. After entry into the hepatocyte and uncoating of the nucleocapsid core, the partially double-stranded deoxyribonucleic acid *(DNA)* genome is delivered to the nucleus and completed. Transcription of the genome produces four messenger RNAs (mRNAs), including an mRNA larger than the genome (3500 bases). The mRNA then moves to the cytoplasm and is translated into protein. Core proteins assemble around the 3500-base mRNA, and negative-sense DNA is synthesized by a reverse transcriptase activity in the core. The ribonucleic acid *(RNA)* is then degraded while a positive-sense *(+)* DNA is synthesized. The filled core associates with HBsAg-containing endoplasmic reticulum membranes, is enveloped before completion of the positive-sense DNA, and is then released by exocytosis with HBsAg-containing particles. *HBeAg,* Hepatitis Be antigen; *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen.

The attachment of HBV to hepatocytes is mediated by the HBsAg glycoproteins. The liver cell receptor is the sodium/bile acid cotransporter (sodium taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide [NTCP]). On penetration into the cell, the nucleocapsid delivers the genome to the nucleus, where the partial DNA strand of the genome is completed to form a complete double-stranded DNA circle, which is a viral minichromosome. Transcription of the genome is controlled by cellular transcription elements found in hepatocytes. The DNA is transcribed from different starting points on the circle but have the same 3′ end. There are three major classes (2100, 2400, and 3500 bases) and two minor classes (900 bases) of overlapping messenger RNAs (mRNAs) (Fig. 55.6). The 3500-base mRNA is larger than the genome. It encodes the HBc and HBe antigens, the polymerase, and a protein primer for DNA replication and acts as the template for

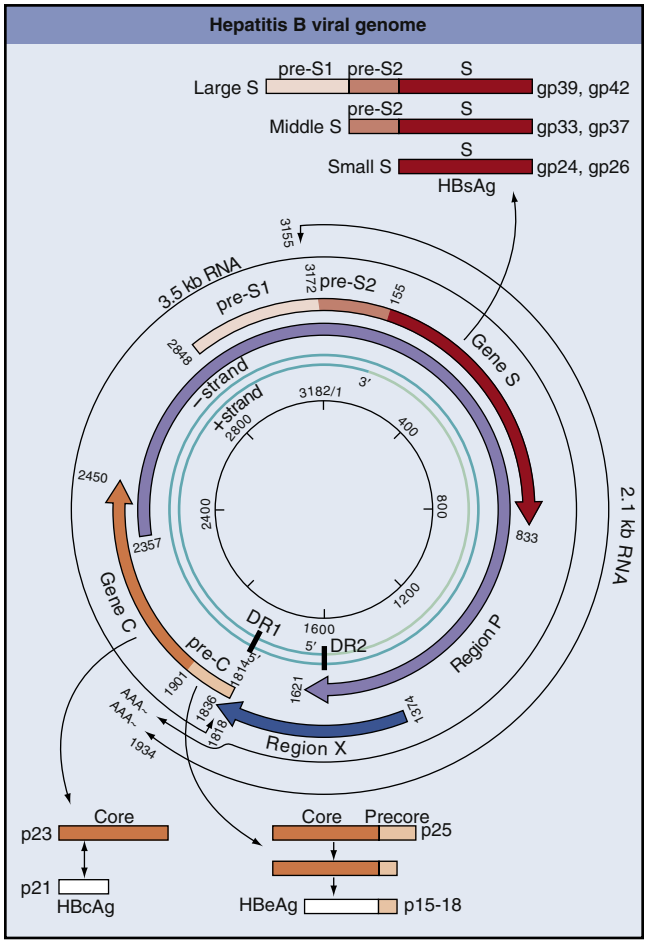


Fig. 55.6 DNA, RNA, messenger RNA (mRNA), and proteins of hepatitis B virus. The *inner green circles* represent the DNA genome, with the nucleotide number at the center. DR1 and DR2 are direct repeat sequences of DNA and are important for replication and integration of the genome. The 3500-base transcript *(outer black thin-line circle)* is larger than the genome and is the template for replication of the genome. Bold arcs represent mRNA for viral proteins. Note that several proteins are translated from the same mRNA but from different AUG codons and that different mRNAs overlap. *AAA,* 3′ PolyA (polyadenylate) at end of mRNA; *AUG,* adenine, uracil, guanine; *C,* C mRNA for hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg); *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen; *l,* large glycoprotein; *m,* medium glycoprotein; *P,* polymerase; *s,* small glycoprotein; *S,* mRNA for HBs antigen; *X,* X mRNA. (From Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2010. Infectious Diseases, third ed. Mosby, Philadelphia, PA.)

replication of the genome. The HBe and HBc are related proteins that are translated from different in-phase start codons of closely related mRNAs. This causes differences in their processing and structure, with shedding of the HBe from the cell and incorporation of HBc into the virion. Similarly, the 2100-base mRNA encodes the small and medium glycoproteins from different in-phase start codons. The 2400-base mRNA, that encodes the large glycoprotein, overlaps the 2100-base mRNA. The 900-base mRNA encodes the X protein, which promotes viral replication as a transactivator of transcription and as a protein kinase.

Replication of the genome uses the larger than genome 3500-base mRNA. This is packaged into the core nucleocapsid that contains the RNA-dependent DNA polymerase (P protein). This polymerase has **reverse transcriptase** and ribonuclease H activity, but HBV lacks the integrase activity of the retroviruses. The 3500-base RNA acts as a template, and negative-strand DNA is synthesized using a protein primer from the P protein, which remains covalently attached to the 5′ end. After this, the RNA is degraded by the ribonuclease H activity as the positive-strand DNA is synthesized from the negative-sense DNA template. However, this process is interrupted by envelopment of the nucleocapsid at the HBsAg-containing endoplasmic reticulum membrane, capturing genomes containing a complete circular and incomplete DNA strand. The virion and HBsAg-containing particles are then released from the hepatocyte by exocytosis, without killing the cell.

The entire genome can also be integrated into the host cell chromatin. HBsAg, but not other proteins, can often be detected in the cytoplasm of cells containing integrated HBV DNA. Integrated viral DNA is present in hepatocellular carcinomas.

PATHOGENESIS AND IMMUNITY

HBV is a noncytolytic virus that causes disease by initiating inflammation of the liver. HBV can cause acute or chronic, symptomatic or asymptomatic disease. Which of these occurs is determined by the person's immune response to the infection (Fig. 55.7).

The major source of infectious virus is blood, but HBV can be found in semen, saliva, milk, vaginal and menstrual secretions, and amniotic fluid. The most efficient way to acquire HBV is through injection of the virus into the bloodstream (Fig. 55.8). Common but less efficient routes of infection are sexual contact and birth. The virus starts to replicate in hepatocytes of the liver within 3 days of its acquisition, with minimal cytopathic effect. Symptoms may not be observed for 45 days or longer, because they are primarily caused by immunopathology. The infectious dose, the route of infection, and the person's immune response determine the incubation period. Infection proceeds for a relatively long time without causing liver damage (i.e., elevation of liver enzyme levels) or symptoms. Copies of the HBV genome remain in the nucleus for long periods as small circular DNA minichromosomes or can integrate into the hepatocyte chromatin. The minichromosomes can generate virus and HBsAg. Intracellular buildup of filamentous forms of HBsAg can produce the ground-glass hepatocyte cytopathology characteristic of HBV infection. HBsAg particles continue to be released into the blood even after virion release has ended and until the infection is resolved. *An individual is highly infectious when both the HBsAg and the HBeAg components of the virion can be detected in the blood.*

Cell-mediated immunity and inflammation are responsible for causing the symptoms and effecting resolution of the HBV infection by eliminating the infected hepatocyte. An insufficient T-cell response to the infection generally results in the occurrence of mild symptoms, an inability to resolve the infection, and the development of chronic hepatitis ("no pain, no gain") (see Fig. 55.7). Chronic infection also exhausts CD8 T cells, preventing them from killing infected cells. Antibody (as generated by vaccination) can protect against initial infection by preventing delivery of the virus to the liver. Later in the infection, the large amount of HBsAg in serum binds to and blocks the action of neutralizing antibody, which limits the antibody's ability to resolve an infection. Immune complexes formed between HBsAg and anti-HBs contribute to the development of hypersensitivity reactions (type III), leading to problems such as vasculitis, arthralgia, rash, and renal damage.

Antibodies to HBc and HBe are present in serum but cannot neutralize infection and are nonprotective. The HBeAg protein and HBsAg are released from the cell, elicit and are exposed to antibody in the blood, and are bound to their respective antibodies. As such, Anti-HBe and

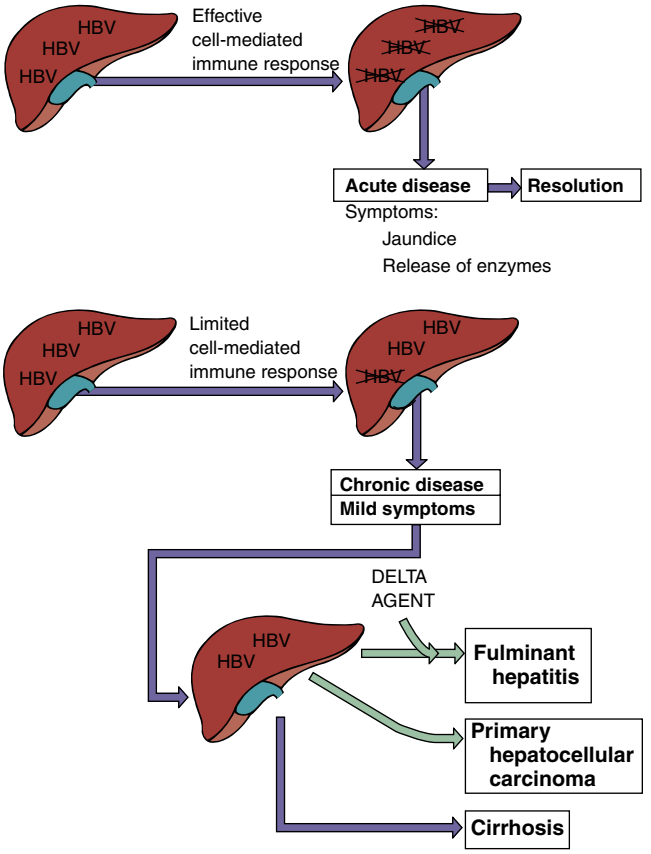


Fig. 55.7 Major determinants of acute and chronic hepatitis B virus *(HBV)* infection. HBV infects the liver but does not cause direct cytopathology. Cell-mediated immune lysis of infected cells produces the symptoms and resolves the infection. Insufficient immunity can lead to chronic disease. Chronic HBV disease predisposes a person to more serious outcomes. *Purple arrows* indicate symptoms; *green arrows* indicate a possible outcome.

Anti-HBs antibodies are not detectable while the antigen is produced. The HBc antigen is present in cells or virions and inaccessible to the antibody in blood. As a result, anti-HBc is free to be detected throughout and after the course of the infection.

Infants and young children have an immature cell-mediated immune response and are less able to resolve the infection, but they suffer less tissue damage and have milder symptoms. As many as 90% of infants infected perinatally become chronic carriers. Viral replication persists in these people for long periods.

During the acute phase of infection, the liver parenchyma shows degenerative changes consisting of cellular swelling and necrosis, especially in hepatocytes surrounding the central vein of a hepatic lobule. The inflammatory cell infiltrate is mainly composed of lymphocytes. Tissue damaging inflammation results from the combined actions of cytolytic cells and the inflammatory cytokines that they produce. Resolution of the infection allows the parenchyma to regenerate. Fulminant infections, activation of chronic infections, or co-infection with the delta agent can lead to permanent liver damage and cirrhosis.

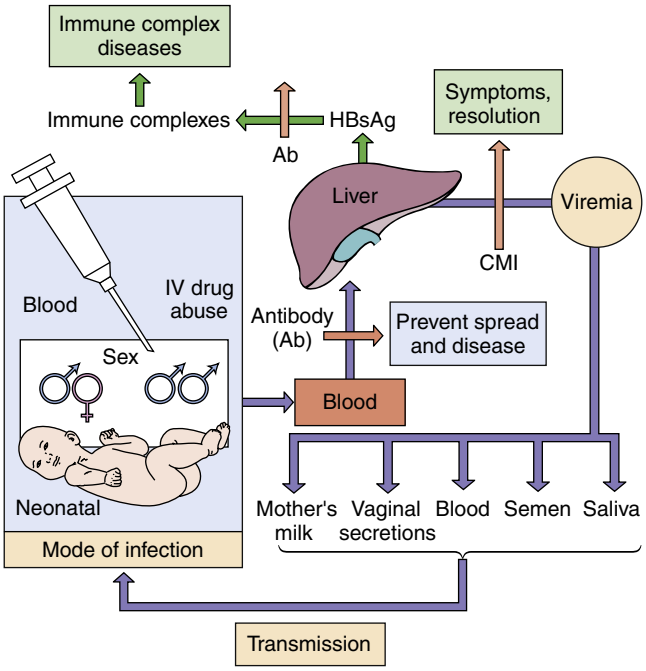


Fig. 55.8 Spread of hepatitis B virus (HBV) in the body. Initial infection with HBV occurs through injection, unprotected sex, and birth. The virus then spreads to the liver, replicates, induces a viremia, and is transmitted in various body secretions in addition to blood to start the cycle again. Symptoms are caused by cell-mediated immunity *(CMI)* and immune complexes between antibody and hepatitis B surface antigen *(HBsAg)*. *IV,* Intravenous.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

In the United States, more than 12 million people have been infected with HBV (1 of 20), with 5000 deaths per year. In the world, one of three people have been infected with HBV, with approximately 1 million deaths per year. More than 350 million people worldwide have chronic HBV infection. In developing nations, as many as 15% of the population may be infected during birth or childhood. High rates of seropositivity are observed in Italy, Greece, Africa, and Southeast Asia (Fig. 55.9). In some areas of the world (southern Africa and southeastern Asia), the seroconversion rate is as high as 50%. PHC, a long-term sequela of the infection, is also endemic in these regions.

The many asymptomatic chronic carriers with virus in blood and other body secretions foster spread of the virus. In the United States, 0.1% to 0.5% of the general population are chronic carriers, but this is very low compared with many areas of the world. Carrier status may be lifelong.

The virus is spread by sexual, parenteral, and perinatal routes. Transmission occurs through contaminated blood and blood components by transfusion, needle sharing, acupuncture, ear piercing, or tattooing and through very close

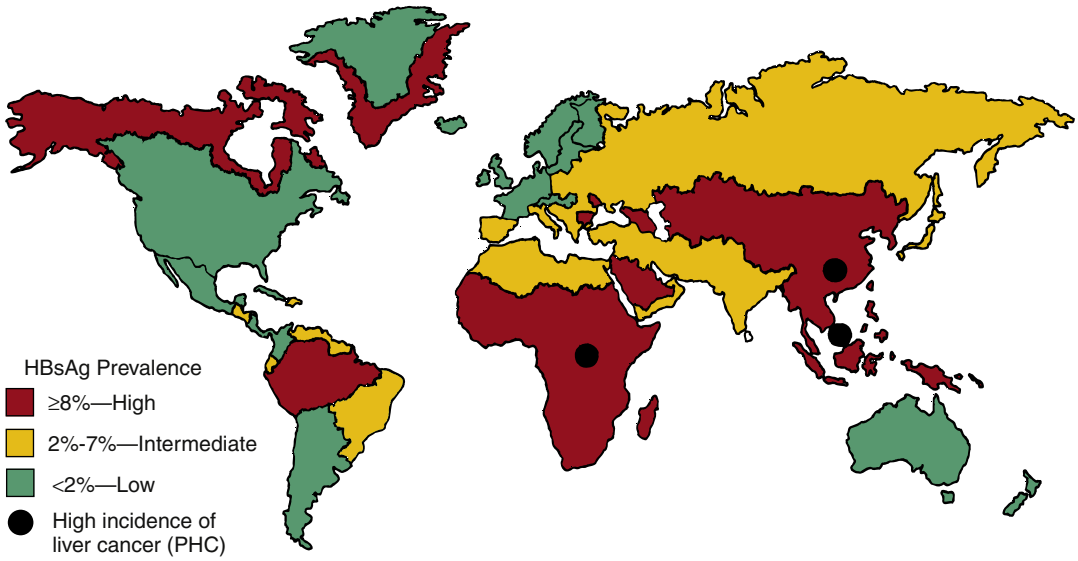


Fig. 55.9 Worldwide prevalence of hepatitis B carriers and primary hepatocellular carcinoma *(PHC)*. *HBsAg,* Hepatitis B surface antigen. (Courtesy Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia.)

BOX 55.5 High-Risk Groups for Hepatitis B Virus Infection

People from endemic regions (i.e., China, parts of Africa, Alaska, Pacific Islands)
Babies of mothers with chronic hepatitis B virus
Intravenous drug abusers
People with multiple sex partners
Health care personnel who have contact with blood
Residents and staff members of institutions for the mentally retarded
Hemophiliacs and other patients requiring blood and blood product treatments[a]
Hemodialysis patients and blood and organ recipients[a]

[a]Screening of blood, blood products, and transplantable organs have minimized risk.

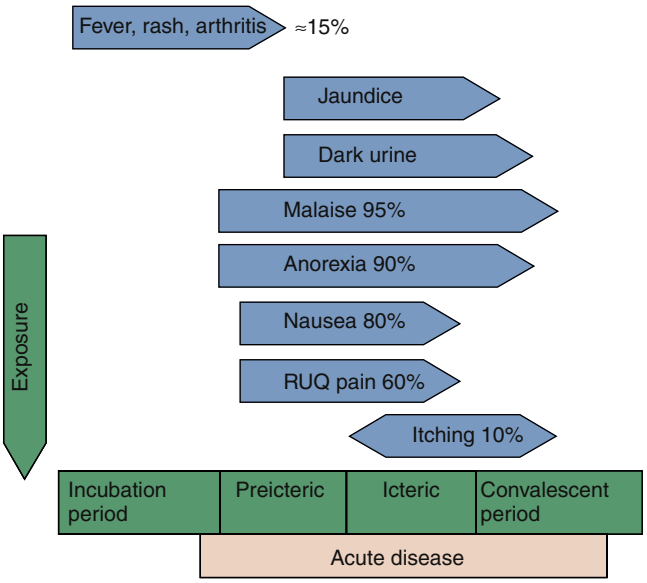


Fig. 55.10 Symptoms of typical acute viral hepatitis B infection are correlated with the four clinical periods of this disease. *RUQ,* Right upper quadrant. (Modified from Hoofnagle, J.H., 1983. Type A and type B hepatitis. Laboratory Medicine 14, 705–716.)

personal contact involving the exchange of semen, saliva, and vaginal secretions (e.g., sex, childbirth) (see Fig. 55.8). Medical personnel are at risk in accidents involving needlesticks or sharp instruments. People at particular risk are listed in Box 55.5. Sexual promiscuity and drug abuse are major risk factors for HBV infection. HBV can be transmitted to babies through contact with the mother's blood at birth and in the mother's milk. Babies born to chronic HBV-positive mothers are at highest risk for infection. Serologic screening of donor units in blood banks has greatly reduced the risk of acquisition of the virus from contaminated blood or blood products. Safer sex habits adopted to prevent human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) transmission and the administration of the HBV vaccine have also been responsible for decreasing the transmission and incidence of HBV.

One of the major concerns related to HBV is its association with PHC. This type of carcinoma probably accounts for 250,000 to 1 million deaths per year worldwide; in the United States, approximately 5000 deaths per year are attributed to PHC.

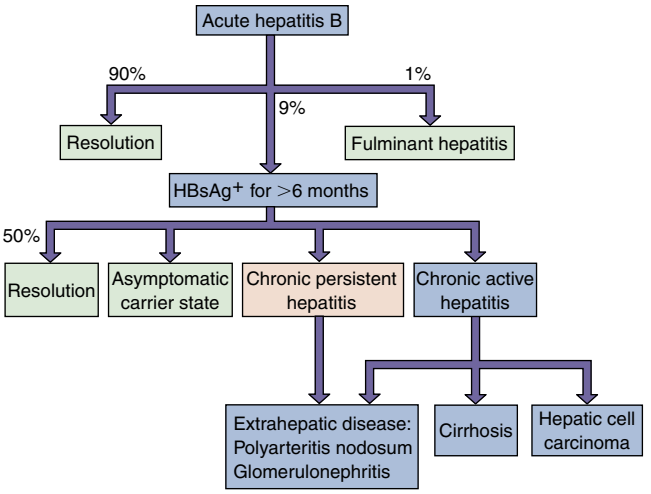


Fig. 55.11 Clinical outcomes of acute hepatitis B infection. *HBsAg,* Hepatitis B surface antigen. (Modified from White, D.O., Fenner, F., 1986. Medical Virology, third ed. Academic, New York.)

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Acute Infection

As already noted, the clinical presentation of HBV in children is less severe than that in adults, and infection may even be asymptomatic. Clinically apparent illness occurs in as many as 25% of those infected with HBV (Figs. 55.10–55.12).

HBV infection is characterized by a **long incubation period and an insidious onset.** Symptoms during the prodromal period may include fever, malaise, and anorexia, followed by nausea, vomiting, abdominal discomfort, and chills. The classic icteric symptoms of liver damage (e.g., jaundice, dark urine, pale stools) follow soon thereafter. Recovery is indicated by a decline in the fever and renewed appetite.

Fulminant hepatitis occurs in approximately 1% of icteric patients and may be fatal. It is marked by more severe symptoms and indications of severe liver damage, such as ascites and bleeding.

HBV infection can promote hypersensitivity reactions that are caused by immune complexes of HBsAg and antibody. These may produce rash, polyarthritis, fever, acute necrotizing vasculitis, and glomerulonephritis.

Chronic Infection

Chronic hepatitis occurs in 5% to 10% of people with HBV infections, usually after mild or inapparent initial disease. Approximately one-third of these people have chronic active hepatitis, with continued destruction of the liver leading to scarring of the liver, cirrhosis, liver failure, or PHC. The other two-thirds have chronic passive hepatitis and are less likely to have problems. Chronic hepatitis may be detected accidentally by finding elevated liver enzyme levels on a routine blood chemistry profile. Chronically infected people are the major source for spread of the virus and are at risk for fulminant disease if they become co-infected with HDV.

Primary Hepatocellular Carcinoma

The World Health Organization estimates that 80% of all cases of PHC can be attributed to chronic HBV infections.

The HBV genome is integrated into these PHC cells, and the cells express HBV antigens. PHC is usually fatal and is one of the three most common causes of cancer mortality in the world. In Taiwan, at least 15% of the population are carriers of HBV, and nearly half die of PHC or cirrhosis. PHC, like cervical cancer, is a vaccine-preventable human cancer.

HBV may induce PHC by promoting continued liver repair and cell growth in response to inflammation and tissue damage or by integrating into the host chromosome and stimulating cell growth directly. Such integration can stimulate genetic rearrangements, juxtapose viral promoters next to cellular growth-controlling genes, disrupt chromosome structure, and stimulate error prone DNA repair. The HBV X gene also can transactivate (turn on) the transcription of cellular proteins and stimulate cell growth and viability. These actions can promote a subsequent mutation to promote carcinogenesis. The latency period between HBV infection and PHC may be as short as 9 years or as long as 35 years.

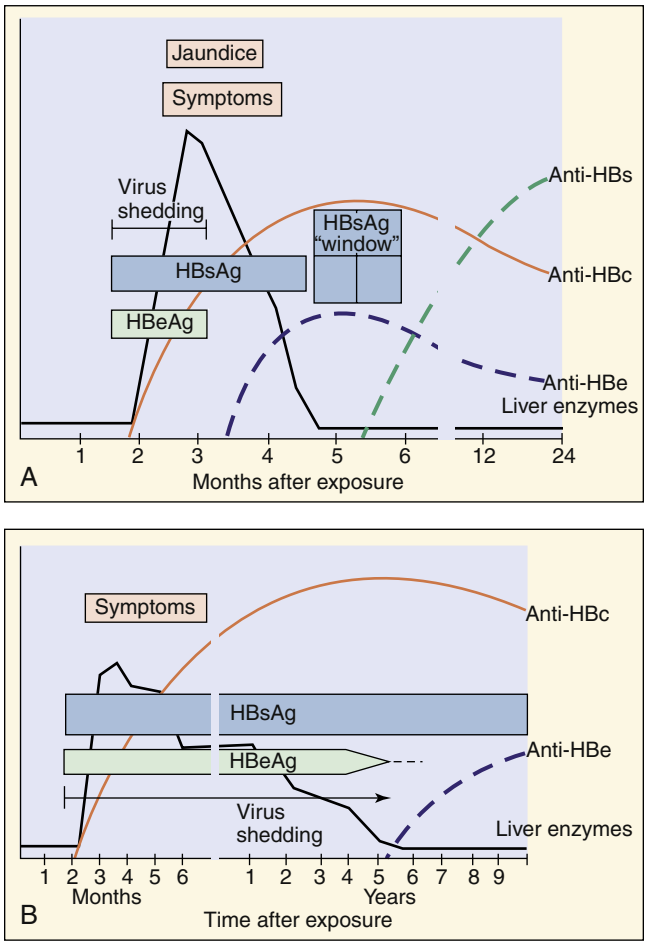


Fig. 55.12 (A) Serologic events associated with the typical course of acute hepatitis B disease. (B) Development of the chronic hepatitis B virus carrier state. Routine serodiagnosis depends on detection of immunoglobulin M anti-HBc during the "hepatitis B surface antigen *(HBsAg)* window," when HBs and anti-HBs are undetectable. *Anti-HBc,* Antibody to hepatitis B core antigen [HBcAg]; *Anti-HBe,* antibody to hepatitis Be antigen [HBeAg]; *Anti-HBs,* antibody to HBsAg. (Modified from Hoofnagle, J.H., 1981. Serologic markers of hepatitis B virus infection. Annual Review of Medicine 32, 1–11.)

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The initial diagnosis of hepatitis can be made on the basis of the clinical symptoms and the presence of liver enzymes in the blood (see Fig. 55.12). However, the serology of HBV infection describes the course and nature of the disease (Table 55.2). Acute and chronic HBV infections can be distinguished by the presence of HBsAg and HBeAg in the serum and the pattern of antibodies to the individual HBV antigens.

HBsAg and HBeAg are secreted into the blood during viral replication. Detection of HBeAg is the best correlate to the presence of infectious virus. A chronic or unresolved infection can be distinguished by the continued finding of HBeAg, HBsAg, or both, and a lack of detectable antibody to these antigens. Antibody to HBsAg indicates resolution of infection or vaccination. Immune complexes of HBeAg and HBsAg and antibody inhibit antibody production and obscure detection of the complexed antigen. Although for different reasons, HBsAg/anti-HBs, HBeAg/anti-HBe, and Clark Kent/Superman can never be seen together at the same time.

Antibody to HBcAg indicates current or prior infection by HBV, and IgM anti-HBc is the best way to diagnose a recent acute infection, especially while the infection is being resolved and when neither HBsAg nor anti-HBs can be detected (the window).

The amount of virus in blood can be determined by quantitative genome assays using PCR and related techniques. Knowing the viral load can help to follow the course of chronic HBV infection and antiviral drug efficacy.

TABLE 55.2 Interpretation of Serologic Markers of Hepatitis B Virus Infection

Serologic Reactivity	DISEASE STATE					HEALTHY STATE	
	Early (Presymptomatic)	Early Acute	Acute	Chronic	Late Acute	Resolved	Vaccinated
Anti-HBc	–	–	+[a]	+	+/–	+	–
Anti-HBe	–	–	–	–	+/–	+/–[b]	–
Anti-HBs	–	–	–	–	–	+	+
HBeAg	–	+	+	+	–	–	–
HBsAg	+	+	+	+	+	–	–
Infectious virus	+	+	+	+	+	–	–

[a]Anti-HBc immunoglobulin M should be present.
[b]Anti-HBe may be negative after chronic disease.
HBc, Hepatitis B core; *HBeAg,* hepatitis Be antigen; *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Hepatitis B immunoglobulin may be administered within a week of exposure and to newborn infants of HBsAg-positive mothers to prevent and ameliorate disease. Chronic HBV infection can be treated with drugs targeted at the polymerase (e.g., **lamivudine, entecavir, telbivudine or tenofovir,** which are HIV reverse transcriptase inhibitors) or the nucleoside analogs **adefovir dipivoxil and famciclovir.** These U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved treatments are taken for 1 year. Unfortunately, antiviral drug resistance can develop. **Pegylated interferon (IFN)-α** also can be effective and is taken for at least 4 months.

Transmission of HBV in blood or blood products has been greatly reduced by screening donated blood for the presence of HBsAg and anti-HBc. Additional efforts to prevent transmission of HBV include safe sex and avoiding lifestyles that facilitate spread of the virus. Household contacts and sexual partners of HBV carriers are at increased risk, as are patients undergoing hemodialysis, recipients of pooled plasma products, health care workers exposed to blood, and babies born to HBV-carrier mothers.

Vaccination is recommended for infants, children, and especially for people in high-risk groups (see Box 55.5). Vaccination is useful even after exposure for newborns of HBsAg-positive mothers and people accidentally exposed either percutaneously or permucosally to blood or secretions from an HBsAg-positive person. Immunization of mothers should decrease the incidence of transmission to babies and older children, which also reduces the number of chronic HBV carriers. Prevention of chronic HBV will reduce the incidence of PHC. The single serotype and limited host range (humans) of HBV help facilitate the success of the immunization program.

The HBV vaccines form virus-like particles. The initial HBV vaccine was derived from the 22-nm HBsAg particles in human plasma obtained from chronically infected people. The more recent vaccines are genetically engineered by the insertion of a plasmid containing the S gene for HBsAg into a yeast *(Saccharomyces cerevisiae)*. The protein self-assembles into particles, which enhances its immunogenicity, and is administered with alum. The vaccine must be given in a series of three injections, with the second and third given 1 and 6 months after the first.

A new HBV vaccine, Heplisav-B, is for adults aged 18 and older. It incorporates the yeast-derived HBsAg particles with a cytosine phosphorothioate guanosine (CpG) oligodeoxynucleotide (CpG-ODN) adjuvant. This Toll-like receptor 9 stimulating adjuvant improves the immunogenicity of the vaccine. Only two injections, 1 month apart, are required.

Universal blood and body fluid precautions are used to limit exposure to HBV. It is assumed that all patients are infected. Gloves are required for handling blood and body fluids; wearing protective clothing and eye protection may also be necessary. Special care should be taken with needles and sharp instruments. HBV-contaminated materials can be disinfected with 10% bleach solutions, but unlike most enveloped viruses, HBV is not readily inactivated by detergents.

Hepatitis C and G Viruses

HCV was identified in 1989 after isolation of a viral RNA from a chimpanzee infected with blood from a person with NANBH. The viral RNA obtained from blood was converted to DNA with reverse transcriptase, its proteins were expressed, and antibodies from people with NANBH were then used to detect the viral proteins. These studies led to the development of ELISA, genomic, and other tests for detection of the virus.

HCV is the predominant cause of NANBH viral infections and was the major cause of posttransfusion hepatitis before routine screening of the blood supply for HCV. There are more than 180 million carriers of HCV in the world, which is 3% of the population, and more than 4 million in the United States. HCV is transmitted by means similar to HBV but has an even greater potential for establishing persistent chronic hepatitis. Many HCV-infected individuals also are infected with HBV or HIV. The chronic hepatitis often leads to cirrhosis and potentially to hepatocellular carcinoma.

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

HCV is the only member of the *Hepacivirus* genus of the **Flaviviridae** family. There are seven major genotypes of HCV (clades), up to a hundred subtypes, and extensive genetic and antigenic diversity within each subtype. HCV is 30 to 60 nm in diameter, has a **positive-sense RNA genome,** and is **enveloped.** The genome of HCV (9100 nucleotides) encodes 10 proteins, including two glycoproteins (E1, E2) (Fig. 55.13). The **viral RNA-dependent RNA polymerase is error prone** and generates mutations in the glycoprotein and other genes. This generates antigenic variability and antiviral drug resistance. Such variability makes development of a vaccine very difficult.

HCV infects only humans and chimpanzees. HCV binds to multiple cell-surface receptors expressed on hepatocytes and B lymphocytes that also facilitate its entry into the cell. The receptors include CD81 (tetraspanin) surface receptors, scavenger receptor class B type I (SRB1), and use tight junction proteins claudin-1 and occludin as co-receptors. HCV can also coat itself with low-density lipoprotein or very low density lipoprotein and then use the lipoprotein receptor to facilitate uptake into hepatocytes. After entry, the virus replicates like other flaviviruses. The virion assembles at and buds into the endoplasmic reticulum and remains cell associated. HCV proteins inhibit apoptosis and IFN-α action by binding to the tumor necrosis factor receptor and to protein kinase R and proteolytically degrading other proteins in the interferon pathways. In addition to acting with the polymerase, the NS5A protein acts on interferon and other host pathways. These actions prevent the death of the host cell and promote escape from host protections to promote persistent infection.

PATHOGENESIS

The ability of HCV to remain cell associated and prevent host cell death promotes persistent infection but results in liver disease later in life. Up to 10^{12} particles per day can be produced in chronically infected, potentially asymptomatic individuals. The virus' ability to evade interferon action and mutate to change its antigenicity helps the virus escape

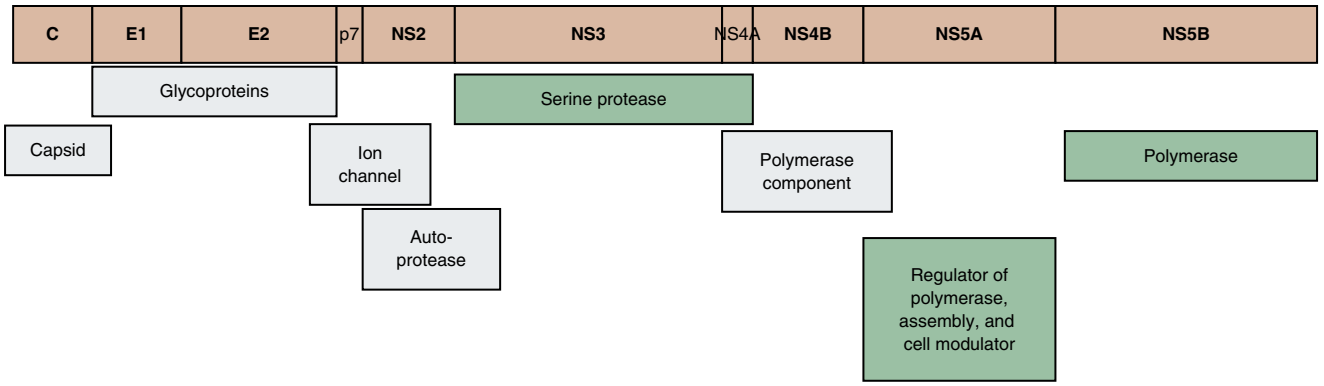


Fig. 55.13 Outcomes of hepatitis C virus infection. Enzymes in green are targets for antiviral drugs.

immune control and establish chronic disease. Cell-mediated immune responses are necessary to resolve the infection, but they also cause tissue damage. Antibody to HCV is not protective. As for HBV, once established, the chronic infection can exhaust CD8 cytotoxic T cells so they cannot resolve the infection. The extent of lymphocytic infiltration, inflammation, portal and periportal fibrosis, and lobular necrosis in liver biopsies can be used to grade the severity of disease. It has been suggested that the cytokines of inflammation and continual liver repair and induction of cell growth occurring during chronic HCV infection are predisposing factors in the development of PHC.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

HCV is **transmitted primarily and efficiently in infected blood** and less efficiently sexually. Intravenous drug abusers and tattoo recipients are at the highest risk of acquiring HCV infection. Screening procedures have led to a reduction in the levels of transmission by blood transfusion and organ donation (Box 55.6). Almost all (>90%) HIV-infected people who are or were intravenous drug users are infected with HCV. Babies born of HCV-positive mothers are also at increased risk for infection. HCV is especially prevalent in southern Italy, Spain, central Europe, Japan, and parts of the Middle East (e.g., almost 20% of Egyptian blood donors are HCV positive). The prevalence of HCV in individuals born between 1945 and 1965 ("baby boomers") is approximately six times higher than the rest of the population. The **high incidence of chronic asymptomatic infections** promotes the spread of the virus in the population.

BOX 55.6 Epidemiology of Hepatitis B, C, and D Viruses

Disease/Viral Factors

Enveloped virus is labile to drying. HBV is less sensitive to detergents than other enveloped viruses.
Virus is shed during asymptomatic periods.
HBV (10%) and HCV (70%) cause chronic infection with potential virus shedding.

Transmission

In blood, semen, and vaginal secretions (HBV: saliva and mother's milk)
Via transfusion, needlestick injury, shared drug paraphernalia, sexual intercourse, and breast-feeding.

Who Is at Risk?

Children: mild asymptomatic disease with establishment of chronic infection.
Adults: insidious onset of hepatitis.
HBV-infected people co-infected or superinfected with HDV: abrupt, more severe symptoms with possible fulminant disease.
Adults with chronic HBV or HCV: at high risk for cirrhosis and primary hepatocellular carcinoma.

Geography/Season

Viruses are found worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

Avoidance of high-risk behavior.
HBV: virus-like particle (HBsAg) vaccines.
HBV and HCV screening of blood supply.

HBV, Hepatitis B virus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HDV,* hepatitis D virus.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

HCV causes three types of disease (Fig. 55.14): (1) acute hepatitis with resolution of the infection and recovery in 15% of cases, (2) chronic persistent infection with possible progression to disease much later in life for 70% of infected persons, and (3) severe rapid progression to cirrhosis in 15% of patients (Clinical Case 55.1). A viremia can be detected within 1 to 3 weeks of a transfusion of HCV-contaminated blood. The viremia lasts 4 to 6 months in people with an acute infection and longer than 10 years in those with a persistent infection. In its acute form, HCV infection is similar to acute HAV and HBV infection, but the inflammatory response is less intense and the symptoms are usually milder. More commonly (>70% of cases), the initial disease is asymptomatic but establishes chronic persistent disease. The predominant symptom is chronic fatigue. Chronic persistent disease often progresses to chronic active hepatitis within 10 to 15 years and to cirrhosis (20% of chronic cases) and liver failure (20% of cirrhotic cases) after 20 years. HCV-induced liver damage may be exacerbated by alcohol, certain medications, and other hepatitis viruses to promote cirrhosis. HCV promotes the development of hepatocellular carcinoma after 30 years in up to 5% of chronically infected patients.

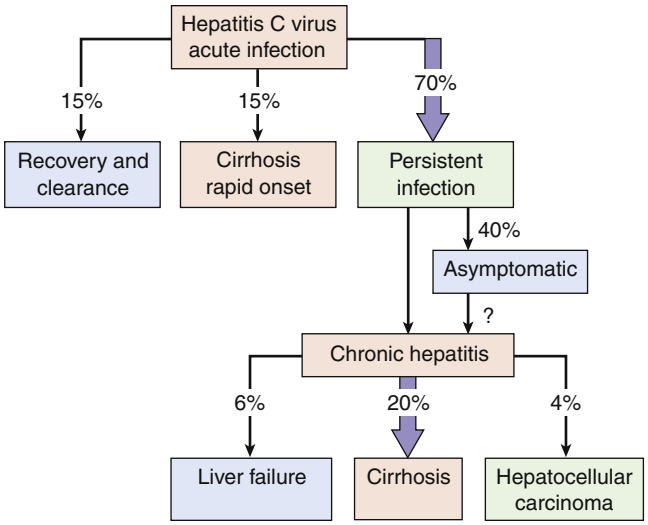


Fig. 55.14 Hepatitis C proteins and their function. Highlighted proteins are targets for antiviral drugs. (Adapted from Scheel, T.K.H., Rice, C.M., 2013. Understanding the hepatitis C virus life cycle paves the way for highly effective therapies. Nature Medicine 19 [7], 837–849.)

Clinical Case 55.1 **Hepatitis C Virus**

In a case reported by Morsica and associates (*Scand J Infect Dis* 33:116–120, 2001), a 35-year-old woman was admitted with malaise and jaundice. Elevated blood levels of bilirubin (71.8 μmol/L; normal value < 17 μmol/L) and ALT (410 IU/l; normal value < 30 IU/L) indicated liver damage. Serology was negative for antibodies to hepatitis A, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus, and HIV-1. However, HCV genomic RNA sequences were detected by reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction analysis. ALT levels peaked on the third week after admission and returned to normal by the eighth week. HCV genomes in blood were undetectable by the eighth week. Anti-HCV antibody was also detected by the eighth week. It was suspected that she was infected by her sexual partner, and this was confirmed by genotyping virus obtained from both individuals. Confirmation was provided by partial sequence analysis of the *E2* gene from the two viral isolates. The 5% genetic divergence detected between the isolates was less than the ≈20% divergence expected for unrelated strains. Before the analysis, the sexual partner was unaware of his chronic HCV infection. Even more than HBV, which is also transmitted by sexual and parenteral means, HCV causes inapparent and chronic infections. Inapparent transmission of the virus, as in this case, enhances spread of the virus. The molecular analysis demonstrates the genetic instability of the HCV genome, which is a possible mechanism for facilitating its chronic infection by changing its antigenic appearance to promote escape from the immune response.

ALT, Aspartate amino transferase; *HBV*, hepatitis B virus; *HCV*, hepatitis C virus.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis and detection of HCV infection are based on ELISA recognition of anti-HCV antibody or detection of the RNA genome. Seroconversion occurs within 7 to 31 weeks of infection. ELISA is used for screening the blood supply from normal donors. Antibody is not always detectable in viremic people, immunocompromised patients, or those receiving hemodialysis. Genome detection and quantitation by RT-PCR, branched-chain DNA, and related techniques is the gold standard for confirming a diagnosis of HCV and for following the success of antiviral drug therapy. Genetic assays are less strain specific and can detect HCV RNA in seronegative people.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

New HCV antiviral regimens using direct acting antivirals (DAAs) has made it possible to cure 90% of individuals infected with HCV (Table 55.3) and have replaced previous therapies. These drugs target the protease (NS3/4A), the NS5A protein, and the polymerase (NS5B). The polymerase inhibitors include nucleotide analogs and nonnucleotide analogs. These antiviral drugs are usually administered as mixtures. Recombinant IFN-α or pegylated interferon (treated with polyethylene glycol to enhance its biological lifetime), alone or with ribavirin, were the only available treatments for HCV until 2011, when the first two virus-specific protease inhibitors were approved for use. This combination was less effective with more side effects.

Precautions for preventing the transmission of HCV are similar to those for HBV and other blood-borne pathogens. The blood supply and organ donors are screened for HCV. Persons with HCV should not share any personal care items or syringe needles that may get contaminated with blood and should practice safe sex. Alcohol drinking should be limited because it exacerbates the liver damage caused by HCV.

Hepatitis G Virus

HGV (also known as GB virus-C [GBV-C]) resembles HCV in many ways. HGV is a flavivirus, is transmitted in blood, and has a predilection for chronic hepatitis infection. It is identified by detection of the genome by RT-PCR or other RNA detection methods.

Hepatitis D Virus

Approximately 15 million people in the world are infected with HDV (delta agent), and the virus is responsible for causing 40% of **fulminant hepatitis** infections. HDV is unique in that it uses HBV and target cell proteins to replicate and produce its one protein. It is a viral parasite, proving that "even fleas have fleas." **HBsAg is essential for packaging the virus.** The delta agent resembles plant virus satellite agents and viroids in its size, genomic structure, and requirement for a helper virus for replication (Fig. 55.15).

STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

The **HDV RNA genome is very small** (≈1700 nucleotides), and unlike other viruses, the single-stranded RNA is circular and forms a rod shape as a result of its extensive base pairing. The virion is approximately the same size as the HBV virion (35 to 37 nm in diameter). The genome is surrounded by the delta antigen core, which, in turn, is surrounded by an HBsAg-containing envelope. The **delta antigen** exists as a small (24-kDa) or large (27-kDa) form; the small form is predominant.

TABLE 55.3 Hepatitis C Antiviral Drugs and Combinations

Antiviral Drug	Target	Name
Daclatasvir	NS5A	Daklinza
Simeprevir	NS3/4A protease	Olysio
Sofosbuvir	NS5B polymerase	Sovaldi
Elbasvir-grazoprevir	NS5A + NS3/4A protease	Zepatier
Glecaprevir-pibrentasvir	NS3/4A protease + NS5A	Mavyret
Ledipasvir-Sofosbuvir	NS5A + NS5B polymerase	Harvoni
Sofosbuvir-velpatasvir-voxilaprevir	NS5B polymerase + NS5A + NS3/4A protease	Vosevi
Ombitasvir-paritaprevir-ritonavir	NS5A + NS3/4A protease + inhibitor of CYP3A4	Technivie
Ombitasvir-paritaprevir-ritonavir-dasabuvir	NS5A + NS3/4A protease + inhibitor of CYP3A4 + NS5B polymerase	Viekira Pak
Sofosbuvir-velpatasvir	NS5B polymerase + NS5A	Epclusa
Ribavarin	Broad -spectrum antiviral	Copegus, Rebetol, Ribosphere
Peginterferon alfa-2a, peginterferon alfa-2b	Pegylated natural antiviral	Pegasys PegIntron

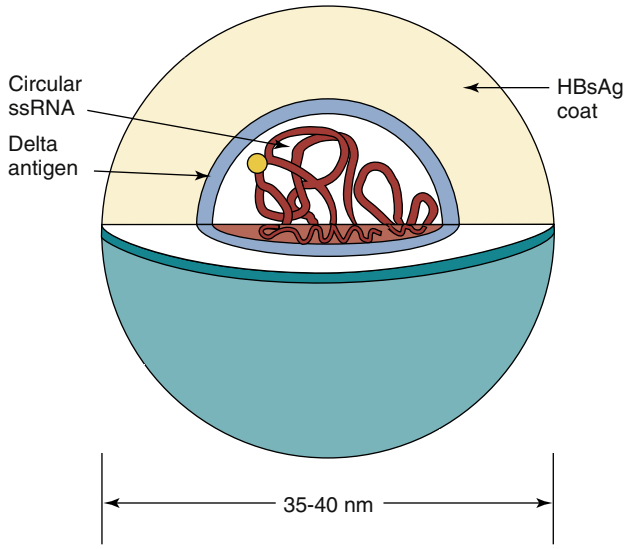


Fig. 55.15 Delta hepatitis virion. *HBsAg,* Hepatitis B surface antigen; *ssRNA,* single-stranded RNA.

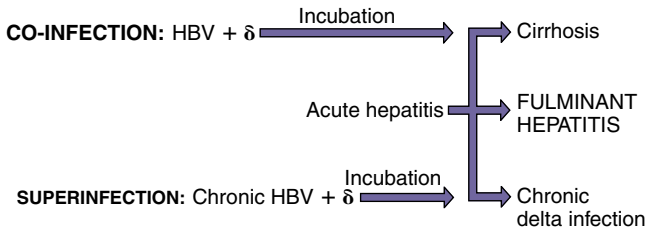


Fig. 55.16 Consequences of delta virus infection. Delta virus *(δ)* requires the presence of hepatitis B virus *(HBV)* infection. Superinfection of a person already infected with HBV (carrier) causes more rapid, severe progression than co-infection *(shorter arrow)*.

The delta agent binds to and is internalized by hepatocytes in the same manner as HBV because it has HBsAg in its envelope. The transcription and replication processes of the HDV genome are unusual. The host cell's RNA polymerase II makes an RNA copy to replicate the genome. The genome then forms an RNA structure called a **ribozyme,** which cleaves the RNA circle to produce an mRNA for the small delta antigen. The gene for the delta antigen is mutated by a cellular enzyme (double-stranded RNA-activated adenosine deaminase) during infection, allowing production of the large delta antigen. Production of this antigen limits replication of the virus but also promotes association of the genome with HBsAg to form a virion, and the virus is then released from the cell.

PATHOGENESIS

The delta agent can replicate and cause disease only in people with active HBV infections. Because the two agents are transmitted by the same routes, a person can be **co-infected** with HBV and the delta agent. A person with chronic HBV can also be **superinfected** with the delta agent. More rapid, severe progression occurs in HBV carriers superinfected with HDV than in people co-infected with HBV and the delta agent because, during co-infection, HBV must first establish its infection before HDV can replicate (Fig. 55.16), whereas superinfection of an HBV-infected person allows the delta agent to replicate immediately and in more cells.

Unlike HBV disease, damage to the liver occurs as a result of the direct cytopathic effect of the delta agent combined with the underlying immunopathology of the HBV disease. The delta agent exacerbates the HBV disease. Persistent delta agent infection is often established in HBV carriers. Antibodies are elicited against the delta agent, but protection is provided by antibodies to HBsAg, generated by vaccination or infection, because it is the external antigen and viral attachment protein for HDV.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The delta agent infects children and adults with underlying HBV infection (see Box 55.6), and people who are persistently infected with both HBV and HDV are a source for the virus. The agent has a worldwide distribution, infecting approximately 5% of the more than three hundred million HBV carriers, and is endemic in southern Italy, the Amazon Basin, parts of Africa, and the Middle East. Epidemics of HDV infection occur in North America

BOX 55.7 Clinical Summaries

Hepatitis A: A 37-year-old man develops fever, chills, headache, and fatigue 4 weeks after eating at a greasy-spoon diner. Within 2 days, he develops anorexia, vomiting, and right upper quadrant abdominal pain followed by jaundice, dark-colored urine, and pale stools persisting for 12 days. Then symptoms decrease.

Hepatitis B: A 27-year-old IV drug user develops symptoms of hepatitis 60 days after using a dirty needle.

Hepatitis B and D: A different IV drug user develops symptoms of hepatitis, altered mental capacity, and massive hepatic necrosis and then dies.

Hepatitis C: Elevated liver enzymes were detected in an individual during a physical examination. Hepatitis C virus in the blood was detected by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. Ten years later, cirrhosis and liver failure developed, requiring a liver transplant.

IV, Intravenous.

and Western Europe, usually in illicit drug users. HDV is spread by the same routes as HBV, and the same groups are at risk for infection, with parenteral drug abusers, hemophiliacs, and others receiving blood products at highest risk. Screening of the blood supply has reduced the risk for recipients of blood products.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The delta agent increases the severity of HBV infections (Box 55.7). Fulminant hepatitis is more likely to develop in people infected with the delta agent than in those infected with the other hepatitis viruses. This very severe form of hepatitis causes altered brain function (hepatic encephalopathy), extensive jaundice, and massive hepatic necrosis, which is fatal in 80% of cases. Chronic infection with the delta agent can occur in people with chronic HBV.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The presence of the agent can be noted by detecting the RNA genome, the delta antigen, or anti-HDV antibodies. ELISA and radioimmunoassay procedures are available for detection. The delta antigen can be detected in the blood during the acute phase of disease in a detergent-treated serum sample. RT-PCR techniques can be used to detect the virion genome in blood.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

There is no known specific treatment for HDV hepatitis. Because the delta agent depends on HBV for replication and is spread by the same routes, prevention of HBV infection prevents HDV infection. Immunization with HBV vaccine protects against delta virus infection. If a person has already acquired HBV, delta agent infection may be prevented by reducing risk of exposure by illicit intravenous drug use.

Hepatitis E Virus

HEV (E-NANBH) (the *E* stands for *enteric* or *epidemic*) is predominantly spread by the fecal-oral route, especially in contaminated water (see Box 55.3). HEV is a member of the Hepeviridae family with a positive-strand RNA genome and naked capsid structure. Although HEV is found throughout the world, it is most problematic in developing countries. In developed countries, HEV is a zoonosis and is acquired from pigs and undercooked pork or game meat. Epidemics have been reported in India, Pakistan, Nepal, Burma, North Africa, and Mexico.

The symptoms and course of HEV disease are similar to those of HAV disease; it causes only acute disease. However, the symptoms for HEV may occur later than those of HAV disease. The mortality rate associated with HEV disease is 1% to 2%, approximately 10 times that associated with HAV disease. HEV infection is especially serious in pregnant women (mortality rate of ≈20%).

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Bartenschlager, R., 2013. Hepatitis C Virus: From Molecular Virology to Antiviral Therapy. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 369. Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, Germany.

Casey, J.L., 2006. Hepatitis Delta Virus. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 307. Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, Germany.

Catalina, G., Navarro, V., Hepatitis, C., 2000. A challenge for the generalist. Hosp. Pract. 35, 97–108.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Dustin, L.B., Bartolini, B., Capobianchi, M.R., Pistello, M., 2016. Hepatitis C virus: life cycle in cells, infection and host response, and analysis of molecular markers influencing the outcome of infection and response to therapy. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 22, 826–832.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Ganem, D., Prince, A.M., 2004. Hepatitis B virus infection—natural history and clinical consequences. N. Engl. J. Med. 350, 1118–1119.

Grimm, D., Thimme, R., Blum, H.E., 2011. HBV life cycle and novel drug targets. Hepatol. Int. 5, 644–653.

Hagedorn, C.H., Rice, C.M., 2000. The Hepatitis C Viruses. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 242. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Lok, A.S.F., 2002. Chronic hepatitis B. N. Engl. J. Med. 346, 1682–1683.

Tam, A.W., Smith, M.M., Guerra, M.E., et al., 1991. Hepatitis E virus: molecular cloning and sequencing of the full-length viral genome. Virology 185, 120–131.

Tan, S.L., 2006. Hepatitis C viruses. Genomes and Molecular Biology. Horizon. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK1613/.

Taylor, J.M., 2006. Hepatitis delta virus. Virology 344, 71–76.

Websites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Viral hepatitis. www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/. Accessed September 21, 2018.

Gilroy, R.K., Hepatitis, A., http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/177484-overview. Accessed September 21, 2018.

Hepatitis, B Foundation, Statistics. www.hepb.org/hepb/statistics.htm. Accessed September 21, 2018.

Hepatitis C therapies. https://www.hepatitisc.uw.edu/page/treatment/drugs. Accessed September 21, 2018.

Infectious Disease Society of America, HCV guidelines. https://www.hcvguidelines.org/. Accessed September 21, 2018.

Mukhrjee, S., Dhawan, V.K., Hepatitis, C. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/177792-overview. Accessed September 21, 2018.

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, Viral hepatitis. https://www.niaid.nih.gov/diseases-conditions/hepatitis. Accessed September 21, 2018.

Nature: Hepatitis C. www.nature.com/nature/outlook/hepatitis-c/index.html. Accessed September 21, 2018.

Pascarella, S., Negroa, F., Hepatitis D virus: an update. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1111/j.1478-3231.2010.02320.x/pdf. Accessed September 21, 2018.

WHO Alert: Hepatitis. www.who.int/csr/disease/hepatitis/whocdscsredc2007/en/index4.html. Accessed September 21, 2018

WHO Alert, Hepatitis C factsheet. www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs164/en/. Accessed September 21, 2018.

Case Studies and Questions

A 55-year-old man **(patient A)** was admitted to the hospital with fatigue, nausea, and abdominal discomfort. He had a slight fever, his urine was dark yellow, and his abdomen was distended and tender. He had returned from a trip to Thailand within the previous month.

A 28-year-old woman **(patient B)** was admitted to the hospital complaining of vomiting, abdominal discomfort, nausea, anorexia, dark urine, and jaundice. She admitted that she was a former heroin addict and that she had shared needles. In addition, she was 3 months pregnant.

A 65-year-old man **(patient C)** was admitted with jaundice, nausea, and vomiting. He had major surgery requiring blood transfusions when he was a child.

1. What clinical or epidemiologic clues would have assisted in the diagnosis of hepatitis A, B, and C?
2. What laboratory tests would have been helpful in distinguishing the different hepatitis infections?
3. What was the most likely means of viral acquisition in each case?
4. What personal and public health precautions should have been taken to prevent the transmission of virus in each case?
5. Which of the patients was susceptible to chronic disease?
6. What laboratory tests distinguish acute from chronic HBV disease?
7. How can HBV disease be prevented? How could it be treated?

56 Prion Diseases

A 73-year-old man complained of weakness, forgetfulness, difficulty speaking, and involuntary movements of his right arm. After 3 months, myoclonus (muscle twitching) and other neurologic signs were noted and he was hospitalized. Protein 14-3-3 was detected in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), but there was no evidence of an infection. The patient's condition continued to deteriorate, he slipped into a coma, and he died 4 months after the onset of symptoms. At autopsy, brain sections showed vacuolation and amyloid-containing plaques and fibrils, but there was no evidence of inflammatory cells.

1. Which disease signs indicate a prion disease?
2. Why are prions so resistant to disinfection?
3. Why was there no evidence of an immune response?

Answers to these questions are available on StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

PRIONS

Trigger Words

Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, spongiform encephalopathy, kuru, presenile dementia, myoclonus

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Prions are infectious protein aggregates resistant to inactivation
- Prions consist of assembled subunits with an alternate conformation of normal host proteins (PrP)
- Normal PrP protein binds to the PrP^{Sc} or the multimeric PrP^{Sc}, which alters its conformation and binds and extends fibrils
- Collect in brain, where they cause spongiform vacuoles
- No immune response, no inflammation
- Acquired, genetic, and sporadic forms of prion disease
- Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (presenile dementia), kuru, Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker disease, fatal familial insomnia

Epidemiology

- Transmitted on contaminated surgical devices, by injection, in food, or genetic

Diagnosis

- Symptomatology, MRI, indirect assays

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Rigorous disinfection procedures
- No means of prevention or control

MRI, Magnetic resonance imaging.

Spongiform encephalopathies, which are slow neurodegenerative diseases, are caused by proteinaceous infectious particles termed *prions.* Unlike conventional viruses, prions have no virion structure or genome, elicit no immune response, and are extremely resistant to inactivation by heat, disinfectants, and radiation (Table 56.1). **Prion diseases can be sporadic, genetic, or acquired.** After long incubation periods, these agents cause damage to the central nervous system, leading to a subacute spongiform encephalopathy. The long incubation period, which can last 30 years in humans, has made the study of these agents difficult.

Acquired (by infection) human prion diseases include kuru, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD), and variant CJD (vCJD). Genetic prion diseases include CJD, Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker (GSS) syndrome, and fatal familial insomnia (FFI). Sporadic occurrences of CJD and FFI occur more commonly (85% to 90% of cases) than genetic (10% to 15%) or acquired (1% to 3%). The animal diseases include scrapie, bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE; ["mad cow disease"]), chronic wasting disease (in mule, deer, and elk), and transmissible mink encephalopathy (Box 56.1).

Carlton Gajdusek won the Nobel Prize in 1976 for showing that kuru has an infectious etiology and for developing a method for analyzing the agent. Stanley Prusiner won the Nobel Prize in 1997 for developing a hamster infection model for the scrapie agent. He and his coworkers were able to purify, characterize, and then clone the genes for the scrapie and other prion agents and show that the disease-related prion protein is sufficient to cause disease.

Structure and Physiology

The prion is an infectious protein called scrapie-like prion protein (**PrP^{Sc}**), which is protease resistant, hydrophobic, forms fibrillar aggregates, and lacks nucleic acids. It consists of an alternate conformation of a normal cell surface glycoprotein termed cellular prion protein (**PrP^{C}**) (27,000 to 30,000 Da). PrP^{C} is protease sensitive and is held in the cell membrane by a linkage between its terminal serine and a special lipid called glycophosphatidylinositol (GPI-linked protein). PrP^{C} interacts with and modulates the function of numerous membrane proteins in the brain, including potassium channels, *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors, and the neural cell adhesion molecule. Binding to PrP^{Sc} changes the conformation of the PrP^{C} protein, which is rich in α-helical configuration to a β-sheet enriched form to produce the aberrant protein termed **PrP^{Sc}**, which builds a fibril (Table 56.2). PrP^{Sc} is protease resistant, aggregates into amyloid rods (fibrils), and is cell free.

The current theory to explain how an aberrant protein could cause disease is called *template-mediated protein refolding.* A linear aggregate of PrP^{Sc} binds to an anionic

TABLE 56.1 Comparison of Classic Viruses and Prions

Characteristic	Virus	Prion
Filterable infectious agents	Yes	Yes
Presence of nucleic acid	Yes	No
Defined morphology (electron microscopy)	Yes	No
Presence of protein	Yes	Yes
DISINFECTION BY:		
Formaldehyde	Yes	No
Proteases	Some	No
Heat (80° C)	Most	No
Ionizing and ultraviolet radiation	Yes	No
DISEASE		
Cytopathologic effect	Yes	No
Incubation period	Depends on virus	Long
Immune response	Yes	No
Interferon production	Yes	No
Inflammatory response	Yes	No

BOX 56.1 Prion Diseases

Human

Kuru
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease
Variant CJD
Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker syndrome
Fatal familial insomnia
Sporadic fatal insomnia

Animal

Scrapie (sheep and goats)
Transmissible mink encephalopathy
Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE [mad cow disease])
Chronic wasting disease (mule, deer, and elk)

structure on the cell surface, such as a glycosaminoglycan, and the normal PrP^C on the cell surface. This causes the PrP^C to refold, acquire the structure of PrP^{Sc}, and join the chain. Binding to the PrP^{Sc} forces the α-helical structure of the PrP^C to change to a more β-pleated sheet structure of the PrP^{Sc}. The PrP^{Sc} acts as a template to transmit its conformation onto each new PrP^{Sc}, which can then perpetuate the change, analogous to how a mutation in the genetic template of a virus perpetuates a change in the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA) genome. When the string of PrP^{Sc} breaks, it creates new primers on which more prions can be built. The PrP^C continue to be made by the cell, and as they bind to the PrP^{Sc} primers, the cycle continues. The human version of the PrP^C is encoded on chromosome 20. The fact that these plaques consist of host protein may explain the lack of an immune response to these agents in patients with the spongiform encephalopathies.

Different strains of PrP^{Sc} occur because of mutations in the PrP^C (genetic) or because of self-perpetuating alternative folding patterns of the protein (sporadic or acquired).

TABLE 56.2 Comparison of Scrapie Prion Protein and (Normal) Cellular Prion Protein

Characteristic	PrP^{Sc}	PrP^C
Structure	Multimeric	Monomeric
Protease resistance	Yes	No
Presence in scrapie fibrils	Yes	No
Location in or on cells	Cytoplasmic vesicles and extracellular milieu	Plasma membrane
Turnover	Days	Hours

PrP^C, Cellular prion protein; *PrP^{Sc}*, scrapie prion protein.

Specific mutations at codon 129 determine the severity of CJD. Conformational rather than genetic mutation is another property that distinguishes prions from viruses. The different conformational strains can have different properties and varying disease aspects (e.g., incubation period).

Aggregation of other proteins into prions or prion-like structures may cause or contribute to human diseases such as Alzheimer disease, Huntington disease, and Parkinson disease.

Pathogenesis

Prion infection can occur by ingestion, penetration through cuts in the skin, or by direct infection of the brain or neuronal tissue with prion-containing tissue. After ingestion, the prions accumulate in highly enervated secondary lymphoid tissue in follicular dendritic cells and B cells and then travel up neurons to the central nervous system and the brain.

Spongiform encephalopathy describes the appearance of the vacuolated neurons, as well as their loss of function and lack of an immune response or inflammation (Box 56.2). The formation of amyloid-containing plaques and fibrils, a proliferation and hypertrophy of astrocytes, and vacuolation of neurons and adjacent glial cells are observed (Fig. 56.1). The PrP^{Sc} reaches high concentrations in the brain and is taken up by neurons and phagocytic cells but is difficult to degrade, which is a feature that may contribute to the vacuolation of brain tissue. Prions can also be isolated from tissue other than the brain, but only the brain shows any pathologic changes. No inflammation or immune response to the agent is generated, distinguishing this disease from classic viral encephalitis. Protein markers (tau protein or 14-3-3 brain protein) can be detected in the CSF of symptomatic persons, but this is not specific for prion disease.

The incubation period for CJD and kuru may be as long as 30 years, but once the symptoms become evident, disease progresses rapidly and death usually occurs within a year.

Epidemiology

CJD is transmitted predominantly by (1) injection, (2) transplantation of contaminated tissue (e.g., corneas), (3) contact

BOX 56.2 Pathogenic Characteristics of Prions

No cytopathologic effect in vitro
Long doubling time of at least 5.2 days
Long incubation period
Cause vacuolation of neurons (spongiform), amyloid-like plaques, gliosis
Cause loss of muscle control, shivering, tremors, dementia
Lack of antigenicity
Lack of inflammation
Lack of immune response
Lack of interferon production

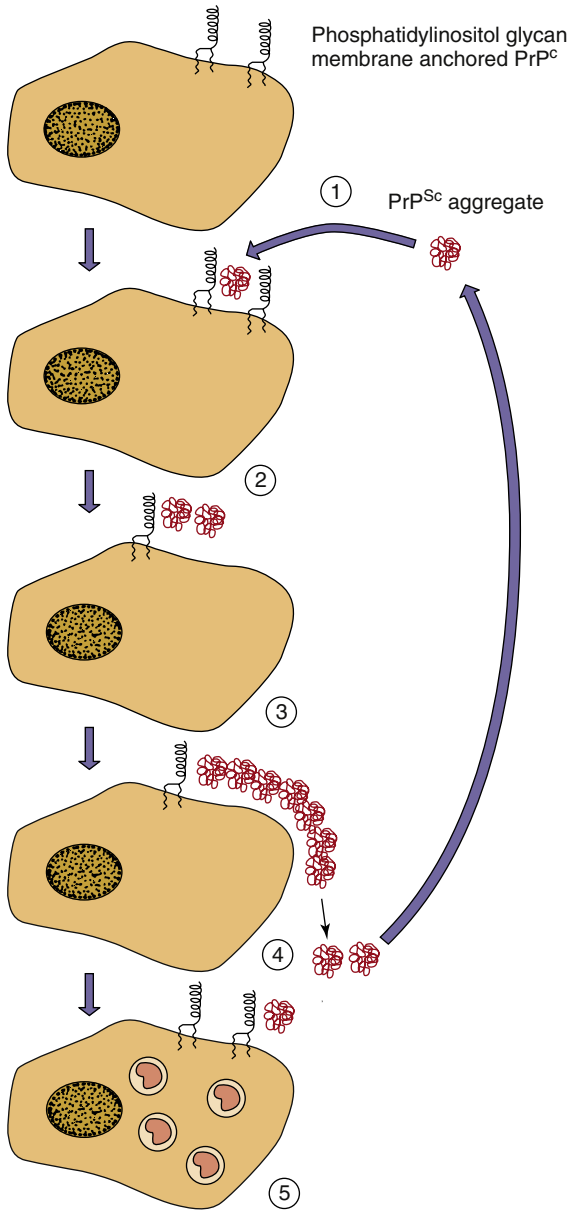


Fig. 56.1 Template-mediated protein refolding model for proliferation of prions. PrP^C is a normal cellular protein that is anchored in the cell membrane by phosphatidylinositol glycan. PrP^{Sc} is a hydrophobic globular protein that aggregates with itself and with PrP^C on the cell surface *(1)*. PrP^C acquires the conformation of PrP^{Sc} *(2)*. The cell synthesizes new PrP^C *(3)*, and a chain is built along cell surface anionic glycosaminoglycans *(4)*. The chain breaks on phagocytosis or from shear forces and releases PrP^{Sc} aggregates that act like seed crystals to start the cycle over. A form of PrP^{Sc} is internalized by neuronal cells and accumulates *(5)*. Other models have been proposed.

BOX 56.3 Epidemiology of Disease Caused by Prions

Disease/Viral Factors

Agents are impervious to standard microbial disinfection procedures.
Diseases have very long incubation periods, as long as 30 years.
Disease acquisition may be infectious, genetic, or sporadic (random occurrence).

Transmission

Transmission is via **infected tissue,** or syndrome may be **inherited.**
Infection can occur by ingestion,through cuts in skin, transplantation of contaminated tissues (e.g., cornea), and use of contaminated medical devices (e.g., brain electrodes).

Who Is at Risk?

Members (especially women and children) of the Fore tribe in New Guinea were at risk for kuru because of ritual cannibalism.
Surgeons, transplant and brain-surgery patients, and others are at risk for CJD and GSS syndrome.

Geography/Season

GSS syndrome and CJD have sporadic occurrence worldwide.
There is no seasonal incidence.

Modes of Control

No treatments are available.
Cessation of ritual cannibalism has led to the disappearance of kuru.
Elimination of animal products from livestock feed to prevent vCJD development and transmission
For GSS syndrome and CJD, neurosurgical tools and electrodes should be disinfected in 5% hypochlorite solution or 1.0 M sodium hydroxide or autoclaved at 15 psi for 1 hour.

CJD, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease; *GSS,* Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker; *vCJD,* variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease.

with contaminated medical devices (e.g., brain electrodes), and (4) food (Box 56.3). CJD usually affects persons older than 50 years. CJD, FFI, and GSS syndrome are also inheritable, and families with genetic histories of these diseases have been identified. The diseases are rare but occur worldwide.

Kuru was limited to a very small area of the New Guinea highlands. The name of the disease means "shivering" or "trembling," and the disease was related to the cannibalistic practices of the Fore tribe of New Guinea. Before Gajdusek intervened, it was the custom of these people to eat the bodies of their deceased kinsmen. When Gajdusek began his study, he noted that women and children, in particular, were the most susceptible to the disease, and he deduced that the reasons were that the women and children prepared the food, and they were given the less desirable viscera and brains to eat. Their risk for infection was higher because they handled the contaminated tissue, making it possible for the agent to be introduced through the conjunctiva or cuts in the skin. In addition, they ingested the neural tissue, which contains the highest concentrations of the kuru agent. Cessation of this cannibalistic custom has stopped the spread of kuru.

An epidemic of BSE (mad cow disease) in 1980 in the United Kingdom and the unusual incidence of a more rapidly progressing CJD in younger people (<45 years) in 1996 prompted concern that contaminated beef was the source

of this new variant of CJD (termed **vCJD**). Infection of cattle was most likely caused by the use of contaminated animal by-products (e.g., sheep entrails, brains) as a protein supplement in cattle feed. Ingestion of contaminated beef is likely to be the cause of 153 cases of vCJD, more than 98% of which have occurred in the United Kingdom.

Clinical Syndromes

The prion agents cause a progressive, degenerative neurologic disease with a long incubation period, but with rapid progression to death after the onset of symptoms (Fig. 56.2; Clinical Case 56.1; Box 56.4). The spongiform encephalopathies are characterized by a loss of muscle control, shivering, myoclonic jerks and tremors, loss of coordination, rapidly progressive dementia, and death.

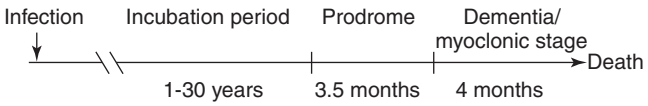


Fig. 56.2 Progression of transmissible Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease.

Clinical Case 56.1 **Transmission of Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease by Transfusion**

In a case reported by Wroe and associates (*Lancet* 368:2061–2067, 2006), a 30-year-old man consulted his family doctor because of fatigue and inability to concentrate. The symptoms were attributed to a respiratory tract infection. Neurologic exams for the patient at this time were normal. History was significant for the fact that during surgery 7 years earlier, the patient had received packed red cells, including blood from a donor who died 1 year later with vCJD. Within 6 months of his initial presentation, the patient had difficulty maintaining balance, a tendency to stagger, some memory problems, a tremor in his hands, and "searing pain" in his legs. At this time, there was no evidence of changes in vision or mental status. After another 6 weeks, his mental status and memory decreased, balance and walking became difficult and painful, magnetic resonance neuroimaging and electroencephalogram indicated changes, and a new blood test showed the presence of the vCJD prion protein (PrP^{Sc}). The patient's mental status and physical ability continued to decline; he became mute, bedridden, poorly responsive, and he died 8 years and 8 months after the transfusion. Western immunoblot of autopsy samples from the brain and tonsils contained the PrP^{Sc} protein. PrP plaques and spongiform encephalopathy were noted in the brain.

Because of the long incubation period for prion diseases, prevention of transfusion transmission of CJD is difficult. vCJD has a more rapid onset of disease, and this case shows the classic progression through the five stages: (1) incubation (6 years), (2) prodromal fatigue and difficulty concentrating (18 months), (3) progressive neurologic decline (9 months), (4) late neurologic phase (4 months), and (5) terminal phase. Immunoblot analysis of treated prion protein can now distinguish the PrP^{Sc} from the normal protein in samples that can be taken from the patient's tonsils (or at autopsy, from the brain).

CJD, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease; *vCJD,* variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease.

Laboratory Diagnosis

There are no methods for directly detecting prions in tissue, and there is no serologic response. The initial diagnosis must be made on clinical grounds. Initial confirmation of the diagnosis can be made by magnetic resonance imaging, detection of elevated levels of 14-3-3 protein or tau protein in CSF, or a proteinase K–resistant form of PrP in a Western blot using antibody to PrP in a tonsil biopsy. The ability of PrPSc to initiate the polymerization of normal PrP is utilized in the protein-misfolding cyclic assay (PMCA) to amplify the number of PrP^{Sc} units and can be used to detect the presence of prions. A new assay called real-time quaking-induced conversion **(RT-QuIC)** tests CSF or nasal-brushing specimens for the presence of PrP^{Sc}. The aggregation of PrP into prion fibrils enhances the fluorescence of thioflavin T, which can be readily measured. At autopsy, the characteristic amyloid plaques, spongiform vacuoles, and immunohistologically detected PrP can be observed.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

No treatment exists for kuru or CJD. The causative agents are also impervious to the disinfection procedures used for other viruses, including formaldehyde, detergents, and ionizing radiation. Autoclaving at 15 psi for 1 hour (instead of 20 minutes) or treatment with 5% hypochlorite solution or 1.0 M sodium hydroxide can be used for decontamination. Because these agents can be transmitted on instruments and brain electrodes, such items should be carefully disinfected before being reused.

The outbreak of BSE and vCJD in the United Kingdom promoted legislation to ban animal products in livestock feed and encouraged more careful monitoring of cattle. Prion disease has not been a problem in cattle in the United States. Cattle must be younger than 5 years old to minimize the possibility of accumulation of aberrant PrP and so that muscle tissue would have the lowest amount of PrP.

BOX 56.4 **Clinical Summaries**

Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease: A 63-year-old man complained of poor memory and difficulty with vision and muscle coordination. Over the course of the next year, he developed senile dementia and irregular jerking movements, progressively lost muscle function, and then died.

Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease: A 25-year-old is seen by a psychiatrist for anxiety and depression. After 2 months, he has problems with balance and muscle control and has difficulty remembering. He develops myoclonus and dies within 12 months of onset.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Aguzzi, A., Nuvolone, M., Zhu, C., 2013. The immunobiology of prion diseases. Nat. Rev. Immunol. 13, 888–902.

Aguzzi, A., Zhu, C., 2012. Five questions on prion diseases. PLoS Pathog. 8, e1002651.

Belay, E.D., 1999. Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies in humans. Annu. Rev. Microbiol. 53, 283–314.

Brown, P., Coker-Vann, M., Pomeroy, K., et al., 1986. Diagnosis of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease by Western blot identification. N. Engl. J. Med. 314, 547–551.

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., 2004. Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis.

Flint, S.J., Racaniello, V.R., et al., 2015. Principles of Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Halfmann, R., Alberti, S., Lindquist, S., 2010. Prions, protein homeostasis, and phenotypic diversity. Trends. Cell. Biol. 20, 125–133.

Hsich, G., Kenney, K., Gibbs, C.J., et al., 1996. The 14-3-3 brain protein in cerebrospinal fluid as a marker for transmissible spongiform encephalopathies. N. Engl. J. Med. 335, 924–930.

Knipe, D.M., Howley, P.M., 2013. Fields Virology, sixth ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia.

Lee, K.S., Caughey, B., 2007. A simplified recipe for prions. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U S A. 104, 9551–9552.

Manson, J.C., 1999. Understanding transmission of the prion diseases. Trends. Microbiol. 7, 465–467.

Mercer, R.C., Ma, L., Watts, J.C., et al., 2013. The prion protein modulates A-type K^+ currents mediated by Kv4.2 complexes through dipeptidyl aminopeptidase-like protein 6. J. Biol. Chem. 288, 37241–37255.

Orrú, C.D., Groveman, B.R., Hughson, A.G., et al., 2015. Rapid and sensitive RT-QuIC detection of human Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease using cerebrospinal fluid. MBio.. 6 (1), e0245114. https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.02451-14.

Prusiner, S.B., 1992. Molecular biology and genetics of neurodegenerative diseases caused by prions. Adv. Virus. Res. 41, 241–280.

Prusiner, S.B., 1996. Prions, Prions, Prions. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 207. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Prusiner, S.B., 2012. A unifying role for prions in neurodegenerative diseases. Science 336, 1511–1512.

Richman, D.D., Whitley, R.J., Hayden, F.G., 2017. Clinical Virology, fourth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Takada, L.T., Geschwind, M.D., 2013. Prion diseases. Semin. Neurol. 33, 348–356.

Websites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Prion diseases. https://www.cdc.gov/prions/index.html. Accessed September 22, 2018.

CJD Foundation, https://cjdfoundation.org/info.html.

Freudenrich, C.C., How mad cow disease works. https://animals.howstuffworks.com/animal-facts/mad-cow-disease1.htm. Accessed September 22, 2018.

Genetics Home Reference: Prion disease. http://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition=priondisease. Accessed September 22, 2018.

National Prion Disease Pathology Surveillance Center, Homepage. www.cjdsurveillance.com/. Accessed September 22, 2018.

Case Study and Questions

A 70-year-old woman complained of severe headaches, appeared dull and apathetic, and had a constant tremor in the right hand. One month later, she experienced memory loss and moments of confusion. The patient's condition continued to deteriorate, and at 2 months after onset of symptoms, an abnormal electroencephalograph tracing showing periodic biphasic and triphasic slow-wave complexes was obtained. By 3 months, the patient was in a coma-like state. She also had occasional spontaneous clonic twitching of the arms and legs and a startle myoclonic jerking response to a loud noise. The patient died of pneumonia 4 months after the onset of symptoms. No gross abnormalities were noted at autopsy. Astrocytic gliosis of the cerebral cortex, with fibrils and intracellular vacuolation throughout the cerebral cortex, was seen on microscopic examination. There was no swelling and no inflammation.

1. What viral neurologic diseases would have been considered in the differential diagnosis formulated on the basis of the symptoms described? What other diseases?

2. What key features of the postmortem findings were characteristic of the diseases caused by prions?

3. What key features distinguish the prion diseases from conventional neurologic viral diseases?

4. What precautions should the pathologist have taken for protection against infection during the postmortem examination?

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 6

Mycology

SECTION OUTLINE

57 Fungal Classification, Structure, and Replication

This chapter provides an overview of fungal classification, structure, and reproduction. The very basic aspects of fungal cell organization and morphology are discussed, as well as the broad categories of human mycoses. We have purposely simplified the fungal taxonomy and use it to highlight the major phyla of fungi causing disease in humans: the Ascomycota (Ascomycetes), the Basidiomycota (Basidiomycetes), the Glomeromycota (Mucormycetes), and the Microspora (Microsporidia).

The Importance of Fungi

The fungi represent a ubiquitous and diverse group of organisms, the main purpose of which is to degrade organic matter. All fungi lead a heterotrophic existence as saprobes (organisms that live on dead or decaying matter), symbionts (organisms that live together and in which the association is of mutual advantage), commensals (organisms living in a close relationship in which one benefits from the relationship and the other neither benefits nor is harmed), or as parasites (organisms that live on or within a host from which they derive benefits without making any useful contribution in return; in the case of pathogens, the relationship is harmful to the host).

Fungi have emerged in the past two decades as major causes of human disease (Table 57.1), especially among those individuals who are immunocompromised or hospitalized with serious underlying diseases. Among these patient groups, fungi serve as opportunistic pathogens, causing considerable morbidity and mortality. The overall incidence of specific invasive mycoses continues to increase with time, and the list of opportunistic fungal pathogens likewise increases each year. In short, *there are no nonpathogenic fungi!* This increase in fungal infections can be attributed to the ever-growing number of immunocompromised patients, including transplant patients, individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), patients with cancer and undergoing chemotherapy, and those individuals who are hospitalized with other serious underlying conditions and who undergo a variety of invasive procedures.

Fungal Taxonomy, Structure, and Replication

The fungi are classified in their own separate kingdom called Kingdom Fungi. They are eukaryotic organisms that are distinguished from other eukaryotes by a rigid cell wall composed of chitin and glucan and a cell membrane in which ergosterol is substituted for cholesterol as the major sterol component (Fig. 57.1).

Classic fungal taxonomy relies heavily on morphology and mode of spore production. Increasingly, however, ultrastructural features and biochemical and **molecular characteristics** are brought to bear, often resulting in changes in the original taxonomic designation. The advent of rapid deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequencing has resulted in a revolution in fungal taxonomy based on a phylogenetic approach to species recognition that relies on comparative analysis of variable nucleic acid characters to define a fungal species. Thus a species is defined as a group of organisms that share concordance of multiple gene genealogies (DNA sequences at different gene locations), rather than organisms that share a common morphology or that can mate together.

Fungi may be unicellular or multicellular. The simplest grouping, based on morphology, lumps fungi into either **yeasts** or **molds.** A yeast can be defined morphologically as a cell that reproduces by budding or by fission (Fig. 57.2), in which a progenitor or "mother" cell pinches off a portion of itself to produce a progeny or "daughter" cell. The daughter cells may elongate to form sausage-like **pseudohyphae.** Yeasts are usually unicellular and produce round, pasty, or mucoid colonies on agar. Molds, on the other hand, are multicellular organisms consisting of threadlike tubular structures, called **hyphae** (see Fig. 57.2), which elongate at their tips by a process known as **apical extension.** Hyphae are either **coenocytic** (hollow and multinucleate) or **septate** (divided by partitions or cross-walls) (see Fig. 57.2). The hyphae form together to produce a matlike structure called a **mycelium.** The colonies formed by molds are often described as **filamentous, hairy,** or **woolly.** When growing on agar or other solid surfaces, molds produce hyphae, termed **vegetative hyphae,** which grow on or beneath the surface of the culture medium, and hyphae that project above the surface of the medium **(aerial hyphae).** The aerial hyphae may produce specialized structures known as **conidia** (asexual reproductive elements) (Fig. 57.3). The conidia may be produced by either a blastic (budding) process or a thallic process, in which hyphal segments fragment into individual cells or **arthroconidia.** The conidia are easily airborne and serve to disseminate the fungus. The size, shape, and certain developmental features of conidia are used as a means of identifying fungi to genus and species. Many fungi of medical importance are termed **dimorphic** because they may exist in both a yeast form and a mold form.

Most fungi exhibit aerobic respiration, although some are facultatively anaerobic (fermentative), and others are strictly anaerobic. Metabolically fungi are heterotrophic and biochemically versatile, producing both primary (e.g.,

Table 57.1 Incidence and Mortality Rates of Selected Invasive Fungal Infections

	Number of Cases per Year	Mortality Rates (% in Infected Populations)
Pathogen	**Incidence**	
Candida species	>700,000	46-75
Cryptococcus neoformans	>1,000,000	20-70
Aspergillus species	>300,000	30-95
Pneumocystosis	>400,000	20-80
Agents of mucormycosis	>11,000	30-90
Endemic mycoses	>100,000	<1-70
Blastomycosis	~3,000	<2-68
Coccidioidomycosis	~20,000	<1-70
Histoplasmosis	~25,000	28-50
Paracoccidioidomycosis	~4,000	5-27
Talaromycosis (Penicilliosis)	>8,000	2-75

Modified from Bongomin, F., Gago, S., Oladele, R.O., Denning, D.W., 2017. Global and multi-national prevalence of fungal diseases–estimate precision. J. Fungi 3, 57; Pianalto, K.M., Alspaugh, J.A., 2016. New horizons in antifungal therapy. J. Fungi 2, 26.

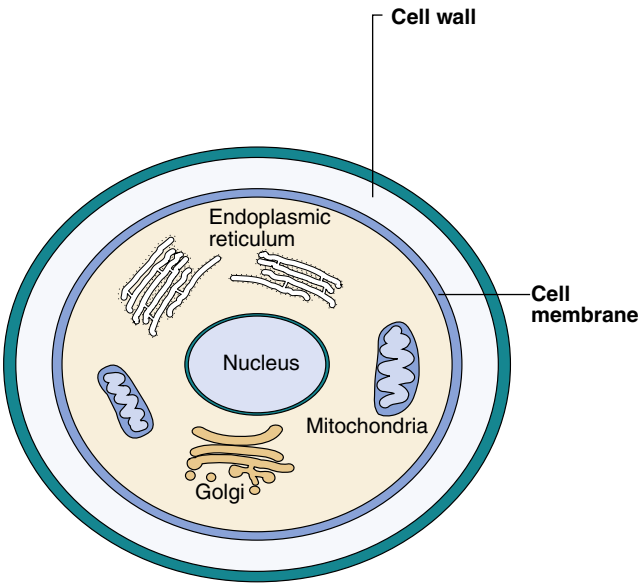


Fig. 57.1 Diagram of a fungal cell.

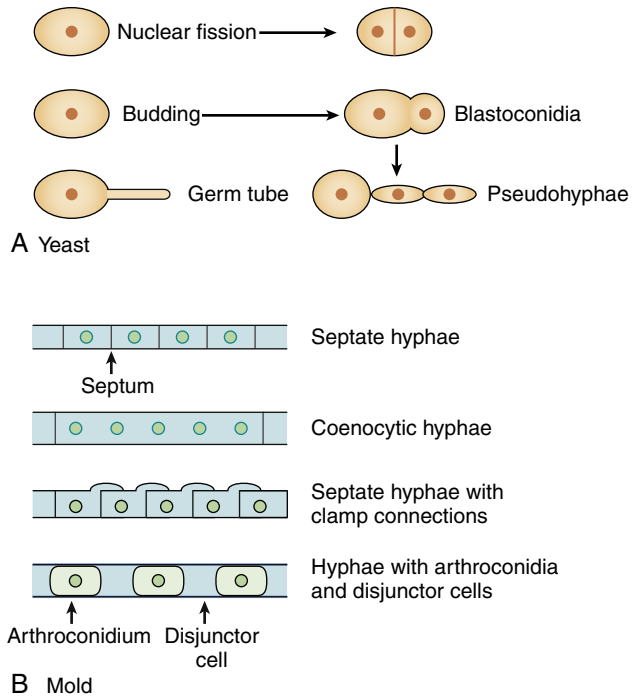


Fig. 57.2 Fungal cell morphology. (A) Yeast cells reproducing by nuclear fission and by blastoconidia formation. The elongation of budding yeast cells to form pseudohyphae is shown, as is the formation of a germ tube. (B) Types of hyphae seen with various molds.

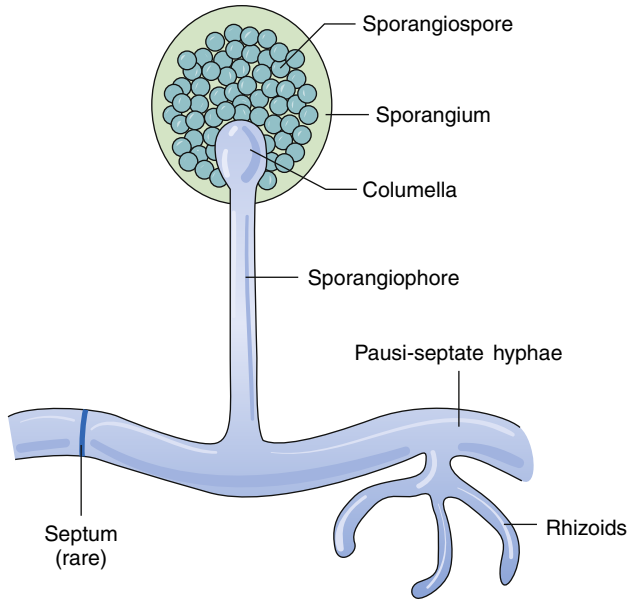
citric acid, ethanol, glycerol) and secondary (e.g., antibiotics [penicillin], ergot alkaloids, aflatoxins) metabolites. Relative to the bacteria, fungi are slow growing, with cell-doubling times in terms of hours rather than minutes.

A simplified taxonomic scheme listing the four major taxa of fungi of medical importance is shown in Table 57.2. Of the estimated several hundred thousand different fungi, fewer than 500 are known to cause human disease, although this number appears to be increasing.

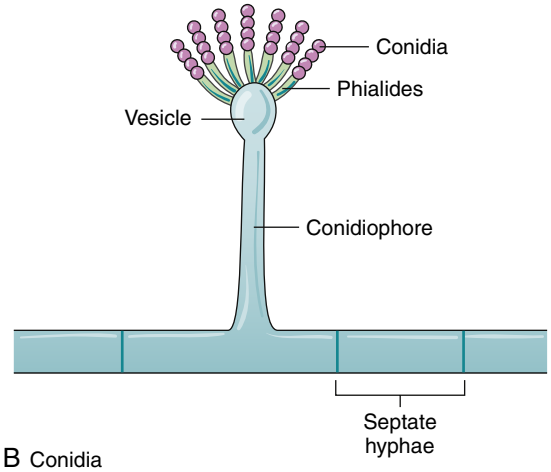
Fungi reproduce by the formation of spores that may be sexual (involving meiosis, preceded by fusion of the protoplasm and nuclei of two compatible mating types) or asexual (involving mitosis only). The fungi in the Ascomycota, Basidiomycota, the Glomeromycota and the Microspora produce both sexual and asexual spores (Table 57.3). The form of the fungus producing sexual spores is termed the **teleomorph,** and the form producing asexual spores is termed the **anamorph.** The fact that the teleomorph and anamorph of the same fungus have different names (e.g., *Ajellomyces capsulatum* [teleomorph] and *Histoplasma capsulatum* [anamorph]) is a source of confusion for nonmycologists.

In light of this confusion and to recognize the effect of molecular taxonomy, the code of mycologic nomenclature was modified to apply a policy in which a given fungus will have only one name; it will no longer be necessary to provide different names for different morphologies of the same fungus. All legitimate names proposed for a species can serve as the correct name for that species. At this time it is permissible to refer to a fungus by its asexual designation if that is the form usually obtained in culture. For example, *H. capsulatum* is the anamorph of the ascomycete *A. capsulatum*. The anamorph is the stage that is most often encountered in culture, and only under special conditions is the sexual stage formed. Thus the clinical isolate is known as *H. capsulatum*.

Asexual spores consist of two general types: **sporangiospores** and **conidia.** Sporangiospores are asexual spores produced in a containing structure or **sporangia** (see Fig. 57.3) and are characteristic of genera belonging to the Mucorales, such as *Rhizopus* and *Mucor* spp. Conidia are asexual spores that are borne naked on specialized structures as seen in *Aspergillus* spp. (see Fig. 57.3), *Penicillium* spp., and the dermatophytes.



A Sporangiospores Mucormycete (*Rhizopus* spp.)



B Conidia (*Aspergillus* spp.)

Fig. 57.3 Examples of asexual spore formation and associated structures seen with a (A) Mucorales and an (B) *Aspergillus* spp.

Ascomycota (Ascomycetes)

The phylum Ascomycota contains almost 50% of all named fungal species and accounts for ~80% of fungi of medical importance. Sexual reproduction leads to the development of ascospores, which are produced in a specialized saclike structure known as an ascus. Asexual reproduction consists of the production of conidia, from a generative or conidiogenous cell.

The Ascomycota consists of four classes of medical importance: Pneumocystidomycetes, Saccharomycetes, Eurotiomycetes, and Sordariomycetes. The class Pneumocystidomycetes contains the genus *Pneumocystis*, which was formerly classified as a protozoan but now reassigned to the Kingdom Fungi on the basis of gene sequence comparisons. The Saccharomycetes contains the ascomycetous yeasts, whereas the Eurotiomycetes and the Sordariomycetes contain the filamentous ascomycetes.

Pneumocystidomycetes: Pneumocystidomycetes is a new class that was recently described to include an organism, *Pneumocystis carinii*, which was formerly considered to be a protozoan. The reclassification of *Pneumocystis* was based on molecular evidence that it was most closely related to the ascomycete *Schizosaccharomyces pombe.* Further molecular studies resulted in the naming of human-derived strains as *P. jirovecii.* The organism exists in a vegetative trophic form that reproduces asexually by binary fission. Fusion of compatible mating types results in a spheric cyst or spore case, which on maturity contains eight spores.

Saccharomycetes: The class Saccharomycetes contains the ascomycetous yeasts (order Saccharomycetales), which are characterized by vegetative yeast cells that proliferate by budding or fission (see Fig. 57.2A). Many members of the order Saccharomycetales have an anamorphic stage belonging to the genus *Candida* (see Table 57.2). This genus, which consists of approximately 200 anamorphic species, has teleomorphs in more than 10 different genera, including *Clavispora, Debaryomyces, Issatchenkia, Kluyveromyces*, and *Pichia.* Under the "one fungus one name" concept, many of these will be renamed.

Eurotiomycetes: In the class Eurotiomycetes, sexual reproduction leads to the formation of a thin-walled sac, or ascus, which contains the haploid ascospores. This class has seven orders that include species pathogenic to humans. Among the more important are the order Onygenales, which contains the dermatophytes and a number of dimorphic systemic pathogens (including *H. capsulatum* and *Blastomyces dermatitidis*) and the order Eurotiales, which contains the teleomorphs of the anamorphic genera *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium.*

Sordariomycetes: In the class Sordariomycetes, the order Hypocreales contains the teleomorphs of the anamorphic genus *Fusarium,* and the order Microascales contains the teleomorphs (*Pseudallescheria*) of the anamorphic genus *Scedosporium* (see Table 57.2). In addition, the teleomorphs of numerous melanized (dematiaceous) fungi of medical importance belong to orders in this class.

Basidiomycota (Basidiomycetes)

Most members of the Basidiomycetes have a separate filamentous form, but some are typical yeasts. Sexual reproduction leads to the formation of haploid basidiospores on the outside of a generative cell termed a **basidium.** The most prominent human pathogens in the phylum Basidiomycetes are the basidiomycetous yeasts with anamorphic stages belonging to the genera *Cryptococcus, Malassezia*, and *Trichosporon.* The genus *Cryptococcus*, which contains more than 30 different species, has teleomorphs (sexual stages) that have been assigned to the genera *Filobasidium* and *Filobasidiella.*

The filamentous basidiomycetes are increasingly recognized as causes of opportunistic fungal infections. In culture these

Table 57.2 Medically Important Fungi (Kingdom Fungi)

Taxonomic Designation	Representative Genera	Human Disease
PHYLUM GLOMEROMYCOTA (MUCORMYCETES)		
Order: Mucorales	*Rhizopus, Mucor, Lichtheimia, Saksenaea*	Mucormycosis: opportunistic in patients with diabetes, leukemia, severe burns, or malnutrition; rhinocerebral infections
Order: Entomophthorales	*Basidiobolus, Conidiobolus*	Entomophthoromycosis: subcutaneous and gastrointestinal infections
PHYLUM: BASIDIOMYCOTA (BASIDIOMYCETES)	Teleomorphs of *Cryptococcus, Malassezia,* and *Trichosporon* species	Cryptococcosis and numerous mycoses
PHYLUM: ASCOMYCOTA (ASCOMYCETES)		
Class: Pneumocystidomycetes	*Pneumocystis jirovecii*	*Pneumocystis* pneumonia
Class: Saccharomycetes	Teleomorphs of *Candida* species; *Saccharomyces*	Numerous mycoses
Class: Eurotiomycetes Order: Onygenales	*Arthroderma* (teleomorphs of *Trichophyton* and *Microsporum*); *Ajellomyces* (teleomorphs of *Blastomyces* and *Histoplasma* species)	Dermatophytoses; systemic mycoses
Order: Eurotiales	Teleomorphs of *Aspergillus* species	Aspergillosis
Class: Sordariomycetes Order: Hypocreales	Teleomorphs of *Fusarium* species	Keratitis and other invasive mycoses
Order: Microascales	*Pseudallescheria* (teleomorph of *Scedosporium* species)	Pneumonia, mycetoma, and invasive mycoses
PHYLUM: MICROSPORA (MICROSPORIDIA)	Encephalitozoon, Enterocytozoon, Nosema, Trachipleistophora	Keratoconjunctivitis, sinusitis, pneumonitis, diarrhea, encephalitis, disseminated infection

Modified from Brandt, M.E., Warnock, D.W., 2015. Taxonomy and classification of fungi. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Eds.), 2015. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Table 57.3 Biologic, Morphologic, and Reproductive Characteristics of Pathogenic Fungi

Organism Group	Representative Genera	Morphology	Reproduction
Mucormycetes	*Rhizopus, Mucor, Lichtheimia, Basidiobolus*	Broad, thin-walled, coenocytic hyphae, 6-25 μm with nonparallel sides; spores contained within sporangium; rootlike structures called *rhizoids* characteristic of some genera	Asexual: production of sporangiospores within sporangium Sexual: production of zygospores formed by fusion of compatible mating types
Basidiomycetes	Anamorphic basidiomycetous yeasts (*Cryptococcus, Malassezia, Trichosporon*)	Budding yeasts, hyphae, and arthroconidia Hyphae that produce basidiospores (not seen in nature or in patients) Hyphae with clamp connections	Asexual: production of conidia by budding from a mother cell or within a hyphal fragment Sexual: fusion of compatible nuclei followed by meiosis to form basidiospores or not identified
Pneumocystidomycetes	*Pneumocystis jirovecii*	Trophic forms and cystlike structures	Asexual: binary fission Sexual: fusion of compatible mating types to form zygote; compartmentalization of spores within cyst
Saccharomycetes	*Candida* and *Saccharomyces*	Budding yeasts and hyphae, pseudohyphae	Asexual: production of conidia by budding from a mother cell Sexual: either not seen or by conjugation between two single cells or by "mother-bud" conjugation
Eurotiomycetes	Dermatophytes, *Blastomyces, Histoplasma, Aspergillus, Fusarium, Scedosporium* species	Budding yeasts, septate hyphae, asexual conidia borne on specialized structures	Asexual: production of conidia by budding from a mother cell Sexual: ascospores produced in a specialized structure called an *ascus* or not seen

organisms often produce fast-growing, sterile white colonies with **clamp connections** (see Fig. 57.2B), which are hyphal outgrowths that form a bypass around the septum to facilitate the migration of a nucleus. Whereas most filamentous basidiomycetes are wood-rotting fungi, the most frequently reported cause of human infection is *Schizophylum commune*.

Glomerulomycota (Mucormycetes, formerly Zygomycetes)

The Glomeromycota (Mucormycetes) include molds with broad, sparsely septate, coenocytic hyphae. The subphylum Mucoromycotina has been proposed to accommodate the **Mucorales,** and the subphylum Entomophthoromycotina includes the **Entomophthorales**. These fungi produce **sexual zygospores** after the fusion of two compatible mating types. The asexual spores of the order Mucorales (see Fig. 57.3) are contained within a sporangium (sporangiospores). The sporangia are borne at the tips of stalklike **sporangiophores** that terminate in a bulbous swelling called the **columella** (see Fig. 57.3). The presence of rootlike structures, called **rhizoids,** is helpful in identifying specific genera within the Mucorales. The order Mucorales is the most clinically important and includes the genera *Lichtheimia* (formerly *Absidia*), *Mucor*, *Rhizopus,* and *Rhizomucor*. The other order, the Entomophthorales, is less common and includes the genera *Basidiobolus* and *Conidiobolus*. These organisms cause tropical subcutaneous mucormycosis. The asexual spores are borne singly on short sporophores and are forcibly ejected when mature.

Microspora (Microsporidia)

Microsporidia are obligate intracellular, unicellular, spore-forming eukaryotes. Previously categorized as protists, organisms of the phylum Microspora were recently assigned to the Kingdom Fungi on the basis of genetic studies indicating that these organisms were derived from an endoparasitic chytrid ancestor on the earliest diverging branch of the fungal phylogenetic tree. Furthermore, structural features of the organisms such as the presence of chitin in the spore wall, diplokaryotic nuclei, and electron-dense spindle plaques associated with the nuclear envelope suggest a possible relationship between fungi and microsporidia. Conversely, the life cycle of microsporidia is unique and unlike that of any other fungal species. More than 200 microsporidial genera and 1500 species that are pathogenic in every major animal group have been identified. Presently human infections have been shown to involve nine different genera (*Anncaliia, Encephalitozoon, Endoreticulatus, Enterocytozoon, Nosema, Pleistophora, Vittaforma, Tubulinosema,* and *Trachipleistophora*) and unclassified microsporidia that have been assigned to the collective group *Microsporidium*.

Classification of Human Mycoses

In addition to the formal taxonomic classification of fungi, fungal infections may be classified according to the tissues infected and by specific characteristics of organism groups. These classifications include the superficial, cutaneous, and subcutaneous mycoses; the endemic mycoses; and the opportunistic mycoses (Table 57.4).

SUPERICIAL MYCOSES

The superficial mycoses are those infections that are limited to the very superficial surfaces of the skin and hair. They are nondestructive and of cosmetic importance only. The clinical infection termed **pityriasis versicolor** is characterized by discoloration or depigmentation and scaling of the skin. **Tinea nigra** refers to brown or black pigmented macular patches localized primarily to the palms. The clinical entities of black and white piedra involve the hair and are characterized by nodules composed of hyphae that encompass the hair shaft. The fungi associated with these superficial infections include *Malassezia furfur, Hortaea werneckii, Piedraia hortae,* and *Trichosporon* spp.

CUTANEOUS MYCOSES

Cutaneous mycoses are infections of the keratinized layer of skin, hair, and nails. These infections may elicit a host response and become symptomatic. Signs and symptoms include itching, scaling, broken hairs, ringlike patches of the skin, and thickened, discolored nails. The Dermatophytes are fungi classified in the genera *Trichophyton, Epidermophyton,* and *Microsporum*. Infections of the skin involving these organisms are called **dermatophytoses. Tinea unguium** refers to infections of the toes involving these agents. Onychomycoses includes infections of the nails caused by the dermatophytes, as well as nondermatophytic fungi, such as *Candida* spp. and *Aspergillus* spp.

SUBCUTANEOUS MYCOSES

Subcutaneous mycoses involve the deeper layers of the skin, including the cornea, muscle, and connective tissue and are caused by a broad spectrum of taxonomically diverse fungi. The fungi gain access to the deeper tissues usually by traumatic inoculation and remain localized, causing abscess formation, nonhealing ulcers, and draining sinus tracts. The host immune system recognizes the fungi, resulting in variable tissue destruction and frequently epitheliomatous hyperplasia. Infections may be caused by hyaline molds, such as *Acremonium* spp., *Sarocladium* spp., and *Fusarium* spp., and by pigmented or dematiaceous fungi, such as *Alternaria* spp., *Cladosporium* spp., and *Exophiala* spp. (phaeohyphomycoses, chromoblastomycoses). Subcutaneous mycoses tend to remain localized and rarely disseminate systemically.

ENDEMIC MYCOSES

The endemic mycoses are fungal infections caused by the classic dimorphic fungal pathogens *H. capsulatum, B. dermatitidis, Emergomyces pasteurianus (*formerly *Emmonsia pasteuriana), E. africanus, Coccidioides immitis, C. posadasii, Paracoccidioides brasiliensis,* and *Talaromyces (Penicillium) marneffei.* These fungi exhibit thermal dimorphism (exist as yeasts or spherules at 37° C and molds at 25° C) and are generally confined to geographic regions in which they occupy specific environmental or ecologic niches. The endemic mycoses are often referred to as **systemic mycoses**

Table 57.4 Classification of Human Mycoses and Representative Etiologic Agents

Superficial Mycoses	Cutaneous and Subcutaneous Mycoses	Endemic Mycoses	Opportunistic Mycoses
Black piedra: *Piedraia hortae* Tinea nigra: *Hortae werneckii* Pityriasis versicolor: *Malassezia furfur* White piedra: *Trichosporon* spp.	Dermatophytoses: *Microsporum* spp. *Trichophyton* spp. *Epidermophyton floccosum* Tinea unguium: *Trichophyton* spp. *E. floccosum* Onychomycosis: *Candida* spp. *Aspergillus* spp. *Trichosporon* spp. *Geotrichum* spp. Mycotic keratitis: *Fusarium* spp. *Aspergillus* spp. *Candida* spp. Chromoblastomycosis: *Fonsecaea* spp. *Phialophora* spp.	Blastomycosis: *Blastomyces dermatitidis* Histoplasmosis: *Histoplasma capsulatum* Coccidioidomycosis: *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii* Penicilliosis: *Talaromyces (Penicillium) marneffei* Paracoccidioidomycosis: *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* Emmonsiasis Emergomycosis: *Emergomyces pasteurianus* *E. africanus*	Aspergillosis: *Aspergillus fumigatus* *A. flavus* *A. niger* *A. terreus* Candidiasis: *Candida albicans* C. *glabrata* C. *parapsilosis* C. *tropicalis* Cryptococcosis: *Cryptococcus neoformans* Trichosporonosis: *Trichosporon* spp. Hyalohyphomycosis: *Acremonium* spp. *Fusarium* spp. *Paecilomyces* spp. *Scedosporium* spp. Mucormycosis: *Rhizopus* spp. *Mucor* spp. *Lichtheimia corymbifera* Phaeohyphomycosis: *Alternaria* spp. *Curvularia* spp. *Bipolaris* spp. *Exophiala* spp. Pneumocystosis: *Pneumocystis jirovecii* Microsporidiosis

because these organisms are true pathogens and can cause infection in healthy individuals. All of these agents produce a primary infection in the lung, with subsequent dissemination to other organs and tissues.

OPPORTUNISTIC MYCOSES

The opportunistic mycoses are infections attributable to fungi that are normally found as human commensals or in the environment. With the exception of *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *C. gattii*, these organisms exhibit inherently low or limited virulence and cause infection in individuals who are debilitated, immunosuppressed, or who carry implanted prosthetic devices or vascular catheters. Virtually any fungus can serve as an opportunistic pathogen, and the list of those identified as such becomes longer each year. The most common opportunistic fungal pathogens are the yeasts *Candida* spp. and *C. neoformans*, the mold *Aspergillus* spp., and *P. jirovecii*. Because of its inherent virulence, *C. neoformans* is often considered a "systemic" pathogen. Although this fungus may cause infection in immunologically normal individuals, it clearly is seen more frequently as an opportunistic pathogen in the immunocompromised population.

Summary

With the ever-increasing number of individuals at risk for fungal infection, it is imperative that physicians "think fungus" when confronting a suspected infection. The list of documented fungal pathogens is extensive, and one can no longer ignore or dismiss fungi as "contaminants" or clinically insignificant when isolated from clinical material. It is also apparent that the prognosis and response to therapy may vary with the type of fungus causing infection and with the immunologic status of the host. Thus physicians must become familiar with the various fungi, their epidemiologic and pathogenic features, and the optimal approaches to diagnosis and therapy. These issues will be discussed in detail in subsequent chapters according to the classification scheme shown in Table 57.4.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Brandt, M.E., Warnock, D.W., 2011. Taxonomy and classification of fungi. In: Versalovic, J., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, tenth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Brandt, M.E., Park, B.J., 2013. Think fungus-prevention and control of fungal infections. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 19, 1688–1689.

Bongomin, F., Gago, S., Oladele, R.O., Denning, D.W., 2017. Global and multi-national prevalence of fungal diseases—estimate precision. J. Fungi. 3, 57. https://doi.org/10.3390/jof3040057.

De Hoog, G.S., Chaturvedi, V., Denning, D.W., et al., 2015. Name changes in medically important fungi and their implications for clinical practice. J. Clin. Microbiol. 53, 1056–1062.

Hawksworth, D.L., Crous, P.W., Dianese, J.C., et al., 2011. The Amsterdam declaration on fungal nomenclature. IMA Fungus 2, 105–112.

Questions

1. How do fungi differ from bacteria (size, nucleus, cytosol, plasma membrane, cell wall, physiology, generation time)?
2. How does the plasma membrane of fungi differ from that of other eukaryotic (e.g., mammalian) cells?
3. What is the difference between a yeast and a mold?
4. What do the terms anamorph and teleomorph mean, and why are they important?

58 Pathogenesis of Fungal Disease

Although a great deal is known regarding the molecular and genetic basis for bacterial and viral pathogenesis, our understanding of the pathogenesis of fungal infections is limited. Relatively few fungi are sufficiently virulent to be considered **primary pathogens** (Table 58.1). Primary pathogens are capable of initiating infection in a normal, apparently immunocompetent host. They are able to colonize the host, find a suitable microenvironmental niche with sufficient nutritional substrates, avoid or subvert the normal host defense mechanisms, and then multiply within the microenvironmental niche. Among the acknowledged primary fungal pathogens are four ascomycetous fungi, the endemic dimorphic pathogens *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, *Coccidioides immitis* (and *Coccidioides posadasii*), *Histoplasma capsulatum*, and *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*. Each of these organisms possesses putative virulence factors that allow them to actively breach host defenses that ordinarily restrict the invasive growth of other microbes (see Table 58.1). When large numbers of conidia of any of these four fungi are inhaled by humans, even if these individuals are healthy and immunocompetent, infection and colonization, tissue invasion, and systemic spread of the pathogen commonly occur. As with most primary microbial pathogens, these fungi may also serve as **opportunistic pathogens**, given that the more severe forms of each mycosis are seen most often in individuals who are compromised in their innate and/or acquired immune defenses.

In general, healthy immunocompetent individuals have a high innate resistance to fungal infection, despite the fact that they are constantly exposed to the infectious forms of various fungi present as part of the normal commensal flora (endogenous) or in the environment (exogenous). The opportunistic fungal pathogens, such as *Candida* spp., *Cryptococcus neoformans*, and *Aspergillus* spp., generally only cause infection when there are disruptions in the protective barriers of the skin and mucous membranes or when defects in the host immune system allow them to penetrate, colonize, and reproduce in the host (see Table 58.1). However, even with these opportunists, there are factors associated with the organism rather than the host that contribute to the ability of the fungus to cause disease (see Table 58.1).

In addition to their role as opportunistic pathogens, filamentous fungi can produce toxins that have been implicated in a variety of illnesses and clinical syndromes in humans and in animals. These mycotoxins are secondary fungal metabolites that cause diseases, known collectively as **mycotoxicoses**, after ingestion, inhalation, or direct contact with the toxin. Mycotoxicoses may manifest as acute or chronic disease, ranging from rapid death to tumor formation. In this regard, mycotoxicoses are analogous to the pathologies caused by other "poisons" such as pesticides or heavy metal residues. The presenting symptoms and severity of a mycotoxicosis depend on the type of mycotoxin; the amount and duration of exposure; the route of exposure; and the age, sex, and health of the exposed individual. In addition, a variety of other circumstances, such as malnutrition, alcohol abuse, infectious disease status, and other toxin exposures, may act synergistically to compound the effect and severity of mycotoxin poisoning.

Primary Fungal Pathogens

All of the primary systemic fungal pathogens are agents of respiratory infections, and none are obligate parasites. Each has a **saprobic phase** characterized by filamentous septate hyphae, typically found in soil or decaying vegetation, that produce the airborne infectious cells. Likewise, the **parasitic phase** of each fungus is adapted to grow at 37° C and to reproduce asexually in the alternative environmental niche of the host respiratory mucosa (see Chapter 64, Fig. 64.1). This ability to exist in alternate morphogenic forms **(dimorphism)** is one of several special characteristics (virulence factors) that allow these fungi to cope with the hostile environmental conditions of the host (see Table 58.1).

BLASTOMYCES DERMATITIDIS

Like the other endemic dimorphic fungal pathogens, *B. dermatitidis* often causes a self-limited respiratory infection (see Chapter 64). However, blastomycosis is distinguished from the other endemic mycoses by the high incidence of clinical disease, compared with the mild or asymptomatic form among individuals infected in epidemics. The pathogenic potential of *B. dermatitidis* is underscored by the clinical severity of most sporadic cases of blastomycosis.

Important factors for the in vivo survival of *B. dermatitidis*, and any of the endemic dimorphic pathogens for that matter, are the ability of the inhaled pathogen to reach the alveoli, to undergo transformation to an alternate phase (yeast or spherule) capable of replicating at 37° C, and to colonize the respiratory mucosa. After inhalation of conidia or hyphal fragments of *B. dermatitidis*, the elements of the saprobic phase of the fungus presumably contact and adhere to the epithelial layer of the alveolus and then transform into the parasitic yeast phase in a process known as **thermal dimorphism.** This conversion from conidia (2 to 10 μm in diameter) to the larger yeast form (8 to 30 μm in diameter) provides an important survival advantage to the fungus. Whereas the conidia are small enough to be readily ingested and killed by human neutrophils, the yeast cells are able to resist the phagocytic attack of neutrophils and mononuclear cells during the early stages of the inflammatory response. Rather than adapting to the intracellular

TABLE 58.1 Characteristics of Primary and Opportunistic Fungal Pathogens

	Habitat/Infection	Pathogenesis	Putative Virulence Factors	Clinical Forms of Mycosis
PRIMARY PATHOGENS				
Blastomyces dermatitidis Saprobic phase: ▪ Septate mycelium and conidia Parasitic phase: ▪ Large, broad-based, budding yeast	Saprobic habitat: ▪ Soil and organic debris ▪ Endemic area southeastern United States and Ohio-Mississippi River Valley Mode of infection: ▪ Inhalation of conidia	Inhaled conidia convert to yeast; localized yeast invasion of host invokes inflammatory reaction; yeast escapes recognition by macrophages and disseminates via bloodstream	▪ Growth at 37° C ▪ Thermal dimorphism ▪ Modulation of yeast–host immune system interactions ▪ Generation of TH2 response ▪ Shedding of WI-1	▪ Primary pulmonary blastomycosis ▪ Chronic pulmonary blastomycosis ▪ Disseminated blastomycosis ▪ Cutaneous ▪ Bone, genitourinary tract, and brain
Coccidioides immitis (posadasii) Saprobic phase: ▪ Septate hyphae and arthroconidia Parasitic phase: ▪ Spherules with endospores	Saprobic habitat: ▪ Desert soil: southwestern United States, Mexico, regions of Central and South America Mode of infection: ▪ Inhalation of arthroconidia ▪ Percutaneous inoculation (rare)	Inhaled arthroconidia reach alveoli; convert to spherule that gives rise to endospores; endospores phagocytosed but survive; large (60–100 μm) spherules escape phagocytosis; alkaline environment allows survival within phagosome	▪ Growth at 37° C ▪ Thermal dimorphism ▪ Resistance of conidia to phagocytic killing ▪ Stimulation of ineffective TH2 response ▪ Urease production ▪ Extracellular proteinase production ▪ Molecular mimicry	▪ Initial pulmonary infection ▪ Chronic pulmonary coccidioidomycosis ▪ Disseminated coccidioidomycosis ▪ Meningitis ▪ Bone and joints ▪ Genitourinary ▪ Cutaneous ▪ Ophthalmic
Histoplasma capsulatum Saprobic phase: ▪ Septate hyphae, microconidia, and tuberculate macroconidia Parasitic phase: ▪ Small, intracellular, budding yeast	Saprobic habitat: ▪ Soil enriched with bird/bat guano ▪ Eastern half of United States, most of Latin America, parts of Asia, Europe, Middle East; var. *duboisii* occurs in Africa Mode of infection: ▪ Inhalation of conidia	Inhaled conidia convert to yeast; yeast ingested by macrophages; survive and proliferate within phagosome; some yeast forms remain dormant within macrophage, others proliferate and kill macrophages, releasing daughter cells	▪ Growth at 37° C ▪ Thermal dimorphism ▪ Survival in macrophages ▪ Modulate pH of phagosome ▪ Iron and calcium uptake ▪ Alteration of cell wall composition	▪ Clinically asymptomatic pulmonary and "cryptic dissemination" ▪ Acute pulmonary histoplasmosis ▪ Mediastinitis and pericarditis ▪ Chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis ▪ Mucocutaneous ▪ Disseminated
Paracoccidioides brasiliensis Saprobic phase: ▪ Septate hyphae, conidia Parasitic phase: ▪ Yeast with multiple buds	Saprobic habitat: ▪ Soil and vegetation ▪ Central and South America Mode of infection: ▪ Inhalation of conidia	Inhaled conidia convert to large multipolar budding yeast; ingested but not cleared by macrophages; may be dormant for up to 40 years. Disseminate to oral and nasopharyngeal mucosa	▪ Growth at 37° C ▪ Thermal dimorphism ▪ Intracellular survival ▪ Hormonal influences ▪ Alteration of cell wall ▪ Ineffective TH2 response to gp43	▪ Diverse clinical manifestations ▪ Chronic single organ involvement ▪ Chronic multifocal involvement (lungs, mouth, nose) ▪ Juvenile progressive disease: lymph nodes, skin and visceral involvement
OPPORTUNISTIC PATHOGENS				
Candida species Saprobic and parasitic phases are the same: budding yeast, hyphae, pseudohyphae	Saprobic habitat: ▪ Gastrointestinal mucosa, vaginal mucosa, skin, nails Mode of infection: ▪ Gastrointestinal translocation ▪ Intravascular catheters	Mucosal overgrowth with subsequent invasion; usually impaired mucosal barrier; hematogenous dissemination; transfer from hands of health care worker to catheter hub; catheter colonization and hematogenous dissemination	▪ Growth at 37° C ▪ Bud-hyphae transition ▪ Adherence ▪ Cell-surface hydrophobicity ▪ Cell wall mannans ▪ Proteases and phospholipases ▪ Phenotypic switching	▪ Simple mucosal colonization ▪ Mucocutaneous candidiasis ▪ Oral/vaginal thrush ▪ Hematogenous dissemination ▪ Hepatosplenic candidiasis ▪ Endophthalmitis
Cryptococcus neoformans Saprobic and parasitic phases are the same: encapsulated budding yeast	Saprobic habitat: ▪ Soil enriched with bird (pigeon) guano Mode of infection: ▪ Inhalation of aerosolized yeast ▪ Percutaneous inoculation	Inhaled yeast cells ingested by macrophages; survive intracellularly; capsule inhibits phagocytosis; capsule and melanin protect from oxidative injury; hematogenous and lymphatic dissemination to brain	▪ Growth at 37° C ▪ Polysaccharide capsule ▪ Melanin ▪ Alpha-mating type	▪ Primary cryptococcal pneumonia ▪ Meningitis ▪ Hematogenous dissemination ▪ Genitourinary (prostatic) cryptococcosis ▪ Primary cutaneous cryptococcosis

Continued

TABLE 58.1 Characteristics of Primary and Opportunistic Fungal Pathogens—cont'd

	Habitat/Infection	Pathogenesis	Putative Virulence Factors	Clinical Forms of Mycosis
Aspergillus species Saprobic phase: ▪ Septate mycelium, conidial heads, and conidia Parasitic phase: ▪ Septate mycelium; conidia, and conidial heads usually only seen in cavitary lesions	Saprobic habitat: ▪ Soil, plants, water, pepper, air Mode of infection: ▪ Inhalation of conidia ▪ Transfer to wounds via contaminated tape/bandages	Inhaled conidia bind to fibrinogen and laminin in alveolus; conidia germinate, and hyphal forms secrete proteases and invade epithelium; vascular invasion results in thrombosis and infarction of tissue; hematogenous dissemination	▪ Growth at 37° C ▪ Binding to fibrinogen and laminin ▪ Secretion of elastase and proteases ▪ Catalase ▪ Gliotoxin (?) and other mycotoxins	▪ Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis ▪ Sinusitis ▪ Aspergilloma ▪ Invasive aspergillosis ▪ Lung ▪ Brain ▪ Skin ▪ Gastrointestinal ▪ Heart

From Cole, G.T., 2003. Fungal pathogenesis. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A., (Eds.), Clinical Mycology. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

microenvironment of phagolysosomes like *H. capsulatum*, *B. dermatitidis* yeast cells shed their immunodominant antigen from the cell surface and subsequently modify their cell wall composition, allowing them to escape recognition by macrophages. Thus they are able to colonize tissue and disseminate through the bloodstream.

Modulation of Yeast and Host Immune System Interactions

The main immunoreactive moiety present on the surface of the yeast cells, but not on the conidia of *B. dermatitidis,* is a 120-kDa cell wall glycoprotein, BAD1 (formerly WI-1). This glycoprotein appears to play a key role in the pathogenesis of *B. dermatitidis*, in that it promotes adhesion of the yeast cell to macrophages and elicits a potent response of both the humoral and cellular immune systems. BAD1 is expressed by all virulent isolates of *B. dermatitidis* examined thus far. BAD1 knockout strains are nonpathogenic in murine models of infection underscoring the prominent role of BAD1 in the pathogenicity of *B. dermatitidis.*

In addition to its role in adhesion, BAD1 has been shown to modulate host immunity early in the course of infection, facilitating the establishment of *B. dermatitidis* in the lung. BAD1 interferes with host immunity by blocking the production of the proinflammatory cytokine, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, by both macrophages and neutrophils, through transforming growth factor (TGF)-β–dependent and (TGF)-β–independent mechanisms. BAD1 displayed on the surface of *B. dermatitidis* yeast cells induces phagocyte TGF-β production, which suppresses TNF-α production. Conversely, soluble BAD1 is released from yeast cells in lung alveoli in vivo and suppresses TNF-α production but in a manner that is independent of TGF-β.

It appears that avirulent mutant strains of *B. dermatitidis* with high levels of expression of BAD1 on their cell surface are recognized by macrophages, phagocytosed, and rapidly eliminated from the host. In contrast, virulent strains of this fungus shed copious amounts of BAD1 during growth and through this process are able to avoid recognition by macrophages. Presentation of BAD1, whether it remains associated with the cell surface or shed into the milieu apart from the cell, is a key aspect of the pathogenicity of this fungus.

It also appears that the carbohydrate composition of the yeast cell wall plays a role in the presentation and shedding of BAD1 and thus in pathogenicity. One of the major components of the yeast cell wall is 1,3-α-glucan. There is an inverse relationship between the amount of 1,3-α-glucan present in the cell wall of *B. dermatitidis* and the amount of detectable BAD1 at the cell surface. Virulent strains of *B. dermatitidis* produce yeast cells that have thickened walls containing large amounts of 1,3-α-glucan and, when mature, have little detectable BAD1 on their cell surface. Conversely, avirulent strains exhibit thin walls that lack 1,3-α-glucan but have abundant BAD1 on their surface. It is speculated that the incorporation of 1,3-α-glucan into the cell wall masks the BAD1 surface glycoprotein and plays a role in releasing a modified antigen (85-kDa component) into the microenvironment of the infection site. By masking the BAD1 antigen, the yeast is able to escape recognition by macrophages and disseminate hematogenously.

Presentation of Surface Antigen Modulates the T-Helper Pathway of Immune Response

Different subsets of CD4 T-helper (TH) cells exist that secrete different patterns of cytokines in response to an antigenic stimulus. After an initial encounter with an antigen, TH cells may become polarized, secreting predominantly interleukin (IL)-2 and interferon (IFN)-γ (TH1 pattern) or predominantly IL-4, IL-5, and IL-10 (TH2 pattern). IFN-γ and IL-2 activate macrophages and cytotoxic T and natural killer (NK) cells, respectively, for clearance of intracellular organisms; whereas TH2 cytokines favor B-cell growth and differentiation, isotype switching to immunoglobulin (Ig) E, and eosinophil differentiation and activation, which are responses that may lead to protection against some pathogens, they also have been implicated in allergy and hypersensitivity reactions.

T-cell–mediated immune response to *B. dermatitidis* is essential for immunoprotection against this pathogen. Mice immunized with BAD1 (WI-1) develop a robust TH2 response to the antigen. Of note, in a mouse infection model of blastomycosis, infected mice that developed features of a TH2 response died with a chronic, progressive infection, whereas those infected animals that developed a TH1 response restricted the spread of the pathogen and were able to respond to antifungal therapy and recover from the disease. Thus a robust TH2 response may not be helpful in clearing *B. dermatitidis* infection and may even retard its clearance. By releasing large amounts of soluble BAD1, the yeast cells of *B. dermatitidis* may be able to outmaneuver both arms of the immune response by evasion of the cellular response and the stimulation of a dominant but ineffective humoral response.

COCCIDIOIDES IMMITIS

C. immitis and *C. posadasii* are primary pathogens capable of causing a wide range of disease states (see Chapter 64). These fungi are endemic to the desert southwest of the United States, and although they both demonstrate different morphologies in their saprobic and parasite phases, they are distinguished from the other endemic dimorphic fungi by the unique features of the parasitic phase (see Chapter 64, Fig. 64.1). Among the various putative virulence factors that may contribute to the pathogenicity of this organism are the resistance of the infective conidia to phagocytic killing, the ability to stimulate an ineffective TH2 immune response (similar to *B. dermatitidis*), the production of urease and extracellular proteinases, and the capacity for molecular mimicry (see Table 58.1).

Resistance of Conidia to Phagocytic Killing

The saprobic phase of *C. immitis* (and *C. posadasii*) consists of septate filamentous hyphae that when mature produce barrel-shaped arthroconidia separated from one another by empty disjunctor cells (see Chapter 57, Fig. 57.2B; Chapter 64, Figs. 64.1D and 64.7). The arthroconidia are very hydrophobic and easily aerosolized. These conidia are small enough (3 to 5 μm × 2 to 4 μm) that, when inhaled, they can be carried deep into the respiratory tract, frequently to the level of the alveoli. The outer wall of the conidia is composed primarily of protein (50%), including small cysteine-rich polypeptides known as **hydrophobins** because of their distinct hydropathic profiles. The remainder of the wall composition includes lipids (25%), carbohydrates (12%), and an unidentified pigment. It is thought that this hydrophobic outer layer has antiphagocytic properties because its removal resulted in increased phagocytosis of *C. immitis* arthroconidia by human polymorphonuclear neutrophils (PMNs), compared with their phagocytosis of intact arthroconidia. Of importance, neither the intact conidia nor the conidia with the outer wall layer removed were effectively killed after ingestion by PMNs. It appears that the infectious arthroconidia of *C. immitis* have both active and passive barriers against attack by the host's innate defenses in the lungs.

Stimulation of an Ineffective TH2 Immune Response by *C. immitis*

It is known that individuals with coccidioidal infections all produce antibody to a predominant glycoprotein (SOWgp) of an outer wall layer of the parasitic cells (spherules). Both arms of the T-helper immune pathway, TH1 and TH2, are stimulated by SOWgp. Activation of the TH1 pathway is known to be associated with spontaneous resolution of coccidioidal infection in mice. Furthermore, it has been shown that mice that are susceptible to infection with *C. immitis* show a TH2 response to infection, whereas resistant strains show more of a TH1 response. Thus similar to that described for *B. dermatitidis*, TH2 responses to SOWgp may not contribute to clearance of *C. immitis* and may even be detrimental in control of the infection. The more severe forms of coccidioidomycosis are accompanied by depressed cell-mediated immunity and high serum levels of *C. immitis*-specific complement fixing antibody, consistent with a predominantly TH2 response. Although not much is known of the cytokine profile of humans during coccidioidal infections, the IL-17, TNF-α, and INF-γ pathways are all important for control of infection. Thus it is reasonable to speculate that immunodominant antigens of *C. immitis* that elicit a profound increase in IL-10 and IL-4 may direct the immune response to a TH2 pathway. Such immunomodulation may contribute to increased severity of the mycotic infection. Patients with defects in their cellular immune response, either because of pharmacologic therapy or because of a gene mutation, appear to be at higher risk for symptomatic and/or severe coccidioidomycosis.

Urease Production

The environmental niche for the saprobic form of *C. immitis* is alkaline desert soil. Both saprobic and parasitic phases of this organism have been shown to release ammonia and ammonium ions when grown in vitro, resulting in an alkalinization of the culture medium. The endospores of *C. immitis* release much more ammonia/ammonium ions than do spherules, when grown in any acidic (pH 5.0) conditions. Newly released endospores have been shown to be surrounded by an alkaline halo produced by the ammonia/ammonium ions.

The endospores of *C. immitis* are readily phagocytosed by alveolar macrophages but once ingested are able to survive intracellularly. It has been shown that viable intracellular endospores are surrounded by an alkaline halo at their cell surface, suggesting that the production of ammonia/ammonium ions may contribute to the survival of the pathogen within the phagosome of the activated macrophage.

The ability of *C. immitis* to generate an alkaline microenvironment and to respond to acidification by increasing the amount of ammonia/ammonium ions released from its parasitic cells are features that may contribute to the pathogenesis of this fungus. Although the details of ammonia generation and how cell-surface alkalinity affects phagocyte function are poorly understood, it has been proposed that the major source of ammonia produced by *C. immitis* is caused by urease activity. Urease is a metalloenzyme that is localized in the cytoplasmic fraction of microbial cells; it catalyzes the hydrolysis of urea to yield ammonia and carbamate. The carbamate subsequently hydrolyzes to yield another molecule of ammonia. The maximum amount of urease protein detected in *C. immitis* is in endosporulating spherules, which correlates with the developmental stage, in which the highest amounts of ammonia/ammonium ion have been recorded. Together this information suggests that urease activity contributes to the pathogenicity of *C. immitis*.

Extracellular Proteinases

Fungal pathogens produce an array of acid, neutral, and alkaline proteinases that are active over a wide pH range and exhibit broad substrate specificity. It has been suggested that certain extracellular enzymes secreted by fungi may play key roles in invasive growth that may ultimately lead to the death of the infected host. Secreted proteinases may permit the ingress of skin and mucosal barriers, partial neutralization of active host defenses, transmigration of endothelial layers, and subsequent hematogenous dissemination, leading to the establishment of infection in various anatomic sites.

C. immitis, as a primary fungal pathogen, is able to breach the respiratory mucosal barrier, enter the bloodstream and/or the lymphatic system, and disseminate to other organs of the body. Both the saprobic (conidial cell) and parasitic forms of the fungus express several proteinases during cell growth. The conidial cell produces a 36-kDa extracellular proteinase capable of breaking down human collagen, elastin, and hemoglobin, as well as IgG and IgA. Cleavage of secretory immunoglobulins by opportunistic fungal pathogens has been correlated with the ability of these organisms to colonize the host mucosa. A 66-kDa alkaline proteinase capable of digesting structural proteins, found in lung tissue, is thought to be secreted during the entire course of disease caused by *C. immitis*. All patients with coccidioidomycosis produce antibodies directed against this enzyme, and it is thought that this alkaline proteinase may play an important role in host tissue colonization and invasion by spherules and endospores of *C. immitis*.

Molecular Mimicry

When molecules produced by a pathogenic microbe are structurally, antigenically, and functionally similar to host molecules, this characteristic is termed **molecular mimicry.** In some instances, infection may result in the generation of antibodies by the host that cross-react with host tissues and produce an autoimmune-type pathology. Fungi have been shown to produce molecules that are functionally, but not necessarily structurally, similar to host molecules ("functional mimicry"). Fungal molecules have been identified that function similar to integrins, complement receptors, and sex hormones.

An estrogen-binding protein has been isolated from cytosolic fractions of *C. immitis*. It is known that physiologic concentrations of progesterone and 17-β-estradiol stimulate the rate of *C. immitis* growth and endospore release. This information coincides with the recognition of pregnancy, especially during the third trimester, as a major risk factor for disseminated coccidioidomycosis.

HISTOPLASMA CAPSULATUM

It is well known that most people infected with *H. capsulatum* recover without complications and without specific antifungal therapy (see Chapter 64). Nevertheless, reactivation of pulmonary and extrapulmonary histoplasmosis in immunocompromised patients who originally experienced cryptic dissemination of the fungus is documented throughout the literature. Inhalation of conidia from the environment, coupled with failure to evacuate the fungus by mucociliary mechanisms, provides the opportunity for the inhaled conidia to transform into yeasts, which are ingested by mononuclear phagocytes. *H. capsulatum* is found almost exclusively within host cells, in which it may actively replicate or remain dormant.

Histoplasma capsulatum Resides in Host Macrophages

Conversion of inhaled conidia of *H. capsulatum* to yeast cells is critical for survival of the pathogen within the host and occurs within hours of infection. Although theoretically a single conidium may be sufficient to establish an infection, it is usually assumed that a very large conidial inoculum is necessary to establish disseminated disease in a healthy, immunocompetent individual. The phagocytes that are mobilized to the site of infection are effective in killing ingested conidia but are less so against the yeast form.

The fact that the macrophages are the primary host cells in which the yeast phase of *H. capsulatum* resides is thought to be an important strategy for survival and dissemination of the pathogen. *H. capsulatum* yeasts gain refuge from extracellular obstacles such as antimicrobial lung surfactant proteins by engaging the β-integrin family of phagocytic receptors to promote entry into macrophages. In addition, *H. capsulatum* yeasts conceal immunostimulatory β-glucans to avoid triggering signaling receptors such as the β-glucan receptor Dectin-1. *H. capsulatum* yeasts counteract phagocyte-produced reactive oxygen species by expression of oxidative stress defense enzymes including an extracellular superoxide dismutase and an extracellular catalase. There are several factors thought to be important in the ability of the fungus to persist within the phagolysosome of the macrophage and add significantly to the pathogenicity of the organism: pH modulation, iron and calcium uptake, and alteration of the yeast cell wall.

Modulation of the pH of the Phagolysosome

The yeast cells of *H. capsulatum* are rapidly ingested by alveolar macrophages. After ingestion, the pH of the phagolysosome containing one or more yeast cells is elevated (6.0 to 6.5) above that which is optimal for many of the lysosomal enzymes. This pH modulation not only interferes with enzyme activity but also influences antigen processing within the cell and contributes to the survival of the pathogen in vivo. Maintenance of this more neutral phagosomal pH has been shown to be essential for *H. capsulatum* infection of macrophages; however, the mechanisms behind this feature of *H. capsulatum* intracellular pathogenesis remain unknown. Although it is tempting to implicate *H. capsulatum* urease in this process, it is not considered to be a major factor because the pH is only elevated in the phagosome containing the yeast cell. If the fungal urease was involved, the ammonia/ammonium ions produced would be expected to diffuse out of the phagosome and raise the pH in the rest of the host cell as well.

Iron and Calcium Uptake

Iron is an important cofactor of several different metalloenzymes and heme-containing proteins. *H. capsulatum* yeasts have multiple strategies to acquire iron within host cells. The ability of the fungus to modulate the intraphagolysosomal pH between 6.0 and 6.5 is critical to the uptake of iron by yeast cells. A pH greater than 6.5 renders iron inaccessible to *H. capsulatum*. An important method by which *H. capsulatum* acquires limited iron intracellularly is by producing siderophores that chelate ferric iron and form soluble iron complexes. *H. capsulatum* yeast cells must use ferrous iron and thus express multiple iron-reducing systems and iron transporters. Mutants of *H. capsulatum* that are unable to make siderophores have reduced proliferation in cultured macrophages and decreased ability to establish a pulmonary infection. Discrepancies in siderophore production between different strains of *H. capsulatum* suggest that there may be alternative iron acquisition strategies that operate in addition to siderophore production.

As with iron, yeast cells within the phagolysosome must have an efficient mechanism for binding and transporting Ca^{2+}. Yeast cells, but not mycelial cells, release large amounts of a calcium-binding protein, CBP1, into the surrounding microenvironment. CBP1 has been suggested to be important in calcium acquisition during intracellular parasitism. The yeast phase–specific expression of CBP1 may provide *H. capsulatum* with another important adaptive mechanism for its survival within the phagolysosome of the macrophage.

Alteration of Yeast Cell Wall Composition

Similar to *B. dermatitidis*, most *H. capsulatum* strains have 1,3-α-glucan in their cell wall. Wild-type yeasts with 1,3-α-glucan can infect and survive within macrophages and can proliferate within the phagolysosome and ultimately kill the phagocyte, releasing yeast cells that go on to infect new macrophages. In contrast to the wild-type parent strain, spontaneous mutants of *H. capsulatum* that have lost the 1,3-α-glucan component have been shown to have significantly attenuated virulence and may infect and persist within macrophages without harm to the host cell. Functionally, α-glucan promotes *Histoplasma* virulence by preventing recognition of yeast by host immune cells. The α-glucan polysaccharide forms the outermost surface of the yeast cell wall, effectively concealing cell wall β-glucans that would normally be detected by Dectin-1 receptors on host macrophages. Dectin-1 is the primary receptor for the detection of fungal β-glucans, inducing an inflammatory response that may include increased production of reactive oxygen species and release of proinflammatory cytokines. Notably, certain North American strains of *H. capsulatum* naturally lack α-glucan; they show variable recognition by Dectin-1 yet remain virulent. The molecular mechanism by which these strains have circumvented the need for α-glucan remains unknown. Thus it appears that distinctive microenvironments found within host cells can influence the selection of variants that have the potential for long-term persistence within the host, as well as those that produce a more rapidly proliferative process.

PARACOCCIDIOIDES BRASILIENSIS

Infection caused by *P. brasiliensis* is initiated by the inhalation of conidia into the lungs, after which the fungus may disseminate hematogenously or lymphatically to virtually all parts of the body (see Chapter 64). A unique feature of paracoccidioidomycosis, compared with the other endemic mycoses, is that primary pulmonary infections that subsequently disseminate most often manifest as mucosal lesions of the mouth, nose, and occasionally the gastrointestinal tract.

The yeast cell wall of *P. brasiliensis* is rich in alkali-soluble glucans such as 1,3-α-glucan. As with several other of the endemic dimorphic fungal pathogens, it is thought that the presence of 1,3-α-glucan in the outermost layer of the yeast cell wall is essential for the survival of the fungus in vivo. It appears that macrophages are key elements of the innate response to infection by *P. brasiliensis*. Macrophages are able to contain *P. brasiliensis* infection but usually do not eliminate the yeast cells. Despite an early clinical resolution of infection, residual lesions containing viable yeast cells may reactivate up to 40 years later, causing relapse and serious sequelae. Characteristics of *P. brasiliensis* that are considered important in the pathogenesis of infection include response to hormonal factors, expression of 1,3-α-glucan, and immune responses to an immunodominant antigen, gp43.

Hormonal Influences on Infection

Although skin test reactivity to paracoccidioidin is comparable among both males and females living in areas endemic for paracoccidioidomycosis, the male/female ratio of symptomatic disease is ~11:1. Subclinical infection appears to occur at the same rate in both genders; however, progression to clinically overt disseminated disease is much more frequent in males. This observation has led to the hypothesis that hormonal factors play a very important role in the pathogenesis of paracoccidioidomycosis.

In contrast to *C. immitis*, in which estrogen stimulates fungal growth and endosporulation, the transition from conidia to the yeast form of *P. brasiliensis* is inhibited by estrogen. This results in rapid clearance of the infection in females, whereas the infection is allowed to progress in males. An alternative explanation is that male sex hormones have an immunoinhibitory effect that facilitates the establishment of infection. This remains an area of active investigation. Regardless, it appears that the early events of host–fungal interaction after natural infection are hormonally modulated and therefore are significantly different in males and females. These differences could account for the markedly higher susceptibility of males to paracoccidioidomycosis.

Role of Cell Wall Glucans in the Pathogenesis of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*

The cell wall of *P. brasiliensis* contains four main polysaccharides: galactomannan, 1,3-α-glucan, 1,3-β-glucan, and chitin. The 1,3-α-glucan component is only expressed in the yeast form of the organism, and its expression correlates with virulence. Mutant strains of *P. brasiliensis* that lack this glucan are avirulent and are much more susceptible to digestion by neutrophils.

The 1,3-β-glucan fraction of the cell wall acts as an important immunomodulator and, when exposed on the fungal cell wall, elicits an intense inflammatory response. β-Glucans are unmasked when levels of 1,3-α-glucan are reduced, leading to the hypothesis that the ratio of 1,3-α-glucan to 1,3-β-glucan in the cell wall of *P. brasiliensis* may be more important in pathogenesis than the individual polysaccharide components. It is important to realize that the relationship between the α-/β-glucan ratio in the *P. brasiliensis* cell wall and the type of immune response are similar to those seen in both histoplasmosis and blastomycosis. In each case, a high 1,3-α-glucan content of the yeast cell is related to increased virulence, and absent or decreased levels of this component is related to reduced virulence. Alteration in the cell wall composition of the yeast cells of all three of these dimorphic pathogens is also related to their ability to become sequestered within cells and tissues and to persist as viable elements for years after infection.

Responses to an Immunodominant Antigen, gp43

The yeast phase of *P. brasiliensis* secretes an immunodominant 43-kDa glycoprotein (gp43) that is both an important serodiagnostic antigen and a putative virulence factor. The gp43 antigen is a receptor for laminin-1 and may be

responsible for adhesion of the yeast cell to the host basement membrane. This antigen also binds to macrophages and elicits both a strong humoral response and a delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) response in humans.

The immunologic defense against infection with *P. brasiliensis* depends on cellular rather than humoral immunity. An impaired DTH response correlates with increased severity of disease. Mice immunized with gp43 develop both a TH1- and TH2-type immune response, whereas gp43 and a second antigen, gp70, are major contributors to a humoral response in humans. It is possible that patient immune reactivity to gp43 and gp70 is dominated by a TH2 pathway with inadequate T-cell response. If patient cell-mediated immunity to *P. brasiliensis* is actually compromised by such T-cell hyporesponsiveness, this could be a mechanism (as seen in histoplasmosis and coccidioidomycosis) underlying the immunopathogenesis of paracoccidioidomycosis.

Opportunistic Pathogens

The state of the host is of primary importance in determining the pathogenicity of opportunistic fungal pathogens, such as *Candida* spp., *C. neoformans*, and *Aspergillus* spp. In most instances, these organisms may exist as benign colonizers or as environmental saprobes and only cause serious infection when there is a breakdown of host defenses. There are factors associated with these organisms, however, that may be considered "virulence factors," in that they contribute to the disease process and in some instances may explain the differences in pathogenicity of the various organisms.

CANDIDA SPECIES

Candida spp. are the most common of the opportunistic fungal pathogens (see Chapter 65). It is now well established that *Candida* spp. colonize the gastrointestinal mucosa and reach the bloodstream through gastrointestinal translocation or via contaminated vascular catheters, interact with host defenses, and exit the intravascular compartment to invade deep tissues of target organs, such as the liver, spleen, kidneys, heart, and brain. Characteristics of the organism that are thought to contribute to pathogenicity include the ability to adhere to tissues, the ability to exhibit yeast-hyphal dimorphism, cell-surface hydrophobicity, proteinase secretion, and phenotypic switching (see Table 58.1).

The ability of *Candida* spp. to adhere to a variety of tissues and inanimate surfaces is considered important in the early stages of infection. The adherence capability of the various species of *Candida* is directly related to their virulence ranking in various experimental models. Adherence is achieved by a combination of specific (ligand-receptor interaction) and nonspecific (electrostatic, van der Waals forces) mechanisms.

The ability to undergo the yeast-to-hypha transformation has long been considered to have some importance in pathogenicity. Most species of *Candida* are capable of such transformation, which has been shown to be regulated by both pH and temperature. The yeast-hyphal transformation is one way for *Candida* spp. to respond to changes in the microenvironment. The hyphae of *Candida albicans* exhibit **thigmotropism** (a sense of touch), which allows them to grow along grooves and through pores and may aid in infiltration of epithelial surfaces.

The composition of the cell surface of *Candida* spp. may affect both the hydrophobicity of the cell and the immune response to the cell. The type and degree of glycosylation of the mannoproteins on the cell surface may affect the hydrophobicity of the cell and therefore adhesion to epithelial cells. The germ tubes of *C. albicans* are hydrophobic, whereas the buds or blastoconidia are hydrophilic. The various glycoproteins of *C. albicans* also suppress the immune response to the organism by mechanisms that are not well understood.

As discussed with the primary pathogens, the ability of *Candida* spp. to secrete various enzymes may also influence the pathogenicity of the organism. Several species of *Candida* secrete aspartyl proteinases that hydrolyze host proteins involved in defenses against infection, allowing the yeasts to breach connective tissue barriers. Likewise, phospholipases are produced by most species of *Candida* causing infection in humans. These enzymes damage host cells and are considered important in tissue invasion.

The ability of *Candida* spp. to rapidly switch from one morphotype to another has been termed **phenotypic switching.** Although originally applied to changes in gross colony morphology, it is now known that the different switch phenotypes observed on solid culture media represent differences in bud and hypha formation, expression of cell wall glycoproteins, proteolytic enzyme secretion, susceptibility to oxidative damage by neutrophils, and antifungal susceptibility and resistance. Phenotypic switching contributes to the virulence of *Candida* spp. by allowing the organism to rapidly adapt to changes in its microenvironment, facilitating its ability to survive, invade tissues, and escape from host defenses.

CRYPTOCOCCUS NEOFORMANS

C. neoformans is an encapsulated yeast that causes human infection throughout the world. Although this organism can infect apparently normal hosts, it causes disease much more frequently and with greater severity in immunocompromised hosts. In considering the pathogenesis of cryptococcosis, it is useful to consider both host defenses and putative virulence factors.

There are three main lines of defense against infection by *C. neoformans*: alveolar macrophages, inflammatory phagocytic cells, and T-cell and B-cell responses. Development of cryptococcosis largely depends on the competence of the host's cellular defenses and the number and virulence of the inhaled yeast cells.

The first line of defense is the alveolar macrophages. These cells are capable of ingesting the yeast cells but are limited in their ability to kill them. Macrophages that contain ingested yeast cells produce various cytokines for the recruitment of neutrophils, monocytes, NK cells, and cells from the bloodstream into the lung. They also act as antigen-presenting cells and induce the differentiation and proliferation of T and B lymphocytes that are specific for *C. neoformans*. The recruited cells are effective in killing *C. neoformans* by intracellular and extracellular mechanisms (both oxidative and nonoxidative).

The antibody response to this organism is nonprotective but serves to opsonize the yeast cells, enhancing cell-mediated cytotoxicity. Likewise, the complement system enhances the efficacy of the antibody response and provides opsonins and chemotactic factors for phagocytosis and recruitment of inflammatory cells.

An effective host response to *C. neoformans* is a complex interaction of cellular and humoral immune factors. When these factors are impaired, the infection disseminates, usually by migration of macrophages containing viable yeast cells, from the lung to the lymphatics and the bloodstream to the brain.

The main factors that are inherent in *C. neoformans* and that allow the yeast to evade the host defenses and establish infection include the ability to grow at 37° C, to produce a thick polysaccharide capsule, to synthesize melanin, and to be an alpha-mating phenotype (MATalpha) (see Table 58.1).

The capsule of *C. neoformans* protects the cell from phagocytosis and from cytokines induced by the phagocytic process; it also suppresses both cellular and humoral immunity. The capsule can physically block the opsonic effect of complement and anticryptococcal antibodies, and the negative charge that it confers produces an electrostatic repulsion between the yeast cells and the host effector cells. Furthermore, the capsular material interferes with antigen presentation and limits the production of nitric oxide (toxic for cryptococcal cells) by the host cells.

Melanin is produced by the fungus by virtue of a membrane-bound phenoloxidase enzyme and is deposited within the cell wall. It is thought that melanin enhances the integrity of the cell wall and increases the net negative charge of the cell, further protecting it from phagocytosis. Melanization is thought to be responsible for the neurotropism of *C. neoformans* and may protect the cell from oxidative stress, temperature extremes, iron reduction, and microbicidal peptides.

The alpha-mating phenotype is associated with the presence of the gene ***STE12alpha*,** which has been proven to modulate the expression of several other genes whose functions are important for the production of the capsule and melanin.

ASPERGILLUS SPECIES

Aspergillosis is the most common invasive mold infection worldwide. Aspergilli are ubiquitous saprobes in nature and may be found in soil, potted plants, decaying vegetation, pepper, and construction sites. *Aspergillus* spp. can cause disease in humans by airway colonization with subsequent allergic reactions, colonization of preexisting cavities (aspergilloma), or by tissue invasion.

The primary route of infection in aspergillosis is by inhalation of aerosolized conidia (2.5 to 3 μm), which settle in lungs, nasopharynx, or sinuses. In the lungs, alveolar macrophages and neutrophils play a major role in the host defense against *Aspergillus* spp. The macrophages ingest and kill the conidia, whereas the neutrophils adhere to and kill the hyphae that arise on germination of the conidia. Those hyphal forms that are not killed may invade the pulmonary tissue and vasculature, leading to thrombosis and local tissue necrosis and to hematogenous dissemination to other target organs (brain).

Aspergilli secrete various metabolic products, such as gliotoxins, and a variety of enzymes, including elastase, phospholipase, various proteases, and catalase, which may play a role in virulence. Gliotoxin inhibits macrophage phagocytosis, as well as T-cell activation and proliferation; however, it is not known whether clinically significant amounts of gliotoxin are produced in human disease.

Aspergillus fumigatus conidia bind to human fibrinogen and to laminin in the alveolar basement membrane. It is thought that this could be an important first step that allows the fungus to establish residence in host tissues. Binding to fibrinogen and laminin could facilitate adherence of conidia, whereas secretion of elastase and acid proteases could assist with host cell invasion by the hyphae.

Invasive aspergillosis is highly associated with neutropenia and impaired neutrophil function. *Aspergillus* conidia are resistant to killing by neutrophils, but germinating conidia and hyphae are readily killed. In chronic granulomatous disease, neutrophils are unable to generate the respiratory burst to kill catalase-producing microorganisms. Aspergilli produce catalase, which is an enzyme that breaks down hydrogen peroxide. The strong association of aspergillosis with chronic granulomatous disease underscores the importance of neutrophil function in the host defense against aspergillosis and provides indirect evidence for catalase as a virulence factor. The increased risk of aspergillosis in individuals receiving high doses of corticosteroids is generally thought to be caused by impairment of macrophage and perhaps T-cell function. In addition, corticosteroids have been shown to enhance the growth of *Aspergillus* spp. in culture. It is not known whether *Aspergillus* spp. have specific steroid-binding proteins analogous to those that have been found on other fungi.

MYCOTOXINS

There are more than 100 toxigenic fungi and more than 300 compounds now recognized as mycotoxins. The number of people affected by mycotoxicoses, however, is unknown. The majority of mycotoxicoses result from eating contaminated foods. The occurrence of mycotoxins in foods is most commonly caused by preharvest contamination of the material by toxigenic fungi that are plant pathogens. In addition, stored grains may be damaged by insects or moisture, providing a portal of entry for toxigenic fungi present in the storage environment. Mycotoxicoses are more common in resource-poor countries in which methods of food handling and storage are inadequate, malnutrition is prevalent, and there are few regulations designed to protect exposed populations.

Some mycotoxins are dermonecrotic, and cutaneous or mucosal contact with mold-infected substrates may result in disease. Likewise, inhalation of spore-borne toxins also constitutes an important form of exposure. Aside from supportive therapy, there are almost no treatments for mycotoxin exposure. Fortunately, mycotoxicoses are not communicable from person to person.

Among fungal plant pathogens, the elaboration of mycotoxins plays a role in causing or exacerbating the plant disease. Although mycotoxins may be poisonous to humans, and some may have potent immunosuppressive properties, there is very little evidence that mycotoxins enhance the ability of the

TABLE 58.2 Mycotoxin-Related Illnesses Postulated to Affect Humans, Based on Analytic or Epidemiologic Data

Disease	Toxin	Substrate	Fungus	Clinical Presentation
Akakabi-byo (red mold disease)	*Fusarium* metabolites	Wheat, barley, oats, rice	*Fusarium* spp.	Headaches, vomiting, diarrhea
ATA	Trichothecenes (T-2 toxin, DAS)	Cereal grains (toxic bread)	*Fusarium* spp.	Vomiting, diarrhea, angina, skin inflammation
BEN	Ochratoxin	Cereal grains	*Aspergillus* spp. *Penicillium* spp.	Chronic nephritis
Cardiac beriberi	Citreoviridin	Rice	*Penicillium* spp.	Palpitations, vomiting, mania, respiratory failure
Ergotism (gangrenous and convulsive)	Ergot alkaloids	Rye, cereal grains	*Claviceps purpurea* *Claviceps fusiformis*	Gangrenous: vasoconstriction, edema, pruritus, necrosis of extremities Convulsive: numbness, tingling, pruritus, cramps, seizures, hallucinations
Esophageal cancer	Fumonisins	Corn	*Fusarium moniliforme*	Dysphagia, pain, hemorrhage
Hepatitis and hepatic cancer	Aflatoxins	Cereal grains, peanuts	*Aspergillus flavus* *A. parasiticus*	Acute and chronic hepatitis, liver failure
Kodua poisoning	Cyclopiazonic acid	Millet	*Penicillium* spp. *Aspergillus* spp.	Somnolence, tremors, giddiness
Moldy sugarcane poisoning	3-Nitropropionic acid	Sugarcane	*Arthrinium* spp.	Dystonia, seizures, carpopedal spasms, coma
Onyalai disease	*Fusarium* metabolites	Millet	*Fusarium* spp.	Thrombocytopenia, purpura
Stachybotryotoxicosis	Trichothecenes (T-2 toxin, DAS)	Hay, cereal grains, fodder (skin contact, inhaled hay dust)	*Stachybotrys, Fusarium, Myrothecium, Trichoderma, Cephalosporium* spp.	Tremors, loss of vision, dermonecrosis, gastrointestinal bleeding (horses and cattle), nasal inflammation, dermatitis, headache, fatigue, respiratory symptoms (humans), idiopathic pulmonary hemorrhage of infants (?)
Yellow rice disease	Citrinin	Wheat, oats, barley, rice	*Penicillium* spp. *Aspergillus* spp.	Nephropathy

ATA, Alimentary toxic aleukia; *BEN,* Balkan endemic nephropathy; *DAS,* diacetoxyscirpenol.
Data from Kuhn, D.M., Ghannoum, M.A., 2003. Indoor mold, toxigenic fungi, and *Stachybotrys chartarum*: infectious disease perspective. Clinical Microbiology Reviews 16, 144–172; Smith, M., McGinnis, M.R., 2009. Mycotoxins and their effect on humans. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York; Bennett, J.W., Klich, M., 2003. Mycotoxins. Clinical Microbiology Reviews 16, 497–516.

fungus to grow and cause disease in vertebrate hosts. Those fungi, such as *Aspergillus fumigatus*, which are both important opportunistic pathogens and are capable of producing gliotoxins (inhibitors of T-cell activation and proliferation), generally do not produce the toxin in significant amounts during the course of human disease to have an effect on the disease process. Whereas an opportunistic fungus must be able to grow at human body temperature (37° C) to cause disease, the optimum temperature for biosynthesis of most mycotoxins is much lower (20° C to 30° C). For these and other reasons, the importance of mycotoxin exposure during the course of a mycotic infection with a toxigenic fungus is largely unknown. A listing of mycotoxicoses in which there is considerable evidence for the involvement of a specific mycotoxin is provided in Table 58.2. It should be noted that this list is meant to be representative and not all-inclusive.


For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Ampel, N.M., Hoover, S.E., 2015. Pathogenesis of coccidioidomycosis. Curr. Fungal. Infect. Rep. 9, 253–258.

Cole, G.T., 2003. Fungal pathogenesis. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Cramer, Jr., R.A., Perfect, J.R., 2009. Recent advances in understanding shuman opportunistic fungal pathogenesis mechanisms. In: Annaisie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Dignani, M.C., et al., 2009. Candida. In: Annaisie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Edwards, J.A., Rappleye, C.A., 2011. *Histoplasma* mechanisms of pathogenesis – one portfolio doesn't fit all. FEMS. Microbiol. Lett. 324, 1–9.

Finkel-Jiminez, B., Wuthrich, M., Klein, B.S., 2002. BAD1, an essential virulence factor of *Blastomyces dermatitidis,* suppresses host TNF-α production through TGF-β-dependent and -independent mechanisms. J. Immunol. 168, 5746–5755.

Gonzalez, A., Hernandez, O., 2016. New insights into a complex fungal pathogen: the case of *Paracoccidioides* spp. Yeast 33, 113–128.

Heitman, S.G.F., et al., 2006. Molecular Principles of Fungal Pathogenesis. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Nemecek, J.C., et al., 2006. Global control of dimorphism and virulence in fungi. Science 312, 583–588.

Throckmorton, K., et al., 2015. Mycotoxins. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Questions

1. What distinguishes a primary pathogen from an opportunistic pathogen?
2. What are the common themes seen in the pathogenesis of the primary fungal pathogens?
3. What is the most important line of defense against the endemic dimorphic fungi?
4. What putative virulence factor is common to both the primary and opportunistic fungal pathogens discussed in this chapter?

59 Role of Fungi in Disease

A summary of fungi (yeasts and molds) most commonly associated with human disease is presented in this chapter. Mycotic diseases in humans develop as pathogenic processes in one or more organ systems. The affected systems may be as superficial as the outer layers of the skin or as deep as the heart, central nervous system, or abdominal viscera. Although a single fungus may be associated with infection involving a single organ system (e.g., *Cryptococcus neoformans* and the central nervous system), more often several different organisms may produce a similar disease syndrome. Because the management of a given infection may differ according to the etiologic agent, to guide subsequent diagnostic and therapeutic efforts it is useful to develop a differential diagnosis that includes the most likely fungal pathogens.

Because the development of a fungal infection depends on factors that often outweigh the virulence potential of the infecting organism, one must take into account numerous factors, such as the immune status of the host, the opportunity for interaction between host and fungus (e.g., Is the fungus **endogenous** to the patient or **exogenous?**), and the potential infectious dose (e.g., in the case of an endemic dimorphic fungus) in determining the possibility of a fungal infection, the significance of the microbiologic data (e.g., culture results), and the necessity to treat and with what agent. Fungal infections often occur in very sick patients, and it is not possible to summarize here the incredibly complex interactions that ultimately lead to the establishment of infection and disease in each organ system. Instead, this chapter provides a very broad listing of the various fungi commonly associated with infections at specific body sites and/or specific clinical manifestations (Table 59.1). This information is meant to be used in conjunction with that in Chapter 60, Table 60.1, as an aid in establishing a differential diagnosis and for the selection of the most likely clinical specimens that will help establish a specific etiologic diagnosis. Other factors that may be important in determining the relative frequency with which specific fungi cause disease (e.g., age, comorbidities, host immunity, epidemiologic exposures and risk factors) are covered in the individual chapters in this text or in the more comprehensive infectious disease texts cited in this and other chapters.

TABLE 59.1 Summary of Fungi Associated with Human Disease

System Affected	Pathogens
UPPER RESPIRATORY INFECTIONS	
Oropharyngeal	*Candida* spp., *Cryptococcus neoformans, Histoplasma capsulatum, Blastomyces dermatitidis, Paracoccidioides brasiliensis, Talaromyces (Penicillium) marneffei, Geotrichum candidum*
Sinusitis	*Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, *Fusarium* spp., dematiaceous molds (e.g., *Alternaria, Bipolaris, Exophiala* spp.)
Laryngeal	*Histoplasma capsulatum, Sporothrix schenckii, Blastomyces dermatitidis*
Esophageal	*Candida* spp.
EAR INFECTIONS	
External otitis	*Aspergillus niger, Candida* spp.
EYE INFECTIONS	
Endophthalmitis	*Candida* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Blastomyces dermatitidis, Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Fusarium* spp., *Histoplasma capsulatum, Cryptococcus neoformans*
Keratitis	*Candida* spp., *Fusarium* spp., dematiaceous molds, *Scedosporium* spp., *Purpureocillium lilacinum*
Sinoorbital	Mucormycetes, *Aspergillus* spp., dematiaceous molds
Dacryocystitis and canaliculitis	*Candida albicans, Aspergillus niger*
PLEUROPULMONARY AND BRONCHIAL INFECTIONS	
Bronchitis	*Aspergillus* spp., *Cryptococcus neoformans*
Pneumonia	*Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, *Fusarium* spp., *Scedosporium apiospermum, Trichosporon* spp., dematiaceous molds, *Cryptococcus neoformans/gattii, Histoplasma capsulatum, Blastomyces dermatitidis, Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Paracoccidioides brasiliensis, Talaromyces (Penicillium) marneffei, Pneumocystis jirovecii, Candida* spp. (rare)
Fungus ball	*Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, *Scedosporium apiospermum, Fusarium* spp., *Candida* spp.

Continued

TABLE 59.1 Summary of Fungi Associated with Human Disease—cont'd

System Affected	Pathogens
Empyema	*Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, *Scedosporium apiospermum, Fusarium* spp., *Candida* spp., *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii*
GENITOURINARY TRACT INFECTIONS	
Vulvovaginal	*Candida* spp., *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*
Cystitis and pyelonephritis	*Candida* spp. (most common), *Cryptococcus neoformans, Aspergillus* spp., *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Histoplasma capsulatum, Blastomyces dermatitidis* (rare), *Trichosporon* spp. (rare), *Saprochaete capitata* (formerly *Blastoschizomyces capitatus* [rare]), *Rhodotorula* spp. (rare)
Epididymitis and orchitis	*Candida* spp., *Cryptococcus neoformans, Aspergillus* spp., *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Histoplasma capsulatum, Blastomyces dermatitidis* (all rare)
Prostatitis	*Candida* spp. (common), *Cryptococcus neoformans* (common), *Blastomyces dermatitidis* (common), *Histoplasma capsulatum, Aspergillus* spp. (rare), *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii* (rare)
INTRAABDOMINAL INFECTIONS	
Peritonitis	*Candida* spp., *Rhodotorula* spp., *Trichosporon* spp., *Aspergillus* spp. (rare)
Visceral abscesses	*Candida* spp., *Trichosporon* spp., *Saprochaete capitata* (formerly *Blastoschizomyces capitatus*)
CARDIOVASCULAR INFECTIONS	
Endocarditis	*Candida* spp., *Trichosporon* spp., *Rhodotorula* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., other hyaline hyphomycetes (e.g., *Fusarium, Sarocladium* [*Acremonium*]), dematiaceous molds
Pericarditis	*Candida* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Histoplasma capsulatum, Coccidioides immitis/posadasii*
CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM	
Meningitis	*Candida* spp., *Cryptococcus neoformans/gattii, Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes (rare), *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Histoplasma capsulatum, Blastomyces dermatitidis* (rare), *Rhodotorula* spp., *Saprochaete capitata* (formerly *Blastoschizomyces capitatus*), *Talaromyces (Penicillium) marneffei*
Brain abscess	*Candida* spp., *Cryptococcus neoformans/gattii, Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, *Scedosporium apiospermum, Trichosporon* spp., *Trichoderma* spp., dematiaceous molds (especially *Cladophialophora bantiana* and *Curvularia* [*Bipolaris*] *hawaiiensis*), endemic dimorphic fungi (rare)
SKIN AND SOFT-TISSUE INFECTIONS	
Superficial and cutaneous	Dermatophytes, *Candida* spp., *Neoscytalidium* spp., *Scopulariopsis* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Malassezia* spp., *Purpureocillium lilacinum*
Subcutaneous	Dematiaceous molds, *Fusarium* spp., *Acremonium* spp., *Scedosporium apiospermum, Sporothrix schenckii, Basidiobolus* sp., *Conidiobolus* sp.
Wounds (surgical or traumatic)	*Candida* spp., Mucormycetes, *Aspergillus* spp., *Fusarium* spp., *Trichosporon* spp., *Rhodotorula* spp., *Lomentospora* (*Scedosporium*) *prolificans*
Cutaneous nodules (hematogenous)	*Candida* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, *Cryptococcus neoformans, Trichosporon* spp., *Blastomyces dermatitidis, Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Talaromyces (Penicillium) marneffei, Fusarium* spp., *Acremonium* spp., dematiaceous molds (rare), *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *duboisii*
BONE AND JOINT INFECTIONS	
Osteomyelitis	*Blastomyces dermatitidis, Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Candida* spp., *Cryptococcus neoformans, Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, dematiaceous molds (mycetoma), other hyaline hyphomycetes (e.g., *Trichosporon*), *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *duboisii*
Arthritis	*Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Blastomyces dermatitidis, Cryptococcus neoformans, Candida* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., dematiaceous molds (mycetoma; rare), *Histoplasma capsulatum* (rare), *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* (rare), *Sporothrix schenckii* (rare)
OTHER INFECTIONS	
Prosthetic joint	*Candida* spp., all others very rare
Hematogenous dissemination	*Candida* spp., *Histoplasma capsulatum, Blastomyces dermatitidis, Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Cryptococcus neoformans/gattii, Paracoccidioides brasiliensis, Sporothrix schenckii, Aspergillus* spp., *Fusarium* spp., *Trichosporon* spp., *Malassezia* spp., *Saprochaete capitata* (formerly *Blastoschizomyces capitatus*), *Talaromyces (Penicillium) marneffei,* others (e.g., *Rhodotorula, Acremonium, Saccharomyces* spp. in neutropenic or transplant patients)

Bibliography

Anaisse, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A., 2009. Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Guarner, J., Brandt, M.E., 2011. Histopathologic diagnosis of fungal infection in the 21st century. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 24, 247–280.

Jorgensen, J.H., et al., 2015. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Pfaller, M.A., Diekema, D.J., 2010. Epidemiology of invasive mycoses in North Am. Crit. Rev. Microbiol. 36, 1–53.

Pfaller, M.A., Diekema, D.J., 2004. Rare and emerging opportunistic fungal pathogens: concern for resistance beyond *Candida albicans* and *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J. Clin. Microbiol. 42, 4419–4431.

60 Laboratory Diagnosis of Fungal Disease

The spectrum of mycotic disease ranges from superficial cutaneous and mucosal infections that may be locally irritating to highly invasive processes associated with classic systemic and opportunistic pathogens. Serious infections are reported with an ever-increasing array of pathogens, including well-known pathogenic fungi, such as *Candida*, *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, and *Aspergillus*, as well as lesser known hyaline and dematiaceous molds (see Chapter 57, Tables 57.1 and 57.2). Modern medical mycology has become the study of mycoses caused by a variety of taxonomically diverse fungi.

Opportunistic mycoses pose a significant diagnostic challenge to clinicians and mycologists alike because of the complexity of the patient population at risk and the increasing array of fungi that may infect these individuals. Successful diagnosis and treatment of mycotic infections in the compromised patient is highly dependent on a team approach involving clinicians, medical mycologists, and pathologists.

This chapter provides a general description of the principles of specimen collection and processing necessary for the diagnosis of most fungal infections. An overview of direct microscopy, culture, immunologic, and molecular diagnostic testing also is provided. Specific details of these and other procedures used in the diagnosis of fungal infections may be found in several reference texts listed in the Bibliography.

Clinical Recognition of Fungal Infections

Prompt diagnosis of invasive mycoses requires a high index of suspicion and an appreciation of specific risk factors that may predispose a patient to such infections. Clinical suspicion; thorough history and physical examination, including a search for cutaneous and mucosal lesions; inspection of all implanted devices (catheters, etc.); a careful ophthalmologic examination; diagnostic imaging studies; and, finally, procurement of appropriate specimens for laboratory diagnosis are all essential steps that must be taken to optimize the diagnosis and treatment of fungal infections. Unfortunately, although specific fungi may be associated with "classic" case scenarios, such as onychomycosis and lower extremity skin lesions caused by *Fusarium* in a patient with neutropenia or sinus infection caused by *Rhizopus* in a diabetic patient with ketoacidosis, clinical signs and symptoms are not specific for fungal infections and are often not helpful in distinguishing between bacterial and fungal infections in a patient at risk for both types of infection. Increasingly, it is also important to know not only that the patient is infected with a fungus but what the fungus is to provide the best treatment and clinical support. Thus diagnosis of fungal infections depends on three basic laboratory approaches: (1) microbiologic, (2) immunologic, and (3) histopathologic (Box 60.1). These approaches may be supplemented by molecular and biochemical methods of organism detection and identification. Use of the newer methods for detection of fungal antigens and nucleic acids offers great promise for rapid diagnosis of fungal infections.

Conventional Laboratory Diagnosis

SPECIMEN COLLECTION AND PROCESSING

As with all types of infectious processes, the laboratory diagnosis of fungal infection is directly dependent on the proper

BOX 60.1 Laboratory Methods for Diagnosing Fungal Disease

Conventional Microbiologic Methods

Direct microscopy (Gram, Giemsa, and calcofluor white stains)
Culture
Identification
Susceptibility testing

Histopathologic Methods

Routine stains (H&E)
Special stains (GMS, PAS, Mucicarmine)
Direct immunofluorescence
In situ hybridization

Immunologic Methods

Antibody
Antigen

Molecular Methods

Direct detection (nucleic acid amplification)
Identification
Strain typing

Biochemical Methods

Metabolites
Cell wall components
Enzymes

GMS, Gomori methenamine silver; *H&E,* hematoxylin and eosin; *PAS,* periodic acid–Schiff.

collection of appropriate clinical material and prompt delivery of the specimens to the clinical laboratory. Selection of specimens for culture and microscopic examination is based not only on information obtained from clinical examination and radiographic studies but also on consideration of the most likely fungal pathogen that may cause a specific type of infection (Table 60.1). Specimens should be collected aseptically or after proper cleaning and decontamination of the site to be sampled. An adequate amount of clinical material must be submitted promptly for culture and microscopy. Unfortunately, many specimens submitted to the laboratory are of poor quality and insufficient amount and are not appropriate to make a diagnosis. Specimens should be submitted whenever possible in a sterile leak-proof container and be accompanied by a relevant clinical history. The laboratory depends on clinical information in making decisions as to the best way to process the specimen to ensure recovery of the etiologic agent. The clinical history also is useful in interpreting

Table 60.1 Body Sites, Specimen Collection, and Diagnostic Procedures for Selected Fungal Infections

Infection Site and Infecting Organism	Specimen Options	Collection Methods	Diagnostic Procedure
BLOOD			
Candida, Cryptococcus neoformans, Histoplasma capsulatum, Fusarium, Aspergillus terreus, Talaromyces marneffei, Trichosporon	Whole blood	Venipuncture (sterile)	Culture, broth, culture, lysis-centrifugation, nucleic acid amplification
	Serum	Venipuncture (sterile)	Antigen (*Aspergillus, Candida, Cryptococcus,* and *Histoplasma*), nucleic acid amplification β-D-glucan
	Urine	Sterile	Antigen (*Histoplasma*)
BONE MARROW			
Histoplasma capsulatum, Talaromyces marneffei	Aspirate	Sterile	Microscopic examination, culture
	Serum	Venipuncture (sterile)	Serology, (*Histoplasma*) antigen, antibody
	Urine	Sterile	Antigen (*Histoplasma*)
CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM			
Candida, Cryptococcus neoformans/gattii, Aspergillus, Scedosporium, dematiaceous molds, Mucormycetes, *Histoplasma, Coccidioides*	Spinal fluid	Sterile	Microscopic examination, culture, antigen (*Cryptococcus*)
	Biopsy	Sterile, nonsterile to histopathology	Microscopic examination, culture (do not grind tissue)
	Serum	Sterile	Antigen (*Aspergillus, Cryptococcus,* and *Histoplasma*)
BONE AND JOINT			
Candida, Fusarium, Aspergillus, Histoplasma capsulatum, Coccidioides immitis/posadasii, Blastomyces dermatitidis, Talaromyces marneffei, Sporothrix schenckii	Aspirate	Sterile	Microscopic examination, culture
	Biopsy	Sterile, nonsterile to histopathology	Microscopic examination, culture (do not grind tissue)
	Serum	Venipuncture	Serology, antigen, antibody
EYE			
Fusarium, Candida, Cryptococcus neoformans, Aspergillus, Mucormycetes	Cornea	Scraping or biopsy	Microscopic examination, culture
	Vitreous fluid	Sterile aspirate	Microscopic examination, culture
UROGENITAL SYSTEM			
Candida, Cryptococcus neoformans, Trichosporon, Rhodotorula	Urine	Sterile	Microscopic examination, culture
Rarely: *Histoplasma capsulatum, Blastomyces dermatitidis, Coccidioides immitis/posadasii*	Vaginal, urethral, prostatic secretions or discharge	Saline swab	Microscopic examination, wet mount, calcofluor white/KOH, culture
	Serum	Venipuncture	Serology (antibody)
	Biopsy	Sterile, nonsterile to histopathology	Microscopic examination, culture (do not grind tissue)

Table 60.1 Body Sites, Specimen Collection, and Diagnostic Procedures for Selected Fungal Infections—cont'd

Infection Site and Infecting Organism	Specimen Options	Collection Methods	Diagnostic Procedure
RESPIRATORY TRACT			
Cryptococcus neoformans/gattii, Aspergillus, Fusarium, Mucormycetes, *Scedosporium apiospermum,* dematiaceous molds, endemic dimorphic fungi, *Pneumocystis jirovecii*	Sputum	Induced, no preservative	Microscopic examination, culture, nucleic acid amplification
	Lavage	No preservative	Microscopic examination, culture, galactomannan (*Aspergillus*), β-D-glucan nucleic acid amplification
	Transbronchial	Aspirate or biopsy	Microscopic examination, culture
	Open lung biopsy	Sterile, nonsterile to histopathology	Microscopic examination, culture (do not grind tissue)
	Serum	Venipuncture	Serology, antigen, antibody, nucleic acid amplification, β-D-glucan
	Urine	Sterile	Antigen (*Histoplasma*)
SKIN AND MUCOUS MEMBRANES			
Candida, Cryptococcus neoformans, Trichosporon, Aspergillus, Mucormycetes, *Fusarium,* dematiaceous molds, endemic dimorphic fungi, *Sporothrix schenckii*	Biopsy	Sterile, nonsterile to histopathology	Microscopic examination, culture (do not grind tissue)
	Mucosal	Saline swab	Microscopic examination, wet mount, calcofluor white/KOH, culture
	Skin scraping	Nonsterile	Calcofluor white/KOH
	Serum	Venipuncture	Serology, antigen, antibody, nucleic acid amplification
	Urine	Sterile	Antigen (*Histoplasma*)
MULTIPLE SYSTEMIC SITES			
Candida, *Cryptococcus neoformans/gattii*, *Trichosporon*, hyaline molds, dematiaceous molds, endemic dimorphic fungi	Whole blood	Venipuncture (sterile)	Culture, broth, or lysis-centrifugation, nucleic acid amplification
	Serum	Venipuncture (sterile)	Serology, antigen, antibody, nucleic acid amplification, β-D-glucan
	Urine	Sterile	Antigen (*Histoplasma*)
	Biopsy	Sterile, nonsterile to histopathology	Microscopic examination, culture (do not grind tissue)

KOH, Potassium hydroxide.

the results of culture and other laboratory testing, especially when dealing with specimens from nonsterile sites such as sputum and skin. Furthermore, clinical information alerts the laboratory personnel that they may be dealing with a potentially dangerous pathogen, such as *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii* or *H. capsulatum*.

Transportation of specimens to the laboratory should be prompt; however, delayed processing of specimens for fungal culture may not be as detrimental as with specimens for bacteriologic, virologic, or parasitologic examination. In general, if processing is delayed, the specimens for fungal culture may be stored at 4° C for a short time without loss of organism viability.

Similar to specimens for bacteriologic examination, there are some specimens that are better than others for the diagnosis of fungal infections (see Table 60.1). Cultures of blood and other normally sterile body fluids should be done if clinical indications suggest a hematogenous process or involvement of a closed space such as the central nervous system. Skin lesions should be biopsied and material sent for both histopathologic examination and culture. Oral and vaginal mucosal infections are generally best diagnosed by clinical presentation and direct microscopic examination of secretions or mucosal scrapings because cultures often yield growth that represents normal flora or even contaminants. Similarly, diagnosis of gastrointestinal fungal infections is best made by biopsy and histopathologic examination rather than by culture. Twenty-four–hour collections of sputum or urine are not appropriate for mycologic examination because they typically become overgrown with both bacterial and fungal contaminants.

Table 60.2 Selected Methods and Stains Commonly Used for Direct Microscopic Detection of Fungal Elements in Clinical Specimens

Method/Stain	Use	Comments
Calcofluor white stain	Detection of all fungi, including *Pneumocystis jirovecii*	Rapid (1-2 min); detects fungal cell wall chitin by bright fluorescence Used in combination with potassium hydroxide Requires fluorescent microscope with proper filters Background fluorescence may make examination of some specimens difficult
Fluorescent monoclonal antibody treatment	Examination of respiratory specimen for *P. jirovecii*	Sensitive and specific method for detecting the cysts of *P. jirovecii* Does not stain the extracystic (trophic) forms
Giemsa stain	Examination of bone marrow, peripheral blood smears, touch preparations of tissue, and respiratory specimens	Detect intracellular *Histoplasma capsulatum* and both intracystic and trophic forms of *P. jirovecii* Does not stain the cyst wall of *Pneumocystis* Does stain organisms other than *Histoplasma* and *Pneumocystis*
Gram stain	Detection of bacteria and fungi	Commonly performed on clinical specimens Will stain most yeasts and hyphal elements Most fungi stain gram-positive, but some, such as *Cryptococcus neoformans*, exhibit stippling or appear gram-negative
H&E stain	General purpose histologic stain	Best stain to demonstrate host reaction in infected tissue Stains most fungi, but small numbers of organisms may be difficult to differentiate from background Useful in demonstrating natural pigment in dematiaceous fungi
GMS stain	Detection of fungi in histologic sections and *P. jirovecii* cysts in respiratory specimens	Best stain for detecting all fungi Stains hyphae and yeast forms black against a green background Usually performed in histopathology laboratory
Mucicarmine stain	Histopathologic stain for mucin	Useful for demonstrating capsular material of *C. neoformans* May also stain the cell walls of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* and *Rhinosporidium seeberi*
PAS stain	Histologic stain for fungi	Stains both yeasts and hyphae in tissue. PAS-positive artifacts may resemble yeast cells

GMS, Gomori methenamine silver; *H&E,* hematoxylin and eosin; *PAS,* periodic acid–Schiff.
Modified from Pfaller, M.A., McGinnis, M.R., 2009. The laboratory and clinical mycology. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

STAINS AND DIRECT MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Direct microscopic examination of tissue sections and clinical specimens is generally considered to be among the most rapid and cost-effective means of diagnosing fungal infections. Microscopic detection of yeasts or hyphal structures in tissue may be accomplished in less than an hour, whereas culture results may not be available for days or even weeks. In certain instances, the fungus may not only be detected but identified by microscopy because it possesses a distinctive morphology. Specifically, detection of characteristic cysts, yeast cells, or spherules can provide an etiologic diagnosis of infections caused by *Pneumocystis jirovecii, H. capsulatum*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, or *C. immitis/posadasii*, respectively. Although the morphologic appearance of *Candida*, a mucoromycete, or *Trichosporon* in tissue may lead to the diagnosis of the type of infection (i.e., candidiasis, mucormycosis, trichosporonosis), the actual species of fungus causing the infection would remain unknown, pending culture. Microscopic detection of fungi in tissue serves to guide the laboratory in selecting the most appropriate means to culture the specimen and is helpful in determining the significance of culture results. The latter is especially true when the organism isolated in culture is a known component of the normal flora or is frequently found in the environment.

Direct microscopy is clearly useful in diagnosing fungal infection; however, both false-negative and false-positive results may occur. Microscopy is less sensitive than culture, and a negative direct examination does not rule out a fungal infection.

A number of different stains and microscopic techniques may be used to detect and characterize fungi directly in clinical material (Table 60.2). The approaches used most often in the clinical mycology laboratory include the fluorescent reagent calcofluor white or staining of smears and touch preparations with either Gram or Giemsa stains. Calcofluor white stains the cell walls of fungi, causing the fungi to fluoresce for easier and faster detection (Fig. 60.1). The Gram stain is useful for detection of yeasts, such as species of *Candida* or *Cryptococcus* (Fig. 60.2), and filamentous fungi, such as *Aspergillus* (Fig. 60.3). Fungi are typically gram-positive but may appear speckled or gram-negative (see Figs. 60.2 and 60.3). The Giemsa stain is especially useful for detecting the intracellular yeast forms of *H. capsulatum* in peripheral blood smears, bone marrow, or touch preparations of tissue (Fig. 60.4).

The respiratory pathogen *P. jirovecii* may be detected in induced sputum or specimens obtained by bronchoscopy.

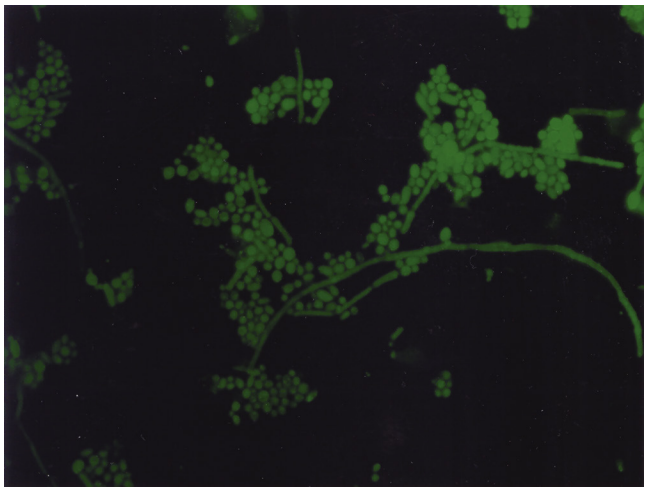


Fig. 60.1 Calcofluor white stain demonstrating budding yeasts and pseudohyphae of *Candida albicans*.

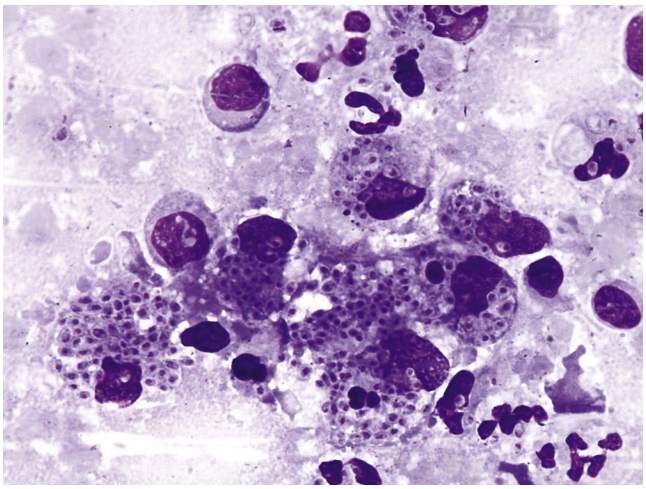


Fig. 60.4 Giemsa stain showing intracellular yeast forms of *Histoplasma capsulatum*.

Fig. 60.2 Gram stain of *Cryptococcus neoformans*. These are variable-sized, encapsulated, budding yeasts showing a stippled pattern resulting from uneven retention of crystal violet stain.

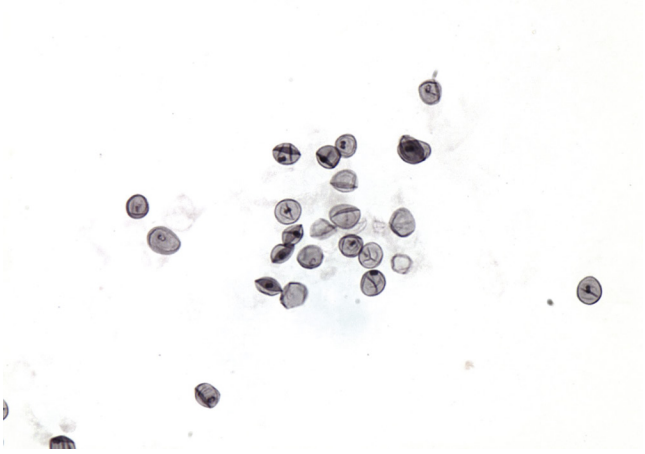


Fig. 60.5 Silver stain of *Pneumocystis jirovecii* cysts.

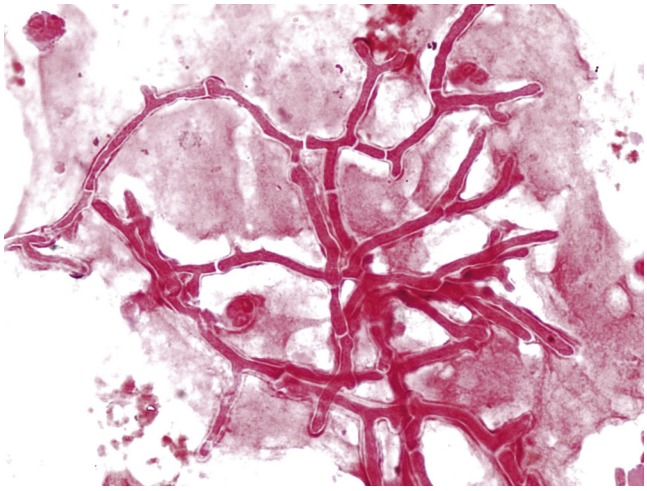


Fig. 60.3 Gram stain of *Aspergillus*. This specimen did not retain the crystal violet stain and appears gram-negative.

The cysts may be stained with Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) stain (Fig. 60.5) or by a fluorescent monoclonal antibody, and the trophic and intracystic forms are stained with the Giemsa stain (Fig. 60.6).

Stains such as hematoxylin and eosin (H&E), GMS, and periodic acid–Schiff (PAS) are performed in the cytology and/or histopathology laboratory and are used for detection of fungi in cytologic preparations, fine-needle aspirates, tissues, body fluids, and exudates (see Tables 60.1 and 60.2). These stains can detect fungi such as *B. dermatitidis*, *H. capsulatum*, *C. immitis*/*posadasii*, *Candida* spp., *C. neoformans,* and the hyphae of Mucormycetes (Fig. 60.7), *Aspergillus,* and other molds. Fungi may be visualized with the H&E stain, but small numbers of organisms may be missed. The more fungus-specific stains are the GMS and PAS stains. These stains are useful in detecting small numbers of organisms and for clearly defining characteristic features of fungal morphology. Histologic examination of fixed tissue provides the opportunity to determine whether the fungus is invading the tissue or merely present superficially; this information is helpful in distinguishing between infection and colonization. The microscopic morphologic features of several of the more common fungal pathogens are presented in Table 60.3.

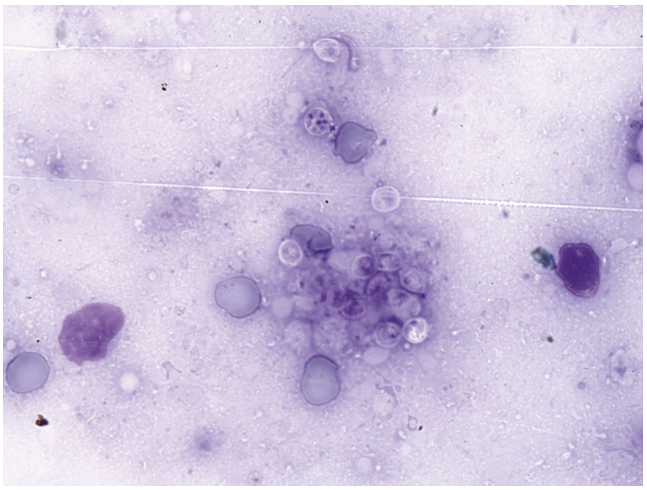


Fig. 60.6 Giemsa stain showing intracystic and trophic forms of *Pneumocystis jirovecii*.

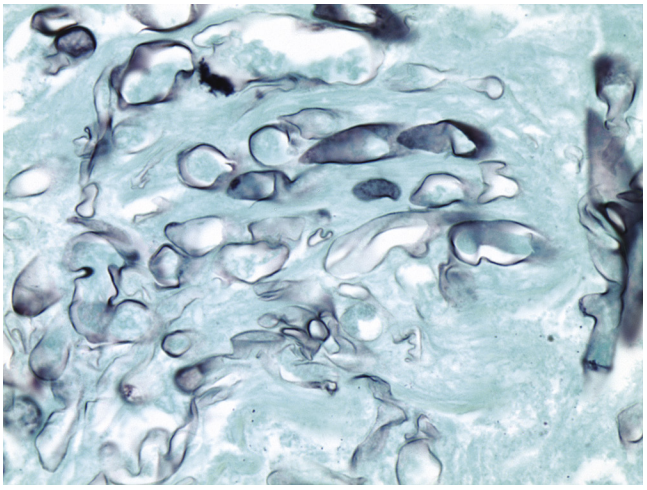


Fig. 60.7 Silver stain of *Rhizopus*.

CULTURE

The most sensitive means of diagnosing a fungal infection is usually considered to be isolation of the fungus in culture. Culture also is necessary, in most instances, to identify the etiologic agents. Optimal recovery of fungi from clinical material depends on procurement of an adequate clinical specimen and then using culture methods that will ensure the recovery of organisms that are usually present in small amounts and are slow growing. No single culture medium is sufficient to isolate all medically important fungi, and it is generally accepted that at least two types of media, selective and nonselective, should be used. The nonselective medium will permit the growth of rapidly growing yeasts and molds, as well as the more slowly growing fastidious fungi. Fungi will grow in most media used for bacteria; however, growth may be slow, and a more enriched medium, such as brain heart infusion (BHI) agar or SABHI (Sabouraud dextrose and BHI) agar, is recommended. Fastidious dimorphic fungi, such as *H. capsulatum* and *B. dermatitidis*, usually require a blood-containing medium, such as BHI with 5% to 10% sheep blood, for optimal recovery from clinical material. Cycloheximide is often added to this medium to inhibit the more rapidly growing yeasts and molds that may contaminate the specimen. Although cycloheximide does not affect the endemic dimorphic pathogens, it will inhibit the growth of many opportunistic pathogens (e.g., *Candida*, *Aspergillus*) that also might be the etiologic agent of infection. For this reason, one should always pair cycloheximide-containing media with complementary media without cycloheximide. Specimens that may be contaminated with bacteria should be inoculated onto selective media, such as SABHI or BHI supplemented with antibiotics (penicillin plus streptomycin is often used). Specific fungi may require specialized media. For example, *Malassezia furfur*, an agent that causes superficial skin infections and infections of vascular catheters, requires a medium containing olive oil or another source of long-chain fatty acids for optimal recovery.

Media have been formulated to provide the presumptive identification of yeast based on colonial morphologic features. The addition of certain substrates or chromogens to the agar medium allows the direct detection of specific enzymatic activities characteristic of selected species of yeast. CHROMagar Candida is one such medium that can be used for simultaneous isolation and presumptive identification of *Candida albicans*, *C. tropicalis*, and *C. krusei*. CHROMagar is selective for fungi, and use of this medium shortens the time to presumptive identification of the organisms and allows easier detection of multiple yeast species present in a specimen based on characteristic colors of colonies produced by different species of *Candida* (see Fig. 65.5). CHROMagar may be coupled with the rapid trehalose test (RAT) for the identification of *C. glabrata* and has been shown to be useful in the rapid identification and determination of fluconazole susceptibility of *Candida* species directly from positive blood cultures. Other chromogenic media and a rapid colorimetric test based on the detection of L-proline aminopeptidase and β-galactose-aminidase have been developed specifically for the rapid identification of *C. albicans*.

The detection of fungemia is an important measure in diagnosing invasive fungal infection. Although contamination of blood cultures with a fungus may take place, for the most part, blood cultures positive for fungi are significant. Unfortunately, blood cultures are often negative, despite the presence of disseminated disease, especially when the infecting organism is a mold. Detection of fungemia has improved with the development of continuous-monitoring blood culture instruments and improved media formulations that take into account the growth requirements of fungi, as well as bacteria. In addition to these broth-based systems, the agar-based lysis-centrifugation method provides a flexible and sensitive method for detection of fungemia caused by yeasts, molds, and dimorphic pathogens (see Table 60.1).

Once inoculated, fungal cultures should be incubated in air at the proper temperature and for a sufficient period of time to ensure the recovery of fungi from clinical specimens. Most fungi grow optimally at 25° C to 30° C, although most species of *Candida* can be recovered from blood cultures incubated at 35° C to 37° C. Culture dishes should be sealed with gas-permeable tape

to prevent dehydration. Specimens submitted for fungal culture are generally incubated for 2 weeks; however, most blood cultures become positive within 5 to 7 days. Determination of the clinical significance of a fungal isolate must be made in consultation with the responsible clinician in the context of the clinical setting of the patient.

IDENTIFYING CHARACTERISTICS OF VARIOUS FUNGI

Determination of the identity of the specific etiologic agent of mycotic disease may have a direct bearing on prognosis and therapeutic considerations. It is becoming clear that a single therapeutic approach, for example, using amphotericin B, is inadequate for many fungal infections (see Chapter 61). The identification of fungal pathogens may have additional diagnostic and epidemiologic implications. Knowing the genus and species of the infecting agent also can provide access to fungal registries and to the literature in which the experiences of others may serve as a guide to the clinical course of infection and response to therapy, especially for the more unusual opportunistic mycoses.

Distinguishing yeastlike fungi from molds is the first step in identifying a fungal isolate. Gross colony morphology usually provides a good clue: yeastlike fungi form pasty, opaque colonies, and molds form large, filamentous colonies that vary in texture, color, and topography. Microscopic examination provides further delineation and often is all that is required for identification of many fungi (see Table 60.3). Identification of genus and species, depending on the fungus, requires more detailed microscopic study to delineate characteristic structures. Yeast identification usually requires additional biochemical and physiologic testing, whereas the identification of both yeasts and molds may be enhanced by specialized immunologic, molecular, and proteomic characterization (see Table 60.3).

Among the newer rapid methods for identification of *Candida* and other yeasts are the techniques of peptide nucleic acid (PNA)–fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) and matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization–time of flight (MALDI-TOF) mass spectrometry (MS). The PNA FISH tests (OpGen, Gaithersburg, MD) are based on a fluorescein-labeled PNA probe that specifically detects *C. albicans, C. tropicalis,* or *C. glabrata* as individual species or detects a yeast species group (e.g., *C. albicans* and *C. parapsilosis* fluoresce green and *C. glabrata* and *C. krusei* fluoresce red with the Yeast Traffic Light PNA FISH kit) in blood cultures by targeting species-specific rRNA sequences. The probes are added to smears made directly from the contents of the blood culture bottle and are hybridized for 90 minutes. Recent modifications to the probes and reagents have resulted in a second-generation test (*Quick*FISH) that shortens the assay time to 30 minutes. Smears are subsequently examined by fluorescence microscopy. The test has been shown to have excellent sensitivity (99%), specificity (100%), positive predictive value (100%), and negative predictive value (99.3%). This approach may provide a time savings of 24 to 48 hours, compared with conventional laboratory methods used for identification. It allows physicians to be notified of the yeasts identity along with positive blood culture results. Rapid, accurate identification of *C. albicans, C. tropicalis, C. parapsilosis, C. glabrata,* and *C. krusei* should promote optimal antifungal therapy with the most cost-effective agents, resulting in improved outcomes and significant antifungal savings for hospitals.

MALDI-TOF MS uses species-specific patterns of peptides and protein masses to identify microorganisms. It has been shown to be highly accurate in identifying a broad array of bacteria and recently has been shown to provide a rapid and reliable tool for the identification of yeasts, yeastlike fungi, and molds. The technique involves extraction of proteins from the fungal cells, spotting of the specimen on a grid, and overlaying the spot with a matrix. The spectrum is generated rapidly (≈10 minutes per specimen) and is compared with a reference database. In several studies, the method has been shown to be highly accurate and to provide a combination of the lowest expenditure of consumables, easy interpretation of results, and a fast turnaround time. Limitations include a lack of robust databases for the less common yeasts and relatively poor performance in identifying molds aside from *Aspergillus* species.

The identification of yeastlike fungi to the species level often requires the determination of the biochemical and physiologic profile of the organism in addition to the assessment of the microscopic morphology (see Table 60.3). Although nucleic acid sequencing and proteomic methods are rapidly becoming the standard methods for identification of molds, the classical method for the identification of a mold is based almost entirely on its microscopic morphology. The important features include the shape, method of production, and arrangement of conidia or spores and the size and appearance of the hyphae. The preparation of material for microscopic examination must be done in such a way that it produces minimal disruption of the arrangement of the reproductive structures and their conidia or spores. Determination of the presence of melanin and thermal-regulated dimorphism also are important features. Immunologic and/or nucleic acid probe–based tests are often used to identify the endemic dimorphic pathogens, and nucleic acid sequencing is applied as an aid in the identification of a variety of molds. The characteristic features of several of the commonly isolated filamentous and dimorphic pathogens are listed in Table 60.3.

Amplification-based molecular approaches are being developed to provide more rapid and objective identification of both yeasts and molds compared with traditional phenotypic methods. Ribosomal targets and internal transcribed spacer (ITS) regions have shown particular promise for molecular identification of some fungi. Several recent studies have confirmed the tremendous potential of these approaches as powerful tools in the identification of clinically important yeasts and molds; however, the existing sequence databases are limited with regard to both the quality and accuracy of their entries. Presently, with the availability of improved sequencing techniques, broader and more reliable databases, and more readily available kits and software, this technology has become a competitive alternative to the classic mycologic identification techniques used for clinically important fungi.

Table 60.3 Characteristic Features of Selected Opportunistic and Pathogenic Fungi in Clinical Specimens and in Cultures

Fungus	Microscopic Morphologic Features in Clinical Specimens	CHARACTERISTIC MORPHOLOGIC FEATURES IN CULTURE		Additional Tests for Identification
		Macroscopic	Microscopic	
Candida	Oval budding yeasts 2-6 μm in diameter Hyphae and pseudohyphae may be present	Variable morphology Colonies usually pasty, white to tan and opaque May have smooth or wrinkled morphology	Clusters of blastoconidia, pseudohyphae, and/or terminal chlamydospores in some species	Germ tube production by *Candida albicans, C. dubliniensis,* and *C. stellatoidea* PNA-FISH, MALDI-TOF MS Gene sequencing Carbohydrate assimilation Morphology on corn meal agar, CHROMagar, rapid trehalose test
Cryptococcus neoformans	Spherical budding yeasts of variable size, 2-15 μm Capsule may be present No hyphae or pseudohyphae	Colonies are shiny, mucoid, dome shaped, and cream to tan in color	Budding spherical cells of varying size Capsule present No pseudohyphae Cells may have multiple narrow-based buds	Tests for urease (+), phenoloxidase (+), and nitrate reductase (–) Latex agglutination, LFD or EIA test for polysaccharide antigen Mucicarmine and melanin stains in tissue
Aspergillus	Septate, dichotomously branched hyphae of uniform width (3-6 μm)	Varies with species *A. fumigatus*: blue-green to gray *A. flavus*: yellow-green *A. niger*: black	Varies with species Conidiophores with enlarged vesicles covered with flask-shaped metulae or phialides Hyphae are hyaline and septate	Identification based on microscopic and colonial morphology Gene sequencing MALDI-TOF MS
Mucormycetes	Broad, thin-walled, pauciseptate hyphae, 6-25 μm with nonparallel sides and random branches Hyphae stain poorly with GMS stain and often stain well with H&E stain	Colonies are rapid growing, woolly, and gray-brown to gray-black in color	Broad, ribbon-like hyphae with rare septa Sporangium or sporangiola produced from sporangiophore Rhizoids present in some species	Identification based on microscopic morphologic features Gene sequencing
Dematiaceous molds see chapter 57, Table 57.5	Pigmented (brown, tan, or black) hyphae, 2-6 μm wide May be branched or unbranched Often constricted at point of septation	Colonies are usually rapidly growing, woolly, and gray, olive, black, or brown in color	Varies depending on genus and species Hyphae are pigmented Conidia may be single or in chains, smooth or rough, and dematiaceous	Identification based on microscopic and colonial morphology Gene sequencing
Histoplasma capsulatum	Small (2-4 μm) budding yeasts within macrophages	Colonies are slow growing and white or buff-brown in color (25° C) Yeast phase colonies (37° C) are smooth, white, and pasty	Thin, septate hyphae that produce tuberculate macroconidia and smooth-walled microconidia (25° C) Small, oval, budding yeasts produced at 37° C	Demonstration of temperature-regulated dimorphism by conversion from mold to yeast phase at 37° C; exoantigen and nucleic acid probe tests allow identification without phase conversion
Blastomyces dermatitidis	Large (8-15 μm), thick-walled, broad-based budding yeast	Colonies vary from membranous, yeastlike colonies to cottony, white, moldlike colonies at 25° C When grown at 37° C, yeast phase colonies are wrinkled, folded, and glabrous	Hyaline, septate hyphae with one-celled smooth conidia (25° C) Large, thick-walled, budding yeast at 37° C	Demonstration of temperature-regulated dimorphism; exoantigen and nucleic acid probe tests
Coccidioides immitis/ posadasii	Spherical, thick-walled spherules, 20-200 μm Mature spherules contain small, 2-5 μm endospores	Colonies initially appear moist and glabrous, rapidly becoming downy and gray-white with a tan or brown reverse	Hyaline hyphae with rectangular arthroconidia separated by empty disjunctor cells	Exoantigen and nucleic acid probe tests

Table 60.3 Characteristic Features of Selected Opportunistic and Pathogenic Fungi in Clinical Specimens and in Cultures—cont'd

Fungus	Microscopic Morphologic Features in Clinical Specimens	CHARACTERISTIC MORPHOLOGIC FEATURES IN CULTURE		Additional Tests for Identification
		Macroscopic	Microscopic	
Sporothrix schenckii	Yeastlike cells of varying sizes Some may appear elongated or cigar shaped Tissue reaction forms asteroid bodies	Colonies initially smooth, moist, and yeastlike, becoming velvety as aerial hyphae develop (25° C) Tan to brown pasty colonies at 37° C	Thin, branching, septate hyphae Conidia borne in rosette-shaped clusters at the end of the conidiophore (25° C) Variable-sized budding yeasts produced at 37° C	Demonstration of thermal dimorphism; exoantigen and nucleic acid probe
Talaromyces marneffei	Oval intracellular yeast cells with septum	Colonies produce diffusible red pigment at 25° C	Septate hyphae with metulae, phialides with chains of conidia in a "paint brush" distribution (25° C) Yeast cells divide by fission (37° C)	Demonstration of thermal dimorphism Gene sequencing
Pneumocystis jirovecii	Cysts are round, collapsed, or crescent shaped Trophic forms seen on special stains	(Not applicable)	(Not applicable)	Immunofluorescent stain, GMS, Giemsa, toluidine blue stains (see Table 60.2)

EIA, Enzyme immunoassay; *GMS,* Gomori methenamine silver; *H&E,* hematoxylin and eosin; *LFD,* lateral flow device, *PNA-FISH,* peptide nucleic acid–fluorescent in situ hybridization; *MALDI-TOF MS,* matrix-assisted laser desorption–time of flight mass spectrometry.

Immunologic, Molecular, and Biochemical Markers for Direct Detection of Invasive Fungal Infections

Rapid, sensitive, and specific diagnostic tests for serious fungal infections would allow more timely and focused application of specific therapeutic measures. As such, tests for the detection of antibodies and antigens, metabolites, and fungus-specific nucleic acids have great appeal. Considerable progress has been made in several of these areas in recent years (Table 60.4), although with few exceptions, such testing still remains confined to reference laboratories or the research setting.

Determination of antibody (Ab) and/or antigen (Ag) titers in serum may be useful in diagnosing fungal infections. When performed in a serial fashion, Ab/Ag titers also provide a means of monitoring the progression of disease and the patient's response to therapy. With the exception of antibody tests for histoplasmosis and coccidioidomycosis, however, most tests for antibodies lack both sensitivity and specificity for diagnosis of invasive fungal infections.

Detection of fungal cell wall and cytoplasmic antigens and metabolites in serum or other body fluids represents the most direct means of providing a serologic diagnosis of invasive fungal infection (see Table 60.4). The best examples of this approach are the commercially available tests for the detection of polysaccharide antigens of *C. neoformans* and *H. capsulatum*. These tests have proven to be of great value in the rapid diagnosis of cryptococcal meningitis and disseminated histoplasmosis, respectively. Immunoassays for detection of *Aspergillus* galactomannan and *Candida* mannan and anti-mannan are now commercially available.

Another fungal-specific cell wall component is 1,3-β-glucan. This material may be detected in the serum of patients infected with *Candida*, *Aspergillus*, and *P. jirovecii* through its interaction in the limulus lysate assay. Studies of this test for β-glucan, which indicates the presence of fungi but does not identify the genus causing the infection, have been promising in certain highly selected patient populations.

The detection of fungal metabolites has potential for the rapid diagnosis of both candidiasis and aspergillosis (see Table 60.4). The detection of D-arabinitol in serum appears to be an indication of hematogenously disseminated candidiasis, whereas detection of elevated levels of D-mannitol in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid may be useful in the diagnosis of pulmonary aspergillosis. Because of the lack of a commercially available test and problems with method-dependent variability in sensitivity and specificity, the diagnostic utility of metabolite detection remains uncertain.

The application of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to directly detect fungal-specific nucleic acids in clinical material offers great promise for the rapid diagnosis of fungal infections. A variety of target sequences have been investigated and found to be of potential diagnostic value for most of the more common opportunistic and systemic fungal pathogens (see Table 60.4). Recent developments, such as real-time, gene chip technology, and the coupling of nanotechnology with magnetic resonance detection will facilitate the broad use of this technology, although it is not yet available in most mycology laboratories. A recent meta-analysis of PCR in the diagnosis of invasive candidiasis found that the use of whole blood as the test sample, multilocus panfungal targets (e.g., rRNA, P450 gene targets), and an in vitro detection limit no higher than 10 colony-forming units (CFU)/ml, provided optimal sensitivity and specificity.

Table 60.4 Antigenic, Biochemical, and Molecular Markers for Direct Detection of Invasive Fungal Infections

Organism	Cell Wall or Capsule Components	Cytoplasmic Antigens	Metabolites	Genomic DNA Sequences[a]
Candida	Mannans LA RIA EIA 1,3-β-glucans Limulus test Chitin Spectrophotometry	Enolase EIA Immunoblot Antienolase antibody EIA 47-kD breakdown product of HSP-90 Enzyme-linked dot Immunobinding assay	D-Arabinitol Rapid enzymatic/FID Mass spectroscopy/GLC	Actin Chitin synthase P450 ITS Ribosomal RNA genes
Cryptococcus neoformans	Capsular polysaccharide LA EIA LFD	—	D-Mannitol Mass spectroscopy/GLC	Ribosomal RNA genes ITS *URA5* gene
Aspergillus	Galactomannan LA EIA RIA LFD 1,3-β-glucans Limulus test Chitin Spectrophotometry	—	D-Mannitol GLC/FID Mass spectroscopy/GLC	P450 Ribosomal RNA genes ITS Alkaline protease Mitochondrial
Blastomyces dermatitidis	Cell wall RIA for 120-kD cell wall adhesion protein	—	—	Ribosomal RNA genes ITS
Histoplasma capsulatum	Cell wall RIA and EIA for polysaccharide antigen	—	—	Ribosomal RNA genes ITS
Talaromyces marneffei	Cell wall mannoprotein EIA	—	—	ITS
Coccidioides immitis	—	—	—	Ribosomal RNA genes

[a]All sequences detected by polymerase chain reaction.

EIA, Enzyme immunoassay; *FID,* flame ionization detector; *GLC,* gas-liquid chromatography; *HSP-90,* heat shock protein-90; *ITS,* internal transcribed spacer; *LA,* latex agglutination; *LFD,* lateral flow device; *P450,* lanosterol 14-alpha-demethylase gene; *RIA,* radioimmunoassay.

Modified from Mujeeb, I., et al., 2002. Fungi and fungal infections. In: McClatchey, K.D. (Ed.), Clinical Laboratory Medicine, second ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, PA.

There are now several commercially available PCR assays on the market, including Septifast by Roche (Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis, IN), which is able to detect several species of *Candida* and *A. fumigatus;* the MycAssay (Myconostica, Cambridge, UK); and AsperGenius (PathoNostics, Maastricht, the Netherlands) for the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis. Septifast has been evaluated in both neutropenic and nonneutropenic patients, with disappointing results. There were false-positive and false-negative results for both *Candida* and *Aspergillus*; thus the Septifast system has limited sensitivity and specificity and does not look promising for fungal infections. The MycAssay *Aspergillus* also has been evaluated in several studies with a performance similar to that of the galactomannan assay. The MycAssay for *Pneumocystis* also has been reported to have a sensitivity and specificity of 100% in bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) in a recent comparative study. The PathoNostics AsperGenius assay is validated for use with BAL and can be used to diagnose invasive aspergillosis and detect azole resistance in the same sample. One of the most promising assays for candidiasis is the T2Candida test (T2Biosystems, Lexington, MA), which can detect five *Candida* species directly in whole blood, without the need for culture. It has been compared with various automated blood culture systems and against spiked blood samples and patient samples, and had both good sensitivity and specificity, and reduced time to positivity. The T2Candida test has a limit of detection of 1 CFU/ml.

In addition to detection of fungi in clinical material, immunologic, molecular, and proteomic methods also have proven useful in the identification of fungi in culture. Nucleic acid probes are useful in identifying the endemic dimorphic pathogens, and analysis of ribosomal deoxyribonucleic acid sequences is being applied to both common and uncommon opportunistic yeasts and molds. With the expansion of fungal databases, MALDI-TOF MS is rapidly becoming established as a rapid, accurate, and cost-effective approach to the identification of yeasts and molds from culture. Exoantigen immunodiffusion tests are widely applied to identify *H. capsulatum*, *B. dermatitidis*, and *C. immitis*/*posadasii*, obviating the need to demonstrate thermal dimorphism in the identification of these agents (see Table 60.3).

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Avini, T., et al., 2011. PCR diagnosis of invasive candidiasis: systematic review and meta-analysis. J. Clin. Microbiol. 49, 665–670.

Borman, A.M., Johnson, E.M., 2013. Genomics and proteomics as compared to conventional phenotypic approaches for the identification of the agents of invasive fungal infections. Curr. Fungal. Infect. Rep. 7, 235–243.

Clancy, C.J., Nguyen, M.H., 2018. Non-culture diagnostics for invasive candidiasis: promise and unintended consequences. J. Fungi. 4, 27. https://doi.org/10.3390/jof4010027.

Guarner, J., Brandt, M.E., 2011. Histopathologic diagnosis of fungal infections in the 21st century. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 24, 247–280.

Karageorgopoulos, D.E., et al., 2011. β-D-glucan assay for the diagnosis of invasive fungal infections: a meta-analysis. Clin. Infect. Dis. 52, 750–770.

Neely, L.A., et al., 2013. T2 magnetic resonance enables nanoparticle-mediated rapid detection of candidemia in whole blood. Sci. Transl. Med. 5 182ra54.

Pfaller, M.A., 2015. Invasive fungal infections and approaches to their diagnosis. Meth. Microbiol. 42, 219–287.

Questions

1. Why is it important to know which fungus is causing a given infection?
2. The laboratory procedure used to identify yeasts differs from that for molds. How and why?
3. Discuss the different ways the endemic dimorphic pathogens are identified.
4. What are the advantages of direct microscopic examination of clinical material for the diagnosis of fungal infection?

61 Antifungal Agents

Antifungal therapy has undergone a tremendous transformation in recent years. Once the sole domain of the agents amphotericin B and 5-fluorocytosine (flucytosine, 5-FC), which were toxic and difficult to use, the treatment of mycotic disease has now been advanced by the availability of several new, systemically active agents and new formulations of other older agents that provide comparable if not superior efficacy with significantly less toxicity.

In this chapter, we will review the antifungal agents, both systemic and topical (Table 61.1). We will discuss their spectrum, potency, mode of action, and clinical indications for use as therapeutic agents. Furthermore, we will discuss the mechanisms of resistance to the various classes of antifungal agents and the in vitro methods for determining the susceptibility and resistance of fungi to the available agents.

The terminology appropriate for this discussion is summarized in Box 61.1 and Fig. 61.1, respectively.

Systemically Active Antifungal Agents

Amphotericin B and its lipid formulations are polyene macrolide antifungals used in the treatment of serious life-threatening mycoses (see Table 61.1). Another polyene, nystatin, is a topical agent. A lipid formulation of nystatin has been developed for systemic use but remains investigational.

The basic structure of polyenes consists of a large lactone ring, a rigid lipophilic chain containing three to seven double bonds, and a flexible hydrophilic portion bearing several hydroxyl groups (Fig. 61.2). Amphotericin B contains seven conjugated double bonds and may be inactivated by heat, light, and extremes of pH. It is poorly soluble in water and is not absorbed by the oral or intramuscular route of administration. The conventional formulation of amphotericin B for intravenous (IV) administration is amphotericin B deoxycholate. The lipid formulations of amphotericin B were developed in an effort to circumvent the nephrotoxic nature of conventional amphotericin B and in most instances have replaced the deoxycholate form.

Amphotericin B (and its lipid formulations) exerts its antifungal action by at least two different mechanisms. The primary mechanism involves the binding of amphotericin B to ergosterol, the principal membrane sterol of fungi. This binding produces ion channels, which destroy the osmotic integrity of the fungal cell membrane and lead to leakage of intracellular constituents and cell death (Fig. 61.3). Amphotericin B also binds to cholesterol, which is the main membrane sterol of mammalian cells, but it does so less avidly than to ergosterol. The binding of amphotericin B to cholesterol accounts for most of the toxicity observed when amphotericin B is administered to humans. An additional mechanism of action of amphotericin B involves direct membrane damage resulting from the generation of a cascade of oxidative reactions triggered by the oxidation of amphotericin B itself. This process may be a major contributor to the rapid fungicidal activity of amphotericin B via the generation of toxic free radicals.

The spectrum of activity of amphotericin B is broad and includes most strains of *Candida*, *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Aspergillus* spp., the Mucormycetes, and the endemic dimorphic pathogens (*Blastomyces dermatitidis*, *Coccidioides immitis*, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*, and *Talaromyces marneffei*) (see Table 61.2). *Aspergillus terreus*, *Fusarium* spp., *Scedosporium* spp., *Lomentospora prolificans*, *Trichosporon* spp., and certain dematiaceous fungi may be resistant to amphotericin B. Likewise, reduced susceptibility to amphotericin B has been noted among some strains of *C. guilliermondii*, *C. glabrata*, *C. krusei*, *C. lusitaniae*, *C. auris,* and *C. rugosa*. Resistance to amphotericin B has been associated with alterations in membrane sterols (usually a reduction in ergosterol).

Amphotericin B is widely distributed in various tissues and organs, including liver, spleen, kidney, bone marrow, and lung. Although negligible concentrations of amphotericin B can be found in the cerebrospinal fluid, it is generally effective in treating fungal infections of the central nervous system. Amphotericin B is considered to be fungicidal against most fungi.

The primary clinical indications for amphotericin B include invasive candidiasis, cryptococcosis, aspergillosis, mucormycosis, blastomycosis, coccidioidomycosis, histoplasmosis, paracoccidioidomycosis, talaromycosis, and sporotrichosis. The lipid formulations of amphotericin B offer an improved efficacy-to-toxicity profile and are primarily recommended for the treatment of documented fungal infections in individuals failing conventional amphotericin B or with impaired renal function.

The main adverse effects of amphotericin B include nephrotoxicity, as well as infusion-related side effects, such as fever, chills, myalgias, hypotension, and bronchospasm. The major advantage of the lipid formulations of amphotericin B are the significantly reduced side effects, especially nephrotoxicity. The lipid formulations are not superior to conventional amphotericin B in terms of efficacy and are much more expensive.

AZOLES

The azole class of antifungals may be divided in terms of structure into the imidazoles (two nitrogens in the azole ring) and the triazoles (three nitrogens in the azole ring) (see Fig. 61.2). Among the imidazoles, only ketoconazole has systemic activity. The triazoles all have systemic activity and include fluconazole, itraconazole, voriconazole, posaconazole, and isavuconazole (see Table 61.1).

Both imidazoles and triazoles act by inhibiting the fungal cytochrome P450-dependent enzyme lanosterol 14-α-demethylase (Fig. 61.4). This enzyme is involved in the conversion of lanosterol to ergosterol, and its inhibition

TABLE 61.1 Systemic and Topical Antifungal Agents in Use and in Development

Antifungal Agents	Route	Mechanism of Action	Comments
ALLYLAMINES			
Naftifine Terbinafine	Topical Oral, topical	Inhibition of squalene epoxidase	Terbinafine has very broad spectrum and acts synergistically with other antifungals
ANTIMETABOLITE			
Flucytosine	Oral	Inhibition of DNA and RNA synthesis	Used in combination with amphotericin B and fluconazole; toxicity and secondary resistance are problems
IMIDAZOLES			
Ketoconazole, bifonazole, clotrimazole, econazole, miconazole, oxiconazole, sulconazole, terconazole, tioconazole	Oral, topical	Inhibits lanosterol 14-α-Demethylase cytochrome P450-dependent enzymes	Ketoconazole has modest broad-spectrum activity and toxicity problems
TRIAZOLES			
Fluconazole	Oral, IV	Same as imidazoles but more specific binding to target	Limited spectrum (yeasts); good central nervous system penetration; good in vivo activity; primary and secondary resistance seen with *Candida krusei, C. auris,* and *C. glabrata*, respectively
Itraconazole	Oral	Same as imidazoles but more specific binding to target enzyme	Broad-spectrum activity; erratic absorption; toxicity and drug interactions are problems
Voriconazole	Oral, IV	Same as imidazoles but more specific binding to target enzyme	Broad spectrum, including yeasts and molds; active versus *Candida krusei*; many drug interactions Agent of first choice for invasive aspergillosis
Posaconazole	Oral, IV	Same as imidazoles but more specific binding to target enzyme	Broad spectrum including activity versus Mucormycetes
Isavuconazole	Oral, IV	Same as imidazoles but more specific binding to target enzyme	Broad spectrum, including yeasts and molds; approved for treatment of invasive aspergillosis and invasive mucormycosis
ECHINOCANDINS			
Caspofungin, anidulafungin, micafungin	IV	Inhibition of fungal cell wall glucan synthesis	Caspofungin is approved for treatment of invasive candidiasis and aspergillosis; anidulafungin is approved for treatment of invasive candidiasis; micafungin is approved for treatment of invasive candidiasis; fungicidal activity against *Candida*
POLYENES			
Amphotericin B	IV, topical	Binds to ergosterol, causing direct oxidative membrane damage	Established agent; broad spectrum; toxic
Lipid formulations (amphotericin B lipid complex or colloidal dispersion, liposomal amphotericin B)	IV	Same as amphotericin B	Broad spectrum; less toxic, expensive
Nystatin	Oral suspension, topical	Same as amphotericin B	Liposomal formulation (IV) under investigation
OTHER			
Nikkomycin Z	IV	Inhibition of fungal cell wall chitin synthesis	Investigational agent: possibly useful in combination with other antifungals
APX001A/APX001	Oral	Inhibition of GPI synthesis	Investigational agent; broad-spectrum activity, including *Candida* spp. and *Aspergillus* spp., as well as other molds that are difficult to treat such as *Mucorales*, *Fusarium solani*, and *Lomentospora prolificans*
VT-1598, VT-1129, and VT-1161	Oral	Inhibitors of fungal-specific 14α-lanosterol demethylase (CYP51A)	Investigational agents: broad-spectrum activity against *Candida* spp., *Coccidioides immitis,* and *C. posadasii*, and *Trichophyton* spp. (VT-1161); in vitro activity against *Candida* spp. including *C. auris*, *Cryptococcus* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Rhizopus oryzae*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, *Coccidioides* spp., and *Histoplasma capsulatum* (VT-1598); active against many species of *Cryptococcus*, including *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* (VT-1129)

Continued

TABLE 61.1 Systemic and Topical Antifungal Agents in Use and in Development—cont'd

Antifungal Agents	Route	Mechanism of Action	Comments
CD101	IV and topical	Same as other echinocandins	Investigational agent: active against echinocandin-susceptible and-resistant *Candida* spp. including *C. auris*, as well as *Aspergillus* spp.
SCY-078	Oral	Structurally distinct triterpene class of β-1,3-D-glucan synthase inhibitor	
F901318 (F2G Ltd.)	IV and tral	Inhibitor of dihydroorotate dehydrogenase activity	Investigational agent: in vitro and in vivo activity against the most common *Candida* species and against *C. auris*, *Aspergillus* spp., *Paecilomyces variotii*, and *L. prolificans*
Amorolfine	Topical	Miscellaneous, varied	
Butenafine HC	Topical		
Ciclopirox olamine	Topical		Investigational agent: potent activity against a broad range of filamentous and dimorphic fungi, including *Aspergillus* spp., *H. capsulatum*, *B. dermatitidis*, *C. immitis*, *Fusarium* spp., *T. marneffei*, and *L. prolificans*
Griseofulvin	Oral		
Haloprogin	Topical		
Tolnaftate	Topical		
Undecylenate	Topical		

GPI, Glycosylphosphatidylinositol; *IV,* intravenous.

BOX 61.1 Terminology

Antifungal spectrum: This is the range of activity of an antifungal agent against fungi. A broad-spectrum antifungal agent inhibits a wide variety of fungi, including both yeastlike fungi and molds, whereas a narrow-spectrum agent is active only against a limited number of fungi.

Fungistatic activity: This is the level of antifungal activity that **inhibits** the growth of an organism. This is determined in vitro by testing a standardized concentration of organisms against a series of antifungal dilutions. The lowest concentration of the drug that inhibits the growth of the organism is referred to as the **MIC.**

Fungicidal activity: This is the ability of an antifungal agent to **kill** an organism in vitro or in vivo. The lowest concentration of the drug that kills 99.9% of the test population is called the **MFC.**

Antifungal combinations: These combinations of antifungal agents may be used (1) to enhance efficacy in the treatment of a refractory fungal infection, (2) to broaden the spectrum of empiric antifungal therapy, (3) to prevent the emergence of resistant organisms, and (4) to achieve a synergistic killing effect.

Antifungal synergism: These are combinations of antifungal agents that have enhanced antifungal activity when used together compared with the activity of each agent alone.

Antifungal antagonism: This is a combination of antifungal agents in which the activity of one of the agents interferes with the activity of the other agent.

Efflux pumps: These are families of drug transporters that serve to actively pump antifungal agents out of the fungal cells, decreasing the amount of intracellular drug available to bind to its target.

MFC, Minimum fungicidal concentration; *MIC,* minimum inhibitory concentration.

disrupts membrane synthesis in the fungal cell. Depending on the organism and specific azole, inhibition of ergosterol synthesis results in inhibition of fungal cell growth (fungistatic) or cell death (fungicidal). In general, the azoles exhibit fungistatic activity against yeastlike fungi, such as *Candida* spp. and *C. neoformans*; however, itraconazole, voriconazole, posaconazole, and isavuconazole appear to be fungicidal against *Aspergillus* spp.

Ketoconazole is an orally absorbed, lipophilic member of the imidazole class of antifungal agents. Its spectrum of activity includes the endemic dimorphic pathogens, *Candida* spp., *C. neoformans*, and *Malassezia* spp., although it is generally less active than the triazole antifungal agents (Table 61.2). It is variably active against *Scedosporium* spp. and has little or no useful clinical activity against the Mucormycetes, *Aspergillus* spp., *L. prolificans*, or *Fusarium* spp.

The absorption of ketoconazole by the oral route of administration is erratic and requires an acid gastric pH. Its lipophilicity ensures penetration and concentration into fatty tissues and purulent exudates; however, because it is highly (>99%) protein bound, it penetrates poorly into the central nervous system.

Ketoconazole may cause serious adverse effects, including gastric and hepatic toxicity, nausea, vomiting, and rash. At high doses, significant endocrine side effects have been observed secondary to suppression of testosterone and cortisol levels.

Because of the availability of more potent and less toxic agents, the clinical indications for use of ketoconazole are quite limited. It is at best a second-line agent for the treatment of non–life-threatening, nonmeningeal forms of histoplasmosis, blastomycosis, coccidioidomycosis, and paracoccidioidomycosis in immunocompetent individuals. Similarly, it may be used in the treatment of mucocutaneous candidiasis and lymphocutaneous sporotrichosis.

Fluconazole is a first-generation triazole with excellent oral bioavailability and low toxicity. Fluconazole is used extensively and is active against most species of *Candida*, *C. neoformans*, dermatophytes, *Trichosporon* spp., *H. capsulatum*, *C. immitis*, and *P. brasiliensis* (see Table 61.2). Among *Candida* spp., decreased susceptibility is seen with *C. auris*, *C. krusei*, *C. glabrata, C. guilliermondii,* and *C. rugosa*. Whereas *C. krusei* and *C. auris* must be considered intrinsically resistant to fluconazole, infections with *C. glabrata* may be treated successfully with high doses (e.g., 800 mg/day) of fluconazole. Resistance may develop when fluconazole is used to treat histoplasmosis, and it only has limited activity against *B. dermatitidis*. Fluconazole is not active against the opportunistic molds, including *Aspergillus* spp., *Fusarium* spp., and the Mucormycetes.

Fluconazole is a water-soluble agent and may be administered orally or intravenously. Protein binding is low, and the drug is distributed to all organs and tissues, including the central nervous system. Severe side effects such as exfoliative dermatitis or liver failure are uncommon.

Because of its low toxicity, ease of administration, and fungistatic activity against most yeastlike fungi, fluconazole has an important role in the treatment of candidiasis, cryptococcosis, and coccidioidomycosis. It is used as

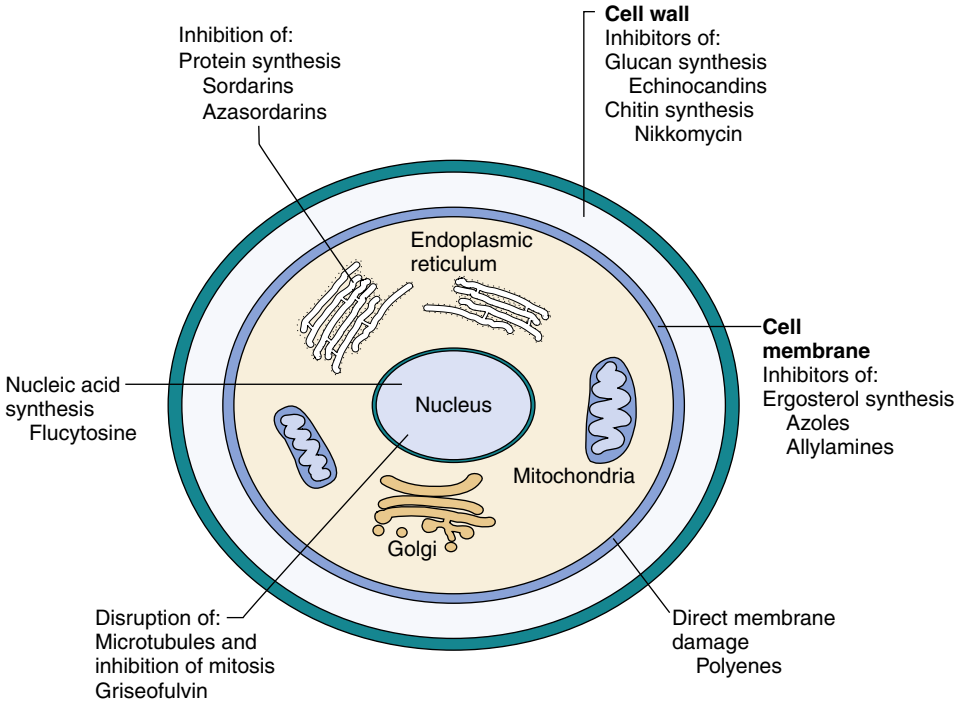


Fig. 61.1 Sites of action of antifungals.

primary therapy for candidemia and mucosal candidiasis and as prophylaxis in selected high-risk populations. It is used in maintenance therapy of cryptococcal meningitis in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and is the agent of choice in the treatment of meningitis caused by *C. immitis*. Fluconazole is a second-line agent in the treatment of histoplasmosis, blastomycosis, and sporotrichosis.

Itraconazole is a lipophilic triazole that may be administered orally in capsule or in solution. Itraconazole has a broad spectrum of antifungal activity, including against *Candida* spp., *C. neoformans*, *Aspergillus* spp., dermatophytes, dematiaceous molds, *Scedosporium* spp., *Sporothrix schenckii*, and the endemic dimorphic pathogens (see Table 61.2). Itraconazole has activity against some, but not all, fluconazole-resistant strains of *C. glabrata* and *C. krusei*. Itraconazole-resistant strains of *A. fumigatus* have been increasingly reported in some, but not all, regions of the world. The Mucormycetes, *Fusarium*, and *L. prolificans* are resistant to itraconazole.

As with ketoconazole, the oral absorption of itraconazole is erratic and requires an acid gastric pH. Absorption is enhanced with the oral solution when given in the fasting state. Itraconazole is highly protein bound and exhibits fungistatic activity against yeastlike fungi and fungicidal activity against *Aspergillus* spp.

The efficacy of itraconazole in the treatment of hematogenous candidiasis has not been adequately assessed, although it is useful in the treatment of cutaneous and mucosal forms of candidiasis. Itraconazole is often used in the treatment of dermatophytic infections and is the treatment of choice for lymphocutaneous sporotrichosis and non–life-threatening, nonmeningeal forms of histoplasmosis, blastomycosis, and paracoccidioidomycosis. It may be useful in nonmeningeal coccidioidomycosis, for maintenance treatment of cryptococcal meningitis, and for some forms of phaeohyphomycosis (see Table 61.2). Itraconazole is considered a second-line agent for the treatment of invasive aspergillosis; however, it is not useful in the treatment of infections caused by *Fusarium* spp., the Mucormycetes, or *L. prolificans*.

In contrast to fluconazole, drug interactions are common with itraconazole. Severe hepatotoxicity is rare, and other side effects, such as gastrointestinal intolerance, hypokalemia, edema, rash, and elevated transaminases, occur infrequently.

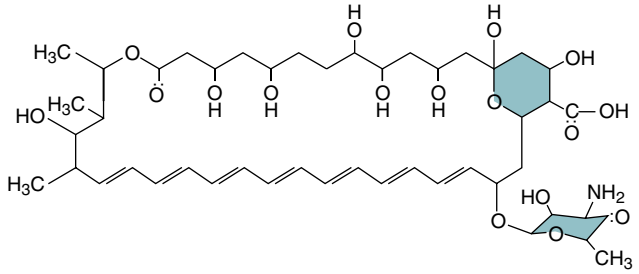
Voriconazole is a broad-spectrum triazole with activity against *Candida* spp., *C. neoformans*, *Trichosporon* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Fusarium* spp., dematiaceous fungi, and the endemic dimorphic pathogens (see Table 61.2). Among the *Candida* species, voriconazole is active against *C. krusei* and some but not all strains of *C. albicans* and *C. glabrata* with reduced susceptibility to fluconazole. Although voriconazole has no activity against the Mucormycetes, it is active against fungi that are resistant to amphotericin B, including *A. terreus* and *Scedosporium* spp.

Voriconazole is available in both oral and IV formulations. It has excellent penetration into the central nervous system and other tissues. Voriconazole exhibits fungistatic activity against yeastlike fungi and is fungicidal against *Aspergillus* spp.

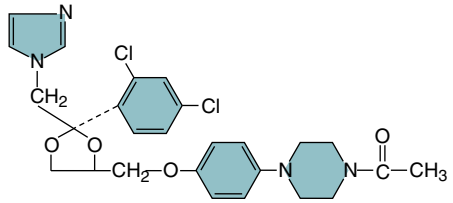
Voriconazole has a primary indication for the treatment of invasive aspergillosis. It is also approved for treatment of infections caused by *Scedosporium* spp. and *Fusarium* spp. in patients intolerant of, or with infections refractory to, other antifungal agents. Voriconazole has proven efficacy in the treatment of various forms of candidiasis and has been used successfully in the treatment of a variety of infections caused by emerging or refractory pathogens, including brain abscesses caused by *Aspergillus* spp. and *Scedosporium* spp.

Voriconazole is generally well tolerated, although approximately one-third of patients experience transient

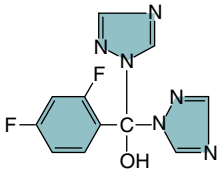
Amphotericin B (polyene)



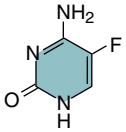
Ketoconazole (imidazole)



Fluconazole (triazole)



5-Fluorocystine (nucleotide)



Caspofungin (echinocandin)

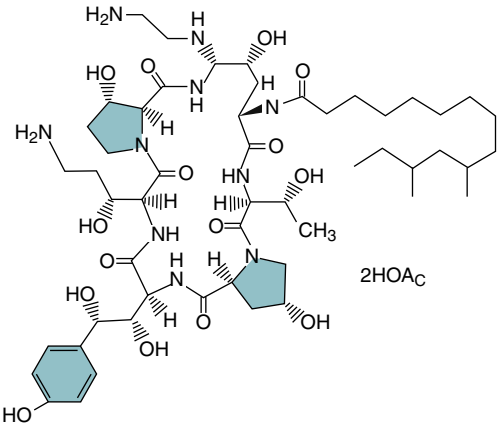


Fig. 61.2 Chemical structures of antifungals representing five different classes.

visual disturbances. Other adverse effects include liver enzyme abnormalities, skin reactions, and hallucinations or confusion. Interactions with other drugs that are metabolized by the hepatic P450 enzyme system are common.

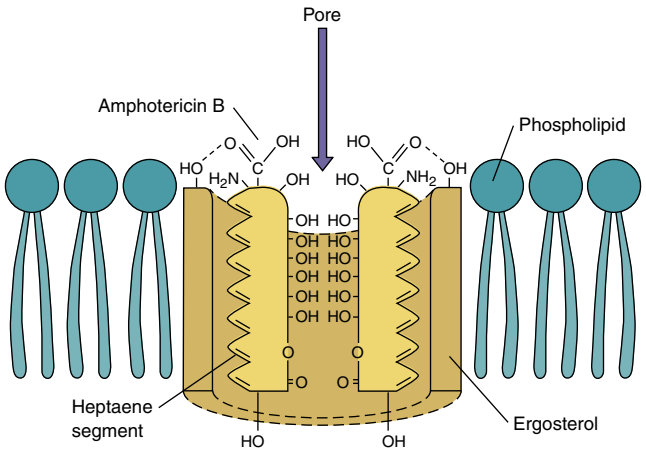


Fig. 61.3 Mechanisms of action of amphotericin B.

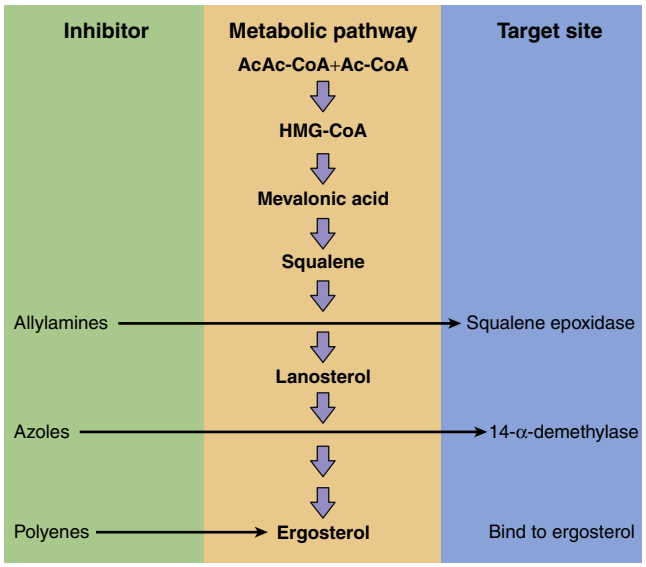


Fig. 61.4 Metabolic pathway for the synthesis of ergosterol, showing sites of inhibition by allylamine, azole, and polyene antifungal agents. *Ac-CoA,* Acetyl-coenzyme A; *HMG-CoA,* hydroxymethyl glutaryl-coenzyme A.

Posaconazole is a triazole derivative with a chemical structure similar to itraconazole. Posaconazole demonstrates potent activity against *Candida*, *Cryptococcus*, dimorphic fungi, and filamentous fungi, including *Aspergillus* and the Mucormycetes.

Posaconazole is available as an oral suspension, IV formulation, and a tablet. In contrast to voriconazole, posaconazole absorption is enhanced with food intake and is greatest with a concomitant fatty meal. There is a relatively wide patient-to-patient variability in peak serum concentrations, suggesting that posaconazole therapeutic drug monitoring may be important in optimizing the use of this agent. Similar to voriconazole, posaconazole exhibits fungistatic activity against yeastlike fungi and is fungicidal against *Aspergillus* spp.

Posaconazole has U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval for prophylaxis of invasive fungal infection in hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) recipients with graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) and patients with hematologic malignancies and prolonged neutropenia. It is also

approved by the FDA for treatment of oropharyngeal candidiasis. In Europe, posaconazole is additionally approved for the following fungal infections refractory to amphotericin B and/or itraconazole: aspergillosis, fusariosis, chromoblastomycosis, mycetoma, and coccidioidomycosis.

Posaconazole is generally well tolerated. The most common adverse events are mild and include gastrointestinal complaints, rash, facial flushing, dry mouth, and headache. As with other azoles, hepatic toxicity has been described, and monitoring of liver function tests is recommended before and during treatment with posaconazole. Interactions with other drugs that are metabolized by the hepatic P450 enzyme system are common.

Isavuconazole is a water-soluble triazole antifungal agent that can be administered orally or intravenously. Isavuconazole has predictable and dose-proportional pharmacokinetics and has completed clinical trials for the treatment of candidemia and invasive candidiasis, treatment of invasive aspergillosis, and treatment of rare mold infections. Isavuconazole has shown good in vitro activity against *Candida* and other yeast species and *Aspergillus* spp. other than *A. niger* and has been cleared by the FDA for the treatment of invasive aspergillosis and invasive mucormycosis.

ECHINOCANDINS

The echinocandins are a novel, highly selective, class of semisynthetic lipopeptides (see Fig. 61.2) that inhibit the synthesis of 1,3-β-glucans, which are important constituents of the fungal cell wall (Fig. 61.5; see Table 61.1 and Fig. 61.1). Because mammalian cells do not contain 1,3-β-glucans, this class of agents is selective in its toxicity for fungi in which the glucans play an important role in maintaining the osmotic integrity of the fungal cell. Glucans are also important in cell division and cell growth. Inhibition of the glucan synthesis enzyme complex results in fungicidal activity against *Candida* spp. and fungistatic activity against *Aspergillus* spp. At the present time, there are three echinocandins (anidulafungin, caspofungin, and micafungin) approved for use in treatment or prevention of various mycoses (see Table 61.1).

The spectrum of activity of the echinocandins is limited to those fungi in which 1,3-β-glucans constitute the dominant cell wall glucan component. As such, they are active against *Candida* and *Aspergillus* spp. and have variable activity against the dematiaceous fungi and the endemic dimorphic pathogens (see Table 61.2). They are inactive against *C. neoformans*, *Trichosporon* spp., *Fusarium* spp. and other hyaline molds, and the Mucormycetes. The echinocandins have excellent activity against fluconazole-resistant strains of *Candida* spp., although strains of *C. glabrata* with coresistance to both azoles and echinocandins have been described in the United States. Primary or acquired resistance to this class of agents appears to be uncommon among clinical isolates of *Candida* spp. and *Aspergillus* spp.

The echinocandins must be administered intravenously and are highly (>95%) protein bound. They are distributed to all major organs, although concentrations in cerebrospinal fluid are low. All of the echinocandins are very well tolerated and have few drug–drug interactions.

TABLE 61.2 Spectrum and Relative Activity of Systemically Active Antifungal Agents

Organism	AMB	FC	ISA	ITZ	FCZ	VCZ	ECH
Candida spp.							
C. albicans	++++	++++	++++	++++	++++	++++	++++
C. glabrata	+++	++++	+++	++	++	+++	++++
C. parapsilosis	++++	++++	++++	++++	++++	++++	+++
C. tropicalis	+++	++++	++++	+++	++++	++++	++++
C. krusei	++	+	++++	++	0	++++	++++
Cryptococcus neoformans/gattii	++++	+++	++++	++	+++	++++	0
Aspergillus spp.	++++	0	++++	++++	0	++++	+++
Fusarium spp.	+++	0	++	+	0	+++	0
Mucormycetes	++++	0	++	0	0	0	+
ENDEMIC DIMORPHIC							
Blastomyces dermatitidis	++++	0	++++	++++	+	++++	++
Coccidioides immitis	++++	0	++++	++++	++++	++++	++
Histoplasma capsulatum	++++	0	++++	++++	++	++++	++
Talaromyces marneffei	++++	0		++++	++	++++	
Sporothrix schenckii	++++	0		++++	++		
Dematiaceous molds	++++	+	++++	++++	+	++++	0

0, Inactive or not recommended; +, occasional activity; ++, moderate activity with resistance noted; +++, reliable activity with occasional resistance; ++++, very active, resistance rare or not described; *AMB,* Amphotericin B; *ECH,* echinocandins (anidulafungin, caspofungin, and micafungin); *FC,* flucytosine; *FCZ,* fluconazole; *ISA*, isavuconazole; *ITZ,* itraconazole; *VCZ,* voriconazole.

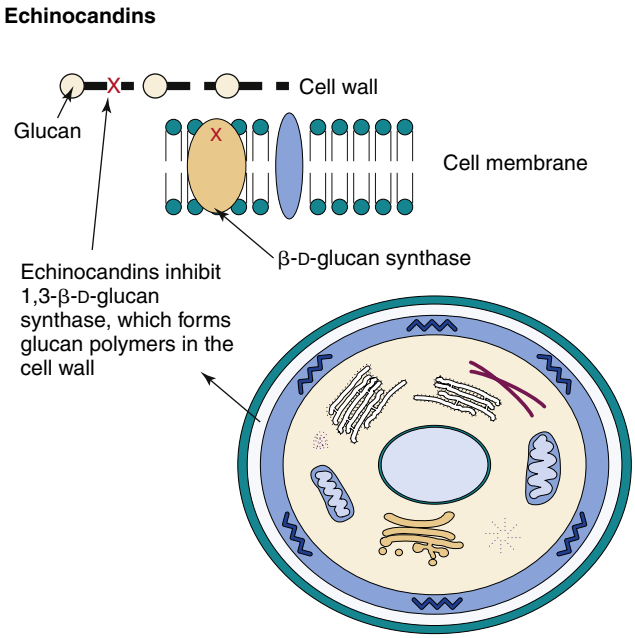


Fig. 61.5 Mechanism of action of the echinocandins.

Among the three echinocandins approved by the FDA, all have similar spectrum and potency against *Candida* and *Aspergillus* species. Caspofungin is approved for the treatment of invasive candidiasis, including candidemia, and for treatment of patients with invasive aspergillosis refractory to or intolerant of other approved antifungal therapies. Anidulafungin is approved for the treatment of esophageal candidiasis and candidemia, and micafungin is approved for treatment of esophageal candidiasis and candidemia, and for prevention of invasive candidiasis.

ANTIMETABOLITES

Flucytosine is the only available antifungal agent that functions as an antimetabolite. It is a fluorinated pyrimidine analog that exerts antifungal activity by interfering with the synthesis of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), ribonucleic acid (RNA), and proteins in the fungal cell (see Fig. 61.1). Flucytosine enters the fungal cell via cytosine permease and is deaminated to 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) in the cytoplasm. The 5-FU is converted to 5-fluorouridylic acid, which then competes with uracil in the synthesis of RNA, with resultant RNA miscoding and inhibition of DNA and protein synthesis.

The antifungal spectrum of flucytosine is limited to *Candida* spp., *C. neoformans*, *Rhodotorula* spp., *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, and selected dematiaceous molds (see Table 61.2). Although primary resistance to flucytosine is rare among isolates of *Candida* spp., resistance may develop among *Candida* and *C. neoformans* during flucytosine monotherapy. Flucytosine is not active against *Aspergillus* spp., the Mucormycetes, or other hyaline molds.

Flucytosine is water soluble and has excellent bioavailability when administered orally. High concentrations of flucytosine may be achieved in serum, cerebrospinal fluid, and other body fluids. Major toxicities are observed when flucytosine serum concentrations exceed 100 μg/ml and include bone marrow suppression, hepatotoxicity, and gastrointestinal intolerance. Monitoring of serum concentrations of flucytosine is important in avoiding toxicity.

Flucytosine is not used as monotherapy because of the propensity for secondary resistance. Combinations of flucytosine with either amphotericin B or fluconazole have been shown to be efficacious in treating both cryptococcosis and candidiasis.

ALLYLAMINES

The allylamine class of antifungal agents includes terbinafine, which has systemic activity, and naftifine, which is a topical agent (see Table 61.1). These agents inhibit the enzyme squalene epoxidase, which results in a decrease in ergosterol and an increase in squalene within the fungal cell membrane (see Figs. 61.1 and 61.4).

Terbinafine is a lipophilic antifungal agent with a broad spectrum of activity that includes dermatophytes, *Candida* spp., *Malassezia furfur*, *C. neoformans*, *Trichosporon* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *S. schenckii*, and *T. marneffei* (see Table 61.2). It is available in oral and topical formulations and achieves high concentrations in fatty tissues, skin, hair, and nails.

Terbinafine is efficacious in the treatment of virtually all forms of dermatomycoses, including onychomycosis, and exhibits few side effects. It has shown clinical effectiveness in the treatment of sporotrichosis, aspergillosis, and chromoblastomycosis and has shown promise for the treatment of infections caused by fluconazole-resistant *Candida* spp. when used in combination with fluconazole.

GRISEOFULVIN

Griseofulvin is an oral agent used in the treatment of infections caused by dermatophytes. It is thought to inhibit fungal growth by interaction with microtubules within the fungal cell, resulting in inhibition of mitosis (see Table 61.1 and Fig. 61.1).

Griseofulvin is considered a second-line agent in the treatment of dermatophytoses. Newer agents, such as itraconazole and terbinafine, are more rapid acting and provide greater efficacy. Griseofulvin is also associated with a number of mild side effects, including nausea, diarrhea, headache, hepatotoxicity, rash, and neurologic side effects.

Topical Antifungal Agents

A wide variety of topical antifungal preparations is available for the treatment of superficial cutaneous and mucosal fungal infections (see Table 61.1). Topical preparations are available for most classes of antifungal agents, including polyenes (amphotericin B, nystatin, pimaricin), allylamines (naftifine and terbinafine), and numerous imidazoles and miscellaneous agents (see Table 61.1). Creams, lotions, ointments, powders, and sprays are available for use in the treatment of cutaneous infections and onychomycosis, whereas mucosal infections are best treated with suspensions, tablets, troches, or suppositories.

Whether one uses topical or systemic therapy for treatment of cutaneous or mucosal fungal infections usually depends on the status of the host and the type and extent of infection. Whereas most cutaneous dermatophytic

infections and oral or vaginal candidiasis will respond to topical therapy, the refractory nature of infections, such as onychomycosis or tinea capitis ("ringworm" of the scalp), usually calls for long-term systemic therapy.

Investigational Antifungal Agents

At the present time, there are several antifungal agents in various stages of clinical evaluation. These investigational agents include some with established modes of action and some novel classes of antifungal agents, such as a liposomal formulation of nystatin, novel inhibitors of fungal CYP51A (VT-1129, VT-1598, and VT-1161), echinocandins (rezafungin), nonechinocandin glucan synthase inhibitors (SCY-078), an inhibitor of chitin synthesis (nikkomycin Z), an orotomide pyrimidine synthesis inhibitor (F901318), and an inhibitor of fungal glucophosphatidylinositol (GPI) anchor biosynthesis (APX001/APX001A) (see Table 61.1). The mechanisms of action and spectra of activity of liposomal nystatin and the echinocandin rezafungin are essentially the same as that of the currently available members of each class (see Tables 61.1 and 61.2). To a varying degree, the newer agents in each class offer the potential for more favorable pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic proprieties, decreased toxicities or drug–drug interactions, or possible improved activity against certain pathogens that are refractory to presently available agents.

VT-1598, VT-1129, and VT-1161 were developed as fungal-specific 14α-lanosterol demethylase (CYP51A) inhibitors that selectively target fungal enzyme over human enzyme and result in fewer drug–drug interactions. VT-1161 shows potent in vitro and in vivo activity against *Candida* spp., *C. immitis,* and *C. posadasii*, and *Trichophyton* spp., but it is not active against *Aspergillus* spp. as monotherapy. VT-1598 displays an even broader antifungal range; it shows in vitro activity against *Candida* spp. including *C. auris*, *Cryptococcus* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Rhizopus oryzae*, *B. dermatitidis*, *Coccidioides* spp., and *H. capsulatum.* VT-1129 inhibits the growth of many species of *Cryptococcus*, including *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii.* VT-1129 has been granted Qualified Infectious Disease Product (QIDP) designation and is in phase 1 clinical trials for the treatment of cryptococcal meningitis. VT-1598 is in preclinical development for treatment of coccidioidomycosis, and VT-1161 is in phase 2b clinical trials for the treatment of onychomycosis and recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis.

CD101, was developed to overcome daily IV administration of an echinocandin while preserving the benefits of low toxicity and fungal-specific activity associated with this drug class. Adjustments to the echinocandin backbone chemical structure lowered the clearance of rezafungin and afforded a longer compound half-life of about threefold longer than that of anidulafungin. Therefore once-weekly IV administration provides appropriate systemic levels of rezafungin for treatment of invasive fungal infections. This compound exhibits activity against echinocandin-resistant *Candida* spp. including *C. auris*, as well as *Aspergillus* spp., and it is currently in phase 2 clinical trials for the treatment of candidemia.

SCY-078 is a structurally distinct triterpene class of β-1,3-D-glucan synthase inhibitor that that has been developed to treat invasive fungal infections in both oral and IV formulations. Unlike current echinocandins, it is orally bioavailable and the activity is not compromised by the most common mutations within the protein target Fks. SCY-078 shows both in vitro and in vivo activity against the most common *Candida* species an against *C. auris, Aspergillus* spp., *Paecilomyces variotii*, and *L. prolificans.* SCY-078 is currently in phase 2 clinical trials in its oral formulation for the treatment of invasive candidiasis. The IV formulation is in phase 1 clinical development.

F901318 is in a new class of orotomide antifungal agents that inhibit an enzyme involved in pyrimidine biosynthesis called dihydroorotate dehydrogenase. It has been developed in both oral and IV formulations for the treatment of systemic mold infections. It shows potent activity against a broad range of filamentous and dimorphic fungi, including *Aspergillus* spp., *H. capsulatum*, *B. dermatitidis*, *C. immitis*, *Fusarium* spp., *T. marneffei*, and *L. prolificans*. Notably, it is active against azole-resistant and amphotericin B–resistant strains of *Aspergillus* spp. F901318 shows little to no activity against *Candida* ssp. or the *Mucorales*. F901318 is currently in phase 1 clinical trials assessing the safety of the IV formulation.

APX001A/APX001 is a small-molecule inhibitor of fungal GPI biosynthesis that exhibits potent broad-spectrum antifungal activity against *Candida* spp. and *Aspergillus* spp., as well as other molds that are difficult to treat such as *Mucorales*, *Fusarium solani*, and *L. prolificans*. The prodrug APX001, may be administered orally and is converted to the active form APX001A in vivo. APX001A is active against fungal isolates that are azole-resistant and/or echinocandin-resistant, including the emerging pathogen *C. auris.* Phase 1 studies have been completed, and phase 2 trials for the treatment of invasive candidiasis and invasive aspergillosis are now underway.

Combinations of Antifungal Agents in the Treatment of Mycoses

The high mortality of opportunistic fungal infections has spurred the development of new antifungal agents, including some with novel mechanisms of action (see Table 61.1). In addition to aggressive use of new antifungal agents, such as voriconazole and caspofungin, as monotherapy, the use of azole-, echinocandin-, and polyene-based combinations for treatment of the more difficult to treat mycoses, such as opportunistic mold infections, is the focus of intense interest and discussion. The rationale behind combination therapy is that by using combinations of antifungal agents, one may achieve a better clinical outcome than with monotherapy. The push toward the use of combination antifungal therapy is especially strong for those infections such as invasive aspergillosis, in which the associated mortality is unacceptably high.

In considering combination therapy, one seeks to achieve **synergy** and avoid **antagonism. Synergy** is achieved when the outcome obtained with the combination of agents is significantly better than that obtained

with either drug alone. Conversely, **antagonism** is when the combination is less active or efficacious than either drug alone. In the case of antifungal therapy, there are several mechanisms that one may consider in developing an effective combination treatment strategy. (1) Different stages of the same biochemical pathway can be inhibited. This is a classic approach for achieving synergy with antiinfective agents. An example of this approach to antifungal therapy would be the combination of terbinafine with an azole, in which both agents attack the sterol pathway at different points (see Fig. 61.4), resulting in inhibition of ergosterol synthesis and disruption of the fungal cell membrane. (2) Increased penetration of one agent into the cell by virtue of the permeabilizing action of another agent on the fungal cell wall or cell membrane can be achieved. The combination of amphotericin B (cell membrane disruption) and flucytosine (inhibition of nucleic acid synthesis intracellularly) is a classic example of this interaction. (3) Inhibition of the transport of one agent out of the cell by another agent can be achieved. Many fungi use energy-dependent efflux pumps to actively pump antifungal agents out of the cell, avoiding the toxic effects of the antifungal. Inhibition of these pumps by agents such as reserpine has been shown to enhance the activity of the azole antifungal agents against *Candida* spp. (4) Simultaneous inhibition of different fungal cell targets can be achieved. Inhibition of fungal cell wall synthesis by an agent such as caspofungin, coupled with disruption of cell membrane function by amphotericin B or azoles, is an example of this type of combination.

Although the potential value of combination antifungal therapy is appealing, there are several possible downsides to this strategy that must be considered. Antagonism among antifungal agents when used in combination also is a distinct possibility and may occur via several different mechanisms. (1) The action of one agent results in a decrease in the target of another agent. The action of azole antifungal agents depletes the cell membrane of ergosterol, which is the primary target for amphotericin B. (2) The action of one antifungal agent results in the modification of the target of another agent. The inhibition of ergosterol synthesis by azole antifungal agents results in the accumulation of methylated sterols, to which amphotericin B binds less well. (3) Blocking of the target site of one agent by another may occur. Lipophilic agents, such as itraconazole, may adsorb to the fungal cell surface and inhibit the binding of amphotericin B to membrane sterols.

Despite these possible positive and negative scenarios, the data supporting the achievement of synergy when various combinations are used clinically are limited. Likewise, antagonism may be demonstrated in the laboratory, but significant antagonism has not been observed clinically with antifungal combinations. By considering all of the laboratory and clinical data for antifungal combination therapy, one arrives at a very limited number of instances in which combination therapy has been shown to be beneficial in the treatment of invasive mycoses (Table 61.3).

The strongest data exist for the treatment of cryptococcosis, in which the combination of amphotericin B and flucytosine has been shown to be beneficial in the treatment of cryptococcal meningitis. These data are less strong for the combination of flucytosine with fluconazole or amphotericin B with triazoles; however, these combinations appear to be beneficial in treating cryptococcosis as well.

Candidiasis is generally treated adequately with a single antifungal agent, such as amphotericin B, an echinocandin, or fluconazole; however, combination therapy may be useful in selected situations. The combination of amphotericin B and fluconazole has proven benefits in treating candidemia; likewise, the combination of terbinafine plus an azole is promising in the treatment of refractory oropharyngeal candidiasis. Flucytosine in combination with either amphotericin B or triazoles has positive effects on survival and tissue burden of infection in animal models of candidiasis. Currently, combination therapy of candidiasis should be reserved for specific individual settings such as meningitis, endocarditis, hepatosplenic infection, and candidiasis that are recurrent or refractory to single-agent therapy.

Although the clinical setting of invasive aspergillosis is where combination therapy is most attractive, the data to support its use are lacking. At the present time, there are no clinical trials published that evaluate the use of combination therapy in the treatment of invasive aspergillosis. Studies in vitro and in animals have produced variable results. Combinations of echinocandins with azoles or amphotericin B have yielded positive results; likewise, amphotericin B plus rifampin appears synergistic. Studies with flucytosine or rifampin plus amphotericin B or azoles have been inconsistent. Despite the desperate need for better treatment options for invasive aspergillosis, there is little evidence that combination therapy will improve clinical outcome. Combination therapy should be used with caution until more clinical data are available.

TABLE 61.3 Summary of Potentially Useful Antifungal Combinations for Treatment of Common Mycoses

Infection	Antifungal Combination	Comments
Candidiasis	AMB + FCZ	Good clinical success in humans with candidemia
	AMB + FC	Clinical success in humans with peritonitis
Cryptococcosis	AMB + FC	Good clinical success in humans with cryptococcal meningitis
	AMB + FCZ	Clinical success in humans with cryptococcal meningitis
	FC + FCZ	Clinical success in humans with cryptococcal meningitis
Aspergillosis	AMB + FC	In vivo benefit (animal model); minimal human data
	AMB + azoles	No benefit in animals
	AMB + echinocandins	In vivo benefit (animal model); minimal human data
	Triazoles + echinocandins	In vivo benefit (animal model); minimal human data

AMB, Amphotericin B; *FC,* flucytosine; *FCZ,* fluconazole.

Mechanisms of Resistance to Antifungal Agents

Given the prominent role of *Candida* spp. as etiologic agents of invasive mycoses, it is not surprising that most of our understanding of the mechanisms of resistance to antifungal agents comes from studies of *C. albicans* and other species of *Candida*. Much less is known of resistance mechanisms in *Aspergillus* spp. and *C. neoformans*, and almost no information on antifungal resistance mechanisms is available for other opportunistic fungal pathogens.

In contrast to mechanisms of resistance to antibacterial agents, there is no evidence that fungi are capable of destroying or modifying antifungal agents as a means of achieving resistance; likewise, antifungal resistance genes are not transmissible from cell to cell in the manner that occurs with many bacterial resistance genes. It is apparent, however, that multidrug efflux pumps, target alterations, and reduced access to drug targets are important mechanisms of resistance to antifungal agents, just as they are for antibacterial resistance (Table 61.4). In contrast to the rapid emergence and spread of high-level multidrug resistance that occurs in bacteria, antifungal resistance usually develops slowly and involves the emergence of intrinsically resistant species or a gradual, stepwise alteration of cellular structures or functions that results in resistance to an agent to which there has been prior exposure.

POLYENES

Resistance to polyenes, and amphotericin B in particular, remains uncommon despite extensive use over more than 60 years. Decreased susceptibility to amphotericin B has been reported in isolates of *C. lusitaniae*, *C. glabrata*, *C. krusei*, *C. guilliermondii*, and *C. auris*. Although primary resistance may be seen, most resistance to amphotericin B among *Candida* spp. is secondary to amphotericin B exposure during therapy. *Aspergillus* spp. are generally susceptible to amphotericin B; however, *A. terreus* is unique in that it appears to be resistant both in vitro and in vivo. Although secondary resistance to amphotericin B has been reported in *C. neoformans*, it is quite rare.

The mechanism of amphotericin B resistance appears to be the result of qualitative and quantitative alterations in the fungal cell. Amphotericin B–resistant mutants of *Candida* spp. and *C. neoformans* have been shown to have a reduced ergosterol content, replacement of polyene-binding sterols (ergosterol) by ones that bind polyenes less well (fecosterol), or masking of ergosterol in the cell membranes so that binding with polyenes is hindered because of steric or thermodynamic factors. The molecular mechanism of amphotericin B resistance has not been determined; however, sterol analysis of resistant strains of *Candida* spp. and *C. neoformans* suggests that they are defective in *ERG2, ERG3,* or *ERG6* genes encoding for the C-8 sterol isomerase, C-5 sterol desaturase enzymes, and C-24 sterol methyltransferase, respectively.

AZOLES

The ubiquitous use of azoles, especially fluconazole, for the treatment and prevention of fungal infections has given rise to reports of emerging resistance to this class of antifungal agents. Fortunately, primary resistance to fluconazole is rare among most species of *Candida* causing bloodstream infection. Among the five most common species of *Candida* isolated from the blood of infected patients (*C. albicans*,

TABLE 61.4 Mechanisms Involved in the Development of Resistance to Antifungal Agents in Pathogenic Fungi

Fungus	Amphotericin B	Flucytosine	Itraconazole	Fluconazole	Echinocandins
Aspergillus fumigatus	—	—	Altered target enzyme, 14-α-demethylase Decreased azole accumulation	—	—
Candida albicans	Decrease in ergosterol Replacement of polyene-binding sterols Masking of ergosterol	Loss of permease activity Loss of cytosine deaminase activity Loss of uracil phosphoribosyl-transferase activity	—	Overexpression or mutation of 14-α-demethylase Overexpression of efflux pumps, *CDR* and *MDR* genes	Mutation in *fks1* gene
C. glabrata	Alteration or decrease in ergosterol content	Loss of permease activity	—	Overexpression of efflux pumps (*CgCDR* genes)	Mutation in *fks1* and/or *fks2* gene
C. krusei	Alteration or decrease in ergosterol content	—	—	Active efflux Reduced affinity for target enzyme, 14-α-demethylase	Mutation in *fks1* gene
C. lusitaniae	Alteration or decrease in ergosterol content Production of modified sterols	—	—	—	—
Cryptococcus neoformans	Defects in sterol synthesis Decreased ergosterol Production of modified sterols	—	—	Alterations in target enzyme Overexpression of *MDR* efflux pump	—

C. glabrata, *C. parapsilosis*, *C. tropicalis*, and *C. krusei*), only *C. krusei* is considered intrinsically resistant to fluconazole. Among the remaining species, approximately 10% of *C. glabrata* exhibit primary resistance to fluconazole, and less than 2% of *C. albicans*, *C. parapsilosis*, and *C. tropicalis* are resistant to this agent. Notably, the newly emergent species, *C. auris*, appears to be intrinsically resistant to fluconazole and exhibits variable resistance to amphotericin B and the echinocandins. The new triazoles (voriconazole, posaconazole, and isavuconazole) are more potent than fluconazole against *Candida* spp., including activity against *C. krusei* and some fluconazole-resistant strains of other *Candida* spp.; however, there is a strong positive correlation between the activity of fluconazole and that of the other triazoles, suggesting some degree of cross-resistance within the class.

Primary resistance to fluconazole is also rare among clinical isolates of *C. neoformans*. Secondary resistance has been described in isolates obtained from individuals with AIDS and relapsing cryptococcal meningitis.

Although resistance to the azoles is considered to be rare among *Aspergillus* spp., increased resistance has been noted in several geographic regions since 1999. Recent evidence from the Netherlands and Denmark suggests the possibility that azole resistance in *A. fumigatus* may be a side effect of environmental fungicide use. Cross-resistance between itraconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole varies according to the mechanism of resistance.

Azole resistance in *Candida* spp. can be the result of the following mechanisms: a modification in the quantity or quality of the target enzymes, reduced access of the drug to the target, or some combination of these mechanisms. Thus point mutations in the gene *(ERG11)* encoding the target enzyme, lanosterol 14-α-demethylase, leads to an altered target with decreased affinity for azoles. Overexpression of *ERG11* results in overproduction of the target enzyme, creating the need for higher concentrations of the drug within the cell to inactivate all the target enzyme molecules. Upregulation of genes encoding for multidrug efflux pumps results in active efflux of the azole antifungal agents out of the cell. Upregulation of genes encoding the **major facilitator type efflux pump (*MDR*)** leads to fluconazole resistance, and upregulation of genes encoding the **adenosine triphosphate (ATP)–binding cassette transporters (*CDR*)** leads to resistance to multiple azoles. These mechanisms may act individually, sequentially, or simultaneously, resulting in strains of *Candida* that exhibit progressively higher levels of azole resistance.

The mechanisms of azole resistance in *Aspergillus* spp. are now well characterized in *A. fumigatus* but not in other species of *Aspergillus*. It appears that both increased drug efflux and alterations in the 14-α-demethylase target enzyme serve as mechanisms for resistance to itraconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole among isolates of *A. fumigatus*. Specific mutations in the *CYP51A* gene encoding the target enzyme may result in resistance to one, two, or all three triazoles. Additional and as yet undefined mechanisms of resistance may also contribute to azole resistance in *A. fumigatus* isolates from patients undergoing long-term azole therapy.

Similarly, secondary resistance to fluconazole among isolates of *C. neoformans* has been associated with overexpression of MDR efflux pumps and alteration of the target enzyme. *C. neoformans* has also been shown to have a CDR-type efflux pump.

ECHINOCANDINS

Caspofungin, anidulafungin, and micafungin all demonstrate potent fungicidal activity against *Candida* spp., including azole-resistant strains. Clinical isolates of *Candida* spp. with reduced susceptibility to the echinocandins are uncommon but increasingly recognized among patients undergoing long-term treatment with these agents. Efforts to produce caspofungin-resistant mutants of *C. albicans* in the laboratory have shown that the frequency with which these mutants arise is very low (1 in 10^8 cells), suggesting a low potential for the emergence of resistance in the clinical setting. Echinocandin resistance has likewise been rare among clinical isolates of *Aspergillus*; however, laboratory-derived echinocandin-resistant mutants have been selected.

The mechanism of resistance to the echinocandins that has been characterized in laboratory strains of *C. albicans* and clinical strains of *C. albicans, C. glabrata*, *C. tropicalis, C. krusei,* and *C. lusitaniae* is one of an altered glucan synthesis enzyme complex that shows a decreased sensitivity to inhibition by agents within the class. These strains have point mutations in the *fks1* or *fks2* (*C. glabrata*) gene that encodes for an integral membrane protein (Fks1p, Fks2p), which is the catalytic subunit of the glucan synthesis enzyme complex. The *fks* mutation results in strains that are resistant to all of the echinocandins but retain susceptibility to polyene and azole antifungal agents. Importantly, the activity of the novel glucan synthase inhibitor, SCY-078, is not compromised by the most common mutations in the protein target Fks.

The *fks* gene also is essential in *Aspergillus* spp., and laboratory-derived *fks1* mutants of *A. fumigatus* have been shown to exhibit decreased susceptibility to all the echinocandins in vitro and in vivo. The echinocandin-resistant strain of *A. fumigatus* was shown to have decreased fitness for causing infection relative to a wild-type strain, suggesting that this may account for the paucity of clinical strains expressing echinocandin resistance.

FLUCYTOSINE

Primary resistance to flucytosine is uncommon among clinical isolates of *Candida* spp. and *C. neoformans.* Secondary resistance, however, is well documented to occur among both *Candida* spp. and *C. neoformans* during monotherapy with this agent.

Flucytosine resistance may develop because of decreased uptake of the drug (loss of permease activity) or by loss of enzymatic activity necessary to convert flucytosine to 5-FU (cytosine deaminase) and 5-fluorouridylic acid (FUMP pyrophosphorylase). Uracil phosphoribosyltransferase, another enzyme in the pyrimidine salvage pathway, is also important in the formation of FUMP (5-fluorouracilmonophosphate), and loss of its activity is sufficient to confer resistance to flucytosine.

ALLYLAMINES

Although clinical failures can occur during treatment of fungal infections with terbinafine and naftifine, they have

not been shown to be the result of resistance to these agents. It has been shown that the CDR1 multidrug efflux pump can use terbinafine as a substrate, suggesting that efflux-mediated resistance to allylamines is a possibility.

CLINICAL FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO RESISTANCE

Antifungal therapy may fail clinically, despite the fact that the drug used is active against the infecting fungus. The complex interaction of the host, the drug, and the fungal pathogen may be influenced by a wide variety of factors, including the immune status of the host, the site and severity of the infection, presence of a foreign body (e.g., catheter, vascular graft), the activity of the drug at the site of infection, the dose and duration of therapy, and patient compliance with the antifungal regimen. It must be recognized that the presence of neutrophils, use of immunomodulating drugs, concomitant infections (e.g., human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]), surgical procedures, age, and nutritional status of the host all may be more important in determining the outcome of the infection than the ability of the antifungal agent to inhibit or kill the infecting organism.

ANTIFUNGAL SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

In vitro susceptibility testing of antifungal agents is designed to determine the relative activity of one or more agents against the infecting pathogen in hopes of selecting the best option for treatment of the infection. Thus antifungal susceptibility tests are performed for the same reasons that tests with antibacterial agents are performed. Antifungal susceptibility tests will (1) provide a reliable estimate of the relative activity of two or more antifungal agents against the tested organism, (2) correlate with in vivo antifungal activity and predict the likely outcome of therapy, (3) provide a means with which to monitor the development of resistance among a normally susceptible population of organisms, and (4) predict the therapeutic potential of newly developed investigational agents.

Standardized methods for performing antifungal susceptibility testing are reproducible, accurate, and available for use in clinical laboratories. Antifungal susceptibility testing is now increasingly and appropriately used as a routine adjunct to the treatment of fungal infections. Guidelines for the use of antifungal testing as a complement to other laboratory studies have been developed. Selective application of antifungal susceptibility testing, coupled with broader identification of fungi to the species level, is especially useful in difficult to manage fungal infections. One must keep in mind, however, that the in vitro susceptibility of an infecting organism to the antimicrobial agent is only one of several factors that may influence the likelihood that therapy for an infection will be successful (see the section Clinical Factors Contributing to Resistance).

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Garbati, M.A., et al., 2012. The role of combination antifungal therapy in the treatment of invasive aspergillosis: a systematic review. Int. J. Infect. Dis. 16, e76–e81.

Johnson, E.M., Arendrup, M.C., 2015. Susceptibility test methods: yeasts and filamentous fungi. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

McCarthy, M.W., et al., 2017. Novel agents and drug targets to meet the challenges of resistant fungi. J. Infect. Dis. 216 (S3), S474–S483.

Moro, F., et al., 2017. Molecular basis of antifungal drug resistance in yeasts. Int. J. Antimicrob. Agents 50, 599–606.

Pianalto, K.M., Alspaugh, J.A., 2016. New horizons in antifungal therapy. J. Fungi 2, 26. https://doi.org/10.3390/jof2040026.

Sharma, C., Chowdhary, A., 2017. Molecular basis of antifungal resistance in filamentous fungi. Int. J. Antimicrob. Agents 50, 607–616.

Questions

1. What is the mechanism of action of the echinocandin antifungal agents? Why is this an advantage for this class of agents?
2. Describe the mechanisms of resistance to the azoles that are known for *Candida albicans.*
3. Why is combination therapy with antifungal agents attractive? Give an example of a mechanism that would likely produce synergy.

62 Superficial and Cutaneous Mycoses

Darrell, a 24-year-old medical student, just loves his new bulldog puppy, Delbert. He recently purchased Delbert from a local "backyard" breeder. Darrell has taken to giving Delbert frequent "smooches" on his muzzle, which Delbert loves, because he knows a treat is soon to follow. After about 3 months of proud puppy ownership and "smooching," Darrell noticed that his mustache began itching, and his upper lip was beginning to swell. Over a 1-week period, his upper lip became swollen and inflamed, and small pustular areas became apparent among the sparse hairs of his moustache. Similar changes also were becoming apparent on Delbert's muzzle. This concerned Darrell, so he promptly took Delbert to the veterinarian. The veterinarian took one look at the pair, wrote a prescription for Delbert, and told Darrell that he should make a visit to the dermatologist.

1. What was the likely cause of Darrell/Delbert's affliction? Be specific.
2. How would you go about making a diagnosis?
3. How would you go about treating this infection?
4. Who gave what to whom?

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

DERMATOPHYTES

Trigger Words

Tinea, KOH preparation, ringworm, azoles, terbinafine, circular, scaling lesion with central clearing and hair loss

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Include filamentous fungi in the genera *Trichophyton, Epidermophyton,* and *Microsporum*
- Keratinophilic and keratinolytic; able to invade and break down skin, hair, and nails
- In infections of skin, hair, and nails, only outermost keratinized layers invaded
- Various forms of dermatophytosis (tineas or "ringworm") classified according to anatomic site or structure involved
- Clinical signs and symptoms vary

Epidemiology

- Classified into three categories based on natural habitat: geophilic, zoophilic, and anthropophilic
- Geophilic: live in soil, occasional pathogens of both animals and humans
- Zoophilic: parasitize hair and skin of animals but can be transmitted to humans
- Anthropophilic: infect humans, may be transmitted directly or indirectly from person to person
- Occur worldwide, especially in tropical and subtropical regions

Diagnosis

- Demonstration of fungal hyphae by direct microscopy of skin, hair, or nail samples
- Isolation of organisms in culture

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Localized infections that do not involve hair or nails may be treated effectively with topical antifungal agents (azoles, terbinafine, haloprogin)
- All others require oral therapy (griseofulvin, itraconazole, fluconazole, terbinafine)

KOH, Potassium hydroxide.

Fungal infections of the skin and skin structures are extremely common. These infections are generally categorized by the structures that the fungi colonize or invade as follows:

1. **Superficial mycoses**: limited to the outmost layers of the skin and hair
2. **Cutaneous mycoses:** infections that involve the deeper layers of the epidermis and its integuments, the hair, and nails
3. **Subcutaneous mycoses**: involving the dermis, subcutaneous tissues, muscle, and fascia.

The subcutaneous mycoses will be discussed separately in Chapter 63. This chapter will deal with the superficial and cutaneous mycoses.

Superficial Mycoses

Agents of superficial mycoses are fungi that colonize the keratinized outer layers of the skin, hair, and nails. Infections caused by these organisms elicit little or no host immune response and are nondestructive and thus asymptomatic. They are usually of cosmetic concern only and are easy to diagnose and treat.

PITYRIASIS (TINEA) VERSICOLOR

Pityriasis versicolor is a common superficial fungal infection that is seen worldwide. In tropical environments, it may affect 30% to 35% of the population. It is caused by the lipophilic yeast species of the *Malassezia furfur* complex: *M. furfur, M. sympodialis, M. globosa, M. restricta, M. slooffiae, M. obtusa, M. dermatis, M. japonica,* and *M. yamatoensis*. In routine clinical reporting referring to these organisms as members of the *M. furfur* complex is usually sufficient.

Morphology

When viewed in skin scrapings, members of the *M. furfur* complex appear as clusters of spherical or oval, thick-walled

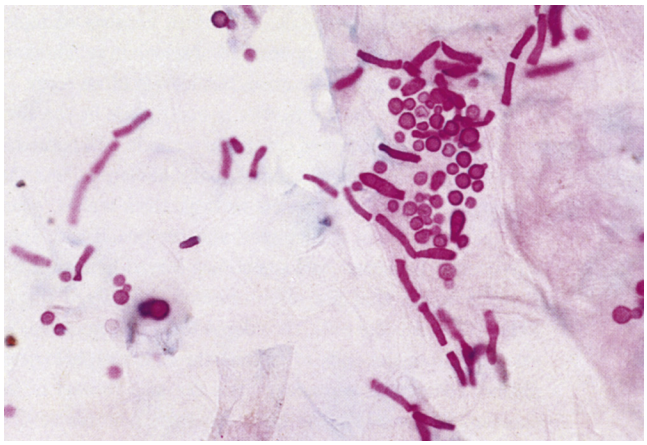


Fig. 62.1 Pityriasis versicolor. Periodic acid–Schiff–stained skin scraping showing yeastlike cells and short, infrequently branched hyphae that are often oriented end to end (×100). (From Connor, D.H., Chandler, F.W., Schwartz, D.A., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

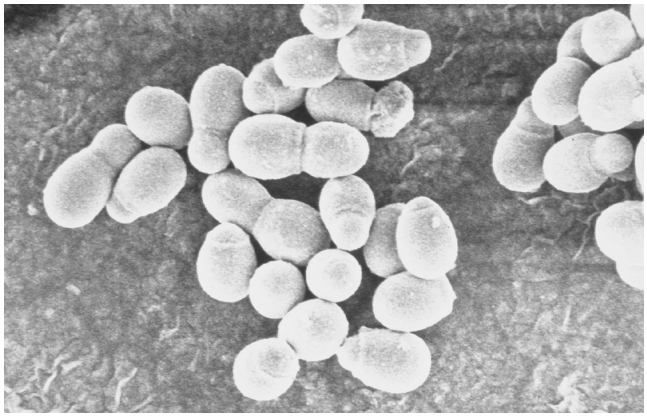


Fig. 62.2 Scanning electron micrograph of *Malassezia furfur* demonstrating the liplike collarette around the point of bud initiation on the parent cell. (Courtesy S.A. Messer.)

yeastlike cells, 3 to 8 μm in diameter (Fig. 62.1). The yeast cells may be mixed with short, infrequently branched hyphae that tend to orient end to end. The yeastlike cells represent phialoconidia and show polar bud formation with a "lip" or collarette around the point of bud initiation on the parent cell (Fig. 62.2). In culture on standard media containing or overlaid with olive oil, species of the *M. furfur* complex grow as cream-colored to tan yeastlike colonies composed of budding yeastlike cells; hyphae are infrequently produced.

Epidemiology

Pityriasis versicolor is a disease of healthy persons that occurs worldwide, but it is most prevalent in tropical and subtropical regions. Young adults are most commonly affected. *M. furfur* and other members of the species complex are not found as saprophytes in nature, and pityriasis versicolor has not been documented in animals. Human infection is thought to result from the direct or indirect transfer of infected keratinous material from one person to another.

Clinical Syndromes

The lesions of pityriasis versicolor are small hypopigmented or hyperpigmented macules. The upper trunk, arms, chest, shoulders, face, and neck are most often involved, but any part of the body may be affected (Fig. 62.3). The lesions are irregular, well-demarcated patches of discoloration that may be raised and covered by a fine scale. Because species of the *M. furfur* complex tend to interfere with melanin production, lesions are hypopigmented in dark-skinned individuals. In light-skinned individuals, the lesions are pink to pale brown and become more obvious when they fail to tan after exposure to sunlight. Little or no host reaction occurs, and the lesions are asymptomatic, with the exception of mild pruritus in severe cases. The *M. furfur* complex has also been associated with folliculitis, obstructive dacryocystitis, systemic infections in patients receiving intravenous lipid infusions, and seborrheic dermatitis, especially in patients with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).

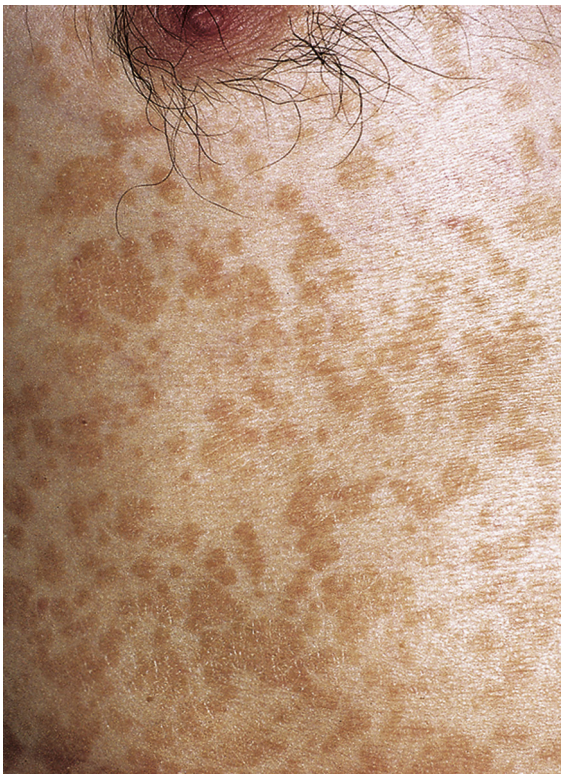


Fig. 62.3 Pityriasis versicolor. Multiple, pale brown, hyperpigmented patches on chest and shoulders. (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

Laboratory Diagnosis

The laboratory diagnosis of pityriasis versicolor is made by the direct visualization of the fungal elements on microscopic examination of epidermal scales in 10% potassium hydroxide (KOH) with or without calcofluor white. The organisms are usually numerous and may be visualized with hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) or periodic acid–Schiff (PAS) stains (see Fig. 62.1). The lesions will also fluoresce with a yellowish color on exposure to a Wood lamp.

Although not usually necessary for establishing the diagnosis, culture may be performed using synthetic mycologic media supplemented with olive oil as a source of lipid. Growth of yeastlike colonies appear after incubation

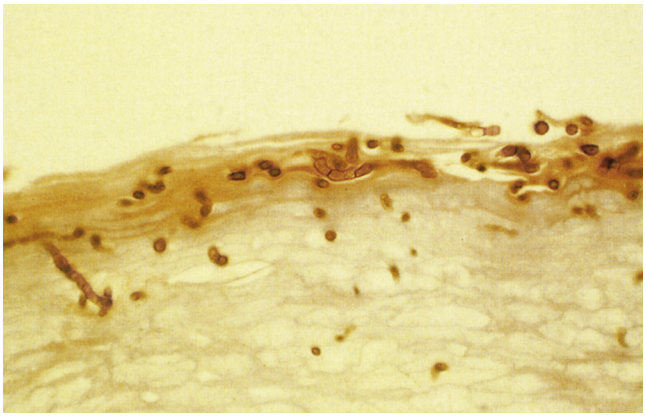


Fig. 62.4 Tinea nigra. Dematiaceous hyphae of *Hortaea werneckii* (hematoxylin and eosin, ×100). (From Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

at 30° C for 5 to 7 days. Microscopically, the colonies are comprised of budding yeastlike cells with occasional hyphae.

Treatment

Although spontaneous cure has been reported, the disease is generally chronic and persistent. Treatment consists of the use of topical azoles or selenium sulfide shampoo. For more widespread infection, oral ketoconazole or itraconazole may be used.

TINEA NIGRA

Tinea nigra is a superficial phaeohyphomycosis caused by the black fungus *Hortaea werneckii* (formerly *Exophiala werneckii*).

Morphology

Microscopically, *H. werneckii* appears as dematiaceous (melanin [brown to black] pigmented), frequently branched, septate hyphae, 1.5 to 3.0 μm wide. Arthroconidia and elongate budding cells are also present (Fig. 62.4). *H. werneckii* also grows in culture on standard mycologic media at 25° C, on which it is a black mold producing annelloconidia (conidia possessing annelids or rings), which often slide down the sides of the conidiophore.

Epidemiology

Tinea nigra is a tropical or subtropical condition. It is likely contracted by traumatic inoculation of the fungus into the superficial layers of the epidermis. It is most prevalent in Africa, Asia, and Central and South America. Children and young adults are most often affected, with a higher incidence in females.

Clinical Syndromes

Tinea nigra appears as a solitary, irregular, pigmented (brown to black) macule, usually on the palms or soles (Fig. 62.5). There is no scaling or invasion of hair follicles, and the infection is not contagious. Because of its superficial location, there is little or no discomfort or host reaction. Because the lesion grossly may resemble a malignant melanoma, biopsy or local excision may be considered. Such invasive procedures may be avoided by a simple microscopic examination of skin scrapings of the affected area.

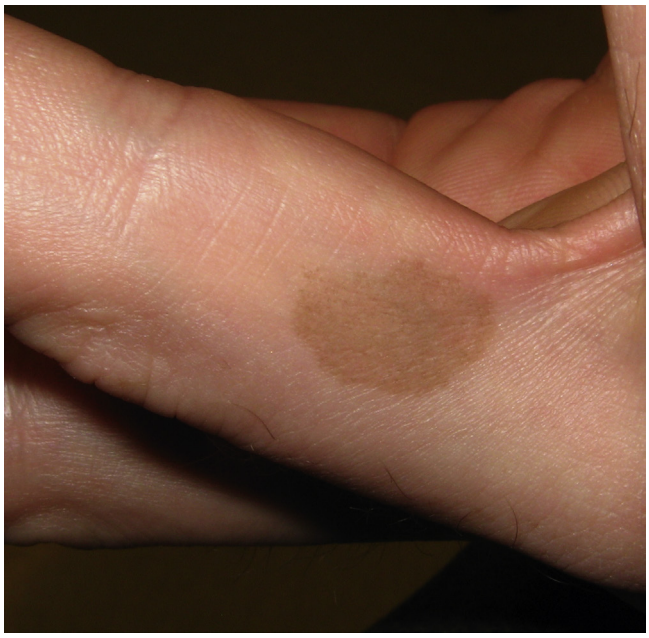


Fig. 62.5 Tinea nigra. Darkly pigmented macules with irregular edges present on the palm. (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

Laboratory Diagnosis

Tinea nigra is easily diagnosed by microscopic examination of skin scrapings placed in 10% to 20% KOH. The pigmented hyphae and yeast forms are confined to the outer layers of the stratum corneum and are easily detected on H&E-stained (see Box 60.1) sections (see Fig. 62.4). Once fungal elements are detected, skin scrapings should be placed on mycologic media with antibiotics. A dematiaceous yeastlike colony should appear within 3 weeks, becoming velvety with age. Microscopic examination reveals two-celled, cylindric, yeastlike cells and, depending on the age of the colony, toruloid hyphae.

Treatment

The infection responds well to topical therapy, including Whitfield ointment, azole creams, and terbinafine.

WHITE PIEDRA

White piedra is a superficial infection of hair caused by yeastlike fungi of the genus *Trichosporon: T. ovoides* (causes scalp hair white piedra), *T. inkin* (causes most cases of pubic white piedra), and *T. asahii*.

Morphology

Microscopic examination reveals hyphal elements, arthroconidia (rectangular cells resulting from the fragmentation of hyphal cells), and blastoconidia (budding yeast cells).

Epidemiology

This condition occurs in tropical and subtropical regions and is related to poor hygiene.

Clinical Syndromes

White piedra affects the hairs of the groin and axillae. The fungus surrounds the hair shaft and forms a white to brown swelling along the hair strand. The swellings are soft and pasty and may be easily removed by running a section of the hair between the thumb and forefinger. The infection does not damage the hair shaft.

Laboratory Diagnosis

When microscopic examination reveals hyphal elements, arthroconidia, and/or budding yeast cells, infected hair should be placed on mycologic media without cycloheximide (cycloheximide will inhibit *Trichosporon* spp.). *Trichosporon* spp. will form cream-colored, dry, wrinkled colonies within 48 to 72 hours on incubation at room temperature. The various species of *Trichosporon* can be identified in the same manner as other yeast isolates. Sugar assimilations, potassium nitrate (KNO_3) assimilation (negative), urease production (positive), and morphology on cornmeal agar (both arthroconidia and blastoconidia are present) should be determined.

Treatment

Treatment may be accomplished by the use of topical azoles; however, improved hygiene and shaving of the infected hair are also effective and usually negate the necessity of medical treatment.

BLACK PIEDRA

Another condition affecting the hair, primarily the scalp, is black piedra. The causative agent of black piedra is *Piedraia hortae*.

Morphology

The organism grows as pigmented (brown to reddish-black) mold. As the culture ages, spindle-shaped ascospores are formed within specialized structures (asci). These structures (asci and ascospores) also are produced within the rock-hard hyphal mass that surrounds the hair shaft.

Epidemiology

Black piedra is uncommon and has been reported from tropical areas in Africa, Asia, and Central and South America. It is thought to be a condition of poor hygiene.

Clinical Syndromes

Black piedra presents as small, dark nodules that surround the hair shafts. It is asymptomatic and generally involves the scalp. The hyphal mass is held together by a cement-like substance and contains asci and ascospores, which is the sexual phase of the fungus.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Examination of the nodule reveals branched, pigmented, hyphae held together by a cement-like substance. *P. hortae* can be cultured on routine mycologic media. Very slow growth may be observed at 25° C and may begin as a yeastlike colony, later becoming velvety as hyphae develop. Asci may be observed microscopically, usually ranging from 4 to 30 μm and containing up to eight ascospores.

Treatment

Treatment of black piedra is easily accomplished by a haircut and proper, regular washings.

Cutaneous Mycoses

The cutaneous mycoses include infections caused by dermatophytic fungi (dermatophytosis) and nondermatophytic fungi (dermatomycosis) (Table 62.1). Because of the overwhelming importance of dermatophytes as etiologic agents of cutaneous mycoses, the majority of this section will deal with those fungi. The nondermatophytic fungi will be discussed regarding their role in onychomycosis. The superficial and cutaneous infections caused by *Candida* spp. will be discussed in Chapter 65.

DERMATOPHYTOSES

The term **dermatophytosis** refers to a complex of diseases caused by any of several species of taxonomically related filamentous fungi in the genera *Trichophyton, Epidermophyton,* and *Microsporum* (Tables 62.1 to 62.3). These fungi are known collectively as **the dermatophytes,** and all possess the ability to cause disease in humans and/or animals. All have in common the ability to invade the skin, hair, or nails. In each case, these fungi are keratinophilic and keratinolytic; thus they are able to break down the keratin surfaces of these structures. In the case of skin infections, the dermatophytes invade only the upper, outermost layer of the epidermis, which is the stratum corneum. Penetration below the granular layer of the epidermis is rare; likewise, with hair and nails, being part of the skin, only the keratinized layers are invaded. The various forms of dermatophytosis are referred to as "tineas" or ringworm. Clinically, the tineas are classified according to the anatomic site or structure affected: (1) tinea capitis of the scalp, eyebrows, and eyelashes; (2) tinea barbae of the beard; (3) tinea corporis of the smooth or glabrous skin; (4) tinea cruris of the groin; and (5) tinea pedis of the foot; (6) tinea unguium of the nails (also known as **onychomycosis**). The clinical signs and symptoms of dermatophytosis vary according to the etiologic agents, the host reaction, and the site of infection.

Morphology

Each genus of dermatophytic mold is characterized by a specific pattern of growth in culture and by the production of macroconidia and microconidia (see Table 62.2). Further identification to species level requires consideration of colony morphology, spore production, and nutritional requirements in vitro.

Microscopically, the genus *Microsporum* is identified by observation of its macroconidia, whereas microconidia are the characteristic structures of the genus *Trichophyton* (see Table 62.2). *Epidermophyton floccosum* does not produce microconidia, but its smooth-walled macroconidia borne in clusters of two or three are quite distinctive (Fig. 62.6). *Microsporum canis* produces characteristic large, multicellular (five to eight cells per conidium), thick- and rough-walled macroconidia (Fig. 62.7). *Trichophyton rubrum* produces microconidia that are teardrop or peg shaped and borne

TABLE 62.1 Common and Uncommon Agents of Superficial and Cutaneous Dermatomycoses and Dermatophytoses

	TYPE OF INFECTION									
Fungus	**TP**	**TCO**	**TCR**	**TCA**	**TBA**	**TVR**	**O**	**TN**	**BP**	**WP**
DERMATOPHYTIC										
Trichophyton rubrum	X	X	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—
T. mentagrophytes complex	X	X	X	X	—	—	X	—	—	—
T. tonsurans	—	X	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	—
T. verrucosum	—	X	—	X	X	—	—	—	—	—
T. equinum	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—
T. violaceum	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—
T. schoenleinii	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—
T. megninii	—	—	—		—	—	X	—	—	—
Epidermophyton floccosum	X	—	X		—	—	X	—	—	—
Microsporum canis	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—
M. audouinii	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	—
NONDERMATOPHYTIC										
Scopulariopsis brevicaulis	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—
Neoscytalidium spp. and *Scytalidium* spp.	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—
Malassezia spp.	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—
Candida albicans	X	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	—	—
Aspergillus terreus	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—
Sarocladium (Acremonium) spp.	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—
Fusarium spp.	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—
Trichosporon spp.	—	—	—	—	—	—		—	—	X
Piedraia hortae	—	—	—	—	—	—		—	X	
Hortaea werneckii	—	—	—	—	—	—		X		

BP, Black piedra; *O,* onychomycosis; *TBA,* tinea barbae; *TCA,* tinea capitis; *TCO,* tinea corporis; *TCR,* tinea cruris; *TN,* tinea nigra; *TP,* tinea pedis; *TVR,* tinea versicolor; *WP,* white piedra; *X,* etiologic agents of dermatomycoses or dermatophytoses.

TABLE 62.2 Characteristic In Vitro and In Vivo Features of Dermatophytes

	In Vitro		**In Vivo Hair**	
Genus	**Macroconidia**	**Microconidia**	**Invasion**	***Fluorescence*[a]**
Epidermophyton	Smooth-walled, borne in clusters of two or three	Absent	NA	NA
Microsporum	Numerous, large, thick, and rough-walled[b]	Rare	Ectothrix	+/–[c]
Trichophyton	Rare, smooth, thin-walled	Numerous, spherical, teardrop or peg shaped[d]	Endothrix[e]	+/–[f]

[a]Fluorescence with a Wood lamp.
[b]Except *M. audouinii.*
[c]*M. gypseum* (*Nannizzia gypsea*) not fluorescent.
[d]Except *T. schoenleinii.*
[e]*T. verrucosum*, ectothrix; *T. schoenleinii*, favic.
[f]*T. schoenleinii* is fluorescent.
NA, Not applicable.

along the sides of hyphae (Fig. 62.8), whereas *T. mentagrophytes* complex produces both single, cigar-shaped macroconidia and grapelike clusters of spherical microconidia (Fig. 62.9). *T. tonsurans* produces variably sized and shaped microconidia, with relatively large spherical conidia often located right alongside small, parallel-walled conidia and other microconidia of various sizes and shapes (Fig. 62.10).

In skin biopsies, all of the dermatophytes are morphologically similar and appear as hyaline septate hyphae, chains of arthroconidia, or dissociated chains of arthroconidia that

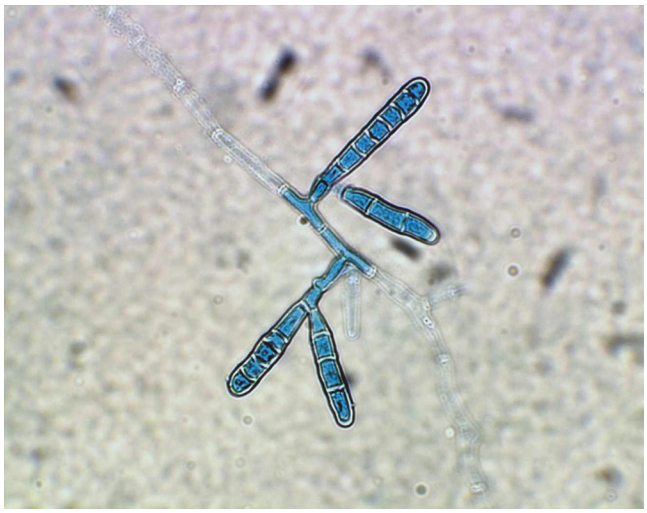


Fig. 62.6 *Epidermophyton floccosum*. Lactophenol cotton blue showing smooth-walled macroconidia.

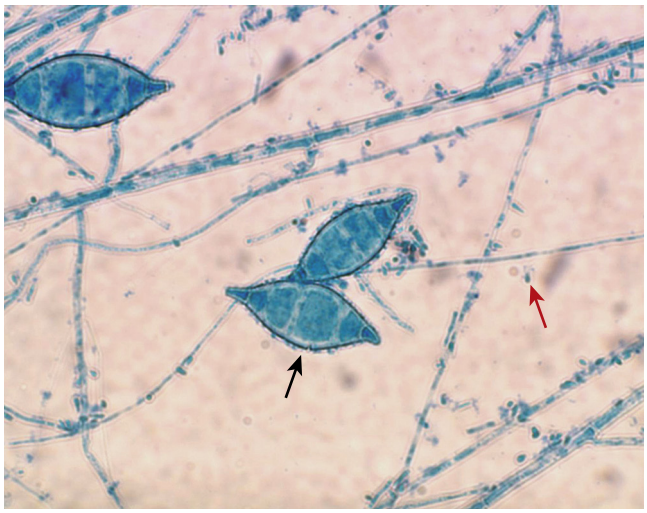


Fig. 62.7 *Microsporum canis*. Lactophenol cotton blue showing rough-walled macroconidia *(black arrow)* and microconidia *(red arrow)*.

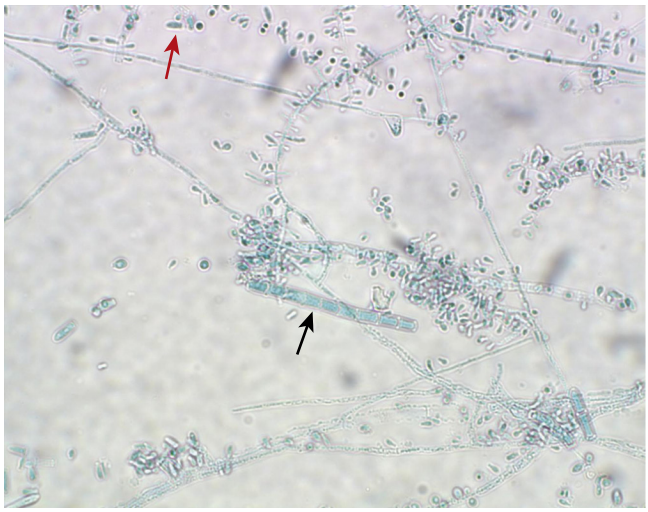


Fig. 62.8 *Trichophyton rubrum*. Lactophenol cotton blue showing multicelled macroconidia *(black arrow)* and teardrop- and peg-shaped microconidia *(red arrow)*.

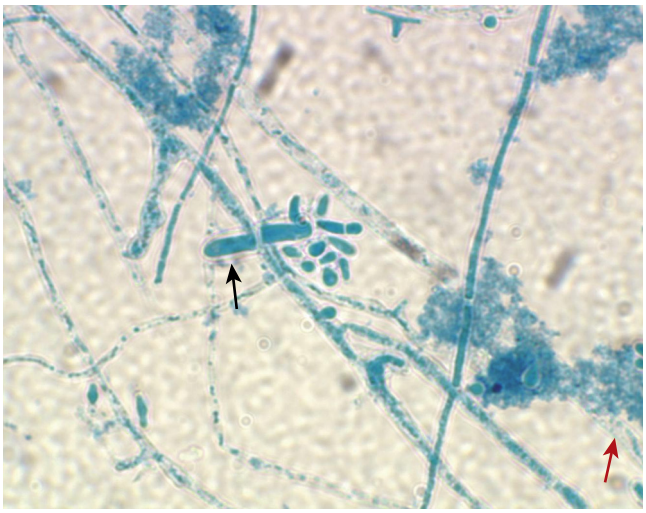


Fig. 62.9 *Trichophyton mentagrophytes*. Lactophenol cotton blue showing cigar-shaped macroconidia *(black arrow)* and grapelike clusters of microconidia *(red arrow)*.

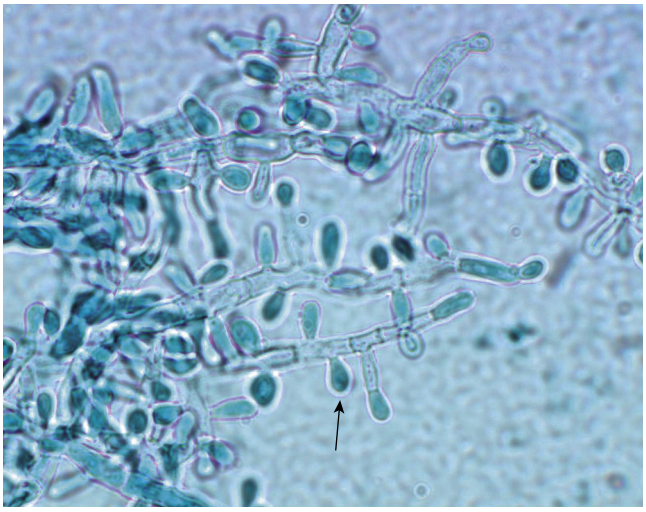


Fig. 62.10 *Trichophyton tonsurans*. Lactophenol cotton blue showing microconidia *(black arrow)*.

invade the stratum corneum, hair follicles, and hairs. When the hair is infected, the pattern of fungal invasion can be either **ectothrix, endothrix,** or **favic** depending on the dermatophytic species (Fig. 62.11). Septate hyphae may be seen within the hair shaft in all three patterns. In the **ectothrix** pattern, **arthroconidia** are formed on the outside of the hair (Fig. 62.12; see Fig. 62.11); in the **endothrix** pattern, arthroconidia are formed inside the hair (see Fig. 62.11); and in the **favic** pattern, hyphae, arthroconidia, and empty spaces resembling air bubbles ("honeycomb" pattern) are formed inside the hair (see Fig. 62.11). The dermatophytes can usually be seen on H&E stain; however, they are best visualized with special stains for fungi, such as Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) and PAS (see Fig. 62.12 and Chapter 60).

Ecology and Epidemiology

Dermatophytes can be classified into three different categories based on their natural habitat (see Table 62.3): (1)

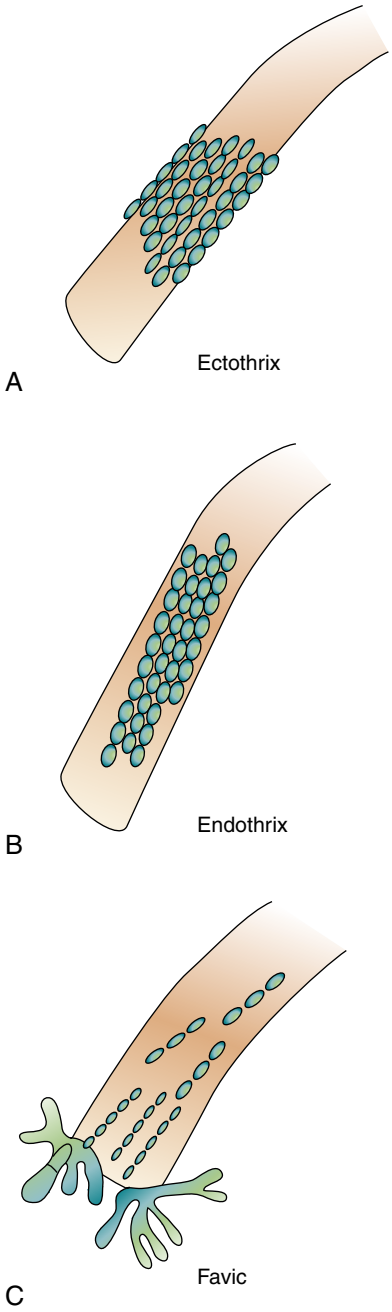


Fig. 62.11 Schematic of (A) ectothrix hair infection, (B) endothrix hair infection, and (C) favic hair infection.

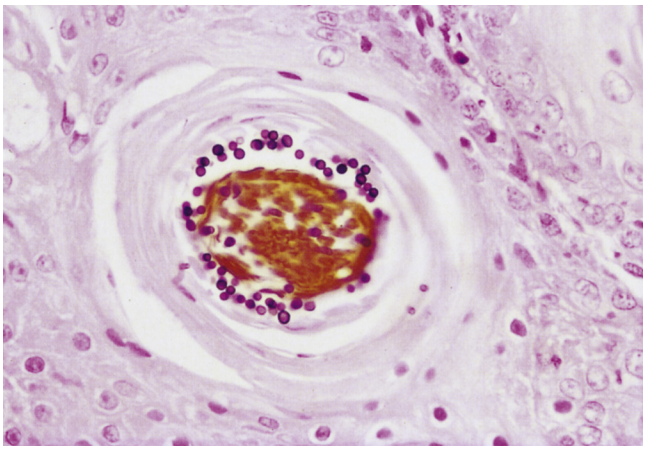


Fig. 62.12 Arthroconidia surrounding a hair shaft. Ectothrix hair infection caused by *Microsporum canis* (Gomori methenamine silver–hematoxylin and eosin, ×160.) (From Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

geophilic, (2) **zoophilic**, and (3) **anthropophilic**. The geophilic dermatophytes live in the soil and are occasional pathogens of both animals and humans. Zoophilic dermatophytes normally parasitize the hair and skin of animals but can be transmitted to humans. Anthropophilic dermatophytes generally infect humans and may be transmitted directly or indirectly from person to person. This classification is quite useful prognostically and emphasizes the importance of identifying the etiologic agent of dermatophytoses. Species of dermatophytes that are considered anthropophilic tend to cause chronic, relatively noninflammatory infections that are difficult to cure. In contrast, the zoophilic and geophilic dermatophytes tend to elicit a profound host reaction, causing lesions that are highly inflammatory and respond well to therapy. In some instances, these infections may heal spontaneously.

The dermatophytes are worldwide in distribution (see Table 62.3), and infection may be acquired from the transfer of arthroconidia or hyphae, or keratinous material containing these elements, from an infected host to a susceptible, uninfected host. Dermatophytes may remain viable in desquamated skin scales or hair for long periods, and infection may be by direct contact or indirect via fomites. Individuals of both sexes and all ages are susceptible to dermatophytosis; however, tinea capitis is more common in prepubescent children, and tinea cruris and tinea pedis are primarily diseases of adult males. Although dermatophytoses occur worldwide, especially in tropical and subtropical regions, individual dermatophyte species may vary in their geographic distribution and in their virulence for humans (see Table 62.3). For example, *T. concentricum*, the cause of tinea imbricata, is confined to the islands of the South Pacific and Asia, whereas *T. tonsurans* has replaced *Microsporum audouinii* as the principal agent of tinea capitis in the United States. Infections caused by dermatophytes are generally endemic but may assume epidemic proportions in selected settings (e.g., tinea capitis in school children). On a worldwide scale, *T. rubrum* and *T. mentagrophytes* complex account for 80% to 90% of all dermatophytoses.

Clinical Syndromes

Dermatophytoses manifest a wide range of clinical presentations, which may be affected by factors such as the species of dermatophytes, the inoculum size, the site of infection, and the immune status of the host (Clinical Cases 62.1 and 62.2). Any given disease manifestation may result from several different species of dermatophytes, as shown in Table 62.1.

The classic pattern of dermatophytosis is the "ringworm" pattern of a ring of inflammatory scaling with diminution of inflammation toward the center of the lesion. Tineas of hair-bearing areas often present as raised, circular or ring-shaped patches of alopecia with erythema and scaling (Fig. 62.13) or as more diffusely scattered papules, pustules,

TABLE 62.3 Classification of Dermatophytes According to Ecologic Niche

Ecologic Niche	Species	Principal Hosts	Geographic Distribution	Prevalence
Anthropophilic	*Epidermophyton floccosum*	—	Worldwide	Common
	Microsporum audouinii	—	Worldwide	Common
	M. ferrugineum	—	Africa, Asia	Endemic
	Trichophyton concentricum	—	Asia, Pacific Islands	Endemic Rare
	T. megninii	—	Europe, Africa	Endemic
	T. mentagrophytes complex	—	Worldwide	Common
	T. rubrum	—	Worldwide	Common
	T. schoenleinii	—	Europe, Africa	Endemic
	T. soudanense	—	Africa	Endemic
	T. tonsurans	—	Worldwide	Common
	T. violaceum	—	Europe, Africa, Asia	Common
Zoophilic	*M. canis*	Cat, dog, horse	Worldwide	Common
	M. (*Lophophyton*) *gallinae*	Fowl	Worldwide	Rare
	M. nanum (*Nannizzia nana*)	Swine	Worldwide	Rare
	M. (*Nannizzia*) *persicolor*	Vole	Europe, United States	Rare
	T. equinum	Horse	Worldwide	Rare
	T. mentagrophytes complex (granular isolates)	Rodent	Worldwide	Common
	T. erinacei	Hedgehog	Europe, New Zealand, Africa	Occasional
	T. simii	Monkey	India	Occasional
	T. verrucosum	Cow	Worldwide	Common
Geophilic	*M. gypseum* complex (*Nannizzia gypsea*)	—	Worldwide	Occasional
	T. vanbreuseghemii (*Arthroderma gertleri*)	—	Worldwide	Rare

From Hiruma, M., Yamaguchi, H., 2003. Dermatophytes. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Clinical Case 62.1 **Dermatophytosis in an Immunocompromised Host**

Squeo and associates (*J Am Acad Dermatol* 39:379–380, 1998) described a case of a 55-year-old renal transplant recipient with onychomycosis and chronic tinea pedis who presented with tender nodules on his left medial heel. He then developed papules and nodules on his right foot and calf. A skin biopsy demonstrated periodic acid–Schiff–positive, thick-walled, round cells, 2 to 6 μm in diameter in the dermis. Skin biopsy culture grew *Trichophyton rubrum*. *T. rubrum* has been described as an invasive pathogen in immunocompromised hosts. The clinical presentation, histopathology, and early fungal culture growth suggested *Blastomyces dermatitidis* in the differential diagnosis before the final identification of *T. rubrum*.

vesicles, and kerions (severe inflammation involving the hair shaft) (Fig. 62.14). Hairs infected with certain species, such as *M. canis*, *M. audouinii*, and *T. schoenleinii*, often fluoresce yellow-green when exposed to a Wood light (see Table 62.2). Infections of smooth skin commonly present as erythematous and scaling patches that expand in a centripetal pattern with central clearing. Dermatophytoses of the foot and hand may often become complicated

Clinical Case 62.2 **Tinea Capitis in an Adult Woman**

Martin and Elewski (*J Am Acad Dermatol* 49:S177–S179, 2003) described an 87-year-old woman with a 2-year history of a pruritic, painful, scaling scalp eruption and hair loss. Her previous treatment for this condition included numerous courses of systemic antibiotics and prednisone without success. Of interest in her social history was that she had recently acquired several stray cats that she kept inside her home. On physical examination, there were numerous pustules throughout the scalp, with diffuse erythema, crusting, and scale extending to the neck. There was extremely sparse scalp hair and prominent posterior cervical lymphadenopathy. She had no nail pitting. A Wood light examination of the scalp produced negative findings. A skin biopsy specimen and fungal, bacterial, and viral cultures were obtained. Bacterial culture grew rare *Enterococcus* species, whereas viral cultures showed no growth. The scalp biopsy specimen revealed an endothrix dermatophyte infection. Fungal culture grew *Trichophyton tonsurans*. The patient was treated with griseofulvin and Selsun shampoo. When seen at a 2-week follow-up visit, the patient demonstrated new hair growth and a resolution of her pustular eruption. With the brisk clinical response and culture growth of *T. tonsurans*, treatment with griseofulvin was continued for 8 weeks. The scalp hair grew back normally without permanent alopecia. Adults with alopecia require an evaluation for tinea capitis, including fungal cultures.

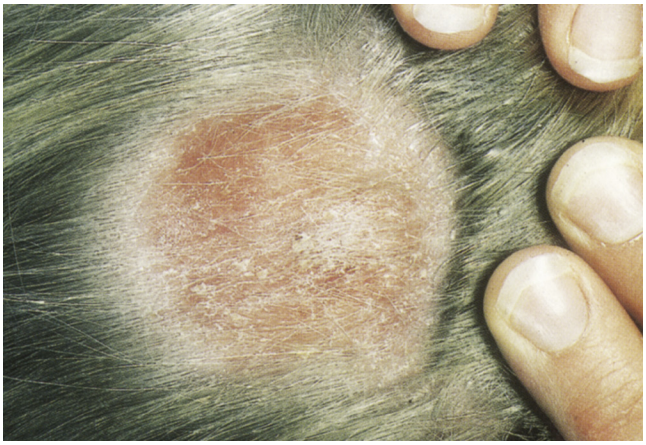


Fig. 62.13 Tinea capitis caused by *Microsporum canis.* (From Hay, R.J., 2003. Cutaneous and subcutaneous mycoses. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology. Churchill Livingstone, New York.)

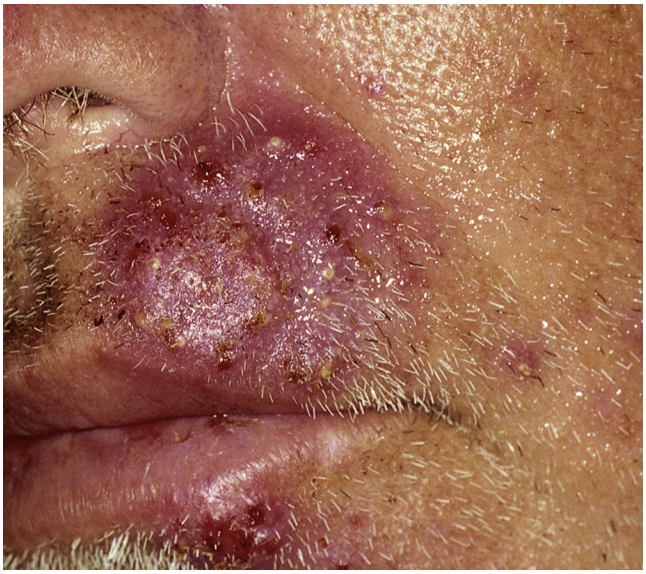


Fig. 62.14 Tinea barbae caused by *Trichophyton verrucosum.* (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

by onychomycosis (Fig. 62.15), in which the nail plate is invaded and destroyed by the fungus. Onychomycosis (tinea unguium) is caused by a variety of dermatophytes (see Table 62.1) and is estimated to affect approximately 3% of the population in most temperate countries. It is a disease seen mostly in adults, with toenails affected more commonly than fingernails. The infection is usually chronic, and the nails become thickened, discolored, raised, friable, and deformed (see Fig. 62.15). *T. rubrum* is the most common etiologic agent in most countries. A rapidly progressive form of onychomycosis that originates from the proximal nail fold and involves the upper and underside of the nail is seen in AIDS patients.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The laboratory diagnosis of dermatophytoses relies on the demonstration of fungal hyphae by direct microscopy of skin, hair, or nail samples and the isolation of organisms in culture. Specimens are mounted in a drop of 10% to 20% KOH on a glass slide and examined microscopically. Filamentous, hyaline hyphal elements characteristic of dermatophytes may be seen in skin scrapings, nail scrapings, and hairs. In examining specimens for fungal elements, calcofluor white has been used with excellent results.

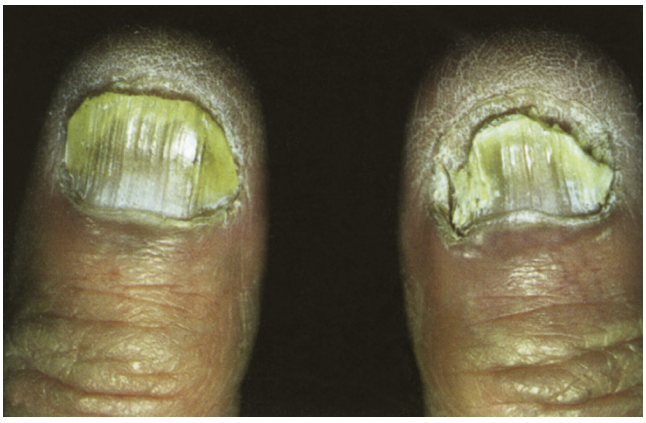


Fig. 62.15 Onychomycosis caused by *Trichophyton rubrum.* (From Hay, R.J., 2003. Cutaneous and subcutaneous mycoses. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. [Eds.], Clinical Mycology. Churchill Livingstone, New York.)

Cultures are always useful and can be obtained by scraping the affected areas and placing the skin, hair, or nail clippings onto standard mycologic media such as Sabouraud agar, with and without antibiotics, or dermatophyte test medium. Colonies develop within 7 to 28 days. Their gross and microscopic appearance and nutritional requirements can be used in identification. More recently molecular and proteomic methods have been used to provide rapid and specific means of identifying those unusual isolates that are difficult to identify using conventional phenotypic approaches.

Treatment

Dermatophytic infections that are localized and that do not affect hair or nails can usually be treated effectively with topical agents; all others require oral therapy. Topical agents include azoles (miconazole, clotrimazole, econazole, tioconazole, and itraconazole), terbinafine, and haloprogin. Whitfield ointment (benzoic and salicylic acids) is an optional agent for dermatophytosis, but responses are usually slower than those seen with agents with specific antifungal activity.

Oral antifungal agents with systemic activity against dermatophytes include griseofulvin, itraconazole, fluconazole, and terbinafine. The azoles and terbinafine are more rapidly and broadly efficacious than griseofulvin, especially for the treatment of onychomycosis.

ONYCHOMYCOSIS CAUSED BY NONDERMATOPHYTIC FUNGI

A number of nondermatophytic molds, as well as *Candida* species, have been associated with nail infections (see Table 62.1). These organisms include *Scopulariopsis brevicaulis*, *Neoscytalidium dimidiatum*, *Scytalidium hyalinum*, and a variety of others, including *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium*, and *Candida* species. Among these organisms, *S. brevicaulis, Neoscytalidium* spp., and *Scytalidium* spp. are proven nail pathogens. The other fungi certainly may be the cause

of nail pathology; however, the interpretation of nail cultures with these organisms should be done with caution because they may simply represent saprophytic colonization of abnormal nail material. Criteria used to determine an etiologic role for these fungi include isolation on multiple occasions and the presence of abnormal hyphal or conidial structures on microscopic examination of nail material.

Infections caused by *S. brevicaulis*, *N. dimidiatum*, and *S. hyalinum* are notoriously difficult to treat because they are not usually susceptible to any antifungals. Partial surgical removal of infected nails, coupled with oral itraconazole or terbinafine or intensive treatment with 5% amorolfine nail lacquer or Whitfield ointment, may be useful in achieving a clinical response.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Borman, A.M., Summerbell, R.C., 2015. *Trichophyton, Microsporum, Epidermophyton*, and agents of superficial mycoses. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago.

Ghannoum, M.A., Isham, N.C., 2009. Dermatophytes and dermatophytoses. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Mendoza, N., et al., 2009. Cutaneous and subcutaneous mycoses. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Procop, G.W., Pritt, B.S., 2015. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Case Study and Questions

A 6-month-old infant developed an annular scaling rash with raised borders on the side of her face and neck.

1. Which of the following exposures is likely to be responsible for this infection?
   a. Contact with her favorite blanket
   b. Cuddling with the family cat
   c. Playing in an outside sand box
   d. Contact with "baby-safe" soap

2. Which of the following is the likely etiologic agent of the infection?
   a. *M. canis*
   b. *M. audouinii*
   c. *Candida albicans*
   d. *T. tonsurans*

3. How would you make the diagnosis?
   a. Microscopic examination of a skin scraping treated with KOH
   b. Serology
   c. Skin biopsy stained with GMS
   d. Blood culture

63 Subcutaneous Mycoses

A 40-year-old "ecotourist" was on an extended trip to the jungles of Costa Rica. During this time, she camped, climbed trees, waded in streams, slogged through mud, and endured drenching rains. She lost her shoes about 2 weeks into the "adventure" and continued to hike barefoot for another 2 weeks, during which time she sustained minor cuts and abrasions to both feet. Approximately 6 months after returning home, somewhere in the midwestern United States, she noticed mild swelling of her right foot. There was no pain, inflammation, or drainage from the foot. She comes to you for medical advice.

1. What is the differential diagnosis of this process?
2. What types of fungi might cause this infection?
3. How will you proceed with establishing the diagnosis?
4. What are the therapeutic options and the likelihood that they will be successful?

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

SPOROTRICHOSIS *(Sporothrix schenckii)*

Trigger Words

Thorn prick, rose handler's disease, sphagnum moss, lymphocutaneous nodules

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Thermally dimorphic fungus; grows as a mold at room temperature (e.g., 25° C) and as a pleomorphic yeast at 37° C and in tissue
- Infection is chronic; nodular and ulcerative lesions develop along lymphatics that drain primary site of inoculation

Epidemiology

- Sporadic, most common in warmer climates: Japan, North and South America
- Outbreaks related to forest work, mining, gardening
- Classic infection associated with traumatic inoculation of soil, vegetable, or organic matter contaminated with fungus
- Zoonotic transmission reported in armadillo hunters and in association with infected cats

Diagnosis

- Subcutaneous infection with lymphangitic spread
- Definitive diagnosis requires culture of infected pus or tissue
- In tissue, organism appears as a pleomorphic budding yeast

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Classic treatment: oral potassium iodide in saturated solution
- Itraconazole: safe, highly effective, treatment of choice
- Alternatives: terbinafine, fluconazole, posaconazole
- Local application of heat shown to be effective

EUMYCOTIC MYCETOMA *(Phaeoacremonium, Curvularia, Fusarium, Madurella, Mediacopsis, Nigrograna, Trematosphaeria, Exophiala, Falciformispora, AND Scedosporium species)*

Trigger Words

Grains, sinus tract, dematiaceous, subcutaneous, mycetoma

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Caused by a wide array of true fungi (as opposed to actinomycotic mycetomas, which are caused by bacteria)
- Localized chronic granulomatous infectious process involving cutaneous and subcutaneous tissues
- Painless subcutaneous nodule; increases slowly but progressively in size
- Local spread may breach tissue planes, destroying muscle, fascia, and bone
- Hematogenous or lymphatic spread rare

Epidemiology

- Primarily in tropical areas with low rainfall; most common in Africa and India
- Traumatic implantation into exposed body parts; foot and hand most common; back, shoulders, chest wall may also be involved
- Men more often affected than women
- Etiologic agent varies from country to country
- Mycetomas not contagious

Diagnosis

- Demonstration of grains or granules grossly visible in draining sinus tracts; may also be seen on tissue biopsy
- Microscopic examination of granules
- Culture usually needed for identification of organism

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Usually unsuccessful; poor response to most antifungal agents
- Specific antifungal therapy may slow progression: terbinafine, voriconazole, posaconazole
- Local excision usually ineffective; amputation is the only definitive treatment

ENTOMOPHTHOROMYCOSIS *(Conidiobolus coronatus AND Basidiobolus ranarum)*

Trigger Words

Entomophthoromycosis, subcutaneous, Splendore-Hoeppli, mucormycotic

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis caused by Mucormycetes of the order Entomophthorales: *Conidiobolus coronatus, Basidiobolus ranarum*
- Chronic subcutaneous form of mucormycosis
- Occurs sporadically as a result of subcutaneous implantation or inhalation of fungus present in plant debris
- *B. ranarum:* infection presents with disk-shaped, rubbery, moveable masses localized to shoulder, pelvis, hips, thighs; may become quite large and ulcerate
- *C. coronatus:* confined to rhinofacial area; facial deformity may be quite dramatic
- Angioinvasion does not occur; dissemination or involvement of deep structures rare

Epidemiology

- Both types seen most commonly in Africa, India
- Both fungi are saprophytes present in leaf and plant debris
- Rare diseases without known predisposing factors
- *B. ranarum*: infection occurs after traumatic implantation of fungus into subcutaneous tissues of thighs, buttocks, trunk; occurs mainly in children; male/female ratio 3:1
- *C. coronatus*: infection occurs after inhalation of fungal spores, with subsequent invasion of tissues of nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, facial soft tissues; predominantly seen in young adults; male/female ratio 10:1

Diagnosis

- Clinical diagnosis usually evident based on gross physical appearance
- Both types of subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis require biopsy for definitive diagnosis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Both types of infection may be treated with itraconazole; oral potassium iodide in saturated solution may be used
- Facial reconstructive surgery may be necessary in the case of *C. coronatus* infection

Many fungal pathogens can produce subcutaneous lesions as part of their disease process; however, certain fungi are commonly introduced traumatically through the skin and have a propensity to involve the deeper layers of the dermis, subcutaneous tissue, and bone. Although they may ultimately present clinically as lesions on the skin surface, they rarely spread to distant organs. In general, the clinical course is chronic and insidious; once established, the infections are refractory to most antifungal therapy. The main subcutaneous fungal infections include lymphocutaneous sporotrichosis, chromoblastomycosis, eumycotic mycetoma, subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis, and subcutaneous phaeohyphomycosis. Two additional subcutaneous fungal or fungal-like processes, lobomycosis and rhinosporidiosis, are discussed separately in Chapter 66.

The subcutaneous mycoses are clinical syndromes caused by multiple fungal etiologies (Table 63.1). The causative agents of subcutaneous mycoses are generally considered to have low pathogenic potential and are commonly isolated from soil, wood, or decaying vegetation. Exposure is largely occupational or related to hobbies (e.g., gardening, wood gathering). Infected patients generally have no underlying immune defect.

Lymphocutaneous Sporotrichosis

Lymphocutaneous sporotrichosis is caused by *Sporothrix schenckii*, which is a dimorphic fungus that is ubiquitous in soil and decaying vegetation. Recent molecular studies have demonstrated that *S. schenckii sensu lato* is a complex of numerous phylogenetic species. Apart from *S. schenckii sensu stricto*, the species *S. brasiliensis*, *S. globosa*, and *S. luriei* are also involved in human sporotrichosis. *S. brasiliensis* is highly virulent and has caused large epidemics in Brazil; transmission occurs particularly through stray cats. *S. globosa* seems to be less aggressive and is mainly prevalent in Asia, in which children are often infected, but some cases have been reported in the Americas. *S. luriei* is a rare species that only has been reported from South Africa, India, and Italy.

Infection with *Sporothrix* spp. is chronic and is characterized by nodular and ulcerative lesions that develop along lymphatics that drain the primary site of inoculation (Fig. 63.1). Dissemination to the other sites, such as bones, eyes, lungs, and the central nervous system, is extremely rare (<1% of all cases) and will not be discussed further. At room temperature, *Sporothrix* spp. grows as a mold (Fig. 63.2); at 37° C and in tissue, it is a pleomorphic yeast (Fig. 63.3, see Table 63.1).

MORPHOLOGY

Members of the *S. schenckii* complex are thermally dimorphic. Mycelial form cultures grow rapidly and have a wrinkled membranous surface that gradually becomes tan, brown, or black. Microscopically, the mold form consists of narrow, hyaline, septate hyphae that produce abundant oval conidia (2 × 3 μm to 3 × 6 μm) borne on delicate sterigmata or in a rosette or "daisy petal" formation on conidiophores (see Fig. 63.2). The yeast form consists of spheric,

TABLE 63.1 Common Agents of Subcutaneous Mycoses

Disease	Etiologic Agent(s)	Typical Morphology in Tissue	Usual Host Reaction
Sporotrichosis	*Sporothrix schenckii*, *S. brasiliensis*, *S. globosa*, and *S. luriei*	Pleomorphic, spheric to oval or cigar-shaped yeasts, 2- to 10-μm diameter with single or multiple (rare) buds See Fig. 63.3	Mixed suppurative and granulomatous Splendore-Hoeppli material surrounds fungus (asteroid body) See Fig. 63.4
Chromoblastomycosis	*Cladophialophora* (*Cladosporium*) *carrionii* *Fonsecaea pedrosoi* *Phialophora verrucosa* *Rhinocladiella* spp. *Exophiala* spp.	Large, 6- to 12-μm diameter, spheric, thick-walled, brown muriform cells (sclerotic bodies) with septations along one or two planes; pigmented hyphae may be present See Fig. 63.6	Mixed suppurative and granulomatous Pseudoepitheliomatous hyperplasia
Eumycotic mycetoma	*Phaeoacremonium* spp. *Fusarium* spp. *Aspergillus nidulans* *Scedosporium* spp. *Madurella* spp. *Exophiala jeanselmei*, among others	Granules, 0.2 to several millimeter diameter, composed of broad (2- to 6-μm), hyaline (pale granules), or dematiaceous (black granules) septate hyphae that branch and form chlamydoconidia	Suppurative with multiple abscesses, fibrosis, and sinus tracts; Splendore-Hoeppli material
Subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis	*Basidiobolus ranarum* *Conidiobolus coronatus*	Short, poorly stained hyphal fragments, 6- to 25-μm diameter, nonparallel sides, paucisseptate, random branches See Fig. 63.10	Eosinophilic abscesses and granulation tissue, Splendore-Hoeppli material around hyphae
Subcutaneous phaeohyphomycosis	*Exophiala jeanselmei* *E. dermatitidis* *Alternaria* spp. *Chaetomium* spp. *Curvularia* spp. *Phialophora* spp., among others	Pigmented (brown) hyphae, 2- to 6-μm diameter, branched or unbranched, often constricted at prominent septations, yeast forms and chlamydoconidia may be present See Fig. 63.11	Subcutaneous cystic or solid granulomas; overlying epidermis rarely affected

Modified from Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.

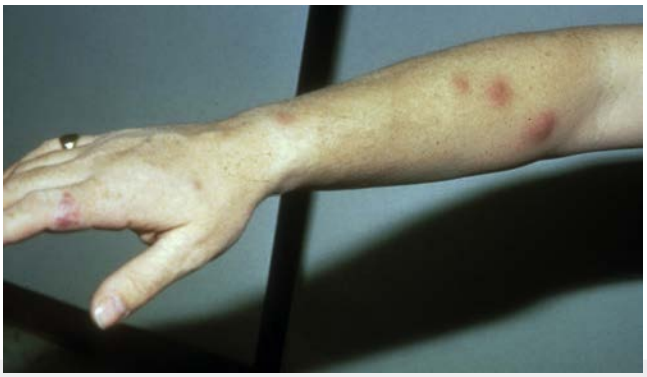


Fig. 63.1 Classic lymphocutaneous form of sporotrichosis, demonstrating a chain of subcutaneous nodules along the lymphatic drainage of the arm. (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

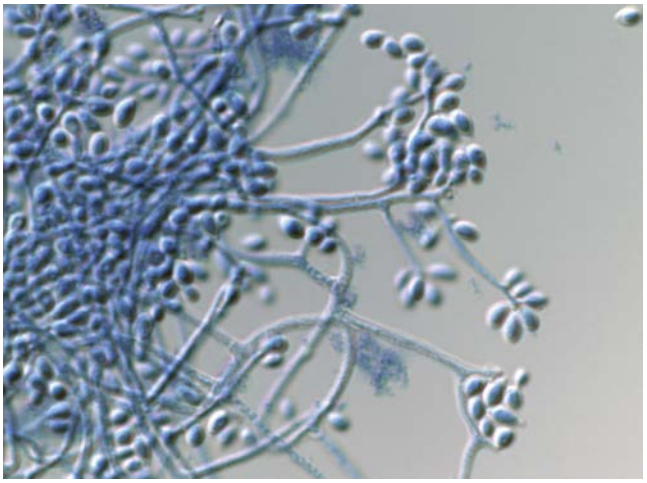


Fig. 63.2 Mold phase of *Sporothrix schenckii*.

oval, or elongated ("cigar-shaped") yeastlike cells, 2 to 10 μm in diameter, with single or (rarely) multiple buds (see Table 63.1 and Fig. 63.3). Although this is the "tissue phase" of *Sporothrix,* yeast forms are rarely seen on histopathologic examination of tissue.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Sporotrichosis is usually sporadic and is most common in warmer climates. The major known areas of current endemicity are in Japan and in North and South America, especially Mexico, Brazil, Uruguay, Peru, and Colombia. Outbreaks of infection related to forest work, mining, and gardening have occurred. Classic infection is associated with traumatic inoculation of soil or vegetable or organic matter contaminated with the fungus. Zoonotic transmission has been reported in armadillo hunters, and *S. brasiliensis* is transmitted from bites or scratches from stray cats, which are considered a primary host of this fungus. Between 1998 and 2001, a large outbreak (178 patients) of cat-transmitted sporotrichosis caused by *S. brasiliensis* was reported in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Lymphangitic sporotrichosis classically appears after local trauma to an extremity (Clinical Case 63.1). The initial site of infection appears as a small nodule, which may ulcerate. Secondary lymphatic nodules appear about 2 weeks after the appearance of the primary lesion and consist of a linear chain of painless, subcutaneous nodules that extend proximally along the course of lymphatic drainage of the primary lesion (see Fig. 63.1). With time, the nodules may ulcerate and discharge pus. Primary cutaneous lesions may remain "fixed" without

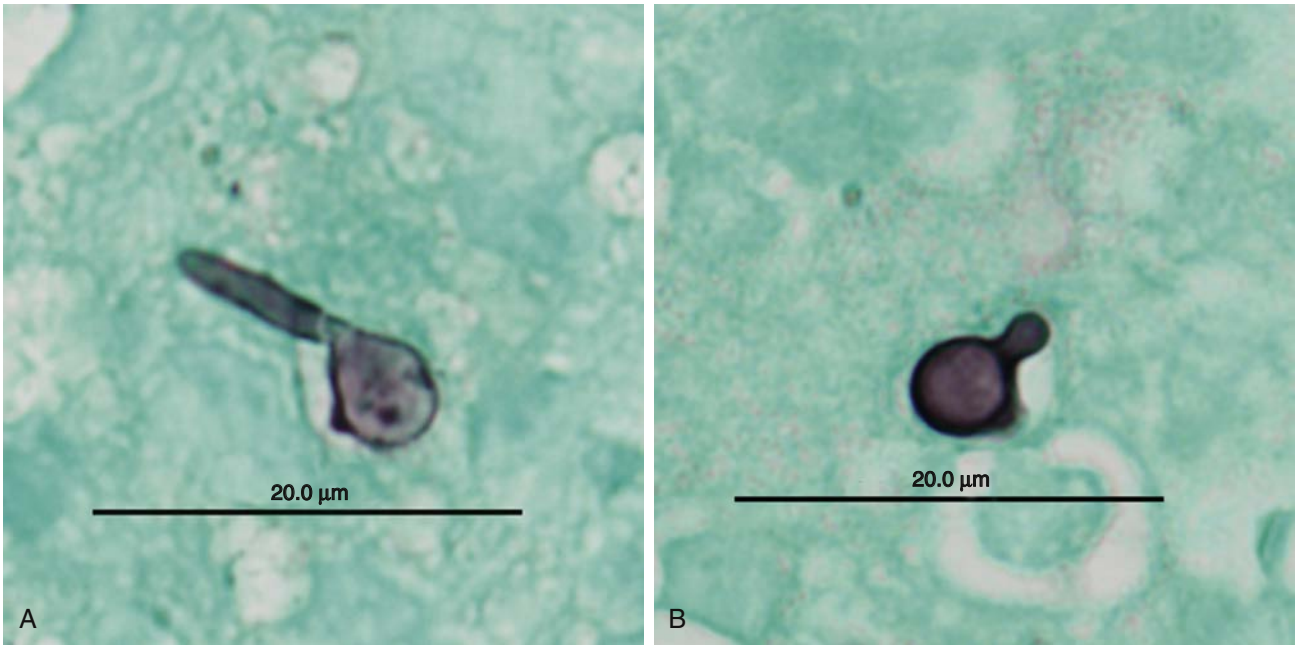


Fig. 63.3 (A and B) Lung biopsy from disseminated sporotrichosis. The yeast in (A) has a long cigar-shaped bud (Gomori methenamine silver). (From Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), 2009. Clinical Mycology. Churchill Livingstone, London, UK.)

Clinical Case 63.1 **Sporotrichosis**

Haddad and colleagues (*Med Mycol* 40:425–427, 2002) described a case of lymphangitic sporotrichosis after injury with a fish spine. The patient was an 18-year-old male fisherman, resident in a rural area of São Paulo state in Brazil, who wounded his third left finger on the dorsal spines of a fish that was netted during his work. Subsequently, the area around the injury developed edema, ulceration, pain, and purulent secretion. The primary care physician interpreted the lesion as a pyogenic bacterial process and prescribed a 7-day course of oral tetracycline. No improvement was noted, and the therapy was changed to cephalexin, with similar results.

At examination 15 days after the accident, the patient presented with an oozing ulcer and nodules on the dorsum of the left hand and arm, forming an ascending nodular lymphangitic pattern. The diagnostic hypotheses considered were localized lymphangitic sporotrichosis, sporotrichoid leishmaniasis, and atypical mycobacteriosis *(Mycobacterium marinum)*. A histopathologic examination of material from the lesion revealed a chronic ulcerated granulomatous pattern of inflammation with intraepidermal microabscesses. No acid-fast bacilli or fungal elements were found. Culture of biopsy material on Sabouraud agar grew a mold characterized by septate, thin hyphae with conidia arranged in a rosette at the end of the conidiophores, consistent with *Sporothrix schenckii*. An intradermal reaction to sporotrichin also was positive. The patient was treated with oral potassium iodide, with clinical resolution at 2 months of therapy.

The clinical presentation in this case was typical of sporotrichosis; however, the source of the infection (fish spine) was unusual. Despite the greater incidence of infection by *M. marinum* among fishermen and aquarists, sporotrichosis must be remembered when these workers show lesions in an ascending lymphangitic pattern after being injured by contact with fish.

lymphangitic spread. Clinically, these lesions appear nodular, verrucous, or ulcerative and in general may resemble a malignant process such as squamous cell carcinoma. Other infectious causes of lymphangitic and ulcerative lesions that must be ruled out include mycobacterial and nocardial infections.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Definitive diagnosis usually requires culture of infected pus or tissue. *Sporothrix* spp. grow within 2 to 5 days on a variety of mycologic media and appears as a budding yeast at 35° C and as a mold at 25° C (see Figs. 63.2 and 63.3). Laboratory confirmation may be established by converting the mycelial growth to the yeast form by subculture at 37° C or immunologically through the use of the exoantigen test. In tissue, the organism appears as a 2 to 10 μm pleomorphic budding yeast (see Fig. 63.3) but is rarely observed in human lesions. The appearance of eosinophilic **Splendore-Hoeppli** material surrounding yeast cells (asteroid body) may be helpful (Fig. 63.4), but is also seen in other types of infection (see Table 63.1). A serologic test is available commercially but is rarely used in the diagnosis of sporotrichosis.

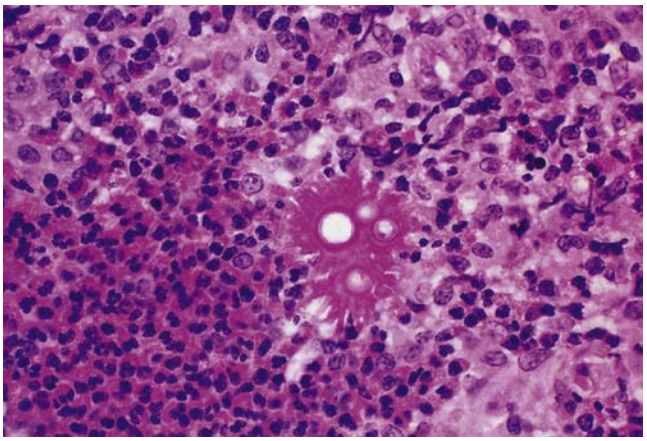


Fig. 63.4 Asteroid body in sporotrichosis. The spheric yeastlike cells are surrounded by Splendore-Hoeppli material (hematoxylin and eosin, ×160). (From Connor, D.H., Chandler, F.W., Schwartz. D.A., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

TREATMENT

The classic treatment for lymphocutaneous sporotrichosis is oral potassium iodide in saturated solution. The efficacy and low cost of this medication makes it a favored option, especially in resource-poor countries; however, it must be given daily over 3 to 4 weeks and has frequent adverse effects (nausea, salivary gland enlargement). Itraconazole has been shown to be safe and highly effective at low doses and is the current treatment of choice. Patients who do not respond may be given a higher dose of itraconazole, terbinafine, or potassium iodide. Fluconazole or posaconazole may be used if the patient cannot tolerate these other agents. Spontaneous remission is rare but was seen in 13 of 178 cases in Brazil. The local application of heat has also been shown to be effective.

Chromoblastomycosis

Chromoblastomycosis (chromomycosis) is a chronic fungal infection affecting the skin and subcutaneous tissues. It is characterized by the development of slow-growing verrucous nodules or plaques (Fig. 63.5). Chromoblastomycosis is most commonly seen in the tropics, in which the warm, moist environment, coupled with the lack of protective footwear and clothing, predisposes individuals to direct inoculation with infected soil or organic matter. The organisms most often associated with chromoblastomycosis are pigmented (dematiaceous) fungi of the genera *Fonsecaea*, *Exophiala*, *Cladosporium*, *Cladophialophora*, *Rhinocladiella*, and *Phialophora* (see Table 63.1).

MORPHOLOGY

The fungi that cause chromoblastomycosis are all dematiaceous (naturally pigmented) molds but are morphologically diverse, and most are capable of producing several different forms when grown in culture. For example, *Exophiala* spp. may grow as a mold and produce conidia-bearing cells called **annelids** and as a yeastlike form that may appear in freshly isolated colonies. Although the basic form of these organisms is a pigmented septate mold, the different

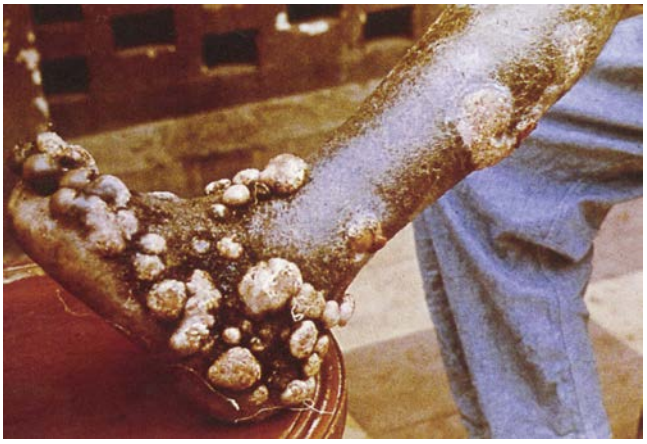


Fig. 63.5 Chromoblastomycosis of the foot and leg. (From Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

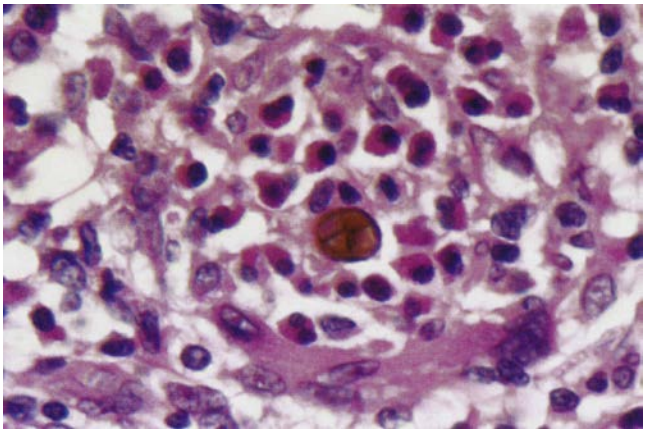


Fig. 63.6 Brown-pigmented muriform cell, or Medlar body, of chromoblastomycosis (hematoxylin and eosin, ×250). (From Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

mechanisms of sporulation produced in culture makes specific identification difficult. Specific identification may require nucleic acid sequence analysis.

In contrast to the diverse morphology seen in culture, in tissue the fungi that cause chromoblastomycosis all characteristically form muriform cells (sclerotic bodies, **Medlar bodies**) that are chestnut brown because of the melanin in their cell walls (Fig. 63.6; see Table 63.1). Muriform cells divide by internal septation and appear as cells with vertical and horizontal lines within the same or different planes (see Fig. 63.6). In addition to muriform cells, pigmented hyphae also may be present. The fungal cells may be free within the tissue, but they are most often contained within macrophages or giant cells.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Chromoblastomycosis generally affects individuals working in rural areas of the tropics. The etiologic agents grow on woody plants and in the soil. Most infections have been in men and involve legs and arms, which is likely the result of occupational exposure. Other body sites include shoulders, neck, trunk, buttocks, face, and ears. Three fungal species of the order Chaetothyriales account for virtually all cases of chromoblastomycosis: *C. carrionii, F. pedrosoi,* and *P. verrucosa.*

Local climatic factors may influence the distribution of different infections and different etiologic agents. For example, in Madagascar, infections caused by *F. pedrosoi* are seen in areas of high rainfall (200 to 300 cm annually), whereas in the same island, infections caused by *C. carrionii* occur in areas of low rainfall (50 to 60 cm annually). In the Americas, *F. pedrosoi* is the principal cause of chromoblastomycoses, and the lesions most often involve the lower extremities. In contrast, in Australia, the most common cause is *C. carrionii*, and the lesions are most frequently on the upper limbs, especially the hands. Infections by *P. verrucosa* mainly occur in tropical climatic zones, whereas *R. aquaspersa* is a rare agent of chromoblastomycosis in Latin America. There are no reports of person-to-person transmission of the agents of chromoblastomycosis.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Chromoblastomycosis tends to be chronic, pruritic, progressive, indolent, and resistant to treatment (Clinical Case 63.2). In most instances, patients do not present until the infection is well established. Early lesions are small, warty papules and usually enlarge slowly. There are different morphologic forms of the disease, ranging from verrucous lesions to flat plaques. Established infections appear as multiple, large, warty, "cauliflower-like" growths that are usually clustered within the same region (see Fig. 63.5). Satellite lesions may occur secondary to autoinoculation. Plaque-like lesions often show central scarring as they enlarge. Ulceration and cyst formation may occur. Large lesions are hyperkeratotic, and the limb is grossly distorted because of fibrosis and secondary lymphedema (see Fig. 63.5).

Clinical Case 63.2 **Chromoblastomycosis**

Marques and associates (*Med Mycol* 42:261–261, 2004) described a 52-year-old farmer from Brazil who presented with complaints of darkly pigmented pruritic skin lesions. The problem had appeared 2 years earlier and had progressed slowly since then. The patient was unaware of previous trauma but recalled an insect bite on his left arm. Initially, the lesion that developed at this site was a small, raised, erythematous papule. Later, a new crop of lesions appeared on the left leg and, more recently, on the forehead and left side of the face. Physical examination revealed extensive lesions in scaly plaques situated at different sites on the face, arm, and leg. Direct KOH examination of biopsies of the lesions showed numerous pigmented, bilaterally dividing, rounded, sclerotic cells (Medlar bodies), confirming the clinical diagnosis of chromoblastomycosis. Cultures of the biopsies grew a darkly pigmented mold that was identified on the basis of characteristic conidiation as *Rhinocladiella aquaspersa*. The lesions improved with ketoconazole therapy, with decreasing pruritic symptoms. Unfortunately, the patient was lost to follow-up. Chromoblastomycosis caused by *R. aquaspersa* is relatively uncommon. Furthermore, this case is unusual in that the lesions were dispersed over three different anatomic regions. Of note, the occurrence of facial lesions is very unusual.

Secondary bacterial infection also may occur and contribute to regional lymphadenitis, lymph stasis, and eventual elephantiasis.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical presentation (see Fig. 63.5); histopathologic findings of chestnut-brown, muriform cells (see Fig. 63.6); and isolation in culture of one of the causal fungi (see Table 63.1) confirm the diagnosis. Scrapings obtained from the surface of the warty lesions on which small dark dots are observed may result in the demonstration of the characteristic cells when mounted in 20% potassium hydroxide (KOH). Biopsy specimens stained with H&E (see Chapter 60) will also show the organism present in the epidermis or in microabscesses containing macrophages and giant cells. The inflammatory reaction is both suppurative and granulomatous, with dermal fibrosis and **pseudoepitheliomatous hyperplasia.** The organisms are easily cultured from the lesions, although identification may be difficult. There are no serologic tests available for chromoblastomycosis.

TREATMENT

Treatment with specific antifungal therapy is often ineffective because of the advanced stage of infection on presentation. The drugs that appear to be most effective are itraconazole and terbinafine. More recently, posaconazole has been used with modest success. These agents are often combined with flucytosine in refractory cases. In an effort to improve the response to treatment, attempts are often made to shrink larger lesions with local heat or cryotherapy before administering antifungal agents. Because of the risk of recurrences developing within the scar, surgery is not indicated. Squamous cell carcinomas may develop in long-standing lesions, and those with atypical areas or fleshy outgrowths should be biopsied to rule out this complication.

Eumycotic Mycetoma

Eumycotic mycetomas are those caused by true fungi, as opposed to actinomycotic mycetomas, which are caused by aerobic actinomycetes (bacteria). This section will deal only with the eumycotic mycetomas.

As with chromoblastomycosis, most eumycotic mycetomas are seen in the tropics. A mycetoma is defined clinically as a localized, chronic, granulomatous, infectious process involving cutaneous and subcutaneous tissues. It is characterized by the formation of multiple granulomas and abscesses that contain large aggregates of fungal hyphae known as **granules** or **grains.** These grains contain cells that have marked modifications of internal and external structure, ranging from reduplications of the cell wall to the formation of a hard, cement-like extracellular matrix. The abscesses drain externally through the skin, often with extrusion of granules. The process may be quite extensive and deforming, with destruction of muscle, fascia, and bone. The etiologic agents of eumycotic mycetoma encompass a wide range of fungi, including *Phaeoacremonium*, *Curvularia*, *Fusarium*, *Madurella*, *Mediacopsis, Nigrograna, Trematosphaeria, Exophiala*, *Falciformispora,* and *Scedosporium* species (see Table 63.1).

MORPHOLOGY

The granules of eumycotic mycetomas are composed of septate fungal hyphae that are 2 to 6 μm or greater in width and are either dematiaceous (black grain) or hyaline (pale or white grain), depending on the etiologic agent (Fig. 63.7). The hyphae are frequently distorted and bizarre in form and size. Large, spheric, thick-walled chlamydoconidia are often present. The hyphae may be embedded in an amorphous cement-like substance. Splendore-Hoeppli material often interdigitates among the mycelial elements at the periphery of the granule. Eumycotic granules may be differentiated from actinomycotic granules based on morphologic (branched filaments versus septate hyphae and chlamydoconidia) and staining (gram-positive beaded rods versus PAS- and GMS-positive hyphae) characteristics (see Chapter 60). Culture is usually necessary for definitive identification of the fungus (or actinomycete) involved.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Mycetomas are primarily seen in tropical areas with low rainfall. Eumycotic mycetomas are more frequent in Africa and the Indian subcontinent but also may be seen in Brazil, Venezuela, and the Middle East. Climate has a definite influence on the prevalence and distribution of mycetoma. Rivers that flood each year during the wet season in many countries of Africa and Asia influence the distribution of the causal agents. Rainfall also aids the spread of the etiologic agents on organic matter. All patients are infected from sources in nature via traumatic percutaneous implantation of the etiologic agent into exposed parts of the body. The foot and hand are most common, but back, shoulders, and chest-wall infections are also seen. Men are more often affected than women. Mycetomas are not contagious.

The fungi that cause eumycotic mycetomas differ from country to country, and the agents that are common in one region are rarely reported in others. For example, *M. mycetomatis* is limited to semiarid to arid climates, whereas *Falciformispora* species are found in the rain forest. Locally acquired mycetomata in temperate climates invariably are caused by *S. apiospermum* complex.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Similar to chromoblastomycosis, patients with eumycotic mycetoma most commonly present with long-standing infection. The earliest lesion is a small, painless, subcutaneous nodule or plaque that increases slowly but progressively in size. As the mycetoma develops, the affected area gradually enlarges and becomes disfigured as a result of chronic inflammation and fibrosis. With time, sinus tracts appear on the skin surface and drain serosanguineous fluid that often contains grossly visible granules. The infection commonly breaches tissue planes and destroys muscle and bone locally. Hematogenous or lymphatic spread from a primary focus to distant sites or viscera is extremely rare.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The key to the diagnosis of eumycotic mycetoma is the demonstration of grains or granules. Grains may be grossly visible

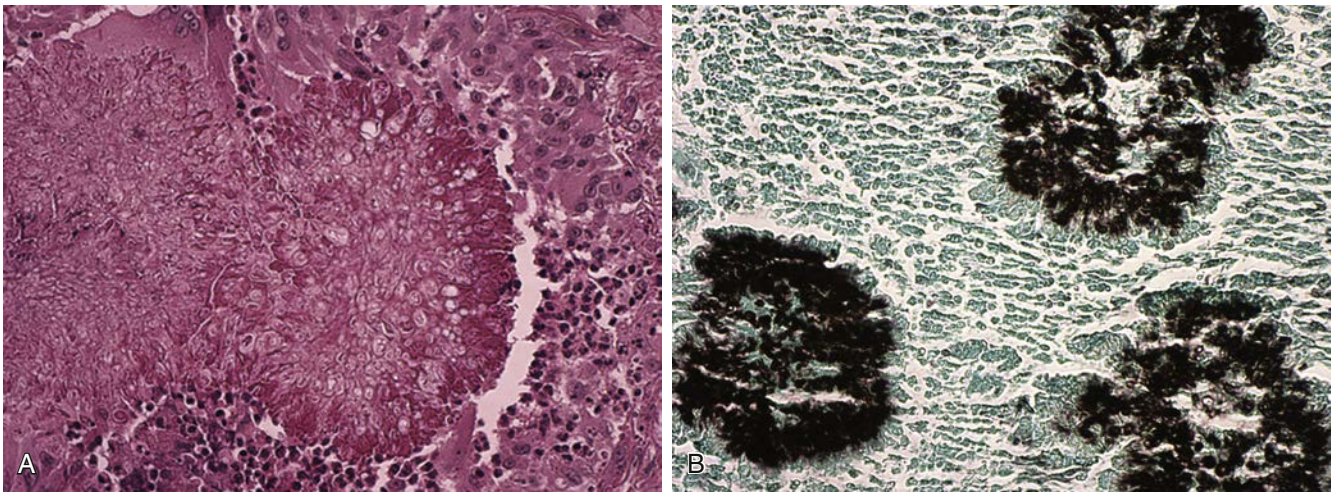


Fig. 63.7 (A) Mycetoma granule of *Curvularia geniculata*. (B) Compact dematiaceous hyphae and chlamydoconidia embedded in cement-like substance.

in draining sinus tracts or may be expressed onto a glass slide. Material may also be obtained by deep surgical biopsy.

Grains can be visualized microscopically by mounting in 20% KOH. The hyphae are usually clearly visible, as is the presence or absence of pigmentation. Grains can be washed and then cultured or fixed and sectioned for histopathology.

Grains are easily visualized in tissue stained with H&E (see Fig. 63.7). Special stains such as PAS and GMS may also be helpful. Although the color, shape, size, and microscopic morphology may be characteristic of a specific causal agent, culture is usually necessary for definitive identification of the organism. Most organisms will grow on standard mycologic medium; however, inclusion of an antibiotic such as penicillin may be useful to inhibit contaminating bacteria, which may overgrow the fungus.

TREATMENT

Treatment of eumycotic mycetoma is usually unsuccessful. Response of the various etiologic agents to amphotericin B, ketoconazole, or itraconazole is variable and often poor, although such therapy may slow the course of infection. Promising treatment responses have recently been reported for terbinafine, voriconazole, and posaconazole. Local excision is usually ineffective or not possible, and amputation is the only definitive treatment. Because these infections are usually slowly progressive and may be slowed further by specific antifungal therapy, the decision to amputate should take into account the rate of progression, the symptomatology, the availability of adequate prosthetics, and the individual circumstances of the patient. For all of these reasons, it is imperative to differentiate eumycotic mycetoma from actinomycotic mycetoma. Medical therapy is usually effective in cases of actinomycotic mycetoma.

Subcutaneous Entomophthoromycosis

Subcutaneous **entomophthoromycosis,** also known as subcutaneous mucormycosis, is caused by Mucormycetes of the orders *Entomophthorales* (*C. coronatus*) and *Basidiobolales* (*B. ranarum*) (see Table 63.1). Both fungi cause a chronic subcutaneous form of mucormycosis that occurs sporadically as a result of traumatic implantation of the fungus present in plant debris in tropical environments. They differ in that they cause infections with different anatomic locations: *B. ranarum* causes subcutaneous infection of the proximal limbs in children, whereas *C. coronatus* infection is localized to the facial area, predominantly in adults (Fig. 63.8 and 63.9).

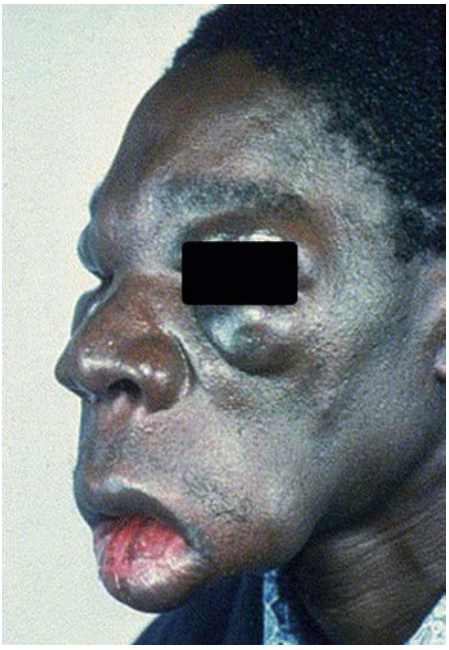


Fig. 63.8 Subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis caused by *Conidiobolus coronatus.* (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

MORPHOLOGY

The appearance of the agents of subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis in tissue differs from that of the mucoraceous

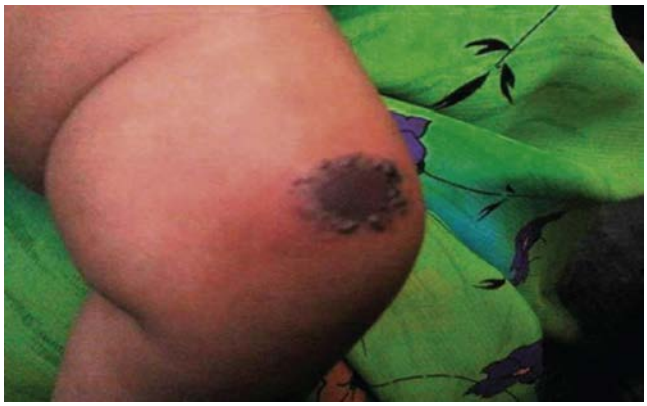


Fig. 63.9 Subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis caused by *Basidiobolus ranarum*. The right thigh is extensively swollen and indurated. (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

Mucormycetes. The hyphal elements are sparse and often appear as hyphal fragments surrounded by intensely eosinophilic Splendore-Hoeppli material (Fig. 63.10). The inflammatory response is granulomatous and rich in eosinophils. The hyphal fragments are thin walled and poorly staining. Although septae are infrequent, they are more prominent than those seen with Mucoraceae. The hyphae of the Entomophthoromycota are not angioinvasive.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Both types of subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis are seen most commonly in Africa and, to a lesser extent, in India. Infection caused by *B. ranarum* has also been reported from the Middle East, Asia, and Europe, whereas that caused by *C. coronatus* has been reported from Latin America, Africa, and India. Both fungi are saprophytes that are present in leaf and plant debris. *B. ranarum* also has been found in the intestinal contents of small reptiles and amphibians. Both are rare diseases without known predisposing factors (e.g., acidosis or immunodeficiency). Infection caused by *B. ranarum* is thought to occur after traumatic implantation of the fungus into the subcutaneous tissues of the thighs, buttocks, and trunk. This form of subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis occurs mainly in children (80% younger than age 20 years) with a male:female ratio of 3:1. *C. coronatus* infections occur after inhalation of the fungal spores, which then invade the tissues of the nasal cavity, the paranasal sinuses, and facial soft tissues. There is a 10:1 male:female ratio, and the disease is seen predominantly among young adults. Infection among children is rare.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Patients infected with *B. ranarum* have disk-shaped, rubbery, movable masses that may be quite large and are localized to the shoulder, pelvis, hips, and thighs (see Fig. 63.9). The masses may expand locally and eventually ulcerate. Dissemination or involvement of deeper structures is rare. Sporadic invasive infections with gastrointestinal (GI) involvement in adults and children have been described worldwide. A cluster of GI basidiobolomycosis has also been reported in Arizona; such a presentation may mimic GI malignancy.

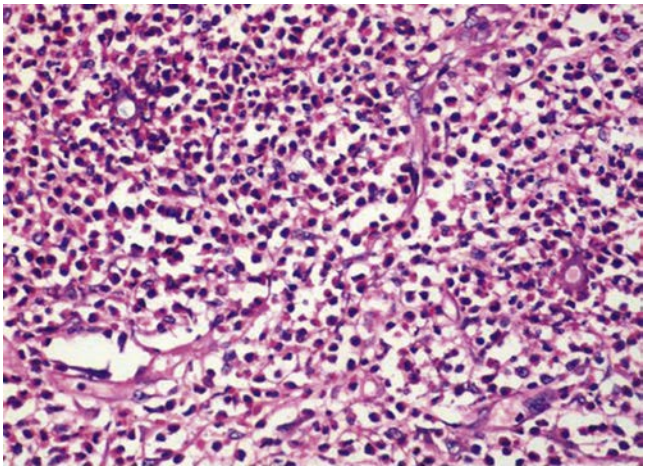


Fig. 63.10 Subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis. Broad hyphal fragments surrounded by eosinophilic Splendore-Hoeppli material (hematoxylin and eosin, ×160). (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

C. coronatus infection is confined to the rhinofacial area and often does not come to medical attention until there is a noticeable swelling of the upper lip or face (see Fig. 63.8). The swelling is firm and painless and may progress slowly to involve the nasal bridge and the upper and lower face, including the orbit. The facial deformity can be quite dramatic; however, because of the lack of angioinvasion, intracranial extension does not occur.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Both types of subcutaneous entomophthoromycosis require biopsy for diagnosis, despite the characteristic clinical features of the infections. The histopathologic picture is the same for both organisms (see Fig. 63.10) and is marked by focal clusters of inflammation, with eosinophils and typical mucormycotic hyphae often surrounded by eosinophilic Splendore-Hoeppli material. The organisms can be cultured from clinical material on standard mycologic medium.

TREATMENT

Surgical excision, potassium iodide, and prolonged azole (usually itraconazole) therapy have been used successfully for infection caused by *Basidiobolus*. For infections caused by *Conidiobolus,* potassium iodide was historically used with variable results. Prolonged oral azole therapy should now be used and is successful. More recently, a combination of itraconazole and potassium iodide has provided encouraging results in a small series of cases, some of which achieved complete resolution of the infection. Facial reconstructive surgery may be necessary in the case of *Conidiobolus* infection because extensive fibrosis remains after eradication of the fungus.

Subcutaneous Phaeohyphomycosis

Phaeohyphomycosis is a term used to describe a heterogeneous array of fungal infections caused by pigmented, or

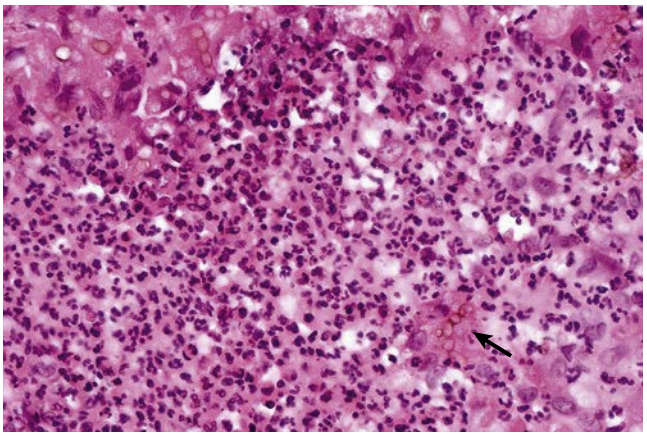


Fig. 63.11 Subcutaneous phaeohyphomycosis. Dematiaceous yeastlike cells and septate hyphae of *Exophiala spinifera* (hematoxylin and eosin, ×250). (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

dematiaceous, fungi which are present in tissue as irregular hyphae (Fig. 63.11) rather than the sclerotic muriform cells seen in chromoblastomycosis (see Table 63.1 and Fig. 63.6). These infections may be caused by a wide range of fungi, all of which exist in nature as saprophytes of soil, wood, and decaying vegetation. Phaeohyphomycotic processes may be superficial, subcutaneous, or deeply invasive or disseminated. The superficial (see Chapter 62) and deeply invasive (see Chapter 65) forms are discussed in their respective chapters. The subcutaneous form is discussed in this section.

MORPHOLOGY

The agents of subcutaneous phaeohyphomycosis are numerous and diverse (see Table 63.1), but they all grow as black molds in culture and appear as dark-walled, irregular, hyphal and yeastlike forms in tissue (see Fig. 63.11). The hyphae vary from 2 to 6 μm wide and may be branched or septate and are often constricted at the point of septation. Bizarre, thick-walled, vesicular swellings that may be as large as 25 μm in diameter may be present, as well as budding yeastlike structures. Cell wall pigmentation ranges from light to dark and may require special stains, such as the Fontana-Masson melanin stain, to confirm the dematiaceous nature of the fungus. In culture, the different fungi grow as black or brown molds and are identified by their characteristic mode of sporulation.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

More than 20 different dematiaceous fungi have been cited as causes of subcutaneous phaeohyphomycosis. The most frequent etiologic agents have been *Exophiala, Alternaria*, *Curvularia*, and *Phaeoacremonium* spp. (see Table 63.1). Because these fungi are found in soil and plant debris, the route of infection is thought to be secondary to traumatic implantation of the fungus. Indeed, wood splinters have been found in histopathologic material, suggesting the mode of inoculation and possibly that the formation of the characteristic phaeohyphomycotic cyst is a reaction to implantation. There is no explanation for why some organisms produce phaeohyphomycotic cysts and others develop into mycetomas. Certain etiologic agents, such as *P. verrucosa*, may cause both types of infection.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Most commonly, subcutaneous phaeohyphomycosis presents as a solitary inflammatory cyst (Clinical Case 63.3). The lesions generally occur on the feet and legs, although the hands and other body sites may be involved. The lesions grow slowly and expand over a period of months or years. They may be firm or fluctuant and are usually painless. If located near a joint, they may be mistaken for a synovial cyst and may become large enough to interfere with movements. Other manifestations include the formation of pigmented plaquelike lesions that are indurated but nontender.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is made on surgical excision of the cyst. On histopathologic examination, the appearance is of an

Clinical Case 63.3 **Phaeohyphomycosis in a Renal Transplant Patient**

Marques and associates (*Med Mycol* 44:671–676, 2006) described a case of subcutaneous phaeohyphomycosis in a renal transplant recipient. The patient was a 49-year-old diabetic man who for 5 years had been given immunosuppressive therapy with prednisone and cyclosporine A after kidney transplantation. He presented with a 1-year history of draining foot lesions. The patient denied any history of local trauma but had been working in rural activities at the time of the initial complaint. He had been treated for presumed bacterial infection, without response. Dermatologic examination revealed two confluent erythematous cystic tumors on the dorsum of the left foot, with drainage points emitting a serosanguineous secretion. A local computed tomography scan showed only circumscribed hypodense lesions. A needle aspiration and a large biopsy were obtained to confirm the presumed diagnosis of phaeohyphomycosis. Histopathologic examination revealed intense inflammatory infiltrates and rare hyphal elements. Culture of the biopsy material revealed a slow-growing mold that eventually demonstrated a beige to gray-brown coloration. The organism was eventually identified as *Phaeoacremonium parasiticum* by a combination of morphology and molecular identification methods. The patient was treated with itraconazole coupled with local irrigation and a decrease in the dosing of cyclosporine A and achieved a satisfactory response.

This case illustrates an apparent trend for immunocompromised organ transplant patients with localized *P. parasiticum* infections to have acquired their infections without recognized trauma. It is unclear whether such infections are acquired via minor skin fissures or via inhalation or ingestion of an infectious particle, with subsequent translocation to subcutaneous capillary beds, in which slightly diminished temperature or other local conditions may favor growth.

inflammatory cyst with a fibrous capsule, granulomatous reaction, and central necrosis. Individual and clustered dematiaceous fungal elements are seen within giant cells and extracellularly amid the necrotic debris (see Fig. 63.11). In general, the pigmentation is easily seen on examination of H&E-stained tissue. The organisms can be grown in culture and identified by their pattern of sporulation. Molecular identification of most species is currently performed by the sequencing of ribosomal genes and comparison with dedicated databases.

TREATMENT

The main treatment is surgical excision. Plaquelike lesions may not be amenable to this approach and generally respond to treatment with itraconazole, with or without concomitant flucytosine. Posaconazole, voriconazole, and terbinafine may also be active against these groups of fungi.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Ahmed, A.O.A., et al., 2015. Fungi causing eumycotic mycetoma. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Basto de Lima Barros, M., et al., 2004. Cat-transmitted sporotrichosis epidemic in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil: description of a series of cases. Clin. Infect. Dis. 38, 529–535.

Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago.

Connor, D.H., Chandler, F.W., Schwartz, D.A., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.

Garcia-Hermoso, D., et al., 2015. Agents of systemic and subcutaneous mucormycosis and entomophthoromycosis. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Guarro, J., De Hoog, G.S., 2015. *Curvularia, Exophiala, Scedosporium, Sporothrix*, and other melanized fungi. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Kauffman, C.A., et al., 2007. Clinical practice guidelines for the management of sporotrichosis: 2007 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin. Infect. Dis. 45, 1255.

Procop, G.W., Pritt, B.S., 2015. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Case Study and Questions

A woman developed suppurating, nodular skin lesions on the thenar aspect of her hand, extending up her forearm, after pruning rose bushes in her garden.

1. Which of the following is the likely etiologic agent of this infection?
   a. *B. ranarum*
   b. *S. apiospermum*
   c. *Sporothrix* spp.
   d. *Phaeoacremonium* spp.

2. How would you go about diagnosing the infection?

3. Which of the following antifungal agents may be used to treat this infection?
   a. Fluconazole
   b. Itraconazole
   c. Flucytosine
   d. Griseofulvin

64 Systemic Mycoses Caused by Dimorphic Fungi

Jane and Joan were two avid "outdoors persons" in their mid-30s. In the past 5 years, they had been spelunking in southern Missouri, backpacking in northern Wisconsin, and camping in Arizona. Most recently, they had been renovating an old farmhouse in rural Iowa, and in the process had to tear down an old chicken coop that was attached to the back of the house. About 1 week into the process, they both suffered from a flulike illness, and Jane developed a cough and shortness of breath. They went to the family practice clinic to get "checked out." At the clinic, Joan appeared fine, but Jane was noted to be quite short of breath and appeared ill. The doctor thought it would be a good idea to get a chest radiograph for Jane. Joan got one too, just in case. Jane's chest radiograph showed diffuse bilateral pneumonia. Although Joan's radiograph did not show pneumonia, it was noted that she had a solitary nodule in the right upper lobe.

1. What dimorphic fungal pathogens were Jane and Joan exposed to?
2. What constitutes a dimorphic fungus?
3. Aside from dimorphism, what feature is common to all endemic mycoses?
4. Describe the life cycles of the dimorphic endemic pathogens.
5. What do you think is the cause of Jane's pneumonia? How would you make the diagnosis?
6. How would you treat her pneumonia?
7. What do you think accounts for Joan's lung nodule? How would you make the diagnosis? How would you treat her?

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

BLASTOMYCOSIS (*BLASTOMYCES DERMATITIDIS* AND *B. GILCHRISTII*)

Trigger Words

Mississippi River Valley, broad-based budding yeast, healthy and immunocompromised, granuloma

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Thermally dimorphic fungus: large nonencapsulated budding yeast cells in tissue and in culture at 37° C; mold colonies form in culture at 25° C
- Usual route of infection is inhalation of conidia
- Severity of symptoms and course of disease depends on extent of exposure and immune status of exposed individual; most are asymptomatic
- Classic form of blastomycosis: chronic cutaneous involvement

Epidemiology

- Ecologic niche: decaying organic matter
- Area of endemicity: southeastern and southcentral states, especially bordering Ohio and Mississippi river basins; Midwest states and Canadian provinces bordering Great Lakes; and an area in New York and Canada along the St. Lawrence River
- Outbreaks of infection have been associated with occupational or recreational contact with soil

Diagnosis

- Microscopic detection of fungus in tissue or other clinical material, with confirmation by culture
- Antigen detection and PCR

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Pulmonary blastomycosis in immunocompromised patients and those with progressive pulmonary disease should be treated
- All patients with evidence of hematogenous dissemination require antifungal therapy
- Lipid formulation of amphotericin B: treatment of choice for meningeal disease and other life-threatening presentations
- Mild or moderate disease: itraconazole; fluconazole, posaconazole, or voriconazole may be substituted for itraconazole

COCCIDIOIDOMYCOSIS (*COCCIDIOIDES IMMITIS* AND *C. POSADASII*)

Trigger Words

Valley fever, coccidioidal granuloma, arthroconidia, spherule, skin test, precipitin test

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Coccidioidomycosis caused by two indistinguishable species: *C. immitis* and *C. posadasii*
- *C. immitis* is localized to California; *C. posadasii* causes most infections outside California
- Disease caused by inhalation of infectious arthroconidia
- Asymptomatic or subclinical, self-limited flulike illness, acute and chronic pulmonary disease, single or multisystem dissemination
- Dimorphic fungi; endosporulating spherule in tissue, mold in culture at 25° C and in nature

Epidemiology

- Endemic to U.S. southwestern desert, northern Mexico, scattered areas of Central and South America
- Organism found in soil; growth in environment enhanced by bat and rodent droppings; cycles of drought/rain enhance organism dispersion
- Persons ≥65 years and those with HIV infection disproportionately affected
- Risk of disseminated disease highest in certain ethnic groups (Filipino, African American, Native American, Hispanic), males (9:1), women in third trimester of pregnancy, individuals with cellular immune deficiency, persons at extremes of age

Diagnosis

- Histopathologic examination of tissue or other clinical material, isolation of fungus in culture, serology
- Histopathologic examination that reveals endosporulating spherules in sputum, exudates, or tissue is sufficient to establish the diagnosis
- Culture at 25° C takes days and poses risk to laboratory workers; all work with molds should be performed in suitable biosafety cabinet
- Serology (antigen and antibody) may be useful for initial screening, confirmation, or prognostic evaluation

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Most individuals with primary infection do not require therapy
- For those with concurrent risk factors or a more severe presentation: lipid formulation of amphotericin B followed by an oral azole as maintenance therapy (severe disease)
- Chronic cavitary pulmonary disease: azole for at least 1 year
- Nonmeningeal extrapulmonary disseminated infections: oral azole
- Meningeal coccidioidomycosis: fluconazole; itraconazole, posaconazole or voriconazole are secondary choices

HISTOPLASMOSIS (*HISTOPLASMA CAPSULATUM*)

Trigger Words

Intracellular yeasts, bird and bat droppings, chicken coop, caves, guano, granulomas

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Histoplasmosis caused by two varieties of *H. capsulatum*
- *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum:* causes pulmonary and disseminated infections
- *H. capsulatum* var. *duboisii:* causes predominantly skin and bone lesions
- Disease caused by inhalation of infectious microconidia
- Severity of symptoms and course of disease depend on extent of exposure and immune status of infected individual; most are asymptomatic, self-limited; flu-like illness also occurs
- Thermally dimorphic fungus: hyaline mold in nature and in culture at 25° C, budding yeast in tissue (intracellular) and in culture at 37° C

Epidemiology

- *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum:* localized to Ohio and Mississippi river valleys; occurs throughout Mexico and Central and South America
- *H. capsulatum* var. *duboisii:* confined to tropical Africa (e.g., Gabon, Uganda, Kenya)
- Found in soil with high nitrogen content (e.g., areas contaminated with bird or bat droppings)
- Outbreaks of disease have been associated with exposure to bird roosts, caves, and decaying buildings or urban renewal projects involving excavation and demolition
- Immunocompromised individuals and children most prone to develop symptomatic disease
- Reactivation of disease and dissemination common among immunosuppressed individuals, especially those with AIDS

Diagnosis

- Direct microscopy, culture of clinical material, serology (antigen and antibody), β-D-glucan, and PCR have been useful
- Yeast phase of organism can be detected in sputum, bronchoalveolar lavage fluid, peripheral blood films, bone marrow, and tissue stained with Giemsa, GMS, or PAS stains
- Cultures should be handled in a biosafety cabinet
- Serologic diagnosis includes tests for antibody and antigen

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Severe acute infections: lipid formulation of amphotericin B followed by oral itraconazole
- Chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis: lipid formulation of amphotericin B followed by itraconazole
- Disseminated infection: lipid formulation of amphotericin B followed by itraconazole

PARACOCCIDIOIDOMYCOSIS (*PARACOCCIDIOIDES BRASILIENSIS* AND *P. LUTZII*)

Trigger Words

Pilot's wheel, South American blastomycosis, ulcer, multiple buds

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Thermally dimorphic fungus: slowly growing mold phase in nature and at 25° C, yeast phase (variable sized with single or multiple buds) in tissue and in culture at 37° C
- Usual route of infection is inhalation or possible traumatic inoculation of conidia or hyphal fragments
- Paracoccidioidomycosis may be subclinical or progressive with acute or chronic pulmonary forms or acute, subacute, or chronic disseminated forms

Epidemiology

- Endemic throughout Latin America, areas of high humidity, rich vegetation, moderate temperatures, acid soil
- Ecologic niche not well established
- Overt disease uncommon among children and adolescents; in adults, disease more common in men aged 30 to 50 years
- Most patients with clinically apparent disease live in rural areas and have close contact with soil
- No reports of epidemics or person-to-person transmission

Diagnosis

- Demonstration of characteristic yeast forms on microscopic examination of clinical material: oval to round with double refractile walls and single or multiple buds; "pilot-wheel" morphology
- May be isolated in culture and should be handled in a biosafety cabinet
- Serology testing may help in suggesting diagnosis, evaluating response to therapy

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Itraconazole: treatment of choice for most forms of disease
- More severe or refractory forms: lipid formulation of amphotericin B followed by either itraconazole or sulfonamide therapy

GMS, Gomori methenamine silver; *PAS,* periodic acid-Schiff; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

The dimorphic fungal pathogens are organisms that exist in a mold form in nature or in the laboratory at 25° C to 30° C and in a yeast or spherule form in tissues or when grown on enriched medium in the laboratory at 37° C (Fig. 64.1). The majority of organisms in this group are considered primary systemic pathogens because of their ability to cause infection in both "normal" and immunocompromised hosts and for their propensity to involve the deep viscera after dissemination of the fungus from the lungs after its inhalation from nature. The dimorphic systemic pathogens include *Blastomyces* spp. (*B. dermatitidis, B. gilchristii, B. helicus, B. parvus,* and *B. silverae*), *Coccidioides* spp. (*C. immitis* and *C. posadasii*), *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* and *H. capsulatum* var *duboisii*, *Paracoccidioides* spp. (*P. brasiliensis* and *P. lutzii*), *Emergomyces* spp. (genus abbreviated *Es.*; *Es. pasteurianus, Es. africanus, Es. orientalis, Es. canadensis,* and *Es. europaeus*), and *Talaromyces* (formerly *Penicillium) marneffei* (Table 64.1). These organisms are also known as endemic pathogens, in that their natural habitat is delimited to specific geographic regions (Fig. 64.2), and infection caused by a particular fungus is acquired by inhalation of spores from that specific environment and geographic location (see Table 64.1). *H. capsulatum, Coccidioides* spp. (*C. immitis* and *C. posadasii*), *Emergomyces* spp. (*Es. pasteurianus* and *Es. africanus*), and *T. marneffei* have emerged as major opportunistic pathogens in individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and other forms of immunosuppression. Recognition of these endemic mycoses may be complicated by the fact that they may manifest only after the patient has left the area of endemicity. Often, the infection may be quiescent, only to reactivate when the individual becomes immunosuppressed and is living in an area in which the fungus is not endemic. In addition to these dimorphic pathogens, agents formerly classified under the genus *Emmonsia* (now obsolete), namely *Adiaspiromyces crescens* (formerly *Emmonsia crescens*) and *Blastomyces parvus* (formerly *Emmonsia parva*), exist as a filamentous mold in nature at 25° C and as nonreplicating adiaspores in the lungs of animals and humans.

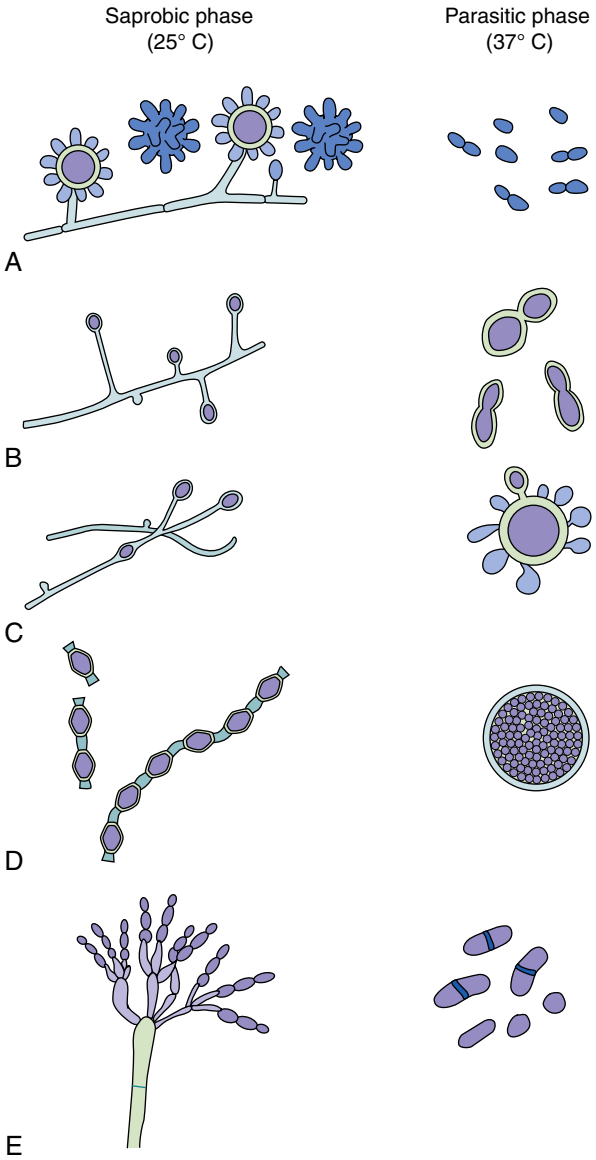


Fig. 64.1 Saprobic and parasitic phases of endemic dimorphic fungi. (A) *Histoplasma capsulatum.* (B) *Blastomyces dermatitidis.* (C) *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis.* (D) *Coccidioides immitis.* (E) *Talaromyces marneffei.*

Blastomycosis

Blastomycosis is a systemic fungal infection caused by dimorphic pathogens *B. dermatitidis* and *B. gilchristii.* Recently additional species of *Blastomyces* have been proposed based on molecular taxonomic findings: *B. percursus*, *B. parvus* (formerly *E. parva*), *B. helicus* (formerly *E. helica*) and *B. silverae*. *B. percursus, B. helicus,* and *B. silverae* are similar to *B. dermatitidis*/*gilchristii* in phenotype and pathogenicity. As such, the more familiar *B. dermatitidis* will be used in this chapter when discussing blastomycosis. *B. parvus* differs from these species in certain phenotypic aspects and exhibits a distinctly different pathogenesis and will be discussed separately.

Like other endemic mycoses, blastomycosis is confined to specific geographic regions, with most infections originating in the Mississippi River basin, around the Great Lakes, and in the southeastern region of the United States (see Fig. 64.2). The disease is also endemic in other parts of the world, including Africa and parts of Central and South America.

MORPHOLOGY

As a thermally dimorphic fungus, *B. dermatitidis* produces nonencapsulated yeastlike cells in tissue and in culture on enriched media at 37° C and white to tan, filamentous, mold colonies on standard mycologic media at 25° C. The mold form produces round to oval or pear-shaped conidia (2 to 10 μm) located on long or short terminal hyphal branches (Fig. 64.3). Older cultures may also produce 7- to 18-μm diameter, thick-walled chlamydospores. This form of *B. dermatitidis* is not diagnostic and may not be distinguishable from the monomorphic *Chrysosporium* spp. or from an early culture of *H. capsulatum*.

The yeast form of *B. dermatitidis* is seen in tissue and in culture at 37° C. This form is quite distinctive (Fig. 64.4). The yeast cells are spherical, hyaline, 8 to 15 μm in diameter, multinucleated, and have thick "double-contoured" walls. The cytoplasm is often retracted from the rigid cell wall as a result of shrinkage during the fixation process. The yeast cells reproduce by the formation of buds or **blastoconidia.** The buds are usually single and attached to the parent cell by broad bases (see Fig. 64.4).

The yeast forms may be visualized in tissue stained with hematoxylin and eosin (H&E); however, the fungal stains, Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) and periodic acid–Schiff (PAS), help locate the organisms and delineate their morphology.

B. parvus differs from the other species in the genus in that it produces thermally dependent and nonreplicating adiaspores at 37° C and in vivo, rather than yeastlike propagules, and exhibits a mold phase in nature and at 25° C. The mold phase produces small single-celled conidia (about 4 μm in size) on the sides of the hyphae or on short side branches. Inside the host, the conidia transform into adiaspores, which resemble the spherules of *Coccidioides* species (Fig. 64.1).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The ecologic niche of *B. dermatitidis* appears to be in decaying organic matter. Studies in humans and animals indicate that infection is acquired after the inhalation of aerosolized conidia produced by the fungus growing in soil and leaf litter (Fig. 64.5). Outbreaks of infection have been associated with occupational or recreational contact with soil, and infected individuals include all ages and both genders. A large outbreak of blastomycosis in Wisconsin was marked by both geographic and ethnic clustering with a disproportionate number of infections occurring in persons of Hmong ethnicity, suggesting a possible genetic predisposition to infection with this fungus. Blastomycosis is not transmitted from patient to patient; however, laboratory-acquired primary cutaneous and pulmonary blastomycosis has been reported.

In North America, the area of endemicity overlaps that of histoplasmosis (see Fig. 64.2) and includes the southeastern and south central states, especially those bordering the Ohio and Mississippi River basins; the Midwest states and

TABLE 64.1 Characteristics of Endemic Dimorphic Mycoses

Mycosis	Etiology	Ecology	Geographic Distribution	Morphology in Tissue	Clinical Manifestation
Blastomycosis	*Blastomyces dermatitidis* *B. gilchristii*	Decaying organic material	North America (Ohio and Mississippi River valleys) Africa	Broad-based, budding yeasts (8-15 μm in diameter)	Pulmonary disease (<50%) Extrapulmonary: skin, bone, genitourinary, central nervous system Disseminated disease in immunocompromised patients
Coccidioidomycosis	*Coccidioides immitis* *C. posadasii*	Soil, dust	Southwestern United States, Mexico, Central and South America	Spherules (20-60 μm) containing endospores (2-4 μm)	Asymptomatic pulmonary infection (60%) in normal host Progressive pulmonary infection and dissemination (skin, bone, joints, meninges) in immunocompromised patients
Histoplasmosis capsulati	*Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *capsulatum*	Soil with high nitrogen content (bird/bat droppings)	North America (Ohio and Mississippi River valleys), Mexico, Central and South America	Small (2- to 4-μm), oval, narrow-based, budding yeasts (intracellular)	Asymptomatic pulmonary infection (90%) in normal host and low-intensity exposure Disseminated disease in immunocompromised host and in children
Histoplasmosis duboisii	*Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *duboisii*	Soil with high nitrogen content	Tropical areas of Africa	Larger (8- to 15-μm), thick-walled, budding yeast Prominent isthmus and bud scar	Low rate of pulmonary disease Higher frequency of skin and bone involvement
Paracoccidioidomycosis	*Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* *P. lutzii*	Likely soil associated	South and Central America	Thin to moderately thick-walled, multiply budding yeast (15-30 μm; pilot wheel)	Self-limited pulmonary disease Progressive pulmonary infection and dissemination (skin, mucosa, bones, lymph nodes, viscera, and meninges) More common in children and immunocompromised patients
Talaromycosis marneffei	*Talaromyces marneffei*	Soil Bamboo rat	Southeast Asia	Globose to elongated sausage-shaped yeasts (3-5 μm) that are intracellular and divide by fission	Disseminated infection (skin, soft tissues, viscera) more common in AIDS Resembles histoplasmosis, cryptococcosis, or tuberculosis
Emergomycosis	*Emergomyces pasteurianus* *Es. africanus*	Likely soil associated Possible rodent reservoir	Europe, India, China, South Africa	Small (2- to 4-μm in diameter), thin-walled, globose-to-oval yeast cells with single or multiple narrow-based budding Larger cells with broader based buds are sometimes present	Disseminated infection (skin, soft tissues, viscera) more common in AIDS Resembles histoplasmosis, cryptococcosis, or tuberculosis

Modified from Anstead, G.M., Patterson, T.F., 2009. Endemic mycoses. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Canadian provinces bordering the Great Lakes; and an area in New York and Canada along the St. Lawrence River. Blastomycosis is also endemic in Africa. It is estimated that one to two cases of symptomatic blastomycosis requiring therapy occur per 100,000 population each year in areas with endemic disease. Among animals, dogs are most susceptible; the infection rate is estimated to be 10 times that for humans.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The usual route of infection in blastomycosis is inhalation of conidia (see Fig. 64.5 and Clinical Case 64.1). As with most endemic mycoses, the severity of symptoms and course of the disease is dependent on the extent of exposure and the immune status of the exposed individual. Based largely on studies of blastomycosis outbreaks, it appears that symptomatic disease occurs in less than half of infected individuals. Clinical illness caused by *B. dermatitidis* may present as pulmonary disease or an extrapulmonary disseminated disease. Among those patients with extrapulmonary dissemination, two-thirds exhibit involvement of skin and bones. Other sites of hematogenous dissemination include prostate, liver, spleen, kidney, and central nervous system (CNS).

Pulmonary blastomycosis may be asymptomatic or present as a mild flulike illness. More severe infection resembles bacterial pneumonia with acute onset, high fever, lobar infiltrates, and cough. Progression to fulminant adult respiratory distress syndrome with high fever, diffuse infiltrates, and respiratory failure may occur. A more subacute or chronic respiratory form of blastomycosis may resemble tuberculosis or lung cancer, with radiographic presentation of pulmonary mass lesions or fibronodular infiltrates.

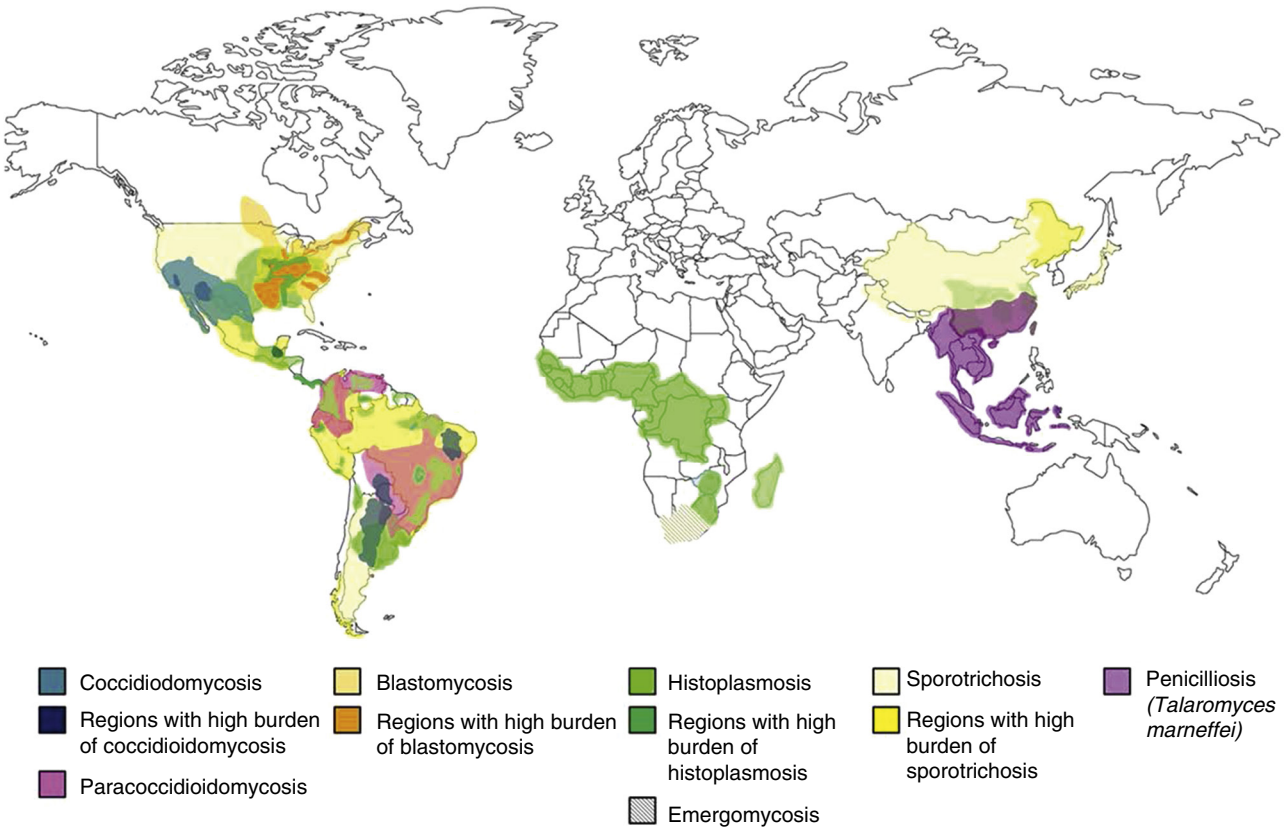


Fig. 64.2 Major geographic regional distribution of the endemic mycoses. (From Lee, P.P., Lau, Y.L., 2017. Cellular and molecular defects underlying invasive fungal infections-revelations from endemic mycoses. Frontiers in Immunology 8, 735.)

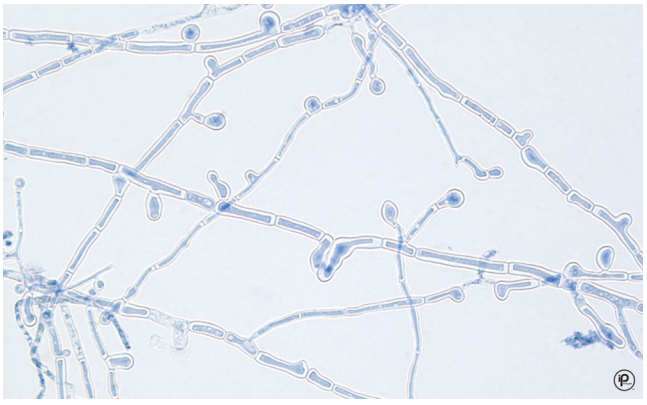


Fig. 64.3 *Blastomyces dermatitidis* mold phase.

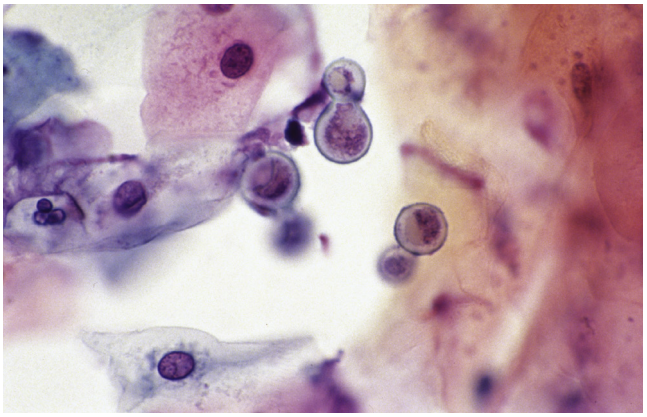


Fig. 64.4 Giemsa stain of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* showing broad-based budding yeast.

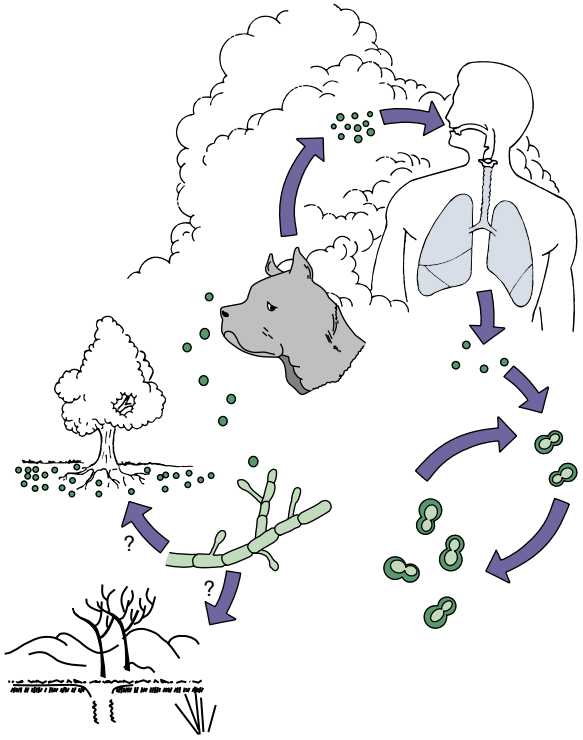


Fig. 64.5 Natural history of the mold (saprobic) and yeast (parasitic) cycle of *Blastomyces dermatitidis*.

Clinical Case 64.1 **Central Nervous System Blastomycosis**

Buhari and colleagues (*Infect Med* 24[Suppl 8]:12–14, 2007) reported a case of CNS blastomycosis. The patient was a 56-year-old homeless man from Detroit who presented with a 2-week history of left hemiparesis, aphasia, and generalized headache. There was no history of rash, respiratory symptoms, or fever. His medical history was significant for a left craniotomy 30 years ago for intracranial hemorrhage caused by trauma. He lived in an abandoned building and was not taking any medications. On examination, he had expressive aphasia, new-onset left hemiparesis, and bilateral carotid bruits. The rest of the physical examination was unremarkable, as there were routine serum chemistries and hematologic parameters. He was negative for antibodies to HIV. A chest radiograph was unremarkable. A contrast-enhanced computed tomography scan of the head demonstrated multiple ring-enhancing lesions in the right cerebrum, with surrounding vasogenic edema and midline shift; significant encephalomalacia and generalized atrophy were present in the left cerebral hemisphere.

Serum and urine tests were negative for *Cryptococcus* (serum) and *Histoplasma* (serum and urine) antigens. Tuberculin skin tests were nonreactive, and imaging studies of the sinuses, chest, and abdomen were unremarkable. A brain biopsy was performed, and histopathologic examination revealed granulomatous inflammation and budding yeasts consistent with *Blastomyces dermatitidis*. Subsequent culture confirmed the diagnosis of CNS blastomycosis. The patient was treated with dexamethasone and amphotericin B but developed hypertension and bradycardia, with subsequent cardiopulmonary arrest and death.

This is an example of an unusual presentation of CNS blastomycosis without any other evidence of disseminated disease. The clinical syndrome of hypertension, bradycardia, and cardiopulmonary arrest suggest that the patient died of increased intracranial pressure, either as a complication of the infection or the diagnostic brain biopsy.

CNS, Central nervous system.

A classic form of blastomycosis is that of chronic cutaneous involvement. The cutaneous form of blastomycosis is almost always the result of hematogenous dissemination from the lung, in most instances without evident pulmonary lesions or systemic symptoms. The lesions may be papular, pustular, or indolent, ulcerative-nodular, and verrucous with crusted surfaces and raised serpiginous borders. They are usually painless and are localized to exposed areas, such as the face, scalp, neck, and hands. They may be mistaken for squamous cell carcinoma. Left untreated, cutaneous blastomycosis takes on a chronic course, with remissions and exacerbations and gradual increase in the size of lesions.

Blastomycosis is relatively uncommon among individuals with AIDS or other immunocompromising conditions. However, when it occurs in these individuals, it tends to be acute, involve the CNS, and have a much poorer prognosis.

The very rare and unusual pulmonary disease caused by *B. parvus* follows the inhalation of aerosolized conidia, released from the mycelial phase of the fungus in soil. In the lungs, the conidia enlarge dramatically, from 2 to 4 μm to 40 to 500 μm in diameter. These swollen cells are termed adiaspores and they neither replicate nor disseminate in vivo. In the host these adiaspores provoke a foreign body reaction, resulting in granulomatous lung disease. In most instances, inhalation of a small number of conidia would have no clinical consequence because the adiaspores do not replicate in vivo; however, disease severity is dependent on inoculum size and host response. The clinical spectrum can range from a subclinical pneumonia to diffuse pulmonary disease with hypoxic respiratory failure and rarely, death.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of blastomycosis rests with microscopic detection of the fungus in tissue or other clinical material, with confirmation by culture (Table 64.2). The most useful specimens for the diagnosis of pulmonary blastomycosis include sputum, bronchoalveolar lavage, or lung biopsy. Direct examination of material stained with GMS, PAS, Papanicolaou, or Giemsa stains should be performed; likewise, fresh wet preparations of sputum, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), urine, pus, skin scrapings, and tissue impression smears may be examined directly using calcofluor white and fluorescence microscopy to detect the characteristic yeast forms. When typical broad-based budding yeast forms are present, a definitive diagnosis may be made.

Tissue sections stained with PAS or GMS are most helpful to demonstrate the characteristic adiaspores of *B. parvus*. Adiaspores must be differentiated from the spherules of *C. immitis*. Adiaspores do not contain endospores and are typically much larger than empty spherules of *C. immitis.*

Culture of clinical material on selective and nonselective mycologic media incubated at both 25° C to 30° C and at 37° C should be performed. The mycelial form of the fungus is easily cultured at 25° C to 30° C; however, growth is slow, often requiring 4 weeks or more. The mycelial form (see Fig. 64.3) is not diagnostic, and the identity must be confirmed by conversion to the yeast form at 37° C, by exoantigen testing (immunologic detection of cell-free antigen A), or by nucleic acid probe hybridization. Care should be taken to handle the culture in an appropriate biosafety cabinet because the conidia are infectious.

Although serologic tests to detect antibodies directed at *B. dermatitidis* antigens are available (see Table 64.2), they are neither sensitive nor specific and are of little use in diagnosis. A test to detect antigen in serum and urine is commercially available, but cross-reaction with other endemic mycoses is considerable, and it is unclear what role it will play in diagnosis. Serial urine tests may be useful for monitoring disease. Detection of serum (1-3)-β-D-glucan (BDG) has not been shown to be useful in the diagnosis of blastomycosis, whereas real-time PCR has value when performed on blood, tissue, or respiratory specimens.

TREATMENT

The decision to treat patients with blastomycosis must take into consideration the clinical form and severity of disease, as well as the immune status of the patient and the toxicity of antifungal agents. Clearly, pulmonary blastomycosis in immunocompromised patients and those with progressive pulmonary

TABLE 64.2 Diagnosis of Endemic Dimorphic Mycoses

Mycosis	Culture	MORPHOLOGY IN CULTURE		Histopathology	Serology
		25° C	37° C		
Blastomycosis	Sputum, BAL, lung tissue, skin biopsy, CSF	Mold, round to oval or pear-shaped conidia (2-10 μm diameter)	Thick-walled, broad-based budding yeast (8-15 μm)	Broad-based, budding yeast	Antibody: CF, ID, EIA (poor sensitivity and specificity) Antigen: serum, CSF and urine
Coccidioidomycosis	Sputum, BAL, tissue, CSF	Mold with barrel-shaped arthroconidia (3-6 μm)	NA	Spherules (20-60 μm) containing endospores	Antibody: TP, CF, ID, LPA, EIA (diagnostic and prognostic) Antigen: urine, CSF
Histoplasmosis capsulati	Sputum, BAL, blood, bone marrow, tissue, CSF	Mold with tuberculate macroconidia (8-15 μm) and small, oval microconidia (2-4 μm)	Small (2-4 μm), budding yeast	Intracellular budding yeast	Antibody: CF, ID, EIA Antigen: serum, CSF and urine (92% sensitive in disseminated disease)
Paracoccidioidomycoses	Sputum, BAL, tissue	Mold, round microconidia (2-3 μm) and intercalary chlamydospores	Large (15- to 30-μm), multiple, budding yeast	Large, multiply budding yeasts	Antibody: ID, CF (variable specificity; CF useful for monitoring response)
Talaromycosis marneffei	Blood, bone marrow, tissue, CSF	Mold with diffusible red pigment Conidiophores terminating in conspicuous, penicillus-bearing, ellipsoidal, smooth conidia	Pleomorphic, elongated yeast (1-8 μm) with transverse septa	Intracellular elongated yeast with transverse septa	Under development
Emergomycosis	Blood, bone marrow, respiratory tissue, liver tissue, lymph node, and cutaneous tissue	Mold, septate hyaline hyphae (1-1.5 μm in diameter) with numerous smooth-walled oval conidia	Small yeast cells (2-4 μm in diameter), thin-walled, globose-to-oval with single or multiple narrow-based budding Larger cells with broader based buds are sometimes present	Small (2- to 5-μm), intracellular and extracellular oval to round narrow-budding yeastlike cells similar in size to those of *H. capsulatum*	Under development

BAL, Bronchoalveolar lavage; *CF,* complement fixation; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *EIA,* enzyme immunoassay; *ID,* immunodiffusion; *LPA,* latex particle agglutination; *NA,* not applicable; *TP,* tube precipitin.

disease should be treated; likewise, all patients with evidence of hematogenous dissemination (e.g., skin, bone, all nonpulmonary sites) require antifungal therapy. Amphotericin B, preferably a lipid formulation, is the agent of choice for the treatment of life-threatening or meningeal disease. Mild or moderate disease may be treated with itraconazole. Fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole, or voriconazole may be alternatives for those patients unable to tolerate itraconazole. Depending on the severity of the disease and the status of the host, therapeutic success rates with amphotericin B or azole therapy range from 70% to 95%. Survival for AIDS patients and other immunocompromised patients is about half this figure. The latter patients may require long-term suppressive therapy with itraconazole, or another active azole, in an effort to avoid relapses of the infection.

Coccidioidomycosis

Coccidioidomycosis is an endemic mycosis caused by either of two indistinguishable species, *C. immitis* and *C. posadasii*. The disease is caused by the inhalation of infectious arthroconidia (Fig. 64.6) and may range from asymptomatic infection (in most people) to progressive infection and death. The two species differ in geographic distribution and genotype: *C. immitis* is localized to California, and *C. posadasii* accounts

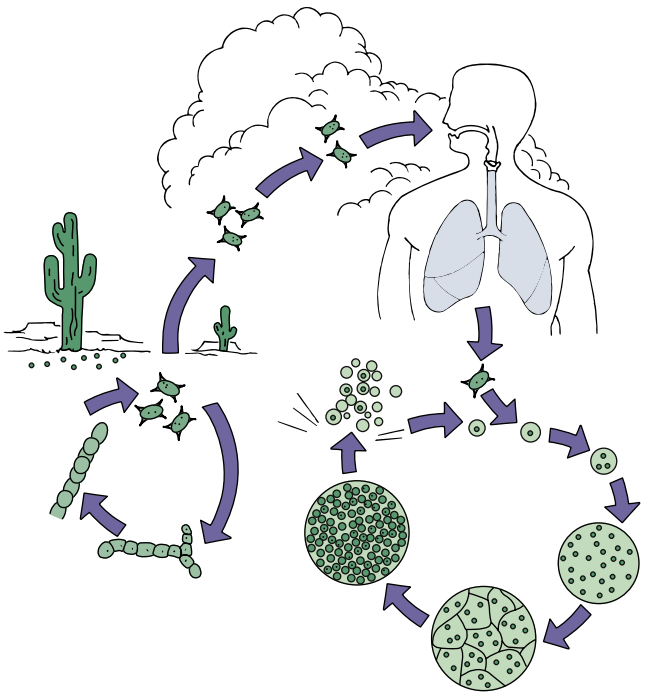


Fig. 64.6 Natural history of the mold (saprobic) and spherule (parasitic) cycle of *Coccidioides immitis*.

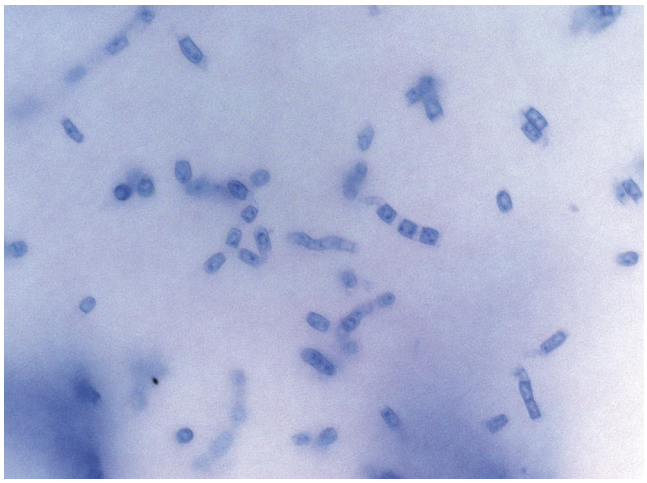


Fig. 64.7 *Coccidioides immitis* mold phase.

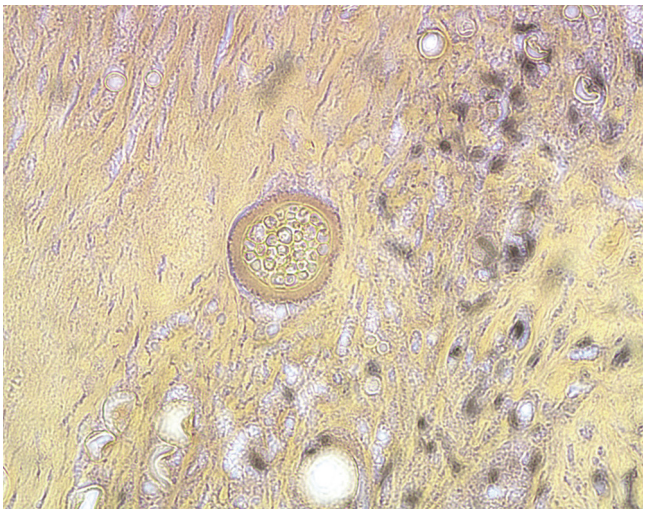


Fig. 64.8 *Coccidioides immitis* spherule filled with endospores.

for the majority of infections outside of California. Aside from these differences, there does not appear to be any additional difference in phenotype or pathogenicity. As such, the more familiar name *C. immitis* will be used in this chapter.

Like syphilis and tuberculosis, coccidioidomycosis causes a wide variety of lesions and has been called "the great imitator." Synonyms for coccidioidomycosis include **coccidioidal granuloma** and **San Joaquin Valley fever,** among others.

MORPHOLOGY

C. immitis (*C. posadasii*) is a dimorphic fungus that exists as a mold in nature and when cultured in the laboratory at 25° C and as an endosporulating spherule in tissue and under very specific conditions in vitro (Figs. 64.7 and 64.8; see Table 64.2 and Fig. 64.1). A variety of mold morphologies may be seen in culture at 25° C. Initial growth is white to gray, moist, and glabrous and occurs within 3 to 4 days. It rapidly develops abundant aerial mycelia, and the colony enlarges into a circular "bloom." Mature colonies usually become tan to brown or lavender.

Microscopically, the vegetative hyphae give rise to fertile hyphae that produce alternating (separated by disjunctor cells) hyaline arthroconidia (see Figs. 64.1 and 64.7). When released, the infectious conidia are typically "barrel-shaped" and have an annular frill at both ends. As the culture ages, the vegetative hyphae also fragment into arthroconidia.

On inhalation, the arthroconidia (2.5 to 4 μm wide) become rounded as they convert to spherules in the lung (see Figs. 64.1 and 64.8). At maturity, the spherules (20 to 60 μm in diameter) produce endospores by a process known as **progressive cleavage.** Rupture of the spherule walls releases the endospores, which in turn form new spherules (see Fig. 64.6). In approximately 10% to 30% of pulmonary cavities associated with coccidioidomycosis, branched, septate hyphae and arthroconidia may be produced.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

In the United States, the region of endemicity for coccidioidomycosis includes central and southern California, southern Arizona, southern New Mexico, parts of Utah and Washington, and western Texas. The region of endemicity extends southwards into the desert regions of northern Mexico and parts of Central and South America (see Fig. 64.2). *C. immitis* is found in soil, and the growth of the fungus in the environment is enhanced by bat and rodent droppings. Exposure to the infectious arthroconidia is greatest in late summer and fall when dusty conditions prevail. Cycles of drought and rain enhance dispersion of the organism because heavy rains facilitate the growth of the organism in the nitrogenous soil wastes, and subsequent drought and windy conditions favor aerosolization of arthroconidia (see Fig. 64.6). Acquisition of coccidioidomycosis occurs principally by inhalation of arthroconidia, and in endemic areas, infection rates may be 16% to 42% by early adulthood. The incidence of coccidioidomycosis is approximately 42.6 cases per 100,000 population annually in the endemic area; however, it is known to disproportionately affect persons 60 years of age and older (≈69 per 100,000) and those residing in the state of Arizona (≈248 per 100,000).

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

C. immitis is probably the most virulent of all human mycotic pathogens (Clinical Case 64.2). The inhalation of only a few arthroconidia produces primary coccidioidomycosis, which may include asymptomatic pulmonary disease (≈60% of patients) or a self-limited flulike illness marked by fever, cough, chest pain, and weight loss. Patients with primary coccidioidomycosis may have a variety of allergic reactions (≈10%) secondary to immune complex formation, including an erythematous macular rash, erythema multiforme, and erythema nodosum.

Primary disease usually resolves without therapy and confers a strong, specific immunity to reinfection, which is detected by the coccidioidin skin test. In endemic regions, primary coccidioidal pneumonia may account for 17% to 29% of all community-acquired pneumonia. In patients symptomatic for 6 weeks or longer, the disease progresses to secondary coccidioidomycosis, which may include nodules, cavitary disease, or progressive pulmonary disease (25% to 30% of cases); single or multisystem dissemination follows in approximately 1% of this population. Extrapulmonary sites of infection include skin, soft tissues, bones, joints, and

Clinical Case 64.2 **Coccidioidomycosis**

Stafford and colleagues (*Infect Med* 24[Suppl 8]:23–25, 2007) described a 31-year-old African American U.S. Army soldier who presented with fever, chills, night sweats, and a nonproductive cough of 4 weeks' duration. In addition, he had recently detected a painless right breast mass. His past medical history was unremarkable. He was stationed at Fort Irwin, California, in which he was working as a telephone repairman. His physical exam was unremarkable, except for a firm, nontender, 3-cm subcutaneous mass overlying the right breast. Multiple small (less than 1 cm), nontender lymph nodes were palpable in the axillae and groin. Laboratory studies revealed a white blood count of 11.9/μL, with 30% eosinophils. Serum chemistries were notable for an elevated alkaline phosphatase level. Results of blood cultures, tests for serum *Cryptococcus* antigen, urinary *Histoplasma* antigen, and HIV antibody were negative, as was a tuberculin skin test. A chest radiograph showed bilateral interstitial micronodules in a miliary pattern, as well as a right-sided paratracheal fullness. A CT scan of the chest confirmed the presence of diffuse, 1- to 2-mm micronodules in all lobes. The CT scan also showed a lobular parenchymal mass lesion in the right middle lobe and a right chest wall mass. A fine-needle aspirate of the right breast mass revealed spherules filled with endospores, consistent with coccidioidomycosis. Culture of the material grew *Coccidioides immitis*. A serology panel for *C. immitis* was positive and revealed immunoglobulin G complement fixation titers at a dilution of greater than 1:256. Cerebrospinal fluid analysis was normal, but a bone scan revealed multiple regions of increased osteoblastic activity involving the left scapula, right anterior fifth rib, and midthoracic vertebral regions. Treatment was initiated with amphotericin B, but increasing neck pain prompted further imaging, which demonstrated a lytic lesion of the C1 vertebral body and a paravertebral mass. Despite antifungal therapy, progressive enlargement of the mass necessitated surgical debridement. The patient was continued on amphotericin B lipid formulation, with plans for long-term, perhaps lifelong, antifungal therapy.

This is an example of the serious problems posed by coccidioidomycosis. Clues to the diagnosis of disseminated coccidioidomycosis in this patient included an infectious prodrome, peripheral eosinophilia, hilar lymphadenopathy, characteristic pattern of organ involvement (lungs, bones, soft tissues), residence in an endemic area, and African American ethnicity (higher risk group for dissemination).

CT, Computed tomography.

meninges. Persons in certain ethnic groups (e.g., Filipino, African American, Native American, and Hispanic) run the highest risk of dissemination, with meningeal involvement a common sequela (Table 64.3). In addition to ethnicity, males (9:1), women in the third trimester of pregnancy, individuals with a cellular immunodeficiency (including AIDS, organ transplantation recipients, and those treated with tumor necrosis factor antagonists), and persons at the extremes of age are at high risk for disseminated disease (see Table 64.3). The mortality in disseminated disease exceeds 90% without treatment, and chronic infection is common.

TABLE 64.3 Risk Factors for Disseminated Coccidioidomycosis

Risk Factor	Highest Risk
Age	Infants and elderly
Sex	Male
Genetics	Filipino > African American > Native American > Hispanic > Asian
Serum CF antibody titer	>1:32
Pregnancy	Late pregnancy and postpartum
Skin test	Negative
Depressed cell-mediated immunity	Malignancy, chemotherapy, steroid treatment, HIV infection

CF, Complement fixation
From Mitchell, T.G., 2004. Systemic fungi. In: Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G. (Eds.), Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis includes the use of histopathologic examination of tissue or other clinical material, isolation of the fungus in the culture, and serologic testing (see Table 64.2). Direct microscopic visualization of endosporulating spherules in sputum, exudates, or tissue is sufficient to establish the diagnosis (see Fig. 64.8) and is preferred over culture because of the highly infectious nature of the mold when grown in culture. Clinical exudates should be examined directly in 10% to 20% potassium hydroxide (KOH) with calcofluor white, and tissue from biopsy can be stained with H&E or specific fungal stains such as GMS or PAS (see Fig. 64.8).

Clinical specimens may be cultured on routine mycologic media at 25° C. Colonies of *C. immitis* develop within 3 to 5 days, and typical sporulation may be seen in 5 to 10 days. Because of the highly infectious nature of the fungus, all plates or tubes should be sealed using gas-permeable tape (plates) or screw caps (tubes) and only examined within a suitable biosafety cabinet. The identification of *C. immitis* from culture may be accomplished by using the exoantigen immunodiffusion (ID) test or nucleic acid hybridization. Conversion of the mold into spherules in vitro is not usually attempted outside of a research setting.

Several serologic procedures exist for initial screening, confirmation, or prognostic evaluation (see Table 64.2). For initial diagnosis, the combined use of the ID test and the latex particle agglutination (LPA) test detects approximately 93% of cases. The complement fixation (CF) and tube precipitin (TP) tests also may be used for diagnosis and prognosis. An enzyme immunoassay (EIA) for detection of IgG and IgM antibodies in serum or CSF is available commercially. Prognostic studies frequently use serial CF titers; rising titers are a bad prognostic sign, and falling titers indicate improvement. A coccidioidal urinary antigen test has been developed, but its relatively low sensitivity of 71% limits its clinical utility. Antigen testing may be useful in testing CSF and coupled with CSF antibody testing may achieve a diagnostic yield of 98% in patients with coccidioidal meningitis. Serum (1-3)-β-D-glucan has undergone limited evaluation in the detection of coccidioidomycosis and has a limited role (44% sensitivity) in this

population. A polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-based assay was recently granted approval by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the detection of *Coccidioides* from clinical samples. Few clinical studies have been published to date, although it appears the sensitivity of PCR is similar to that of culture (~50%).

TREATMENT

Most individuals with primary coccidioidomycosis do not require specific antifungal therapy. For those with concurrent risk factors (see Table 64.3), such as organ transplant, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, high doses of corticosteroids, or when there is evidence of unusually severe infection, treatment is necessary. Primary coccidioidomycosis in the third trimester of pregnancy or during the immediate postpartum period requires treatment with amphotericin B.

Immunocompromised patients or others with diffuse pneumonia should be treated with amphotericin B followed by an azole (either fluconazole, itraconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole, or voriconazole) as maintenance therapy. The total length of therapy should be at least 1 year. Immunocompromised patients should be maintained on an oral azole as secondary prophylaxis.

Chronic cavitary pneumonia should be treated with an oral azole for at least 1 year. In cases in which the response is suboptimal, the alternatives are to switch to another azole (e.g., from itraconazole to fluconazole), increase the dose of the azole in the case of fluconazole, or switch to amphotericin B. Surgical treatment is required in the event of rupture of a cavity into the pleural space, hemoptysis, or for localized refractory lesions.

The treatment of nonmeningeal extrapulmonary disseminated infections is based on oral azole therapy with either fluconazole or itraconazole (isavuconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole also are options). In the case of vertebral involvement or inadequate clinical response, treatment with amphotericin B is recommended, along with appropriate surgical debridement and stabilization.

Meningeal coccidioidomycosis is managed with the administration of fluconazole or itraconazole (secondary choice because of poor CNS penetration) indefinitely. Isavuconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole also are alternative choices. Intrathecal administration of amphotericin B is recommended only in the event of failure of azole therapy because of its toxicity when administered by this route.

Emergomycosis and Adiaspiromycosis

As a result of molecular taxonomic studies, two new genera have recently been proposed (*Adiaspiromyces* and *Emergomyces*) from within the prior genus *Emmonsia* (now obsolete). *Adiaspiromyces* includes one species that has been associated with human disease. *A. crescens* (formerly *E. crescens*) is the agent of adiaspiromycosis, which is a generally self-limited pulmonary disease described in Chapter 66.

The newly proposed genus, *Emergomyces*, contains *Es. pasteurianus* as the type species (formerly *E. pasteuriana*) and four recently identified species: *Es. africanus*, *Es. orientalis*, *Es. canadensis*, and *Es. europaeus*. *Emergomyces* have been found to cause human disease in immunocompromised patients in Europe, Asia, Africa, and North America. The thermally dimorphic species *Es. pasteurianus* is the most widespread, and *Es. africanus* is the most common endemic mycosis diagnosed in South Africa. The classic clinical picture of emergomycosis is of disseminated disease, often with cutaneous involvement, in immunocompromised individuals. The remaining species of *Emergomyces* are reported from small numbers of infection in Asia (*Es. orientalis*), Europe (*Es. europaeus*), and North America (*Es. canadensis*). The *Emergomyces* spp. are distinguished from the classical *Emmonsia*-like species (*E. parva* [now *Blastomyces parvus*]) and *E. crescens* (now *A. crescens*) by small yeastlike cells rather than adiaspores in the parasitic phase.

MORPHOLOGY

The species of *Emergomyces* are thermally dimorphic fungi that grow as a mold at 25° C and as a yeast at 37° C. At 25° C colonies grow at a slow-to-moderate rate taking on a cerebriform appearance and becoming light brown with powdery segments over time. Light microscopy revealed septate hyaline hyphae (1 to 1.5 μm in diameter) with numerous smooth-walled oval conidia. The conidia are borne on short stalks that formed perpendicular to a swollen vesicle. The vesicles give rise to four-to-eight stalks or pedicles, each forming a terminal conidium, establishing a flower-shaped arrangement of four-to-eight conidia grouped together. When mature, the conidia have distinctly tuberculated cell walls. No adiaspores are seen in any of the cultures incubated at 37° C or 40° C.

On incubation at 37° C for 10 to 14 days, the mycelial cultures convert to the yeast phase. Yeast colonies are smooth and beige to light brown in color. The yeast cells are small (2 to 4 μm in diameter), thin-walled, globose-to-oval with single or multiple narrow-based budding. Larger cells with broader based buds are sometimes present.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Cases of emergomycosis have been reported from four continents: Europe, Asia, Africa, and North America. As such, there is little in the way of information to document specific areas of endemicity.

The largest described burden of emergomycosis is among HIV-infected persons in South Africa, in which most cases are attributed to *Es. africanus*. The South African cases were all initially diagnosed after the introduction of broad-range PCR for fungal diagnosis and identification in 2008. Thus the apparent clustering of cases and the "emergence" of *Emergomyces* spp. in South Africa may simply represent improved detection of the causative organism rather than introduction of a new opportunistic pathogen. All of the South African cases occurred in adults with late-stage HIV infection and all cases had extensive cutaneous involvement. Although country-level surveillance data are lacking in Africa, a clinical and laboratory surveillance study diagnosed 17 culture-proven cases of emergomycosis over 15 months at public hospitals in Cape Town. Molecular detection of *Es. africanus* was demonstrated in both soil and air samples from South Africa.

Es. pasteuranus is the most widespread species, causing disease on three continents. Emergomycosis caused by *Es. pasteuranus* has been reported from Italy, Spain, France, India, China, and South Africa. The other species are represented by one to four infected patients in discrete geographic locations.

Nearly all cases of emergomycosis have been reported in immunocompromised patients. Most cases have been diagnosed in patients with advanced HIV infection or other defects in cell-mediated immunity, including immunosuppression for organ transplantation.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The primary route of infection, conserved among *Emergomyces* spp., is presumed to be inhalation of airborne conidia released from saprophytic mycelia in soil. Once in the human host tissue, conidia of *Emergomyces* spp. convert to yeastlike cells capable of replication and extrapulmonary dissemination. All of the reported cases of disseminated infection caused by *Emergomyces* spp. have occurred in immunocompromised adults, the vast majority of which suffered from late-stage HIV infection. The South African patients all had very low CD4+ T-cell counts (median, 16 cells/mm^3), were profoundly anemic, and had widespread skin lesions. The lesions varied from erythematous papules and plaques to ulcerated, boggy, and crusted plaques. The majority of cases (85%) had chest radiograph findings that mimicked tuberculosis. Although inhalation is presumed to be the route of infection, disease limited to the lungs is uncommon. Extrapulmonary disease involving organs other than skin has been reported, including that of liver, lymph node, and cervix. Disseminated emergomycosis appears to be a progressive disease in many patients, particularly the immunocompromised, in whom case-fatality rates approach 50% and as such antifungal therapy is indicated.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The yeast cells of *Emergomyces* spp. are readily detected by histopathologic examination of skin biopsies and may be isolated in culture from blood, bone marrow, respiratory tissue, liver tissue, lymph node, and cutaneous tissue. There are no commercially available serologic assays developed specifically for emergomycosis. Cross-reactivity in the *Histoplasma* (galactomannan) antigen EIA test has been reported. Molecular methods have been used for the detection of *Es. africanus* in clinical and environmental samples and for identification of cultured isolates to species level. Identification is usually achieved by amplification and sequencing of the internal transcribed spacer (ITS) region of the ribosomal gene using ITS1 and ITS4 primers, ITS1, and ITS2 primers or 28S rDNA (large subunit or D1/D2) primers. There are no commercially available molecular diagnostic tests for *Emergomyces* spp.

TREATMENT

There are no randomized-controlled trials available to guide the management of disseminated emergomycosis. As such, it seems prudent to follow the Infectious Diseases Society of America guidelines for the management of other endemic mycoses in immunocompromised persons. In general, this includes the use of amphotericin B (preferably a lipid formulation) followed by a triazole antifungal agent for at least 12 months. Longer courses of therapy may be required in patients who do not achieve immune reconstitution.

Histoplasmosis

Histoplasmosis is caused by two varieties of *H. capsulatum*: *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* and *H. capsulatum* var. *duboisii* (see Table 64.1). *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* causes pulmonary and disseminated infections in the eastern half of the United States and most of Latin America, whereas *H. capsulatum* var. *duboisii* causes predominately skin and bone lesions and is restricted to the tropical areas of Africa (see Fig. 64.2).

MORPHOLOGY

Both varieties of *H. capsulatum* are thermally dimorphic fungi existing as a hyaline mold in nature and in culture at 25° C and as an intracellular budding yeast in tissue and in culture at 37° C (Figs. 64.9 to 64.11; see Table 64.2). In culture, the mold forms of *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* and var. *duboisii* are indistinguishable macroscopically and microscopically. The mold colonies grow slowly and develop as white or brown hyphal colonies after several days to a week. The mold form produces two types of

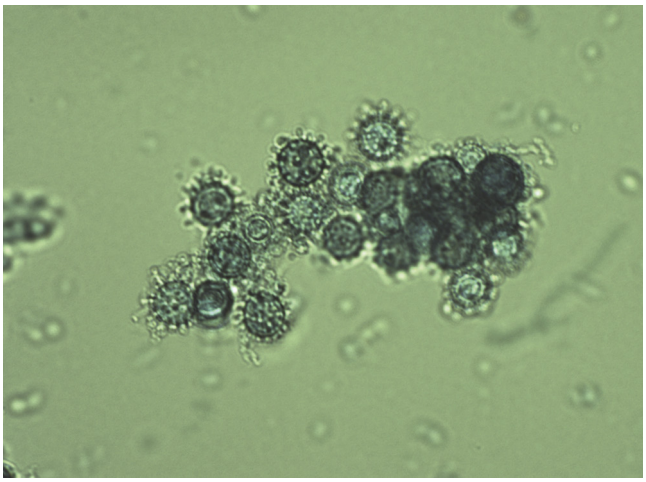


Fig. 64.9 *Histoplasma capsulatum* mold phase showing tuberculate macroconidia.

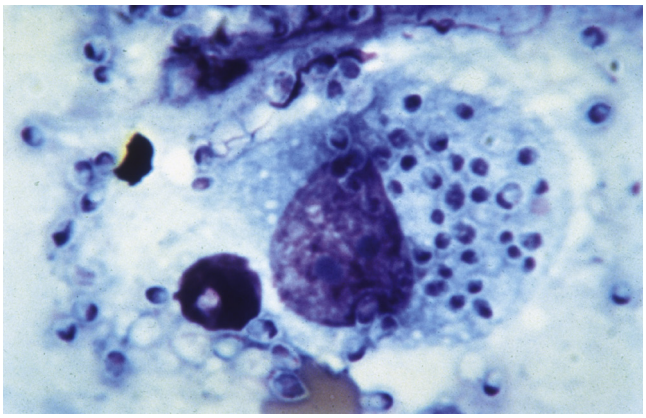


Fig. 64.10 Giemsa-stained preparation showing intracellular yeast forms of *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *capsulatum*.

conidia: (1) large (8- to 15-μm), thick-walled, spheric macroconidia with spikelike projections (tuberculate macroconidia) that arise from short conidiophores (Fig. 64.12, see Fig. 64.1) and (2) small, oval microconidia (2 to 4 μm) with smooth or slightly rough walls that are sessile or on short stalks (see Figs. 64.1 and 64.12). The yeast cells are thin walled, oval, and measure 2 to 4 μm (var. *capsulatum*) (see Fig. 64.10) or thicker walled and 8 to 15 μm (var. *duboisii*) (see Fig. 64.11). The yeast cells of both varieties of *H. capsulatum* are intracellular in vivo and are uninucleated (see Figs. 64.10 and 64.11).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Histoplasmosis capsulati is localized to the broad regions of the Ohio and Mississippi River valleys in the United States and occurs throughout Mexico and Central and South America (see Fig. 64.2 and Table 64.1). Outbreaks of histoplasmosis have been reported to occur after outdoor environmental disturbances in nonendemic states including California, Florida, Idaho, Minnesota, Montana, New York, North Dakota, and South Carolina. Cases have also been reported from India, China, and South Africa. Histoplasmosis duboisii, or African histoplasmosis, is confined to the tropical areas of Africa, including Gabon, Uganda, and Kenya (see Fig. 64.2 and Table 64.1).

The natural habitat of the mycelial form of both varieties of *H. capsulatum* is soil with a high nitrogen content, such as that found in areas contaminated with bird or bat droppings. Outbreaks of histoplasmosis have been associated with exposure to bird roosts, caves, and decaying buildings or urban renewal projects involving excavation and demolition. Aerosolization of microconidia and hyphal fragments in the disturbed soil, with subsequent inhalation by exposed individuals, is considered to be the basis for these outbreaks (see Fig. 64.12). Although attack rates may reach 100% in certain exposures, most cases remain asymptomatic and are detected only by skin testing. Immunocompromised individuals and children are more prone to develop symptomatic disease with either variety of *Histoplasma*. Reactivation of the disease and dissemination is common among immunosuppressed individuals, especially those with AIDS.

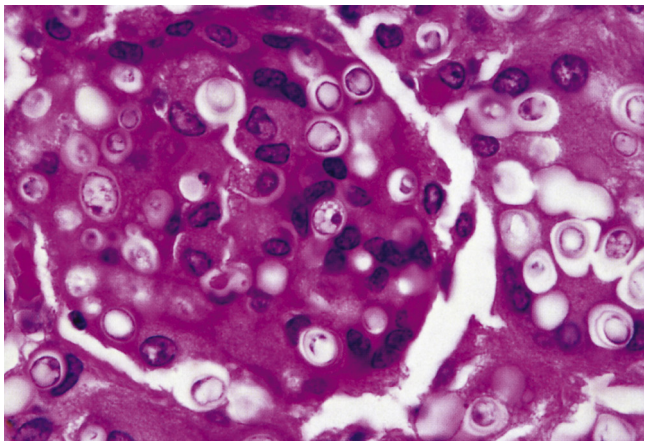


Fig. 64.11 Hematoxylin and eosin–stained tissue section showing intracellular yeast forms of *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *duboisii.* (From Connor DH., Chandler FW., Schwartz DA.`, et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

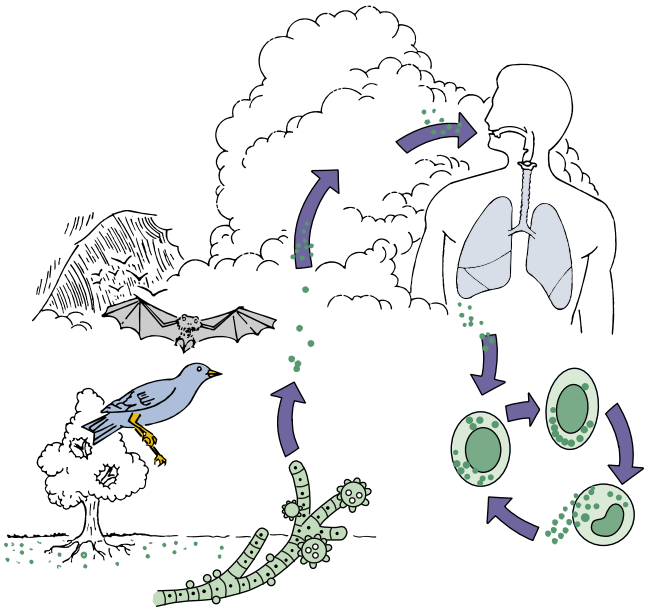


Fig. 64.12 Natural history of the mold (saprobic) and yeast (parasitic) cycle of *Histoplasma capsulatum.*

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The usual route of infection for both varieties of histoplasmosis is via inhalation of microconidia, which in turn germinate into yeasts within the lung and may remain localized or disseminate hematogenously or by the lymphatic system (Clinical Case 64.3 and see Fig. 64.12). The microconidia are rapidly phagocytosed by pulmonary macrophages and neutrophils, and it is thought that conversion to the parasitic yeast form takes place intracellularly.

Histoplasmosis Capsulati

The clinical presentation of histoplasmosis caused by *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* is dependent on the intensity of exposure and immunologic status of the host. Asymptomatic infection occurs in 90% of individuals after a low-intensity exposure. In the event of an exposure to a heavy inoculum, however, most individuals exhibit some symptoms. The self-limited form of acute pulmonary histoplasmosis is marked by a flulike illness with fever, chills, headache, cough, myalgias, and chest pain. Radiographic evidence of hilar or mediastinal adenopathy and patchy pulmonary infiltrates may be seen. Most acute infections resolve with supportive care and do not require specific antifungal treatment. In rare instances, usually after very heavy exposure, acute respiratory distress syndrome may be seen. In approximately 10% of patients, inflammatory sequelae, such as persistent lymphadenopathy with bronchial obstruction, arthritis, arthralgias, or pericarditis, may be seen. Another rare complication of histoplasmosis is a condition known as mediastinal fibrosis, in which persistent host response to the organism may result in massive fibrosis and constriction of mediastinal structures, including the heart and great vessels.

Progressive pulmonary histoplasmosis may follow acute infection in approximately 1 in 100,000 cases per year. Chronic pulmonary symptoms are associated with apical cavities and fibrosis and are more likely to occur in patients with prior underlying pulmonary disease. These lesions generally do not heal spontaneously, and persistence of the organism leads to progressive destruction and fibrosis secondary to the immune response to the organism.

Disseminated histoplasmosis follows acute infection in 1 in 2000 adults and is much higher in children and immunocompromised adults. Disseminated disease may assume a chronic, subacute, or acute course. Chronic disseminated histoplasmosis is characterized by weight loss and fatigue, with or without fever. Oral ulcers and hepatosplenomegaly are common.

Subacute disseminated histoplasmosis is marked by fever, weight loss, and malaise. Oropharyngeal ulcers and hepatosplenomegaly are prominent. Bone marrow involvement may produce anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia. Other sites of involvement include the adrenals, cardiac valves, and the CNS. Untreated subacute disseminated histoplasmosis will result in death in 2 to 24 months.

Clinical Case 64.3 **Disseminated Histoplasmosis**

Mariani and Morris (*Infect Med* 24[Suppl 8]:17–19, 2007) described a case of disseminated histoplasmosis in a patient with AIDS. The patient was a 42-year-old El Salvadoran woman who was admitted to the hospital for evaluation of progressive dermatosis involving the right nostril, cheek, and lip, despite antibiotic therapy. She was positive for HIV (CD4 lymphocyte count 21/μL) and had lived in Miami for the past 18 years. The lesion first appeared on the right nostril 3 months before admission. The patient sought medical attention and was treated unsuccessfully with oral antibiotics. Over the following 2 months, the lesion increased in size, involving the right nares and malar region, and was accompanied by fever, malaise, and a 50-lb weight loss. A necrotic area developed on the superior aspect of the right nostril, extending to the upper lip. A presumptive diagnosis of leishmaniasis was entertained, based in part on the patient's country of origin and a possible exposure to a sandfly bite.

Laboratory studies revealed anemia and lymphopenia. A chest radiograph was normal, and a computed tomography scan of the head showed a soft-tissue mass in the right nasal cavity. Histopathologic evaluation of a skin biopsy showed chronic inflammation, with intracytoplasmic budding yeasts. Culture of the biopsy grew *Histoplasma capsulatum*, and results of a urine *Histoplasma* antigen test were positive. The patient was treated with amphotericin B, followed by itraconazole with good results.

This case underscores the ability of *H. capsulatum* to remain clinically latent for many years, only to reactivate on immunosuppression of the host. Cutaneous manifestations of histoplasmosis are usually a consequence of progression from primary (latent) to disseminated disease. Histoplasmosis is not endemic to southern Florida but is endemic to much of Latin America, in which the patient had lived before moving to Miami. A high index of suspicion and confirmation with skin biopsies, cultures, and testing for urinary antigen are crucial for timely and appropriate treatment of disseminated histoplasmosis.

Acute disseminated histoplasmosis is a fulminant process that is most commonly seen in severely immunosuppressed individuals, including those with AIDS, organ transplant recipients, and those receiving steroids or other immunosuppressive chemotherapy. In addition, children younger than 1 year and adults with debilitating medical conditions also are at risk, given sufficient exposure to the fungus. In contrast to the other forms of histoplasmosis, acute disseminated disease may present with a septic shock–like picture, with fever, hypotension, pulmonary infiltrates, and acute respiratory distress. Oral and gastrointestinal ulcerations and bleeding, adrenal insufficiency, meningitis, and endocarditis may also be seen. If untreated, acute disseminated histoplasmosis is fatal within days to weeks.

Histoplasmosis duboisii

In contrast to classic histoplasmosis, pulmonary lesions are uncommon in African histoplasmosis. The localized form of histoplasmosis duboisii is a chronic disease characterized by regional lymphadenopathy, with lesions of the skin and bone. Skin lesions are papular or nodular and eventually progress to abscesses, which then ulcerate. About one-third of patients will exhibit osseous lesions characterized by osteolysis and involvement of contiguous joints. The cranium, sternum, ribs, vertebrae, and long bones are most frequently involved, often with overlying abscesses and draining sinuses.

A more fulminant disseminated form of histoplasmosis duboisii may be seen in profoundly immunodeficient individuals. Hematogenous and lymphatic dissemination to bone marrow, liver, spleen, and other organs occurs and is marked by fever, lymphadenopathy, anemia, weight loss, and organomegaly. This form of the disease is uniformly fatal unless promptly diagnosed and treated.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of histoplasmosis may be made by direct microscopy, culture of blood, bone marrow, or other clinical material, and by serology, including antigen detection in blood, CSF, and urine (Table 64.4; see Table 64.2). The yeast phase of the organism can be detected in sputum, bronchoalveolar lavage fluid, peripheral blood films, bone marrow, and tissue stained with Giemsa, GMS, or PAS stains (see Fig. 64.10). In tissue sections, cells of *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* are yeastlike,

TABLE 64.4 Laboratory Tests for Histoplasmosis

	SENSITIVITY (% TRUE POSITIVES) IN DISEASE STATES		
Test	**Disseminated**	**Chronic Pulmonary**	**Self-Limited[a]**
Antigen	92	21	39
Culture	85	85	15
Histopathology	43	17	9
Serology	71	100	98

[a]Includes acute pulmonary histoplasmosis, rheumatologic syndrome, and pericarditis.

From Wheat, L.J., 2004. Endemic mycoses. In: Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G. (Eds.), Infectious Diseases, second ed. Mosby, St Louis, MO.

hyaline, spherical to oval, 2 to 4 μm in diameter, and uninucleate and have single buds attached by a narrow base. The cells are usually intracellular and clustered together. The cells of *H. capsulatum* var. *duboisii* are also intracellular, yeastlike, and uninucleate but are much larger (8 to 15 μm) and have thick "double-contoured" walls. They are usually in macrophages and giant cells (see Fig. 64.11).

Because of the high organism burden in patients with disseminated disease, cultures of respiratory specimens, blood, bone marrow, and tissue are of value. They are less useful in self-limited or localized disease (see Table 64.4). Growth of the mycelial form in culture is slow, and once isolated, the identification must be confirmed by conversion to the yeast phase or by use of exoantigen testing or nucleic acid hybridization. As with the other dimorphic pathogens, cultures of *Histoplasma* must be handled with care in a biosafety cabinet.

Serologic diagnosis of histoplasmosis includes tests for both antigen and antibody detection (see Table 64.2). Antibody detection assays include a CF assay and an ID test. These tests are usually used together to maximize sensitivity and specificity, but neither is useful in the acute setting; CF and ID are often negative in immunocompromised patients with disseminated infection. An EIA for detection of IgG and IgM antibodies in serum or CSF is available commercially.

Detection of *Histoplasma* antigen in serum and urine by EIA has become very useful, particularly in diagnosing disseminated disease (see Tables 64.2 and 64.4). The sensitivity of antigen detection is greater in urine specimens than in blood and ranges from 21% in chronic pulmonary disease to 92% in disseminated disease. Serial measurements of antigen may be used to assess response to therapy and for establishing relapse of the disease. Testing CSF for anti-*Histoplasma* IgG and IgM antibody complements antigen detection and improves the sensitivity (98%) for diagnosis of *Histoplasma* meningitis. Both BDG and PCR have been useful in the diagnosis of histoplasmosis. Whereas BDG has only modest sensitivity and specificity (87% and 65%, respectively), PCR has shown excellent sensitivity (100%) and specificity (95%) and has been applied to a wide range of clinical samples.

TREATMENT

Because most patients with histoplasmosis recover without therapy, the first decision must be whether specific antifungal therapy is necessary or not. Some immunocompetent patients with more severe infection may exhibit prolonged symptoms and may benefit from treatment with itraconazole. In cases of severe acute pulmonary histoplasmosis with hypoxemia and acute respiratory distress syndrome, amphotericin B should be administered acutely, followed by oral itraconazole (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole also are options) to complete a 12-week course.

Chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis also warrants treatment because it is known to progress if left untreated. Treatment with amphotericin B, followed by itraconazole or another azole for 12 to 24 months, is recommended.

Disseminated histoplasmosis usually responds well to amphotericin B therapy. Once stabilized, the patient may be switched to oral itraconazole (fluconazole, isavuconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole also are options) to be administered over 6 to 18 months. Patients with AIDS may require lifelong therapy with itraconazole. Alternative azole agents include isavuconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole, or fluconazole; however, secondary resistance to fluconazole has been described in patients on long-term maintenance therapy.

Histoplasmosis of the CNS is universally fatal if not treated. The therapy of choice is amphotericin B followed by fluconazole for 9 to 12 months.

Patients with severe obstructive mediastinal histoplasmosis require amphotericin B therapy. Itraconazole may be used for outpatient therapy.

Paracoccidioidomycosis

Paracoccidioidomycosis is a systemic fungal infection caused by the dimorphic pathogens *P. brasiliensis* and *P. lutzii*. This infection is also known as South American blastomycosis and is the major dimorphic endemic fungal infection in Latin American countries. Primary paracoccidioidomycosis usually occurs in young people as a self-limited pulmonary process. At this stage, it rarely displays a progressive acute or subacute course. Reactivation of a primary quiescent lesion may occur years later, resulting in chronic progressive pulmonary disease with or without involvement of other organs.

MORPHOLOGY

The mold phase of *P. brasiliensis*/*P. lutzii* grows slowly in vitro at 25° C. White colonies become apparent in 3 to 4 weeks, eventually taking on a velvety appearance. Glabrous, wrinkled, brownish colonies also may be seen. The mycelial form is nondescript and nondiagnostic showing hyaline, septate, hyphae with intercalated chlamydoconidia. Specific identification requires conversion to the yeast form or by exoantigen testing.

The characteristic yeast form is seen in tissue and in culture at 37° C. Variable-sized (3 to 30 μm or more in diameter), oval to round, yeastlike cells with double refractile walls and single or multiple buds (blastoconidia) are characteristic of this fungus (Fig. 64.13). The blastoconidia are connected to the parent cell by a narrow isthmus, and six or more of various sizes may be produced from a single cell, such as the so-called "mariner's" or "pilot-wheel" morphology. The variability in size and number of blastoconidia and their connection to the parent cell are identifying features (see Fig. 64.13). These features are best disclosed by the GMS stain but also may be seen in H&E-stained tissues or in KOH mounts of clinical material.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Paracoccidioidomycosis is endemic throughout Latin America but is more prevalent in South America than in Central America (see Fig. 64.2). The highest incidence is seen in Brazil, followed by Colombia, Venezuela, Ecuador, and Argentina. All patients diagnosed outside of Latin

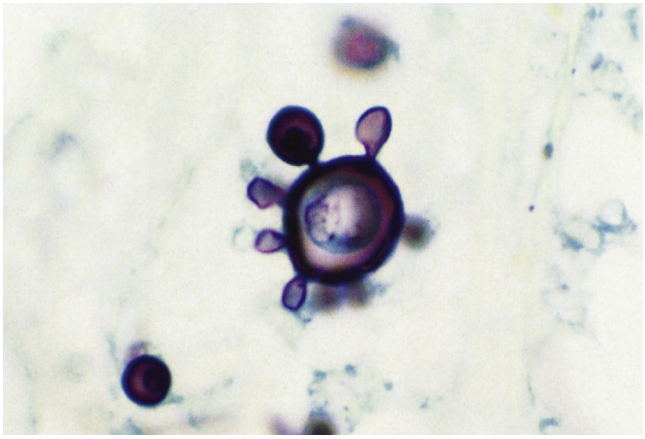


Fig. 64.13 Gomori methenamine silver–stained yeast form of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* showing multiple budding "pilot-wheel" morphology. (From Connor, D.H., et al., Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

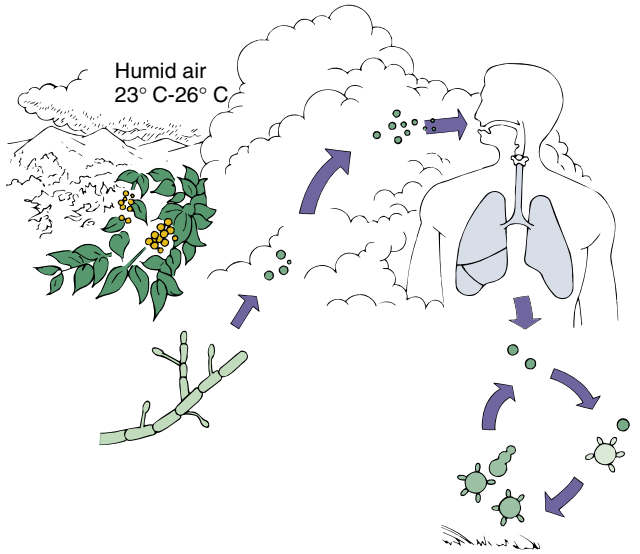


Fig. 64.14 Natural history of the mold (saprobic) and yeast (parasitic) cycle of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis.*

America had previously lived in Latin America. The ecology of the endemic areas includes high humidity, rich vegetation, moderate temperatures, and acid soil. These conditions are found along rivers from the Amazon jungle to small indigenous forests in Uruguay. *P. brasiliensis* has been recovered from soil in these areas; however, its ecologic niche is not well established. The portal of entry is thought to be either by inhalation or traumatic inoculation (Fig. 64.14), although even this is poorly understood. Natural infection has only been documented in armadillos.

Although infection occurs in children (peak incidence 10 to 19 years), overt disease is uncommon in both children and adolescents. In adults, disease is more common in men aged 30 to 50 years. Estrogen-mediated inhibition of the mold-to-yeast transition may account for the 15:1 male-to-female ratio of clinical disease. Most patients with clinically apparent disease live in rural areas and have close contact with the soil. There are no reports of epidemics or human-to-human transmission. Depression of cell-mediated immunity correlates with the acute progressive form of the disease.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Paracoccidioidomycosis may be subclinical or progressive with acute or chronic pulmonary forms or acute, subacute, or chronic disseminated forms of the disease. Most primary infections are self-limited; however, the organism may become dormant for long periods of time and reactivate to cause clinical disease concomitant with impaired host defenses. A subacute disseminated form is seen in younger patients and immunocompromised individuals with marked lymphadenopathy, organomegaly, bone marrow involvement, and osteoarticular manifestations mimicking osteomyelitis. Recurrent fungemia results in dissemination and frequent skin lesions. Pulmonary and mucosal lesions are not seen in this form of the disease.

Adults most often present with a chronic pulmonary form of the disease marked by respiratory problems, often as the sole manifestation. The disease progresses slowly over months to years, with persistent cough, purulent sputum, chest pain, weight loss, dyspnea, and fever. Pulmonary lesions are nodular, infiltrative, fibrotic, and cavitary.

Although 25% of patients exhibit only pulmonary manifestations of the disease, the infection can disseminate to extrapulmonary sites in the absence of diagnosis and treatment. Prominent extrapulmonary locations include skin and mucosa, lymph nodes, adrenal glands, liver, spleen, CNS, and bones. The mucosal lesions are painful and ulcerated and usually are confined to the mouth, lips, gums, and palate. More than 90% of these individuals are male.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is established by the demonstration of the characteristic yeast forms on microscopic examination of sputum, bronchoalveolar lavage fluid, scrapings, or biopsy of ulcers, pus draining from lymph nodes, CSF, or tissue (see Table 64.2). The organism may be visualized by a variety of staining methods, including calcofluor white fluorescence, H&E, GMS, PAS, or Papanicolaou stains (see Fig. 64.13). The presence of multiple buds distinguishes *P. brasiliensis*/*P. lutzii* from *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *B. dermatitidis*.

Isolation of the organism in culture requires confirmation by demonstration of thermal dimorphism or exoantigen testing (detection of exoantigen 1, 2, and 3). Cultures should be manipulated in a biosafety cabinet.

Serologic testing using either ID or CF to demonstrate antibody may be helpful in suggesting the diagnosis and in evaluating response to therapy (see Table 64.2). Application of both antigen detection and PCR-based diagnostic tests has been limited thus far.

TREATMENT

Itraconazole is the treatment of choice for most forms of the disease and generally must be given for at least 6 months. More severe or refractory infections may require amphotericin B therapy, followed by either itraconazole or sulfonamide therapy. Relapses are common with sulfonamide

therapy, and both dose and duration require adjustment based on clinical and mycologic parameters. Fluconazole has some activity against this organism, although frequent relapses have limited its use for the treatment of this disease.

Talaromycosis (Penicilliosis) *marneffei*

Talaromycosis marneffei is a disseminated mycosis caused by the dimorphic fungus *Talaromyces* (formerly *Penicillium) marneffei*. This infection involves the mononuclear phagocytic system and occurs primarily in HIV-infected individuals in tropical Asia, especially Thailand, northeastern India, China, Hong Kong, Vietnam, and Taiwan (see Fig. 64.2).

MORPHOLOGY

T. marneffei is the only species of *Talaromyces* that is a pathogenic dimorphic fungus. In its mold phase in culture at 25° C, it exhibits sporulating structures that are typical of the genus (see Fig. 64.1). Identification is aided by the formation of a soluble red pigment that diffuses into the agar (see Table 64.3).

At 37° C in culture and in tissue, *T. marneffei* grows as a yeastlike organism that divides by fission and exhibits a transverse septum (Fig. 64.15). The yeast form is intracellular in vivo and, in this way, resembles *H. capsulatum*, although it is somewhat more pleomorphic and elongated and does not bud (see Table 64.2 and Figs. 64.10 and 64.15).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

T. marneffei has emerged as a prominent mycotic pathogen among HIV-infected individuals in Southeast Asia (see Fig. 64.2). Imported cases have been reported in Europe and the United States. Although the disease is found predominantly in HIV/AIDS patients, its epidemiology is changing with better control of HIV infection globally, and non-HIV infected individuals, including those with cell-mediated immunodeficiency, or patients receiving monoclonal antibody therapies (e.g., anti CD-20) and kinase inhibitors, are also vulnerable. Talaromycosis (Penicilliosis) marneffei has become an early indicator of HIV infection in Southeast Asia. Although *T. marneffei* was initially isolated from a bamboo rat, *Rhizomys sinensis*, in Vietnam in 1956, exposure to soil and decaying material, especially under humid and rainy conditions, is likely the critical risk factor; agricultural occupations have been independently associated with increased risk. Attempts to recover the organism from soil have met with only limited success, and proof of an environmental reservoir is still lacking. Notably, isolates from bamboo rats and humans have been shown to share identical genotypes. This suggests that either rodents are vectors for human infections or both humans and rodents are infected from an as yet unidentified environmental source. Laboratory-acquired infection has been reported in an immunocompromised individual exposed to the mycelial form in culture.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Talaromycosis marneffei is caused when a susceptible host inhales conidia of *T. marneffei* from the environment, and disseminated infection develops. The infection may mimic tuberculosis, leishmaniasis, and other AIDS-related opportunistic infections, such as histoplasmosis and cryptococcosis. Patients present with fever, cough, pulmonary infiltrates, lymphadenopathy, organomegaly, anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia. Skin lesions reflect hematogenous dissemination and appear as molluscum contagiosum-like lesions on the face and trunk.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

T. marneffei is readily recovered from clinical specimens, including blood, bone marrow, bronchoalveolar lavage specimens, and tissue. In culture at 25° C to 30° C, isolation of a mold that exhibits typical *Penicillium*-like morphology and a diffusible red pigment is highly suggestive. Conversion to the yeast phase at 37° C is confirmatory. Microscopic detection of elliptic fission yeasts inside phagocytes in buffy coat preparations or smears of bone marrow, ulcerative skin lesions, or lymph nodes is diagnostic (see Fig. 64.15). Serologic tests that detect antigen and antibody have been developed, although no standardized commercial tests are available. PCR and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequencing methods have been applied for both direct detection from clinical samples, as well as identification of *T. marneffei* from culture.

TREATMENT

Amphotericin B, voriconazole, and itraconazole are often used to treat infection with *T. marneffei.* Administration of amphotericin B for 2 weeks should be followed by itraconazole for another 10 weeks. AIDS patients may require lifelong treatment with itraconazole or voriconazole to prevent relapses of the infection. Fluconazole therapy has been associated with a high rate of failure and is not recommended. The echinocandins, as well as isavuconazole, posaconazole, and terbinafine, may be useful but more data are required.

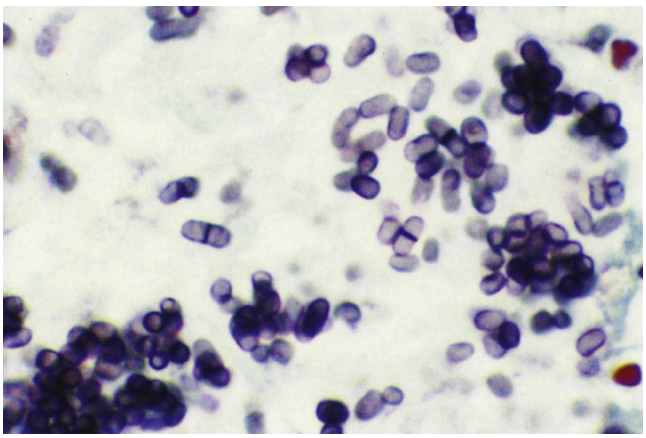


Fig. 64.15 Gomori methenamine silver–stained yeast forms of *Talaromyces marneffei,* including forms with single, wide, transverse septa (center). (From Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Armstrong, P.A., et al., 2018. *Multistate epidemiology of histoplasmosis*, United States, 2011-2014. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 24, 425–431.

Brown, J., et al., 2013. Coccidioidomycosis: epidemiology. Clin. Epidemiol. 5, 185–197.

Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of infectious diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, Conn.

Dukik, K., et al., 2017. Novel taxa of thermally dimorphic systemic pathogens in the *Ajellomycetaceae* (*Onygenales*). Mycoses 60, 296–309.

Restrepo, A., et al., 2012. Paracoccidioidomycosis: Latin Americas own fungal disorder. Curr. Fungal. Infect. Rep 6, 303–311.

Roy, M., et al., 2013. A large community outbreak of blastomycosis in Wisconsin with geographic and ethnic clustering. Clin. Infect. Dis. 57, 655–662.

Schwartz, I.S., et al., 2018. Emergomyces: a new genus of dimorphic fungal pathogens causing disseminated disease among immunocompromised persons globally. Curr Fungal Infect Rep 12, 44–50.

Scully, M.C., Baddley, J.W., 2018. Epidemiology of histoplasmosis. Curr. Fungal. Infect. Rep. 12, 51–58.

Smith, J.A., Kauffman, C.A., 2010. Blastomycosis, *Proc Am Thorac Soc* 7, 173–180.

Thompson III, G.R., Gomez, B.L., 2015. Histoplasma, Blastomyces, Coccidioides, and other dimorphic fungi causing systemic mycoses. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Vanittanakom, N., et al., 2006. *Penicillium marneffei* infection and recent advances in the epidemiology and molecular biology aspects. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 19, 95.

Case Study and Questions

A 44-year-old man from Ottumwa, Iowa, decides to clean his chimney flue with a bowling ball, which crashes into the fireplace in a cloud of dust, dirt, and feathers. Ten days later, his son and wife, both of whom were in the living room when the bowling ball was dropped, are both admitted to the hospital with fevers, cough, and diffuse pulmonary infiltrates on chest radiography.

1. What is the most likely diagnosis?
   a. Valley fever
   b. Acute pulmonary blastomycosis
   c. Legionnaires' disease
   d. Acute pulmonary histoplasmosis

2. How would you confirm the diagnosis?

3. How would you treat these patients?

65 Opportunistic Mycoses

George is a 45-year-old man who underwent an allogeneic stem cell transplant as part of his treatment for acute leukemia. The transplant went well, and after engraftment, George was discharged from the hospital. During the course of his transplant, George's physicians placed him on antifungal prophylaxis with voriconazole because of concerns regarding aspergillosis, which had been a problem in the hospital during the past few years. After discharge, George did well, and his antifungal prophylaxis was continued; however, on a clinical visit on day 140 posttransplant, he was noted to have a rash and elevated liver function studies. About 1 week later, he began having bloody diarrhea, and his physician became concerned about graft-versus-host disease (GVHD). A rectal biopsy was performed, confirming GVHD, and George's immunosuppressive regimen was increased, as was his daily dose of voriconazole. The signs and symptoms of GVHD continued, and eventually George was readmitted to the hospital, in which he was found to be confused, febrile, and short of breath. A chest radiograph showed a wedge-shaped infiltrate in the right lower lung field, and imaging studies of his sinuses showed bilateral opacification.

1. What is the differential diagnosis of this process?
2. About which fungal pathogens would you be concerned in an immunosuppressed individual receiving voriconazole prophylaxis?
3. How would you go about making a diagnosis?
4. What course of therapy would you undertake?

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

CANDIDIASIS

Trigger Words

Candida, pseudohyphae, endogenous, exogenous, yeast, immunocompromised, vaginal thrush, oropharyngeal

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Opportunistic yeasts causing infections ranging from superficial mucosal and cutaneous disease to hematogenously disseminated, often fatal, infections
- Vast majority of infections are caused by five major species: *Candida albicans, C. glabrata, C. parapsilosis, C. tropicalis,* and *C. krusei*
- Morphology ranges from budding yeasts to pseudohyphae and true hyphae
- Reproduction is by formation of blastoconidia (buds)
- Most important group of opportunistic fungal pathogens
- May be community acquired (mucosal infections) or hospital associated (invasive disease)

Epidemiology

- *Candida* spp. are known colonizers of humans and other warm-blooded animals
- Primary site of colonization is the GI tract; commensals in the vagina, urethra, skin, and nails
- Most infections are endogenous, involving normally commensal host flora
- Exogenous transmission in hospitals also occurs
- *C. albicans* predominates in most types of infection
- Consequences of *Candida* BSIs are severe; risk factors include hematologic malignancies and neutropenia, abdominal surgery, prematurity in infants, and age >70 years

Diagnosis

- Clinical appearance, direct microscopic examination, and culture
- Hematogenously disseminated infections and candidemia difficult to diagnose on clinical grounds alone
- Laboratory diagnosis involves procurement of appropriate clinical material, followed by direct microscopic examination; culture; and (increasingly) application of molecular, antigenic, and proteomic analysis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Mucosal and cutaneous infection: topical and systemically active antifungal agents include azoles (itraconazole, fluconazole, miconazole, and many others), polyenes (amphotericin B and nystatin)
- Invasive candidiasis and candidemia: oral or intravenous administration depending on antifungal agent and severity of disease and/or immunosuppression; azoles (fluconazole, voriconazole, posaconazole, isavuconazole), echinocandins (anidulafungin, caspofungin, micafungin), amphotericin B formulations (deoxycholate and lipid formulations), flucytosine

CRYPTOCOCCOSIS

Trigger Words

Capsule, budding yeast, CNS, neurotropic, India ink, antigen, AIDS

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Systemic mycosis caused by the fungi *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *C. gattii*
- *C. neoformans* includes capsular serotypes A, D, and AD; var. *grubii* (serotype A) and var. neoformans (serotype D)
- *C. gattii* includes serotypes B and C
- Spherical to oval, encapsulated, yeastlike organisms that replicate by budding
- Both species may cause pulmonary, hematogenously disseminated, and CNS disease

Epidemiology

- Usually acquired by inhaling aerosolized cells of *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii*
- Both species pathogenic for immunocompetent individuals
- *C. neoformans*: most often encountered as opportunistic pathogen; found worldwide in soil contaminated with avian excreta
- *C. gattii*: found in tropical and subtropical climates in association with eucalyptus trees; the focus in the Pacific Northwest has been associated with Douglas fir trees
- Disease is similar, although *C. gattii* infection tends to occur in immunocompetent individuals and has a lower associated mortality
- Incidence has progressively declined since early 1990s because of widespread use of fluconazole and successful treatment of HIV infection with antiviral drugs

Diagnosis

- May present as pneumonic process or (more commonly) as CNS infection
- Diagnosis may be made by culture of blood, CSF, or other clinical material
- Microscopic examination of CSF may reveal characteristic encapsulated budding yeast cells
- Cryptococcal meningitis: diagnosis by detection of polysaccharide antigen in serum or CSF

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Cryptococcal meningitis and other disseminated forms universally fatal if left untreated
- Antifungal therapy: amphotericin B (deoxycholate or lipid formulation) plus flucytosine followed by maintenance/consolidation therapy with fluconazole (preferred) or itraconazole
- Effective management of CNS pressure and IRIS crucial to successful management of cryptococcal meningitis

ASPERGILLOSIS

Trigger Words

Septate branching hyphae, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, angioinvasive, aspergilloma, conidia

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Broad spectrum of diseases caused by filamentous fungi (molds) of genus *Aspergillus*
- Exposure to spores in environment may cause allergic reactions in hypersensitized hosts or destructive, invasive, pulmonary, and disseminated disease in highly immunocompromised hosts
- Vast majority of infections caused by *A. fumigatus* (most common), *A. flavus, A. niger*, and *A. terreus*
- Hyaline molds that produce vast amounts of spores (conidia) that serve as infectious propagules on inhalation by host
- Invasive aspergillosis marked by angioinvasion and tissue destruction caused by infarction
- Hematogenous dissemination of infection to extrapulmonary sites (most commonly brain, heart, kidneys, GI tract, liver, spleen) common because of angioinvasive nature of fungus

Epidemiology

- *Aspergillus* spp. common worldwide; conidia ubiquitous in air, soil, decaying matter
- Within hospital environment, *Aspergillus* spp. may be found in air, showerheads, water storage tanks, potted plants
- Conidia (spores) constantly being inhaled; respiratory tract most frequent and important portal of entry
- Host reaction, associated pathologic findings, and outcome of infection depend more on host factors than virulence or pathogenesis of individual species

Diagnosis

- Serologic, culture, histopathologic, molecular, biochemical, and antigenic methods supplemented by imaging studies

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment usually involves administration of corticosteroids coupled with pulmonary toilet
- Treatment of chronic pulmonary aspergillosis may involve steroids and long-term antifungal therapy, usually with an azole antifungal agent
- Prophylaxis of high-risk (neutropenic) patients usually accomplished by administration of a mold-active azole (itraconazole, posaconazole, voriconazole)
- Specific antifungal therapy of invasive aspergillosis usually involves administration of voriconazole or a lipid formulation of amphotericin B; isavuconazole has recently been cleared by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for treatment of invasive aspergillosis
- Efforts to decrease immunosuppression and/or reconstitute host immune defenses important, as is surgical resection of infected tissue if possible
- Resection of aspergillomas only considered in instances of severe hemoptysis

BSI, Bloodstream infections; *CNS,* central nervous system; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *GI,* gastrointestinal; *IRIS,* immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome.

The frequency of invasive mycoses caused by opportunistic fungal pathogens has increased significantly over the past two decades. This increase in infections is associated with excessive morbidity and mortality (see Chapter 57, Table 57.1) and is directly related to the increase in patient populations at risk for developing serious fungal infections. High-risk groups include individuals undergoing blood and marrow transplantation (BMT), solid organ transplantation, major surgery (especially gastrointestinal [GI] surgery), those with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), neoplastic disease, immunosuppressive therapy, advanced age, and premature birth (Table 65.1). The most well-known causes of opportunistic mycoses include *Candida albicans, Cryptococcus neoformans,* and *Aspergillus fumigatus* (Box 65.1). The estimated frequency of invasive mycoses caused by these pathogens is >700,000 infections per year for *Candida,* >1,000,000 for *C. neoformans,* and >300,000 for *Aspergillus* (see Chapter 57, Table 57.1). In addition to these agents, of increasing importance is the growing list of "other" opportunistic fungi (see Box 65.1). New and emerging fungal pathogens include species of *Candida* and *Aspergillus* other than *C. albicans* and *A. fumigatus;* microsporidia; opportunistic yeastlike fungi, such as *Trichosporon* spp., *Malassezia* spp., *Rhodotorula* spp., and *Saprochaete capitata* (formerly *Blastoschizomyces capitatus*); the Mucormycetes; hyaline molds, such as *Fusarium, Sarocladium, Scopulariopsis, Purpureocillium (Paecilomyces),* and *Trichoderma* species; and a wide variety of dematiaceous fungi, including *Scedosporium* spp. and *Lomentospora prolificans* (see Box 65.1). Infections caused by these organisms range from catheter-related fungemia and peritonitis to more localized infections involving lung, skin, and paranasal sinuses to widespread hematogenous dissemination. Many of these fungi were previously thought to be nonpathogenic and now are recognized causes of invasive mycoses in compromised patients. Estimates of the annual incidence of the less common mycoses have been virtually nonexistent; however, data from a population-based survey conducted by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention indicate that mucormycosis occurs at a rate of 1.7 to 3.4 infections per million population per year, hyalohyphomycosis (*Fusarium, Sarocladium,* etc.) at 1.2 infections per million per year, and phaeohyphomycosis (dematiaceous molds) at 1.0 infection per million per year.

Given the complexity of the patients at risk for infection and the diverse array of fungal pathogens, opportunistic mycoses pose a considerable diagnostic and therapeutic challenge. Diagnosis depends on a heightened clinical suspicion (think **fungus**) and obtaining appropriate material for culture and histopathology. Isolation and identification of the infecting organisms is very important in properly managing infections because of the less common opportunistic fungi. Some of these organisms are inherently nonsusceptible to standard azole, echinocandin, or polyene therapy (see Chapter 61) and may require the use of alternative antifungal agents in addition to surgical management and reversal of the underlying impairment of host defenses.

Candidiasis

It is clear that the most important group of opportunistic fungal pathogens is the *Candida* species. *Candida* spp. are

TABLE 65.1 Predisposing Factors for Opportunistic Mycoses

Factor	Possible Role in Infection	Major Opportunistic Pathogens
Antimicrobial agents (number and duration)	Promote fungal colonization Provide intravascular access	*Candida* spp., other yeastlike fungi
Adrenal corticosteroid	Immunosuppression	*Cryptococcus neoformans, Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, other molds, *Pneumocystis*
Chemotherapy	Immunosuppression	*Candida* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., *Pneumocystis*
Hematologic/solid organ malignancy	Immunosuppression	*Candida* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., Mucormycetes, other molds and yeastlike fungi, *Pneumocystis*
Previous colonization	Translocation across mucosa	*Candida* spp.
Indwelling catheter (central venous, pressure transducer, Swan-Ganz)	Direct vascular access Contaminated product	*Candida* spp., other yeastlike fungi
Total parenteral nutrition	Direct vascular access Contamination of infusate	*Candida* spp., *Malassezia* spp., other yeastlike fungi
Neutropenia (WBC < 500/mm^3)	Immunosuppression	*Aspergillus* spp., *Candida* spp., other molds and yeastlike fungi
Extensive surgery or burns	Route of infection Direct vascular access	*Candida* spp., *Fusarium* spp., Mucormycetes
Assisted ventilation	Route of infection	*Candida* spp., *Aspergillus* spp.
Hospitalization or intensive care unit stay	Exposure to pathogens Exposure to additional risk factors	*Candida* spp., other yeastlike fungi, *Aspergillus* spp.
Hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis	Route of infection Immunosuppression	*Candida* spp., *Rhodotorula* spp., other yeastlike fungi
Malnutrition	Immunosuppression	*Pneumocystis*, *Candida* spp., *C. neoformans*
HIV infection/AIDS	Immunosuppression	*C. neoformans, Pneumocystis, Candida* spp., Microsporidia
Extremes of age	Immunosuppression Numerous comorbidities	*Candida* spp.

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *WBC,* white blood cells.

BOX 65.1 Agents of Opportunistic Mycoses[a]

***Candida* spp.**

C. albicans
C. glabrata
C. parapsilosis
C. tropicalis
C. krusei
C. lusitaniae
C. guilliermondii
C. dubliniensis
C. rugosa
C. auris

***Cryptococcus Neoformans* and Other Opportunistic Yeastlike Fungi**

C. neoformans/gattii
Malassezia spp.
Trichosporon spp.
Rhodotorula spp.
Saprochaete capitata

Microsporidia

Aspergillus *spp.*

A. fumigatus
A. flavus
A. niger
A. versicolor
A. terreus

Mucormycetes

Rhizopus spp.
Mucor spp.
Rhizomucor spp.
Lichtheimia corymbifera
Cunninghamella spp.

Other Hyaline Molds

Fusarium spp.
Sarocladium spp.
Paecilomyces spp.
Purpureocillium lilacinum
Trichoderma spp.
Scopulariopsis spp.

Dematiaceous Molds

Alternaria spp.
Bipolaris spp.
Cladophialophora spp.
Curvularia spp.
Exophiala spp.
Exserohilum spp.
Lomentospora prolificans
Scedosporium spp.
Wangiella spp.

Pneumocystis jirovecii

[a]List not all-inclusive.

the third most common cause of central line–associated bloodstream infections (BSIs), exceeding that of any individual gram-negative pathogen (Table 65.2 and Clinical Case 65.1). Between 1980 and the present, the frequency of *Candida* BSIs has risen steadily in hospitals of all sizes and in all age groups.

Although more than 100 species of *Candida* have been described, only a few have been implicated in clinical infections (see Box 65.1). *C. albicans* is the species most commonly isolated from clinical material and generally accounts for 90% to 100% of mucosal isolates and 40% to 70% of isolates from BSI, depending on the clinical service and the patient's underlying disease (Table 65.3). Approximately 95% of all *Candida* BSIs are accounted for by four species: *C. albicans*, *C. glabrata*, *C. parapsilosis*, and *C. tropicalis* (see Table 65.3). Among these common species, only *C. glabrata* can be said to be truly "emerging" as a cause of BSI, in part because of its intrinsic and acquired resistance to azoles and other commonly used antifungal agents. The remaining 5% of *Candida* BSIs encompasses 12 to 14 different species, including *C. krusei*, *C. lusitaniae*, *C. dubliniensis*, and *C. rugosa*, among others (see Box 65.1). Although these species must be considered "rare" causes of candidiasis, several have been observed to occur in nosocomial clusters and/or to exhibit innate or acquired resistance to one or more established antifungal agents. *C. auris* is an emerging species of great concern worldwide. Originally described in 2009 in association with otitis externa, this multidrug-resistant and highly pathogenic yeast has simultaneously emerged on three continents as an important nosocomial pathogen with evidence of high levels of interhospital and intrahospital transmission and distinct geographically constrained clonal lineages.

TABLE 65.2 Central Line–Associated Bloodstream Infections: Most Frequent Associated Pathogens, National Healthcare Safety Network

Rank	Pathogen	% of Isolates[a]
1	*Enterococcus* spp.	17.2
2	Coagulase-negative staphylococci	16.4
3	*Candida* spp.	14.3
4	*Staphylococcus aureus*	13.2
5	*Klebsiella pneumoniae/K. oxytoca*	8.4

[a]Percentage of a total of 96,532 infections.

Data from Wiener, L.M., et al., 2016. Antimicrobial-resistant pathogens associated with healthcare-associated infections: summary of data reported to the National Healthcare Safety Network at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2011-2014. Infect. Control Hospital Epidemiol. 37, 1288–1301.

MORPHOLOGY

All *Candida* species exist as oval yeastlike forms (3 to 5 μm) that produce buds or blastoconidia. Species of *Candida* other than *C. glabrata* also produce pseudohyphae and true hyphae (Fig. 65.1; see also Chapter 57, Fig. 57.2A and Chapter 60, Fig. 60.1). In addition, *C. albicans* forms germ tubes (Chapter 57, Fig. 57.2) and terminal, thick-walled chlamydoconidia (Fig. 65.2). *C. glabrata*, the second most common species of *Candida* in many settings, is incapable of forming pseudohyphae, germ tubes, or true hyphae under most conditions. In histologic sections, all *Candida* spp. stain poorly with hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) and well with the periodic acid–Schiff (PAS), Gomori methenamine silver (GMS), and Gridley fungus stains.

In culture, most *Candida* spp. form smooth, white, creamy, domed colonies. *C. albicans* and other species may also undergo **phenotypic switching,** in which a single strain of *Candida* may change reversibly among several different morphotypes, ranging from the typical smooth, white colony composed of predominantly budding yeastlike cells to very "fuzzy" or "hairy" colonies composed primarily of pseudohyphal and hyphal forms. The frequency of the switching phenomenon is too high to result from gene mutations and too low to be attributable to mass conversion, in which all cells in the population change their phenotype in response to signals from the environment. It is likely that switching serves as some type of

Clinical Case 65.1 **Candidemia**

Posteraro and associates (*J Clin Microbiol* 44:3046–3047, 2006) described a case of recurrent fungemia in a 35-year-old woman. The patient was seen at 5 weeks' gestation after intrauterine insemination. She presented with fever, tachycardia, and hypotension. The WBC count was 23,500/μL with 78% neutrophils. She experienced a spontaneous abortion. Severe chorioamnionitis was diagnosed, placental and fetal tissues were cultured, and blood cultures and vaginal swabs were obtained. The patient was treated with broad-spectrum antibacterial agents. Five days later, no clinical improvement was seen. The cultured blood and placental samples grew the yeast *Candida glabrata*, which was also isolated from the patient's vaginal cultures. On the basis of fluconazole minimal inhibitory concentrations, indicating that the organism was susceptible, the patient was placed on fluconazole. Four weeks later she experienced complete resolution of her symptoms, with eradication of the fungus from her bloodstream. Antifungal treatment was discontinued, and the patient was sent home, in which she did well. Six months later she was readmitted to the hospital with fever, chills, and fatigue. The WBC count was elevated at 21,500/μL with 73% neutrophils. Consecutive blood cultures were again positive for *C. glabrata*, which was also found in cultures of vaginal fluid. All isolates were found to be resistant to fluconazole. On the basis of these findings, the patient was treated with amphotericin B. Within 1 week, the patient's clinical condition was improved. After 1 month of amphotericin B treatment, blood cultures were sterile, and she was discharged from the hospital. Three years later, she remained free of any evidence of infection.

This is an unusual case, in that the patient was not immunocompromised yet experienced recurrent candidemia with *C. glabrata*. The use of fluconazole as initial therapy, although apparently successful, induced upregulation of drug efflux pumps in the organism and allowed later isolates to become resistant to fluconazole and other azoles.

WBC, White blood count.

TABLE 65.3 Species Distribution of Candida Bloodstream Infection Isolates by Clinical Service in the United States[a]

	% OF ISOLATES BY SPECIES AND CLINICAL SERVICE (NUMBER TESTED)							
Species	**GMED (2554)**	**HEME (455)**	**SCT (165)**	**NICU (62)**	**SOT (292)**	**ST (629)**	**SURG (1175)**	**HIV/AIDS (82)**
Candida albicans	41.3	22.0	17.6	54.8	33.2	42.1	44.5	40.2
C. glabrata	24.8	25.5	32.7	1.6	38.4	28.9	23.7	22.0
C. parapsilosis	14.5	12.3	13.9	30.6	11.3	11.6	15.4	9.8
C. tropicalis	7.7	15.4	7.9	0.0	5.5	7.6	7.1	7.3
C. krusei	2.7	16.0	19.4	0.0	2.7	2.2	1.4	3.7
Other	8.9	8.8	8.5	12.9	8.9	16.1	7.6	17.1

[a]Data compiled from Pfaller, M., et al., 2012. Epidemiology and outcomes in 3648 patients with candidemia: data from the Prospective Antifungal Therapy (PATH Alliance) Registry, 2004-2008. Diag. Microbiol. Infect. Dis. 74, 323–331.

GMED, General medicine; *HEME,* hematologic malignancy; *HIV/AIDS,* human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *NICU,* neonatal intensive care unit; *SCT,* stem cell transplant; *SOT,* solid organ transplant; *ST,* solid tumor; *SURG,* surgical (nontransplant).

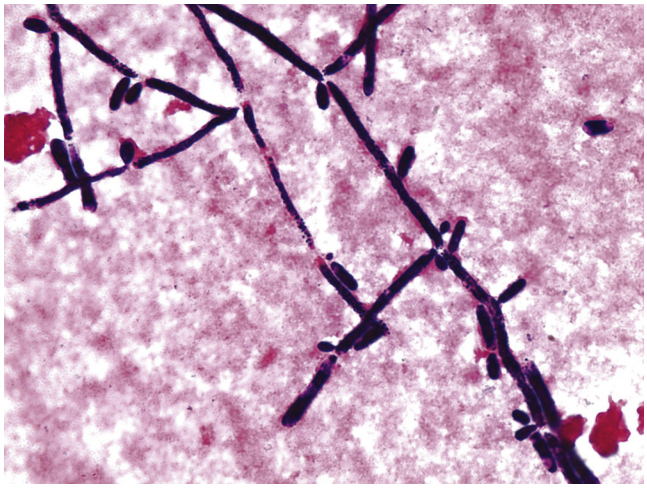


Fig. 65.1 *Candida tropicalis* blastoconidia and pseudohyphae (Gram stain, ×1000).

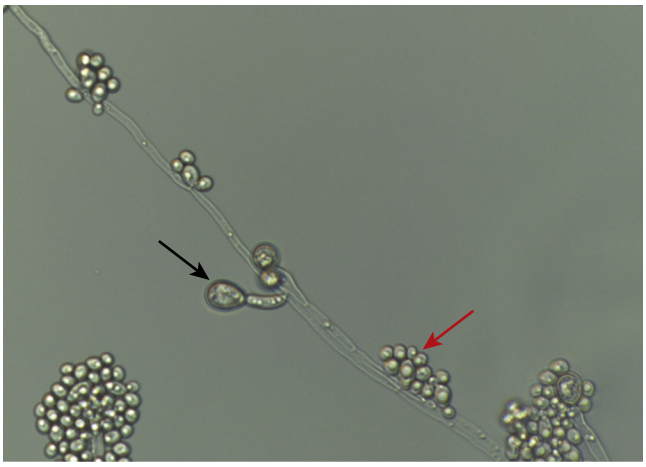


Fig. 65.2 *Candida albicans*, microscopic morphology in cornmeal agar showing large chlamydospores *(black arrow)*, blastoconidia *(red arrow)*, hyphae, and pseudohyphae.

master system in *C. albicans*, and other species, for rapid response at the level of individual cells to changes in the local microenvironment. It has been postulated that phenotypic switching explains the ability of *C. albicans* to survive in many different environmental microniches within the human host.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Candida spp. are known colonizers of humans and other warm-blooded animals. As such, they are found in humans and in nature worldwide. The primary site of colonization is the GI tract from mouth to rectum. They also may be found as commensals in the vagina and urethra, on the skin, and under the fingernails and toenails. *C. albicans,* the most common etiologic agent of human disease, has also been found apart from humans and animals in air, water, and soil.

It is estimated that 25% to 50% of healthy persons carry *Candida* as part of the normal flora of the mouth, with *C. albicans* accounting for 70% to 80% of isolates. Oral carriage rates are increased substantially in hospitalized patients; those with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, dentures, and diabetes; patients receiving antineoplastic chemotherapy; those receiving antibiotics; and children. Virtually all humans may carry one or more *Candida* species throughout their GI tract, and the levels of carriage may increase to that detectable in illness or other circumstances in which the host's microbial suppression mechanisms become compromised.

The predominant source of infection caused by *Candida* spp., from superficial mucosal and cutaneous disease to hematogenous dissemination, is the patient. That is, most types of candidiasis represent **endogenous** infection in which the normally commensal host flora take advantage of the "opportunity" to cause infection. To do so, there must be a lowering of the host's anti-*Candida* barrier. In the cases of *Candida* BSIs, transfer of the organism from the GI mucosa to the bloodstream requires prior overgrowth of the numbers of yeasts in their commensal habitat, coupled with a breach in the integrity of the GI mucosa.

Exogenous transmission of *Candida* also may account for a proportion of certain types of candidiasis. Examples include the use of contaminated irrigation solutions, parenteral nutrition fluids, vascular pressure transducers, cardiac valves, and corneas. Transmission of *Candida* spp. from health care workers to patients and from patient to patient has been well documented, especially in the intensive care unit environment. The hands of health

care workers serve as potential reservoirs for nosocomial transmission of *Candida* spp.

Among the various species of *Candida* capable of causing human infection (see Box 65.1 and Table 65.3), *C. albicans* predominates in most types of infection. Infections of genital, cutaneous, and oral sites almost always involve *C. albicans*. A wider array of *Candida* spp. is seen causing BSIs and other forms of invasive candidiasis, and although *C. albicans* usually predominates (see Table 65.3), the frequency with which this and other species of *Candida* are isolated from blood varies considerably according to the clinical service (see Table 65.3); the age of the patient (Fig. 65.3); and the local, regional, or global setting (Table 65.4). Whereas *C. albicans* and *C. parapsilosis* predominate as causes of BSIs among infants and children, a decrease in *C. albicans* and *C. parapsilosis* infections and a prominent increase in *C. glabrata* infections is seen among older individuals (see Fig. 65.3). Also, although *C. glabrata* is the second most common species causing BSIs in North America, it is seen at a lower frequency in Latin America, in which *C. parapsilosis* and *C. tropicalis* are more common (see Table 65.4).

The differences in the number and types of *Candida* spp. causing infections may be influenced by numerous factors, including patient age, increased immunosuppression, antifungal drug exposure, or differences in infection-control practices. Each one of these factors, alone or in combination, may affect the prevalence of different *Candida* spp. in each institution. For example, the use of azoles (e.g., fluconazole) for antifungal prophylaxis in hematologic malignancy patients and recipients of stem cell transplantation may increase the likelihood of infections caused by *C. glabrata* and *C. krusei*, which are two species with decreased susceptibility to this class of antifungals (see Table 65.3). Also, breaks in infection-control precautions and in the proper care of vascular catheters may lead to more infections with *C. parapsilosis*, which is the predominant species isolated from the hands of health care workers and a frequent cause of catheter-related fungemia. In the last several years, *C. auris* has emerged simultaneously on three continents as an important novel cause of nosocomial infections, with geographically restricted clonal lineages and high interhospital and intrahospital transmission rates. A wide variety of deep-seated infections in addition to candidemia have been reported, and this multidrug-resistant (intrinsically resistant to fluconazole with reported resistances to amphotericin B, the echinocandins, and 5-FC) species has been shown to persist in hospital environments and cause long-term colonization of patients in high-intensity care settings, leading to specific guidelines for the management of patients infected or colonized with this organism.

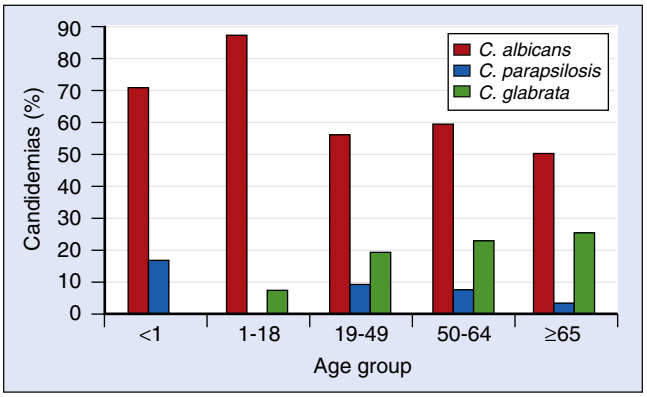


Fig. 65.3 Percentage of all candidemias caused by selected *Candida* species in each age group. Data are from the Emerging Infections and the Epidemiology of Iowa Organisms Survey, 1998-2001. (Data from Pfaller, M.A., Diekema, D.J., 2007. Epidemiology of invasive candidiasis: a persistent public health problem. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 20, 133.)

The consequences of a *Candida* BSI in the hospitalized patient are severe. Hospitalized patients with candidemia have been shown to be at a twofold greater risk of death in hospital than those with noncandidal BSIs. Among all patients with nosocomial (hospital-acquired) BSIs, candidemia was found to be an independent predictor of death in hospital. Although estimates of mortality may be confounded by the serious nature of the underlying diseases in many of these patients, matched cohort studies have confirmed that the mortality directly attributable to the fungal infection is quite high (Table 65.5). Notably, the excess or attributable mortality resulting from candidemia has not decreased from that observed in the mid-1980s to that observed in the present day, despite the introduction of new antifungal agents with good activity against most species of *Candida*.

Clearly, more is known about the epidemiology of nosocomial candidemia than any other fungal infection. The accumulated evidence allows one to propose a general view of nosocomial candidemia (Fig. 65.4). Certain hospitalized individuals are clearly at increased risk of acquiring candidemia during hospitalization because of their underlying medical condition: patients with hematologic malignancies

TABLE 65.4 Species Distribution of Candida Bloodstream Infection Isolates by Geographic Region

		% OF ISOLATES BY SPECIES				
Region	**Number of Isolates**	**CA**	**CG**	**CP**	**CT**	**CK**
Asia-Pacific	366	44.8	14.2	25.4	12.0	0.8
Europe	1097	50.3	16.0	17.8	8.1	2.6
Latin America	433	43.0	8.8	24.0	17.6	1.8
North America	1211	41.5	25.3	14.3	9.0	3.3
TOTAL	**3107**	45.2	18.4	18.2	10.3	2.5

Modified from Pfaller, M.A., et al., 2013. Echinocandin and triazole antifungal susceptibility profiles for clinical opportunistic yeast and mold isolates collected from 2010 to 2011: application of new CLSI clinical breakpoints and epidemiological cutoff values for characterization of geographic and temporal trends of antifungal resistance. J. Clin. Microbiol. 51, 2571–2581.

CA, Candida albicans; CG, C. glabrata; CK, C. krusei; CP, C. parapsilosis; CT, C. tropicalis.

and/or neutropenia, those undergoing GI surgery, premature infants, and patients older than 70 years (see Table 65.1 and Fig. 65.4). Compared with control subjects without the specific risk factors or exposures, the likelihood of these already high-risk patients contracting candidemia in hospital is approximately 2 times greater for each class of antibiotics they receive, 7 times greater if they have a central venous catheter, 10 times greater if *Candida* has been found to be colonizing other anatomic sites, and 18 times greater if the patient has undergone acute hemodialysis.

TABLE 65.5 Excess Mortality Attributable to Nosocomial Infections with *Candida* and *Aspergillus*

	PERCENT MORTALITY		
	CANDIDA[a]		ASPERGILLUS[B]
Type of Mortality Rate	**1988**	**2001**	**1991**
Crude mortality			
Cases	57	61	95
Controls	19	12	10
Attributable mortality	38	49	85

[a]Patients with candidemia. Data from Wey, S.B., Mori, M. Pfaller, M.A., et al., 1988. Hospital-acquired candidemia: attributable mortality and excess length of stay. Arch. Intern. Med. 148, 2642–2645; Gudlagson, O., et al., 2003. Attributable mortality of nosocomial candidemia, revisited. Clin. Infect. Dis. 37, 1172–1177.

[b]Bone marrow transplant patients with invasive pulmonary aspergillosis. Data from Pannuti, C.S., Gingrich, R.D., Pfaller, M.A., et al., 1991. Nosocomial pneumonia in adult patients undergoing bone marrow transplantation: a 9-year study. J. Clinical Oncol. 9, 1.

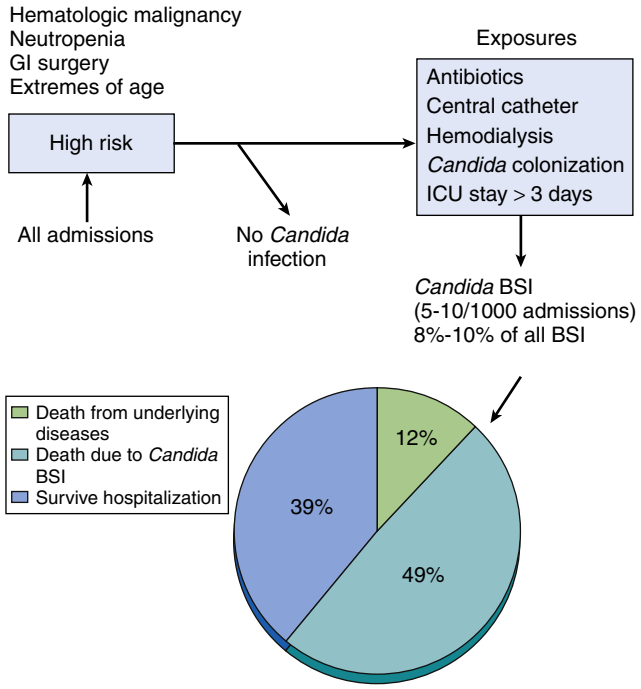


Fig. 65.4 Global view of hospital-acquired candidemia. *BSI,* Bloodstream infections; *GI,* gastrointestinal; *ICU,* intensive care unit. (Modified from Lockhart, S.R., Diekema D.J., Pfaller M.A., et al., 2009. The epidemiology of fungal infections. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.)

Hospitalization in the intensive care unit setting provides the opportunity for transmission of *Candida* among patients and has been shown to be an additional independent risk factor.

The available epidemiologic data indicate that between 20 and 40 of every 1000 high-risk patients exposed to the previously mentioned risk factors will contract a BSI caused by *Candida* spp. (8% to 10% of all nosocomial BSIs; see Table 65.2). Approximately 49% of these patients will die as a result of their infection, 12% will die of their underlying disease, and 39% will survive hospitalization (see Fig. 65.4). This picture has not changed, and may even be worse, from that seen in the mid-1980s. The outcome for almost half of those patients with candidemia could be improved by more effective means of prevention, diagnosis, and therapy. Clearly the most desirable of these is prevention, which is best approached by rigorous control of the exposures, especially limiting the use of broad-spectrum antibiotics, improving catheter care, and adhering to infection-control practices.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Given the right setting, *Candida* spp. can cause clinically apparent infection of virtually any organ system (Table 65.6; see Clinical Case 65.1). Infections range from superficial mucosal and cutaneous candidiasis to widespread hematogenous dissemination involving target organs, such as the liver, spleen, kidney, heart, and brain. In the latter situation, the mortality directly attributable to the infectious process approaches 50% (see Table 65.5 and Fig. 65.4).

Mucosal infections caused by *Candida* spp. (known as "thrush") may be limited to the oropharynx or extend to the esophagus and the entire GI tract. In women, the vaginal mucosa also is a common site of infection. These infections are generally seen in individuals with local or generalized immunosuppression or in those settings in which candidal overgrowth is favored (see Table 65.6). These infections usually present as white "cottage cheese"–like patches on the mucosal surface. Other presentations include the **pseudomembranous** type, which reveals a raw bleeding surface when scraped; the **erythematous** type, which has flat, red, and occasionally sore areas; candidal **leukoplakia,** which has nonremovable white thickening of epithelium caused by *Candida* spp.; and angular **cheilitis,** which has sore fissures at the corners of the mouth.

Candida spp. may cause localized skin infection in areas in which the skin surface is occluded and moist (e.g., groin, axillae, toe webs, breast folds). These infections present as a pruritic rash with erythematous vesiculopustular lesions.

Onychomycosis and paronychia may occur in the setting of a mixed microbial flora, including *Candida*. The species most commonly involved are *C. albicans*, *C. parapsilosis*, and *C. guilliermondii*.

Skin lesions may also appear during the course of hematogenous dissemination. These lesions are of major diagnostic importance; they can be directly biopsied and thus provide an etiologic diagnosis of a systemic process.

Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis is a rare condition marked by a deficiency in T-lymphocyte responsiveness to *Candida* spp. These patients suffer from severe, unremitting mucocutaneous *Candida* lesions, including extensive nail

TABLE 65.6 Types of Candida Infection and Associated Predisposing Factors

Type of Disease	Predisposing Factors
Oropharyngeal infection	Age extremes Denture wearers Diabetes mellitus Antibiotic use Radiotherapy for head and neck cancer Inhaled and systemic steroids Cytotoxic chemotherapy HIV infection Hematologic malignancies Stem cell or solid organ transplantation
Esophagitis	Systemic corticosteroids AIDS Cancer Stem cell or solid organ transplantation
Vulvovaginal infection	Oral contraceptives Pregnancy Diabetes mellitus Systemic corticosteroids HIV infection Antibiotic use
Infections of the skin and nails	Local moisture and occlusion Immersion of hands in water Peripheral vascular disease
Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis	T-lymphocyte defects
Urinary tract infection	Indwelling urinary catheter Urinary obstruction Urinary procedures Diabetes mellitus
Pneumonia	Aspiration
Endocarditis	Major surgery Previous valvular disease Prosthetic valve Intravenous drug use Long-term central venous catheter
Pericarditis	Thoracic surgery Immunosuppression
CNS infection	CNS surgery Ventriculoperitoneal shunt Ocular surgery
Ocular infection	Trauma Surgery
Bone and joint infection	Trauma Intraarticular injections Diabetic foot
Abdominal infection	Perforation Abdominal surgery Anastomotic leaks Pancreatitis Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis
Hematogenous infection	Solid organ transplantation Colonization Prolonged antibiotic use Abdominal surgery Intensive care support Total parenteral nutrition Hemodialysis Immunosuppression Extremes of age Stem cell transplantation

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *CNS,* central nervous system: *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus.

Modified from Dignani, M.C., Solomkin, J.S., Anaissie, E.J., 2003. *Candida*. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

involvement and vaginitis. The lesions may become quite large, with a disfiguring granulomatous appearance.

Urinary tract involvement with *Candida* spp. ranges from asymptomatic bladder colonization to renal abscesses secondary to hematogenous seeding. Bladder colonization with *Candida* spp. is essentially not seen unless a patient requires an indwelling bladder catheter, has diabetes, suffers from urinary obstruction, or has had prior urinary procedures. Benign colonization of the bladder is most common in these settings, but urethritis and/or cystitis may occur. Hematogenous seeding of the kidney may result in renal abscess, papillary necrosis, or "fungus ball" of the ureter or renal pelvis.

Intraabdominal candidiasis in patients who have had recent abdominal surgery or intraabdominal events refers to a heterogeneous group of infections that includes peritonitis, abdominal abscess, and purulent or necrotic infection at sites of GI perforation or anastomotic leak. *Candida* peritonitis may be seen in the setting of chronic ambulatory peritoneal dialysis or after GI surgery, anastomotic leak, or intestinal perforation. These infections may remain localized to the abdomen, involve adjacent organs, or lead to hematogenous candidiasis. Up to 40% of patients with secondary or tertiary peritonitis, as defined by a multinational consensus panel, may develop intraabdominal candidiasis with a high mortality rate. A subset of postsurgical patients, particularly those with recurrent gastroduodenal perforation, anastomotic leaks, or acute necrotizing pancreatitis, are at uniquely high risk for invasive candidiasis. In other settings, such as perforated appendicitis, invasive candidiasis appears to be a rare complication. Infections are often polymicrobial, with yeast noted in as high as 20% of all cases and 40% in patients with a recent gastroduodenal perforation. Diagnosis is hampered by the lack of specific clinical signs and symptoms. Blood cultures are often negative. A laboratory report of yeast isolated from an abdominal specimen must be evaluated to distinguish between contamination, colonization, and invasive infection.

Hematogenous candidiasis may be acute or chronic and usually results in seeding of deep tissues, including the abdominal viscera, heart, eyes, bones and joints, and brain. Chronic hepatosplenic candidiasis may occur after overt or occult fungemia and presents as an indolent process marked by fever, elevated alkaline phosphatase, and multiple lesions in the liver and spleen.

Central nervous system (CNS) candidiasis may occur secondary to hematogenous disease or be associated with neurosurgical procedures and ventriculoperitoneal shunts. This process may mimic bacterial meningitis, or the course may be indolent or chronic.

Most cardiac involvement with *Candida* spp. is the result of hematogenous seeding of a prosthetic or damaged heart valve, the myocardium, or pericardial space. Implantation of heart valves contaminated with *C. parapsilosis* has been reported. The clinical presentation resembles bacterial endocarditis, with fever and a new or changing heart murmur. The vegetations are classically large and friable, and embolic events are more common with endocarditis caused by *Candida* spp. than with bacterial endocarditis.

The eye is frequently involved in patients with hematogenous candidiasis, presenting as chorioretinitis and endophthalmitis. For this reason, all patients at risk for candidemia should receive careful and frequent ophthalmologic examinations. Traumatic keratitis also may be seen.

Bone and joint infections caused by *Candida* spp. are almost always sequelae of candidemia. Often, these infections will present several months after successful treatment of candidemia. Similarly occult or "transient" candidemia may result in seeding of a skeletal focus that becomes clinically apparent at a later time. Vertebral osteomyelitis is a frequent presentation, with local pain and low-grade fever.

Although hematogenous candidiasis is most often an endogenous infection arising from the GI or genitourinary tract, it may also result from the contamination of an indwelling catheter. Organisms transferred to the hub or lumen of the catheter may form a biofilm within the lumen of the catheter and subsequently spread into the circulation. Although such infections are no less serious than those arising from an endogenous source, they may be dealt with somewhat more successfully because removal of the catheter essentially removes the nidus of infection. Of course, if the infected catheter resulted in the seeding of distant organs, the consequences and problems in treating the infection would be the same as those arising from an endogenous source.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The laboratory diagnosis of candidiasis involves the procurement of appropriate clinical material followed by direct microscopic examination and culture (see Chapter 60). Scrapings of mucosal or cutaneous lesions may be examined directly after treatment with 10% to 20% potassium hydroxide (KOH) containing calcofluor white. The budding yeastlike forms and pseudohyphae are easily detected on examination with a fluorescence microscope (see Fig. 60.1). Culture on standard mycologic medium will allow the isolation of the organism for subsequent identification to species. Increasingly, such specimens are plated directly on a selective chromogenic medium such as CHROMagar Candida, which allows the detection of mixed species of *Candida* within the specimen and the rapid identification of *C. albicans* (green colonies) and *C. tropicalis* (blue colonies) based on their morphologic appearance (Fig. 65.5).

All other types of infection require culture for diagnosis unless tissue can be obtained for histopathologic examination (see Chapter 60). Whenever possible, skin lesions should be biopsied and histologic sections stained with GMS or another fungal-specific stain. Visualization of characteristic budding yeasts and pseudohyphae is sufficient for the diagnosis of candidiasis (Fig. 65.6). Cultures of blood, tissue, and normally sterile body fluids also should be performed. Identification of *Candida* isolates to species level is important, given the differences in response to the various antifungal agents (see Chapter 61). This can be accomplished as described in Chapter 60, using the germ-tube test (*C. albicans*), various chromogenic media/tests (see Fig. 65.5), peptide nucleic acid–fluorescence in situ hybridization (PNA-FISH), and commercially available sugar assimilation panels. Alternatively the use of nucleic acid sequence–based methods or proteomics provides a rapid, accurate, and cost-effective means of species identification.

Immunologic, biochemical, and molecular markers for the diagnosis of candidiasis are described in Chapter 60. Although these methods are not widely available at the

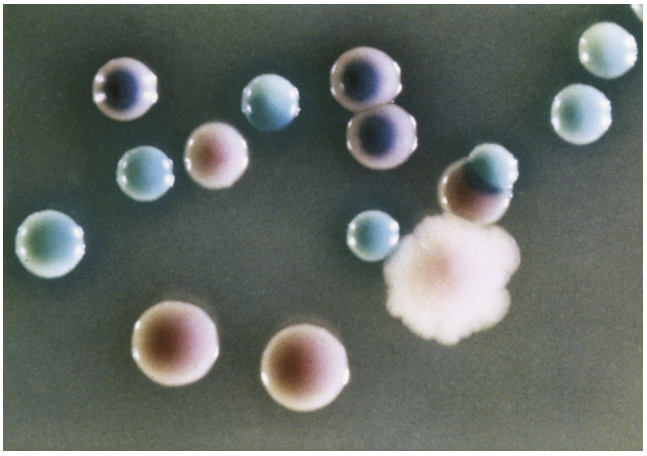


Fig. 65.5 Differentiation of *Candida* species by isolates on CHROMagar Candida. The green colonies are *C. albicans*; the blue-gray colonies are *C. tropicalis*; and the large, rough, pale pink colony is *C. krusei*. The smooth, pink or mauve colonies are another yeast species (only *C. albicans*, *C. tropicalis*, and *C. krusei* can be reliably recognized on this media; other species have colonies ranging from white to pink to mauve). (From Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), 2009. Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.)

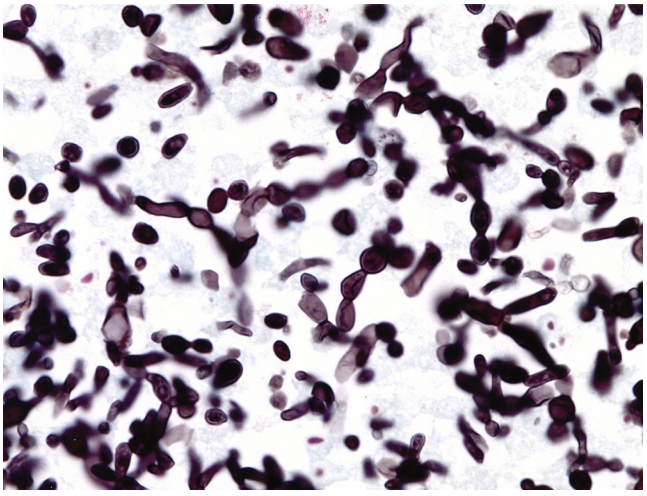


Fig. 65.6 *Candida* stained with Gomori methenamine silver demonstrating budding yeasts and pseudohyphae (×1000).

present time, recent breakthroughs in direct detection technology hold great promise for the rapid diagnosis of invasive candidiasis.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

There are a wide variety of treatment options for candidiasis (see Chapter 61). Mucosal and cutaneous infections may be treated with a number of different topical creams, lotions, ointments, and suppositories containing various azole antifungal agents (see Table 61.1). Oral systemic therapy of these infections may also be accomplished with either fluconazole or itraconazole.

Bladder colonization or cystitis may be treated with either instillation of amphotericin B directly into the bladder (bladder wash) or by oral administration of fluconazole. Both of these measures will likely be unsuccessful if the bladder catheter cannot be removed.

More deep-seated infections require systemic therapy, the choice of which depends on the type of infection, the infecting species, and the overall status of the host. In many instances, oral fluconazole may be quite effective in treating candidiasis. It may be used in the treatment of peritonitis, as well as in more long-term maintenance therapy of invasive disease after an initial intravenous course of therapy. Fluconazole is efficacious when administered intravenously for the treatment of candidemia in nonneutropenic patients. Those patients who become candidemic while on fluconazole prophylaxis or those with documented infection caused by *C. auris*, *C. krusei*, or fluconazole-resistant *C. glabrata* require treatment with either amphotericin B (conventional or lipid formulation) or an echinocandin (anidulafungin, caspofungin, or micafungin). In those clinical settings in which *C. auris*, *C. glabrata*, or *C. krusei* are plausible etiologic agents (e.g., prior fluconazole therapy/prophylaxis or an endemic situation), initial therapy with either an echinocandin or an amphotericin B formulation is advised, with a switch to fluconazole (less toxic than amphotericin B, less expensive, and orally available versus echinocandins) based on final species identification and susceptibility test results. In every instance, care should be taken to remove the nidus of infection if possible. Thus vascular catheters should be removed or changed, abscesses should be drained, and other potentially infected implanted materials should be removed to the extent possible; likewise, efforts should be directed toward immune reconstitution.

As in most infectious diseases, prevention is clearly preferable to the treatment of an established candidal infection. Avoidance of broad-spectrum antimicrobial agents, meticulous catheter care, and rigorous adherence to infection-control precautions are a must. Decreased colonization achieved by fluconazole prophylaxis has been shown to be efficacious when used in **specific** high-risk groups, such as BMT patients and liver transplant patients. Such prophylaxis carries with it the potential for selecting or creating, strains or species that are resistant to the agent administered. This in fact has been seen with the emergence of fluconazole-resistant *C. glabrata, C. auris,* and *C. krusei* in certain institutions, but the overall benefit in the high-risk patient groups outweighs the risk. Transfer of this approach to other patient groups, however, is fraught with problems and should not be undertaken without careful study and risk stratification to identify those individuals most likely to benefit from antifungal prophylaxis.

Opportunistic Mycoses Caused by *Cryptococcus Neoformans* and Other Noncandidal Yeastlike Fungi

In the same manner that *Candida* species have taken advantage of immunocompromising conditions, indwelling devices, and broad-spectrum antibiotic use, so too have a number of non-*Candida* yeastlike fungi found an "opportunity" to colonize and infect immunocompromised patients. These organisms may occupy environmental niches or be found in food and water and can be normal human microbial flora. The list of these opportunistic yeasts is long, but

we will limit this discussion to two major pathogens, *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii,* and four genera that pose particular problems as opportunistic pathogens: *Malassezia* spp., *Trichosporon* spp., *Rhodotorula* spp., and *S. capitata* (formerly *B. capitatus*).

CRYPTOCOCCOSIS

Cryptococcosis is a systemic mycosis caused by the encapsulated, basidiomycetous, yeastlike fungi *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii*. *C. neoformans* is worldwide in distribution and is found as a ubiquitous saprophyte of soil, especially that which is enriched with pigeon droppings. *C. neoformans* includes capsular serotypes A and D, and *C. gattii* includes serotypes B and C. Recent phylogenetic studies have resulted in the proposal for a complete reorganization of the species complexes (SCs) designated previously as *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii. C. neoformans* was retained to describe species formerly referred to as *C. neoformans* var. *grubii*, *C. deneoformans* was erected to encompass serotype D isolates (formerly *C. neoformans* var *neoformans*), and at least five cryptic species are recognized in the *C. gattii* SC. For purposes of this chapter, we will limit our discussion to *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii*.

Morphology

Microscopically, *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* are spheric to oval, encapsulated, yeastlike organisms, 2 to 20 μm in diameter. Replication is by budding from a relatively narrow base. Single buds are usually formed, but multiple buds and chains of budding cells are sometimes present (Fig. 65.7). Germ tubes, hyphae, and pseudohyphae are usually absent in clinical material.

In tissue and on staining with India ink, the cells are variable in size, spheric, oval, or elliptic, and are surrounded by optically clear, smoothly contoured, spheric zones or "halos" that represent the extracellular polysaccharide capsule (Fig. 65.8). The capsule is a distinctive marker, which may have a diameter of up to five times that of the fungal cell and is readily detected with a mucin stain, such as Mayer mucicarmine (Fig. 65.9). The organism stains poorly with H&E but is easily detected with PAS and GMS stains. The cell wall of *C. neoformans* contains melanin, which may be demonstrated by staining with the Fontana-Masson stain.

Epidemiology

Cryptococcosis is usually acquired by inhaling aerosolized cells of *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* from the environment (Fig. 65.10). Subsequent dissemination from the lungs, usually to the CNS, produces clinical disease in susceptible individuals. Primary cutaneous cryptococcosis may occur after transcutaneous inoculation but is rare.

Although both *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* are pathogenic for immunocompetent individuals, *C. neoformans* is most often encountered as an opportunistic pathogen. It is the most common cause of fungal meningitis and tends to occur in those patients with defective cellular immunity.

Whereas *C. neoformans* and *C. deneoformans* are found worldwide in association with soil contaminated with avian excreta, the environmental habitat of members of the *C. gattii* SC was originally identified as being the gum tree, *Eucalyptus camaldulensis*; however, several other plant families have been identified as sources. *C. gattii* SC isolates have been reported from subtropical areas and from temperate areas of Europe, Asia, Oceana, Africa, North America, and Central and South America. An endemic focus of *C. gattii* has been identified in Vancouver Island, British Columbia,

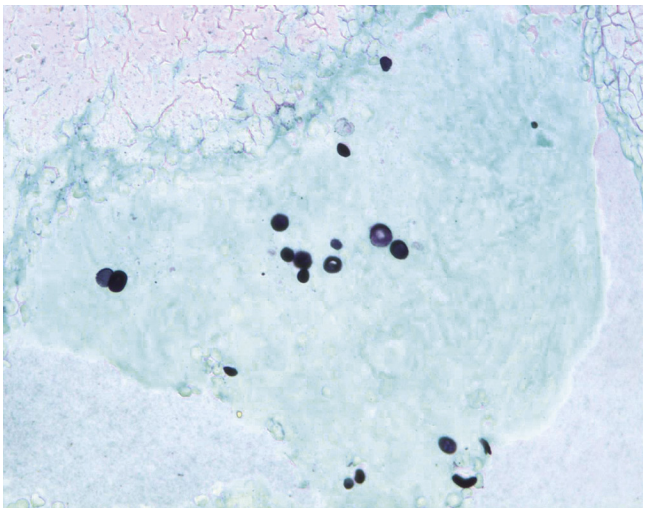


Fig. 65.7 *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Microscopic morphology, Gomori methenamine silver stain.

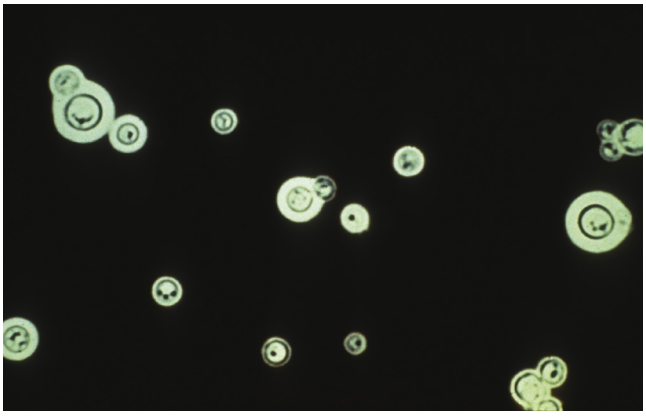


Fig. 65.8 *Cryptococcus neoformans*. India ink preparation demonstrating the large capsule surrounding budding yeast cells (×1000).

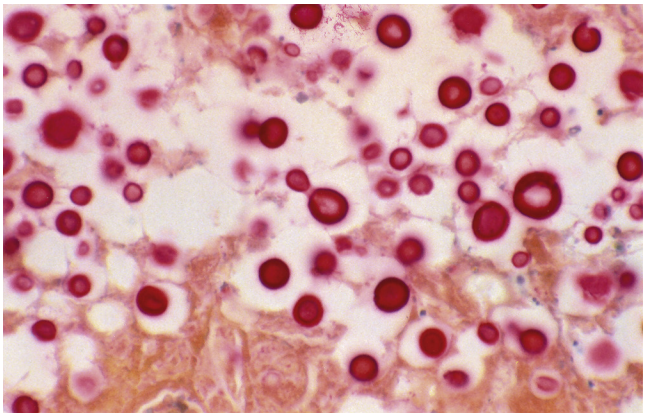


Fig. 65.9 *Cryptococcus neoformans* stained with mucicarmine (×1000).

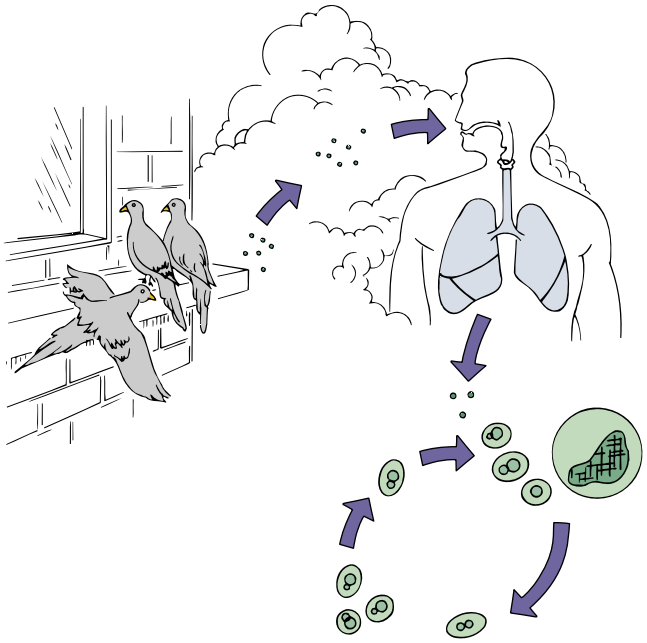


Fig. 65.10 Natural history of saprobic and parasitic cycle of *Cryptococcus neoformans*.

and in Oregon and Washington State extending down into California. Sporadic cases of *C. gattii* infection have been detected in several different areas of the United States. Both *C. neoformans* (var. *neoformans* and var. *grubii*) and *C. gattii* cause a similar disease, although *C. gattii* infection tends to occur in immunocompetent individuals and has a lower associated mortality but more severe neurologic sequelae because of CNS granuloma formation.

C. neoformans is a major opportunistic pathogen of patients with AIDS. Those individuals with $CD4^+$ lymphocyte counts of less than $100/mm^3$ (usually $<200/mm^3$) are at high risk for CNS and disseminated cryptococcosis. The incidence of cryptococcosis seems to have peaked in the United States in the early 1990s (65.5 infections per million per year) and has progressively declined since then because of the widespread use of fluconazole and, more importantly, successful treatment of the HIV infection with new antiretroviral drugs.

Clinical Syndromes

Cryptococcosis may present as a pneumonic process or, more commonly, as a CNS infection secondary to hematogenous and lymphatic spread from a primary pulmonary focus (Clinical Case 65.2). Less often, a more widely disseminated infection may be seen with cutaneous, mucocutaneous, osseous, and visceral forms of the disease.

Pulmonary cryptococcosis is variable in presentation, from an asymptomatic process to a more fulminant bilateral pneumonia. Nodular infiltrates may be either unilateral or bilateral, becoming more diffuse in severe infections. Cavitation is rare.

C. neoformans and *C. gattii* are highly neurotropic, and the most common form of disease is cerebromeningeal. The course of disease is variable and may be quite chronic; however, it is inevitably fatal if untreated. Both meninges and the underlying brain tissue are involved, and the clinical

Clinical Case 65.2 **Cryptococcosis**

Pappas and colleagues described a case of cryptococcosis in a heart transplant recipient. The 56-year-old patient, who underwent heart transplantation surgery 3 years earlier, presented with new-onset cellulitis of his left leg and a mild headache of 2 weeks' duration. The patient was on chronic immunosuppressive therapy with cyclosporine, azathioprine, and prednisone and was admitted for IV antibiotics. Despite 5 days of IV nafcillin, the patient failed to improve, and a skin biopsy of the cellulitic area was obtained for histopathologic studies and culture. Laboratory results revealed the presence of a yeast consistent with *Cryptococcus neoformans*. A lumbar puncture was also performed, and examination of the CSF disclosed cloudy fluid and an elevated opening pressure of 420 mm H_2O. Microscopic examination revealed encapsulated budding yeast forms. Cryptococcal antigen titers of CSF and blood were markedly elevated. Blood, CSF, and skin biopsy cultures grew *C. neoformans*. Systemic antifungal therapy with amphotericin B and flucytosine was initiated. Unfortunately, the patient suffered progressive mental status decline, despite aggressive management of intracranial pressure and maximizing doses of antifungals. He experienced slow, progressive decline, leading to death 13 days after initiation of antifungal therapy. CSF cultures obtained 2 days before death remained positive for *C. neoformans*.

The patient in this case was highly immunocompromised and presented with cellulitis and headache. Such a presentation should arouse suspicion of an atypical pathogen such as *C. neoformans*. Given the high mortality associated with cryptococcal infection, a rapid and accurate diagnosis is important. Unfortunately, despite these efforts and use of aggressive therapy, many such patients will succumb to the infection.

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid; IV, intravenous.

presentation is that of fever, headache, meningismus, visual disturbances, abnormal mental status, and seizures. The clinical picture is highly dependent on the patient's immune status and tends to be dramatically severe in AIDS patients and other severely compromised patients treated with steroids or other immunosuppressive agents.

Parenchymal lesions, or cryptococcomas, are uncommon in infections caused by *C. neoformans* but are the most common presentation of CNS cryptococcosis in immunocompetent hosts infected with *C. gattii*.

Other manifestations of disseminated cryptococcosis include skin lesions, which occur in 10% to 15% of patients and may mimic those of molluscum contagiosum; ocular infections, including chorioretinitis, vitritis, and ocular nerve invasion; osseous lesions involving the vertebrae and bony prominences; and prostatic involvement, which may be an asymptomatic reservoir of infection.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The diagnosis of infection caused by *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* may be made by culture of blood, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), or other clinical material (see Chapter 60). Microscopic examination of CSF may reveal the characteristic encapsulated budding yeast cells. The cells of *C. neoformans*, when present in CSF or other clinical material, may be

TABLE 65.7 Sensitivity of Antigen Detection, India Ink Microscopy and Culture of Cerebrospinal Fluid in the Diagnosis of Cryptococcal Meningitis

	% SENSITIVITY	
Test	AIDS Patients	Non-AIDS Patients
Antigen	100	86-95
India ink	82	50
Culture	100	90

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.
Modified from Viviani, M.A., Tortorano, A.M., 2009. *Cryptococcus.* In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), 2009. Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

visualized with Gram stain (see Chapter 60, Fig. 60.2), as well as with India ink (see Fig. 65.8) or other stains (see Fig. 65.7). Culture of clinical material on routine mycologic media will produce mucoid colonies composed of round, encapsulated, budding yeast cells that are urease-positive within 3 to 5 days. Species identification may be accomplished by carbohydrate assimilation testing, by growth on niger seed agar (*C. neoformans* colonies become brown to black in color), or by directly testing for phenoloxidase activity (positive).

Most commonly, however, the diagnosis of cryptococcal meningitis is made by direct detection of the capsular polysaccharide antigen in serum or CSF (Table 65.7). Detection of cryptococcal antigen is accomplished by using one of several commercially available latex agglutination or enzyme immunoassay kits. The development of a lateral flow antigen detection assay provides a potential point-of-care test for use in the field. These assays have been shown to be rapid, sensitive, and specific for the diagnosis of cryptococcal disease caused by both *C. neoformans* and *C. gattii* (see Table 65.7). Whereas the β-D-glucan test is not useful for diagnosis of cryptococcosis, molecular methods such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) show great promise.

Treatment

Cryptococcal meningitis (and other disseminated forms of cryptococcosis) is universally fatal if left untreated. In addition to the prompt administration of appropriate antifungal therapy, effective management of CNS pressure and the immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS) is crucial to the successful treatment of cryptococcal meningitis. All patients should receive amphotericin B plus flucytosine acutely for 2 weeks (induction therapy), followed by an 8-week consolidation with either oral fluconazole (preferred) or itraconazole. AIDS patients generally require lifelong maintenance therapy with either fluconazole or itraconazole. In non-AIDS patients, treatment may be discontinued after the consolidation therapy; however, relapse may be seen in up to 26% of these patients within 3 to 6 months after discontinuation of therapy. Thus a prolonged consolidation treatment with an azole for up to 1 year may be advisable, even with patients without AIDS.

Treatment of these patients should be followed both clinically and mycologically. Mycologic follow-up requires repeat lumbar puncture to be performed (1) at the end of the 2-week induction therapy to ensure sterilization of the CSF, (2) at the end of the consolidation therapy, (3) whenever indicated by a change in clinical status during follow-up. CSF samples collected during follow-up must be cultured. Determination of CSF protein, glucose, cell count, and cryptococcal antigen titer are helpful in assessing the response to therapy but are not highly predictive of outcome. Failure to sterilize the CSF by day 14 of therapy is indicative of a much higher probability that the consolidation therapy will fail.

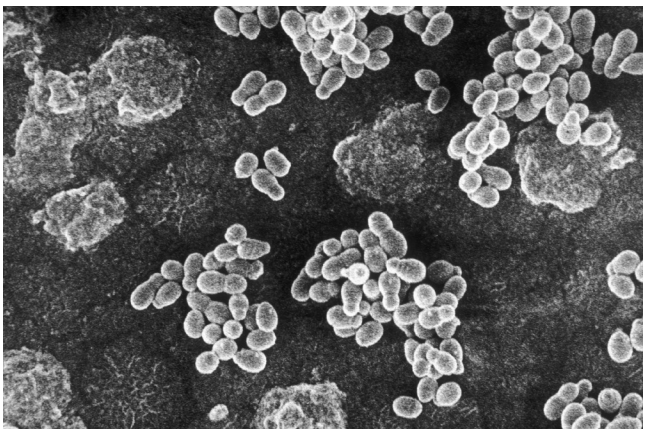


Fig. 65.11 Scanning electron micrograph of *Malassezia furfur* adhering to the lumen of a central venous catheter. (Courtesy S.A. Messer.)

OTHER MYCOSES CAUSED BY YEASTLIKE FUNGI

Among the non-*Candida,* non-*Cryptococcus* yeastlike pathogens, nosocomial infections caused by *Malassezia* spp., *Trichosporon* spp., *Rhodotorula* spp., and *S. capitata* are most prominent, either because they are difficult to detect or because they may pose particular problems with respect to antifungal resistance.

Infections caused by *Malassezia* spp. (*M. furfur* and *M. pachydermatis*) are usually catheter related and tend to occur in premature infants or in other patients receiving lipid infusions. Both of these organisms are budding yeasts (Fig. 65.11; see also Chapter 62, Fig. 62.2). *M. furfur* is a common skin colonizer and is the etiologic agent of tinea (pityriasis) versicolor (see Chapter 62), whereas *M. pachydermatis* is a frequent cause of otitis in dogs, as well as a human skin commensal.

Among the *Malassezia* spp., *M. furfur* is known for its requirement for exogenous lipid for growth. This growth requirement, plus its ecologic niche on skin, explains some of the epidemiology of *M. furfur* because nosocomial infections caused by this organism are directly related to the administration of intravenous lipid supplements through a central venous catheter. Although *M. pachydermatis* does not require exogenous lipids for growth, fatty acids do stimulate its growth, and infections caused by this organism have been associated with parenteral nutrition and intravenous lipid administration. Although most infections with *Malassezia* spp. are sporadic, outbreaks of fungemia have been observed among infants receiving intravenous lipid supplementation. The growth of the organism is favored by the lipid-rich infusion, and the organism gains access to the bloodstream via the catheter. One notable outbreak of *M. pachydermatis* fungemia in a pediatric intensive care unit was linked to nurses who owned dogs with *M. pachydermatis* otitis. The outbreak strain was found on the hands of the nurses and at least one of the affected dogs.

Malassezia spp. should be considered when yeasts are seen microscopically in blood culture bottles or clinical material but no organisms are recovered on routine agar medium. To isolate *Malassezia* spp., especially *M. furfur*, on agar medium, the plates must be inoculated and then overlaid with sterile olive oil. Olive oil provides the lipid requirement, and growth should be detected in 3 to 5 days.

Treatment of fungemia caused by *Malassezia* spp. does not usually require the administration of antifungal agents. The infection subsides once the lipid infusion is stopped and the intravascular lines are removed.

The genus *Trichosporon* currently consists of six species that are of clinical significance: *T. asahii* and *T. mucoides* (now classified under the genus *Cutaneotrichosporon*) are known to cause deep invasive infections, *T. asteroides* and *T. cutaneum* (now classified under the genus *Cutaneotrichosporon*) cause superficial skin infections, *T. ovoides* causes white piedra of the scalp, and *T. inkin* causes white piedra of the pubic hair. Morphologically, these organisms are similar and appear in clinical material such as hyphae, arthroconidia, and budding yeast cells.

Trichosporon causes catheter-associated fungemia in neutropenic patients but also may gain entrance to the bloodstream via the respiratory or GI tract. Widespread hematogenous dissemination may manifest as positive blood cultures and multiple cutaneous lesions. Chronic hepatic trichosporonosis may mimic hepatic candidiasis and is seen on recovery from neutropenia. *Trichosporon* has been reported as the most common cause of noncandidal yeast infection in patients with hematologic malignancies and carries mortality in excess of 80%. Susceptibility to amphotericin B is variable, and this agent lacks fungicidal activity against *Trichosporon*. Clinical failures with amphotericin B, fluconazole, and combinations of the two have been reported, and the outcome is generally dismal in the absence of neutrophil recovery. *Trichosporon* species are resistant to the echinocandins but appear to respond clinically to treatment with voriconazole.

Rhodotorula spp. are characterized by the production of carotenoid pigments (produce pink to red colonies) and variably encapsulated, multilateral, budding yeast cells. The major clinically relevant species of *Rhodotorula* include *R. glutinis*, *R. mucilaginosa* (syn. *R. rubra)*, and *R. dariensis*. These yeastlike fungi are found as commensals on skin, nails, and mucous membranes, as well as in cheese and milk products and environmental sources, including air, soil, shower curtains, bathtub grout, and toothbrushes. *Rhodotorula* species are emerging as important human pathogens in immunocompromised patients and those with indwelling devices. *Rhodotorula* has been implicated as a cause of central venous catheter infection and fungemia, ocular infections, peritonitis, and meningitis. Amphotericin B has excellent activity against *Rhodotorula* and, coupled with catheter removal, is an optimal approach to infections with this organism. Flucytosine has excellent activity as well but should not be considered for monotherapy. Neither fluconazole nor the echinocandins should be used to treat infections caused by *Rhodotorula* species, and the role of the new extended-spectrum triazoles (e.g., voriconazole, isavuconazole, and posaconazole) is uncertain pending clinical data.

Among the emerging opportunistic yeastlike pathogens, *S. capitata* (formerly *B. capitatus*) is a rarely described fungus that produces severe systemic infection in immunocompromised patients, especially those with hematologic malignancies. This organism produces hyphae and arthroconidia, is widely distributed in nature, and may be found as part of the normal skin flora. Infection with *S. capitata* presents similar to that with *Trichosporon* in neutropenic patients, with frequent fungemia and multiorgan (including brain) dissemination and a mortality rate of 60% to 80%. Blood cultures are usually positive. As with *Trichosporon*, a chronic disseminated form similar to chronic disseminated candidiasis may be seen on resolution of neutropenia.

The optimal approach to therapy of infections caused by *S. capitata* is not yet defined. Some clinicians feel that *S. capitata* has decreased susceptibility to amphotericin B. The excellent in vitro activity of voriconazole suggests that it may be a useful agent for the treatment of infections caused by this organism. Rapid removal of central venous catheters, adjuvant immunotherapy, and novel antifungal therapies (e.g., voriconazole or high-dose fluconazole plus amphotericin B) are recommended for treatment of this rare but devastating infection.

Microsporidia

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Microsporidia are nucleated, single-celled, obligately intracellular parasites that were considered to be primitive eukaryotic organisms based on the presence of prokaryote-like ribosomes and the apparent absence of true Golgi membranes, peroxisomes, and mitochondria. Genome-wide sequence and synteny analyses indicate that the organisms of the phylum Microsporidia belong to the kingdom of Fungi because they are derived from an endoparasitic chytrid ancestor on the earliest diverging branch of the fungal phylogenetic tree. Recently, Microsporidia were proposed to be linked to, or placed within, the novel phylum Cryptomycota, which phylogenetically represent intermediate fungal forms. Also, structural features of the organisms, such as the presence of chitin in the spore wall, diplokaryotic nuclei, and electron-dense spindle plaques associated with the nuclear envelope, suggest a possible relationship between fungi and microsporidia, whereas the life cycle of microsporidia is unique and dissimilar to that of other fungal species. The organisms are characterized by the structure of their spores, which have a complex tubular extrusion mechanism used for injecting the infective material (sporoplasm) into cells. Microsporidia have been detected in human tissues and implicated as participants in human disease. Fourteen microsporidian species have been identified as human pathogens: *Anncaliia* (formerly *Brachiola*) *algerae, A. (formerly Brachiola) connori, A. vesicularum, Encephalitozoon cuniculi, E. hellem, E. intestinalis (*syn. *Septata intestinalis), E. bieneusi, Microsporidium ceylonensis, M. africanum, Nosema ocularum, Pleistophora ronneafiei, Trachipleistophora hominis, T. anthropophthera, and Vittaforma corneae.* Unclassified microsporidia, assigned to the collective group Microsporidium, have also been implicated in human infections. *E. bieneusi* and *E. intestinalis* are the two most common causes

of enteric disease, whereas most of the species incriminated in extraintestinal and disseminated disease belong to the *Encephalitozoon* genera, such as *E. hellem, E. cuniculi, and E. intestinalis.* Other species, *A. connori, V. corneae, T. anthropophthera,* and *T. hominis,* have been described in rare cases of disseminated microsporidiosis.

PATHOGENESIS

Infection with microsporidia is initiated by the ingestion of spores. After ingestion, the spores pass into the duodenum, in which the sporoplasm, with its nuclear material, is injected into an adjacent cell in the small intestine. Once inside a suitable host cell, the microsporidia multiply extensively, either within a parasitophorous vacuole or free within the cytoplasm. The intracellular multiplication includes a phase of repeated divisions by binary fission (merogony) and a phase culminating in spore formation (sporogony). The parasites spread from cell to cell, causing cell death and local inflammation. Although some species are highly selective in the cell type they invade, collectively, the microsporidia are capable of infecting every organ of the body, and disseminated infections have been described in severely immunocompromised individuals. After sporogony, the mature spores containing the infective sporoplasm may be excreted into the environment, continuing the cycle.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Microsporidia are distributed worldwide and have a wide host range among invertebrate and vertebrate animals. *E. bieneusi* and *E. intestinalis* have gained increasing attention as causes of chronic diarrhea in patients with AIDS. Both *Encephalitozoon*-like and *Enterocytozoon*-like organisms have been reported in the tissues of AIDS patients with hepatitis and peritonitis. *Trachipleistophora* and *Nosema* are known to cause myositis in immunocompromised patients. *Nosema* species has caused localized keratitis, as well as disseminated infection in a child with severe combined immunodeficiency. *Microsporidium* species and *E. hellem* have caused infection of the human cornea.

Although the reservoir for human infection is unknown, transmission is likely accomplished by ingestion of spores that have been shed in the urine and feces of infected animals or individuals. As with cryptosporidial infection, individuals with AIDS and other cellular immune defects appear to be at increased risk for infection with microsporidia.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Clinical signs and symptoms of microsporidiosis are quite variable in the human cases reported (Clinical Case 65.3). Intestinal infection caused by *E. bieneusi* in patients with AIDS is marked by persistent and debilitating diarrhea similar to that seen in patients with cryptosporidiosis, cyclosporiasis, and cystoisosporiasis. The clinical presentation of infection with other species of microsporidia depends on the organ system involved and ranges from localized ocular pain and loss of vision (*Microsporidium* and *Nosema* species) to neurologic disturbances and hepatitis (*E. cuniculi*) to a more generalized picture of dissemination with fever, vomiting, diarrhea, and malabsorption (*Nosema* species). In a report of disseminated infection with *A. connori,* the organism was observed involving the muscles of the stomach, bowel, arteries, diaphragm, and heart and the parenchymal cells of the liver, lungs, and adrenal glands.

Clinical Case 65.3 **Microsporidiosis**

Coyle and colleagues (*N Engl J Med* 351:42–47, 2004) described a case of fatal myositis caused by the microsporidian *Brachiola* (*Anncaliia*) *algerae.* The patient was a 57-year-old woman with rheumatoid arthritis and diabetes who presented with a 6-week history of increasing fatigue, generalized muscle and joint pain, profound weakness, and fever. She was taking immunosuppressive agents (prednisone, methotrexate, leflunomide) for rheumatoid arthritis and had no evidence of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. In the 6 months before admission, she began taking infliximab, which is a monoclonal antibody with high binding affinity for TNF-α. The patient resided in a small town in northeastern Pennsylvania and had no recent travel history. She had no contact with animals. On admission, her serum creatine kinase was elevated, and a test for HIV was negative. A muscle biopsy from the left anterior thigh contained microorganisms that were consistent with microsporidia. The morphologic appearance suggested *Brachiola (Anncaliia)* species, and the identity was confirmed by polymerase chain reaction with the use of primers specific for *B. (A.) algerae,* which is a mosquito pathogen.

The muscle pain worsened, and the patient became increasingly debilitated, requiring mechanical ventilation after respiratory insufficiency developed. Despite administration of albendazole and itraconazole, a repeat muscle biopsy from the right quadriceps muscle revealed microsporidia. Four weeks after admission, the patient died from a massive cerebrovascular infarction. A postmortem muscle biopsy revealed necrosis and persistent organisms.

B. (A.) algerae is a well-known microsporidian pathogen of mosquitoes but had not been reported previously to cause myositis in humans. The present case report illustrates that insect pathogens such as *B. (A.) algerae* are capable of causing disseminated disease in humans. Anti-TNF-α therapy (infliximab) may have predisposed the patient to infection with this agent.

TNF-α, Tumor necrosis factor-α.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of microsporidia infection may be made by detection of the organisms in biopsy material and by light-microscopic examination of CSF and urine. Spores measuring between 1.0 and 2.0 μm may be visualized by Gram (gram-positive), acid-fast, PAS, immunochemical, modified trichrome, and Giemsa staining techniques. A chromotrope-based staining technique for light-microscopic detection of *E. bieneusi* and *E. (S.) intestinalis* spores in stool and duodenal aspirates has also been described. Monoclonal antibodies against *Encephalitozoon* spp. and *E. bieneusi* have been generated, of which some have been evaluated for diagnostic purposes with stool specimens. Recently, a commercial immunofluorescence assay (IFA) became

available, but it is not approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Electron microscopy is considered the gold standard for diagnostic confirmation of microsporidiosis and for identification to the genus and species level; however, its sensitivity is unknown. Additional diagnostic techniques, including PCR, culture, and serologic testing, are under investigation. These techniques are not yet considered reliable enough for routine diagnosis. Molecular methods may also be used to identify the infecting organism to genus and species.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Management of microsporidial infection most often includes oral treatment with the drug albendazole. Clinical studies have demonstrated the efficacy of albendazole against species of the *Encephalitozoon* genus in HIV-infected patients for whom it is the treatment of choice for intestinal, ocular, and disseminated microsporidiosis, although it is only partially active against *E. bieneusi.* Fumagillin has been used successfully against species of the *Encephalitozoon* genus and against *V. corneae* in vitro and in humans for the treatment of *E. bieneusi* intestinal microsporidiosis. Nitazoxanide has activity against *E. intestinalis* and *V. corneae* and has been effective in treating infection caused by *E. bieneusi* in AIDS patients. As with most opportunistic infections, antiretroviral therapy plays a key role in eradicating microsporidia in HIV-infected patients, and effective antiretroviral therapy is likely to reduce the incidence of infections caused by microsporidia in the future.

As with *Cryptosporidium*, preventing microsporidian infection is difficult. The same methods of improved personal hygiene and sanitation used for other intestinal protozoa should be maintained with this disease.

Aspergillosis

Aspergillosis comprises a broad spectrum of diseases caused by members of the genus *Aspergillus* (Box 65.2). Exposure to *Aspergillus* in the environment may cause allergic reactions in hypersensitized hosts or destructive, invasive pulmonary and disseminated disease in highly immunosuppressed individuals. Although approximately 19 species of *Aspergillus* have been documented as agents of human disease, the majority of infections are caused by *A. fumigatus, A. flavus, A. niger,* and *A. terreus.* Molecular taxonomic studies have shown that all the previously mentioned species are actually SCs that contain morphologically indistinguishable cryptic species, some of which may exhibit important antifungal resistance profiles and pathogenic features.

MORPHOLOGY

Aspergillus spp. grow in culture as hyaline molds. On a gross level, the colonies of *Aspergillus* may be black, brown, green, yellow, white, or other colors, depending on the species and the growth conditions. Colonial appearance may provide an initial suggestion as to the species of *Aspergillus,* but definitive identification requires microscopic examination of the hyphae and the structure of the conidial head.

BOX 65.2 Spectrum of Diseases Caused by *Aspergillus* Species

Allergic Reactions

Nasal cavity
Paranasal sinuses
Lower respiratory tract

Colonization

Obstructed paranasal sinuses
Bronchi
Preformed pulmonary cavities

Superficial Cutaneous Infections

Wounds
Catheter sites

Limited Invasive Infections

Bronchi
Pulmonary parenchyma
Mildly immunodeficient patients

Frankly Invasive Pulmonary Infection

Severely immunodeficient patients
Systemic dissemination
Death

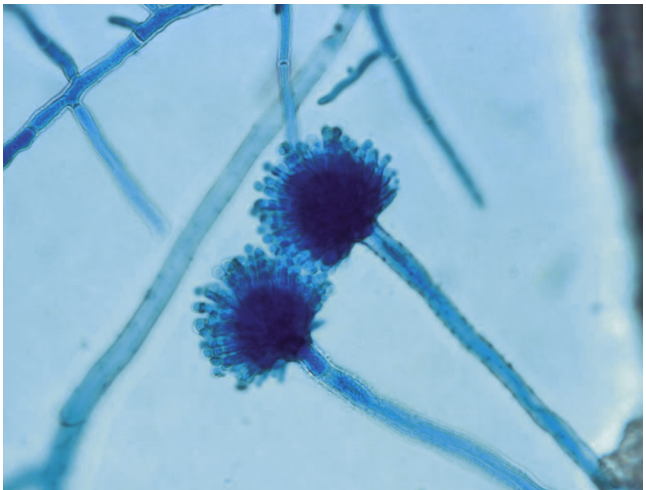


Fig. 65.12 *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Lactophenol cotton blue preparation showing conidial heads.

Aspergilli grow as branched, septate hyphae that produce conidial heads when exposed to air in culture and in tissue. A conidial head consists of a conidiophore with a terminal vesicle, on which are borne one or two layers of phialides, or sterigmata (see Chapter 57, Fig. 57.3B). The elongated phialides in turn produce columns of spheric conidia, which are the infectious propagules from which the mycelial phase of the fungus develops. Identification of individual species of *Aspergillus* depends in part on the difference in their conidial heads, including the arrangement and morphology of the conidia (Figs. 65.12 and 65.13). In many instances, the cryptic species within a SC can require molecular methods for identification.

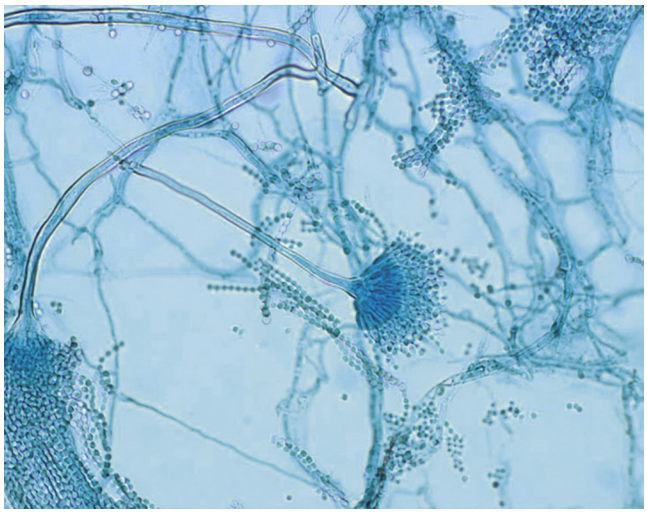


Fig. 65.13 *Aspergillus terreus*. Lactophenol cotton blue preparation showing conidial head.

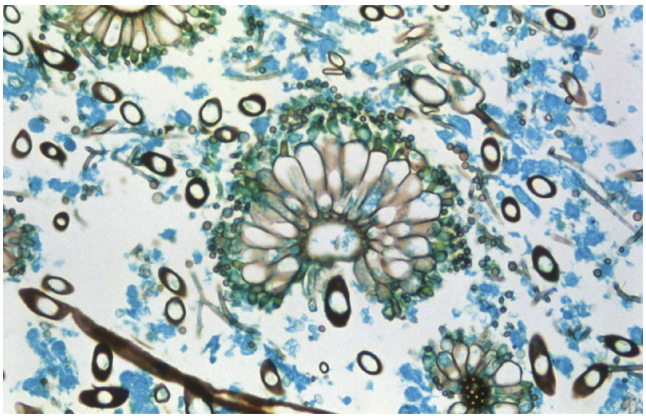


Fig. 65.15 *Aspergillus niger* in a cavitary lung lesion showing both hyphae and conidial head (Gomori methenamine silver, ×1000).

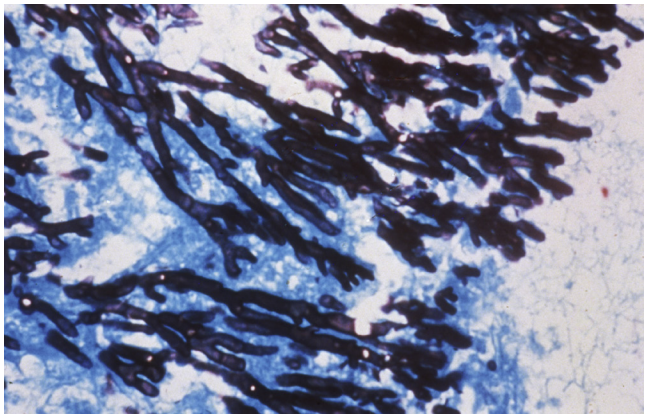


Fig. 65.14 *Aspergillus* in tissue showing acute-angle branching, septate hyphae (Gomori methenamine silver, ×1000).

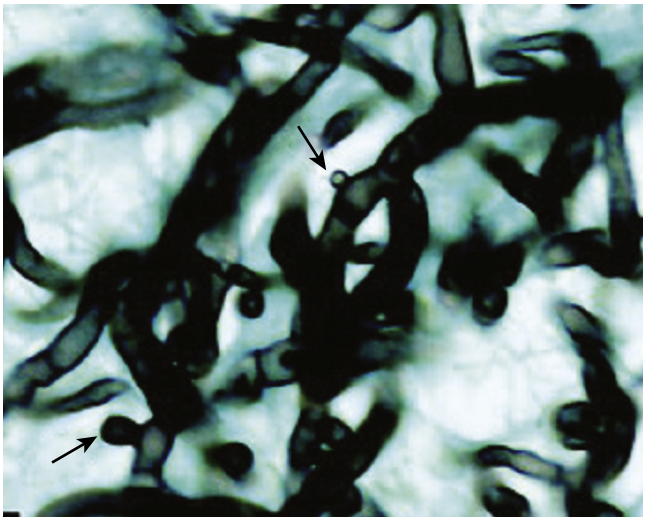


Fig. 65.16 *Aspergillus terreus* in tissue. Arrows point to aleurioconidia (Gomori methenamine silver, ×1000). (From Walsh, T.J., et al., 2003. Experimental pulmonary aspergillosis caused by *Aspergillus terreus:* pathogenesis and treatment of an emerging fungal pathogen resistant to amphotericin B. J. Infect. Dis. 188, 305–319.)

In tissue, the hyphae of *Aspergillus* spp. stain poorly with H&E but are well visualized by the PAS, GMS, and Gridley fungal stains (Fig. 65.14). The hyphae are homogeneous, uniform in width (3 to 6 μm), with parallel contours, regular septations, and a progressive, treelike pattern of branching (see Fig. 65.14). The branches are dichotomous and usually arise at acute (≈45 degree) angles. The hyphae may be seen within blood vessels (angioinvasion), causing thrombosis. The conidial heads are rarely seen in tissue but may arise within a cavity (Fig. 65.15). The important species *A. terreus* can be identified in tissue by its spheric or oval aleurioconidia that develop from the lateral walls of the mycelium (Fig. 65.16); otherwise, the hyphae of pathogenic *Aspergillus* spp. are morphologically indistinguishable from one another in tissue.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Aspergillus spp. are common throughout the world. Their conidia are ubiquitous in air, soil, and decaying matter. Within the hospital environment, *Aspergillus* spp. may be found in air, showerheads, hospital water storage tanks, and potted plants. As a result, they are constantly being inhaled. The type of host reaction, the associated pathologic findings, and the ultimate outcome of infection depend more on host factors than on the virulence or pathogenesis of the individual *Aspergillus* spp. The respiratory tract is the most frequent, and most important, portal of entry.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The allergic manifestations of aspergillosis constitute a spectrum of presentations based on the degree of hypersensitivity to *Aspergillus* antigens (Clinical Case 65.4). In the bronchopulmonary form, asthma, pulmonary infiltrates, peripheral eosinophilia, elevated serum IgE, and evidence of hypersensitivity to *Aspergillus* antigens (skin test) may be seen. Allergic sinusitis shows laboratory evidence of hypersensitivity to go along with upper respiratory symptoms of nasal obstruction and discharge, headache, and facial pain.

Clinical Case 65.4 **Invasive Aspergillosis**

Guha and associates (*Infect Med* 24[Suppl 8]:8–11, 2007) described a case of invasive aspergillosis in a renal transplant recipient. The patient was a 34-year-old woman who presented with a 2-day history of weakness, dizziness, left calf pain, and black tarry stools. She denied chest pain, cough, or shortness of breath. Her past medical history was significant for diabetes leading to renal failure, for which she received a cadaveric renal transplant in 2002. Three weeks before presentation, acute graft rejection developed. She was placed on an immunosuppressive regimen of alemtuzumab, tacrolimus, sirolimus, and prednisone. On admission, she was tachycardic, hypotensive, and febrile. Physical examination revealed a tender venous cord palpable in the popliteal fossa. An initial chest radiograph showed no abnormalities. Laboratory studies showed anemia and azotemia. The white blood cell count was 4800/μL with 80% neutrophils. The patient was given four units of packed red blood cells, and empiric treatment with gatifloxacin was started. Blood cultures were positive for *Escherichia coli* susceptible to gatifloxacin. On hospital day 6, a vesicular rash developed on the buttocks and left calf, cultures of which were positive for herpes simplex virus, and she was placed on acyclovir. The patient's clinical condition stabilized, except for her renal function, and intermittent hemodialysis was started on hospital day 8. On hospital day 12, the patient exhibited decreased responsiveness, became obtunded, and was intubated for respiratory distress. A chest radiograph showed diffuse bilateral lung nodules. Culture of bronchoalveolar lavage fluid was positive for *Aspergillus* species, and viral inclusion bodies suggestive of cytomegalovirus were seen. Her immunosuppression was decreased, and liposomal amphotericin B was started. The patient experienced an acute myocardial infarction and became comatose. Multiple acute infarcts in the frontal lobe and cerebellum were seen on a magnetic resonance imaging scan of the brain. The patient's condition continued to deteriorate, and multiple skin nodules developed on her arms and trunk. Biopsy specimens of the skin nodules grew *A. flavus* on culture. The patient subsequently died on hospital day 23. At autopsy, *A. flavus* was detected in multiple organs, including heart, lung, adrenal gland, thyroid, kidney, and liver.

This case serves as an extreme example of disseminated aspergillosis in an immunocompromised host.

Both the paranasal sinuses and the lower airways may become colonized with *Aspergillus* spp., resulting in *Aspergillus* bronchitis and true aspergilloma ("fungus ball"). *Aspergillus* bronchitis usually occurs in the setting of underlying pulmonary disease, such as cystic fibrosis, chronic bronchitis, or bronchiectasis. The condition is marked by the formation of bronchial casts or plugs composed of hyphal elements and mucinous material. The symptoms remain those of the underlying disease; no tissue injury results, although antifungal therapy may be helpful. An aspergilloma can form either in the paranasal sinuses or in a preformed pulmonary cavity secondary to old tuberculosis or other chronic cavitary lung disease. Aspergillomas may be seen on radiographic examination but usually are asymptomatic. Treatment is generally not warranted unless pulmonary hemorrhage occurs. In the event of pulmonary hemorrhage, which may be severe and life-threatening, surgical excision of the cavity and fungus ball is indicated. Also, radical debridement of the paranasal sinuses may be necessary to alleviate any symptomatology or hemorrhage caused by a fungus ball of the sinuses. Oral antifungal therapy may help symptoms but rarely kills the fungus in the cavity or sinus.

Forms of invasive aspergillosis run the gamut from superficially invasive disease that may occur in the setting of mild immunosuppression (e.g., low-dose steroid therapy, collagen vascular disease, or diabetes) to destructive, locally invasive pulmonary or disseminated aspergillosis. The more limited forms of invasion generally include necrotizing pseudomembranous bronchial aspergillosis and chronic necrotizing pulmonary aspergillosis. Bronchial aspergillosis may cause wheezing, dyspnea, and hemoptysis. Most patients with chronic necrotizing pulmonary aspergillosis have underlying structural pulmonary disease, which may be treated with low-dose corticosteroids. This is a chronic infection that may be locally destructive, with the development of infiltrates and fungus balls seen on radiographic examination. It is not associated with vascular invasion or dissemination. Surgical resection of affected areas and administration of antifungal therapy are efficacious in treating this condition.

Invasive pulmonary aspergillosis and disseminated aspergillosis are devastating infections seen in severely neutropenic and immunodeficient patients. The major predisposing factors for this infectious complication include neutrophil count less than 500/mm^3, cytotoxic chemotherapy, and corticosteroid therapy. Patients present with fever and pulmonary infiltrates, often accompanied by pleuritic chest pain and hemoptysis. Definitive diagnosis is often delayed because sputum and blood cultures are usually negative. The mortality of this infection despite specific antifungal therapy is quite high, usually exceeding 70% (see Table 65.5). Hematogenous dissemination of infection to extrapulmonary sites is common because of the angioinvasive nature of the fungus. Sites most often involved include brain, heart, kidneys, GI tract, liver, and spleen.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

As with other ubiquitous fungi, the diagnosis of aspergillosis necessitates caution when evaluating the isolation of an *Aspergillus* species from clinical specimens. Recovery from surgically removed tissue or sterile sites, accompanied by positive histopathology (moniliaceous, septate, dichotomously branching hyphae) should always be considered significant; isolation from normally contaminated (e.g., respiratory) sites requires closer scrutiny.

Most etiologic agents of aspergillosis grow readily on routine mycologic media lacking cycloheximide. Species-level identification of the major human pathogens can be made by observing cultural and microscopic characteristics from growth on potato dextrose agar. Microscopic morphology (conidiophores, vesicles, metulae, phialides, and conidia) is best observed with a slide culture and is necessary for species identification.

Invasive aspergillosis caused by *A. fumigatus* and most other species is rarely documented by positive blood cultures. In fact, most bloodstream isolates of *Aspergillus*

species have been shown to represent pseudofungemia or terminal events at autopsy. Notably, *A. terreus*, among all species of *Aspergillus*, has been shown to cause true aspergillemia. Similar to other angioinvasive filamentous fungi (e.g., *Fusarium*, *Scedosporium* spp.), *A. terreus* is capable of adventitious sporulation, in which yeastlike spores, or aleurioconidia, are formed in tissue and are more likely to be detected in blood obtained for culture (see Fig. 65.16). Recognition of these aleurioconidia on microscopic examination of tissue, fine-needle aspirates, or bronchoscopy specimens can allow a rapid, presumptive identification of *A. terreus*.

The rapid diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis has been advanced by the development of immunoassays for the *Aspergillus* galactomannan antigen in serum, bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) fluid, and CSF. The most widely available form of this test uses an enzyme immunoassay format and is available as a commercial kit or from reference laboratories. This test appears to be reasonably specific but exhibits variable sensitivity. It is best used on serial specimens from high-risk (primarily neutropenic and BMT patients) patients as an early indication to begin empiric or preemptive antifungal therapy and to pursue a definitive diagnosis more aggressively. A lateral flow immunoassay (LFI) has been developed for detection of an extracellular glycoprotein of *Aspergillus*, which is present in cell walls of growing germ tubes and secreted at growing hyphal tips but absent from ungerminated conidia. The simplicity of the LFI test suggests the possibility for use as a point-of-care test on serum or BAL fluid. The β-D-glucan test has been applied to the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis, but it suffers from a lack of specificity. In contrast, PCR-based assays have proven to be both sensitive and specific for the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis, and efforts to standardize this method are ongoing. Several multiplex real-time PCR assays for the detection of *Aspergillus* deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) are commercially available in Europe. One of the more successful approaches to the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis is to use a combination of antigen detection (either galactomannan or β-D-glucan) and PCR. It is clear from numerous publications that the use of these tests in combination assists in the earlier diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis,

TREATMENT AND PREVENTION

Prevention of aspergillosis in high-risk patients is paramount. Neutropenic and other high-risk patients are generally housed in facilities in which the air is filtered to minimize exposure to *Aspergillus* conidia.

Specific antifungal therapy of aspergillosis usually involves the administration of voriconazole (isavuconazole and posaconazole are alternatives to voriconazole) or one of the lipid formulations of amphotericin B. It is important to realize that *A. terreus* is considered resistant to amphotericin B and should be treated with an alternative agent, such as voriconazole (or another mold-active triazole). The introduction of voriconazole provides a treatment option that is more efficacious and less toxic than amphotericin B (see Chapter 61). Concomitant efforts to decrease immunosuppression and/or reconstitute host immune defenses are important components of the treatment of aspergillosis. Likewise, surgical resection of involved areas is recommended if possible. Resistance to the mold-active triazoles (isavuconazole, itraconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole) is uncommon but has been reported from numerous locations worldwide. A potential link to the use of azole fungicides in agriculture has been reported from the Netherlands.

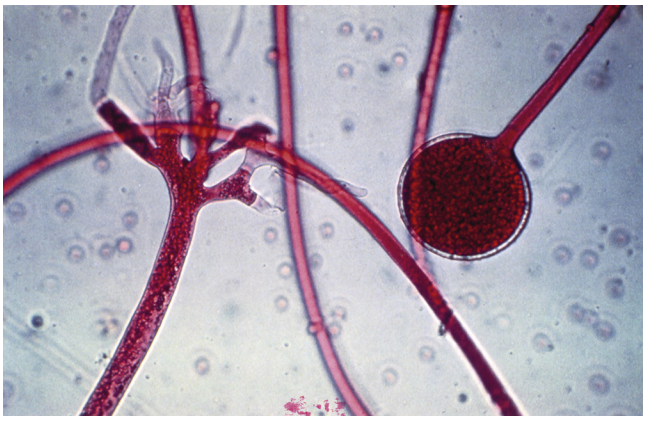


Fig. 65.17 *Rhizopus* sp. showing sporangium and rhizoids.

Mucormycosis

Mucormycosis refers to diseases caused by fungi of the subphyla Mucoromycotina and Entomophthoromycotina. The principal human pathogens among the Mucormycetes are encompassed by two orders, the Mucorales and the Entomophthorales. The orders Entomophthorales and Basidiobolales contain two pathogenic genera, Conidiobolus and Basidiobolus, respectively. These agents generally incite a chronic, granulomatous infection of subcutaneous tissues and are discussed in Chapter 63.

In the order Mucorales, pathogenic genera include *Rhizopus*, *Mucor*, *Lichtheimia* (formerly *Absidia*), *Rhizomucor*, *Saksenaea*, *Cunninghamella*, *Syncephalastrum*, and *Apophysomyces*. Infections caused by Mucormycetes are rare, occurring at an annual rate of 1.7 to 3.4 infections per million population in the United States. Unfortunately, when they do occur, infections caused by these agents are generally acute and rapidly progressive, with mortality rates of 70% to 100%.

MORPHOLOGY

Macroscopically, the pathogenic Mucorales grow rapidly, producing gray-to-brown woolly colonies within 12 to 18 hours. Further identification of the genus and species level is based on microscopic morphology. Microscopically, the Mucormycetes are molds with broad, hyaline, sparsely septate, coenocytic hyphae. The asexual spores of the order Mucorales are contained within a sporangium and are referred to as sporangiospores. The sporangia are borne at the tips of stalklike sporangiophores that terminate in a bulbous swelling called the columella (Fig. 65.17; also see Chapter 57, Fig. 57.3A). The presence of rootlike structures, called rhizoids, is helpful in identifying specific genera within the Mucorales. As with the aspergilli, identification of the Mucorales is best accomplished by molecular methods.

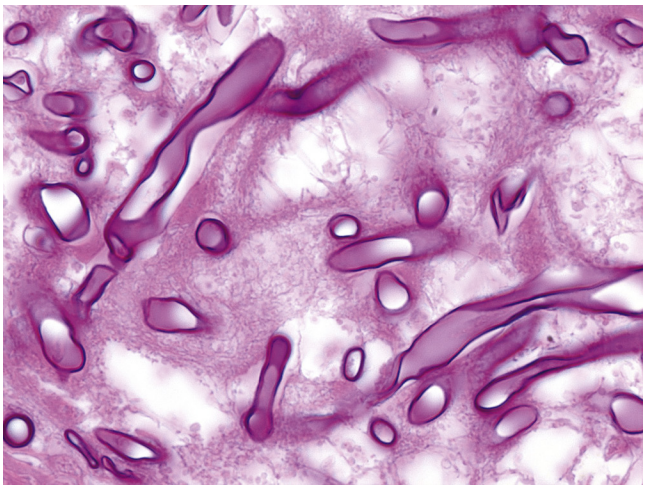


Fig. 65.18 *Rhizopus* sp. in tissue showing broad, ribbon-like, aseptate hyphae (hematoxylin and eosin, ×1000).

In tissue, Mucormycetes (order Mucorales) are seen as ribbon-like, aseptate or sparsely septate, moniliaceous (nonpigmented) hyphae (Fig. 65.18). In contrast to *Aspergillus* spp. and other hyaline molds, the width of the hyphae often exceeds 10 μm, and the hyphae are irregularly contoured and pleomorphic, often folding and twisting back on themselves. The pattern of hyphal branching is haphazard and nonprogressive, and branches typically arise from the parent hyphae at right angles. The walls of the hyphae are thin, stain weakly with GMS and other fungal stains, and are often more easily detected with H&E (see Fig. 65.18). The Mucormycetes are typically angioinvasive.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Mucormycosis is a sporadic disease that occurs worldwide. *R. arrhizus* is the most common cause of human mucormycosis; however, additional species of *Rhizopus, Rhizomucor, Lichtheimia,* and *Cunninghamella* are known to cause invasive disease in hospitalized individuals. The organisms are ubiquitous in soil and decaying vegetation, and infection may be acquired by inhalation, ingestion, or contamination of wounds with sporangiospores from the environment. As with *Aspergillus* spp., nosocomial spread of Mucormycetes may occur by way of air-conditioning systems, particularly during construction. Focal outbreaks of mucormycosis also have been associated with the use of contaminated adhesive bandages or tape in surgical wound dressings, resulting in primary cutaneous mucormycosis. Notably, immunocompetent patients may develop posttrauma skin infections, representing up to 18% of all mucormycosis cases in a study of cases diagnosed in France. In addition, necrotizing cutaneous cases have been reported after a tornado in Joplin, Missouri, or as a cause of infections after combat-related injuries in Afghanistan.

Invasive mucormycosis occurs in immunocompromised patients and is similar clinically to aspergillosis. It is estimated that Mucormycetes may cause infection in 1% to 9% of solid organ transplants, especially those with underlying diabetes mellitus. Risk factors include corticosteroid and deferoxamine therapy, diabetic ketoacidosis, renal failure, hematologic malignancy, myelosuppression, and exposure to hospital construction activity. Mucormycosis has been seen after BMT in patients receiving antifungal prophylaxis with voriconazole, which is an agent that is not active against the Mucormycetes.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

There are several clinical forms of mucormycosis caused by members of the order Mucorales. Sinus involvement (isolated sinusitis, rhinocerebral, and sinoorbital forms) is the most common presentation in diabetic patients and intravenous drug abusers, whereas pulmonary infection is the second most common presentation, and the reverse is true in hematology patients.

Rhinocerebral mucormycosis is an acute invasive infection of the nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, and orbit that involves the facial structures and extends into the CNS, involving the meninges and the brain. Most of these infections occur in patients with metabolic acidosis, particularly diabetic ketoacidosis, and those with hematologic malignancies.

Pulmonary mucormycosis occurs as a primary infection in neutropenic patients and may be misdiagnosed as invasive aspergillosis. The pulmonary lesions are infarctive, secondary to hyphal invasion and subsequent thrombosis of pulmonary vessels. Chest radiographs show a rapidly progressive bronchopneumonia, segmented or lobar consolidation, and signs of cavitation. Fungus-ball formation mimicking aspergilloma may be seen. Pulmonary hemorrhage with fatal hemoptysis may occur as a result of vascular invasion by the fungus.

The angioinvasive nature of the mucoraceous mucormycetes often produces disseminated infection, with tissue infarction of various organs. Symptoms at presentation point to neurologic, pulmonary, or GI involvement. Involvement of the GI tract often results in massive hemorrhage or perforation.

Cutaneous mucormycosis may be a sign of hematogenous dissemination. Lesions tend to be nodular with an ecchymotic center. Primary cutaneous mucormycosis may occur after traumatic injury, in surgical dressings, or as colonization of burn wounds. The infection may be superficial or extend rapidly into the subcutaneous tissues. The aftermath of the devastating tornados of 2011 in the United States saw several cases of deeply invasive mucormycosis in non-immunocompromised individuals secondary to cutaneous inoculation by flying debris.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Because of the extremely poor prognosis of mucormycosis, every effort should be made to obtain tissue for direct microscopic examination, histologic study, and culture. The Mucormycetes are an extremely ubiquitous group of fungi, so demonstration of characteristic fungal elements in tissue merits considerably more importance than simple isolation in culture.

Appropriate specimens include scrapings of nasal mucosa, aspirates of sinus contents, bronchial alveolar lavage fluid, and biopsy of any and all necrotic infected tissue. Direct examination of material mounted in KOH with

calcofluor white may reveal the broad, aseptate hyphae. Histopathologic sections stained with H&E or PAS are most useful (see Fig. 65.18). Broad, irregularly branched, paucisseptate, twisted hyphae can be observed.

Tissue for culture should be minced, not homogenized, and placed on standard mycologic media without cycloheximide. Negative cultures are common, occurring about 40% of the time, despite the microscopic demonstration of hyphae in tissue. The diagnosis of mucormycosis cannot be established or rejected based on culture alone; it depends on a panel of evidence gathered by both the clinician and microbiologist. Unfortunately, no widely available serologic or molecular tests specific for the Mucormycetes are available yet (see Chapter 60).

TREATMENT

Amphotericin B remains the first-line therapy for mucormycosis, often supplemented by surgical debridement and immune reconstitution. Most Mucormycetes appear quite susceptible to amphotericin B and are generally not susceptible to the azoles or echinocandins (see Chapter 61). Among the extended-spectrum triazoles, however, posaconazole and isavuconazole stand out, in that both appear to be active against the Mucormycetes. Posaconazole and isavuconazole have documented efficacy in murine models of mucormycosis and in limited experience in the treatment of infections in humans. In contrast, voriconazole is inactive against these agents, and breakthrough mucormycosis has been reported in BMT patients receiving voriconazole prophylaxis.

Mycoses Caused by Other Hyaline Molds

The list of hyaline molds, also known as hyalohyphomycetes, is quite long, and it is well beyond the scope of this chapter to discuss them all (Clinical Case 65.5; see Box 65.1). The taxonomically diverse agents of hyalohyphomycosis (infection caused by nonpigmented molds) do share several characteristics, in that many agents exhibit decreased susceptibility to a number of antifungal agents, and when present in tissue, they appear as hyaline (nonpigmented), septate, branching, filamentous fungi that may be indistinguishable from *Aspergillus.* Culture is necessary to identify these agents and may be critical in determining the most appropriate therapy.

Although infections caused by most of these fungi are relatively uncommon, they appear to be increasing in incidence. Most disseminated infections are thought to be acquired by the inhalation of spores or by the progression of previously localized cutaneous lesions. In this chapter, the discussion of specific genera is limited to selected clinically important hyaline molds: *Fusarium* spp., *Sarocladium* spp., *Paecilomyces* spp., *Purpureocillium* spp., *Trichoderma* spp., and *Scopulariopsis* spp. These organisms tend to cause infections in neutropenic patients, are often disseminated in nature, and are almost uniformly fatal in the absence of immune reconstitution. Several of these organisms are capable of adventitious conidiation (generation of spores in tissue) with concomitant hematogenous dissemination, positive blood cultures, and multiple cutaneous lesions.

Clinical Case 65.5 **Fusariosis**

Badley and associates described a 38-year-old man, undergoing chemotherapy for recently diagnosed acute myeloid leukemia, who developed neutropenia and fever. He was placed on broad-spectrum antibacterial agents but remained febrile after 96 hours. A left internal jugular catheter was in place. Blood and urine cultures showed no growth. To combat a potential fungal infection, voriconazole was added to the therapeutic regimen. After 1 week of treatment, the patient was still febrile and neutropenic, and his antifungal therapy was changed to caspofungin. Four days later, the patient developed a mildly painful rash. Initially the rash developed on the upper extremities and consisted of papular, erythematous, plaquelike lesions with centers that became necrotic. Blood cultures and skin biopsy specimens were sent to the laboratory for analysis. The laboratory report indicated that the blood cultures were positive for "yeast" based on the presence of budding cells and pseudohyphae. The skin biopsy showed "mold" consistent with *Aspergillus*. However, serum galactomannan testing was negative. All cultures grew *Fusarium solani*. The patient's caspofungin was discontinued, and he was switched to a lipid preparation of amphotericin B and voriconazole. Despite the antifungal therapy, the lesions increased in number over the next 2 weeks and spread throughout his extremities, trunk, and face. The neutropenia and fever persisted, and he died approximately 3 weeks after the initial diagnosis.

The combination of skin lesions and positive blood cultures are typical findings in fusariosis. Although "yeast" was reported from the blood cultures, closer examination revealed the microconidia and hyphae of *Fusarium*; likewise, the appearance of septate hyphae in the skin biopsy could represent a number of different hyaline molds, including *Fusarium*.

Fusarium species have been recognized with increased frequency as causes of disseminated infection in immunocompromised patients. *Fusarium* also is an important cause of fungal keratitis, especially among contact lens wearers. There are numerous toxic secondary metabolites (mycotoxins) produced by *Fusarium* species that have been implicated in human disease, especially associated with the consumption of contaminated grain. Along with orally ingested mycotoxins, systemic effects of exposure to inhaled mycotoxins also have been attributed to *Fusarium*, although these effects have been much less characterized.

Several molecular phylogenetic studies have shown that fusaria, once considered individual species by morphologic features, are now known to represent SCs. The most common SCs (clinically relevant species shown in parenthesis) isolated from clinical specimens include *Fusarium fujikuroi* SC (*F. verticillioides, F. thapsinum,* and *F. proliferatum*), *F. solani* SC (*F. falciforme, F. petroliphilum, F. keratoplasticum, F. solani*), and *F. oxysporum* SC (*F. oxysporum*). For the purposes of this chapter, we will focus on these three SCs without further delineation. The hallmark of disseminated fusariosis is the appearance of multiple purpuric cutaneous nodules with central necrosis (see Clinical Case 65.5). Biopsy of these nodules generally reveals branching, hyaline, and septate hyphae invading dermal blood vessels (Fig. 65.19). Cultures of biopsy material and of blood are useful in establishing the diagnosis

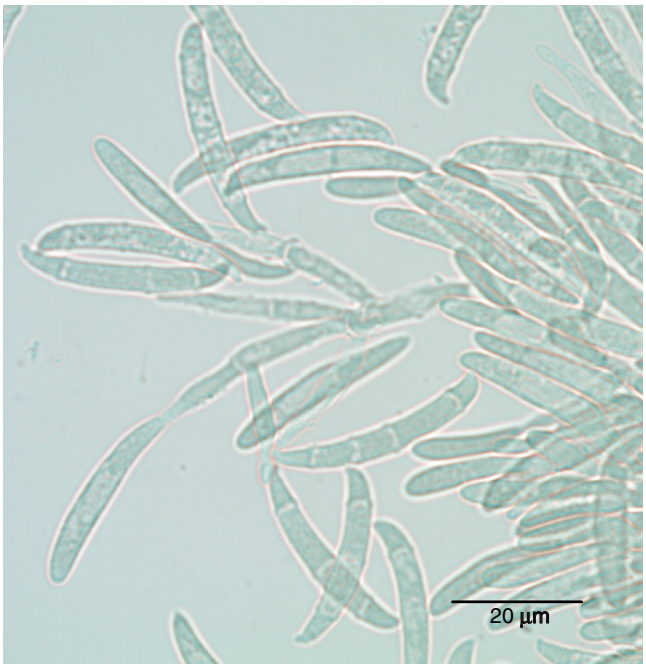


Fig. 65.19 *Fusarium* sp. in tissue showing acute-angle branching, septate hyphae that are indistinguishable from that of *Aspergillus* spp. (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

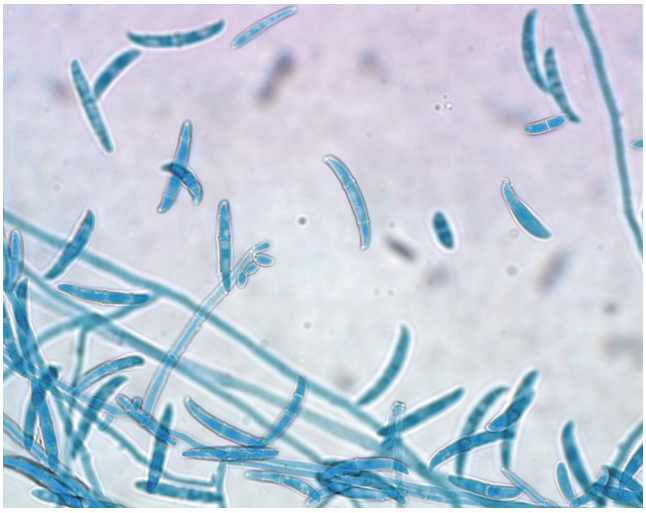


Fig. 65.20 *Fusarium oxysporum*, lactophenol cotton blue preparation.

of *Fusarium* infection. Although blood cultures are virtually always negative in invasive infections caused by *Aspergillus* spp., approximately 75% of patients with fusariosis will have positive blood cultures. In culture, colonies of *Fusarium* spp. are rapidly growing, cottony to woolly, flat, and spreading. Colors may include blue-green, beige, salmon, lavender, red, violet, and purple. Microscopically, *Fusarium* spp. are characterized by the production of both macroconidia and microconidia. Microconidia are single-celled or double-celled, ovoid to cylindric, and generally borne as mucous balls or short chains. Macroconidia are fusiform or sickle shaped and many celled (Fig. 65.20). *Fusarium* spp. often appear resistant to amphotericin B in vitro, and breakthrough infections occur frequently in patients treated with this agent. Voriconazole and posaconazole have been used successfully in some patients with amphotericin B–refractory fusariosis. Primary therapy with a lipid formulation of amphotericin B, voriconazole, or posaconazole, plus vigorous efforts at immune reconstitution, are recommended for treatment of fusariosis.

Invasive infections caused by *Sarocladium* (*Acremonium)* spp. are almost exclusively seen in patients with neutropenia, transplantation, or other immunodeficiency conditions and occur in a manner similar to that of *Fusarium*, with hematogenously disseminated skin lesions and positive blood cultures. Species of *Sarocladium* are commonly found in soil, decaying vegetation, and decaying food. Colonies are whitish gray or rose, with a velvety to cottony surface. The conidia may be single-celled in chains or a conidial mass arising from short, unbranched, tapered phialides. The optimal treatment for infections caused by *Sarocladium* spp. has not been established. Resistance is seen to amphotericin B, itraconazole, and the echinocandins. A recent report of successful treatment of a pulmonary infection caused by *S.* (formerly *Acremonium*) *strictum* with posaconazole suggests that the new triazoles may be useful in treatment of *Sarocladium*/*Acremonium* infections.

Although uncommon, *Paecilomyces* spp. may cause invasive disease in organ and hematopoietic stem cell recipients, individuals with AIDS, and other immunocompromised patients. The portal of infection is often through breaks in the skin or intravascular catheters. Dissemination of the infection may be aided by adventitious conidiation that takes place within the tissues. The two most common medically important species are *P. lilacinus* and *P. variotii*. In a recent taxonomic shuffle *P. lilacinus* has been assigned to the genus *Purpureocillium* (*Purpureocillium lilacinum*). Microscopically, the *Paecilomyces*/*Purpureocillium* species conidia are unicellular, ovoid to fusiform, and form chains. Phialides have a swollen base and a long, tapered neck. Susceptibility to amphotericin B is variable, with resistance seen with *P. (Paecilomyces) lilacinum*. Voriconazole has been used successfully to treat both severe cutaneous infection and disseminated disease.

Trichoderma spp. are excellent examples of fungi previously labeled as nonpathogenic that have emerged as important opportunistic pathogens in immunocompromised patients and in patients undergoing peritoneal dialysis. Fatal disseminated disease caused by *T. longibrachiatum* occurs in patients with hematologic malignancies, after BMT or solid organ transplantation. Most *Trichoderma* spp. show decreased susceptibility to amphotericin B, itraconazole, fluconazole, and flucytosine. Voriconazole appears to be active against the few isolates tested.

Scopulariopsis spp. are ubiquitous soil saprobes that have been rarely implicated in invasive human disease. *S. brevicaulis* is the most frequently isolated species. Infection is usually confined to the nails; however, serious deep infection has been noted in neutropenic leukemia patients and after BMT. Both local and disseminated infections have been described, with involvement of the nasal septum, skin and soft tissues, blood, lungs, and brain. Diagnosis is made by culture and histopathology. *Scopulariopsis* spp. grow moderately to rapidly on standard mycologic media. Colonies are initially smooth, becoming granular to powdery with age. Conidiophores are simple or branched; the conidiogenous cells are annelides that form singly or in clusters or may form a broomlike structure, or *scopula*, similar to that seen with *Penicillium* spp. The annelloconidia are smooth

initially, become rough at maturity, are shaped like light bulbs, and form basipetal chains. *Scopulariopsis* spp. are usually resistant to itraconazole and moderately susceptible to amphotericin B. Invasive infections may require surgical and medical treatment and are often fatal.

Phaeohyphomycosis

Phaeohyphomycosis is defined as a tissue infection caused by dematiaceous (pigmented) hyphae and/or yeasts. Infections caused by dematiaceous fungi constitute a significant and increasingly prevalent group of opportunistic fungal diseases and may take the form of disseminated disease or become localized to the lung, paranasal sinuses, or CNS. Primary inoculation, resulting in localized subcutaneous infection, occurs commonly in underdeveloped countries and has been discussed in Chapter 64.

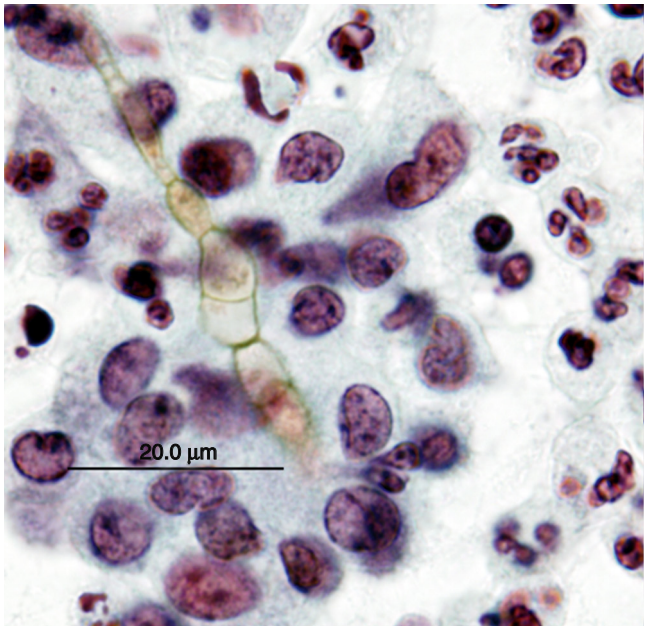


Fig. 65.21 *Scedosporium apiospermum*. Lactophenol cotton blue preparation showing melanized conidia and septate hyphae.

The dematiaceous fungi that have been documented to cause human infection encompass a large number of different genera; however, the more common causes of human infection include *Alternaria, Bipolaris, Cladosporium, Curvularia, Scedosporium*, *Lomentospora,* and *Exserohilum* species. In addition, several of the dematiaceous fungi appear to be neurotropic: *Curvularia* (formerly *Bipolaris*) *spicifera, Cladophialophora bantiana, Verruconis gallopava, Exophiala dermatitidis,* and *Rhinocladiella mackenziei.* Brain abscess is the most common CNS presentation. *Bipolaris* (*Curvularia*) spp. and *Exserohilum* spp. infections may present initially as sinusitis, which then extends into the CNS. *E. rostratum* was implicated in a large iatrogenic outbreak in the United States caused by contaminated methylprednisolone preparations, leading to numerous fatal cases of meningitis and CNS vasculitis in otherwise immunocompetent individuals. Notably both PCR and the β-D-glucan tests were quite useful in diagnosis and management of these patients.

In tissue, hyphae with or without yeast forms are present. Melanization of vegetative cells or conidia, which results in colony coloration ranging from olive or gray to black, is caused by the deposition of dihydroxynaphthalene melanin in cell walls. The amount of melanin expressed in host tissue may be very small and difficult to observe using traditional histologic stains. Most often, the pale brown to dark melanin-like pigment within the cell wall is apparent in H&E-stained or Papanicolaou-stained tissue (Fig. 65.21). Staining with the Fontana-Masson technique (a melanin-specific stain) may help visualize the dematiaceous elements. The use of the Fontana-Masson stain is therefore recommended as a

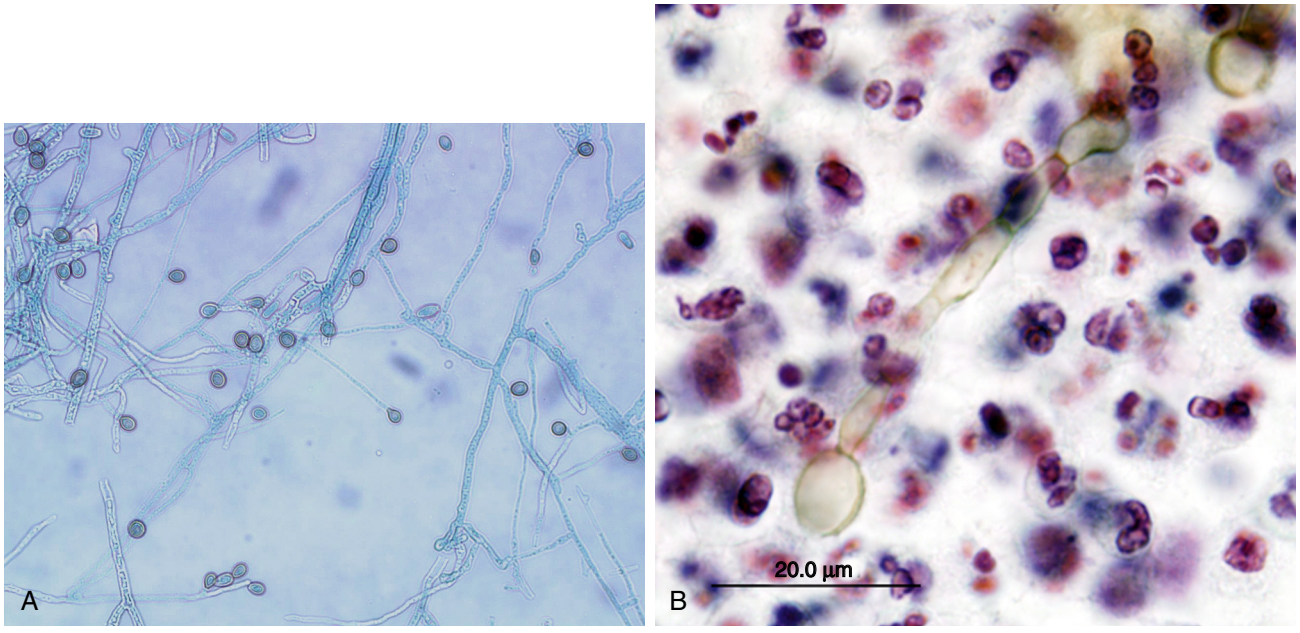


Fig. 65.22 (A and B) Fine-needle aspirate of a fluctuant mass showing the pigmented hyphae of *Phialophora verrucosa* (Papanicolaou). (From Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), 2009. Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.)

routine to distinguish fungi with melanized hyphae from those causing "hyalohyphomycosis," e.g., *Fusarium*. This does not apply for *Scedosporium or L. prolificans*, which do not produce melanized hyphae but are able to produce melanized conidia either *in vitro* or *in vivo* or both Fig. Fig. 65.22.

The dematiaceous fungi differ considerably in the clinical spectrum of infection and response to therapy. Furthermore, the different genera are not readily distinguished on histopathologic examination. Thus an accurate microbiologic diagnosis based on culture of the infected tissue is important for optimal clinical management of infections caused by these fungi.

Alternaria spp. are important causes of paranasal sinusitis in both healthy and immunocompromised individuals. Other sites of infection include skin and soft tissue, cornea, lower respiratory tract, and peritoneum. *A. alternata* is the best documented human pathogen in this genus. In culture, *Alternaria* colonies are rapidly growing, cottony, and gray to black. The conidiophores are usually solitary and simple or branched. The conidia develop in branching chains and are dematiaceous, muriform, and smooth or rough and taper toward the distal end with a short beak at their apices (Fig. 65.23).

Cladosporium spp. usually cause superficial cutaneous infections but may cause deep infections as well. These fungi are rapidly growing with a velvety, olive gray to black colony. The conidiophores arise from the hyphae and are dematiaceous, tall, and branching. The conidia may be smooth or rough and single celled to several celled and form branching chains at the apex of the conidiophore.

Curvularia spp. are ubiquitous inhabitants of the soil and have been implicated in both disseminated and local infections. Sites of infection include endocarditis, local catheter-site infections, nasal septum and paranasal sinuses, lower respiratory tract, skin and subcutaneous tissues, bones, and cornea. In tissue, the hyphae may appear nonpigmented. Common species found to be etiologic agents of human infection include *C. geniculata, C. lunata, C. pallescens,* and *C. senegalensis.* In culture, colonies are rapidly growing, woolly, and gray to grayish black. Microscopically, the conidia are dematiaceous, solitary or in groups, septate, simple or branched, sympodial, and geniculate.

Infections caused by the genera *Curvularia/Bipolaris* and *Exserohilum* present similarly to those of *Aspergillus* spp., except that the disease progresses more slowly. Clinical presentations include dissemination with vascular invasion and tissue necrosis, involvement of the CNS and paranasal sinuses, and association with allergic bronchopulmonary disease. These organisms cause sinusitis in "normal" (atopic or asthmatic) hosts and more invasive disease in immunocompromised hosts. In culture, both *Bipolaris* and *Exserohilum* form rapidly growing, woolly, gray to black colonies. Microscopically, the conidiophores are sympodial and geniculate. The conidia are dematiaceous, oblong to cylindric, and multicelled (Fig. 65.24). The preponderant *Bipolaris* species in human infections are *B. australiensis, B. hawaiiensis,* and *B. spicifera*. Recently these species have been transferred to the genus *Curvularia.*

Scedosporium spp. (*S. apiospermum*, *S. aurantiacum*, *S. boydii,* and *S. dehoogii*) and *Lomentospora* (formerly *Scedosporium*) *prolificans* represent two important antifungal-resistant, opportunistic pathogens. *S. apiospermum* may be readily isolated from soil and is an occasional cause of mycetoma worldwide; however, it is also the cause of serious disseminated and localized infection in immunocompromised patients. In addition to widespread disseminated disease, *S. apiospermum* has been reported to cause corneal ulcers, endophthalmitis, sinusitis, pneumonia, endocarditis, meningitis, arthritis, and osteomyelitis. *S. apiospermum* is indistinguishable from *Aspergillus* spp. and *Fusarium* spp. on histopathologic examination. Such distinction is important clinically because *S. apiospermum* is resistant to amphotericin B and susceptible to voriconazole, isavuconazole, and posaconazole. In culture, colonies are woolly to cottony and are initially white, becoming smoky brown to green. Microscopically, conidia are one-celled, elongate, and pale brown and are borne singly or in balls on either short or long conidiophores (Fig. 65.22).

Lomentospora prolificans is a potentially virulent and highly aggressive emerging agent of invasive mycosis. Although far less common than *Fusarium* or *S. apiospermum,* infections caused by *L. prolificans* are associated

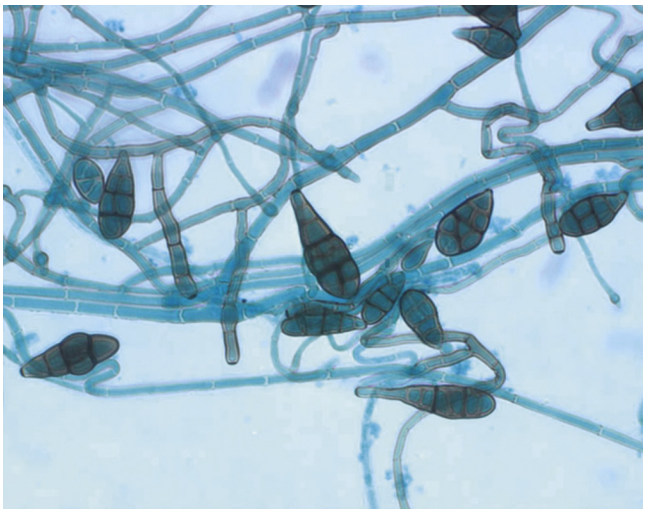


Fig. 65.23 *Alternaria* sp. Lactophenol cotton blue preparation showing darkly pigmented chains of muriform conidia.

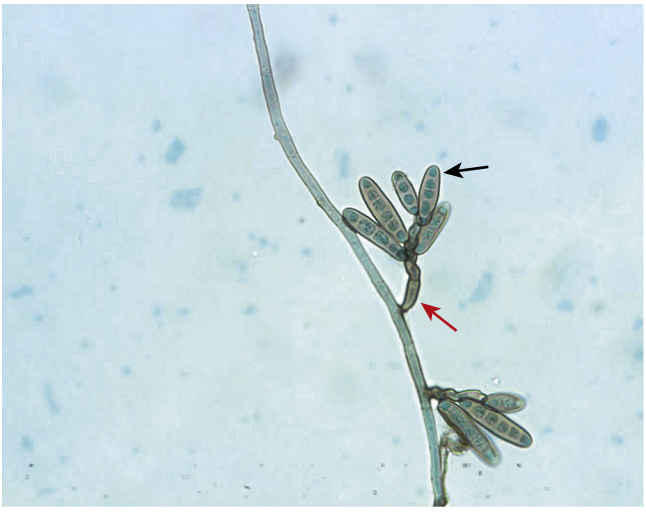


Fig. 65.24 *Bipolaris (Curvularia)* sp. Lactophenol cotton blue preparation showing pigmented conidia *(black arrow)* borne on geniculate conidiophores *(red arrow)*.

with soft-tissue trauma and are characterized by widespread local invasion, tissue necrosis, and osteomyelitis. *L. prolificans* resembles *S. apiospermum* in macroscopic and microscopic morphology. The formation by *L. prolificans* of annelloconidia in wet clumps at the apices of annellides with swollen bases is the most useful characteristic in differentiating this organism from *S. apiospermum*. *L. prolificans* is considered to be resistant to virtually all the systemically active antifungal agents, including the extended-spectrum triazoles and the echinocandins. Surgical resection remains the only definitive therapy for infection by *L. prolificans*.

The optimal treatment of deep-seated phaeohyphomycosis has not yet been established, although it most often includes early administration of amphotericin B and aggressive surgical excision. Despite these efforts, phaeohyphomycosis does not respond well to treatment and relapses are common. Posaconazole has been used successfully to treat disseminated infection caused by *E. spinifera.* In those patients with brain abscesses, complete excision of the lesion has been associated with improved survival. Long-term triazole (posaconazole or voriconazole) therapy coupled with repeated surgical excision may prevent recurrences. Treatment of the iatrogenic cases of infection caused by *E. rostratum* included lipid formulations of amphotericin B and voriconazole.

Pneumocystosis

Pneumocystis jirovecii (formerly *P. carinii*) is an organism that causes infection almost exclusively in debilitated and immunosuppressed patients, especially those with HIV infection. It is the most common opportunistic infection among individuals with AIDS; however, the incidence has decreased considerably in recent years with the use of highly active antiretroviral therapy. Although previously considered to be a protozoan parasite, recent molecular and genetic evidence place it among the fungi (see Chapter 57).

The life cycle of *P. jirovecii* includes both sexual and asexual components. During the course of human infection, *P. jirovecii* may exist as free trophic forms (1.5 to 5 μm in diameter), as a uninucleate sporocyst (4 to 5 μm), or as a cyst (5 μm) containing up to eight ovoid to fusiform intracystic bodies (Fig. 65.25). After rupture of the cyst, the cyst wall may be seen as an empty, collapsed structure (Fig. 65.26).

The reservoir for *P. jirovecii* in nature is unknown. Although airborne transmission has been documented experimentally among rodents, the rodent strains are genetically distinct from those of humans, making it unlikely that rodents serve as a zoonotic reservoir for human disease.

The respiratory tract is the main portal of entry for *P. jirovecii* in humans. Pneumonia is clearly the most common presentation of pneumocystosis, although extrapulmonary manifestations may be seen among AIDS patients. Involvement of lymph nodes, spleen, bone marrow, liver, small bowel, genitourinary tract, eyes, ears, skin, bone, and thyroid have been reported. Recent evidence suggests that both reactivation of quiescent old infection and primary infection can occur. Malnourished, debilitated, and immunosuppressed patients, especially AIDS patients with low CD4 counts (<200/μL), are at high risk of infection.

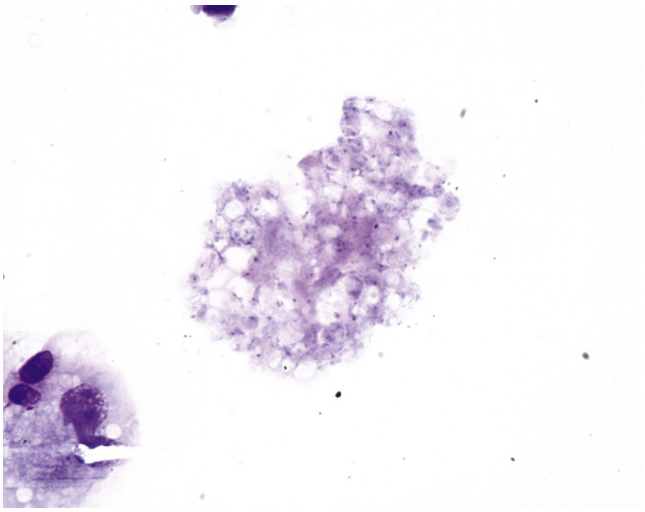


Fig. 65.25 *Pneumocystis jirovecii* in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid. Giemsa stain shows intracystic forms (×1000).

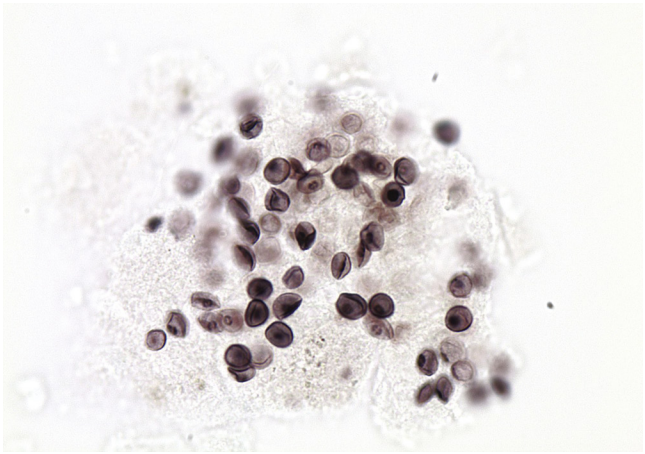


Fig. 65.26 *Pneumocystis jirovecii* in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid. Gomori methenamine silver stain shows typical intact and collapsed cysts (×1000).

The hallmark of *P. jirovecii* infection is an interstitial pneumonitis with a mononuclear infiltrate composed predominantly of plasma cells. The onset of disease is insidious, with signs and symptoms including dyspnea, cyanosis, tachypnea, nonproductive cough, and fever. The radiographic appearance is typically one of diffuse interstitial infiltrates with a ground-glass appearance extending from the hilar region, but radiographs may appear normal or show nodules or cavitation. The mortality rate is high among untreated patients, and death is caused by respiratory failure.

Histologically, a foamy exudate is seen within the alveolar spaces, with an intense interstitial infiltrate composed predominantly of plasma cells. Other patterns, including diffuse alveolar damage, noncaseating granulomatous inflammation, and infarct-like coagulative necrosis, also may be seen.

The diagnosis of *P. jirovecii* infection is almost entirely based on microscopic examination of clinical material, including BAL fluid, bronchial brushing, induced sputum, and transbronchial or open-lung biopsy specimens.

Examination of BAL fluid has been shown to have a sensitivity of 90% to 100% and usually precludes the need for transbronchial or open-lung biopsy. Microscopic examination of induced sputum may be useful in AIDS patients with a very high organism load; however, it has a 20% to 25% false-negative rate. A variety of histologic and cytologic stains have been used to detect *P. jirovecii*, including GMS, Giemsa, PAS, toluidine blue, calcofluor white, and immunofluorescence. The Giemsa stain demonstrates the trophic forms but does not stain the cyst wall (see Fig. 65.25), whereas the GMS stain is specific for the cyst wall (see Fig. 65.26). Immunofluorescent techniques stain both trophic forms and the cyst wall. The use of the β-D-glucan test has proven to be quite useful for the rapid diagnosis of *Pneumocystis* pneumonia with a high degree of sensitivity and specificity. Also, PCR is quite promising and is commercially available in Europe.

The cornerstone for both prophylaxis and treatment is trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Alternative therapies have been used in AIDS patients, including pentamidine, trimethoprim-dapsone, clindamycin-primaquine, atovaquone, and trimetrexate.

Bibliography

Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A., 2009. Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Bongomin, F., Gago, S., Oladele, R.O., Denning, D.W., 2017. Global and multi-national prevalence of fungal diseases—estimate precision. J. Fungi 3, 57. https://doi.org/10.3390/jof3040057.

Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago.

Dignani, M.C., Solomkin, J.S., Anaissie, E.J., 2009. Candida. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Gudlagson, O., et al., 2003. Attributable mortality of nosocomial candidemia, revisited. Clin. Infect. Dis. 37, 1172–1177.

Lockhart, S.R., et al., 2009. The epidemiology of fungal infections. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Pannuti, C.S., et al., 1991. Nosocomial pneumonia in adult patients undergoing bone marrow transplantation: a 9-year study. J. Clin. Oncol. 9 (1).

Pfaller, M.A., Diekema, D.J., 2007. Epidemiology of invasive candidiasis: a persistent public health problem. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 20, 133–163.

Pfaller, M., et al., 2012. Epidemiology and outcomes of candidemia in 3648 patients: data from the Prospective Antifungal Therapy (PATH Alliance) registry, 2004-2008. Diagn. Microbiol. Infect. Dis. 74, 323–331.

Pfaller, M.A., et al., 2013. Echinocandin and triazole antifungal susceptibility profiles for clinical opportunistic yeast and mold isolates collected from 2010 to 2011: application of new CLSI clinical breakpoints and epidemiological cutoff values for characterization of geographic and temporal trends of antifungal resistance. J. Clin. Microbiol. 51, 2571–2581.

Vallabhaneni, S., et al., 2017. Trends in hospitalizations relative to invasive aspergillosis and mucormycosis in the United States, 2000-2013. Open Forum Infect. Dis. https://doi.org/10.1093/ofid/ofw268.

Viviani, M.A., 2009. Tortorano AM: Cryptococcus. In: Anaissie, E.J., McGinnis, M.R., Pfaller, M.A. (Eds.), Clinical Mycology, second ed. Churchill Livingstone, New York.

Wiener, L.M., et al., 2016. Antimicrobial-resistant pathogens associated with healthcare-associated infections: summary of data reported to the national healthcare Safety Network at the centers for disease control and prevention, 2011-2014. Infect. Control Hosp. Epidemiol 37, 1288–1301.

Wey, S.B., et al., 1988. Hospital-acquired candidemia: attributable mortality and excess length of stay. Arch. Intern. Med. 148, 2642–2645.

Case Study and Questions

A 54-year-old man with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) develops a new respiratory infection marked by blood-tinged sputum. A chest radiogram shows a ball-like mass in a preexisting right upper lobe cavity.

1. What is the most likely diagnosis?
   a. *Candida* pneumonia
   b. Aspergilloma
   c. Cryptococcoma
   d. *Pneumocystis* pneumonia
2. How would you confirm the diagnosis?
3. How would you treat this patient?

66 Fungal and Fungal-Like Infections of Unusual or Uncertain Etiology

Jim is a 50-year-old ex-smoker who went to his family physician for an annual physical examination. In the process, a chest radiograph was performed, which revealed a nodule in the left upper lobe of the lung. Because of his age and prior smoking history, Jim underwent a thoracotomy, and the nodule was excised. Pathologic examination revealed fibrosis and several large spheric structures but no evidence of cancer.

1. What is the differential diagnosis of a solitary lung nodule?
2. Describe how one can differentiate the spherules of *Rhinosporidium seeberi* from those of *Coccidioides immitis* and *Adiaspiromyces* spp.
3. Describe the disease process of adiaspiromycosis.
4. Which of the following agents can be identified using commercially available yeast identification systems?
   a. *Lacazia loboi*
   b. *Pythium insidiosum*
   c. *Rhinosporidium seeberi*
   d. *Prototheca wickerhamii*

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

CHLORELLOSIS

Trigger Words

Chloroplasts, green lesions, water exposure, alga

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Infection of humans and animals caused by a unicellular green alga of genus *Chlorella*
- *Chlorella:* unicellular, ovoid, spherical or polygonal, reproduce by endosporulation
- Fresh lesions in liver, lymph nodes, cutaneous tissue are green on gross examination; smears reveal organisms that contain green refractile granules (chloroplasts)
- A single human infection reported thus far; most infections occur in sheep and cattle

Epidemiology

- A single human infection in Nebraska; resulted from exposure of a surgical wound to river water
- Infections in domestic and wild animals range from lymph node and deep organ involvement to cutaneous and subcutaneous lesions, presumably related to exposure to water containing the organism

Diagnosis

- *Chlorella* spp. infections diagnosed by culture and histopathologic examination of infected tissue
- On culture, colonies are bright green
- Wet mounts of wound exudate or touch preparations of infected tissue reveal ovoid, endosporulating cells with characteristic green cytoplasmic granules
- In tissue, cells stain with GMS and PAS but not H&E stains

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Repeat debridement, irrigation with Dakin solution, gauze packing and removal for drainage and granulation
- Amphotericin B therapy combined with administration of tetracycline may be useful

LACAZIOSIS

Trigger Words

Cutaneous trauma, soil, vegetation, water, dolphins, cutaneous nodules, tropical

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Chronic fungal skin infection caused by *Lacazia loboi*
- *L. loboi:* ascomycete fungus, reproduces by sequential budding, forms chains of spherical to oval cells connected by narrow tubelike bridges
- Slowly developing cutaneous nodules of varying size and shape
- Nodular keloid-like lesions most common; occur on the face, ears, arms, legs, feet
- Lesions increase in size and number over a period of 40 to 50 years
- Most patients asymptomatic; no systemic manifestations of disease

Epidemiology

- Human disease endemic in tropical regions of Central and South America
- *L. loboi* considered a saprophyte of soil and vegetation
- Mode of infection: cutaneous trauma; occurs in individuals involved in farming and jungle clearing
- Lacaziosis occurs in both marine and fresh water dolphins, suggesting an aquatic reservoir

Diagnosis

- Based on demonstrating yeast cells in lesion exudate or tissue sections
- Biopsy reveals a dispersed granulomatous infiltrate and numerous fungal forms in dermis and subcutaneous tissue

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Surgical excision of localized lesions
- Does not respond to antifungal therapy

RHINOSPORIDIOSIS

Trigger Words

Polypoid lesions, oropharynx, sporangium, trophocyte, endoconidia, granulomatous

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Granulomatous disease of humans and animals caused by *Rhinosporidium seeberi*
- Characterized by development of nasopharyngeal and ocular conjunctival polyps
- Two developmental forms seen in tissue: a large spherical form (sporangia) and a smaller trophic form

Epidemiology

- ≈90% of all known cases of rhinosporidiosis occur in India and Sri Lanka
- Natural habitat unknown
- Occurs primarily in men aged 20 to 40
- Appears to be associated with both rural and aquatic environments
- No evidence rhinosporidiosis is contagious

Diagnosis

- Histopathologic examination of affected tissues; distinctive appearance of trophocytes and sporangia in routine H&E-stained tissue is diagnostic
- *R. seeberi* has not been grown in culture

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Only effective form of treatment is surgical excision of lesions
- Recurrences common

GMS, Gomori methenamine silver; *H&E,* hematoxylin and eosin; *PAS,* periodic acid–Schiff.

Thus far we have discussed mycotic processes caused by reasonably well-characterized fungi that may serve as colonizers, opportunistic pathogens, or true pathogens. Although many of these organisms have undergone minor taxonomic reclassification over time, they all share the characteristics of the kingdom Fungi (see Chapter 57). One notable exception to this statement is *Pneumocystis jirovecii* (formerly *P. carinii*), which is an organism formerly considered to be a protozoan and now classified as a fungus of the class Pneumocystidomycetes based on molecular evidence (see Chapters 57 and 65). The fact that *P. jirovecii* cannot be grown on artificial media has complicated its characterization and assignment to the proper taxonomic category. In this chapter, we will discuss several infections that historically have been considered to represent fungal or "fungal-like" processes based on clinical and histopathologic presentation but, similar to *P. jirovecii*, have been difficult to classify because they cannot be grown on artificial media. In one instance, recent molecular evidence has suggested that an organism previously thought to be a fungus (*Rhinosporidium seeberi*) is in fact a protistan parasite. We also discuss two algal infections and two unusual infections caused by the oomycetes *Pythium insidiosum* and *Lagenidium* spp. In addition to being unusual, as well as uncommon, these infections are all diagnosed based on detection of characteristic structures on histopathologic examination of tissue. A listing of the infections, the etiologic agents, and the typical morphology in tissue are provided in Table 66.1.

Adiaspiromycosis

In humans, adiaspiromycosis is a rare, self-limited, pulmonary infection caused by inhalation of the asexual conidia of the soil saprophytes *Adiaspiromyces* (formerly *Emmonsia*) *crescens* and *Blastomyces parvus* (formerly *Emmonsia parva*). Synonyms include **haplomycosis** or **adiaspirosis.**

MORPHOLOGY

The fungi, *A. crescens* and *B. parvus*, grow as molds in culture at room temperature and in nature. The hyphae are septate and branched. The small (2- to 4-μm) aleurioconidia are borne on conidiophores that arise at right angles to the vegetative hyphae. On incubation at 40° C in vitro, or when introduced into the lungs, the conidia transform into **adiaconidia**, which then undergo massive enlargement but show no evidence of replication (e.g., budding, endospore formation).

When mature, the adiaconidia are thick-walled spherules measuring 200 to 400 μm or more in diameter (Fig. 66.1; see Table 66.1). The walls of the spherule are refractile, 20 to 70 μm thick, and when stained with hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) stain, comprise two layers: a narrow, outer, eosinophilic layer containing periodic fenestrations and a broad, hyaline, inner layer composed predominantly of chitin (see Fig. 66.1). The conidial walls stain with Gomori methenamine silver (GMS), periodic acid–Schiff (PAS), and the Gridley fungus stains but not with mucicarmine (Table 66.2). In human lung tissue, the adiaconidia are usually empty but may contain small eosinophilic globules along the inner surface of the walls (see Fig. 66.1).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Although human adiaspiromycosis is uncommon, the infection is prevalent in rodents worldwide. Likewise, the fungus may be found in nature, predominantly in temperate zones. Human disease has been reported in France, Czechoslovakia, Russia, Honduras, Guatemala, Venezuela, and Brazil. Rodents may serve as a zoonotic reservoir for the disease. The likely mode of infection is by inhalation of fungal conidia aerosolized by contaminated soil.

TABLE 66.1 Morphologic Features of Fungal and Fungal-Like Infections of Unusual or Uncertain Etiology

Disease	Etiologic Agent(s)	Typical Morphology in Tissue	Usual Host Reaction
Adiaspiromycosis	*Adiaspiromyces* (*Emmonsia*) *crescens* *Blastomyces parvus* (formerly, *Emmonsia parva*)	Large adiaconidia, 200- to 400-μm diameter with thick (20- to 70-μm) walls; see Fig. 66.1	Granulomatous fibrotic and noncaseating
Chlorellosis	*Chlorella* sp. (chlorophyllous green alga)	Unicellular, endosporulating, round organisms, 4- to 15-μm diameter, containing multiple cytoplasmic granules (chloroplasts); lesions are green pigmented; see Fig. 66.2	Pyogranulomatous
Lacaziosis (lobomycosis)	*Lacazia loboi*	Spheric, budding yeasts, 5- to 12-μm diameter, which form chains of cells connected by tubelike structures; secondary budding may be present; see Fig. 66.3	Granulomatous
Protothecosis	*Prototheca wickerhamii, P. zopfii* (achlorophyllous green algae)	Spheric, oval, or polyhedral spherules, 2- to 25-μm diameter, containing 2–20 endospores when mature; see Fig. 66.5	Variable; no reaction to granulomatous
Pythiosis insidiosi Lagenidiosis	*Pythium insidiosum Lagenidium* spp. (not true fungi; belong to the protistal kingdom Stramenopila)	Hyphae and short hyphal fragments that are hyaline, thin-walled, pauciseptate, irregularly branched, 5- to 7-μm (*Pythium*) to 9- to 18-μm (*Lagenidium*) wide with nonparallel contours; angioinvasive; see Fig. 66.6	Granulomatous, necrotizing, suppurative, arteritis
Rhinosporidiosis	*Rhinosporidium seeberi* (aquatic protistan parasite of the Mesomycetozoa clade)	Large sporangia (100- to 350-μm diameter) with thin walls (3–5 μm) that enclose numerous endospores (6- to 8-μm diameter) with a zonal distribution; see Figs. 66.7 and 66.8	Nonspecific chronic inflammatory or granulomatous

Data from Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL; Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases, vol 2. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

As with many fungal infections, most cases of documented adiaspiromycosis have been asymptomatic. Pulmonary nodules may be detected radiographically or incidentally at autopsy or in surgical specimens of lung removed for another reason.

Three forms of human adiaspiromycosis have been recognized: solitary granuloma; localized granulomatous disease; and diffuse, disseminated granulomatous disease. Patients with the disseminated granulomatous form of pulmonary adiaspiromycosis may experience fever, cough, and progressive dyspnea caused by compression and displacement of distal airways and alveolar parenchyma by the expanding granulomas. Fungal replication in the lungs does not occur, and dissemination to extrapulmonary sites has not been reported. The severity of the disease appears to be entirely commensurate with the number of conidia inhaled.

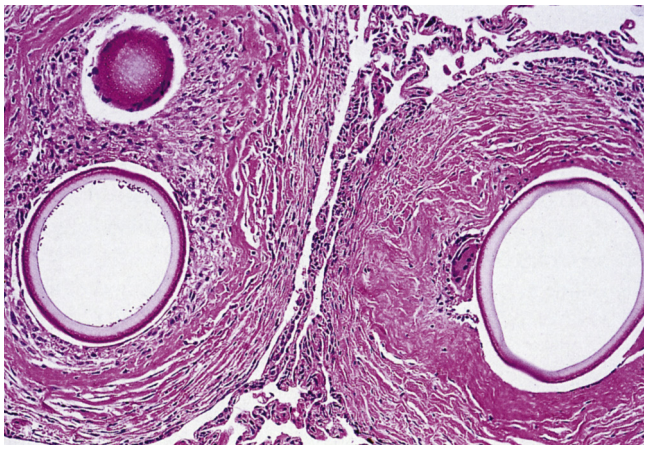


Fig. 66.1 Pulmonary adiaspiromycosis. The hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) stain defines two layers in the wall of the adiaconidium. Each adiaconidium has evoked a fibrogranulomatous response (H&E, ×40). (From Connor D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases, vol 2. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of adiaspiromycosis is established by histopathologic examination of the affected lung and identification of the characteristic adiaconidia. Each adiaconidium is surrounded by an epithelioid and giant-cell granulomatous response, which is further encompassed by a dense capsule of fibrous tissue (see Fig. 66.1). All the granulomas are at a similar stage of development, reflecting a one-time exposure without subsequent replication within the lung.

The spherules represented by the adiaconidia should not be confused with those of *C. immitis* or *R. seeberi*, which are two other organisms that produce large spherules in tissue (see Table 66.2). In contrast to *C. immitis*, the adiaconidia of *A. crescens* and *B. parvus* are much larger, have a thicker wall, and do not contain endospores. The sporangia of *R. seeberi* are distinguished by the zonation of the sporangiospores and the distinctive eosinophilic globules seen within the mature sporangiospores (see Table 66.2). No other fungus of medical importance has walls as thick as those of the adiaconidia of *A. crescens* and *B. parvus*. Culture of infected tissue is not useful because the adiaconidia do not represent a replicative form of the fungus.

TREATMENT

Human pulmonary adiaspiromycosis is a self-limited infection. Specific antifungal therapy is not necessary.

TABLE 66.2 Comparative Morphologic Features of Fungi and Fungal-Like Organisms That Appear as Large Spherules in Tissue

	ORGANISMS		
Feature	***Coccidioides immitis***	***Rhinosporidium seeberi***[a]	***Adiaspiromyces crescens***[b]
External diameter of spherule (μm)	20-200	10-350	200-400
Thickness of spherule wall (μm)	1-2	3-5	20-70
Diameter of endospores (μm)	2-5	6-10[c]	None
Pigmentation	None	None	None
Hyphae or arthroconidia	Rare	None	None
Host reaction	Necrotic granulomas	Mucosal polyps with acute and chronic inflammation	Fibrotic granulomas
Growth in culture	+	–	±[d]
Special stain reactions	—	—	—
Gomori methenamine silver	+	+	+
Periodic acid–Schiff	+	+	+
Mucicarmine	–	+	–

[a]Not a fungus. Newly classified as an aquatic protistan parasite of the Mesomycetozoa clade.
[b]Adiaconidia.
[c]Endospores arranged in characteristic zonal distribution. Mature endospores contain distinctive eosinophilic globules.
[d]Grows as a mold on agar medium. Organism not recoverable from tissue.
Modified from Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.

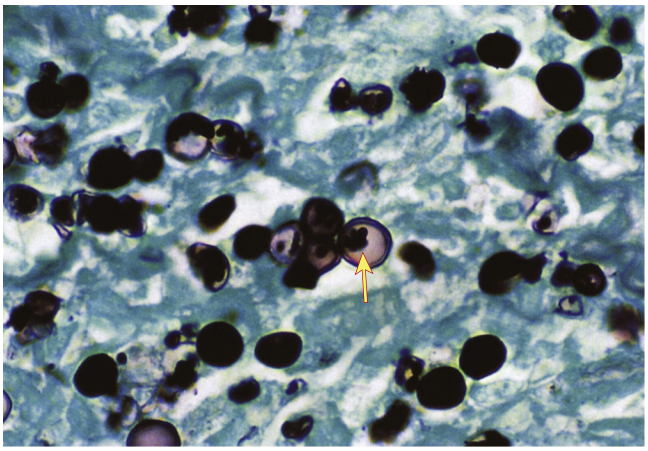


Fig. 66.2 *Chlorella* sp. showing intracellular chloroplasts and doubly contoured cell wall (Gomori methenamine silver, ×400). (From Connor. D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases, vol 2. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

Chlorellosis

Chlorellosis is an infection of humans and animals caused by a unicellular green alga of the genus *Chlorella*. In contrast to *Prototheca*, another alga that causes human infection, *Chlorella* contains chloroplasts, which give the lesions of chlorellosis a distinct green color. Most infections with this organism occur in sheep and cattle. A single human infection has been reported thus far.

MORPHOLOGY

Chlorella spp. are unicellular, ovoid, spheric, or polygonal, and 4 to 5 μm in diameter. They reproduce by endosporulation. The organisms contain numerous green chloroplasts that appear as cytoplasmic granules. The chloroplasts contain starch granules, which stain intensely with GMS, PAS, and Gridley fungal stains. The cell walls may appear doubly contoured (Fig. 66.2; see Table 66.1). *Chlorella* spp. reproduce asexually by internal septation and cytoplasmic cleavage, producing up to 20 daughter cells (sporangiospores) within the sporangium (parent cell). On maturation, the outer wall of the sporangium ruptures, releasing the sporangiospores, each of which goes on to produce sporangiospores of its own.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The single human case took place in Nebraska and resulted from exposure of a surgical wound to river water. Infections in domestic (sheep and cattle) and wild animals (beaver) range from lymph node and deep organ involvement to cutaneous and subcutaneous lesions, presumably related to exposure to water containing the organism.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

As noted previously, the human case of chlorellosis involved a healing surgical wound contaminated with river water. The wound subsequently drained a greenish yellow exudate. The infection was cured by repeated surgical debridement over a 10-month period. In animals, fresh lesions in liver, lymph nodes, and subcutaneous tissue are green on gross examination, and smears reveal organisms that contain green refractile granules (chloroplasts).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Infections caused by *Chlorella* spp. may be diagnosed by culture and by histopathologic examination of infected tissue. The organism grows well on most solid media, producing bright green colonies. Wet mounts of wound exudate or touch preparations of infected tissue reveal ovoid, endosporulating cells with characteristic green cytoplasmic granules representing chloroplasts. In tissue, the cells stain well with GMS and PAS but not H&E stains. They may be distinguished histopathologically from *Prototheca* by the intracellular chloroplasts.

TREATMENT

Treatment in the only human case of chlorellosis consisted of repeated debridement, irrigation with Dakin solution, and gauze packing and removal for drainage and granulation. Alternatively, amphotericin B therapy combined with administration of tetracycline has proven efficacious in the treatment of protothecosis and may be useful for chlorellosis as well.

Lacaziosis (Lobomycosis)

Lacaziosis is a chronic fungal infection of the skin caused by *Lacazia loboi* (formerly *Loboa loboi*). *L. loboi* is currently classified as an ascomycete fungus in the order Onygenales and the family Ajellomycetaceae. The disease is seen primarily in the South and Central American tropics. Natural infection occurs only in humans and dolphins, although it has been reproduced experimentally by injecting infected tissue into hamsters and armadillos. The organism has never been cultured in vitro.

MORPHOLOGY

L. loboi is spheric to oval and yeastlike in appearance. The fungi are 6 to 12 μm in diameter and have a thick, double-refractile cell wall. *L. loboi* reproduces by sequential budding and usually forms chains of cells connected by narrow, tubelike bridges (Fig. 66.3). Some of the cells may have one or two secondary buds and may be mistaken for the "pilot-wheel" form of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*. *L. loboi* is usually intracellular, although extracellular forms may be seen.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

The human disease is endemic in the tropical regions of Central and South America and has been reported in central and western Brazil, Bolivia, Columbia, Costa Rica, Ecuador, Guyana, French Guiana, Mexico, Panama, Peru, Surinam, and Venezuela. Isolated cases have been reported from Holland, and a single case has been reported in the United States in a patient with a history of travel to Venezuela.

L. loboi is believed to be a saprophyte of soil or vegetation, and lacaziosis predominates in tropical regions with thick vegetation, such as the Amazon rain forests. Cutaneous trauma is believed to be the mode of infection. A plant reservoir has not been identified.

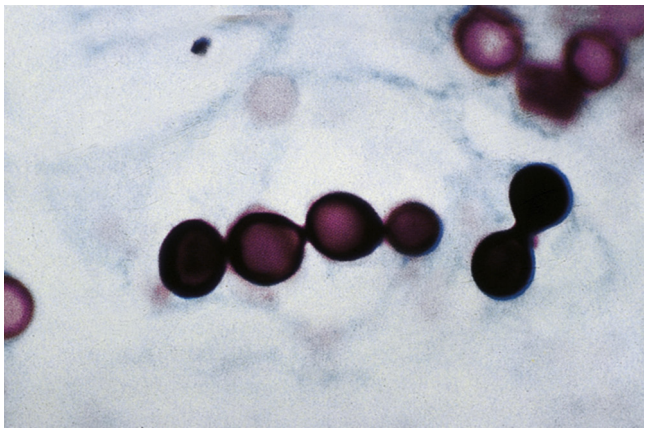


Fig. 66.3 *Lacazia loboi*. The fungi form a single chain with individual cells joined by tubelike bridges (Gridley, ×400). (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

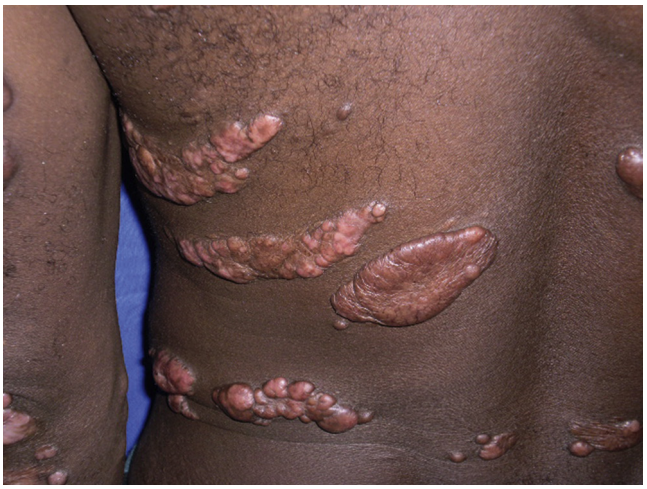


Fig. 66.4 Multiple keloid-like lesions of lacaziosis. (From Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago, IL.)

Given the fact that lacaziosis occurs in marine dolphins and freshwater dolphins, an aquatic habitat is likely as well. Infection among dolphins has been reported for Florida, the Texas coast, the Spanish-French coast, the South Brazilian coast, and the Surinam River estuary. One instance of dolphin-to-human transmission has been reported; however, there is no evidence of human-to-human transmission.

Lacaziosis occurs primarily in men, or in women who are involved in farming and jungle clearing. Farmers, miners, hunters, and rubber plant workers have an increased incidence of disease. There is no racial predilection, and lobomycosis affects all age groups, with the peak age of onset being 20 to 40 years.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Lacaziosis is characterized by slowly developing cutaneous nodules of varying size and shape (Fig. 66.4 and Clinical Case 66.1). The dermal lesions are polymorphic, ranging from macules, papules, keloidal nodules, and plaques to verrucous and ulcerated lesions, all of which may be present in a single patient (see Fig. 66.4). The nodular keloid-like lesion is the most common lesion. The disease is characterized by a long dormancy period of months to years. The increase in the number and size of lesions also is a slow process, progressing over a period of 40 to 50 years. Lesions tend to arise on traumatized areas of skin, such as the face, ears, arms, legs, and feet. The disease does not involve mucous membranes or internal organs. Local cutaneous spread may occur through autoinoculation. Aside from occasional pruritus and hypesthesia or anesthesia of the affected area, patients are asymptomatic. There are no systemic manifestations of the disease.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is based on demonstrating the presence of the characteristic yeast cells in lesion exudate or tissue sections. Biopsy reveals a dispersed granulomatous infiltrate, along with numerous fungal forms in the dermis and subcutaneous tissue. The granuloma consists primarily of giant cells, macrophages, and epithelioid cells. Both the giant cells and macrophages contain fungi that have been phagocytosed.

Clinical Case 66.1 **Lacaziosis**

Elsayed and associates (*Emerg Infect Dis* 10:715–718, 2004) described a case of lacaziosis in a Canadian geologist. The patient presented to her dermatologist with a slowly growing, 1.5-cm diameter, dusky red, nontender, plaque-like lesion surrounded by keloidal scar on the posterior aspect of her right upper arm. It was located at the site of a scar from a previous excision attempt of a similar lesion 2 years earlier. The original lesion was first noticed while the patient was visiting Southeast Asia in 1996, although she did not seek medical attention until returning to Canada 1 year later. At that time, coccidioidomycosis was diagnosed, based on a history of travel to an endemic region and on the presence of oval, yeastlike organisms in histologic sections. However, *Coccidioides immitis* was never cultured from the lesion, and serologic studies for this infection remained negative. She remained well until a new lesion reappeared at the site of the scar and gradually increased in size. The patient had an extensive travel history, including prolonged stays in Mexico, Costa Rica, South America, Indonesia, and the Philippines. During her travels, she generally lived in rural camps and had extensive exposure to freshwater, soil, and underground caves. Her medical history included episodes of amoebic dysentery, dengue fever, and intestinal helminthiasis but was otherwise unremarkable. Biopsied specimens of the new lesion were obtained and submitted for pathologic and microbiologic examination. The hematoxylin and eosin–stained sections showed a diffuse, superficial and deep, granulomatous dermatitis with multinucleated giant cells. Intracellular and extracellular unstained fungal cells with thick refractile walls were seen. The fungal cells stained strongly with periodic acid–Schiff and Gomori methenamine silver stains; cells were spheric or lemon shaped, approximately 10 μm in diameter, and uniform in size. They were arranged as single cells or in short, budding chains joined by narrow, tubelike bridges. The organisms were not cultivatable. Fungal morphology was consistent with *Lacazia loboi*. The lesion was completely excised, with no subsequent recurrence. This disease should be suspected in patients with single or multiple keloidal skin lesions, particularly if they have traveled to remote areas of Latin America.

L. loboi stains intensely with both GMS and PAS stains. H&E stain reveals the thick, doubly contoured, hyaline cell wall and one or more hematoxylinophilic nuclei.

Although the lesions of lacaziosis resemble keloids on a gross level, microscopically, keloids have marked fibrosis, which is not the case with lacaziosis. Similarly, keloids lack granulomas and fungal elements. The morphology and pattern of budding of *L. loboi* are distinctive and should not be confused with that of *P. brasiliensis* (multiple buds, variable size), *B. dermatitidis,* and *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *duboisii* (no chains of cells) or *Sporothrix schenckii* and *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* (both smaller, 2 to 8 μm versus 5 to 12 μm). The latter fungi will also grow in culture, whereas *L. loboi* has never been cultured in vitro.

TREATMENT

Surgical excision of localized lesions is the optimal therapy. More widespread disease usually recurs when treated surgically and does not respond to antifungal therapy. Clofazimine has been used in these situations, but at this time medical treatment of lacaziosis is not satisfactory.

Protothecosis

Protothecosis is an infection of humans and animals caused by achlorophyllous algae of the genus *Prototheca*. These organisms belong to the same family as the green algae of the genus *Chlorella*. Two species, *P. wickerhamii* and *P. zopfii*, are known to cause infection. Three forms of human protothecosis have been described: (1) cutaneous, (2) olecranon bursitis, and (3) disseminated.

MORPHOLOGY

The protothecae are unicellular, oval or spheric organisms that reproduce asexually by internal septation and irregular cleavage within hyaline sporangia. Each sporangium contains between 2 and 20 sporangiospores arranged in a "morula" configuration (Fig. 66.5). The sporangiospores are released after rupture of the sporangium and in turn develop into mature endosporulating forms. The cells measure 3 to 30 μm in diameter and differ from those of *Chlorella* by the lack of chloroplasts. Protothecae differ from fungi by the lack of glucosamine in their cell walls. The two species of *Prototheca* that cause human disease differ from one another in size: *P. wickerhamii* measures 3 to 15 μm in diameter, whereas *P. zopfii* measures 7 to 30 μm in diameter. Both species are readily stained with PAS, GMS, and the Gridley fungus stain (see Fig. 66.5) and are gram-positive organisms.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Prototheca spp. are ubiquitous environmental saprobes that have been isolated from grass, soil, water, and both wild and domestic animals. Human protothecosis has been reported on all continents with the exception of Antarctica.

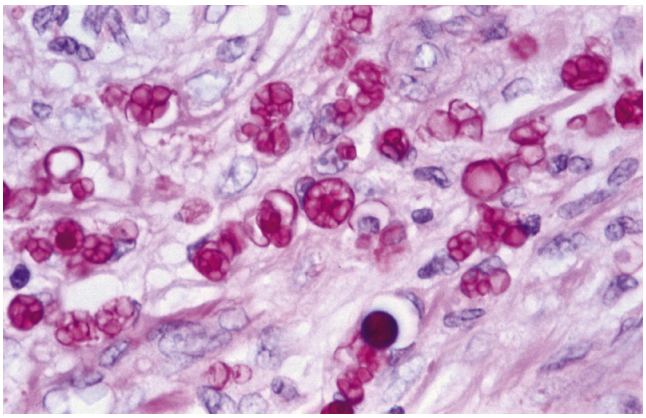


Fig. 66.5 *Prototheca wickerhamii*. Single and endosporulating algal cells that are readily demonstrated with the periodic acid–Schiff stain. A classic "morula" form is present (×1000).

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

At least half of all cases of protothecosis are simple cutaneous infections. For the most part, these infections occur in patients who are immunocompromised because of immunosuppressive therapy, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), malnutrition, renal or hepatic disease, cancer, or autoimmune disorders. Lesions usually arise in areas exposed to traumatic implantation and are present in an indolent fashion, such as nodules and papules, or as an eczematoid eruption.

Those individuals presenting with olecranon bursitis are usually not immunocompromised, but most report some sort of penetrating or nonpenetrating trauma to the affected elbow. Signs and symptoms of olecranon bursitis usually occur several weeks after the trauma and include mild induration of the bursa, tenderness, erythema, and production of a variable amount of serosanguineous fluid.

Disseminated protothecosis is rare but has been reported in individuals with no known immunologic deficiency. One patient with visceral protothecosis presented with abdominal pain and abnormal liver function studies that were initially considered to be the result of cholangitis. The patient had multiple peritoneal nodules that resembled metastatic cancer but were in fact manifestations of protothecosis. Another patient presented with protothecal lesions on the forehead and nose.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Prototheca spp. grow easily on a wide variety of solid media at 30° C to 37° C. Colonies are yeastlike, white, and creamy in appearance and consistency. A wet mount of the culture material may be stained with lactophenol cotton blue to reveal the characteristic sporangia and sporangiospores. The organisms are quite metabolically active and may be identified to species using one of several commercially available yeast identification panels to determine the carbohydrate assimilation profile.

On histopathologic examination of infected tissue, *Prototheca* spp. appear as sporangiospores that are wedge shaped and arranged in a radial or "morula" pattern within the

sporangium (see Fig. 66.5). The organisms are best visualized by stains used to demonstrate fungi in tissue: the GMS, PAS, and Gridley fungus procedures. In addition to the size differences noted previously, the two species of *Prototheca* differ in that *P. wickerhamii* tends to form very symmetric morula forms, whereas these forms are rare with *P. zopfii*, which exhibits more random internal divisions. The inflammatory response in protothecosis is predominantly granulomatous.

TREATMENT

Treatment of olecranon bursitis usually involves bursectomy. Repeated drainage has failed; however, drainage coupled with local instillation of amphotericin B was curative in one patient. Treatment of cutaneous protothecosis with a variety of topical and systemic antibacterial, antifungal, and antiprotozoal agents has been unsuccessful. Local excision coupled with topical amphotericin B, systemic tetracycline, and systemic ketoconazole has proven useful, despite ketoconazole-related hepatotoxicity. Disseminated protothecosis has been treated with systemic antifungal agents; both amphotericin B and ketoconazole have been used.

Pythiosis Insidiosi

Pythiosis insidiosi is a "fungal-like" infection of humans and animals caused by the plant pathogen *Pythium insidiosum*. Although described as an "aquatic fungus," this organism is not a true fungus; rather it is an oomycete that belongs to the protistal kingdom Stramenopila near the green algae and some lower plants in the evolutionary tree. In humans, pythiosis causes keratitis and orbital infections as well as a cutaneous and subcutaneous vascular process marked by rapidly developing granulomatous lesions, leading to progressive arterial insufficiency, tissue infarction, aneurysms, and occasionally death. In animals (cats, dogs, horses, cattle), it is an osseous, subcutaneous, or pulmonary infection. Dogs and horses may also present with intestinal infection.

MORPHOLOGY

P. insidiosum grows as white colonies with submerged vegetative hyphae and short aerial hyphae on solid culture medium. Because this organism is a plant pathogen, it requires water cultures containing the appropriate leaves to produce zoosporangia and zoospores in vitro. In nature, *P. insidiosum* produces biflagellate zoospores that attach and penetrate the leaves of various grasses and water lilies. The zoospores have a strong tropism for skin and hair, as well as water lily and grass leaves. If zoospores contact injured tissue, they encyst, form germ tubes that produce hyphae, and cause invasive disease.

In tissue, *P. insidiosum* exists as hyaline, pauciseptate, thin-walled hyphae or hyphal fragments that branch infrequently. The hyphal elements are 5 to 7 μm wide with nonparallel contours and superficially resemble those of Mucormycota (Fig. 66.6). Like the Mucormycetes, *P. insidiosum* is angioinvasive. In tissue, the hyphal elements of *P. insidiosum* stain with GMS but not with H&E or other fungal stains.

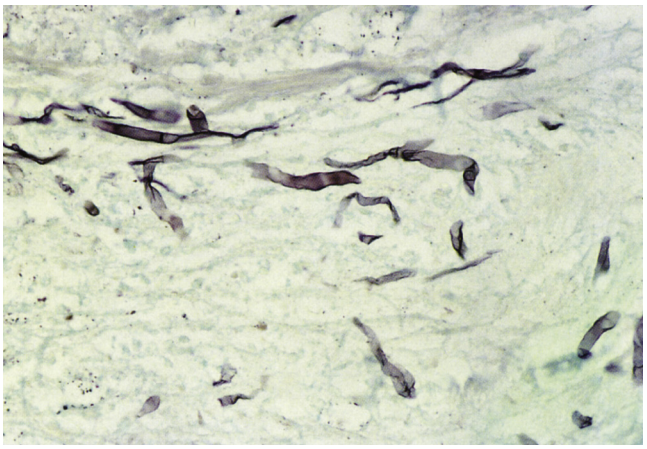


Fig. 66.6 *Pythium insidiosum* invading an arterial wall. Infrequently septate, weakly stained hyphae, and hyphal fragments resemble those of Mucormycetes (Gomori methenamine silver, ×160). (From Connor. D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases, vol 2. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

EPIDEMIOLOGY

P. insidiosum grows in aquatic to wet environments in tropical to subtropical regions. Infections caused by this hydrophilic pathogen have been recorded in tropical, subtropical, and some temperate areas of the world. In the Americas, pythiosis is common in tropical Central, North, and South America, with most cases reported in Brazil, Colombia, Costa Rica, the United States, and Venezuela. In the United States, infections are more prevalent in animals and humans inhabiting southern states, such as Alabama, Georgia, Florida, Louisiana, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Texas. However, cases of the disease have also been reported in northern states, including California, Illinois, Indiana, Kansas, New Jersey, Missouri, Tennessee, Virginia, and as far north as Wisconsin and New York. In Asia, pythiosis has been reported in Japan, India, Indonesia, the Pacific islands, South Korea, and Thailand and in nearby areas such as Australia, New Guinea, and New Zealand.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Human disease caused by *P. insidiosum* has occurred in patients with thalassemia who developed pythiosis insidiosi of the lower limbs (Clinical Case 66.2). The disease process was marked by progressive ischemia of the lower limbs, necrosis, thrombosis of major arteries caused by hyphal invasion, gangrene, aneurism formation, and ultimately fatal hemorrhage. Orbital pythiosis has been misdiagnosed as a mucormycotic fungal infection. Less serious forms of the infection include keratitis and localized cutaneous infections after injury.

In horses, pythiosis presents as localized inflammation and necrotic sores of the legs and lower abdomen with necrotic cores. Septic arthritis, osteitis, and tenosynovitis are also common.

Clinical Case 66.2 **Pythiosis**

Bosco and associates (*Emerg Infect Dis* 11:715–718, 2005) described a case of pythiosis in a 49-year-old Brazilian man. The patient was admitted to the hospital for the treatment of a skin lesion on his leg, initially diagnosed as cutaneous mucormycosis. The patient stated that a small pustule developed on his left leg 3 months earlier, 1 week after he fished in a lake with standing water. The pustule was initially diagnosed as bacterial cellulitis; it was treated with intravenous antibiotics, with no improvement. A biopsy of the lesion showed a suppurative granulomatous inflammation associated with several nonseptate hyphae (shown by Gomori methenamine silver stain), a finding that led to the diagnosis of mucormycosis. The treatment was changed to amphotericin B. After receiving 575 mg (cumulative dosage) of amphotericin B plus two surgical debridements, the patient showed only slight improvement; he was then transferred to another hospital. At admission, the physical examination showed a pretibial ulcer 15 cm in diameter, with an infiltrating and nodular proximal border. Serum chemistries showed azotemia, hypokalemia, and anemia as adverse effects of the amphotericin B treatment. His white blood cell count was 4200/mm^3 with 9% eosinophils. His blood glucose was normal and an human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) serology was negative. Results of a second biopsy again suggested mucormycosis. The patient received itraconazole and potassium iodide with no significant improvement. Attempts to isolate the organism in the laboratory failed. With progression of the disease, an extensive surgical debridement was considered. A course of amphotericin B was begun, and the lesion was debrided down to and including the fascia lata. A skin graft was placed and produced an acceptable recovery. Tissue was submitted for culture and molecular testing, using the generic primers for fungal internal transcribed spacer (ITS) regions of ribosomal DNA. Cultures grew colorless colonies, which on microscopic examination showed broad, branched, and sparsely septate hyphae without fruiting bodies were later identified as *Pythium insidiosum*. Use of the polymerase chain reaction, followed by sequencing of the ITS amplicons, gave results showing 100% identity with *P. insidiosum*. This case illustrates the clinical and diagnostic issues surrounding human pythiosis.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The organism may be isolated from fresh clinical material seeded onto mycologic medium, such as Sabouraud glucose agar. Demonstration of biflagellate zoospores may be accomplished using water cultures with grass or lily bait incubated at 37° C for 1 hour. Serologic assays using either the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) or Western blot technologies have been useful in the early detection of the disease in humans and animals.

Histopathologic examination of infected tissue shows a necrotizing arteritis and thrombosis. Vascular invasion by sparsely septate, irregularly branched hyphae is seen (see Fig. 66.6). The acute perivascular inflammatory reaction is eventually replaced by granulomas that contain sparse hyphae and hyphal fragments. The hyphal elements of *P. insidiosum* may be surrounded by the eosinophilic Splendore-Hoeppli phenomenon. Pythiosis insidiosi in humans must be differentiated from cutaneous and subcutaneous mucormycosis, sporotrichosis, mycetoma, and neoplasms.

TREATMENT

Although potassium iodide has been used to treat cutaneous infections, medical treatment of pythiosis insidiosi is generally not effective. Surgical debridement and excision of infected tissue has been used with some success. There is some evidence that azole antifungal agents, such as fluconazole, ketoconazole, itraconazole, and miconazole, exhibit in vitro activity against this organism. A case of orbital pythiosis responded well to a combination of itraconazole and terbinafine, although this combination has not been useful in other cases of pythiosis. Immunotherapy has been useful in the treatment of equine pythiosis and has a 55% cure rate in human disease.

Lagenidiosis

Like *P. insidiosum, Lagenidium* spp. is an oomycete that causes infections in other mammals but rarely in humans. Members of the genus *Lagenidium* also cause infections in lower animals, including crabs, nematodes, and mosquito larvae, among others. In mammals, the infection presents with involvement of the skin and subsequently disseminates to blood vessels. These organisms are currently classified within the Kingdom Stramenopila, Phylum Heterokonta, Class Oomycota, Order Lagenidiales, and Family Lagenidiaceae. At least three species were recently reported: *L. giganteum,* affecting American dogs; *L. deciduum (L. vilelae),* affecting an American cat; and *L. albertoi,* causing keratitis in a Thai man.

MORPHOLOGY

In contrast to other pathogens covered in this chapter, *Lagenidium* spp. grow readily on routine fungal isolation media. On agar media, these organisms grow readily at 37° C as white to yellow submerged colonies without aerial mycelia. Similar to *P. insidiosum*, *Lagenidium* spp. produce 9- to 18-μm ribbon-like hyphae with spherical structures 20 to 45 μm in diameter. In liquid media, vesicles may be seen at the tips of the undifferentiated hyphae. The presence of sexual structures (oogonia) has not yet been described.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

At the present time, most of the cases of lagenidiosis in mammals have been reported in the United States and in the same areas as *P. insidiosum* infections: the States bordering the Gulf of Mexico as well as Arkansas, Georgia, Illinois, Indiana, Maryland, North and South Carolina, Tennessee, and Virginia, among others. *Lagenidium* completes its life cycle in aquatic environments, possibly using plants or lower animal hosts. In addition to the regions noted previously, a case of human keratitis caused by *Lagenidium* has been reported in Thailand, and lagenidiosis in a dog has been reported in Australia. It is thought that infection is initiated when zoospores present in a contaminated

environment gain entry through open skin injuries. Lagenidiosis does not appear to be transmitted from one infected host to another, and attempts to establish infection in mice have been unsuccessful.

CLINICAL SYNDROME

As with *P. insidiosum*, *Lagenidium* spp. cause infections ranging from superficial cutaneous to subcutaneous and arterial involvement. Systemic infection appears to be rare. In humans and animals, the sites of infection are cornea, gastrointestinal tract, and limbs.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of infection with *Lagenidium* spp. may be made by direct microscopy and culture of material taken from the site of infection. On microscopic examination of cytologic specimens stained with Giemsa, *Lagenidium* spp. appear as broad-branched hyphae. In culture on Sabouraud dextrose agar, white to yellowish, flat, glabrous colonies submerged in the agar may be seen after incubation at 37° C for 24 to 48 hours. Microscopically the hyphae are coenocytic, broad (9 to 18 μm) with large spherical structures connected by short segments of hyphae. Observation of spherical structures connected by small tubules may be used to differentiate *Lagenidium* spp. from *P. insidiosum*; however, molecular studies have often been required to make this distinction. Detection of antibodies using both ELISA and Western Blot assays have been used for both diagnosis and monitoring of response to therapy. A strong cross-reaction with *P. insidiosum* antigens has been observed with ELISA testing.

TREATMENT

In contrast to fungi, the oomycetes lack ergosterol in their cytoplasmic membranes, thus precluding efficacy with antifungal agents directed at this sterol pathway. Despite this feature, several antifungal agents have been used both clinically and in vitro with mixed results. As with pythiosis, early surgical resection is recommended as the treatment of choice.

Rhinosporidiosis

Rhinosporidiosis is a granulomatous disease of humans and animals that is characterized by the development of polyps that primarily affect the nasopharynx and the ocular conjunctiva of infected individuals. The disease is caused by *Rhinosporidium seeberi*, which is an organism with a confusing taxonomic history. This organism has been considered to be a protozoan and a fungus, and most recently it has been placed in a novel clade of aquatic protistan parasites, the Mesomycetozoa. Because *R. seeberi* will not grow in synthetic media, this reclassification was based on sequence analysis of the 18S small-subunit ribosomal deoxyribonucleic acid (rDNA) of this organism. This analysis placed *R. seeberi* among the Mesomycetozoa (formerly DRIP: *Dermocystidium*, Rosette agent, *Ichthyophonus*, and *Psorospermium*), which is a clade of fish parasites that form a branch of the evolutionary tree near the animal-fungal divergence.

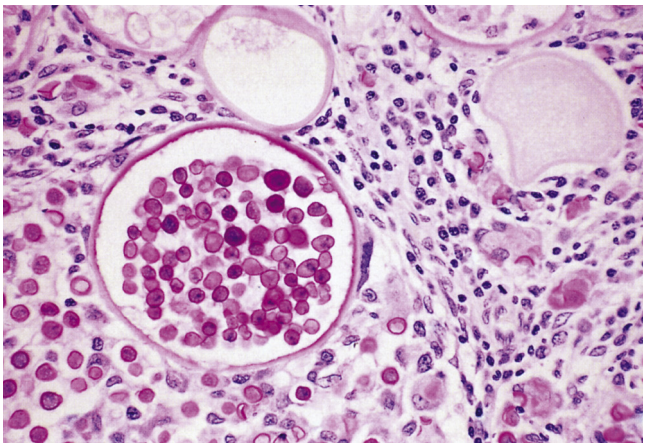


Fig. 66.7 Mature sporangium of *R. seeberi*. The walls of the mature endoconidia are carminophilic (Mayer mucicarmine, ×100). (From Connor. D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases, vol 2. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

MORPHOLOGY

Given that *R. seeberi* will not grow on artificial media, the morphologic descriptions are entirely based on the organism as it appears in infected tissue. Two developmental forms of *R. seeberi* are seen in tissue: the large spheric form, or sporangia, and the smaller trophocyte. The sporangium is considered the mature form of the organism and measures 100 to 350 μm in diameter. The sporangial wall is 3 to 5 μm thick and is composed of an inner hyaline layer and a thin outer eosinophilic layer. The sporangium contains numerous endoconidia arranged in a characteristic zonal formation, in which the small, flattened, uninucleate immature endoconidia (1 to 2 μm) form a crescentic mass at the periphery of one wall of the sporangium, with the larger maturing and mature endoconidia arranged sequentially toward the center. The mature endoconidia range in size from 5 to 20 μm in diameter and contain multiple refractile cytoplasmic globules. This zonal arrangement of immature, maturing, and fully mature endoconidia is diagnostic of this pathogen and distinguishes it from other spheric endosporulating organisms in the tissue (see Table 66.2).

The trophocytes are considered to develop directly from endoconidia that have been released from the sporangium. The trophocytes range in size from 10 to 100 μm in diameter and have refractile eosinophilic walls (2 to 3 μm thick), granular cytoplasm, and a round, pale nucleus with a prominent nucleolus. Ultimately, the trophocytes enlarge and transform into mature sporangia through a process of endosporulation.

The walls of both the sporangia and endoconidia stain with both GMS and PAS fungal stains. In addition, the walls of the endoconidia and the inner wall of the sporangium stain positively with the mucin stain, mucicarmine (Fig. 66.7; see Table 66.2).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Approximately 90% of all known cases of rhinosporidiosis occur in India and Sri Lanka. The disease also occurs in the Americas, Europe, and Africa. The natural habitat and the extent of distribution of *R. seeberi* in nature are unknown. The disease occurs primarily in young men 20 to 40 years

Clinical Case 66.3 **Rhinosporidiosis**

Gaines and Clay (*South Med J* 89:65–67, 1996) described three cases of rhinosporidiosis in young boys who had not traveled outside of the United States. In fact, there was no history of their having traveled outside of the state of Georgia. All of the patients lived in rural areas in the northeast portion of the state. One had a polypoid conjunctival lesion, and the other two had nasal polyps. In each case, the lesions were excised, and histopathologic examination revealed structures morphologically typical of *Rhinosporidium seeberi*. No other treatment was given, and follow-up showed no evidence of recurrence. Despite the very rare nature of these cases, the distinctive appearance of the developmental forms of *R. seeberi* in histopathologic sections is diagnostic.

old and appears to be associated with both rural and aquatic environments. There is no evidence that rhinosporidiosis is contagious.

CLINICAL SYNDROME

Rhinosporidiosis manifests as slow-growing polypoid or tumor-like masses, usually of the nasal mucosa or conjunctiva (Clinical Case 66.3). Lesions may also be seen in the paranasal sinuses, larynx, and external genitalia. Secondary spread to surrounding skin is thought to result from autoinoculation by scratching. In most patients, the disease remains localized, and symptoms are primarily nasal obstruction and bleeding resulting from polyp formation. Limited systemic dissemination has been reported, but it is rare.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of rhinosporidiosis is made by histopathologic examination of the affected tissue. The distinctive appearance of the trophocytes and sporangia in routine H&E-stained sections is diagnostic. Although other organisms that occur in tissue in the form of large spherules may be mistaken for *R. seeberi*, they are usually easily differentiated from this organism by consideration of the tissue involved and the morphologic and staining characteristics of the spherule and the endoconidia (see Table 66.2).

TREATMENT

The only effective form of treatment is surgical excision of the lesions. Recurrences are common, especially in mucosal sites such as the oropharynx and paranasal sinuses, in which complete excision is often difficult to achieve.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Burns, R.A., et al., 2000. Report of the first human case of lobomycosis in the united states. J. Clin. Microbiol. 38, 1283–1285.

Chandler, F.W., Watts, J.C., 1987. Pathologic Diagnosis of Fungal Infections. American Society for Clinical Pathology Press, Chicago.

Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases, vol. 2. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, Conn.

Fredericks, D.N., et al., 2000. *Rhinosporidium seeberi*: a human pathogen from a novel group of aquatic protistan parasites. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 6, 273–282.

Grooters, A.M., 2003. Pythiosis, lagenidiosis, and zygomycosis in small animals. Vet. Clin. Small. Anim. 33, 695–720.

Herr, R.A., et al., 1999. Phylogenetic analysis of *Rhinosporidium seeberi*'s 18S small-subunit ribosomal DNA groups this pathogen among members of the protoctistan mesomycetozoa clade. J. Clin. Microbiol. 37, 2750–2754.

Krajaejun, T., et al., 2006. Clinical and epidemiological analysis of human pythiosis in thailand. Clin. Infect. Dis. 43, 569.

Lass-Florl, C., Mayr, A., 2007. Human protothecosis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 20, 230–242.

Mendoza, L., et al., 2004. Orbital pythiosis: a nonfungal disease mimicking orbital mycotic infections, with a retrospective review of the literature. Mycoses. 47 (14).

Reinprayoon, U., et al., 2013. *Lagenidium* sp. ocular infection mimicking ocular pythiosis. J. Clin. Microbiol. 51, 2778–2780.

Taborda, P.R., et al., 1999. *Lacazia loboi* gen. nov., comb. nov., the etiologic agent of lobomycosis. J. Clin. Microbiol. 37, 2031–2033.

Vilela, R., Mendoza, L., Lacazia, Lagenidium, Pythium, Rhinosporidium, 2015. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Case Study and Questions

A 71-year-old farmer presented with a 1-month history of an erythematous scaling plaque and scattered papules over her left forearm. The patient denied any history of trauma. Pathology of the skin lesion revealed a moderately dense perivascular lymphocytic infiltrate and a few multinucleated giant cells containing endospores arranged in a morula-like pattern. Culture of skin tissue yielded white, pasty, smooth yeastlike colonies on potato dextrose agar.

1. What is the most likely pathogen involved in this infection?
   a. *Lacazia loboi*
   b. *Pythium insidiosum*
   c. *Prototheca wickerhamii*
   d. Chlorella *spp.*

2. How would you identify this organism?

3. How would you treat this infection?

SECTION 7

Parasitology

SECTION OUTLINE

67 Parasitic Classification, Structure, and Replication

This chapter provides an introduction to parasite classification and physiology. This brief review is intended to enhance the reader's comprehension of the interrelationships among parasitic organisms, their epidemiology and transmission of disease, the specific disease processes involved, and the possibilities for prevention and control of maladies. We have deliberately attempted to simplify the taxonomy by using it to address the major divisions involved in medical parasitology: specifically, intestinal and urogenital protozoa, blood and tissue protozoa, nematodes, trematodes, cestodes, and arthropods.

Importance of Parasites

Medical parasitology is the study of invertebrate animals capable of causing disease in humans and other animals. Although parasitic diseases are frequently considered "tropical" and thus of little importance to physicians practicing in the more temperate, developed countries of the world, it is clear that the world has become a very small place and that physicians' knowledge of parasitic diseases is essential. The global effect of parasitic infections and the number of parasite-associated deaths is staggering and must be of concern to all health care workers (Table 67.1). Increasingly tourists, missionaries, Peace Corps volunteers, and others are visiting and working for extended periods of time in exotic, remote parts of the world. Thus they are at risk for parasitic and other infections that are rare in the United States and other more developed countries. Another source of infected patients is the ever-increasing number of refugees from developing countries. Finally, the profound immunosuppression problems that accompany advances in medical therapy (e.g., organ transplantation), as well as those associated with persons infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), place a growing number of individuals at risk for developing infections caused by certain parasites. Given these considerations, clinicians and laboratory workers should be aware of the possibility of parasitic disease and should be trained in ordering, performing, and interpreting the appropriate laboratory tests to aid in the diagnosis and therapy.

Classification and Structure

The eukaryotic parasites of humans are now divided into five monophyletic lineages called supergroups, of which four include human parasites: the SAR, Excavata, Amoebozoa, and Opisthokonta (Table 67.2). Traditionally, parasite classification has taken into account the morphology of intracytoplasmic structures, such as the nucleus, the type of locomotive organelles, and the mode of reproduction (Table 67.3). More recently, the new taxonomic consensus has emerged based mainly on advances in our understanding of the biochemistry and molecular biology of lower organisms (e.g., Protists and Stramenopila). Comparisons of small subunit ribosomal ribonucleic acid (SSU rRNA) and protein sequences have made it possible to arrange organisms within groups based on evolutionary distances. Furthermore, the identification of certain organelles found in eukaryotic cells with their prokaryote origins has made it possible to organize all living organisms within a realistic and evolutionarily sound overall taxonomic scheme. The Protists and Stramenopila are animals whose life functions occur in a single cell. The members of the Animalia clade, also known as metazoans, are multicellular animals in which life functions occur in cellular structures organized as tissue and organ systems.

PROTISTS (PROTOZOA)

Protists, or protozoa, are simple microorganisms that range in size from 2 to 100 μm. Their protoplasm is enclosed by a cell membrane and contains numerous organelles, including a membrane-bound nucleus, an endoplasmic reticulum, food-storage granules, and contractile and digestive vacuoles. The nucleus contains clumped or dispersed chromatin and a central karyosome. Organs of motility vary from simple cytoplasmic extrusions or pseudopods to more complex structures, such as cilia. Reproduction is generally by binary fission, and these organisms are facultative anaerobes.

TABLE 67.1 Estimated Worldwide Disease Burden of Parasitic Infections

Infection	Estimated Number Infected	Deaths (Annual)[a]
Malaria	>500 million	2.5 million
Lymphatic filariasis	44 million	0
Leishmaniasis	4 million	62,500
Hookworm	400 million	—
Schistosomiasis	290 million	5500
Trichuriasis	400 million	0
African trypanosomiasis	20,000	6900
Ascariasis	800 million	4500
Onchocerciasis	17.7 million (270,000 blind)	0
Chagas disease	9.4 million	10,600

[a]Mortality data included where available.

Modified from Herricks, J.R., et al., 2017. The global burden of disease study 2013: what does it mean for the NTDs? PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases 11, e0005424.

TABLE 67.2 Medically Important Parasites

Supergroup	Clade	Organisms
Excavata	Metamonada: Fornicata	*Giardia, Chilomastix*
	Metamonada: Parabasala	*Dientamoeba, Trichomonas*
	Discicristata: Heterolobosea	*Naegleria*
	Discicristata: Euglenozoa	*Leishmania, Trypanosoma*
Amoebozoa	Centramoebida	*Acanthamoeba, Balamuthia*
	Entamoebida	*Entamoeba*
SAR	Apicomplexa (sporozoans)	*Cryptosporidium, Cyclospora, Toxoplasma, Babesia, Plasmodium*
	Ciliophora	*Neobalantidium coli*
	Stramenopila	*Blastocystis* spp.
Opisthokonta	Animalia: Nematoda (roundworms)	*Trichinella, Trichuris, Ancylostoma, Necator, Ascaris, Dracunculus, Enterobius, Strongyloides*
	Animalia: Platyhelminthes	Trematodes, Cestodes
	Animalia: Arthropoda	Crustaceans, spiders, insects, true bugs

The Protists encompasses five supergroups, four of which contain parasites of human hosts: the Opisthokonta, the Amoebozoa, the Excavata, the Archaeplastida, and the SAR supergroups. The **Opisthokonta** include the fungi, the animals, and several protist clades that are key to understanding the origin of animal and fungal metabolism, and of the origin of multicellularity in animals. The **Amoebozoa** include primarily genera with amoeboid locomotion but some include ciliated stages in their life cycle. Important examples in this supergroup are the *Entamoeba, Endolimax, Iodamoeba, Acanthamoeba, Balamuthia,* and *Sappinia* genera. The **Excavata** include many parasitic lineages. Many are well known to clinical microbiologists such as *Giardia*, *Trichomonas*, trypanosomes, and *Leishmania*. The **Archaeplastida** include the green algae and the red algae and do not contain any human parasites; they will not be discussed further here. Finally, the **SAR** supergroup includes three very diverse monophyletic clades, the Stramenopiles, the Alveolata, and the Rhizaria. The Stramenopiles include *Blastocystis,* along with the brown algae and a variety of plant parasites. The Alveolata include the Ciliophora (e.g., *Balantidium*), the Dinoflagellata, and the Apicomplexa (parasitic genera historically called the Sporozoa). Important apicomplexan parasites include *Cryptosporidium, Toxoplasma, Cyclospora, Sarcocystis, Babesia,* and *Plasmodium.* The last lineage in the SAR supergroup are the Rhizaria, and it does not include any human parasites.

Metamonada: *Giardia, Enteromonas, Chilomastix, Retortamonas, Dientamoeba, Trichomonas, Pentatrichomonas*

These genera belong to the supergroup Excavata and are placed in the Metamonada clade. They are anaerobic or microaerophilic. Previously described by the obsolete term "flagellates," these organisms contain reduced mitochondria, feed by pinocytosis, and are responsible for intestinal infections, except *Trichomonas vaginalis* (a genitourinary tract parasite) and *T. tenax* (an oral parasite). *Dientamoeba* and *Trichomonas* spp. do not form cysts and *Dientamoeba* is without cilia: all other members of this group possess cilia for motility and form cysts as a means of surviving adverse environmental conditions and to aid in transmission. The number and position of the cilia vary a great deal in different species. In addition, specialized structures associated with the cilia may produce a characteristic morphologic appearance that may be useful in species identification.

Discicristata: *Naegleria, Leishmania, Trypanosoma*

These genera belong to the supergroup Excavata and are placed in the Discicristata clade. In addition to many shared traits in the arrangement of the cytoskeleton, they have mitochondria with flat or disc-shaped cristae.

Naegleria is a free-living bacteria-feeding amoeba typically found in soil or encysted in fresh water sediments and disturbed resuspended sediment. Some strains of *N. fowleri* are opportunistic parasites that cause primary amoebic meningoencephalitis.

Leishmania and *Trypanosoma* infect vertebrate hosts and are transmitted by sanguivorous (hematophagous) insect vector species (with very few exceptions). There are about 53 species of *Leishmania* with about 20 infective to humans. The promastigote infective form has a cilium and occurs in the intestinal tract of the sandfly. The amastigote form (without cilia) is found as an intracellular parasite of blood mononuclear phagocytes and in the circulatory system.

In humans, *T. brucei* species complex are responsible for "sleeping sickness" and are transmitted by the tsetse fly (*Glossina* spp.) through the salivary glands. The causative agents are *T. brucei rhodesiense* (Tbr) and *T. b. gambiense* (Tbg). *T. cruzi* causes Chagas disease and is transmitted by insects from the subfamily Triatominae (kissing bugs); the insect feces on the host skin contain infective cells that can penetrate host tissues.

Amoebozoa: *Acanthamoeba, Balamuthia, Entamoeba, Endolimax, Iodamoeba*

These genera of amoeboid protists belong to the Amoebozoa supergroup. Locomotion of amebae is accomplished by the extrusion of pseudopodia ("false feet"). Amebae are phagocytic and contain mitochondria with tubular cristae.

Acanthamoeba and *Balamuthia* amebae belong to the Centramoebida clade and are flat and elongated, with pseudopodia and characteristic subpseudopodia. They feed on bacteria by phagocytosis in the soil, forming resistant cysts for quiescence and dispersal. Both genera have species that can be opportunistic parasites in humans causing granulomatous amoebic encephalitis.

The *Entamoeba* genus contains the major human parasite *Entamoeba histolytica* and belongs to the Entamoebida clade. These species feed on gut bacteria by phagocytosis. Dispersal is by cysts that form in stools.

Endolimax and *Iodamoeba* are related to the Entamoebidae and similarly have reduced nonaerobic mitochondria, with cyst dispersal. The genus *Endolimax* is known from intestinal samples of various animals in which it feeds on bacteria

TABLE 67.3 Biologic, Morphologic, and Physiologic Characteristics of Pathogenic Parasites

Organism Class	Morphology	Reproduction	Organelles of Locomotion	Respiration	Nutrition
PROTOZOA					
Amoeba	Unicellular; cyst and trophocyte forms	Binary fission	Pseudopods	Facultative anaerobe	Assimilation by pinocytosis or phagocytosis
Ciliates	Unicellular; cyst and trophozoite forms; possibly intracellular	Binary fission or conjugation	Cilia	Facultative anaerobe	Simple diffusion or ingestion via cytostome, pinocytosis, or phagocytosis Food vacuole
Sporozoa	Unicellular, frequently intracellular; multiple forms, including trophozoites, sporozoites, cysts (oocysts), gametes	Schizogony and sporogony	None	Facultative anaerobe	Simple diffusion
HELMINTHS					
Nematodes	Multicellular; round, smooth, spindle-shaped, tubular alimentary tract; possibility of teeth or plates for attachment	Separate sexes	No single organelle; active muscular motility	Adults: usually anaerobic Larvae: possibly aerobic	Ingestion or absorption of body fluids, tissue, or digestive contents
Trematodes	Multicellular; leaf shaped with oral and ventral suckers, blind alimentary tract	Hermaphroditic (*Schistosoma* group has separate sexes)	No single organelle; muscle-directed motility	Adults: usually anaerobic	Ingestion or absorption of body fluids, tissue, or digestive contents
Cestodes	Multicellular; head with segmented body (proglottids); lack of alimentary tract; head equipped with hooks and/or suckers for attachment	Hermaphroditic	No single organelle; usually attachment to mucosa; possible muscular motility (proglottids)	Adults: usually anaerobic	Absorption of nutrients from intestine
ARTHROPODS					
Myriapoda	Elongated; many legs; distinctive head and trunk; poison claws on first segment	Separate sexes	Legs	Aerobic	Carnivore
Crustacea: Pentastomida	Wormlike; cylindric or flattened; two distinct body regions; digestive and reproductive organs; lack of circulatory and respiratory systems	Separate sexes	Muscle-directed motility	Aerobic	Ingestion of body fluids and tissue
Crustacea: Copepoda (copepods) and Decapoda (crabs and crayfish)	Hard external carapace; one pair of maxillae; five pairs of biramous legs	Separate sexes	Legs	Aerobic	Ingestion of body fluids and tissue, carnivorous
Chelicerata: Arachnida	Body divided into cephalothorax and abdomen; eight legs and venomous fangs	Separate sexes	Legs	Aerobic	Carnivore
Hexapoda: Insecta	Body: head, thorax, and abdomen; one pair of antennae; three pairs of appendages, up to two pairs of wings	Separate sexes	Legs, wings	Aerobic	Ingestion of fluids and tissues

by phagocytosis, with one species, *E. nana*, found in human samples. *Iodamoeba buetschlii* occurs in human intestines and feeds by phagocytosis on bacteria and yeasts.

Apicomplexa: *Babesia, Plasmodium, Cryptosporidium, Cyclospora, Cystoisospora, Sarcocystis, Toxoplasma*

These genera belong to the Apicomplexa clade in the SAR supergroup. Apicomplexa organisms are often referred to as **Sporozoa** or Coccidia. The Apicomplexa are a lineage of genera that are parasites of vertebrate and invertebrate animals. Key characteristics are flattened vesicles against the cell membrane at least in one life cycle stage, and an apical complex for host cell penetration. Locomotion is typically by gliding and body flexion. Nutrition is by pinocytosis.

Ciliophora: *Neobalantidium* (Formerly *Balantidium*) *coli*

Neobalantidium, previously known as *Balantidium*, belongs to the Ciliophora clade in the SAR supergroup. *Neobalantidium* occurs in several mammals in which it is an intestinal endosymbiont that is often nonpathogenic and asymptomatic. *N. coli* is the only ciliate (i.e., Ciliophora) known to be a human parasite. It forms cysts in excreted feces, and it is normally transmitted through the oral-fecal route. Excystment occurs in the intestines in which the trophozoite ingests bacteria by phagocytosis. *N. coli* contains two nuclei: a large macronucleus and a small micronucleus. Ciliate locomotion involves the coordinated movement of rows of hairlike structures, or cilia.

Stramenopila (Formerly *Chromista*): *Blastocystis*

Blastocystis belongs to the Stramenopiles in the SAR supergroup. *Blastocystis* stands alone without further classification in the Stramenopiles as a genus of anaerobic commensals or parasites of the intestinal tract of many vertebrates and some invertebrates. Cells lack morphology and appear yeastlike, although slightly amoeboid forms have been observed. The remnant of the mitochondrion retains a small number of genes, and its metabolism has received considerable attention. Trophozoites feed on intestinal fluids and a cyst form also exists. The Stramenopila was created to accommodate a number of plantlike organisms, mainly algae, that were originally chimeras between eukaryotic biflagellate hosts and symbiotic red algae that had lost their chloroplasts over evolutionary time yet still retain elements of their red algae ancestry. Although previously shuffled between the Fungi and Protozoa, *Blastocystis* spp. is now placed within the Stramenopila based on analysis of 18S rRNA and other molecular evidence.

ANIMALIA (METAZOA)

Within the supergroup Opisthokonta, the parasites of human interest fall under the Metazoa in the Animalia clade. The Animalia clade includes all eukaryotic organisms that are not Protozoa, Stramenopila, or Fungi. This chapter discusses two broad groups of organisms of major importance: the helminths ("worms") and the arthropods (crabs, insects, ticks, and others).

Helminths

The helminths are complex multicellular organisms that are elongated and bilaterally symmetric. They are considerably larger than the protozoan parasites and generally are macroscopic, ranging in size from less than 1 mm to 1 m or larger. The external surface of some worms is covered with a protective cuticle, which is acellular and may be smooth or possess ridges, spines, or tubercles. The protective covering of flatworms is known as a **tegument.** Often helminths possess elaborate attachment structures, such as hooks, suckers, teeth, or plates. These structures are usually located anteriorly and may be useful in classifying and identifying the organisms (see Table 67.3). Helminths typically have primitive nervous and excretory systems. Some have alimentary tracts; however, none have a circulatory system. The helminths of human interest are separated into two groups of parasites, the Nematoda and the Platyhelminthes.

Nematoda. The Nematoda clade consists of the roundworms, which have cylindric bodies. The sexes of roundworms are separate, and these organisms have a complete digestive system. The Nematoda may be intestinal parasites or may infect the blood and tissue.

Platyhelminthes. The Platyhelminthes clade consists of the flatworms, which have flattened bodies that are leaflike or resemble ribbon segments. Platyhelminthes can be further divided into trematodes and cestodes.

Trematodes, or flukes, have leaf-shaped bodies. Most are hermaphroditic, with male and female sex organs in a single body. Their digestive systems are incomplete and only have saclike tubes. Their life cycle is complex; snails serve as first intermediate hosts, and other aquatic animals or plants serve as second intermediate hosts.

Cestodes, or tapeworms, have bodies composed of ribbons of proglottids, or segments. All are hermaphroditic, and all lack digestive systems, with nutrition absorbed through the body walls. The life cycles of some cestodes are simple and direct, whereas those of others are complex and require one or more intermediate hosts.

Arthropoda

The Arthropoda is the largest group of animals in the Animalia clade. Arthropods are complex multicellular organisms that may be involved directly in causing invasive or superficial (infestation) disease processes or indirectly as intermediate hosts and vectors of many infectious agents, including protozoan and helminthic parasites (Table 67.4). In addition, envenomization by biting and stinging arthropods can result in adverse reactions in humans that range from local allergic and hypersensitivity reactions to severe anaphylactic shock and death. There are four major categories of arthropods of interest in human medicine.

Myriapoda. The Myriapoda consist of two classes of medical importance: Chilopoda (centipedes) and Diplopoda (millipedes). Some centipedes can have venomous bites. Millipedes produce toxic defensive secretions.

TABLE 67.4 Transmission and Distribution of Pathogenic Parasites

Organism	Infective Form	Mechanism of Spread	Distribution
INTESTINAL PROTOZOA			
Entamoeba histolytica	Cyst/trophozoite	Indirect (fecal-oral) Direct (venereal)	Worldwide
Giardia duodenalis/intestinalis	Cyst	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
Dientamoeba fragilis	Trophozoite ? Cyst	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
Neobalantidium coli	Cyst	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
Cystoisospora belli	Oocyst	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
Cryptosporidium spp.	Oocyst	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
Cyclospora spp.	Oocyst	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
UROGENITAL PROTOZOA			
Trichomonas vaginalis	Trophozoite	Direct (venereal) route	Worldwide
BLOOD AND TISSUE PROTOZOA			
Naegleria and Acanthamoeba spp.	Cyst/trophozoite	Direct inoculation, inhalation	Worldwide
Plasmodium spp.	Sporozoite	*Anopheles* mosquito	Tropical and subtropical areas
Babesia spp.	Pyriform body	*Ixodes* tick	North America, Europe
Toxoplasma gondii	Oocysts and tissue cysts	Fecal-oral route, carnivorism	Worldwide
Leishmania spp.	Promastigote	*Phlebotomus* sandfly	Tropical and subtropical areas
Trypanosoma cruzi	Trypomastigote	Reduviid bug	North, Central, and South America
T. brucei	Trypomastigote	Tsetse fly	Africa
NEMATODES			
Enterobius vermicularis	Egg	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
Ascaris lumbricoides	Egg	Fecal-oral route	Areas of poor sanitation
Toxocara spp.	Egg	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
Trichuris trichiura	Egg	Fecal-oral route	Worldwide
Ancylostoma duodenale	Filariform larva	Direct skin penetration from contaminated soil	Tropical and subtropical areas
Necator americanus	Filariform larva	Direct skin penetration, autoinfection	Tropical and subtropical areas
Strongyloides stercoralis	Filariform larva	Direct skin penetration, autoinfection	Tropical and subtropical areas
Trichinella spiralis	Encysted larva in tissue	Carnivorism	Worldwide
Wuchereria bancrofti	Third-stage larva	Mosquito	Tropical and subtropical areas
Brugia malayi	Third-stage larva	Mosquito	Tropical and subtropical areas
Loa loa	Filariform larva	*Chrysops* fly	Africa
Mansonella spp.	Third-stage larva	Biting midges or blackflies	Africa, Central and South America
Onchocerca volvulus	Third-stage larva	*Simulium* blackfly	Africa, Central and South America
Dracunculus medinensis	Third-stage larva	Ingestion of infected *Cyclops*	Africa, Asia
Dirofilaria immitis	Third-stage larva	Mosquito	Japan, Australia, United States
TREMATODES			
Fasciolopsis buski	Metacercaria	Ingestion of metacercaria encysted on aquatic plants	China, Southeast Asia, India
Fasciola hepatica	Metacercaria	Metacercaria on water plants	Worldwide
Opisthorchis (Clonorchis) sinensis	Metacercaria	Metacercaria encysted in freshwater fish	China, Japan, Korea, Vietnam
Paragonimus westermani	Metacercaria	Metacercaria encysted in freshwater crustaceans	Asia, Africa, India, Latin America
Schistosoma spp.	Cercaria	Direct penetration of skin by free-swimming cercaria	Africa, Asia, India, Latin America

TABLE 67.4 Transmission and Distribution of Pathogenic Parasites—cont'd

Organism	Infective Form	Mechanism of Spread	Distribution
CESTODES			
Taenia solium	Cysticercus, embryonated egg or proglottid	Ingestion of infected pork; ingestion of egg (cysticercosis)	Pork-eating countries: Africa, Southeast Asia, China, Latin America
T. saginata	Cysticercus	Ingestion of cysticercus in meat	Worldwide
Diphyllobothrium latum	Sparganum	Ingestion of sparganum in fish	Worldwide
Echinococcus granulosus	Embryonated egg	Ingestion of eggs from infected canines	Sheep-raising countries: Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia, United States
E. multilocularis	Embryonated egg	Ingestion of eggs from infected animals, fecal-oral route	Canada, Northern United States, Central Europe
Hymenolepis nana	Embryonated egg	Ingestion of eggs, fecal-oral route	Worldwide
H. diminuta	Cysticercus	Ingestion of infected beetle larvae in contaminated grain products	Worldwide
Dipylidium caninum	Cysticercoid	Ingestion of infected fleas	Worldwide

Crustacea. The crustaceans include familiar aquatic forms, such as crabs, crayfish, shrimp, copepods, and pentastomids. Several are involved as intermediate hosts in life cycles of various intestinal or blood and tissue helminths. The pentastomids, or tongue worms, are bloodsucking endoparasites of reptiles, birds, and mammals. Adult pentastomids are white and cylindric or flattened parasites that possess two distinct body regions: an anterior cephalothorax and an abdomen. Humans may serve as intermediate hosts for these parasites.

Chelicerata. Within the Chelicerata only the class Arachnida contains medically important species, such as mites, ticks, spiders, and scorpions. Unlike insects, these animals have no wings or antennae, and adults have four pairs of legs, as opposed to three pairs for insects. Of medical importance are those serving as vectors for microbial diseases (mites and ticks) or as venomous animals that bite (spiders) or sting (scorpions).

Hexapoda. The Hexapoda of medical importance are contained in the class Insecta and consist of familiar aquatic and terrestrial forms, such as mosquitoes, flies, midges, fleas, lice, bugs, wasps, and ants. Wings and antennae are present, and adult forms have three pairs of legs. Of medical importance are the many insects that serve as vectors for microbial diseases (mosquitoes, fleas, lice, and bugs) or as venomous animals that sting (bees, wasps, and ants).

Physiology and Replication

PROTOZOA

The nutritional requirements of the parasitic protozoa are generally simple and require the assimilation of organic nutrients. The amebae and certain other protozoa accomplish this assimilation by the rather primitive process of pinocytosis or phagocytosis of soluble or particulate matter (see Table 67.3). The engulfed material is enclosed in digestive vacuoles. The Metamonada and ciliates generally ingest food at a definitive site or structure, the peristome or cytostome. Other unicellular parasites assimilate nutrients by simple diffusion. The ingested food material may be retained in intracytoplasmic granules or in vacuoles. The undigested particles and waste may be eliminated from the cell by extrusion of the material at the cell surface. Respiration in most parasitic protozoa is accomplished by facultatively anaerobic processes.

To ensure survival under harsh or unfavorable environmental conditions, many parasitic protozoa develop into a cyst form that is less metabolically active. This cyst is surrounded by a thick external cell wall capable of protecting the organism from otherwise lethal physical and chemical insults. The cyst form is an integral part of the life cycle of many protozoan parasites and facilitates the transmission of the organism from host to host in the external environment (see Table 67.4). Parasites that cannot form cysts must rely on direct transmission from host to host or require an arthropod vector to complete their life cycles (see Table 67.4).

In addition to cyst formation, many protozoan parasites have developed elaborate immunoevasive mechanisms that allow them to respond to attack by the host immune system by continuously changing their surface antigens, ensuring continued survival within the host. Reproduction among the protozoa is generally by simple binary fission (merogony), although the life cycle of some protozoa, such as the sporozoans, includes cycles of multiple fission (schizogony) alternating with a period of sexual reproduction (sporogony or gametogony).

ANIMALIA (METAZOA)

Helminths

The nutritional requirements of helminthic parasites are met by active ingestion of host tissue, fluids, or both, with resultant tissue destruction, or by more passive absorption

of nutrients from the surrounding fluids and intestinal contents (see Table 67.3). The muscular motility of many helminths expends considerable energy, and the worms rapidly metabolize carbohydrates. Nutrients are stored in the form of glycogen, the content of which is high in most helminths. Similar to respiration in protozoa, respiration in helminths is primarily anaerobic, although the larval forms may require oxygen.

A significant proportion of the energy requirement of helminths is dedicated to supporting the reproductive process. Many worms are quite prolific, producing as many as 200,000 offspring each day. In general, helminthic parasites lay eggs (oviparous), although a few species may bear live young (viviparous). The resulting larvae are always morphologically distinct from the adult parasites and must undergo several developmental stages or molts before attaining adulthood.

The major protective barrier for most helminths is the tough external layer (cuticle or tegument). Worms may also secrete enzymes that destroy host cells and neutralize immunologic and cellular defense mechanisms. Similar to protozoan parasites, some helminths possess the ability to alter the antigenic properties of their external surfaces and thus evade the host immune response. This is accomplished in part by incorporating host antigens into their external cuticular layer. In this way the worm avoids immunologic recognition, and in some diseases (e.g., schistosomiasis), it allows the parasite to survive within the host for decades.

Arthropods

Arthropods have segmented bodies, paired jointed appendages, and well-developed digestive and nervous systems. Sexes are separate. Respiration by aquatic forms is via gills and by terrestrial forms is via tubular body structures. All have a hard chitin covering as an exoskeleton.

Summary

Physician awareness of parasitic diseases is undoubtedly more critical now than at any time in the history of medical practice. Physicians today must be prepared to answer questions from patients about protection from malaria and the risks of drinking water and eating fresh fruits and vegetables in remote areas where they may be traveling. With this knowledge of parasitic diseases, the physician also can evaluate signs, symptoms, and incubation periods in returning travelers, make a diagnosis, and begin treatment for a patient with a possible parasitic disease. The risks of parasitic diseases in immunosuppressed individuals and those with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) must also be understood and taken into account.

Proper education regarding parasitic diseases in medical curricula cannot be overemphasized as a requirement for physicians whose practice includes travelers to foreign countries and refugee populations. Many of the important parasites responsible for human diseases are transmitted by arthropod vectors or are acquired by the consumption of contaminated food or water. The various modes of transmission and distribution of parasitic diseases are presented in appropriate detail in the following chapters; however, the data in Table 67.4 are provided as an outline.

For questions see StudentConsult.com

Bibliography

Adl, M.S., et al., 2012. The revised classification of eukaryotes. J. Eukaryotic. Microbiol. 59 (5), 429–493.

Cox, F.E.G., 2002. History of human parasitology. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 15, 595–612.

Cox, F.E.G., 2015. Taxonomy and classification of human parasitic protozoa and helminths. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Garcia, L.S., 2016. Diagnostic Medical Parasitology, sixth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Herricks, J.R., et al., 2017. The global burden of disease study 2013: what does it mean for the NTDs? PLoS. Negl. Trop. Dis. 11, e0005424.

Hoetz, P.J., Molyneux, D.H., Fenwick, A., et al., 2007. Control of neglected tropical diseases. N. Engl. J. Med. 357, 1018–1027.

Hollingsworth, T.D., 2018. Counting down the 2020 goals for 9 neglected tropical diseases: what have we learned from quantitative analysis and transmission modeling? Clin. Infect. Dis. 66 (Suppl. 4), S237–S244.

John, D.T., Petri Jr., W.A., 2006. Markell and Voge's Medical Parasitology, ninth ed. Saunders, St Louis.

Jorgensen, J.H., et al., 2015. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Questions

1. How do protozoa adapt to harsh environmental conditions?
2. Which morphologic form is important in the transmission of protozoa from host to host?
3. How do helminths, such as schistosomes, avoid the host immune response?
4. How do arthropods cause human disease?

68 Pathogenesis of Parasitic Diseases

Given the wide diversity that exists among human parasites, it is not surprising that the pathogenesis of protozoan and helminthic disease is highly variable. Although the various human parasites exhibit a wide range of direct pathogenic mechanisms, in most instances, the organisms themselves are not highly virulent, are unable to replicate within the host, or have both characteristics. Thus the severity of illness caused by many parasites is related to the infecting dose and the number of organisms acquired over time. Unlike many bacterial and viral infections, parasitic infections are often chronic, lasting months to years. Repeated exposures result in an ever-increasing parasite burden. When infection with a particular organism is associated with a strong immune response, there is undoubtedly a considerable immunopathologic contribution to the disease manifestations attributed to the infection.

Important factors to consider when discussing parasite pathogenicity are listed in Box 68.1. Parasites are almost always exogenous to the human host and thus must enter the body through ingestion or direct penetration of anatomic barriers. Inoculum size and duration of exposure greatly influence the disease-causing potential of an organism; likewise, the route of exposure is critical for most organisms. For example, pathogenic strains of *Entamoeba histolytica* are unlikely to cause disease on exposure to intact skin but may cause severe dysentery after oral ingestion. Many parasites have active, self-directed means of invading the human host. Once they have invaded, parasites attach to specific host cells or organs, avoid immunodetection, replicate (most protozoa and some helminths), produce toxic substances that destroy tissue, and cause disease secondary to the host's own immunologic response (see Box 68.1). In addition, some parasites physically obstruct and damage organs and tissues because of their size alone. This chapter discusses factors that are important for parasite pathogenicity and provides examples of organisms and disease processes related to each factor.

Exposure and Entry

Although many infectious diseases are caused by **endogenous** organisms that are part of the normal flora of the human host, this is not the case with most diseases caused by protozoan and helminthic parasites. These organisms are virtually always acquired from an **exogenous** source and as such have evolved numerous ways to enter the body of the human host. The most common modes of entry are oral ingestion or direct penetration through the skin or other surfaces (Table 68.1). Transmission of parasitic diseases is frequently facilitated by environmental contamination with human and animal wastes. This is most applicable to diseases transmitted by the fecal-oral route but also applies to helminthic infections, such as hookworm disease and strongyloidiasis, which rely on larval penetration of the skin.

Many parasitic diseases are acquired via the bites of **arthropod** vectors. Transmission of disease in this manner is extraordinarily effective, as evidenced by the widespread distribution of diseases such as malaria, trypanosomiasis, and filariasis. Examples of parasites and their ports of entry are listed in Table 68.1. This compilation should not be considered exhaustive; rather, the list provides examples of some of the more common parasites and the means by which they enter the human body.

Additional factors that determine the outcome of the interaction between parasite and host are route of **exposure** and **inoculum** size. Most human parasites have a limited range of organs or tissues in which they can replicate or survive. For example, simple skin contact with most intestinal protozoa does not result in disease; rather, the organisms must be ingested for the disease process to be initiated. Also, a minimum number of organisms is required to establish infection. Although some parasitic diseases may be acquired by the ingestion or inoculation of only a few organisms, a sizable inoculum is usually required. Whereas an individual may acquire malaria by a single bite of an infected female mosquito, large inocula are usually necessary to produce diseases such as amebiasis in humans.

BOX 68.1 Factors Associated with Parasite Pathogenicity

Infective dose and exposure
Penetration of anatomic barriers
Attachment
Replication
Cell and tissue damage
Disruption, evasion, and inactivation of host defenses

TABLE 68.1 Parasite Ports of Entry

Route	Examples
Ingestion	*Giardia* spp., *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Cryptosporidium* spp., cestodes, nematodes
Direct penetration	
Arthropod bite	Malaria, *Babesia* spp., filaria, *Leishmania* spp., trypanosomes
Transplacental penetration	*Toxoplasma gondii*
Organism-directed penetration	Hookworm, *Strongyloides* spp., schistosomes

TABLE 68.2 Examples of Parasitic Adherence Mechanisms

Organism	Disease	Target	Mechanism of Attachment and Receptor
Plasmodium vivax	Malaria	Red blood cell	Merozoite (non–complement-mediated attachment), Duffy antigen
P. falciparum	Malaria	Red blood cell	Merozoite and glycophorin A and B
Babesia spp.	Babesiosis	Red blood cell	Complement-mediated C3b receptor
Giardia duodenalis	Diarrhea	Duodenal and jejunal epithelium	Mechanical suction; microtubules and lectin-mediated attachment
Entamoeba histolytica	Dysentery	Colonic epithelium	Lectin and *N*-acetylglucosamine conjugates
Trypanosoma cruzi	Chagas disease	Fibroblast	Penetrin, fibronectin, and fibronectin receptor
Leishmania major	Leishmaniasis	Macrophage	Adsorbed C3bi and CR3
L. mexicana	Leishmaniasis	Macrophage	Surface glycoprotein (gp63) and CR2
Necator americanus Ancylostoma duodenale	Hookworm	Intestinal epithelium	Mechanical and biting mouthparts

Adherence and Replication

Most infections are initiated by the attachment of the organism to host tissues, followed by replication to establish colonization. The life cycle of a parasite is based on species and **tissue tropisms,** which determine the organs or tissues of the host in which a parasite can survive. The attachment of the parasite to host cells or tissue can be relatively nonspecific, can be mediated by mechanical or biting mouthparts, or can result from the interaction between structures on the parasite surface known as **adhesins** and specific glycoprotein or glycolipid receptors found on some cell types but not on others. Specific surface structures that facilitate parasite adhesion include surface **glycoproteins,** such as glycophorin A and B, complement receptors, adsorbed components of the complement cascade, fibronectin, and *N*-acetylglucosamine conjugates. Examples of some of the adherence mechanisms identified in human parasites are listed in Table 68.2.

E. histolytica is a good model for the importance of **adhesins** in virulence. The pathogenesis of invasive amebiasis requires adherence of amebae to the colonic mucosal layer, parasite attachment to and lysis of colonic epithelium and acute inflammatory cells, and resistance of the amebic trophozoites to host humoral and cell-mediated immune defense mechanisms. Amebic adherence to colonic mucins, epithelial cells, and leukocytes is mediated by a surface lectin inhibitable by galactose (gal) or *N*-acetyl-D-galactosamine (GalNAc). Binding of the galactose-inhibitable adherence lectin to carbohydrates on the host cell surface is required for *E. histolytica* trophozoites to exert their cytolytic activity. The presence of the galactose-inhibitable adherence lectin is one feature that distinguishes pathogenic from nonpathogenic strains of *E. histolytica*.

Various attachment mechanisms have been associated with specific infections. For example, the **Duffy blood group antigen** acts as an attachment site for *Plasmodium vivax*. Red blood cells from most West Africans, in contrast to those from Europeans, lack the Duffy antigen. Accordingly, malaria resulting from *P. vivax* is almost unknown in West Africa. Notably, however, clinical vivax malaria has been reported in Duffy-negative individuals in Madagascar. The parasite and host molecules that enable this Duffy-independent invasion of human red blood cells have not yet been identified.

The physical structures of parasites may act with adhesion molecules to promote attachment to host cells. *Giardia duodenalis* (formerly *lamblia*) is a protozoan parasite that uses a ventral disk to attach to the intestinal epithelium by a clasping or suction-like mechanism. Contractile and/or suction forces generated by the ventral disk, which is a unique microtubule-based structure, may play a dominant role in attachment. Molecular binding and/or adhesion likely serves as a secondary mechanism that aids in the recognition of more suitable orientation of the parasite cell for attachment. This lectin interaction provides for correct orientation during attachment and may contribute to cell specificity.

After attachment to the specific cell or tissue type, the parasite may undergo replication as the next step in establishing infection. Most protozoan parasites replicate intracellularly or extracellularly in the human host, whereas replication is generally not observed with the helminths capable of establishing human infection.

Temperature also may play an important role in the ability of parasites to infect a host and cause disease. This is well illustrated by the *Leishmania* species. *L. donovani* replicates well at 37° C and causes visceral leishmaniasis, involving the bone marrow, liver, and spleen. In contrast, *L. tropica* grows well at 25° C to 30° C but poorly at 37° C and causes an infection of the skin without involvement of deeper organs.

Cell and Tissue Damage

Although some microorganisms may cause disease by localized multiplication and elaboration of potent microbial **toxins,** most organisms initiate the disease process by invading normally sterile tissue, with subsequent replication and destruction. Parasitic protozoa and helminths are generally not known to produce toxins with potencies comparable to those of classic bacterial toxins, such as anthrax toxin and botulinum toxin; however, parasitic disease

can be established by the elaboration of toxic products, mechanical tissue damage, and immunopathologic reactions (Table 68.3).

Numerous authors have suggested that toxic products elaborated by parasitic protozoa are responsible for at least some aspects of pathology (see Table 68.3). **Proteases** and **phospholipases** may be secreted and are released on the destruction of the parasites. These enzymes can cause host cell destruction, inflammatory responses, and gross tissue pathology. For example, the intestinal parasite *E. histolytica* produces proteinases that can degrade epithelial basement membrane and cell-anchoring proteins, disrupting epithelial cell layers. Furthermore, the amebae produce phospholipases and an ionophore-like protein that lyse the responding host neutrophils, resulting in the release of neutrophil constituents that are toxic to host tissues. The expression of certain proteinases increases relative to the virulence of the strain of *E. histolytica*. In contrast to the protozoan parasites, many of the pathogenic consequences of helminthic infections are related to the size, movement, and longevity of the parasites. The host is exposed to long-term damage and immune stimulation, as well as the sheer physical consequences of being inhabited by large foreign bodies. The most obvious forms of direct damage from helminthic parasites are those resulting from mechanical blockage of internal organs or from the effects of pressure exerted by growing parasites. Large adult *Ascaris* organisms can physically block the intestine and the bile ducts, and blockage of lymph flow, leading to elephantiasis, is associated with the presence of adult *Wuchereria* organisms in the lymphatic system. Some neurologic manifestations of cysticercosis are caused by the pressure exerted by the slowly expanding larval cysts of *Taenia solium* on the central nervous system (CNS) and eyes. Migration of helminths (usually larval forms) through body tissues, such as the skin, lungs, liver, intestines, eyes, and CNS, can damage the tissues directly and initiate hypersensitivity reactions.

As with many infectious agents, the manifestations of parasitic disease are caused not only by the mechanical or chemical tissue damage produced by the parasite, but they are also caused by the host responses to the presence of the parasite. Cellular hypersensitivity is observed in protozoan and helminthic disease (Table 68.4). During a parasitic infection, host cell products such as cytokines and lymphokines are released from activated cells. These mediators influence the action of other cells and may contribute directly to the pathogenesis of parasite infections. **Immunopathologic reactions** range from acute anaphylactic reactions to cell-mediated delayed hypersensitivity reactions (see Table 68.4). The fact that many parasites are long-lived means that many inflammatory changes become irreversible, producing functional changes in tissues. Examples include hyperplasia of the bile ducts secondary to the presence of liver flukes and extensive fibrosis leading to genitourinary and hepatic dysfunction in chronic schistosomiasis. Migration of larval helminths through tissues, such as the skin, lungs, liver, intestine, CNS, and eyes, produces immune-mediated inflammatory changes in these structures. Finally, chronic inflammatory changes around parasites such as *Clonorchis* (*Opisthorchis*) *sinensis* and *Schistosoma haematobium* have been linked to the induction of carcinomatous changes in the bile ducts and the bladder, respectively.

TABLE 68.3 Some Pathologic Mechanisms in Parasitic Diseases

Mechanism	Examples
TOXIC PARASITE PRODUCTS	
Hydrolytic enzymes, proteinases, collagenase, elastase	Schistosomes (cercariae), *Strongyloides* spp., hookworm, *Entamoeba histolytica*, African trypanosomes, *Plasmodium falciparum*
Amebic ionophore	*E. histolytica*
Endotoxins	African trypanosomes, *P. falciparum*
Indole catabolites	Trypanosomes
MECHANICAL TISSUE DAMAGE	
Blockage of internal organs	*Ascaris* spp., tapeworms, schistosomes, filaria
Pressure atrophy	*Echinococcus* spp., *Cysticercus* spp.
Migration through tissue	Helminthic larvae
IMMUNOPATHOLOGY	
Hypersensitivity	See Table 68.4
Autoimmunity	See Table 68.4
Protein-losing enteropathies	Hookworm, tapeworm, *Giardia* spp., *Strongyloides* spp.
Metaplastic changes	*Opisthorchis* spp. (liver flukes), schistosomes

TABLE 68.4 Immunopathologic Reactions to Parasitic Disease

Reaction	Mechanism	Result	Example
Type 1: anaphylactic	Antigen + immunoglobulin E antibody attached to most cells: histamine release	Anaphylactic shock; bronchospasm; local inflammation	Helminth infection, African trypanosomiasis
Type 2: cytotoxic	Antibody + antigen on cell surface: complement activation or antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity	Lysis of cell-bearing microbial antigens	*Trypanosoma cruzi* infection
Type 3: immune complex	Antibody + extracellular antigen complex	Inflammation and tissue damage; complex deposition in glomeruli, joints, skin vessels, brain; glomerulonephritis, and vasculitis	Malaria, schistosomiasis, trypanosomiasis
Type 4: cell-mediated (delayed)	Sensitized T-cell reaction with antigen, liberation of lymphokines, triggered cytotoxicity	Inflammation, mononuclear accumulation, macrophage activation Tissue damage	Leishmaniasis, schistosomiasis, trypanosomiasis

Modified from Mims, C, et al., 1995. Mims Pathogenesis of Infectious Disease, fourth ed. Academic, London.

TABLE 68.5 Microbial Interference with or Avoidance of Immune Defenses

Type of Interference or Avoidance	Mechanism	Examples
Antigenic variation	Variation of surface antigens within the host	African trypanosomes, *Plasmodium* spp., *Babesia* spp., *Giardia* spp.
Molecular mimicry	Microbial antigens mimicking host antigens, leading to poor antibody response	*Plasmodium* spp., trypanosomes, schistosomes
Concealment of antigenic site (masking)	Acquisition of coating of host molecules	Hydatid cyst, filaria, schistosomes, trypanosomes
Intracellular location	Failure to display microbial antigen on host cell surface	*Plasmodium* spp. (red blood cells), trypanosomes, *Leishmania* spp., *Toxoplasma* spp.
	Inhibition of phagolysosomal fusion	*Toxoplasma* spp.
	Escape from phagosome into cytoplasm, with subsequent replication	*Leishmania* spp., *Trypanosoma cruzi*
Immunosuppression	Suppression of parasite-specific B-cell and T-cell responses	Trypanosomes, *Plasmodium* spp.
	Degradation of immunoglobulins	Schistosomes

Disruption, Evasion, and Inactivation of Host Defenses

Although the processes of cell and tissue destruction are often sufficient to initiate clinical disease, the parasite must be able to evade the host's immune defense system for the disease process to be maintained. Similar to other organisms, parasites elicit humoral and cell-mediated immune responses; however, parasites are particularly adept at interfering with or avoiding these defense mechanisms (Table 68.5).

Organisms can shift antigenic expression, such as that observed with the African trypanosomes. Rapid variation of expression of antigens in the glycocalyces of these organisms occurs each time the host exhibits a new humoral response. Similar changes have been observed with *Plasmodium*, *Babesia*, and *Giardia* species. Some organisms may produce antigens that mimic host antigens **(mimicry)** or acquire host molecules that conceal the antigenic site **(masking)**, preventing immune recognition by the host.

Many protozoan parasites evade the immune response by assuming an intracellular location in the host. The organisms that reside in macrophages have developed a variety of mechanisms to avoid intracellular killing. These include prevention of phagolysosome fusion, resistance to killing after exposure to lysosomal enzymes, and escape of phagocytosed cells from the phagosome into the cytoplasm, with subsequent replication of the organism (see Table 68.5).

Immunosuppression of the host is often observed during parasitic infections. The immunosuppression may be parasite specific or generalized, involving a response to various nonparasite and parasite antigens. Proposed mechanisms include antigen overload, antigenic competition, induction of suppressor cells, and production of lymphocyte-specific suppressor factors. Certain helminths, such as *S. mansoni*, may also produce proteinases that can degrade immunoglobulins.

Finally, it is becoming apparent that the host microbiome may play a distinct role in the pathogenesis of parasitic infections. This has been especially true for the gut microbiome and enteric parasites such as *E. histolytica*, *Giardia* spp., and *Cryptosporidium* spp.

For questions see www.StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Anstey, N.M., et al., 2009. The pathophysiology of vivax malaria. Trends. Parasitol. 25, 220–227.

Boyett, D., et al., 2014. Wormholes in host defense: how helminths manipulate host tissues to survive and reproduce. PLoS. Pathogens. 10, e1004014.

Certad, G., et al., 2017. Pathogenic mechanisms of cryptosporidium and giardia. Trends. Parasitol. 33, 561–576.

Choi, B.I., et al., 2004. Clonorchiasis and cholangiocarcinoma: etiologic relationship and imaging diagnosis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 17, 540–552.

Cunningham, M.W., Fujinami, R.S., 2000. Molecular Mimicry, Microbes, and Autoimmunity. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Girones, N., Cuervo, H., Fresno, M., 2005. Trypanosoma Cruzi-Induced Molecular Mimicry and Chagas Disease. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, vol. 296. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Graczyk, T.K., Knight, R., Tamang, L., 2005. Mechanical transmission of human protozoan parasites by insects. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 18, 128–132.

Leggett, H.C., et al., 2012. Mechanisms of pathogenesis, infective dose and virulence in human parasites. PLoS. Pathogens 8, e1002512.

Yoshida, N., et al., 2011. Invasion mechanisms among emerging foodborne protozoan parasites. Trends. Parasitol. 27, 459–466.

Zambrano-Villa, S., et al., 2002. How protozoan parasites evade the immune response. Trends. Parasitol. 18, 272–278.

Questions

1. What are the most common modes of entry of parasites into the human host?

2. Name two factors that determine the outcome of the interaction between parasite and host.

3. Give an example of an adhesin that is directly related to the virulence of a parasite.

4. Name three pathologic mechanisms thought to be important in parasitic diseases.

5. How can parasites resist immunologic clearance? Give at least one example of each mechanism.

6. Name the four types of immunopathologic reactions that occur in parasitic diseases and provide examples of each.

69 Role of Parasites in Disease

A summary of the parasites (protozoan and helminths) most commonly associated with human disease is presented in this chapter. Although many parasites are associated with a single-organ system (e.g., gastrointestinal tract) and therefore cause a disease process involving that system, some of the most dramatic manifestations of parasitic disease occur when the parasite leaves its "normal" location in the human body. Also, several different parasites may produce a similar disease syndrome. The management of a specific parasitic infection may differ tremendously depending on the etiologic agent, and many antiparasitic treatment regimens are quite toxic. So, to guide both diagnostic and therapeutic efforts, it is useful to generate a differential diagnosis that includes the most likely parasites.

The development and prognosis of a parasitic infection often depend on factors aside from the innate virulence of the organism. In determining the possibility of a parasitic infection, the meaning of any microbiologic data and the necessity to treat and with what agent, one must take into account numerous factors such as exposure history (e.g., travel to an endemic area), the potential infectious dose and/or organism burden, the use of prophylaxis (e.g., antimalarial prophylaxis), and the immunologic status of the host. The presentation of a given parasitic infection may be quite different in a nonimmune traveler to an endemic region versus a semi-immune resident of that same region. The treatment and prevention strategies will be different as well.

This chapter provides a very broad listing of the various parasitic agents commonly associated with infections at specific body sites and/or specific clinical manifestations (Table 69.1). This information is meant to be used in conjunction with Table 70.1 as an aid in establishing a differential diagnosis and selecting the most likely clinical specimens that will help establish a specific etiologic diagnosis. Other factors that may be important in determining the relative frequency with which specific parasites cause disease (e.g., travel and exposure history, specific clinical presentations) are covered in the individual chapters in this text or in the more comprehensive infectious disease texts cited in this and other chapters.

TABLE 69.1 Summary of Parasites Associated with Human Disease

System Affected and Disease	Pathogens
BLOOD	
Malaria	*Plasmodium falciparum, P. knowlesi, P. malariae, P. ovale, P. vivax*
Babesiosis	*Babesia* spp.
Filariasis	*Wuchereria bancrofti, Brugia malayi, Mansonella* spp., *Loa loa*
BONE MARROW	
Leishmaniasis	*Leishmania donovani, L. tropica*
CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM	
Meningoencephalitis	*Naegleria fowleri, Trypanosoma brucei gambiense, T. b. rhodesiense, T. cruzi, Toxoplasma gondii*
Granulomatous encephalitis	*Acanthamoeba* spp., *Balamuthia mandrillaris*
Mass lesion Brain abscess	*T. gondii, Taenia solium, Schistosoma japonicum, Acanthamoeba* spp., *B. mandrillaris*
Eosinophilic meningitis Cerebral malaria	*Angiostrongylus cantonensis, Toxocara* spp., *Baylisascaris* (neural larva migrans), *P. falciparum*
Cerebral paragonimiasis	*Paragonimus westermani*
EYE	
Keratitis	*Acanthamoeba spp., Onchocerca volvulus*
Chorioretinitis Conjunctivitis	*T. gondii, O. volvulus, L. loa*
Ocular cysticercosis (mass lesion)	*T. solium*
Toxocariasis	*Toxocara* spp. (ocular larva migrans; mimics retinoblastoma)

Continued

TABLE 69.1 Summary of Parasites Associated with Human Disease—cont'd

System Affected and Disease	Pathogens
INTESTINAL TRACT	
Anal pruritus	*Enterobius vermicularis*
Colitis	*Entamoeba histolytica, Neobalantidium coli*
Diarrhea/dysentery	*E. histolytica, Giardia duodenalis (intestinalis), Cryptosporidium parvum, Cyclospora cayetanensis, Cystoisospora belli, Schistosoma mansoni, Strongyloides stercoralis, Trichuris trichiura*
Toxic megacolon	*T. cruzi*
Obstruction Perforation	*Ascaris lumbricoides, Fasciolopsis buski*
Rectal prolapse	*T. trichiura*
LIVER, SPLEEN	
Abscess	*E. histolytica, Fasciola hepatica*
Hepatitis	*T. gondii*
Biliary obstruction	*A. lumbricoides, F. hepatica, Opisthorchis (Clonorchis) sinensis*
Cirrhosis/hepatosplenomegaly	*L. donovani, L. tropica, Toxocara canis and T. cati* (visceral larva migrans), *S. mansoni, S. japonicum*
Mass lesions	*T. solium, Echinococcus granulosus, E. multilocularis*
GENITOURINARY	
Vaginitis/urethritis	*Trichomonas vaginalis, E. vermicularis*
Renal failure	*Plasmodium* spp., *L. donovani*
Cystitis/hematuria	*S. haematobium, P. falciparum* (blackwater fever)
HEART	
Myocarditis	*T. gondii, T. cruzi*
Megacardia/complete heart block	*T. cruzi*
LUNG	
Abscess	*E. histolytica, P. westermani*
Nodule/mass	*Dirofilaria immitis, E. granulosus, E. multilocularis*
Pneumonitis	*A. lumbricoides, S. stercoralis, Toxocara* spp., *P. westermani, T. gondii, Ancylostoma brasiliense*
LYMPHATICS	
Lymphedema	*W. bancrofti, B. malayi,* other filaria
Lymphadenopathy	*T. gondii,* trypanosomes
MUSCLE	
Generalized myositis	*Trichinella spiralis, Sarcocystis lindemanni, Toxocara* spp.
Myocarditis	*T. spiralis, T. cruzi, Toxocara* spp.
SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE	
Ulcerative lesion	*Leishmania* spp., *Dracunculus medinensis*
Nodule/swellings	*O. volvulus, L. loa, T. cruzi, Acanthamoeba* spp., *Toxocara* spp.
Rash/vesicles	T. *gondii, A. brasiliense,* other migrating worms, schistosomes (cercarial dermatitis)
SYSTEMIC	
General dissemination and multiple organ dysfunction	*P. falciparum, T. gondii, L. donovani, T. cruzi, Toxocara* spp., *S. stercoralis, T. spiralis*
Iron deficiency, anemia	Hookworms *(A. duodenale, Necator americanus)*
Megaloblastic anemia (vitamin B_{12} deficiency)	*Diphyllobothrium latum*

Bibliography

Cohen, J., Powderly, W.G., Opal, S.M., 2016. Infectious Diseases, fourth ed. Elsevier Science, Philadelphia.

Farrar, J., et al., 2015. Manson's Tropical Diseases, twenty-third ed. Elsevier Science, London.

Garcia, L.S., 2016. Diagnostic Medical Parasitology, sixth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

John, D.T., Petri Jr., W.A., 2009. Markell and Voge's Medical Parasitology, nineth ed. Saunders, St Louis.

Procop, G.W., Pritt, B.S., 2015. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

70 Laboratory Diagnosis of Parasitic Disease

The diagnosis of parasitic infections may be very difficult, particularly in the nonendemic setting. The clinical manifestations of parasitic diseases are seldom specific enough to raise the possibility of these processes in the mind of the clinician, and routine laboratory tests are seldom helpful. Although peripheral eosinophilia is widely recognized as a useful indicator of parasitic disease, this phenomenon is characteristic only of helminthic infection and even in these cases is frequently absent. Thus the physician must maintain a heightened index of suspicion and must rely on detailed travel, food intake, transfusion, and socioeconomic history to raise the possibility of parasitic disease. Proper diagnosis requires that (1) the physician consider the possibility of parasitic infection and communicates the possibility to the diagnostic laboratory, (2) appropriate specimens are obtained and transported to the laboratory in a timely fashion, (3) the laboratory competently performs the appropriate procedures for the recovery and identification of the etiologic agent, (4) the laboratory results are effectively communicated to the physician, and (5) the results are correctly interpreted by the physician and applied to the care of the patient. In addition, for most parasitic diseases, appropriate test selection and interpretation is based on an understanding of the **life cycle** of the parasite and the **pathogenesis** of the disease process in humans.

Numerous methods for diagnosing parasitic diseases have been described (Box 70.1). Some are useful in detecting a wide variety of parasites, whereas others are particularly useful for one or a few parasites. Although the mainstay of diagnostic clinical microbiology is the isolation of the causative pathogen in culture, the diagnosis of parasitic diseases is accomplished almost entirely by morphologic (usually microscopic) demonstration of parasites in clinical material. Occasionally, demonstration of a specific antibody response (serodiagnosis) helps in establishing the diagnosis. The detection of parasite antigens in serum, urine, or stool now provides a rapid and sensitive means of diagnosing infection with certain organisms; the development of nucleic acid–based assays has proven to be an excellent means of detecting and identifying a number of parasites in biologic samples, such as blood, stool, urine, sputum, and tissue biopsies obtained from infected patients. In general, it is better for the laboratory to offer a limited number of competently performed procedures than to offer a wide variety of infrequently and poorly performed tests.

This chapter provides a general description of the principles of specimen collection and processing necessary to diagnose most parasitic infections. Specific details of these and other procedures of general and limited usefulness may be found in several reference texts listed in the Bibliography.

Parasite Life Cycle as an Aid in Diagnosis

Parasites may have complex life cycles involving single or multiple hosts. Understanding the life cycle of parasitic organisms is a key to understanding important features of geographic distribution, transmission, and pathogenesis of many parasitic diseases. The life cycles of parasites often suggest useful clues for diagnosis as well. For example, in the life cycle of filariae that infect humans, certain species, such as *Wuchereria bancrofti,* have a **"nocturnal periodicity"** in which greater numbers of microfilariae are found in the peripheral blood at night. Sampling the blood of such patients during daytime hours may fail to detect the microfilariae, whereas blood specimens collected between 10 p.m. and 4 a.m. may demonstrate many microfilariae. Also, intestinal nematodes such as *Ascaris lumbricoides* and hookworm, which reside in the lumen of the intestine, produce large numbers of eggs that can be detected easily in the stool of an infected patient. In contrast, another intestinal nematode, *Strongyloides stercoralis*, lays its eggs in the bowel wall rather than in the intestinal lumen. As a result, the eggs are rarely seen on stool examination; to make the diagnosis, the parasitologist must be alert for the presence of larvae. Finally, parasites may cause clinical symptoms at a time when diagnostic forms are not yet present in the usual site. For example, in certain intestinal nematode infections, the **migration** of larvae through the tissues may cause intense symptomatology weeks before the characteristic eggs are present in the feces.

General Diagnostic Considerations

The importance of appropriate specimen collection, the number and timing of specimens, timely transport to the laboratory, and prompt examination by an experienced microscopist cannot be overemphasized. Because the majority of parasitologic examinations and identifications are based entirely on recognizing the characteristic morphology of the organisms, any condition that may obscure or distort the morphologic appearance of the parasite may result in an erroneous identification or missed diagnosis. As noted previously and in Box 70.1, there may be alternatives to microscopy for the detection and identification

of certain parasites. These tests (e.g., antigen detection, nucleic acid amplification/detection), are becoming more widely used (especially antigen and nucleic acid–based detection). They offer the promise of more rapid, sensitive, and specific diagnostic testing for parasitic diseases. These diagnostic test options may expand the testing capabilities of many laboratories, allowing laboratories with limited proficiency in parasitology to offer diagnostic testing for certain parasitic diseases. A list of common and uncommon diagnostic procedures and specimens to be collected for selected parasitic infections is provided in Table 70.1.

BOX 70.1 Laboratory Methods for Diagnosing Parasitic Disease

Macroscopic examination
Microscopic examination
- Wet mount
- Permanent stains
- Stool concentrates

Serologic examination
- Antibody response
- Antigen detection

Nucleic acid hybridization
- Probes and amplification techniques
- Detection
- Identification
- Strain typing

Culture
Animal inoculation
Xenodiagnosis

TABLE 70.1 Body Sites, Specimen Collection, and Diagnostic Procedures for Selected Parasitic Infections

Infecting Organism	Specimen Options	Collection Methods	Diagnostic Procedure
BLOOD			
Plasmodium spp., *Babesia* spp., filaria, *Leishmania, Toxoplasma, Trypanosoma* spp.	Whole blood, anticoagulated	Venipuncture	Microscopic examination (Giemsa stain) or acridine orange fluorescent stain Thin film Thick film Blood concentration (filaria) Serology Antibody Antigen NAAT (no preservative)
BONE MARROW			
Leishmania spp., *Trypanosoma cruzi*	Aspirate	Sterile	Microscopic examination (Giemsa stain) Culture NAAT (no preservative)
	Serum	Venipuncture	Serology Antibody Antigen NAAT (no preservative)
CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM			
Acanthamoeba spp., *Balamuthia* spp., *Naegleria* spp., trypanosomes, *Taenia solium, Toxoplasma gondii*	Spinal fluid Biopsy Serum	Sterile Venipuncture	Microscopic examination Wet mount Permanent stain Culture Serology (antibody) NAAT (no preservative)
CUTANEOUS ULCERS			
Leishmania spp., *Acanthamoeba* spp., *Entamoeba histolytica*	Aspirate Biopsy Serum	Sterile plus smears Sterile, nonsterile to histology Venipuncture	Microscopic examination (Giemsa stain) Culture Serology (antibody) NAAT (no preservative)
EYE			
Acanthamoeba spp., *Loa loa, T. gondii*	Corneal scrapings	Sterile saline, air-dried smear	Microscopic examination Wet mount Permanent stain Serology (antigen)
	Corneal biopsy Aqueous/vitreous humor	Sterile saline Sterile aspirate	Culture (*Acanthamoeba* spp.) NAAT (no preservative)
INTESTINAL TRACT			
E. histolytica	Fresh stool Preserved stool Sigmoidoscopy material Biopsy	Waxed container Formalin, PVA Fresh, PVA Schaudinn smears	Microscopic examination Wet mount Permanent stains NAAT (fresh stool or biopsy)

TABLE 70.1 Body Sites, Specimen Collection, and Diagnostic Procedures for Selected Parasitic Infections—cont'd

Infecting Organism	Specimen Options	Collection Methods	Diagnostic Procedure
	Serum	Venipuncture	Serology Antigen (stool) Antibody (serum) Culture NAAT (no preservative)
Giardia spp.	Fresh stool Preserved stool Duodenal contents	Waxed container Formalin, PVA Entero-Test or aspirate	Microscopic examination Wet mount Permanent stains Antigen IFA EIA Culture NAAT (no preservative) Microarray
Cryptosporidium spp.	Fresh stool Preserved stool Biopsy	Waxed container Formalin, PVA Saline	Microscopic examination (acid-fast) Antigen IFA EIA NAAT (no preservative) Microarray
Pinworm	Anal impression smear	Cellophane tape	Macroscopic examination Microscopic examination (eggs)
Helminths	Fresh stool Preserved stool Serum	Waxed container Formalin, PVA Venipuncture	Macroscopic examination (adults) Microscopic examination (larvae and eggs) Culture *(Strongyloides)* Serology (antigen) NAAT (no preservative) Serology (antibody) NAAT (no preservative)
LIVER, SPLEEN			
E. histolytica, Leishmania spp.; *Clonorchis* spp., *Opisthorchis* spp., *Fasciola* spp.	Aspirates Biopsy Serum	Sterile, collected in four separate aliquots (liver) Sterile; nonsterile to histology Venipuncture	Microscopic examination Wet mount Permanent stains Serology Antigen Antibody Culture NAAT (no preservative)
LUNG			
Rarely: amebae, *(E. histolytica)*, trematodes *(Paragonimus westermani)*, larvae *(Strongyloides stercoralis)*, or cestode hooklets	Sputum Lavage Transbronchial aspirate Brush biopsy Open lung biopsy Serum	Induced, no preservative No preservative Air-dried smears Air-dried smears Fresh squash preparation; nonsterile to histology Venipuncture	Microscopic examination Giemsa stain Gram stain Hematoxylin and eosin Serology (antigen) NAAT (no preservative) Serology Antigen Antibody NAAT (no preservative)
MUSCLE			
Trichinella spiralis, T. cruzi	Biopsy Serum Whole blood	Nonsterile to histology Venipuncture	Microscopic examination (permanent stains) Culture *(T. cruzi)* Xenodiagnosis *(T. cruzi)* Serology Antibody Antigen Culture *(T. cruzi)* Xenodiagnosis *(T. cruzi)* NAAT (no preservative)

Continued

TABLE 70.1 Body Sites, Specimen Collection, and Diagnostic Procedures for Selected Parasitic Infections—cont'd

Infecting Organism	Specimen Options	Collection Methods	Diagnostic Procedure
SKIN			
Onchocerca volvulus, Leishmania spp. Cutaneous larval migrans	Scrapings Skin snip Biopsy	Aseptic, smear, or vial No preservative Nonsterile to histology	Microscopic examination Wet mount Permanent stains Culture (*Leishmania* spp.) NAAT (no preservative)
	Serum	Venipuncture	Serology Antigen Antibody Culture (*Leishmania* spp.) NAAT (no preservative)
UROGENITAL SYSTEM			
Trichomonas vaginalis	Vaginal discharge Prostatic secretions Urethral discharge	Saline swab, culture medium Saline swab, culture medium Saline swab, culture medium	Microscopic examination Wet mount Permanent stains Antigen (IFA) Culture Serology (antibody) Nucleic acid probe
Schistosoma haematobium	Urine Biopsy	Single unpreserved specimen Nonsterile to histology	Microscopic examination Serology (antigen)

EIA, Enzyme immunoassay; *IFA,* immunofluorescence assay; *NAAT,* nucleic acid amplification test; *PVA,* polyvinyl alcohol.

Parasitic Infections of the Intestinal and Urogenital Tracts

Protozoa and helminths may colonize or infect the intestinal and urogenital tracts of humans. Most commonly, these parasites are amebae, ciliates, or nematodes (Table 70.2). However, infection with trematodes, cestodes, or coccidian parasites may also be encountered.

In intestinal and urogenital infections, a simple wet mount or stained smear is often inadequate. Repeated specimen collection and testing are often necessary to optimize the detection of organisms that are shed intermittently or in fluctuating numbers. Concentration of specimens by sedimentation or flotation techniques may be required to detect low numbers of ova (of worms) or cysts (of protozoa) in fecal specimens. Whereas routine microscopic examination of stool for ova and parasites (O&P) is useful for detecting infections caused by helminths and amebae, physicians often (inappropriately) favor this approach as a screening method for intestinal parasites and underutilize immunoassays for *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium* despite their epidemiologic and performance superiority among patients at low risk for other parasites (e.g., helminths and *Entamoeba histolytica*).

Occasionally, specimens other than stool or urine must be examined (see Table 70.1). Optimal detection of small bowel pathogens, such as *Giardia duodenalis* and *S. stercoralis,* may require the aspiration of duodenal contents or even small bowel biopsy. Also, the detection of colonic parasites, such as *E. histolytica* and *Schistosoma mansoni,* may necessitate proctoscopic or sigmoidoscopic examination with aspiration or biopsy of mucosal lesions. Sampling of the perianal skin is a useful means of recovering the eggs of *Enterobius vermicularis* (pinworm) or *Taenia* species (tapeworm).

TABLE 70.2 Most Commonly Identified Intestinal Parasites in United States Laboratories

Organism	% of Total Positive Specimens (*n* = 2933)
Giardia duodenalis (lamblia)	54
Dientamoeba fragilis	25
Entamoeba histolytica/E. dispar	7
Cryptosporidium parvum	5
Ascaris lumbricoides	2
Trichuris trichiura	2
Strongyloides stercoralis	1
Enterobius vermicularis	1
Hymenolepis nana	1
Hookworm	<1
Taenia	<1
Cystoisospora spp.	<1
Cyclospora	<1
Coccidia	<1
Other helminths	<1

Data compiled from Branda, J.A., et al., 2006. A rational approach to the stool ova and parasite examination. Clin. Infect. Dis. 42, 972–978; Polage, C.R., et al., 2011. Physician use of parasite tests in the United States from 1997 to 2006 and in a Utah *Cryptosporidium* outbreak in 2007. J. Clin. Microbiol. 49, 591–596.

FECAL SPECIMEN COLLECTION

Patients, clinicians, and laboratory personnel must be properly instructed on collection and handling of specimens. Fecal specimens should be collected in clean, wide-mouthed, waterproof containers with a tight-fitting lid to

TABLE 70.3 Number of Specimens Required to Detect Intestinal Parasites

Number of Specimens per Patient	% of Infected Patients Detected ($n = 130$)
1	71.5
2	86.9
3	100

Data compiled from Branda, J.A., et al., 2006. A rational approach to the stool ova and parasite examination. Clin. Infect. Dis. 42, 972–978.

ensure and maintain adequate moisture. Specimens must not be contaminated with water, soil, or urine because water and soil may contain free-living organisms that can be mistaken for human parasites, and urine can destroy motile trophozoites and may cause helminth eggs to hatch. Stool specimens should not contain barium, bismuth, or medications containing mineral oil, antibiotics, antimalarials, or other chemical substances, because such specimens compromise the detection of intestinal parasites. Specimen collection should be delayed for 5 to 10 days to allow barium to clear and for at least 2 weeks after antibiotics, such as tetracycline, to allow intestinal parasites to recover from the toxic (but not curative) effects of the drugs.

Purged specimens may be collected when organisms are not detected in normally passed fecal specimens; however, only certain purgatives (sodium sulfate and buffered sodium biphosphate [Phospho-Soda]) are satisfactory. One series of purged specimens may be examined in place of, or in addition to, a series of normally passed specimens.

Unpreserved formed fecal specimens should arrive in the laboratory within 2 hours after passage. If the stool is liquid and thus more likely to contain trophozoites, it should reach the laboratory for examination within 30 minutes. Soft or loose stools should be examined within 1 hour of passage. If examination is not possible within the recommended time limits, all fresh fecal samples should be placed into preservatives, such as 10% formalin, polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), merthiolate-iodine-formalin (MIF), or sodium acetate formalin (SAF). Fecal specimens may be stored at 4° C but should not be incubated or frozen.

The number of specimens required to demonstrate intestinal parasites varies, depending on the quality of the specimen submitted, the accuracy of the examination performed, the severity of the infection, and the purpose for which the examination is made. If the physician is interested only in determining the presence or absence of helminths, one or two examinations may suffice, provided that concentration methods are used. For a routine parasitic examination, a total of three fecal specimens is recommended. The examination of three specimens using a combination of techniques ensures detection of more than 99% of infections. In a survey conducted in the United States, examination of three specimens was required to detect 100% of infected patients (Table 70.3).

It is inappropriate for multiple specimens to be collected from the same patient on the same day. It also is not recommended for the three specimens to be submitted one each day for 3 consecutive days. The series of three specimens should be collected within no more than 10 days. Many parasites do not appear in fecal specimens in consistent numbers on a daily basis; therefore collection of specimens on alternate days tends to yield a higher percentage of positive findings.

It has become apparent that, in the United States, submission of stool for parasitologic examination from patients with hospital-acquired diarrhea (onset more than 3 days after admission) is usually inappropriate because the frequency of acquisition of protozoan or helminthic parasites in a hospital is vanishingly rare. A request for stool examination for O&P in a hospitalized patient should be accompanied by a clear statement of clinical indications and only after the more common causes of hospital-acquired diarrhea (e.g., antibiotic induced) have been ruled out.

TECHNIQUES OF STOOL EXAMINATION

Specimens should be examined systematically by a competent microscopist for helminth eggs and larvae, as well as for intestinal protozoa. For optimal detection of these various infectious agents, a combination of several techniques of examination is required.

Macroscopic Examination

The fecal specimen should be examined for consistency and for the presence of blood, mucus, worms, and proglottids.

Direct Wet Mount

Fresh stools should be examined under the microscope with the saline and iodine wet-mount technique to detect motile trophozoites or larvae *(Strongyloides)*. The saline and iodine wet mounts also are used to detect helminth eggs, protozoan cysts, and host cells such as leukocytes and red blood cells. This approach also is useful in examining material from sputum, urine, vaginal swabs, duodenal aspirates, sigmoidoscopy, abscesses, and tissue biopsies.

Concentration

All fecal specimens should be placed in 10% formalin to preserve parasite morphology and should be concentrated using a procedure such as formalin ethyl acetate (or formalin ether) sedimentation or zinc sulfate flotation. These methods separate protozoan cysts and helminth eggs from the bulk of fecal material and thus enhance the ability to detect small numbers of organisms usually missed by the use of only a direct smear. After concentration, the material is stained with iodine and examined microscopically.

Permanently Stained Slides

The detection and correct identification of intestinal protozoa often depend on the examination of the permanently stained smear. These slides provide a permanent record of the protozoan organisms that are identified. The cytologic detail revealed by one of the permanent staining methods is essential for accurate identification, and most identification should be considered tentative until confirmed by the permanently stained slide. The common permanent stains used are trichrome, iron hematoxylin, and phosphotungstic acid–hematoxylin. Slides are made either by preparing smears of fresh fecal material and placing them in Schaudinn fixative solution or by fixing a small amount of fecal material in PVA fixative. It should be noted that an order for a routine microscopic examination of stool for

O&P does not necessarily include special stains required to detect organisms such as *Cryptosporidium* or *Cyclospora*. If these organisms are considered in the differential diagnosis, the order for stool examination must state this explicitly so that the necessary special stains (acid-fast [*Cryptosporidium, Cyclospora*]) and procedures (immunoassay [*Cryptosporidium*]) can be performed.

COLLECTION AND EXAMINATION OF SPECIMENS OTHER THAN STOOL

Frequently, specimens other than fecal material must be collected and examined to diagnose infections caused by intestinal pathogens. These specimens include perianal samples; sigmoidoscopic material; aspirates of duodenal contents; liver abscesses; and sputum, urine, and urogenital specimens.

Perianal Specimens

The collection of perianal specimens is frequently necessary to diagnose pinworm *(E. vermicularis)* and occasionally *Taenia* (tapeworm) infections. The methods include the preparation of a clear cellulose tape slide or an anal swab. The cellulose tape slide preparation is the method of choice for the detection of pinworm eggs. Specimens collected by either method should be obtained in the morning before the patient bathes or goes to the bathroom. The tape method requires that the adhesive surface of the tape be pressed firmly against the right and left perianal folds and then spread onto the surface of a microscope slide; the anal swab should be rubbed gently over the perianal area and transported to the laboratory for microscopic examination. With either collection method, the slides or swabs should be kept at 4° C if transport to the laboratory is to be delayed.

Sigmoidoscopic Material

Material from sigmoidoscopy can be helpful in the diagnosis of *E. histolytica* infection that has not been detected by routine fecal examinations. The specimens consist of scraped or aspirated material from the mucosal surface. At least six areas should be sampled. After collection, the material should be placed in a tube containing 0.85% saline and should be kept warm during transport to the laboratory. The specimens should be examined immediately for motile trophozoites.

Duodenal Aspirates

Sampling and examination of duodenal contents is a means of recovering *Strongyloides* larvae; the eggs of *Clonorchis*, *Opisthorchis*, and *Fasciola* species; and other small bowel parasites, such as *Giardia*, *Cystoisospora*, and *Cryptosporidium* organisms. Specimens may be obtained by endoscopic intubation or by the use of the enteric capsule or string test (Entero-Test). Endoscopic biopsy of the small intestinal mucosa may reveal *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium* organisms, as well as *Strongyloides* larvae. Specimens should be collected in saline and transported directly to the laboratory for microscopic examination.

Liver Abscess Aspirate

Suppurative lesions of the liver and subphrenic spaces may be caused by *E. histolytica* (extraintestinal amebiasis). Extraintestinal amebiasis may occur in the absence of any history of symptomatic intestinal infection. The specimen should be collected from the liver abscess margin instead of the necrotic center. The first portion removed is usually yellowish white in appearance and seldom contains amebae. Later portions, which are reddish, are more likely to contain organisms. A minimum of two separate portions of exudative material should be removed. After aspiration, the collapse of the abscess and the subsequent inflowing of blood often release amebae from the tissue. Subsequent aspirations may have a greater chance of revealing organisms. The aspirated material should be transported immediately to the laboratory.

Sputum

Occasionally, intestinal parasites may be detected in sputum. These organisms include the larvae of *Ascaris*, *Strongyloides*, and hookworm; cestode hooklets; and intestinal protozoa such as *E. histolytica* and *Cryptosporidium* species. The specimen should be a deep sputum rather than primarily saliva, and it should be delivered immediately to the laboratory. Microscopic examination should include saline wet-mount and permanently stained preparations.

Urine

Examination of urine specimens may be useful in diagnosing infections caused by *Schistosoma haematobium* (occasionally other species as well) and *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Detection of eggs in urine can be accomplished using direct detection or concentration using the sedimentation centrifugation technique. Eggs may be trapped in mucus or pus and are more frequently present in the last few drops of the specimen rather than the first portion. The production of *Schistosoma* eggs fluctuates; therefore examinations should be performed over several days. *T. vaginalis* may be found in the urinary sediment of male and female patients.

Urogenital Specimens

Urogenital specimens are collected if infection with *T. vaginalis* is suspected. Identification is based on wet-mount preparation examinations of vaginal and urethral discharges, prostatic secretions, or urine sediment. Specimens should be placed in a container with a small amount of 0.85% saline and sent immediately to the laboratory for examination. If no organisms are detected by direct wet mounts, culture may be used.

Parasitic Infections of Blood and Tissue

Parasites localized within the blood or tissues of the host are more difficult to detect than intestinal and urogenital parasites. Microscopic examination of blood films is a direct and useful means of detecting malarial parasites, trypanosomes, and microfilariae. Unfortunately, the concentration of organisms often fluctuates; thus the collection of multiple specimens over several days is required. The preparation of both wet mounts (microfilariae and trypanosomes) and permanently stained thick and thin blood films is the mainstay of diagnosis. Examination of sputum may reveal helminth ova (lung flukes) or larvae (*Ascaris* and *Strongyloides*

species) after appropriate concentration techniques. Biopsy of skin (onchocerciasis) or muscle (trichinosis) may be required for the diagnosis of certain nematode infections (see Table 70.1).

BLOOD FILMS

The clinical diagnosis of parasitic diseases such as malaria, leishmaniasis, trypanosomiasis, and filariasis largely rests on the collection of appropriately timed blood samples and the expert microscopic examination of properly prepared and stained thick and thin blood films. The optimal time for obtaining blood for parasitologic examination varies with the particular parasite expected.

Because malaria is one of the few parasitic infections that can be acutely life-threatening, blood collection and examination of blood films should be performed immediately if the diagnosis is suspected. Laboratories offering this service should be prepared to do so on a 24-hour basis, 7 days a week. Because the levels of parasitemia may be low or fluctuating, it is recommended that repeat blood films be obtained and examined at 6, 12, and 24 hours after the initial sample. Detection of trypanosomes in blood is occasionally possible during the early acute phase of the disease. *Trypanosoma cruzi* (Chagas disease) may also be detected during subsequent febrile periods. After several months to a year, the trypomastigotes of African trypanosomiasis (*T. brucei rhodesiense* and *T. b. gambiense*) are better demonstrated in spinal fluid than blood. Blood samples for the detection of nocturnal microfilariae (*W. bancrofti* and *Brugia malayi*) should be obtained between 10 p.m. and 4 a.m., whereas for the diurnal *Loa loa*, samples are obtained around noon.

Two types of blood films are prepared for the diagnosis of blood parasite infections, thin and thick. Although wet-mount preparations of blood films can be examined for motile parasites (microfilariae and trypanosomes), most laboratories proceed directly to the preparation of thick and thin films for staining. In the thin film, the blood is spread over the slide in a thin (single cell) layer, and the red blood cells remain intact after fixation and staining. In the thick film, the red cells are lysed before staining, and only the white blood cells, platelets, and parasites (if present) are visible. Thick films allow a larger amount of blood to be examined, which increases the possibility of detecting light infections. Unfortunately, increased distortion of the parasites makes species identification using the thick film particularly difficult. Proper use of this technique usually requires a great deal of expertise and experience.

Occasionally, other blood-concentration procedures may be used to detect light infections. Alternative concentration methods for detecting blood parasites include the use of microhematocrit centrifugation, the examination of buffy coat preparations, a triple centrifugation technique for the detection of low numbers of trypanosomes, and a membrane filtration technique for the detection of microfilariae.

Once prepared, blood films must be stained. The most dependable staining of blood parasites is obtained with Giemsa stain buffered to pH 7.0 to 7.2, although special stains may be occasionally used to identify species of microfilariae. Giemsa stain is particularly useful for the staining of protozoa (malaria and trypanosomes); however, the sheath of microfilariae may not always stain with Giemsa. In this case, hematoxylin-based stains may be used.

SPECIMENS OTHER THAN BLOOD

Examination of tissue and body fluids other than blood may be necessary, based on clinical presentation and epidemiologic considerations. Smears and concentrates of cerebrospinal fluid are necessary to detect trophozoites of *Naegleria fowleri*, trypanosomes, and larvae of the nematode *Angiostrongylus cantonensis* within the central nervous system. Cerebrospinal fluid must be promptly examined because the trophozoite forms of the protozoan parasites are very labile (trypanosomes) or tend to round up and become nonmotile (*N. fowleri*). Examination of tissue impression smears of lymph nodes, liver biopsy material, spleen, or bone marrow stained with Giemsa stain is very useful in detecting **intracellular** parasites such as *Leishmania* species and *Toxoplasma gondii*. Also, biopsies of various tissues are an excellent means of detecting localized or disseminated infections caused by protozoan and helminthic parasites. Saline mounts of superficial skin snips are very useful in detecting the microfilariae of *Onchocerca volvulus*. Examination of sputum (induced) is indicated when there is a question of pulmonary paragonimiasis (lung fluke) or abscess formation with *E. histolytica*. *Strongyloides* larvae may be detected in sputum in hyperinfection syndrome.

Alternatives to Microscopy

In the majority of cases, the diagnosis of parasitic disease is made in the laboratory by microscopic detection and morphologic identification of the parasite in clinical specimens. In some cases, the parasite cannot be detected despite a careful search because of low or absent levels of organisms in readily available clinical material. In such cases, the clinician may need to rely on alternative methods based on the detection of parasite-derived material (antigens or nucleic acids) or by the host response to parasitic invasion (antibodies). Additional approaches used in selected infections include culture, animal inoculation, and xenodiagnosis.

IMMUNODIAGNOSTICS

Immunodiagnostic methods have long been used as aids in the diagnosis of parasitic diseases. The majority of these serologic tests are based on the detection of specific antibody responses to the presence of the parasite. The analytical approaches include the use of classic agglutination, complement fixation, and gel diffusion methods, as well as the more modern immunofluorescence assays (IFAs), enzyme immunoassay (EIA), lateral flow immunoassay (LIFA), and Western blot assays. Antibody detection is useful and indicated in the diagnosis of many protozoan diseases (e.g., extraintestinal amebiasis, South American trypanosomiasis, leishmaniasis, transfusion-acquired malaria and babesiosis, and toxoplasmosis) and helminthic diseases (e.g., clonorchiasis, cysticercosis, hydatidosis, lymphatic filariasis, schistosomiasis, trichinellosis, and toxocariasis). There is a problem with the detection of antibody as a means of diagnosis: because of the persistence of antibody for months

to years after the acute infection, demonstration of antibody can rarely differentiate between acute and chronic infection.

In contrast to antibody detection, the measurement of circulating **parasite antigen** in serum, urine, or feces may provide a more appropriate marker for the presence of active infection and also may indicate parasite load. Also, demonstrations of specific parasite antigen in lesion fluid, such as material from an amebic abscess or fluid from a hydatid cyst, may provide a definitive diagnosis of the infecting organism. Most common antigen-detection assays use an EIA format; however, immunofluorescence, radioimmunoassay, immunochromatographic, and immunoblot methods have also proved useful. Several commercial assays for the detection of parasite antigens are now available in kits. These include EIA and immunochromatographic assays for the detection of *Giardia*, *E. histolytica*, *Entamoeba dispar*, and *Cryptosporidium* species in stool, EIA for the detection of *T. vaginalis* in urogenital specimens, and IFA for the detection of *Giardia*, *Cryptosporidium*, and *Trichomonas* species. Several antigen detection tests also are available for detection of **blood parasites** (malaria, filariasis) in conjunction with microscopic examination of thick and thin blood smears. The reported sensitivity and specificity for most of these kits are quite good. The advantages to these approaches are labor savings and a potential increase in sensitivity. Indeed, numerous studies have shown that immunoassays are more sensitive than microscopic examination in detecting infections caused by *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium*. Also, rapid diagnostic tests for detecting antigens of *Plasmodium* spp. may outperform microscopy in certain situations and are being considered for use in the field, especially because the use of the more expensive artemisinin combination therapies makes a laboratory diagnosis of malaria more cost-effective than empiric therapy in the era of chloroquine resistance. The disadvantages are the loss of parasitologic expertise and the fact that, in some instances, the available assay tests are for only a single organism, whereas conventional microscopic examination provides the opportunity to recognize many different parasites. Although antigen-detection assays have been described for many other parasites, they are not widely available. The availability of a broad panel of antigen-detection assays potentially would make the use of an antigen screen a viable alternative to tedious microscopic examination.

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTIC APPROACHES

In addition to immunodiagnostic methods, the diagnosis of parasitic diseases has been enhanced considerably by the application of molecular diagnostic methods based on **nucleic acid hybridization, amplification, and sequencing.** This approach takes advantage of the fact that all organisms contain nucleic acid sequences that may be used in a hybridization assay to distinguish among strains, species, and genera. Thus parasites may be simultaneously detected and identified in clinical material depending on the specificity of the molecular method used. Another advantage of nucleic acid–based detection systems is that they are independent of the patient's immunologic status or previous infection history, identifying active infection. Finally, the use of target nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs), such as the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), loop-mediated amplification (LAMP), and nucleic acid sequence–based amplification (NASBA), provides exquisite sensitivity, allowing the detection of as little as one organism in a biologic sample (Table 70.4). It should be noted that when applying NAAT to the detection of intestinal parasites, stool fixatives or preservatives may inhibit amplification and fresh stool without preservatives is recommended for testing to avoid false-negative results.

Nucleic acid–based methods can be used to detect parasites not only in clinical samples of blood, stool, or tissue from infected patients but also in their natural vector. The application of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) "fingerprinting" or strain typing allows precise identification of the parasite to the subspecies or strain level and has considerable value in epidemiologic studies. Assay formats using nucleic acid probes range from dot blot and Southern hybridization methods to in situ hybridization in tissue to PCR or other target amplification methods coupled with rapid amplicon detection and characterization. The use of nonisotopic DNA labeling techniques greatly expands the potential applicability of these assays worldwide.

Molecular testing is becoming more readily available for most diagnostic laboratories. Assays for *Trichomonas vaginalis*, *E. histolytica, E. histolytica* complex, *Giardia* spp., *Cyclospora* spp., and *Cryptosporidium* spp. are commercially available and approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Intestinal gastrointestinal panels are available that can test simultaneously for multiple gastrointestinal pathogens, including bacterial, viral, and parasitic pathogens. As with antigen detection, only select pathogens can be detected, and other pathogens may be missed. Additional panels for *Blastocystis* spp., *Dientamoeba fragilis,* microsporidia, and *S. stercoralis* are under development.

Irrespective of the assay format, nucleic acid probes and amplification techniques are now used on a routine basis for the detection and identification of numerous species and strains, including *Plasmodium* species, *Leishmania* species, *T. cruzi*, and *T. gondii* (see Table 70.4). The widespread use of these techniques requires further development of simple procedures for sample handling and preparation and will require extensive clinical and field testing before they can be applied broadly to aid in clinical diagnosis.

CULTURE

Although culture is the standard for the diagnosis of most infectious diseases, it is not commonly used in the parasitology laboratory. Certain protozoan parasites, such as *T. vaginalis*, *E. histolytica*, *Acanthamoeba* species, *N. fowleri*, *Leishmania* species, *Plasmodium falciparum*, *T. cruzi*, and *T. gondii,* can be cultured with relative ease. However, culture of other parasites has not been successful or is too difficult or cumbersome to be of practical value in routine diagnostic efforts.

ANIMAL INOCULATION

Animal inoculation is a sensitive means of detecting infection caused by blood and tissue parasites, such as *T. b. gambiense*, *T. b. rhodesiense*, *T. cruzi*, *Leishmania* species, and *T. gondii*. Although useful, this approach is not practical for most diagnostic laboratories and is largely confined to research settings.

TABLE 70.4 Examples of Techniques for Detection of Parasitic Infections Based on Polymerase Chain Reaction Analysis

Organism	Gene	Target Sensitivity (%)	Comment
Plasmodium vivax	Circumsporozoite gene	91-96	Dried blood-spotted filter paper samples are used
Leishmania species	kDNA minicircle sequence	87-100	Results are compared with culture and microscopy of biopsy specimens
Trypanosoma cruzi	kDNA minicircle sequence	100	Results are compared with serology and xenodiagnosis of blood samples
Toxoplasma gondii	B1 gene Repetitive element sequence gene P30 major surface antigen Recombinant DNA sequences	46-99	PCR of BAL, blood, cerebrospinal fluid, and amniotic fluid show great potential for diagnosis of toxoplasmosis
Entamoeba histolytica	P145 tandem repeat sequence SSU rRNA	96 >90	Results are compared with microscopic diagnosis of stool samples Test may distinguish pathogenic from nonpathogenic *(E. dispar)* strains

BAL, Bronchoalveolar lavage; *kDNA,* kinetoplast deoxyribonucleic acid; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *SSU rRNA,* small subunit ribosomal ribonucleic acid.

XENODIAGNOSIS

The technique of xenodiagnosis uses laboratory-raised arthropod vectors to detect low levels of parasites in infected individuals. Classically, this approach was used to diagnose Chagas disease by allowing an uninfected reduviid bug to feed on an individual suspected of having the disease. Subsequently, the bug was dissected and examined microscopically for evidence of developmental stages of *T. cruzi*. Although this technique may be used in endemic areas, it is obviously not practical for most diagnostic laboratories.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Branda, J.A., et al., 2006. A rational approach to the stool ova and parasite examination. Clin. Infect. Dis. 42, 972–978.

Garcia, L.S., Paltridge, G.P., Shimizu, R.Y., 2015. General approaches for detection and identification of parasites. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Garcia, L.S., et al., 2018. Laboratory diagnosis of parasites from the gastrointestinal tract. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 31, e0002517.

McHardy, I.H., Wu, M., Shimizu-Cohen, R., Couturier, M.R., Humphries, R.M., 2014. Detection of intestinal protozoa in the clinical laboratory. J. Clin. Microbiol. 52, 712–720.

Momcilovic, S., et al., 2019. Rapid diagnosis of parasitic diseases: current scenario and future needs. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 25,: 290–309 .

Polage, C.R., et al., 2011. Physician use of parasite tests in the United States from 1997 to 2006 and in a Utah *Cryptosporidium* outbreak in 2007. J. Clin. Microbiol. 49, 591–596.

Pritt, B.S., 2015. Molecular diagnostics in the diagnosis of parasitic infection. Meth. Microbiol. 42, 111–160.

Ricciardi, A., Ndao, M., 2015. Diagnosis of parasitic infections: what's going on? J. Biomol. Screen. 20, 6–21.

Shimizu, R., Garcia, L.S., 2015. Specimen collection, transport, and processing: parasitology. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Stensvold, C.R., et al., 2011. The impact of genetic diversity in protozoa on molecular diagnosis. Trends Parasitol. 27, 53–58.

Van Lieshout, L., Roestenberg, M., 2015. Clinical consequences of new diagnostic tools for intestinal parasites. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 21, 520–528.

Verweij, J.J., Stensvold, C.R., 2014. Molecular testing for clinical diagnosis and epidemiological investigations of intestinal parasitic infections. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 27, 371–418.

Questions

1. Why is it important to understand the life cycle of parasites when diagnosing parasitic diseases?
2. What factors may confound the use of microscopy in the diagnosis of parasitic disease?
3. Describe the important considerations in collecting and submitting a fecal specimen for parasitologic examination.
4. Which parasites can be detected in blood?
5. What are the alternatives to microscopy for the diagnosis of parasitic infections?

71 Antiparasitic Agents

The chemotherapeutic approach to the management of infectious diseases has clearly changed the face of medicine. Unfortunately, few of the antiinfective agents that have proved so successful against bacterial pathogens have been effective against parasites. In many instances, clinicians continue to rely on antiparasitic agents from the preantibiotic era. These and some newer agents remain limited in effectiveness and are relatively toxic. Many antiparasitic agents require prolonged or parenteral administration and may be effective only in certain disease states. Fortunately, in the last several years, new agents have appeared that constitute significant advances in the treatment of parasitic diseases. In each case, the previously available drugs were toxic and often ineffective.

In large part, the difficulties in the treatment of parasitic diseases stem from the fact that parasites are **eukaryotic** organisms and thus are more similar to the human host than the more successfully treated prokaryotic bacterial pathogens. Furthermore, the chronic and prolonged course of infection, the complex life cycles, and multiple developmental stages of many parasites add to the difficulties of effective chemotherapeutic intervention. Additional complicating factors in resource-poor countries, in which the majority of parasitic diseases occur, include (1) the presence of multiple infections and the high probability of reinfection; (2) lack of access to diagnostic testing methods; (3) the large number of persons immunocompromised by malnutrition and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection; and (4) the overwhelming influence of poverty and poor sanitation, which facilitate the transmission of many parasitic infections. Although chemotherapeutic approaches may be used effectively to treat and prevent many parasitic infections, some agents have adverse effects or eventually meet with resistance (microbial and social). Most antiparasitic agents are too expensive for widespread use in resource-poor countries. Thus the global approach to the prevention and treatment of parasitic diseases must involve several strategies, including improved hygiene and sanitation, control of the disease vector, access to point-of-care diagnostic testing, use of **vaccinations** if available (largely unavailable for parasitic diseases), and prophylactic and therapeutic administration of safe and effective chemotherapy. Of note, large-scale chemotherapy administered one to three times per year in endemic regions has reduced transmission of, and morbidity and mortality from, certain infections, including lymphatic filariasis, onchocerciasis, schistosomiasis, and intestinal nematodes. These strategies also must include efforts to decrease the transmission of infection due to HIV.

Targets for Antiparasite Drug Action

As mentioned previously, parasites are eukaryotic organisms and thus have more similarities than differences with the human host. Consequently, many antiparasitic agents act on pathways (nucleic acid synthesis, carbohydrate metabolism) or targets (neuromuscular function) shared by both the parasite and the host. For this reason, developing safe and effective antiparasitic drugs based on **biochemical differences** between the parasite and host has been difficult. **Differential toxicity** is commonly achieved by preferential uptake, metabolic alteration of the drug by the parasite, or differences in the susceptibility of functionally equivalent sites in the parasite and host. Fortunately, as our understanding of the basic biology and biochemistry of parasites and the mechanism of action of antimicrobial agents has improved, so has our recognition of potential parasite-specific targets for chemotherapeutic attack. Increasingly, investigators are exploiting newly completed genome projects for protozoan parasites to identify potential drug targets for high-throughput screening. Examples of the chemotherapeutic strategies that exploit the differences between parasite and host are provided in Table 71.1. These are discussed in greater detail as we deal with the specific agents.

Drug Resistance

Resistance to antimicrobial agents is an important consideration in the treatment of infections resulting from bacterial and fungal pathogens and certainly plays a role in the chemotherapy of parasitic diseases. Unfortunately, our understanding of the molecular and genetic basis for resistance to most antiparasitic agents is quite limited. Greater understanding of the epidemiology and mechanisms of drug resistance can provide valuable guidance for a better use of existing compounds and for the development of novel agents. The use of molecular markers of drug resistance has added another dimension to surveillance efforts and generated insights into the global spread of drug resistance in both protozoa and helminthes. Molecular markers have been identified for *Plasmodium falciparum* resistance to chloroquine, sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine, atovaquone-proguanil, and, to a limited degree, other antimalarials. For chloroquine and sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine, the molecular markers involve single nucleotide polymorphisms in genes

TABLE 71.1 Chemotherapeutic Strategies That Exploit Differences between Parasite and Host

Unique Site of Attack	Drug	Organism
Drug-concentrating mechanism unique to parasite	Chloroquine	*Plasmodium* spp.
Folic acid pathway (parasite unable to use exogenous folate)	Pyrimethamine or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	*Plasmodium* or *Toxoplasma* spp.
Inhibitor of trypanothione-dependent mechanisms for reducing oxidized thiol groups	Arsenicals, difluoromethylornithine	Trypanosomes
Interference with neuromediators unique to parasites	Pyrantel pamoate, diethylcarbamazine	*Ascaris* spp.
Interacts with chloride channels, resulting in hyperpolarization of cells, paralysis, and death of parasites	Ivermectin	Filaria
Interaction with tubulin unique to parasites	Benzimidazoles	Many helminths
Inhibition of topoisomerase II	Pentamidine	Trypanosomes
Inhibition of pyruvate ferredoxin oxidoreductase	Nitazoxanide	*Cryptosporidium* and *Giardia*

encoding a vacuolar membrane transporter protein and enzymes involved in folate synthesis, respectively. Parasites that have developed both chloroquine and sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine resistance and subsequently develop resistance to a third operational drug are termed "multidrug resistant" (MDR). Patients infected with plasmodia containing an increased copy number of *pfmdr1* (*P. falciparum* MDR 1 gene), which encodes PfPGH-1, a purported transporter pump, were found to have reduced responses to mefloquine, quinine, lumefantrine, and artemisinin-based combinations containing these drugs. More recently, the *pfcrt* (chloroquine-resistant transporter) gene was associated with drug efflux in cultured parasites, and single nucleotide polymorphisms in the *pfcrt* gene were observed in recurrent infections after treatment with artemether-lumefantrine. Resistance in *P. falciparum* to the atovaquone component of atovaquone-proguanil maps to the same locus that determines atovaquone resistance in *Pneumocystis jirovecii*. These efforts have led to further studies and improved understanding of mechanisms of drug resistance in *Trichomonas* (metronidazole), *Leishmania* (pentavalent antimonials), African trypanosomes (melarsoprol, pentamidine), and schistosomes (oxamniquine). Further insights into the mechanisms of action and resistance to antiparasitic agents are necessary to optimize the effectiveness of antiparasite chemotherapy.

Antiparasitic Agents

Although the number of effective antiparasitic agents is small relative to the vast array of antibacterial agents, the list is expanding (Table 71.2). Certainly, a primary goal of antiparasitic therapy is similar to that of antibacterial therapy, which is to eradicate the organism rapidly and completely. In many cases, however, the agents and treatment regimens used for parasitic diseases are designed simply to decrease the parasite burden, to prevent the systemic complications of chronic infection, or to carry out both actions. Thus the goals of antiparasitic therapy, particularly as applied in endemic areas, may be quite different from those usually considered for therapy of microbial infection in the United States or other developed countries. Given the significant toxicity of many of these agents, in every case, the need for treatment must be weighed against the toxicity of the drug. A decision to withhold therapy may often be correct, particularly when the drug can cause severe adverse effects.

Immunocompromised individuals pose a particular problem with respect to antiparasitic chemotherapy. On the one hand, **prophylaxis,** such as that administered for toxoplasmosis, may be effective in preventing infection. However, once infection is established, radical cure may not be possible, and long-term **suppressive therapy** may be indicated. In some diseases, such as cryptosporidiosis and microsporidiosis, effective (curative) therapy is not readily available, and care must be taken to avoid unnecessary toxicity while providing supportive care for the patient.

The remainder of this chapter provides an overview of the major classes of antiprotozoal and anthelmintic agents. These and additional antiparasitic agents, their mechanisms of action, and their clinical indications are listed in Table 71.2. Treatment of specific infections is discussed in the chapters that deal with the parasites. The Bibliography in this chapter lists several excellent reviews for more complete information and for discussions of the antiparasitic agents that are available.

ANTIPROTOZOAL AGENTS

Similar to antibacterial and antifungal agents, the antiprotozoal agents are generally targeted at relatively rapidly proliferating, young, growing cells. Most commonly, these agents target nucleic acid synthesis, protein synthesis, or specific metabolic pathways (e.g., folate metabolism) unique to the protozoan parasites.

Heavy Metals

The heavy metals used for the treatment of parasitic infections include arsenical (melarsoprol) and antimonial compounds (sodium stibogluconate, meglumine antimonate). These agents are thought to oxidize sulfhydryl groups of enzymes that are essential catalysts in carbohydrate metabolism. Melarsoprol inhibits parasite pyruvate kinase, causing decreased concentrations of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), pyruvate, and phosphoenolpyruvate. Arsenicals also inhibit *sn*-glycerol-3-phosphate oxidase, which is

TABLE 71.2 Mechanisms of Action and Clinical Indications for the Major Antiparasitic Agents

Drug Class	Mechanism of Action	Examples	Clinical Indications
ANTIPROTOZOAL AGENTS			
Heavy metals: arsenicals and antimonials	Inactivate sulfhydryl groups Disrupt glycolysis	Melarsoprol, sodium stibogluconate, meglumine antimonate	Trypanosomiasis, leishmaniasis
Aminoquinoline analogs	Accumulate in parasitized cells Interfere with DNA replication Bind to ferriprotoporphyrin IX Raise intravesicular pH Interfere with hemoglobin digestion	Chloroquine, mefloquine, quinine, primaquine, halofantrine, lumefantrine	Malaria prophylaxis and therapy Radical cure (exoerythrocytic-primaquine only)
Folic acid antagonists	Inhibit dihydropteroate synthetase and dihydrofolate reductase	Sulfonamides, pyrimethamine, trimethoprim	Toxoplasmosis, malaria, cyclosporiasis
Inhibitors of protein synthesis	Block peptide synthesis at level of ribosome	Clindamycin, spiramycin, paromomycin, tetracycline, doxycycline	Malaria, babesiosis, amebiasis, cryptosporidiosis, leishmaniasis
Diamidines	Unclear Bind DNA Inhibit dihydrofolate reductase, DNA, RNA, and protein synthesis Interfere with amino acid transport	Pentamidine	Pneumocystosis, leishmaniasis, trypanosomiasis
Nitroimidazoles	Unclear Inhibit protein and RNA synthesis Inhibit metabolism of glucose and interfere with mitochondrial function	Metronidazole, benznidazole, tinidazole	Amebiasis, giardiasis, trichomoniasis, American trypanosomiasis (Chagas disease)
Nitrofurans	Depletion of glutathione, trypanothione, and metallothionein Oxidative stress	Nifurtimox	Chagas disease, late-stage African trypanosomiasis *(Trypanosoma brucei gambiense)*
Sesquiterpenes	React with heme, causing free-radical damage to parasite membranes (artemisinins) Inhibit methionine aminopeptidase type 2 (fumagillin) Inhibit RNA and DNA synthesis (fumagillin)	Artemisinin, artemether, artesunate Fumagillin	Malaria (artemisinins)
Ornithine analog	Inhibits ornithine decarboxylase Interferes with polyamine metabolism	Difluoromethylornithine	African trypanosomiasis
Phosphocholine analog	Disrupts cell-signaling pathways and lipid metabolism; induces apoptotic cell death	Miltefosine	Leishmaniasis
Acetanilide	Unknown	Diloxanide furoate	Intestinal amebiasis
Sulfated naphthylamine	Inhibits *sn*-glycerol-3- phosphate oxidase and glycerol-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, causing decreased ATP synthesis	Suramin	African trypanosomiasis
Thiazolides	Inhibit pyruvate-ferredoxin oxidoreductase	Nitazoxanide	Cryptosporidiosis, giardiasis
ANTHELMINTIC AGENTS			
Benzimidazoles	Inhibit fumarate reductase Inhibit glucose transport Disrupt microtubular function	Mebendazole, thiabendazole, albendazole	Broad-spectrum anthelmintic: nematodes, cestodes
Tetrahydropyrimidine	Blocks neuromuscular action Inhibits fumarate reductase	Pyrantel pamoate	Ascariasis, pinworm, hookworm
Piperazines	Cause neuromuscular paralysis Stimulate phagocytic cells	Piperazine, diethylcarbamazine	Lymphatic filariasis Visceral larva migrans
Avermectins	Block neuromuscular action Hyperpolarize nerve and muscle cells Inhibit filarial reproduction	Ivermectin	Filarial infections, strongyloidiasis, ascariasis, scabies
Pyrazinoisoquinoline	Calcium agonist Causes tetanic muscular contractions Causes tegmental disruption Provides synergy with host defenses	Praziquantel	Broad-spectrum anthelmintic: cestodes, trematodes
Phenol	Uncouples oxidative phosphorylation	Niclosamide	Intestinal tapeworm
Quinolone	Alkylates DNA Inhibits DNA, RNA, and protein synthesis	Bithionol, oxamniquine	Paragonimiasis, schistosomiasis

Continued

TABLE 71.2 Mechanisms of Action and Clinical Indications for the Major Antiparasitic Agents—cont'd

Drug Class	Mechanism of Action	Examples	Clinical Indications
Organophosphate	Anticholinesterase Blocks neuromuscular action	Metrifonate	Schistosomiasis
Sulfated naphthylamidine	Inhibits glycerophosphate oxidase and dehydrogenase	Suramin	Onchocerciasis

ATP, Adenosine triphosphate; *DNA,* deoxyribonucleic acid; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid.

needed for the regeneration of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide in trypanosomes but is not found in mammalian cells. The antimonials, sodium stibogluconate and meglumine antimonate, inhibit the glycolytic enzyme phosphofructokinase and certain Krebs cycle enzymes in *Leishmania* organisms. They also have been shown to interfere with the metabolism of glutathione and trypanothione, resulting in an increased sensitivity of the organisms to oxidant stress. In each instance, the inhibition of parasite metabolism is **parasiticidal.** Unfortunately, the heavy metal compounds are toxic to the host and the parasite. The toxicity is greatest on cells that are most metabolically active, such as neuronal, renal tubular, intestinal, and bone marrow stem cells. Their differential toxicity and therapeutic value are largely related to enhanced uptake by the parasite and its intense metabolic activity.

Melarsoprol is the drug of choice for trypanosomiasis involving the central nervous system. It can penetrate the blood-brain barrier and is effective in all stages of trypanosomiasis. The antimonial compounds are restricted to the management of leishmaniasis. Meglumine antimonate and sodium stibogluconate are important agents for the treatment of leishmaniasis and are active against all forms of the disease. Prolonged therapy is usually required for disseminated leishmaniasis, and relapses are common. Despite the use of antimonials worldwide for the treatment of leishmaniasis for more than six decades with little evidence of resistance, acquired resistance has become a clinical threat within recent years. Thus far this resistance is unique to *Leishmania donovani,* which causes visceral leishmaniasis in the hyperendemic region of Bihar, India. Many of the proposed mechanisms of resistance across the different *Leishmania* spp. involve a reduced intracellular concentration of the active drug, either by decreased uptake or increased efflux from the cell.

Quinoline Derivatives

The quinoline derivatives include the 4-aminoquinolines (chloroquine, hydroxychloroquine, and amodiaquine), the cinchona alkaloids (quinine, quinidine), the 8-aminoquinolines (primaquine), and the synthetic quinoline compounds (mefloquine, halofantrine, lumefantrine). These compounds all have antimalarial activity and accumulate preferentially in parasitized red blood cells. Several potential mechanisms of action have been proposed, including (1) binding to deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and interfering with DNA replication; (2) binding to ferriprotoporphyrin IX released from hemoglobin in infected erythrocytes, producing a toxic complex; and (3) raising the pH of the parasite's intracellular acid vesicles, thus interfering with its ability to degrade hemoglobin. Quinine, quinidine, the 4-aminoquinolines, and the synthetic quinolines rapidly destroy the erythrocytic stage of malaria; thus they may be used **prophylactically** to prevent clinical illness or **therapeutically** to terminate an acute attack. The 8-aminoquinolines (e.g., primaquine) accumulate in tissue cells and destroy the extraerythrocytic (hepatic) stages of malaria, resulting in a radical cure of the infection.

Chloroquine remains the drug of choice for the prophylaxis and treatment of susceptible malaria strains. Chloroquine is active against all five *Plasmodium* species that infect humans *(P. falciparum, P. knowlesi, P. vivax, P. ovale, P. malariae)* and is well tolerated, inexpensive, and effective orally. Unfortunately, resistance of *P. falciparum* to chloroquine is widespread in Asia, Africa, and South America, greatly limiting the use of this agent. Resistance of *P. vivax* to chloroquine has also been reported in Papua New Guinea, the Solomon Islands, Indonesia, and Brazil.

Quinine and quinidine are used primarily to treat chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum* infection. Presumably, they are active against the chloroquine-resistant strains of *P. vivax* as well. Quinine is used orally only to treat mild attacks and by the intravenous route to treat acute attacks of MDR *P. falciparum*. Both quinine and quinidine are quite toxic and not rapidly parasiticidal; thus they should not be used alone but rather in combination with a sulfonamide or tetracycline antibiotic with antimalarial activity.

Mefloquine is a 4-quinolinemethanol antimalarial agent used for the prophylaxis and treatment of falciparum malaria. It displays a high level of activity against most chloroquine-resistant parasites. Unfortunately, mefloquine-resistant strains of falciparum malaria have been reported in Southeast Asia and Africa.

Halofantrine is a synthetic phenanthrene-methanol compound with proven efficacy in the treatment of *P. vivax* and *P. falciparum* malaria. It is not recommended for prophylaxis of malaria because of its toxicity. Halofantrine is more active than mefloquine; however, cross-resistance between these drugs occurs. It is considered a second-line agent for the treatment of malaria because of its expense and toxicity.

Lumefantrine is also a phenanthrene-methanol compound that is available only as a fixed formulation, combined with artemether. Studies in Cambodia have raised the possibility of declining efficacy to artemether-lumefantrine, with failure rates for the treatment of *P. falciparum* infection between 15% and 30%. Wild-type and various mutant *pfcrt* alleles have been associated with altered susceptibility to lumefantrine and artemisinin.

Folic Acid Antagonists

Similar to other organisms, protozoan parasites require folic acid for the synthesis of nucleic acids and ultimately DNA. Protozoa are unable to absorb exogenous folate, so they are susceptible to drugs that inhibit folate synthesis. The folic acid **antagonists** that are useful in treating protozoan

infections include the diaminopyrimidines (pyrimethamine and trimethoprim) and the sulfonamides. These compounds block separate steps in the folic acid pathway. The sulfonamides inhibit the conversion of aminobenzoic acid to dihydropteroic acid. The diaminopyrimidines inhibit dihydrofolate reductase, which effectively blocks the synthesis of tetrahydrofolate, which is a precursor necessary for the formation of purines, pyrimidines, and certain amino acids. These agents are effective at concentrations far below those needed to inhibit the mammalian enzyme, so selectivity can be attained. When a diaminopyrimidine is used with a sulfonamide, a **synergistic effect** is achieved via the blockade of two steps in the same metabolic pathway, resulting in very effective inhibition of protozoan growth.

The diaminopyrimidine trimethoprim is used with sulfamethoxazole to treat toxoplasmosis. Another diaminopyrimidine, pyrimethamine, has a high affinity for sporozoan dihydrofolate reductase and has been very effective when combined with a sulfonamide in the treatment of malaria and toxoplasmosis. Resistance to antifolates is caused by specific point mutations at the active site of the parasite's dihydrofolate reductase and has been largely confined to species of plasmodia.

Inhibitors of Protein Synthesis

Several antibiotics that inhibit protein synthesis in bacteria also exhibit antiparasitic activity in vitro and in vivo. These agents include clindamycin, spiramycin, tetracycline, and doxycycline.

Clindamycin and the tetracyclines are active against *Plasmodium* species, *Babesia* species, and amebae. Doxycycline is used for the chemoprophylaxis of chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum* malaria, and tetracycline may be used with quinine for the treatment of chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum* infection. Clindamycin may be useful in the treatment of central nervous system toxoplasmosis. Spiramycin is recommended as an alternative to the antifolates in the treatment of toxoplasmosis. Although spiramycin appears active against *Cryptosporidium* species in vitro, it has not been shown to be effective clinically for human cryptosporidiosis. Recent studies suggest that paromomycin, an older aminoglycoside, may be at least partially effective in treating cryptosporidiosis. Paromomycin, which is not systemically absorbed, also is used as a secondary drug in amebiasis and giardiasis. It has been shown that treatment of the filarial parasite *Onchocerca volvulus* with doxycycline causes inhibition of worm development, blocks embryogenesis and fertility, and reduces viability. The activity of doxycycline in this organism is caused by its action on the *Wolbachia* bacterial symbiont that is integral to the biology of the parasite and the disease pathogenesis.

Diamidines

Pentamidine, a diamidine, is a relatively toxic agent. Its mechanism of action has not been clearly defined and may not be uniform against different organisms. It may inhibit dihydrofolate reductase and interfere with aerobic glycolysis in protozoa. It also may interfere with amino acid transport, precipitate nucleotides and nucleotide-containing coenzymes, and inhibit DNA, ribonucleic acid (RNA), and protein synthesis.

Pentamidine is effective in treating the tissue forms of leishmania and the early (pre–central nervous system) forms of African trypanosomiasis. Pentamidine does not penetrate the central nervous system; therefore it is not useful in the late stages of infection with *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense*. Pentamidine may also inhibit kinetoplast topoisomerase II activity and may act against trypanosomes in part by this mechanism.

Nitroimidazoles

The nitroimidazoles include the well-known antibacterial agent metronidazole, as well as benznidazole and tinidazole. The mechanism of action of these compounds is unclear. It has been suggested that they inhibit DNA and RNA synthesis and also inhibit the metabolism of glucose and interfere with mitochondrial function. Metronidazole binds to parasite guanine and cytosine residues, causing the loss of helical structure and breakage of DNA strands.

The nitroimidazoles have excellent penetration into body tissues and therefore are particularly effective for the treatment of disseminated amebiasis. Metronidazole is the drug of choice for trichomoniasis and is effective in the treatment of giardiasis. Benznidazole is used for the treatment of acute Chagas disease and may have benefits in chronic disease as well. Tinidazole appears to be more effective and less mutagenic than metronidazole. Tinidazole has recently been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of amebiasis, giardiasis, and vaginal trichomoniasis.

Sesquiterpenes

The sesquiterpenes are antimicrobial agents that are represented by the artemisinins, artemether, dihydroartemisinin, arteether, and artesunate. These agents react with the heme moiety, causing **free-radical damage** to parasite membranes. The artemisinins are the most active of the available antimalarial compounds and produce a fractional reduction in parasite biomass of approximately 10^4 per asexual cycle. Artemisinins are efficacious against small-ring forms, as well as maturing schizonts of both *P. vivax* and *P. falciparum*, which are stages that are less susceptible to quinolines or quinine. The earlier stage ring forms are immediately cleared (within 6 to 12 hours) after exposure to artemisinins. The artemisinin derivatives also have the advantage of reducing gametocyte carriage and thus transmission. These agents are highly effective when used in combination with mefloquine, halofantrine, or lumefantrine in the treatment of severe malaria, including that caused by MDR *P. falciparum*. Artemisinin-based combination treatments are now considered the best therapy for falciparum malaria, combining unrelated compounds with different molecular targets (and thus different potential mechanisms of resistance), delaying the emergence of resistances. Resistance to artemisinins has been associated with single amino acid changes in the kelch domain of the K13 protein, resulting in alterations in cell development and proteostasis. Of interest is the apparent efficacy of mefloquine-artesunate in the treatment of a helminth infection such as schistosomiasis.

Atovaquone-Proguanil (Malarone)

Atovaquone is a hydroxynaphthoquinone, and proguanil is an antifolate. The combination of these two agents, Malarone, is used for the prophylaxis and treatment of malaria. Atovaquone inhibits the electron transport system in the

mitochondria of parasites, blocking nucleic acid synthesis and inhibiting replication. Proguanil selectively inhibits plasmodial dihydrofolate reductase; however, in combination with atovaquone, it directly lowers the effective concentration at which atovaquone causes collapse of the mitochondrial membrane potential. Malarone is effective against all stages of development of *P. falciparum* and is recommended for prophylaxis and treatment of falciparum malaria. It also is active against the erythrocytic stages of *P. vivax* and *P. ovale* and shows good efficacy in the treatment of *P. malariae* infections. There are reports of clinical failure and resistance of *P. falciparum* isolates to Malarone associated with single-gene mutations in the cytochrome b gene.

Miltefosine

Miltefosine is an oral phosphocholine analog used for the treatment of visceral leishmaniasis. It is becoming increasingly important because of the growing resistance of *Leishmania* strains to the pentavalent antimonials. Miltefosine interferes with cell-signaling, appears to act on key enzymes involved in the metabolism of ether lipids present on the surface of parasites, and induces apoptotic cell death, but the exact mechanisms of its parasiticidal activity are unknown. Miltefosine is active against both pentavalent antimonial-resistant and antimonial-susceptible strains of *L. donovani* and has been found to have a cure rate of 94% to 97% at 6 months in patients with visceral leishmaniasis. Resistance is caused by decreased uptake and/or increased efflux of the drug. In addition to *Leishmania* spp., miltefosine has activity against *Trypanosoma cruzi*, *T. brucei*, *Entamoeba histolytica*, and *Acanthamoeba* spp. Miltefosine was approved in 2014 by the FDA for the treatment of visceral, mucocutaneous, and cutaneous forms of leishmaniasis.

Nitazoxanide

Nitazoxanide is a novel 5-nitrothiazole derivative with broad-spectrum activity against numerous intestinal protozoa and helminths. Nitazoxanide inhibits pyruvate-ferredoxin oxidoreductase, which is an enzyme essential to anaerobic energy metabolism in protozoa, as well as anaerobic bacteria. The mechanism of action of this agent against helminths is unknown. Nitazoxanide is licensed in the United States for the treatment of cryptosporidiosis and giardiasis in immunocompetent individuals older than 12 months. It also has been shown to be effective in vitro and/or in vivo against infections caused by many enteric protozoa and helminths, including *Ascaris lumbricoides*, *Neobalantidium coli*, *Blastocystis*, *Cyclospora cayetanensis*, *Echinococcus* spp., *E. histolytica*, *Fasciola hepatica*, hookworms, *Hymenolepis nana*, *Cystoisospora belli*, *Taenia saginata*, *Trichomonas vaginalis*, and *Trichuris trichiura*.

Other Antiprotozoal Agents

A number of additional agents used in therapy, their mechanisms of action (if known), and clinical use are listed in Table 71.2.

ANTHELMINTIC AGENTS

The strategy for the use of anthelmintic drugs is quite different from that for the use of drugs for treating most protozoal infections. Most anthelmintic drugs are targeted at **nonproliferating** adult organisms, whereas with protozoa the targets are generally younger, more rapidly proliferating cells. The helminthic life cycle is frequently quite complex, and the adaptation to survival in the human host depends strongly on (1) neuromuscular coordination for feeding movements and for maintenance of a favorable location of the worm within the host; (2) carbohydrate metabolism as the major source of energy, with glucose the primary substrate; and (3) microtubular integrity because egg laying and hatching, larval development, glucose transport, and enzyme activity and secretion are impaired when microtubules are modified. Most anthelmintic agents are targeted at one of these biochemical functions in the adult organism.

The mechanisms of action and clinical indications for common anthelmintic agents are listed in Table 71.2.

Benzimidazoles

The benzimidazoles are broad-spectrum anthelmintic agents and include mebendazole, flubendazole, thiabendazole, triclabendazole, and albendazole. The basic structure of these agents consists of linked imidazole and benzene rings. Three mechanisms of action have been proposed for the benzimidazoles: (1) inhibition of fumarate reductase; (2) inhibition of glucose transport, resulting in glycogen depletion, cessation of ATP formation, and paralysis or death; and (3) disruption of microtubular function. Benzimidazoles block the assembly of tubulin dimers into tubulin polymers in a process mimicked by colchicine, which is a powerful antimitotic and embryotoxic drug. Because tubulin is important for parasite motility, drugs such as the benzimidazoles, which bind to parasite tubulin, are thought to act against nematode parasites by reducing or eliminating their motility.

The benzimidazoles have a wide spectrum of activity, including intestinal nematodes (*Ascaris*, *Trichuris*, *Necator*, and *Ancylostoma* species; *Enterobius vermicularis*), as well as a number of cestodes (*Taenia*, *Hymenolepis*, and *Echinococcus* species). Triclabendazole is the agent of choice for fascioliasis and is an alternative to praziquantel for therapy of paragonimiasis and intestinal flukes. Mebendazole is active against the intestinal nematodes and the cestodes previously listed. Thiabendazole is active against a variety of nematodes, but frequent and severe side effects have limited its primary systemic use to the treatment of strongyloidiasis. Albendazole has a spectrum similar to that of mebendazole and may have greater activity against *Echinococcus* species. In addition to its broad-spectrum anthelmintic activity, albendazole is also active against *Giardia* species. Albendazole is increasingly used in combination with either diethylcarbamazine (DEC) or ivermectin for the treatment of filariasis and loiasis; it is especially useful for these infections as part of a single-dose regimen for mass chemotherapy programs.

Tetrahydropyrimidines

Pyrantel pamoate, a tetrahydropyrimidine, is a cholinergic agonist that has a powerful effect on nematode muscle cells by binding to cholinergic receptors, which results in cell depolarization and muscle contraction. This **paralytic action** on intestinal nematodes leads to expulsion of the worm from the host's intestinal tract.

Pyrantel pamoate is not readily absorbed from the intestine and is active against *Ascaris* species, pinworm, and hookworm. Oxantel, an analog of pyrantel, may be used with pyrantel to provide effective therapy for the three major soil-transmitted nematodes: *Ascaris* species, hookworm, and *Trichuris* species.

Piperazines

The piperazine anthelmintic used most commonly is diethylcarbamazine (DEC). DEC is predominantly a microfilaricidal agent that is thought to act by stimulating cholinergic receptors and depolarizing muscle cells, with subsequent paralysis of the worms. However, additional evidence suggests that it enhances the adherence of leukocytes to microfilariae and thus may act by altering the parasite surface membrane or by directly stimulating phagocytic cells.

DEC is active against the filariae that produce river blindness *(O. volvulus)* and lymphatic filariasis (*Wuchereria bancrofti* and *Brugia malayi*). Unfortunately, destruction of the microfilariae in the tissues may increase the pathology to the host because of the inflammatory response to the parasite antigens and *Wolbachia* endosymbionts released on exposure to DEC. Recent information suggests that single-dose treatment with DEC may produce antiparasitic effects similar to those obtained with 14- to 21-day courses without the severe side effects observed with the multidose regimens. In addition to its use as individual therapy for filarial infections, DEC is also used for mass community chemotherapy programs either alone or in combination with ivermectin or albendazole.

Avermectins

Ivermectin, an avermectin, acts by interacting with the chloride channel in nerve and muscle cell membranes, resulting in hyperpolarization of the affected cells and consequent paralysis and death of the parasites. The drug also inhibits the reproductive function of the adult female *O. volvulus* and alters the ability of the *O. volvulus* microfilariae to evade the host's immune system.

Although ivermectin is used extensively to control gut-dwelling nematode infections in domestic and farm animals, its use in humans is limited primarily to treating ocular and lymphatic filariasis. Ivermectin is effective in the treatment of strongyloidiasis, as well as several common intestinal parasitic nematodes, including *Ascaris*, *Trichuris*, and *Enterobius* species. When used to treat filariasis, ivermectin has fewer side effects than DEC, and a single dose can eliminate microfilariae for up to 6 months. Ivermectin has a dramatic effect on the tissue-dwelling microfilariae of *O. volvulus* and reduces the severity of the ocular pathology seen in onchocerciasis. Because of its ability to markedly reduce the number of microfilariae in the skin of people with onchocerciasis, ivermectin has been effective in reducing the transmission of onchocerciasis in endemic areas.

Pyrazinoisoquinolines

Praziquantel, a pyrazinoisoquinoline, is an anthelmintic active against a broad spectrum of trematodes and cestodes. The drug is rapidly taken up by susceptible helminths, in which it acts as a **calcium agonist.** The entry of calcium into various cells results in elevated intracellular calcium levels, tetanic muscular contraction, and destruction of the tegument. Praziquantel appears to act with the host's immune system to produce a synergistic anthelmintic effect. The drug causes disruption of the parasite surface and tegument, allowing antibodies to attack parasite antigens not normally exposed on the surface (Fig. 71.1). Irreversible damage to the parasite probably occurs when complement or host leukocytes are recruited to the sites in which antibody is bound.

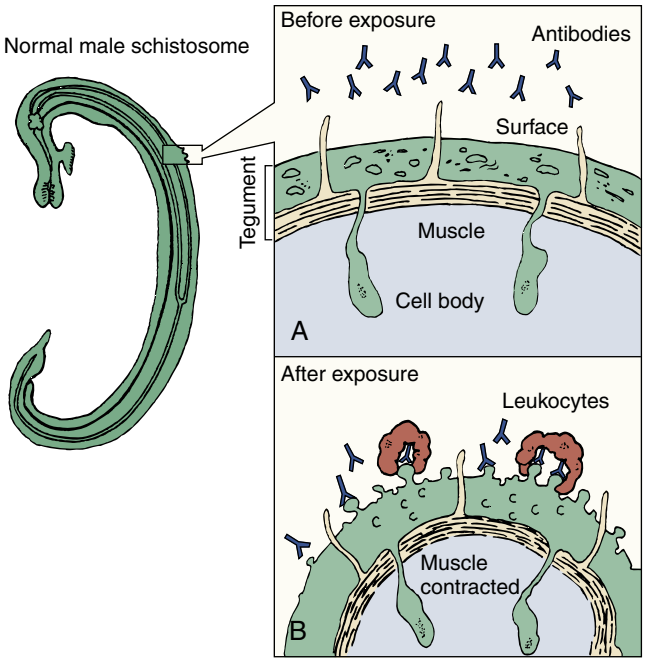


Fig. 71.1 Before exposure to praziquantel, the schistosome is capable of avoiding the numerous antibodies directed toward surface and internally located antigens. (A) Cross section of the dorsal surface of a normal male schistosome. Within 1 to 2 seconds after exposure to praziquantel, the muscles of the schistosome contract because of a drug-induced influx of calcium ions into the schistosome tegument. (B) The change in permeability of the schistosome surface toward external ions initiates the appearance of small holes and balloon-like structures, making the parasite vulnerable to antibody-mediated adherence of host leukocytes that kill the helminth. (From Wingard Jr., L.B., et al., 1991. Human Pharmacology: Molecular to Clinical. Mosby, St Louis, MO.)

Praziquantel has extremely broad-spectrum activity against trematodes, including *Fasciolopsis*, *Clonorchis*, *Opisthorchis*, *Paragonimus*, and *Schistosoma* species. It also is active against cestodes, including *Echinococcus*, *Taenia*, and *Dipylidium* species. Praziquantel is the drug of choice for the treatment of schistosomiasis, clonorchiasis, opisthorchiasis, and intestinal fluke infections. There is now reliable evidence that praziquantel reduces hepatosplenomegaly and portal hypertension in schistosomiasis. Most tapeworm infections respond to praziquantel. Praziquantel is also used in the treatment of neurocysticercosis and echinococcal infections, either alone or in combination with albendazole.

Phenols

The phenol niclosamide is a nonabsorbable anthelmintic with selective activity against intestinal tapeworms. The drug is absorbed by gut-dwelling cestodes but not by nematodes. It acts by uncoupling oxidative phosphorylation in mitochondria, resulting in a loss of helminth ATP that ultimately immobilizes the parasite so that it is expelled with feces. Niclosamide is effective in the treatment of intestinal tapeworms in humans and animals.

Other Anthelmintic Agents

Additional anthelmintic agents, including oxamniquine, metrifonate, and suramin, are described in Table 71.2. These agents are generally considered secondary agents for the treatment of trematode (oxamniquine and metrifonate) and filarial (suramin) infections.

For questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Abubakar, I., et al., 2007. Treatment of cryptosporidiosis in immunocompromised individuals: systematic review and meta-analysis. Brit. J. Clin. Pharmacol. 63, 387–393.

Aronson, N., et al., 2016. Diagnosis and Treatment of Leishmaniasis: Clinical Practice Guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) and the American Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene (ASTMH). Clin. Infect. Dis. 63, e202–e264.

Baird, J.K., 2009. Resistance to therapies for infection by *Plasmodium vivax*. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 22, 508–534.

Edwards, G., Krishna, S., 2004. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic issues in the treatment of parasitic infections. Eur. J. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. Dis. 23, 233–242.

Gardner, T.B., Hill, D.R., 2001. Treatment of giardiasis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 14, 114–128.

Hastings, I., 2011. How artemisinin-containing combination therapies slow the spread of antimalarial drug resistance. Trends Parasitol. 27, 67–72.

Hotez, P.J., Molyneux, D.H., Fenwick, A., 2007. Control of neglected tropical diseases. N. Engl. J. Med. 357, 1018–1027.

James, C.E., et al., 2009. Drug resistance mechanisms in helminths: is it survival of the fittest? Trends Parasitol. 25, 328–335.

Leder, K., Weller, P.F., 2015. Antiparasitic agents. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Lin, J.T., et al., 2010. Drug-resistant malaria: the era of ACT. Curr. Infect. Dis. Rep. 12, 165–173.

Secor, W.E., Le Bras, J., Clain, J., 2015. Mechanisms of resistance to antiparasitic agents. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Talisuna, A.O., Bloland, P., D'Alessandro, U., 2004. History, dynamics, and public health importance of malaria parasite resistance. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 178, 235–254.

Wingard Jr., L.B., et al., 1991. *Human pharmacology*: Molecular to Clinical. Mosby, St Louis.

Questions

1. What are the obstacles to effective treatment and prophylaxis of parasitic diseases in resource-poor countries?
2. What are the goals of antiparasitic therapy, and how are they different from antibacterial therapy?
3. What is the importance of aminoquinoline analogs?
4. How does the strategy for the use of anthelmintic agents differ from that for the use of drugs for protozoal infections?

72 Intestinal and Urogenital Protozoa

A 31-year-old female veterinarian complained of diarrhea that she had experienced for 2 weeks. The diarrhea was described as thin, watery, and nonbloody. The patient described 10 to 14 diarrheal stools per day, the frequency of which was not influenced by a variety of over-the-counter antidiarrheal medications. Physical examination revealed a well-developed, well-nourished woman who appeared somewhat fatigued and mildly dehydrated. The workup included a negative human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) serologic test, a normal flexible sigmoidoscope examination, and a negative stool culture for bacterial pathogens. A microscopic examination of the stool for white blood cells was negative, as was a test for Clostridium difficile toxin. A stool specimen was sent for ova and parasite examination and, after appropriate concentration measures, demonstrated acid-fast oocysts.

1. Which parasite was found in the patient's stool?
2. What was the likely source of this individual's infection?
3. If this individual were HIV positive, what other intestinal pathogens would have been considered?
4. Other than conventional microscopy, what other methods could have been used to diagnose this infection?
5. Should this patient have received specific antimicrobial therapy? If so, what would have been prescribed? If not, why not?

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

AMEBAE (AMOEBOZOA)

Trigger Words

Protozoa, amebae, trophozoite, cyst, intestinal amebiasis, extraintestinal amebiasis, hepatic amebiasis, flask-shaped ulcer, *Entamoeba*

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Primitive unicellular organisms with a simple two-stage life cycle
- Motility accomplished by extension of a pseudopod (false foot)
- Most amebae found in humans are commensal organisms
- Human pathogens: *Entamoeba histolytica* (most important), *E. polecki*

Epidemiology

- *E. histolytica* has worldwide distribution, with highest incidence in tropical and subtropical regions
- As many as 50% of the population in some areas are infected (average prevalence, 10% to 15%); U.S. prevalence is 4% to 5%
- Many carriers asymptomatic; pass cysts in stool (reservoir)
- Main source of food and water contamination is asymptomatic carrier who passes cysts

Diagnosis

- Microscopic examination of stool allows identification of cysts and trophozoites of *E. histolytica*
- Must differentiate from nonpathogenic and commensal species of amebae
- Specific serologic tests can confirm diagnosis
- Examination of stool samples may be negative in extraintestinal amebiasis
- Newer diagnostic approaches: fecal antigen, PCR, DNA probe

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Acute amebiasis treated with metronidazole, followed by iodoquinol, diloxanide furoate, or paromomycin
- Carrier state may be eradicated with iodoquinol, diloxanide furoate, or paromomycin
- Elimination of cycle of infection requires introduction of adequate sanitation measures, education about routes of transmission, chlorination, and filtration of water supplies
- Travelers to developing countries should avoid consumption of water (including ice cubes), avoid unpeeled fruits and raw vegetables, boil water, and thoroughly clean fruits and vegetables before consumption

CILIATES (METAMONADA [FORMERLY FLAGELLATES])

Trigger Words

Giardiasis, trichomoniasis, worm egg, contaminated stream, stool antigen test, cilia, wet mount, diarrhea, IgA deficiency

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Clinically important Metamonada: *Giardia duodenalis (lamblia/intestinalis), Dientamoeba fragilis, Trichomonas vaginalis*
- *G. duodenalis* life cycle has both cyst and trophozoite stages; *D. fragilis* has a trophozoite stage (cyst stage in mice); *T. vaginalis* has only a trophozoite stage
- Most flagellates move by lashing of cilia that pull organism through fluid environments
- Infection with *G. duodenalis* initiated by ingestion of cysts; asymptomatic carriage (50% of infected individuals); symptomatic disease ranges from mild diarrhea to a severe malabsorption syndrome
- Most infections with *D. fragilis* asymptomatic
- *T. vaginalis* causes urogenital infections
- Diseases produced by Metamonada result from mechanical irritation, inflammation of gastrointestinal and genitourinary (*Trichomonas*) mucosa

Epidemiology

- *G. duodenalis* has a worldwide distribution
- Giardiasis acquired by fecal-oral route
- Risk factors for giardiasis: poor sanitary conditions, travel to known endemic areas, consumption of inadequately treated water, day-care centers, oral-anal sexual practices
- *D. fragilis* has a worldwide distribution; transmission by fecal-oral and oral-anal routes
- *T. vaginalis* has a worldwide distribution; transmission primarily by sexual intercourse

Diagnosis

- *Giardia* may be detected by microscopic examination of fecal samples or duodenal aspirates
- Detection of *Giardia* fecal antigen by enzyme immunoassay, immunofluorescent microscopy
- Infection with *D. fragilis* diagnosed by microscopic examination of fecal specimens
- Trichomoniasis: microscopic examination of vaginal or urethral discharge

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Drug of choice for treatment of giardiasis (both symptomatic patients and carriers): metronidazole or nitazoxanide; alternatives: furazolidone, tinidazole, paromomycin, albendazole, quinacrine
- Prevention and control of giardiasis involves avoidance of contaminated water and food
- No consensus on best approach for treating *D. fragilis* infections; infection can be avoided by adequate sanitary conditions
- Drug of choice for trichomoniasis is metronidazole; personal hygiene, avoidance of shared toilet articles and clothing, and safe sexual practices are important preventive actions

CILIATES (CILIOPHORA)

Trigger Words

Macronucleus, pig feces, cytostome, cilia, intestinal ulceration

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Protozoan organisms whose locomotion involves coordinated movement of rows of hairlike structures (cilia)
- *Neobalantidium coli:* only Ciliophora parasite of humans
- *N. coli* has a funnel-like primitive mouth called a cytostome, a large and small nucleus involved in reproduction, food vacuoles, and two contractile vacuoles
- Disease produced by *N. coli* is similar to amebiasis; symptoms include abdominal pain, tenderness, tenesmus, nausea, anorexia, watery stools with blood and pus, ulceration of intestinal mucosa; extraintestinal infection very rare

Epidemiology

- *N. coli* distributed worldwide; swine and monkeys most important reservoirs
- Infections transmitted by fecal-oral route
- Outbreaks associated with contamination of water supplies with pig feces
- Person-to person spread has been implicated in outbreaks
- Risk factors include contact with swine and substandard hygienic conditions

Diagnosis

- Microscopic examination of feces for trophozoites and cysts

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Drug of choice is tetracycline; iodoquinol and metronidazole are alternatives
- Important preventive measures: personal hygiene, maintenance of sanitary conditions, careful monitoring of pig feces

SPOROZOA

Trigger Words

Coccidia, oocyst, chronic diarrhea, acid-fast, fecal antigen, waterborne transmission, contaminated fruits and vegetables

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Sporozoa constitute a very large group of protozoa called Apicomplexa or Coccidia
- All sporozoans demonstrate typical characteristics: asexual (schizogony) and sexual (gametogony) reproduction; share alternative hosts
- Intestinal sporozoan: *Cystoisospora belli, Sarcocystis spp., Cryptosporidium spp., Cyclospora cayetanensis*
- *C. belli:* coccidian parasite of intestinal epithelium; causes malabsorption syndrome
- *Sarcocystis* spp. can be detected in stool samples; nausea, abdominal pain, and diarrhea after ingestion of infected meat; muscular infections can occur if sporocysts ingested
- *Cryptosporidium* spp. cause intestinal disease, usually self-limited enterocolitis characterized by watery diarrhea without blood
- *Cyclospora:* illness self-limited in immunocompetent hosts, prolonged in HIV-infected individuals

Epidemiology

- *Cystoisospora* organisms distributed worldwide; disease frequent in patients with AIDS; infection reported with increasing frequency in both healthy and immunocompromised patients
- *Sarcocystis* spp. are isolated from pigs and cattle
- *Cryptosporidium* spp. are distributed worldwide
- *C. hominis* and *C. parvum* cause most human infections; *C. ubiquitum* and *C. felis* are emerging human pathogens
- *Cyclospora:* worldwide distribution; infection acquired through contaminated water; U.S. outbreaks correlated with consumption of contaminated fruits and vegetables

Diagnosis

- *C. belli* infection best diagnosed by careful examination of concentrated stool sediment
- *Sarcocystis* spp. sporocysts may be detected in human stool specimens
- *Cryptosporidium* spp. may be detected in unconcentrated stool specimens from immunocompromised patients with diarrhea
- Diagnosis of cyclosporiasis is based on microscopic detection of oocysts in stool
- Both *Cryptosporidium* and *Cyclospora* infections may be diagnosed by PCR

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- *C. belli:* treatment of choice is trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole; prevention and control effected by maintaining personal hygiene and sanitation, avoiding oral-anal sexual contact
- No known treatment for intestinal or muscular sarcocystosis in humans
- No broadly effective therapy has been developed for managing *Cryptosporidium* infections in immunocompromised patients; nitazoxanide is approved by the FDA for the treatment of cryptosporidiosis in nonimmunocompromised individuals older than 12 months
- Cyclosporiasis has been treated with modest success using trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole

FDA, U.S. Food and Drug Administration; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

Protozoa may colonize and infect the oropharynx, duodenum and small bowel, colon, and urogenital tract of humans. The majority of these parasites belong to the amebae and ciliates; however, infection with sporozoan/coccidian parasites may also be encountered (see Tables 67.4 and 70.2). These organisms are transmitted by the **fecal-oral route.** In the United States, transmission of intestinal protozoa is particularly problematic in day-care centers, in which several outbreaks of diarrhea caused by *Giardia* or *Cryptosporidium* species have been documented. In other parts of the world, the spread of enteric protozoal infections may be controlled in part by improved sanitation and by chlorination and filtration of water supplies; however, this may be difficult or impossible in many developing countries.

Amebae (Amoebozoa)

The amebae are primitive **unicellular** microorganisms. Their life cycle is relatively simple and divided into two stages: the actively motile feeding stage (trophozoite) and the quiescent, resistant, infective stage (cyst). Replication is accomplished by binary fission (splitting the trophozoite) or by the development of numerous trophozoites within the mature multinucleated cyst. Motility is

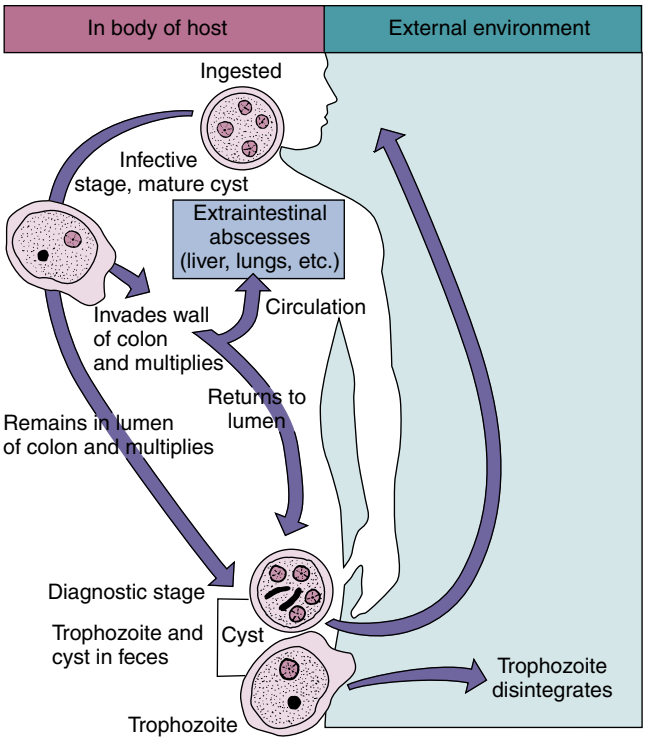


Fig. 72.1 Life cycle of *Entamoeba histolytica.*

accomplished by extension of a **pseudopod** ("false foot"), with extrusion of the cellular ectoplasm and then drawing up of the rest of the cell in a snail-like movement to meet this pseudopod. The amebic trophozoites remain actively motile as long as the environment is favorable. The cyst form develops when the environmental temperature or moisture level drops.

Most amebae found in humans are **commensal** organisms (*Entamoeba coli, E. hartmanni, E. dispar, E, moshkovskii, E. gingivalis, Endolimax nana, Iodamoeba buetschlii*). However, *E. histolytica* is an important human pathogen. Other amebae, particularly *E. polecki,* can cause human disease but are rarely isolated. Some free-living amebae (*Naegleria* spp., *Balamuthia* spp., *Acanthamoeba* spp.) are present in soil and in warm freshwater ponds or swimming pools and can be opportunistic human pathogens, causing meningoencephalitis or keratitis (see Chapter 73).

ENTAMOEBA HISTOLYTICA

Physiology and Structure

Cyst and trophozoite forms of *E. histolytica* are detected in fecal specimens from infected patients (Fig. 72.1). Trophozoites can also be found in the crypts of the large intestine. In freshly passed stools, actively motile trophozoites can be seen, whereas in formed stools, the cysts are usually the only form recognized. For the diagnosis of amebiasis, distinguishing between the *E. histolytica* trophozoites and cysts and those of commensal amebae, such as *E. coli,* is important (Table 72.1).

Pathogenesis

After ingestion, the cysts pass through the stomach, in which exposure to gastric acid stimulates the release of the pathogenic trophozoite in the duodenum. The trophozoites divide and produce extensive local necrosis in the large intestine. The basis for this tissue destruction is incompletely understood, although it is attributed to production of a **cytotoxin.** Attachment of *E. histolytica* trophozoites to host cells via a galactose-inhibitable adherence protein is required for cytolysis and tissue necrosis to occur. The lysis of colonic epithelial cells, human neutrophils, lymphocytes, and monocytes by trophozoites is associated with a lethal alteration of host cell membrane permeability, resulting in an irreversible increase in intracellular calcium levels. The release of toxic neutrophil constituents after the lysis of neutrophils may contribute to the tissue destruction. Flask-shaped ulcerations of the intestinal mucosa are present with inflammation, hemorrhage, and secondary bacterial infection. Invasion into the deeper mucosa with extension into the peritoneal cavity may occur. This can lead to secondary involvement of other organs, primarily the liver but also the lungs, brain, and heart. Extraintestinal amebiasis is associated with trophozoites. Amebae are found only in environments that have a low oxygen pressure because the protozoa are killed by ambient oxygen concentrations.

Lectin binding, zymodeme analysis, genome deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) analysis, and staining with specific monoclonal antibodies have been used as markers to identify invasive strains of *E. histolytica*. It is now recognized that the ameba morphologically identified as *E. histolytica* is actually four distinct species. The pathogenic species is *E. histolytica*, and the nonpathogenic species are *E. dispar, E. moshkovskii,* and *E. bangladeshi*. The zymodeme profiles and biochemical, molecular, and immunologic differences are stable and support the existence of four species. Of note, these four species are morphologically indistinguishable from one another.

TABLE 72.1 Morphologic Identification of *Entamoeba histolytica* and *Entamoeba coli*

	E. histolytica[a]	*E. coli*
SIZE (DIAMETER, μM)		
Trophozoite	12-50 μm	20-30 μm
Cyst	10-20 μm	10-30 μm
Pattern of peripheral nuclear chromatin	Fine, dispersed ring	Coarse, clumped
Karyosome	Central, sharp	Eccentric, coarse
Ingested erythrocytes	Present	Absent
CYST STRUCTURE		
Number of nuclei	1-4	1-8
Chromatoidal bars	Rounded ends	Splintered, frayed ends

[a]*E. histolytica* is morphologically indistinguishable from the commensal species *E. dispar, E. moshkovskii, and E. bangladeshi.*

Epidemiology

E. histolytica has a worldwide distribution. Although it is found in cold areas such as Alaska, Canada, and Eastern Europe, its incidence is highest in tropical and subtropical regions that have poor sanitation and contaminated water. The average prevalence of infection in these areas is 10% to 15%, with as

many as 50% of the population infected in some areas. Many of the infected individuals are asymptomatic carriers who represent a reservoir for the spread of *E. histolytica* to others. The prevalence of infection in the United States is 4% to 5%.

Patients infected with *E. histolytica* pass noninfectious trophozoites and the infectious cysts in their stools. The trophozoites cannot survive in the external environment or in transport through the stomach if ingested. Therefore the main source of water and food contamination is the asymptomatic carrier who passes cysts. This is a particular problem in hospitals for the mentally ill, military and refugee camps, prisons, and crowded day-care centers. Flies and cockroaches also can serve as mechanical vectors for the transmission of *E. histolytica* cysts. Sewage containing cysts can contaminate water systems, wells, springs, and agricultural areas in which human waste is used as fertilizer. Finally, cysts can be transmitted by oral-anal sexual practices, with amebiasis prevalent in homosexual populations. Direct trophozoite transmission in sexual encounters can produce cutaneous amebiasis.

Clinical Syndromes

The outcome of infection may result in a carrier state, intestinal amebiasis, or extraintestinal amebiasis. If the strain of *E. histolytica* has a low virulence, if the inoculum is low, or if the patient's immune system is intact, the organisms may reproduce, and cysts may be passed in stool specimens with no clinical symptoms. Although infections with *E. histolytica* may be asymptomatic, most asymptomatic individuals are infected with the noninvasive *E. dispar* or *E. moshkovskii*, as characterized by specific isoenzyme profiles (zymodemes), DNA-based assays, their susceptibility to complement-mediated lysis, and their failure to agglutinate in the presence of the lectin concanavalin A. Detection of carriers of *E. histolytica* in areas with a low endemicity is important for epidemiologic purposes.

Patients with intestinal amebiasis develop clinical symptoms related to the localized tissue destruction in the large intestine. These include abdominal pain, cramping, and colitis with diarrhea. More severe disease is characterized by numerous bloody stools per day. Systemic signs of infection (fever, leukocytosis, rigors) are present in patients with extraintestinal amebiasis. The liver is primarily involved because trophozoites in the blood are removed as they pass through this organ. Abscess formation is common (Clinical Case 72.1). The right lobe is most commonly involved. Pain over the liver with hepatomegaly and elevation of the diaphragm is observed.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The identification of *E. histolytica* trophozoites (Fig. 72.2) and cysts in stools and trophozoites in tissue is diagnostic of amebic infection (see Table 72.1). Care must be taken to distinguish between these amebae and commensal amebae, as well as between these amebae and polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Microscopic examination of stool specimens is inherently insensitive because the protozoa are not usually distributed homogeneously in the specimen, and the parasites are concentrated in the intestinal ulcers and at the margins of the abscess, not in the stool or the necrotic center of the abscess. For this reason, multiple stool specimens should be collected. Extraintestinal amebiasis is sometimes diagnosed using scanning procedures for the liver and other organs. Specific serologic tests, together with microscopic examination of the abscess material, can confirm the diagnosis. Virtually all patients with hepatic amebiasis and most patients (more than 80%) with intestinal disease have positive serologic findings at the time of clinical presentation. This may be less useful in endemic areas in which the prevalence of positive serologic results is higher. Examinations of stool specimens are frequently negative in extraintestinal disease. In addition to conventional microscopic and serologic tests, researchers have developed several immunologic tests for the detection of fecal antigen, as well as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and DNA-probe assays for the detection of pathogenic strains of *E. histolytica* (versus nonpathogenic *E. dispar* and *E. moshkovskii*). These newer diagnostic approaches are now commercially available (see Chapter 70).

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Acute, fulminating amebiasis is treated with metronidazole, followed by iodoquinol, diloxanide furoate, or paromomycin. Asymptomatic carriage can be eradicated

Clinical Case 72.1 **Human Immunodeficiency Virus and Amebic Liver Abscess**

Liu and colleagues (*J Clin Gastroenterol* 33:64–68, 2001) described a 45-year-old homosexual man who developed intestinal and hepatic amebiasis. The patient initially presented with intermittent fever, followed by right upper quadrant pain and diarrhea. On admission to the hospital, he was afebrile with an elevated white blood count and abnormal liver function tests. Stool examinations were positive for occult blood and white blood cells. He underwent colonoscopy, and multiple discrete ulcers were detected in the rectum and colon. The diagnosis of amebic colitis was confirmed by the demonstration of numerous trophozoites on histopathologic examination of colon biopsy specimens. Ultrasonic examination of the abdomen revealed a large heterogeneous mass within the liver, consistent with an abscess. Percutaneous drainage of the abscess obtained chocolate-like pus, and examination of a biopsy from the margin of the abscess revealed only necrotic material without evidence of amebae. Polymerase chain reaction amplification of amebic 16S ribosomal RNA from the aspirate was positive, indicating infection with *Entamoeba histolytica*. The patient was treated with metronidazole, followed by iodoquinol to eradicate the luminal amebae. Subsequent history revealed a history of travel to Thailand 2 months before the onset of the present illness. HIV serology was positive as well. The patient improved rapidly on antiamebic therapy and was discharged on antiretroviral therapy.

Although amebic cysts are frequently detected in the stools of homosexual men, previous studies in Western countries suggested that almost all isolates belonged to the nonpathogenic species, *Entamoeba dispar*, and invasive amebiasis was considered rare in HIV-positive individuals. This case illustrates that invasive amebiasis, such as amebic liver abscess and colitis, can accompany HIV infection. The possible association of invasive amebiasis with HIV infection should be kept in mind in patients living in or with a history of travel to areas endemic with *E. histolytica*.

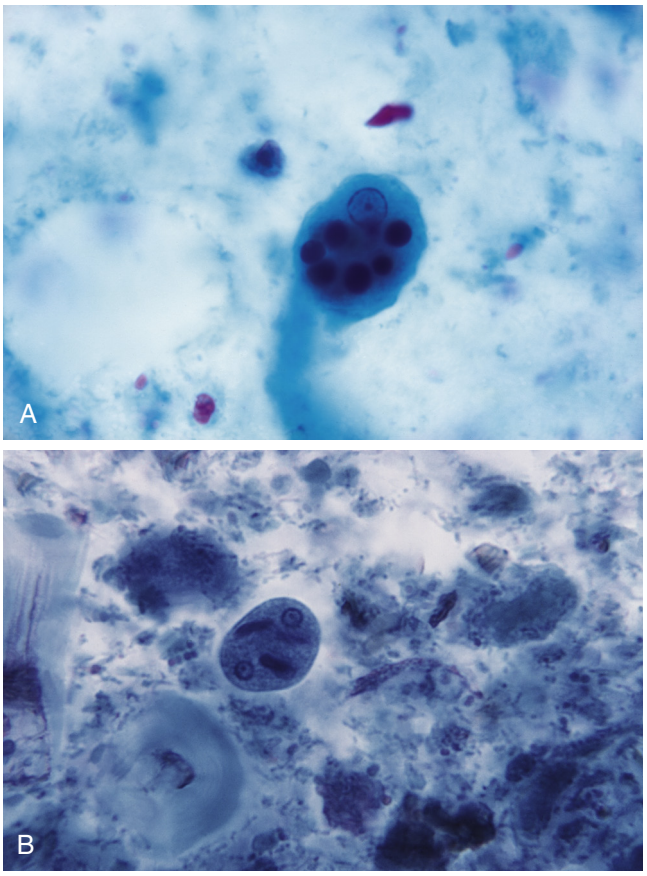


Fig. 72.2 *Entamoeba histolytica* (A) **trophozoite** and (B) **cyst. Trophozoites** are motile and vary in size from 12 to 60 μm (average, 15 to 30 μm). The single nucleus in the cell is round with a central dot (karyosome) and an even distribution of chromatin granules around the nuclear membrane. Ingested erythrocytes may be in the cytoplasm. The cysts are smaller (10 to 20 μm, with an average size of 15 to 20 μm) and contain one to four nuclei (usually four). Round chromatoidal bars may be in the cytoplasm. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

with iodoquinol, diloxanide furoate, or paromomycin. As already noted, human infection results from the ingestion of food or water contaminated with human feces or as a result of specific sexual practices. The elimination of the cycle of infection requires the introduction of adequate sanitation measures and education about the routes of transmission. The chlorination and filtration of water supplies may limit the spread of these and other enteric protozoal infections but are not possible in many developing countries. Physicians should alert travelers to developing countries about the risks associated with the consumption of water (including ice cubes), unpeeled fruits, and raw vegetables. Water should be boiled and fruits and vegetables thoroughly cleaned before consumption.

OTHER INTESTINAL AMEBAE

Other amebae that can parasitize the human gastrointestinal tract include *E. coli*, *E. hartmanni*, *E. polecki*, *E. nana*, *I. buetschlii*, and *Blastocystis* spp. *E. polecki*, which is primarily a parasite of pigs and monkeys, can cause human disease, which includes a mild, transient diarrhea. The diagnosis of *E. polecki* infection is confirmed by the microscopic detection of cysts in stool specimens. Treatment is the same as for *E. histolytica* infections.

Blastocystis spp., previously regarded as a nonpathogenic yeast, is now the center of considerable controversy concerning its taxonomic position and its pathogenicity. *Blastocystis* has recently been placed in the Kingdom Stramenopila (formerly Chromista), based on analysis of 18S ribosomal ribonucleic acid (rRNA) and other molecular evidence. Clinically, there are at least 17 subtypes (genotypes) within *Blastocystis*, nine of which have been detected in human stool. Human isolates of *Blastocystis* that in the past were referred to as *B. hominis* should be called *Blastocystis* spp. because there is not a single subtype specific to humans. The organism is found in stool specimens from asymptomatic individuals, as well as from persons with persistent diarrhea. It has been suggested that the presence of large numbers of these parasites (five or more per oil-immersion microscopic field) in the absence of other intestinal pathogens indicates disease. Other investigators have concluded that "symptomatic blastocystosis" is attributable to an undetected pathogen or functional bowel problems. The organism may be detected in wet mounts or trichrome-stained smears of fecal specimens. Treatment with iodoquinol or metronidazole has been successful in eradicating the organisms from the intestine and alleviating symptoms. However, the definitive role of this organism in disease remains to be demonstrated.

The nonpathogenic intestinal amebae are important because they must be differentiated from *E. histolytica*, *E. polecki*, and *Blastocystis* spp. This is particularly true for *E. coli*, which is frequently detected in stool specimens collected from patients exposed to contaminated food or water. Accurate identification of intestinal amebae requires careful microscopic examination of the cyst and trophozoite forms present in stained and unstained stool specimens (see Table 72.1). Also, differentiation of *E. dispar* and *E. moshkovskii* from *E. histolytica* is now possible using specific immunologic reagents.

Ciliates (Metamonada [Formerly Flagellates] and Ciliophora)

The Metamonada of clinical significance include *Giardia duodenalis* (*lamblia*/*intestinalis*), *Dientamoeba fragilis*, and *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Nonpathogenic commensal ciliates, such as *Chilomastix mesnili* (enteric) and *T. tenax* (oral), also may be observed. *Giardia* organisms, similar to *E. histolytica*, have cyst and trophozoite stages in their life cycles. In contrast, no cyst stage has been observed for *Trichomonas* species. A cyst stage of *D. fragilis* has been observed (rarely) in humans, although the role of the cyst form in transmission of *D. fragilis* infection is unclear. Unlike the amebae, most ciliates move by the lashing of cilia that propel the organisms through fluid environments. Diseases produced by the Metamonada are primarily the result of mechanical irritation and inflammation. For example, *G. duodenalis* (*lamblia*/*intestinalis*) attaches to the intestinal villi with an adhesive disk, resulting in localized tissue damage. The tissue invasion with extensive tissue destruction, as seen with *E. histolytica*, is rare with ciliates.

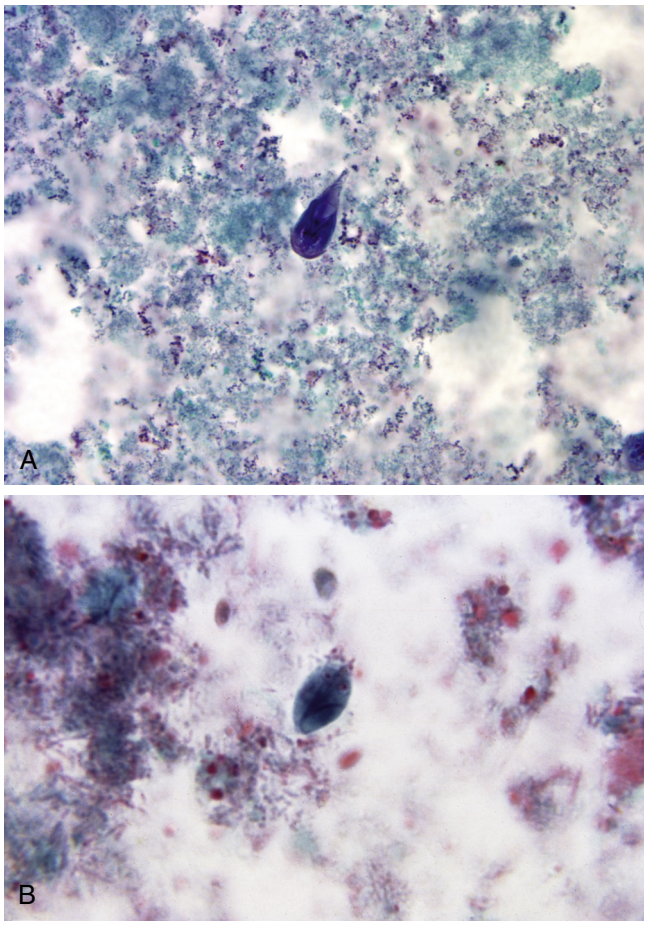


Fig. 72.3 (A) *Giardia duodenalis* trophozoite and (B) cyst. Trophozoites are 9 to 12 μm long and 5 to 15 μm wide. Flagella are present, as are two nuclei with large central karyosomes, a large ventral sucking disk for attachment of the flagellate to the intestinal villi, and two oblong parabasal bodies below the nuclei. The morphology gives the appearance that the trophozoites are looking back at the viewer. Cysts are smaller, 8 to 12 μm long and 7 to 10 μm wide. Nuclei and parabasal bodies are present. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

GIARDIA DUODENALIS (G. LAMBLIA; G. INTESTINALIS)

The literature refers to this organism as *G. duodenalis, G. lamblia,* and *G. intestinalis,* reflecting the ambiguity surrounding the classification and nomenclature of this parasite. Further studies are necessary to determine species designations or groupings; however, *G. duodenalis* is now the accepted species designation and will be used in this chapter.

Physiology and Structure

Both cyst and trophozoite forms of *G. duodenalis* are detected in fecal specimens from infected patients (Fig. 72.3).

Pathogenesis

Infection with *G. duodenalis* is initiated by ingestion of cysts (Fig. 72.4). The minimum infective dose for humans is estimated to be 10 to 25 cysts. Gastric acid stimulates excystation with the release of trophozoites in the duodenum and jejunum, in which the organisms multiply by **binary fission.** The trophozoites can attach to the intestinal villi by a

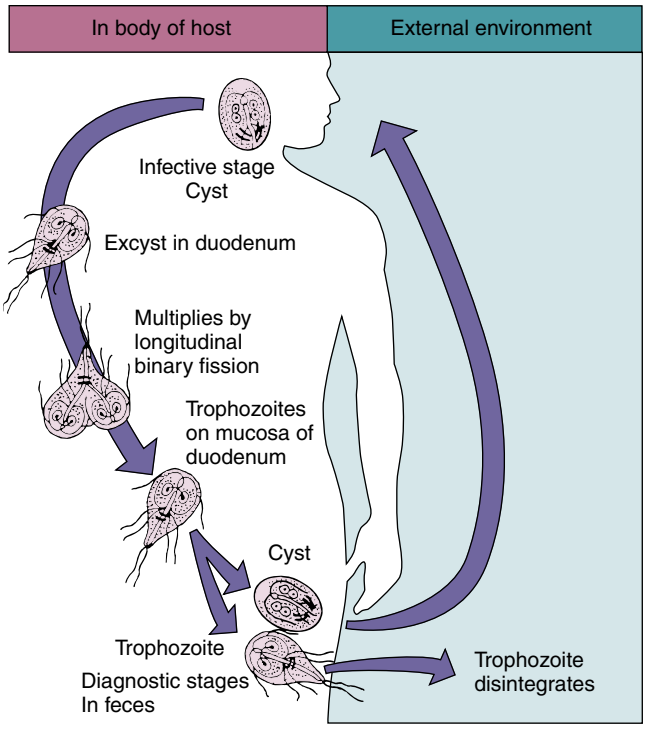


Fig. 72.4 Life cycle of *Giardia duodenalis.*

prominent ventral sucking disk. Although the tips of the villi may appear flattened, and inflammation of the mucosa with hyperplasia of lymphoid follicles may be observed, frank tissue necrosis does not occur. In addition, metastatic spread of disease beyond the gastrointestinal tract is very rare.

Epidemiology

The *Giardia* species has a worldwide distribution, and this organism has a sylvatic or "wilderness" distribution in many streams, lakes, and mountain resorts. This sylvatic distribution is maintained in reservoir animals such as beavers and muskrats. Giardiasis is acquired by the consumption of inadequately treated contaminated water, ingestion of contaminated uncooked vegetables or fruits, or person-to-person spread by the fecal-oral or oral-anal route. The cyst stage is resistant to chlorine concentrations (1 to 2 parts per million) used in most water-treatment facilities. Thus adequate water treatment should include chemicals plus filtration.

Risk factors associated with *Giardia* infections include poor sanitary conditions, travel to known endemic areas, consumption of inadequately treated water (e.g., from contaminated mountain streams), day-care centers, and oral-anal sexual practices. Infections may occur in outbreak and endemic forms within day-care centers and other institutional settings and among family members of infected children. Scrupulous attention to handwashing and treatment of all infected individuals are important in controlling the spread of infection in these settings.

Clinical Syndromes

Giardia infection can result in either asymptomatic carriage (observed in approximately 50% of infected individuals) or symptomatic disease, ranging from mild diarrhea to a severe malabsorption syndrome (Clinical Case 72.2). The incubation

Clinical Case 72.2 **Drug-Resistant Giardiasis**

Abboud and colleagues (*Clin Infect Dis* 32:1792–1794, 2001) described a case of metronidazole-resistant and albendazole-resistant giardiasis that was successfully treated with nitazoxanide. The patient was a 32-year-old homosexual man with AIDS who was admitted to the hospital because of intractable diarrhea. Examination of stool revealed the presence of numerous cysts of *Giardia duodenalis (G. lamblia)*. The patient was treated unsuccessfully five times with metronidazole and albendazole without improvement in diarrhea or cyst shedding. Although combined antiretroviral therapy also was administered, it was ineffective, and viral (HIV) genotypic analysis found mutations associated with high resistance to most antiretroviral drugs. The patient was subsequently treated for giardiasis with nitazoxanide, which resulted in resolution of the diarrhea and negative results of tests for stool cyst shedding. Resistance of the infecting strain of *G. duodenalis* to both metronidazole and albendazole was confirmed by in vivo and in vitro studies. Nitazoxanide may be considered a useful alternative therapy for resistant giardiasis.

period before symptomatic disease develops ranges from 1 to 4 weeks (average, 10 days). The onset of disease is sudden, with foul-smelling, watery diarrhea, abdominal cramps, flatulence, and steatorrhea. Blood and pus are rarely present in stool specimens, which is consistent with the absence of tissue destruction. Spontaneous recovery generally occurs after 10 to 14 days, although a more chronic disease with multiple relapses may develop. This is particularly a problem for patients with immunoglobulin A deficiency or intestinal diverticula.

Laboratory Diagnosis

With the onset of diarrhea and abdominal discomfort, stool specimens should be examined for cysts and trophozoites (see Fig. 72.3). The excretion of *Giardia* species may occur in "showers," with many organisms present in the stool on a given day and few or none detected the next day. For this reason, the physician should never accept the results of a single negative stool specimen as evidence that the patient is free of intestinal parasites. One stool specimen per day for 3 days should be examined. If stools remain persistently negative in a patient in whom giardiasis is highly suspected, additional specimens can be collected by duodenal aspiration, Entero-Test or string test, or biopsy of the upper small intestine. In addition to conventional microscopy, several immunologic tests for the detection of **fecal antigen** are available commercially. These tests include countercurrent immunoelectrophoresis, enzyme immunoassay, an immunochromatographic assay, and immunofluorescent staining. Reported sensitivities range from 88% to 98% and specificities from 87% to 100%. Numerous publications have documented the superior sensitivity of the immunoassay methods over that of routine microscopic examination of stool for the detection of *Giardia*. More recently, several molecular assays have been developed for the detection of *G. duodenalis* in clinical samples. Multiplex nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) panels have been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) with reported sensitivities and specificities of 98% to 100% and 99%, respectively.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

It is important to eradicate *Giardia* species from asymptomatic carriers and diseased patients. The drug of choice is metronidazole or nitazoxanide with furazolidone, tinidazole, paromomycin, albendazole, or quinacrine all acceptable alternatives. The prevention and control of giardiasis involves the avoidance of contaminated water and food, especially by the traveler and outdoorsman. Protection is afforded by boiling drinking water from streams and lakes or in countries with a high incidence of endemic disease. Maintenance of properly functioning filtration systems in municipal water supplies also is required because cysts are resistant to standard chlorination procedures. Public health efforts should be made to identify the reservoir of infection to prevent spread of disease. In addition, high-risk sexual behavior should be avoided.

DIENTAMOEBA FRAGILIS

Physiology and Structure

D. fragilis was initially classified as an ameba; however, the internal structures of the trophozoite are typical of a ciliate (Metamonada). A cyst stage has been detected in humans, but its role in transmission is unclear.

Epidemiology

D. fragilis has a worldwide distribution. The mode of transmission of *D. fragilis* is not completely understood. Some observers believe the organism can be transported from person to person inside the protective shell of worm eggs, such as those of *Enterobius vermicularis*, the pinworm. Transmission by the fecal-oral and oral-anal routes does occur.

Clinical Syndromes

Most infections with *D. fragilis* are asymptomatic, with colonization of the cecum and upper colon. However, some patients may develop symptomatic disease with abdominal discomfort, flatulence, intermittent diarrhea, anorexia, and weight loss. There is no evidence of tissue invasion with this organism, although irritation of the intestinal mucosa occurs.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Infection is confirmed by the microscopic examination of stool specimens in which typical trophozoites can be seen. The trophozoite is small (5 to 12 μm), with one or two nuclei. The central karyosome consists of four to six discrete granules. The excretion of the parasite may fluctuate markedly from day to day, thus collection of several stool samples may be necessary. Examination of a purged stool sample may also be useful. Several PCR assays are available for the detection of *D. fragilis,* although none are approved by the FDA in the United States.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Multiple differing antimicrobial agents have been used for treatment of *D. fragilis* infection with varying success. These include doxycycline, iodoquinol, metronidazole, paromomycin, and secnidazole. However, there is no consensus on the best approach for treating infections with this organism. The reservoir for *D. fragilis* and the organism's life cycle are unknown. Thus specific recommendations for prevention

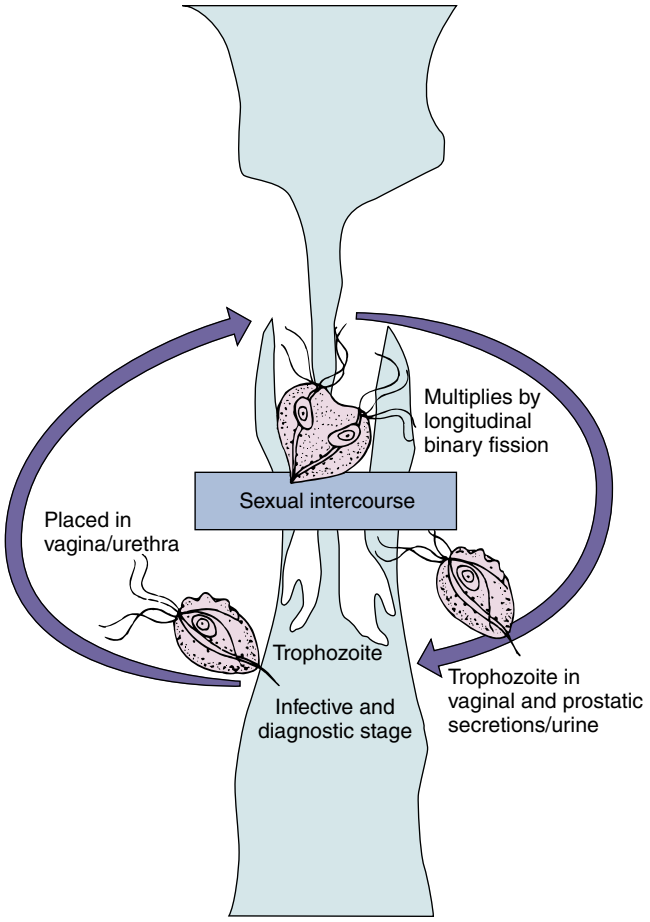


Fig. 72.5 Life cycle of *Trichomonas vaginalis.*

and control are difficult. However, infections can be avoided by maintaining adequate sanitary conditions. The eradication of infections with *Enterobius* organisms also may reduce the transmission of *Dientamoeba* infection.

TRICHOMONAS VAGINALIS

Physiology and Structure

T. vaginalis is not an intestinal protozoan; rather, it is the cause of urogenital infections. The organism's four cilia and short, undulating membrane are responsible for motility. *T. vaginalis* exists only as a trophozoite and is found in the urethras and vaginas of women and the urethras and prostate glands of men.

Epidemiology

This parasite has worldwide distribution, with sexual intercourse as the primary mode of transmission (Fig. 72.5). Occasionally, infections have been transmitted by fomites (toilet articles, clothing), although this transmission is limited by the lability of the trophozoite form. Infants may be infected by passage through the mother's infected birth canal. The prevalence of *T. vaginalis* in developed countries is reported to be 5% to 20% in women and 2% to 10% in men.

Clinical Syndromes

Most infected women are asymptomatic or have a scant, watery vaginal discharge. Vaginitis may occur with more extensive inflammation and erosion of the epithelial lining

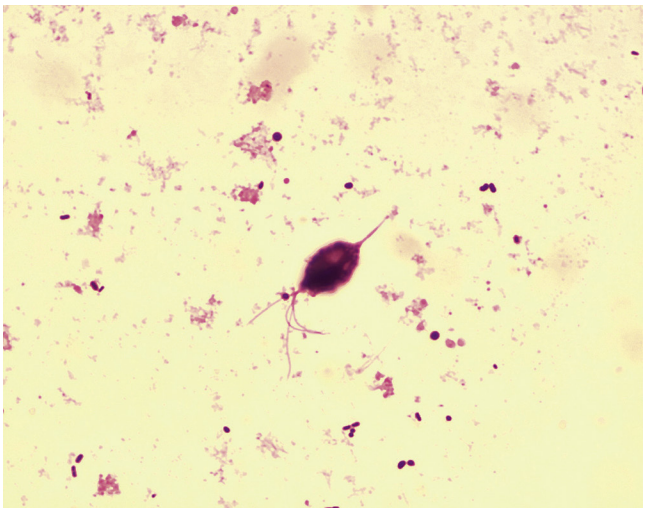


Fig. 72.6 *Trichomonas vaginalis* trophozoite. The trophozoite is 7 to 23 μm long and 6 to 8 μm wide (average, 13 × 7 μm). The flagella and a short, undulating membrane are present at one side, and an axostyle extends through the center of the parasite.

that is associated with itching, burning, and painful urination. Infection has also been associated with premature rupture of membranes, premature birth, other adverse pregnancy outcomes, and posthysterectomy cuff infections. Men are primarily asymptomatic carriers who serve as a reservoir for infections in women. However, men occasionally experience urethritis, prostatitis, and other urinary tract problems. Neonates can acquire the organism via passage through the birth canal and reports have documented *T. vaginalis* as a cause of neonatal pneumonia and conjunctivitis.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The microscopic examination of vaginal or urethral discharge for characteristic trophozoites is the diagnostic method of choice (Fig. 72.6). Stained (Giemsa, Papanicolaou) or unstained smears can be examined. The diagnostic yield may be improved by culturing the organism (93% sensitivity) or using monoclonal fluorescent antibody staining (86% sensitivity). A nucleic acid probe assay also is available commercially. Serologic tests may be useful in epidemiologic surveillance.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice is metronidazole. Both male and female sex partners must be treated to avoid reinfection. Resistance to metronidazole has been reported and may require retreatment with higher doses. More recently, tinidazole has received FDA approval for treatment of trichomoniasis in adults and may be used as a first-line agent or for cases refractory to metronidazole. Personal hygiene, avoidance of shared toilet articles and clothing, and safe sexual practices are important preventive actions. Elimination of carriage in men is critical for the eradication of disease.

NEOBALANTIDIUM COLI

The intestinal protozoan *N. coli* is the only member of the Ciliophora group that is pathogenic for humans. Disease produced by *N. coli* is similar to amebiasis because the organisms elaborate proteolytic and cytotoxic substances that mediate tissue invasion and intestinal ulceration.

Physiology and Structure

The life cycle of *N. coli* is simple, involving ingestion of infectious cysts, excystation, and invasion of trophozoites into the mucosal lining of the large intestine, cecum, and terminal ileum (Fig. 72.7). The trophozoite is covered with rows of hairlike cilia that aid in motility. Morphologically more complex than amebae, *N. coli* has a funnel-like primitive mouth called a **cytostome,** which is a large and small nucleus involved in reproduction, food vacuoles, and two contractile vacuoles.

Epidemiology

N. coli is distributed worldwide. Swine and (less commonly) monkeys are the most important reservoirs. Infections are transmitted by the fecal-oral route; outbreaks are associated with contamination of water supplies with pig feces. Person-to-person spread, including through food handlers, has been implicated in outbreaks. Risk factors associated with human disease include contact with swine and substandard hygienic conditions.

Clinical Syndromes

As with other protozoan parasites, asymptomatic carriage of *N. coli* can exist. Symptomatic disease is characterized by abdominal pain and tenderness, tenesmus, nausea, anorexia, and watery stools with blood and pus. Ulceration of the intestinal mucosa, as with amebiasis, can be seen; a secondary complication caused by bacterial invasion into the eroded intestinal mucosa can occur. Extraintestinal invasion of other organs is extremely rare in neobalantidiasis.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Microscopic examination of feces for trophozoites and cysts is performed. The trophozoite is very large, varying in length from 50 to 200 μm and in width from 40 to 70 μm. The surface is covered with cilia, and the prominent internal structure is a **macronucleus.** A **micronucleus** also is present. Two pulsating, contractile vacuoles also are seen in fresh preparations of the trophozoites. The cyst is smaller (40 to 60 μm in diameter), is surrounded by a clear refractile wall, and has a single nucleus in the cytoplasm. *N. coli* is a large organism compared with other intestinal protozoa and is readily detected in fresh, wet microscopic preparations.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice is tetracycline; iodoquinol and metronidazole are alternative antimicrobials. Actions for prevention and control are similar to those for amebiasis. Appropriate personal hygiene, maintenance of sanitary conditions, and the careful monitoring of pig feces are all important preventive measures.

Sporozoa (Apicomplexa)

Sporozoa constitute a very large group called **Apicomplexa** or **Coccidia,** some members of which are discussed in this section with the intestinal parasites and others with the blood and tissue parasites. All sporozoans demonstrate typical characteristics, especially the existence of asexual **(schizogony)** and sexual **(gametogony)** reproduction.

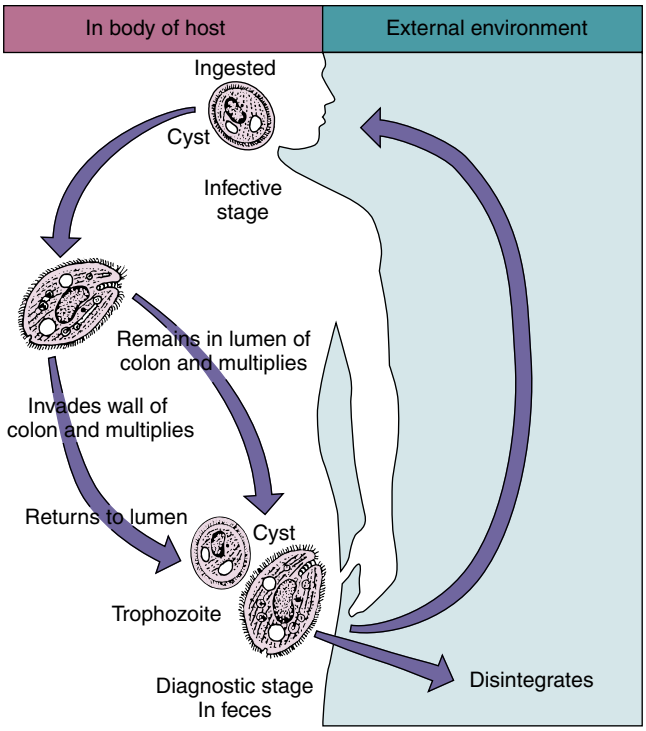


Fig. 72.7 Life cycle of *Neobalantidium coli.*

Most members of the group also share alternative hosts; for example, in malaria, mosquitoes harbor the sexual cycle and humans the asexual cycle. The intestinal Sporozoa discussed in this chapter are *Cystoisospora* (formerly *Isospora*), *Sarcocystis, Cryptosporidium*, and *Cyclospora* species.

CYSTOISOSPORA (FORMERLY *ISOSPORA*) *BELLI*

Physiology and Structure

C. belli is a coccidian parasite of the intestinal epithelium. Both sexual and asexual reproduction in the intestinal epithelium can occur, resulting in tissue damage (Fig. 72.8). The end product of gametogenesis is the oocyst, which is the diagnostic stage present in fecal specimens.

Epidemiology

Cystoisospora organisms are distributed worldwide but are infrequently detected in stool specimens. This parasite has been reported with increasing frequency in healthy and immunocompromised patients. This is probably because of the increased awareness of disease caused by *Cystoisospora* species in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). Infection with this organism follows ingestion of contaminated food or water or oral-anal sexual contact.

Clinical Syndromes

Infected individuals may be asymptomatic carriers or suffer mild to severe gastrointestinal disease. Disease most commonly mimics giardiasis, with a malabsorption syndrome characterized by loose, foul-smelling stools. Chronic diarrhea with weight loss, anorexia, malaise, and fatigue can be seen, although it is difficult to separate this presentation from the patient's underlying disease.

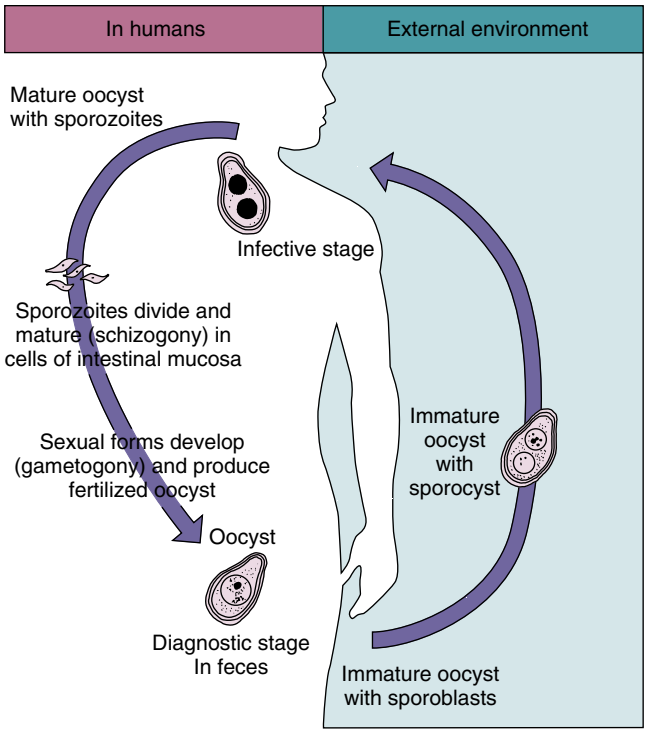


Fig. 72.8 Life cycle of *Cystoisospora* (formerly *Isospora*) species.

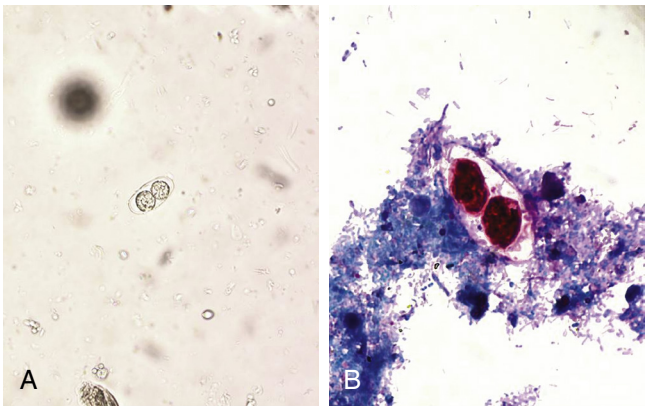


Fig. 72.9 Oocyst of *Cystoisospora belli* containing two sporoblasts. (A) Wet mount. (B) Acid-fast stain. Oocysts are ovoid (approximately 25 μm long and 15 μm wide) with tapering ends.

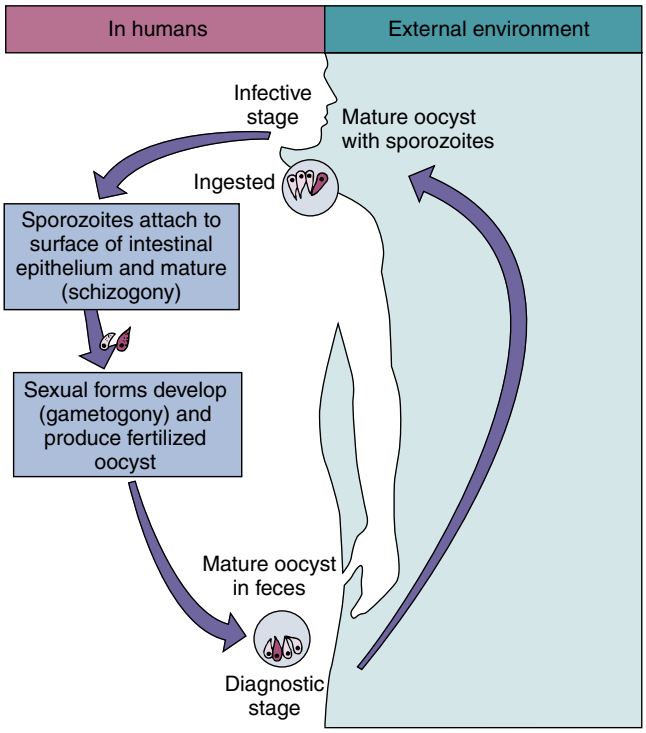


Fig. 72.10 Life cycle of *Cryptosporidium* species.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Careful examination of concentrated stool sediment and special staining with iodine or a modified acid-fast procedure reveal the parasite (Fig. 72.9). Small bowel biopsy has been used to establish the diagnosis when the results of tests on stool specimens are negative.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice is trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, with the combination of pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine an acceptable alternative. Prevention and control are effected by maintaining personal hygiene and highly sanitary conditions and by avoiding oral-anal sexual contact.

SARCOCYSTIS SPECIES

Sarcocystis species can be isolated from pigs and cattle and are identical in all aspects to *Cystoisospora* species, with one exception: *Sarcocystis* oocysts rupture before passage in stool specimens, and only sporocysts are present. Clinical *Sarcocystis* infections in humans can manifest either as intestinal disease if infected meat is ingested or as muscular disease if sporocysts are ingested. Intestinal disease is characterized by nausea, abdominal pain, and diarrhea. Some individuals can be infected and show no clinical signs. Muscle sarcocysts in humans are associated with fever and muscle pain. Recent findings indicate that foodborne outbreaks of diarrhea can occur in humans that eat raw horse meat containing sarcocysts of *S. fayeri*. These sarcocysts produce a 15-kDa actin-depolymerizing factor protein that induces diarrhea in model systems. There is no known treatment for intestinal or muscular sarcocystosis in humans. There are no published attempts to treat patients with *S. fayeri* food poisoning. It most likely can be prevented by cooking horse meat prior to consumption based on the toxin structure.

CRYPTOSPORIDIUM SPECIES

Physiology and Structure

The life cycle of *Cryptosporidium* species is typical of coccidians, as is the intestinal disease, but this species differs in the intracellular location of the organism in the epithelial cells (Fig. 72.10). In contrast to the deep intracellular invasion observed with *Cystoisospora* species, *Cryptosporidium* organisms are found just within the brush border of the intestinal epithelium. The coccidia attach to the surface of the cells and replicate by a series of processes (merogony, gametogony, sporogony) leading to the production of new

Clinical Case 72.3 **Cryptosporidiosis**

Quiroz and colleagues (*J Infect Dis* 181:685–700, 2000) described an outbreak of cryptosporidiosis that was linked to a food handler. In the fall of 1998, an outbreak of gastroenteritis among university students was reported to the Department of Health. Preliminary findings suggested that the illness was associated with eating at one of the campus cafeterias; four employees of this cafeteria had a similar illness. The outbreak was thought to be caused by a viral agent until *Cryptosporidium parvum* was detected in the stool specimen of several cafeteria employees. In a case-control study of 88 case patients and 67 control subjects, eating in one of two cafeterias was associated with diarrheal illness. *C. parvum* was detected in stool samples of 16 (70%) of 23 ill students and 2 of 4 ill employees. One ill food handler with laboratory-confirmed cryptosporidiosis prepared raw produce on the days surrounding the outbreak. All 25 *C. parvum* isolates submitted for DNA analysis, including three from the ill food handler, were genotype 1. This outbreak illustrates the potential for cryptosporidiosis to cause foodborne illness. Epidemiologic and molecular evidence indicate that an ill food handler was the likely outbreak source.

infectious oocysts. After sporogony, the mature oocysts may either excyst within the digestive tract of the host, leading to the infection of new cells, or may be excreted into the environment.

Epidemiology

Cryptosporidium species are distributed worldwide. Infection is reported in a wide variety of animals, including mammals, reptiles, and fish. There are over 30 different species of *Cryptosporidium*; however, *C. hominis* and *C. parvum* are the species most commonly infecting humans. Waterborne transmission of cryptosporidiosis is now well documented as an important route of infection. The massive outbreak of cryptosporidiosis in Milwaukee in 1993 (approximately 300,000 individuals infected) was linked to contamination of the municipal water supply. Cryptosporidia are resistant to the usual water-purification procedures (chlorination and ozone), and it is believed that runoff of local waste and surface water into municipal water supplies is an important source of contamination. Zoonotic spread from animal reservoirs to humans, as well as person-to-person spread by fecal-oral and oral-anal routes, also are common means of infection. Veterinary personnel, animal handlers, children, homosexual men, and immunocompromised individuals (the elderly, AIDS patients, persons with primary immunodeficiency, and cancer and transplant patients undergoing immunosuppressive therapy) are at particularly high risk for infection. Many outbreaks have now been described in municipal swimming pools and day-care centers, in which fecal-oral transmission is common.

Clinical Syndromes

As with other protozoan infections, exposure to *Cryptosporidium* organisms may result in asymptomatic carriage (Clinical Case 72.3). Disease in previously healthy individuals is usually a mild, self-limiting **enterocolitis** characterized by watery diarrhea without blood. Spontaneous remission after an average of 10 days is characteristic. In contrast, disease in immunocompromised patients (e.g., patients with AIDS), characterized by 50 or more stools per day and tremendous fluid loss, can be severe and last for months to years. In some patients with AIDS, disseminated *Cryptosporidium* infections have been reported.

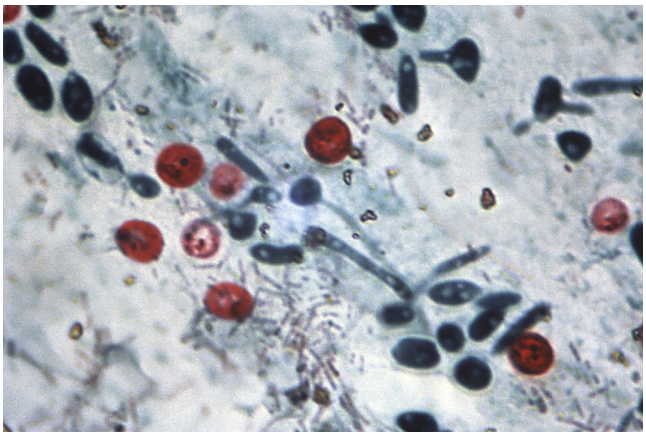


Fig. 72.11 Acid-fast–stained *Cryptosporidium* oocysts (approximately 5 to 7 μm in diameter). (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

Laboratory Diagnosis

Cryptosporidium may be detected in large numbers in unconcentrated stool specimens obtained from immunocompromised individuals with diarrhea. Oocysts generally measure 5 to 7 μm and may be concentrated with the modified zinc sulfate centrifugal flotation technique or the Sheather sugar flotation procedure. Specimens may be stained using the modified **acid-fast** method (Fig. 72.11) or by a direct immunofluorescence assay. Both an enzyme immunoassay and an immunochromatographic assay for detecting fecal antigen are commercially available. It should be noted that *Cryptosporidium* will not be detected on routine microscopic examination for ova and parasites (need to specify acid-fast staining) and that data now suggest that the immunoassays are superior to microscopic methods for detection of this organism in fecal samples. The number of oocysts shed in stool may fluctuate; therefore a minimum of three specimens should be examined. Serologic procedures are used in epidemiologic and seroprevalence studies but are not yet widely available for diagnosing and monitoring infections. PCR assays for *Cryptosporidium* spp. are commercially available as part of gastrointestinal or multiplex enteric panel assays targeting major diarrheal pathogens. They offer high sensitivity, specificity, and the ability to detect co-infections, and may lead to more frequent detection of *Cryptosporidium*, which is not commonly ordered in tests of diarrheal pathogens

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Nitazoxanide is approved by the FDA for the treatment of cryptosporidiosis in nonimmunocompromised individuals older than 12 months, but it is not yet approved for treatment of cryptosporidiosis in immunocompromised individuals. Unfortunately, no broadly effective therapy has been developed for managing *Cryptosporidium* infections in immunocompromised patients. The drugs paromomycin

and azithromycin have been used to treat cryptosporidiosis in HIV-infected patients and have been shown to reduce the parasite load. There is also evidence to suggest that some antiretroviral compounds may have a direct inhibitory effect on *Cryptosporidium*. Spiramycin may help control the diarrhea in some patients in the early stages of AIDS who have cryptosporidiosis, but it is ineffective in patients who have progressed to the later stages of AIDS. Spiramycin was no more effective than placebo in treating cryptosporidial diarrhea in infants. Therapy consists primarily of supportive measures to restore the tremendous fluid loss from the watery diarrhea.

Because of the widespread distribution of this organism in humans and other animals, preventing infection is difficult. The same methods of improved personal hygiene and sanitation used for other intestinal protozoa should be maintained for this disease. Contaminated water supplies should be treated with chlorination and filtration. In addition, avoidance of high-risk sexual activities is critical.

CYCLOSPORA SPECIES

Physiology and Structure

Cyclospora is a coccidian parasite that is taxonomically related to *Cystoisospora* species, *Cryptosporidium parvum*, and *Toxoplasma gondii*. A single species infecting humans, *C. cayetanensis*, has been identified thus far.

Cyclospora organisms are similar to *Cystoisospora* in that oocysts are excreted unsporulated and require a period of time outside the host for maturation to occur. On ingestion, the sporulated oocyst undergoes the excystation process in the lumen of the small intestine, releasing sporozoites. Sporozoites infect cells to form type I merozoites, and these form type II merozoites. The type II merozoites differentiate within the mucosal cells into sexual stages, the microgametocytes and macrogametocytes. The macrogametocyte is fertilized by the microgametocyte and produces a zygote. Oocysts are then formed and excreted into the environment as unsporulated oocysts. The pathogenic mechanisms by which *Cyclospora* species cause clinical illness are unknown; however, the organism usually infects the upper small bowel and causes pronounced histopathologic changes. The organism is found within vacuoles in the cytoplasm of jejunal epithelial cells, and its presence is associated with inflammatory changes, villous atrophy, and crypt hyperplasia.

The morphologic characteristics of *Cyclospora* species are similar to those of *Cystoisospora* species and *C. parvum* with a few exceptions. The oocysts of *Cyclospora* species are spheric and are 8 to 10 μm in diameter, as opposed to the smaller oocysts of *C. parvum* (5 to 7 μm) and the much larger elliptic oocysts of *Cystoisospora* species (15 to 25 μm). The oocysts of *Cyclospora* species contain two sporocysts, each of which contains two sporozoites, which in turn contain a membrane-bound nucleus and micronemes characteristic of the sporozoans. In contrast, the *Cryptosporidium* oocyst contains four naked, or nonencysted, sporozoites, whereas the *Cystoisospora* oocyst contains two sporocysts, each containing four sporozoites.

Epidemiology

As with *Cryptosporidium*, *Cyclospora* is widely distributed throughout the world and infects a variety of reptiles, birds, and mammals. Although direct animal-to-human or person-to-person transmission has not been documented, there is now compelling evidence that *Cyclospora* infection is acquired through contaminated water. In areas of endemicity, such as Nepal, studies have documented an annual surge of cyclosporiasis that coincides with the rainy season. The prevalence of infection (symptomatic and asymptomatic) ranges from 2% to 18% in endemic areas and is estimated at 0.1% to 0.5% in developed countries. Outbreaks in the United States have occurred during the summer months and have been correlated with the consumption of contaminated fruits and vegetables; transmission via contaminated water has also been documented. Similar to *Cryptosporidium*, *Cyclospora* species are resistant to chlorination and not readily detected by methods used currently to ensure the safety of supplies of drinking water.

Clinical Syndromes

The clinical manifestations of cyclosporiasis resemble those of cryptosporidiosis and include mild nausea, anorexia, abdominal cramping, and watery diarrhea. Fatigue, malaise, flatulence, and bloating also have been reported. In immunocompetent hosts, diarrhea is self-limited but may be prolonged and last for weeks. Among immunocompromised people (specifically, patients infected with HIV) clinical illness is typically prolonged and severe and is associated with a high rate of recurrence. Biliary tract infection with *Cyclospora* infection has been reported in patients with AIDS.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The diagnosis of cyclosporiasis is based on the microscopic detection of oocysts in stool. Oocysts may be detected by light microscopic examination of unstained fecal material (wet mount), in which they appear as nonrefractile, spheric to oval, slightly wrinkled bodies measuring 8 to 10 μm in diameter; they have an internal cluster of membrane-bound globules (Fig. 72.12). In fresh specimens, *Cyclospora* organisms fluoresce when examined with an ultraviolet fluorescence microscope fitted with a 365-nm excitation filter.

Cyclospora oocysts may be concentrated with the modified zinc sulfate centrifugal flotation technique or the Sheather sugar flotation procedure. Organisms are acid-fast, so they can be detected using one of the many acid-fast staining techniques, including the modified Ziehl-Neelsen stain or the Kinyoun acid-fast stain (Fig. 72.13). A distinguishing feature of *Cyclospora* species is its variable appearance on acid-fast staining, which ranges from unstained to mottled pink to deep red.

The relative sensitivity, specificity, and predictive value of the various methods for diagnosing *Cyclospora* infection are not known. Currently, there are no immunodiagnostic techniques to aid in the diagnosis and monitoring of these infections. Much attention has been placed on molecular methods to detect *C. cayetanensis* oocysts in stools, in water samples, and on produce because of the numerous outbreaks of *C. cayetanensis* infections. Gastrointestinal panels are available that can test simultaneously for multiple enteric pathogens, including bacterial, viral, and parasitic pathogens. A multiplex assay for *Giardia* spp., *E. histolytica*, *Cyclospora* spp., and *Cryptosporidium* spp. is commercially available and approved by the FDA.

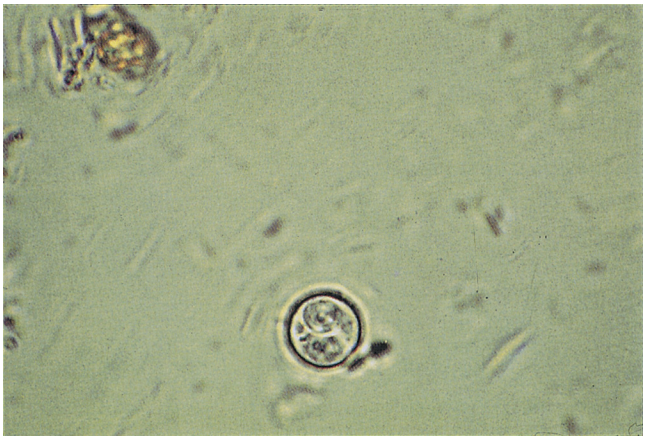


Fig. 72.12 Sporulated oocyst of *Cyclospora cayetanensis*. The oocysts measure 8 to 10 μm in diameter and contain two sporocysts, each with two sporozoites (saline wet mount, ×900). (Courtesy Mr. J. Williams; from Peters, W., Giles, H.M., 1995. Color Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, fourth ed. Mosby, London.)

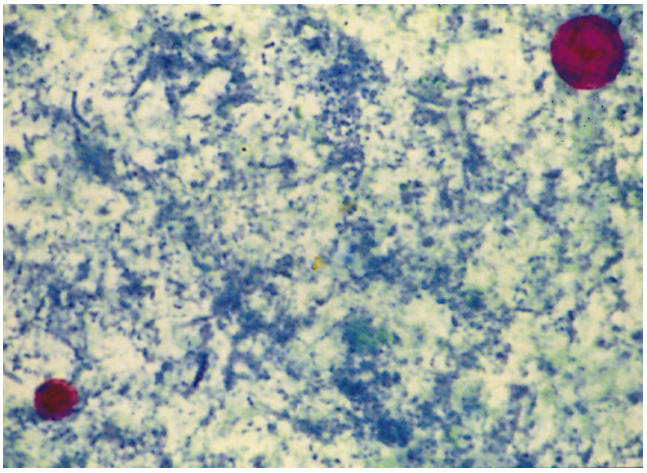


Fig. 72.13 Oocysts of *Cryptosporidium parvum (lower left)* and *Cyclospora cayetanensis (upper right)*. Both parasites stain red with Ziehl-Neelsen stain; however, *Cyclospora* organisms typically take up variable amounts of the stain, and the oocysts are larger (8 to 10 μm compared with 5 to 7 μm). (Courtesy Mr. J. Williams; from Peters, W., Giles, H.M., 1995. Color Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, fourth ed. Mosby, London.)

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice for the treatment of *C. cayetanensis* infection is trimethoprim (160 mg)-sulfamethoxazole (800 mg) given twice daily for 7 days. The effectiveness of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole has been demonstrated in anecdotal reports, in a large, open-label study of patients infected with HIV and in a placebo-controlled trial. In HIV-infected patients, it appears that the high rate of recurrence can be attenuated with long-term suppressive therapy with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Although numerous additional agents, including metronidazole, nitazoxanide, ciprofloxacin, norfloxacin, quinacrine, nalidixic acid, tinidazole, and diloxanide furoate, have been used in various trials, the effectiveness of any one of these agents has not been proved.

As with *Cryptosporidium* species, prevention of *Cyclospora* infection is difficult. Although *Cyclospora* organisms appear resistant to chlorination, the treatment of water supplies with chlorination and filtration remains a reasonable practice. In addition, the same methods of improved personal hygiene and sanitation used for other intestinal protozoa should be used as preventive measures for this disease.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Abubakar, I., et al., 2007. Treatment of cryptosporidiosis in immunocompromised individuals: systematic review and meta-analysis. Brit. J. Pharmacol. 63, 387–393.

Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, Conn.

Espinosa-Cantellano, M., Martinez-Palomo, A., 2000. Pathogenesis of intestinal amebiasis: from molecules to disease. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 13, 318–331.

Fayer, R., 2004. *Sarcocystis* spp. in humans. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 17, 894–902.

Feng, Y., Xiao, L., 2011. Zoonotic potential and molecular epidemiology of *Giardia* species and giardiasis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 24, 110–140.

Garcia, L.S., et al., 2018. Laboratory diagnosis of parasites from the gastrointestinal tract. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 31:e00025–17.

Gardner, T.B., Hill, D.R., 2001. Treatment of giardiasis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 14, 114–128.

Lindsay, D.S., Weiss, L.M., 2015. *Cystoisospora, Cyclospora,* and *Sarcocystis*. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

McHardy, I.H., Wu, M., Shmizu-Cohen, R., Couturier, M.R., Humphries, R.M., 2014. Detection of intestinal protozoa in the clinical laboratory. J. Clin. Microbiol. 52, 712–720.

Novak-Weekly, S.M., Leber, A.L., 2015. Intestinal and urogenital amebae, flagellates, and ciliates. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Ortega, Y.R., Sanchez, R., 2010. Update on Cyclospora cayetanensis, a food-borne and waterborne parasite. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 23, 218–234.

Peters, W., Giles, H.M., 1995. Color Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, fourth ed. Mosby, London.

Stark, D., et al., 2009. Clinical significance of enteric protozoa in the immunosuppressed human population. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 22, 634–650.

Tan, K.S.W., 2008. New insights on classification, identification, and clinical relevance of Blastocysis spp. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 21, 639–665.

Verweij, J.J., Stensvold, C.R., 2014. Molecular testing for clinical diagnosis and epidemiological investigations of intestinal parasite infections. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 27, 371–418.

Case Study and Questions

A 25-year-old man has profuse watery, nonbloody diarrhea but has no fever. He is HIV-positive, and his current CD4 T-cell count is 50.

1. Which of the following is least likely to be the cause of his symptoms?
   a. *Cyclospora cayetanensis*
   b. *Entamoeba histolytica*
   c. *Enterocytozoon bieneusi*
   d. *Cryptosporidium parvum*

2. How would you make the diagnosis?

3. What is the mode of transmission of the possible etiologic agents?
   a. Aerosol
   b. Percutaneous
   c. Fecal-oral
   d. Vector

73 Blood and Tissue Protozoa

The patient, a 44-year-old heart transplant patient, complained to her primary physician about headache, nausea, and vomiting approximately 1 year after transplant. She had no skin lesions. A computed tomography (CT) scan of the head demonstrated ring-enhancing lesions. A biopsy of the lesions was performed. All cultures (bacterial, fungal, viral) were negative. Special stains of the tissue revealed multiple cystlike structures of varying size.

1. What was the differential diagnosis of infectious agents in this patient? What was the most likely etiologic agent?
2. What other tests would have been done to confirm the diagnosis?
3. What aspects of the medical history might suggest a risk for infection with this agent?
4. What were the therapeutic options and the likelihood that therapy would be successful?

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

PLASMODIUM

Trigger Words

Malaria, quotidian, tertian, quartan, blackwater fever, cerebral malaria, benign tertian, malignant tertian, multiple ring forms, gametocytes, *Anopheles* mosquito, tropics and subtropics, prophylaxis

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Plasmodia: coccidian or sporozoan parasites of RBCs
- Five species that infect humans share a common life cycle
- Routes of acquisition: mosquito, transfusion, needle sharing, congenital
- *P. falciparum* produces daily (quotidian) chills and fever with nausea, vomiting, diarrhea progressing to tertian (36 to 48 hours) periodicity with fulminating disease (malignant tertian); no persistent liver stage
- *P. knowlesi* produces daily (quotidian) fever, chills, headache, rigors, abdominal pain, cough (severe symptoms in 7% of cases; respiratory distress and hepatorenal failure); no persistent liver stage
- *P. vivax* causes "benign tertian malaria" with paroxysms of fever and chills every 48 hours; a spectrum of severe, life-threatening syndromes similar to that with *P. falciparum* may be seen; a liver stage may cause relapses and recrudescences
- *P. ovale* causes benign tertian malaria similar to that of *P. vivax* with both relapses and recrudescence
- *P. malariae* has a long (18 to 40 days) incubation period and causes a moderate to severe disease with a 72-hour (quartan or malarial malaria) periodicity; no persistent liver stage

Epidemiology

- Infection with *Plasmodium* spp. accounts for 216 million episodes with approximately 500,000 deaths annually, 90% of which are in Africa
- Vector is the *Anopheles* mosquito, which is widely distributed in tropical, subtropical, and temperate regions
- *P. falciparum:* occurs almost exclusively in tropical and subtropical regions
- *P. knowlesi:* infects Old World Monkeys, and increasingly humans, in Malaysia and neighboring countries throughout Southeast Asia
- *P. vivax:* widest geographic distribution (tropics, subtropics, temperate regions); 80% of cases occur in South America and Southeast Asia
- *P. ovale:* distributed primarily in tropical Africa; also found in Asia and South America
- *P. malariae:* occurs in same tropical and subtropical areas as other malarial parasites but less prevalent

Diagnosis

- Most widely used method: detection of parasites in thick and thin blood films stained with Giemsa or Wright stain
- Antigen detection using an RDT; used in both the field and diagnostic laboratories as an adjunct to microscopic examination of blood films

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment of malaria is based on history regarding travel to endemic areas, prompt clinical review and differential diagnosis, accurate and rapid laboratory work, and correct use of antimalarial drugs
- Chloroquine or parenteral quinine is drug of choice for susceptible strains of *Plasmodium;* widespread resistance to chloroquine seen with *P. falciparum* and *P. vivax*
- Chemoprophylaxis with chloroquine, doxycycline, Malarone, or mefloquine coupled with avoiding mosquito bites (netting, insect repellents, clothing) required for prevention
- Elimination of mosquito breeding places

BABESIA

Trigger Words

Babesia, zoonosis, ticks, tetrad forms, splenectomy, intracellular, RBC

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Intracellular sporozoan parasites, morphologically resemble plasmodia
- Zoonosis infecting a variety of animals
- *Babesia microti:* usual cause of babesiosis in United States; transmitted by *Ixodes* ticks
- Incubation period of 1 to 4 weeks
- Symptoms: general malaise, fever without periodicity, headache, chills, sweating, fatigue, weakness
- Hemolytic anemia coupled with renal failure can occur
- Splenectomy or functional asplenia, immunosuppression, HIV infection, advanced age increase susceptibility to infections and more severe disease

Epidemiology

- >70 different species of *Babesia* found in Africa, Asia, Europe, North America
- *Ixodes dammini:* tick vector along U.S. northeastern seaboard
- Natural reservoir hosts: field mice, voles, other small rodents
- Disease may be severe in HIV-infected individuals
- *B. microti* increasingly transmitted by blood transfusions

Diagnosis

- Examination of blood smears is diagnostic method of choice
- Serologic tests and PCR also used to diagnose babesiosis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment of choice for mild to moderate illness: combination of atovaquone and azithromycin

Continued

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms—cont'd

- Treatment for severe disease: clindamycin, quinine, exchange transfusion
- Protective clothing, insect repellents can minimize tick exposure
- Prompt removal of ticks can be protective

TOXOPLASMA GONDII

Trigger Words

Cat feces, raw meat, lymphadenitis, CNS lesion, encephalomyelitis, cat litter, congenital infection, AIDS

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Typical coccidian intracellular parasite found in a wide variety of animals, including birds and humans
- Essential reservoir host: common house cat and other felines
- Most *T. gondii* infections asymptomatic
- Symptoms occur when parasite moves from blood to tissues; include fever, chills, headaches, myalgia, lymphadenitis, fatigue
- Chronic disease marked by hepatitis, encephalomyelitis, and myocarditis
- Chorioretinitis may lead to blindness
- Congenital infection has serious sequelae
- Reactivation of cerebral toxoplasmosis is a major cause of encephalitis in patients with AIDS

Epidemiology

- Human infections ubiquitous
- Infection from ingestion of improperly cooked meat from intermediate-host animals or ingestion of infective oocysts from contaminated cat feces
- Transplacental infection can occur during pregnancy
- Rate of severe infection affected by patient's immune status
- Illness in immunocompromised host believed to be caused by reactivation of previously latent infection rather than new exposure to organism

Diagnosis

- Increasing antibody titers documented in serially collected blood specimens
- Panel of tests (TSP) is used to determine recent versus past acquisition of infection
- Diagnosis of *Toxoplasma* encephalitis usually involves imaging study of brain
- Microscopy, serologic, and molecular techniques may be required for definitive diagnosis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment of choice: initial high-dose regimen of pyrimethamine plus sulfadiazine followed by lower doses of both drugs indefinitely (AIDS patients and other immunocompromised patients)
- Clindamycin or spiramycin may be used in first trimester of pregnancy
- High-risk patients may be considered for prophylaxis
- Additional preventive measures: avoid consumption and handling of raw or undercooked meat, avoid exposure to cat feces

LEISHMANIA

Trigger Words

Kala-azar, Dumdum fever, cutaneous and mucocutaneous disease, visceral leishmaniasis, sand fly, post–kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- *Leishmania:* obligate intracellular parasites transmitted from animal to human or human to human by bites from infected female sand fly
- Many different species can infect humans, producing a variety of diseases (cutaneous, diffuse cutaneous, mucocutaneous, visceral)
- Clinical syndromes depend on species involved; most common species: cutaneous *(L. tropica),* mucocutaneous *(L. braziliensis),* visceral *(L. donovani, L. infantum),* post–kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis *(L. donovani)*

Epidemiology

- Natural reservoirs: rodents, possums, anteaters, sloths, dogs, cats
- Infection may be transmitted by animal-vector-human or human-vector-human cycle, by direct contact with infected lesion, or mechanically by flies
- Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis most often occurs in Bolivia, Brazil, Peru; cutaneous leishmaniasis much more widespread throughout Middle East and in focal areas of South America
- Visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar, Dumdum fever): ≈50,000 cases per year, 90% localized to Bangladesh, Brazil, India, Nepal, Sudan

Diagnosis

- Diagnosis of visceral, cutaneous, or mucocutaneous leishmaniasis made on clinical grounds in endemic areas
- Definitive diagnosis depends on detecting amastigotes in clinical samples or promastigotes in culture; molecular techniques have been used for diagnosis, prognosis, and species identification

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Drug of choice for all forms of leishmaniasis is the pentavalent antimonial compound sodium stibogluconate (Pentostam)
- Fluconazole and miltefosine efficacious in cutaneous disease
- Stibogluconate remains drug of choice for mucocutaneous leishmaniasis
- Prevention involves prompt treatment of human infections and control of reservoir hosts, along with vector control

TRYPANOSOMES

Trigger Words

Sleeping sickness, tsetse fly, reduviid bugs, chagoma, Romaña sign, megaesophagus, Winterbottom sign, Chagas disease

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- *Trypanosoma*, a hemoflagellate, causes two distinctly different forms of disease: African trypanosomiasis and American trypanosomiasis
- African trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness): chronic disease of several years' duration, transmitted by tsetse flies, fatal without treatment
- American trypanosomiasis (Chagas disease): asymptomatic, acute, or chronic forms, transmitted by reduviid bugs

Epidemiology

- *T. brucei gambiense* limited to tropical West and Central Africa, correlating to range of tsetse fly vector
- *T. b. rhodesiense* found in East Africa, especially cattle-raising countries
- Domestic and wild game animals act as reservoir hosts for *T. b. rhodesiense*
- *T. cruzi* occurs widely in both reduviid bugs and a wide variety of reservoir animals in North, Central, and South America
- Because of the chronic nature of infection, screening of solid organ and blood donors for Chagas disease has become important

Diagnosis

- Agents of sleeping sickness can be demonstrated in blood films, aspirations from lymph nodes, and concentrated spinal fluid
- *T. cruzi* can be demonstrated in blood films early in acute stage of disease

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Suramin: drug of choice for treating acute blood and lymphatic stages of both Gambian and Rhodesian forms of sleeping sickness; pentamidine is an alternative
- Melarsoprol: drug of choice for CNS disease
- Effective control measures: integrated approach to reduce human reservoir of infection, use of fly traps and insecticide
- Drugs of choice for treatment of Chagas disease: benznidazole and nifurtimox
- Vector control important: insecticide, eradication of nests, construction of homes to prevent nesting of bugs

CNS, Central nervous system; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *RBC,* red blood cell; *RDT,* rapid diagnostic test; TSP, *T. gondii* serologic profile.

BOX 73.1 Medically Important Blood and Tissue Protozoa

Plasmodium species
Babesia species
Toxoplasma species
Sarcocystis species
Acanthamoeba species
Balamuthia species
Naegleria species
Leishmania species
Trypanosoma species

TABLE 73.1 Human Malarial Parasites

Parasite	Disease
Plasmodium vivax	Benign tertian malaria
P. ovale	Benign tertian or ovale malaria
P. malariae	Quartan or malarial malaria
P. falciparum	Malignant tertian malaria
P. knowlesi	Simian malaria or quotidian malaria

The protozoa of blood and tissues are closely related to the intestinal protozoan parasites in practically all aspects, except for their sites of infection (Box 73.1). The malaria parasites (*Plasmodium* species) infect both blood and tissues.

Plasmodium Species

Plasmodia are coccidian or sporozoan (Apicomplexa) parasites of blood cells, and as seen with other coccidia, they require two hosts: the mosquito for the sexual reproductive stages and humans and other animals for the asexual reproductive stages. Infection with *Plasmodium* spp. (i.e., malaria) accounts for 216 million episodes with approximately 500,000 deaths annually, 90% of which are in Africa.

The five species of plasmodia that infect humans are *P. falciparum, P. knowlesi, P. vivax, P. ovale,* and *P. malariae* (Table 73.1). These species share a common life cycle, as illustrated in Fig. 73.1. Human infection is initiated by the bite of an *Anopheles* mosquito, which introduces infectious plasmodia **sporozoites** via its saliva into the circulatory system. The sporozoites are carried to the parenchymal cells of the liver, in which asexual reproduction **(schizogony)** occurs. This phase of growth is termed the **exoerythrocytic cycle** and lasts 8 to 25 days, depending on the plasmodial species. Some species (e.g., *P. vivax, P. ovale*) can establish a dormant hepatic phase in which the sporozoites (called **hypnozoites** or **sleeping forms**) do not divide. The presence of these viable plasmodia can lead to the relapse of infections months to years after the initial clinical disease (relapsing malaria). The hepatocytes eventually rupture, liberating the plasmodia (termed **merozoites** at this stage), which in turn attach to specific receptors on the surface of erythrocytes and enter the cells, initiating the erythrocytic cycle.

Asexual replication progresses through a series of stages (ring, trophozoite, schizont) that culminates in the rupture

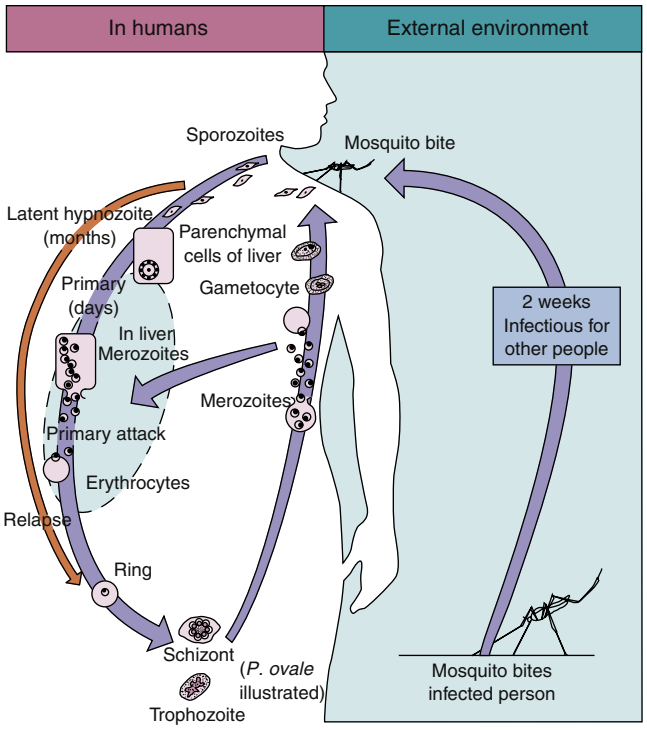


Fig. 73.1 Life cycle of *Plasmodium* species.

of the erythrocyte, releasing up to 24 merozoites, which initiates another cycle of replication by infecting other erythrocytes. Some merozoites also develop within erythrocytes into male and female **gametocytes.** If a mosquito ingests mature male and female gametocytes during a blood meal, the sexual reproductive cycle of malaria can be initiated, with the eventual production of sporozoites infectious for humans. This sexual reproductive stage within the mosquito is necessary for the maintenance of malaria within a population.

Most malaria seen in the United States is acquired by visitors or residents of countries with endemic disease (imported malaria). However, the appropriate vector, the *Anopheles* mosquito, is found in several sections of the United States, and domestic transmission of disease has been observed (introduced malaria). In addition to transmission by mosquitos, malaria can be acquired by blood transfusions from an infected donor (transfusion malaria). This type of transmission can also occur among narcotic addicts who share needles and syringes ("mainline" malaria). Congenital acquisition, although rare, also is a possible mode of transmission (congenital malaria).

PLASMODIUM FALCIPARUM

Physiology and Structure

P. falciparum demonstrates no selectivity in host erythrocytes and invades any red blood cell (RBC) at any stage in its existence. Also, multiple merozoites can infect a single erythrocyte; thus three or even four small rings may be seen in an infected cell (Fig. 73.2). *P. falciparum* is often seen in the host cell at the very edge or periphery of the cell membrane, appearing almost as if it were "stuck" on the outside of the cell (see Fig. 73.2). This is called the

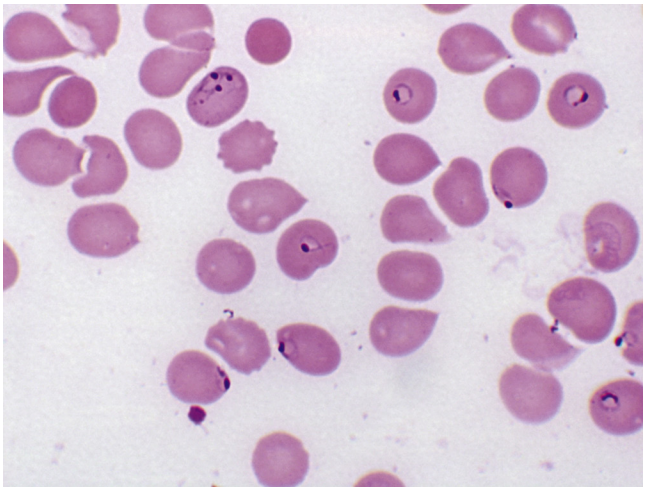


Fig. 73.2 Ring forms of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Note the multiple ring forms and appliqué (accolé) forms within the individual erythrocytes, which is characteristic of this organism.

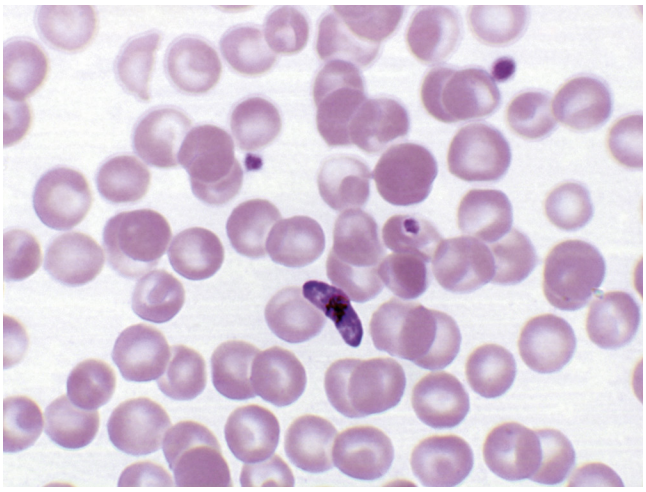


Fig. 73.3 Mature gametocyte of *Plasmodium falciparum*. The presence of this sausage-shaped form is diagnostic of *P. falciparum* malaria.

appliqué or **accolé** position and is distinctive for this species.

Growing trophozoite stages and schizonts of *P. falciparum* are rarely seen in blood films because their forms are sequestered in the liver and spleen. Only in very heavy infections are they found in the peripheral circulation. Thus peripheral blood smears from patients with *P. falciparum* malaria characteristically contain only young ring forms and occasionally gametocytes. The typical crescentic gametocytes are diagnostic for the species (Fig. 73.3). Infected RBCs do not enlarge and become distorted as they do with *P. vivax* and *P. ovale*. Occasionally, reddish granules known as **Maurer dots** are observed in *P. falciparum*.

P. falciparum, similar to *P. knowlesi* and *P. malariae*, does not produce hypnozoites in the liver. Relapses from the liver are not known to occur.

Epidemiology

P. falciparum occurs almost exclusively in tropical and subtropical regions. Co-infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is common in these regions and may pose a risk factor for severe malaria.

Clinical Syndromes

The incubation period of *P. falciparum* is the shortest of all the plasmodia, ranging from 7 to 10 days, and does not extend for months to years. After the early influenza-like symptoms, *P. falciparum* rapidly produces daily **(quotidian)** chills and fever and severe nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. The periodicity of the attacks then becomes **tertian (36 to 48 hours),** and fulminating disease develops. The term **malignant tertian malaria** is appropriate for this infection. Because the symptoms of this type of malaria are similar to those of intestinal infections, the nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea have led to the observation that malaria is "the malignant mimic."

Although any malaria infection may be fatal, *P. falciparum* is the most likely to result in death if left untreated. The increased numbers of erythrocytes infected and destroyed result in toxic cellular debris, adherence of RBCs to vascular endothelium and to adjacent RBCs, and formation of capillary plugging by masses of RBCs, platelets, leukocytes, and malarial pigment.

Involvement of the brain (cerebral malaria) is most often seen in *P. falciparum* infection. Capillary plugging from an accumulation of malarial pigment and masses of cells can result in coma and death.

Kidney damage is also associated with *P. falciparum* malaria, resulting in an illness called **blackwater fever.** Intravascular hemolysis with rapid destruction of RBCs produces a marked hemoglobinuria and can result in acute renal failure, tubular necrosis, nephrotic syndrome, and death. Liver involvement is characterized by abdominal pain, vomiting of bile, severe diarrhea, and rapid dehydration.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Thick and thin blood films are searched for the characteristic rings of *P. falciparum*, which frequently occur in multiples within a single cell, as well as in the accolé position (see Fig. 73.2). The distinctive crescentic gametocytes also are diagnostic (see Fig. 73.3). A high-grade parasitemia (>10% of RBCs infected) consisting only of ring forms is suggestive of *P. falciparum* infection, even if no gametocytes are observed.

Laboratory personnel must perform a thorough search of the blood films because mixed infections can occur with any combination of the five species, but most often the combination is *P. falciparum* and *P. vivax*. The detection and proper reporting of a mixed infection directly affect the treatment chosen.

Increasingly antigen detection using a **rapid diagnostic test (RDT)** is being used both in the field and in diagnostic laboratories as an adjunct to conventional microscopic diagnosis. RDTs use immunochromatographic lateral-flow strip technology and use monoclonal antibodies directed at either species-specific or pan-*Plasmodium* targets. These tests are simple, rapid (results in <20 minutes), and inexpensive. *P. falciparum*–specific monoclonal antibodies have been developed for **histidine-rich protein 2 (HRP-2)** and *P. falciparum* lactate dehydrogenase. Targets conserved across all human malarias **(pan-malarial antigens)** have been identified on ***Plasmodium* lactate dehydrogenase**

(PLDH) and **aldolase** enzymes. Thus far, one RDT has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). It is the BinaxNOW (Binax, Scarborough, Maine) Malaria test kit, based on the antigens HRP-2 and PLDH with high sensitivity and specificity for *P. falciparum* (94% to 100% and 94.2%, respectively) but much lower for non-*falciparum* species (67% to 86%), particularly for *P. knowlesi, P. malariae,* and *P. ovale.*

A variety of nucleic acid detection methods have been described for the diagnosis of malaria, including deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)/ribonucleic acid (RNA) hybridization, polymerase chain reaction (PCR), nucleic acid sequence-based amplification (NASBA), and loop-mediated amplification (LAMP). Of these, the most commonly used method is PCR, in which the 18S small subunit ribosomal RNA gene is the most common target. Numerous conventional and real-time PCR formats have been described for *Plasmodium* detection, species/subspecies differentiation, and identification of parasite resistance markers to antimalarial drugs. Several nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) are commercially available outside the United States for detection of malaria parasites; unfortunately no NAATs have been approved or cleared by the FDA for in vitro diagnostic use.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The treatment of malaria is based on the history regarding travel to endemic areas, prompt clinical review and differential diagnosis, accurate and rapid laboratory work, and correct use of antimalarial drugs.

Because chloroquine-resistant strains of *P. falciparum* are present in all areas of endemicity (Africa, Southeast Asia, and South America), with the exception of Central America and the Caribbean, physicians must review all current protocols for the proper treatment of *P. falciparum* infections, noting particularly where **chloroquine resistance** is known to occur. If the patient's history indicates that the origin is not from a chloroquine-resistant area, then the drug of choice is either chloroquine or parenteral quinine. Patients infected with chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum* (or *P. vivax*) may be treated with other agents, including mefloquine ± artesunate, artemether-lumefantrine, atovaquone-proguanil (Malarone), quinine, quinidine, pyrimethamine-sulfadoxine (Fansidar), and doxycycline. Because quinine and pyrimethamine-sulfadoxine are potentially toxic, they are used more often for treatment than prophylaxis. Amodiaquine, an analog of chloroquine, is effective against chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum;* however, toxicity limits its use. Newer agents with excellent activity against multidrug-resistant strains of *P. falciparum* include the phenanthrene methanols, halofantrine and lumefantrine, and the artemisinins, artemether and artesunate, both sesquiterpene derivatives (see Chapter 71).

Combinations of the rapid-acting artemisinins with an existing or newly introduced antimalarial compound have been shown to be highly effective in both treatment and control of malaria caused by *P. falciparum.* The rapid reduction in parasite biomass (approximately 10^8-fold within 3 days) produced by the artemisinins leaves a relatively small number of organisms for the second agent (usually mefloquine or lumefantrine) to clear. This reduces considerably the exposure of the parasite population to mefloquine or lumefantrine, reducing the chance of an escape-resistant mutant arising from the infection. Combinations of artesunate and mefloquine and of artemether and lumefantrine have both been well tolerated and highly efficacious in the treatment of multidrug-resistant falciparum malaria in semi-immune and nonimmune individuals. Recently, decreased in vivo susceptibility to artemisinin compounds has been detected in *P. falciparum* strains along the Thai-Cambodian border (greater Mekong subregion), which is a historic site for emerging resistance to antimalarial agents. Outside of the greater Mekong subregion, significant levels of artemisinin combination therapy failure are primarily caused by resistance to the partner drug rather than the artemisinin component. High-level artemisinin resistance has not yet been documented.

Although the rationale for red cell exchange transfusion in severe malaria is compelling, there are no prospective clinical trials comparing this therapy with others. Nonetheless, red cell exchange (or whole-blood exchange), if available, should be considered in cases of severe malaria complicated by clinical signs of cerebral malaria, acute lung injury, severe hemolysis with acidemia, shock, or a high or rising level of parasitemia despite adequate intravenous antimicrobial therapy. The use of anticonvulsants (phenobarbitone) and dexamethasone in cerebral malaria is likely to be ineffective or harmful and is not recommended.

When there is uncertainty whether the *P. falciparum* is chloroquine resistant, it is advisable to assume that the strain is resistant and treat the patient accordingly. If the laboratory reports a mixed infection involving *P. falciparum* and *P. vivax,* the treatment must eradicate not only *P. falciparum* from the erythrocytes but also the liver stages of *P. vivax* to avoid relapses. Failure on the part of the laboratory to detect and report such a mixed infection can result in inappropriate treatment and unnecessary delay in accomplishing a complete cure.

Chemoprophylaxis and prompt eradication of infections are critical in breaking the mosquito-human transmission cycle. Control of mosquito breeding and protection of individuals by screening, netting, protective clothing, and insect repellents also are essential. Chloroquine resistance complicates the management of these patients but can be overcome by the physician's awareness of appropriate regimens. Immigrants from and travelers to endemic areas must be carefully screened, using blood films or serologic tests to detect possible infection. The development of vaccines to protect persons living in or traveling to endemic areas is under investigation.

PLASMODIUM KNOWLESI

Physiology and Structure

P. knowlesi is a malaria parasite of **Old World monkeys** (long-tailed *[Macaca fascicularis]* and pig-tailed *[M. nemestrina]* macaques). *P. knowlesi* is transmitted by members of the *A. leucosphyrus* group of mosquitoes that resides in the upper canopy of the forests and has infrequent contact with humans. Unlike other primate malarias, *P. knowlesi* exhibits a relaxed host specificity and is permissive in humans under natural and experimental conditions and in nonhuman primates. Similar to *P. falciparum,* the erythrocyte invasion by *P. knowlesi* is not restricted to young or old RBCs, which allows the development of high levels of parasitemia. It has a short

life cycle of 24 hours **(quotidian),** and the development of the parasite in RBCs is not synchronous. *P. knowlesi* infection is usually misidentified as *P. falciparum* or *P. malariae* because its early trophozoites resemble the ring forms of *P. falciparum* and its later stages mimic those of *P. malariae.* In contrast to *P. falciparum, P. knowlesi* does not appear to sequester in the microvasculature, and the neurologic complications seen with *P. falciparum* infection have not been described.

RBCs infected with *P. knowlesi* exhibit a normal morphology, and all developmental stages may be seen in peripheral blood.

P. knowlesi, similar to *P. falciparum* and *P. malariae,* does not appear to produce hypnozoites in the liver. Relapses from the liver are not known to occur.

Epidemiology

Thus far, human *P. knowlesi* infections have been described in high numbers only in Malaysia; however, because of reports of infection in the neighboring countries of Thailand, Singapore, Brunei, Indonesia, Myanmar, Vietnam, and the Philippines, it appears that *P. knowlesi* is a natural parasite of macaques throughout the Southeast Asia region.

Clinical Syndromes

The clinical and laboratory profiles of *P. knowlesi* infection are similar to those of patients infected with the other malaria parasites. Patients typically present with a nonspecific febrile illness with daily fever and chills. Other frequent symptoms include headache, rigors, malaise, abdominal pain, breathlessness, and productive cough. Tachypnea, pyrexia, and tachycardia are common clinical signs. Thrombocytopenia and mild hepatic dysfunction on hospital admission are common.

Approximately 7% of the cases of *P. knowlesi* infection thus far have been judged as severe, using the criteria of the World Health Organization, and the most frequent complication is respiratory distress with pulmonary rather than metabolic etiology. Deaths and severe disease result from pulmonary and hepatorenal failure. Severity of infection is related to high parasitemia levels produced by its rapid and unique 24-hour erythrocyte cycle and its ability to infect all stages of RBCs. It is strongly recommended that infection with *P. knowlesi* be considered in cases in which the microscopic examination suggests *P. malariae* but in which the patient has either severe disease, hyperparasitemia (>0.1%; i.e., >5000 parasites/μl), or a recent history of visiting woods or their vicinity in Southeast Asia.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Whereas the ring forms of *P. knowlesi* are morphologically similar to those of *P. falciparum,* the trophozoite, schizont, and gametocyte stages are indistinguishable from those of *P. malariae* by light microscopy. Clues to the identification of *P. knowlesi* by microscopy that are useful, if present, include early trophozoites with fine ring forms, double chromatin dots, and two to three parasites per RBC (resembling *P. falciparum*); trophozoites with a bird's-eye appearance and/or mature trophozoites with a band appearance resembling *P. malariae;* and mature schizonts with a higher average merozoite count (16 per RBC) than in *P. malariae* (10 to 12 per RBC). *P. knowlesi*–specific PCR is the only reliable means of identifying this emerging species of *Plasmodium.*

At present, no commercially available RDTs are designed to specifically detect *P. knowlesi.* Performance of these mainly *P. falciparum*–targeted and *P. vivax*–targeted RDTs in *P. knowlesi* infection has been reported in a few cases. PLDH produced by the four other *Plasmodium* species that cause human malaria is also present in *P. knowlesi.* Antibodies to the pan-malaria targets PLDH and aldolase also cross-react with those of *P. knowlesi.* At this time, the RDTs are not recommended because of the unreliable results and low sensitivity in detecting *P. knowlesi.*

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Given the potential severity of *P. knowlesi* infection, it should be managed like *P. falciparum* malaria if the species identification is based on microscopy alone or if co-infection with *P. falciparum* cannot be excluded with certainty using PCR. *P. knowlesi* alone appears to be susceptible to numerous therapeutic alternatives, with the majority of patients responding promptly to chloroquine.

Prevention of *P. knowlesi* infection is based on avoiding mosquito bites and taking preventive medication when indicated. Although general precautions for avoiding the bites of *Anopheles* mosquitoes probably apply, it should be recognized that current indoor control measures for malaria do not prevent zoonotic transmission of malaria by vectors that feed mainly in the forest. Zoonotic *P. knowlesi* infection is likely to pose a problem for malaria control.

PLASMODIUM VIVAX

Physiology and Structure

P. vivax (Fig. 73.4) is selective in that it invades only young, immature erythrocytes. Whereas the **Duffy blood group antigen** on the RBC surface has long been considered to be the primary receptor for *P. vivax* (see Chapter 68), clinical vivax malaria has recently been reported in Duffy-negative individuals in Madagascar. The parasite and host molecules that enable this Duffy-independent *P. vivax* invasion of human RBCs are as yet unknown. In infections caused by *P. vivax,* infected RBCs are usually enlarged and contain numerous pink granules or **Schüffner dots,** the trophozoite is ring shaped but ameboid in appearance, more mature trophozoites and erythrocytic schizonts containing up to 24 merozoites are present, and the gametocytes are round. The mature schizonts often contain golden-brown **hemozoin** pigment granules **(malarial pigment).**

Epidemiology

P. vivax is the most prevalent of the human plasmodia, with the widest geographic distribution, including the tropics, subtropics, and temperate regions. The overwhelming majority (>80%) of clinical cases of vivax malaria occur in South America and Southeast Asia.

Clinical Syndromes

After an incubation period (usually 10 to 17 days), the patient experiences vague influenza-like symptoms with headache, muscle pains, photophobia, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting (Clinical Case 73.1).

As the infection progresses, increased numbers of rupturing erythrocytes liberate merozoites, toxic cellular debris and hemoglobin into the circulation. Together these

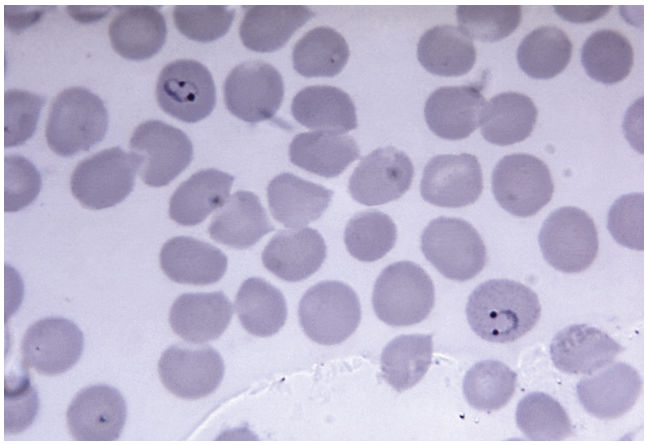


Fig. 73.4 *Plasmodium vivax* ring forms with double chromatin dots. This feature is more reminiscent of *P. falciparum* than *P. vivax*. *P. vivax* rings have a large quantity of cytoplasm and a large chromatin dot and occasional pseudopods. The red blood cells are normal, up to 1.5 times normal size, round, and contain fine Schüffner dots. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

produce the typical pattern of chills, fever, and malarial rigors. These **paroxysms** usually reappear periodically (generally every 48 hours) as the cycle of infection, replication, and cell lysis progresses. The paroxysms may remain relatively mild or progress to severe attacks, with hours of sweating, chills, shaking, persistently high temperatures (103° F to 106° F), and exhaustion.

P. vivax causes **"benign tertian malaria,"** which refers to the cycle of paroxysms every 48 hours (in untreated patients) and the belief that most patients tolerate the attacks and can survive for years without treatment. Recent evidence, however, suggests that *P. vivax* can cause a **spectrum of severe, life-threatening syndromes** that are strikingly similar to those caused by *P. falciparum*. Reports of vivax malaria marked by delirium, seizures, renal failure, shock, hepatic dysfunction, severe anemia, lung injury, pulmonary edema, and acute respiratory distress have come from Southeast Asia, the Middle East, and South America. Also, if left untreated, chronic *P. vivax* infections can lead to brain, kidney, and liver damage as a result of the malarial pigment, cellular debris, and capillary plugging of these organs by masses of adherent erythrocytes.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Microscopic examination of thick and thin films of blood is the method of choice for confirming the clinical diagnosis of malaria and identifying the specific species responsible for disease. The thick film is a concentration method and may be used to detect the presence of organisms. With training, thick films may be used to diagnose the species as well. The thin film is most useful for establishing species identification. Blood films can be taken at any time over the course of the infection, but the best time is midway between paroxysms of chills and fever, when the greatest number of intracellular organisms is present. It may be necessary to take repeated films at intervals of 4 to 6 hours.

Serologic procedures are available, but they are used primarily for epidemiologic surveys or for screening blood donors. Serologic findings usually remain positive for approximately a year, even after complete treatment of the infection. RDTs may be used as an adjunct to microscopy in the diagnosis of malaria caused by *P. vivax;* however, the sensitivity is generally much lower than that for detection of *P. falciparum:* 69% to 85% versus 94% to 100%, respectively.

Clinical Case 73.1 **Malaria**

Mohin and Gupta (*Infect Dis Clin Pract* 15:209–212, 2007) described a case of severe malaria caused by *Plasmodium vivax*. The patient was a 59-year-old man who presented with a 1-day history of high-grade fever after recently returning from Guyana in South America. He did not take any medications before, during, or after the trip. He noted that his symptoms were similar to those of a malaria infection 5 years previously, which also was acquired in Guyana. A peripheral blood smear as part of the initial workup showed numerous red blood cells with schizonts consistent with *Plasmodium* infection, with more than 5% parasitemia. Several blood tests, including a DNA PCR, were sent for parasite species determination. The patient was started on quinine and doxycycline oral therapy because of concerns regarding chloroquine-resistant malaria. Subsequently, during the next 4 days, the patient developed severe thrombocytopenia and nonoliguric renal, acute respiratory, and circulatory failure despite a decrease in parasitemia to less than 0.5%. He received intravenous quinidine and an exchange transfusion to treat *P. falciparum* infection, suspected at the time because of the severity of his symptoms. The next day, however, the results of the PCR of the blood revealed the parasite to be *P. vivax* and not *P. falciparum*. The patient gradually improved and was treated with primaquine to prevent relapse.

This case shows that although unusual, severe respiratory and circulatory compromise may complicate *P. vivax* malaria. *P. vivax* should be considered if the patient's condition deteriorates despite the presence of relatively low parasite levels. As opposed to *P. falciparum, P. vivax* infections carry the additional risk of relapse, which warrants appropriate and adequate treatment. This case also emphasizes the importance of chemoprophylaxis and personal protective measures for anyone planning a trip to a malaria-infested region.

PCR, Polymerase chain reaction.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The treatment of *P. vivax* infection involves a combination of supportive measures and chemotherapy. Bed rest, relief of fever and headache, regulation of fluid balance, and in some cases blood transfusion are supportive therapies.

The chemotherapeutic regimens are as follows:

1. Suppressive: aimed at avoiding infection and clinical symptoms (i.e., a form of prophylaxis)
2. Therapeutic: aimed at eradicating the erythrocytic cycle
3. Radical cure: aimed at eradicating the exoerythrocytic cycle in the liver
4. Gametocidal: aimed at destroying erythrocytic gametocytes to prevent mosquito transmission

Chloroquine is the drug of choice for the suppression and therapeutic treatment of *P. vivax,* followed by primaquine for radical cure and elimination of gametocytes. Chloroquine-resistant forms of *P. vivax* have emerged in Indonesia, the

Solomon Islands, New Guinea, and Brazil. Patients infected with chloroquine-resistant *P. vivax* may be treated with other agents, including mefloquine ± artesunate, quinine, pyrimethamine-sulfadoxine (Fansidar), and doxycycline. Primaquine is especially effective in preventing a relapse from the latent forms of *P. vivax* in the liver. Because antimalarial drugs are potentially toxic, it is imperative that physicians carefully review the recommended therapeutic regimens.

PLASMODIUM OVALE

Physiology and Structure

P. ovale is similar to *P. vivax* in many respects, including its selectivity for young, pliable erythrocytes. As a consequence, the host cell becomes enlarged and distorted, usually in an oval form. Schüffner dots appear as pale pink granules, and the cell border is frequently fimbriated or ragged. The schizont of *P. ovale,* when mature, contains about half the number of merozoites seen in *P. vivax,* and the malarial pigment is a darker brown. Recently, multilocus genetic analysis identified the presence of polymorphisms in *P. ovale,* leading to the description of classic and variant strains. It is now widely accepted that *P. ovale* comprises two closely related subspecies that co-exist in the same geographic regions without interbreeding, *P. ovale curtisi* (classic strain) and *P. ovale wallikeri* (variant strain). These two subspecies are morphologically indistinguishable, but have been reported to differ in duration of latency.

Epidemiology

P. ovale is distributed primarily in tropical Africa, in which it is often more prevalent than *P. vivax.* It is also found in Asia and South America.

Clinical Syndromes

The clinical picture of tertian attacks for *P. ovale* (benign tertian or ovale malaria) infection is similar to that for *P. vivax.* Untreated infections last only about 1 year, instead of the several years for *P. vivax.* Both relapse and recrudescence phases are similar to *P. vivax.*

Laboratory Diagnosis

As with *P. vivax,* thick and thin blood films are examined for the typical oval host cell with Schüffner dots and a ragged cell wall. Serologic tests reveal cross-reaction with *P. vivax* and other plasmodia. RDTs are not recommended for the diagnosis of *P. ovale* infection.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The treatment regimen, including the use of primaquine to prevent relapse from latent liver forms, is similar to that used for *P. vivax* infections. Preventing *P. ovale* infection involves the same measures as for *P. vivax* and other plasmodia.

PLASMODIUM MALARIAE

Physiology and Structure

In contrast with *P. vivax* and *P. ovale, P. malariae* can infect only mature erythrocytes with relatively rigid cell membranes. As a result, the parasite's growth must conform to the size and shape of the RBC. This produces no red cell enlargement or distortion, as seen in *P. vivax* and *P. ovale,* but it does result in distinctive shapes of the parasite seen in the host cell: "band and bar forms," as well as very compact, dark-staining forms. The schizont of *P. malariae* shows no red cell enlargement or distortion and is usually composed of eight merozoites appearing in a rosette surrounding a dark brown central pigment granule. Occasionally reddish granules called **Ziemann dots** appear in the host cell.

Unlike for *P. vivax* and *P. ovale,* hypnozoites for *P. malariae* are not found in the liver, and relapse does not occur. Recrudescence does occur, and attacks may develop after apparent abatement of symptoms.

Epidemiology

P. malariae infection occurs primarily in the same subtropical and temperate regions as the other plasmodia but is less prevalent.

Clinical Syndromes

The incubation period for *P. malariae* is the longest of the plasmodia, usually 18 to 40 days but possibly several months to years. The early symptoms are influenza like, with fever patterns of 72 hours (quartan or malarial malaria) in periodicity. Attacks are moderate to severe and last several hours. Untreated infections may last as long as 20 years.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Observing the characteristic **bar and band forms and the rosette schizont** in thick and thin films of blood establishes the diagnosis of *P. malariae* infection. As noted, serologic tests cross-react with other plasmodia. RDTs are not recommended for the diagnosis of infections with *P. malariae.*

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Treatment is similar to that for *P. vivax* and *P. ovale* infections and must be undertaken to prevent recrudescent infections. Treatment to prevent relapse caused by latent liver forms is not required because these forms do not develop with *P. malariae.* Preventive and controlling mechanisms are as discussed for *P. vivax* and *P. ovale.*

Babesia Species

Babesia are intracellular sporozoan parasites that morphologically resemble plasmodia. Babesiosis is a zoonosis infecting a variety of animals, such as deer, cattle, and rodents; humans are accidental hosts. Infection is transmitted by *Ixodes* ticks. *B. microti* is the usual cause of babesiosis in the United States.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Human infection follows contact with an infected tick (Fig. 73.5). The infectious **pyriform bodies** are introduced into the bloodstream and infect erythrocytes. The intraerythrocytic trophozoites multiply by **binary fission,** forming tetrads, and then lyse the erythrocyte, releasing the merozoites; these can reinfect other cells to maintain the infection. Infected cells also can be ingested by feeding ticks, in which

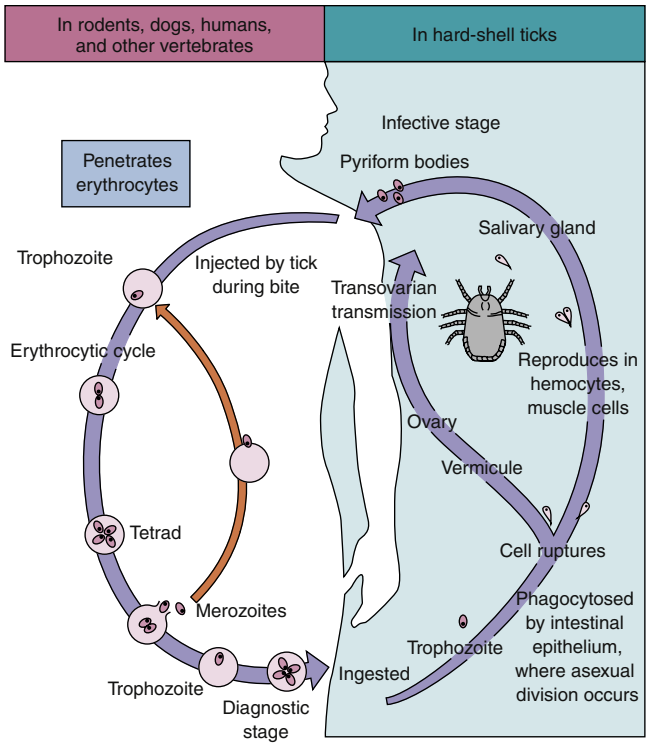


Fig. 73.5 Life cycle of *Babesia* species.

additional replication can take place. Infection in the tick population can also be maintained by transovarian transmission. The infected cells in humans resemble the ring forms of *P. falciparum,* but malarial pigment or other stages of growth characteristically seen with plasmodial infections are not seen with careful examination of blood smears (Fig. 73.6).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

More than 70 different species of *Babesia* are found in Africa, Asia, Europe, and North America, with *B. microti* responsible for disease along the northeastern seaboard of the United States (e.g., Nantucket Island, Martha's Vineyard, Shelter Island). *I. dammini* is the tick vector responsible for transmitting babesiosis in this area, and the natural reservoir hosts are field mice, voles, and other small rodents. Serologic studies in endemic areas have demonstrated a high incidence of past exposure to *Babesia.* Presumably, most infections are asymptomatic or mild. *B. divergens,* which has been reported more frequently from Europe, causes severe, often fatal infections in people who have undergone splenectomies. Severe, persistent *B. microti* parasitemia has occurred in immunosuppressed HIV-infected patients with intact spleens. Although most infections follow tick bites, *B. microti* is increasingly transmitted by blood transfusions in the United States. A recent upsurge in transfusion-transmitted babesiosis (TTB) cases attributed to *B. microti,* coupled with at least 12 fatalities in transfusion recipients diagnosed with babesiosis, has elevated TTB to a key policy issue in transfusion medicine. Prevention of transfusion-related cases is mostly through blood donor questionnaire screening; those with a history of babesiosis are deferred indefinitely from donating blood.

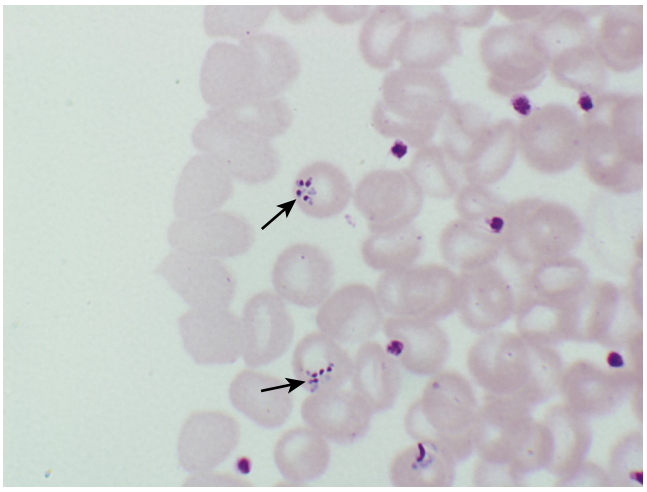


Fig. 73.6 Ring forms of *Babesia microti.* Note the multiple ring forms *(arrows)* within the individual erythrocytes and the similarity to those of *Plasmodium falciparum* in Fig. 73.2.

There is a need for a viable and cost-effective screening method for blood products. Presently, there is no FDA-approved test for this purpose.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

After an incubation period of 1 to 4 weeks, symptomatic patients experience general malaise, fever without periodicity, headache, chills, sweating, fatigue, and weakness. As the infection progresses with increased destruction of erythrocytes, hemolytic anemia develops, and the patient may experience renal failure. Hepatomegaly and splenomegaly can develop in advanced disease. Low-grade parasitemia may persist for weeks. Splenectomy or functional asplenia, immunosuppression, HIV infection, and advanced age increase a person's susceptibility to infections and to more severe disease.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Examination of blood smears is the diagnostic method of choice. Laboratory personnel must be experienced in differentiating *Babesia* and *Plasmodium* species. *Babesia* may mimic *P. falciparum,* with RBCs infected with multiple small ring forms (see Fig. 73.6). Infected patients may have negative smears because of the low-grade parasitemia. These infections can be diagnosed by inoculating samples of blood into hamsters, which are highly susceptible to infection. Serologic tests and amplification of babesial DNA by PCR are also available for diagnostic use.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The treatment of choice for mild to moderate illness is the combination of atovaquone and azithromycin, whereas clindamycin and quinine and exchange transfusion are indicated for severe disease. Other antiprotozoal regimens, including chloroquine and pentamidine, have been used with variable results. However, most patients with mild disease recover without specific therapy. Exchange blood transfusion also has been successful in patients who have

had splenectomies and who have severe infections caused by *B. microti* or *B. divergens.* The use of protective clothing and insect repellents can minimize tick exposure in endemic areas, which is critical for the prevention of disease. Ticks must feed on humans for several hours before the organisms are transmitted, so prompt removal of ticks can be protective.

Toxoplasma gondii

T. gondii is a typical coccidian parasite related to *Plasmodium, Cystoisospora,* and other members of the Apicomplexa clade. *T. gondii* is an intracellular parasite, and it is found in a wide variety of animals, including birds and humans. Only one species exists, and there appears to be little strain-to-strain variation. The essential reservoir host of *T. gondii* is the common house cat and other felines.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Organisms develop in the intestinal cells of the cat and during an extraintestinal cycle with passage to the tissues via the bloodstream (Fig. 73.7). The organisms from the intestinal cycle are passed in cat feces and mature into infective cysts within 3 to 4 days in the external environment. These oocysts are similar to those of *Cystoisospora belli,* which is the human intestinal protozoan parasite, and can be ingested by mice and other animals (including humans) and produce acute and chronic infection of various tissues, including brain. Infection in cats is established when the tissues of infected rodents are eaten.

Some infective forms **(trophozoites)** of the oocyst develop as slender, crescentic types called **tachyzoites.** These rapidly multiplying forms are responsible for the initial infection and tissue damage. Slow-growing, shorter forms, called **bradyzoites,** also develop and form cysts in chronic infections.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Human infection with *T. gondii* is ubiquitous; however, it is increasingly apparent that certain immunocompromised individuals (patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]) are more likely to have severe manifestations. The wide variety of animals that harbor the organism, such as carnivores, herbivores, and birds, accounts for the widespread transmission.

Human infection may be acquired in several ways: (1) ingestion of undercooked contaminated meat containing *T. gondii* cysts; (2) ingestion of oocysts from hands, food, soil, or water contaminated with cat feces; (3) organ transplantation or blood transfusion; (4) transplacental transmission; and (5) accidental inoculation of tachyzoites. Serologic studies show an increased prevalence in human populations in which the consumption of uncooked meat or meat juices is popular. It is noteworthy that serologic tests of human and rodent populations are negative in the few geographic areas in which cats have not existed. Outbreaks of toxoplasmosis in the United States are usually traced to poorly cooked meat (e.g., hamburger) and contact with cat feces.

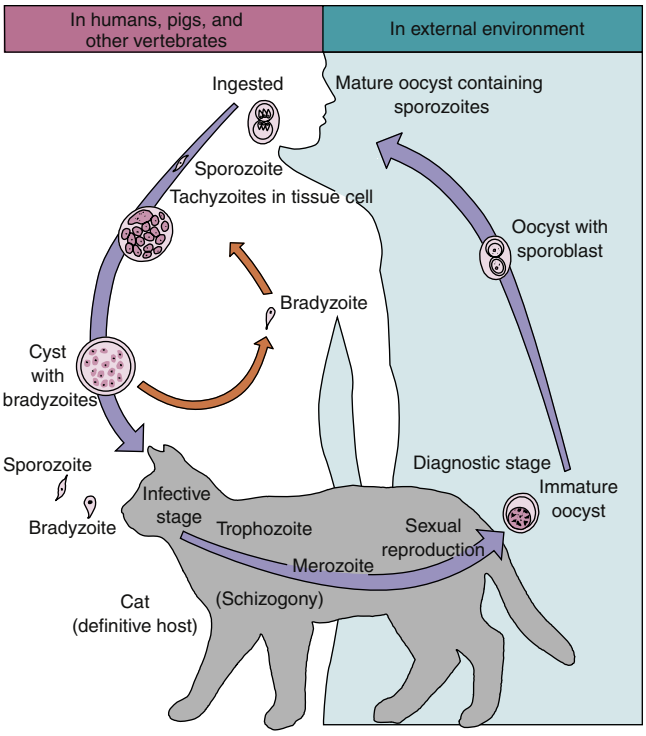


Fig. 73.7 Life cycle of *Toxoplasma gondii.*

Transplacental infection can occur in pregnancy, either from infection acquired from meat and meat juices or from contact with cat feces. Transplacental infection from an infected mother has a devastating effect on the fetus. Infection via contaminated blood or transplanted organs can occur but is not common. The sharing of needles between intravenous drug users may also facilitate the transmission of *Toxoplasma.*

Although the rate of seroconversion is similar for individuals within a geographic location, the rate of severe infection is dramatically affected by the immune status of the individual. Patients with defects in cell-mediated immunity, especially those who are infected with HIV or who have had an organ transplant or immunosuppressive therapy, are most likely to have disseminated or central nervous system (CNS) disease. Illness in this setting is generally believed to be caused by reactivation of previously latent infection rather than new exposure to the organism.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Most *T. gondii* infections are benign and asymptomatic, with symptoms occurring as the parasite moves from the blood to tissues, in which it becomes an intracellular parasite (Clinical Case 73.2). When symptomatic disease occurs, the infection is characterized by cell destruction, reproduction of more organisms, and eventual cyst formation. Many tissues may be affected; however, the organism has a particular predilection for cells of the lung, heart, lymphoid organs, and CNS, including the eye.

Symptoms of acute disease include chills, fever, headaches, myalgia, lymphadenitis, and fatigue; the symptoms occasionally resemble those of infectious mononucleosis. In chronic disease, the signs and symptoms include lymphadenitis, occasionally a rash, evidence of hepatitis,

Clinical Case 73.2 **Toxoplasmosis**

Vincent and colleagues (*Infect Med* 23:390, 2006) described a 67-year-old woman with a 3-year history of Hodgkin disease who received chemotherapy, followed by autologous stem cell transplantation. Shortly afterward, she became febrile and neutropenic, and treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics was started. The results of blood and urine cultures were negative. After resolution of neutropenia (1 month posttransplantation), confusion and lethargy developed. Imaging studies of the brain revealed microinfarcts in both hemispheres and the midbrain. Findings from a lumbar puncture were unrevealing. Based on the suspicion of toxoplasmosis, pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine were added to the patient's regimen. When toxic epidermal necrolysis developed, the sulfadiazine was discontinued and clindamycin was begun. Multiorgan failure ensued, and the patient died 1 week later. At autopsy, cyst forms with bradyzoites were detected in the woman's brain and heart. Histopathologic findings and immunohistochemical staining confirmed a diagnosis of disseminated toxoplasmosis.

Disseminated toxoplasmosis is rare, especially after autologous stem cell transplantation. The likely cause of reactivation and dissemination of *Toxoplasma* in this patient was the cell-mediated immunosuppression associated with Hodgkin disease and its treatment. In addition to the brain, the heart, liver, and lungs are frequently involved in cases of disseminated toxoplasmosis.

encephalomyelitis, and myocarditis. In some of the cases, chorioretinitis appears and may lead to blindness.

Congenital infection with *T. gondii* also occurs in infants born to mothers infected during pregnancy. If infection occurs in the first trimester, the result is spontaneous abortion, stillbirth, or severe disease. Manifestations in the infant infected after the first trimester include epilepsy, encephalitis, microcephaly, intracranial calcifications, hydrocephalus, psychomotor or mental retardation, chorioretinitis, blindness, anemia, jaundice, rash, pneumonia, diarrhea, and hypothermia. Infants may be asymptomatic at birth only to develop disease months to years later. Most often these children develop **chorioretinitis** with or without blindness or other neurologic problems, including retardation, seizures, microcephaly, and hearing loss.

In immunocompromised older patients, a different spectrum of disease is seen. Reactivation of latent toxoplasmosis is a special problem for these people. The presenting symptoms of *Toxoplasma* infection in immunocompromised patients are usually neurologic, most frequently consistent with diffuse encephalopathy, meningoencephalitis, or cerebral mass lesions. Reactivation of cerebral toxoplasmosis has emerged as a major cause of encephalitis in patients with AIDS. The disease is usually multifocal, with more than one mass lesion appearing in the brain at the same time. Symptoms are related to the location of the lesions and may include hemiparesis, seizures, visual impairment, confusion, and lethargy. Other sites of infection that have been reported include the eye, lung, and testes. Although disease is seen predominantly in patients with AIDS, it also may occur with similar manifestations in other immunocompromised patients, in particular those undergoing solid organ transplantation.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Serologic testing is required for the diagnosis of acute active infection; the diagnosis is established by the finding of increasing antibody titers documented in serially collected blood specimens. Because contact with the organism is common, assays for different isotypes of antibodies and attention to increasing titers are essential to differentiate acute, active infection from previous asymptomatic or chronic infection. A panel of tests referred to as the *T. gondii* serologic profile (TSP) is used by specialized reference laboratories to determine whether the infection is consistent with acquisition recently or in the more distant past. The TSP consists of (1) the Sabin-Feldman dye test to measure IgG antibodies; (2) enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) to measure IgM, IgA, and IgE antibodies; (3) the immunosorbent agglutination assay to measure levels of IgE antibodies; and (4) the differential agglutination test to measure levels of IgG antibodies.

The initial evaluation in the immunocompetent patient involves screening for IgG antibodies to *T. gondii.* Although many studies and guidelines suggest the usefulness of testing for IgM in parallel, IgM antibodies to *T. gondii* may persist for more than 12 months after an acute infection, leading to a false-positive result. If IgG titers are equivocal, serial specimens should be collected 3 weeks apart and tested in parallel. If the IgG titer is negative (less than 1:16), then *Toxoplasma* infection is ruled out. A twofold rise in antibody titer indicates an acute infection, as does conversion from a negative to a positive result. A single high titer is not a sufficient basis for diagnosing toxoplasmosis because IgG titers may remain elevated for many years after infection.

Toxoplasmosis in patients with malignancies, organ transplants, or AIDS is generally assumed to arise from reactivation of a chronic asymptomatic (latent) infection. The diagnosis of *Toxoplasma* encephalitis usually involves a CT or magnetic resonance imaging study of the brain. However, *Toxoplasma*-associated brain abnormalities may be indistinguishable from AIDS-related cerebral lymphoma or cerebral Chagas disease. Therefore microscopy, serologic, and molecular techniques must be used for a definitive diagnosis. Diagnosis can be very difficult for these patients; IgM antibody is usually undetectable, and the presence of IgG antibody only confirms past infection. In the absence of serologic evidence of acute infection, diagnosis can be confirmed only by histologic detection of the organism in tissues or detection of nucleic acids by PCR. Immunosuppressed patients who are negative for IgG antibodies are at risk for acute acquired infection, whereas seropositive patients are at risk of reactivation.

The methods used to diagnose acute toxoplasmosis in pregnant women are the same as those used for immunocompetent adults. The FDA has issued a warning to physicians against the use of *T. gondii* IgM commercial kits as the sole method of diagnosis during pregnancy because of frequent false-positive and false-negative results in these patients. Confirmatory testing at a *Toxoplasma* reference laboratory is highly recommended. If IgM and IgG antibodies are both absent, active infection can be excluded.

Prenatal diagnosis of congenital toxoplasmosis can be achieved by ultrasonography and amniocentesis. Amniotic fluid PCR analysis to detect *T. gondii* is the test of choice,

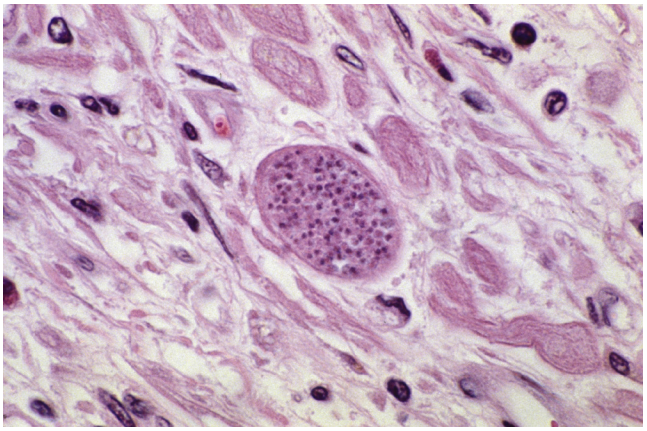


Fig. 73.8 Cyst of *Toxoplasma gondii* in tissue. Hundreds of organisms may be present in the cyst, which may become active and initiate disease with decreased host immunity (e.g., immunosuppression in transplant patients and in diseases such as AIDS).

offering excellent positive and negative predictive values. Because maternal IgG antibodies are present in newborns, detection of IgA and IgM antibodies is the foundation of serodiagnosis of toxoplasmosis in the newborn.

Demonstration of these organisms as trophozoites and cysts in tissue and body fluids is the definitive method of diagnosis (Fig. 73.8). Biopsy specimens from lymph nodes, brain, myocardium, or other suspected tissue, as well as body fluids, including cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), amniotic fluid, or bronchoalveolar lavage fluid, can be directly examined for the organisms. Newer monoclonal antibody–based fluorescent stains may facilitate direct detection of *T. gondii* in tissue. Culture methods for *T. gondii* are largely experimental and not usually available in clinical laboratories. The two methods available are to inoculate potentially infected material into either mouse peritoneum or tissue culture.

Advances in developing PCR-based detection methods are promising and may provide rapid and sensitive approaches for detecting the organism in blood, CSF, amniotic fluid, and other clinical specimens. The most important use of PCR is for prenatal diagnosis of congenital toxoplasmosis using amniotic fluid. When maternal serologic results indicate potential infection during pregnancy, PCR of amniotic fluid has been shown to be more sensitive for the confirmation of fetal infection than the conventional methods of inoculation of mice and tissue culture cells, and fetal blood testing for IgM. PCR technology for *Toxoplasma* is offered at the Toxoplasma Serology Laboratory, Palo Alto, California, and by a few commercial laboratories. Commercial systems are now available and compare favorably with reference laboratory systems.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The therapy for toxoplasmosis depends on the nature of the infectious process and the immunocompetence of the host. Most mononucleosis-like infections in normal hosts resolve spontaneously and do not require specific therapy. In contrast, disseminated or CNS infection in immunocompromised people must be treated. Before the association of *T. gondii* with HIV infection, immunocompromised patients with toxoplasmosis were treated for 4 to 6 weeks. In the setting of HIV infection, discontinuing therapy after 4 to 6 weeks is associated with a relapse rate of 25%. Such patients are currently treated with an initial high-dose regimen of pyrimethamine plus sulfadiazine and then continued on lower doses of both drugs indefinitely. Although this drug combination is the regimen of choice, toxicity (rash and bone marrow suppression) may necessitate changes to alternative agents. Clindamycin plus pyrimethamine is the best studied alternative. Atovaquone and azithromycin (each alone or with pyrimethamine) also have some activity, although their efficacy and safety compared with those of clindamycin-pyrimethamine need to be assessed. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is another alternative to pyrimethamine-sulfadiazine for treatment of disseminated or CNS toxoplasmosis. The use of corticosteroids is indicated as part of therapy of cerebral edema and ocular infections that involve or threaten the macula.

Infections in the first trimester of pregnancy are difficult to manage because of the teratogenicity of pyrimethamine in laboratory animals. Both clindamycin and spiramycin have been substituted with apparent success. Spiramycin does not appear to be effective for the treatment of toxoplasmosis in immunocompromised patients.

As more immunocompromised patients at risk for disseminated infection are identified, greater emphasis is placed on preventive measures and specific prophylaxis. Routine serologic screening of patients before organ transplantation and early in the course of HIV infection is now being performed. Individuals with positive serologic tests are at much higher risk for the development of disease and are now being considered for prophylaxis. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, which also is used as prophylaxis to prevent *Pneumocystis jirovecii* infections, also appears to be effective at preventing infections with *T. gondii.* Additional preventive measures for pregnant women and immunocompromised hosts should include avoiding the consumption and handling of raw or undercooked meat and avoiding exposure to cat feces. As is the case with other protozoa, the availability of antiretroviral therapy has led to a major reduction in AIDS-associated toxoplasmosis. In particular, cases of *Toxoplasma* encephalitis have been greatly reduced to the extent that they are now very uncommon in regions with access to antiretroviral therapy.

Sarcocystis lindemanni

S. lindemanni is a typical coccidian closely related to the intestinal forms *S. suihominis, S. bovihominis,* and *C. belli,* and the blood and tissue parasite *T. gondii. S. lindemanni* occurs worldwide in various animals, especially sheep, cattle, and pigs. Humans are accidentally infected only as the result of eating meat from these animals. Most infections are asymptomatic, but occasionally an infection may cause myositis, which is swelling of muscle, dyspnea, and eosinophilia. Infection of the myocardium has been observed but is extremely rare. There is no specific treatment for the muscle infection.

Free-Living Amebae

Naegleria species, *Acanthamoeba* species, *Balamuthia* species, *Sappinia pedata, Paravahlkampfia francinae,* and other

free-living amebae are found in soil and in contaminated lakes, streams, and other water environments. Most human infections with these amebae are acquired during the warm summer months by people exposed to the amebae while swimming in contaminated water. Inhalation of cysts present in dust may account for some infections, whereas ocular infections with *Acanthamoeba* species are associated with the contamination of contact lenses with nonsterile cleaning solutions.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Naegleria, Acanthamoeba, Balamuthia, Sappinia, and *Paravahlkampfia* organisms are opportunistic pathogens (Clinical Case 73.3). Although colonization of the nasal passages is usually asymptomatic, these amebae can invade the nasal mucosa and extend into the brain. Acute primary **amebic meningoencephalitis** (PAM) is most commonly caused by *N. fowleri.* Destruction of brain tissue is characterized by a fulminant, rapidly fatal meningoencephalitis. Symptoms include intense frontal headache, sore throat, fever, blocked nose with altered senses of taste and smell, stiff neck, and Kernig sign. The CSF is purulent and may contain many erythrocytes and motile amebae. Clinically, the course of the disease is rapid, with death usually occurring within 4 or 5 days. Postmortem findings show *Naegleria* trophozoites present in the brain but no evidence of cysts (Fig. 73.9). Although all cases were fatal before 1970, survival has now been reported in a few cases in which the disease was rapidly diagnosed and treated.

Other small free-living amebae may rarely cause encephalitis in humans. *S. diploidea* is a free-living ameba that is found in soil contaminated with the feces of elk and buffalo. *S. diploidea* was identified in an excised brain lesion from a 38-year-old immunocompetent man presenting with bifrontal headache, blurred vision, and loss of consciousness after a sinus infection. Recently a new species of the free-living ameba genus *Paravahlkampfia (P. francinae)* was isolated from the CSF of a patient with headache, sore throat, and vomiting symptoms typical of PAM. The patient recovered within a few days, suggesting that previous reports of nonfatal PAM may have been caused by this organism.

In contrast to *Naegleria, Acanthamoeba* and *Balamuthia* organisms produce granulomatous amebic encephalitis and single or multiple brain abscesses, primarily in immunocompromised individuals. The course of the disease is slower, with an incubation period of at least 10 days. The resulting disease is chronic granulomatous encephalitis with edema of the brain tissue.

Eye and skin infection caused by *Acanthamoeba* organisms also may occur. Keratitis is usually associated with eye trauma that occurred before contact with contaminated soil, dust, or water. The use of improperly cleaned contact lenses is also associated with this disease. Invasion by *Acanthamoeba* species produces corneal ulceration and severe ocular pain. Cases of apparent disseminated cutaneous and subcutaneous infection with *Acanthamoeba* and *Balamuthia* organisms have been described in patients with AIDS and in solid organ transplant recipients. These infections include multiple soft-tissue nodules, which on biopsy contain amebae. CNS or deep tissue involvement also may be present with this form of infection.

Clinical Case 73.3 **Amebic Encephalitis**

Rahimian and Kleinman (*Infect Med* 22:382–385, 2005) described a 43-year-old man, originally from the Dominican Republic, who presented after a seizure. The patient had a history of diabetes and hypertension but denied any previous history of seizures. Results of a CT scan without contrast were normal. Neurologic examination was unrevealing, and the patient was sent home. Approximately 2 weeks later, he was readmitted to the hospital because of a new, left facial droop. A CT scan without contrast showed the new appearance of thickening and hypodensity of the right frontal gray matter. Progressive generalized weakness developed, along with paralysis of the left upper extremity. A repeat CT scan without contrast revealed an increase in the size of the right frontal hypodense area, with vasogenic edema and a new left parietal hypodense lesion. At that time, dysarthria and a bilateral occipital headache also developed. The patient was a construction worker who denied injection drug use, recent dental work, and risk factors for HIV infection. His travel history was significant only for a trip to the Dominican Republic 2 years previously. Clinical examination was remarkable for dysarthria, a left facial droop, and left upper extremity paralysis. A lumbar puncture revealed an elevated white blood count, CSF protein level of 50 mg/dl, and glucose of 145 mg/dl (serum glucose was 327 mg/dl). Gram stain of the CSF was negative. A magnetic resonance imaging scan of the head showed two large ring-enhancing lesions with possible central necrosis. Results of an HIV test were negative. A brain biopsy showed lymphocytic infiltration, predominantly in the perivascular areas. A closer examination revealed trophozoites and amebic cysts consistent with a diagnosis of amebic encephalitis. Results of a PCR assay were consistent with *Balamuthia mandrillaris* infection. Therapy with pentamidine was initiated, but the patient died 3 days later.

Balamuthia encephalitis has been described in both immunosuppressed and immunocompetent individuals. Many infected patients do not have a history of swimming or exposure to contaminated water. The portal of entry is believed to be the respiratory tract or skin ulceration, with dissemination to the brain. Most cases of amebic encephalitis have been diagnosed postmortem. Recently, a PCR assay specific for *Balamuthia* has been used for diagnosis, as was done in this case. The majority of patients have died within weeks after the onset of neurologic symptoms, despite treatment with pentamidine.

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid; *CT,* computed tomography; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

For the diagnosis of infections caused by the free-living amebae, nasal discharge, CSF, and (in the case of eye infections) corneal scrapings should be collected. The specimens should be examined using a saline wet preparation and iodine-stained smears. Giemsa stain, Gram stain, or the fluorescent stain calcofluor white also can be used. *Naegleria* and *Acanthamoeba* species are difficult to differentiate except by experienced microscopists. However, the observation of an ameba in a normally sterile tissue

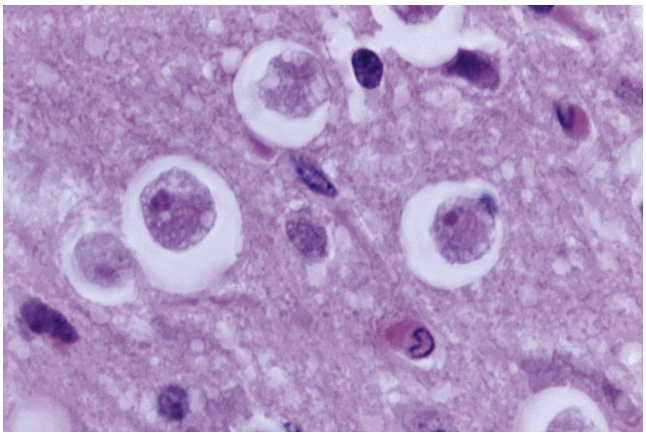


Fig. 73.9 Numerous *Naegleria* trophozoites in brain tissue from a patient with amebic meningoencephalitis. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

is diagnostic (see Fig. 73.9). In *Naegleria* infection, only the **ameboid trophozoites** are found within the tissue, whereas with *Acanthamoeba* and *Balamuthia* infection, both trophozoites and cysts are found in tissues. The clinical specimens can be cultured on agar plates seeded with live gram-negative enteric bacilli. Amebae present in the specimens use the bacteria as a nutritional source and can be detected within 1 or 2 days by the presence of the trails that form on the agar surface as the amebae move. *Balamuthia* do not grow on agar plates used for *Naegleria* and *Acanthamoeba* but have been recovered in tissue culture using mammalian cell lines. Most cases of *Balamuthia* infection are diagnosed by immunofluorescent antibody testing.

A real-time multiplex PCR test that simultaneously identifies *Acanthamoeba, Balamuthia,* and *N. fowleri* in CSF and biopsy tissue specimens has been developed at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). The real-time multiplex PCR assay is a fast, sensitive, and robust assay that has many advantages over conventional PCR. This test is used at the CDC to identify *Acanthamoeba, Balamuthia,* and *N. fowleri* in patient specimens with great success. Because of its high sensitivity and specificity, this assay can specifically identify a single ameba in a specimen. Unfortunately, these molecularly based tests are not routinely available in clinical laboratories because of the lack of commercially available reagents.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment of free-living amebic infections is largely ineffective. Amebic meningoencephalitis caused by *Naegleria, Acanthamoeba,* or *Balamuthia* is unresponsive to most antimicrobial agents. The treatment of choice for *Naegleria* infections is amphotericin B combined with miconazole and rifampin. Some patients with *Acanthamoeba* CNS infections have been cured with a combination of pharmaceuticals that included amikacin, voriconazole, sulfa drugs, and miltefosine, whereas several patients with *Balamuthia* infections have survived after treatment initially with pentamidine isethionate and subsequently with a combination of sulfadiazine, clarithromycin, and fluconazole. The ability of miltefosine and voriconazole to penetrate brain tissue and CSF and their low toxicity makes them attractive possibilities in the treatment of the amebic CNS disease. In combination with other antimicrobials, these two drugs may form the basis of an optimal therapy for treatment of *Acanthamoeba, Balamuthia,* and *Naegleria* infections. For example, miltefosine in conjunction with other pharmaceuticals has been used in the successful treatment of CNS infections caused by *Acanthamoeba, Balamuthia,* and *N. fowleri.* Amebic keratitis and cutaneous infections may respond to topical miconazole, chlorhexidine gluconate, or propamidine isethionate. Treatment of amebic keratitis may require repeated corneal transplantation or, rarely, enucleation of the eye. The wide distribution of these organisms in fresh and brackish waters makes the prevention and control of infection difficult. It has been suggested that known sources of infection should be off limits to bathing, diving, and water sports, although this is generally difficult to enforce. Swimming pools with cracks in the walls, allowing soil seepage, should be repaired to avoid creation of a source of infection.

Leishmania

Leishmania are obligate intracellular parasites that are transmitted from animal to human or human to human by bites from an infected female sand fly. For *Leishmania* in the Old World, there is only one subgenus, *Leishmania;* however, in the New World, the genus has been split into subgenera (*Leishmania* and *Viannia*) according to the development of the organism in the digestive tract (peripylarian or suprapylarian) of the sand fly. Depending on the geographic area, many different species can infect humans, producing a variety of diseases that range from cutaneous, diffuse cutaneous, and mucocutaneous to visceral (Table 73.2). New species of *Leishmania* are being detected frequently. Whereas the older literature focused primarily on three species, *L. donovani* (visceral leishmaniasis), *L. tropica* (cutaneous leishmaniasis), and *L. braziliensis* (cutaneous leishmaniasis), the current taxonomy of leishmaniasis is in a state of flux. Species differentiation is currently based on molecular techniques, rather than geographic distribution and clinical presentation.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The life cycles of all leishmanial parasites are quite similar (Fig. 73.10), whereas the associated infections differ in epidemiology, tissues affected, and clinical manifestations. The **promastigote** stage (long, slender form with a free flagellum) is present in the saliva of infected sand flies. Human infection is initiated by the bite of an infected sand fly, which injects the promastigotes into the skin, in which they lose their flagella; enter the **amastigote** stage; and invade reticuloendothelial cells. The change from promastigote to amastigote helps avoid the host's immune response. Changes in the organism's surface molecules play an important role in macrophage attachment and evading the immune response, including manipulating the macrophage's signaling pathways. Reproduction occurs in the amastigote stage, and as cells rupture, destruction of specific tissues (e.g., cutaneous tissues, visceral organs such as the liver and spleen) develops. The amastigote stage (Fig. 73.11) is diagnostic for

TABLE 73.2 Leishmaniasis in Humans

Parasite	Disease	Geographic Distribution
L. donovani (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Visceral leishmaniasis Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis Cutaneous leishmaniasis Dermal leishmanoid	Africa, Asia, South America
L. infantum *L. chagasi* (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Visceral leishmaniasis	Africa, Europe, Mediterranean area, Southeast Asia, Central and South America
L. tropica (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis Visceral leishmaniasis (rare)	Afghanistan, India, Turkey, former USSR, Middle East, Africa, India
L. major (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis	Middle East, Afghanistan, Africa, former USSR
L. aethiopica (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis Diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis	Ethiopia, Kenya, Yemen, former USSR
L. mexicana (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis Diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis	Texas, Belize, Guatemala, Mexico
L. braziliensis (subgenus *Viannia*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis	Central and South America
L. peruviana (subgenus *Viannia*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis	Panama, Colombia, Costa Rica
L. garnhami (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis	Venezuela
L. colombiensis	Cutaneous leishmaniasis	Colombia, Panama, Venezuela
L. venezuelensis (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis	Venezuela
L. lainsoni (subgenus *Viannia*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis	Brazil
L. amazonensis (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis Diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis	Brazil, Venezuela
L. naiffi (subgenus *Viannia*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis	Brazil, Caribbean Islands
L. pifanoi (subgenus *Leishmania*)	Cutaneous leishmaniasis Diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis	Brazil, Venezuela

USSR, Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.
Data from Barratt, J.L.N., et al., 2010. Importance of nonenteric protozoan infections in immunocompromised people. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 23, 795–836.

leishmaniasis and the infectious stage for sand flies. Ingested amastigotes transform in the sand fly into the promastigote stage, which multiplies by binary fission in the fly midgut. After development, this stage migrates to the fly proboscis, in which new human infection can be introduced during feeding. The life cycles of *Leishmania* organisms are similar for cutaneous, mucocutaneous, and visceral leishmaniasis, except that infected reticuloendothelial cells can be found throughout the body in visceral leishmaniasis.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Leishmaniasis is a zoonosis transmitted by adult female sand flies belonging to the genera *Phlebotomus* and *Lutzomyia.* The natural reservoirs include rodents, opossums, anteaters, sloths, cats, and dogs. In areas of the world in which leishmaniasis is endemic, the infection may be transmitted by a human-vector-human cycle. The infection may also be transmitted by direct contact with an infected lesion or mechanically by stable flies or dog flies.

Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis most often occurs in Bolivia, Brazil, and Peru, whereas the cutaneous form is much more widespread throughout the Middle East (Afghanistan, Algeria, Iran, Iraq, Saudi Arabia, and Syria) and in focal areas in South America (Brazil, Peru). Cutaneous leishmaniasis has been diagnosed among U.S. military personnel deployed in Afghanistan, Iraq, and Kuwait.

Visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar, dumdum fever) occurs at a rate of approximately 500,000 new cases per year, 90% of which are localized to Bangladesh, Brazil, India, Nepal, and the Sudan. This infection may exist as an endemic, epidemic, or sporadic disease and is a zoonosis except in India, in which **kala-azar** ("black fever" in Hindi) is an anthroponosis (human-vector-human). Individuals with post–kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis may be very important reservoirs for maintaining the infection in the population because of the high concentration of organisms in the skin. In contrast to cutaneous and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, for which a large number of leishmanial species have been implicated, only *L. donovani, L. infantum,* and *L. chagasi* commonly cause visceral leishmaniasis. *L. infantum* is present in countries along the Mediterranean basin (European, Near Eastern, and African) and is found in parts of China, South Africa, and the former Soviet Union, whereas *L. chagasi* is found in Latin America. *L. donovani* is concentrated in Africa and Asia. Although *L. tropica* usually causes cutaneous leishmaniasis, rare viscerotropic strains have been reported in the Middle East, Africa, and India.

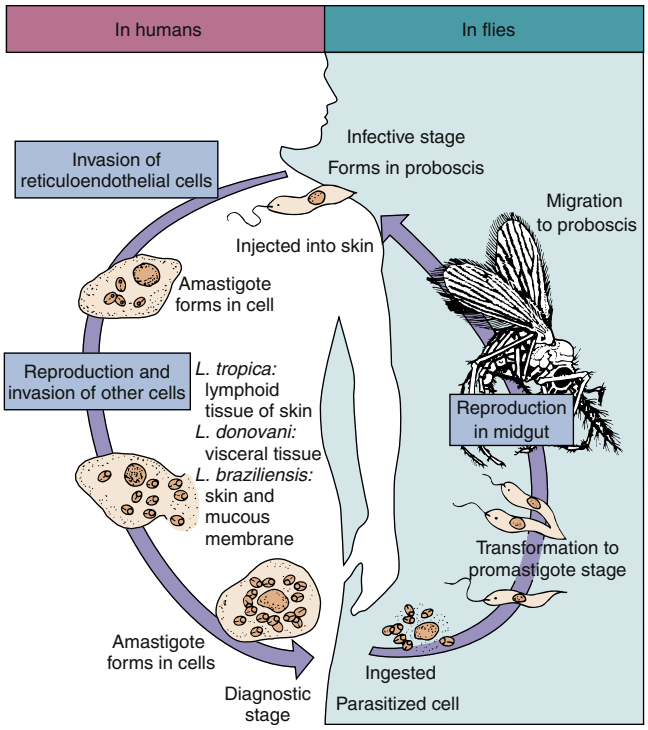


Fig. 73.10 Life cycle of *Leishmania* species.

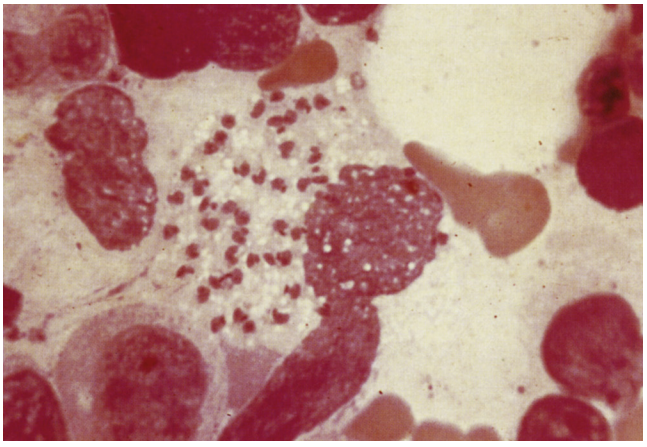


Fig. 73.11 Giemsa-stained amastigotes (Leishman-Donovan bodies) of *Leishmania donovani* present in a touch preparation of spleen. A small, dark-staining kinetoplast can be seen next to the spheric nucleus in some parasites. (From Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases, vol 2, Appleton & Lange, Stamford, CT.)

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Depending on the species of *Leishmania* involved, infection can result in a cutaneous, diffuse cutaneous, mucocutaneous, or visceral disease. With the spread of the HIV pandemic, there is increasing recognition of HIV-related visceral leishmaniasis caused by *L. donovani* in southern Asia and Africa and by *L. chagasi (L. infantum)* in South America. In these co-infected patients, leishmaniasis will manifest as an opportunistic infection, with parasites detected in atypical sites and a high associated mortality.

The first sign of **cutaneous leishmaniasis,** a red papule, appears at the site of the fly's bite between 2 weeks and 2 months after initial exposure. The lesion becomes irritated and intensely pruritic and begins to enlarge and ulcerate. Gradually the ulcer becomes hard and crusted and exudes a thin, serous material. At this stage, secondary bacterial infection may complicate the disease. The lesion may heal without treatment in a matter of months but usually leaves a disfiguring scar. The species that is commonly associated with cutaneous leishmaniasis, *L. tropica,* also may exist in a viscerotropic form. A disseminated nodular type of cutaneous leishmaniasis has been reported from Ethiopia, probably caused by an allergy to *L. aethiopica* antigens.

Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis is produced most often by the *L. braziliensis* complex. The incubation period and appearance of the primary cutaneous ulcers for *L. braziliensis* are similar to those found in other forms of cutaneous leishmaniasis. The essential difference in clinical disease is the involvement and destruction of mucous membranes and related tissue structures. Untreated primary lesions may develop into the mucocutaneous form in up to 80% of cases. Spread to the nasal and oral mucosa may become apparent concomitant with the primary lesion or many years after the primary lesion has healed. The mucosal lesions do not heal spontaneously, and secondary bacterial infections are common, producing severe and disfiguring facial mutilation and occasionally death.

The **visceral form of leishmaniasis** may present as a fulminating, rapidly fatal disease; as a more chronic debilitating process; or as an asymptomatic, self-limiting infection. The incubation period may be from several weeks to a year, with a gradual onset of fever, diarrhea, and anemia. Chills and sweating that may resemble malaria symptoms are common early in the infection. As organisms proliferate and invade the cells of the reticuloendothelial system, marked enlargement of the liver and spleen, weight loss, and emaciation occur. Kidney damage also may occur as the cells of the glomeruli are invaded. With persistence of the disease, deeply pigmented, granulomatous areas of skin, referred to as **post–kala-azar dermal leishmaniasis,** develop. In this condition, the macular or hypopigmented dermal lesions are associated with few parasites, whereas erythematous and nodular lesions are associated with abundant parasites.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Although the diagnosis of visceral, mucocutaneous, or cutaneous leishmaniasis may be made on clinical grounds in endemic areas, definitive diagnosis depends on detecting either the amastigotes in clinical specimens or the promastigotes in culture. Demonstration of the amastigotes in properly stained smears from touch preparations or ulcer biopsy specimens and cultures of ulcer tissue determines the diagnosis of cutaneous and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Specimens for the diagnosis of visceral leishmaniasis include splenic puncture, lymph node aspirates, liver biopsy, sternal aspirates, iliac crest bone marrow, and buffy coat preparations of venous blood. These specimens may be examined microscopically, cultured, and subjected to molecular detection methods. Molecular techniques for the detection of leishmanial DNA or RNA have been used for diagnosis, prognosis, and species identification and are more sensitive than microscopy or culture, especially for the detection of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. Because

TABLE 73.3 Trypanosoma Species Responsible for Human Diseases

Parasite	Vector	Disease
Trypanosoma brucei gambiense and *T. b. rhodesiense*	Tsetse fly	African trypanosomiasis (sleeping sickness)
T. cruzi	Reduviids	American trypanosomiasis (Chagas disease)

infections caused by *Leishmania* subgenus *Viannia* are considered more aggressive and are more likely to result in treatment failure, molecular techniques to identify the organism to the species and strains can be very important for therapy. Serologic tests are available; however, they are not especially useful for the diagnosis of mucocutaneous or visceral leishmaniasis. The detection of urinary antigens has been used for the diagnosis of visceral leishmaniasis.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

At present, the drug of choice for all forms of leishmaniasis is the pentavalent antimonial compound sodium stibogluconate (Pentostam). In the past several years, the ubiquitous use of this agent has been threatened by the development of drug resistance. Furthermore, drug treatment can be complicated by variation in the susceptibility of *Leishmania* species to drugs, variation in pharmacokinetics, and variation in drug–host immune response interaction. The toxicity of the antimonials also is considerable, and as a result, several alternative approaches to the treatment of leishmaniasis have been developed.

Standard therapy for cutaneous leishmaniasis consists of injections of antimonial compounds directly into the lesion or parenterally. Recently, both fluconazole and miltefosine have been shown to be efficacious. Other agents include amphotericin B, pentamidine, and various formulations of paromomycin. Alternatives to chemotherapy in the treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis include cryotherapy, heat, and surgical excision.

Stibogluconate remains the drug of choice for mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, with amphotericin B as an alternative. Of note, patients clinically cured of *L. braziliensis,* which is noted for its chronicity, latency, and metastasis with mucous membrane involvement, have been found to be PCR positive up to 11 years posttherapy. Follow-up with smears, cultures, and/or PCR is necessary to ensure that treatment has been effective.

The role of stibogluconate in the treatment of visceral leishmaniasis has been challenged in recent years. Although in most parts of the world, more than 95% of previously untreated patients with visceral leishmaniasis respond to pentavalent antimonials, widespread primary failure of these agents has been reported in the North Bihar region of India. The incidence of primary response was only 54%, and 8% of those initially responding to treatment relapsed. Widespread misuse of the drug is blamed for this emerging resistance. Fortunately, in recent years, four new potential therapies have been introduced for visceral leishmaniasis: amphotericin B liposome formulation, oral miltefosine, a parenteral formulation of paromomycin, and oral sitamaquine (an 8-aminoquinolone). Miltefosine has shown remarkable efficacy (>95% cure rate) and tolerability. Unfortunately, preliminary data from India suggest an increasing relapse rate (as high as 30%) in patients treated with miltefosine, indicating that drug resistance could develop and that strategies must be developed to prevent it.

Prevention of the various forms of leishmaniasis involves prompt treatment of human infections and control of reservoir hosts, along with insect vector control. Protection from sand flies by screening and insect repellents is also essential. The protection of forest and construction workers in endemic areas is most difficult, and disease in those places may be effectively controlled only by vaccination. Work to develop a vaccine is ongoing.

Clinical Case 73.4 **Trypanosomiasis**

Herwaldt and colleagues (*J Infect Dis* 181:395–399, 2000) described a case in which the mother of an 18-month-old boy in Tennessee found a triatomine bug in his crib, which she saved because it resembled a bug shown on a television program about insects that prey on mammals. An entomologist identified the bug as *Triatoma sanguisuga,* which is a vector of Chagas disease. The bug was found to be engorged with blood and infected with *Trypanosoma cruzi.* The child had been intermittently febrile for the preceding 2 to 3 weeks but was otherwise healthy except for pharyngeal edema and multiple insect bites of unknown type on his legs. Whole-blood specimens obtained from the child were negative by buffy coat examination and hemoculture but positive for *T. cruzi* by polymerase chain reaction and DNA hybridization, suggesting that he had low-level parasitemia. Specimens obtained after treatment with benznidazole were negative. He did not develop anti-*T. cruzi* antibody; 19 relatives and neighbors were also negative. Two of three raccoons trapped in the vicinity had positive hemocultures for *T. cruzi.* The child's case of *T. cruzi* infection, the fifth reported U.S. autochthonous case, would have been missed without his mother's attentiveness and the availability of sensitive molecular techniques. Given that infected triatomine bugs and mammalian hosts exist in the southern United States, it is not surprising that humans could become infected with *T. cruzi.* Furthermore, given the nonspecific clinical manifestations of the infection, it is likely that other cases have been overlooked.

Trypanosomes

Trypanosoma, another hemoflagellate, causes two distinctly different forms of disease (Table 73.3). One infection is called **African trypanosomiasis, or sleeping sickness,** and is produced by *T. b. gambiense* and *T. b. rhodesiense*. It is transmitted by tsetse flies. The second infection is called **American trypanosomiasis, or Chagas disease,** produced by *T. cruzi.* It is transmitted by true bugs (triatomids and reduviids, also called *kissing bugs;* Clinical Case 73.4).

TRYPANOSOMA BRUCEI GAMBIENSE

Physiology and Structure

The life cycle of the African forms of trypanosomiasis is illustrated in Fig. 73.12. The infective stage of the organism

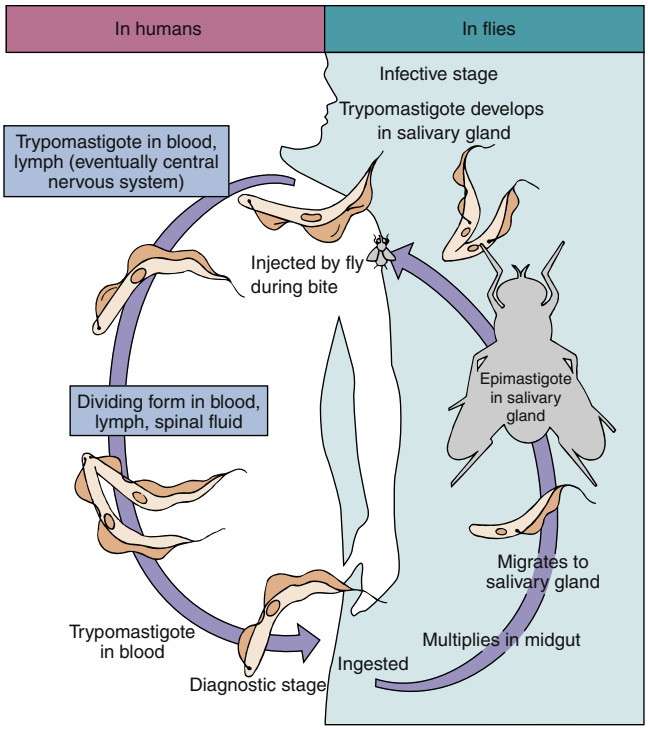


Fig. 73.12 Life cycle of *Trypanosoma brucei.*

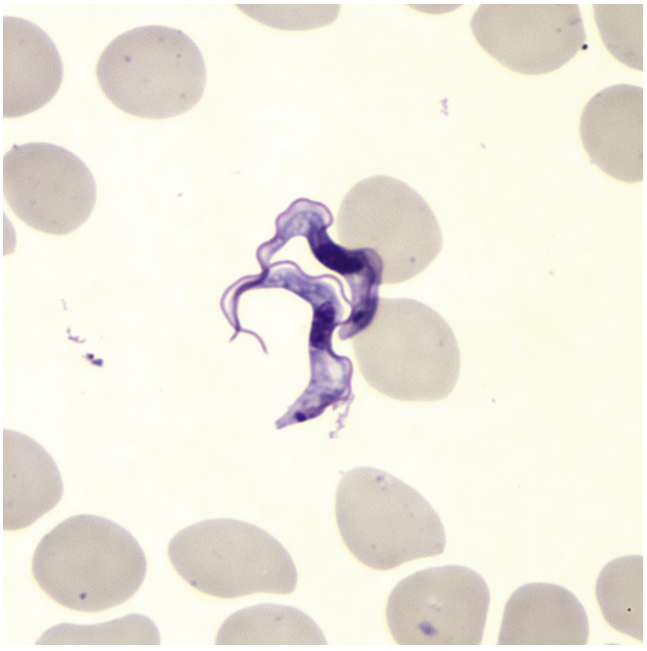


Fig. 73.13 Trypomastigote stage of *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense* in a blood smear. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

is the **trypomastigote** (Fig. 73.13), which is present in the salivary glands of transmitting tsetse flies. The organism in this stage has a **free flagellum** and an **undulating membrane** running the full length of the body. The trypomastigotes enter the wound created by the fly bite and find their way into blood and lymph, eventually invading the CNS. Reproduction of the trypomastigotes in blood, lymph, and spinal fluid is by binary or longitudinal fission. These trypomastigotes in blood are then infective for biting tsetse flies, in which further reproduction occurs in the midgut. The organisms then migrate to the salivary glands, in which an **epimastigote** form (with a free flagellum but only a partial undulating membrane) continues reproduction to the infective trypomastigote stage. Tsetse flies become infective 4 to 6 weeks after feeding on blood from a diseased patient.

Epidemiology

T. b. gambiense is limited to tropical West and Central Africa, correlating to the range of the tsetse fly vector. The tsetse flies transmitting *T. b. gambiense* prefer shaded stream banks for reproduction and proximity to human dwellings. Persons who work in such areas are at greatest risk of infection. An animal reservoir has not been proved, although several species of animals have been infected experimentally.

Clinical Syndromes

The incubation period of **Gambian sleeping sickness** varies from a few days to weeks. *T. b. gambiense* produces chronic disease, often ending fatally, with CNS involvement after several years' duration. One of the earliest signs of disease is an occasional **ulcer** at the site of the fly bite. As reproduction of organisms continues, the lymph nodes are invaded, and fever, myalgia, arthralgia, and lymph node enlargement result. Swelling of the posterior cervical lymph nodes is characteristic of Gambian disease and is called **Winterbottom sign.** Patients in this acute phase often exhibit hyperactivity.

Chronic disease progresses to CNS involvement, with lethargy, tremors, meningoencephalitis, mental retardation, and general deterioration. In the final stages of chronic disease, convulsions, hemiplegia, and incontinence occur, and the patient becomes difficult to arouse or evoke a response, eventually progressing to a comatose state. Death is the result of CNS damage and other infections such as malaria or pneumonia.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Organisms can be demonstrated in thick and thin blood films, in concentrated anticoagulated blood preparations, and in aspirations from lymph nodes and concentrated spinal fluid (see Fig. 73.13). Methods for concentrating parasites in blood may be helpful. Approaches include centrifugation of heparinized samples and anion-exchange chromatography. Levels of parasitemia vary widely and attempts to visualize the organism over several days may be necessary. Preparations should be fixed and stained immediately to avoid disintegration of the trypomastigotes. Serologic tests also are useful diagnostic techniques. Immunofluorescence, ELISA, precipitin, and agglutination methods have been used. ELISA has been used to detect antigen in serum and CSF. Biomarker tests (antigen detection) are not widely used because of the limited sensitivity of the test when there are limited numbers of trypomastigotes in the blood or CSF. Most reagents are not available commercially. Referral laboratories have used PCR to detect infections and to differentiate species (*T. b. gambiense* versus *T. b. rhodesiense*), but these methods are not routinely used in the field.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Suramin is the drug of choice for treating the acute blood and lymphatic stages of the disease, with pentamidine as

an alternative. Suramin and pentamidine do not cross the blood-brain barrier; therefore melarsoprol is the drug of choice when CNS involvement is suspected. Difluoromethylornithine (DFMO) is a cytostatic drug with activity against the acute and late (CNS) stages of the disease. The most effective control measures include an integrated approach to reduce the human reservoir of infection and the use of fly traps and insecticide; however, economic resources are limited, and effective programs have been difficult to sustain.

TRYPANOSOMA BRUCEI RHODESIENSE

Physiology and Structure

The life cycle of *T. b. rhodesiense* is similar to that of *T. b. gambiense* (see Fig. 73.12), with both trypomastigote and epimastigote stages and transmission by tsetse flies.

Epidemiology

The organism is found primarily in East Africa, especially the cattle-raising countries, in which tsetse flies breed in the brush rather than along stream banks. *T. b. rhodesiense* also differs from *T. b. gambiense* in that domestic animal hosts (cattle and sheep) and wild game animals act as reservoir hosts. This transmission and vector cycle make the organism more difficult to control than *T. b. gambiense.*

Clinical Syndromes

The incubation period for *T. b. rhodesiense* is shorter than that for *T. b. gambiense.* Acute disease (fever, rigors, and myalgia) occurs more rapidly and progresses to a fulminating, rapidly fatal illness. Infected persons are usually dead within 9 to 12 months if untreated.

This more virulent organism also develops in greater numbers in the blood. Lymphadenopathy is uncommon, and CNS invasion occurs early in the infection, with lethargy, anorexia, and mental disturbance. The chronic stages described for *T. b. gambiense* are not often seen because, in addition to rapid CNS disease, the organism produces kidney damage and myocarditis, leading to death.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Examination of blood and spinal fluid is carried out as for *T. b. gambiense.* Serologic tests are available; however, the marked variability of the surface antigens of trypanosomes limits the diagnostic usefulness of this approach.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The same treatment protocol applies as for *T. b. gambiense,* with early treatment for the more rapid neurologic manifestations. In contrast to *T. b. gambiense,* DFMO is not effective against late stage *T. b. rhodesiense* infections. Similar prevention and control measures are needed such as tsetse fly control and use of protective clothing, screens, netting, and insect repellent. In addition, early treatment is essential to control transmission, detect infection, and determine treatment in domestic animals. Control of infection in game animals is difficult, but infection can be reduced if measures to control the tsetse fly population, specifically eradication of brush and grassland breeding sites, are applied.

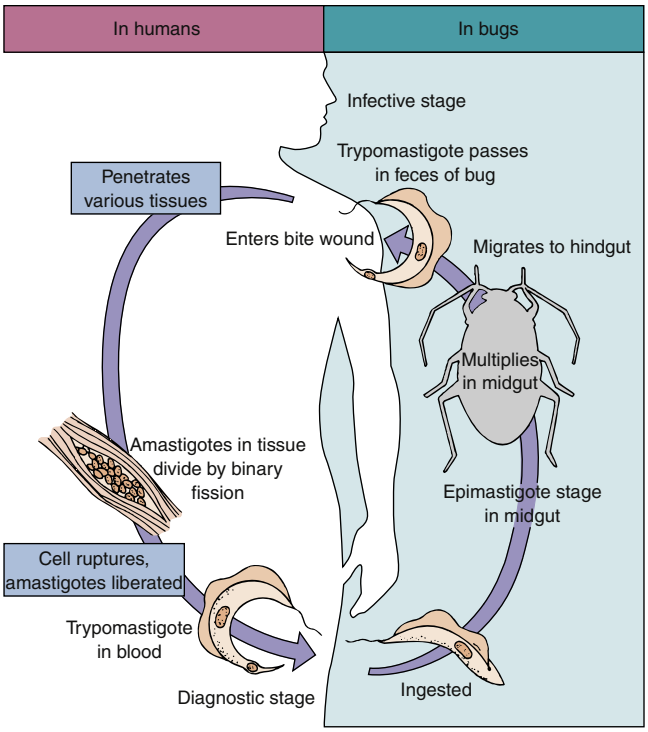


Fig. 73.14 Life cycle of *Trypanosoma cruzi.*

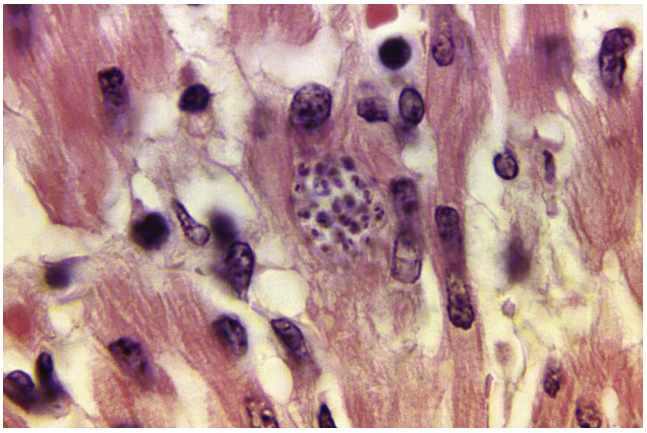


Fig. 73.15 Amastigote stage of *Trypanosoma cruzi* in heart muscle. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

TRYPANOSOMA CRUZI

Physiology and Structure

The life cycle of *T. cruzi* (Fig. 73.14) differs from *T. brucei* with the development of an additional form called an **amastigote** (Fig. 73.15). The amastigote is an intracellular form with no flagellum and no undulating membrane. It is smaller than the trypomastigote, is oval, and is found in tissues. The infective trypomastigote, which is present in the feces of a **reduviid bug ("kissing bug"),** enters the wound created by the biting, feeding bug. The bugs have been called **kissing bugs** because they frequently bite people around the mouth and in other facial sites. They are notorious for biting, feeding on blood and tissue juices, and then defecating into the wound. The organisms in the feces of the bug enter the wound; penetration is usually aided when

the patient rubs or scratches the irritated site. In addition to contracting *T. cruzi* infections through the insect's bite wound or exposed mucous membranes, one can be infected by blood transfusion, placental transfer, organ transplant, and accidental ingestion of parasitized reduviid bugs or their feces in food or drink.

The trypomastigotes then migrate to other tissues (e.g., cardiac muscle, liver, brain); lose the flagellum and undulating membrane; and become the smaller, oval, intracellular amastigote form. These intracellular amastigotes multiply by binary fission and eventually destroy the host cells. Then they are liberated to enter new host tissue as intracellular amastigotes or to become trypomastigotes infective for feeding reduviid bugs. Ingested trypomastigotes develop into epimastigotes in the midgut of the insect and reproduce by longitudinal binary fission. The organisms migrate to the hindgut of the bug; develop into metacyclic trypomastigotes; and then leave the bug in the feces after biting, feeding, and defecating, initiating a new human infection.

Epidemiology

T. cruzi occurs widely in both reduviid bugs and a broad spectrum of reservoir animals in North, Central, and South America. Human disease is found most often among children in South and Central America, in which 16 to 18 million people are infected. There is a direct correlation between infected wild animal reservoir hosts and the presence of infected bugs whose nests are found in human homes. Naturally acquired cases of Chagas disease are rare in the United States because the bugs prefer nesting in animal burrows and because homes are not as open to nesting as those in South and Central America. Chagas disease was considered a disease of rural areas; however, it is now ubiquitous because of social pattern changes of rural to urban migration and migration of infected persons to areas in which Chagas disease would never be suspected. Transmission was thought to be primarily through vector bites; but fecal contamination of the food supply by the vector also is a significant source of infection. Oral transmission of acute Chagas disease caused by fruit juices contaminated with the reduviid vector or feces containing the infective metacyclic trypomastigotes has been documented in South America and may be more common than previously thought. For example, in Brazil, oral infection now constitutes the most prominent mechanism of *T. cruzi* transmission. A very serious problem is disease acquisition through blood transfusion and organ transplantation. Infected patients with positive serology can remain asymptomatic yet transmit the infection. Screening of blood donors with a recommended enzyme immunoassay (EIA) has been implemented in the United States.

Clinical Syndromes

Chagas disease may be asymptomatic, acute, or chronic (see Clinical Case 73.4). One of the earliest signs is development of an erythematous and indurated area, called a **chagoma,** at the site of the bug bite. This is often followed by a rash and edema around the eyes and face **(Romaña sign).** The disease is most severe in children younger than 5 years and frequently is seen as an acute process with CNS involvement. Acute infection also is characterized by fever, chills, malaise, myalgia, and fatigue. Parasites may be present in the blood during the acute phase; however, they are sparse in patients older than 1 year. Death may ensue a few weeks after an acute attack, the patient may recover, or the patient may enter the chronic phase as organisms proliferate and enter the heart, liver, spleen, brain, and lymph nodes.

Chronic Chagas disease is characterized by hepatosplenomegaly, myocarditis, and enlargement of the esophagus and colon as a result of the destruction of nerve cells (e.g., Auerbach plexus) and other tissues that control the growth of these organs.

Megacardia and electrocardiographic changes are commonly seen in chronic disease. Involvement of the CNS may produce granulomas in the brain, with cyst formation and a meningoencephalitis. Death from chronic Chagas disease results from tissue destruction in the many areas invaded by the organisms, and sudden death results from complete heart block and brain damage.

Laboratory Diagnosis

T. cruzi can be demonstrated in thick and thin blood films or concentrated anticoagulated blood early in the acute stage. As the infection progresses, the organisms leave the bloodstream and become difficult to find. Biopsy of lymph nodes, liver, spleen, or bone marrow may demonstrate the organisms in the amastigote stage. Culture of blood or inoculation into laboratory animals may be useful when the parasitemia is low. In endemic areas, xenodiagnosis is widely used. Serologic tests also are also available. Several diagnostic EIA and immunochromatographic methods using parasite lysate and recombinant antigens have been approved by the FDA for screening blood donors and patients. The FDA and American Association of Blood Banks (AABB) require donated blood be screened for Chagas antibodies, and it is recommended that United Network Organ Sharing (UNOS) test tissue donors for the presence of Chagas antibodies. Gene amplification techniques, such as PCR, have been used to detect the organism in the bloodstream; however, these approaches are not widely available and have not been adapted for use in the field.

Treatment, Prevention, And Control

Treatment of Chagas disease is limited by the lack of reliable agents. The drugs of choice are benznidazole and nifurtimox. Although both drugs have proven activity against the acute phase of disease, they are less effective against chronic Chagas disease and have severe side effects. Alternative agents include allopurinol. Education regarding the disease, its insect transmission, and the wild animal reservoirs is critical. Bug control, eradication of nests, and construction of homes to prevent nesting of bugs are also essential. The use of dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) in bug-infested homes has demonstrated a drop in the transmission of malaria and Chagas disease. Screening of blood by serologic means or excluding blood donors from endemic areas prevents some infections that would otherwise be associated with transfusion therapy.

Development of a vaccine is possible because *T. cruzi* does not have the wide antigenic variation observed with the African trypanosomes.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Barratt, J.L.N., et al., 2010. Importance of nonenteric protozoan infections in immunocompromised people. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 23, 795–836.

Bruckner, D.A., Labarca, J.A., 2015. *Leishmania* and *Trypanosoma*. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Cox-Singh, L., Culleton, R., 2015. *Plasmodium knowlesi*: from severe zoonosis to animal model. Trends Parasitol. 31, 232–238.

Leiby, D.A., 2011. Transfusion-transmitted *Babesia* spp.: bulls-eye on *Babesia microti*. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 24 (14–28).

Lin, J.T., et al., 2010. Drug-resistant malaria: the era of ACT. Curr. Infect. Dis. Rep. 12, 165–173.

Matheson, B.A., Pritt, B.S., 2017. Update on malaria diagnostics and test utilization. J. Clin. Microbiol. 55, 2009–2017.

Prestel, C., et al., 2018. Malaria diagnostic practices in U.S. laboratories in 2017. J. Clin. Microbiol. 56 e00461–18.

Price, R.N., et al., 2007. Vivax malaria: neglected and not benign. Am. J. trop. Med. Hyg. 77 (Suppl. 6), 79–87.

Pritt, B.S., 2015. *Plasmodium* and *Babesia*. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Visvesvara, G.S., 2015. Pathogenic and opportunistic free-living amebae. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Wassmer, S.C., et al., 2015. Investigating the pathogenesis of severe malaria: a multidisciplinary and cross-geographical approach. Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg. 93 (Suppl. 3), 42–56.

Yerlikaya, S., et al., 2018. A systematic review: performance of rapid diagnostic tests for the detection of *Plasmodium knowlesi, Plasmodium malariae,* and *Plasmodium ovale* monoinfections in human blood. J. Infect. Dis. 218, 265–276.

Yoshida, N., et al., 2011. Invasion mechanisms among emerging foodborne protozoan parasites. Trends Parasitol. 27, 459–466.

Case Study and Questions

A tourist returned from a 4-week visit to peninsular Malaysia, where he stayed in a jungle area for 5 days. He did not take any malaria prophylaxis and presented to the emergency department with fever, chills, tachypnea, and tachycardia. He was thrombocytopenic and had mild liver function test abnormalities. Examination of Giemsa-stained blood films showed a hyperparasitemia of ≈10% with both ring forms and mature trophozoites.

1. What is the most likely cause of this infection?
   a. *Plasmodium falciparum*
   b. *Plasmodium knowlesi*
   c. *Plasmodium malariae*
   d. *Plasmodium vivax*
2. Why is this species of *Plasmodium* associated with such high levels of parasitemia?
3. How would you treat this patient?

74 Nematodes

A 10-year-old boy was brought in by his father for evaluation of crampy abdominal pain, nausea, and mild diarrhea that had persisted for approximately 2 weeks. On the day before evaluation, the boy reported to his parents that he passed a large worm into the toilet during a bowel movement. He flushed the worm before the parents could see it. Physical examination was completely unremarkable. The boy had no fever, cough, or rash and did not complain of anal pruritus. His travel history was unremarkable. Examination of a stool specimen revealed the diagnosis.

1. Which intestinal parasites of humans are nematodes?
2. Which nematode was likely in this case? Which organisms may be found in stool?
3. What was the most likely means of acquisition of this parasite?
4. Was this patient at risk of autoinfection?
5. Describe the life cycle of this parasite.
6. Can this parasite cause extraintestinal symptoms? Which other organs may be invaded and what might stimulate extraintestinal invasion?

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

ASCARIS LUMBRICOIDES

Trigger Words

Ascaris, roundworm, intestinal obstruction, pulmonary eosinophilia, decorticate, nematode

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Nematodes: most common helminths recognized in the United States; also called roundworms
- Large (20 to 35 cm long) pink worms with moderately complex life cycle but otherwise typical of intestinal roundworm (nematode)
- Infections caused by ingestion of only a few eggs may produce no symptoms
- Even a single adult *Ascaris* worm may be dangerous: migrate to liver, penetrate intestine, cause mechanical tissue damage
- Migration of a large number of larval worms to lung may produce pneumonitis
- A tangled bolus of mature worms in intestine may lead to obstruction and perforation
- A large worm burden may result in abdominal tenderness, fever, distention, nausea

Epidemiology

- *A. lumbricoides* prevalent in areas with poor sanitation and where human feces (night soil) are used as fertilizer
- ≈1 billion people infected worldwide
- No known animal reservoir
- *Ascaris* eggs very hardy; can survive extreme temperatures, persist for months in feces and sewage

Diagnosis

- Microscopic examination of sediment of concentrated stool
- Adult worms may be visualized on abdominal radiographs; cholangiograms may reveal worms in biliary tract
- Pulmonary phase of disease may be diagnosed by finding larvae and eosinophils in sputum

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment of symptomatic infection highly effective
- Drugs of choice: albendazole or mebendazole
- Patients with mixed infections *(Ascaris* plus other helminths, *Giardia,* or *Entamoeba histolytica)* should be treated for ascariasis first to avoid provoking worm migration
- Prevention: education, improved sanitation, avoidance of human feces as fertilizer

ONCHOCERCA VOLVULUS

Trigger Words

Microfilaria, macrofilaria, nodules, hanging groin, blackfly, Africa, *Wolbachia* endosymbiont, skin snip, river blindness

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Filariae: long, slender roundworms; parasites of blood, lymph, subcutaneous and connective tissues; transmitted by mosquitoes or biting flies
- *O. volvulus:* filarial nematode transmitted by blackfly *(Simulium damnosum)*
- Onchocerciasis affects >18 million people worldwide; causes blindness in ≈5% of infected people
- All individual worms and all life cycle stages of *O. volvulus* contain *Wolbachia* bacterial endosymbiont
- Clinical onchocerciasis characterized by infection involving skin, subcutaneous tissue, lymph nodes, eyes
- Signs/symptoms: fever, eosinophilia, urticaria; migration of microfilariae to eyes causes severe tissue damage and blindness

Epidemiology

- *O. volvulus* endemic in many parts of Africa, especially the Congo and Volta river basins; common term is "river blindness"
- Prevalence: men > women; 50% of men in endemic areas are blind before they reach age 50

Diagnosis

- Diagnosis made by demonstration of microfilariae in skin snip preparations taken from infrascapular or gluteal regions
- In patients with ocular disease, organism may be seen in anterior chamber with aid of a slit lamp

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Surgical removal of nodules often used to eliminate adult worms and stop production of microfilariae
- Ivermectin: single dose reduces number of microfilariae in eyes and skin
- Protection from blackfly bites, prompt diagnosis and treatment of infections to prevent transmission

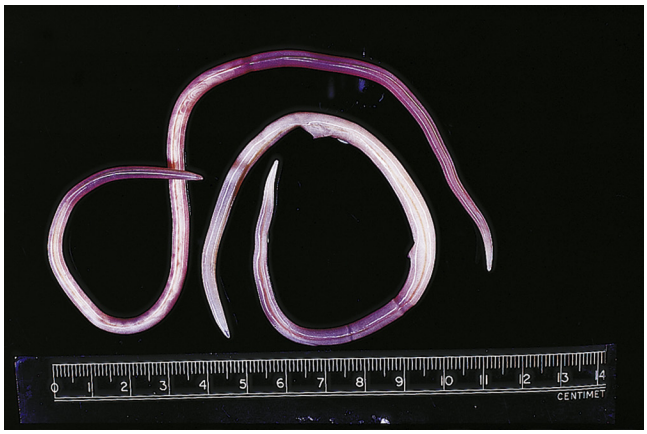


Fig. 74.1 **Adult Ascaris lumbricoides.** (Peters, W., Pasvol, G. 2007. Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, 6th ed., Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA)

TABLE 74.1 Nematodes of Medical Importance

Parasite	Common Name	Disease
Enterobius vermicularis	Pinworm	Enterobiasis
Ascaris lumbricoides	Roundworm	Ascariasis
Toxocara canis	Dog ascaris	Visceral larva migrans
T. cati	Cat ascaris	Visceral larva migrans
Baylisascaris procyonis	Raccoon ascaris	Neural larva migrans
Trichuris trichiura	Whipworm	Trichuriasis
Ancylostoma duodenale	Old World hookworm	Hookworm infection
Necator americanus	New World hookworm	Hookworm infection
A. braziliense	Dog or cat hookworm	Cutaneous larva migrans
Strongyloides stercoralis	Threadworm	Strongyloidiasis
Trichinella spiralis	Pork worm	Trichinosis
Wuchereria bancrofti	Bancroft filaria	Filariasis
Brugia malayi	Malayan filaria	Filariasis
Loa loa	African eye worm	Loiasis
Mansonella species	—	Filariasis
Onchocerca volvulus	—	Onchocerciasis, river blindness
Dirofilaria immitis	Dog heartworm	Dirofilariasis
Dracunculus medinensis	Guinea worm	Dracunculosis

The most common helminths recognized in the United States are primarily intestinal nematodes, although in other countries, nematode infections of blood and tissues can cause devastating disease. The nematodes are the most easily recognized form of intestinal parasite because of their large size and cylindric, unsegmented bodies; hence the common name **roundworms** (Fig. 74.1). These parasites live primarily as adult worms in the intestinal tract, and nematode infections are most commonly confirmed by detecting the characteristic eggs in feces. The identification of eggs should be approached in a systematic manner, taking into account the size and shape of the egg, the thickness of the shell, and the presence or absence of specialized structures, such as polar plugs, knobs, spines, and opercula. The presence and characteristics of larvae within the eggs may also be useful. The most common nematodes of medical importance are listed in Table 74.1.

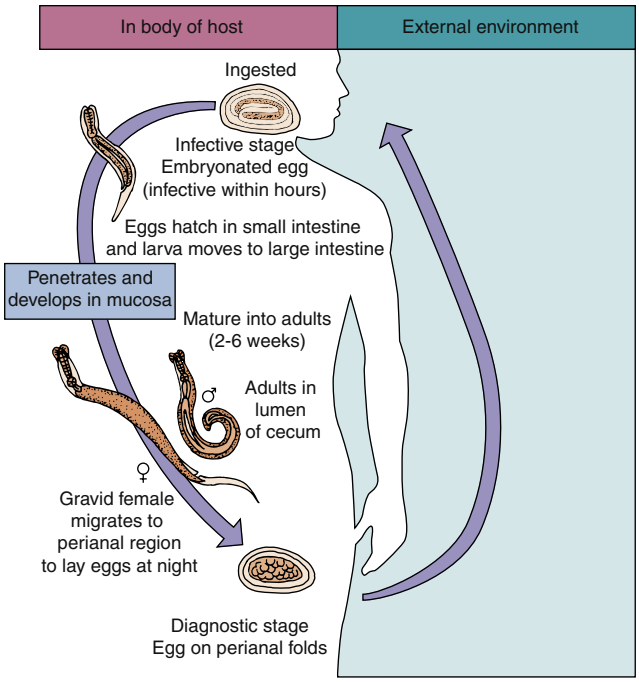


Fig. 74.2 Life cycle of *Enterobius vermicularis.*

The **filariae** are long, slender roundworms that are parasites of blood, lymph, subcutaneous, and connective tissues. All these nematodes are transmitted by mosquitoes or biting flies. Most produce larval worms called **microfilariae** that are demonstrated in blood specimens or in subcutaneous tissues and skin snips.

Enterobius vermicularis

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

E. vermicularis, the **pinworm,** is a small, white worm that is familiar to parents who find them in the perianal folds or vagina of an infected child. Infection is initiated by ingestion of embryonated eggs (Fig. 74.2). Larvae hatch in the small intestine and migrate to the large intestine, in which they mature into adults in 2 to 6 weeks. Fertilization of the female by the male produces the characteristic asymmetric eggs. These eggs are laid in the perianal folds by the migrating female. As many as 20,000 eggs are deposited on the perianal skin. The eggs rapidly mature and are infectious within hours.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

E. vermicularis occurs worldwide but is most common in the temperate regions, in which person-to-person spread is greatest in crowded conditions, such as in day-care centers, schools, and mental institutions. An estimated 500 million cases of pinworm infection are reported worldwide, and this is the most common helminthic infection in North America.

Infection occurs when the eggs are ingested and the larval worm is free to develop in the intestinal mucosa. These eggs may be transmitted from hand to mouth by children scratching the perianal folds in response to the irritation caused by the migrating, egg-laying female worms, or the eggs may find their way to clothing and play objects in day-care centers. They also can survive long periods in the dust that accumulates over doors, on windowsills, and under beds in the rooms inhabited by infected people. Egg-laden dust can be inhaled and swallowed to produce infestation. In addition, **autoinfection ("retrofection")** can occur, in which eggs hatch in the perianal folds and the larval worms migrate into the rectum and large intestine. Infected individuals who handle food also can be a source of infection. No animal reservoir for *Enterobius* is known. Physicians should be aware of the related epidemiology of *Dientamoeba fragilis*; this organism correlates well with the presence of *E. vermicularis*, with *D. fragilis* thought to be transported in the pinworm eggshell.

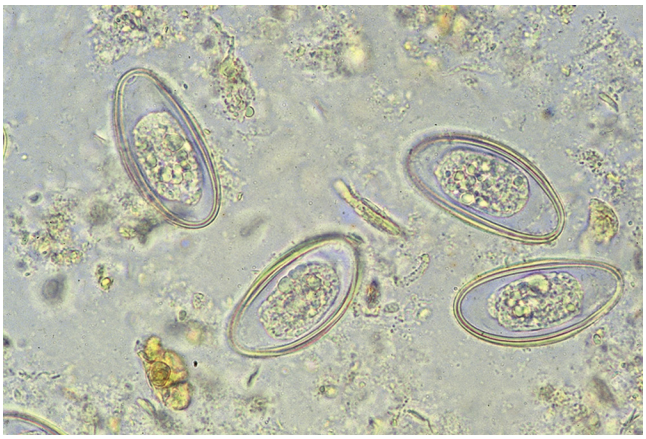


Fig. 74.3 *Enterobius vermicularis* egg. The thin-walled eggs are 50 to 60 × 20 to 30 μm, ovoid, and flattened on one side (not because children sit on them, but this is an easy way to correlate the egg morphology with the epidemiology of the disease).

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Many children and adults show no symptoms and serve only as carriers. Patients who are allergic to the secretions of the migrating worms experience severe pruritus, loss of sleep, and fatigue. The pruritus may cause repeated scratching of the irritated area and lead to secondary bacterial infection. Worms that migrate into the vagina may produce genitourinary problems and granulomas.

Worms attached to the bowel wall may produce inflammation and granuloma formation around the eggs. Although the adult worms may occasionally invade the appendix, there remains no proven relationship between pinworm invasion and appendicitis. Penetration through the bowel wall into the peritoneal cavity, liver, and lungs has been infrequently recorded.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of **enterobiasis** is usually suggested by the clinical manifestations and confirmed by detection of the characteristic eggs on the anal mucosa. Occasionally, the adult worms are seen by laboratory personnel in stool specimens, but the method of choice for diagnosis involves use of an anal swab with a sticky surface that picks up the eggs (Fig. 74.3) for microscopic examination. Sampling can be done with clear tape or commercially available swabs. The sample should be collected when the child arises and before bathing or defecation, to pick up eggs laid by migrating worms during the night. Parents can collect the specimen and deliver it to the physician for immediate microscopic examination. Three swabs, one per day for 3 consecutive days, may be required to detect the diagnostic eggs. The eggs are rarely seen in fecal specimens. Systemic signs of infection, such as eosinophilia, are rare.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is albendazole or mebendazole. Pyrantel pamoate and piperazine are effective, but reinfection is common. To avoid reintroduction of the organism and reinfection in the family environment, it is customary to treat the entire family simultaneously. Although cure rates are high, reinfection is common. Repeat treatment after 2 weeks may be useful in preventing reinfection.

Personal hygiene, clipping of fingernails, thorough washing of bed clothes, and prompt treatment of infected individuals all contribute to control. When housecleaning is done in the home of an infected family, dusting under beds, on window sills, and over doors should be done with a damp mop to avoid inhalation of infectious eggs.

Ascaris lumbricoides

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

A. lumbricoides are large (20 to 35 cm in length), pink worms (see Fig. 74.1) that have a more complex life cycle than *E. vermicularis* but are otherwise typical of an intestinal roundworm (Fig. 74.4).

The ingested infective egg releases a larval worm that penetrates the duodenal wall, enters the bloodstream, is carried to the liver and heart, and then enters the pulmonary circulation. The larvae break free in the alveoli of the lungs, in which they grow and molt. In about 3 weeks, the larvae pass from the respiratory system to be coughed up, swallowed, and returned to the small intestine.

As the male and female worms mature in the small intestine (primarily jejunum), fertilization of the female by the male initiates egg production, which may amount to 200,000 eggs per day for as long as a year. Female worms can also produce unfertilized eggs in the absence of males. Eggs are found in the feces 60 to 75 days after the initial infection. Fertilized eggs become infectious after approximately 2 weeks in the soil.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

A. lumbricoides is prevalent in areas in which sanitation is poor and in which human feces are used as fertilizer. Because food and water are contaminated with *Ascaris* eggs, this parasite, more than any other, affects the world's population. Although no animal reservoir is known for *A.*

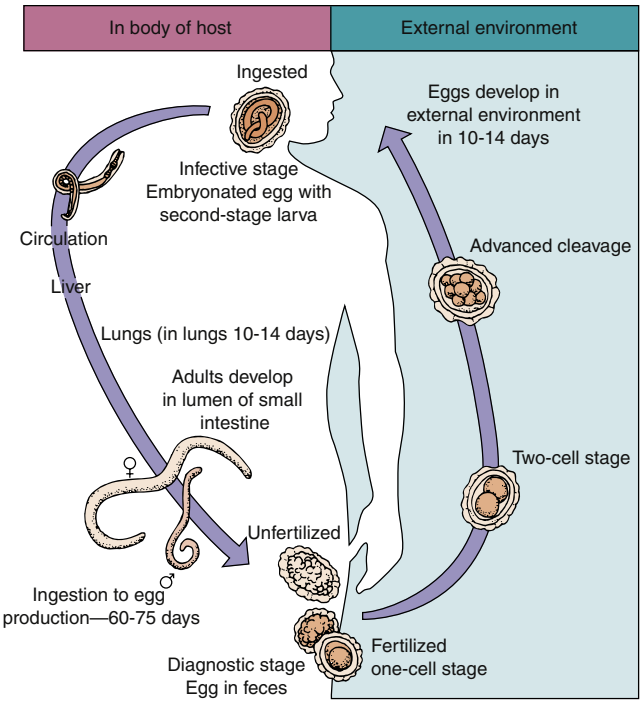


Fig. 74.4 Life cycle of *Ascaris lumbricoides*.

lumbricoides, an almost identical species from pigs, *A. suum*, can infect humans. This species is seen in swine farmers and is associated with the use of pig manure for gardening. *Ascaris* eggs are quite hardy and can survive extreme temperatures and persist for several months in feces and sewage. Ascariasis is the most common helminthic infection worldwide, with an estimated 1 billion people infected.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Infections caused by the ingestion of only a few eggs may produce no symptoms; however, even a single adult *Ascaris* worm may be dangerous because it can migrate into the bile duct, resulting in liver and damage tissue (Clinical Case 74.1). Furthermore, because the worm has a tough, flexible body, it can occasionally perforate the intestine, creating peritonitis with secondary bacterial infection. The adult worms do not attach to the intestinal mucosa but depend on constant motion to maintain their position within the bowel lumen.

After infection with many larvae, migration of worms to the lungs can produce pneumonitis resembling an asthmatic attack. Pulmonary involvement is related to the degree of hypersensitivity induced by previous infections and the intensity of the current exposure and may be accompanied by eosinophilia and oxygen desaturation. Also, a tangled bolus of mature worms in the intestine can result in obstruction, perforation, and occlusion of the appendix. As mentioned previously, migration into the bile duct, gallbladder, and liver can produce severe tissue damage. This migration can occur in response to fever, drugs other than those used to treat ascariasis, and some anesthetics. Patients with many larvae may also experience abdominal tenderness, fever, distention, and vomiting.

Clinical Case 74.1 **Hepatic Ascariasis**

Hurtado and colleagues (*N Engl J Med* 354:1295–1303, 2006) described a case of a 36-year-old woman who presented with recurrent RUQ abdominal pain. One year earlier, she also presented with RUQ abdominal pain, abnormal liver function tests, and positive serology for hepatitis C. An abdominal ultrasonographic examination showed biliary dilation, and ERCP showed multiple stones in the common bile duct, the left hepatic duct, and the left intrahepatic duct. The majority of the stones were removed. Examination of the bile duct aspirate was negative for ova and parasites. One month before the present admission, the patient experienced recurrent RUQ pain and jaundice. Repeat ERCP again showed multiple stones in the common and left main hepatic ducts; partial removal was accomplished.

One month later, the patient was admitted with severe epigastric pain and fever. The patient was born in Vietnam and had immigrated to the United States when she was in her early 20s. She had no history of recent travel. An abdominal computed tomography scan with contrast showed abnormal perfusion of the left hepatic lobe and dilation of the left biliary radicles with multiple filling defects. ERCP showed partial obstruction of the left main hepatic duct, a few small stones, and purulent bile. Magnetic resonance imaging showed diffuse enhancement of the left lobe and left portal vein suggestive of inflammation. Cultures of blood grew *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and examination of a stool sample revealed a few *Strongyloides stercoralis* rhabditiform larvae. Biliary stents were placed, and the patient was treated with levofloxacin. Two weeks later, the patient was admitted to the hospital, in which a partial hepatectomy was performed for treatment of recurrent pyogenic cholangitis. Gross examination of the left hepatic lobe showed ectatic bile ducts containing bile-stained calculi. Microscopic examination of the calculous material revealed collections of parasite eggs and a degenerated and fragmented nematode. *Klebsiella* species were identified in cultures by the microbiology laboratory. The findings were consistent with recurrent pyogenic cholangiohepatitis with infection by *Ascaris lumbricoides* and *Klebsiella* species. In addition to antibiotics for the bacterial infection, the patient was treated with ivermectin for the *Strongyloides* infection and albendazole for the *Ascaris* organisms.

The aberrant migration of *A. lumbricoides* into the pancreatobiliary tree, with subsequent deposition of eggs, followed by death and degeneration of both worm and eggs, became a nidus for calculus formation and secondary bacterial infection. Although unusual in the United States, hepatic ascariasis is estimated to contribute to more than 35% of cases of biliary and pancreatic disease in the Indian subcontinent and parts of Southeast Asia.

ERCP, Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; *RUQ*, right upper quadrant.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Examination of the sediment of concentrated stool reveals the knobby-coated, bile-stained, fertilized and unfertilized eggs. Eggs are oval, 55 to 75 µm long and 50 µm wide. The thick-walled outer shell can be partially removed **(decorticated egg).** Occasionally, adult worms pass with the

feces, which can be quite dramatic because of their large size (20 to 35 cm long) (see Fig. 74.1). Roentgenologists also may visualize the worms in the intestine, and cholangiograms often disclose their presence in the biliary tract of the liver. The pulmonary phase of the disease may be diagnosed by the finding of larvae and eosinophils in sputum.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment of symptomatic infection is highly effective. The drug of choice is albendazole or mebendazole; pyrantel pamoate and piperazine are alternatives. Patients with mixed parasitic infections (*A. lumbricoides*, other helminths, *Giardia duodenalis*, and *Entamoeba histolytica*) in the stool should be treated for ascariasis first to avoid provoking worm migration and possible intestinal perforation. Education, improved sanitation, and avoidance of human feces as fertilizer are critical. A program of mass treatment in highly endemic areas has been suggested, but this may not be economically feasible. Furthermore, eggs can persist in contaminated soil for 3 years or more. Certainly, improved personal hygiene among people who handle food is an important aspect of control.

Toxocara and *Baylisascaris*

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

T. canis, *T. cati*, and *B. procyonis* are ascarid worms that are naturally parasitic in the intestines of dogs, cats, and raccoons, respectively. These organisms may accidentally infect humans, producing disease states known as **visceral larva migrans (VLM), neural larva migrans (NLM),** and **ocular larva migrans (OLM).** When ingested by humans, the eggs of these worms can hatch into larval forms that cannot follow the normal developmental cycle as in the natural host. They can penetrate the human gut and reach the bloodstream and then migrate as larvae to various human tissues. The *Toxocara* species are the most common causes of VLM and OLM, whereas *B. procyonis* is increasingly recognized as a cause of fatal NLM. Although the *Toxocara* species do not develop beyond the migrating larval form, *B. procyonis* larvae continue to grow to a large size within the human host.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Wherever infected dogs and cats are present, the eggs are a threat to humans; likewise, contact with raccoons or their feces presents a significant risk of infection with *B. procyonis*. This is especially true for children who are exposed more readily to contaminated soil and who tend to put objects in their mouths.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The clinical manifestations of VLM, NLM, and OLM in humans are related to the migration of the larvae through tissues (Clinical Case 74.2). The larvae may invade any tissue of the body in which they can induce bleeding, the formation of eosinophilic granulomas, and necrosis. Patients may be asymptomatic and have only eosinophilia, but they also can have serious disease directly related to the number and location of the lesions caused by the migrating larvae, as well as the degree to which the host is sensitized to the larval antigens. The organs most frequently involved are the lungs, heart, kidneys, liver, skeletal muscles, eyes, and central nervous system (CNS). NLM is a common sequela of infection with *B. procyonis* and is attributed to the extensive somatic larval migration of this species. Continued

Clinical Case 74.2 **Baylisascariasis**

Gavin and colleagues (*Pediatr Infect Dis J* 21:971–975, 2002) described a case of a previously normal 2½-year-old boy who was admitted to the hospital with fever and recent onset of encephalopathy. Past medical history was significant for pica and geophagia, and he was receiving ferrous sulfate for iron-deficiency anemia. He was in good health until 8 days before admission, when a temperature of 38.5° C and a mild cough developed. Three days before admission, he developed increasing lethargy and marked somnolence. He was irritable, confused, and ataxic. The family lived in suburban Chicago, and there were no sick contacts or pets at home. There was no travel history. On admission, he was febrile and lethargic but irritable and agitated when disturbed. Neck stiffness with generalized hypertonicity, hyperreflexia, and bilateral extensor plantar responses were present. The WBC was elevated, and eosinophilia was present. CSF examination revealed an elevated protein and WBC with 32% eosinophils. Gram, acid-fast, and India ink stains and bacterial and cryptococcal antigen tests were all negative. Broad-spectrum antibacterial and antiviral therapy was begun empirically; however, the patient became comatose, with opisthotonos, decerebrate posturing, hypertonicity, and tremulousness. Cranial magnetic resonance imaging demonstrated areas of increased signal involving both cerebellar hemispheres. Bacterial, fungal, mycobacterial, and viral cultures of blood and CSF were negative. Viral serologies were negative, as were tests for antibodies against *Toxocara*, cysticercosis, coccidioidomycosis, blastomycosis, and histoplasmosis. A detailed epidemiologic history revealed that 18 days before hospitalization, the family attended a picnic in a nearby suburb. Numerous raccoons were observed regularly in the vicinity, and the patient was observed playing with and eating dirt beneath the trees. CSF and serum antibodies against third-stage *Baylisascaris procyonis* were demonstrated by indirect immunofluorescence assay, with titers increasing from 1/4 to 1/1024 during a 2-week period. The patient was treated with albendazole and corticosteroids for 4 weeks but has remained severely affected with marked generalized spasticity and cortical blindness. Subsequent examination of soil and debris from the child's play site revealed thousands of infective *Baylisascaris procyonis* eggs. This case underscores the devastating effects of neural larva migrans. In many regions of North America, large populations of raccoons with high rates of endemic *Baylisascaris procyonis* infection (e.g., 60% to 80%) live in proximity to humans, which suggests that the risk of human infection is probably substantial.

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid; *WBC*, white blood cell count.

growth and migration within the CNS produce extensive mechanical tissue damage. Signs and symptoms caused by the migrating larvae include cough, wheezing, fever, rash, anorexia, seizures, fatigue, and abdominal discomfort. On examination, patients may have hepatosplenomegaly and nodular pruritic skin lesions. Death may result from respiratory failure, cardiac arrhythmia, or brain damage. Ocular disease can also occur with the movement of larvae through the eye and may be mistaken for malignant retinoblastoma. Prompt diagnosis is required to avoid unnecessary enucleation.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of VLM, NLM, and OLM is based on clinical findings; the presence of **eosinophilia;** known exposure to dogs, cats, or raccoons; and serologic confirmation. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays are available and appear to offer the best serologic marker for disease. The examination of feces from infected patients is not useful because egg-laying adults are not present. However, examination of fecal material from infected pets often supports the diagnosis. Tissue examination for larvae may provide a definitive diagnosis but may be negative because of sampling error.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment is primarily symptomatic because antiparasitic agents are not of proven benefit. Anthelmintic therapy with albendazole, mebendazole, diethylcarbamazine (DEC), or thiabendazole is often used. Corticosteroid therapy may be lifesaving if the patient has serious pulmonary, myocardial, or CNS involvement because a major component of the infection is an inflammatory response to the organism. Despite anthelmintic treatment of cases of *B. procyonis* NLM, there are no neurologically intact survivors. These zoonoses can be greatly reduced if pet owners conscientiously eradicate worms from their animals and clean up pet fecal material from yards and school playgrounds. Children's play areas and sandboxes should be carefully monitored. Raccoons should not be encouraged to visit homes or yards for food, and the keeping of raccoons as pets should be strongly discouraged.

Trichuris trichiura

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Commonly called **whipworm** because it resembles the handle and lash of a whip (Fig. 74.5), *T. trichiura* has a simple life cycle (Fig. 74.6). Ingested eggs hatch into a larval worm in the small intestine and then migrate to the cecum, in which they penetrate the mucosa and mature to adults. About 3 months after the initial infection, the fertilized female worm starts laying eggs and may produce 3000 to 10,000 eggs per day. Female worms can live for as long as 8 years. Eggs passed into the soil mature and become infectious in 3 weeks. *T. trichiura* eggs are distinctive, with dark bile staining, a barrel shape, and the presence of polar plugs in the egg shell (Fig. 74.7).

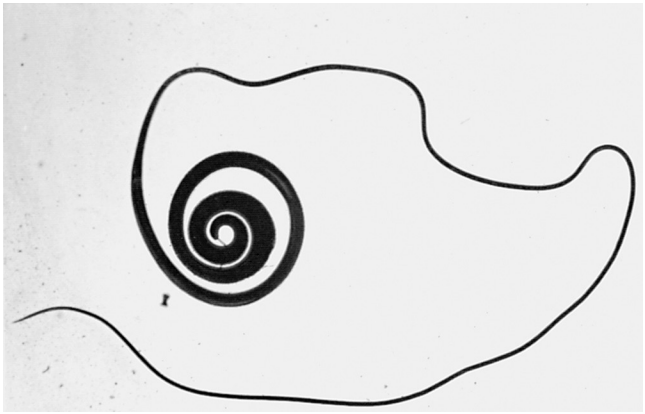


Fig. 74.5 **Trichuris trichiura, adult male.** (From John, D.T., Petri Jr., W.A., 2006. Markell and Voge's Medical Parasitology, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

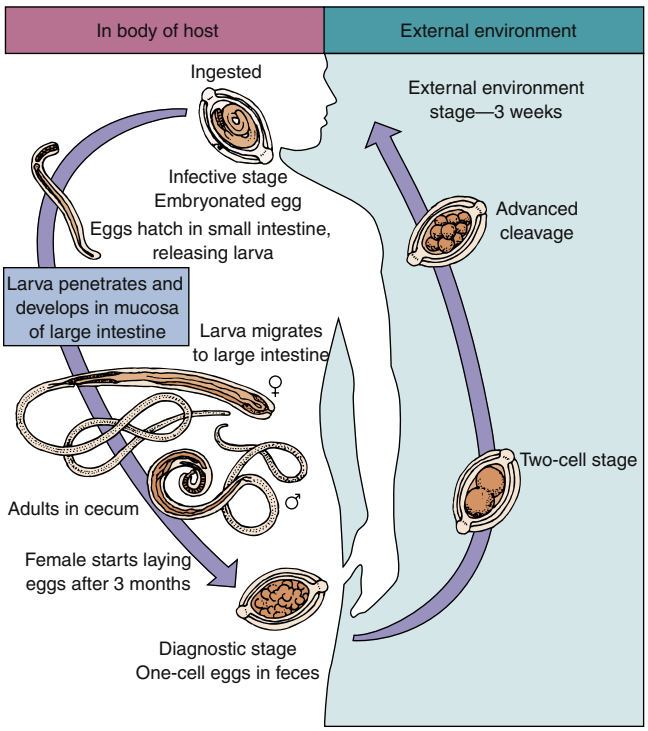


Fig. 74.6 Life cycle of *Trichuris trichiura.*

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Like *A. lumbricoides*, *T. trichiura* has worldwide distribution, and its prevalence is directly correlated with poor sanitation and the use of human feces as fertilizer. No animal reservoir is recognized.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The clinical manifestations of **trichuriasis** are generally related to the intensity of the worm burden. Most infections are with small numbers of *Trichuris* organisms and are usually asymptomatic, although secondary bacterial infection may occur because the heads of the worms penetrate deep into the intestinal mucosa. Infections with many larvae may produce abdominal pain and distention, bloody diarrhea, weakness, and weight loss. Appendicitis may occur

as worms fill the lumen, prolapse of the rectum is seen in children because of the irritation and straining during defecation. Anemia and eosinophilia also are seen in severe infections.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Stool examination reveals the characteristic bile-stained eggs with polar plugs (see Fig. 74.7). Light infestations may be difficult to detect because of the paucity of eggs in the stool specimens.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is albendazole or mebendazole. Combination chemotherapies have showed the highest efficacy, such as albendazole plus oxantel pamoate. As with *A. lumbricoides*, prevention of *T. trichiura* depends on education, good personal hygiene, adequate sanitation, and avoidance of the use of human feces as fertilizer.

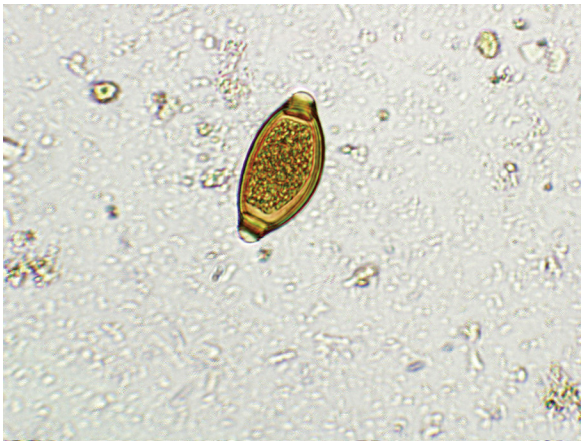


Fig. 74.7 *Trichuris trichiura* egg. The eggs are barrel shaped, measuring 50 × 24 μm, with a thick wall and two prominent plugs at the ends. Internally, an unsegmented ovum is present.

Hookworms

ANCYLOSTOMA DUODENALE AND *NECATOR AMERICANUS*

Physiology and Structure

The two human hookworms are *A. duodenale* **(Old World hookworm)** and *N. americanus* **(New World hookworm).** Differing only in geographic distribution, structure of mouthparts (Fig. 74.8), and relative size, these two species are discussed together as agents of hookworm infection. The human phase of the hookworm life cycle is initiated when a filariform (infective form) larva penetrates intact skin (Fig. 74.9). The larva then enters the circulation, is carried to the lungs, and similar to *A. lumbricoides*, is coughed up, swallowed, and develops to adulthood in the small intestine. Adult worms lay as many as 10,000 to 20,000 eggs per day, which are released into the feces. Egg laying is initiated 4 to 8 weeks after the initial exposure and can persist for as long as 5 years. On contact with soil, the **rhabditiform** (noninfective) larvae are released from the eggs and within 2 weeks develop into **filariform** larvae. The filariform larvae can then penetrate exposed skin (e.g., bare feet) and initiate a new cycle of human infection.

Both species have mouthparts designed for sucking blood from injured intestinal tissue. *A. duodenale* has chitinous teeth, and *N. americanus* has shearing chitinous plates (see Fig. 74.8).

Epidemiology

Transmission of hookworm infection requires the deposition of egg-containing feces on shady, well-drained soil and is favored by warm, humid (tropical) conditions. Hookworm infections are reported worldwide in places in which direct contact with contaminated soil can lead to human disease, but they occur primarily in warm subtropical and tropical regions and in

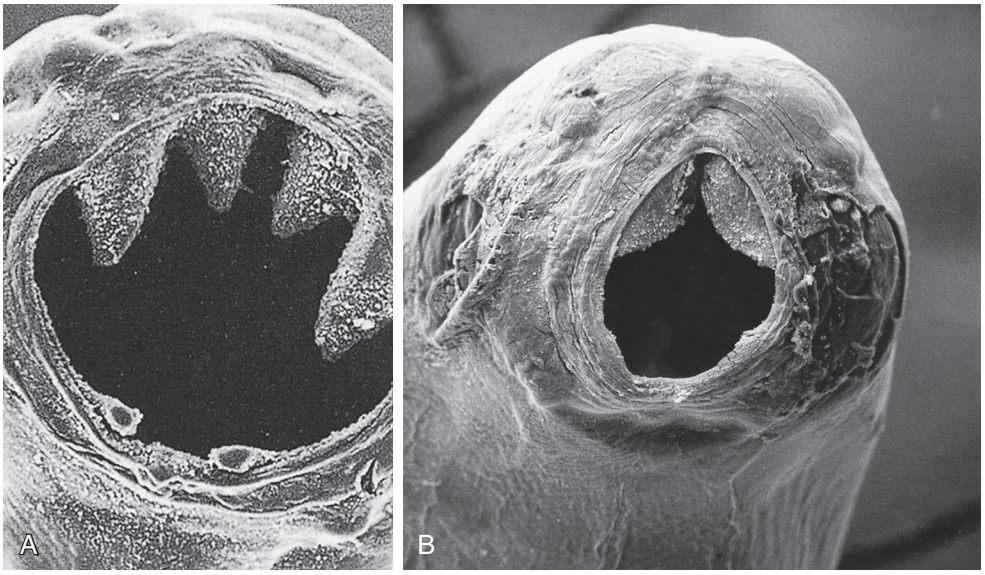


Fig. 74.8 Scanning electron micrographs of adult hookworm mouthparts. (A) *Ancylostoma duodenale* (×630). (B) *Necator americanus* (×470). (From Peters, W., Pasvol, G., 2007. Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

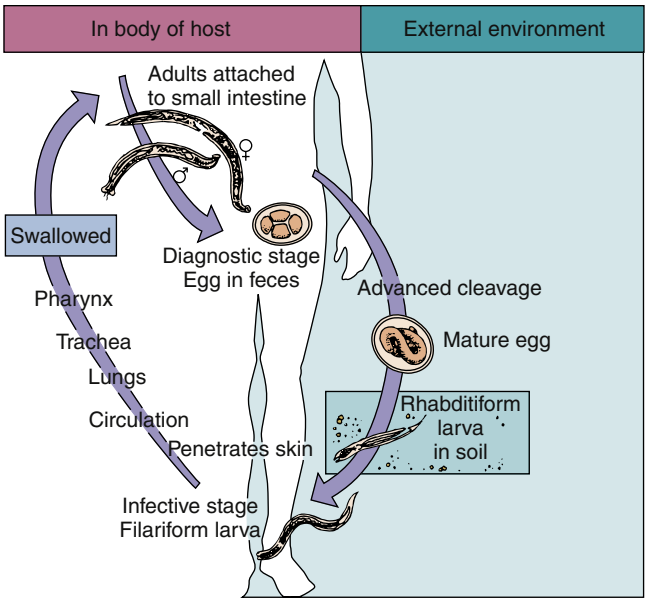


Fig. 74.9 Life cycle of human hookworms.

southern parts of the United States. It is estimated that more than 900 million individuals worldwide are infected with hookworms, including 700,000 in the United States.

Clinical Syndromes

Skin-penetrating larvae may produce an allergic reaction and rash at sites of entry, and larvae migrating in the lungs can cause pneumonitis and eosinophilia. Adult worms produce the gastrointestinal symptoms of nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. As blood is lost from feeding worms, a microcytic hypochromic anemia develops. Daily blood loss is estimated at 0.15 to 0.25 ml for each adult *A. duodenale* and 0.03 ml for each adult *N. americanus*. In severe, chronic infections, emaciation and mental and physical retardation may occur related to anemia from blood loss and nutritional deficiencies. Also, intestinal sites may be secondarily infected by bacteria when the worms migrate along the intestinal mucosa.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Stool examination reveals the characteristic non–bile-stained segmented eggs shown in Fig. 74.10. Adult worms are rarely seen because they remain firmly attached to the intestinal mucosa. Larva are not found in stool specimens unless the specimen was left at ambient temperature for a day or more. The eggs of *A. duodenale* and *N. americanus* cannot be distinguished. The larvae must be examined to identify these hookworms specifically, although this is clinically unnecessary.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice is albendazole or mebendazole; pyrantel pamoate is an alternative. In addition to eradication of the worms to stop blood loss, iron therapy is indicated to raise hemoglobin levels to normal. Blood transfusion may be necessary in severe cases of anemia. Education, improved sanitation, and controlled disposal of human feces are critical preventive measures. Wearing shoes in endemic areas helps reduce the prevalence of infection.

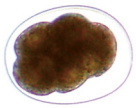


Fig. 74.10 Human hookworm egg. Eggs are 60 to 75 μm long and 35 to 40 μm wide, are thin shelled, and enclose a developing larva.

ANCYLOSTOMA BRAZILIENSE

Physiology and Structure

A. braziliense, a species of hookworm, is naturally parasitic in the intestines of dogs and cats and accidentally infects humans. It produces a disease properly called **cutaneous larva migrans** that also is called **ground itch** and **creeping eruption.** The filariform larvae of this hookworm penetrate intact skin but can develop no further in humans. The larvae remain trapped in the skin of the wrong host for weeks or months, wandering through subcutaneous tissue and creating serpentine tunnels.

Epidemiology

Similar to the situation with *Ascaris* worms, the threat of infection with *A. braziliense* is greatest among children coming into contact with soil or sandboxes contaminated with animal feces containing hookworm eggs. Infections are prevalent throughout the year on beaches in subtropical and tropical regions; in the summer, infection is reported as far north as the Canadian-U.S. border.

Clinical Syndromes

The migrating larvae may provoke a severe erythematous and vesicular reaction. Pruritus and scratching of the irritated skin may lead to secondary bacterial infection. About half of patients develop transient pulmonary infiltrates with peripheral eosinophilia **(Löffler syndrome),** presumably resulting from pulmonary migration of the larvae.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Occasionally, larvae are recovered in skin biopsy or after freezing of the skin, but most diagnoses are based on the clinical appearance of the tunnels and a history of contact with dog and cat feces. The larvae are rarely found in sputum.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice is albendazole; ivermectin and thiabendazole are alternatives. Antihistamines may be helpful in controlling pruritus. This zoonosis, as with animal *Ascaris* infection, can be reduced by educating pet owners to treat their animals for worm infections and to pick up pet feces from yards, beaches, and sandboxes. In endemic areas, shoes or sandals should be worn to prevent infection.

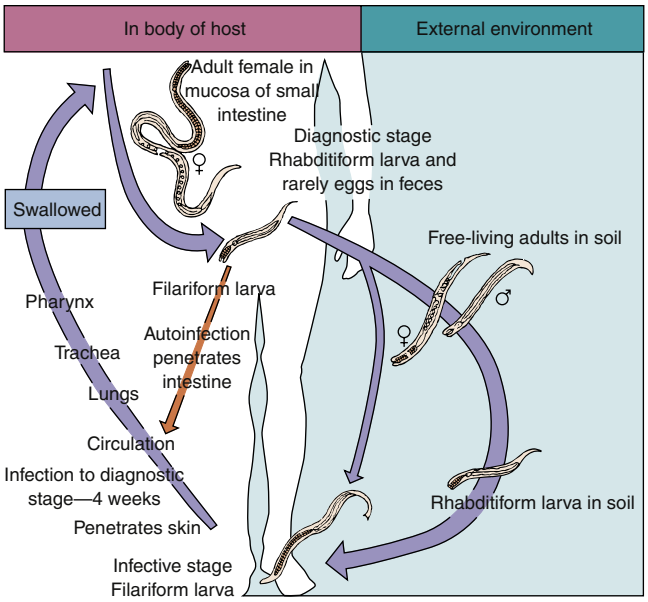


Fig. 74.11 Life cycle of *Strongyloides stercoralis*.

Strongyloides stercoralis

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Although the morphology of these worms and the epidemiology of their infections are similar to the hookworm, the life cycle of *S. stercoralis* (Fig. 74.11) differs in three aspects: (1) eggs hatch into larvae in the intestine and before they are passed in feces; (2) larvae can mature into filariforms in the intestine and cause autoinfection; and (3) a free-living, nonparasitic cycle can be established outside the human host.

In direct development, such as the hookworm, a skin-penetrating *S. stercoralis* larva enters the circulation and follows the pulmonary course. It is coughed up and swallowed, and adults develop in the small intestine. Adult females burrow into the mucosa of the duodenum and reproduce parthenogenetically. Each female produces about a dozen eggs each day, which hatch within the mucosa and release **rhabditiform** larvae into the lumen of the bowel. The rhabditiform larvae are distinguished from the larvae of hookworms by their short buccal capsule and large genital primordium. The rhabditiform larvae are passed in the stool and may either continue the direct cycle by developing into infective **filariform** larvae or develop into free-living adult worms and initiate the indirect cycle.

In indirect development, the larvae in soil develop into free-living adults that produce eggs and larvae. Several generations of this nonparasitic existence may occur before new larvae become skin-penetrating parasites.

Finally, in **autoinfection,** rhabditiform larvae in the intestine do not pass with feces but become filariform larvae. These penetrate the intestinal mucosa or perianal skin and follow the course through the circulation and pulmonary structures, are coughed up, and then are swallowed; at this point, they become adults, producing more larvae in the intestine. This cycle can persist for years and can lead to **hyperinfection** and massive or disseminated, often fatal infection.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Similar to hookworms in its requirements for warm temperatures and moisture, *S. stercoralis* demonstrates low prevalence but a somewhat broader geographic distribution, including parts of the northern United States and Canada. Sexual transmission also occurs. Animal reservoirs, such as domestic pets, are recognized.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Individuals with **strongyloidiasis** frequently are afflicted with pneumonitis from migrating larvae similar to that seen in ascariasis and hookworm infection. The intestinal infection is usually asymptomatic. However, heavy worm loads may involve the biliary and pancreatic ducts, the entire small bowel, and the colon, causing inflammation and ulceration leading to epigastric pain and tenderness, vomiting, diarrhea (occasionally bloody), and malabsorption. Symptoms mimicking peptic ulcer disease, coupled with peripheral eosinophilia, should strongly suggest the diagnosis of strongyloidiasis.

Autoinfection may lead to chronic strongyloidiasis that can last for years, even in nonendemic areas. Although many of these chronic infections may be asymptomatic, as many as two-thirds of patients have recurring episodic symptoms referable to the involved skin, lungs, and intestinal tract. Individuals with chronic strongyloidiasis are at risk of developing severe, life-threatening hyperinfection syndrome if the host-parasite balance is disturbed by any drug or illness that compromises the host's immune status (Clinical Case 74.3). **Hyperinfection syndrome** is seen most commonly in individuals immunocompromised by malignancies (especially hematologic malignancies), corticosteroid therapy, or both. Hyperinfection syndrome also has been observed in patients who have undergone solid organ transplantation and in malnourished people. Loss of cellular immune function may be associated with the conversion of rhabditiform larvae to filariform larvae, followed by dissemination of the larvae via the circulation to virtually any organ. Most commonly, extraintestinal infection involves the lung and includes bronchospasm, diffuse infiltrates, and occasionally cavitation. Widespread dissemination that involves the abdominal lymph nodes, liver, spleen, kidneys, pancreas, thyroid, heart, brain, and meninges is common. Intestinal symptoms of hyperinfection syndrome include profound diarrhea, malabsorption, and electrolyte abnormalities. Of note, hyperinfection syndrome is associated with a mortality rate of approximately 86%. Bacterial sepsis, meningitis, peritonitis, and endocarditis secondary to larval spread from the intestine are frequent and often fatal complications of hyperinfection syndrome.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of strongyloidiasis may be difficult because of the intermittent passage of low numbers of first-stage larvae in stool. Examination of concentrated stool sediment reveals the larval worms (Fig. 74.12), but in contrast with hookworm infections, in *S. stercoralis* infections, eggs are generally not seen. Collecting samples from three stools, one per day for 3 days (as for *G. duodenalis*), is recommended because *S.*

Clinical Case 74.3 **Strongyloides Hyperinfection**

Gorman and colleagues (*Infect Med* 23:480, 2006) described a case of necrotizing myositis complicated by diffuse alveolar hemorrhage and sepsis after corticosteroid therapy. The patient was a 46-year-old Cambodian man with a history of Raynaud phenomenon. He presented to the rheumatology clinic with worsening symptoms of Raynaud syndrome and diffuse muscle aches. He was employed as a truck driver and had emigrated from Cambodia 30 years earlier. Pertinent laboratory studies included markedly elevated creatine kinase and aldolase levels. Pulmonary function studies showed decreased forced vital capacity, forced expiratory volume, and carbon monoxide diffusing capacity. A high-resolution CT scan of the chest showed mild ground-glass changes in both lung bases and interlobular septate thickening. Muscle biopsy showed myocyte necrosis and random atrophy but no inflammatory cells. Bronchoscopy was unremarkable, and all cultures were negative. The patient was started on prednisone for presumed necrotizing myopathy secondary to undifferentiated connective tissue disease.

He was admitted to the hospital 1 month later with profound muscle weakness and dyspnea, which improved with the administration of methylprednisolone and intravenous immunoglobulin. Three weeks later, the patient was readmitted with fever, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and diffuse joint pain. A CT scan of the abdomen suggested small bowel intussusception and colitis, but his symptoms improved without treatment. Another high-resolution CT scan of the chest showed early honeycombing and worsening interstitial infiltrates. The patient was scheduled for a lung biopsy; however, while awaiting the biopsy, he suffered an abrupt and fulminant deterioration, with hemoptysis and hypoxemic respiratory failure that required intubation and mechanical ventilation. A chest radiograph showed new, diffuse, bilateral infiltrates. The patient developed an acute abdomen accompanied by purpura on the lower trunk. An abdominal CT showed pancolitis. Refractory septic shock caused by *Escherichia coli* bacteremia and lactic acidosis ensued. Bronchoscopy showed diffuse alveolar hemorrhage, and numerous larvae of *Strongyloides stercoralis* were demonstrated on staining of an aspirate of endotracheal secretions. Serology was positive for anti-*Strongyloides* antibodies. Despite treatment with ivermectin, albendazole, cefepime, vancomycin, vasopressors, steroids, and dialysis, the patient died.

This case of *Strongyloides* hyperinfection syndrome emphasizes the importance of screening and treating persons at risk for latent *S. stercoralis* infection (endemic in tropical and subtropical areas) before the initiation of immunosuppressive therapy. Contact precautions should be taken in patients with hyperinfection syndrome because of the risk of infection to health care workers and visitors on exposure to infectious larvae in the patient's stool and secretions.

CT, Computed tomography.

stercoralis larvae may occur in "showers," with many present one day and few or none the next. Several authors favor the **Baermann funnel gauze method** of concentrating living *S. stercoralis* larvae from fecal specimens. This method uses a funnel with a stopcock and a gauze insert. The funnel is filled with lukewarm water to a level just covering the gauze, and a specimen of stool is placed on the gauze, partially in contact with the water. The larvae in the stool migrate through the gauze into the water and then sediment into the neck of the funnel, in which they may be detected by low-power microscopy. When absent from stool, larvae may be detected in duodenal aspirates or in sputum in the case of massive infection. Finally, culture of the larvae from stool using charcoal cultures or an agar plate method may be used, although these are not routine in most laboratories. Demonstration of anti-*Strongyloides* antibodies in blood may be useful as a screening test or as an adjunct for diagnosis. Diagnosis by nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) has been developed for testing stool and urine and is now available in many reference laboratories.

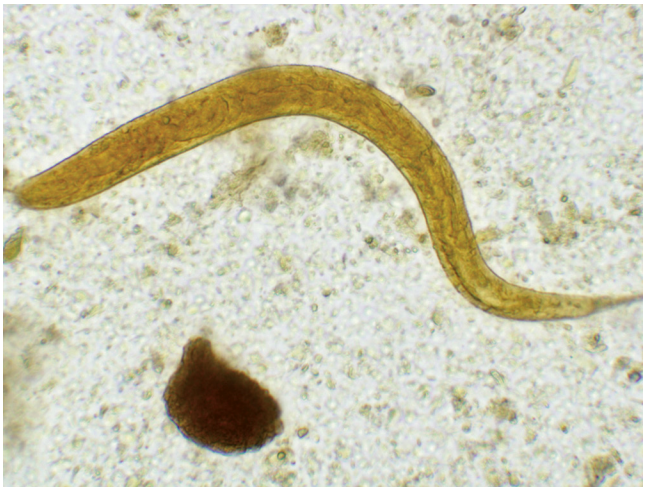


Fig. 74.12 *Strongyloides stercoralis* larvae. The larvae are 180 to 380 μm long and 14 to 24 μm wide. They are differentiated from hookworm larvae by the length of the buccal cavity and esophagus and by the structure of the genital primordium.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

All infected patients should be treated to prevent autoinfection and potential dissemination (hyperinfection) of the parasite. The drug of choice is ivermectin, with albendazole or mebendazole as an alternative. *Strongyloides* serology and at least three stool examinations to rule out *S. stercoralis* infection should be performed for all patients in endemic areas (and other at-risk patients) who are preparing to undergo immunosuppressive therapy (e.g., before organ transplant or treatment for malignancies) to avoid the risks of hyperinfection syndrome. Strict infection-control measures should be enforced when clinicians care for patients with hyperinfection syndrome because stool, saliva, vomitus, and body fluids may contain infectious filariform larvae. As with hookworm, control of *Strongyloides* species requires education, proper sanitation, and prompt treatment of existing infections.

Trichinella spiralis

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

T. spiralis is the most important cause of human disease, but other species, such as *T. pseudospiralis* and *T. britovi,* may

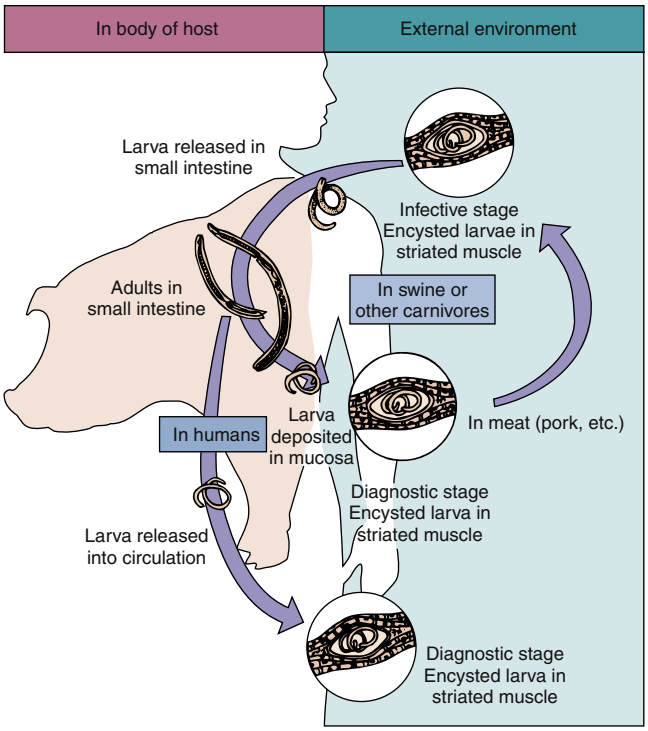


Fig. 74.13 Life cycle of *Trichinella spiralis.*

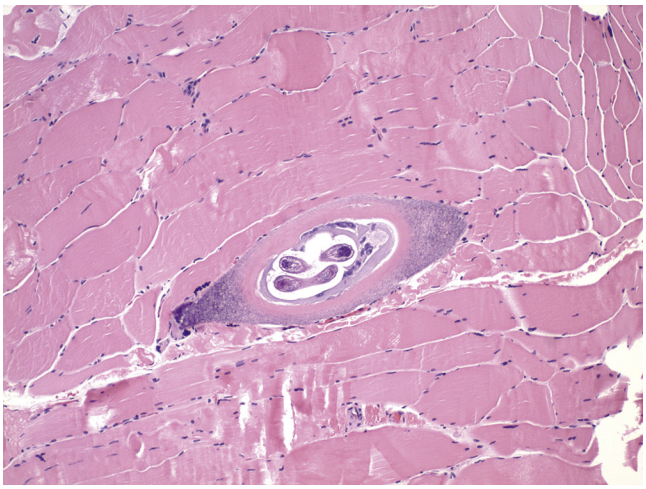


Fig. 74.14 Encysted larva of *Trichinella spiralis* in a muscle biopsy specimen. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

also cause **trichinosis.** The adult form of this organism lives in the duodenal and jejunal mucosa of flesh-eating mammals worldwide. The infectious larval form is present in the striated muscles of carnivorous and omnivorous mammals. Among domestic animals, swine are most frequently involved. Fig. 74.13 illustrates the simple, direct life cycle, which terminates in the musculature of humans, in which the larvae eventually die and calcify.

The infection begins when meat that contains encysted larvae is digested. The larvae leave the meat in the small intestine and within 2 days develop into adult worms. A single fertilized female produces more than 1500 larvae in 1 to 3 months. These larvae move from the intestinal mucosa into the bloodstream and are carried in the circulation to various muscle sites throughout the body, in which they coil in striated muscle fibers and become encysted (Fig. 74.14). The muscles invaded most frequently include the extraocular muscles of the eye; the tongue; the deltoid, pectoral, and intercostal muscles; the diaphragm; and the gastrocnemius muscle. The encysted larvae remain viable for many years and are infectious if ingested by a new animal host. The muscle larvae of *T. pseudospiralis* do not induce the formation of a cyst and generate less inflammation than that of *T. spiralis*.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Trichinosis occurs worldwide in humans, and its greatest prevalence is associated with the consumption of pork products. In addition to its transmission from pigs, many carnivorous and omnivorous animals harbor the organism and are potential sources of human infection. Of note, polar bears and walruses in the Arctic account for outbreaks in human populations, especially with a strain of *T. spiralis (T. nativa)* that is more resistant to freezing than the *T. spiralis* strains found in the continental United States and other temperate regions. It is estimated that more than 1.5 million Americans carry live *Trichinella* cysts in their musculature and that 150,000 to 300,000 acquire new infection annually.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Trichinosis is one of the few tissue parasitic diseases still seen in the United States. As with other parasitic infections, most patients have minimal or no symptoms. The clinical presentation depends largely on the tissue burden of organisms and the location of the migrating larvae. Patients in whom no more than 10 larvae are deposited per gram of tissue are usually asymptomatic, those with at least 100 generally have significant disease, and those with 1000 to 5000 have a very serious course that occasionally ends in death. In mild infections with few migrating larvae, patients may experience only an influenza-like syndrome with slight fever and mild diarrhea. With more extensive larval migration, persistent fever, gastrointestinal distress, marked eosinophilia, muscle pain, and periorbital edema occur. "Splinter" hemorrhages beneath the nails, a common finding, are probably caused by vasculitis resulting from toxic secretions of the migrating larvae. In heavy infections, severe neurologic symptoms, including psychosis, meningoencephalitis, and cerebrovascular accident, may occur.

Patients who survive the migration, muscle destruction, and encystment of larvae in moderate infections experience a decline in clinical symptoms in 5 or 6 weeks. Lethal trichinosis results when myocarditis, encephalitis, and pneumonitis combine; the patient dies 4 to 6 weeks after infection. Respiratory arrest often follows heavy invasion and muscle destruction in the diaphragm.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is usually established with clinical observations, especially when an outbreak can be traced to consumption of improperly cooked pork or bear meat. The laboratory may confirm the diagnosis if the encysted larvae

are detected in the implicated meat or in a muscle biopsy specimen from the patient. Marked **eosinophilia** is characteristically present in patients with trichinosis. Serologic procedures also are available for confirmation of the diagnosis. Significant antibody titers are usually absent before the third week of illness but then may persist for years.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment of trichinosis is primarily symptomatic because there are no good antiparasitic agents for tissue larvae. Treatment of the adult worms in the intestine with mebendazole may halt the production of new larvae. Steroids, along with thiabendazole or mebendazole, are recommended for severe symptoms. In infections caused by *T. pseudospiralis*, albendazole may be effective. Education regarding disease transmission from pork and bear meat is essential, especially the recommendation that pork and bear meat be cooked until the interior is gray. Microwave cooking and smoking or drying meat do not kill all larvae.

Laws regulating the feeding of garbage to pigs help control transmission, as may regulations controlling the foraging of bears in garbage pits and public parks. Freezing pork, as conducted in federally inspected meat packing plants, has reduced transmission. Quick freezing of pork at −40° C effectively destroys the organisms, as does low-temperature storage at −15° C for 20 days or more.

Wuchereria bancrofti and *Brugia malayi*

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Because of their many similarities, *W. bancrofti* and *B. malayi* are discussed together. Human infection is initiated by the introduction of infective larvae, present in the saliva of a biting mosquito, into a bite wound (Fig. 74.15). Various species of *Anopheles*, *Aedes*, and *Culex* mosquitoes are vectors of **Bancroft and Malayan filariasis.** The larvae migrate from the location of the bite to the lymphatic system, primarily in the arms, legs, or groin, in which larval growth to adulthood occurs. From 3 to 12 months after the initial infection, the adult male worm fertilizes the female, which in turn produces the sheathed larval microfilariae that find their way into the circulation. The presence of **microfilariae** in blood is diagnostic for human disease and is infective for feeding mosquitoes. In the mosquito, the larvae move through the stomach and thoracic muscles in developmental stages and finally migrate to the proboscis. There they become infective third-stage larvae and are transmitted by the feeding mosquito. The adult form in humans can persist for as long as 10 years. These organisms harbor **bacterial endosymbionts** of the genus *Wolbachia* and depend on these endosymbionts for normal metabolic and reproductive activities.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Infection with *W. bancrofti* occurs in tropical and subtropical areas and is endemic in central Africa, along the Mediterranean coast, and in many parts of Asia, including

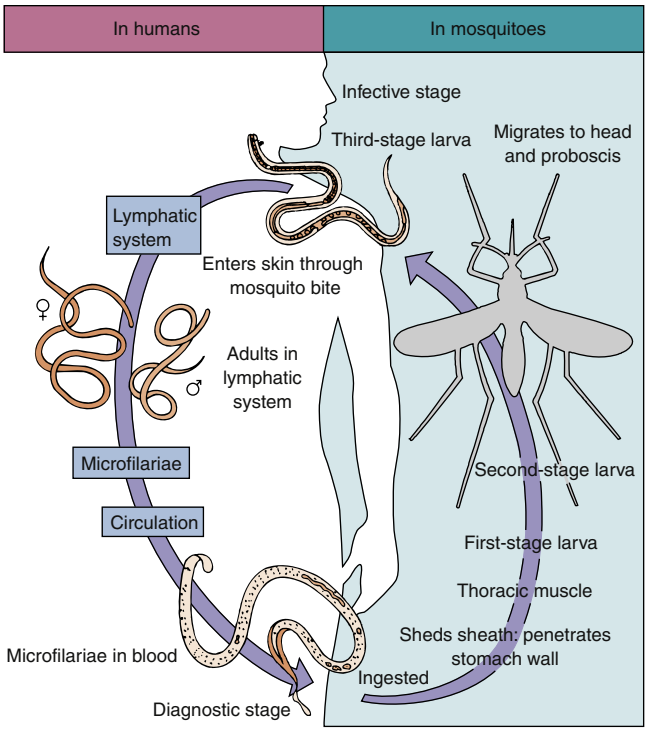


Fig. 74.15 Life cycle of *Wuchereria bancrofti.*

China, Korea, Japan, and the Philippines. It is also present in Haiti, Trinidad, Suriname, Panama, Costa Rica, and Brazil. No animal reservoir has been identified. *B. malayi* is found primarily in Malaysia, India, Thailand, Vietnam, and parts of China, Korea, Japan, and many Pacific islands. Animal reservoirs, such as cats and monkeys, are recognized.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

In some patients, there is no sign of disease, even though blood specimens may show the presence of many microfilariae. In other patients, early acute symptoms are fever, lymphangitis and lymphadenitis with chills, and recurrent febrile attacks. The acute presentation is thought to result from the inflammatory response to the presence of molting adolescent worms and dead or dying adults within the lymphatic vessels. As the infection progresses, the lymph nodes enlarge, possibly involving many parts of the body, including the extremities, the scrotum, and the testes, with occasional abscess formation. This results from the physical obstruction of lymph in the vessels caused by the presence of adult worms and host reactivity in the lymphatic system. This process may be complicated by recurrent bacterial infections, which contribute to the tissue damage. The thickening and hypertrophy of tissues infected with the worms may lead to the enlargement of tissues, especially the extremities, progressing to filarial **elephantiasis.** Filariasis of this type is thus a chronic, debilitating, and disfiguring disease requiring prompt diagnosis and treatment. Occasionally, ascites and pleural effusions secondary to rupture of the enlarged lymphatic vessels into the peritoneal or pleural cavity may be observed.

Tropical pulmonary eosinophilia (TPE) is a syndrome caused by immune hyperresponsiveness to microfilariae trapped in the lungs. This syndrome affects males more often

than females, most commonly young adults, especially in the third decade of life. The main features include a history of residence in filaria-endemic regions, paroxysmal cough and wheezing that are usually nocturnal, weight loss, low-grade fever, and adenopathy and pronounced blood eosinophilia (≥3000 eosinophils/μl). Patients are rarely found to have microfilariae in the blood. Chest radiographs may be normal in 20% to 30% of cases, but generally show increased bronchoalveolar markings, diffuse interstitial lesions, and/or mottled opacities prominently in the lower lung fields. Although there is no single clinical or laboratory criterion that aids in distinguishing TPE from other pulmonary diseases, residence in the tropics, the presence of high levels of antifilarial antibodies, and a rapid clinical response to DEC favor the diagnosis of tropical eosinophilia.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Eosinophilia is usually present during acute inflammatory episodes; however, demonstration of microfilariae in the blood is required for definitive diagnosis. As with malaria, microfilariae can be demonstrated in Giemsa-stained blood films in infections with *W. bancrofti* and *B. malayi* (Figs. 74.16 and 74.17). *W. bancrofti* and *B. malayi* have both nocturnal and subperiodic periodicity in the production of microfilariae. Nocturnal periodicity results in greater numbers of microfilariae in blood at night, whereas with the subperiodic form, microfilariae are always present, with a peak in the afternoon. Buffy coat films concentrate the white blood cells and are useful for the detection of microfilariae. The presence of small numbers of microfilariae in blood can be detected by a membrane-filtration technique in which anticoagulated blood is mixed with saline and forced through a 5-μm membrane filter. After several washes with saline or distilled water, the filter is examined microscopically for living microfilariae, or it is dried, fixed, and stained as for a thin blood film.

W. bancrofti, as well as *B. malayi* and *Loa loa*, demonstrate a sheath on their microfilariae. The *B. malayi* sheath stains bright pink with Giemsa, whereas the *W. bancrofti* and *L. loa* sheaths tend not to stain. This feature can be the first step in identifying the specific types of filariasis. Further identification is based on study of head and tail structures (Fig. 74.18). Clinically, an exact species identification is not critical because treatment for all the filarial infections, except *Onchocerca volvulus*, is identical.

Serologic testing for antifilarial antibodies is also available through reference laboratories so that a diagnosis can be reached. Assays for circulating antigens of *W. bancrofti* permit the diagnosis of microfilaremic and cryptic (amicrofilaremic) infection. Tests for antigen detection are commercially available for use on whole blood, plasma, or serum (although not in the United States). These assays have sensitivities that range from 96% to100% and specificities that approach 98%. Circulating antigen may be detected in blood drawn any time of day or night, avoiding the need for specific bleeding times depending on the periodicity of microfilariae. None of the tests is approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). There are currently no tests for circulating antigens in brugian filariasis. NAAT can detect parasite deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and is now the most sensitive technique for definitive diagnosis; however, there are no commercially available platforms.

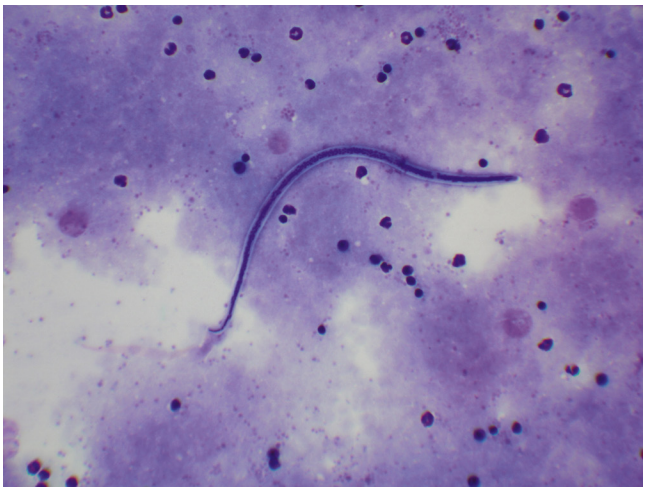


Fig. 74.16 Giemsa stain of sheathed Wuchereria bancrofti microfilaria in blood smear; 245 to 295 μm long × 7 to 10 μm wide.

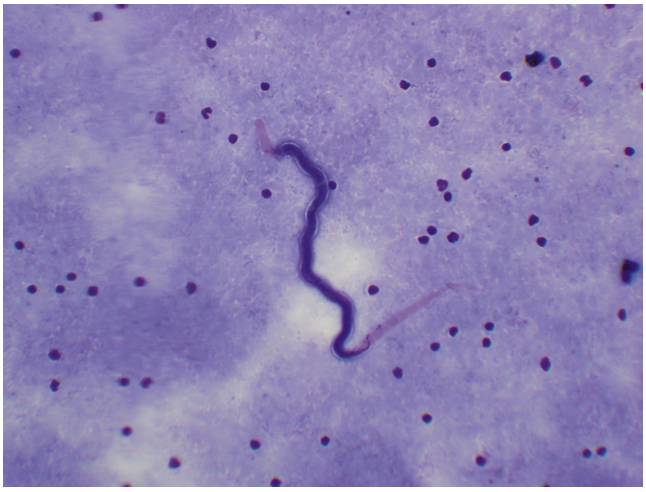


Fig. 74.17 Giemsa stain of sheathed *Brugia malay*i microfilaria in blood smear; 180 to 230 μm long × 5 to 6 μm wide.

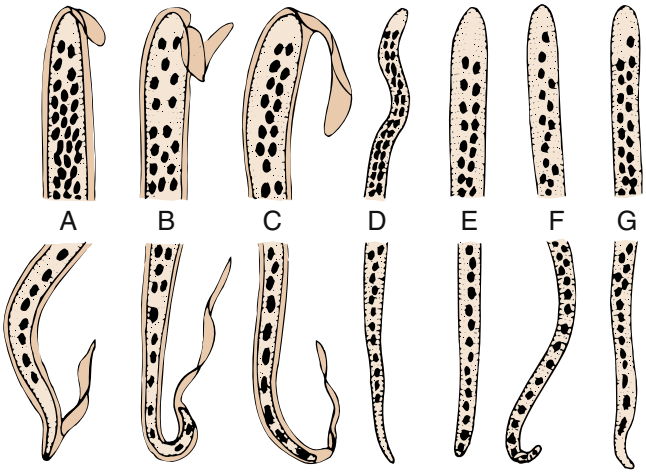


Fig. 74.18 Differentiation of microfilariae. Identification of microfilariae is based on the presence of a sheath covering the larvae, as well as the distribution of nuclei in the tail region. (A) *Wuchereria bancrofti.* (B) *Brugia malayi.* (C) *Loa loa.* (D) *Onchocerca volvulus.* (E) *Mansonella perstans.* (F) *Mansonella streptocerca.* (G) *Mansonella ozzardi.*

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment is of little benefit in most cases of chronic lymphatic filariasis because of scarring and lymphedema. At present, treatment targets the microfilarial stage. The discovery of the **bacterial endosymbiont *Wolbachia*** raises the possibility of using antibiotics such as doxycycline to treat the adult worm. These *Wolbachia* are vital for parasite larval development and adult-worm fertility and viability. Use of antibiotics (e.g., the tetracyclines) that target the *Wolbachia* have been shown to reduce microfilarial levels and circulating filarial antigen. . The drug of choice for treatment of *W. bancrofti* and *B. malayi* microfilariae is DEC. Ivermectin and albendazole also may be used, often in combination with DEC. Supportive and surgical therapy for lymphatic obstruction may be of some cosmetic help. Education regarding filarial infections, mosquito control, use of protective clothing and insect repellents, and treatment of infections to prevent further transmission is essential. Control of *B. malayi* infections is more difficult because of the presence of disease in animal reservoirs.

Loa loa

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The life cycle of *L. loa* is similar to that illustrated in Fig. 74.15, except the vector is a biting fly called *Chrysops* (the mango fly). Approximately 6 months after infection, the production of microfilariae starts and can persist for 17 years or more. The microfilariae are sheathed and, in contrast to the lymphatic filariae, the nuclei are somewhat irregularly arranged and extend to the end of the tail. The sheath does not stain with Giemsa. Adult worms can migrate through subcutaneous tissues, through muscle, and in front of the eyeball.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

L. loa is confined to the equatorial rain forests of Africa and is endemic in tropical West Africa, the Congo basin, and parts of Nigeria. Monkeys in these areas serve as reservoir hosts in the life cycle, with mango flies as vectors.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Symptoms usually do not appear until a year or so after the fly bite because the worms are slow in reaching adulthood. One of the first signs of infection is the so-called **fugitive** or **Calabar swellings.** These swellings are transient and usually appear on the extremities. They are produced as the worms migrate through subcutaneous tissues, creating large, nodular areas that are painful and pruritic. Because eosinophilia (50% to 70%) is observed, Calabar swellings are believed to result from allergic reactions to the worms or their metabolic products.

Adult *L. loa* worms also can migrate under the conjunctiva, producing irritation, painful congestion, edema of the eyelids, and impaired vision. The presence of a worm in the eye can obviously cause anxiety in the patient. The infection may be long-lived and in some cases asymptomatic.

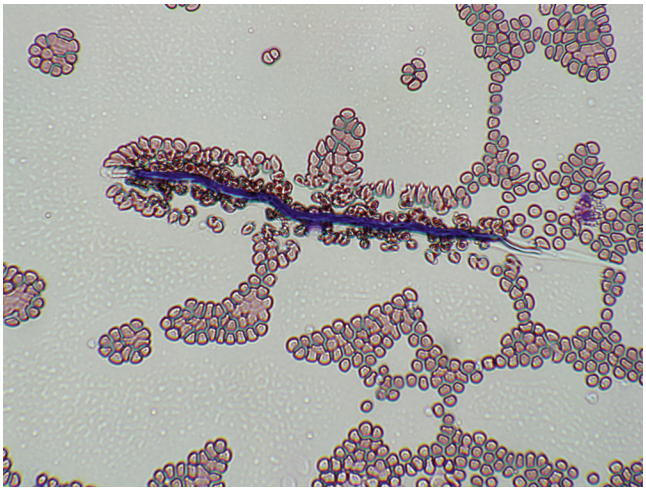


Fig. 74.19 Giemsa stain of sheathed *Loa loa* microfilaria in blood smear; 230 to 250 μm long × 6 to 9 μm wide.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The clinical observation of Calabar swellings or migration of adult worms in the eye, combined with eosinophilia, should alert the physician to consider infection with *L. loa*. The microfilariae can be found in the blood (Fig. 74.19). In contrast to the other filariae, *L. loa* is primarily present during the daytime. Antifilarial IgG and IgG4, although nonspecific, may be useful in confirming the diagnosis of loiasis in visitors to endemic areas with suggestive clinical symptoms or unexplained eosinophilia. NAAT-based assays for the detection and quantitation of *L. loa* DNA in blood are now available in research laboratories and are highly sensitive and specific.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

DEC is effective against adults and microfilariae; however, destruction of the parasites may induce severe allergic reactions that require treatment with corticosteroids. Albendazole or ivermectin (not approved by the FDA) has been shown to be effective in reducing microfilarial loads. Surgical removal of worms migrating across the eye or bridge of the nose can be accomplished by immobilizing the worm with instillation of a few drops of 10% cocaine. Education regarding the infection and its vector, especially for people entering the known endemic areas, is essential. Protection from fly bites by using screening, appropriate clothing, and insect repellents, along with the treatment of cases, is critical in reducing the incidence of infection. However, the presence of disease in animal reservoirs (e.g., monkeys) limits the feasibility of controlling this disease.

Mansonella Species

Filarial infections caused by *Mansonella* species (*M. ozzardi, M. perstans,* and *M. streptocerca*) are less important than those previously discussed, but physicians should be aware of the names because they may encounter patients with these infections. Infections caused by these organisms are

generally asymptomatic but may cause dermatitis, lymphadenitis, hydrocele, and rarely, lymphatic obstruction resulting in elephantiasis.

All *Mansonella* species produce nonsheathed microfilariae in blood *(M. ozzardi, M. perstans)* and subcutaneous tissues *(M. streptocerca)*, and all are transmitted by biting midges (*Culicoides* species) or blackflies (*Simulium* species). Ivermectin is the treatment of choice for *M. ozzardi* and *M. streptocerca*, whereas DEC is used for *M. perstans*. Consistent with the identification of a *Wolbachia* species in *M. perstans,* a randomized trial in Mali has demonstrated the utility of doxycycline treatment for this infection. Species identification, if desired, can be accomplished with blood smears, noting the structure of the microfilariae (see Fig. 74.18). Serologic and NAAT tests are also available.

Prevention and control require measures involving insect repellents, screening, and other precautions as for all insect-transmitted diseases.

MANSONELLA PERSTANS

M. perstans occurs primarily in parts of tropical Africa and Central and South America. It may produce allergic skin reactions, edema, and Calabar swellings similar to those of *L. loa* infection. Reservoir hosts are chimpanzees and gorillas.

MANSONELLA OZZARDI

M. ozzardi is found primarily in Central and South America and the West Indies. It may produce swelling of the lymph nodes and occasional hydrocele. There are no known reservoir hosts.

MANSONELLA STREPTOCERCA

M. streptocerca occurs primarily in Africa, especially in the Congo basin. It may produce edema in the skin and rarely, a form of elephantiasis. Monkeys serve as reservoir hosts.

Onchocerca volvulus

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Infection occurs after the introduction of *O. volvulus* larvae through the skin during the biting and feeding of the *Simulium,* or blackfly vector (Fig. 74.20). The larval worms migrate from the skin to subcutaneous tissue and develop into adult male and female worms. The adults become encased in fibrous subcutaneous nodules within which they may remain viable for as long as 15 years. The female worm, after fertilization by the male, begins producing as many as 2000 nonsheathed microfilariae each day. The microfilariae exit the capsule and migrate to the skin, the eyes, and other body tissues. These nonsheathed microfilariae appearing in skin tissue are infective for feeding blackflies. Of note, all individual worms and all life cycle stages contain the ***Wolbachia* bacterial endosymbionts.** It is now understood that clearance of the endosymbionts by antibiotic treatment causes inhibition of worm development, blocks embryogenesis and fertility, and reduces worm viability. It is suggested that various biochemical pathways that are intact in *Wolbachia* but absent or incomplete in the nematode, including heme, nucleotide, and enzyme cofactor biosynthesis, may be the bacteria's contribution to nematode biology.

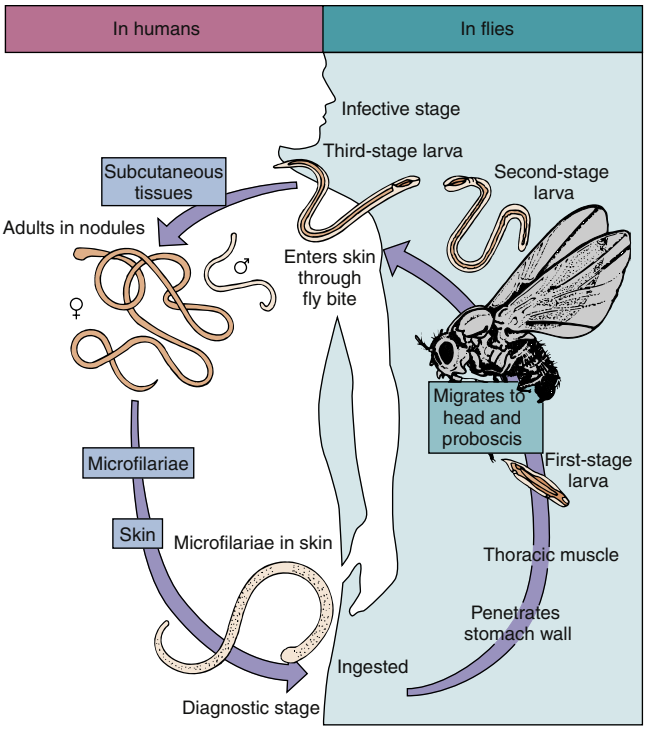


Fig. 74.20 Life cycle of *Onchocerca volvulus.*

EPIDEMIOLOGY

O. volvulus is endemic in many parts of Africa, especially in the Congo basin and the Volta River basin. In the Western Hemisphere, it occurs in many Central and South American countries. **Onchocerciasis** affects >18 million people worldwide and causes blindness in approximately 5% of infected people.

Several species of the blackfly genus *Simulium* serve as vectors but none so appropriately named as the principal vector, *Simulium damnosum* ("the damned blackfly"). These blackflies, or buffalo gnats, breed in fast-flowing streams, which makes control or eradication by insecticides almost impossible because the chemicals are rapidly washed away from the eggs and larvae.

There is a greater prevalence of infection in men than women in endemic areas because of their work in or near the streams in which the blackflies breed. Studies in endemic areas in Africa have shown that 50% of men are totally blind before they reach 50 years of age. This accounts for the common term **river blindness,** which is applied to the disease onchocerciasis. This fear of blindness has created an additional problem in many parts of Africa because entire villages leave the area near streams and farmland that could produce food. The migrating populations then find themselves in areas in which they face starvation.

Clinical Case 74.4 **Onchocerciasis**

Imtiaz and colleagues (*Infect Med* 22:187–189, 2005) described the case of a 21-year-old man who emigrated from the Sudan to the United States 1 year before presenting with a maculopapular rash that was associated with severe pruritus. The rash and pruritus had been present for the past 3 to 4 years. In the past, the patient had undergone multiple treatments for this condition, including corticosteroids, without relief. The patient denied any systemic symptoms but did complain of blurred vision. On physical examination, his skin was somewhat thickened over different parts of the body, and he had scattered maculopapular lesions with increased pigmentation; some lesions had keloid nodules, as well as wrinkling. There was no lymphadenopathy. The remainder of his evaluation was unremarkable.

Because of the presence of intense pruritus unresponsive to treatment, blurred vision, and the prevalence of onchocerciasis in his native country, skin snips were taken from the scapular area. Microfilariae of *Onchocerca volvulus* were revealed on microscopic examination. Ivermectin was prescribed, to which the patient's condition responded. Onchocerciasis, although not common in the United States, should be considered in immigrants and expatriates with suggestive symptoms if they came from areas in which the disease is endemic.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Clinical onchocerciasis is characterized by infection involving the skin, subcutaneous tissue, lymph nodes, and eyes (Clinical Case 74.4). The clinical manifestations of the infection are caused by the acute and chronic inflammatory reaction to antigens released by the microfilariae as they migrate through the tissues. The incubation period from infectious larvae to adult worms is several months to a year. The initial signs of disease are fever, eosinophilia, and urticaria. As the worms mature, copulate, and produce microfilariae, subcutaneous nodules begin to appear on any part of the body. These nodules are most dangerous when they are present on the head and neck because the microfilariae may migrate to the eyes and cause serious tissue damage, leading to blindness. The mechanisms for development of eye disease are thought to be a combination of both direct invasion by the microfilaria and antigen-antibody complex deposition within the ocular tissues. It is now apparent that the *Wolbachia* bacterial endosymbiont plays an important role in the inflammatory pathogenesis of onchocerciasis. *Wolbachia* release after microfilarial death in the cornea causes corneal edema and opacity by inducing neutrophil and macrophage infiltration and activation in the corneal stroma. Patients progress from conjunctivitis with photophobia to punctate and sclerosing keratitis. Internal eye disease with anterior uveitis, chorioretinitis, and optic neuritis may also occur.

Within the skin, the inflammatory process results in loss of elasticity and areas of depigmentation, thickening, and atrophy. A number of skin conditions, including pruritus, hyperkeratosis, and myxedematous thickening, are related to the presence of this parasite. A form of elephantiasis, called **hanging groin,** also occurs when the nodules are located near the genitalia.

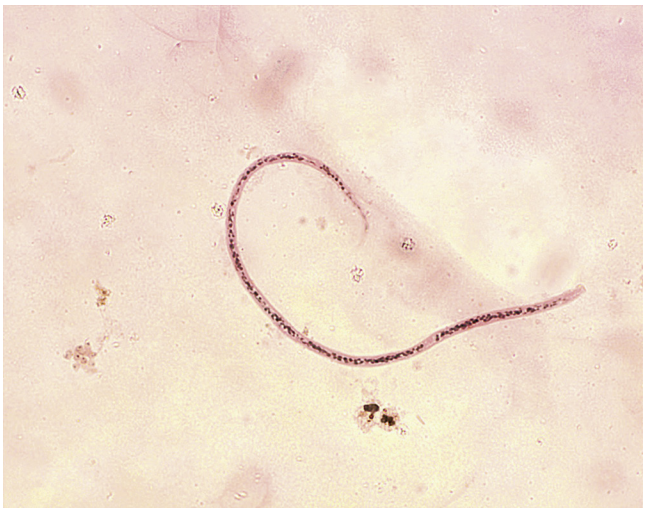


Fig. 74.21 Giemsa stained unsheathed *Onchocerca volvulus* microfilaria; 300 to 315 μm long × 5 to 9 μm wide.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of onchocerciasis is made by the demonstration of microfilariae in skin snip preparations from the infrascapular or gluteal region. A sample is obtained by raising the skin with a needle and shaving the epidermal layer with a razor. The specimen is incubated in saline for several hours and is then inspected with a dissecting microscope for the presence of nonsheathed microfilariae (Fig. 74.21). In patients with ocular disease, the organism also may be seen in the anterior chamber with the aid of a slit lamp. Serologic methods using recombinant antigens have been useful along with assays using polymerase chain reaction to detect onchocercal DNA in skin snip specimens.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Surgical removal of the encapsulated nodule is often performed to eliminate the adult worms and stop production of microfilariae (Fig. 74.22). In addition, treatment with ivermectin is recommended. A single oral dose of ivermectin greatly reduces the number of microfilariae in the skin and eyes, diminishing the likelihood of developing a disabling onchocerciasis. In endemic areas, the dose of ivermectin can be repeated every 6 to 12 months to maintain suppression of dermal and ocular microfilariae. Suppression of dermal microfilariae reduces the transmission of this vector-borne disease; thus mass chemotherapy may prove to be a successful strategy for the prevention of onchocerciasis. At present, there is no firm evidence that *O. volvulus* is becoming resistant to ivermectin; however, whenever a single agent is used for disease control, with varying doses over a long period of time, it is prudent to be on guard for the possibility of resistance developing. Human field trials with antiwolbachial drugs, such as doxycycline, have demonstrated both sterilizing and macrofilaricidal activity. Based on these trials, doxycycline at 200 mg/day for 6 weeks is recommended for patients in whom the highest possible macrofilaricidal activity is desired and who have moved away from areas with ongoing transmission.

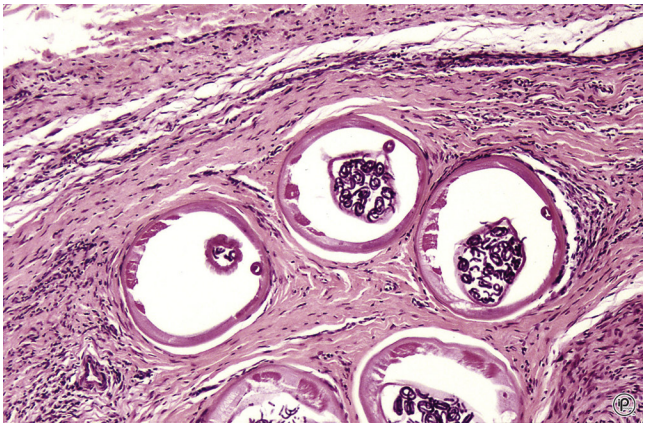


Fig. 74.22 Cross-section of an adult female *Onchocerca volvulus* in an excised nodule showing numerous microfilariae.

Education regarding the disease and its transmission is essential. Protection from blackfly bites through the use of protective clothing, screening, and insect repellents, as well as prompt diagnosis and treatment of infections to prevent further transmission, are critical.

Although control of blackfly breeding is difficult because insecticides wash away in the streams, some form of biologic control of this vector may reduce fly reproduction and disease transmission.

Dirofilaria immitis

Several mosquito-transmitted filariae infect dogs, cats, raccoons, and bobcats in nature and occasionally are found in humans. *D. immitis*, the **dog heartworm,** is notorious for forming a lethal worm bolus in the dog's heart. This nematode also may infect humans, producing a nodule, called a **coin lesion,** in the lung. Only very rarely have these worms been found in human hearts.

The coin lesion in the lung presents a problem for the radiologist and the surgeon because it resembles a malignancy requiring surgical removal. Unfortunately, no laboratory test can provide an accurate diagnosis of **dirofilariasis.** Peripheral eosinophilia is rare, and the radiographic features are insufficient to allow the clinician to distinguish pulmonary dirofilariasis from bronchogenic carcinoma. Serologic tests are not sufficiently sensitive or specific to preclude the surgical intervention. A definitive diagnosis is made when a thoracotomy specimen is examined microscopically, revealing the typical cross-sections of the parasite.

Transmission of the filarial infections can be controlled by mosquito control and the prophylactic use of the drug ivermectin in dogs.

Dracunculus medinensis

The name *Dracunculus medinensis* means "little dragon of Medina." This is a very ancient worm infection thought by some scholars to be the "fiery serpent" noted by Moses with the Israelites at the Red Sea.

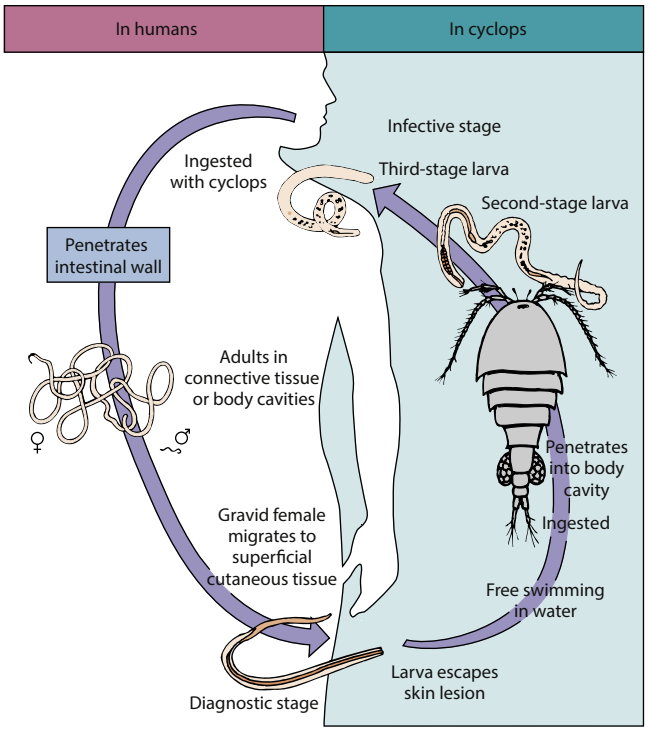


Fig. 74.23 Life cycle of *Dracunculus medinensis.*

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

D. medinensis is not a filarial worm, but it is a tissue-invading nematode of medical importance in many parts of the world. The worms have a very simple life cycle, depending on fresh water and a microcrustacean **(copepod)** of the genus *Cyclops* (Fig. 74.23). When *Cyclops* species harboring larval *D. medinensis* are ingested in drinking water, the infection is initiated with liberation of the larvae in the stomach. These larvae penetrate the wall of the digestive tract and migrate to the retroperitoneal space, in which they mature. These larvae are not microfilariae and do not appear in the blood or other tissues. Male and female worms mate in the retroperitoneum, and the fertilized female then migrates to the subcutaneous tissues, usually in the extremities. When the fertilized female worm becomes gravid, a vesicle is formed in the host tissue, which will ulcerate. When the ulcer is completely formed, the worm protrudes a loop of uterus through the ulcer. On contact with water, the larval worms are released. The larvae are then ingested by the *Cyclops* species in fresh water, in which they are then infective for humans or animals drinking the water containing the *Cyclops* species.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

D. medinensis occurs in many parts of Asia and equatorial Africa. Dracunculiasis is a crippling parasitic disease on the verge of eradication, with only 19 human cases reported in 2019. The disease is usually transmitted when people who have little or no access to improved drinking water sources swallow stagnant water contaminated with parasite-infected water fleas *(Cyclops)* that carry infective larvae.

An ongoing and intensive effort by the World Health Organization, local governments, and numerous other humanitarian organizations has significantly decreased the annual incidence of disease by more than 99% in recent years. Of the 20 countries that were endemic for the disease in the mid-1980s, only 2 reported cases in 2019: Chad (18 cases) and Angola (1 case).. Political unrest and war have hampered eradication efforts. Additionally, the recognition of canine infections and, more recently, transmission through the ingestion of meat from paratenic hosts (i.e., fish and frog) have significantly complicated eradication efforts.

Human infections usually result from ingestion of water from so-called **"step wells"** in which people stand or bathe in the water, at which time the gravid female worm discharges larvae from lesions on the arms, legs, feet, and ankles to infect *Cyclops* species in the water. Ponds and standing water are occasionally the source of infection when humans use them for drinking water.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Symptoms of infection usually do not appear until the gravid female creates the vesicle and the ulcer in the skin for the liberation of larval worms. This usually occurs 1 year after initial exposure. At the site of the ulcer, there are erythema and pain, as well as an allergic reaction to the worm. There is also the possibility of abscess formation and secondary bacterial infection, leading to further tissue destruction and inflammatory reaction with intense pain and sloughing of skin.

If the worm is broken in attempts to remove it, there may be toxic reactions, and if the worm dies and calcifies, there may be nodule formation and some allergic reaction. Once the gravid female worm has discharged all the larvae, it may retreat into deeper tissue, in which it is gradually absorbed, or it may simply be expelled from the site.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is established by observing the typical ulcer and by flooding the ulcer with water to recover the larval worms when they are discharged. Occasionally, radiographic examination reveals worms in various parts of the body.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The ancient method of slowly wrapping the worm on a twig is still used in many endemic areas (Fig. 74.24). Surgical removal is also a practical and reliable procedure for the patient. There is no evidence that any chemotherapeutic agent has a direct effect on *D. medinensis*, although various benzimidazoles may have an antiinflammatory effect and either eliminate the worm or make surgical removal easier. Treatment with mebendazole has been associated with aberrant migration of the worms, with the result that they were more likely to emerge at anatomic sites other than the lower limbs.

Education regarding the life cycle of the worm and avoidance of water contaminated with *Cyclops* species are critical. Protection of drinking water by prohibiting bathing and washing of clothing in wells is essential. Persons who live in or travel to endemic areas should boil water before drinking it. The treatment of water with chemicals and the use of fish that consume *Cyclops* species as food also help control transmission. Prompt diagnosis and treatment of cases also limit further transmission. These preventive measures have been incorporated into an ongoing global effort to eliminate dracunculiasis with dramatic success.

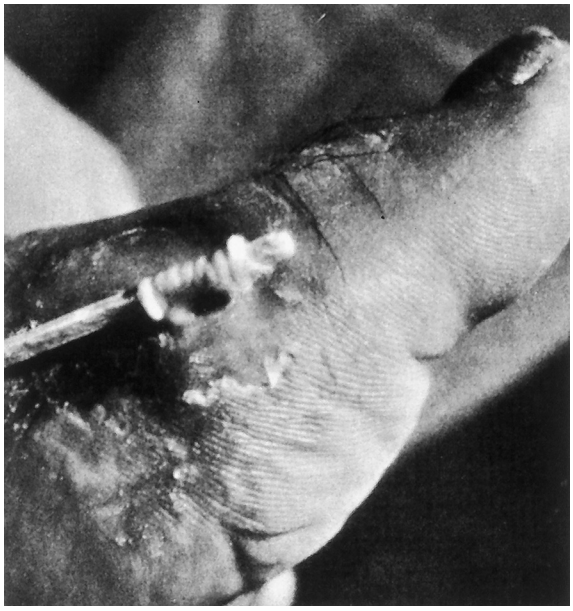


Fig. 74.24 Removal of a *Dracunculus medinensis* adult from an exposed ulcer by winding the worm slowly around a stick. (From Binford, C.H., Conner, D.H., 1976. Pathology of Tropical and Extraordinary Diseases. Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, Washington, DC.)

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Barry, M., 2007. The tail end of guinea worm—global eradication without a drug or a vaccine. N. Engl. J. Med. 356, 2561–2564.

Chatterjee, S., Nutman, T.B., 2015. Filarial nematodes. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Despommier, D., 2003. Toxocariasis: clinical aspects, epidemiology, medical ecology and molecular aspects. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 16, 265–272.

Garcia, L.S., 2005. Diagnostic Medical Parasitology, fifth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Gavin, P.J., Kazacos, K.R., Shulman, S.T., 2005. Baylisascariasis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 18, 703–718.

Gottstein, B., et al., 2009. Epidemiology, treatment, and control of trichinellosis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 22, 127–145.

Hotez, P.J., et al., 2008. Helminth infections: the great neglected tropical diseases. J. Clin. Invest. 118, 1311–1321.

Hotez, P.J., et al., 2004. Hookworm infection. N. Engl. J. Med. 351, 799–807.

James, C.E., et al., 2009. Drug resistance mechanisms in helminths: is it survival of the fittest? Trends Parasitol. 25, 328–335.

Keiser, P.B., Nutman, T.B., 2004. *Strongyloides stercoralis* in the immunocompromised population. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 17, 208–217.

Procop, G.W., Neafie, R.C., 2015. Less common helminths. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Sheorey, H., Biggs, B.A., Ryan, N., 2015. Nematodes. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Tamarozzi, F., et al., 2011. Onchocerciasis: the role of *Wolbachia* bacterial endosymbionts in parasite biology, disease pathogenesis, and treatment. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 24, 459–468.

Case Study and Questions

A 50-year-old male trophy hunter recently returned from an expedition to the North Pole with complaints of facial swelling and myalgias in his arms, chest, and thighs. During his expedition, he killed a polar bear and, as part of the "ritual," ate a piece of raw heart muscle from the bear.

1. What is the likely cause of his symptoms?
   a. *Ascaris lumbricoides*
   b. *Strongyloides stercoralis*
   c. *Ancylostoma duodenale*
   d. *Trichinella spiralis*
2. How would you make the diagnosis?
3. How would you treat this patient?

75 Trematodes

A 45-year-old Egyptian man was referred for evaluation of hematuria and urinary frequency of 2 months' duration. This individual had lived in the Middle East for most of his life, but for the past year he has lived in the United States. He denied previous renal or urologic problems. His physical examination was unremarkable. A midstream urine specimen was grossly bloody.

1. What was the differential diagnosis of hematuria in this patient?
2. What was the etiologic agent of this patient's urologic process?
3. What exposures might put an individual at risk for this infection?
4. What are the major complications of this infection?
5. How is this disease treated?

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

FASCIOLOPSIS BUSKI

Trigger Words

Aquatic vegetation, intermediate host, snail, intestinal fluke, operculum, cercariae, metacercariae, reservoir hosts

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Trematodes (flukes): members of Platyhelminthes; generally flat, fleshy, leaf-shaped worms
- *F. buski:* largest, most prevalent, most important intestinal fluke; from 1.5 to 3.0 cm long (rarely found in feces or specimens collected during surgery)
- Life cycle typical for intestinal flukes
- Symptomatology of *F. buski* infection relates directly to worm burden in small intestine; includes mucosal inflammation, ulceration and hemorrhage, abdominal discomfort and diarrhea, intestinal obstruction, eosinophilia

Epidemiology

- Distribution depends on location of appropriate snail host; most prevalent in Southeast Asia and Indian subcontinent
- Pigs, dogs, and rabbits serve as reservoir hosts in endemic regions

Diagnosis

- Microscopic examination of stool reveals large, golden, bile-stained eggs with an operculum on top
- Adult worms can rarely be found in feces or specimens collected at surgery

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Drug of choice: praziquantel; alternative is niclosamide
- Education regarding safe consumption of infective aquatic vegetation, proper sanitation, and control of human feces reduces incidence of disease
- Snail population may be eliminated with molluscicides
- Control of reservoir hosts reduces worm transmission

SCHISTOSOMES AND SCHISTOSOMIASIS

Trigger Words

Snails, bladder cancer, cirrhosis, clay pipestem fibrosis, Katayama syndrome, swimmer's itch

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Schistosomiasis (bilharziasis, snail fever): major parasitic infection of tropical areas, ≈230 million infections worldwide
- Three schistosomes (blood flukes) account for majority of human disease: *Schistosoma mansoni, S. haematobium,* and *S. japonicum*
- Schistosomes differ from other flukes: male and female sexes (not hermaphroditic), oral and ventral suckers, incomplete digestive system
- Infective forms are skin-penetrating cercariae liberated from snails
- Disease results primarily from host immune response to eggs; clinical significance directly related to number and location of eggs
- Clinical manifestations of chronic infection: hepatosplenomegaly and cirrhosis, esophageal varices, bladder neck obstruction, squamous cell bladder carcinoma, transverse myelitis, and other forms of central nervous system involvement

Epidemiology

- *S. mansoni:* most widely distributed; endemic in Africa, Saudi Arabia, Madagascar; has also become established in Western Hemisphere
- *S. japonicum* (Oriental blood fluke): found only in China, Japan, the Philippines, and on the island of Sulawesi in Indonesia
- *S. haematobium:* occurs predominantly throughout the Nile Valley and many other parts of Africa
- Infection first acquired in early childhood; prevalence and intensity of infection peak at age 15 to 20 years; intensity declines with age
- Reservoir hosts include domestic animals, primates, rodents, marsupials
- Disease of economic progress: development of land irrigation projects in desert and tropical areas has resulted in dispersion of infected humans and snails to previously uninvolved areas

Diagnosis

- Demonstration of eggs in patient's stool or urine on microscopic examination
- Morphology of eggs specific for each species: *S. mansoni,* prominent lateral spine; *S. japonicum,* less prominent spine; *S. haematobium,* terminal spine
- Serologic tests have been developed to detect the presence of specific antischistosomal antibodies; positive serology does not distinguish between current and past infection
- Ultrasound imaging useful in determining extent of disease

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment of choice: praziquantel
- Improved sanitation, control of human fecal deposits, control of reservoir hosts is critical

The trematodes **(flukes)** are members of the Platyhelminthes and are generally flat, fleshy, leaf-shaped worms (Fig. 75.1). In general, they are equipped with two muscular suckers: an oral type, which is the beginning of an incomplete digestive system, and a ventral sucker, which is simply an organ of attachment. The digestive system consists of lateral tubes that do not join to form an excretory opening. Most flukes are **hermaphroditic,** with both male and female reproductive organs in a single body. Schistosomes are the only exception; they have cylindric bodies (similar to the nematodes), and separate male and female worms exist.

All flukes require intermediate hosts for the completion of their life cycles, and without exception, the first intermediate hosts are mollusks (snails and clams). In these hosts, an asexual reproductive cycle is a type of germ cell propagation. Some flukes require various second intermediate hosts before reaching the final host and developing into adult worms. This variation is discussed in the sections on the individual species.

Fluke eggs are equipped with a "lid" at the top of the shell. Called an **operculum,** the lid opens to allow the larval worm to find its appropriate snail host. The schistosomes do not have an operculum; rather, the eggshell splits to liberate the larva. The medically significant trematodes are summarized in Table 75.1.

Fasciolopsis buski

A number of intestinal flukes are recognized, including *Fasciolopsis buski* (see Fig. 75.1), *Heterophyes heterophyes, Metagonimus yokogawai, Echinostoma ilocanum,* and *Gastrodiscoides hominis*. *F. buski* is the largest, most prevalent, and most important intestinal fluke. The other flukes are similar to *F. buski* in many respects (epidemiology, clinical syndromes, treatment) and are not discussed further. It is important only that physicians recognize the relationship among these different flukes.

Fig. 75.1 Adult *Fasciolopsis buski* (natural size). (From Peters, W., Pasvol, G., 2007. Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

This large intestinal fluke has a typical life cycle (Fig. 75.2). Humans ingest the encysted larval stage **(metacercaria)** when they peel the husks from aquatic vegetation (e.g., water chestnuts) with their teeth. The metacercariae are scraped from the husk, swallowed, and develop into immature flukes in the duodenum. The fluke attaches to the mucosa of the small intestine with two muscular suckers, develops into an adult form, and undergoes self-fertilization. Egg production is initiated 3 months after the initial infection with the metacercariae. The operculated eggs pass in feces to water, in which the operculum at the top of the eggshell pops open, liberating a free-swimming larval stage **(miracidium).** Glands at the pointed anterior end of the miracidium produce lytic substances that allow the penetration of the soft tissues of snails. In the snail tissue, the miracidium develops through a series of stages by asexual germ cell propagation. The final stage **(cercaria)** in the snail is a free-swimming form that, after release from the snail, encysts on the aquatic vegetation, becoming the metacercariae, or infective stage.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Because it depends on the distribution of its appropriate snail host, *F. buski* is found only in China, Vietnam, Thailand, parts of Indonesia, Malaysia, and India. Pigs, dogs, and rabbits serve as reservoir hosts in these endemic areas.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The symptomatology of *F. buski* infection relates directly to the worm burden in the small intestine. Attachment of the flukes in the small intestine can produce inflammation, ulceration, and hemorrhage. Severe infections produce abdominal discomfort similar to that of a duodenal ulcer, as well as diarrhea. Stools may be profuse, a malabsorption syndrome similar to giardiasis is common, and intestinal obstruction can occur. Marked eosinophilia is also present. Although death can occur, it is rare.

TABLE 75.1 Medically Important Trematodes

Trematode	Common Name	Intermediate Host	Biologic Vector	Reservoir Host
Fasciolopsis buski	Giant intestinal fluke	Snail	Water plants (e.g., water chestnuts)	Pigs, dogs, rabbits, humans
Fasciola hepatica	Sheep liver fluke	Snail	Water plants (e.g., watercress)	Sheep, cattle, humans
Clonorchis (Opisthorchis) sinensis	Chinese liver fluke	Snail, freshwater fish	Uncooked fish	Dogs, cats, humans
Paragonimus westermani	Lung fluke	Snail, freshwater crabs, crayfish	Uncooked crabs, crayfish	Pigs, monkeys, humans
Schistosoma species	Blood fluke	Snail	None	Primates, rodents, domestic pets, livestock, humans

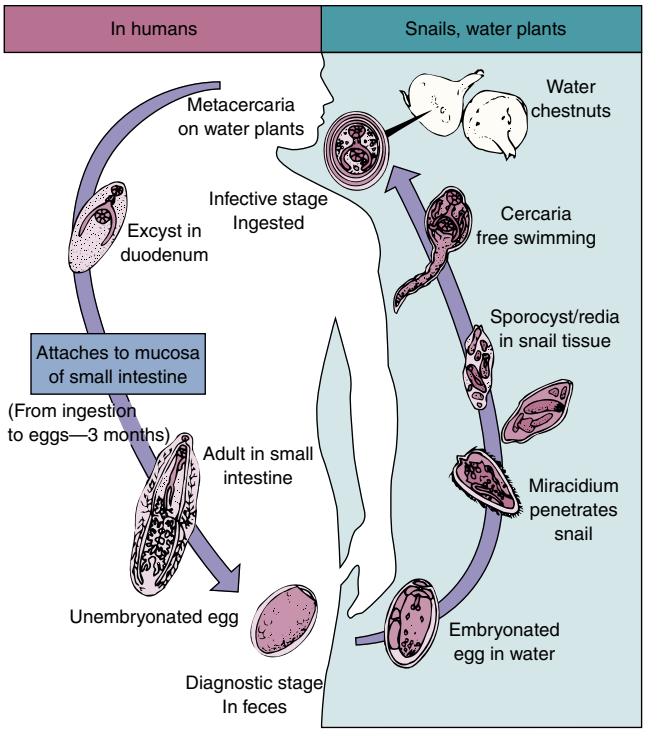


Fig. 75.2 Life cycle of *Fasciolopsis buski* (giant intestinal fluke).

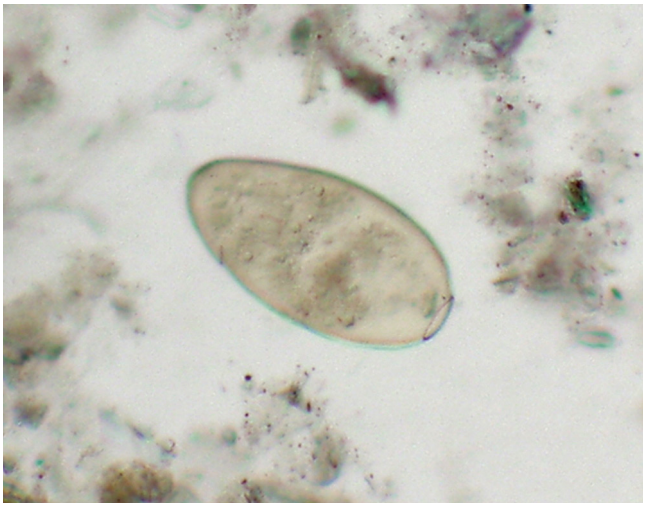


Fig. 75.3 *Fasciolopsis buski* egg, 130 to 150 µm long and 65 to 90 µm wide, with a thin operculum at one end.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Stool examination reveals the large, golden, bile-stained eggs with an operculum on the top (Fig. 75.3). The measurements and appearance of *F. buski* eggs are similar to those of the liver fluke *Fasciola hepatica*, and differentiation of the eggs of these species usually is not possible. Large (approximately 1.5 to 3.0 cm) adult flukes (see Fig. 75.1) can rarely be found in feces or specimens collected at surgery. Attempts have been made toward development of a molecular diagnostic tool for discrimination of *F. buski* from other fasciolids using ribosomal sequences.

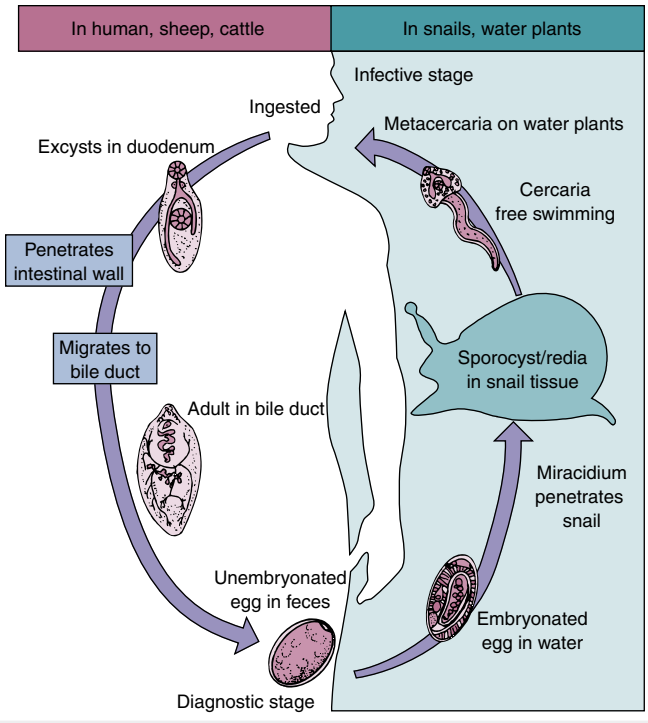


Fig. 75.4 Life cycle of *Fasciola hepatica* (sheep liver fluke).

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is praziquantel, and the alternative is mebendazole. Education regarding the safe consumption of infective aquatic vegetation (particularly water chestnuts), proper sanitation, and control of human feces reduces the incidence of disease. In addition, the snail population may be eliminated with molluscicides. When infection occurs, treatment should be initiated promptly to minimize its spread. Control of the reservoir hosts also reduces transmission of the worm.

Fasciola hepatica

A number of liver flukes are recognized, including *Fasciola hepatica, Clonorchis sinensis*, *Opisthorchis felineus*, and *Dicrocoelium dendriticum*. Only *F. hepatica* and *C. sinensis* are discussed in this chapter, although the eggs of other flukes are occasionally detected in the feces of patients in other geographic areas.

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Commonly called the **sheep liver fluke**, *F. hepatica* is a parasite of herbivores (particularly sheep and cattle) and humans. Its life cycle (Fig. 75.4) is similar to that of *F. buski*, with human infection resulting from the ingestion of watercress that harbors the encysted metacercariae. The larval flukes then migrate through the duodenal wall and across the peritoneal cavity, penetrate the liver capsule, pass through the liver parenchyma, and enter the bile ducts to become adult worms. Approximately 3 to 4 months after the initial infection, the adult flukes start producing operculated eggs that are identical to those of *F. buski*, as seen in stool examination.

Clinical Case 75.1 **Fascioliasis**

Echenique-Elizondo and colleagues (*JOP* 6:36–39, 2005) described a case of acute pancreatitis caused by the liver fluke *Fasciola hepatica*. The patient was a 31-year-old female who was admitted to the hospital because of a sudden onset of nausea and upper abdominal pain. She was otherwise healthy and gave a negative history of drug abuse, alcohol ingestion, gallstone disease, abdominal trauma, or surgery. On physical examination, she was markedly tender in the epigastric region and had hypoactive bowel sounds. Serum chemistries showed elevated pancreatic enzymes (amylase, lipase, pancreatic phospholipase A2, and elastase). Her white blood count was elevated, as were tests for alkaline phosphatase and bilirubin. Serum blood urea nitrogen, creatinine, lactate dehydrogenase, and calcium were normal. Abdominal ultrasonography and computed tomographic scan showed diffuse enlargement of the pancreas, and a cholangiogram demonstrated dilation and numerous filling defects in the common bile duct. An endoscopic sphincterotomy was performed, with extraction of numerous large flukes that were identified as *F. hepatica*. The patient was treated with a single oral dose of triclabendazole (10 mg/kg). Follow-up demonstrated normal blood chemistries and no evidence of disease 2 years postprocedure.

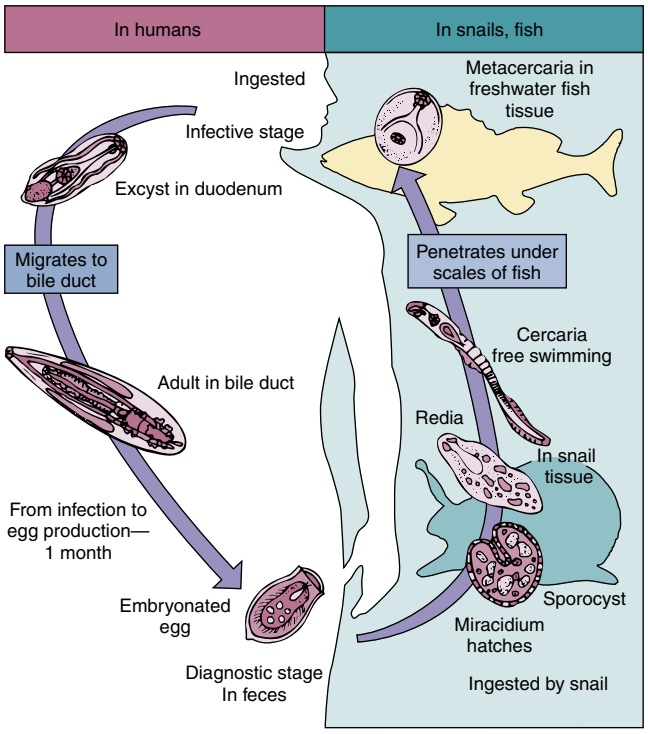


Fig. 75.5 Life cycle of *Clonorchis sinensis* (Chinese liver fluke).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Infections have been reported worldwide in sheep-raising areas, with the appropriate snail as an intermediate host. These areas include Australia, China, Egypt, Bolivia, Peru, and many other Latin American countries. Outbreaks are directly related to human consumption of contaminated watercress in areas in which infected herbivores are present. Human infection is rare in the United States, but several well-documented cases have been reported in travelers from endemic areas.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Migration of the larval worm through the liver produces irritation of this tissue, tenderness, and hepatomegaly (Clinical Case 75.1). Pain in the right upper quadrant, chills, fever, and marked eosinophilia are commonly observed. As the worms take up residence in the bile ducts, their mechanical irritation and toxic secretions produce hepatitis, hyperplasia of the epithelium, and biliary obstruction. Some worms penetrate eroded areas in the ducts and invade the liver to produce necrotic foci referred to as **liver rot.** In severe infections, secondary bacterial infection can occur, and portal cirrhosis is common.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Stool examination reveals operculated eggs indistinguishable from the eggs of *F. buski* (see Fig. 75.3). Exact identification is a therapeutic problem because treatment is not the same for both infections. Whereas *F. buski* responds favorably to praziquantel, *F. hepatica* does not. When exact identification is desired, examination of a sample of the patient's bile differentiates the species; if the eggs are present in bile, they are *F. hepatica*, not *F. buski*, which is limited to the small intestine. Eggs may appear in stool samples from people who have eaten infected sheep or cattle liver. The spurious nature of this finding can be confirmed by having the patient refrain from eating liver and then rechecking the stool. Because of the very long prepatent period, fascioliasis is one disease in which serologic diagnosis is valuable. Immunologic tests, particularly enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), based on parasite excretory/secretory antigens, cysteine protease or saposin-like antigens, display high sensitivity and specificity. Detection of parasite antigen in stools is useful to distinguish between present and past infections. Molecular diagnosis, notably tests based on loop-mediated amplification (LAMP), for detection of parasite nucleic acid in feces, are promising alternatives.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

In contrast to *F. buski*, *F. hepatica* responds poorly to praziquantel. Treatment with the benzimidazole compound triclabendazole has been effective. Preventive measures are similar to those for *F. buski* control; people who live in areas frequented by sheep and cattle should especially avoid ingestion of watercress and other uncooked aquatic vegetation.

Clonorchis sinensis

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

C. sinensis, also referred to as *Opisthorchis sinensis*, in the older literature, is commonly called the **Chinese liver fluke.** Fig. 75.5 illustrates its life cycle, which involves two intermediate hosts. This trematode differs from other fluke cycles in that the eggs are eaten by the snail, and then reproduction begins in the soft tissues of the snail. *C. sinensis* also requires a second intermediate host, such as a freshwater

Clinical Case 75.2 **Cholangitis Caused by Clonorchis (Opisthorchis) sinensis**

Stunell and colleagues (*Eur Radiol* 16:2612–2614, 2006) described a 34-year-old Asian woman who presented to a local emergency department with a 2-day history of right upper quadrant abdominal pain, fever, and rigors. She had emigrated from Asia to Ireland 18 months earlier and gave a history of intermittent upper abdominal pain occurring over a 3-year period. On examination, she appeared acutely ill and was clammy to the touch. She was febrile, tachycardic, and had mild scleral icterus. Her abdomen was tender, with guarding in the right upper quadrant. Routine hematologic and biochemical studies revealed a marked leukocytosis and obstructive liver function tests. Contrast-enhanced computed tomography of the abdomen demonstrated evidence of multiple ovoid opacities within dilatated intrahepatic bile ducts in the right lobe of the liver. The remainder of the liver parenchyma appeared normal. On stabilization of the patient, an ERCP was performed for biliary decompression. ERCP demonstrated intrahepatic and extrahepatic bile duct dilation, with multiple filling defects and strictures. A stool sample sent for analysis confirmed the presence of ova and adult flukes of *Clonorchis (Opisthorchis) sinensis*. The patient recovered with medical management (praziquantel) and had negative stool samples 30 days after treatment. This case and Clinical Case 75.1 demonstrate the various complications of liver fluke infestation. Of note, praziquantel is the drug of choice for treating the Oriental liver fluke *(C. sinensis)*, whereas triclabendazole is used to treat fascioliasis, emphasizing the importance of an epidemiologic history and identification of the fluke.

ERCP, Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography.

fish, in which the cercariae encyst and develop into infective metacercariae. When uncooked freshwater fish harboring metacercariae are eaten, flukes develop first in the duodenum and then migrate to the bile ducts, in which they become adults. The adult fluke undergoes self-fertilization and begins producing eggs. *C. sinensis* may survive in the biliary tract for as long as 50 years, producing approximately 2000 eggs per day. These eggs pass with feces and are once again eaten by snails, reinitiating the cycle.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

C. sinensis is found in China, Japan, Korea, and Vietnam, in which it is estimated to infect approximately 15 million people. It is one of the most frequent infections seen among Asian refugees, and it can be traced to the consumption of raw, pickled, smoked, or dried freshwater fish that harbor the viable metacercariae. Dogs, cats, and fish-eating mammals can also serve as reservoir hosts.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Infection in humans is usually mild and asymptomatic (Clinical Case 75.2). Severe infections with many flukes in the bile ducts produces fever, diarrhea, epigastric pain, hepatomegaly, anorexia, and occasionally jaundice. Biliary

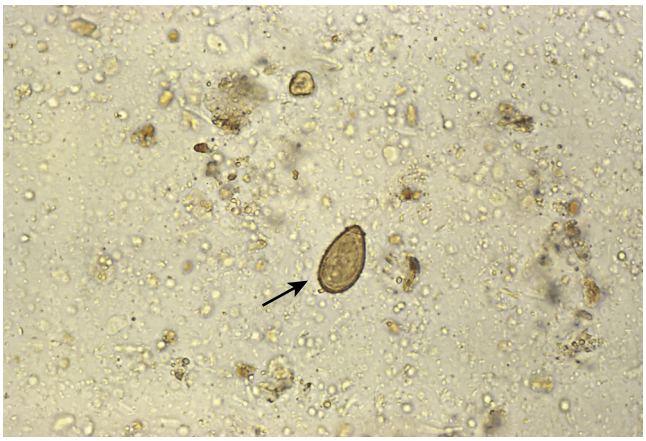


Fig. 75.6 *Clonorchis sinensis* egg *(arrow)*. These ovoid eggs are small (27 to 35 μm long and 12 to 19 μm wide) and have a yellowish brown, thick shell with a prominent operculum at one end and a small knob at the other. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

obstruction may occur, and chronic infection can result in adenocarcinoma of the bile ducts. Invasion of the gallbladder may produce cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, and impaired liver function, as well as liver abscesses.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is made by recovering the distinctive eggs from stool. The eggs measure 27 to 35 μm × 12 to 19 μm and are characterized by a distinct operculum with prominent shoulders and a tiny knob at the posterior **(abopercular)** pole (Fig. 75.6). In mild infections, repeated examinations of stool or duodenal aspirates may be necessary. In acute symptomatic infection, there are usually eosinophilia and an elevation of serum alkaline phosphatase levels. Radiographic imaging procedures may detect abnormalities of the biliary tract. A coproantigen ELISA has been developed and has displayed high specificity and sensitivity, whereas ELISA assays for circulating antibodies show high sensitivity but low specificity. Nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) platforms have been developed that detect and discriminate between fish-borne zoonoses caused by opisthorchids and members of the related family Heterophyidae, based on mitochondrial and ribosomal sequences.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is praziquantel. Prevention of infection is accomplished by not eating uncooked fish and by implementing proper sanitation policies, including the disposal of human, dog, and cat feces in adequately protected sites so that they cannot contaminate water supplies with the intermediate snail and fish hosts.

Paragonimus westermani

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

P. westermani, commonly called the **lung fluke,** is one of several species of *Paragonimus* that infect humans and many other animals. Fig. 75.7 shows a familiar fluke life

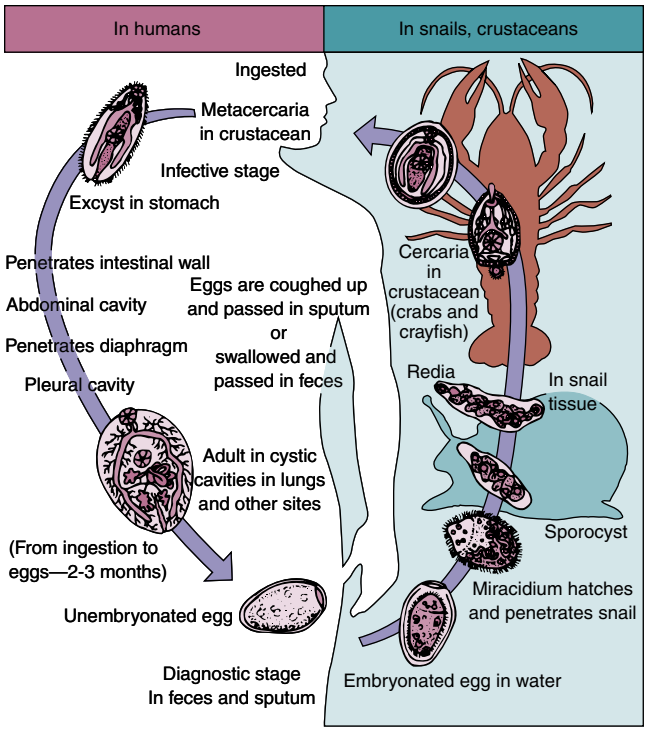


Fig. 75.7 Life cycle of *Paragonimus westermani* (Oriental lung fluke).

cycle from egg to snail to infective metacercaria. The infective stage occurs in a second intermediate host: the muscles and gills of freshwater crabs and crayfish. In humans who ingest infected meat, the larval worm hatches in the stomach and follows an extensive migration through the intestinal wall to the abdominal cavity, then through the diaphragm, and finally to the pleural cavity. Adult worms reside in the lungs and produce eggs that are liberated from ruptured bronchioles and appear in sputum or, when swallowed, in feces.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Paragonimiasis occurs in many countries in Asia, Africa, and Latin America. It can be seen in refugees from Southeast Asia. Its prevalence is directly related to the consumption of uncooked freshwater crabs and crayfish. It is estimated that approximately 3 million people are infected with this lung fluke. As many as 1% of all Indochinese immigrants to the United States are infected with *P. westermani*. A wide variety of shore-feeding animals (e.g., wild boars, pigs, and monkeys) serve as reservoir hosts, and some human infections result from ingestion of meat containing migrating larval worms from these reservoir hosts. Human infections endemic to the United States are usually caused by a related species, *P. kellicotti*, which is found in crabs and crayfish in eastern and midwestern waters.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The clinical manifestations of paragonimiasis may result from larvae migrating through tissues or from adults established in the lungs or other ectopic sites (Clinical Case 75.3). The onset of disease coincides with larval migration and is associated with fever, chills, and high eosinophilia. The adult flukes in the lungs first produce an inflammatory reaction that results in fever, cough, and increased sputum. As the destruction of lung tissue progresses, cavitation occurs around the worms, sputum becomes blood tinged and dark with eggs (so-called rusty sputum), and patients experience severe chest pain. The resulting cavity may become secondarily infected with bacteria. Dyspnea, chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, and pleural effusion may be seen. Chronic infections lead to fibrosis in the lung tissue. The location of larvae, adults, and eggs in ectopic sites may produce severe clinical symptoms depending on the site involved. The migration of larval worms may result in invasion of the spinal cord and brain, producing severe neurologic disease (visual problems, motor weakness, and convulsive seizures) referred to as **cerebral paragonimiasis.** Migration and infection also may occur in subcutaneous sites, the abdominal cavity, and the liver.

Clinical Case 75.3 **Paragonimiasis**

Singh and colleagues (*Indian J Med Microbiol* 23:131–134, 2005) described a case of pleuropulmonary paragonimiasis mimicking pulmonary tuberculosis. The patient was a 21-year-old man who was admitted to the hospital for progressive dyspnea, with a 1-month history of headache, fever, cough with scant hemoptysis, fatigue, pleuritic pain, anorexia, and weight loss. He had a history of antituberculous therapy for 6 months without improvement clinically. Two months before admission, after ingesting three raw crabs, he had a 3-day episode of watery diarrhea. On hospital admission, the patient was cachectic and afebrile. There was bilateral dullness to percussion and absent breath sounds in the lower two-thirds of the chest. He was found to be anemic and had clubbing without lymphadenopathy, cyanosis, or jaundice. A chest radiograph showed bilateral pleural effusions that also were confirmed by computed tomography. Ultrasound-guided thoracentesis of the right lung yielded about 200 ml of yellowish fluid. The fluid was exudative and contained 2700 white blood cells/ml, 91% of which were eosinophils. Gram stain of the fluid was negative, as was culture for bacteria and fungi. Sputum smears revealed operculated yellowish eggs consistent with *Paragonimus westermani* infection. The patient was treated with a 3-day course of praziquantel and responded well. Of note, the right-sided pleural effusion did not recur after the thoracentesis and praziquantel treatment. This case emphasizes the importance of making an etiologic diagnosis of a pleuropulmonary process to differentiate paragonimiasis from tuberculosis in regions in which both are endemic infectious diseases.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Examination of sputum and feces reveals golden brown, operculated eggs (Fig. 75.8). Pleural effusions, when present, should be examined for eggs. Chest radiographs often show infiltrates, nodular cysts, and pleural effusion. Marked eosinophilia is common. Serologic procedures are available through reference laboratories and can be helpful, particularly in cases with extrapulmonary (e.g., central nervous system) involvement. A range of NAATs for diagnosis of *Paragonimus* species, including conventional polymerase chain reaction (PCR), real-time PCR, and LAMP, have been evaluated.

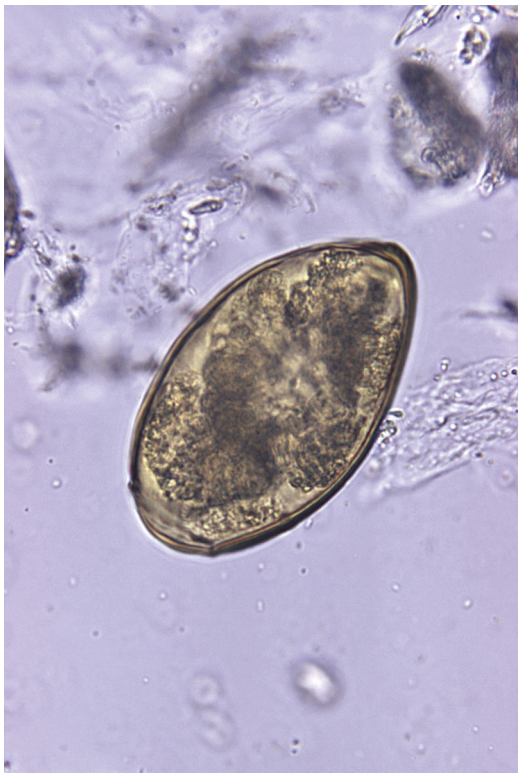


Fig. 75.8 *Paragonimus westermani* egg. These large, ovoid eggs (80 to 120 μm long and 45 to 70 μm wide) have a thick, yellowish brown shell and a distinct operculum. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

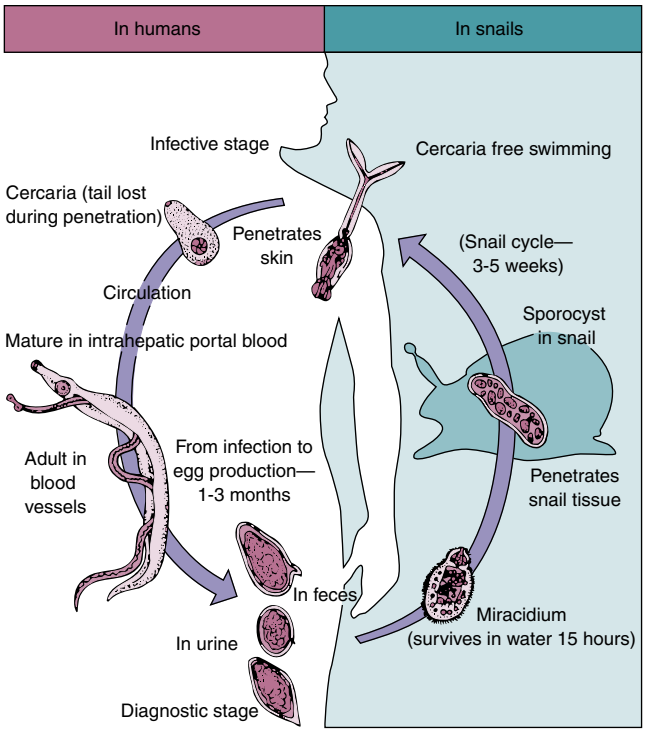


Fig. 75.9 Life cycle of schistosomes.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is praziquantel; triclabendazole is an alternative. Education regarding the consumption of uncooked freshwater crabs and crayfish, as well as the flesh of animals found in endemic areas, is critical. Pickling and wine soaking of crabs and crayfish do not kill the infective metacercarial stage. Proper sanitation and control of the disposal of human feces are essential.

Schistosomes

Schistosomiasis is a major parasitic infection of tropical areas, with some 230 million infections worldwide. The three schistosomes most frequently associated with human disease are *Schistosoma mansoni*, *S. japonicum*, and *S. haematobium*. They collectively produce the disease called **schistosomiasis,** also known as **bilharziasis** or **snail fever.** As discussed earlier, the schistosomes differ from other flukes: they are male and female rather than hermaphroditic, and their eggs do not have an operculum. They also are obligate intravascular parasites and are not found in cavities, ducts, and other tissues. The infective forms are skin-penetrating **cercariae** liberated from snails, and these differ from other flukes in that they are not eaten on vegetation, in fish, or in crustaceans.

Fig. 75.9 illustrates the life cycle of the different schistosomes. Infection is initiated by ciliated, free-swimming, freshwater cercariae that penetrate intact skin, enter the circulation, and develop in the intrahepatic portal circulation (*S. mansoni* and *S. japonicum*) or in the vesical, prostatic, rectal, and uterine plexuses and veins (*S. haematobium*). The female has a long, slender, cylindric body, whereas the shorter male, which appears cylindric, is actually flat (Fig. 75.10). The cylindric appearance derives from folding the sides of the body to produce a groove, the gynecophoral canal, in which the female resides for fertilization. Both sexes have oral and ventral suckers and an incomplete digestive system, which is typical of a fluke.

As the worms develop in the portal circulation, they elaborate a remarkable defense against host resistance. They coat themselves with substances that the host recognizes as itself; consequently, there is little host response directed against their presence in blood vessels. This protective mechanism accounts for chronic infections that may last 20 to 30 years or longer.

Fig. 75.10 Living male and female *Schistosoma mansoni*. The slender female *(right)* is normally seen within the gynecophoral groove of the male *(left)* (×14). (From Peters, W., Pasvol, G., 2007. Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA; courtesy Professor R.E. Howells.)

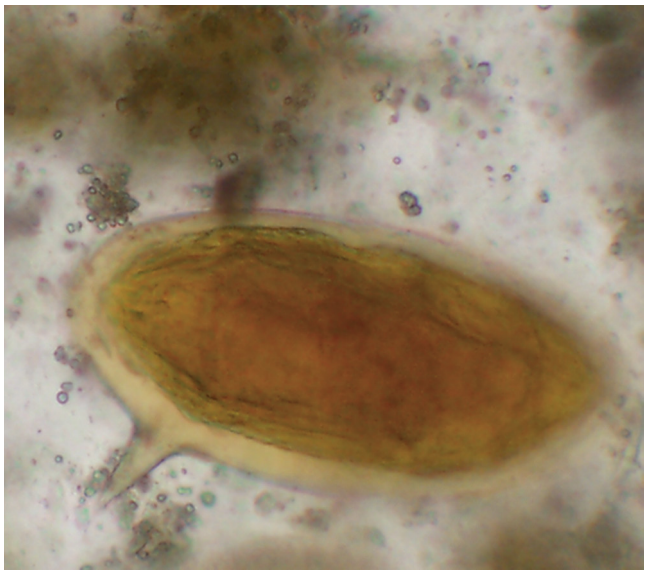


Fig. 75.11 *Schistosoma mansoni* egg. These eggs are 115 to 175 μm long and 45 to 70 μm wide, contain a miracidium, and are enclosed in a thin shell with a prominent lateral spine.

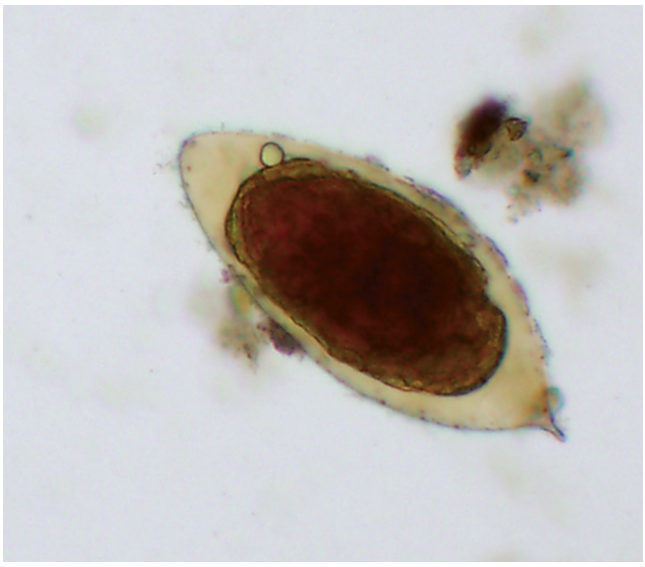


Fig. 75.13 *Schistosoma haematobium* egg. These eggs are similar in size to those of *Schistosoma mansoni* but can be differentiated by the presence of a terminal, rather than lateral, spine.

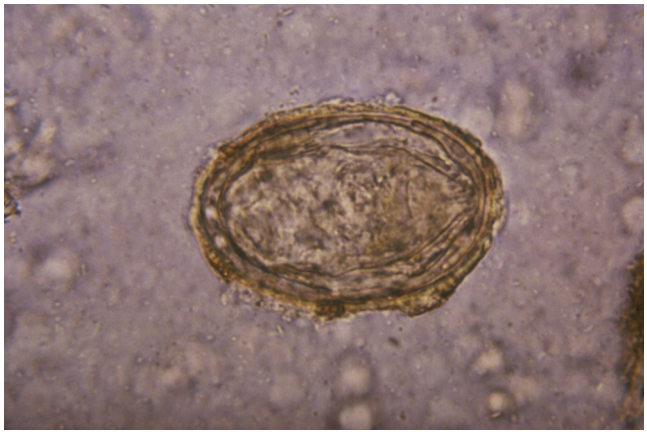


Fig. 75.12 *Schistosoma japonicum* egg. These eggs are smaller than those of *Schistosoma mansoni* (70 to 100 μm long and 55 to 65 μm wide) and have a spine that is inconspicuous. (From CDC Public Health Image Library.)

After developing in the portal vein, the male and female adult worms pair up and migrate to their final locations, where fertilization and egg production begin. *S. mansoni* and *S. japonicum* are found in mesenteric veins and produce intestinal schistosomiasis; *S. haematobium* occurs in veins around the urinary bladder and causes vesicular schistosomiasis. On reaching the submucosal venules of their respective locations, the worms initiate oviposition, which may continue at the rate of 300 to 3000 eggs daily for 4 to 35 years. Although the host inflammatory response to the adult worms is minimal, the eggs elicit an intense inflammatory reaction, with mononuclear and polymorphonuclear cellular infiltrates and the formation of microabscesses. In addition, the larvae inside the eggs produce enzymes that aid in tissue destruction and allow the eggs to pass through the mucosa and into the lumen of the bowel and bladder, where they are passed to the external environment in the feces and urine, respectively.

The eggs hatch quickly on reaching fresh water to release motile **miracidia.** The miracidia then invade the appropriate snail host, where they develop into thousands of infectious cercariae. The free-swimming cercariae are released into the water, where they are immediately infectious for humans and other mammals.

The infection is similar in all three species of human schistosomes in that disease results primarily from the host's immune response to the eggs. The very earliest signs and symptoms are caused by the penetration of the cercariae through the skin. Immediate and delayed hypersensitivity to parasite antigens result in an intensely pruritic papular skin rash.

The onset of oviposition results in a symptom complex known as **Katayama syndrome,** which is marked by fever, chills, cough, urticaria, arthralgias, lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and abdominal pain. This syndrome is typically seen 1 to 2 months after primary exposure and may persist for 3 months or more. It is thought to result from the massive release of parasite antigens, with subsequent immune complex formation. Associated laboratory abnormalities include leukocytosis, eosinophilia, and polyclonal gammopathy.

The more chronic and significant phase of schistosomiasis is caused by the presence of eggs in various tissues and the resulting formation of granulomas and fibrosis. The retained eggs induce extensive inflammation and scarring, the clinical significance of which is directly related to the location and number of eggs.

Because of differences in some aspects of disease and epidemiology, these worms are discussed as separate species.

SCHISTOSOMA MANSONI

Physiology and Structure

S. mansoni usually resides in the small branches of the inferior mesenteric vein near the lower colon. The species of *Schistosoma* can be differentiated by their characteristic egg morphology (Figs. 75.11 to 75.13). The eggs of *S. mansoni* are oval, possess a **sharp lateral spine,** and measure 115 to 175 μm × 45 to 70 μm (see Fig. 75.11).

Clinical Case 75.4 **Schistosomiasis**

Ferrari (*Medicine [Baltimore]* 78:176–190, 1999) described a case of neuroschistosomiasis caused by *Schistosoma mansoni* in an 18-year-old Brazilian man. The patient was admitted to the hospital because of the recent onset of paraplegia. He was in good health until 33 days before admission, when he noted the onset of progressive low back pain with radiation to the lower limbs. During this period, he was evaluated three times in another institution, in which radiographic films of the lower thoracic, lumbar, and sacral spine were normal. He received antiinflammatory agents, with only transient relief in his symptoms. Four weeks after the pain began, the disease progressed acutely with sexual impotence, fecal and urinary retention, and paraparesis progressing to paraplegia. At this time, the pain disappeared, replaced by a marked impairment of sensation in the lower limbs. On admission to the hospital, he gave a history of exposure to schistosomal infection. Neurologic examination revealed flaccid paraplegia, marked sensory loss, and absence of superficial and deep reflexes at and below the level T11. The CSF contained 84 white blood cells/ml (98% lymphocytes, 2% eosinophils) and 1 red blood cell, 82 mg/dl total protein, and 61 mg/dl glucose. Myelography, computed tomography–myelography, and magnetic resonance imaging showed a slight widening of the conus. The diagnosis of neuroschistosomiasis was confirmed by the demonstration of viable and dead eggs of *S. mansoni* on rectal mucosal biopsy. The concentration of CSF IgG against soluble egg antigen of *S. mansoni* quantitated by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay was 1.53 µg/ml. He was treated with prednisone and praziquantel. Despite therapy, his condition remained unaltered at follow-up 7 months later. *S. mansoni* is the most frequently reported cause of SMR worldwide. SMR is among the most severe forms of schistosomiasis, and prognosis depends largely on early diagnosis and treatment.

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid; *SMR,* schistosomal myeloradiculopathy.

Epidemiology

The geographic distribution of the various species of *Schistosoma* depends on the availability of a suitable snail host. *S. mansoni* is the most widespread of the schistosomes and is endemic in Africa, Saudi Arabia, and Madagascar. It also has become well established in the Western Hemisphere, particularly in Brazil, Suriname, Venezuela, parts of the West Indies, and Puerto Rico. Cases originating in these areas may present in the United States. In all of these areas, there also are reservoir hosts, specifically primates, marsupials, and rodents. Schistosomiasis may be considered a disease of economic progress; the development of massive land irrigation projects in desert and tropical areas has resulted in the dispersion of infected humans and snails to previously uninvolved areas.

Clinical Syndromes

As noted previously, cercarial penetration of intact skin may be seen as dermatitis with allergic reactions, pruritus, and edema (Clinical Case 75.4). Migrating worms in the lungs may produce cough; as they reach the liver, hepatitis may appear.

Infections with *S. mansoni* may produce hepatic and intestinal abnormalities. As the flukes take up residence in the mesenteric vessels and egg laying begins, fever, malaise, abdominal pain, and tenderness of the liver may be observed. Deposition of eggs in the bowel mucosa results in inflammation and thickening of the bowel wall with associated abdominal pain, diarrhea, and blood in the stool. Eggs may be carried by the portal vein to the liver, where inflammation can lead to periportal fibrosis and eventually to portal hypertension and its associated manifestations.

Chronic infection with *S. mansoni* produces a dramatic hepatosplenomegaly with large accumulations of ascitic fluid in the peritoneal cavity. On gross examination, the liver is studded with white granulomas (pseudotubercles). Although *S. mansoni* eggs are primarily deposited in the intestine, eggs may appear in the spinal cord, lungs, and other sites. A similar fibrotic process occurs at each site. Severe neurologic problems may follow when eggs are deposited in the spinal cord and brain. In fatal schistosomiasis caused by *S. mansoni*, fibrous tissue, reacting to the eggs in the liver, surrounds the portal vein in a thick, grossly visible layer **("clay pipestem fibrosis").**

Laboratory Diagnosis

The diagnosis of schistosomiasis is usually established by the demonstration of characteristic eggs in feces. Stool examination reveals the large golden eggs with a sharp lateral spine (see Fig. 75.11). Concentration techniques may be necessary in light infections. Using rectal biopsy, the clinician can see the egg tracks laid by the worms in rectal vessels. Quantitation of egg output in stool is useful in estimating the severity of infection and in following the response to therapy. Serologic tests are also available but are largely of epidemiologic interest only. The development of newer tests using stage-specific antigens may allow the distinction of active from inactive disease and thus have greater clinical application. Two antigens detected in urine of patients with schistosomiasis, the circulating anodic and cathodic antigens (CAA and CCA), have been targeted for point-of-care diagnosis of schistosomiasis, notably for detection of *S. mansoni* infection. A lateral flow kit for detection of CCA is available commercially and has been widely used in studies in Africa and Brazil, but it does not have U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval. There has been interest in the use of NAAT for detection of cell-free schistosome deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) from plasma, blood, saliva, and urine samples. The molecular tests have proven highly sensitive and are suited for epidemiologic surveys in low-intensity settings, but relative costs of instrumentation and reagents remain an issue for point-of-care diagnosis with molecular tools.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice is praziquantel, and the alternative is oxamniquine. Anthelmintic therapy may terminate oviposition but does not affect lesions caused by eggs already deposited in tissues. **Schistosomal dermatitis** and Katayama syndrome may be treated with the administration of antihistamines and corticosteroids. Education regarding the life cycles of these worms and molluscicide control of snails are essential. Improved sanitation and control of human fecal deposits are critical. Unfortunately, treatment

with praziquantel provides low cure rates in some areas, raising the specter of emerging resistance to this important therapeutic agent. The addition of artemether, an antimalarial, in combination with praziquantel has shown improved activity against *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium*. In contrast to praziquantel, artemether acts against juvenile schistosomes in the host and may be used as a chemoprophylactic agent. Vaccine trials are in progress, but the ideal target antigen has not been identified.

SCHISTOSOMA JAPONICUM

Physiology and Structure

S. japonicum resides in branches of the superior mesenteric vein around the small intestine and in the inferior mesenteric vessels. *S. japonicum* eggs (see Fig. 75.12) are smaller, are almost spheric, and possess a **tiny spine**. These eggs are produced in greater numbers than those of *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium*. Because of the size, shape, and numbers of these eggs, they are carried to more sites in the body (liver, lungs, brain), and infection with a few *S. japonicum* adults can be more severe than infections involving similar numbers of *S. mansoni* or *S. haematobium*.

Epidemiology

This **Oriental blood fluke** is found only in China, the Philippines, and on the island of Sulawesi, Indonesia. Epidemiologic problems correlate directly with a broad range of reservoir hosts, many of which are domestic (cats, dogs, cattle, horses, and pigs).

Clinical Syndromes

The initial stages of infection with *S. japonicum* are similar to those of *S. mansoni*, with dermatitis, allergic reactions, fever, and malaise, followed by abdominal discomfort and diarrhea. Katayama syndrome associated with the onset of oviposition is observed more commonly with *S. japonicum* than with *S. mansoni*. In chronic *S. japonicum* infection, hepatosplenic disease, portal hypertension, bleeding esophageal varices, and accumulation of ascitic fluid are commonly seen. Granulomas that appear as pseudotubercles in and on the liver are common, along with the clay pipestem fibrosis as described for *S. mansoni*.

S. japonicum frequently involves cerebral structures when eggs reach the brain and granulomas develop around them. The neurologic manifestations include lethargy, speech impairment, visual defects, and seizures.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Stool examination demonstrates the small, golden eggs with tiny spines, and usually, rectal biopsy is similarly revealing. Serologic tests are available. A lateral flow immunoassay targeting the CAA remains under development and has been tested successfully for sensitive diagnosis of *S. japonicum* and *S. haematobium* in low-intensity and near eradication settings. NAATs have been used in epidemiologic surveys.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice is praziquantel. Prevention and control may be achieved by measures similar to those for *S. mansoni*, especially education of populations in endemic areas regarding proper water purification, sanitation, and control of human fecal deposits. Control of *S. japonicum* also must involve the broad range of reservoir hosts and consider the fact that people work in rice paddies and on irrigation projects in which infected snails are present. Mass treatment may offer help, and a vaccine may be developed someday.

SCHISTOSOMA HAEMATOBIUM

Physiology and Structure

After development in the liver, these blood flukes migrate to the vesical, prostatic, and uterine plexuses of the venous circulation, occasionally the portal bloodstream, and only rarely in other venules.

Large eggs with a **sharp terminal spine** (see Fig. 75.13) are deposited in the wall of the bladder and occasionally in the uterine and prostatic tissues. Those deposited in the bladder wall can break free and are found in urine.

Epidemiology

S. haematobium occurs throughout the Nile Valley and in many other parts of Africa, including islands off the eastern coast. It also appears in Asia Minor, Cyprus, southern Portugal, and India. Reservoir hosts include monkeys, baboons, and chimpanzees.

Clinical Syndromes

Early stages of infection with *S. haematobium* are similar to those of infections involving *S. mansoni* and *S. japonicum*, with dermatitis, allergic reactions, fever, and malaise. Unlike the other two schistosomes, *S. haematobium* produces hematuria, dysuria, and urinary frequency as early symptoms. Associated with hematuria, bacteriuria is frequently a chronic condition. Egg deposition in the walls of the bladder may eventually result in scarring, with loss of bladder capacity and the development of obstructive uropathy.

Patients with *S. haematobium* infections involving many flukes frequently demonstrate squamous cell carcinoma of the bladder. It is commonly stated that the leading cause of cancer of the bladder in Egypt and other parts of Africa is *S. haematobium*. The granulomas and pseudotubercles seen in the bladder may also be present in the lungs. Fibrosis of the pulmonary bed caused by egg deposition leads to dyspnea, cough, and hemoptysis.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Examination of urine specimens reveals the large, **terminally spined** eggs. Occasionally, bladder biopsy is helpful in establishing the diagnosis. *S. haematobium* eggs may appear in stool if worms have migrated to mesenteric vessels. Serologic tests (antigen and antibody) and NAATs are also available.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The drug of choice is praziquantel. At present, education, possible mass treatment, and development of a vaccine are the best approaches to the control of *S. haematobium* disease. The basic problems of irrigation projects (e.g., dam building), migratory human populations, and multiple reservoir hosts make prevention and control extremely difficult. A recent report of the safety and efficacy of mefloquine-artesunate in the treatment of schistosomiasis caused by *S. haematobium* is of great interest given the potential for the development of resistance to praziquantel among the schistosomes.

CERCARIAL DERMATITIS

Several nonhuman schistosomes have cercariae that penetrate human skin, producing a severe dermatitis **("swimmer's itch"),** but these schistosomes cannot develop into adult worms. The natural hosts are birds and other shore-feeding animals from freshwater lakes throughout the world and a few marine beaches. The intense pruritus and urticaria from this skin penetration may lead to secondary bacterial infection from scratching the sites of infection.

Treatment consists of oral trimeprazine and topical applications of palliative agents. When indicated, sedatives may be given. Control is difficult because of bird migration and the transfer of live snails from lake to lake. Molluscicides, such as copper sulfate, have produced some reduction in the snail populations. Immediate drying of the skin when people leave such waters offers some protection.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Connor, D.H., et al., 1997. Pathology of Infectious Diseases. Appleton & Lange, Stamford, Conn.

Garcia, L.S., 2016. Diagnostic Medical Parasitology, sixth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

John, D.T., Petri Jr., W.A., 2006. Markell and Voge's Medical Parasitology, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Jones, M.K., et al., 2015. Trematodes. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Keiser, J., Utzinger, J., 2009. Food-borne trematodiases. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 22, 466–483.

Keiser, J., et al., 2010. Efficacy and safety of mefloquine, artesunate, mefloquine-artesunate, and prazequantel against *Schistosoma haematobium*: randomized, exploratory open-label trial. Clin. Infect. Dis. 50, 1205–1213.

McManus, D.P., Loukas, A., 2008. Current status of vaccines for schistosomiasis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 21, 225–242.

Meltzer, E., et al., 2006. Schistosomiasis among travelers: new aspects of an old disease. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 12, 1696–1700.

Strickland, G.T., 2000. Hunter's Tropical Medicine and Emerging Infectious Diseases. WB Saunders, Philadelphia.

Van Lieshout, L., Roestenberg, M., 2015. Clinical consequences of new diagnostic tools for intestinal parasites. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. 21, 520–528.

fur11Verweij, J.J., Stensvold, C.R., 2014. Molecular testing for clinical diagnosis and epidemiological investigations of intestinal parasitic infections. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 27, 371–418.

Case Study and Questions

A businessman who has traveled frequently to Northern Africa for many years has ascites, hepatosplenomegaly, and other signs of portal hypertension.

1. Which of the following parasites is most likely to be the cause of his illness?
   a. *Schistosoma mansoni*
   b. *Fasciolopsis buski*
   c. *Paragonimus westermani*
   d. *Schistosoma haematobium*

2. What is the pathogenesis of his disease?

3. How would you make the diagnosis?

76 Cestodes

A 30-year-old Hispanic man entered the emergency department after a focal neurologic seizure. The patient had recently emigrated from Mexico and was in his usual state of good health before the seizure. Neurologic examination revealed no persistent focal findings. A computed tomography (CT) scan of the head revealed multiple small cystic lesions in both cerebral hemispheres. Punctate calcification was noted in several of the lesions. A lumbar puncture revealed a glucose level of 65 mg/dl (normal) and a protein level of 38 mg/dl (normal) in cerebrospinal fluid. The white blood cell count was 20/cells/mm3 (abnormal) with a differential of 5% neutrophils, 90% lymphocytes, and 5% monocytes. A purified protein derivative skin test was negative with positive controls. Serologic test for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) was negative.

1. What was the differential diagnosis of this patient's neurologic process?
2. Which parasite or parasites may have caused this condition?
3. What diagnostic tests were available for this infection?
4. What were the therapeutic options for this patient?
5. How do people become infected with this parasite?
6. What tissue sites (along with the central nervous system) may be involved? How would these additional foci of infection be documented?

 **Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.**

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

TAENIA SOLIUM

Trigger Words

Tapeworm, cysticercosis, proglottid, pig tapeworm, scolex, oncosphere

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- *Taenia solium* (pork tapeworm): cestode; flat, segmented, ribbon-like body (strobila); head (scolex) equipped with four muscular cup-shaped suckers and a crown of hooklets that serve as organs of attachment
- Complex life cycle involving intermediate hosts; humans may serve as a form of intermediate host (cysticercosis) that harbors larval stages at extraintestinal sites
- Adult *T. solium* in intestine seldom causes abdominal discomfort, chronic indigestion, diarrhea
- Cysticercosis: infection of humans with larval stage of *T. solium* (cysticercus or bladder worm), which normally infects pigs

Epidemiology

- *T. solium* infection directly correlated with eating insufficiently cooked pork
- Cysticercosis found in areas where *T. solium* is prevalent; directly correlated with human fecal contamination
- *T. solium* infection and cysticercosis prevalent in Latin American countries, Africa, Asia, and Slavic countries; seen infrequently in the United States

Diagnosis

- Stool examination may reveal eggs and proglottids
- Cysticercosis usually diagnosed by detection of calcified cysticerci in soft tissue roentgenograms, surgical removal of subcutaneous nodules, and visualization of cysts in the eye
- Central nervous system lesions may be detected by imaging studies
- Serologic studies may be useful in diagnosis of cysticercosis

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Drug of choice for *T. solium* infection: niclosamide; praziquantel, paromomycin, and quinacrine are effective alternatives
- Prevention of pork tapeworm infection: cook until interior of meat is gray; freeze at −20° C for at least 12 hours
- Drug of choice for cysticercosis: praziquantel or albendazole
- Surgical removal of cerebral and ocular cysts may be necessary
- Prevention and control: treatment of human cases harboring adult *T. solium,* controlled disposal of human feces

DIPHYLLOBOTHRIUM LATUM

Trigger Words

Fish tapeworm, vitamin B_{12} deficiency, gefilte fish, copepod

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- *D. latum* (fish tapeworm): one of largest tapeworms infecting humans (20 to 30 feet long)
- Life cycle of *D. latum* is complex; two intermediate hosts: freshwater crustaceans, freshwater fish
- Humans infected when they eat raw or undercooked fish containing larval forms
- *D. latum* establishes infection in small bowel; may reach a length of 20 to 30 feet and produce more than 1 million eggs per day
- Most *D. latum* infections asymptomatic; symptoms include epigastric pain, abdominal cramping, nausea, weight loss

Epidemiology

- *D. latum* infection occurs worldwide, most prevalently in cool lake regions where raw or pickled fish is popular
- Insufficient cooking over campfires and tasting and seasoning "gefilte fish" account for many infections
- Dumping raw sewage into freshwater lakes contributes to propagation of this tapeworm

Diagnosis

- Microscopic examination of stool reveals bile-stained operculated egg with knob at bottom of shell
- Typical proglottids may also be detected

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Drug of choice is niclosamide; praziquantel and paromomycin acceptable alternatives
- Vitamin B_{12} supplementation may be necessary in people with evidence of clinical B_{12} deficiency
- Prevalence of this infection reduced by avoiding ingestion of raw or undercooked fish, controlling disposal of human waste, promptly treating infections

The bodies of cestodes, or **tapeworms,** are flat and ribbon-like (Fig. 76.1), and the heads are equipped with organs of attachment. The head, or **scolex,** of the worm usually has four muscular, cup-shaped suckers and a crown of hooklets (Fig. 76.2). An exception is *Diphyllobothrium latum*, the fish tapeworm, whose scolex is equipped with a pair of long, lateral, muscular grooves and lacks hooklets.

Fig. 76.1 Intact adult *Diphyllobothrium latum*. The chain of proglottids (strobila) may reach a length of 10 m. (From Peters, W., Pasvol, G., 2007. Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

The individual segments of tapeworms are called **proglottids** (see Fig. 76.2), and the chain of proglottids is called a **strobila** (see Fig. 76.1). As new proglottids develop, existing ones mature as they become more distal. The more distal proglottids are gravid, almost completely occupied by a uterus full of eggs, which are passed with the stools of the carrier, either inside completed proglottids or free after proglottid breakage. Differentiation of the various adult cestodes may be accomplished by examination of the structure of shed proglottids (length, width, number of uterine branches) or (more rarely) of the scolex (number and placement of suckers, presence or absence of hooklets).

All tapeworms are hermaphroditic, with male and female reproductive organs present in each mature proglottid. The eggs of most tapeworms are nonoperculated and contain a six-hooked **hexacanth embryo;** the one exception, *D. latum*, has an unembryonated, operculated egg resembling fluke eggs. Tapeworms have no digestive system, and food is absorbed from the host intestine through the soft body wall of the worm. Most tapeworms found in the human intestine have complex life cycles involving intermediate hosts, and in some instances (cysticercosis, echinococcosis, sparganosis), humans serve as a form of intermediate host that harbors larval stages. The presence of extraintestinal larvae is at times more serious than that of adult worms in the intestine. The most common cestodes of medical importance are listed in Table 76.1.

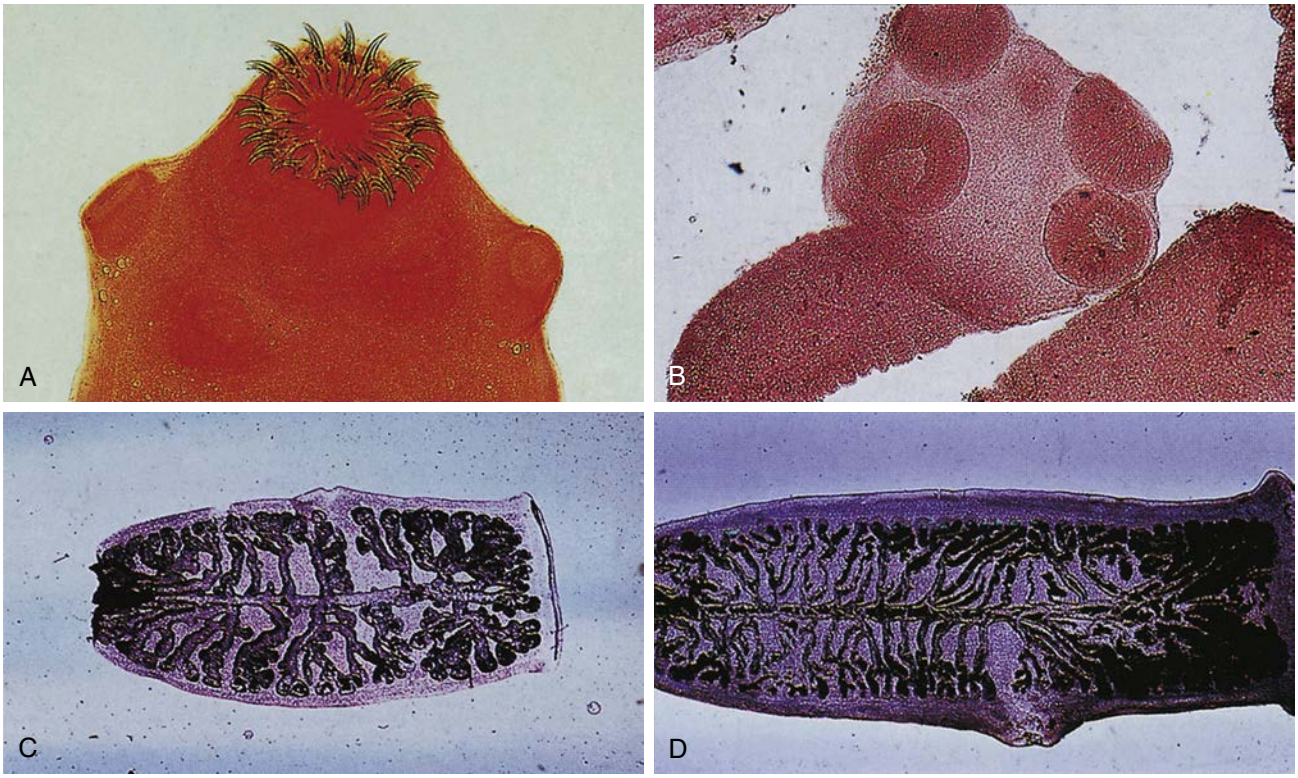


Fig. 76.2 Scolices and proglottids of (A and C) *Taenia solium* and (B and D) *T. saginata*. The scolex of *T. solium* (A) is armored with hooks in addition to four suckers. *T. saginata* has no hooks (B). The gravid proglottids of *T. solium* (C) contain a central uterus with fewer than a dozen lateral branches. The gravid segments of *T. saginata* (D) contain a central uterus with 15 to 20 lateral branches. (From Peters, W., Pasvol, G., 2007. Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA. C and D, Courtesy Professor D. Greenwood.)

TABLE 76.1 Medically Important Cestodes

Cestode	Common Name	Reservoir for Larvae	Reservoir for Adults
Taenia solium	Pork tapeworm	Hogs	Humans
	Cysticercosis	Humans	—
Taenia saginata	Beef tapeworm	Cattle	Humans
Diphyllobothrium latum	Fish tapeworm	Freshwater crustaceans and fish	Humans, dogs, cats, bears
Echinococcus granulosus	Unilocular hydatid cyst	Herbivores, humans	Canines
E. multilocularis	Alveolar hydatid cyst	Herbivores, humans	Foxes, wolves, dogs, cats
Hymenolepis nana	Dwarf tapeworm	Rodents, humans	Rodents, humans
H. diminuta	Dwarf tapeworm	Insects	Rodents, humans
Dipylidium caninum	Pumpkin seed tapeworm	Fleas	Dogs, cats

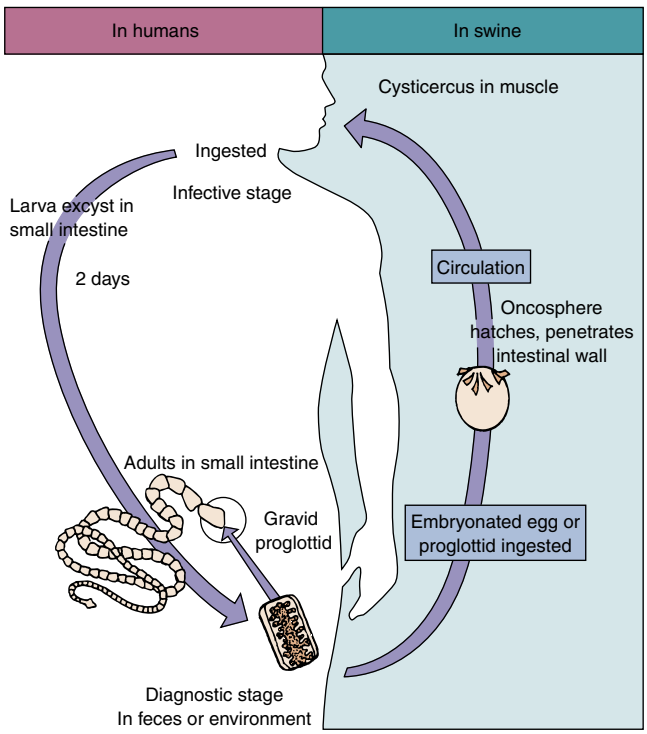


Fig. 76.3 Life cycle of *Taenia solium* (pork tapeworm).

Fig. 76.4 *Taenia* egg. The eggs are spheric, 30 to 40 µm in diameter, and contain three pairs of hooklets internally. The eggs of the different *Taenia* species cannot be differentiated.

Taenia solium

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The larval stage, or **cysticercus** ("bladder worm"), of *Taenia* species consists of a scolex, which is invaginated into a fluid-filled bladder. Larval cysts develop in the tissues of the intermediate host, are 4 to 6 mm long × 7 to 11 mm wide, and have a pearl-like appearance in the tissues. After a person ingests pork muscle containing a larval worm, attachment of the scolex with its four muscular suckers and crown of hooklets (see Fig. 76.2) initiates infection in the small intestine (Fig. 76.3). The worm then produces proglottids until a strobila of proglottids is developed, which may be several meters in length. The sexually mature proglottids contain eggs, and as these proglottids leave the host in feces, they can contaminate water and vegetation ingested by swine. The gravid proglottids have a similar length and width (1 × 1 cm) and contain few (<12) lateral uterine branches (see Fig. 76.2). The eggs in swine become a six-hooked larval form, called an *oncosphere,* which penetrates the pig's intestinal wall, migrates in the circulation to the tissues, and becomes a cysticercus to complete the cycle.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

T. solium infection is directly correlated with eating insufficiently cooked pork and is prevalent in Africa, India, Southeast Asia, China, Mexico, Latin American countries, and Slavic countries. It is seen infrequently in the United States.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Adult *T. solium* in the intestine seldom causes appreciable symptoms. The intestine may be irritated at sites of attachment, and abdominal discomfort, chronic indigestion, and diarrhea may occur. Most patients become aware of the infection only when they see proglottids or a strobila of proglottids in their feces.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Stool examination may reveal proglottids and eggs, and treatment may produce the entire worm for identification. The eggs are spheric, are 30 to 40 µm in diameter, and possess a thick, radially striated shell containing a six-hooked hexacanth embryo (Fig. 76.4). The eggs are identical to those of *T. saginata* **(beef tapeworm),** so eggs alone are not sufficient for species identification.

Critical examination of the proglottids reveals their internal structure, which is important for the differentiation of *T. solium* and *T. saginata*. Gravid proglottids of *T. solium* are smaller than those of *T. saginata* and contain only 7 to 12 lateral uterine branches, compared with 15 to 30 for the beef tapeworm (see Fig. 76.2). Recently, stage-specific serologic assays directed to the adult tapeworm have been developed, with high sensitivity and specificity. Antibody detection by enzyme-linked immunoelectrotransfer blot assay is the method of choice, with a sensitivity of 98% and a specificity of 100%. Coproantigen detection by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) is much more sensitive than microscopy and thus highly recommended for the diagnosis of human taeniasis (specifically in the case of *T. solium* because of the risks of cysticercosis transmission), as well as to monitor the effectiveness of treatment, but its availability is still limited. Species-specific PCR techniques that differentiate *T. saginata* from *T. solium* have been described. Most of these assays require actual parasite material, although some are apparently able to establish the difference with deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) from eggs in feces.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is niclosamide. Praziquantel, paromomycin, or quinacrine is an effective alternative. Prevention of **pork tapeworm** infections requires that pork be either cooked until the interior of the meat is gray or frozen at −20° C for at least 12 hours. Sanitation is critical; every effort must be made to keep human feces containing *T. solium* eggs out of water and vegetation ingested by pigs.

Cysticercosis

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Cysticercosis involves infection of people with the larval stage of *T. solium* (the cysticercus), which normally infects pigs (Fig. 76.5). Human ingestion of water or vegetation contaminated with *T. solium* eggs from human feces initiates the infection. Autoinfection may occur when eggs from a person infected with the adult worm are transferred from the perianal area to the mouth on contaminated fingers. Once ingested, the eggs hatch in the stomach of the intermediate host, releasing the hexacanth embryo or **oncosphere.** The oncosphere penetrates the intestinal wall and migrates in the circulation to the tissues, where it develops into a cysticercus in 3 to 4 months. The cysticerci may develop in muscle, connective tissue, brain, lungs, and eyes and remain viable for as long as 5 years.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Cysticercosis is found in the areas in which *T. solium* is prevalent and is directly correlated with human fecal contamination. In addition to fecal-oral transmission, autoinfection may occur when a proglottid containing eggs is regurgitated from the small intestine into the stomach, allowing the eggs to hatch and release the infectious oncosphere.

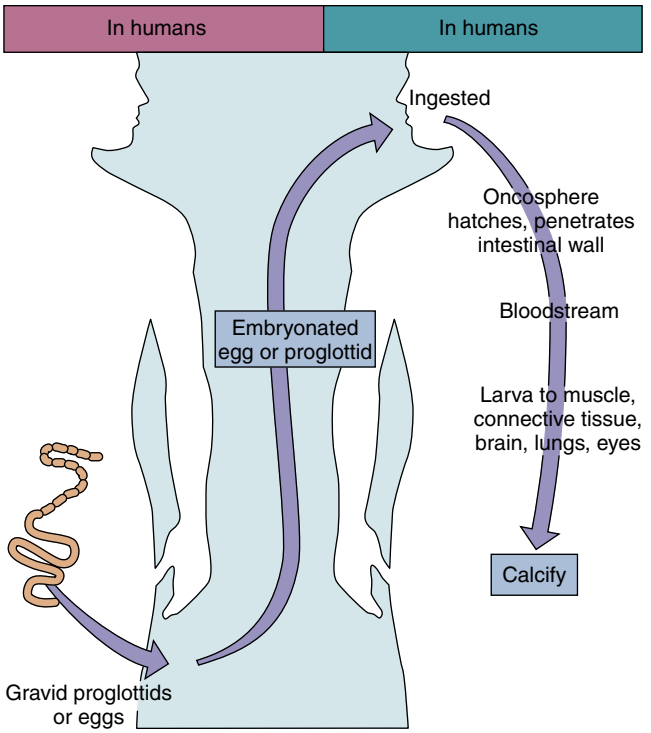


Fig. 76.5 Development of human cysticercosis.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

A few cysticerci in nonvital areas (e.g., subcutaneous tissues) may not provoke symptoms, but serious disease may follow as the cysticerci lodge in vital areas, such as the brain and eyes (Clinical Case 76.1). In the brain, they may produce hydrocephalus, meningitis, cranial nerve damage, seizures, hyperactive reflexes, and visual defects. In the eye, loss of visual acuity may occur, and if the larvae lodge along the optic tract, visual field defects result. Tissue reaction to viable larvae may be only moderate, thus minimizing symptoms. However, death of the larvae results in the release of antigenic material that stimulates a marked inflammatory reaction; exacerbation of symptoms can result in fever, muscle pains, and eosinophilia.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The presence of cysticerci is usually established by the appearance of calcified cysticerci in soft-tissue roentgenograms, surgical removal of subcutaneous nodules, and visualization of cysts in the eye. Central nervous system lesions may be detected by CT, radioisotope scanning, or ultrasonography. Serology is directed to the detection of *T. solium* antibodies in relation to the diagnosis of neurocysticercosis; false-positive results may occur in people with other helminthic infections. *T. solium* antigen detection in serum or cerebrospinal fluid has been performed in cases of human cysticercosis. Although these assays can detect parasite burdens of <50 cysts in infected animals, they have not yet been routinely applied except in research settings. *T. solium* antigen detection is likely to be a helpful tool to monitor the evolution of patients with severe, subarachnoid neurocysticercosis, in which high antigen levels occur. Species-specific polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques that differentiate *T. saginata* from *T. solium* have been described.

Clinical Case 76.1 **Neurocysticercosis**

Chatel and colleagues (*Am J Trop Med Hyg* 60:255–256, 1999) described a case of neurocysticercosis in an Italian traveler to Latin America. The patient was a 49-year-old man with a history of a 30-day stay in Latin America (El Salvador, Colombia, and Guatemala) 3 months before presentation with fever and myalgia. The clinical examination and routine laboratory test results were normal except for elevated creatine phosphokinase levels and mild eosinophilia. He received symptomatic antiinflammatory therapy, rapidly improved, and was discharged with a diagnosis of polymyositis. Two years later, he was admitted to the hospital with retroocular headache and recurrent right hemianopsia. A neurologic examination revealed a left Babinski reflex with no motor or sensory dysfunctions. Laboratory tests were unremarkable, including a negative stool examination for ova and parasites. Cerebral MRI showed the presence of several intraparenchymal, subarachnoidal, and intraventricular cysts (4 to 15 mm in diameter) with perilesional focal edema and ringlike enhancement. A specific antibody response to cysticercosis was demonstrated by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and immunoblotting techniques. The patient was treated with albendazole for two cycles of 8 days each. One year later, he was in good health, and cerebral MRI revealed significant reduction in the diameter of the lesions. This case provides an interesting reminder of the minimal but real risks to travelers for acquiring *Taenia solium* infections during foreign travel.

MRI, Magnetic resonance imaging.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice for cysticercosis is either praziquantel or albendazole. Concomitant steroid administration may be necessary to minimize the inflammatory response to dying larvae. Surgical removal of cerebral and ocular cysts may be necessary. Critical to the prevention and control of human infection are the treatment of human cases harboring adult *T. solium* (to reduce egg transmission) and the controlled disposal of human feces. These measures also reduce the likelihood of infection in pigs.

Taenia saginata

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The life cycle of *T. saginata* (the beef tapeworm) is similar to that of *T. solium* (Fig. 76.6), with infection resulting after cysticerci are ingested in insufficiently cooked beef. After excystment, the larvae develop into adults in the small intestine and initiate egg production in maturing proglottids. The adult worm may parasitize the jejunum and small intestine of humans for as long as 25 years, attaining a length of 10 m. In contrast with *T. solium* infections, cysticercosis produced by *T. saginata* does not occur in humans. The adult *T. saginata* worm also differs from *T. solium* in that it lacks a crown of hooklets on the scolex and has a different proglottid uterine branch structure (see Fig. 76.2). The gravid proglottids are longer than they are wide (18 to 20 mm × 5 to 7 mm) and contain 15 to 30 lateral uterine branches. These facts are important in differentiating between the two tapeworms but do not affect therapy.

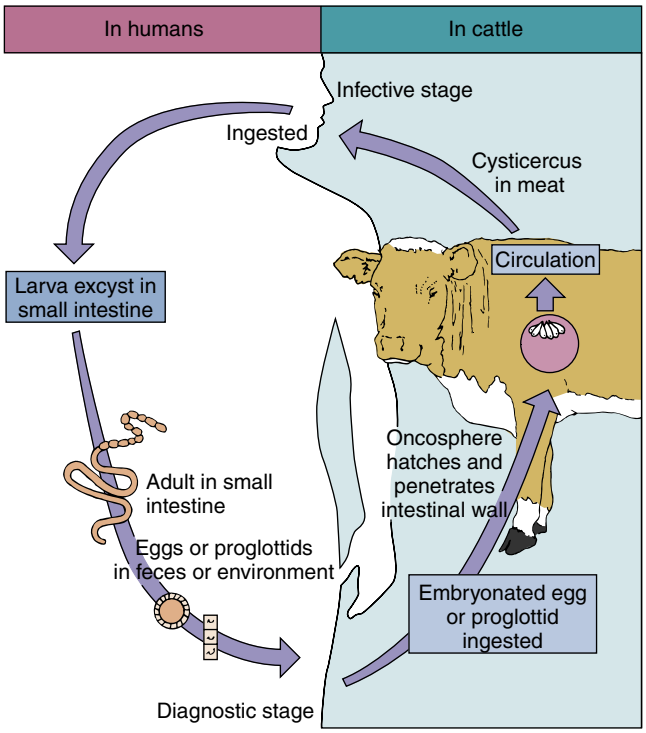


Fig. 76.6 Life cycle of *Taenia saginata* (beef tapeworm).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

T. saginata occurs worldwide and is one of the most frequent causes of cestode infections in the United States. Humans and cattle perpetuate the life cycle: human feces contaminate water and vegetation with eggs, which are then ingested by cattle. The cysticerci in cattle produce adult tapeworms in humans when rare or insufficiently cooked beef is eaten.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

The syndrome that results from *T. saginata* infection is similar to intestinal infection with *T. solium*. Patients are generally asymptomatic or may complain of vague abdominal pains, chronic indigestion, and hunger pains. Proglottids may pass out of the anus directly.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of *T. saginata* infection is similar to that of *T. solium*, with recovery of proglottids and eggs or recovery of an entire worm whose scolex lacks hooklets. Study of the uterine branches in the proglottids differentiates *T. saginata* from *T. solium*. Antigens in stools (coproantigen) have been detected by ELISA since 1990, but this assay is used mainly in research settings because of its limited availability. Species-specific PCR techniques have been described to detect parasite DNA and differentiate *T. saginata* from *T. solium*.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Treatment is identical to that for the intestinal phase of *T. solium*. Both praziquantel and niclosamide are highly effective in eliminating the adult worm. Education

regarding cooking beef and controlling of the disposal of human feces is a critical measure.

Diphyllobothrium latum

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

One of the largest tapeworms (20 to 30 feet long) (see Fig. 76.1), *D. latum* **(fish tapeworm)** has a complex life cycle involving two intermediate hosts: freshwater crustaceans and freshwater fish (Fig. 76.7). The ribbon-like larval worm in the flesh of freshwater fish is called a **sparganum.** Ingestion of this sparganum in raw or insufficiently cooked fish initiates infection. The scolex of *D. latum* is shaped like a lance and has long, lateral grooves **(bothria),** which serve as organs of attachment. The proglottids (Fig. 76.8) of *D. latum* are much wider than they are long (≈8 by 4 mm), have a central uterine structure resembling a rosette, and produce eggs with an operculum (like fluke eggs) and a knob on the shell at the bottom of the egg. The adult worms may produce eggs for months or years. More than 1 million eggs per day are released into the fecal stream. On reaching fresh water, the unembryonated, operculate eggs require a period of 2 to 4 weeks to develop a ciliated, free-swimming larval form called a **coracidium.** The fully developed coracidium leaves the egg via the operculum and is ingested by tiny crustaceans that are called **copepods** (e.g., *Cyclops* and *Diaptomus* species); then the coracidium develops into a **procercoid** larval form. The crustacean harboring the larval stage is then eaten by a fish, and the infectious **plerocercoid,** or sparganum larvae, develop in the musculature of the fish. If the fish is in turn eaten by another fish, the sparganum simply migrates into the muscles of the second fish. Humans are infected when they eat raw or undercooked fish containing the larval forms.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

D. latum infection occurs worldwide and is most prevalent in cool lake regions where raw or pickled fish is popular. Insufficient cooking over campfires and tasting and seasoning "gefilte fish" account for many infections. A reservoir of infected wild animals, such as bears, minks, walruses, and members of the canine and feline families that eat fish, is also a source for human infections. The practice of dumping raw sewage into freshwater lakes contributes to the propagation of this tapeworm.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Clinically, as is the case with most adult tapeworm infections, most *D. latum* infections are asymptomatic (Clinical Case 76.2). Occasionally, people complain of epigastric pain, abdominal cramping, nausea, vomiting, and weight loss. As many as 40% of *D. latum* carriers may have low serum levels of vitamin B_{12}, presumably because of the competition between the host and the worm for dietary vitamin B_{12}. A small percentage (0.1% to 2%) of people infected with *D. latum* develop clinical signs of vitamin B_{12} deficiency, including megaloblastic anemia and neurologic manifestations, such as numbness, paresthesia, and loss of vibration sense.

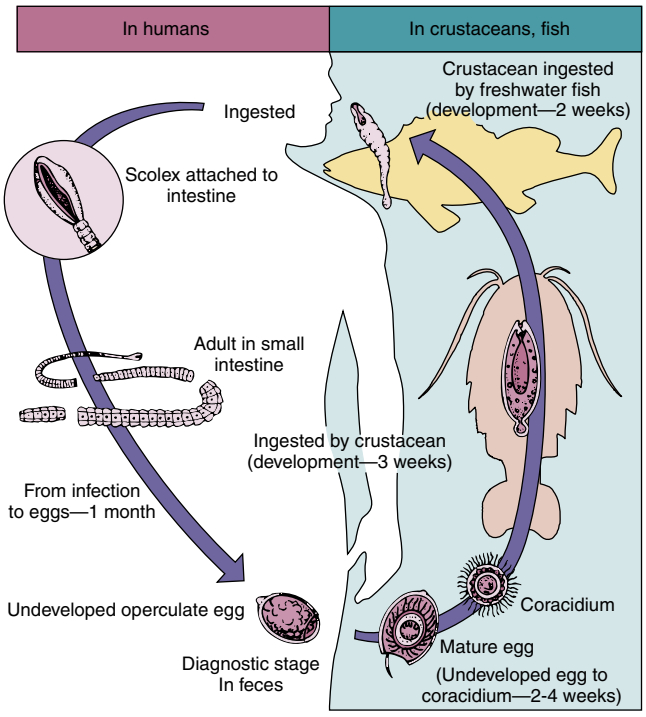


Fig. 76.7 Life cycle of *Diphyllobothrium latum* (fish tapeworm).

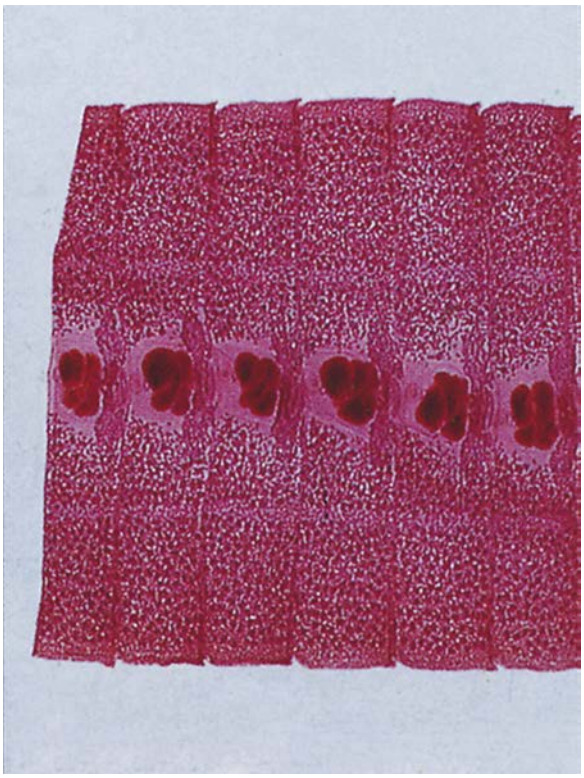


Fig. 76.8 Proglottids of *Diphyllobothrium latum*. In contrast to those of the *Taenia,* the proglottids of *D. latum* are wider than they are long. (From Peters, W., Pasvol, G., 2007. Atlas of Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, sixth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA.)

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Stool examination reveals the bile-stained, operculated egg with its knob at the bottom of the shell (Fig. 76.9). Typical proglottids with the rosette uterine structure may also be

Clinical Case 76.2 **Diphyllobothriasis**

Lee and colleagues (*Korean J Parasitol* 39:319–321, 2001) reported a case of diphyllobothriasis in a young girl. A 7-year-old girl was seen in an outpatient clinic after the discharge of a chain of tapeworm proglottids measuring 42 cm in length. She had no history of eating raw fish, except once when she ate raw salmon flesh along with the rest of her family approximately 7 months earlier. The salmon was caught in a local river. She did not complain of any gastrointestinal discomfort, and all blood chemistry and hematologic studies were normal. The coprologic studies were positive for *Diphyllobothrium latum* eggs. The worm was identified as *D. latum*, based on the biologic characteristics of the proglottids: broad narrow external morphology, coiling of uterus, number of uterine loops, and position of the genital opening. A single dose of praziquantel 400 mg was given, but stool examination remained positive a week later. Another dose of 600 mg was given, and repeat stool examination 1 month later was negative. Among four family members who ate the raw fish, just two, the girl and her mother, were identified as infected. Consumption of raw salmon, especially those produced by aquaculture, is a risk for human diphyllobothriasis.

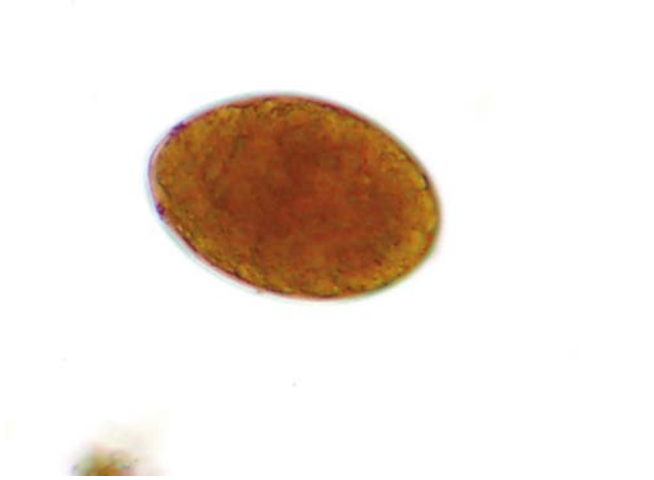


Fig. 76.9 *Diphyllobothrium latum* egg. Unlike other tapeworm eggs, *D. latum* eggs are operculated. They are 45 × 90 μm in size.

found in stool specimens. Concentration techniques are usually not necessary because the worms produce large numbers of ova. Neither serologic nor molecular-based detection is relevant for the diagnosis of infection caused by *D. latum*.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is niclosamide; praziquantel and paromomycin are acceptable alternatives. Vitamin B_{12} supplementation may be necessary in people with evidence of clinical vitamin B_{12} deficiency. The prevalence of this infection is reduced by avoiding the ingestion of insufficiently cooked fish, controlling the disposal of human feces (especially the proper treatment of sewage before disposal in lakes), and promptly treating infections.

Sparganosis

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The larval forms of several tapeworms closely related to *D. latum* (most often *Spirometra* species) can produce human disease in subcutaneous sites and in the eye. In these cases, humans act as the end-stage host for the larval stage, or **sparganum.** Infections are acquired primarily by drinking pond or ditch water that contains crustaceans (copepods) that carry a larval tapeworm. This larval form penetrates the intestinal wall and migrates to various sites in the body, in which it develops into a sparganum. Infections may also occur if tadpoles, frogs, and snakes are ingested raw or if the flesh of these animals is applied to wounds as a poultice. The larval worm leaves the relatively cold flesh of the dead animal and migrates into the warm human flesh.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Cases have been reported from various parts of the world, including the United States, but the infection is most prevalent in Asia. Regardless of location, drinking contaminated water and eating raw tadpole, frog, and snake flesh lead to infection.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

In subcutaneous sites, **sparganosis** can produce painful inflammatory tissue reactions and nodules. In the eye, the tissue reaction is intensely painful, and periorbital edema is common. Corneal ulcers may develop with ocular involvement. Ocular disease is frequently associated with the use of frog or snake flesh as a poultice over a wound near the eye.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Sections of tissue removed surgically show characteristic tapeworm features, including highly convoluted parenchyma and dark-staining calcareous corpuscles.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Surgical removal is the customary approach. The drug praziquantel may be used; however, no clinical data support its efficacy. Education regarding possible contamination of drinking water with crustaceans that harbor larval worms is essential, and contamination most likely occurs in pond and ditch water. Ingestion of raw frog and snake flesh or their use as poultices over wounds should also be avoided.

Echinococcus granulosus

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Infection with *E. granulosus* is another example of accidental human infection, with humans serving as dead-end intermediate hosts in a life cycle that occurs naturally in

other animals. *E. granulosus* adult tapeworms are found in nature in the intestines of canines (dog, fox, wolf, coyote, jackal, dingo); the larval cyst stage is present in the viscera of herbivores (sheep, cattle, swine, deer, moose, elk) (Fig. 76.10). The worm consists of a *Taenia*-like scolex with four sucking disks and a double row of hooklets, as well as a strobila containing three proglottids: one immature, one mature, and one gravid. Adult tapeworms in the canine intestine produce infective eggs that pass in feces. The eggs are identical in appearance to those of the *Taenia* species. When these eggs are ingested by humans, a six-hooked larval stage called an **oncosphere** hatches. The oncosphere penetrates the human intestinal wall and enters the circulation to be carried to various tissue sites, primarily the liver and lungs but also the central nervous system and bone. This same cycle occurs in the viscera of herbivores. When the herbivore is killed by a canine predator or viscera is fed to canines, the ingestion of cysts produces adult tapeworms in the canine intestine to complete the cycle and initiate new egg production. Adult tapeworms do not develop in the intestines of herbivores or humans.

In humans, the larvae form a unilocular **hydatid cyst,** which is a slow-growing, tumor-like, and space-occupying structure enclosed by a laminated germinative membrane. This membrane produces structures on its wall called **brood capsules,** where tapeworm heads **(protoscolices)** develop. Daughter cysts may develop in the original mother cyst and also produce brood capsules and protoscolices. The cysts and daughter cysts accumulate fluid as they grow. This fluid is potentially toxic; if spilled into body cavities, anaphylactic shock and death can result. Spillage and the escape of protoscolices can lead to the development of cysts in other sites because the protoscolices have

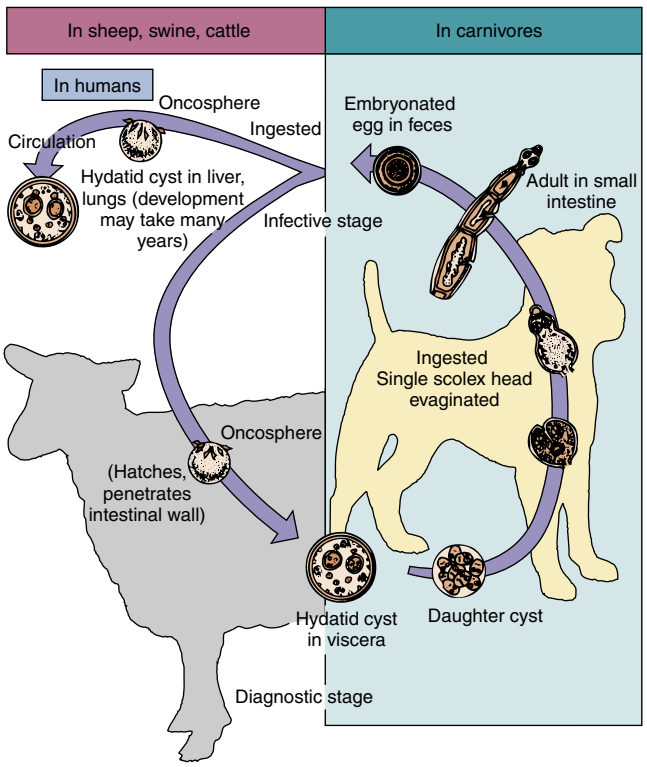


Fig. 76.10 Life cycle of *Echinococcus granulosus.*

the germinative potential to form new cysts. Eventually, the brood capsules and daughter cysts disintegrate within the mother cyst, liberating the accumulated protoscolices. These become known as **hydatid sand.** This type of echinococcus cyst is called a **unilocular cyst** to differentiate it from related cysts that grow differently. The unilocular cyst is generally about 5 cm in diameter, but some are as large as 20 cm, containing almost 2 liters of cyst fluid, have been reported. The cyst may die and become calcified over long periods.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Human infection with *E. granulosus* unilocular cyst is directly correlated with raising sheep in many countries in Europe, South America, Africa, Asia, Australia, and New Zealand. It occurs in Canada and in the United States, with cases reported in Alaska, Utah, New Mexico, Arizona, California, and the lower Mississippi Valley. Human infection follows ingestion of contaminated water or vegetation, as well as hand-to-mouth transmission of canine feces carrying the infective eggs.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Because the unilocular cyst grows slowly, 5 to 20 years may pass before any symptoms appear (Clinical Case 76.3). In many instances, it appears that the cyst is as old as its host. The pressure of the expanding cyst in an organ is usually the first sign of infection. In the majority of cases, the cysts are located in the liver or lung. In the liver, the cyst may exert pressure on both bile ducts and blood vessels and create pain and biliary rupture. In the lungs, cysts may produce cough, dyspnea, and chest pains. Rupture of the cysts may occur in 20% of cases, producing fever, urticaria, and occasionally anaphylactic shock and death, which are caused by the release of antigenic cyst contents. Cyst rupture may also lead to dissemination of infection resulting from the release of thousands of protoscolices. In bone, the cyst is responsible for erosion of the marrow cavity and the bone itself. In the brain, severe damage may occur as a result of the cyst's tumor-like growth into brain tissue.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis of **hydatid disease** is difficult and depends primarily on clinical, radiographic, and serologic findings. Radiologic examination, scanning procedures, CT, and ultrasound techniques are all valuable and may provide the first evidence of the cyst's presence. Aspiration of cyst contents may demonstrate the presence of the protoscolices (hydatid sand); however, it is contraindicated because of the risk of anaphylaxis and dissemination of the infection. Serologic testing may be useful, but results are negative in 10% to 40% of infections. It is more sensitive for hepatic cases than for pulmonary cases.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Surgical resection of the cyst is the treatment of choice. In some instances, the cyst is first aspirated to remove the fluid and hydatid sand, and then it is instilled with

formalin to kill and detoxify remaining fluid; finally, it is rolled into a marsupial pouch and sewn shut. If the condition is inoperable because of the cyst's location, medical therapy with high-dose albendazole, mebendazole, or praziquantel may be considered. The most important factor in preventing and controlling **echinococcosis** is education regarding the transmission of infection and the role of canines in the life cycle. Proper personal hygiene and the washing of hands and cooking utensils in environments inhabited by dogs are critical. Dogs should not be allowed in the vicinity of animal slaughter and should never be fed the viscera of slain animals. In some areas, the killing of stray dogs has reduced the incidence of infection.

Clinical Case 76.3 **Echinococcosis**

Yeh and colleagues (*N Engl J Med* 357:489–494, 2007) described a 36-year-old pregnant woman at 21 weeks of gestation who presented with a 4-week history of a dry, nonproductive cough. The patient denied any constitutional symptoms and had no new pets, environmental exposures, or sick contacts. It was her first pregnancy, and there were no complications. She had no medical conditions and did not smoke or drink alcohol. She was a financial consultant and enjoyed running and hiking. She had traveled to Australia, Central Asia, and sub-Saharan Africa in the past. The patient appeared well, with appropriate weight gain for the second trimester of her pregnancy. Her physical examination, including auscultation of her lungs, was normal. Her cough did not improve with use of an inhaled bronchodilator. Imaging studies were not performed because of her pregnancy. She had a normal, uncomplicated vaginal delivery 4 months later. She continued to have a dry cough and presented to her physician months after delivery for a reevaluation of her cough. At that time, her physical examination and laboratory studies were unremarkable. A chest radiograph revealed a soft-tissue mass, 7 cm in diameter, adjacent to the right heart border. High-resolution CT scans of the chest confirmed the presence of a homogeneous and fluid-filled structure without septa, which was thought to be in the mediastinum. Subsequent echocardiography also confirmed a simple cystic structure with thin walls surrounding echo-free fluid that was indenting the right atrium. On the basis of the radiographic and echocardiography findings, the clinicians caring for the patient thought that the mass was most likely a benign pericardial cyst. Because she was not experiencing dyspnea, the patient declined surgical resection. However, because of worsening cough over the next few months, she consulted a thoracic surgeon for elective resection. Intraoperative findings revealed an intraparenchymal pulmonary cyst in the right lung that was not attached to the pericardium or bronchus. The cyst was removed intact without gross spillage of the contents. Staining of the cyst wall with hematoxylin and eosin after cross-sectioning showed an acellular laminated layer. Microscopic examination of the cyst contents showed protoscolices with hooklets and suckers in a background of histiocytes and eosinophilic debris, consistent with *Echinococcus granulosus*. CT of the abdomen after removal of the thoracic cyst revealed no hepatobiliary disease. Postoperative screening for serum antibody against *Echinococcus* was positive. Praziquantel was administered for 10 days after surgery and albendazole for 1 month after surgery with no complications. After this course of therapy, the patient had resolution of her cough and returned to her normal level of activity. There was no evidence of recurrent disease on CT follow-up 6 months after surgery.

CT, Computed tomography.

Echinococcus multilocularis

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

Similar to infection with *E. granulosus*, human infection with *E. multilocularis* is accidental (Fig. 76.11). Adult *E. multilocularis* tapeworms are primarily found in foxes and wolves, although farm dogs and cats harbor them in some rural environments. The intermediate hosts that harbor the cyst stage are rodents (mice, voles, shrews, and lemmings). Humans become infected with the cyst stage as a result of contact with fox, dog, or cat feces contaminated with eggs. Trappers and workers who handle fur pelts may become infected by inhaling fecal dust that carries eggs.

Infective eggs hatch in and penetrate the intestinal tract to become oncospheres. These forms enter the circulation and take up residence primarily in the liver and lungs but also possibly in the brain.

The **alveolar hydatid cyst** develops as an alveolar or honeycombed structure that is not covered by a unilocular-limiting mother cyst–laminated membrane. The cyst grows via exogenous budding, eventually resembling a carcinoma.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

E. multilocularis is found primarily in northern areas, such as Canada, the former Soviet Union, northern Japan, Central Europe, and Alaska, Montana, North and South

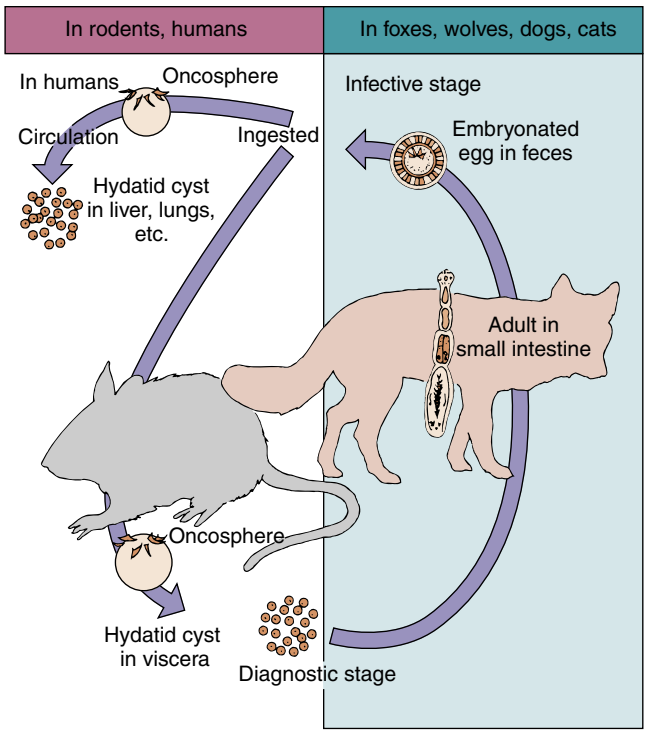


Fig. 76.11 Life cycle of *Echinococcus multilocularis*.

Dakota, Minnesota, and Iowa in the United States. There is evidence that the life cycle may be extending to other midwestern states, where foxes and mice transmit the organism to dogs and cats and eventually to humans.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

E. multilocularis, because of its slow growth, may be present in human tissues for many years before symptoms appear. In the liver, cysts eventually mimic a carcinoma, with liver enlargement and obstruction of biliary and portal pathways. Often the growth metastasizes to the lungs and brain. Malnutrition, ascites, and portal hypertension produced by *E. multilocularis* create the appearance of hepatic cirrhosis. Among all the worm infections of humans, *E. multilocularis* is one of the most lethal. If the infection is left untreated, the mortality rate is approximately 70%.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Unlike *E. granulosus*, the tissue form of *E. multilocularis* presents no protoscolices, and the material so resembles a neoplasm that even pathologists mistake it for carcinoma. Radiologic procedures and scanning techniques are helpful, and serologic methods are available.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

Surgical removal of the cyst is indicated, especially if an entire hepatic area can be resected. The same surgical approach applies to lesions in the lung, in which a lobe can be resected. Mebendazole and albendazole, as used for the treatment of *E. granulosus*, have produced clinical cures. As with *E. granulosus*, education, proper personal hygiene, and deworming of farm dogs and cats are critical. It is extremely important to treat animals that have contact with children.

Hymenolepis nana

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

H. nana, the **dwarf tapeworm,** is only 2 to 4 cm in length, unlike *Taenia* organisms, which measure several meters. The life cycle also is simple and does not require an intermediate host (Fig. 76.12), although mice and beetles may be infected and enter the cycle.

Infection begins when the embryonated eggs are ingested and develop in the intestinal villi into a larval cysticercoid stage. This cysticercoid larva attaches its four muscular suckers and crown of hooklets to the small intestine, and on maturation, the adult worm produces a strobila of egg-laden proglottids. Eggs passing in the feces are then immediately and directly infective, initiating another cycle. Infection also may be acquired by ingesting infected insect intermediate hosts.

H. nana also can cause autoinfection, with a subsequent increased worm burden. Eggs are able to hatch in the intestine, develop into a cysticercoid larva, and then grow into adult worms without leaving the host. This can lead to hyperinfection with very heavy worm burdens and severe clinical symptoms.

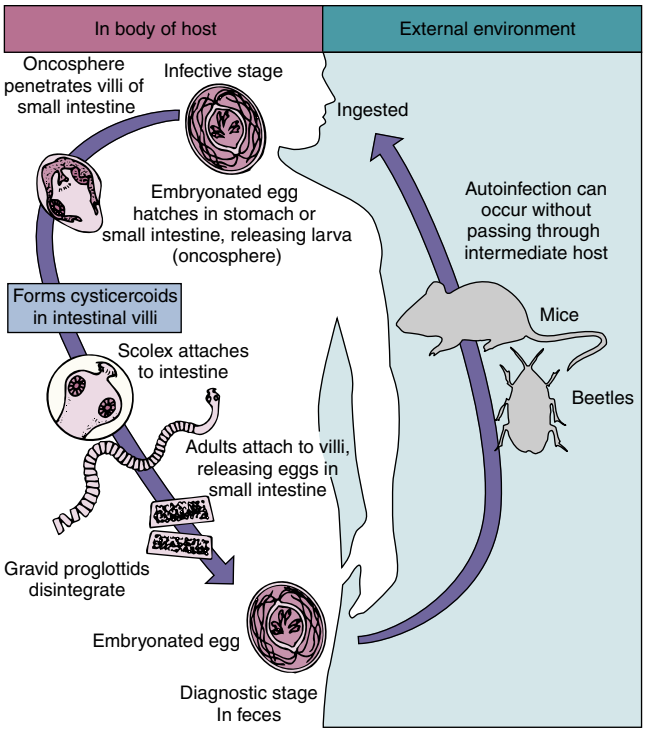


Fig. 76.12 Life cycle of *Hymenolepis nana* (dwarf tapeworm).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

H. nana occurs worldwide in humans and is a common parasite of mice. The most common tapeworm infection in North America, it occasionally develops its cysticercoid stage in beetles; humans and mice may ingest these beetles in contaminated grain and flour. Children are especially at risk of infection, and because of the simple life cycle of the parasite, families with children in day-care centers experience problems in controlling the transmission of this organism.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

With only a few worms in the intestine, there are no symptoms. In heavy infections, especially if autoinfection and hyperinfection occur, patients experience diarrhea, abdominal pain, headache, anorexia, and other vague complaints.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Stool examination reveals the characteristic *H. nana* egg with its six-hooked embryo and polar filaments (Fig. 76.13). Neither culture, serology, antigen detection, nor nucleic acid detection techniques are relevant for the detection and identification of *H. nana*.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is praziquantel; an alternative is niclosamide. Treatment of cases, improved sanitation, and proper personal hygiene, especially in the family and institutional environments, are essential for controlling the transmission of *H. nana*.

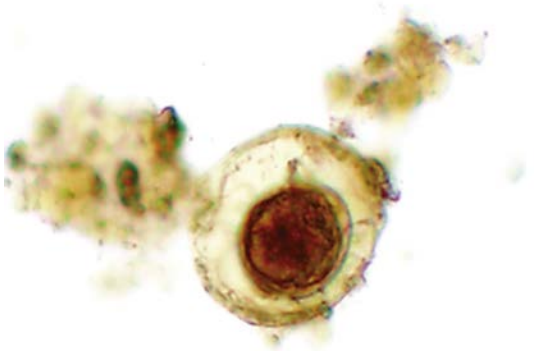


Fig. 76.13 *Hymenolepis nana* egg. The eggs are 30 to 45 μm in diameter and have a thin shell containing a six-hooked embryo.

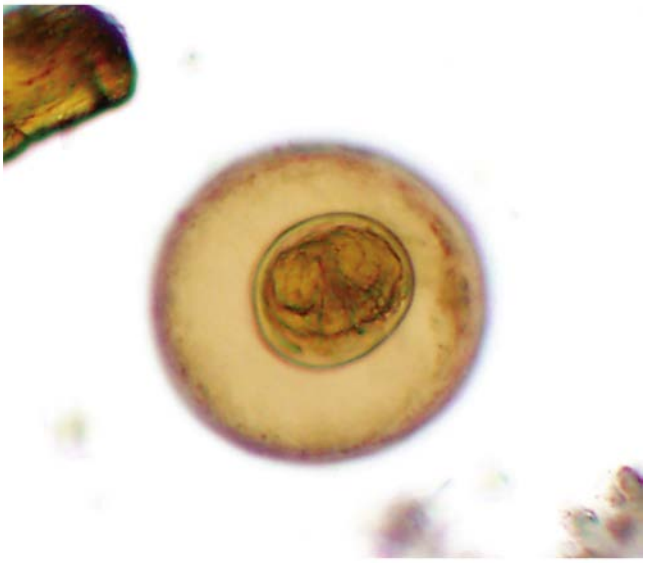


Fig. 76.14 *Hymenolepis diminuta* egg. The eggs are large (70 to 85 μm × 60 to 80 μm) and have a six-hooked embryo surrounded by a membrane that is widely separated from the outer shell.

Hymenolepis diminuta

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

H. diminuta, closely related to *H. nana*, is primarily a tapeworm of rats and mice, but it is also found in humans. It differs from *H. nana* in length, measuring 20 to 60 cm. The scolex lacks hooklets, and the egg is larger and bile stained and has no polar filaments (Fig. 76.14). The life cycle of *H. diminuta* is more complex than that of *H. nana*, and it requires larval insects ("mealworms") to reach the infective cysticercoid stage.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Infections have been found all over the world, including in the United States. Larval beetles and other larval insects become infected when they feed on rat feces that carry *H. diminuta* eggs. Humans are infected by ingesting the larval insects (mealworms) in contaminated grain products (e.g., flour, cereals).

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Mild infections produce no symptoms, but heavier worm burdens produce nausea, abdominal discomfort, anorexia, and diarrhea.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Stool examination demonstrates the characteristic bile-stained egg that lacks polar filaments.

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is niclosamide, with praziquantel an alternative. Rodent control in areas in which grain products are produced or stored is essential. Thorough inspection of uncooked grain products to detect mealworms is also important.

Dipylidium caninum

PHYSIOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

D. caninum, a small tapeworm averaging about 15 cm in length, is primarily a parasite of dogs and cats, but it can infect humans, especially children whose mouths are licked by infected pets. The life cycle involves the development of larval worms in dog and cat fleas. These fleas, when crushed by the teeth of the infected pet, are carried on the tongue to the child's mouth when the child kisses the pet or the pet licks the child. Swallowing the infected flea leads to intestinal infection.

Because of the size and shape of the mature and terminal proglottids, *D. caninum* is often called the **pumpkin seed tapeworm.** The eggs are distinctive because they occur in packets covered with a tough, clear membrane. There may be as many as 25 eggs in a packet, and a single egg free of the packet is seldom seen.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

D. caninum occurs worldwide, especially in children. Its distribution and transmission are directly correlated with dogs and cats infected with fleas.

CLINICAL SYNDROMES

Light infections are asymptomatic; heavier worm burdens produce abdominal discomfort, anal pruritus, and diarrhea. Anal pruritus results from the active migration of the motile proglottid.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Stool examination reveals the colorless egg packets (Fig. 76.15), and proglottids may be in feces brought to physicians by patients.

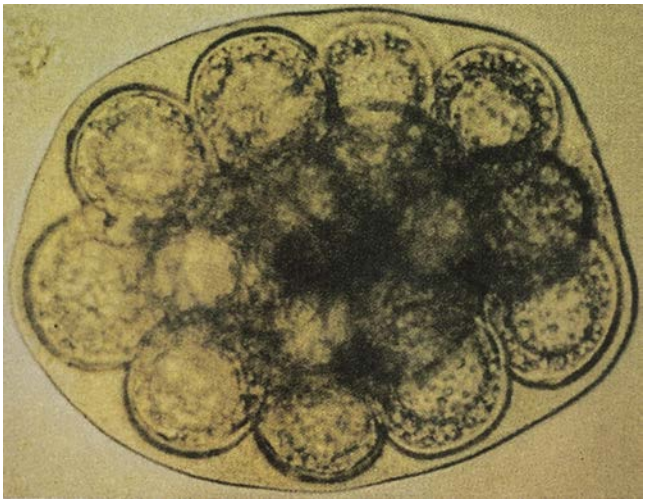


Fig. 76.15 *Dipylidium caninum* eggs. Free eggs are rarely seen. Instead, egg packets that contain 8 to 15 six-hooked oncospheres enclosed in a thin membrane are most commonly found in fecal specimens. (From Murray, P.R., et al., 1999. Manual of Clinical Microbiology, seventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.)

TREATMENT, PREVENTION, AND CONTROL

The drug of choice is niclosamide; praziquantel and paromomycin are alternatives. Dogs and cats should be dewormed and not be allowed to lick the mouths of children. Pets should be treated to eradicate the fleas.

For a case study and questions see StudentConsult.com.

Bibliography

Budke, C.M., Deplazes, P., Torgenson, P.R., 2006. Global socioeconomic impact of cystic echinococcosis. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 12, 296–303.

Cabello, F.C., 2007. Salmon aquaculture and transmission of the fish tapeworm. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 13, 169–171.

Eckert, J., Deplazes, P., 2004. Biological, epidemiological, and clinical aspects of echinococcosis, a zoonosis of increasing concern. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 17, 107–135.

Garcia, H.H., Jimenez, J.A., Escalante, H., 2015. Cestodes. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, eleventh ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Garcia, H.H., et al., 2002. Current consensus guidelines for treatment of neurocysticercosis. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 15, 747–756.

Garcia, L.S., 2006. Diagnostic Medical Parasitology, fifth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

John, D.T., Petri Jr., W.A., 2006. Markell and Voge's Medical Parasitology, ninth ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia.

Scholz, T., et al., 2009. Update on the human broad tapeworm (genus *Diphyllobothrium*), including clinical relevance. Clin. Microbiol. Rev. 22, 146–160.

Sorvillo, F.J., DeGiorgio, C., Waterman, S.H., 2007. Deaths from cysticercosis, United States. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 13, 230–235.

Case Study and Questions

A woman from Minnesota complains of abdominal pain and weight loss. Laboratory studies indicate that she has megaloblastic anemia. She is known in her community for her homemade gefilte fish and usually tastes the seasoned minced fish before cooking it.

1. Which of the following parasites is the most likely cause of her illness?
   a. *Echinococcus granulosus*
   b. *Diphyllobothrium latum*
   c. *Dipylidium caninum*
   d. *Taenia saginata*

2. How would you make the diagnosis?

3. How would you treat this patient?

77 Arthropods

A 4-year-old child with a complaint of itchy hands was brought in by her mother. The child stayed at a day-care center during the day while her mother worked. The girl had intense itching and a rash on her hands and arms for about 2 weeks. The itching became more severe and interfered with the child's sleep. On physical examination, the child appeared well nourished and cared for. The skin on her hands, wrists, and forearms appeared red and excoriated. Raised, serpiginous "tracks" were noted on the sides of her fingers, on the ventral aspects of her wrists, and in the popliteal folds. Several of the tracks were inflamed and were beginning to form pustules. The mother stated that several other children at the day-care center were experiencing a similar problem.

1. What was the likely diagnosis?
2. How would this diagnosis have been confirmed?
3. How would this child have been treated, and what advice would have been given to the mother regarding prevention?
4. Did this child require antibiotic therapy? If so, why?
5. What should have been done regarding the other children at the day-care center?

Answers to these questions are available on www.StudentConsult.com.

Summaries Clinically Significant Organisms

MYRIAPODA

Trigger Words

- Centipedes, maxillipeds, *Scolopendra,* Epsom salts, rubbish

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Myriapoda (formerly Chilopoda) consist of terrestrial forms such as centipedes
- Centipedes are elongated, multisegmented (15 to >181 segments), many-legged, tracheate arthropods
- Medically significant because of venomous claws that may produce a painful bite with localized swelling
- Bite of most centipedes is harmless to humans

Epidemiology

- Most centipedes are predaceous insectivores
- Found in dark, damp environments
- Human contact almost always caused by accidental exposure during outdoor activities

Diagnosis

- Gross observation of typical organism

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Treatment of centipede bite includes local measures (e.g., compress, Epsom salts)
- Control consists of removing rubbish near dwellings

CRUSTACEA

Trigger Words

- Crab, copepod, decapod, crayfish, intermediate host, intestinal helminth

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Crustaceans include familiar aquatic forms: decapods (crabs, crayfish, shrimp); copepods (water fleas)
- Several involved as intermediate hosts in life cycles of various intestinal or blood and tissue helminths

Epidemiology

- Worldwide distribution
- Helminthic diseases acquired by consuming contaminated water, ingesting uncooked flesh of intermediate host

Diagnosis

- Identification of specific helminthic parasite

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Depends on infecting parasite

CHELICERATA (ARACHNIDA)

Trigger Words

- Spider, scorpion, mite, tick, venom, vector

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Chelicerata (formerly Arachnida) include familiar terrestrial forms such as mites, ticks, spiders, scorpions
- Chelicerata have no wings or antennae; adults have four pairs of legs
- Mites and ticks serve as vectors for microbial diseases; scorpions and some spiders medically significant for venomous bites

Epidemiology

- Spiders: wood and brush piles, basements
- Scorpions: southwestern United States, Mexico, Venezuela
- Mites: worldwide
- Ticks: worldwide in wooded and rural areas

Diagnosis

- Gross morphology
- Clinical and laboratory diagnosis of specific infection
- Recognition of envenomation event

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Symptomatic for bites
- Specific treatment for infectious disease
- Protective clothing, insect repellent, remove brush and clutter from dwellings (inside and out)

HEXAPODA (INSECTS)

Trigger Words

Insect, mosquito, fly, flea, wasp, local reaction, vector

Biology, Virulence, and Disease

- Largest and most important of all classes of arthropods
- Accounts for ≈70% of all known species of animals; includes mosquitoes, flies, fleas, lice, roaches, bees, wasps, beetles, moths
- Body consists of head, thorax, and abdomen; one pair of antennae, three pairs of appendages, one or two pairs of wings or no wings
- Medical significance varies, related to mouthparts and feeding habits, vectors, and mechanical injury

Epidemiology

- Worldwide and extremely variable

Diagnosis

- Gross morphology
- Clinical and laboratory diagnosis of specific infection

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

- Protective clothing, insect repellent
- Insecticides, removal of habitat
- Supportive care for local reaction to bite
- Prompt removal of ticks
- Specific therapy for infection

The arthropods are the largest of the animal phyla, with more than 1 million species. The phylum Arthropoda comprises invertebrate animals with a segmented body, several pairs of jointed appendages, bilateral symmetry, and a rigid, chitinous exoskeleton that is molted periodically as the animal grows. Characteristically, arthropods develop from egg to adult by a process known as **metamorphosis.** As they mature, the organisms pass through several distinct morphologic stages, including egg, larva or nymph, pupa (certain insects), and adult. Four subphyla of arthropods are of medical importance on the basis of the number or the severity of the illnesses they cause: the Myriapoda, Crustacea, Chelicerata (Arachnida), and Hexapoda (Insecta) (Table 77.1).

The arthropods or their larvae may affect human health in many ways. Most arthropods function indirectly in human disease; they transmit but do not produce disease. Arthropods may transmit disease mechanically, as when flies carry enteric bacterial pathogens from feces to human food. Of outstanding importance is the ability of many arthropods to act as biologic **vectors and intermediate hosts** in the transmission and developmental cycle of viruses, bacteria, protozoa, and metazoa (Table 77.2). Certain arthropods may inflict direct injury by their bites or stings. Other species, such as lice, scabies mites, and tissue-invading maggots, may act as true parasites. Still other species may function as both parasites and vectors of disease.

It is not the purpose of this chapter to consider medical entomology in detail. Rather, our purpose is to provide a brief overview of several of the more important aspects of arthropods and their relationship to human disease. More detailed information on arthropods of medical importance and the therapy and control of arthropod infestations may be found in the references listed in the Bibliography.

TABLE 77.1 Medically Important Classes of Arthropods

Phylum	Subphylum	Organisms
Arthropoda	Myriapoda	Centipedes (Chilopoda), millipedes (Diplopoda)
	Crustacea	Copepods, decapods (crabs, crayfish), Pentastomes (tongue worms)
	Chelicerata (Arachnida)	Spiders, scorpions, mites, ticks
	Hexapoda (Insecta)	Flies, mosquitoes, lice, fleas, bugs, stinging insects

Myriapoda

CENTIPEDES (CHILOPODA)

Physiology and Structure

The centipedes are elongated, multisegmented (15 to more than 181 segments), many-legged, tracheate arthropods. They possess a distinct head and trunk. The body is dorsoventrally flattened, and each trunk segment bears a single pair of legs. **Maxillipeds**, or poison claws, are situated on the first segment and are used for capturing prey. The millipedes are sometimes classified with the centipedes; however, millipedes (Diplopoda) lack the poison claws of centipedes and have two pairs of legs per segment.

Epidemiology

Most centipedes are predaceous insectivores and are commonly found in dark, damp environments, such as the areas beneath logs, among trash, and inside old buildings. Human bites are almost invariably the result of accidental exposure to the organism during outdoor activities.

Clinical Syndromes

Centipede bites may be extremely painful and cause swelling at the site of the bite. Reports of the effects of centipede bites on humans are conflicting. One species, *Scolopendra gigantea,* which is found in Central and South America and the Galapagos Islands, has reportedly caused several deaths. With the exception of *Scolopendra* and related tropical genera, the bite of most centipedes is harmless to humans.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Treatment of a centipede bite includes local measures, such as the application of compresses of sodium bicarbonate or solutions of Epsom salts. Control consists of removing trash near dwellings.

Crustacea

The crustaceans are primarily gill-breathing arthropods of fresh and salt water. Those of medical importance are found in fresh water and serve as intermediate hosts of various worms or as endoparasites (Pentastomids or tongue worms) of reptiles, birds, and mammals, including humans (see Table 77.2).

The copepods, or water fleas, are represented by the genera *Cyclops* and *Diaptomus.* The larger crustaceans, called **decapods,** include crabs and crayfish. These crustaceans also serve as the second intermediate hosts of the lung fluke *Paragonimus westermani* (see Table 77.2).

COPEPODS

Physiology and Structure

Copepods are small, simple aquatic organisms. They lack a carapace, have one pair of maxillae, and have five pairs of biramous swimming legs. Free and parasitic forms exist. The genera *Diaptomus* and *Cyclops* are medically important.

Copepods are an intermediate host in the life cycle of several human parasites, including *Dracunculus medinensis* (dracunculiasis), *Diphyllobothrium latum* (diphyllobothriasis), *Gnathostoma spinigerum* (gnathostomiasis), and *Spirometra* species (sparganosis). Copepods have been associated with a single case of a perirectal abscess but generally are not considered a primary cause of human infection.

Epidemiology

Copepods have a worldwide distribution and serve as intermediate hosts for helminthic diseases in the United States and Canada, as well as in Europe and the tropics. Human infection with these helminthic parasites results from ingesting water contaminated with copepods or from eating the

TABLE 77.2 Select Human Illnesses Transmitted by Arthropods

Primary Vector or Intermediate Host	Disease	Etiologic Agent
CHELICERATA		
Mite: *Leptotrombidium* species	Scrub typhus (tsutsugamushi disease)	*Orientia tsutsugamushi*
Mite: *Liponyssoides sanguineus*	Rickettsial pox	*Rickettsia akari*
Tick: *Dermacentor* species	Tularemia	*Francisella tularensis*
Tick: *Dermacentor* species and other ixodid ticks	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	*R. rickettsii*
Tick: *Dermacentor, Boophilus* species	Q fever	*Coxiella burnetii*
Tick: *Dermacentor* species	Colorado tick fever	Coltivirus
Tick: *Ornithodoros* species	Relapsing fever	*Borrelia* species
Tick: *Ixodes* species	Babesiosis	*Babesia microti*
Tick: *Ixodes* species	Lyme disease	*Borrelia burgdorferi*
Tick: *D. variabilis, Amblyomma americanum*	Ehrlichiosis	*Ehrlichia chaffeensis*
CRUSTACEA		
Copepod: *Cyclops* species	Diphyllobothriasis	*Diphyllobothrium latum*
Copepod: *Cyclops* species	Dracunculiasis	*Dracunculus medinensis*
Decapod: Crabs, crayfish: various freshwater species	Paragonimiasis	*Paragonimus westermani*
HEXAPODA (INSECTA)		
Lice: *Pediculus humanus*	Epidemic typhus	*R. prowazekii*
Lice: *P. humanus*	Trench fever	*Bartonella quintana*
Lice: *P. humanus*	Louse-borne relapsing fever	*Borrelia recurrentis*
Flea: *Xenopsylla cheopis,* various other rodent fleas	Plague	*Yersinia pestis*
Flea: *X. cheopis*	Murine typhus	*R. typhi*
Flea: various species	Dog tapeworm	*Dipylidium caninum*
Bug: *Triatoma, Panstrongylus* species	Chagas disease	*Trypanosoma cruzi*
Beetles: flour beetle	Dwarf tapeworm	*Hymenolepis nana*
Fly, gnat: *Glossina* species (tsetse flies)	African trypanosomiasis	*T. b. rhodesiense* and *T. b. gambiense*
Fly, gnat: *Simulium* species	Onchocerciasis	*Onchocerca volvulus*
Fly, gnat: *Chrysops* species	Tularemia	*Francisella tularensis*
Fly, gnat: *Phlebotomus* species, *Lutzomyia* species (sandfly)	Leishmaniasis	*Leishmania* species
Fly, gnat: *Lutzomyia* species (sandfly)	Bartonellosis	*B. bacilliformis*
Mosquito: *Anopheles* species	Malaria	*Plasmodium* species
Mosquito: *Aedes aegypti*	Yellow fever	Flavivirus
Mosquito: *Aedes* species	Dengue fever	Flavivirus
Mosquito: *Culiseta melanura, Coquillettidia perturbans, A. vexans*	Eastern equine encephalitis	Alphavirus
Mosquito: *A. triseriatus*	La Crosse encephalitis	Bunyavirus
Mosquito: *Culex* species	St. Louis encephalitis	Flavivirus
Mosquito: *Culex* species	Venezuelan equine encephalitis	Alphavirus
Mosquito: *C. tarsalis*	Western equine encephalitis	Alphavirus
Mosquito: various species	Bancroftian filariasis	*Wuchereria bancrofti*
Mosquito: various species	Malayan filariasis	*Brugia* species
Mosquito: various species	Dirofilariasis	*Dirofilaria immitis*

raw or insufficiently cooked flesh of infected fish. Pseudooutbreaks of copepods present in human stool specimens submitted for ova and parasite examination have been reported from New York. As many as 40% of concentrated stools submitted for ova and parasite examination were found to contain copepods, presumably caused by contamination of a hospital water supply. The single reported case of apparent human infection with copepods occurred in this hospital.

Clinical Syndromes

The clinical signs and symptoms associated with helminthic infections in which copepods serve as intermediate hosts are described in Chapters 74 and 76. The single case of apparent human infection with copepods occurred in a 22-year-old man with Crohn disease who had a perirectal abscess. Drainage of the abscess revealed purulent material that, on microscopic examination, contained numerous copepods surrounded by leukocytes. It was hypothesized that the copepods were introduced into preexisting perirectal lesions during sitz baths that were prepared with unfiltered tap water and may have contained copepods. Although the copepods contained within the abscess material were viable and may have been successfully feeding on body tissue, it was believed that the copepods were unlikely to have been the primary cause of the abscess.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The laboratory diagnosis of helminthic infections in which copepods serve as intermediate hosts are described in Chapters 74 and 76. In general, infection is demonstrated by detection of the infecting organism by microscopic examination of clinical material.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Specific treatment of copepod-associated helminthic infection is covered in Chapters 74 and 76. Prevention of these infections requires attention to standard public health measures, such as the chlorination and filtration of water and thorough cooking of all fish. Infected people must not be allowed to bathe in water used for drinking, and suspect water should be avoided.

DECAPODS

The decapods include the prawns, shrimps, lobsters, crayfish, and crabs. The cephalothorax of these animals is always covered by a carapace. They have three anterior pairs of thoracic appendages that are modified into biramous maxillipeds and five posterior pairs that are developed into uniramous legs. Crabs and crayfish are medically important as the second intermediate hosts of the lung fluke *P. westermani.* The parasitic, epidemiologic, and clinical aspects of infection with *P. westermani* are described in Chapter 75. Thorough cooking of crabs and crayfish is the most effective means of preventing infection with *P. westermani.*

Pentastomida

TONGUE WORMS

The pentastomids, or **tongue worms,** are bloodsucking endoparasites of reptiles, birds, and mammals. Their taxonomic status is uncertain. Some scientists include pentastomids among the arthropods because their larvae superficially resemble those of mites. Others consider them annelids, and still others place them in an entirely separate phylum. For purposes of this discussion, they are considered with the arthropods. Based on molecular studies the Pentastomida are now considered by some experts to be a subclass within the Crustacea.

Physiology and Structure

Tongue worms are degenerate, wormlike arthropods that live primarily in the nasal and respiratory passages of reptiles, birds, and mammals. Adult pentastomids are white, cylindric, or flattened parasites that possess two distinct body regions: an anterior head, or cephalothorax, and an abdomen. The adults are elongated and may attain a length of 1 to 10 cm. The head has a mouth and two pairs of hooks. Although the abdomen may appear annulated, it is not segmented (Fig. 77.1). The pentastomids possess digestive and reproductive organs; however, they lack circulatory and respiratory systems.

The adult pentastomids are found in the lungs of reptiles (*Armillifer armillatus* and *Porocephalus crotali*) and the nasal passages of mammals *(Lingulata serrata).* Many vertebrates, including humans, may serve as intermediate hosts. The embryonated eggs are discharged in the feces or respiratory secretions of the infected definitive host and contaminate vegetation or water, which is in turn ingested by one of several possible intermediate hosts (fish, rodents, goats, sheep, or humans). The eggs hatch in the intestine, and the primary larvae penetrate the intestinal wall and attach to the peritoneum. The larvae mature in the peritoneum and develop into infective larvae, encyst in viscera, or die and become calcified. In tissue sections, encysted larvae can be identified by acidophilic glands, a chitinous cuticle, and prominent hooks, which are present in the anterior end of the organism. Subcuticular glands and striated muscle fibers may also be observed beneath the cuticle.

Humans also may become infected by ingesting the inadequately cooked flesh of infected intermediate hosts (e.g., goats, sheep) containing infective larvae. In the latter instance, the infective larvae migrate from the stomach to the nasopharyngeal tissues, where they develop into adult pentastomids and produce the symptoms of **halzoun syndrome** (see the following section Clinical Syndromes). In this case, the human host is considered a temporary definitive host.

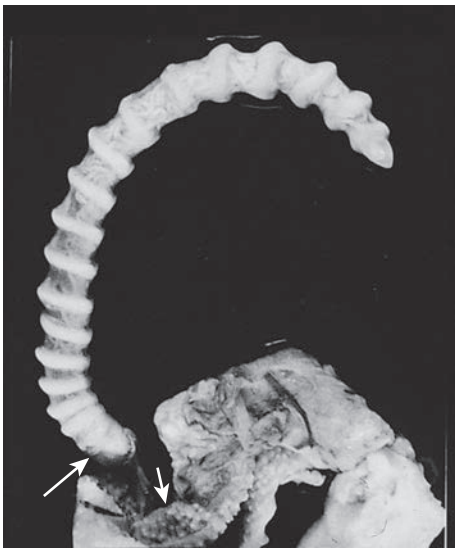


Fig. 77.1 Adult female pentastome *(Armillifer armillatus)* attached to the respiratory surface of the lung *(short arrow)* of a rock python. Note the short cephalothorax *(long arrow)* and a long, annulated abdomen. (From Binford, C.H., Connor, D.H., 1976. Pathology of Tropical and Extraordinary Diseases, vol 2. Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, Washington, DC.)

Epidemiology

Most tongue worm infections are reported in Europe, Africa, and South and Central America. The infection is common in Malaysia, in which autopsy studies reveal **pentastomiasis** in up to 45% of people. As previously described, the infection is acquired by ingesting raw vegetables or water contaminated with pentastome eggs or by consuming the raw or undercooked flesh of infected animals.

Clinical Syndromes

In most cases, infection is asymptomatic and is discovered accidentally during roentgenographic examination (calcified larvae), at surgery, or at autopsy. Pneumonitis, pneumothorax, peritonitis, meningitis, nephritis, and obstructive jaundice have all been ascribed to pentastomid infections; however, definitive proof of a causal relationship between disease and the presence of the parasite is frequently lacking. Localized infection of the eye has been reported, presumably secondary to direct inoculation.

Halzoun syndrome, caused by the attachment of adult pentastomes to the nasopharyngeal tissues, is characterized by pharyngeal discomfort, paroxysmal coughing, sneezing, dysphagia, and vomiting. Asphyxiation has been rarely reported.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The diagnosis is made by identifying a pentastomid in a biopsy specimen obtained at surgery or at autopsy. Occasionally, calcified larvae may be observed on radiographic

films of the abdomen or chest, providing a presumptive diagnosis. There are no useful serologic tests.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Treatment is not usually warranted. In symptomatic patients, surgical removal of free or encysted parasites should be attempted. Preventive measures include thorough cooking of meat and vegetables and avoidance of contaminated water.

Chelicerata (Arachnida)

SPIDERS

Spiders have many characteristic features that permit easy identification. Specifically, they possess eight legs, no antennae, a body divided into two regions (cephalothorax and abdomen), and an unsegmented abdomen with spinnerets posteriorly. All true spiders produce venom and kill their prey by biting; however, few have fangs **(chelicerae)** powerful enough to pierce human skin or venom potent enough to produce more than a transitory local skin irritation. Venomous spiders may be classified as those that cause **systemic arachnidism** and those that cause **necrotic arachnidism.** This classification is based on the type of tissue damage produced.

Systemic arachnidism is primarily caused by tarantulas and black widow spiders. Tarantulas (family Theraphosidae) are large, hairy spiders of the tropics and subtropics. The tarantulas are of little importance because they are not very aggressive and avoid human habitations. Their bite causes intense pain and a phase of agitation, followed by stupor and somnolence. The black widow spider, *Latrodectus mactans,* is widespread through the southern and western United States. Related species of *Latrodectus* are found throughout temperate and tropical regions of all continents, but none is primarily domestic; thus their contact with humans is limited.

Necrotic arachnidism is produced by spiders that belong to the genus *Loxosceles.* The bites of these spiders may produce severe tissue reaction. *Loxosceles reclusa,* the brown recluse spider, is a medically important spider of this genus.

Black Widow Spiders

Physiology and Structure

The female black widow spider *(L. mactans)* is easily recognized by the presence of a globose, shiny, black abdomen bearing the characteristic orange or reddish hourglass marking on the ventral surface (Fig. 77.2). Females vary from 5 to 13.5 mm in body length, but the males are much smaller.

The venom of the black widow spider is a potent peripheral neurotoxin, which is delivered by a pair of jawlike structures, or chelicerae. Only the female *Latrodectus* spider is dangerous to humans; the small, feeble male delivers an ineffective bite.

Epidemiology

These spiders frequent wood and brush piles, old wooden buildings, cellars, hollow logs, and privies. Given these locations, the bite is often located on the genitalia, buttocks, or extremities. Black widow spiders are common in the southern United States but are found throughout the temperate and tropical regions of both the New and Old World.

Fig. 77.2 Female black widow spider *(Latrodectus mactans).* (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods In Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London.)

Clinical Syndromes

As is true with most cases of envenomation, the clinical picture depends on factors such as the amount of venom injected; the location of the bite; and the age, weight, and sensitivity of the patient. Shortly after the bite, there is a sharp pain but little or no immediate swelling. This is followed by local redness, swelling, and burning. Systemic signs and symptoms generally occur within an hour of the bite and include muscular cramps, chest pains, nausea, vomiting, diaphoresis, intestinal spasms, and visual difficulties. Abdominal tetanic cramps producing a "boardlike" abdomen are highly characteristic and may mimic an acute surgical abdomen. The acute symptoms usually subside within 48 hours; however, in severe cases, paralysis and coma may precede cardiac or respiratory failure. Mortality from the bite of the black widow spider is estimated at 4% to 5%.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Healthy adults usually recover, but small children or weakened people suffer considerably from these bites and may die without treatment. Muscle spasms may be severe and may require the intravenous administration of calcium gluconate or other muscle relaxant agents. A specific antivenin is available and remains the treatment of choice. It is valuable if given shortly after the bite. Because it is prepared from the serum of hyperimmunized horses, patients must be tested for sensitivity to horse serum before administration. Hospitalization is advisable for the care of people with known or suspected bites.

Good housekeeping can be the simplest and most effective control for spiders in homes. This includes dusting webs and carefully removing debris from around homes and adjacent sheds. Children should be discouraged from playing on woodpiles and in woodsheds.

Brown Recluse Spiders

Physiology and Structure

Spiders producing necrotic arachnidism belong to the genus *Loxosceles.* These spiders are yellow to brown and

Fig. 77.3 Female brown recluse spider *(Loxosceles laeta).* (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London; courtesy Professor H. Schenone.)

of medium size (5 to 10 mm long) with relatively long legs (Fig. 77.3). They commonly display two distinguishing characteristics: a dark fiddle- or violin-shaped marking on the dorsal side of the cephalothorax, and six eyes arranged in three pairs forming a semicircle. The venom injected by the female or male spider is a necrotoxin (that may also have hemolytic properties) and causes necrotic lesions with deep tissue damage.

Epidemiology

Four species of the genus *Loxosceles* are found in the Americas. *L. reclusa* is found in the southern and central United States, *L. arizonica* is in the western states, and *L. laeta* is in South America. *L. reclusa* is found outdoors in woodpiles and debris in warmer climates and in basements or storage areas in cooler regions. *L. laeta* is found in closets and corners of rooms. Humans are bitten only when the spider is threatened or disturbed.

Clinical Syndromes

Initially, the bite of *Loxosceles* species tends to be painless; however, several hours later, itching, swelling, and soreness may develop in the area of the bite. Frequently a vesicle or bleb may form at the site. General systemic symptoms are unusual but when present may include chills, headache, and nausea. Within 3 to 4 days, the bleb sloughs and may be followed by ulceration and radiating necrosis, which does not heal but continues to spread for weeks or months.

Intravascular coagulation and hemolysis may occur and be accompanied by hemoglobinuria and cardiac and renal failure. This hemolytic syndrome may be life-threatening and occurs more commonly after the bite of *L. laeta.* In South America, this syndrome is known as **visceral loxoscelism.**

Diagnosis

The discrimination of a species of spider is not possible from the appearance of the lesion alone; however, a working diagnosis is commonly based on the appearance of bleb formation around puncture marks and the nature of the developing lesion. It should be noted that necrotic dermal lesions are frequently classified as loxoscelism, even if the appropriate species are not known to be present in the area. The spider may be identified easily by the characteristic features previously described. An enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay has been developed to confirm the diagnosis of brown recluse spider bite but is not widely available.

Fig. 77.4 Scorpion (*Centruroides* species). (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London; courtesy Dr. J.C. Cokendolpher.)

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The treatment of brown recluse spider bites is variable and based on the severity of the necrotic reaction. Most bites in the United States are inconsequential and require no specific therapy. Cleansing the bite wound and providing tetanus prophylaxis and antibiotics to prevent secondary infection may all be indicated. Healing is generally uncomplicated, and debridement or excision should not be performed for 3 to 6 weeks to allow natural healing to commence. Excision and skin grafting may be necessary for bites that have not healed in 6 to 8 weeks. Systemic therapy with corticosteroids may be useful in treating the hemolytic syndrome but are of little proven value in preventing or treating cutaneous necrosis. Although not available in the United States, an antivenin is used in South America for the treatment of visceral loxoscelism.

Preventive measures are similar to those recommended for black widow spiders. *Loxosceles* (and other) spiders may be controlled in dwellings with insecticide compounds.

SCORPIONS

Physiology and Structure

The typical scorpion is elongated with conspicuous, pincer-like claws (or **pedipalps**) at the anterior end of the body, four pairs of walking legs, and a distinctly regimented abdomen that tapers to a curved, hollow, needle-like stinger (aculeus) (Fig. 77.4). When the scorpion is disturbed, it uses the stinger for defense. Both male and female scorpions can sting. Venom is injected through the stinger from two venom glands in the abdomen. Most scorpions are unable to penetrate human skin or inject enough venom to cause real damage; however, a few species are capable of inflicting painful wounds that may cause death.

Epidemiology

Scorpions considered dangerous may be found in the southwestern United States, Mexico, and Venezuela. This includes several species of the genus *Centruroides,* which accounts for as many as 1000 deaths annually. Also important are several species of *Tityus,* found in Trinidad, Argentina, Brazil, Guyana, and Venezuela. Children younger than 5 years are most likely to be fatally stung by scorpions.

Scorpions are nocturnal, and during the day, they remain concealed under logs or rocks and in other dark, moist places. At night they may invade human habitations, where they may hide in shoes, towels, clothing, and closets.

Clinical Syndromes

The effect of a scorpion sting in a patient is highly variable and depends on factors such as the species and age of the scorpion; the kind and amount of venom injected; and the age, size, and sensitivity of the person who was stung. Although the sting of many scorpions is relatively nontoxic and produces only local symptoms, other stings may be quite serious. Scorpions produce two types of venom: a neurotoxin and a hemorrhagic or hemolytic toxin. The hemolytic toxin is responsible for local reactions at the site of the sting, including radiating, burning pain; swelling; discoloration; and necrosis. The neurotoxin produces minimal local reaction but rather severe systemic effects, including chills, diaphoresis, excessive salivation, difficulty speaking and swallowing, muscle spasm, tachycardia, and generalized seizures. In severe cases death may result from pulmonary edema and respiratory paralysis.

Diagnosis

Local or systemic signs and symptoms coupled with physical evidence of a single point of skin penetration are usually sufficient to establish the diagnosis. The patient may have observed the scorpion or brought it in for identification. Although scorpions are relatively easy to identify, it is important to realize that other nonvenomous arachnids strongly resemble scorpions. An entomologist or parasitologist should be consulted if there is a taxonomic question.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The management of scorpion stings varies. In the absence of systemic symptoms, palliative treatment may be all that is necessary. Pain may be relieved by analgesics or local injection of Xylocaine; however, opiates appear to increase toxicity. Local cryotherapy (cold packs) may reduce swelling and retard the systemic absorption of the toxin. Hot packs produce vasodilation and may accelerate toxin distribution systemically and are therefore contraindicated. Antivenin is available and is effective if administered soon after the sting. Antivenin is usually species-specific and without the identification of the offending agent would be administered on a presumptive basis according to the most common species in the area. Very young children with systemic symptoms should be treated as medical emergencies. Systemic symptoms and shock should be treated supportively.

Preventive measures include the use of chemical pesticides to reduce scorpion populations. Removal of debris around dwellings can reduce hiding and breeding places.

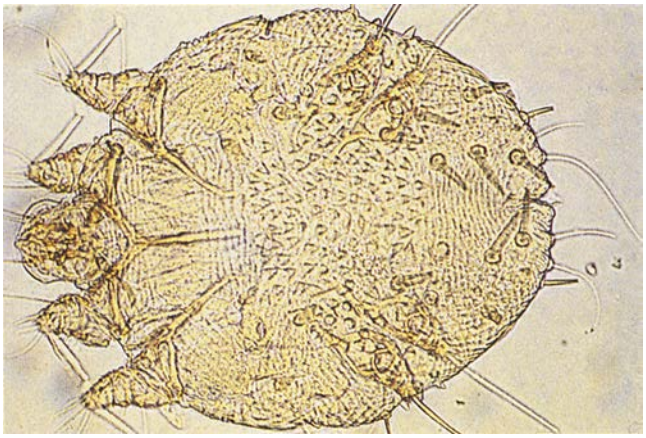


Fig. 77.5 Scabies mite (*Sarcoptes* species). (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London.)

MITES

Mites are small, eight-legged arthropods characterized by a saclike body and no antennae. A large number of mite species are free-living or are normally associated with other vertebrates (e.g., birds, rodents) and may cause dermatitis in humans on rare occasions. The number of mites that are considered true human parasites or present real medical problems is quite small and include the house mouse mite *(Liponyssoides sanguineus)* human itch mite *(Sarcoptes scabiei),* the human follicle mite *(Demodex folliculorum),* and the chigger mite (*Leptotrombidium deliense* or *L. akamushi*). Mites affect humans in three ways: by causing dermatitis, by serving as vectors of infectious diseases, and by acting as a source of allergens.

Itch Mites

Physiology and Structure

The itch mite *(S. scabiei)* causes an infectious skin disease variably known as **scabies, mange, or the itch.** The adult mites average 300 to 400 μm in length with an oval, saclike body in which the first and second pairs of legs are widely separated from the third and fourth pairs (Fig. 77.5). The body has dorsal transverse parallel ridges, spines, and hairs. The ova measure 100 to 150 μm.

Adult mites enter the skin, creating serpiginous burrows in the upper layers of the epidermis. The female mite lays her eggs in the skin burrows, and the larval and nymph stages that develop also burrow in the skin. The female mites live and deposit eggs and feces in epidermal burrows for up to 2 months. Characteristically, the preferred sites of infestation are the interdigital and popliteal folds, the wrist and inguinal regions, and the inframammary folds. The presence of the mites and their secretions cause intense itching of the involved areas. The mite is an obligate parasite and can perpetuate itself in a single host indefinitely.

Epidemiology

Scabies is cosmopolitan in distribution, with an estimated global prevalence of about 300 million cases. The mite is an obligate parasite of domestic animals and humans; however, it may survive for hours to days away from the host, facilitating its spread. Transmission is accomplished by direct contact or by contact with contaminated objects

such as clothing. Sexual transmission has been well documented. Spread of the infection to other areas of the body is accomplished by scratching and manual transfer of the mite by the affected person. Scabies may occur in epidemic fashion among people in crowded conditions, such as day-care centers, nursing homes, military camps, and prisons.

Clinical Syndromes

The outstanding clinical diagnostic symptom is intense itching, usually in the interdigital folds and sides of the fingers, buttocks, external genitalia, wrists, and elbows. The uncomplicated lesions appear as short, slightly raised cutaneous burrows. At the end of the burrow, there is frequently a vesicle containing the female mite. The intense pruritus usually leads to excoriation of the skin secondary to scratching, which in turn produces crusts and secondary bacterial infection. Patients experience their first symptoms within weeks to months after exposure; however, the incubation period may be as little as 1 to 4 days in persons sensitized by prior exposure. Host hypersensitivity (delayed or type IV) probably plays an important role in determining the variable clinical manifestations of scabies.

Some immunodeficient people may develop a variant of scabies, so-called **Norwegian scabies,** characterized by generalized dermatitis with extensive scaling and crusting and the presence of thousands of mites in the epidermis. This disease is highly contagious and suggests that host immunity also plays a role in suppressing *S. scabiei.*

Diagnosis

The clinical diagnosis of scabies is based on the characteristic lesions and their distribution. The definitive diagnosis of scabies depends on the demonstration of the mite in skin scrapings. Because the adult mite is most frequently found in the terminal portions of a fresh burrow, it is best to make scrapings in these areas. The scrapings are placed on a clean microscope slide, cleared by the addition of one or two drops of a 20% solution of potassium hydroxide, covered with a coverslip, and examined under a low-power microscope. With experience, the mite and ova may be recognized. Skin biopsy also may reveal the mites and ova in tissue sections.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

The standard, and very effective, treatment for scabies is 1% gamma benzene hexachloride (lindane) in a lotion base. One or two applications (head to toe) at weekly intervals is effective against scabies. Lindane is absorbed through the skin, and repeated applications may be toxic. For this reason its use is not advisable in treating infants, small children, or pregnant or lactating women.

Recently, A 5% permethrin cream (Elmite) has replaced lindane lotions as the treatment of choice for scabies. Clinical trials have shown permethrin to be more effective and less toxic than lindane. Other preparations used to treat scabies include oral ivermectin, crotamiton sulfur (6%) preparations, benzyl benzoate, and tetraethylthiuram monosulfide. The last two preparations are not available in the United States.

Primary prevention of scabies is best achieved with good hygiene habits, personal cleanliness, and routine washing of clothing and bed linens. Secondary prevention includes the identification and treatment of infected people and possibly their household and sexual contacts. In an epidemic situation, simultaneous treatment of all affected people and their contacts may be necessary. This is followed by thorough cleansing of the environment (e.g., boiling clothing and linens) and ongoing surveillance to prevent recurrence.

Human Follicle Mites

Physiology and Structure

The human follicle mites include two species of the genus *Demodex, D. folliculorum,* and *D. brevis.* These mites are minute (0.1 to 0.4 mm) organisms with a wormlike body, four pairs of stubby legs, and an annulate abdomen. *D. folliculorum* parasitizes the hair follicles of the face of most adult humans, whereas *D. brevis* is found in the sebaceous glands of the head and trunk.

Epidemiology

Organisms of the *Demodex* genus are obligate parasites of the human integument and are cosmopolitan in their distribution. Infestations are uncommon in young children and increase at the time of puberty. It is estimated that 50% to 100% of adults are infested with these mites.

Clinical Syndromes

The role of *Demodex* species in human disease is uncertain (Clinical Case 77.1). They have been associated with acne, blackheads, blepharitis, abnormalities of the scalp, and truncal rashes. More recently, extensive papular folliculitis resulting from *Demodex* infestation has been described in people with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). Factors such as poor personal hygiene, increased sebum production, mite hypersensitivity, and immunosuppression may increase host susceptibility and enhance the clinical presentation of *Demodex* infestation. Most people infested with these mites remain asymptomatic.

Clinical Case 77.1 **Demodex Folliculitis**

Antille and colleagues (*Arch Dermatol* 140:457–460, 2004) reported a case of *Demodex* folliculitis in a 49-year-old man. The patient had rosacea for 12 years and presented with telangiectatic and papular rosacea on the cheeks and forehead. His condition had progressively deteriorated in spite of intermittent systemic treatments with ciprofloxacin. Six months previously, the patient had stopped all treatments except antihypertensive and antiuricemic therapies. An alternating treatment with clindamycin solution and 0.03% tacrolimus ointment once daily was initially effective and well tolerated. Three weeks later, however, he experienced an acute flare with intense erythema and extensive pustulation. A pustular smear revealed an abundance of *Demodex* mites, which were also seen in a biopsy specimen that confirmed the diagnosis of rosacea. Tacrolimus treatment was discontinued, and the flare resolved rapidly with systemic ciprofloxacin therapy. Ciprofloxacin therapy was stopped 1 month later, and there was no relapse during an 11-month follow-up. This case is an example of a situation in which the immunosuppressive properties of tacrolimus facilitated the overgrowth of follicular *Demodex* mites, resulting in a pustular dermatitis.

Diagnosis
Mites may be demonstrated microscopically in material expressed from an infested follicle. They may be seen as incidental findings in histologic sections of facial skin.

Treatment
Effective treatment consists of a single application of 1% gamma benzene hexachloride.

Chigger Mites

Physiology and Structure
Chiggers are the larvae of mites of the family Trombiculidae. The adult trombiculid mites infest grass and bushes, and their larvae (i.e., chiggers) attack humans and other vertebrates, producing severe dermatitis. The larvae have three pairs of legs and are covered with characteristic branched, feather-like hairs.

The larvae appear as minute, barely visible, reddish dots attached to the skin, on which they use their hooked mouth parts to ingest tissue fluids. Chiggers typically attach to the skin areas on which clothing is tight or restricted, such as the wrists, ankles, armpits, groin, and waistline. After feeding, the engorged larvae fall to the ground where they molt and undergo development into nymphs and adults.

Epidemiology
Chiggers that are important in North America include the larvae of *Eutrombicula alfreddugesi* and *E. splendens.* In Europe, the important species is the harvest mite, *Trombicula autumnalis.* Chiggers are a particular problem for outdoor enthusiasts, such as campers and picnickers. In Europe and the Americas, they are associated with intensely pruritic lesions; however, in Asia, Australia, and the western Pacific rim, they serve as vectors of the rickettsial disease scrub typhus or tsutsugamushi fever *(Orientia tsutsugamushi)* (see Table 77.2 and Chapter 34).

Clinical Syndromes
Saliva injected into the skin at the time of mite attachment produces an intense pruritus and dermatitis. The skin lesions appear as small erythematous marks that progress to papules and may persist for weeks. Mite larvae may be visible in the center of the reddened, swollen area. The irritation may be so severe that it causes fever and sleep disruption. Secondary bacterial infection of the excoriated lesions may occur.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control
Treatment for dermatitis caused by chiggers is largely symptomatic and consists of antipruritics, antihistamines, and steroids. The use of insect repellents such as *N,N*-9-diethyl-*m*-toluamide (DEET) may be of some help in prevention for persons going into chigger-infested areas.

TICKS

Physiology and Structure
Ticks are bloodsucking ectoparasites of a number of vertebrates, including humans. Ticks are opportunistic rather than host specific and tend to suck blood from a number of large and small animals. Ticks have a four-stage life cycle that includes the egg, larva, nymph, and adult. Although the larva, nymph, and adult are all bloodsuckers, it is the adult tick that usually bites humans.

Ticks comprise two large families, the Ixodidae, or hard ticks, and the Argasidae, or soft ticks. Soft ticks have a leathery body that lacks a hard dorsal scutum, and the mouthparts are located ventrally and are not visible from above (Fig. 77.6). Hard ticks have a hard dorsal plate or scutum, and the mouthparts are clearly visible from above (Fig. 77.7). Both hard and soft ticks serve as ectoparasites of humans. Soft ticks differ from hard ticks primarily in their feeding behavior. Soft ticks complete engorgement in a matter of minutes or at most a few hours; hard ticks feed slowly, taking 7 to 9 days to become engorged.

Epidemiology
Ticks are found in wooded and rural areas worldwide. In North America, the important species of hard ticks include

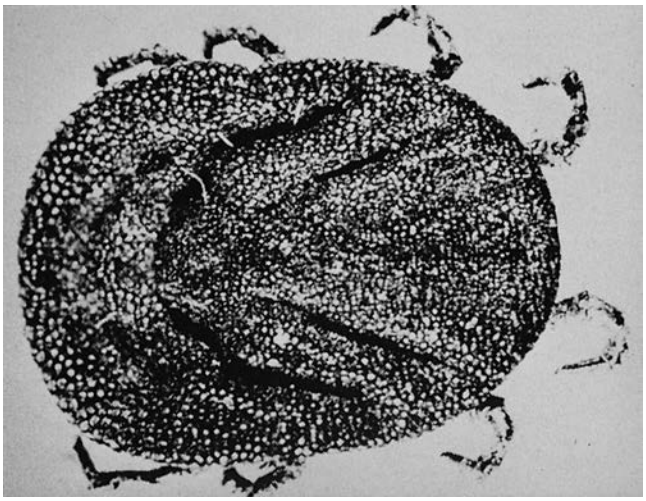


Fig. 77.6 Soft tick (*Ornithodoros* species). (From Strickland, G.T., 1991. Hunter's Tropical Medicine, seventh ed. WB Saunders, Philadelphia, PA.)

Fig. 77.7 Hard tick (Ixodes dammini). (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London; courtesy Professor A. Spielman.)

Dermacentor variabilis (the American dog tick), *D. andersoni* (the Rocky Mountain wood tick), *Amblyomma americanum* (the lone star tick), *Rhipicephalus sanguineus* (the brown dog tick), and *Ixodes dammini* (the deer tick). These ticks are found variably throughout the United States and are important vectors of several infectious diseases, including Rocky Mountain spotted fever (*Dermacentor* species), tularemia (*Dermacentor* species), Q fever (*Dermacentor* species), Lyme disease (*Ixodes* species), babesiosis (*Ixodes* species), and ehrlichiosis (*D. variabilis* and *A. americanum*) (see Table 77.2). Soft ticks of the genus *Ornithodoros* transmit relapsing fever spirochetes *(Borrelia* species*)* in limited areas in the West (see Table 77.2). In general, people at risk for tick exposure are involved in outdoor activities in wooded areas. Tick exposure may also occur during stays in rural cabins inhabited by small rodents, which commonly serve as hosts for ticks and other ectoparasites.

Clinical Syndromes

Tick bites are generally of minor consequence and are limited to small erythematous papules (Clinical Case 77.2). More serious consequences of tick bite include the development of a type of paralysis (tick paralysis) or a hypersensitivity (red meat allergy) reaction resulting from substances released by ticks during feeding and transmission of a number of rickettsial, bacterial, viral, spirochetal, and protozoan diseases of humans and other animals.

Ticks may attach at any point on the body but typically favor the scalp, hairline, ears, axillae, and groin. The initial bite is usually painless, and the presence of the tick may not be detected for several hours after contact. After the tick has dropped off or has been removed manually, the area may become reddened, painful, and pruritic. The wound may become secondarily infected and necrotic requiring antibiotic therapy. It should be noted that on removal of the tick the mouthparts often remain imbedded in the skin. Removal of the mouthparts is not critical as they will either be walled off as a foreign body or be worked out in the process of scratching.

Clinical Case 77.2 **African Tick Bite Fever**

Owen and colleagues (*Arch Dermatol* 142:1312–1314, 2006) described a middle-aged woman who returned from a mission trip to Zimbabwe with an influenza-like illness and an inoculation eschar; she also had a history of travel to a game farm. Biopsy of the cutaneous lesion revealed a histopathologic pattern consistent with an infectious pathogenesis. Immunohistochemical staining confirmed the presence of rickettsial organisms. In light of the patient's history and the clinical constellation of signs and symptoms, a diagnosis of African tick bite fever was made. The patient was treated with doxycycline and had an uncomplicated course.

African tick bite fever is an illness caused by *Rickettsia africae* that has recently emerged as a significant disease among international travelers. The vector is the *Amblyomma* tick, which is endemic to sub-Saharan Africa. This is an example of just one of many rickettsial diseases transmitted by ticks.

Three species of tick, *D. andersoni, D. variabilis,* and *A. americanum,* have been reported to cause **tick paralysis.** This is characterized by an ascending flaccid paralysis, fever, and general intoxication, which may lead to respiratory compromise and death. The paralysis is caused by toxic substances released in the saliva of the tick and may be reversed by tick removal. Tick paralysis is observed more commonly in young children and when tick attachment is in opposition to the central nervous system (e.g., scalp, head, neck).

An enigmatic **red meat allergy** has been associated with the bites of Lone Star ticks in the eastern United States. Similar associations have also been reported for Europe and Australia, with sheep ticks *(I. ricinus)* and paralysis tick *(I. holocyclus),* respectively, suspected to be the culprits. A severe hypersensitivity reaction to treatment with cetuximab was found to be geographically limited and caused by IgE reactivity with **galactose-alpha-1,3-galactose (alpha-gal).** Such IgE reactivity also was associated with a newly recognized red meat allergy, which manifested as urticaria or anaphylaxis 3 to 6 hours after ingesting beef, pork, or lamb. The delayed onset of symptoms distinguishes this red meat allergy from other food allergies. Patients recalled recent multiple tick bites and subsequently detailed studies of individual cases, epidemiologic association between anti–alpha-gal IgE and Lone Star tick bites, and correlation of IgE to tick proteins and alpha-gal together have provided evidence for causality. The majority of patients have a blood type other than B, which is biologically consistent with the structural similarity of alpha-gal and the B blood group determinants. Alpha-gal is a major component of internal tick tissues, hence the demonstrated associations are biologically plausible. Specific treatment has not been described other than avoidance of red meat and tick bites; apparently the allergy will resolve in the absence of additional tick bites. This unusual example of direct, delayed injury caused by arthropod remains to be fully understood.

Ticks also are involved in the transmission of infections such as Lyme disease, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, ehrlichiosis, Colorado tick fever, relapsing fever, tularemia, Q fever, and babesiosis (see Table 77.2). The reader is referred to the appropriate sections of this book for discussion of the clinical and microbiologic aspects of these infections (see Chapters 29, 32,34, and 73).

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of tick bites and tick-borne diseases usually rests on the finding of a tick or a history of exposure to tick-infested areas. The identification of an organism as an adult tick is usually straightforward and based on the observations of an organism that is dorsoventrally flattened and possesses four pairs of legs and no visible segmentation (see Figs. 77.6 and 77.7). An entomologist or parasitologist should be consulted if further identification is desired. The diagnosis of specific tick-borne infectious diseases is covered in the respective sections of this book (see Chapters 29, 32,34, and 73).

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Early removal of attached ticks is of primary importance and may be accomplished by steady traction on the tick body, grasped with forceps as close to the skin as possible. Care

should be taken to avoid twisting or crushing the tick, which may leave the mouthparts attached to the skin or inject potentially infectious material into the wound. Steady traction is superior to noxious stimuli or occlusive techniques for the removal of ticks. After removal, the wound should be cleansed and observed for secondary infection. Because ticks may harbor highly infectious agents, the clinician should use appropriate infection-control precautions (e.g., use of gloves, handwashing, proper disposal of ticks and contaminated material) during tick removal. Tick removal is imperative in cases of tick paralysis. Unless the tick is removed quadriplegia and respiratory paralysis may ensue; the case fatality rate without tick removal approaches 10%. Complete recovery generally is seen within 48 hours of removal.

Preventive measures used in tick-infested areas include the wearing of protective clothing that fits snugly about the ankles, wrists, waist, and neck so that ticks cannot gain access to the skin. Insect repellents, such as DEET, are generally effective. People and pets should be inspected for ticks after visits to tick-infested areas.

Hexapoda (Insecta)

The insects, or **hexapods,** constitute the largest and most important of all the classes of arthropods, accounting for approximately 70% of all known species of animals. Insects include animals such as mosquitoes, flies, fleas, lice, roaches, bees, wasps, beetles, and moths, to name just a few. The insect body is divided into three parts (head, thorax, and abdomen) and is equipped with one pair of antennae, three pairs of appendages, and one or two pairs of wings or no wings at all. The medical significance of any insect is related to its way of life, particularly its mouthparts and feeding habits. Insects may serve as vectors for a number of bacterial, viral, protozoan, and metazoan pathogens. Certain insects may serve merely as mechanical vectors for the transmission of pathogens, whereas in other insects, the pathogens undergo multiplication or cyclic development within the insect host. The methods by which the insects transmit pathogens vary and are discussed here. Insects can also be pathogens themselves by causing mechanical injury through bites, chemical injury through the injection of toxins, and allergic reactions to materials transmitted by bites or stings. There are more than 30 orders of insects, but only those of major medical importance are discussed in this section.

BLOODSUCKING DIPTERA

Diptera is the large order of flying insects. All dipterans have a single pair of functional membranous wings and various modifications of the mouthparts, which have been adapted for piercing the skin and sucking blood or tissue juices. Their most important feature is their role as mechanical or biologic vectors of a number of infectious diseases, including leishmaniasis, trypanosomiasis, malaria, filariasis, onchocerciasis, tularemia, bartonellosis, and the viral encephalitides (see Table 77.2). The bloodsucking flies include mosquitoes, sandflies, and blackflies, all of which are capable of transmitting diseases to humans. Other dipterans, such as horseflies and stable flies, are capable of inflicting painful bites but are not known to transmit human pathogens. Although the common housefly does not bite, it certainly is capable of mechanical transmission of a number of viral, bacterial, and protozoan infections to human hosts. The infectious diseases transmitted by bloodsucking flies are well covered in other chapters of this book (see Chapters 29, 73, and 74). The following section deals only with injury resulting from the bite of these insects and the effects of salivary substances introduced into the human skin and tissues.

Mosquitoes

Physiology and Structure

Adult mosquitoes are small and have delicate legs, one pair of wings, long antennae, and greatly elongated mouthparts adapted for piercing and sucking. The two major subfamilies of mosquitoes (Culicidae family), the Anophelinae and the Culicidae, share a number of similarities in their life cycles and development. They lay eggs on or near water, are good fliers, and feed on nectar and sugars. The females of most species also feed on blood, which they require for each clutch of 100 to 200 eggs. Females may take a blood meal every 2 to 4 days. In the act of feeding, the female mosquito injects saliva, which produces mechanical damage to the host but also may transmit disease and produce immediate and delayed immune reactions.

Epidemiology

Within the subfamily Anophelinae, the genus *Anopheles* contains the species responsible for the transmission of human malaria. In the tropics, these mosquitoes breed continually in relation to rainfall. These species vary in their capacity for the transmission of malaria, and within each geographic area, the number of species that serve as malaria vectors is small. *A. gambiae* is an important vector of malaria in sub-Saharan Africa.

Mosquitoes from *Aedes,* the largest genus of the subfamily Culicidae, are found in all habitats, ranging from the tropics to the Arctic. This species may develop overwhelming populations in marshes, tundra, pasture, or floodwater and have a severe impact on wildlife, livestock, and humans. *A. aegypti,* the yellow fever mosquito, usually breeds in synthetic containers (flowerpots, gutters, cans) and is the primary vector of yellow fever and dengue in urban environments throughout the world.

Clinical Syndromes

Mechanical damage induced by the feeding mosquito is usually minor but may be accompanied by mild pain and irritation. The bite is usually followed within a few minutes by a small, flat weal surrounded by a red flare. The delayed reaction consists of itching, swelling, and reddening of the wound region. Secondary infection may follow as a result of scratching.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Medical attention is usually not sought for a bite unless secondary infection occurs. Local anesthetics or antihistamines may be useful in treating reactions to mosquito bites.

Preventive measures in mosquito-infested areas include the use of window screens, netting, and protective clothing.

Insect repellents, such as DEET, are generally effective. Mosquito-control measures that involve the use of insecticides have been effective in some areas.

Gnats and Biting Midges

Physiology and Structure

Ceratopogonids represent an assortment of tiny flies such as **gnats, midges,** and **punkies.** The majority of the flies that attack humans belong to the genus *Culicoides;* they are minute (0.5 to 4 mm long) and slender enough to pass through the fine mesh of ordinary window screens. The females suck blood and typically feed at dusk, when they may attack in large numbers.

Epidemiology

Biting midges may be important pests in beach and resort areas near salt marshes. Those of the genus *Culicoides* are the main vectors of filariasis in Africa and the New World tropics.

Clinical Syndromes

The mouthparts of biting midges are lancet like and produce a painful bite. Bites may produce local lesions lasting hours or days.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Local treatment is palliative, with lotions, anesthetics, and antiseptic measures. The treatment of breeding sites with pesticides and repellents may be useful against some of the common species of these pests.

Sandflies

Physiology and Structure

Sandflies, or moth flies, belong to a single subfamily of the Psychodidae, the Phlebotominae. They are small (1 to 3 mm), delicate, hairy, weak-flying insects that suck the blood of humans, dogs, and rodents. They transmit a number of infections, including leishmaniasis (see Table 77.2). Female flies become infected when they feed on infected people.

Epidemiology

Phlebotomine larvae develop in nonaquatic habitats, such as moist soil, stone walls, and rubbish heaps. In many areas, sandflies cause problems as pests. They also serve as vectors of infectious diseases, such as leishmaniasis in the Mediterranean, the Middle East, Asia, and Latin America.

Clinical Syndromes

The bite may be painful and pruritic around the local lesion. Sensitized people may have allergic reactions. **Sandfly fever** is characterized by severe frontal headaches, malaise, retroorbital pain, anorexia, and nausea.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Sandflies are very sensitive to insecticides, which should be applied to breeding sites and window screens. Various insect repellents also may be useful.

Blackflies

Physiology and Structure

Members of the family Simuliidae are commonly called **blackflies** or **buffalo gnats**. They are 1 to 5 mm long, are humpbacked, and have mouthparts consisting of six "blades" that are capable of tearing skin (Fig. 77.8). Blackflies are bloodsucking insects and breed in fast-flowing streams and rivers. They are of major importance as vectors of onchocerciasis (see Table 77.2).

Fig. 77.8 Blackfly (*Simulium* species), the vector of onchocerciasis. (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London; courtesy Dr. S. Meredith.)

Epidemiology

Blackflies are common in Africa and South America, where they serve as vectors of onchocerciasis. In North America, they are common around the lake regions of Canada and the northern United States. They are pests to hunters and fisherman in these areas. In large numbers, they may cause significant blood loss and pose a major threat to wild and domestic animals.

Clinical Syndromes

A variety of responses have been observed in humans after the bite of blackflies. The bite of the female can tear the skin surface and induce bleeding that continues for some time after the fly has departed. There is usually a distinct hemorrhagic spot at the site of the bite. Multiple bites may result in considerable blood loss. The bite is painful and accompanied by local inflammation, itching, and swelling.

The local reaction may also be accompanied by a systemic response that varies according to the number of bites and the sensitivity of the person. This syndrome is known as **blackfly fever** and is marked by headache, fever, and adenitis. It usually subsides within 48 hours and is considered a hypersensitivity reaction to the salivary secretions of the fly.

In addition to local and systemic responses to blackfly bites, a **hemorrhagic syndrome** has been described after bites of blackflies in certain areas of Brazil. This syndrome resembles thrombocytopenic purpura and is characterized by local and disseminated cutaneous hemorrhages associated with mucosal bleeding. It is thought that this hemorrhagic syndrome may be produced by a hypersensitivity phenomenon or response to a toxin caused by multiple blackfly bites.

Diagnosis

The blackfly bite is characteristically marked by a point of dried blood and subcutaneous hemorrhage at the wound site. In people with the hemorrhagic syndrome, platelet counts are reduced; there is a prolonged bleeding time and poor clot retraction in about half of patients.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Treatment includes the usual palliative measures (e.g., anesthetics, antihistamines, lotions) to relieve local pruritus and swelling. Patients with the hemorrhagic syndrome have shown marked improvement with corticosteroid therapy.

Preventive measures include protective clothing. In general, insect repellents are ineffective against blackflies. Some control is achieved by pouring insecticides into rivers and streams.

HORSEFLIES AND DEERFLIES

The family Tabanidae consists of species including horseflies, deerflies, gadflies, and mango flies that attack mainly animals. They are large, ranging in length from 7 to 30 mm. The males feed on plant juices, and the females feed on blood. In the act of biting, the female fly leaves a deep wound, causing blood to flow, which the fly laps up. The fly may serve as a mechanical vector of infectious diseases when the fly's mouthparts become contaminated on one host and transfer organisms to the next. These flies are not considered important vectors of infectious disease in humans.

MUSCOID FLIES

Physiology and Structure

The muscoid flies include three medically important insects: the housefly, *Musca domestica;* the stable fly, *Stomoxys calcitrans;* and the **tsetse flies** of the genus *Glossina.* The stable fly, often mistaken for the housefly, is a true bloodsucker capable of serving as a short-term mechanical vector of a number of bacterial, viral, and protozoal infections. The tsetse fly (Fig. 77.9) is also a biting fly and serves as the biologic vector and intermediate host for the agents of African trypanosomiasis, *Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense* and *T. b. gambiense.* The common housefly represents a host of genera that are nonpiercing or contaminating flies. Because of their living and feeding habits, they mechanically transmit diverse agents to humans.

Epidemiology

The tsetse fly is found in the eastern and central regions of Africa, where it is of major medical and veterinary importance as the intermediate host and biologic vector of a number of trypanosomes that infect humans and animals. The housefly and stable fly are cosmopolitan in distribution and serve as indicators of poor sanitation. The housefly, *M. domestica,* lays eggs on any matter (feces, garbage, decaying plant matter) that will serve as food for developing fly larvae, or maggots. Stable flies commonly lay eggs in moist, decaying vegetable matter, such as grass clippings or compost heaps found in suburban communities.

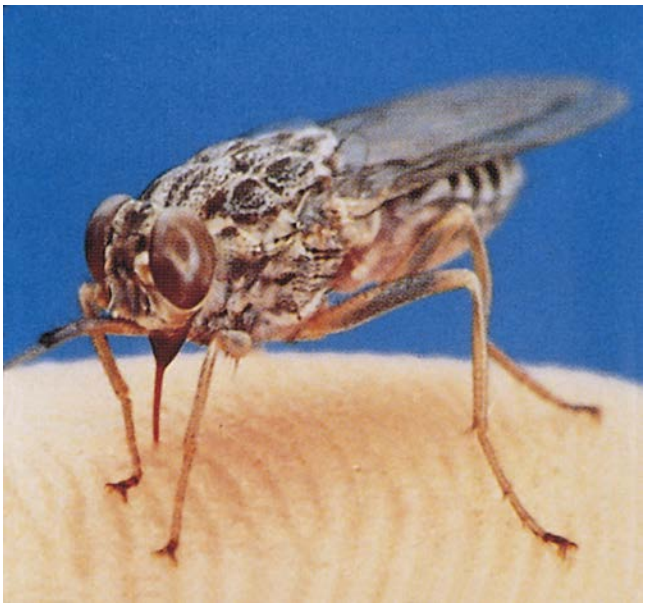


Fig. 77.9 Tsetse fly, the vector of African trypanosomiasis. (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London; courtesy Wellcome Foundation, Berkhamsted, England.)

Prevention and Control

Control of tsetse fly populations has been problematic because of their widespread distribution in primarily rural and undeveloped areas. Insect repellents and insecticides may be effective against adult flies. Improved sanitation is important in controlling houseflies. Plant refuse should be protected from rain or should be destroyed.

MYIASIS-CAUSING FLIES

Myiasis is the term applied to the disease produced by maggots that live parasitically in human tissues (Clinical Case 77.3). Clinically, myiasis may be classified according to the body part involved (e.g., nasal, intestinal, or urinary myiasis). The number of myiasis-producing flies and the diversity in lifestyle requirements are enormous. Only the host relations and sites of predilection of some of the more important species are covered in this section.

Specific myiasis refers to myiasis caused by flies that require a host for larval development. One important example is the human botfly, *Dermatobia hominis,* which is found in the humid regions of Mexico and Central and South America. The adult botfly attaches her eggs to the abdomen of bloodsucking flies or mosquitoes, which in turn distribute the eggs while obtaining a blood meal from an animal or human. The larvae enter the skin through the wound created by the biting insect. The larvae develop over 40 to 50 days, during which time a painful lesion known as a **warble** appears. When the larvae reach maturity, they leave the host to pupate. The resulting lesion may take weeks to months to heal and may become secondarily infected. If the larva dies before leaving the skin, an abscess forms.

Semispecific myiasis is caused by flies that normally lay their eggs on decaying animal or plant matter; it develops in a host if entry is facilitated by the presence of wounds or sores. Representatives of this group include the greenbottle

Clinical Case 77.3 **Furuncular Myiasis**

Bakos and colleagues (*Arch Dermatol* 143:123–124, 2007) described a 54-year-old woman who was seen with a 2-week history of a painful inflammatory nodule on the inner aspect of her right leg. She vaguely remembered having been bitten in that area by a "bug." After 1 week of oral antibiotic treatment prescribed to relieve the surrounding inflammatory reaction, a poorly delimited nodule was observed, with a small pore on top from which a serosanguineous fluid exuded. Dermoscopy revealed a central opening surrounded by dilated blood vessels from which a yellowish structure with black barblike spines on the extremity extruded intermittently. This corresponded to the posterior extremity of *Dermatobia hominis* (human botfly) larva. The lesion was occluded with a double layer of plaster for 24 hours, and the immobile dead larva was removed with forceps and gentle squeezing. Furuncular myiasis caused by *D. hominis* is a common disease in tropical American countries. The diagnosis of furuncular myiasis should always be considered in every boil-like lesion not responding to ordinary treatment, especially in travelers returning from tropical countries.

fly, *Phaenicia;* bluebottle flies, *Cochliomyia;* and black bottle flies, *Phormia.* These flies are worldwide in distribution, and their presence is encouraged by poor sanitation. They occasionally lay their eggs on the open sores or wounds of animals and humans. Another group that causes myiasis in humans is the flesh flies, or sarcophagids. These flies have a worldwide distribution and normally breed in decomposing matter. They may deposit their larvae on foods that, if ingested, may serve as a source of infection.

Flies that produce **accidental myiasis** have no requirement for development in a host. Accidental infection may occur when eggs are deposited on oral or genitourinary openings and the resulting larvae gain entry into the intestinal or genitourinary tract. Flies that may produce accidental myiasis include *M. domestica,* which is the common housefly.

SUCKING LICE

Physiology and Structure

Although several species of lice *(Anoplura)* infest humans as blood-feeding parasites, only the body louse is important in medicine as the vector of the rickettsia of typhus and trench fevers and the vector of the spirochetes of relapsing fever (see Table 77.2). The **body louse,** *Pediculus humanus,* and the **head louse,** *P. humanus capitis,* are elongated, wingless, flattened insects with three pairs of legs and mouthpieces adapted for piercing flesh and sucking blood (Fig. 77.10). The pubic or **crab louse,** *Phthirus pubis,* has a short, crablike abdomen with clawed second and third legs (Fig. 77.11).

Epidemiology

Epidemics of head lice are reported frequently in the United States, particularly among schoolchildren. The head lice inhabit the hairs of the head and are transmitted by physical contact or sharing of hair brushes or hats. Crab lice survive on blood meals around the hairs of the pubic and perianal areas of the body. They are transmitted frequently from one person to another by sexual contact and contaminated toilet seats or clothing. Body lice are usually found on clothing. Unlike head or crab lice, they move to the body for feeding and return to the clothing after obtaining a blood meal. All of the lice inject salivary fluids into the body during the ingestion of blood, which causes varying degrees of sensitization in the human host.

Fig. 77.10 Body louse *(Pediculus humanus).* (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London; courtesy Oxford Scientific Films [Dr. R.J. Warren].)

Fig. 77.11 Crab louse *(Phthirus pubis).* (Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London; courtesy Dr. R.V. Southcott.)

Clinical Syndromes

Intense itching is the usual characteristic of infestation by lice **(pediculosis).** The patient may have pruritic, red

papules around the ears, face, neck, or shoulders. Secondary infection and regional adenopathy may be present.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis is made by demonstration of the lice or eggs from a patient complaining of pruritus. Frequently, the patient has noticed the insects, and the diagnosis may be made over the telephone. The eggs, or **nits,** are white, round objects that may be found attached to the hair shafts (head and crab lice) or on clothing (body lice).

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Gamma benzene hexachloride (lindane) lotion applied to the entire body and left on for 24 hours is an effective treatment for lice. Shaving the hair of affected areas is a desirable adjunct. Adult lice in clothing must be destroyed by the application of lindane or dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) powder or by boiling. Lice may survive in the environment for up to 2 weeks; thus items such as brushes, combs, and bedding must be treated with a pediculicide or by boiling.

The best strategy for primary prevention is education and practice of good hygiene habits. Secondary prevention may be practiced by a policy of routine surveillance (e.g., scalp inspections) in schools, day-care centers, military camps, and other institutions. Repellents may be necessary for people who run a high risk of exposure in crowded conditions.

FLEAS

Physiology and Structure

Fleas *(Siphonaptera)* are small, wingless insects with laterally compressed bodies and long legs adapted for jumping (Fig. 77.12). Their mouthparts are adapted for sucking or "siphoning" blood from the host.

Epidemiology

Fleas are cosmopolitan in distribution. Most species are adapted to a particular host; however, they can readily feed on humans, particularly when deprived of their preferred host. Fleas are important as vectors of plague and murine typhus and as intermediate hosts for dog (*Dipylidium caninum*) and rodent (*Hymenolepis* species) tapeworms that occasionally infect humans.

In contrast to the majority of fleas that do not invade the human integument, the **chigoe flea,** *Tunga penetrans,* may cause considerable damage by actively invading the skin. The female chigoe flea burrows into the skin, often under the toenails or between the toes, where she sucks blood and lays her eggs. The chigoe flea is found in tropical and subtropical regions of America, as well as in Africa and the Far East. It is not known to transmit human pathogens.

Clinical Syndromes

As with the bites of other bloodsucking arthropods, flea bites result in pruritic, erythematous lesions of varying severity, which depends on the intensity of the infestation and the sensitivity of the bitten person. The irritation caused by the flea's saliva may produce physical findings that vary from small red welts to a diffuse red rash. Secondary infection may be a complication.

Fig. 77.12 Flea. (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London.)

Cutaneous invasion by the chigoe flea produces an erythematous papule that is painful and pruritic. Infested tissue can become severely inflamed and ulcerated. Secondary infection is common. In severe cases, the infestation may be complicated by tetanus or by gas gangrene, resulting in amputation.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of flea infestation is inferred in a patient with annoying bites who is also a pet (dog or cat) owner. Examination of the patient and pet usually reveals the characteristic insect. Diagnosis of tungiasis is made by detecting the dark portion of the chigoe flea's abdomen as it protrudes from the skin surface in the center of an inflamed lesion.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Palliative treatment with antipruritics and antihistamines is indicated for most flea bites. Surgical removal of the chigoe flea is indicated.

Commercially available insecticides may control fleas at the source. Topically applied repellents can protect people against flea bites. Flea collars or powders on pets are also effective preventive measures.

BUGS

Physiology and Structure

Bugs refer specifically to two bloodsucking insects, the **bedbug** and the **triatomid bug** (Figs. 77.13 and 77.14). Both bugs are characterized by a long proboscis that is folded ventrally under the body when not in use. The bedbug *(Cimex lectularius)* is a reddish brown insect approximately 4 to 5 mm long. It has short wing pads but cannot fly. The triatomid, or **"kissing" bug,** has yellow or orange markings on the body and an elongated head. Triatomid bugs have wings and are aerial.

Epidemiology

Both bedbugs and triatomid bugs are nocturnal and feed indiscriminately on most mammals. Bedbugs are cosmopolitan in distribution, whereas triatomid bugs are limited

Fig. 77.13 Bedbug *(Cimex lectularius)*. (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London.)

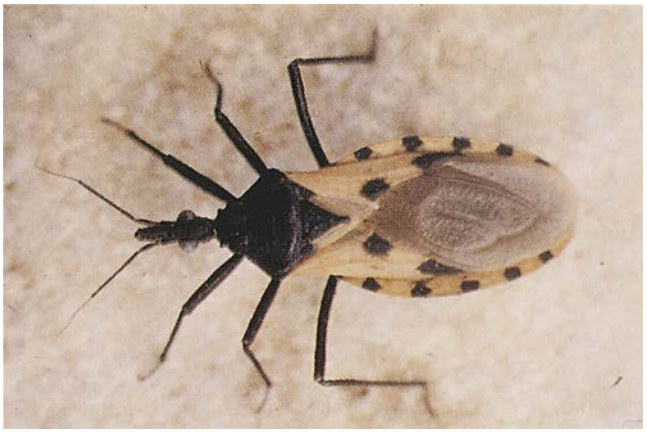


Fig. 77.14 Triatomid bug. (From Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London; courtesy Dr. D. Minter.)

to the Americas. Bedbugs hide during the day in cracks and crevices of wooden furniture, under loose wallpaper, in the tufts of mattresses, and in box springs. Triatomid bugs live in the cracks and crevices of walls and in thatched roofs. Bedbugs do not play a role in the transmission of human disease; however, triatomid bugs are important vectors of Chagas disease (see Table 77.2 and Chapter 73).

Clinical Syndromes

The bites of bedbugs and triatomid bugs produce lesions that range from small red marks to hemorrhagic bullae. Bedbugs tend to bite in linear fashion on the trunk and arms, whereas triatomid bugs bite with higher frequency on the face. The classic periorbital edema secondary to a triatomid bite is known as the **Romaña sign.** The intensity of reaction to a bite depends on the degree of sensitization of the patient. In addition to causing local lesions, repeated exposure to bedbug bites may (rarely) lead to anaphylactic reactions or more often be associated with nervous disorders and sleeplessness in children and adults.

Diagnosis

The pattern and location of bites suggest bedbugs or triatomid bugs. The detection of tiny spots of blood on bedding or the dead insects themselves is frequently the first sign of bedbug infestation.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

Topical palliatives are appropriate for the relief of pruritus. Antihistamines may be indicated if dermatitis is severe. Control consists of proper hygiene and the environmental applications of insecticides. Control of bedbug infestations has become more challenging because of the development of resistance to commonly used insecticides.

STINGING INSECTS

Physiology and Structure

The order Hymenoptera comprises the bees, wasps, hornets, and ants. The modified ovipositor of the female, the apparatus for egg laying, serves as a stinging organ and is used for defense or to capture prey for food. Members of Hymenoptera are known for their complex social systems, castes, and elaborate hive or nest structures.

Epidemiology

Of the hymenopterans, the bees, or Apidae, live in complex social organizations, such as hives or in less structured underground nests. Only honeybees and bumblebees are of concern to humans because of their ability to sting. The Vespidae include wasps, hornets, and yellow jackets; all are aggressive insects and a major cause of stings in humans. In the act of stinging, the aroused insect inserts the sheath to open the wound. The thrust of the stylets and injection of venom immediately follow.

One group of ants of concern in the United States is the **fire ant**, *Solenopsis invicta.* Fire ants are particularly common in the southeastern states. They are well camouflaged in large, hard-crusted mounds and attack when disturbed. They bite their victim with strong mandibles and then sting repeatedly.

Clinical Syndromes

An estimated 50 to 100 people die each year in the United States from reactions to stings of the hymenopterans. Severe toxic reactions, such as fever and muscle cramps, can be caused by as few as 10 stings. Allergic reactions are the most serious consequence, but others include pain, edema, pruritus, and a heat sensation at the site of the sting. Anaphylactic shock from bee stings has resulted in death in some instances.

Treatment, Prevention, and Control

No satisfactory treatment has been discovered for stings. If left in the wound, the sting apparatus should be removed immediately. The injection of epinephrine is sometimes necessary to counteract anaphylaxis (emergency kits are available by prescription for sensitive people). For the relief of local discomfort, calamine lotion or a topical corticosteroid cream for more severe local lesions is helpful.

Although there are no effective repellents against these insects, their nests can be destroyed with any of several commercially available insecticidal compounds. General avoidance of areas inhabited by hymenopterans is advised for sensitive people.

Bibliography

Binford, C.H., Connor, D.H., 1976. Pathology of Tropical and Extraordinary Diseases. Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, Washington, DC.

Hwang, S.W., et al., 2005. Bed bug infestations in an urban environment. Emerg. Infect. Dis. 11, 533–537.

John, D.T., Petri Jr., W.A., 2006. Markell and Voge's Medical Parasitology, ninth ed. WB Saunders, St Louis.

Najarian, H.H., 1967. Textbook of Medical Parasitology. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore.

Peters, W., 1992. A Colour Atlas of Arthropods in Clinical Medicine. Wolfe, London.

Strickland, G.T., 2000. Hunter's Tropical Medicine and Emerging Infectious Diseases, eighth ed. WB Saunders, Philadelphia.

Swanson, D.L., Vetter, R.S., 2005. Bites of brown recluse spiders and suspected necrotic arachnidism. N. Engl. J. Med. 352, 700–707.

Telford, S.R., Mathison, B.A., 2011. Arthropods of medical importance. In: Jorgensen, J.H., et al. (Ed.), Manual of Clinical Microbiology, tenth ed. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC.

Van Horn, K.G., et al., 1992. Copepods associated with a perirectal abscess and copepod pseudo-outbreaks in stools for ova and parasite examinations. Diagn. Microbiol. Infect. Dis. 15, 561–565.

This page intentionally left blank

Case Study and Questions

A 12-year-old boy presented with a 48-hour history of sleepiness, fatigue, and nausea. During the day before admission, he was unsteady while walking. On the day of admission, he developed diplopia and could neither stand nor walk without assistance. On physical examination, he was found to be drowsy but arousable. He was ataxic and had mild weakness of his arms and legs, but the deep tendon reflexes were brisk. Ocular convergence was poor, and there was coarse horizontal and slight vertical nystagmus. He had bilateral ptosis and bifacial weakness. An engorged tick, subsequently identified as *Dermacentor variabilis,* was found on his scalp.

1. What is the most likely diagnosis?
   a. Lyme disease
   b. Colorado tick fever
   c. Tick paralysis
   d. Guillain-Barré syndrome

2. What is the cause of this patient's signs and symptoms?

3. How would you treat this patient?

Answers

Answers

Chapter 2 Human Microbiome in Health and Disease

ANSWERS

1. The human genome consists of all the genes present in human chromosomes. These genes encode approximately 23,000 unique proteins. The microbiome genetic material includes all the genetic material present in the bacteria that live on and in us. This bacterial population contributes at least 100-fold more unique genes than the human genome.

2. Taxonomic diversity refers to the diverse population of bacterial species that compose the microbiome. The genetic diversity of this population refers to the number of unique protein-encoding genes in the microbiome. Whereas taxonomic diversity can be great (i.e., large number of different bacterial species in a community and highly variable from individual to individual), the genetic diversity is generally low in healthy individuals. This functional redundancy is necessary because the bacterial species perform a large number of critical functions to maintain health.

3. The core microbiome is the individual species of bacteria present in most individuals at a specific body site. The core microbiome typically consists of a small number of species but represents a large portion of the population. A large number of other bacterial species are less common in individuals and represent the minority population in the microbial community.

4. Diseases associated with microbiome dysbiosis include *Clostridium difficile* enterocolitis, inflammatory bowel disease, chronic wound infections, atopic dermatitis, vaginitis, and obesity.

Chapter 3 Sterilization, Disinfection, and Antisepsis

ANSWERS

1. There is not a uniform definition of *sterilization* or *disinfection.* In general, *sterilization* represents the total destruction of all microbes, including the more resilient forms such as bacterial spores, mycobacteria, nonenveloped viruses, and fungi. Examples of agents used for sterilization are ethylene oxide, hydrogen peroxide, peracetic acid, and glutaraldehyde. *Disinfection* results in the destruction of most organisms, although the more resilient microbes can survive some disinfection procedures. Examples of disinfectants include moist heat, hydrogen peroxide, and phenolic compounds. *Antisepsis* is used to reduce the number of microbes on skin surfaces. Examples of antiseptic agents include alcohols, iodophors, chlorhexidine, parachlorometaxylenol, and triclosan.

2. Disinfection is subdivided into high level, intermediate level, and low level. High-level disinfectants include moist heat, glutaraldehyde, hydrogen peroxide, peracetic acid, and chlorine compounds. Intermediate-level disinfectants include alcohols, iodophor compounds, and phenolic compounds. Low-level disinfectants include quaternary ammonium compounds. Although some agents are used for both sterilization and disinfection, the difference is the concentration of the agent and duration of treatment. The types of disinfectants used are determined by the nature of the material to be disinfected and how it will be used. If the material will be used for an invasive procedure but cannot withstand sterilization procedures (e.g., endoscopes, surgical instruments that cannot be autoclaved), then a high-level disinfectant would be used. Intermediate-level disinfectants are used to clean surfaces and instruments on which contamination with highly resilient organisms is unlikely. Low-level disinfectants are used to clean noncritical instruments and devices (e.g., blood pressure cuffs, electrodes, stethoscopes).

3. The effectiveness of moist heat is greatest when applied under pressure. This allows the temperature to be elevated. Other factors that determine the effectiveness of moist heat are the duration of exposure and penetration of the steam into the contaminated material (determined by load size and flow rate of steam). Dry heat is effective if applied at a high temperature for a long duration. Ethylene oxide sterilization is a slow process that is influenced by the concentration of the gas, relative humidity, exposure time, and temperature. The effectiveness improves with a higher concentration of ethylene oxide, elevated temperatures, and a relative humidity of 30%.

4. Iodine compounds precipitate proteins and oxidize essential enzymes. Examples include tincture of iodine and povidone-iodine (iodine complexed with polyvinylpyrrolidone). Chlorine compounds are strong oxidizing agents, although the precise mechanism of action is not well defined. Examples include elemental chlorine, hypochlorous acid, and hypochlorite ion. The most common commercial chlorine compound is bleach. Phenolic compounds act by disrupting lipid-containing membranes, resulting in a leakage of cellular contents. Examples include phenol (carbolic acid), *o*-phenylphenol, *o*-benzyl-*p*-chlorophenol, and *p-tert*-amyl-phenol. Quaternary ammonium compounds also denature cell membranes and include benzalkonium chloride and cetylpyridinium chloride.

Chapter 4 Microscopy and In Vitro Culture

ANSWERS

1. In **brightfield microscopy**, visible light passes through a condenser, then through the object under observation, and finally through a series of lenses to magnify the image. This method is the most commonly used microscopic technique to examine specimens placed on glass slides. **Darkfield microscopy** uses the same series of lenses as brightfield microscopy; however, a special condenser is used to illuminate the subject material from an oblique angle, thus the subject is brightly illuminated against a black background. This method is used to detect organisms that are too thin to be observed by brightfield microscopy (e.g., *Treponema,* the etiologic agent of syphilis). **Phase-contrast microscopy** illuminates objects with parallel beams of light that move out of phase relative to each other. This allows objects to appear as three-dimensional structures and is useful for observing internal structures. **Fluorescent microscopy** uses high-pressure mercury, halogen, or xenon vapor lamps that emit a short wavelength of light to illuminate the object. A series of filters block heat and infrared light and select a specific wavelength of light emitted by the object. This "fluorescence" is observed as a brightly illuminated object against a dark background. This technique is very useful for organisms with natural fluorescence (e.g., *Legionella*) and organisms stained with specific fluorescent dyes (e.g., *Mycobacterium*).

2. Methods of direct microscopic examination include suspending the sample in water (e.g., wet mount for fungi) or a contrasting dye (e.g., lactophenol cotton blue for fungi or iodine for parasites). Differential stains are used commonly to detect bacteria (e.g., Gram stain, acid-fast stain), parasites (e.g., iron hematoxylin and trichrome stains), and blood-borne pathogens (e.g., Giemsa stain for *Borrelia* and *Plasmodium*). A variety of acid-fast stain methods have been developed (e.g., Ziehl-Neelsen, Kinyoun, fluorochrome) that detect bacteria (*Mycobacterium, Nocardia*, and *Rhodococcus*) and parasites (*Cryptosporidium, Cyclospora*, and *Isospora*). Common fluorescent stains have been used to detect fungi (calcofluor white stain) or acid-fast organisms (auramine-rhodamine stain).

3. Biology of the organism (Does the organism have special growth requirements or require supplementation of the medium with growth factors?), site of the infection (Is the submitted specimen from the area of infection?), patient's immune response to the infection (Is the organism inactivated or killed by the patient's immune response?), and quality of the culture medium.

4. Blood agar, chocolate agar, and thioglycolate broth.

5. MacConkey agar, mannitol salt agar, xylose lysine deoxycholate agar.

Chapter 5 Molecular Diagnosis

ANSWERS

1. The gene for 16S ribosomal RNA is amplified by PCR using universal primers that recognize large groups of bacteria, and then specific sequences within the gene are amplified and sequenced to determine individual bacteria and strains.

2. The gene for 16S ribosomal RNA is amplified by PCR using universal primers that recognize large groups of bacteria, and then specific sequences within the gene are amplified and sequenced to determine individual bacteria and strains.

3. RNA can be isolated from the samples, converted to DNA with reverse transcriptase, and then amplified with a mixture of defined DNA primers by PCR (RT-PCR). The presence of specific viral sequences can then be detected by PCR using virus-specific primers.

4. Quantitative RT-PCR can be used to determine the number of genome copies.

5. In situ hybridization can be used to demonstrate the presence of HPV DNA sequences within the cells of the Pap smear. PCR assays also are available that detect, quantitate, and genotype HPV in cervical swab specimens.

6. In situ hybridization can be used to demonstrate the presence of CMV DNA sequences within the cells in the urine. PCR also can be used to detect viral sequences in the urine or the baby's blood.

7. Viral genome sequences can be detected by RT-PCR analysis of RNA isolated from blood. Specific target genes can subsequently be amplified and then sequenced to determine the basis for the resistance.

Chapter 6 Serologic Diagnosis

ANSWERS

1. Sodium dodecyl sulfate–polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) to separate the proteins and Western blot to identify the HIV proteins are appropriate.

2. Genome detection methods, such as in situ hybridization on the Pap smear or a polymerase chain reaction (PCR) of extracts from the cells obtained during the procedure, can be used because virus proteins would be undetectable.

3. Cytopathologic effects, such as syncytia or Cowdry type A inclusion bodies, can be seen in Pap smears. Genome detection methods, such as in situ hybridization on the Pap smear or a PCR of DNA obtained from the cells or immunologic methods to detect virus antigen, can be used to detect evidence of the virus.

4. An Ouchterlony antibody diffusion or ELISA method can be used to detect fungal antigens.

5. Flow cytometry using immunofluorescence is probably the best method for identifying and quantitating CD4 and CD8 T cells.

6. ELISA is used to detect the presence and titer of anti-HIV antibody as a screening procedure for the blood supply. Western blot analysis with patient serum can be used as a qualitative means to confirm ELISA results.

7. PCR or genome sequencing can be used to detect genetic differences between strains or types of HSV.

8. Reverse transcriptase PCR and sequencing can be used to distinguish two parainfluenza viruses.

9. Rotavirus in stool can be quantitated by ELISA. During infection, there is a large enough amount of virus to be visualized by immune electron microscopy which is a qualitative method.

10. Group A *Streptococcus* can be detected by ELISA techniques, including rapid methods (similar to the over-the-counter pregnancy tests) for detecting streptolysin A and S. Fancier techniques, such as pulsed-field gel electrophoresis of restriction fragments of the chromosome and PCR, can be used to distinguish different strains. Technology is also available to sequence portions of the genome of the different strains for comparison.

Chapter 7 Elements of Host Protective Responses

ANSWERS

1. The macrophage is a phagocyte that is activated by IFN-γ and then becomes efficient at killing phagocytized (ingested) microbes and producing cytokines.

2. The lymph node is a repository for B and T cells. Evidence of infection is brought by the lymphatics or DCs and other APCs to the lymph node to activate the T cells to communicate with other cells through cytokines (like a radio) to be dispatched to take care of the problem.

3. The CD4 *T* cell is presented with the microbial problem by APCs, and it *tells* other cells to take care of the problems by producing cytokines.

4. The CD8 T cell gets activated in the lymph node and then moves to the periphery to patrol for virus-infected or tumor cells; it then grabs the perpetrator and inactivates it with an apoptotic hug.

5. Pre–B cells and B cells alter the DNA of their immunoglobulin genes to produce the genetic plans for a specific immunoglobulin, which is produced by that cell with slight modifications (somatic mutation) and a model change (class switch) when the market (T-cell–derived cytokines) tells them it is necessary, without changing the general theme of the product (variable region).

6. The plasma cell is an immunoglobulin-producing factory with a small office (nucleus) and many assembly lines (ribosomes) for making antibody.

7. The mast cell has Fc receptors for IgE that will trigger the release of histamines and other agents on binding to an allergen signal.

8. The neutrophil is very effective at phagocytosis and killing bacteria.

9. The *d*endritic cell phagocytoses antigen, processes the antigen into peptides, and brings it to the lymph node to *display*, initiate and *direct the nature of the* CD4 and CD8 T-cell responses.

Chapter 8 Innate Host Responses

ANSWERS

1. See the following table:

Factor	Action
Antimicrobial peptides	Killing of microbe
Complement: MAC	Kills gram-negative bacteria
Complement: C3b	Opsonization
Complement: C3d	Activates B cells
Complement: "a" fragments C3a, C4a, C5a	Attraction, activation and anaphylaxis
Lectins	Opsonization
C-reactive protein	Opsonization
Cytokines	Activation of responses
Chemokines	Attraction of leukocytes

MAC, Membrane attack complex.

2. Neutrophils leave the bone marrow ready to attack. Neutrophils are phagocytic and the major antibacterial response. Their granules are filled with antimicrobial substances and enzymes that are released into endosomes and leak from the cell on phagocytosis of a microbe. Neutrophils kill bacteria with antimicrobial substances from their granules and reactive oxygen species. They also release NETs of DNA to ensnare bacteria. Neutrophils are the first to be attracted to an infection and have a very short half-life. Monocytes enter later than neutrophils and mature into macrophages. Resident macrophages will also respond. Activation of macrophages with IFN-γ and TNF-α produced by ILC1 cells or T cells become M1 macrophages and maintain inflammatory antimicrobial activity. Macrophages have a long life span. M1 macrophages produce acute-phase cytokines, IL-12, and antibacterial substances such as reactive oxygen molecules, NO, and enzymes. Macrophages are also antigen-presenting cells and use the peptides presented on MHC II molecules to recruit and activate T-cell help. The M1 macrophages may progress to M2 to facilitate healing and resolution of the infection and its damage. M2 macrophages develop in the presence of IL-4, are also phagocytic, and promote wound healing and angiogenesis. DCs are the only cells that can initiate an immune response by activating naive T cells. The iDCs are also an early warning system that releases cytokines and chemokines appropriate to the microbial trigger, which will facilitate other host protections. Langerhans cells are a skin-resident DC that can also move to the lymph node to activate naive T cells. DCs are a bridge between the innate and the immune response.

3. The lipid A (endotoxin) of the LPS from the outer membrane of the enteric (probably *Escherichia coli*) bacteria in the blood binds to TLR4 on macrophages and other cells to activate the production of acute-phase cytokines (TNF-α, IL-1, and IL-6). TNF-α and IL-1 are endogenous pyrogens that promote fever production. These cytokines also induce other systemic effects. These bacteria will also activate the alternate and lectin pathways of complement, and the "a" components (C3a, C4a, and C5a) will also trigger systemic inflammatory responses.

4. The *S. aureus* infection triggers release of bactericidal peptides from epithelial and other cells, complement activation, and release of C3a and C5a to act as chemotactic and anaphylactic substances to attract neutrophils and, later, macrophages to the site. LTA will activate TLR2 to promote TNF-α and IL-1 production by macrophages, which will further promote the inflammation. Dead neutrophils produce pus.

Chapter 9 Antigen-Specific Immune Responses

ANSWERS

1. IgM molecules cannot cross the placenta. IgG binds to the FcRn (the neonatal Fc receptor for IgG), which promotes bidirectional passage across epithelial membranes.

2. Native immunoglobulin and $F(ab')_2$ molecules are divalent or multivalent and can bind to more than one cell-surface molecule, which will cross-link the cell surface.

3. IgG is produced at least 8 days after a first-time infection, and its production requires T-cell help. IgG could be present from a previous infection but not for a new strain. IgM is produced early in an infection as part of a primary response and is a good indication of a first-time infection, but 2 days after symptoms may be too early to even detect IgM.

4. Although IgG production requires T-cell help and will not be present, IgM will be present. IgM fixes complement very well and the patient is not at extensive risk for serious extracellular bacterial infections, but the patient will be at higher risk for intracellular, viral, and fungal infections. A deficiency in T cells will not affect the function or amount of complement.

5. Differentiation to a B cell requires successful recombination of the VDJ segments of the variable region, but this occurs without T-cell help. The inability to promote recombination of immunoglobulin and TCR sequences would cause severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome.

6. IgD and IgE are in very small quantities in serum; both are predominately cell associated, IgD as a membrane protein and IgE bound to its receptor on mast cells. If the person can make IgM and IgG, then he or she can make IgD because the immunoglobulin gene sequence is producing the Fc portions in the order of IgM, IgD, IgG, IgE, and IgA. It would be unlikely that a lack of expression of IgD would occur without a lack in all the rest of the genes.

Chapter 10 Immune Responses to Infectious Agents

ANSWERS

1. a. A TH2 response, which is predominantly an antibody response, will be generated to the bolus of tetanus toxoid protein presented in an "unnatural" manner. Lymph will bring the antigen to lymph nodes, in which DCs will present the protein to CD4 T cells in the absence of an inflammatory response. CD4 T cells will initiate a TH2 response and make IL-4, IL-5, IL-10, and IL-13 and present antigen to B cells to promote class switching, somatic mutation, and plasma cell production. Initial IgM production with transition to IgG production. Memory will not be efficient and regular boosters are required. The antibody that is produced will neutralize the toxin to prevent disease and facilitate phagocytosis and removal of the protein.

   b. The capsular polysaccharide will interact with surface IgM on B-1 B cells. B-1 B cells are natural B cells that originate from the fetal liver, make IgM to polysaccharides and other molecules, and proliferate on binding antigen. As a polysaccharide antigen, the response will be limited to IgM and IgM-producing plasma cells with poor memory because there is no protein in the immunogen to elicit T-cell help and a germinal center reaction. The response is transient. The antibody opsonizes the bacteria and promotes its clearance by phagocytes, especially macrophages in the spleen.

   c. The attenuated measles virus in the vaccine will activate IFN-α responses in the infected cell that will activate ILC1, NK, and NKT-cell responses, which will make small amounts of IFN-γ. DCs will become activated, process the measles viral proteins, move to the lymph node, and present antigen to CD4 and CD8 T cells while producing IL-12 to promote the generation of more IFN-γ by these TH1 cells. Production of IL-2 by CD4 T cells will promote the growth of T and B cells, including CD8 T cells. IFN-γ will also promote a class switch for B cells from IgM to IgG production. Later, the response will include a TH2 response with the maturation of the IgG response. Long-term memory cells will also be elicited. The immune response will block infection, disease, and spread of the virus. The vaccine is given after 1 year of age, and a booster immunization is necessary before high school years.

2. Characteristics of immunodeficiency diseases

Immunodeficiency Disease	Immune Defect	Susceptibility to Specific Infections
Chédiak-Higashi syndrome	Impaired release of lysosome contents into phagosome, delayed killing of phagocytized bacteria	Pyogenic infections (*Staphylococcus* and *Streptococcus*)
Chronic granulomatous disease	Inability to generate hydrogen peroxide for killing phagocytized bacteria	Recurrent infections with gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria, especially *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
Complement C5 deficiency	Decreased chemotaxis and bacterial killing	Bacterial infections
Complement C3 deficiency	Inhibition of complement cascade; C3 is the central actor for all the complement pathways	*Staphylococcus, Streptococcus,* and other gram-positive infections
Complement C1 deficiency	Inhibition of classical pathway	Bacterial infections
Complement C6, C7, C8, or C9 deficiency	Inability to form membrane attack complex	*Neisseria* infections
IgA deficiency	Genetic defect; insufficient cytokine production; mutation in J or secretory chains	Respiratory and gastrointestinal infections
X-linked agammaglobulinemia	CD40 deficiency (T-cell help disorder); defective pre–B-cell maturation	Bacterial and other infections; cannot undergo immunoglobulin class switch
X-linked T-cell deficiency	Defective receptor shared by IL-2, IL-7, IL-4, IL-9, or IL-15 cytokines or signaling from the receptor	Intracellular bacteria, viruses (especially herpes, JC), and fungi; inability to undergo immunoglobulin class switch
AIDS	CD4 T-cell infection by HIV, leading to their death	Intracellular bacteria, viruses (especially herpes, JC), fungi, and some parasites
DiGeorge syndrome	Lack of thymus and therefore lack of T cells	Intracellular bacteria, viruses (especially herpes, JC), and fungi; cannot undergo immunoglobulin class switch

Chapter 11 Antimicrobial Vaccines

ANSWERS

1. Inactivated vaccines are used when attenuated vaccines cannot be generated safely or when an antibody response is sufficient for protection. For rabies, influenza, and polio, antibody is sufficient to neutralize the virus and prevent spread. For HiB, antibody promotes opsonization and clearance of the bacteria; and for diphtheria, tetanus and pertussis, antibody neutralizes the toxin to prevent disease.

2. Treatment by passive immunization with antibody is like treating the infection with a drug that blocks the action of the tetanus toxin; it is immediate but lasts only approximately 2 months, until the antibody is cleared from the system. Active immunization establishes plasma cells that produce an antibody response that lasts longer and is stronger but takes time to establish.

3. The inactivated polio vaccine elicits a predominantly IgG antibody (TH2) response. This antibody does not prevent infection but it is sufficient to block progression of a poliovirus in the bloodstream from reaching its target tissue (muscle and brain), preventing the disease.

   The oral vaccine infects the individual with attenuated mutants of the three types (current vaccines only contain two types) of poliovirus to initiate a natural response to each virus, including a secretory IgA response. The IgA neutralizes any virus produced in the gastrointestinal tract, preventing it from entering the body and infecting other cells or other people. The development of memory cells is stronger and more permanent with the oral vaccine. Both vaccines prevent spread of the virus to its target tissues,

4. Vaccines to these microbes have not been developed for the following reasons:
   Rhinovirus: too many serotypes, other viruses cause similar diseases, and the disease is not life-threatening.
   Herpes simplex virus: protection requires antibody- and cell-mediated immunity but must block the initial infection to prevent spread to the neuron and establishment of latency. The virus hides from antibody by passing to other cells through the cell–cell junctions and by cell fusion (other vaccines need only block viremic spread). Attenuated viruses have not yet been developed that are sufficiently safe.
   Respiratory syncytial virus: antibody- and cell-mediated immunity must be elicited; the virus can spread from cell to cell and escape antibody control; and although there are limited strains, multiple viruses can cause similar disease.

5. These agents cause significant morbidity and mortality in the infected individual. There are limited serotypes for these agents, and stabile, safe, and relatively inexpensive vaccines can be developed.

Measles and smallpox are major killers for which there is only one serotype of virus. In addition, smallpox always causes visible disease, which allows quarantine to facilitate the success of its vaccine program and the elimination of the virus.

Mumps is problematic but usually not life-threatening; there is only one serotype, and an effective live vaccine was developed and can be administered with the measles and rubella vaccines.

The rubella vaccine was developed to establish herd immunity to reduce transmission to pregnant women and their fetus to prevent congenital disease. Again, there is only one serotype.

Tetanus vaccine is a toxoid that elicits antibody that prevents the action of the toxin. Booster immunizations are required. Tetanus is a prevalent life-threatening disease.

The acellular pertussis vaccine prevents whooping cough, which a deadly infection in young children. Increased onset of this disease in teens and adults has prompted development of a booster shot.

6. Immunization with the capsular polysaccharide for *S. pneumoniae* elicits T-cell–independent responses, IgM but not IgG antibody, and limited or no memory responses. The IgM is limited to the bloodstream. IgM opsonizes the bacteria facilitating clearance of the bacteria from the blood by spleen macrophages to prevent disease. The lung of the individual is **not** protected, and infection and spread of bacteria can occur. However, more *S. pneumoniae* types are represented in the polysaccharide vaccine to elicit broader protections for those at risk (elderly and asplenic individuals). Immunization with the conjugated polysaccharide vaccine for *S. pneumoniae* elicits T-cell–dependent immune responses that promote IgM and IgG (but not secretory IgA) and memory cell production. IgG can leak or be transported into the lung to limit the infection and spread of the bacteria. Immunity lasts much longer and does not require frequent booster immunizations.

Chapter 12 Bacterial Classification, Structure, and Replication

ANSWERS

1. *Size:* The smaller size of prokaryotes allows them to enter smaller spaces, which also means that the cells have a smaller chromosome.

   Nuclear structures: Lack of a nuclear membrane allows chromosome replication, transcription, and translation to be tied together. Inhibition of any one of them affects the others to a greater degree than for eukaryotes.

   Chromosomes: Most bacterial chromosomes are single, circular genomes. As a circular chromosome, topoisomerases are very important to relieve stress on the structure and maintain its function. As a result, these enzymes are excellent targets for antibacterial drugs (e.g., fluoroquinolones). Having only one copy of each gene (haploid genome) instead of a diploid genome means that a single mutation will inactivate a function because there is no "backup copy."

   Cytoplasmic structures: Prokaryotes lack organelles, but this does not have a big effect on bacterial infection and treatment.

   Ribosomes: The 70S (50S + 30S) provides an excellent target for antibacterial drugs because it differs so significantly from the 80S eukaryotic ribosome.

   Cytoplasmic membrane: The prokaryotic membrane contains different phospholipids. The bacterial membrane also provides the energy-generating functions of the mitochondria by maintaining a membrane potential to drive adenosine triphosphate (ATP) synthesis and provide energy for transport, motility and other functions.

   Cell wall: The bacterial cell wall is a complex structure containing protein, lipids, and peptidoglycan, which is unique to bacteria. The cell wall provides sufficient strength against osmotic shock to allow bacteria to exist in distilled water. It contains structures that promote interactions with tissues and target cells to promote and define the types of infections and diseases caused by bacteria; the enzymes that synthesize these structures are sufficiently unique to be excellent targets for antibacterial drugs (e.g., β-lactams, vancomycin, bacitracin).

2. The thickness of the gram-positive membrane facilitates its identification by the Gram stain by trapping the stain, whereas the gram-negative peptidoglycan is only a single layer thick, and the stain washes away during the procedure, requiring use of a counterstain. The LPS present in the outer membrane is the most potent activator of innate and immune host cell functions of any cell wall component and can induce fever and sepsis. As such, gram-negative bacteria are more likely to induce fever and sepsis than gram-positive bacteria. The presence of the outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria provides a unique barrier to complement and to the permeability of large and hydrophobic molecules, and it protects the peptidoglycan and other internal bacterial structures from degradative enzymes and antibacterial drugs.

3. Protection from immune responses:
   - The thick peptidoglycan of gram-positive bacteria prevents, and the O antigen of LPS of gram-negative bacteria limits, access of the complement membrane attack complex from the membrane surface.
   - The capsule protects against antibody, complement, and phagocytosis.
   - Proteins may inhibit specific functions (e.g., *Staphylococcus* protein A binds the Fc portion of immunoglobulin (Ig)G; M protein of *Streptococcus* is antiphagocytic).

Toxic responses:
- The lipid A portion of LPS provides the endotoxin activity and is a potent activator of Toll-like receptor 4 and other receptors to activate innate, immune, and inflammatory responses.
- Teichoic acid, peptidoglycan, and other cell wall components are weaker activators of pathogen pattern receptors.
- Flagellin also is an activator of a pathogen pattern receptor (Toll-like receptor 5).

4. Inhibition of peptidoglycan synthesis inhibits cell wall production and bacterial growth. Peptidoglycan is constantly being degraded, rebuilt, and reshaped. Inhibition of peptidoglycan synthesis does not prevent these autolytic processes; therefore the peptidoglycan IN A GROWING CELL will continue to degrade, become weakened, and promote the lysis of the cell.

   On inhibition of peptidoglycan synthesis by β-lactams, vancomycin, or bacitracin, the UDP-NAG-NAM-pentapeptide (the precursor with a terminal D-ala-D-ala) will build up in the cytoplasm because the chain is not extended (β-lactams, vancomycin) or because the bactoprenol translocation system is inhibited.

5. Spores are more resistant because they are not growing; they are desiccated, and they are covered with multilayers of a peptidoglycan-like material and a keratin-like protein coat.

6. EDTA will disrupt gram-negative outer membranes by removing the Mg and Ca divalent cations that bridge the phosphates of LPS units and hold them together, but it will have a minimal effect on gram-positive bacteria.

   Mild detergent will affect gram-positive bacteria to a greater extent than it affects gram-negative bacteria because the outer membrane of the latter provides some protection.

   Lysozyme will degrade the peptidoglycan of gram-positive bacteria, causing them to lyse in water, whereas the outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria poses a barrier and is a protection from lysozyme.

   Transpeptidase will have no effect on either bacterium.

   Ampicillin will inhibit peptidoglycan synthesis of both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria because it can pass through the porin channels of the gram-negative outer membrane.

Chapter 13 Bacterial Metabolism and Genetics

ANSWERS

1. *Glycolysis:* During fermentation, each mole of glucose yields two moles of ATP and two moles of NADH. Conversion of pyruvate to acetyl-CoA produces two more NADH.

   TCA cycle: two moles GTP (equivalent to ATP) are produced plus two moles $FADH_2$ and six moles NADH, which are fed into the electron transport system.

   Electron transport: The two $FADH_2$ (four ATP) and six NADH (18 ATP) plus the two GTP (equivalent to two ATP) from the TCA cycle plus the two NADH (6 ATP) from glycolysis and the two NADH (six ATP) from conversion of pyruvate to acetyl-CoA and the two ATP from glycolysis add up to 38 ATP.

   Anaerobic conditions: Glycolysis occurs in a process called fermentation without respiration. This is not an efficient process. Anaerobic respiration can occur with electron acceptors other than oxygen, but the yield of ATP for each electron inserted into the electron transport chain is less for these electron acceptors.*Aerobic conditions:* Glycolysis, TCA cycle, and electron transport occur under aerobic conditions. This is the most efficient process for conversion of glucose to energy.

2. Anaerobic fermentation produces lactic, acetic, and SCFAs; CO_2; and hydrogen. The detrimental effect of these actions is seen in gas gangrene.

3. $N_t = 1000 \times 2^{480\ \text{min}/20\ \text{min}}$
   $N_t = 1000 \times 2^{24}$
   $N_t = 1000 \times 16{,}777{,}216$

4. A plasmid is extrachromosomal circular DNA with an origin of replication (allows replication) and often contains genes for antibiotic resistance, metabolism of unusual molecules (e.g., *Pseudomonas*), or virulence.

5. *Repression:* A repressor protein binds to the promoter sequence and prevents the polymerase from binding. For the *lac* operon, the repressor prevents expression of the gene unless lactose is present. Binding of lactose to the repressor causes it to dissociate from the DNA.

   Induction: The CAP protein binds cAMP to form a complex that enhances gene expression. cAMP is produced when levels of glucose are depleted to indicate a metabolic problem. This would enhance the expression of the *lac* operon in the presence of galactose.

   Attenuation: Translation of a protein can regulate the transcription of the gene because there is no nuclear membrane to separate these processes. The amount of tryptophan in a cell will determine the rate of synthesis of a test mRNA and peptide, which will determine whether the mRNA forms a hairpin loop. The loop will stop transcription.

6. Types of mutations:
   - Transition: purine to purine
   - Transversion: pyrimidine purine to purine
   - Missense: change in amino acid in protein
   - Nonsense: change codon to insert a stop codon into the protein
   - Frameshift: inserts or deletes one or two nucleotides to disrupt the reading of nucleotide codons
   - Null: destroys protein function (e.g., nonsense, frameshift)

   Agents:
   - DNA-reactive chemicals: alter chemical structure of nucleotide base, which may alter nucleotide pairing and cause misreading of the gene

- Frameshift mutagens: molecules (ethidium bromide) intercalate into the DNA to change the way the bases stack and interact within the double helix
- Nucleotide base analogs: cause misreading of the gene
- Radiation: produces free radicals, which alters the chemical structure of the nucleotide base
- Ultraviolet light: causes thymidine dimers, which require excision and repair

7. *Transformation:* acquisition of DNA from the extracellular space, which becomes part of the chromatin
   Transduction: infection by a bacteriophage that has acquired DNA sequences from another bacteria
   Conjugation: transfer of DNA via a sex pilus
   Transposition: acquisition of a transposon that inserts into the chromosome

8. Genetic engineering has been used to isolate genes for hormones (e.g., growth hormone, insulin), viral genes for vaccines (e.g., hepatitis B virus), and cytokine genes (e.g., interferon [IFN]-α, IFN-γ). These genes have been cloned into plasmids and expressed in large quantities to produce these proteins as drugs. In addition, DNA vaccines have been prepared in which viral or other genes are inserted into plasmids that can be expressed in mammalian cells. Expression of the gene and its protein in the vaccinated person will lead to the development of an immune response.

Chapter 14 Mechanisms of Bacterial Pathogenesis

ANSWERS

1. (1) Ingestion. Examples: *Salmonella, Shigella, Bacillus cereus, E. coli, Vibrio* species
   (2) Inhalation. Examples: *Mycobacterium* species, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Legionella* species, *Bordetella, Streptococcus, Chlamydia pneumoniae*
   (3) Arthropod bite. Examples: *Rickettsia, Ehrlichia, Coxiella, Francisella, Borrelia burgdorferi*

See Table 14.1 for more examples.

2. Encapsulation. Example: antiphagocytic: *S. pneumoniae*
   Intracellular growth. Example: *Francisella tularensis*
   Antiimmunoglobulin proteases. Example: *N. gonorrhoeae*
   IgG binding proteins. Example: *Staphylococcus* protein A
   Inhibition of phagolysosome fusion. Example: *Legionella, M. tuberculosis*
   Resistance to lysosomal enzymes. Example: *S. typhimurium*

3. (1) Degradative enzymes. Example: α-toxin (phospholipase C from *C. perfringens*)
   (2) A-B toxins. Example: tetanus toxoid
   (3) Superantigens: toxic shock syndrome toxin from *S. aureus*

4. As of yet, there are no successful vaccines for *S. aureus.* A recent attempt is quadrivalent and elicits antibody against the coagulase, a manganese-binding protein, and two polysaccharide antigens of the capsule. The coagulase distinguishes the more virulent *S. aureus* from *S. epidermidis.* The manganese-binding protein sequesters the ion to protect the bacteria from oxidative killing in phagocytes. Antibody to the capsule facilitates phagocytosis. There are many other potential components that could be included in such a vaccine.

Chapter 16 Laboratory Diagnosis of Bacterial Diseases

ANSWERS

1. The success of obtaining a positive blood culture from a bacteremic or fungemic patient is directly related to the volume of blood cultured. Most clinically septic patients have less than one organism per milliliter of blood. The recommendation for optimum recovery of organisms is to collect 20 ml of blood from an adult patient for each blood culture and proportionally smaller volumes from children and neonates. Two to three blood cultures should be collected during a 24-hour period.

2. *S. pyogenes* (group A *Streptococcus*) is the most common cause of bacterial pharyngitis. Other bacteria that can cause pharyngitis include *S. dysgalactiae* (group C or G *Streptococcus*), *Arcanobacterium haemolyticum, N. gonorrhoeae, C. pneumoniae,* and *M. pneumoniae. C. diphtheriae* and *B. pertussis* can also cause pharyngitis but are uncommonly isolated in the United States.

3. Organisms that cause lower respiratory tract infections (e.g., pneumonia, bronchitis, lung abscess) frequently originate from the upper respiratory tract. The appropriate specimen for the diagnosis of a lower respiratory tract infection must be free of upper respiratory tract contamination. This is assessed in the clinical laboratory by examining the specimen for the presence of squamous epithelial cells. Specimens containing many squamous epithelial cells and no predominant bacteria in association with leukocytes should not be processed for culture.

4. Currently, NAATs are used to detect *N. gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis* in clinical specimens. A variety of commercial systems have been developed for this purpose. These methods are more sensitive than conventional culture techniques. Syphilis, caused by *T. pallidum,* is most commonly diagnosed by serologic methods. Darkfield microscopy can also be performed, but few laboratories have sufficient experience using this technique. The organism is too thin to be observed by Gram stain.

Chapter 17 Antibacterial Agents

ANSWERS

1. Penicillin interferes with cell wall synthesis by binding to specific PBPs, which are the regulatory enzymes (e.g., transpeptidases, transglycosylases, carboxypeptidases) responsible for construction of the peptidoglycan layer of the cell wall. Vancomycin also disrupts cell wall peptidoglycan synthesis, which in this case is gram-positive bacteria. This is accomplished by vancomycin interacting with the D-alanine-D-alanine termini of the pentapeptide side chains that form bridges between the peptidoglycan chains. Isoniazid disrupts the synthesis of mycolic acid, which is an important component of the cell wall in mycobacteria. Gentamicin, tetracycline, and erythromycin inhibit protein synthesis in bacteria. Gentamicin binds irreversibly to the 30S ribosomal proteins, leading to misreading of mRNA and premature release of the ribosome from mRNA. The tetracyclines bind reversibly to the 30S ribosomal subunits and block the binding of tRNA to the 30S ribosome–mRNA complex. Erythromycin, a macrolide antibiotic, binds reversibly to the 23S rRNA of the 50S ribosomal subunit and blocks polypeptide elongation. Polymyxin inserts into bacterial membranes, similar to detergents, by interacting with the lipopolysaccharides and phospholipids in the outer membrane, producing increased cell permeability. Ciprofloxacin, a fluoroquinolone, inhibits bacterial DNA topoisomerase type II (gyrase), which is required for DNA replication, recombination, and repair. Sulfamethoxazole is an antimetabolite that prevents synthesis of folic acid.

2. Bacteria can become resistant to β-lactam antibiotics by (1) degrading the antibiotic with β-lactamases; (2) modifying the target (i.e., PBP) so that either a new PBP is acquired by the organism or an existing PBP is altered, producing an enzymatically active PBP that is not recognized by the antibiotic; or (3) preventing access to the target by creating a permeability barrier (e.g., a change in porins in the gram-negative cell wall). ***S. aureus*** organisms become resistant to oxacillin and related β-lactams by acquiring a new PBP that is enzymatically active (e.g., can be used to build the peptidoglycan layer in the cell wall) but is not bound and inactivated by the antibiotic. ***S. pneumoniae*** organisms become resistant to penicillin when they acquire an altered PBP (through recombination). ***P aeruginosa*** can become resistant to imipenem by one of two mechanisms: (1) acquisition of a β-lactamase that degrades the carbapenem antibiotic or (2) alteration in the outer membrane of the cell wall (i.e., porin mutation) that prevents entry of the antibiotic into the cell.

3. Organisms can become resistant to aminoglycosides by (1) enzymatic modification of the antibiotic (the most common method), (2) decreased uptake of the antibiotic into the bacterial cell, (3) increased expulsion of the antibiotic from the cell, and (4) mutation of the ribosomal binding site.

4. Bacteria become resistant to quinolones by chromosomal mutations in the structural genes of the targets: DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV. Other less common methods include decreased drug uptake caused by mutations in the membrane permeability regulatory genes and overexpression of efflux pumps that actively eliminate the drug.

5. Trimethoprim interferes with folic acid metabolism by inhibiting dihydrofolate reductase, preventing conversion of dihydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate. Sulfonamides inhibit dihydropteroic acid synthase, which functionally also inhibits folic acid synthesis but at a different step.

Chapter 18 *Staphylococcus* and Related Gram-Positive Cocci

1. Coagulase, protein A, species-specific teichoic acid; the first two are commonly used for identification of *S. aureus.*

2. *S. aureus* can produce a number of cytotoxins, including alpha toxin, beta toxin (also called sphingomyelinase C), delta toxin, gamma toxin, and Panton-Valentine (P-V) leukocidin. The latter two are bicomponent toxins (composed of two protein chains). These toxins are able to destroy many host cells, including leukocytes, erythrocytes, fibroblasts, macrophages, and platelets.

3. Exfoliative toxins (staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome [SSSS]); enterotoxin (food poisoning; toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 [TSST-1]) toxic shock syndrome (TSS).

4. Penicillinase-resistant penicillins including methicillin, oxacillin, nafcillin, and dicloxacillin. Staphylococci resistant to these penicillins (frequently called methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* [MRSA]) are resistant to all β-lactam antibiotics (penicillins, cephalosporins, β-lactams/β-lactamase inhibitors, and carbapenems).

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. This patient has septic arthritis caused by *S. aureus.* The organism could have been introduced into the joint either by direct extension from the skin surface, by hematogenous spread, or when the synovial fluid was originally aspirated. Although transient bacteremia with *S. aureus* can occur, this is very uncommon. Therefore without evidence of a *S. aureus* infection at another site (e.g., endocarditis), the most likely source of this organism is direct extension from the skin surface. Even though the skin surface appeared to be unbroken, localized trauma of this nature can introduce organisms into the deeper skin tissues. Alternatively, bacteria on the skin surface could have been introduced into the joint when the accumulated fluid was originally aspirated.

2. Staphylococcal diseases can be subdivided into two categories: localized pyogenic infections and disseminated toxin-mediated infections. Cutaneous infections

(e.g., impetigo, folliculitis, furuncles, carbuncles), wound infections, endocarditis, pneumonia, empyema, osteomyelitis, and septic arthritis are examples of localized pyogenic infections. Each is characterized by localized tissue destruction and abscess formation. SSSS, TSS, and staphylococcal food poisoning are examples of toxin-mediated infections. Each is characterized by disseminated symptoms and an absence of purulence.

3. *S. aureus* produces a variety of potent toxins. The disseminated toxin-mediated diseases are characterized by production of a specific toxin or group of toxins that spread systemically in the blood and are responsible for the clinical symptoms: SSSS, exfoliative toxins (ETA, ETB); TSS, TSST-1; and food poisoning, enterotoxins (A-R). Five groups of cytolytic toxins are responsible for the tissue destruction characteristic of pyogenic staphylococcal infections: alpha toxin, beta toxin (sphingomyelinase C), delta toxin, gamma toxins (five different bicomponent toxins), and P-V leukocidin toxin. P-V leukocidin is associated with fulminant wound and pulmonary infections. A variety of staphylococcal enzymes have also been implicated in disease, including coagulases (bound and free), catalase, hyaluronidase, fibrinolysin (staphylokinase), lipases, nuclease, and β-lactamases.

4. Staphylococci are protected from phagocytosis by their capsule; a loosely bound slime layer consisting of monosaccharides, proteins, and small peptides, as well as protein A.

5. Effective treatment of staphylococcal infections requires drainage of purulent collections and effective antibiotics. Because resistance to antibiotics is common, antimicrobial susceptibility tests must be performed. Almost 90% of staphylococci produce β-lactamases, so penicillin G is ineffective. β-Lactamase–resistant penicillins (e.g., methicillin, oxacillin, nafcillin, dicloxacillin) are effective and considered the drugs of choice if the antibiotics are active against the bacteria. If resistance is determined (commonplace in many hospitals), vancomycin should be used to treat serious staphylococcal infections.

Chapter 19 *Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus*

1. *S. pyogenes* colonizes the oropharynx and skin surface and causes pharyngitis, skin and soft-tissue infections, and nonsuppurative infections (rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis); *S. agalactiae* colonizes the female genital tract and causes neonatal infections, as well as infections in pregnant women and older adults; *S. pneumoniae* colonizes the oropharynx and causes pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis media, and meningitis.

2. *Anginosus* group, abscess formation; *mitis* group, septicemia in neutropenic patients and endocarditis; *salivarius* group, endocarditis; *mutans* group, dental caries; and *bovis* group, bacteremia associated with gastrointestinal cancer and meningitis.

3. The bacteria are resistant to many commonly used antibiotics (oxacillin, cephalosporins, aminoglycosides, and vancomycin), so infections are most commonly seen in patients hospitalized for prolonged periods and receiving broad-spectrum antibiotics.

4. Staphylococci are catalase positive in contrast with streptococci and enterococci; enterococci are L-pyrrolidonyl arylamidase (PYR) positive, whereas most streptococci (except *S. pyogenes*) are PYR negative. The microscopic morphology of enterococci (gram-positive cocci in pairs) is also a distinguishing feature (staphylococci are in clusters, and most streptococci are in long chains).

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Disease caused by *S. pneumoniae* is most common in young children and the elderly, which are populations that are unable to mount protective antibodies against the pneumococcal capsules. Additionally, patients with underlying pulmonary disease, such as COPD in this patient, or an antecedent viral respiratory infection that compromises the protective clearance of the ciliated respiratory epithelium, are susceptible to pneumonia caused by this organism. Other infections caused by *S. pneumoniae* include otitis media (primarily in young children), sinusitis (all age groups), meningitis (all age groups but primarily in the young and elderly), and bacteremia (usually secondary to pneumonia or meningitis). Patients with conditions that interfere with bacterial clearance, such as alcoholism, asplenia, congestive heart disease, diabetes mellitus, and chronic renal disease, are at increased risk for disseminated disease.

2. *S. pneumoniae* is able to acquire, by transformation (exchange of DNA between bacteria), DNA-encoded altered penicillin-binding proteins (e.g., PBP2x, PBP2b, PBP1a). These new penicillin-binding proteins make the bacteria less susceptible to penicillins and some cephalosporins.

3. *S. pyogenes* (group A *Streptococcus*) causes both suppurative and nonsuppurative diseases. It is the most common cause of bacterial pharyngitis and the systemic complication of scarlet fever. Other suppurative diseases include pyoderma, erysipelas, cellulites, necrotizing fasciitis, lymphangitis, and pneumonia. Nonsuppurative diseases include rheumatic fever and acute glomerulonephritis. *S. agalactiae* (group B *Streptococcus*) is an important pathogen in neonates, causing early-onset disease (bacteremia, pneumonia, meningitis) and late-onset disease (bacteremia, meningitis). *S. agalactiae* also causes disease in pregnant women, most commonly urinary tract infections, but it also causes endocarditis, meningitis, and osteomyelitis. Elderly men and women are also susceptible to disease presenting as pneumonia, bone and joint infections, and skin and soft-tissue infections. *S. dysgalactiae* is most commonly associated with pharyngitis, which is occasionally complicated by acute glomerulonephritis (but not rheumatic fever as in the case of *S. pyogenes*). *S. anginosus* causes abscesses in deep

tissues, and the viridans streptococci cause a variety of diseases, most commonly subacute bacterial endocarditis, dental caries, and abscess formation.

4. The major virulence factor of *S. pneumoniae* is the capsule, which provides antiphagocytic protection. Protein adhesins on the surface of the bacteria facilitate colonization of the oropharynx by binding to epithelial cells. Phosphorylcholine, present in the bacterial cell wall, binds to the surface of a variety of cells (endothelial, leukocytes, platelets) and allows entry into these cells, in which the bacteria are protected from opsonization and phagocytosis. Teichoic acid, peptidoglycan fragments, and pneumolysin stimulate the inflammatory response, leading to abscess formation. *S. pyogenes* has a large array of virulence factors. Bacterial antigens (e.g., lipoteichoic acid, M proteins, F protein) mediate adherence to host cells. M proteins also function to avoid opsonization and phagocytosis of the bacteria. The bacteria also produce a variety of toxins and cytolytic enzymes, including pyogenic exotoxins, streptolysins (S and O), streptokinases (A and B), deoxyribonucleases (A to D), C5a peptidase, and hyaluronidase. *S. agalactiae* primarily produces disease in hosts that are unable to mount an anticapsular antibody response (neonates, elderly). The role of hydrolytic enzymes (e.g., deoxyribonucleases, hyaluronidase, neuraminidase, proteases, hemolysins) is unknown.

5. Streptococcal toxic shock is defined as any *S. pyogenes* infection associated with sudden onset of shock and organ failure (including renal impairment, coagulopathies, liver involvement, pulmonary disease, soft-tissue necrosis, generalized erythematous rash). In contrast to staphylococcal toxic shock, which is mediated by toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 (TSST-1), streptococcal disease is characterized by the presence of bacteria in the blood and involved tissues.

6. Rheumatic fever and acute glomerulonephritis are complications of *S. pyogenes* disease. Rheumatic fever is associated with streptococcal pharyngitis but not cutaneous infections. Acute glomerulonephritis is associated with both pharyngeal and pyodermal infections, but the specific strains responsible for the complication are different.

Chapter 20 *Bacillus*

1. The emetic form of food poisoning is associated with consumption of rice contaminated with *B. cereus.* Heat-stable enterotoxin is produced when the bacteria are able to grow in the rice. Because it is an intoxication, the incubation period and duration of illness are short. The diarrheal form of disease is associated with contaminated meat and vegetables. This disease form, characterized by diarrhea, nausea, and abdominal cramps, has a longer incubation and duration of illness because the bacteria replicate in the patient's intestine.

2. *B. cereus* eye infections are typically associated with traumatic injury to the eye, in which a soil-contaminated foreign body strikes the eye, introducing the bacteria into the eye. Disease progresses rapidly because of the tissue destruction caused by the necrotic toxin, cereolysin, and phospholipase C.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Because patients with inhalation anthrax have overwhelming sepsis, cultures of the blood are the most sensitive method for detecting the organism. Although relatively few bacteria produce disease with large numbers of organisms in the blood, *B. anthracis* is an exception. This is one of the few diseases in which a Gram stain of blood may reveal the organism. Patients with inhalation anthrax also may have meningeal symptoms. For this reason, cerebrospinal fluid should also be collected for Gram stain and culture. Although respiratory secretions are frequently collected, the yield from these specimens is relatively low.

2. *B. anthracis* has genes that encode three proteins: PA, EF, and LF. When PA combines with EF, edema toxin is formed, which causes an increase in intracellular cAMP levels and subsequent edema. When PA combines with LF, lethal toxin is formed, which causes cell death by an incompletely understood mechanism(s). The other virulence factor produced by *B. anthracis* is a polypeptide capsule consisting of poly-D-glutamic acid, which interferes with phagocytosis.

3. PA binds to specific host receptors that are present on many cells and tissues (e.g., brain, heart, intestine, lung, skeletal muscle, pancreas, macrophages). After binding to the receptors, a host protease cleaves PA, with a 63-kDa fragment retained on the cell surface. These fragments self-associate, forming a pore of seven fragments. This pore can then bind three molecules of either LF or EF. LF or EF is transported into the cell when they exert their effects. LF is a metalloprotease that cleaves MAP kinase kinases, leading to cell death by undefined mechanisms. EF is an adenylate cyclase that increases the intracellular cAMP levels, resulting in edema.

4. *B. cereus* produces two enterotoxins. The heat-stable, protease-resistant enterotoxin causes the emetic, or vomiting, form of disease by an unknown mechanism. The heat-labile enterotoxin is similar to enterotoxins produced by *V. cholerae* and *E. coli* and causes a diarrheal form of disease by stimulating the adenylate cyclase–cAMP system to hypersecrete fluids.

5. Conditions associated with *B. cereus* eye infections are (1) traumatic penetrating injuries of the eye with a soil-contaminated object and (2) contamination of intravenous drugs with *B. cereus.*

Chapter 21 *Listeria* and Related Gram-Positive Bacteria

1. *Listeria* infections are associated with ingestion of contaminated foods (e.g., cheese, milk, turkey, raw vegetables) or transplacental spread from mother to infant. The most common diseases are neonatal disease, bacteremia in pregnant women, and disseminated disease,

including meningitis in these populations and immunocompromised patients. *Erysipelothrix* infections are transmitted from colonized animals (e.g., swine, turkeys) to humans. Individuals working with animals are at greatest risk (e.g., butchers, meat processors, farmers, poultry workers, fish handlers, veterinarians). Most infections are localized cutaneous infections, although endocarditis can also occur.

2. The antimicrobial susceptibility pattern for *Listeria* is similar to that of enterococci (e.g., resistant to cephalosporins and oxacillin).

3. *Erysipelothrix* morphologically resembles gram-negative rods, so an accurate diagnosis can be delayed.

4. Diphtheria is prevented by actively immunizing people with diphtheria toxoid. In the United States, children are given five injections of the toxoid combined with pertussis and tetanus antigens (DPT vaccine), followed by booster vaccination with tetanus every 10 years. The disease is seen in countries in which a vaccination program is not established.

5. Observation of gram-positive rods in a throat exudate is not specific for *C. diphtheriae* because other *Corynebacterium* species are commonly observed in throat swabs. Although experienced microbiologists may have a high index of suspicion when the bacteria are observed in a stained specimen, the accuracy of this test would be low except in an outbreak situation. Likewise, infections typically remain localized to the throat lesions, so blood cultures are usually negative. Culture is the usual laboratory method for diagnosis of diphtheria. Demonstration of toxin production is important because nontoxigenic strains have been described. Alternatively, the gene that encodes the exotoxin can be detected by polymerase chain reaction (PCR)–based nucleic acid amplification.

6. The diphtheria exotoxin is responsible for clinical disease. This is an A-B toxin (two components) that binds to the surface of heart and nerve cells, producing cardiac and neurologic symptoms.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The most common gram-positive coccobacillus that causes meningitis in immunosuppressed patients is *L. monocytogenes. S. pneumoniae,* the most common cause of bacterial meningitis in the United States, should also be considered. Although *S. pneumoniae* is a gram-positive diplococcus, the elongated cells may be mistaken for short gram-positive rods (coccobacilli) by inexperienced microscopists. However, *Listeria* are motile and produce weak β-hemolysis on blood agar media, properties not shared with *S. pneumoniae.*

2. The most common sources of this organism are soft cheeses and cold cuts. *Listeria* can multiply in these food products to high concentrations, even when stored in a refrigerator. Other sources of this organism include contaminated milk and raw vegetables, such as cabbage.

3. *Listeria* is an intracellular pathogen, which allows it to avoid phagocytosis. Virulent strains also produce cell attachment factors and hemolysins. The ability of the organism to grow at cold temperatures enables small numbers of organisms to multiply to concentrations that can cause disease.

4. Treatment of *Listeria* infections is complicated because the organism is naturally resistant to many commonly used antibiotics, including the cephalosporins. The treatment of choice for serious infections is a combination of ampicillin or penicillin with an aminoglycoside. Antimicrobial susceptibility tests must be performed because increased resistance has been noted.

Chapter 22 *Mycobacterium* and Related Acid-Fast Bacteria

1. The two most common genera that stain with the modified acid-fast stain are *Mycobacterium* and *Nocardia.* Other modified acid-fast genera include *Rhodococcus, Gordonia,* and *Tsukamurella.*

2. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is the best known pathogen in the genus but is uncommon in the United States. Without a travel history outside the United States, this pathogen is not the likely cause of this patient's illness. More likely, the patient has an infection with another *Mycobacterium* species or *Nocardia.*

3. *M. tuberculosis* is most commonly associated with pulmonary disease. Disease can develop after exposure to the organism, or more commonly *M. tuberculosis* establishes a chronic infection that persists in the infected individual for life. The organism can become active as immunity wanes in old age or through disease, initiate replication, and produce disease. Other mycobacteria species are opportunistic pathogens, most commonly infecting immunocompromised patients but also individuals with chronic pulmonary disease, such as bronchiectasis. *M. fortuitum* and the other "rapidly growing" mycobacteria are opportunistic pathogens introduced into wounds or contaminating intravenous catheters. The most common diseases associated with *Nocardia* are pulmonary infections and primary or secondary cutaneous infections. *Rhodococcus* is most commonly responsible for pulmonary abscesses in immunocompromised patients (particularly HIV-infected patients), and *Gordonia* and *Tsukamurella* are opportunistic pathogens most commonly responsible for catheter-associated bacteremia.

4. All acid-fast organisms are relatively slow-growing bacteria, requiring incubation for 2 to 7 days *(Nocardia, Rhodococcus, Gordonia,* and *Tsukamurella)* to as long as 1 month *(Mycobacteria).* This is particularly problematic with sputum specimens in which more rapidly growing bacteria from the oropharynx may obscure the colonies of these organisms, so preprocessing of the specimen to eliminate rapidly growing bacteria and use of selective media are required for optimum recovery. Only slow-growing mycobacteria stain uniformly with strong

acid-fast stains, but all genera will stain with weak or modified acid-fast stains. The most common mycobacterial species will appear as short, "beaded" rods, whereas *Nocardia* species form long filamentous rods. The appearance of weakly acid-fast–staining filamentous rods is sufficient for a preliminary identification of *Nocardia. Rhodococcus* initially appears as short rods and then evolves into cocci. Colonies can appear red, but this typically develops after incubation for a few days. *Gordonia* and *Tsukamurella* appear as short, weakly staining acid-fast rods.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Mycobacteria are unique in that their cell wall has long-chain (i.e., 70 to 90 carbons) mycolic acids. The unique lipid-rich cell wall renders the organisms acid-fast and resistant to detergents, common antibacterial antibiotics, and many disinfection procedures.

2. In a normal host, replication of mycobacteria stimulates helper ($CD4^+$) and cytotoxic ($CD8^+$) T cells. T cells release IFN-γ and other cytokines that activate macrophage, which can engulf and destroy the mycobacteria. Because HIV-positive patients have a depression of $CD4^+$ cells, immune clearance of mycobacteria is impeded; thus these patients have a more rapid progression of disease compared with immunocompetent patients.

3. The spectrum of clinical disease caused by *M. leprae* ranges from tuberculoid leprosy to lepromatous leprosy. Tuberculoid leprosy is a milder form characterized by hypopigmented skin macules, relatively few bacilli observed in the tissue, and a strong cellular immune reaction (positive skin test). The lepromatous form of leprosy is associated with disfiguring skin lesions, nodules, plaques, thickened dermis, and involvement of the nasal mucosa. Patients with the lepromatous form have a strong antibody response to the bacilli but a defect in cellular immunity. Because cellular immunity is responsible for the clearance of the bacilli, this defect is associated with an abundance of bacilli observed in the infected tissues.

4. Mycobacteria are relatively slow-multiplying organisms; thus prolonged therapy is required to eliminate the bacteria. Approximately 1 in every 100,000 to 1,000,000 bacteria will develop resistance to an antibiotic used for treatment. Large numbers of bacilli are typically present in an infection, so if a single antibiotic is used for treatment, resistant bacilli will be selected rapidly. Therefore multiple antibiotics prescribed over many months are commonly used to treat an infected patient.

Chapter 23 *Neisseria* and Related Genera

1. No other genera of bacteria resemble neisseriae, which appear as small, gram-negative diplococci. Members of the genus are also oxidase-positive. This property, combined with the microscopic morphology, permits a rapid preliminary diagnosis. Nonpathogenic species of *Neisseria* grow on nutrient agar; in contrast, *N. meningitidis* has variable growth on nutrient agar, and *N. gonorrhoeae* cannot grow on this medium. Biochemical properties, specifically the ability to use specific carbohydrates such as glucose and maltose, are used to differentiate these two species.

2. Pili, PorB, and Opa proteins mediate attachment and penetration of *N. gonorrhoeae* into host cells. The gonococcal lipooligosaccharide (LOS) stimulates release of tumor necrosis factor (TNF), which causes most of the symptoms associated with disease. The capsule of *N. meningitidis* protects the bacteria from phagocytosis and allows the bacteria to penetrate into host cells, in which replication occurs. Expression of LOS endotoxin is responsible for the clinical manifestations of disease.

3. Capsular proteins are used for the *N. meningitidis* vaccine, but *N. gonorrhoeae* does not have a true capsule. The surface proteins of *N. gonorrhoeae* have not been useful for production of a vaccine. Although the meningococcal vaccine provides effective protection against serotypes A, C, Y, and W135, serotype B is not a good immunogen and is not included in the vaccine. This is problematic because serotype B is one of the common serotypes responsible for meningitis or meningococcemia in the Americas and Europe.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The abundance of leukocytes in the CSF, high protein concentration, and low glucose level are consistent with bacterial meningitis. The most common causes of meningitis in a previously healthy young adult are *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (gram-positive diplococci) and *N. meningitidis* (gram-negative diplococci). The Gram stain morphology is consistent with *N. meningitidis.*

2. Exposure of healthy individuals to patients infected with *N. meningitidis* is a frightening medical event because of the rapid progression of disease. Chemoprophylaxis is recommended for individuals in close contact with the infected patient. This should be restricted to household contacts and persons sharing the same living quarters, particularly young children; daycare center or child-care contacts and frequent playmates of young children; close social contacts who were exposed to oral secretions in the week before onset (e.g., kissing, sharing eating utensils or toothbrushes); and medical staff who have an intimate exposure to patients (e.g., mouth-to-mouth resuscitation or exposure to secretions aerosolized during endotracheal intubation). The antibiotics currently recommended for chemoprophylaxis are rifampin, ciprofloxacin (adult), or ceftriaxone.

3. Other diseases caused by *N. meningitidis* include primary septicemia (meningococcemia), pneumonia, arthritis, and urethritis. Meningococcemia can progress to overwhelming DIC with shock and bilateral destruction of the adrenal glands (Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome).

4. The genus *Neisseria* contains two well-recognized pathogens, *N. meningitidis* and *N. gonorrhoeae,* and a variety of less pathogenic species. Both pathogenic species are able to attach and penetrate into host cells, in which they can avoid intracellular killing, replicate, and then migrate into subepithelial spaces, where an inflammatory response and subsequent tissue destruction are initiated by bacterial endotoxin.

Chapter 24 *Haemophilus* and Related Bacteria

1. *H. influenzae* type b, meningitis (in nonimmune patients); *Aggregatibacter,* endocarditis; *Pasteurella,* bite wounds.

2. Vaccination with conjugated PRP vaccines is protective.

3. Most *H. influenzae* infections are now caused by nonencapsulated strains, so detection of the capsular antigen is not useful.

4. Penicillin, an antibiotic traditionally used only for gram-positive bacteria.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Meningitis caused by *H. influenzae* is relatively uncommon, since the introduction of the conjugated *H. influenzae* type b vaccine. Disease is still seen in unvaccinated children and less commonly in elderly adults whose immunity has waned. More commonly, *H. influenzae* disease is now caused by nontypeable strains that commonly colonize the oropharynx and are able to invade the central nervous system after trauma (e.g., head injury after an automobile accident). Meningitis caused by *S. pneumoniae* and *Neisseria meningitidis* is seen most commonly in the very young and the elderly, although disease is reported for all age groups. In contrast with *H. influenzae,* vaccination has been less successful in controlling these infections.

2. This strain of *H. influenzae* is most likely a nontypeable strain, in contrast with the *H. influenzae* type b strains that caused pediatric disease before introduction of the *H. influenzae* type b vaccine.

3. Nontypeable strains of *H. influenzae* are commonly associated with sinusitis, otitis, and bronchopulmonary disease. The former two diseases are observed in previously healthy individuals, whereas the latter disease is seen most commonly in patients with underlying chronic pulmonary disease. Other species of *Haemophilus* that have been associated with clinical disease include *H. aegyptius* (conjunctivitis, Brazilian purpuric fever), *H. ducreyi* (chancroid), and *H. aphrophilus* (endocarditis).

4. *H. influenzae* requires heme (X factor) and NAD (V factor) for growth. Although both are present in blood-containing media, sheep blood agar (the most commonly used blood agar in the United States) must be heated to destroy the inhibitors of V factor. This heated agar (chocolate agar) is used for the growth of *H. influenzae.* Some other species of *Haemophilus* (e.g., *H. ducreyi, H. aphrophilus*) do not require V factor and will grow on sheep blood agar.

5. *A. actinomycetemcomitans* is an important pathogen responsible for periodontitis and, less commonly, subacute bacterial endocarditis. This organism is a normal resident in the human oropharynx.

6. *P. multocida* is associated with animal bites, exacerbation of chronic pulmonary diseases, and systemic infections in immunocompromised patients (particularly patients with hepatic disease). This organism is part of the normal oral flora of dogs and cats.

Chapter 25 Enterobacteriaceae

1. *Escherichia coli,* peritonitis; part of intestinal flora that is introduced into the peritoneum after bowel perforation. *Klebsiella pneumoniae,* pneumonia; colonize the oropharynx; aspiration of oral secretions. *Proteus mirabilis,* urinary tract infection; introduced into the urethra by migration from the colon, then passed into the bladder in which the organisms can replicate.

2. *Salmonella,* gastroenteritis, part of fecal flora of chickens; *E. coli* 0157, gastroenteritis, part of fecal flora of cattle; *Yersinia pestis,* plague, colonizes rodents and is spread to humans by a flea bite.

3. *Salmonella* serotype Typhi, typhoid fever; *Shigella dysenteriae,* gastroenteritis.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. GI infections have been associated with *Escherichia, Salmonella, Shigella,* and *Yersinia.* Both *Escherichia* and *Shigella* can cause hemorrhagic colitis.

2. STEC and *S. dysenteriae* produce Shiga toxin, which is an A-B exotoxin. The five B subunits in the toxin molecule bind to specific glycolipids on the host cell (Gb3). High concentrations of the receptor are on the intestinal villi and renal endothelial cells. The A subunit is internalized, cleaved into two molecules, with one subunit binding to 28S rRNA and disrupting protein synthesis. A serious complication of this disease is HUS. In this situation, the glomerular endothelial cells are destroyed. Damage to the endothelial cells leads to platelet activation and thrombin deposition. This results in decreased glomerular filtration and acute renal failure.

3. *E. coli* can produce gastroenteritis in a variety of ways. STEC is described earlier in the chapter. ETEC produce two classes of enterotoxins: heat-labile toxins (LT-I, LT-II) and heat-stable toxins (STa, STb). These toxins produce increased levels of cAMP or cGMP, with a subsequent hypersecretion of fluids (i.e., watery diarrhea).

EPEC attach to the epithelial cells of the small intestine and produce destruction of the microvillus (A/E pathology). EAEC also produce a watery diarrhea by autoagglutinating over the epithelium of the small intestine. EIEC invade and destroy the colonic epithelium. The initial disease is characterized by watery diarrhea, but this can progress to colonic ulcers and a dysentery form of disease (fever, abdominal cramps, and blood and leukocytes in stools).

4. *Salmonella* infections can result in asymptomatic carriage, gastroenteritis, septicemia, or enteric fever (typhoid or paratyphoid fever).

5. Disease caused by *Salmonella* Typhi begins after ingestion of the organism. The bacteria pass through the cells lining the intestines and are engulfed by macrophages. The bacteria are then taken to the liver, spleen, and bone marrow, in which they are able to replicate in the macrophages. Within 2 weeks of the initial infection, the patient becomes febrile, with nonspecific complaints of headache, myalgias, malaise, and anorexia. The bacteria are able to spread from the liver to the gallbladder and then into the intestines, where a diarrheal disease will develop. *S. sonnei* infection is typically restricted to the intestine, in which the bacteria attach to the M cells located in Peyer patches. The bacteria initiate intracellular multiplication and spread directly from cell to cell. With death of the infected host cells, the integrity of the intestinal wall is destabilized, leading to localized tissue destruction and a hemorrhagic colitis.

6. Two forms of *Y. pestis* infections are recognized: sylvatic plague and urban plague. In sylvatic plague, disease is established in squirrels, rabbits, field rats, and some domestic animals. Infection is spread among the reservoir animals by flea vectors, and elimination of this form of plague is difficult, if not impossible. Humans are accidental hosts when the infected animals are in close proximity to humans and an infected flea bites an individual. Urban plague is maintained in rat populations and is spread among rats or between rats and humans by infected fleas. Instituting rodent control measures in cities can control this form of disease.

Chapter 26 *Vibrio* and Related Bacteria

1. The Enterobacteriaceae and *Vibrio* and *Aeromonas* are gram-negative rods capable of aerobic and anaerobic growth (facultative anaerobe) on a variety of media and able to ferment many different carbohydrates. In contrast to the Enterobacteriaceae, *Vibrio* and *Aeromonas* have a single polar flagellum for motility (not typically assessed for identification) and are oxidase positive (readily measured by rapid "spot" tests).

2. *V. cholerae* serogroups O1 and O139 produce cholera toxin consisting of five B subunits that mediate binding to receptors on intestinal epithelial cells and one A subunit that is transported into the cell. These interact with G proteins that control adenylate cyclase, leading to the conversion of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), resulting in hypersecretion of water and electrolytes. *Escherichia coli* that produce heat-labile enterotoxin (enterotoxigenic *E. coli* [ETEC]) produce a morphologically and functionally similar toxin.

3. *V. vulnificus* produces wound infections and septicemia that are associated with a high mortality rate, particularly in patients with underlying hepatic disease.

4. *Aeromonas* causes three types of disease: diarrheal disease in healthy individuals, wound infections associated with trauma, and opportunistic systemic disease in immunocompromised patients.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. *V. cholerae* infections can range from asymptomatic carriage to severe watery diarrhea. A typical course of disease begins 2 to 3 days after ingestion of the bacteria and is characterized by an abrupt onset of watery diarrhea and vomiting. The diarrhea is profuse, leading to dehydration, metabolic acidosis, hypokalemia, and hypovolemic shock caused by potassium loss. Symptoms can resolve spontaneously after a few days of diarrhea.

2. The most important virulence factor responsible for cholera is the cholera toxin (A-B toxin). The five B subunits in the toxin molecule bind to the GM_1 receptor on the intestinal epithelial cells, forming a pore that facilitates transport of the A subunit into the cell. The A subunit interacts with G proteins that control adenylate cyclase, leading to the catabolic conversion of ATP to cAMP. This results in a hypersecretion of water and electrolytes. Other virulence factors in *V. cholerae* include the TCP, zonula occludens toxin, accessory cholera enterotoxin, and a colonization factor.

3. The patient most likely acquired the infection by ingestion of contaminated water or foods. A high infectious dose is required to establish infection, so disease is primarily restricted to communities in which the sanitary conditions are poor. Infections with *V. parahaemolyticus* and *V. vulnificus* are primarily caused by consumption of raw or improperly cooked seafood, particularly oysters.

4. Cholera is controlled in endemic areas by improving the sanitation of the community (e.g., sewage management, use of purification systems to eliminate contamination of the water supply, implementation of appropriate steps to prevent contamination of foods).

Chapter 27 *Pseudomonas* and Related Bacteria

1. All organisms are ubiquitous in nature and commonly contaminate moist hospital sites, such as sinks, showers, and respirators.

2. Exotoxin A (ETA) disrupts protein synthesis by blocking peptide chain elongation.

3. *B. cepacia* causes pulmonary infections in patients with cystic fibrosis or chronic granulomatous disease.

4. *P. aeruginosa* is generally susceptible to the carbapenems and always resistant to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole; *S. maltophilia* is usually susceptible to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and always resistant to the carbapenems.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. *P. aeruginosa* is an opportunistic pathogen. Patients with medical conditions that compromise their immunity (e.g., leukemia, immunosuppressive therapy) are at increased risk of infection with this organism. Likewise, because *P. aeruginosa* is resistant to many antibiotics, prior treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics can select for colonization and subsequent infection with *P. aeruginosa.*

2. *P. aeruginosa* possesses a variety of virulence factors that make it a particularly effective opportunistic pathogen. The bacteria can adhere to host cells by pili and nonpilus adhesins. The capsule also can function as an adhesion factor and interfere with phagocytosis. Similar to all gram-negative bacteria, *P. aeruginosa* organisms possess an endotoxin. Additionally, the bacteria produce ETA, which disrupts protein synthesis and has been implicated in the tissue damage observed in cutaneous, ocular, and pulmonary infections. A variety of other enzymes (exoenzymes S and T, elastases, alkaline protease, and phospholipase C) contribute to the tissue damage characteristic of *Pseudomonas* infections. Antibiotic resistance makes this organism difficult to treat.

3. Mutation of porin proteins can interfere with the penetration of many classes of antibiotics through the outer membrane and into the bacterial cell. *Pseudomonas* also produces a variety of β-lactamases that can inactivate β-lactam antibiotics, including carbapenems such as imipenem and meropenem. Less commonly, *P. aeruginosa* can enhance antibiotic efflux from the cell, reducing the intracellular antibiotic concentration to ineffective levels.

4. ***B. cepacia* complex** is a complex of species that have been associated with respiratory infections in patients with CF or CGD, UTIs in catheterized patients, septicemia in patients with intravascular catheters, and opportunistic infections in immunocompromised patients. Infections can be treated with TMP-SMX. ***S. maltophilia*** is an opportunistic pathogen that primarily causes infections (bacteremia, pneumonia, wound infections, UTIs) in debilitated patients with impaired host defenses. Antibiotic resistance is common in this organism, and TMP-SMX is the most effective antibiotic. Levofloxacin and ceftazidime also can be used to treat infections. ***A. baumannii*** is also an opportunistic pathogen that primarily causes respiratory tract infections. This organism also has been implicated in wound infections and UTIs. Resistance to many antibiotics has been reported, so effective therapy requires in vitro susceptibility tests. Empirical therapy for serious infections should use a combination of a broad-spectrum β-lactam (e.g., ceftazidime, imipenem) and an aminoglycoside. ***M. catarrhalis*** organisms are a common cause of bronchitis and bronchopneumonia in elderly patients with chronic pulmonary disease, sinusitis, and otitis. Although most isolates are resistant to penicillins, the bacteria are uniformly susceptible to other antibiotics.

Chapter 28 *Campylobacter* and *Helicobacter*

1. *Campylobacter* is thin, at the resolving limits of light microscopy, and is not typically observed in Gram-stained specimens. Growth of *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* requires incubation at an elevated temperature and in a microaerophilic atmosphere supplemented with carbon dioxide. *Helicobacter* is also difficult to grow, requiring enriched media, a microaerophilic atmosphere, and prolonged incubation.

2. Guillain-Barré syndrome; reactive arthritis.

3. *H. pylori* blocks acid production in the stomach by production of acid-inhibitory proteins and neutralizes gastric acids with the ammonia produced by urease activity. The bacteria are actively motile and rapidly penetrate through the gastric mucus and adhere to gastric epithelial cells, followed by penetration into the cells.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. *C. jejuni* infections have been associated with a large variety of food products; however, the most common source of infections is contaminated poultry. Completely cooking all poultry and disinfecting all surfaces where uncooked poultry is prepared can avoid infections.

2. The three species of *Campylobacter* most commonly associated with gastroenteritis are *C. jejuni, C. coli,* and *C. upsaliensis. C. fetus* is the species most commonly associated with septicemia.

3. Diseases caused by *H. pylori* include gastritis, peptic ulcers, gastric adenocarcinoma, and gastric MALT B-cell lymphomas. *H. cinaedi* and *H. fennelliae* colonize the GI tract and have been associated with proctitis, proctocolitis, and enteritis in homosexual males.

4. *H. pylori* produce an acid-inhibitory protein that induces hypochlorhydria during acute infection by blocking acid secretion from parietal cells. Urease produced by *H. pylori* also neutralizes gastric acids by degrading urea to ammonia. *H. pylori* produces a variety of adhesins that mediate binding to the gastric epithelium, including sialic acid–binding adhesion, Lewis blood group adhesion, and various other hemagglutinins. Mucinase and phospholipases disrupt the gastric mucus, and superoxide dismutase and catalase interfere with phagocytic killing.

Chapter 29 Miscellaneous Gram-Negative Rods

1. *B. quintana* causes disease in immunocompromised patients, particularly patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infections, presenting as recurrent fevers with bacteremia or bacillary angiomatosis. *B. henselae* is also responsible for bacillary angiomatosis, as well as cat-scratch disease, which is a chronic regional lymphadenopathy.

2. *B. pertussis* is found only in humans, so disease is spread person to person.

3. *B. pertussis* is extremely sensitive to drying and frequently will die quickly unless a specimen is rapidly delivered to the laboratory and cultured. In addition, specialized culture media must be used as well as extended incubation. Even when optimum culture techniques are used, molecular-based tests such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) are significantly more sensitive.

4. A number of animals serve as reservoirs for *Francisella,* but most infections are associated with exposure to infected rabbits or ticks. *Brucella* infections are also zoonotic, with specific species associated with specific reservoirs: goats and sheep *(B. melitensis);* cattle and bison *(B. abortus);* swine, reindeer, and caribou *(B. suis);* and dogs, foxes, and coyotes *(B. canis)*. Laboratory-acquired infections are a significant risk when both genera are handled.

5. Endocarditis.

6. *Legionella* is a short coccobacillus that does not stain well with Gram stain reagents, so a Gram stain of respiratory specimens is typically not useful. The organism can only grow on media supplemented with cysteine and iron, so culture is not useful unless the appropriate medium is selected.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Most cases of cat-scratch disease are caused by *B. henselae.* In general, very few organisms are present in the involved tissues, so microscopy and culture are usually not helpful. This is in contrast with *B. henselae* infections in HIV-infected patients, in which culture has been valuable in confirming *Bartonella*-mediated bacillary angiomatosis and septicemia. The definitive diagnosis of cat-scratch disease is made by serologic evidence of a recent infection. Cross-reactions with *Coxiella* and *Chlamydia* can occur.

2. *B. quintana* causes trench fever (5-day fever), subacute bacterial endocarditis (SBE), and bacillary angiomatosis. *B. henselae* causes cat-scratch disease, bacillary angiomatosis, peliosis hepatis, SBE, and chronic bacteremia in immunocompromised patients. Cat-scratch disease (as the name implies) is associated with cat exposures (scratches, bites, contact with cat fleas). *Bartonella* is in the oropharynx of cats and transferred to their claws while cleaning and grooming. No animal reservoir exists for *B. quintana*–produced trench fever; rather, infections are spread person to person through the human body louse.

3. Microscopy, culture, nucleic acid amplification (PCR), and serology have been used to confirm the clinical diagnosis of pertussis. The most sensitive and specific test is PCR, and it is the diagnostic test of choice. Microscopy has a limited value. The Gram stain is not useful and should not be performed because the bacteria (gram-negative coccobacillus) are difficult to detect in clinical specimens. A direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) test is helpful but has a sensitivity of approximately 50%, and cross-reactions with other organisms have been reported. Culture is limited by the quality of the collected specimen (need a nasopharyngeal aspirate) and the medium (must use Regan-Lowe charcoal medium). Fewer than half the patients with pertussis have their disease confirmed with a positive culture. Serology is also of limited value because an antibody rise must be documented, which can take weeks to months.

4. After a 7- to 10-day incubation period, the disease progresses through three stages. The catarrhal stage resembles a common cold. After 1 to 2 weeks, the paroxysmal stage begins and is characterized by the classic whooping cough paroxysms (a series of repetitive coughs followed by an inspiratory whoop). After 2 to 4 weeks, the convalescent stage begins, in which the paroxysms diminish but secondary complications can occur. Disease is prevented by vaccination of susceptible individuals. Persistence of immunity has been questioned, and booster vaccination of adults is under consideration. This is complicated by the higher rate of vaccine complications in older individuals.

5. The clinical diagnosis of tularemia can be confirmed by microscopy, culture, PCR-based assays, or serology. Microscopy is limited because organisms are extremely small and frequently overlooked in clinical specimens. A DFA test is available but rarely used in clinical laboratories. Culture has been described as insensitive; however, in the authors' experience, the test is sensitive if the appropriate media are used (BCYE agar, chocolate agar) with extended incubation. Care must be used in handling these cultures because the organisms are extremely infectious. PCR-based assays are sensitive and specific but not widely available. Most diagnoses are made retrospectively using serologic methods. Cross-reactions do occur (e.g., with *Brucella*), but this is generally not a diagnostic problem.

6. The most common sources of tularemia in the United States are handling infected animals (e.g., rabbits) or infected ticks. Ticks require prolonged feeding to transmit the bacteria, and animal exposure can include ingestion as well as exposure to infectious aerosols during the dressing of an animal.

7. A variety of laboratory tests have been used to diagnose *Legionella* infections, including microscopy, culture, antigen tests, NAATs, and serology. A Gram stain (as used in this case) is usually negative because the gram-negative rods are too thin to be seen in clinical specimens. DFA tests have been used in the past but have been abandoned by most laboratories because the tests are insensitive and can cross-react with non-*Legionella* organisms. Culture on appropriate media (e.g., BCYE agar with or without antibiotics to make the media selective) with extended incubation is a sensitive and specific test. Most patients will have a positive culture if the cultures are incubated for at least 1 week. Because these bacteria require L-cysteine and iron salts for primary isolation, no growth will occur on blood or chocolate agars. A sensitive and specific urinary antigen test has been developed for *L. pneumophila* serogroup 1. This is the most common serogroup implicated in disease. The assay will react with some other serogroups but should not be used in the absence of other diagnostic tests (e.g., culture, NAAT). NAAT assays are sensitive and specific and are the diagnostic test of choice; however, many laboratories do not currently offer this test. Serology can be used to confirm prior exposure to *Legionella* or current infection if a significant rise in antibodies can be documented. Documentation of seroconversion can take as long as 6 months. Cross-reactions may also occur, so serology has limited value in confirming an infection with *Legionella.*

Chapter 30 *Clostridium*

1. *C. perfringens* produces a large number of toxins and hydrolytic enzymes. The most important toxin is alpha toxin, which is a lecithinase that lyses erythrocytes, platelets, leukocytes, and endothelial cells.

2. *C. perfringens* produces a heat-labile enterotoxin that binds to receptors on the brush border membrane of the small intestine epithelium. This leads to altered membrane permeability and fluid loss. Disease is characterized by a short incubation period, abdominal cramps and watery diarrhea, and relatively short duration (1 to 2 days). In contrast, food poisoning with *C. botulinum* is characterized as a neurologic disease. The *C. botulinum* toxin binds to specific receptors on the surface of motor neurons and stimulates endocytosis of the toxin molecule. The toxin then inactivates the proteins that regulate release of acetylcholine, blocking neurotransmission at peripheral cholinergic synapses, resulting in a flaccid paralysis.

3. *C. septicum* causes nontraumatic myonecrosis in patients with occult colon cancer, leukemia, or diabetes.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The diagnosis of tetanus is based on the clinical presentation and history (e.g., history of a penetrating injury in a nonimmune individual). Laboratory tests that can be used to confirm the diagnosis include microscopy (useful if positive, but generally organisms are not observed in the wound) and culture (relatively insensitive because the organisms are extremely oxygen sensitive). Serology is not useful (antibodies to the toxin do not develop).

2. If tetanus is suspected, treatment should begin immediately. This requires debridement of the primary wound, use of metronidazole, passive immunization with human tetanus immunoglobulin, and vaccination with tetanus toxoid. Wound debridement and antibiotic therapy eliminate the vegetative cells producing toxin, passive immunization inactivates free toxin (bound toxin cannot be eliminated), and vaccination protects the patient from future exposure to toxin. The prognosis is determined by the site of the initial injury, rate of onset of disease, and rapidity of appropriate management. Mortality in the United States is relatively low because the diagnosis is typically made quickly and effective support measures are generally available. In less developed countries, the mortality associated with tetanus is high.

3. Tetanospasmin and botulinum toxin are both A-B toxins. The B subunit of tetanospasmin binds to specific sialic acid receptors and adjacent glycoproteins on the surface of motor neurons. The combined toxin is then internalized in endosomal vesicles and transported in the neuron axon to motor neuron soma located in the spinal cord. At this site, the endosome becomes acidified, resulting in a conformation change in the B chain, which facilitates transport of the A chain into the cell cytosol. The A chain is an endopeptidase that degrades proteins that regulate the inhibitory neurotransmitters glycine and GABA. This leads to unregulated excitatory synaptic activity in motor neurons. Botulinum toxin also binds to specific sialic acid receptors and glycoproteins on the surface of motor neurons (different targets than tetanospasmin) and is internalized. *Botulinum* toxin remains in the endosome at the neuromuscular junction (versus travel to the spinal cord), where after acidification, the endopeptidase A chain inactivates the proteins that regulate release of acetylcholine. Because acetylcholine is not released, neurotransmission is blocked, resulting in flaccid paralysis.

4. *C. perfringens* produces numerous toxins and cytotoxic enzymes. The most important toxin is alpha toxin, which is a phospholipase that is responsible for lysis of erythrocytes, platelets, leukocytes, and endothelial cells. This will lead to massive hemolysis and tissue destruction that is characteristic of the overwhelming disease caused by this organism. Other cytotoxic toxins produced by *C. perfringens* include beta, epsilon, and iota toxins. This organism also produces collagenase, proteases, hyaluronidase, deoxyribonucleases, neuraminidase, and enterotoxin.

5. *C. perfringens* causes a variety of diseases, including soft-tissue infections (cellulitis, fasciitis, myonecrosis), food poisoning, necrotizing enteritis, and primary septicemia.

6. *C. difficile* is the etiologic agent of GI diseases ranging from antibiotic-associated diarrhea to life-threatening pseudomembranous colitis. Infections can be difficult to

manage. Although the vegetative forms of the bacilli are uniformly susceptible to metronidazole or vancomycin, the nonreplicating spores are resistant. Thus treatment may eliminate the vegetative forms, but the spores can persist in the intestines and germinate into actively replicating, toxin-producing vegetative cells when antibiotic therapy is discontinued. Furthermore, spores can contaminate hospital rooms and serve as a focus of infection for other patients.

Chapter 31 Non–Spore-Forming Anaerobic Bacteria

1. Anaerobic bacteria responsible for pelvic abscesses include anaerobic gram-positive cocci, *Actinomyces, Fusobacterium, Prevotella, Porphyromonas,* and *Bacteroides.*

2. Infections with *Actinomyces* are characteristically chronic, requiring weeks to months to develop. The organisms also grow slowly in culture and respond slowly to antibiotic treatment.

3. Infections caused by *B. fragilis* are characterized by abscess formation. Although this organism has been implicated in infections of the lungs and brain, intraabdominal and skin and soft-tissue infections are the most common.

4. Metronidazole, carbapenems, and combinations of β-lactams and β-lactamase inhibitors.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The diagnosis of actinomycosis can be difficult to confirm. Specimens that avoid oral contamination must be collected because *Actinomyces* are part of the normal oropharyngeal flora. Furthermore, relatively few organisms may be present in the specimen because this is a chronic infection, and cultures may need to be incubated for a week or more. For these reasons, many diagnoses of actinomycosis are not confirmed. Granules present in the specimens (referred to as "sulfur granules") should be crushed and examined microscopically. Gram-positive rods embedded in amorphous mineral deposits should be observed.

2. *Actinomyces* colonize the oropharynx, GI tract, and vagina. Infections with these organisms are commonly chronic, developing slowly after trauma to the colonized mucosa introduces the organisms into deep tissues. Infection is characterized by the development of chronic granulomatous lesions that become suppurative and form abscesses connected by sinus tracts. Pelvic actinomycosis is frequently associated with the presence of an intrauterine device. This patient's poor oral hygiene predisposed him or her to cervicofacial actinomycosis.

3. *Cutibacterium* (*Propionibacterium*) *acnes* is responsible for acne and opportunistic infections in patients with prosthetic devices or intravascular lines. This organism colonizes the surface of the skin and mucosal membranes.

4. Abscess formation in this clinical situation is most likely caused by *B. fragilis.* The polysaccharide capsule stimulates leukocyte migration and abscess formation.

5. *B. fragilis* colonizes the colon in relatively small numbers. However, this organism is highly virulent and has been implicated in diseases in many body sites, including lungs (pulmonary abscess), central nervous system (brain abscess), abdomen (intraabdominal abscess), genitourinary tract (pelvic abscess), GI tract (gastroenteritis), cardiovascular system (thrombophlebitis, septicemia), and soft tissues (myonecrosis).

6. Metronidazole is uniformly active against *Bacteroides,* and carbapenems (e.g., imipenem, meropenem) are active against most strains. *E. coli* is generally susceptible to the carbapenems and broad-spectrum cephalosporins. Treatment of serious enterococcal infections requires use of a cell wall–active antibiotic (e.g., β-lactam, vancomycin) with an aminoglycoside.

7. Other anaerobic gram-negative rods associated with human disease include *Prevotella, Porphyromonas,* and *Fusobacterium.*

Chapter 32 *Treponema, Borrelia,* and *Leptospira*

1. Primary syphilis is characterized by a painless ulcer (chancre) at the site of penetration of the spirochete. If this is on the shaft of the penis or external genitalia, then the lesion should be obvious; however, if it is on the inside of the vagina, then the infection may not be noticed. In addition, the ulcer spontaneously resolves, so the infected individual may have a false sense of relief. The secondary stage of syphilis is a disseminated rash that also spontaneously resolves. Late manifestations of syphilis develop months to years later, but at that time, irreversible damage has occurred.

2. *B. burgdorferi* is the etiologic agent of Lyme disease. The major reservoirs for Lyme disease in the United States are the white-footed mouse and white-tailed deer. The white-footed mouse is the primary host of larval and nymph forms of *Ixodes* ticks, which are the vectors of Lyme disease. Because the nymph form of the ticks is responsible for most human infections, mice are the important reservoir.

3. The clinical presentation of early Lyme disease with the skin lesions (erythema migrans) is characteristic. Laboratory diagnosis at this stage is difficult because the organism is typically not seen in the lesion by microscopy, most laboratories do not have experience culturing the organism, nucleic acid amplification tests are generally insensitive, and many patients have not developed antibodies to the infection. By the time the patient develops arthritis or other signs of systemic disease, antibodies are almost universally present, so a serologic diagnosis is reliable.

4. The diagnosis of leptospirosis is typically made by serologic testing; however, spirochetes can be cultured from the blood using specialized techniques during the first 10 days of clinical illness and from urine only after the first week and up to 3 months in the clinical illness.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Onset of the early stages of Lyme disease is characterized by a small macule (typically at the site of the tick bite) that enlarges over the next few weeks. The lesion has a flat border with central clearing, although erythema, vesicle formation, or necrosis may also occur. This rash (erythema migrans [migrans because additional lesions may develop]) is accompanied by malaise, fatigue, headache, fever, chills, musculoskeletal pains, myalgias, and lymphadenopathy. These signs and symptoms can progress in untreated patients to include cardiac dysfunction (e.g., heart block, myopericarditis, congestive heart failure) and neurologic signs (e.g., facial palsy, meningitis, encephalitis). Late manifestations of Lyme disease typically present as arthritis involving one or more joints intermittently.

2. Laboratory confirmation of the clinical diagnosis of Lyme disease is problematic. Relatively few organisms are present in the blood or tissues of infected patients, so microscopy is of no practical value. Culture of *B. burgdorferi* has met with limited success. Culture requires use of specialized media and is only sensitive during the initial stage of erythema migrans; however, this lesion is pathognomonic, so laboratory confirmation is unnecessary. The clinical dilemma of diagnosis is when a patient presents with arthritis and no history of the early manifestations of Lyme disease. At this stage, cultures are invariably negative. Nucleic acid amplification tests are also insensitive. Serologic tests in patients with the late manifestations of disease are usually strongly positive if the patient has not received a course of antimicrobial therapy. However, serology is less reliable in the early stages of disease. Cross-reactions can occur but primarily in patients with other spirochetal diseases, such as syphilis. Observing the borreliae in the patient's blood primarily makes the laboratory diagnosis of relapsing fever. Culture and serology are not useful for these bacteria.

3. Laboratory diagnosis of syphilis is made most commonly using a sensitive screening nontreponemal serology test and confirmed by a more specific treponemal test. The VDRL and RPR tests are examples of nontreponemal tests, and the FTA-ABS and TP-PA tests are examples of the specific treponemal tests. The nontreponemal tests have a sensitivity of 75% to 85% for patients with primary syphilis and almost 100% for patients with secondary and latent syphilis. The sensitivity of these tests is lower (≈70%) for patients with late manifestations of syphilis. The treponemal tests have a sensitivity of approximately 85% for primary syphilis and almost 100% for all other stages, including late syphilis.

4. The reservoir for syphilis is humans. Transmission is either through sexual contact or congenitally. Exposure to contaminated blood is now an uncommon source. Endemic relapsing fever is a zoonotic disease, and rodents, small mammals, and soft ticks are the main reservoirs. The vectors of this disease are infected ticks. The reservoir for epidemic or louse-borne relapsing fever is humans, with person-to-person spread mediated by infected lice. The primary reservoirs for Lyme disease in the United States are the white-footed mouse and white-tailed deer. Hard ticks are the vectors. The reservoir hosts for leptospires are rodents and other small mammals. Disease is spread to humans by exposure to urine-contaminated water or occupational exposure to infected animals.

5. The diagnosis of leptospirosis is problematic. Leptospires are too thin to be observed by brightfield microscopy. Darkfield microscopy can be used to examine the blood of an infected person; however, this is a relatively insensitive test, and artifacts in the blood can lead to diagnostic errors. For this reason, microscopy is not recommended. Leptospires can be cultured for blood, CSF, or urine if specialized media and prolonged incubation (up to 4 months) are used. Because these procedures are not practical for routine diagnostic testing, serology is the diagnostic test of choice. The reference method is the MAT. However, this procedure requires using live leptospires, so this is restricted to reference laboratories. Alternative agglutination and ELISA tests are more broadly available but are less sensitive and specific.

Chapter 33 *Mycoplasma*

1. Mycoplasmas lack a cell wall, and their cell membrane contains sterols. The absence of a cell wall renders the bacteria resistant to antibiotics that interfere with cell wall synthesis (e.g., penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, vancomycin).

2. *M. pneumoniae* causes respiratory infections (tracheobronchitis, pharyngitis, pneumonia); *M. genitalium* is implicated in urethritis, cervicitis, and pelvic inflammatory disease; *M. hominis* is implicated in infections of the respiratory tract and urinary tract, as well as systemic infections in immunocompromised patients.

3. Laboratory diagnosis of *M. pneumoniae* infections is problematic because culture is not performed in most laboratories, microscopy has no value for diagnosis, and serology is insensitive. The best diagnostic test is PCR for species-specific targets.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. This patient has atypical pneumonia caused by *M. pneumoniae*. The organism can be cultured from throat washings, bronchial washings, or expectorated sputum. Because the patients generally do not have a productive cough (as with this patient), collection of expectorated sputum is not possible. The throat washings would be a sensitive, noninvasive specimen. Culture has a relatively

low sensitivity and requires incubation for as long as 6 weeks. For this reason, few laboratories rely on this procedure. Serology (as used in this case) is the most commonly used diagnostic procedure but is also insensitive. The diagnostic test of choice currently is the PCR-based nucleic acid amplification test; however, PCR tests are not widely available at this time.

2. Pneumonia caused by *M. pneumoniae* occurs throughout the year. Although it is most common in school-age children and young adults, it can occur in all age groups. Infection occurs by person-to-person spread via infectious respiratory secretions. The age of this patient and her clinical presentation is characteristic of *M. pneumoniae* infection.

Chapter 34 *Rickettsia, Ehrlichia,* and Related Bacteria

1. Rickettsial infections are treated with tetracyclines (e.g., doxycycline) or fluoroquinolones (e.g., ciprofloxacin). Although chloramphenicol has in vitro activity, a high incidence of relapse is associated with this antibiotic. β-Lactam antibiotics (e.g., penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems), aminoglycosides, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole are inactive.

2. Ticks are vectors for the following rickettsiae and their diseases: *R. rickettsii,* Rocky Mountain spotted fever; *R. africae,* African tick bite fever; *R. australis,* Australian tick typhus; *R. conorii,* Mediterranean spotted fever; *R. japonica,* Japanese spotted fever; and *R. sibirica,* Siberian tick typhus. Only *R. rickettsii* is commonly recovered in the United States. Lice are associated with *R. prowazekii* (endemic typhus), mites are associated with *R. akari* (rickettsialpox) and *Orientia tsutsugamushi* (scrub typhus), and fleas are associated with *R. typhi* (murine typhus).

3. Rickettsiae are small and stain poorly with the Gram stain because the peptidoglycan layer is minimal.

4. *E. chaffeensis,* the etiologic agent of human monocytic ehrlichiosis, infects blood monocytes and mononuclear phagocytes in tissues and organs. Approximately 1 to 3 weeks after exposure, patients develop a flulike illness with high fever, headache, malaise, and myalgias. A rash develops in about one-third of patients. *A. phagocytophilum,* the agent of human anaplasmosis (formerly called human granulocytic ehrlichiosis), infects granulocytes (neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils). Approximately 5 to 11 days after exposure, a similar flulike illness develops, but a rash is uncommon. In both diseases, more than half of the infected persons require hospitalization, and recovery is prolonged.

5. The majority of infections with *C. burnetii* are asymptomatic or present with mild flulike symptoms. Severe diseases include pneumonia, hepatitis, or isolated fever; however, the most common presentation is subacute endocarditis.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The diagnosis of infection caused by *C. burnetii* can be made by culture, PCR-based NAAT, or serology. *Coxiella* stain poorly with the Gram stain, and relatively few organisms would be found in the blood, so this test has no value for diagnosis. *Coxiella* is an obligate intracellular pathogen, so culture requires the use of tissue culture cells. This procedure presents some risk to laboratory personnel, and as a result, relatively few laboratories perform cultures. PCR tests are sensitive and specific for acute infections and are the diagnostic test of choice in areas in which these infections are endemic. However, because relatively few organisms are present in the blood of patients with endocarditis, the sensitivity of this test is poor for this infection. Therefore serology is the diagnostic test of choice for patients with endocarditis. Because this is a chronic infection, high titers of antibodies are present when the diagnosis is suspected. *Coxiella* undergoes phase variation during replication, so antibodies will be stimulated against antigens exposed in both phases. In patients with endocarditis, higher antibody titers are detected against the phase I antigens. Cross-reactions can be detected in patients with *Bartonella* infections, so specific serology tests should also be performed against this organism to exclude this infection.

2. *Coxiella* produces zoonotic infections with farm animals such as sheep, cattle, and goats, which are the most common sources for human infections. Domestic animals and rabbits also can be associated with human infections. The bacteria reach a high concentration in the placenta of infected livestock. Dried placentas left on the ground after parturition, as well as feces and urine, can contaminate the soil. The bacteria are relatively stable and can remain viable for long periods. Humans acquire their infections when they inhale aerosolized bacteria. Ticks are an important source of animal infections but play an insignificant role in human infections.

3. Doxycycline is used to treat *Coxiella* infections. For chronic infections, as in this patient, a combination of antibiotics should be used for treatment, such as rifampin with either doxycycline or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Successful treatment requires prolonged therapy.

Chapter 35 *Chlamydia*

1. Respiratory disease is caused by *C. trachomatis, C. psittaci,* and *C. pneumoniae*; ocular and genital diseases are caused by *C. trachomatis.*

2. *C. trachomatis* serotype A (as well as serotypes B, Ba, and C) cause trachoma. This disease develops from the vigorous inflammatory response to recurrent infections, eventually leading to scarring of the cornea and blindness.

3. The most reliable tests for diagnosis of infections with *Chlamydia* are species-specific NAATs.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Previously it was thought that chlamydiae were resistant to cell wall–active antibiotics because they lacked a peptidoglycan layer; however, this has been demonstrated in actively replicating RBs. It is likely that these antibiotics are ineffective because they cannot reach the peptidoglycan target. This patient's infection can be treated with azithromycin or doxycycline.

2. The developmental cycle of *Chlamydia* involves two stages of the bacteria: the metabolically inactive, stable, infectious EBs and the metabolically active, labile, noninfectious RBs. Patients are infected with the EB forms, which bind to receptors on the host cells and are internalized. Within phagosomes, the EBs convert to RBs and initiate replication by binary fission. After 18 to 24 hours of replication, the RBs reorganize into EBs, and the cell lyses and releases the infectious EBs.

3. Three species of *Chlamydia* are clinically important: *C. trachomatis, C. pneumoniae,* and *C. psittaci. C. trachomatis* and *C. pneumoniae* are primarily human pathogens, and *C. psittaci* is primarily an animal pathogen, with humans as secondary hosts. *C. trachomatis* has two biovars (LGV and trachoma), *C. pneumoniae* has one biovar (TWAR), and *C. psittaci* has many biovars. The morphology of the EBs of *C. pneumoniae* differs from the other two species, and a single iodine-staining inclusion body is observed in cells infected with *C. trachomatis,* compared with multiple nonstaining inclusion bodies in cells infected with the other species. Only *C. trachomatis* is susceptible to sulfonamides.

4. Respiratory infections caused by *C. trachomatis* are primarily observed in infants who are infected at the time of birth. Rhinitis is initially observed, followed by a characteristic staccato cough. *C. pneumoniae* is an important cause of bronchitis, pneumonia, and sinusitis, with infections most common in adults. Most infections are asymptomatic or mild with malaise and a persistent cough. More severe lobar pneumonia also can occur. *C. psittaci* also produces a respiratory infection with the initial symptoms of headache, high fever, chills, malaise, and myalgia. Pulmonary signs include a nonproductive cough, rales, and consolidation.

Chapter 36 Viral Classification, Structure, and

ANSWERS

1. a. Both are picornaviruses and have similar structures and modes of replication, but unlike poliovirus, rhinoviruses are acid and temperature labile.
   b. Polio and rotaviruses are capsid viruses that are spread by the fecal-oral route. Polio has a (+) RNA genome; rotaviruses are larger and have a double capsid and a double-stranded RNA genome.
   c. Polio and WEE viruses have positive-stranded RNA genomes, and their genomes are infectious. WEE is a togavirus that can generate early and late proteins from full-length or partial-length mRNA. WEE is enveloped and spread in mosquito saliva and blood and unlike poliovirus would be inactivated by detergents and the conditions for fecal-oral transmission.
   d. Yellow fever virus and dengue virus are flaviviruses that are enveloped (+) RNA viruses, both of which are spread by mosquitoes in blood and mosquito saliva.
   e. EBV and CMV are herpesviruses that have large DNA genomes enclosed in an icosadeltahedral capsid surrounded by an envelope. These viruses have complex replication schemes that are controlled at the transcription level by some cells. Both viruses are strictly human viruses, but EBV infects B lymphocytes, whereas CMV has a broader tissue tropism.

2. The viruses matched with their properties are identified by the capital letter indicated in this list.

Properties	Match	Viruses
a. Are resistant to detergents	A, F, I, J, M, N	A. Picornaviruses
b. Are resistant to drying	A, F, I, J, M	B. Togaviruses
c. Genome replication in the nucleus	C, G, H, I, J, L[a]	C. Orthomyxoviruses
d. Genome replication in the cytoplasm	A, B, D, E, F, K, L, M, N	D. Paramyxoviruses
e. Can be released from the cell without cell lysis	B, C, D, E, G, H, L, N	E. Rhabdoviruses
f. Provide targets for approved antiviral drug action	C, G, H, J, L	F. Reoviruses
g. Undergo reassortment on coinfection with two strains	C, F	G. Retroviruses
h. Make DNA from an RNA template	G, L	H. Herpesviruses
i. Use a (+) RNA template to replicate the genome	C, D, E, F, L[a]	I. Papillomaviruses
j. Genome translated into a polyprotein	A, B, G[b], M,N	J. Adenoviruses
		K. Poxviruses
		L. Hepadnaviruses
		M. Caliciviruses
		N. Coronaviruses

[a]First step in hepadnavirus replication occurs in the nucleus (production of RNA template), but DNA genome is produced in the cytoplasm.
[b]Retroviruses encode mRNAs from the gag, pol, and env genes which are translated into polyproteins that are cleaved on assembly of the virus.

3. Adenovirus, picornavirus, calicivirus, reovirus, and papillomavirus are naked capsid viruses and resistant to detergents. Coronaviruses, although enveloped, can withstand detergents due to the 'corona' formed by the glycoproteins around the envelope.

4. POLYMERASES: DNA-dependent DNA polymerases: *adenovirus, herpes, poxviruses*; RNA-dependent DNA polymerase: *hepadnavirus, retroviruses*; RNA-dependent RNA polymerase: *all the RNA viruses, except retrovirus;* DNA-dependent RNA polymerase: *poxvirus. No polymerase encoded: papilloma, parvovirus*

5. Complementation: An HSV-2 gene provides the missing activity that allows replication of the mutant to occur. Transcapsidation may occur to put the HSV-1 genome into an HSV-1 or HSV-2 capsid but with an envelope that has HSV-2 glycoproteins so that it is recognized by HSV-2 antibody which blocks (neutralizes the virus) infection. Recombination between HSV-1 and HSV-2 may have occurred because these viruses share enough similarity to allow recombination of the two genomes and the generation of a hybrid virus that would have most of an HSV-1 genome but also HSV-2 genes for glycoprotein antigens that can be recognized by antibody to HSV-2.

6. The early genes, including the polymerase, of **togaviruses** are translated from the infecting (+) RNA genome (42S). Later, a subgenomic mRNA (26S), including genes for structural proteins, is transcribed from the replicative intermediate ([−] RNA) that encodes the late structural proteins. The **polyomavirus** genome is circular; the early genes, including cell growth activating genes, are transcribed in one direction, and the late genes, encoding the capsid proteins, are transcribed in the opposite direction. Expression of the late genes requires the action of the T antigen, which is an early gene. The herpesvirus immediate early genes are activated by host DNA-binding proteins and include proteins that facilitate early gene expression and takeover of the cell. The early genes are activated by viral proteins and encode the polymerase and other enzymes. Different combinations of viral proteins activate the late genes for translation after replication is initiated. The late proteins include glycoproteins, other structural proteins, and enzymes.

7. a. EBV polymerase: no virus production
   b. HSV thymidine kinase: inefficient virus production, especially in neurons
   c. HIV reverse transcriptase: no virus production
   d. Influenza B virus NA: very inefficient virus production
   e. Rabies virus (rhabdovirus) G-protein: no virus production

Chapter 37 Mechanisms of Viral Pathogenesis

ANSWERS

Answers

1. See table below

2. Varicella is inhaled; initiates replication in the lung; activates interferon and local inflammatory responses; initiates viremia and spreads to T cells and lymphatics, liver, and spleen; initiates viremia by infecting T cells; T cells transmit virus to skin cells; skin and lung cells produce virus that can be transmitted to other people; and blister-like lesions form on skin.

3. Protective antibody is generated against the viral attachment protein or structure as follows:
   Adenovirus: fiber protein
   Influenza A virus: hemagglutinin
   Poliovirus: capsid structure forming a valley
   Rabies virus: G glycoprotein

4. IFN-α and IFN-β: promote expression of proteins for the antiviral state (e.g., PKR, 2′5′A polymerase) that are activated by viral infection. They also increase expression of MHC molecules to enhance target recognition and promote stimulation of CD8 T cells. They also activate NK cells.

   IFN-γ: activates macrophage to become a killer cell and producer of IL-12, which is an inducer of T helper 1 (TH1) responses.

Route	Barriers	Examples of Viruses
Oral	Saliva, IgA, mucus	Poliovirus, rotavirus, norovirus
Respiratory	IgA, mucus	Influenza, parainfluenza, respiratory syncytial virus, measles, varicella-zoster virus,
Contact	Skin, mucus	HSV, human papillomavirus, molluscum contagiosum
Sexual	Female: IgA, IgG, mucus; male: skin	HSV, HIV, human papillomavirus, hepatitis B and C viruses
Injection, blood products, transplant	Antibody, T cells	Cytomegalovirus, HIV, HTLV, hepatitis B, C, D
Insect or animal bite (zoonoses)	Antibody, interferon	Eastern equine encephalitis virus, yellow fever virus, rabies
Maternal-neonatal	Maternal antibody	Rubella, cytomegalovirus, HIV

HIV, Human immunodeficiency virus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus; *HTLV,* human T-cell lymphotropic virus; *Ig,* immunoglobulin.

Macrophage: antigen-presenting cell, which on activation by IFN-γ will promote inflammatory killing of internalized microbes; for viral infections, the macrophage produces cytokines that promote inflammation or facilitate repair of the infectious tissue damage.

NK cells: MHC-independent killing of infected cells; antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity killing of infected cells.

CD4 T cells: helper T cells that promote the antiviral response by producing cytokines; promote apoptosis of infected cells through Fas-FasL (ligand) interaction.

CD8 T cells: MHC I–restricted killing of infected cells and production of IFN-γ.

Antibody: neutralization of virus; opsonization of virus.

5. IFN-α and IFN-β are produced by the infected cell and activate an antiviral response in surrounding cells, activate NK cells, and also enhance immune responses. IFN-γ is produced later by NK or T cells as part of the cellular innate or immune responses.

6. The nucleoprotein of influenza virus is the predominant viral protein that is degraded by the proteasome of dendritic cells and converted into small peptides to pass through the transporter associated with antigen processing (TAP) into the endoplasmic reticulum to fill the antigenic peptide cleft of the MHC I molecule. Binding of an antigenic peptide is required for the movement of the MHC I molecule to the cell surface to present antigen as part of a CD8 T-cell response.

7. During the prodrome of a respiratory virus infection, the virus replicates in the lung, and IFN-α and IFN-β are produced, which cause flulike symptoms and tiredness. The virus replicates and spreads to other sites in the lung. Tissue damage is repaired after the virus has been controlled by innate and immune responses. For St. Louis encephalitis virus, the virus is injected into the blood by a mosquito and initiates a viremia and interferon responses, with similar flulike symptoms The viremia brings the virus to the meninges and then to the brain.

8. Viral characteristics that promote transmission.

Method of Transmission	Viral Characteristics That Promote Transmission
Fecal-oral	Capsid structure that is impervious to acid and bile of gastrointestinal tract; replication in oral or intestinal cells or released into gastrointestinal tract (e.g., hepatitis A virus)
Arthropods	Establishment of sufficient viremia to allow arthropod to acquire virus during a blood meal
Fomites	Stability to drying and heat, as for a naked capsule
Mother's milk	Secretion by epithelial cells into milk
Sexual activity	Long asymptomatic period of virus shedding to allow transmission before knowledge of infection

9. Fast oncogenesis: incorporation of a viral encoded oncogene into the host chromosome to stimulate cell growth (no human viruses act in this manner); example: Rous sarcoma virus of chickens

Slow oncogenesis: integration near a growth-promoting gene to allow the promoters in the LTR of the virus to induce overexpression of these genes and stimulate growth; example: HTLV-1

Transactivation of growth-promoting genes; example: IL-2 and IL-2 receptor by HTLV-1

Action of viral encoded or virus induced cytokines to chronically stimulate cell growth: HCV, HHV-8

Chapter 39 Laboratory Diagnosis of Viral Diseases

ANSWERS

1. Rabies virus infection can be identified by observation of Negri inclusion bodies and the presence of viral proteins by immunofluorescence. A tissue extract can also be analyzed by RT-PCR for viral genome.

2. The papillomavirus genome can be detected and typed by in situ hybridization and by PCR analysis using strain-specific DNA probes and primers. Immunofluorescence is not used because viral proteins may only be expressed in rare cells.

3. HSV-1 and HSV-2 can be distinguished with PCR tests for the viral genome or antigen detection tests using antibody specific for each virus type. The antibody can be used in a virus neutralization test, but better approaches are immunofluorescence or ELISA tests of cells infected by either virus using type-specific antibody. Different strains of virus can be distinguished by PCR of variable regions of the genome or by restriction fragment length polymorphism.

4. The figure shows that the titer of the convalescent serum taken 3 weeks after the acute serum is only different by one dilution tube (twofold). A significant difference in the titer of the antibody requires at least a fourfold difference. Therefore the patient was not infected by the H3N2 virus.

5. Recent infection is indicated by detection of a large concentration of the HIV genome as performed by RT-PCR or a related technique. These techniques amplify the genome that may be present in the sample. The presence of the viral protein p24 is a good indication of recent infection. It is too early for the person to provide a dependable indication of infection by the presence of antibodies to HIV.

Chapter 40 Antiviral Agents and Infection Control

ANSWERS

1. Steps in viral replication that depend on cellular processes are generally poor antiviral drug targets. These

include protein synthesis and processing (glycosylation, phosphorylation) and mRNA synthesis and processing (e.g., splicing, capping).

2. Treatable viruses:
DNA viruses
HSV (treatable with nucleoside analogs)
VZV (treatable with nucleoside analogs)
CMV (treatable with nucleoside analogs)
Adenovirus (treatable with nucleoside analogs)
Hepatitis B (treatable with nucleoside analogs)
RNA viruses
Influenza A and B (treatable with neuraminidase or polymerase inhibitor)
Respiratory syncytial virus (treatable with a nucleoside analog [ribavirin])
HCV (treatable with a nucleoside analog [ribavirin])
HIV (treatable with nucleoside analogs)

3. ACV: DNA polymerase, thymidine kinase of HSV or VZV
Phosphonoformate: DNA polymerase of herpesviruses (e.g., CMV)
Amantadine: M_2 protein of influenza A
AZT: RNA-dependent DNA polymerase of HIV

4. Amantadine and rimantadine inhibit influenza A virus replication by preventing uncoating of the virus in the cytoplasm. Oseltamivir and zanamivir are neuraminidase inhibitors that inhibit both influenza A and B viruses by preventing proper release of the virus. Baloxavir marboxil inhibits a subunit of the polymerase of influenza A and B viruses. These drugs are effective as prophylactics and, while the virus is replicating, during the first days of infection. Later, the inflammatory and immune responses cause the disease signs. Therapy is not appropriate unless the infection is definitely caused by influenza and treated within the first 3 days of infection. It is unlikely that any of these drugs would be effective on the sixth day after symptoms have started.

5. HAV and rhinovirus are picornaviruses with very different requirements for disinfection. HAV is an enterovirus and resistant to detergents and acid. Disinfection requires rigorous treatment for disinfection, such as 2% glutaraldehyde (a protein cross-linking fixative), toilet bowl cleaner with 23% hydrochloric acid and quaternary ammonium compounds, or ≈10% bleach (sodium hypochlorite). Autoclaving is also appropriate. In contrast, rhinoviruses can be disinfected by mild acid, including citric acid and the treatments described for HAV. For an enveloped virus such as HSV, detergent, 70% isopropanol or ethanol, acid, greater than 3% hydrogen peroxide, ≈10% bleach, and iodophors will inactivate the virus. Although enveloped, HBV disinfection requires rigorous methods. Universal blood and body fluid precautions should be used with HBV. HBV is less susceptible to detergents but can be disinfected with the other treatments listed for HSV.

6. For HBV and influenza A, the best protection is vaccination. Aerosol spread of influenza A is so contagious that prior immunity is the best prevention. Prophylactic antiviral treatment is expensive, difficult to administer, has side effects, and selects for resistance. For HBV, as for HIV and HCV, universal precautions for preventing transmission and contact with blood-borne infections must be used. All human blood is treated as if infected with these viruses. Universal precautions include wearing protective clothes, gloves, and eye shields, and not bending, recapping, or removing contaminated needles and other contaminated sharps. Contaminated items must be discarded or disinfected as described in question 5. For HSV, gloves must be worn to prevent infection. There is no vaccine for HSV.

Chapter 41 Papillomaviruses and Polyomaviruses

1. HPV-16 and HPV-18 are the most common high-risk strains for cervical and laryngeal cancer, but there are another 12 strains that also have the potential to integrate into the host chromosome and cause cancer. Their E6 and E7 proteins bind and inactivate the cellular growth-suppressor (transformation-suppressor) proteins p53 and the *p105* retinoblastoma gene product (p105RB), and the E5 protein enhances cell growth by stabilizing the epidermal growth factor receptor to make the cell more sensitive to growth signals. Integration inactivates viral genes necessary for its replication. Without virus replication to kill the cell and without p53 to error-check mutations, there is a greater potential for abnormal, uncontrolled growth of cells, as well as for mutation and the development of carcinoma.

2. The virus is transmitted by direct contact (warts) and on fomites (towels) or mixing and matching of mucous membranes and sharing mucous and skin (oral and genital papillomas).

3. The virus is harbored in the basal keratinocytes, little virus protein expression occurs, and the infected cells escape recognition. CD8 T cells can eventually be stimulated to resolve the infection (get rid of the wart). Virions are produced as the cells terminally differentiate and are released from cells that are programmed to die and be shed (skin and mucous epithelium), and therefore unless vaccinated, little antibody is produced. Vaccination promotes production of immunoglobulin (Ig)G which is secreted and can prevent infection.

4. Transmission can be prevented by using condoms during sex. Immunization with the HPV vaccine can prevent establishment of an infection and disease development and is suggested for girls and boys aged 11 to 25 years to be given before potential exposure to this ubiquitous virus on sexual experience.

5. JCV is a DNA virus that establishes latent and chronic infection of kidney cells, monocytes, lymphocytes, oligodendrocytes, and astrocytes. The virus is maintained in a latent state by cell-mediated immunity. Decrease in immune control by T cells allows the virus to replicate and spread. Infection of astrocytes results in abnormal growth and appearance; production of virus in oligodendrocytes is lytic and causes demyelination. The target cells, outcome of virus production, and the inflammatory response result in PML.

6. Individuals whose T-cell functions are compromised are at risk for PML. This includes organ transplant recipients; chemotherapy patients; and interestingly, people who are treated with natalizumab, which blocks the interaction of α4-integrin on immune cells with vascular cell adhesion molecule 1. This prevents T-cell interactions with antigen-presenting cells and their ability to cross the blood-brain barrier. The absence of proper T-cell function, either caused by immunosuppression or blockage by antibody, allows activation of JCV from latency and access to and replication in the brain. The immunocompromised state during AIDS allows the virus to be activated from latency, replicate, and spread.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The HPV that causes warts is spread by contact with other skin surfaces and would only initiate a wart at another site by contact with the primary site. The virus from a particular wart does not spread systemically.

2. Although the wart may disappear, the viral genome may remain in cells at the base of the wart site.

3. HPVs are controlled by host transcriptional machinery and require a replicating cell to provide deoxyribonucleotide substrates and a DNA polymerase to replicate the genome. Nongrowing cells cannot support virus genome replication. Also, expression of the late (capsid) mRNA and proteins is controlled by the same promoters as certain keratin genes; therefore they are tied to the differentiation stages of the keratinocyte. Thus complete virion particles are only made in the terminally differentiated skin cells and virus are released as these cells die and become the surface layer of skin. For the polyomaviruses, T cells control the replication of these viruses in an unknown manner.

4. The best way to identify an HPV type is by analysis of the genome using PCR, real-time PCR, or in situ hybridizations using DNA primers or probes that are specific for the different HPV types.

5. It is unlikely that the common wart virus is associated with human cancer. HPV-16 and HPV-18 (cervical carcinoma) are the most predominant types associated with cancers.

Chapter 42 Adenoviruses

1. The predominant routes of transmission of adenovirus are as aerosols and by the fecal-oral route, but adenovirus is also transmitted by contact.

2. The most likely types are serotypes 4 and 7 but could also be 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, and 14.

3. Diseases include conjunctivitis (pinkeye) and keratoconjunctivitis, pharyngoconjunctival fever, sore throat, pneumonia, common coldlike syndrome, gastroenteritis, and systemic infection.

4. Replication of the virus will kill the infected cell, so antibody is sufficient to resolve most adenovirus diseases. Antibody to the fiber proteins is neutralizing. However, adenovirus can also establish chronic infection, and natural killer (NK) and T cells are important in killing and controlling the chronic and latent infection.

5. Adenovirus types 4 and 7 are common causes of acute respiratory disease that spreads quickly to individuals in close proximity and under stress (military barracks). Infection of military personnel would rapidly spread and debilitate entire units, which would compromise their ability to serve their country. An outbreak of adenovirus 14 at Lackland Air Force Base is described in Clinical Case 42.1.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The patient has disease signs consistent with pharyngoconjunctival fever.

2. The most likely source of this outbreak is the unchlorinated water in the camp pond. The virus is very hardy and can endure relatively harsh conditions.

3. The capsid of the adenovirus protects the virus from harsh conditions of drying and even the acid and bile of the gastrointestinal tract to allow the virus to be transmitted by fecal-oral and respiratory routes, through contact, and on fomites.

4. Contamination of the pond would be difficult to eliminate. There is no vaccine to protect the campers. However, greater care with sewage may prevent further contamination of the pond. Also, campers should not share towels or other items that may come into contact with virus.

5. An eye swab, a fecal sample, and a nasal wipe could be tested for the virus in the infected child. Pond water could be concentrated to allow detection of virus as a common source of the infection. The presence of adenovirus and its type would be analyzed by PCR.

Chapter 43 Human Herpesviruses

1. (a) HSV-1 and HSV-2. Both viruses cause similar presentations, and it depends on which virus was placed at the site.
   (b) Varicella-zoster virus (VZV)
   (c) EBV
   (d) HSV, CMV, and EBV

2. (a) HSV-1 and HSV-2 are very similar and can cause the same diseases, except HSV-2 is usually transmitted and occurs below the belt. Both viruses cause vesicular infections of the oral, genital, and anal mucosa. HSV-1 can cause encephalitis, and HSV-2 can cause meningitis. The two viruses can be discriminated antigenically and by protein patterns, restriction fragment polymorphism, and DNA sequence (polymerase chain reaction [PCR]).
   (b) VZV resembles HSV in that it is neurotropic and expresses a thymidine kinase. Unlike HSV, it is transmitted by aerosol, acquired in the lungs, and then spread by viremia to the target tissues (e.g., skin). Like HSV, VZV establishes latency in neurons, but unlike HSV, recurrence (zoster) results in replication and release along an entire dermatome, whereas HSV is released only at the terminus of the nerve.
   (c) EBV has a very specific receptor specificity, which defines its tropism to B cells and some epithelial cells. Once in the B cell, it uses the natural cell biology of the B cell to promote its latent, recurrent and productive cycles.
   (d) All herpesviruses establish lytic, latent, and recurrent infections. HSV is neurotropic; CMV and EBV are lymphotropic, but unlike EBV, CMV can infect many different cell types.

3. (a) The infection was initially acquired by contact with another person with an active lesion (kissing) or his or her saliva. This presentation is likely to be a recurrence of an HSV infection after exposure to ultraviolet B radiation in sunlight, which is a common trigger of recurrence.
   (b) The patient breathed in an aerosol containing VZV. The virus can also be obtained by contact with active lesions, but this route is not efficient.
   (c) EBV is acquired by sharing saliva (e.g., kissing), and in this case, it is acquired from the water bottle.
   (d) All of the disease presentations in this case are recurrences from latent virus: from neurons for HSV, from macrophages and other cells for CMV, and from B cells for EBV, as a result of the immunosuppression.

4. (a) Immunocompromised individuals are at risk for disseminated disease. For neonates, HSV infection can be lethal because of their limited cell-mediated immunity. Also, HSV spreads extensively in individuals with eczema because of their compromised skin.
   (b) Adults suffer more severe VZV disease than children and are prone to pneumonia during the initial infection stage of the lung. Immunocompromised individuals and neonates are at risk because of the lack of protective cell-mediated immunity.
   (c) Immunocompromised individuals are at risk for a leukemia/lymphoma-like disease of B cells because of the ability of EBV to immortalize these cells.
   (d) HSV and EBV cause disease in normal individuals, whereas CMV disease is usually asymptomatic except in the immunocompromised individual. The immunocompromised individual is at risk for serious disease for all herpesviruses.

5. (a) There is no vaccine for HSV, but there are antiviral drugs, including acyclovir, valacyclovir, penciclovir, and famciclovir.
   (b) There is a live attenuated vaccine for varicella, given on the same schedule as the measles-mumps-rubella vaccine. There are two vaccines for zoster: a stronger version of the live varicella vaccine and a subunit vaccine consisting of the glycoprotein E and an adjuvant. Both are administered to adults older than 50 years. There are antiviral drugs, including acyclovir, valacyclovir, penciclovir, and famciclovir.
   (c) There is no vaccine and no true antiviral drug for EBV.
   (d) There are no vaccines for these viruses. Reduction in immunosuppressive therapy will allow T-cell control of the EBV-associated lymphoma to resume. HSV and CMV can be treated with antiviral drugs; CMV can be treated with ganciclovir, valganciclovir, foscarnet, and cidofovir.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The diagnosis can be confirmed by taking a Tzanck smear and analyzing the cells taken from the base of a lesion for syncytia and Cowdry type A inclusion bodies. The sample can also be analyzed by immunofluorescence. A sample of vesicle fluid can be put into cell culture and the cells observed for CPEs, or the vesicle fluid or spent medium can be analyzed by PCR for the HSV genome.

2. Immunofluorescence using type-specific antibodies or PCR analysis of the samples indicated in question 1 can distinguish HSV-1 from HSV-2.

3. Innate responses, such as IFN-α and NK cells, are activated early to limit the spread of virus, followed later by T-cell responses and antibody. T cells are essential for resolution of infection, but antibody assists in the cleanup of the infection, although it is not sufficient for protection or control of the infection.

4. Latency is established in the trigeminal ganglia because of the site of infection. Future recurrences will be triggered by stresses such as ultraviolet B light and emotional or physical stress.

5. The child was infected by contact with lesion material from an infected person (e.g., a kiss) or by sharing and mouthing an item (e.g., spoon, pacifier, rattle, etc.) with someone bearing an active lesion.

6. Most of the effective anti-HSV drugs are nucleotide analogs that are activated by the viral-encoded

thymidine kinase and then will inhibit the viral DNA-dependent DNA polymerase. These drugs include valacyclovir, acyclovir, penciclovir, and famciclovir. They are not indicated for this child because the infection is not life-threatening, and the disease has progressed beyond the time within which the drugs would be effective.

7. The simplest test would be a heterophile antibody test, which is specific for EBV and not CMV. Serology for EBV antigens or PCR to detect the genome in a blood sample could confirm the diagnosis. During the course of disease, virus and antibodies to VCA and EA would be detected. Only on resolution will antibodies to EBNA be detected. These tests will also distinguish between a current and previous course of EBV disease.

8. The mononucleosis results from the expansion in numbers of T cells on stimulation by the EBV-infected B cells. Mononucleosis-like syndromes accompany other infections (e.g., CMV, HIV) of lymphocytes and myeloid cells, which are antigen-presenting cells.

9. Swollen glands and fatigue are caused by the large-scale activation of the immune response, as indicated by the expansion of the numbers of T cells.

10. Immunocompromised individuals are at risk for EBV-induced leukemia and lymphoma-like diseases because EBV-stimulated B cells will grow out of control in the absence of functional T cells. Boys with Duncan disease (X-linked immunodeficiency) die of leukemia-like immunoproliferation caused by the inability of their T cells to control the outgrowth of B cells (this function is normally used to limit the outgrowth of B cells in response to antigen).

    Thought Question: Herpesviruses are associated with many different diseases, including atherosclerosis, Alzheimer disease, inflammatory diseases, and cancer. In some cases, as with EBV and HHV-8, the connection is clear, but in other cases, it is not so clear. Because these viruses are ubiquitous, lifelong infection is the status quo, but each individual interacts with the infection in a different manner. In some, there is more inflammation, greater frequency of recurrences, infection of different sites, and different levels of symptoms. It is harder to know the subtle effects these viruses have on the **balance** between inflammation and maintenance (status quo) (think M1 versus M2 macrophages) that continues all the time. There are some who suggest that chronic infections (e.g., parasitic worms) educate T-regulator cells and immune control mechanisms, and others suggest that individuals whose bodies are shifted toward inflammation are more prone and likely to have more serious heart attacks. The latter argument has been raised to encourage individuals older than 65 years to be immunized for influenza and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* to prevent the inflammation that accompanies infection. Individuals with integrated and reactivatable HHV-6 are more prone to fatigue, cognitive dysfunction, and other problems. It is very hard to know the influence latent/recurrent herpesviruses have on us.

Chapter 44 Poxviruses

1. Orf virus is a poxvirus with a large DNA genome and a complex virion structure; it replicates in the cytoplasm and causes a vesicular lesion. Unlike smallpox, it is a zoonosis; it is transmitted by contact and does not spread from the site of infection.

2. Orf virus is the poxvirus of sheep and goats.

3. A poxvirus replicates in the cytoplasm and, as a result, must be able to transcribe its genome in the cytoplasm, which requires encoding of a DNA-dependent RNA polymerase and other enzymes present in the nucleus of the host.

4. Wild-type smallpox is strictly a human virus (no animal reservoirs), it always causes disease signs (allows identification of infected individuals), there is only one serotype, and an effective vaccine is available. Immunization with other poxviruses (e.g., vaccinia virus) protects against smallpox virus.

5. MCV, like smallpox, infects only human cells and like other poxviruses, replicates in the cytoplasm. Unlike other poxviruses, MCV is restricted to infecting keratinocytes and can stimulate the growth of cells rather than causing a lytic infection. It is released, like human papilloma virus, on shedding of the terminally differentiated keratinocytes or epithelium.

6. MCV is transmitted by contact with infected skin.

7. Although MCV is common in healthy people, the immunodepression caused by TNF-α antagonists or immunosuppression (reduction in cell-mediated immunity) during AIDS or by chemotherapy or immunotherapy puts an individual at higher risk for more frequent and larger lesions.

ANSWERS

1. Poxviruses have a large, complex structure with several membranes, lateral bodies, and other structures. Unlike other viruses with small interlocking capsid pieces, synthesis and assembly of complex structures require complex interactions to ensure that all the necessary enzymes and structures are included in final package.

2. Poxviruses are DNA viruses. Replication of a DNA virus in the cytoplasm requires that the virus supply and encode the enzymes required for mRNA synthesis (e.g., DNA-dependent RNA polymerase, capping enzymes) and for DNA synthesis (DNA-dependent DNA polymerase), which are enzymes that are normally present in the nucleus.

3. Immunity to smallpox infection develops from the local innate responses to the more systemic antibody and T-cell responses. The immune responses do not develop until 6 to 10 days after infection or later because of the virus' ability to evade host protections (too late to stop

its spread). Because the virus has spread throughout the body by this time and infected many tissues, the immune response (especially cell-mediated immunity and inflammation) can cause great damage when trying to eliminate the infected cells. In a vaccinated person, antibody is present in the bloodstream to block the spread of the virus by viremia. T-cell responses are activated within 1 to 4 days from memory cells, and these responses can successfully limit cell-cell spread, kill infected cells, and resolve the infection.

4. Elimination of smallpox was made possible by an excellent vaccine that leaves a scar as evidence of vaccination, a very active WHO, and because the virus has the following properties: exclusive human host range (no animal vectors to control); single serotype shared with animal viruses such as vaccinia; and presence of symptoms in every infected individual, which facilitated quarantine procedures.

5. Vaccinia has been developed into an attenuated virus that will not cause significant human disease (in immunocompetent hosts). The genome contains many genes that are not necessary for virus replication and that can be replaced with genes from other viruses or microbes. If the appropriate gene is incorporated into a vaccinia hybrid, then the vaccine would establish a natural immune response, including CD8 T cells and memory cells, which would be appropriate for those viruses requiring TH1 immune responses for immune control. The vaccinia hybrid vaccine would also be appropriate for viruses that cannot be grown in animal models or tissue culture as long as the relevant genes can be isolated, for viruses that would have questionable safety because of potential reversion, and for viruses that have oncogenic potential. Appropriate viruses include human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), herpes simplex virus (HSV), cytomegalovirus (CMV), Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), and other viruses.

6. Both HPV and molluscum contagiosum infect keratinocytes and stimulate the growth of the basal cell. Neither virus is cytolytic, and virus is released as the skin cell matures and dies. Both viruses evade host immune responses, HPV by limiting protein expression and virus production within the body, and molluscum contagiosum with approximately 30% of its genome dedicated to the purpose

Chapter 45 Parvoviruses

1. Chronic hemolytic anemia (e.g., sickle cell anemia) puts an individual at risk for serious disease with B19 parvovirus because it compounds the loss of erythrocyte production resulting from the virus' infection of erythroid precursors.

2. Erythroid precursors are the host cell for the virus. The virus requires a growing cell to replicate and targets the blood group P antigen (globoside) as a receptor on these cells.

3. Infection of an adult may result in acute polyarthritis caused by immune complex–mediated inflammatory reactions. Infection of the fetus can result in hydrops fetalis, which often results in fetal death. The virus infects the erythroid precursors of the fetus, killing them and causing anemia, edema, hypoxia, and congestive heart failure.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The biphasic nature of the disease and the slapped-face rash are notable symptoms but are not unique to B19. B19 also causes arthralgia in adults because of immune complexes. A somewhat similar course of disease would occur with human herpesvirus 6 induction of exanthema subitum (roseola), although the time course may be different.

2. The child was infectious during the initial disease signs and symptoms, which resemble a mild cold. The rash is immune mediated and occurs later after the contagion period is over.

3. The initial nonspecific disease signs are caused by interferon and other innate responses to the infection. The rash is caused by immune responses that are most likely associated with antibody and virion immune complexes.

4. The rash of the daughter and the arthralgia of the mother are caused by the presence of antibody, formation of immune complexes, and type 2 and 3 hypersensitivity reactions.

5. Individuals with chronic hemolytic anemia (e.g., sickle cell anemia) are at risk for serious disease because B19 replicates in erythrocyte precursors and prevents development of new erythrocytes or shortens their lifetime. Pregnant women are at risk for B19 infection, which causes hydrops fetalis and loss of the fetus.

6. Quarantine would not be effective because the virus is spread before the onset of the classic disease signs and symptoms of erythema infectiosum (fifth disease).

Chapter 46 Picornaviruses

1. The baby is likely to be infected with echovirus 11. Infection could have occurred on contact with fecal material from the mother but, just as likely, by contact with nasal secretions or an aerosol. The mother or another family member is likely to be the source of infection because echovirus 11 causes a common cold in adults.

2. The virus is a naked capsid virus and is impervious to acids, detergents, heat, and dryness. It can withstand the harsh conditions of the gastrointestinal tract and even insufficient sewage treatment. As a result, the virus is transmitted by the fecal-oral route, but it also can infect the upper respiratory tract and cause common coldlike symptoms and can be transmitted by contact or aerosols.

3. Echovirus 11 kills the infected cell it infects and then spreads to other cells. The most important immune response for protection is antibody, which will neutralize the released virus to prevent spread of the virus. If Mom had been infected at an earlier time, then transplacental immunoglobulin (Ig)G would have been provided to the infant from Mom for protection, but that is not the case. Antibody in the serum also prevents spread of the virus to the target tissue, which would be the meninges and brain.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The key signs and symptoms were sore throat, fever, faint rash, excessive napping, lethargy, headache, and pain on turning head (stiff neck). The presence of lymphocytes in the CSF and normal glucose and protein levels minimizes the diagnosis of a bacterial infection.

2. The differential diagnosis is aseptic meningitis that is likely caused by a virus such as an enterovirus, HSV, or lymphocytochoriomeningitis virus, or by an arboencephalitis virus from the Togaviridae, Flaviviridae, or Bunyaviridae families. *Cryptococcus neoformans* (fungus), *Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* and *Borrelia burgdorferi* are also possible. However, the presence of a rash and sore throat before signs of meningitis strengthen the likelihood of an enterovirus infection, such as coxsackievirus A, echovirus, or parechovirus. At an earlier time (30 years ago), polio would also be in the differential diagnosis.

3. The rash and sore throat in the prodrome period and the presence of lymphocytes in the CSF distinguish an enterovirus meningitis from other microbial causes.

4. An RT-PCR analysis would identify the enterovirus in the CSF and confirm the diagnosis.

5. Enteroviruses are spread by the fecal-oral and aerosol routes.

6. The initial target tissues for enteroviruses are the mucoepithelium, lymphoid tissue of the tonsils and pharynx, and Peyer's patches of the intestinal mucosa. The virus is cytolytic.

Chapter 47 Coronaviruses and Noroviruses

1. A common cold is an upper respiratory infection and most likely caused by a coronavirus or one of the many rhinoviruses. Other picornaviruses (coxsackievirus, echovirus), parainfluenza, respiratory syncytial virus, metapneumovirus, and even influenza virus can cause common coldlike symptoms.

2. Common coronaviruses and rhinoviruses replicate poorly or cannot replicate at 37° C and are restricted to the cooler environments of the upper respiratory tract.

3. They are transmitted primarily by contact with contaminated hands, surfaces, and fomites, as well as by aerosols.

4. There are multiple microbial causes of gastroenteritis, and the nature of the stool, the time course of onset, and the history of exposure are important clues to the cause of the disease. For a combination of vomiting and diarrhea, *Bacillus cereus,* rotavirus, and norovirus should be in the differential diagnosis. Onset from *B. cereus* should be within about 4 to 10 hours because it is the result of intoxication by preformed toxin present in the food. Norovirus requires sufficient time to replicate in a sufficient number of cells and cause sufficient damage to elicit the diarrhea.

5. Norovirus binds to blood group antigens (ABO) on the cell surface, the intestinal villi are compromised as indicated by broadening and blunting, and crypt cells are also compromised and inflammatory processes initiated. These changes cause the diarrhea. Delay in gastric emptying and reduced gastric mobility cause nausea and vomiting.

6. The symptoms are the best means of diagnosing the infection, but reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) and quantitative real-time PCR are the methods that also can be used. There also are enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) tests for immunologic detection.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Rotavirus-induced gastroenteritis usually occurs in infants, not adults. This infection is likely caused by a norovirus such as Norwalk virus.

2. Viral transmission of this virus is fecal-oral and probably through food.

3. The noroviruses are capsid viruses. Their capsid is impervious to acid, detergent, and drying.

4. Handwashing after using the bathroom is the best means for limiting the spread of this virus.

Chapter 48 Paramyxoviruses

1. Measles binds to specific protein receptors; fuses its membrane with the cell's membrane; delivers its negative-strand genome and RNA-dependent RNA polymerase components into the cytoplasm, in which individual mRNAs are generated; a full-length copy (positive-sense template) of the genome is made; and new genomes are transcribed from the template. The proteins of the virus are translated, including glycoproteins. The glycoproteins are processed similarly to cellular glycoproteins and then inserted into the plasma membrane. The matrix protein associates with these proteins, and the nucleocapsid (genome plus polymerase components) associates with the matrix protein, which promotes the

budding of the virion from the membrane, causing it to leave the infected cell. The virus does not have to kill the cell to exit.

2. Cough, conjunctivitis, coryza, photophobia (CCCP) and Koplik spots and rash (KR).

3. Measles is transmitted by aerosols.

4. Either the boy never was vaccinated, he did not get a booster to ensure that he has sufficient immune protection, or he is immunocompromised and did not respond to the vaccine.

5. Pneumonia, which can also be a serious complication, accounts for 60% of the deaths caused by measles. Bacterial superinfection is common in patients with pneumonia caused by the measles virus. Encephalitis caused by the virus usually begins 7 to 10 days after the onset of illness, but infection can induce postinfectious encephalitis caused by immunopathologic reactions. Disease mortality increases if there is a vitamin A deficiency. Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE) is a very late neurologic sequela of measles resulting from a mutant of measles that replicates slowly in neurons until a threshold level induces inflammation.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The three Cs (cough, conjunctivitis, and coryza), rash, and Koplik spots (white lesions in mouth) are characteristic of measles. Photophobia may also be present.

2. The diagnosis is usually made based on the disease signs. Laboratory tests that may confirm the diagnosis include an RT-PCR analysis of RNA to detect the viral genome or immunofluorescence to detect viral antigens in cells present in respiratory tract secretions, urine, or blood.

3. There are no antiviral drugs available for measles, but immunoglobulin can limit the severity of the disease.

4. The patient was contagious for approximately 7 days before and 3 to 4 days after the onset of disease symptoms.

5. Incidence of the disease has become rare because of an effective immunization program.

6. The patient had an insufficient immune response to prevent viremic spread of the measles virus and onset of disease. This could occur if the individual was not immunized or did not receive a booster immunization as a young teenager.

7. This disease is laryngotracheobronchitis (croup) and is caused by parainfluenza virus.

8. *Haemophilus influenzae* can cause an epiglottitis that would have similar symptoms. RSV, metapneumovirus, influenza virus, *Bordetella pertussis,* and adenovirus may also cause croup-like disease.

9. Nasal washings can grow in tissue culture cells and will fuse the cells into multinucleated giant cells (syncytia). RT-PCR can be used to detect and identify the virus in nasal washings.

10. There is no antiviral drug for this disease, but nebulized cold or hot steam can help open the airways.

11. The child is contagious during the symptomatic period. The virus is transmitted by the respiratory route.

Chapter 49 Orthomyxoviruses

1. She acquired the infection by breathing a contaminated aerosol.

2. Normally there is an abrupt onset of fever, chills, severe myalgias, loss of appetite, weakness and fatigue, sore throat, and a nonproductive cough within 2 days of infection. The fever persists for 3 to 8 days, and unless a complication occurs, recovery is complete within 7 to 10 days. This woman suffered ARDS.

3. Cell-mediated immunity is suppressed in pregnant women. This allowed the virus to replicate and spread to a greater extent and enhanced the pathogenicity of the infection.

4. This H1N1 strain is a reassortant of viral strains from humans, pigs, and ducks generated by subsequent infections of pigs with virus from duck and then human and other pig viruses. It created a unique H1N1 virus. This is shown in Fig. 49.5.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. These symptoms can be caused by the parainfluenza, metapneumovirus, or respiratory syncytial paramyxoviruses or by adenovirus.

2. The diagnosis can be confirmed by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) tests for virus antigen, RT-PCR analysis for the influenza genome, and detection of hemagglutinating activity in nasal washings with confirmation by hemagglutination inhibition with virus-specific antibody.

3. Amantadine and rimantadine inhibit the uncoating of the virus by blocking the M2 viral protein–derived channel that is inserted into the endosomal uptake vesicle. This prevents the flow of protons through the channel and the subsequent dissociation of the nucleocapsid. The M2 channel also prevents acidification of the Golgi. An acidified Golgi would cause the HA protein to change conformation and be inactivated. Antiinfluenza therapy with amantadine or neuraminidase inhibitors is effective before or within the first 48 hours of infection, when virus replication is occurring but before extensive tissue damage is caused by the virus and the host's immune response to the virus causes immunopathogenesis. Other individuals can take amantadine as a prophylactic drug. Amantadine and rimantadine are no longer the drugs of

choice due to the prevalence of resistant strains. Oseltamivir, zanamivir and baloxavir marboxil are preferred.

4. The patient was contagious approximately 1 day before and up to 5 days after the onset of disease signs. The virus is transmitted by the respiratory route.

5. Very young and very old family members are at greatest risk. The young are immunonaive, and the elderly may be immunodeficient or may not have been exposed; thus they lack a response to the current strain of influenza. Older individuals also have difficulty repairing the damage caused by the influenza virus or a bacterial superinfection of the lung (pneumonia) that often accompanies influenza infection.

6. Influenza readily undergoes mutation (drift) to produce new strains of influenza, and influenza A can undergo reassortment of its genome segments with animal (especially avian) influenza viruses to create new viruses (shift). Both shift and drift create new serotypes of virus. The composition of the influenza vaccine is reevaluated on an annual basis in an attempt to out-guess the changes in influenza that Mother Nature delivers.

Chapter 50 Rhabdoviruses, Filoviruses, and Bornaviruses

1. If possible, the biting animal is captured, killed, and analyzed for rabies. In animals, a brain biopsy is analyzed by direct immunofluorescence detection for rabies antigen or samples are taken for genetic analysis by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR). For the patient, there is no method for analysis until late in the infection when antirabies antibody may be present (usually too late to be of help), and an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) can be used for detection. Cerebrospinal fluid or saliva can be analyzed by RT-PCR for viral genome at this time.

2. After a long incubation period, initial symptoms are fever, malaise, headache, pain or paresthesia (itching) at the site of the bite; gastrointestinal symptoms; fatigue; and anorexia. This prodrome after the incubation period usually lasts 2 to 10 days after the incubation period, after which the neurologic symptoms specific to rabies appear. Hydrophobia (fear of water) triggered by the pain associated with the patient's attempts to swallow water, focal and generalized seizures, disorientation, and hallucinations are also common during the neurologic phase. The paralysis may lead to respiratory failure. The patient becomes comatose after the neurologic phase, which lasts from 2 to 10 days. This phase almost universally leads to death resulting from neurologic and pulmonary complications.

3. The antibody is detected late in the course of disease, after the infection has progressed to generate neurologic symptoms. Analysis is only useful to confirm the diagnosis, but it is not helpful to the patient. Knowing that tissue is contaminated with rabies allows prevention of its use for transplants.

4. After being bitten by an animal suspected of carrying rabies, the bite site is washed carefully and then instilled with rabies immunoglobulin. The patient then receives four immunizations with rabies antigen.

5. Ribavirin is a guanosine analog that promotes hypermutation of the viral genome, leading to production of noninfectious viruses.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Rabies is suggested by the boy's refusal to drink (hydrophobia), hallucinations, anxiety, salivation, difficulty breathing, and fever.

2. Rabies has a long incubation period because it is not very cytolytic, replicates slowly until it reaches the brain, and once it enters the neuron it is relatively hidden from immune responses. The characteristic disease signs occur only when the virus has reached the brain, replicates, and causes damage.

3. Immediately after the dog bite, the bite site should have been washed and the child should have been injected with rabies-specific immunoglobulin as close to the site as possible. A course of immunization with the inactivated rabies vaccine should have also been initiated as soon as possible.

4. Unlike other neurologic viral diseases, rabies infection is undetectable until it reaches the brain (too late for treatment), and then it infects the salivary gland, causing painful swallowing and potential infection of others.

Chapter 51 Reoviruses

1. Because this is a watery diarrhea, norovirus, adenovirus, and bacterial agents such as cholera and toxigenic *Escherichia coli* must be considered. These other agents would also cause diarrhea in adults, whereas rotavirus is more likely to cause diarrhea in children.

2. Rotavirus can be detected in stool by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). The rotavirus ELISA was one of the first commercially available ELISAs. Reverse transcriptase- polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) can also be used.

3. The virus is transmitted by the fecal-oral route. The patient is contagious during and for 2 to 5 days after the onset of diarrhea.

4. The baby, because of his small size, is at high risk for dehydration.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. Commercially available ELISAs detect rotavirus in stool.

2. The NSP4 protein of rotavirus has a toxin-like (e.g., cholera) activity to promote secretory diarrhea, and the virus has a cytolytic action on the mucosal epithelium.

3. Treatment is fluid replacement.

4. There are two commercially available vaccines administered as early as possible during the first year of life.

5. Dehydration occurs very rapidly in babies because of their small size and the rapid fluid loss. Lack of access to a hospital and inability to rapidly rehydrate put this baby at greater risk.

6. Protection from rotavirus disease requires the continued presence of virus-specific secretory IgA in the intestine and IgG in the tissue. Even if maternal IgG were present, it would not be protective in the lumen of the intestine. Infection of the mucosa is the only mechanism to elicit an IgA this response. The vaccines are live attenuated and ingested to elicit this response. The protection must be generated as early as possible because babies are exposed and at highest risk for serious disease.

Chapter 52 Togaviruses and Flaviviruses

1. Dengue is a mosquito-borne virus.

2. Dengue, dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF), and dengue shock syndrome (DSS).

3. Neutralizing antibody is protective, but a nonneutralizing antibody (possibly elicited to another strain of dengue) can facilitate uptake into macrophages, in which the virus replicates and travels throughout the body. In addition, immune responses are more intense and exacerbate inflammatory responses with the second infection.

4. Dengue is prevalent where the *Aedes* mosquito vector is prevalent, in tropical regions of the world, including regions of the United States.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The diagnosis of dengue virus infection is indicated by the disease signs of high fever, severe headache, and joint and back pain. His trip to Malaysia would have increased his risk of exposure to *Aedes* mosquitoes carrying the virus.

2. The *Aedes* mosquito is endemic in Malaysia and is a carrier of dengue virus, which is prevalent in Malaysia.

3. The virus was transmitted independently by different mosquitoes to the father and son.

4. Petechiae and ecchymoses are indicators of hemorrhagic disease.

5. The diagnosis of rubella infection is suggested by the arthralgia and especially the mild rash. These immune-mediated responses occur after viral replication and viremic spread, which induces interferon, causing the flulike syndrome.

6. Exposure to rubella in the United States is unlikely because of the effective vaccine program there.

7. If the man had been immunized with the MMR vaccine and received his booster immunization prior to 15 years of age, he should have been protected against rubella disease.

8. Rubella is the only togavirus that is transmitted by aerosols as a respiratory virus.

9. All unimmunized individuals are at risk for this infection. However, the most serious outcomes occur to the fetus of women who are infected before the 20th week of pregnancy. Rubella causes severe congenital defects.

10. Immunization of the populace (especially children) for rubella prevents congenital defects in babies.

Chapter 53 Bunyaviridae and Arenaviridae

1. Lassa fever is carried by small mammals (e.g., mice) and is transmitted by inhalation of aerosols, consumption of contaminated food, or contact with fomites contaminated with mouse saliva, feces, or urine.

2. Arenaviruses have nonfunctional ribosomes in the virion, and the genome consists of two single-strand ambisense RNAs.

3. Like arenaviruses, the bunyaviruses have multiple single-strand ambisense RNAs that are surrounded by an envelope but without ribosomes. Hantaviruses are transmitted in mouse saliva, feces, and urine, but the other bunyaviruses are transmitted by arthropods.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The severe headache, stiff neck, and photophobia are symptoms of meningitis, accompanied by the systemic interferon-induced flulike symptoms caused by a viremia.

2. The virus was transmitted in the feces and urine of the rodents that lived in her house. It is likely that she breathed in contaminated aerosols.

3. This virus infection requires cell-mediated responses (TH1) to control the infection, but antibody can limit viremic spread.

4. La Crosse encephalitis virus is suggested by the meningoencephalitic symptoms, the presence of inflammatory cells in cerebrospinal fluid (which were probably predominantly lymphocytes and accompanied by normal glucose levels), the time of year, and the fact that she spent time in the environment of the *Culex* mosquito carrier of the La Crosse virus.

5. The differential diagnosis would include other viral encephalitides such as eastern and western equine

encephalitis viruses, West Nile encephalitis virus, LCM virus, and also herpes simplex virus. Her recovery from the episode minimizes the possibility that she experienced herpes simplex encephalitis, which usually causes permanent and severe damage.

6. The patient was infected by the bite of a *Culex* mosquito.

7. Transmission could be prevented by reducing exposure to the mosquito vector (e.g., get out of the woods), spraying to kill the mosquitoes, and draining the breeding spots for these mosquitoes (too difficult).

8. Screening programs for birds carrying the encephalitis virus (host) and mosquitoes (vector) can help identify the presence of La Crosse virus in the environment of the summer camp. Blood from the birds can be analyzed for the presence of antibody, and blood from the birds and the mosquitoes can be analyzed by RT-PCR for evidence of the viral genome.

Chapter 54 Retroviruses

1. HIV infects cells expressing CD4 and either the CCR5 or the CXCR4 chemokine receptors. This includes CD4 T cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells.

2. After binding to cell-surface receptors, the virus fuses its envelope with the cell membrane and delivers the virion contents and genome into the cytoplasm. The positive-strand (+) RNA genome is reverse transcribed into DNA, which integrates into the host chromosome and is then transcribed similar to a very active host gene. Genome length mRNAs are transcribed that can become new viral genomes or can be processed into several mRNAs. Smaller mRNAs are also transcribed. The virion assembles on glycoprotein-modified membranes, the virus buds out of the cell, and then the viral protease cleaves the virion proteins into individual proteins to form the nucleocapsid within the envelope.

3. The woman is susceptible to other intracellular bacteria (e.g., *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* complex, *Salmonella*), viruses (especially herpesviruses), fungal infections, and malignancies such as lymphoma and Kaposi sarcoma.

4. HIV is transmitted by unprotected sexual contact and exposure to contaminated blood and blood products and intravenous (IV) drug abuse.

5. Initial virus detection (screening) is currently detected by enzyme-linked immunoassay (ELISA) for both a viral antigen (p24) and for antiviral antibodies. Earlier approaches required confirmation with Western Blot analysis for viral antigens. Initial detection and virus load (amount of virus in the blood) can be determined by real time reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR). The increase in viral load caused by poor compliance to antiviral therapy or viral resistance to therapy would be detected using real time RT-PCR.

6. Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) combines multiple antiretroviral drugs to limit the potential selection of resistant mutants. The drugs target the reverse transcriptase, integrase, protease, CCR5 co-receptor, or block the fusion event.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. A diagnosis of AIDS is confirmed by demonstrating the presence of HIV and a CD4 T-cell level less than 200/μL. The presence of HIV is demonstrated by antibodies to HIV by ELISA and the presence of the p24 protein, and if necessary, confirmation by Western blot analysis, or the presence of the genome by RT-PCR, or similar genomic analysis. CD4 T-cell levels are usually demonstrated by flow cytometry.

2. The high-risk behaviors of this man are heroin addiction and sharing needles at a shooting gallery. Unsafe sex and sex with many partners are also major risk factors.

3. The reduction in CD4 T cells reduces the body's ability to support TH17 and TH1 responses that produce IL-17, tumor necrosis factor, and IFN-γ, respectively. TH17 responses activate epithelial cells and neutrophils, and TH1 responses activate macrophages and CD8 T cells that are necessary to control viral, fungal, and intracellular bacterial infections.

4. The samples should be handled with universal blood precautions. Workers should wear gloves and protective eyewear and clothes.

5. Spread of HIV is limited by not reusing or sharing needles and by using condoms during sex. Individuals at high risk for infection can take one-a-day prophylactic antiviral treatment (PrEP).

6. The most important viral component to be incorporated into a vaccine to generate protective antibody is the gp120 glycoprotein (or the gp160 glycoprotein precursor). The gp120 is the viral attachment protein, and antibodies to this protein will neutralize the virus. Of interest, cytotoxic T-cell responses (CD8 T cells) are generated against other proteins, such as the Gag proteins. Such a vaccine would be appropriate for persons at risk for infection, including health care workers, promiscuous MSM, heterosexual men and women, and drug addicts. The large number of clades and rapid mutation rates make it difficult to develop an effective vaccine.

Chapter 55 Hepatitis Viruses

1. Common symptoms of hepatitis are nausea and abdominal discomfort, slight fever, dark yellow urine, jaundice (including yellowish sclera), and distended and tender abdomen. The time course of disease, possibility for chronic infection (unlikely for hepatitis A virus [HAV] or hepatitis E virus [HEV], very likely for HCV), and the serology of infection are different for HBV.

2. The presence or absence of antigens in the blood and the progression of the antibody response to specific hepatitis viral antigens correlate with disease progression. Most importantly, the presence of HBsAg (surface antigen) indicates unresolved infection, whereas antibody to HBsAg indicates resolved infection or prior immunization with vaccine. Anti-HAV IgG indicates that she had an HAV infection at some time in the past.

3. HBV is transmitted in contaminated blood products, tissues, and semen.

4. Spread of HBV can be prevented by screening the blood supply to prevent transmission by this route, by safe sex, by not sharing or reusing syringe needles, and by abiding by universal blood precautions. Vaccination is the best means of preventing disease. Chronic HBV disease can be treated with reverse transcriptase inhibitors such as lamivudine, entecavir, tenofovir, or adefovir dipivoxil.

5. No, this person has never been infected with HBV but has been immunized and developed antibodies to HBsAg in the vaccine for HBV. Antibodies to other HBV antigens, specifically HBc or HBe, would be present if this person had been previously infected with HBV.

6. This patient has an acute HCV episode that may resolve but is more likely to establish a chronic infection (70% of patients).

7. Treatment with a combination of direct acting antivirals (DAA) is able to resolve the disease and infection in many patients. The DAAs include protease inhibitors, nucleoside, and nonnucleoside inhibitors of the polymerase, and inhibitors of the NS5A protein, which are a component of the polymerase and inhibitor of interferon activity. Prior treatments used pegylated interferon and ribavirin.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. In each case, the time course and nature of the onset of disease would help in distinguishing the hepatitis viruses. Hepatitis A and E have an acute onset of disease, whereas the onset of hepatitis B and C are slower and more insidious.

2. Serologic tests would be helpful to determine recent exposure for all three hepatitis viruses and the stage of disease for hepatitis B. Genomic assays for HBV and HCV can also be performed (PCR [HBV], RT-PCR [HCV]).

3. Patient A probably has hepatitis A infection obtained from food. Patient B may have hepatitis B or C infection acquired from sharing contaminated syringe needles. Patient C is likely to have obtained HCV (but possibly HBV) from a blood transfusion obtained before the screening of the blood supply.

4. Disease from hepatitis A or hepatitis B can be prevented by immunization of the individual. The risk for infection by hepatitis B and C can be reduced by careful screening of the blood and organ supply and use of new syringe and needles and carefully sterilized surgical equipment. Attention to proper hygiene for food service workers and others, and properly disinfected water supplies, are important to limit HAV and HEV dissemination.

5. Patient B (HBV), and especially patient C (HCV), are susceptible to chronic disease. Most individuals infected with HCV experience chronic infection.

6. Acute and chronic HBV disease are discriminated serologically. The presence of HBsAg combined with the inability to detect antibodies to anti-HBsAg is a good indicator of chronic HBV.

7. HBV infection can be prevented by proper blood handling procedures; by not sharing needles when taking drugs; and by practicing safe, protected sex.

Chapter 56 Prion Diseases

1. Myoclonus (muscle twitching) and other neurologic signs without immunologic or virologic evidence of infection support a diagnosis of a prion disease.

2. Prions are an alternate conformation of a normal mammalian protein that forms multimers. Most disinfection procedures disrupt nucleic acid or protein structure. There is no genetic information to be inactivated and the protein is in a tight conformation that could be considered to be already denatured from its normal functional form.

3. Prions are an alternate conformation of a normal mammalian protein, and the host immune response does not recognize them as foreign proteins.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. The disease signs and slow onset suggest the possibility of a spongiform encephalopathy caused by a prion (e.g., CJD). The absence of inflammation distinguishes this disease from progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML) caused by the JC polyomavirus. The differential diagnosis would also include Alzheimer disease, stroke, viral encephalitis, and autoimmune and neoplastic diseases.

2. The lack of inflammation and the vacuolation of the brain are strong indicators of prion diseases.

3. The lack of swelling or inflammation distinguishes the prion diseases from virus diseases.

4. Prions are very resistant to most disinfection procedures. The pathologist should follow standard blood precautions; all infected materials should be disinfected in 5% hypochlorite solution or autoclaved for at least 1 hour.

Chapter 57 Fungal Classification, Structure, and Replication

ANSWERS

1. Fungi differ from bacteria in several ways. Generally, fungi are 10- to 100-fold larger than bacteria. Fungi are eukaryotic microorganisms, whereas bacteria are prokaryotes. Thus fungi contain a well-defined nucleus and cytoplasmic organelles, such as mitochondria, Golgi, and endoplasmic reticulum (see Fig. 57.1). Most fungi exhibit aerobic respiration, although some are facultatively anaerobic, and others are strictly anaerobic. Relative to bacteria, fungi are slow growing with doubling times in terms of hours rather than minutes.

2. In contrast to other eukaryotic (e.g., mammalian) cells, the plasma membranes of fungi contain ergosterol rather than cholesterol as the principal membrane sterol.

3. In contrast to molds, yeasts are usually unicellular; reproduce by budding or by fission; and produce round, pasty, or mucoid colonies on agar. Molds, on the other hand, are multicellular organisms consisting of threadlike tubular structures, called *hyphae* (see Fig. 57.2), which elongate at their tips by a process called *apical extension.* The hyphae combine to produce a matlike structure called a *mycelium.* The colonies formed by molds are often described as filamentous, hairy, or wooly. The hyphae may also produce specialized asexual reproductive elements known as *spore* or *conidia* (see Fig. 57.3).

4. The form of the fungus producing sexual spores is termed the *teleomorph,* and the form producing asexual spores is termed the *anamorph.* In clinical situations, it is common to refer to organisms by their asexual designations. This is because the anamorphic (asexual) state is isolated from clinical specimens, and the sexual or teleomorphic phase occurs only under very specialized conditions in the laboratory.

Chapter 58 Pathogenesis of Fungal Disease

ANSWERS

1. Primary pathogens are capable of initiating infection in a normal, apparently immunocompetent host. Primary pathogens possess putative virulence factors that allow them to actively breach host defenses that ordinarily restrict the invasive growth of other microbes. In contrast, opportunistic pathogens generally only cause infection when there are disruptions in the protective barriers of the skin and mucous membranes or when defects in the host immune system allow them to penetrate, colonize, and reproduce the host.

2. Each of the primary systemic fungal pathogens is an agent of respiratory infections. Each has a saprobic phase that is characterized by filamentous septate hyphae typically found in soil or decaying vegetation that produces the airborne infectious cells. Likewise, the parasitic phase of each fungus is adapted to grow at 37° C and to reproduce asexually in the alternative environmental niche of the host respiratory mucosa. This ability to exist in alternate morphogenic forms (dimorphism) is one of several special characteristics (virulence factors) that allow these fungi to cope with hostile environmental conditions of the hosts.

3. The most important line of defense against the endemic dimorphic fungi is the pulmonary macrophage.

4. Both primary and opportunistic fungal pathogens are capable of replication at 37° C.

Chapter 60 Laboratory Diagnosis of Fungal Disease

1. Knowledge of the specific etiologic agent may have important prognostic implications and may directly influence the choice of antifungal therapy.

2. The identification of yeastlike fungi to the species level often requires the determination of the biochemical and physiologic profile of the organism in addition to the assessment of the microscopic morphology. In contrast, the identification of a mold is based almost entirely on its microscopic morphology. Both yeasts and molds may require molecular or proteomic methods to establish a definitive identification.

3. The endemic dimorphic pathogens are identified by their microscopic morphologic features, by the demonstration of thermal dimorphism, and by exoantigen and nucleic acid probe tests. Nucleic acid sequence analysis and MALDI-TOF MS also have been used to identify these pathogenic fungi.

4. The advantages of direct microscopic examination of clinical material for the diagnosis of fungal infection include low cost and speed of diagnosis. In certain instances, the fungus may be not only detected but identified by microscopy because it possesses a distinctive morphology. Microscopic detection of fungi in tissue serves to guide the laboratory in selecting the most appropriate means to culture the specimen and is helpful in determining the significance of culture results.

Chapter 61 Antifungal Agents

1. The echinocandin antifungal agents inhibit the 1,3-β-glucan synthesis enzyme complex, resulting in deficient cell wall production. Because mammalian cells do not contain 1,3-β-glucans, this class of agents is selective in its toxicity for fungi. Most of the other systemically active antifungal agents act on targets that to some extent are shared by mammalian cells and thus may exhibit toxicity to the host and the infecting fungus.

2. Azole resistance in *C. albicans* can be caused by overexpression or mutation of 14-α-demethylase and by overexpression of efflux pumps, such as *CDR* and *MDR* genes.

3. The attraction of combination therapy is that, by using combinations of antifungal agents, one may be able to achieve a better clinical outcome than with monotherapy. Synergy may be achieved by combining two agents, such as terbinafine and an azole, which both attack the sterol pathway at different points, resulting in a more effective inhibition of ergosterol synthesis and disruption of the fungal cell membrane.

Chapter 62 Superficial and Cutaneous Mycoses

1. Both subjects appear to be suffering from a dermatophytosis. Given the clinical and epidemiologic evidence, one might expect infection with a zoophilic pathogen, such as *Microsporum canis* or a *Trichophyton* species.

2. The first step in making the diagnosis would be to examine both skin scrapings and hair using KOH and calcofluor white. A specific etiologic diagnosis requires culture of hair and skin scrapings, followed by assessment of the gross and microscopic appearance of the cultured fungus. In the case of dermatophytes, further identification may be accomplished by assessing the nutritional requirements of the fungus using special dermatophyte test media.

3. This infection, tinea barbae, will require therapy with an agent such as terbinafine or itraconazole. Further oral-to-muzzle contact should be discouraged.

4. The usual transmission of a zoophilic dermatophyte is from animal to human.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. b. Cuddling with the family cat

2. a. *M. canis*

3. a. Microscopic examination of a skin scraping treated with KOH

Chapter 63 Subcutaneous Mycoses

1. The differential diagnosis of this process includes a subacute bacterial process caused by common aerobic and anaerobic gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria or infection caused by nontuberculous mycobacteria, an actinomycotic mycetoma, or a eumycotic mycetoma.

2. The list of most likely fungi involved in such a process is extensive and includes *Acremonium, Fusarium, Scedosporium, Madurella,* and *Exophiala* species among others.

3. Evaluation of this process should include radiographs of the extremity plus direct microscopic examination of any drainage. If sinus tracts are present, then they should be examined for the presence of any granules. In the absence of drainage or granules, a deep surgical biopsy should be obtained. Routine hematoxylin and eosin (H&E), Gram, acid-fast, and fungal stains (e.g., periodic acid–Schiff [PAS] or Gomori methenamine silver [GMS]) should be performed. Drainage, granules, and biopsy material should be cultured for routine bacteria, acid-fast bacilli, and fungi (selective and nonselective media).

4. Treatment of eumycotic mycetomas is usually unsuccessful, whereas medical therapy (with antibacterial agents) is usually effective in cases of actinomycotic mycetoma. Progression of a eumycotic mycetoma may be slowed by administration of systemically active antifungal agents, such as amphotericin B, terbinafine, ketoconazole, itraconazole, or posaconazole. Amputation is the only definitive treatment but should be balanced against the rate of progression, symptomatology, the availability of adequate prosthesis, and the individual circumstances of the patient. More recently posaconazole seems to be a promising agent for the treatment of mycetoma with clinical cure or improvement of several mycetoma patients.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. c. *Sporothrix* spp.

2. The general approach would be to obtain a biopsy of the lesion and submit it for both histopathology (with fungal stains) and fungal cultures. Whereas histopathology rarely reveals the organism in lymphocutaneous sporotrichosis, it may rule out other pathogens, such as *Nocardia,* which may cause similar lesions. Culture provides the best yield, although it may be delayed. Serology is not usually available and is not especially helpful. In the future, polymerase chain reaction may be useful.

3. b. Itraconazole

Chapter 64 Systemic Mycoses Caused by Dimorphic Fungi

1. In their travels, they were exposed to *Histoplasma capsulatum* (caves in Missouri and chicken coops in Iowa), *Blastomyces dermatitidis* (Wisconsin), and *Coccidioides posadasii* (*immitis*) (Arizona).

2. Dimorphic fungi are organisms that exist in a mold form in nature or in the laboratory at 25° C to 30° C (saprobic phase) and in a yeast or spherule form in tissues or when grown on enriched medium in the laboratory at 37° C (parasitic phase).

3. In addition to dimorphism, all of the agents of the endemic mycoses share the ability to replicate at 37° C.

4. In general, the life cycles of all dimorphic pathogens involve the inhalation of the infective spores in nature, followed by transformation within the lung into the yeast phase, which evades killing by phagocytic cells and replicates both intracellularly and extracellularly. The specifics of each are shown in Figs. 64.5, 64.6, 64.12, and 64.14.

5. Jane's pneumonia most likely represents acute pulmonary histoplasmosis. The diagnosis may be made by serology (detection of antigen in urine and/or antibodies in serum), culture of respiratory secretions, and microscopic examination of sputum or bronchoalveolar lavage fluid.

6. Most acute infections resolve with supportive care and do not require specific antifungal therapy. In rare instances, usually after heavy exposure, acute respiratory distress syndrome may be seen. Specific antifungal therapy with itraconazole plus supportive care may be necessary in such severe cases.

7. The differential diagnosis of Joan's lung nodule includes cancer, histoplasmosis (single nodules are rare), coccidioidal granuloma (common), or a nodule caused by the dog heartworm *Dirofilaria immitis.* Tuberculosis may also be a consideration. Because of the possibility of malignancy, biopsy coupled with histopathology is required. Culture for fungi and mycobacteria should be performed but may not be necessary if characteristic fungal elements are seen on histopathologic exam. Given her exposures, the nodule most likely represents coccidioidomycosis (coccidioidal granuloma). She does not require antifungal therapy.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. d. Acute pulmonary histoplasmosis

2. The diagnosis of histoplasmosis may be made by direct microscopy of respiratory secretions; histopathologic examination of tissue biopsy, culture of blood, bone marrow, or other clinical material; and by serologic studies, including antigen detection in blood and urine. In acute pulmonary histoplasmosis in otherwise immunocompetent individuals, serologic studies using ID and CF tests provide the optimal sensitivity and specificity.

3. In most instances, acute pulmonary histoplasmosis is self-limited and requires only supportive care. In more severe cases, itraconazole is the antifungal agent of choice. Amphotericin B is generally reserved for cases marked by acute respiratory distress syndrome or disseminated disease.

Chapter 65 Opportunistic Mycoses

1. The differential diagnosis of fever, pneumonia, and sinusitis in a BMT patient with GVHD is very broad and includes bacterial infection, viral infection (especially cytomegalovirus), and fungal infection. The combination of sinusitis and a wedge-shaped infiltrate in such a patient receiving voriconazole prophylaxis is strongly suggestive of infection caused by a mold other than *Aspergillus.* Possibilities include infection caused by a mucormycete or another hyaline mold with decreased susceptibility to voriconazole, such as *Fusarium.* The localized pneumonia plus sinusitis makes infection with *Pneumocystis jirovecii* unlikely.

2. Fungi with decreased susceptibility to voriconazole include *C. glabrata,* the Mucormycetes, *Lomentospora prolificans,* and some strains of *Fusarium.*

3. If at all possible, a tissue diagnosis should be made. Material from the sinus and lung should be obtained and examined microscopically. Culture for fungi should also be performed, although it is often negative in this setting, especially if the infection is caused by a member of the Mucormycetes.

4. Therapy should include decreasing the immunosuppression, if possible, coupled with surgical excision of infected material and systemic therapy with amphotericin B. If the infection is caused by Mucormycetes, posaconazole or isavuconazole may be useful based on case reports.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. b. Aspergilloma

2. Although examination and culture of sputum may yield an organism, the most direct approach would be bronchoscopy and biopsy of the mass. Examination of the tissue will show branching septate hyphae consistent with a fungus ball. Culture is necessary to determine the specific involvement with *Aspergillus.*

3. In general, aspergillomas are not managed with specific antifungal therapy. Symptomatic treatment of the underlying COPD is important, but aspergillomas do not usually respond to antifungal therapy. In the event of pulmonary hemorrhage, which may be severe and life-threatening, surgical excision of the cavity and fungus ball may be indicated.

Chapter 66 Fungal and Fungal-Like Infections of Unusual or Uncertain Etiology

1. The differential diagnosis of a solitary lung nodule includes cancer, mycobacterial infection, dirofilariasis (dog heartworm), and fungal (e.g., *Aspergillus, C. immitis, H. capsulatum*), or fungal-like (e.g., adiaspiromycosis) processes.

2. These three entities may be differentiated by diameter of the spherule, thickness of the wall, presence and size of endospores, host reaction, and staining with mucicarmine (see Table 66.2).

3. The conidia of *Adiaspiromyces crescens* are inhaled into the lungs, in which they transform into adiaconidia. The adiaconidia undergo massive enlargement but show no evidence of replication. The host response to the adiaconidia is fibrogranulomatous in nature, and the expanding granuloma may cause symptoms because of compression and displacement of the distal airways and alveolar parenchyma. The severity of the disease appears to be entirely a result of the number of conidia inhaled.

4. Only *Prototheca wickerhamii* can be identified by commercially available yeast identification systems. Neither *L. loboi* nor *R. seeberi* can be grown in culture, and *P. insidiosum* must be identified by demonstration of biflagellate zoospores.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. c. *Prototheca wickerhamii*

2. On histopathologic examination of infected tissue, *Prototheca* spp. appear as sporangiospores that are wedge shaped and arranged in a radial or morula pattern. A wet mount of the culture material may be stained with lactophenol cotton blue to reveal the characteristic sporangia and sporangiospores. The organism in culture is quite metabolically active and may be identified to species using one of several commercially available yeast identification systems to determine the carbohydrate assimilation profile.

3. Treatment of cutaneous protothecosis with a variety of topical and systemic antibacterial, antifungal, and antiprotozoal agents has been largely unsuccessful. Antimycotic agents such as ketoconazole, itraconazole, fluconazole, and amphotericin B have been effective in some cases, as was the combination of amphotericin B and tetracycline. Surgical excision has been recommended for localized lesions.

Chapter 67 Parasitic Classification, Structure, and Replication

ANSWERS

1. Protozoa adapt to harsh conditions by developing into a cyst form that is less metabolically active. This cyst is surrounded by a thick external cell wall capable of protecting the organism from otherwise lethal physical and chemical insults.

2. The cyst form.

3. They avoid the host immune response by alteration of the antigenic properties of their external surfaces. This is accomplished in part by incorporating host antigens into their external cuticular layer.

4. They may be involved directly in causing invasive or superficial (infestation) disease processes or indirectly as intermediate hosts and vectors of many infectious agents. In addition, envenomation by biting and stinging arthropods can result in adverse reactions in human.

Chapter 68 Pathogenesis of Parasitic Diseases

ANSWERS

1. The most common modes of entry are oral ingestion or direct penetration through the skin or other surfaces (see Table 68.1).

2. Two important factors that determine the outcome of the interaction between parasite and host are the route of exposure and the inoculum size.

3. The galactose-inhibitable adherence lectin of *E. histolytica* is a good example of an adhesin that is directly related to the virulence of a parasite. Binding of this lectin to carbohydrates on the host cell surface is required for *E. histolytica* trophozoites to exert their cytolytic activity.

4. Three broad pathologic mechanisms in parasitic diseases are (1) the production of toxic parasite products, (2) mechanical tissue damage, and (3) immunopathologic reactions of the host (see Table 68.3).

5. Parasites can resist immunologic clearance by antigenic variation (e.g., trypanosomes, plasmodia), molecular mimicry (e.g., schistosomes), antigenic masking (e.g., filaria, schistosomes), intracellular location (e.g., plasmodia, leishmania), and immunosuppression (e.g., trypanosomes) (see Table 68.5).

6. The four types of immunopathologic reactions that occur in parasitic diseases are anaphylactic (type 1, helminth infection), cytotoxic (type 2, *Trypanosoma cruzi* infection), immune complex (type 3, malaria), and cell-mediated (type 4, leishmaniasis) (see Table 68.4).

Chapter 70 Laboratory Diagnosis of Parasitic Disease

ANSWERS

1. The life cycle of the parasite dictates both the form and the location of the parasite in the host. These features determine the type of specimen to be collected for diagnosis, when the specimen should be collected, and the type of diagnostic test that must be applied to the specimen.

2. Because the majority of parasitologic examinations and identifications are based entirely on recognizing the characteristic morphology of the organisms, conditions that

may obscure or distort the morphologic appearance of the parasite may result in an erroneous identification or missed diagnosis. For example, improper collection and handling of a specimen before its arrival in the laboratory may result in lysis of protozoan parasites, and contamination of stool specimens with urine may destroy motile trophozoites and cause helminth eggs to hatch. Stool specimens should not contain barium, bismuth, or medications containing mineral oil, antibiotics, antimalarials, or other chemical substances because such specimens compromise the detection of intestinal parasites.

3. Fecal specimens should be collected in clean, wide-mouthed waterproof containers with a tight-fitting lid to ensure and maintain adequate moisture. Specimens should be free of the interfering substances noted in the answer to question 2. Fresh fecal samples should be taken to the laboratory within 2 hours of collection or, if transport is delayed, be placed into preservatives such as 10% formalin, PVA, or SAF. Fecal specimens may be stored at 4° C but should not be incubated or frozen. For routine parasitic examination, a total of three separate specimens collected over a period of no more than 10 days is recommended. Parasitic examination of stools from patients with hospital-acquired diarrhea is not appropriate given the rare frequency of acquiring a parasitic infection in the hospital setting.

4. Parasites detected in blood include *Plasmodium, Babesia, Trypanosoma,* and filarial species.

5. Alternatives to microscopy include serology (antigen and antibody detection), molecular diagnostics, culture, animal inoculation, and xenodiagnosis.

Chapter 71 Antiparasitic Agents

ANSWERS

1. There are numerous obstacles to effective treatment and prevention of parasitic diseases in resource-poor countries, including toxic and ineffective drugs, need for prolonged administration, poor access to diagnostic testing, complex parasitic life cycles, presence of multiple infections and recurrent infections, large number of immunocompromised individuals, poverty, and poor hygiene and sanitation.

2. In many cases, the goal of antiparasitic therapy is similar to that of antibacterial therapy, which is to eradicate the organism rapidly and completely from the infected host. In contrast, in many cases in developing countries, the agents and treatment regimens used for parasitic diseases are designed simply to decrease the parasitic burden and to prevent systemic complications of chronic infection. The difference in treatment strategies is influenced by the severity of disease, the toxicity of the antiparasitic agents, and the likelihood of reinfection.

3. The major importance of the aminoquinoline analogs is in the prophylaxis and treatment of malaria, especially malaria caused by *P. falciparum.*

4. The strategy for the use of anthelmintic drugs is quite different from that for the use of drugs for treating most protozoal infections. Whereas drugs directed against protozoa target younger, more rapidly proliferating cells, most anthelmintic drugs are targeted at nonproliferating adult organisms. Thus many antiprotozoal agents exert a relatively rapid cidal activity against the parasite. In contrast, anthelmintic agents often impair neuromuscular and microtubule function, resulting in expulsion of the worm from the host or impairment of egg production and larval development.

Chapter 72 Intestinal and Urogenital Protozoa

1. The history and clinical picture suggests infection with *Cryptosporidium parvum.*

2. Given this patient's occupation, the most likely source was zoonotic acquisition from one of her animal patients.

3. In addition to cryptosporidiosis, HIV-infected patients are at risk for infection with *Entamoeba histolytica, Giardia, Cystoisospora, Cyclospora,* and Microsporidia. Both *Cystoisospora* species and Microsporidia produce a clinical picture similar to that of cryptosporidiosis.

4. Cryptosporidiosis may be diagnosed by immunofluorescent staining, antigen detection and by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) as part of a gastrointestinal or multiplex enteric panel.

5. In nonimmunocompromised individuals, cryptosporidiosis is self-limited and does not require specific antimicrobial therapy. Currently, there is no broadly effective therapy for cryptosporidiosis in immunocompromised patients. Nitazoxanide is the only drug approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for the specific treatment of cryptosporidiosis in immunocompetent individuals. Spiramycin, azithromycin, and paromomycin all have some promise in different patient groups. In industrialized nations, the most effective treatment and prophylaxis for cryptosporidiosis in AIDs patients is the use of antiretroviral therapy for immune reconstitution. Therapy consists primarily of supportive measures to restore the tremendous fluid loss from watery diarrhea.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. b. *Entamoeba histolytica.*

2. In this patient, the potential agents include *Cyclospora, Cryptosporidium, Cystoisospora,* and *Enterocytozoon bieneusi* or other microsporidia. Simply ordering a routine microscopic examination of stool for ova and parasites would miss all of these potential pathogens. Along with an appropriately collected stool specimen, the order should specify an antigen detection test for *Cryptosporidium,* a modified acid-fast stain for *Cryptosporidium, Cyclospora,* and *Cystoisospora,* and a modified trichrome

or chromotrope stain for microsporidia. A multiplex PCR-based gastrointestinal panel may also be ordered allowing the detection of *Cryptosporidium* and *Cyclospora.*

3. c. Fecal-oral.

Chapter 73 Blood and Tissue Protozoa

1. The differential diagnosis in this patient included central nervous system (CNS) lymphoma, a bacterial process, a fungal process, or toxoplasmosis. The most likely infectious process is toxoplasmosis.

2. The most appropriate test was the one performed. Serologic testing is also generally performed. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) performed on spinal fluid may be considered if biopsy could not be performed.

3. Symptoms of headache, nausea, and vomiting clearly suggest a CNS process. These symptoms in a profoundly immunocompromised patient, such as a heart transplant patient, would lead one to be concerned about a CNS lymphoma or an infectious process. Toxoplasmosis would be a prime consideration.

4. In such a patient, decreasing the immunosuppressive therapy is really not an option. Long-term treatment with pyrimethamine plus sulfadiazine or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole will be required along with administration of corticosteroids, if indicated, to control cerebral edema. It is unlikely that this therapy will be curative given her persistent immunocompromised state. Long-term (e.g., indefinite) suppression will be required.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. b. *Plasmodium knowlesi*

2. *Plasmodium knowlesi* exhibits a 24-hour asexual life cycle, which is the shortest of all known human and nonhuman primate malarias. This rapid cycle, coupled with the ability to infect RBCs at all stages of development is thought to contribute to the rapid development of a high parasite load.

3. Prompt diagnosis, treatment, and adjunctive management are essential to the management of patients with malaria caused by *Plasmodium knowlesi.* It appears to be susceptible to numerous alternative treatments, including chloroquine, mefloquine, quinine plus tetracycline, and atovaquone plus proguanil.

Chapter 74 Nematodes

1. The nematodes that may infect the intestinal tract of humans include *Ascaris, Enterobius vermicularis, Trichuris trichiura, Ancylostoma duodenale, Necator americanus,* and *Strongyloides stercoralis* (see Table 74.1).

2. The most likely nematode in the case presented is *Ascaris lumbricoides.* Among the intestinal nematodes, those presenting with worms in the stool include *E. vermicularis, A. lumbricoides, and S. stercoralis* (larval form). The eggs of *A. duodenale, N. americanus, T. trichiura, E. vermicularis, and A. lumbricoides* also may be found in stool.

3. The most likely means of acquisition is via the fecal-oral route.

4. Patients infected with *A. lumbricoides* are not at risk of autoinfection.

5. The life cycle of *Ascaris* includes shedding of the fertilized egg in stool, followed by a period of maturation in the soil. The latter is required for the egg to be infectious. The infective stage is then ingested, and the larval worm is released to migrate via the bloodstream to the liver, heart, and pulmonary circulation. The larvae break free in the alveoli of the lungs, in which they grow and molt and are finally coughed up, swallowed, and return to the small intestine. The male and female worms mature in the small intestine, mate, and initiate egg production.

6. Ascaris may produce a variety of extraintestinal symptoms, ranging from pneumonitis to intestinal obstruction and perforation. Migration of the adult worms to the biliary tract and liver can produce severe tissue damage and attendant symptomatology. Extraintestinal invasion may be stimulated in response to fever, drugs other than those used to treat ascariasis, and by anesthetics.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. d. *Trichinella spiralis.*

2. The most characteristic diagnostic features of trichinosis are leukocytosis with eosinophilic predominance. Diagnosis largely depends on correlating the symptomatology and laboratory test results with a carefully taken history. Confirmation may be achieved by muscle biopsy or serologic detection of anti-*Trichinella* antibodies.

3. Treatment of trichinosis is primarily symptomatic because there are no good antiparasite agents for tissue larvae. Treatment of the adult worms in the intestine with mebendazole may halt production of new larvae. Steroids, along with thiabendazole or mebendazole, are recommended for severe symptoms.

Chapter 75 Trematodes

1. The differential diagnosis of hematuria in this individual includes bladder cancer, nephrolithiasis, urinary tuberculosis, and schistosomiasis.

2. The etiologic agent of this patient's urologic process was most likely *Schistosoma haematobium.*

3. As with other forms of schistosomiasis, infection with *S. haematobium* is acquired by contact with freshwater containing the appropriate snail intermediate host.

4. The major complications of this infection are obstructive uropathy and squamous cell cancer of the bladder.

5. The treatment of choice is praziquantel.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. a. *Schistosoma mansoni.*

2. The pathogenesis is migration of eggs from the intestinal mucosa to the liver via the portal circulation, with subsequent inflammation leading to periportal fibrosis and portal hypertension.

3. The diagnosis of schistosomiasis is usually established by the demonstration of the characteristic eggs in feces. Serologic tests also are available.

Chapter 76 Cestodes

1. This patient presents with focal neurologic signs. The differential diagnosis is that of a mass lesion, including tumor, bacterial or fungal abscess, or cysticercosis.

2. The most likely parasite causing this condition is the pork tapeworm, *Taenia solium.*

3. The diagnostic tests include radiographic imaging showing calcified cysticerci. Central nervous system lesions such as this are generally not biopsied. Serologic studies demonstrating antibodies to *T. solium* may be useful.

4. The drug of choice for cysticercosis is either praziquantel or albendazole. Concomitant steroid administration may be necessary to minimize the inflammatory response to dying larvae. Given the multiple lesions, surgical excision is not a viable therapeutic option.

5. Cysticercosis is generally acquired by fecal-oral transmission (ingestion of eggs) or by autoinfection in which a gravid proglottid is regurgitated from the small intestine into the stomach, allowing the eggs to hatch and release the infectious oncosphere.

6. Other sites that may be involved include the eye and skeletal muscles. Ocular involvement may be detected by direct examination of the eye, and soft-tissue roentgenograms may detect the calcified cysticerci.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. b. *Diphyllobothrium latum.*

2. The diagnosis is made by microscopic examination of stool to detect the characteristic bile-stained, operculated egg with its abopercular knob. Proglottids with the rosette uterine structure also may be found in stool specimens.

3. The drug of choice is niclosamide; praziquantel and paromomycin are acceptable alternatives. Vitamin B_{12} supplementation may be necessary in people with evidence of B_{12} deficiency (megaloblastic anemia).

Chapter 77 Arthropods

1. The clinical presentation is consistent with the diagnosis of scabies.

2. The definitive diagnosis of scabies depends on the demonstration of the mite in skin scrapings. Scrapings are made of the terminal portions of a fresh burrow. The scrapings are placed on a clean glass slide, cleared by the addition of 20% potassium hydroxide, covered with a coverslip, and examined under a low-power microscope.

3. The standard treatment for scabies is the application of 1% gamma benzene hexachloride (lindane) or a 5% permethrin cream (Elmite). Primary prevention of scabies is best achieved with good hygiene habits, personal cleanliness, and routine washing of clothing and bed linens.

4. The development of pustules associated with the scabies tracks suggests a secondary bacterial infection that may require antibiotic therapy.

5. Simultaneous treatment of all affected people and their contacts is necessary in an epidemic situation. Thorough cleansing of the day-care environment also will be necessary.

CASE STUDY ANSWERS

1. c. Tick paralysis

2. Tick paralysis is caused by the introduction of a neurotoxin into humans during the attachment and feeding by the females of several tick species.

3. The first step in treatment of tick paralysis is finding the tick and removing it. It is recommended that the tick be grasped close to the skin with curved forceps and removed with steady pressure. Forcible removal of a live tick may result in rapid dispersal of the toxin. Antitoxin is the usual treatment for paralyzed animals, but it is used sparingly in humans because of the risk of acute reactions and serum sickness. General supportive care, including respiratory support in severe cases, should be administered.